

FortiOS - Administration Guide

Version 6.4.11

FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY
https://docs.fortinet.com

FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE
https://video.fortinet.com

FORTINET BLOG
https://blog.fortinet.com

CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT
https://support.fortinet.com

FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM
https://www.fortinet.com/training-certification

FORTINET TRAINING INSTITUTE
https://training.fortinet.com

FORTIGUARD CENTER
https://www.fortiguard.com

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT
https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf

FEEDBACK
Email: techdoc@fortinet.com



June 30, 2023
FortiOS 6.4.11 Administration Guide
01-6411-607590-20230630

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Change Log **19**
Getting started **20**
Differences between models 20
Using the GUI 20
Connecting using a web browser 20
Menus 21
Tables 22
Entering values 24
Using the CLI 25
Connecting to the CLI 26
CLI basics 28
Command syntax 34
Subcommands 37
Permissions 39
FortiExplorer Management 39
Getting started with FortiExplorer 40
Connecting FortiExplorer to a FortiGate via WiFi 43
Running a security rating 44
Upgrading to FortiExplorer Pro 45
Basic administration 45
Basic configuration 46
Registration 48
FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud login 51
Transfer a device to another FortiCloud account 54
Configuration backups 56
Fortinet Developer Network access 60
LEDs 63
Alarm levels 67
Troubleshooting your installation 67
Zero touch provisioning 69
Zero touch provisioning with FortiDeploy 69
Zero touch provisioning with FortiManager 71
Dashboards and widgets **74**
Using dashboards 74
Viewing device dashboards in the security fabric 76
Creating a fabric system and license dashboard 77
Using widgets 79
Changing the default dashboard template 80
Monitor dashboards and widgets 81
Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor 82
DHCP monitor 84
IPsec monitor 85
SSL-VPN monitor 87
Firewall Users Monitor 87

Implement a user device store to centralize device data ... 88
WiFi Dashboard ... 89
Device inventory ... 96
FortiView ... 101
FortiView monitors and widgets ... 101
Adding FortiView widgets ... 103
VDOMs and dashboards ... 105
FortiView interface ... 106
FortiView from disk ... 113
FortiView from FortiAnalyzer ... 115
FortiView from FortiGate Cloud ... 116
FortiView sources ... 117
FortiView Sessions ... 119
Viewing top websites and sources by category ... 123
Cloud application view ... 126
Viewing session information for a compromised host ... 137
Fortinet Security Fabric ... 139
Security Fabric settings and usage ... 139
Components ... 140
Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates ... 143
Configuring FortiAnalyzer ... 149
Configuring FortiGate Cloud ... 151
Configuring FortiAnalyzer Cloud service ... 153
Configuring FortiManager ... 156
Configuring FortiManager Cloud service ... 157
Configuring FortiSandbox ... 159
Configuring FortiClient EMS ... 161
Synchronizing FortiClient EMS tags and configurations ... 167
Configuring FortiNAC ... 170
Configuring FortiAP and FortiSwitch ... 172
Configuring FortiMail ... 173
Configuring FortiVoice ... 175
Configuring additional devices ... 179
Using the Security Fabric ... 181
Deploying the Security Fabric ... 194
Synchronizing objects across the Security Fabric ... 202
Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager ... 211
Security Fabric over IPsec VPN ... 213
Leveraging LLDP to simplify security fabric negotiation ... 218
Configuring the Security Fabric with SAML ... 221
Configuring single-sign-on in the Security Fabric ... 221
CLI commands for SAML SSO ... 226
SAML SSO with pre-authorized FortiGates ... 227
Navigating between Security Fabric members with SSO ... 227
Integrating FortiAnalyzer management using SAML SSO ... 230
Integrating FortiManager management using SAML SSO ... 232
Advanced option - FortiGate SP changes ... 233
Advanced option - unique SAML attribute types ... 234

Security rating ... 237
Security Fabric score ... 241
Automation stitches ... 242
Creating automation stitches ... 242
Triggers ... 253
Actions ... 258
Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds ... 293
Public and private SDN connectors ... 298
Getting started with public and private SDN connectors ... 299
AliCloud SDN connector using access key ... 303
AWS SDN connector using certificates ... 305
Azure SDN connector using service principal ... 311
Cisco ACI SDN connector using a standalone connector ... 312
ClearPass endpoint connector via FortiManager ... 314
GCP SDN connector using service account ... 318
IBM Cloud SDN connector using API keys ... 320
Kubernetes (K8s) SDN connectors ... 324
Nuage SDN connector using server credentials ... 338
OCI SDN connector using certificates ... 340
OpenStack SDN connector using node credentials ... 342
VMware ESXi SDN connector using server credentials ... 346
VMware NSX-T Manager SDN connector using NSX-T Manager credentials ... 348
Multiple concurrent SDN connectors ... 351
Filter lookup in SDN connectors ... 353
Support for wildcard SDN connectors in filter configurations ... 356
Endpoint/Identity connectors ... 358
Fortinet single sign-on agent ... 358
Poll Active Directory server ... 359
Symantec endpoint connector ... 359
RADIUS single sign-on agent ... 365
Exchange Server connector ... 368
Threat feeds ... 372
External resources file format ... 373
Create a threat feed ... 373
Update history ... 374
External blocklist – Policy ... 375
External blocklist - Authentication ... 376
External blocklist - File hashes ... 377
External resources for DNS filter ... 378
Monitoring the Security Fabric using FortiExplorer for Apple TV ... 383
NOC and SOC example ... 385
Troubleshooting ... 395
Viewing a summary of all connected FortiGates in a Security Fabric ... 396
Diagnosing automation stitches ... 398
Network ... 402
Interfaces ... 402
Interface settings ... 403
Aggregation and redundancy ... 406

VLANs 408
Enhanced MAC VLANs 414
Inter-VDOM routing 417
Software switch 422
Hardware switch 424
Zone 427
Virtual Wire Pair 429
Virtual VLAN switch 431
Failure detection for aggregate and redundant interfaces 437
VLAN inside VXLAN 437
Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN 440
QinQ 802.1Q in 802.1ad 442
QinQ 802.1Q in 802.1Q 442
Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service 444
Interface MTU packet size 451
One-arm sniffer 453
Captive portals 454
DNS 457
Important DNS CLI commands 457
DNS domain list 459
FortiGate DNS server 460
DDNS 463
DNS latency information 466
DNS over TLS 468
DNS troubleshooting 469
Explicit and transparent proxies 470
Explicit web proxy 470
FTP proxy 474
Transparent proxy 475
Proxy policy addresses 478
Proxy policy security profiles 486
Explicit proxy authentication 492
Transparent web proxy forwarding 498
Upstream proxy authentication in transparent proxy mode 499
Multiple dynamic header count 501
Restricted SaaS access 503
Explicit proxy and FortiSandbox Cloud 512
Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers) 514
Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy 519
Multiple LDAP servers in Kerberos keytabs and agentless NTLM domain controllers 522
Learn client IP addresses 523
DHCP servers and relays 524
Configure DHCP on the FortiGate 525
Default DHCP server for low-end FortiGates 526
Configuring the lease time 526
Configuring TFTP servers 527
Configuring the DHCP renew time 527
FortiGate DHCP works with DDNS to allow FQDN connectivity to leased IP addresses 528

Breaking an address lease 528
Excluding addresses in DHCP 528
Viewing information about DHCP server connections 528
DHCP options 529
IP address assignment with relay agent information option 530
DHCP client options 532
Static routing 533
Routing concepts 534
Policy routes 546
Equal cost multi-path 548
Dual internet connections 552
Dynamic routing 558
RIP 559
OSPF 576
BGP 587
BFD 604
Multicast 608
Multicast routing and PIM support 608
Configuring multicast forwarding 609
FortiExtender 613
Adding a FortiExtender 613
Data plan profiles 615
Direct IP support for LTE/4G 617
LLDP reception 620
Virtual routing and forwarding 623
Implementing VRF 623
VRF routing support 625
Route leaking between VRFs 629
Route leaking between multiple VRFs 631
IBGP and EBGP support in VRF 641
NetFlow 644
Verification and troubleshooting 645
NetFlow templates 645
sFlow 658
Configuring sFlow 658
SD-WAN 661
SD-WAN overview 661
SD-WAN components 661
SD-WAN designs and architectures 662
SD-WAN designs principles 663
SD-WAN quick start 665
Configuring the SD-WAN interface 666
Adding a static route 667
Selecting the implicit SD-WAN algorithm 667
Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN 668
Link monitoring and failover 668
Results 669
Configuring SD-WAN in the CLI 673

SD-WAN zones ... 675
Performance SLA ... 680
Link health monitor ... 680
Factory default health checks ... 683
Health check options ... 685
Link monitoring example ... 688
SLA targets example ... 689
Health check packet DSCP marker support ... 691
Interface speedtest ... 691
Monitor performance SLA ... 693
SLA monitoring using the REST API ... 696
SD-WAN rules ... 699
Implicit rule ... 700
Best quality strategy ... 704
Lowest cost (SLA) strategy ... 707
Maximize bandwidth (SLA) strategy ... 710
Minimum number of links for a rule to take effect ... 713
Use MAC addresses in SD-WAN rules and policy routes ... 714
SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS ... 715
SDN dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN rules ... 720
Application steering using SD-WAN rules ... 723
DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN ... 734
Advanced routing ... 745
Self-originating traffic ... 745
Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules ... 750
BGP multiple path support ... 753
Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules ... 756
Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors ... 762
VPN overlay ... 768
ADVPN and shortcut paths ... 769
SD-WAN monitor on ADVPN shortcuts ... 782
SD-WAN integration with OCVPN ... 783
Forward error correction on VPN overlay networks ... 790
Dual VPN tunnel wizard ... 793
Duplicate packets based on SD-WAN rules ... 794
Duplicate packets on other zone members ... 796
Advanced configuration ... 798
SD-WAN with FGCP HA ... 798
Configuring SD-WAN in an HA cluster using internal hardware switches ... 805
SD-WAN configuration portability ... 808
SD-WAN cloud on-ramp ... 814
Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and cloud FortiGate-VM ... 815
Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and AWS native VPN gateway ... 820
Configuring the VIP to access the remote servers ... 823
Configuring the SD-WAN to steer traffic between the overlays ... 826
Verifying the traffic ... 831
Hub and spoke SD-WAN deployment example ... 838

Datacenter configuration 838
Branch configuration 843
Validation 847
Dynamic definition of SD-WAN routes 848
Adding another datacenter 849
Troubleshooting SD-WAN 850
Tracking SD-WAN sessions 850
Understanding SD-WAN related logs 851
SD-WAN related diagnose commands 854
SD-WAN bandwidth monitoring service 858
Using SNMP to monitor health check 860
System 864
Basic system settings 864
Advanced system settings 864
Operating modes 865
Administrators 867
Administrator profiles 867
Add a local administrator 870
Remote authentication for administrators 871
Password policy 873
Admin profile option for diagnose access 874
Associating a FortiToken to an administrator account 875
REST API administrator 876
SSO administrators 877
Firmware 878
Firmware maturity levels 878
Firmware upgrade notifications 879
Downloading a firmware image 880
Testing a firmware version 881
Upgrading the firmware 882
Downgrading to a previous firmware version 883
Installing firmware from system reboot 884
Restoring from a USB drive 886
Controlled upgrade 886
Settings 887
Default administrator password 887
Changing the host name 888
Setting the system time 888
Configuring ports 892
Setting the idle timeout time 892
Setting the password policy 893
Changing the view settings 893
Setting the administrator password retries and lockout time 894
TLS configuration 894
Controlling return path with auxiliary session 895
Email alerts 899
Trusted platform module support 902
Virtual Domains 904

Global and per-VDOM resources 905
Split-task VDOM mode 907
Multi VDOM mode 910
High Availability 929
FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) 930
FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) 930
VRRP 930
FGCP 930
FGSP 978
Using standalone configuration synchronization 1002
VRRP 1004
SNMP 1015
Interface access 1015
MIB files 1016
SNMP agent 1017
SNMP v1/v2c communities 1017
SNMP v3 users 1019
Important SNMP traps 1020
SNMP traps and query for monitoring DHCP pool 1022
Replacement messages 1023
Modifying replacement messages 1023
Replacement message images 1025
Replacement message groups 1026
FortiGuard 1029
Anycast 1030
Connection and OCSP stapling 1031
IPv6 FortiGuard connections 1033
Configuring FortiGuard updates 1033
Configuring a proxy server for FortiGuard updates 1034
Manual updates 1035
Automatic updates 1035
Sending malware statistics to FortiGuard 1037
Update server location 1038
Filtering 1038
Override FortiGuard servers 1040
Online security tools 1040
Anycast and unicast services 1041
Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server 1041
Cloud service communication statistics 1042
IoT detection service 1043
FortiAP query to FortiGuard IoT service to determine device details 1046
FDS-only ISDB package in firmware images 1046
License expiration 1047
Feature visibility 1049
Security feature presets 1049
Certificates 1050
Uploading a certificate using the GUI 1050
Uploading a certificate using the CLI 1053

Uploading a certificate using an API 1054
Procure and import a signed SSL certificate 1059
Microsoft CA deep packet inspection 1062
Provision a trusted certificate with Let's Encrypt 1067
Creating certificates with XCA 1070
Configuration scripts 1078
Workspace mode 1078
Custom languages 1080
RAID 1081
Conserve mode 1084
Proxy inspection in conserve mode 1085
Flow inspection in conserve mode 1085
Diagnostics 1085
Using APIs 1086
Token-based authentication 1086
Making an API call to retrieve information from the FortiGate 1087
Policy and Objects 1090
Policies 1090
Firewall policy parameters 1091
Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW 1092
NGFW policy mode application default service 1096
Application logging in NGFW policy mode 1098
Policy views and policy lookup 1099
Policy with source NAT 1101
Policy with destination NAT 1117
NAT64 policy and DNS64 (DNS proxy) 1133
NAT46 policy 1137
Local-in policies 1140
DoS protection 1141
Access control lists 1149
Mirroring SSL traffic in policies 1150
Inspection mode per policy 1152
OSPFv3 neighbor authentication 1155
Firewall anti-replay option per policy 1157
Enabling advanced policy options in the GUI 1157
Recognize anycast addresses in geo-IP blocking 1158
Matching GeoIP by registered and physical location 1159
Authentication policy extensions 1161
HTTP to HTTPS redirect for load balancing 1162
Use active directory objects directly in policies 1163
FortiGate Cloud / FDN communication through an explicit proxy 1167
No session timeout 1168
MAP-E support 1170
Address objects 1173
Address Types 1174
Address Group 1175
Subnet 1175
Dynamic policy — fabric devices 1176

IP range 1178
FQDN addresses 1179
Using wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies 1180
Geography based addresses 1182
IPv6 geography-based addresses 1184
Wildcard addressing 1186
Interface subnet 1186
Address group 1188
Address folder 1189
Address group exclusions 1190
FSSO dynamic address subtype 1192
ClearPass integration for dynamic address objects 1195
MAC addressed-based policies 1200
ISDB well-known MAC address list 1202
IPv6 MAC addresses and usage in firewall policies 1203
Protocol options 1206
Log oversized files 1206
RPC over HTTP 1206
Protocol port mapping 1206
Common options 1206
Web options 1207
Email options 1208
Traffic shaping 1208
Configuration methods 1209
Traffic shaping policy 1210
Traffic shaping policies 1211
Traffic shaping profiles 1214
Traffic shapers 1224
Global traffic prioritization 1234
DSCP matching and DSCP marking 1237
Examples 1241
Internet Service 1257
Using Internet Service in policy 1258
Using custom Internet Service in policy 1260
Using extension Internet Service in policy 1262
Global IP address information database 1265
IP reputation filtering 1267
Internet service groups in policies 1269
Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information 1273
Internet service customization 1275
Security Profiles 1277
Inspection modes 1277
Flow mode inspection (default mode) 1278
Proxy mode inspection 1278
Inspection mode feature comparison 1280
Antivirus 1282
Protocol comparison between antivirus inspection modes 1283
Other antivirus differences between inspection modes 1283

Configuring an antivirus profile 1283
Proxy mode stream-based scanning 1288
Databases 1291
Content disarm and reconstruction 1292
FortiGuard outbreak prevention 1293
External malware block list 1295
Checking flow antivirus statistics 1297
CIFS support 1299
Using FortiSandbox with antivirus 1304
Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus 1311
Web filter 1317
URL filter 1318
FortiGuard filter 1324
Credential phishing prevention 1330
Usage quota 1333
Web content filter 1335
Advanced filters 1 1338
Advanced filters 2 1341
Web filter statistics 1346
URL certificate blocklist 1347
DNS filter 1348
DNS filter behavior in proxy mode 1348
Configuring a DNS filter profile 1349
FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering 1353
Botnet C&C domain blocking 1356
DNS safe search 1360
Local domain filter 1362
DNS translation 1365
Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server 1368
Troubleshooting for DNS filter 1369
Application control 1372
Configuring an application sensor 1373
Basic category filters and overrides 1374
Excluding signatures in application control profiles 1377
Port enforcement check 1379
Protocol enforcement 1379
SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic in a sandwich topology 1381
Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures 1382
Intrusion prevention 1385
Signature-based defense 1386
Configuring an IPS sensor 1390
IPS configuration options 1392
IPS signature filter options 1397
IPS with botnet C&C IP blocking 1399
IPS sensor for IEC 61850 MMS protocol 1403
File filter 1405
Logs 1408
Supported file types 1409

Email filter 1411
Protocol comparison between email filter inspection modes 1412
Local-based filters 1412
FortiGuard-based filters 1419
Third-party-based filters 1421
Filtering order 1422
Protocols and actions 1424
Configuring webmail filtering 1425
Data leak prevention 1426
Protocol comparison between DLP inspection modes 1427
Logging and blocking files by file name 1427
Basic DLP filter types 1427
DLP fingerprinting 1429
VoIP solutions 1433
General use cases 1434
SIP message inspection and filtering 1438
SIP pinholes 1440
SIP over TLS 1441
Custom SIP RTP port range support 1442
Voice VLAN auto-assignment 1444
ICAP 1445
ICAP configuration example 1446
ICAP response filtering 1448
Web application firewall 1451
Protecting a server running web applications 1451
SSL & SSH Inspection 1455
Certificate inspection 1455
Deep inspection 1457
Protecting an SSL server 1460
Handling SSL offloaded traffic from an external decryption device 1461
SSH traffic file scanning 1463
Redirect to WAD after handshake completion 1464
Custom signatures 1465
Configuring custom signatures 1465
Blocking applications with custom signatures 1467
Application groups in policies 1469
Overrides 1472
Web rating override 1472
Using local and remote categories 1479
Web profile override 1481
Profile groups 1485
VPN 1488
IPsec VPNs 1488
General IPsec VPN configuration 1488
Site-to-site VPN 1513
Remote access 1572
Aggregate and redundant VPN 1618
Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) 1658

ADVPN 1689
Other VPN topics 1723
VPN IPsec troubleshooting 1767
SSL VPN 1775
SSL VPN best practices 1775
SSL VPN quick start 1778
SSL VPN tunnel mode 1785
SSL VPN web mode 1794
SSL VPN authentication 1804
SSL VPN to IPsec VPN 1887
SSL VPN protocols 1898
Configuring OS and host check 1899
SSL VPN troubleshooting 1905
User & Authentication 1908
Endpoint control and compliance 1908
Per-policy disclaimer messages 1908
Compliance 1910
FortiGuard distribution of updated Apple certificates 1915
User definition and groups 1916
Users 1917
User groups 1919
Retail environment guest access 1926
User and user group timeouts 1929
LDAP servers 1930
Configuring an LDAP server 1930
Enabling Active Directory recursive search 1931
Configuring LDAP dial-in using a member attribute 1933
Configuring wildcard admin accounts 1934
Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory 1935
RADIUS servers 1936
Configuring a RADIUS server 1937
Using multiple RADIUS servers 1938
RADIUS AVPs and VSAs 1941
Restricting RADIUS user groups to match selective users on the RADIUS server 1943
Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication 1944
RSA ACE (SecurID) servers 1950
Support for Okta RADIUS attributes filter-Id and class 1955
Sending multiple RADIUS attribute values in a single RADIUS Access-Request 1957
Traffic shaping based on dynamic RADIUS VSAs 1957
TACACS+ servers 1964
SAML 1966
Outbound firewall authentication for a SAML user 1966
SAML SP for VPN authentication 1968
Outbound firewall authentication with Azure AD as a SAML IdP 1970
Authentication settings 1980
FortiTokens 1982
FortiToken Mobile quick start 1983

FortiToken Cloud ... 1991
Registering hard tokens ... 1991
Managing FortiTokens ... 1993
FortiToken Mobile Push ... 1995
Troubleshooting and diagnosis ... 1997
Configuring the maximum log in attempts and lockout period ... 2000
PKI ... 2000
Configuring a PKI user ... 2001
Configuring firewall authentication ... 2004
Creating a locally authenticated user account ... 2005
Creating a RADIUS-authenticated user account ... 2005
Creating an FSSO user group ... 2006
Creating a firewall user group ... 2008
Defining policy addresses ... 2008
Creating security policies ... 2009
FSSO ... 2010
FSSO polling connector agent installation ... 2013
FSSO using Syslog as source ... 2017
Wireless configuration ... 2021
Switch Controller ... 2022
Log and Report ... 2023
Viewing event logs ... 2023
Sample logs by log type ... 2025
Log buffer on FortiGates with an SSD disk ... 2044
Checking the email filter log ... 2047
Supported log types to FortiAnalyzer, FortiAnalyzer Cloud, FortiGate Cloud, and syslog ... 2048
Sending traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud ... 2048
Example ... 2048
Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate ... 2050
Checking FortiAnalyzer connectivity ... 2052
Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers (or syslog servers) per VDOM ... 2053
Source and destination UUID logging ... 2055
Logging the signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength per client ... 2056
RSSO information for authenticated destination users in logs ... 2059
Scenario 1 ... 2059
Scenario 2 ... 2060
Scenario 3 ... 2061
Threat weight ... 2062
Configuring and debugging the free-style filter ... 2063
Troubleshooting ... 2065
Log-related diagnose commands ... 2065
Backing up log files or dumping log messages ... 2071
SNMP OID for logs that failed to send ... 2073
WAN optimization ... 2077
Features ... 2077

Protocol optimization 2077
Byte caching 2077
SSL offloading 2077
WAN optimization and HA 2077
Secure tunneling 2078
Prerequisites 2078
Disk usage 2078
Overview 2080
Client/server architecture 2080
Profiles 2080
Peers and authentication groups 2081
Tunnels 2082
Transparent mode 2084
Protocol optimization 2085
Cache service and video caching 2086
Manual and active-passive 2087
Monitoring performance 2088
System and feature operation with WAN optimization 2088
Best practices 2091
Example topologies 2091
In-path WAN optimization topology 2091
Out-of-path WAN optimization topology 2092
Topology for multiple networks 2092
Configuration examples 2093
Manual (peer-to-peer) WAN optimization configuration example 2094
Active-passive WAN optimization configuration example 2098
Secure tunneling configuration example 2103
Testing and troubleshooting the configuration 2109
VM 2113
Amazon Web Services 2113
Microsoft Azure 2113
Google Cloud Platform 2113
Oracle OCI 2113
AliCloud 2113
Private cloud 2113
VM license 2113
Uploading a license file 2114
Types of VM licenses 2115
Consuming a new vCPU 2116
CLI troubleshooting 2116
FortiGate multiple connector support 2119
Adding VDOMs with FortiGate v-series 2121
Terraform: FortiOS as a provider 2123
Troubleshooting 2128
PF and VF SR-IOV driver and virtual SPU support 2128
Using OCI IMDSv2 2129
FIPS cipher mode for AWS, Azure, OCI, and GCP FortiGate-VMs 2132

Troubleshooting **2135**
Troubleshooting methodologies 2136
Verify user permissions 2136
Establish a baseline 2136
Create a troubleshooting plan 2138
Troubleshooting scenarios 2139
Checking the system date and time 2140
Checking the hardware connections 2141
Checking FortiOS network settings 2142
Troubleshooting CPU and network resources 2145
Troubleshooting high CPU usage 2146
Checking the modem status 2150
Running ping and traceroute 2151
Checking the logs 2154
Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode 2155
Verifying the correct route is being used 2156
Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used 2156
Checking the bridging information in transparent mode 2157
Checking wireless information 2158
Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture) 2159
Debugging the packet flow 2162
Testing a proxy operation 2165
Displaying detail Hardware NIC information 2165
Performing a traffic trace 2167
Using a session table 2168
Finding object dependencies 2172
Diagnosing NPU-based interfaces 2173
Identifying the XAUI link used for a specific traffic stream 2173
Date and time settings 2174
Running the TAC report 2175
Other commands 2175
FortiGuard troubleshooting 2178
View open and in use ports 2181
Additional resources 2182
Fortinet Document Library 2182
Release notes 2182
Fortinet Video Library 2182
Fortinet Community 2182
Fortinet Training Institute 2183
Fortinet Support 2183

Change Log

Date	Change Description
2022-11-01	Initial release.
2022-11-14	Added Conserve mode on page 1084.
2022-11-24	Updated Protocol options on page 1206, Troubleshooting for DNS filter on page 1369, and Deep inspection on page 1457. Added Fortinet Developer Network access on page 60.
2022-11-25	Updated FortiGuard on page 1029 and FortiGuard server settings on page 2179. Added Anycast and unicast services on page 1041.
2022-11-28	Added License expiration on page 1047.
2022-12-05	Updated Policy and Objects on page 1090, Internet Service on page 1257, Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager on page 211, and Policy with destination NAT on page 1117. Added Address objects on page 1173, Subnet on page 1175, IP range on page 1178, FQDN addresses on page 1179, Geography based addresses on page 1182, Wildcard addressing on page 1186, Interface subnet on page 1186, and Address group on page 1188.
2022-12-09	Updated Configuring multicast forwarding on page 609.
2022-12-15	Updated Administrator profiles on page 867.
2022-12-20	Added Configuring an application sensor on page 1373.
2022-12-22	Updated FGCP on page 930, HA heartbeat interface on page 933, and Configuring and debugging the free-style filter on page 2063.
2023-01-05	Added Configuring an IPS sensor on page 1390. Updated IPS configuration options on page 1392.
2023-01-06	Added Configuring custom signatures on page 1465. Updated Outbound firewall authentication with Azure AD as a SAML IdP on page 1970.
2023-01-13	Added Profile groups on page 1485.
2023-01-27	Added WAN optimization on page 2077. Updated Static SNAT on page 1102 and Dynamic SNAT on page 1103.
2023-02-09	Updated Central SNAT on page 1108.
2023-02-14	Updated Local-based filters on page 1412.
2023-02-17	Updated DHCP options on page 529.
2023-06-30	Updated Explicit web proxy on page 470.

Getting started

This section explains how to get started with a FortiGate.

Differences between models

Not all FortiGates have the same features, particularly entry-level models (models 30 to 90). A number of features on these models are only available in the CLI.



Consult your model's QuickStart Guide, hardware manual, or the Feature / Platform Matrix for further information about features that vary by model.

FortiGate models differ principally by the names used and the features available:

- Naming conventions may vary between FortiGate models. For example, on some models the hardware switch interface used for the local area network is called *lan*, while on other units it is called *internal*.
- Certain features are not available on all models. Additionally, a particular feature may be available only through the CLI on some models, while that same feature may be viewed in the GUI on other models.
  If you believe your FortiGate model supports a feature that does not appear in the GUI, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and confirm that the feature is enabled. For more information, see Feature visibility on page 1049.

Using the GUI

This section presents an introduction to the graphical user interface (GUI) on your FortiGate.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Connecting using a web browser
- Menus
- Tables
- Entering values

For information about using the dashboards, see Dashboards and widgets on page 74.

Connecting using a web browser

In order to connect to the GUI using a web browser, an interface must be configured to allow administrative access over HTTPS or over both HTTPS and HTTP. By default, an interface has already been set up that allows HTTPS access with the IP address 192.168.1.99.

Browse to https://192.168.1.99 and enter your username and password. If you have not changed the admin account's password, use the default user name, `admin`, and leave the password field blank.

The GUI will now display in your browser, and you will be required to provide a password for the administrator account.

To use a different interface to access the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the interface you wish to use for access. Take note of its assigned IP address.
2. In *Administrative Access*, select *HTTPS*, and any other protocol you require. You can also select *HTTP*, although this is not recommended as the connection will be less secure.
3. Click *OK*.
4. Browse to the IP address using your chosen protocol.
   The GUI will now be displayed in your browser.

Menus



If you believe your FortiGate model supports a menu that does not appear in the GUI, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and ensure the feature is enabled. For more information, see Feature visibility on page 1049.

The GUI contains the following main menus, which provide access to configuration options for most FortiOS features:

Dashboard	The dashboard displays various widgets that display important system information and allow you to configure some system options. For more information, see Dashboards and widgets on page 74.
Security Fabric	Access the physical topology, logical topology, automation, and settings of the Fortinet Security Fabric. For more information, see Fortinet Security Fabric on page 139.
Network	Options for networking, including configuring system interfaces and routing options. For more information, see Network on page 402.
System	Configure system settings, such as administrators, HA, FortiGuard, and certificates. For more information, see System on page 864.
Policy & Objects	Configure firewall policies, protocol options, and supporting content for policies, including schedules, firewall addresses, and traffic shapers. For more information, see Policy and Objects on page 1090.
Security Profiles	Configure your FortiGate's security features, including Antivirus, Web Filter, and Application Control. For more information, see Security Profiles on page 1277.
VPN	Configure options for IPsec and SSL virtual private networks (VPNs). For more information, see IPsec VPNs on page 1488 and SSL VPN on page 1775.
User & Authentication	Configure user accounts, groups, and authentication methods, including external authentication and single sign-on (SSO).

WiFi & Switch Controller	Configure the unit to act as a wireless network controller, managing the wireless Access Point (AP) functionality of FortiWiFi and FortiAP units. On certain FortiGate models, this menu has additional features allowing for FortiSwitch units to be managed by the FortiGate. For more information, see Wireless configuration on page 2021 and Switch Controller on page 2022.
Log & Report	Configure logging and alert email as well as reports. For more information, see Log and Report on page 2023.

Tables

Many GUI pages contain tables of information that can be filtered and customized to display specific information in a specific way. Some tables allow content to be edited directly on that table, or rows to be copied and pasted.

Navigation

Some tables contain information and lists that span multiple pages. Navigation controls will be available at the bottom of the page.

Filters

Filters are used to locate a specific set of information or content in a table. They can be particularly useful for locating specific log entries. The filtering options vary, depending on the type of information in the log.

Depending on the table content, filters can be applied using the filter bar, using a column filter, or based on a cell's content. Some tables allow filtering based on regular expressions.

Administrators with read and write access can define filters. Multiple filters can be applied at one time.

To manually create a filter:

1. Click *Add Filter* at the top of the table. A list of the fields available for filtering is shown.
2. Select the field to filter by.
3. Enter the value to filter by, adding modifiers as needed.
4. Press *Enter* to apply the filter.

To create a column filter:

1. Click the filter icon on the right side of the column header
2. Choose a filter type from the available options.
3. Enter the filter text, or select from the available values.
4. Click *Apply*.

To create a filter based on a cell's content:

1. Right click on a cell in the table.
2. Select a filtering option from the menu.

Column settings

Columns can be rearranged, resized, and added or removed from tables.

To add or remove columns:

1. Right a column header, or click the gear icon on the left side of the header row that appears when hovering the cursor over the headers.
2. Select columns to add or remove.
3. Click *Apply*.

To rearrange the columns in a table:

1. Click and drag the column header.

To resize a column:

1. Click and drag the right border of the column header.

To resize a column to fit its contents:

1. Click the dots or filter icon on the right side of the column header and select *Resize to Contents*.

To resize all of the columns in a table to fit their content:

1. Right a column header, or click the gear icon on the left side of the header row that appears when hovering the cursor over the headers.
2. Click *Best Fit All Columns*.

To reset a table to its default view:

1. Right a column header, or click the gear icon on the left side of the header row that appears when hovering the cursor over the headers.
2. Click *Reset Table*.
   Resetting a table does not remove filters.

Editing objects

In some tables, parts of a configuration can be edited directly in the table. For example, security profiles can be added to an existing firewall policy by clicking the edit icon in a cell in the *Security Profiles* column.

Copying rows

In some tables, rows can be copied and pasted using the right-click menu. For example, a policy can be duplicated by copying and pasting it.

Entering values

Numerous fields in the GUI and CLI require text strings or numbers to be entered when configuring the FortiGate. When entering values in the GUI, you will be prevented from entering invalid characters, and a warning message will be shown explaining what values are not allowed. If invalid values are entered in a CLI command, the setting will be rejected when you apply it.

- Text strings on page 24
- Numbers on page 25

Text strings

Text strings are used to name entities in the FortiGate configuration. For example, the name of a firewall address, administrator, or interface are all text strings.

The following characters cannot be used in text strings, as they present cross-site scripting (XSS) vulnerabilities:

- " - double quotes
- ' - single quote
- > - greater than
- < - less than

Most GUI text fields prevent XSS vulnerable characters from being added.



VDOM names and hostnames can only use numbers (0-9), letters (a-z and A-Z), dashes, and underscores.

The `tree` CLI command can be used to view the number of characters allowed in a name field. For example, entering the following commands show that a firewall address name can contain up to 80 characters, while its FQDN can contain 256 characters:

```
tree firewall address
-- [address] --*name    (80)
             |- uuid
             |- subnet
             |- type
             |- sub-type
             |- clearpass-spt
             |- [macaddr] --*macaddr    (128)
             |- start-ip
             |- end-ip
             |- fqdn    (256)
             |- country         (3)
             |- wildcard-fqdn   (256)
             |- cache-ttl       (0,86400)
             |- wildcard
             |- sdn     (36)
             |- [fsso-group] --*name    (512)
             |- interface       (36)
             |- tenant  (36)
             |- organization    (36)
             |- epg-name        (256)
```

```
|- subnet-name     (256)
|- sdn-tag         (16)
|- policy-group    (16)
|- obj-tag         (256)
|- obj-type
|- tag-detection-level     (16)
|- tag-type        (64)
|- dirty
|- comment
|- associated-interface    (36)
|- color   (0,32)
|- filter
|- sdn-addr-type
|- node-ip-only
|- obj-id
|- [list] --*ip    (36)
          |- obj-id        (128)
          +- net-id        (128)
|- [tagging] --*name       (64)
             |- category   (64)
             +- [tags] --*name     (80)
|- allow-routing
+- fabric-object
```

Numbers

Numbers are used to set sizes, rated, addresses, port numbers, priorities, and other such numeric values. They can be entered as a series of digits (without commas or spaces), in a dotted decimal format (such as IP addresses), or separated by colons (such as MAC addresses). Most numeric values use base 10 numbers, while some use hexadecimal values.

Most GUI and CLI fields prevent invalid numbers from being entered. The CLI help text includes information about the range of values allowed for applicable settings.

Using the CLI

The Command Line Interface (CLI) can be used in lieu of the GUI to configure the FortiGate. Some settings are not available in the GUI, and can only be accessed using the CLI.

This section briefly explains basic CLI usage. For more information about the CLI, see the FortiOS CLI Reference.

- Connecting to the CLI on page 26
- CLI basics on page 28
- Command syntax on page 34
- Subcommands on page 37
- Permissions on page 39

Connecting to the CLI

You can connect to the CLI using a direct console connection, SSH, the FortiExplorer app on your iOS device, or the CLI console in the GUI.

You can access the CLI outside of the GUI in three ways:

- Console connection: Connect your computer directly to the console port of your FortiGate.
- SSH access: Connect your computer through any network interface attached to one of the network ports on your FortiGate.
- FortiExplorer: Connect your device to the FortiExplorer app on your iOS device to configure, manage, and monitor your FortiGate. See FortiExplorer Management on page 39 for details.

To open a CLI console, click the _> icon in the top right corner of the GUI. The console opens on top of the GUI. It can be minimized and multiple consoles can be opened.

To edit policies and objects directly in the CLI, right-click on the element and select *Edit in CLI*.

Console connection

A direct console connection to the CLI is created by directly connecting your management computer or console to the FortiGate using its DB-9 or RJ-45 console port.

Direct console access to the FortiGate may be required if:

- You are installing the FortiGate for the first time and it is not configured to connect to your network.
- You are restoring the firmware using a boot interrupt. Network access to the CLI will not be available until after the boot process has completed, making direct console access the only option.

To connect to the FortiGate console, you need:

- A console cable to connect the console port on the FortiGate to a communications port on the computer. Depending on your device, this is one of:
  - null modem cable (DB-9 to DB-9)
  - DB-9 to RJ-45 cable (a DB-9-to-USB adapter can be used)
  - USB to RJ-45 cable
- A computer with an available communications port
- Terminal emulation software

To connect to the CLI using a direct console connection:

1. Using the console cable, connect the FortiGate unit's console port to the serial communications (COM) port on your management computer.
2. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer, select the COM port, and use the following settings:

Bits per second	9600
Data bits	8
Parity	None
Stop bits	1
Flow control	None

3. Press *Enter* on the keyboard to connect to the CLI.
4. Log in to the CLI using your username and password (default: *admin* and no password).
   You can now enter CLI commands, including configuring access to the CLI through SSH.

SSH access

SSH access to the CLI is accomplished by connecting your computer to the FortiGate using one of its network ports. You can either connect directly, using a peer connection between the two, or through any intermediary network.



If you do not want to use an SSH client and you have access to the GUI, you can access the CLI through the network using the CLI console in the GUI.

SSH must be enabled on the network interface that is associated with the physical network port that is used.

If your computer is not connected either directly or through a switch to the FortiGate, you must also configure the FortiGate with a static route to a router that can forward packets from the FortiGate to the computer. This can be done using a local console connection, or in the GUI.

To connect to the FortiGate CLI using SSH, you need:

- A computer with an available serial communications (COM) port and RJ-45 port
- An appropriate console cable
- Terminal emulation software
- A network cable
- Prior configuration of the operating mode, network interface, and static route.

To enable SSH access to the CLI using a local console connection:

1. Using the network cable, connect the FortiGate unit's port either directly to your computer's network port, or to a network through which your computer can reach the FortiGate.
2. Note the number of the physical network port.
3. Using direct console connection, connect and log into the CLI.
4. Enter the following command:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface_str>
        append allowaccess ssh
    next
end
```

   Where `<interface_str>` is the name of the network interface associated with the physical network port, such as `port1`.
5. Confirm the configuration using the following command to show the interface's settings:

```
show system interface <interface_str>
```

   For example:

```
show system interface port1
    config system interface
        edit "port1"
            set vdom "root"
```

```
            set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess ping https ssh
            set type hard-switch
            set stp enable
            set role lan
            set snmp-index 6
        next
    end
```

Connecting using SSH

Once the FortiGate is configured to accept SSH connections, use an SSH client on your management computer to connect to the CLI.

The following instructions use PuTTy. The steps may vary in other terminal emulators.

To connect to the CLI using SSH:

1. On your management computer, start PuTTy.
2. In the *Host Name (or IP address)* field, enter the IP address of the network interface that you are connected to and that has SSH access enabled.
3. Set the port number to 22, if it is not set automatically.
4. Select *SSH* for the *Connection type*.
5. Click *Open*. The SSH client connect to the FortiGate.
   The SSH client may display a warning if this is the first time that you are connecting to the FortiGate and its SSH key is not yet recognized by the SSH client, or if you previously connected to the FortiGate using a different IP address or SSH key. This is normal if the management computer is connected directly to the FortiGate with no network hosts in between.
6. Click *Yes* to accept the FortiGate's SSH key.
   The CLI displays the log in prompt.
7. Enter a valid administrator account name, such as `admin`, then press *Enter*.
8. Enter the administrator account password, then press *Enter*.
   The CLI console shows the command prompt (FortiGate hostname followed by a `#`). You can now enter CLI commands.



If three incorrect log in or password attempts occur in a row, you will be disconnected. If this occurs, wait for one minute, then reconnect and attempt to log in again.

CLI basics

Basic features and characteristics of the CLI environment provide support and ease of use for many CLI tasks.

Help

Press the question mark (?) key to display command help and complete commands.

- Press the question mark (?) key at the command prompt to display a list of the commands available and a description of each command.

- Enter a command followed by a space and press the question mark (?) key to display a list of the options available for that command and a description of each option.
- Enter a command followed by an option and press the question mark (?) key to display a list of additional options available for that command option combination and a description of each option.
- Enter a question mark after entering a portion of a command to see a list of valid complete commands and their descriptions. If there is only one valid command, it will be automatically filled in.

Shortcuts and key commands

Shortcut key	Action
?	List valid complete or subsequent commands. If multiple commands can complete the command, they are listed with their descriptions.
Tab	Complete the word with the next available match. Press multiple times to cycle through available matches.
Up arrow or Ctrl + P	Recall the previous command. Command memory is limited to the current session.
Down arrow, or Ctrl + N	Recall the next command.
Left or Right arrow	Move the cursor left or right within the command line.
Ctrl + A	Move the cursor to the beginning of the command line.
Ctrl + E	Move the cursor to the end of the command line.
Ctrl + B	Move the cursor backwards one word.
Ctrl + F	Move the cursor forwards one word.
Ctrl + D	Delete the current character.
Ctrl + C	Abort current interactive commands, such as when entering multiple lines. If you are not currently within an interactive command such as `config` or `edit`, this closes the CLI connection.
\ then Enter	Continue typing a command on the next line for a multiline command. For each line that you want to continue, terminate it with a backslash (\ ). To complete the command, enter a space instead of a backslash, and then press *Enter*.

Command tree

Enter `tree` to display the CLI command tree. To capture the full output, connect to your device using a terminal emulation program and capture the output to a log file. For some commands, use the `tree` command to view all available variables and subcommands.

Command abbreviation

You can abbreviate words in the command line to their smallest number of non-ambiguous characters.

For example, the command `get system status` could be abbreviated to `g sy stat`.

Adding and removing options from lists

When configuring a list, the `set` command will remove the previous configuration.

For example, if a user group currently includes members A, B, and C, the command `set member D` will remove members A, B, and C. To avoid removing the existing members from the group, the command `set members A B C D` must be used.

To avoid this issue, the following commands are available:

append	Add an option to an existing list. For example, `append member D` adds user D to the user group without removing any of the existing members.
select	Clear all of the options except for those specified. For example, `select member B` removes all member from the group except for member B.
unselect	Remove an option from an existing list. For example, `unselect member C` removes only member C from the group, without affecting the other members.

Environment variables

The following environment variables are support by the CLI. Variable names are case-sensitive.

$USERFROM	The management access type (`ssh`, `jsconsole`, and so on) and the IPv4 address of the administrator that configured the item.
$USERNAME	The account name of the administrator that configured the item.
$SerialNum	The serial number of the FortiGate.

For example, to set a FortiGate device's host name to its serial number, use the following CLI command:

```
config system global
   set hostname $SerialNum
end
```

Special characters

The following characters cannot be used in most CLI commands: `<`, `>`, `(`, `)`, `#`, `'`, and `"`

If one of those characters, or a space, needs to be entered as part of a string, it can be entered by using a special command, enclosing the entire string in quotes, or preceding it with an escape character (backslash, \).

To enter a question mark (`?`) or a tab, *Ctrl* + *V* or *Ctrl* + *Shift* + - must be entered first.



Question marks and tabs cannot be copied into the CLI Console or some SSH clients. They must be typed in.

Character	Keys
?	Ctrl + V or Ctrl + Shift + - then ?
Tab	Ctrl + V then Tab
Space (as part of a string value, not to end the string)	Enclose the string in single or double quotation marks: `"Security Administrator"` or `'Security Administrator'`. Precede the space with a backslash: `Security\ Administrator`.
' (as part of a string value, not to begin or end the string)	\'
" (as part of a string value, not to begin or end the string)	\"
\	\\

Using grep to filter command output

The `get`, `show`, and `diagnose` commands can produce large amounts of output. The `grep` command can be used to filter the output so that it only shows the required information.

The grep command is based on the standard UNIX grep, used for searching text output based on regular expressions.

For example, the following command displays the MAC address of the internal interface:

```
get hardware nic internal | grep Current_HWaddr
    Current_HWaddr        00:09:0f:cb:c2:75
```

The following command will display all TCP sessions that are in the session list, including the session list line number in the output:

```
get system session list | grep -n tcp
```

The following command will display all of the lines in the HTTP replacement message that contain `URL` or `url`:

```
show system replacemsg http | grep -i url
```

The following options can also be used:

```
-A <num> After
-B <num> Before
-C <num> Context
```

The `-f` option is available to support contextual output, in order to show the complete configuration. The following example shows the difference in the output when `-f` is used versus when it is not used:

Without `-f`:

```
show | grep ldap-group1
```

With `-f`:

```
edit "ldap-group1"
    set groups "ldap-group1"
```

```
show | grep -f ldap-group1
    config user group
        edit "ldap-group1"
            set member "pc40-LDAP"
        next
    end
    config firewall policy
        edit 2
            set srcintf "port31"
            set dstintf "port32"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set identity-based enable
            set nat enable
            config identity-based-policy
                edit 1
                    set schedule "always"
                    set groups "ldap-group1"
                    set dstaddr "all"
                    set service "ALL"
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

Language support and regular expressions

Characters such as ñ and é, symbols, and ideographs are sometimes acceptable input. Support varies depending on the type of item that is being configured. CLI commands, objects, field names, and options must use their exact ASCII characters, but some items with arbitrary names or values can be input using your language of choice. To use other languages in those cases, the correct encoding must be used.

Input is stored using Unicode UTF-8 encoding, but is not normalized from other encodings into UTF-8 before it is stored. If your input method encodes some characters differently than in UTF-8, configured items may not display or operate as expected.

Regular expressions are especially impacted. Matching uses the UTF-8 character values. If you enter a regular expression using a different encoding, or if an HTTP client sends a request in a different encoding, matches may not be what is expected.

For example, with Shift-JIS, backslashes could be inadvertently interpreted as the symbol for the Japanese yen (¥), and vice versa. A regular expression intended to match HTTP requests containing monetary values with a yen symbol may not work it if the symbol is entered using the wrong encoding.

For best results:

- use UTF-8 encoding, or
- use only characters whose numerically encoded values are the same in UTF-8, such as the US-ASCII characters that are encoded using the same values in ISO 8859-1, Windows code page 1252, Shift-JIS, and other encoding methods, or
- for regular expressions that must match HTTP requests, use the same encoding as your HTTP clients.



HTTP clients may send requests in encodings other than UTF-8. Encodings usually vary based on the client's operating system or input language. If the client's encoding method cannot be predicted, you might only be able to match the parts of the request that are in English, as the values for English characters tend to be encoded identically, regardless of the encoding method.

If the FortiGate is configured to use an encoding method other than UTF-8, the management computer's language may need to be changed, including the web browse and terminal emulator. If the FortiGate is configured using non-ASCII characters, all the systems that interact with the FortiGate must also support the same encoding method. If possible, the same encoding method should be used throughout the configuration to avoid needing to change the language settings on the management computer.

The GUI and CLI client normally interpret output as encoded using UTF-8. If they do not, configured items may not display correctly. Exceptions include items such as regular expression that may be configured using other encodings to match the encoding of HTTP requests that the FortiGate receives.

To enter non-ASCII characters in a terminal emulator:

1. On the management computer, start the terminal client.
2. Configure the client to send and receive characters using UTF-8 encoding.
   Support for sending and receiving international characters varies by terminal client.
3. Log in to the FortiGate.
4. At the command prompt, type your command and press *Enter*.
   Words that use encoded characters may need to be enclosed in single quotes (').
   Depending on your terminal client's language support, you may need to interpret the characters into character codes before pressing *Enter*. For example, you might need to enter: `edit '\743\601\613\743\601\652'`
5. The CLI displays the command and its output.

Screen paging

By default, the CLI will pause after displaying each page worth of text when a command has multiple pages of output. this can be useful when viewing lengthy outputs that might exceed the buffer of terminal emulator.

When the display pauses and shows `--More--`, you can:

- Press *Enter* to show the next line,
- Press *Q* to stop showing results and return to the command prompt,
- Press an arrow key, *Insert*, *Home*, *Delete*, *End*, *Page Up*, or *Page Down* to show the next few pages,
- Press any other key to show the next page, or
- Wait for about 30 seconds for the console to truncate the output and return to the command prompt.

When pausing the screen is disabled, press *Ctrl* + *C* to stop the output and log out of the FortiGate.

To disable pausing the CLI output:

```
config system console
   set output standard
end
```

To enable pausing the CLI output:

```
config system console
   set output more
end
```

Changing the baud rate

The baud rate of the local console connection can be changed from its default value of 9600.

To change the baud rate:

```
config system console
   set baudrate {9600 | 19200 | 38400 | 57600 | 115200}
end
```

Editing the configuration file

The FortiGate configuration file can be edited on an external host by backing up the configuration, editing the configuration file, and then restoring the configuration to the FortiGate.

Editing the configuration file can save time is many changes need to be made, particularly if the plain text editor that you are using provides features such as batch changes.

To edit the configuration file:

1. Backup the configuration. See Configuration backups on page 56 for details.
2. Open the configuration file in a plain text editor that supports UNIX-style line endings.
3. Edit the file as needed.



Do not edit the first line of the configuration file.

This line contains information about the firmware version and FortiGate model. If you change the model number, the FortiGate will reject the configuration when you attempt to restore it.

4. Restore the modified configuration to the FortiGate. See Configuration backups on page 56 for details.
The FortiGate downloads the configuration file and checks that the model information is correct. If it is correct, the configuration file is loaded and each line is checked for errors. If a command is invalid, that command is ignored. If the configuration file is valid, the FortiGate restarts and loads the downloaded configuration.

Command syntax

When entering a command, the CLI console requires that you use valid syntax and conform to expected input constraints. It rejects invalid commands. Indentation is used to indicate the levels of nested commands.

Each command line consists of a command word, usually followed by configuration data or a specific item that the command uses or affects.

Notation

Brackets, vertical bars, and spaces are used to denote valid syntax. Constraint notations, such as `<address_ipv4>`, indicate which data types or string patterns are acceptable value input.

All syntax uses the following conventions:

Angle brackets < >	Indicate a variable of the specified data type.
Curly brackets { }	Indicate that a variable or variables are mandatory.
Square brackets [ ]	Indicate that the variable or variables are optional. For example: `show system interface [<name_str>]` To show the settings for all interfaces, you can enter `show system interface` To show the settings for the Port1 interface, you can enter `show system interface port1`.
Vertical bar |	A vertical bar separates alternative, mutually exclusive options. For example: `set protocol {ftp | sftp}` You can enter either `set protocol ftp` or `set protocol sftp`.

Space	A space separates non-mutually exclusive options.
	For example:
	`set allowaccess {ping https ssh snmp http fgfm radius-acct probe-response capwap ftm}`
	You can enter any of the following:
	`set allowaccess ping`
	`set allowaccess https ping ssh`
	`set allowaccess http https snmp ssh ping`
	In most cases, to make changes to lists that contain options separated by spaces, you need to retype the entire list, including all the options that you want to apply and excluding all the options that you want to remove.

Optional values and ranges

Any field that is optional will use square-brackets. The overall config command will still be valid whether or not the option is configured.

Square-brackets can be used is to show that multiple options can be set, even intermixed with ranges. The following example shows a field that can be set to either a specific value or range, or multiple instances:

```
config firewall service custom
   set iprange <range1> [<range2> <range3> ...]
end
```

next

The `next` command is used to maintain a hierarchy and flow to CLI commands. It is at the same indentation level as the preceding `edit` command, to mark where a table entry finishes.

The following example shows the next command used in the subcommand `entries`:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit <1>
        set name <name>
        set comment [comment]
        config entries
            edit <2>
                set filter-type {pattern | type}
            next
```

After configuring table entry `<2>` then entering `next`, the `<2>` table entry is saved and the console returns to the `entries` prompt:

```
FGT60E1Q23456789 (entries) #
```

You can now create more table entries as needed, or enter `end` to save the table and return to the `filepattern` table element prompt.

end

The `end` command is used to maintain a hierarchy and flow to CLI commands.

The following example shows the same command and subcommand as the `next` command example, except `end` has been entered instead of `next` after the subcommand:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit <1>
        set name <name>
        set comment [comment]
        config entries
            edit <2>
                set filter-type {pattern | type}
    end
```

Entering `end` will save the `<2>` table entry and the table, and exit the `entries` subcommand entirely. The console returns to the filepattern table element prompt:

```
FGT60E1Q23456789 (1) #
```

Subcommands

Subcommands are available from within the scope of some commands. When you enter a subcommand level, the command prompt changes to indicate the name of the current command scope. For example, after entering:

```
config system admin
```

the command prompt becomes:

```
(admin)#
```

Applicable subcommands are available until you exit the command, or descend an additional level into another subcommand. Subcommand scope is indicated by indentation.

For example, the `edit` subcommand is only available in commands that affects tables, and the `next` subcommand is available only in the `edit` subcommand:

```
config system interface
   edit port1
      set status up
   next
end
```

The available subcommands vary by command. From a command prompt under the `config` command, subcommands that affect tables and fields could be available.

Table subcommands

edit <table_row>	Create or edit a table value.
	In objects such as security policies, `<table_row>` is a sequence number. To create a new table entry without accidentally editing an existing entry, enter `edit 0`. The CLI will confirm that creation of entry 0, but will assign the next unused number when the entry is saved after entering `end` or `next`.
	For example, to create a new firewall policy, enter the following commands:
	`config firewall policy`
	`edit 0`
	`....`
	`next`
	`end`
	To edit an existing policy, enter the following commands:
	`config firewall policy`
	`edit 27`
	`....`
	`next`
	`end`
	The `edit` subcommand changes the command prompt to the name of the table value that is being edited.

delete <table_row>	Delete a table value.
	For example, to delete firewall policy 30, enter the following commands:
	`config firewall policy`
	`delete 30`
	`end`

purge	Clear all table values. The `purge` command cannot be undone. To restore purged table values, the configuration must be restored from a backup.

move	Move an ordered table value.
	In the firewall policy table, this equivalent to dragging a policy into a new position. It does not change the policy's ID number.
	For example, to move policy 27 to policy 30, enter the following commands:
	`config firewall policy`
	`move 27 to 30`
	`end`
	The `move` subcommand is only available in tables where the order of the table entries matters.

clone <table_row> to <table_row>	Make a clone of a table entry.
	For example, to create firewall policy 30 as a clone of policy 27, enter the following commands:
	`config firewall policy`
	`clone 27 to 30`
	`end`
	The `clone` subcommand may not be available for all tables.

rename <table_row> to <table_row>	Rename a table entry.
	For example to rename an administrator from Flank to Frank, enter the following commands:
	`config system admin`
	`rename Flank to Frank`
	`end`
	The `rename` subcommand is only available in tables where the entries can be renamed.

get	List the current table entries.
	For example, to view the existing firewall policy table entries, enter the following commands:
	`config firewall policy`
	`get`

show	Show the configuration. Only table entries that are not set to default values are shown.
end	Save the configuration and exit the current `config` command.



Purging the `system interface` or `system admin` tables does not reset default table values. This can result in being unable to connect to or log in to the FortiGate, requiring the FortiGate to be formatted and restored.

Field subcommands

set <field> <value>	Modify the value of a field.

	For example, the command `set fsso enable` sets the `fsso` field to the value `enable`.
unset	Set the field to its default value.
select	Clear all of the options except for those specified. For example, if a group contains members A, B, C, and D, to remove all members except for B, use the command `select member B`.
unselect	Remove an option from an existing list. For example, if a group contains members A, B, C, and D, to remove only member B, use the command `unselect member B`.
append	Add an option to an existing multi-option table value.
clear	Clear all the options from a multi-option table value.
get	List the configuration of the current table entry, including default and customized values.
show	Show the configuration. Only values that are not set to default values are shown.
next	Save changes to the table entry and exit the `edit` command so that you can configure the next table entry.
abort	Exit the command without saving.
end	Save the configuration and exit the current `config` command.

Permissions

Administrator (or access) profiles control what CLI commands an administrator can access by assigning read, write, or no access to each area of FortiOS. For information, see Administrator profiles on page 867.

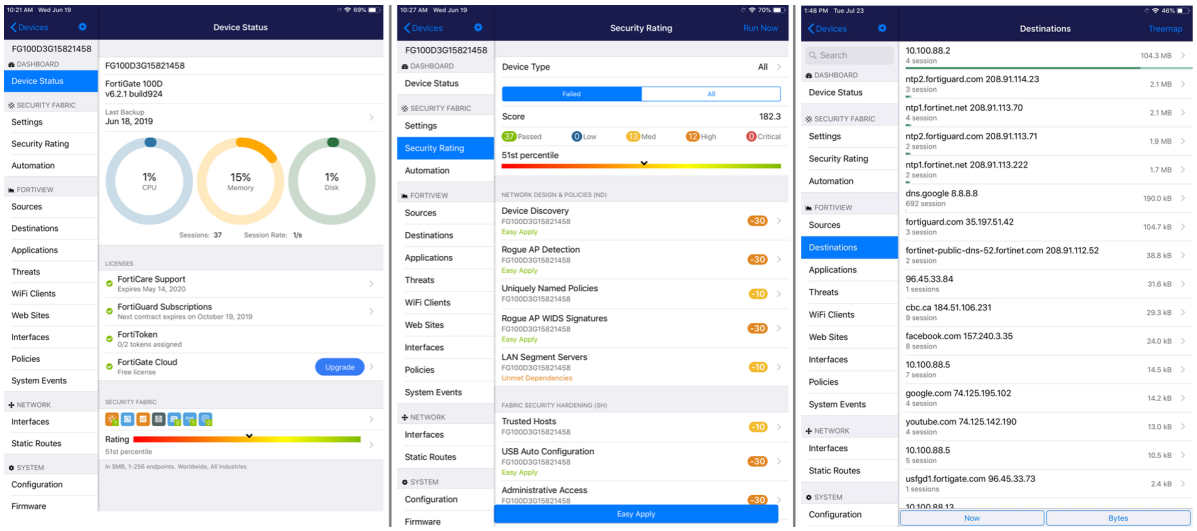
Read access is required to view configurations. Write access is required to make configuration changes. Depending on your account's profile, you may not have access to all CLI commands. To have access to all CLI commands, an administrator account with the *super_admin* profile must be used, such as the *admin* account.

Accounts assigned the *super_admin* profile are similar to the root administrator account. They have full permission to view and change all FortiGate configuration options, including viewing and changing other administrator accounts.

To increase account security, set strong passwords for all administrator accounts, and change the passwords regularly.

FortiExplorer Management

FortiExplorer for iOS is a user-friendly application that helps you to rapidly provision, deploy, and monitor Security Fabric components from your iOS device.



FortiExplorer for iOS requires iOS 10.0 or later and is compatible with iPhone, iPad, and Apple TV. It is supported by FortiOS 5.6 and later, and is available on the App Store for iOS devices.

FortiExplorer is also available for support on Android on the Google Play Store. Steps for configuring FortiExplorer for Android may differ from what is included in the guide.

Advanced features are available with the purchase of FortiExplorer Pro. Paid features include the ability to add more than two devices, and firmware upgrades for devices with active licenses.

Up to six members can use this app with 'Family Sharing' enabled in the App Store.

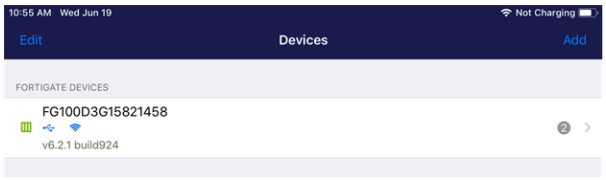
Firmware upload requires a valid firmware license. Users can download firmware for models with a valid support contract.

Getting started with FortiExplorer

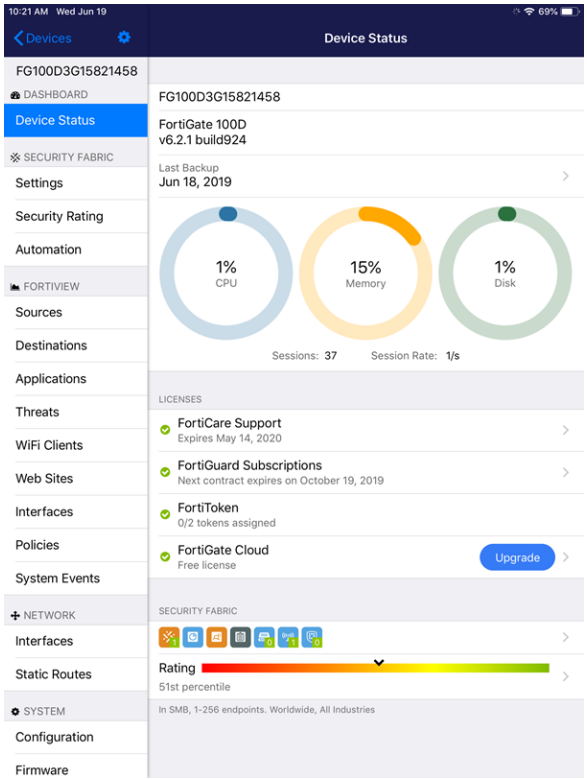
If your FortiGate is accessible on a wireless network, you can connect to it using FortiExplorer provided that your iOS device is on the same network (see Connecting FortiExplorer to a FortiGate via WiFi). Otherwise, you will need to physically connect your iOS device to the FortiGate using a USB cable.

To connect and configure a FortiGate with FortiExplorer using a USB connection:

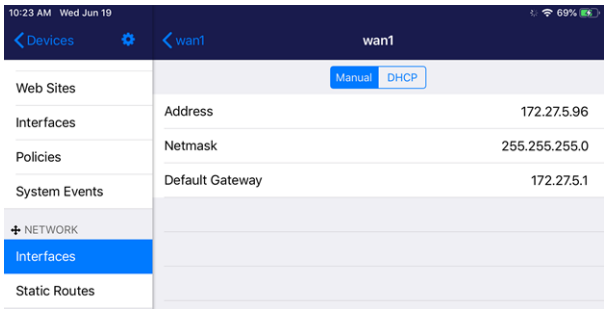
1. Connect your iOS device to your FortiGate USB A port. If prompted on your iOS device, *Trust* this computer.
2. Open FortiExplorer and select your FortiGate from the *FortiGate Devices* list . A blue USB icon will indicate that you are connected over a USB connection.



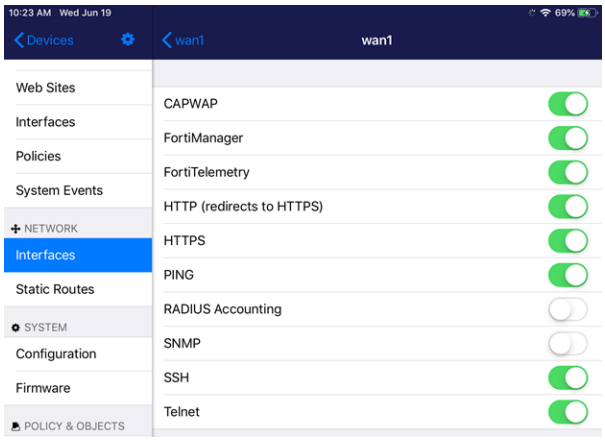
3. On the *Login* screen, select *USB*.
4. Enter the default *Username* (`admin`) and leave the *Password* field blank.
5. Optionally, select *Remember Password*.
6. Tap *Done* when you are ready.
   FortiExplorer opens the FortiGate management interface to the *Device Status* page:



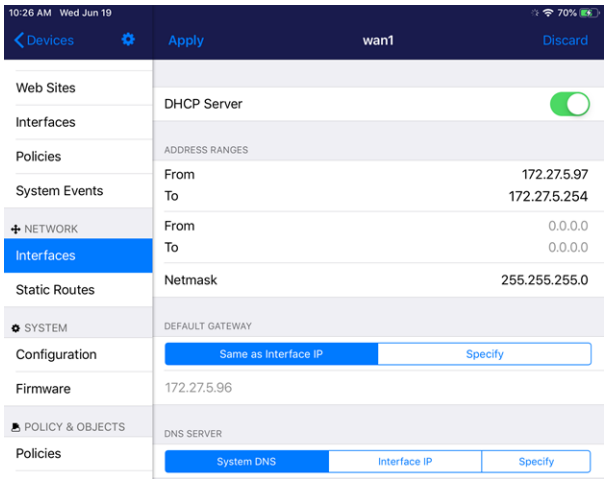
7. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and configure the WAN interface or interfaces.
8. The *wan1* interface *Address* mode is set to *DHCP* by default. Set it to *Manual* and enter its *Address*, *Netmask*, and *Default Gateway*, and then *Apply* your changes.



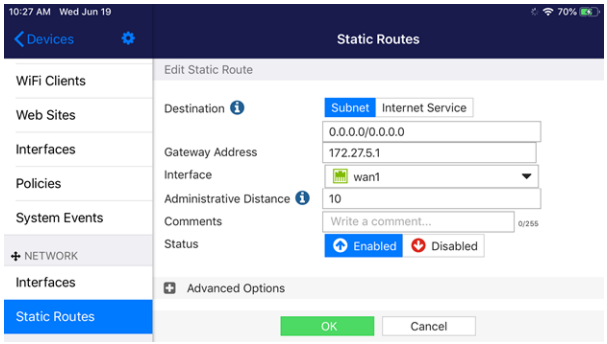
9. Optionally, configure *Administrative Access* to allow *HTTPS* access. This will allow administrators to access the FortiGate GUI using a web browser.



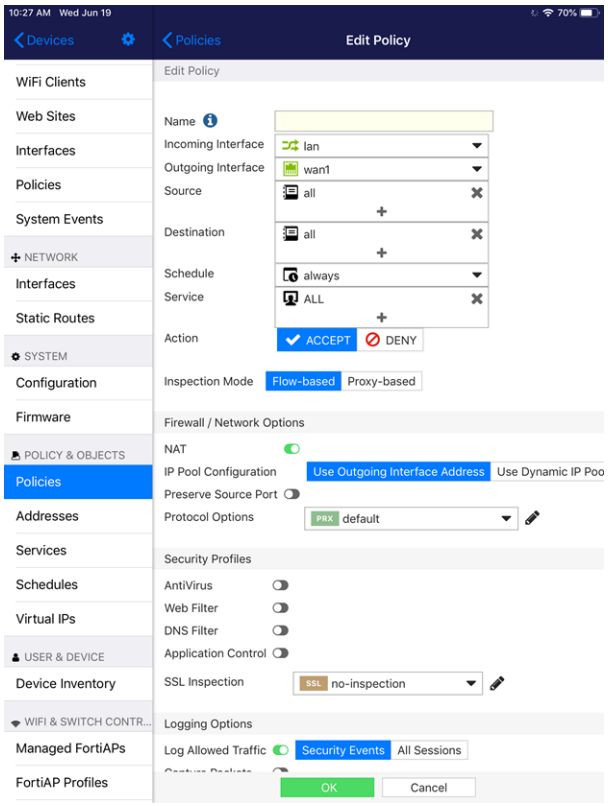
10. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and configure the local network (internal) interface.
11. Set the *Address* mode as before and configure *Administrative Access* if required.
12. Configure a *DHCP Server* for the internal network subnet.



13. Return to the internal interface using the < button at the top of the screen.
14. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and configure the static route to the gateway.



15. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and edit the Internet access policy. Enter a *Name* for the policy, enable the required *Security Profiles*, configure *Logging Options*, then tap *OK*.

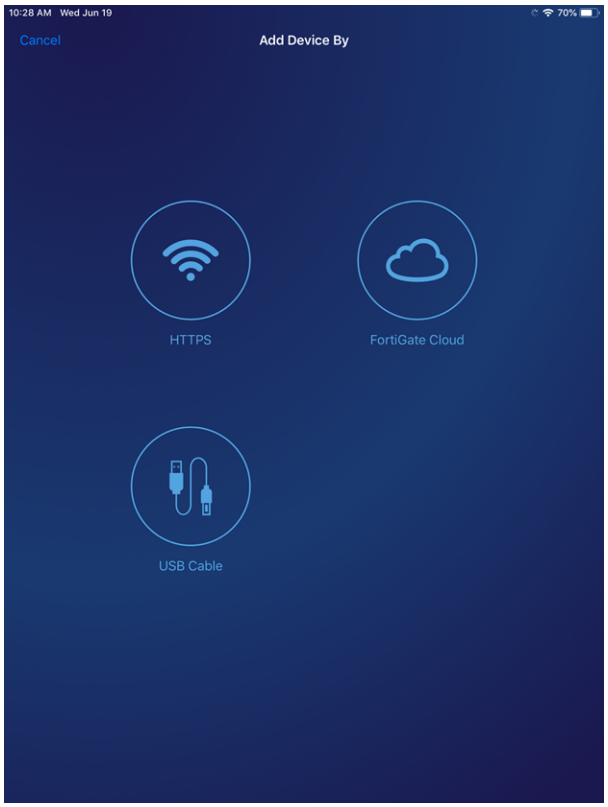


Connecting FortiExplorer to a FortiGate via WiFi

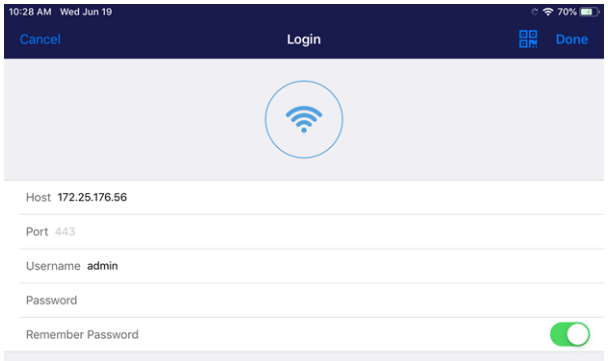
You can wirelessly connect to the FortiGate if your iOS device and the FortiGate are both connected to the same wireless network.

To connect and configure a FortiGate with FortiExplorer wirelessly:

1. Open the FortiExplorer app and tap *Add* on the *Devices* page.
2. On the *Add Device By* page, tap *HTTPS*.



3. Enter the *Host* information, *Username*, and *Password*.
4. If required, change the default *Port* number, and optionally enable *Remember Password*.

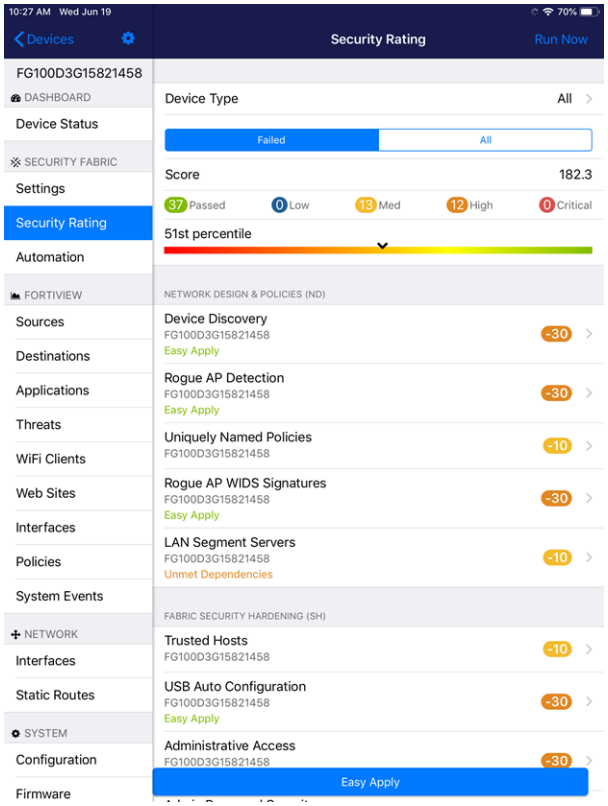


5. Tap *Done*.
6. If the FortiGate device identity cannot be verified, tap *Connect* at the prompt.
   FortiExplorer opens the FortiGate management interface to the *Device Status* page.

Running a security rating

After configuring your network, run a security rating check to identify vulnerabilities and highlight best practices that could improve your network's security and performance.

Go to *Security Fabric* > *Security Rating* and follow the steps to determine the score. See Security rating on page 237 for more information.



Upgrading to FortiExplorer Pro

FortiExplorer Pro allows you to add unlimited devices, and download firmware images for devices with active licenses.

To upgrade to FortiExplorer Pro:

1. In FortiExplorer, go to *Settings*.
2. Tap *Manage Subscription*.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Basic administration

This section contains information about basic FortiGate administration that you can do after you installing the unit in your network.

- Basic configuration on page 46
- Registration on page 48
- FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud login on page 51
- Transfer a device to another FortiCloud account on page 54

- Configuration backups on page 56
- Fortinet Developer Network access on page 60

Basic configuration

This topic will help you configure a few basic settings on the FortiGate as described in the Using the GUI on page 20 and Using the CLI on page 25 sections, including:

- Configuring an interface to be part of your existing network for further configuration
- Configuring the hostname
- Configuring the default route
- Ensuring internet/FortiGuard connectivity

Configuring an interface

It is unlikely the default interface configuration will be appropriate for your environment and typically requires some effort of the administrator to use these settings, such as being physically near the FortiGate to establish a serial connection. Therefore, the first step is to configure an interface that can be used to complete the FortiGate configuration.

To configure an interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. Select an interface and click *Edit*.
2. Enter an *Alias*.
3. In the *Address* section, enter the *IP/Netmask*.
4. In *Administrative Access* section, select the access options as needed (such as *PING*, *HTTPS*, and *SSH*).
5. Optionally, enable *DHCP Server* and configure as needed.
6. Click *OK*.

To configure an interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set ip 203.0.113.99 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh
        set alias "Management"
    next
end
```

Configuring the hostname

Setting the FortiGate's hostname assists with identifying the device, and it is especially useful when managing multiple FortiGates. Choose a meaningful hostname as it is used in the CLI console, SNMP system name, device name for FortiGate Cloud, and to identify a member of an HA cluster.

To configure the hostname in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. Enter a name in the *Host name* field.

3. Click *Apply*.

To configure the hostname in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set hostname 200F_YVR
end
```

Configuring the default route

Setting the default route enables basic routing to allow the FortiGate to return traffic to sources that are not directly connected. The gateway address should be your existing router or L3 switch that the FortiGate is connected to. If you are directly connecting to the FortiGate, you may choose your endpoint's IP address as the gateway address. Set the interface to be the interface the gateway is connected to.

To configure the default route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Leave the destination subnet as *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*. This is known as a default route, since it would match any IPv4 address.
3. Enter the *Gateway Address*.
4. Select an *Interface*.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure the default route in the CLI:

```
config router static
    edit 0
        set gateway 192.168.1.254
        set device port1
    next
end
```

Ensuring internet and FortiGuard connectivity

This step is not necessary for the configuration; however, it is necessary in order to keep your FortiGate up to date against the latest threats. Updates are provided to FortiGates that are registered and make a request to the FortiGuard network to verify if there are any more recent definitions.

Use `execute ping <domain.tld>` to ensure the DNS resolution is able to resolve the following FortiGuard servers:

- fds1.fortinet.com
- service.fortiguard.net
- update.fortiguard.net

You also need to ensure the necessary ports are permitted outbound in the event your FortiGate is behind a filtering device. Refer to the Ports and Protocols document for more information.

Registration

The FortiGate, and then its service contract, must be registered to have full access to Fortinet Customer Service and Support, and FortiGuard services. The FortiGate can be registered in either the FortiGate GUI or the FortiCloud support portal. The service contract can be registered from the FortiCloud support portal.

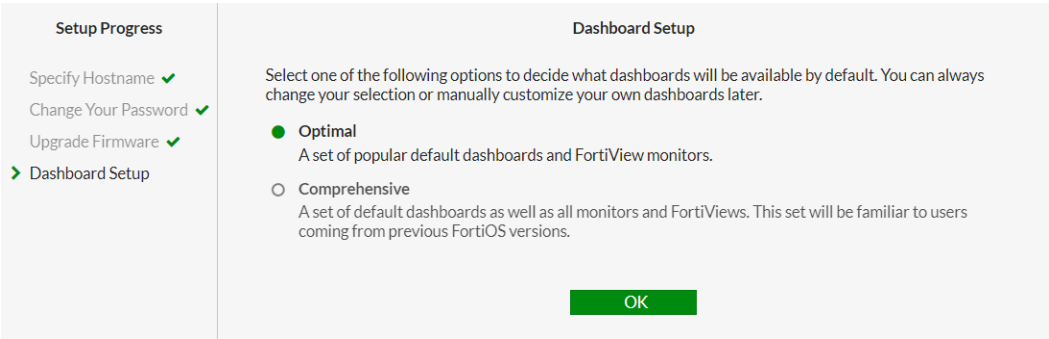


The service contract number is needed to complete registrations on the FortiCloud support portal. You can find this 12-digit number in the email that contains your service registration document (sent from do-not-reply-contract@fortinet.com) in the service entitlement summary.

To register your FortiGate in the GUI:

1. Connect to the FortiGate GUI. A dialog box appears, which indicates the steps you should take to complete the setup of your FortiGate. These steps include:
   a. *Specify Hostname*
   b. *Change Your Password*
   c. Upgrade Firmware
   d. *Dashboard Setup*

   If you completed the Basic configuration on page 46, the hostname and password steps are already marked as complete (checkmark). If you chose to deploy the latest firmware, the *Upgrade Firmware* step is marked as complete.
2. Click *Begin* to complete the dashboard setup. Two options appear (*Optimal* and *Comprehensive*).

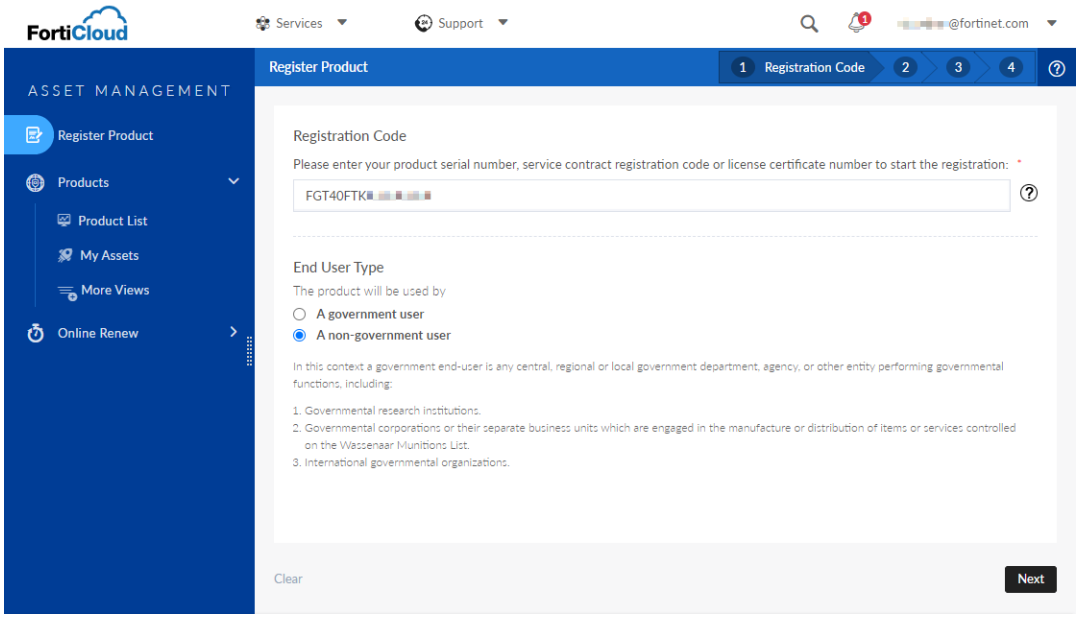


3. Select the desired setting and click *OK*. The *System* > *FortiGuard* page opens.
4. Click *Enter Registration Code*.
5. Enter the contract registration code from your service registration document.
6. Click *OK*.

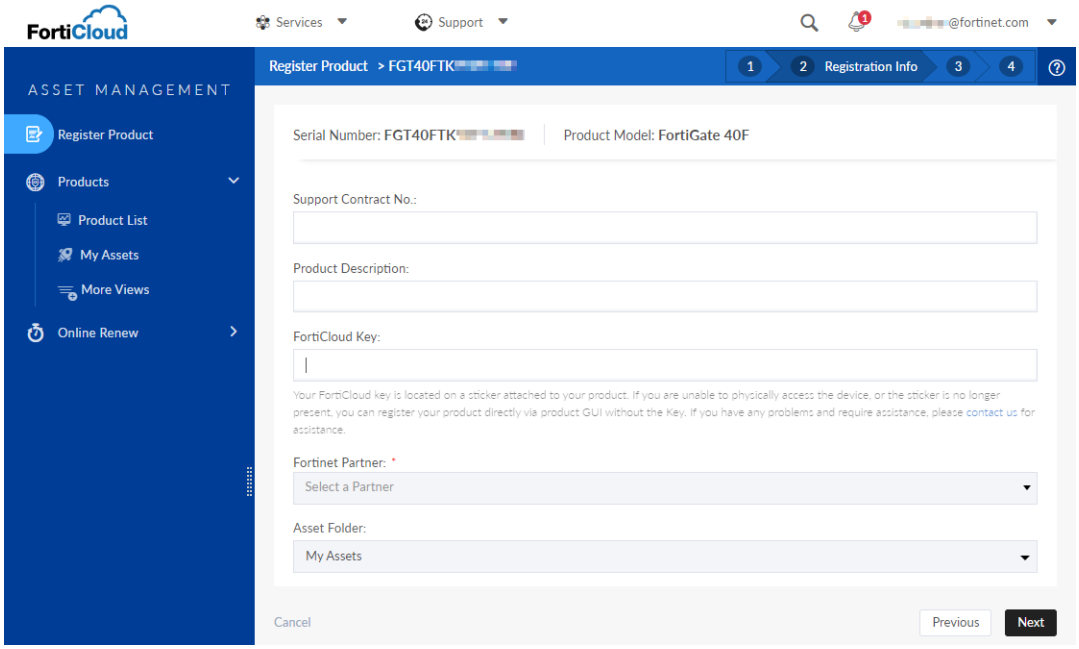
To register the FortiGate on the FortiCloud support portal:

1. Go to support.fortinet.com and log in using your FortiCloud account credentials. If you do not have an account, click *Register* to create one.
2. In the left-side menu, click *Register Product*.

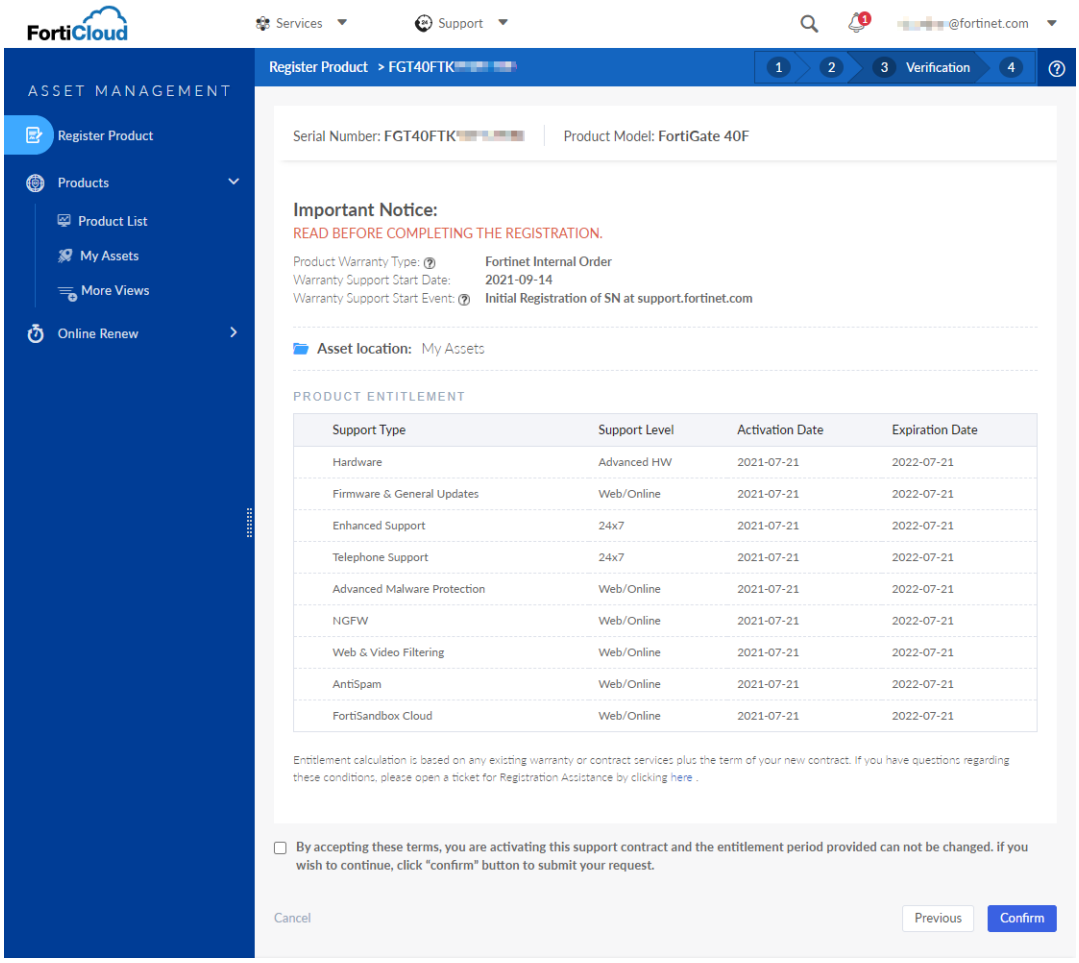
3. Enter the product serial number or license certificate number for a VM, select an end user type, then click *Next*.



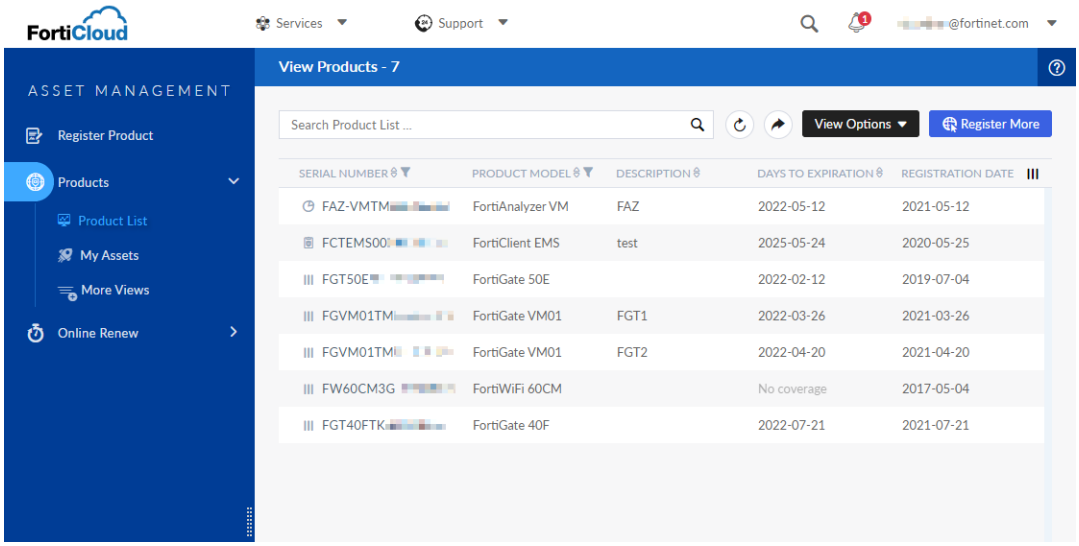
4. Enter the *Support Contract* number and *FortiCloud Key* (optionally, enter a product description), then click *Next*.



5. Review the product entitlement information, select the checkbox to accept the terms, then click *Confirm*.



6. Go to *Products* > *Product List*. The FortiGate is now visible in the product list.



FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud login

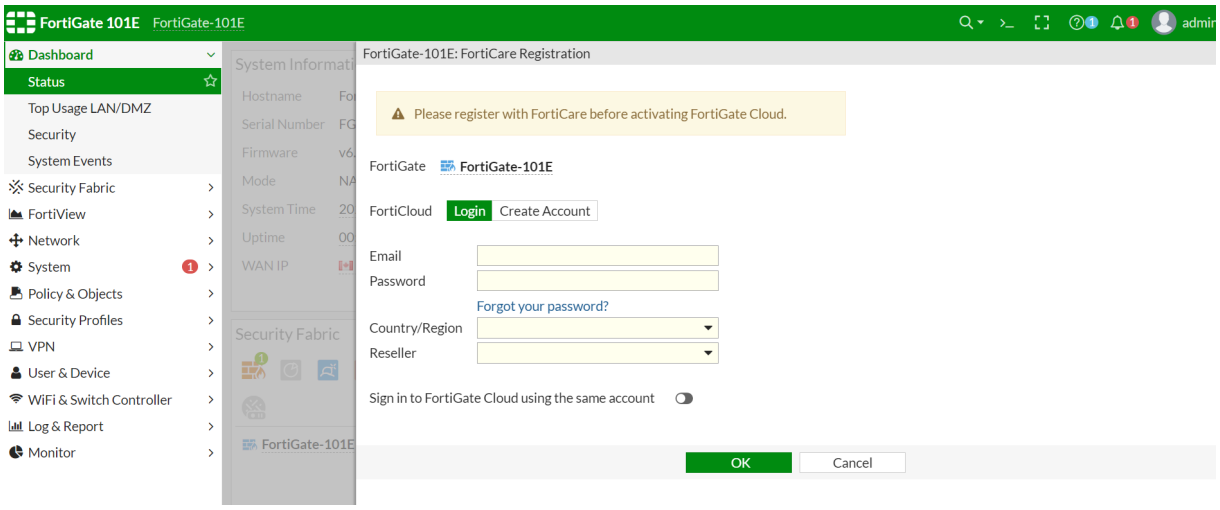
With FortiCloud, FortiGate supports a unified login to FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud. The FortiGate Cloud setup is a subset of the FortiCare setup.

- If the FortiGate is not registered, activating FortiGate Cloud will force you to register with FortiCare.
- If a FortiGate is registered in FortiCare using a FortiCloud account, then only that FortiCloud account can be used to activate FortiGate Cloud.
- If a different FortiCloud account was already used to activate FortiGate Cloud, then a notification asking you to migrate to FortiCloud is shown in the GUI after upgrading FortiOS.

The CLI can be used to activate FortiGate Cloud without registration, or with a different FortiCloud account.

To activate FortiGate Cloud and register with FortiCare at the same time:

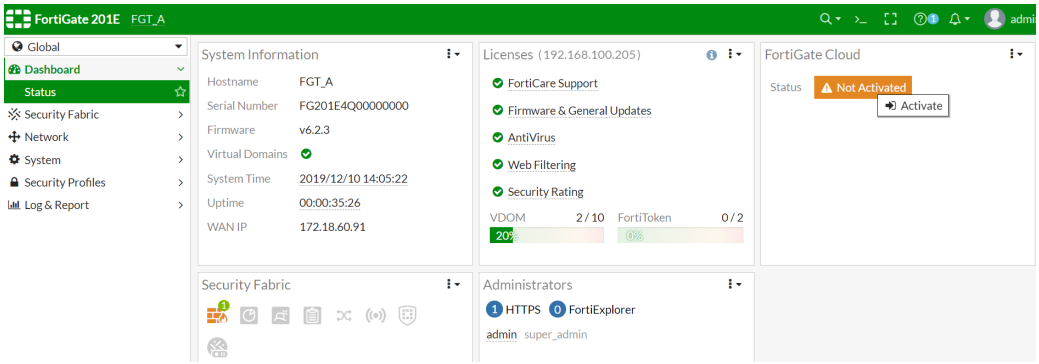
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. In the FortiGate Cloud widget, click *Not Activated* > *Activate*.
   You must register with FortiCare before activating FortiGate Cloud.



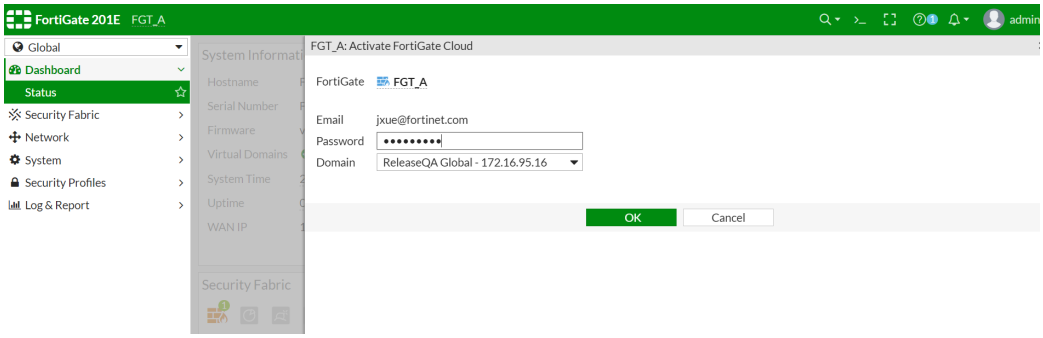
3. Enter your FortiCare *Email* address and *Password*.
4. Select your *Country/Region* and *Reseller*.
5. Enable *Sign in to FortiGate Cloud using the same account*.
6. Click *OK*.

To activate FortiGate Cloud on an already registered FortiGate:

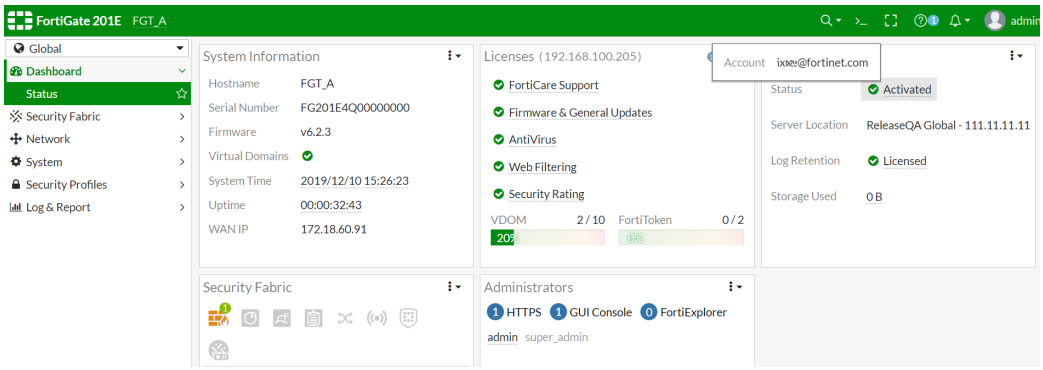
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. In the FortiGate Cloud widget, click *Not Activated* > *Activate*.



3. Enter the password for the account that was used to register the FortiGate.

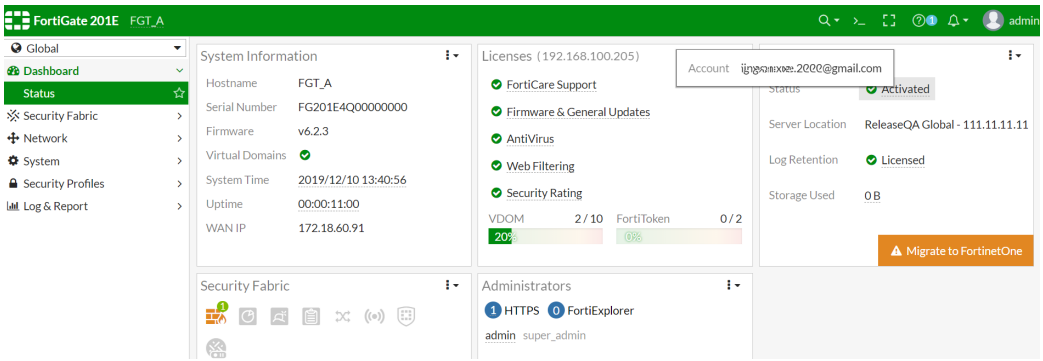


4. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate Cloud widget now shows the FortiCloud account.

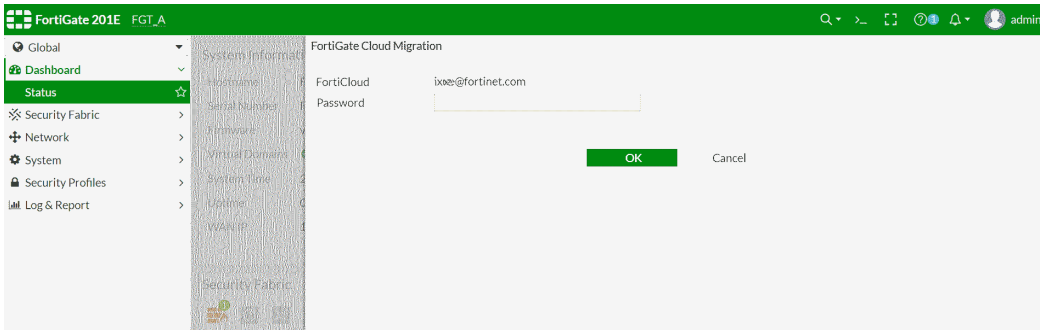


To migrate from the activated FortiGate Cloud account to the registered FortiCloud account:

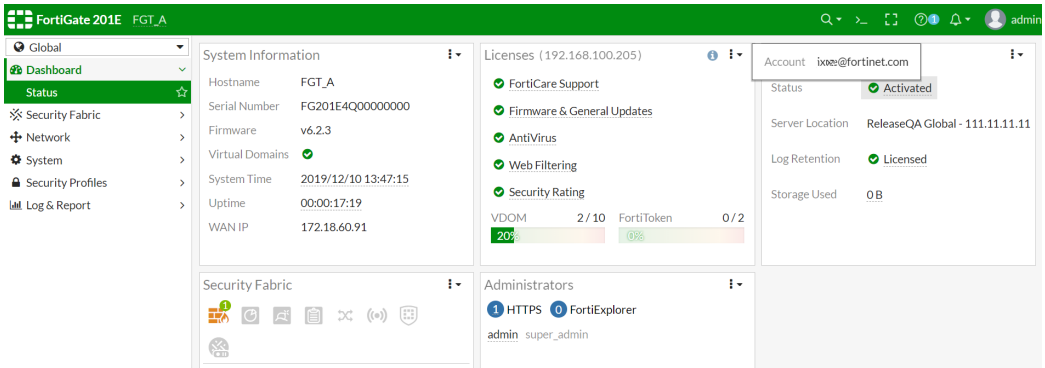
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.



2. In the FortiGate Cloud widget, click *Migrate to FortiCloud*.



3. Enter the password for the account that was used to register the FortiGate, then click *OK*.
The FortiGate Cloud widget now shows the FortiCloud account.



To activate FortiGate Cloud using an account that is not used for registration:

1. In the CLI, enter the following command:

```
execute fortiguard-log login <account_id> <password>
```

Where the <account_id> and <password> are the credentials for the account that you are using to activate FortiGate Cloud.

2. Check the account type with following command:

```
# diagnose fdsm contract-controller-update
Protocol=2.0|Response=202|Firmware=FAZ-4K-FW-2.50-
```

```
100|SerialNumber=FAMS000000000000|Persistent=false|ResponseItem=HomeServer:172.16.95.151
:443*AlterServer:172.16.95.151:443*Contract:20200408*NextRequest:86400*UploadConfig:Fals
e*ManagementMode:Local*ManagementID:737941253*AccountType:multitenancy

Result=Success
```

A FortiCloud account that is not used for the support portal account cannot be used to register FortiGate. Attempting to activate FortiGate Cloud with this type of account will fail.

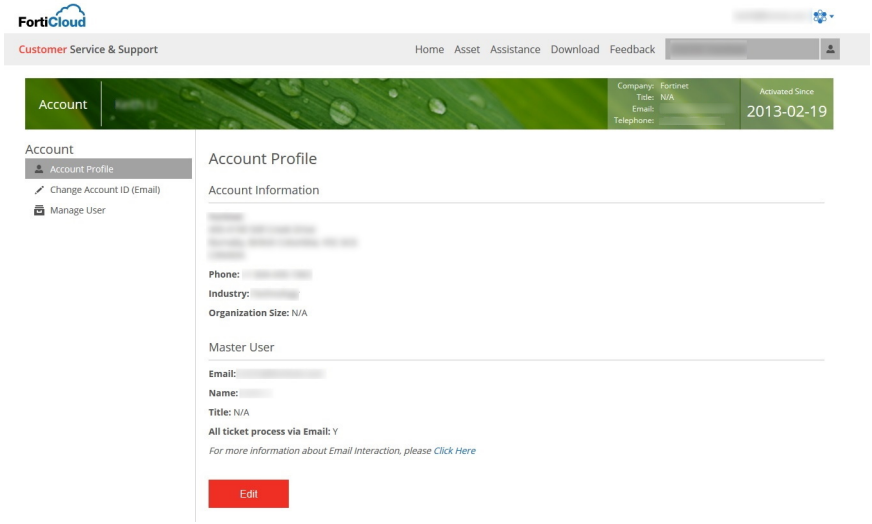
Transfer a device to another FortiCloud account

Master account users can transfer a device from one FortiCloud/FortiCare account to another. Users can transfer a device up to three times within a twelve-month time period.

Requirements:

To transfer an account, you must:

- Have access to the FortiGate, as well as both the FortiCloud and FortiCare accounts.
- Be a master account user.
  To verify you are the master account user, go to support.fortinet.com. Click the user name, then click *My Account*.

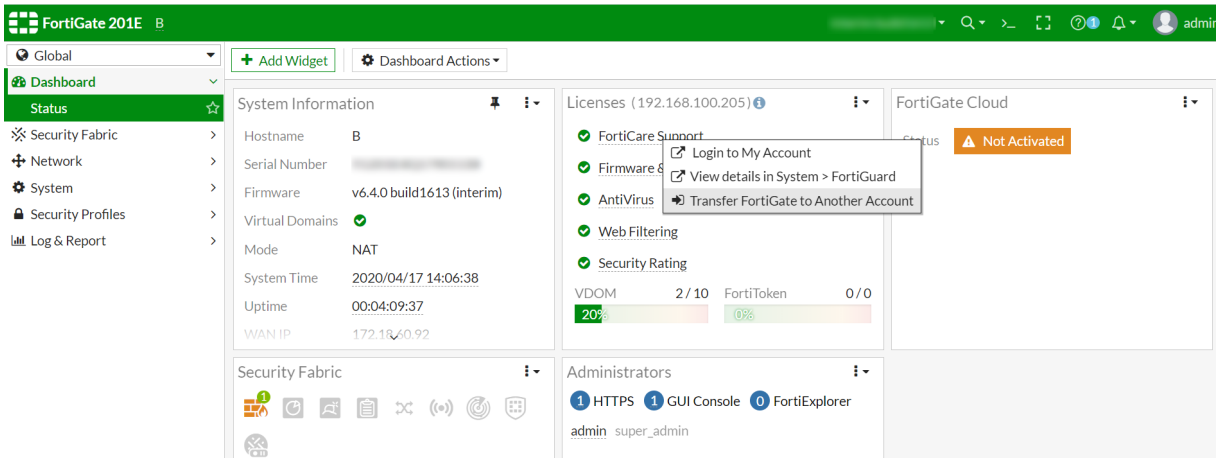


You can transfer a device up to three times in a twelve-month time period. If more transfers are required within the twelve-month time period, contact Technical Support to request the transfer.

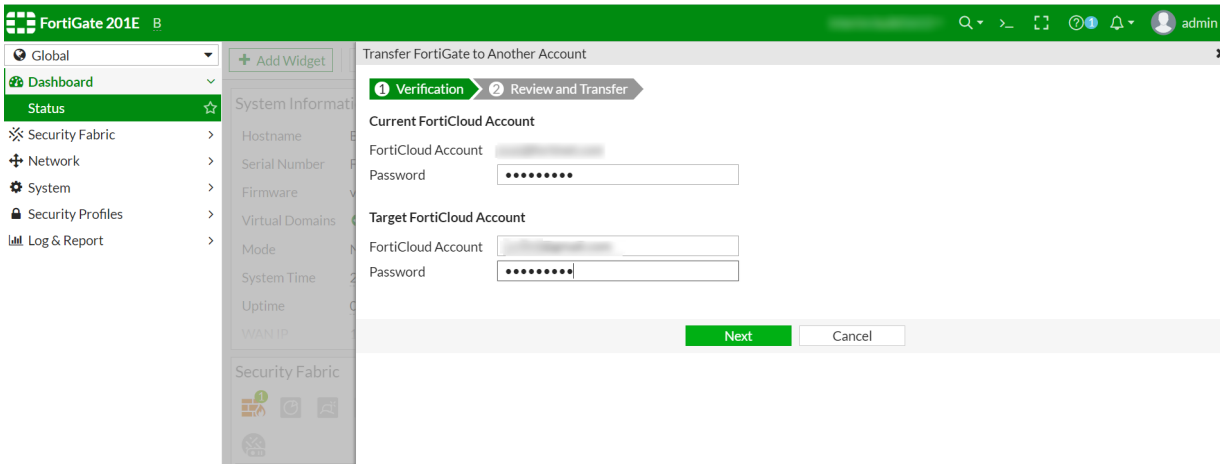
To transfer an account in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*. In the *Status* dashboard, click on *FortiCare Support*, and click *Transfer FortiGate to Another Account*.

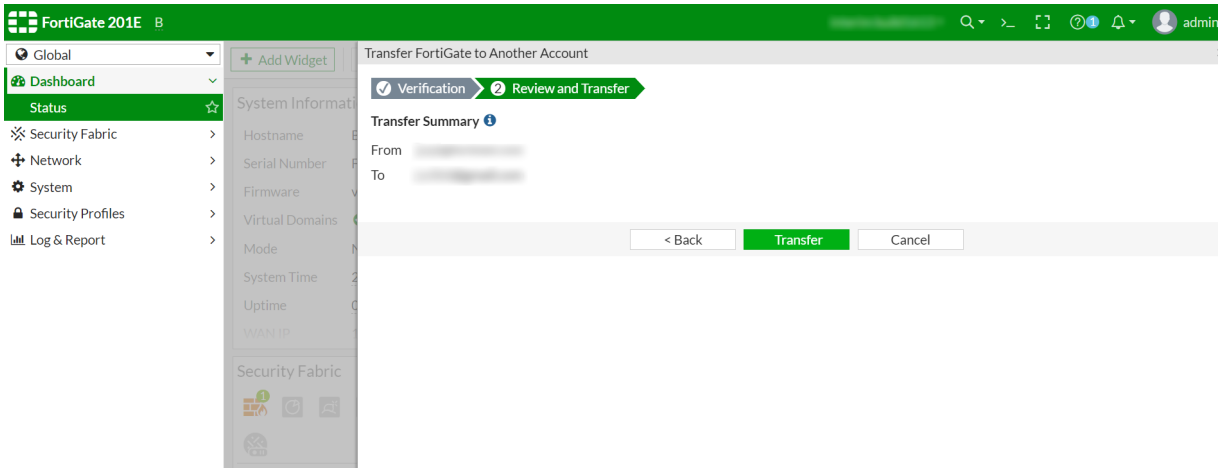
You can also transfer an account from *System > FortiGuard*.



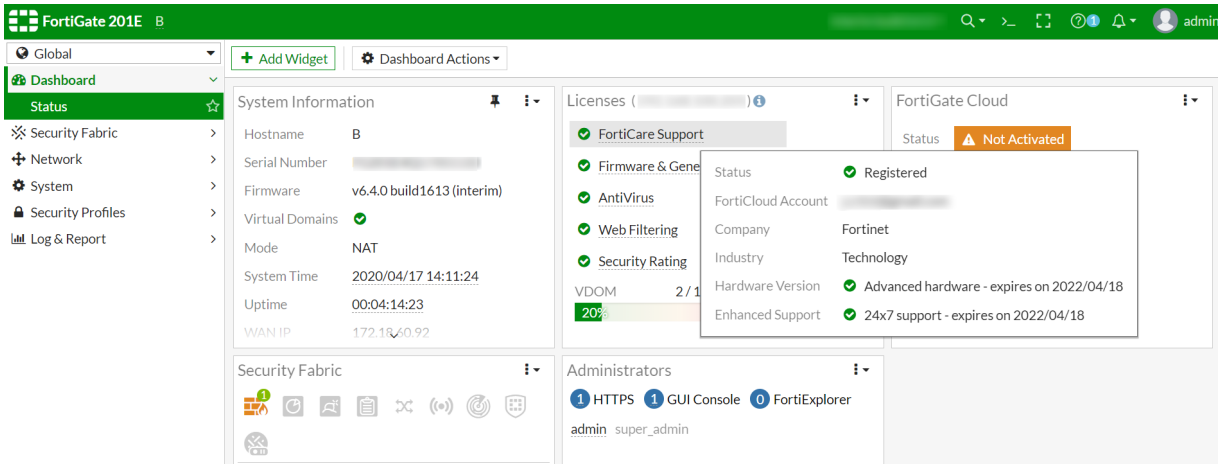
2. In the *Current FortiCloud Account* fields, enter the username and password for the current account. In the *Target FortiCloud Account* fields, enter the new username and password. Click *Next*.



FortiGate transfers the account.



After the transfer is complete, FortiGate displays the new the FortiCloud account.



Configuration backups

Once you successfully configure the FortiGate, it is extremely important that you backup the configuration. In some cases, you may need to reset the FortiGate to factory defaults or perform a TFTP upload of the firmware, which will erase the existing configuration. In these instances, the configuration on the device will have to be recreated, unless a backup can be used to restore it. You should also backup the local certificates, as the unique SSL inspection CA and server certificates that are generated by your FortiGate by default are not saved in a system backup.

We also recommend that you backup the configuration after *any* changes are made, to ensure you have the most current configuration available. Also, backup the configuration before any upgrades of the FortiGate's firmware. Should anything happen to the configuration during the upgrade, you can easily restore the saved configuration.

Always backup the configuration and store it on the management computer or off-site. You have the option to save the configuration file to various locations including the local PC, USB key, FTP, and TFTP server. The last two are configurable through the CLI only.

If you have VDOMs, you can back up the configuration of the entire FortiGate or only a specific VDOM. Note that if you are using FortiManager or FortiGate Cloud, full backups are performed and the option to backup individual VDOMs will not appear.



You can also backup and restore your configuration using Secure File Copy (SCP). See How to download a FortiGate configuration file and upload firmware file using secure file copy (SCP).

You enable SCP support using the following command:

```
config system global
   set admin-scp enable
end
```

For more information about this command and about SCP support, see config system global.

Backing up the configuration

To backup the configuration using the GUI:

1. Click on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and select *Configuration* > *Backup*.
2. Direct the backup to your *Local PC* or to a *USB Disk*.
   The *USB Disk* option will not be available if no USB drive is inserted in the USB port. You can also backup to the FortiManager using the CLI.
3. If VDOMs are enabled, indicate whether the scope of the backup is the entire FortiGate configuration (*Global*) or only a specific VDOM configuration (*VDOM*).
   If backing up a VDOM configuration, select the VDOM name from the list.
4. Enable *Encryption*. Encryption must be enabled on the backup file to back up VPN certificates.
5. Enter a password, and enter it again to confirm it. This password will be required to restore the configuration.
6. Click *OK*.
7. When prompted, select a location on the PC or USB disk to save the configuration file. The configuration file will have a .conf extension.

To backup the configuration using the CLI:

Use one of the following commands:

```
execute backup config management-station <comment>
```

or:

```
execute backup config usb <backup_filename> [<backup_password>]
```

or for FTP, note that port number, username are optional depending on the FTP site:

```
execute backup config ftp <backup_filename> <ftp_server> [<port>] [<user_name>] [<password>]
```

or for TFTP:

```
execute backup config tftp <backup_filename> <tftp_servers> <password>
```

Use the same commands to backup a VDOM configuration by first entering the commands:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
```

See Backing up and restoring configurations in multi VDOM mode on page 926 for more information.

Restoring a configuration

To restore the FortiGate configuration using the GUI:

1. Click on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and select *Configuration* > *Restore*.
2. Identify the source of the configuration file to be restored: your *Local PC* or a *USB Disk*.
   The *USB Disk* option will not be available if no USB drive is inserted in the USB port. You can restore from the FortiManager using the CLI.
3. Click Upload, locate the configuration file, and click *Open*.
4. Enter the password if required.
5. Click *OK*.

To restore the FortiGate configuration using the CLI:

```
execute restore config management-station normal 0
```

or:

```
execute restore config usb <filename> [<password>]
```

or for FTP, note that port number, username are optional depending on the FTP site:

```
execute restore config ftp <backup_filename> <ftp_server> [<port>] [<user_name>]
[<password>]
```

or for TFTP:

```
execute restore config tftp <backup_filename> <tftp_server> <password>
```

The FortiGate will load the configuration file and restart. Once the restart has completed, verify that the configuration has been restored.

Troubleshooting

When restoring a configuration, errors may occur, but the solutions are usually straightforward.

Error message	Reason and Solution
Configuration file error	This error occurs when attempting to upload a configuration file that is incompatible with the device. This may be due to the configuration file being for a different model or being saved from a different version of firmware. **Solution**: Upload a configuration file that is for the correct model of FortiGate device and the correct version of the firmware.
Invalid password	When the configuration file is saved, it can be protected by a password. The password entered during the upload process is not matching the one associated with the configuration file. **Solution**: Use the correct password if the file is password protected.

Configuration revision

You can manage multiple versions of configuration files on models that have a 512MB flash memory and higher. Revision control requires either a configured central management server or the local hard drive, if your FortiGate has this feature. Typically, configuration backup to local drive is not available on lower-end models.

The central management server can either be a FortiManager unit or FortiGate Cloud.

If central management is not configured on your FortiGate unit, a message appears instructing you to either

- Enable central management, or
- Obtain a valid license.

When revision control is enabled on your FortiGate unit, and configuration backups have been made, a list of saved revisions of those backed-up configurations appears.

Configuration revisions are viewed by clicking on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and selecting *Configuration* > *Revisions*.

Backup and restore the local certificates

This procedure exports a server (local) certificate and private key together as a password protected PKCS12 file. The export file is created through a customer-supplied TFTP server. Ensure that your TFTP server is running and accessible to the FortiGate before you enter the command.

To back up the local certificates:

Connect to the CLI and use the following command:

```
execute vpn certificate local export tftp <cert_name> <filename> <tftp_ip>
```

where:

- `<cert_name>` is the name of the server certificate.
- `<filename>` is a name for the output file.
- `<tftp_ip>` is the IP address assigned to the TFTP server host interface.

To restore the local certificates using the GUI:

1. Move the output file from the TFTP server location to the management computer.
2. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and click *Import* > *Local*.
3. Select the certificate type, then click *Upload* in the *Certificate file* field.
4. On the management computer, browse to the file location, select it, and click *Open*.
5. If the *Type* is *Certificate*, upload the *Key file* as well.
6. If required, enter the *Password* that is required to upload the file or files.
7. Click *OK*.

To restore the local certificates using the CLI:

Connect to the CLI and use the following command:

```
execute vpn certificate local import tftp <filename> <tftp_ip>
```

Restore factory defaults

There may be a need to reset the FortiGate to its original defaults; for example, to begin with a fresh configuration. There are two options when restoring factory defaults. The first resets the entire device to the original out-of-the-box configuration.

You can reset the device with the following CLI command:

```
execute factoryreset
```

When prompted, type `y` to confirm the reset.

Alternatively, in the CLI you can reset the factory defaults but retain the interface and VDOM configuration with the following command:

```
execute factoryreset2
```

Fortinet Developer Network access

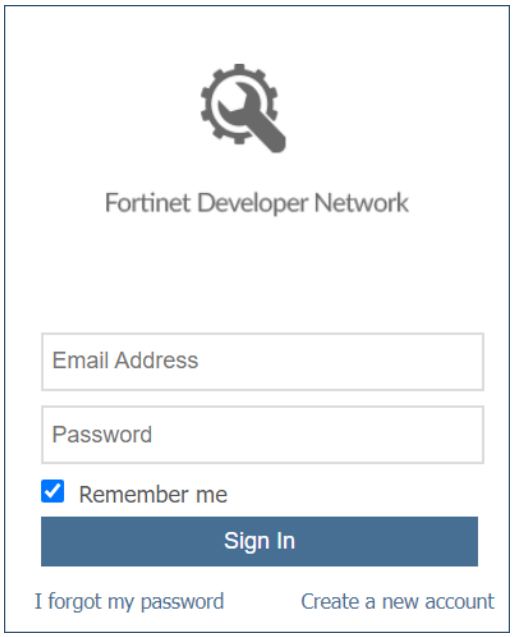
The Fortinet Developer Network (FNDN) is a subscription-based community that helps administrators enhance and increase the effectiveness of Fortinet products. Administrators can access the FortiAPI forum in FNDN to help create applications that interact with Fortinet products, such as custom web portals, automated deployment and provisioning systems, and scripted tasks. FNDN makes it easy for administrators and Fortinet professionals to interact, share sample code, and upload their own tools. The FortiOS REST API documentation is available within the FortiAPI forum.

All FNDN users must be sponsored by two Fortinet employees. The sponsors must be able to confirm the user's identity and need for access. Approvals from both sponsors are required before access is granted to new users. The sponsors' email addresses are required to create a new FNDN account.

Basic and licensed access options are available. Refer to the Fortinet Developer Network data sheet for more information.

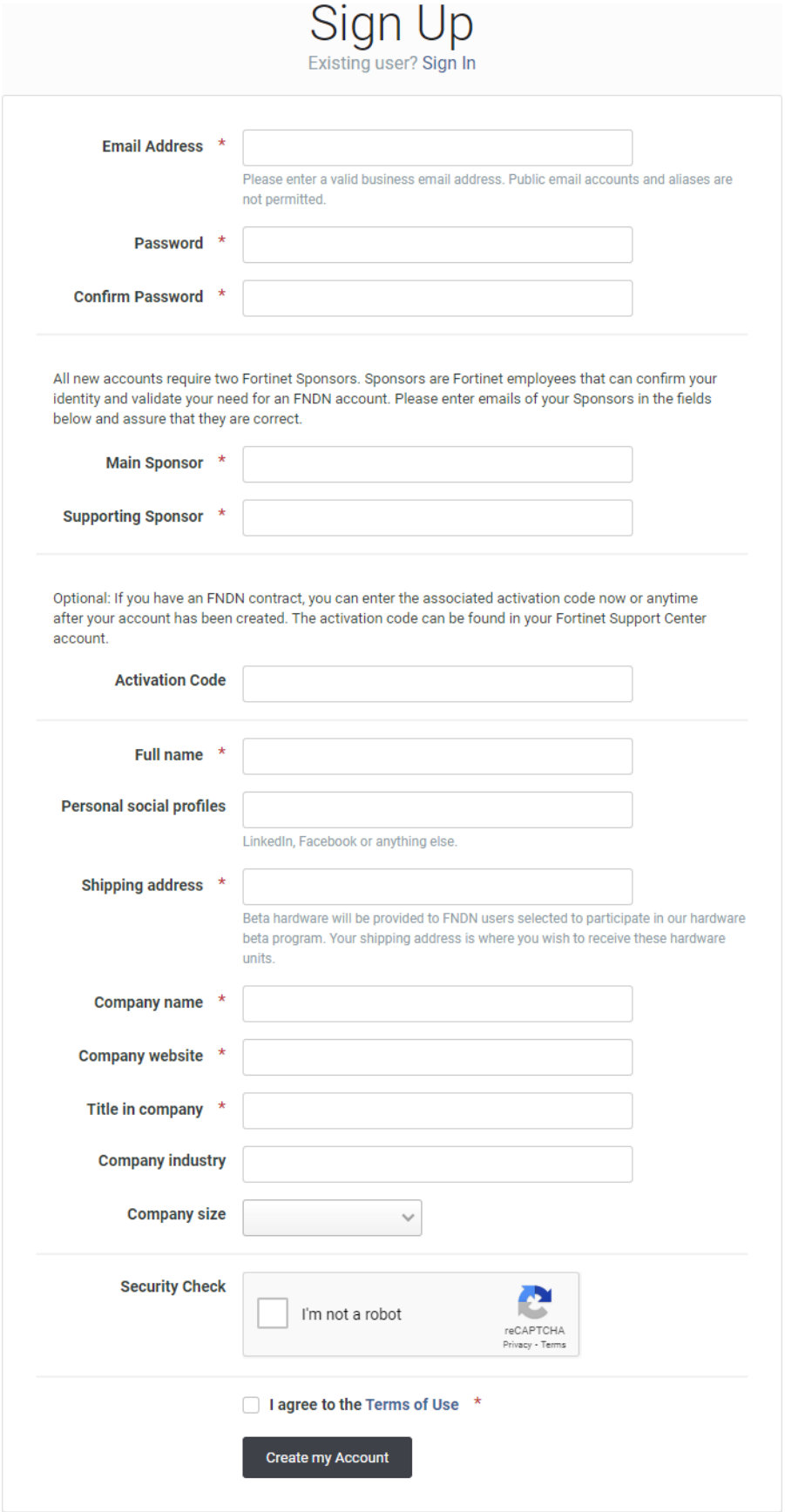
To create an FNDN account:

1. Obtain sponsorship from two Fortinet employees.
2. Go to the FNDN website, https://fndn.fortinet.net/. The log in page appears.



3. Click *Create a new account*. The *Sign Up* page appears.

4. Enter the information in the form fields and agree to the *Terms of Use*.


Sign Up
Existing user? Sign In
Email Address *
Please enter a valid business email address. Public email accounts and aliases are not permitted.
Password *
Confirm Password *
All new accounts require two Fortinet Sponsors. Sponsors are Fortinet employees that can confirm your identity and validate your need for an FNDN account. Please enter emails of your Sponsors in the fields below and assure that they are correct.
Main Sponsor *
Supporting Sponsor *
Optional: If you have an FNDN contract, you can enter the associated activation code now or anytime after your account has been created. The activation code can be found in your Fortinet Support Center account.
Activation Code
Full name *
Personal social profiles
LinkedIn, Facebook or anything else.
Shipping address *
Beta hardware will be provided to FNDN users selected to participate in our hardware beta program. Your shipping address is where you wish to receive these hardware units.
Company name *
Company website *
Title in company *
Company industry
Company size
Security Check
I'm not a robot
reCAPTCHA
Privacy - Terms
I agree to the Terms of Use *
Create my Account

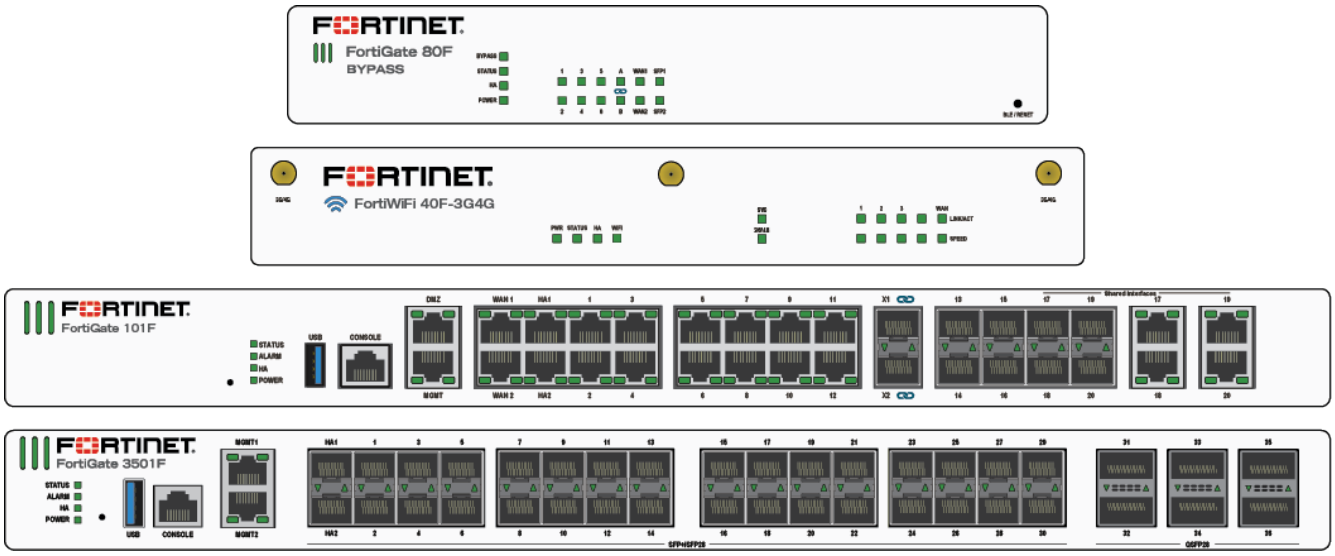
5. Click *Create my Account*.

   New accounts are reviewed and approved by an FNDN administrator. After both sponsors approve the request, an FNDN administrator reviews the request and approves account access in around one business day if all requirements are met.

LEDs

Check your device's QuickStart guide for specific LED information: FortiGate QuickStart Guides.

The following faceplates show where the LEDs are typically found on FortiGate models:



LED	State	Description
Logo	Green	The unit is on
	Blue	The FortiWiFi unit is on
	Off	The unit is off
Power (PWR)	Green	The unit is on and/or both power supplies are functioning
	Amber	One power supply is functioning
	Flashing Amber	Power supply failure
	Red	The unit is on, but only one power supply is functional
	Flashing Red	Power failure
	Off	The unit is off

LED	State	Description
Status (STA)	Green	Normal
	Flashing Green	Booting up
	Amber	Major or minor alarm
	Flashing Amber	BLE is on
	Red	Major alarm
	Flashing Red	BLE is on
	Off	The unit is off
Bypass (BYP)	Amber	Bypass Port Pair is active
	Off	Bypass Port Pair is off
Alarm	Red	Major alarm
	Amber	Minor alarm
	Off	No alarms
HA	Green	Operating in an HA cluster
	Amber or Red	HA failover
	Off	HA disabled
Max PoE	Green, Amber, or Red	Maximum PoE power allocated
	Off	PoE power available or normal
PoE	Green	Power delivered
	Flashing Green	Error or PoE device requesting power
	Off	No PoE device connected or no power delivered
SVC	Green	SVC is on
	Flashing Green	SVC activity
	Off	SVC is off
3G / 4G	Green	3G / 4G service is on
	Flashing Green	3G / 4G activity
	Off	3G / 4G service is off
WiFi	Green	WiFi connected
	Flashing Green	WiFi activity
	Off	WiFi is off

LED	State	Description
Power Supply	Green	Power supply operating normally
	Flashing Green	Power detected, but power supply not providing power or is in standby mode
	Amber	Power output is off, there is a power supply error, or there is no input power but the redundant supply is on
	Flashing Amber	Power supply error or warning events, or the power supply should be replaced
	Red	Cord unplugged or power lost
	Flashing Red	Power supply warning events
	Off	Power not detected
Power Supply OK	Green	Standby rail and main output on
	Flashing Green	Standby rail and main output off
	Off	Error or no AC power input
Power Supply Fail	Amber	Main output or fan error detected
	Flashing Amber	Power supply warning event detected
	Off	No errors or no power
Power Supply Input	Green	Input voltage within normal range
	Flashing Green	Over or under voltage warning
	Off	No input power
Power Supply Output	Green	Output voltage normal
	Flashing Green	Standby mode
	Amber	Critical error
	Flashing Amber	Warning
	Off	No output
Fan	Green	Fan(s) operating normally
	Flashing Green	Fan switching/initialization in progress
	Amber	Fan failure
	Red	Fan error, RPM too low or too high, or both fan sets have at least one alert
	Flashing Red	One fan set has at least one alert
	Off	Fan error or fan is off

Port LEDs

LED	State	Description
Ethernet	Green	Connected at 1 Gbps
	Flashing Green	Transmitting and receiving data at 1 Gbps
	Amber	Connected at 10/100 Mbps
	Flashing Amber	Transmitting and receiving data at 10/100 Mbps
	Off	No link established
Ethernet Link/Activity	Green	Connected
	Flashing Green	Transmitting data
	Off	No link established
Ethernet Speed	Green	Connected at 1 Gbps
	Amber	Connected at 100 Mbps
	Off	Not connected or connected at 10 Mbps
Ethernet 10G Link/Activity	Green	Connected
	Flashing Green	Transmitting data
	Off	No link established
Ethernet 10G Speed	Green	Connected at 10 Gbps
	Amber	Connected at 5 Gbps, 2.5 Gbps, or 1 Gbps
	Off	Not connected or connected at 100 Mbps
PoE	Green	PoE power on or PoE device receiving power
	Amber	Providing power
	Red	Connected but not powered
	Off	PoE power off or no device receiving power
SFP	Green	Connected at 1 Gbps
	Flashing Green	Data activity
	Off	No link established
SFP+	Green	Connected at 10 Gbps or 1 Gbps
	Flashing Green	Data activity
	Off	No link established

LED	State	Description
SFP28	Green	Connected at 25 Gbps, 10 Gbps, or 1 Gbps
	Flashing Green	Data activity
	Off	No link established
QSFP28	Green	Connected at 100 Gbps or 40 Gbps
	Flashing Green	Data activity
	Off	No link established

Alarm levels

Minor alarm

Also called an IPMI non-critical (NC) alarm, it indicates a temperature or power level outside of the normal operating range that is not considered a problem. For a minor temperature alarm, the system could respond by increasing the fan speed. A non-critical threshold can be an upper non-critical (UNC) threshold (for example, a high temperature or a high power level) or a lower non-critical (LNC) threshold (for example, a low power level).

Major alarm

Also called an IPMI critical or critical recoverable (CR) alarm, it indicates that the system is unable to correct the cause of the alarm, and that intervention is required. For example, the cooling system cannot provide enough cooling to reduce the temperature. It can also mean that the conditions are approaching the outside limit of the allowed operating range. A critical threshold can also be an upper critical (UC) threshold (such as a high temperature or high power level) or a lower critical (LC) threshold (such as a low power level).

Critical alarm

Also called an IPMI non-recoverable (NR) alarm, it indicates that the system has detected a temperature or power level that is outside of the allowed operating range and physical damage is possible.

Troubleshooting your installation

If your FortiGate does not function as desired after installation, try the following troubleshooting tips:

1. **Check for equipment issues**
   Verify that all network equipment is powered on and operating as expected. Refer to the QuickStart Guide for information about connecting your FortiGate to the network.
2. **Check the physical network connections**
   Check the cables used for all physical connections to ensure that they are fully connected and do not appear damaged, and make sure that each cable connects to the correct device and the correct Ethernet port on that device.

3. **Verify that you can connect to the internal IP address of the FortiGate**
   Connect to the GUI from the FortiGate's internal interface by browsing to its IP address. From the PC, try to ping the internal interface IP address; for example, `ping 192.168.1.99`. If you cannot connect to the internal interface, verify the IP configuration of the PC. If you can ping the interface but can't connect to the GUI, check the settings for administrative access on that interface. Alternatively, use SSH to connect to the CLI, and then confirm that HTTPS has been enabled for Administrative Access on the interface.
4. **Check the FortiGate interface configurations**
   Check the configuration of the FortiGate interface connected to the internal network (under *Network* > *Interfaces*) and check that *Addressing mode* is set to the correct mode.
5. **Verify the security policy configuration**
   Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and verify that the internal interface to Internet-facing interface security policy has been added and is located near the top of the policy list. Check the *Active Sessions* column to ensure that traffic has been processed (if this column does not appear, right-click on the table header and select *Active Sessions*). If you are using NAT mode, check the configuration of the policy to make sure that *NAT* is enabled and that *Use Outgoing Interface Address* is selected.
6. **Verify the static routing configuration**
   Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and verify that the default route is correct. Go to *Monitor* > *Routing Monitor* and verify that the default route appears in the list as a static route. Along with the default route, you should see two routes shown as *Connected*, one for each connected FortiGate interface.
7. **Verify that you can connect to the Internet-facing interface's IP address**
   Ping the IP address of the Internet-facing interface of your FortiGate. If you cannot connect to the interface, the FortiGate is not allowing sessions from the internal interface to Internet-facing interface. Verify that PING has been enabled for *Administrative Access* on the interface.
8. **Verify that you can connect to the gateway provided by your ISP**
   Ping the default gateway IP address from a PC on the internal network. If you cannot reach the gateway, contact your ISP to verify that you are using the correct gateway.
9. **Verify that you can communicate from the FortiGate to the Internet**
   Access the FortiGate CLI and use the command `execute ping 8.8.8.8`. You can also use the `execute traceroute 8.8.8.8` command to troubleshoot connectivity to the Internet.
10. **Verify the DNS configurations of the FortiGate and the PCs**
    Check for DNS errors by pinging or using traceroute to connect to a domain name; for example: `ping www.fortinet.com`.

    If the name cannot be resolved, the FortiGate or PC cannot connect to a DNS server and you should confirm that the DNS server IP addresses are present and correct.
11. **Confirm that the FortiGate can connect to the FortiGuard network**
    Once the FortiGate is on your network, you should confirm that it can reach the FortiGuard network. First, check the *License Information* widget to make sure that the status of all FortiGuard services matches the services that you have purchased. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*, and, in the Filtering section, click *Test Connectivity*. After a minute, the GUI should indicate a successful connection. Verify that your FortiGate can resolve and reach FortiGuard at `service.fortiguard.net` by pinging the domain name. If you can reach this service, you can then verify the connection to FortiGuard servers by running the command `diagnose debug rating`. This displays a list of FortiGuard IP gateways you can connect to, as well as the following information:
    - `Weight`: Based on the difference in time zone between the FortiGate and this server
    - `RTT`: Return trip time
    - `Flags`: D (IP returned from DNS), I (Contract server contacted), T (being timed), F (failed)
    - `TZ`: Server time zone
    - `Curr Lost`: Current number of consecutive lost packets
    - `Total Lost`: Total number of lost packets

12. **Consider changing the MAC address of your external interface**
    Some ISPs do not want the MAC address of the device connecting to their network cable to change. If you have added a FortiGate to your network, you may have to change the MAC address of the Internet-facing interface using the following CLI command:
    ```
    config system interface
       edit <interface>
          set macaddr <xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx>
       end
    end
    ```
13. **Check the FortiGate bridge table (transparent mode)**
    When a FortiGate is in transparent mode, the unit acts like a bridge sending all incoming traffic out on the other interfaces. The bridge is between interfaces on the FortiGate unit. Each bridge listed is a link between interfaces. Where traffic is flowing between interfaces, you expect to find bridges listed. If you are having connectivity issues and there are no bridges listed, that is a likely cause. Check for the MAC address of the interface or device in question. To list the existing bridge instances on the FortiGate, use the following CLI command:
    ```
    diagnose netlink brctl name host root.b
    show bridge control interface root.b host.
    fdb: size=2048, used=25, num=25, depth=1
    Bridge root.b host table
    port no device devname mac addr ttl attributes
    3 4 wan1 00:09:0f:cb:c2:77 88
    3 4 wan1 00:26:2d:24:b7:d3 0
    3 4 wan1 00:13:72:38:72:21 98
    4 3 internal 00:1a:a0:2f:bc:c6 6
    1 6 dmz 00:09:0f:dc:90:69 0 Local Static
    3 4 wan1 c4:2c:03:0d:3a:38 81
    3 4 wan1 00:09:0f:15:05:46 89
    3 4 wan1 c4:2c:03:1d:1b:10 0
    2 5 wan2 00:09:0f:dc:90:68 0 Local Static
    ```
14. **Use FortiExplorer if you can't connect to the FortiGate over Ethernet**
    If you can't connect to the FortiGate GUI or CLI, you may be able to connect using FortiExplorer. Refer to the QuickStart Guide or see the section on FortiExplorer for more details.
15. **Either reset the FortiGate to factory defaults or contact Fortinet Support for assistance**
    To reset the FortiGate to factory defaults, use the CLI command `execute factoryreset`. When prompted, type `y` to confirm the reset.

If you require further assistance, visit the Fortinet Support website.

Zero touch provisioning

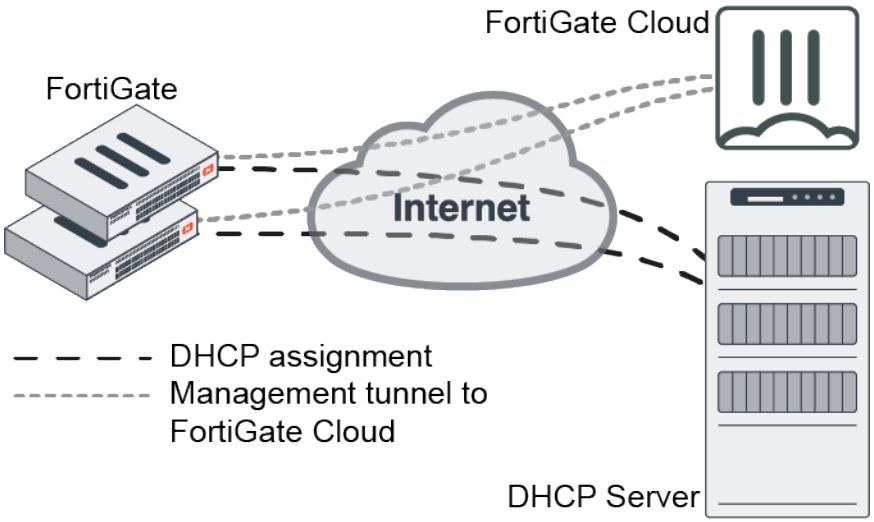
This section contains instructions for configuring zero touch provisioning:

- Zero touch provisioning with FortiDeploy on page 69
- Zero touch provisioning with FortiManager on page 71

Zero touch provisioning with FortiDeploy

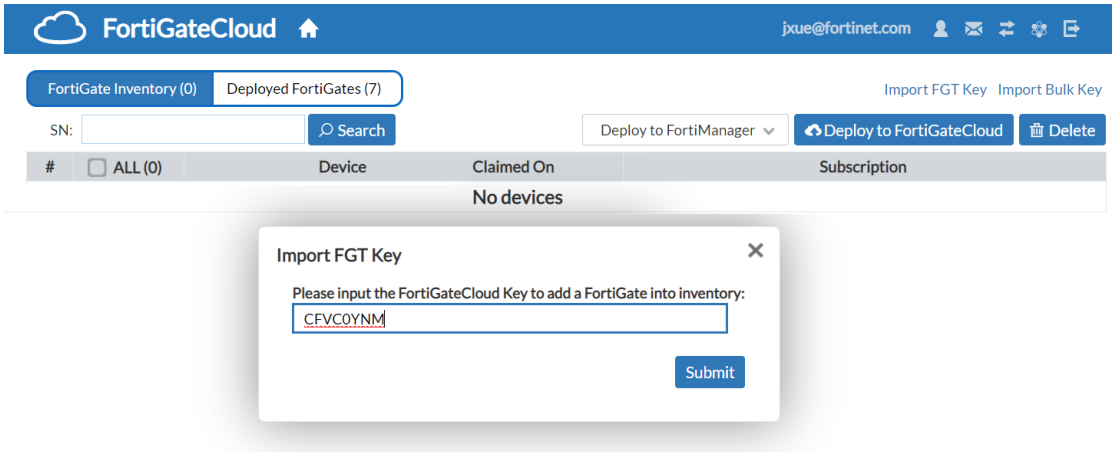
You can use this feature only when the FortiGate boots up from factory reset.

Topology

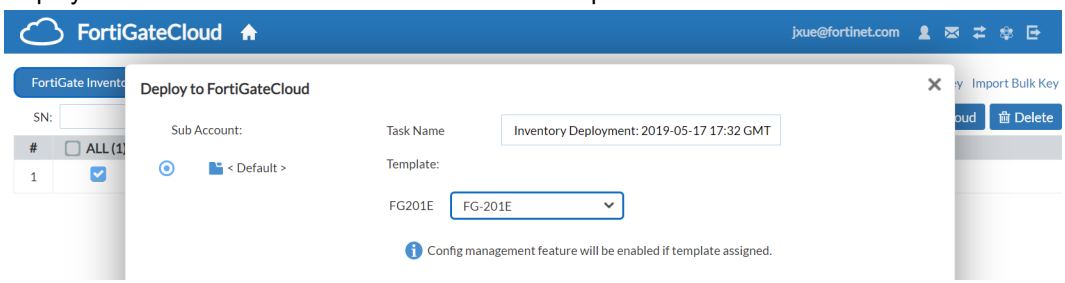


FortiGate zero touch provisioning workflow

1. Add the FortiGate Cloud product key to the FortiGate Cloud portal so that the FortiGate serial number appears in the portal.



2. Set up a configuration template with the basic configuration in the FortiGate Cloud portal.
3. Deploy the FortiGate to FortiGate Cloud with that template.



4. Ensure the FortiGate has an interface in default DHCP client mode and is connected to the ISP outlet.
5. Boot the FortiGate in factory reset. The FortiGate gets the DHCP lease so that it can access FortiGate Cloud in the Internet and join FortiGate Cloud.

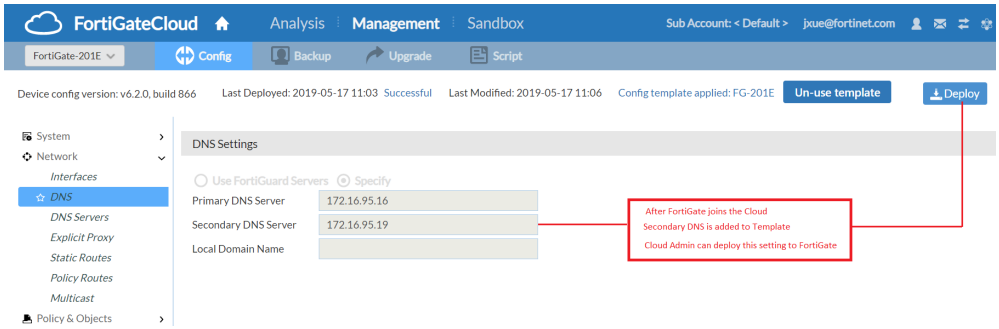
The FortiGate Cloud server checks that the FortiGate key is valid and then deploys the FortiGate to FortiGate Cloud.

To prevent spoofing, FortiGate Cloud invalidates that key after a successful join.

6. Complete zero touch provisioning by obtaining configuration from platform template in the Cloud.

```
0:     set admintimeout 50
0: end
0: config system interface
0:     edit "wan1"
0:         set allowaccess ping ssh fgfm
0:     next
0:     edit "port1"
0:         set allowaccess ping
0:         set ip 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
0:     next
0:     edit "port2"
0:         set allowaccess ping
0:         set ip 2.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
0:     next
0: end
```

7. The FortiGate Cloud admin can change the template for different configuration requirements and then deploy the updated template to the FortiGate.
For example, you can add a secondary DNS to the template and deploy it to FortiGate.



Zero touch provisioning with FortiManager

You can use this feature only when the FortiGate boots up from factory reset. This feature is for FortiGate devices that cannot access the Internet.

A DHCP server includes option 240 and 241 which records FortiManager IP and domain name. FortiGate has an interface with the default DHCP client mode that is connected to the DHCP server in the intranet.

The FortiManager admin can authorize the FortiGate the specific ADOMs and install specific configurations on the FortiGate.

In the whole operation, you do not need to do any manual configuration on the FortiGate except connect to the DHCP server. This is called zero touch deployment.

To prevent spoofing, if a different FortiManager IP comes from the DHCP server later, FortiGate does not change the central management configuration.

Example of configuring DHCP server with option 240

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 2
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 172.16.200.254
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "wan1"
        config ip-range
            edit 2
                set start-ip 172.16.200.201
                set end-ip 172.16.200.209
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
        config options
            edit 1
                set code 240
                set type ip
                set ip "172.18.60.115"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

FortiGate zero touch provisioning workflow

1. Boot the FortiGate in factory reset.

   ```
   G201E4Q17901047 # diagnose fdsm fmg-auto-discovery-status
   dhcp: fmg-ip=0.0.0.0, fmg-domain-name='', config-touched=0
   ```

   `config-touched=0` means no configuration change from the default.
2. When FortiGate boots in factory reset, it gets the DHCP lease including IP, gateway, DNS, and the FortiManager IP/URL. Central management is automatically configured by using FortiManager IP in option 240.

   ```
   FG201E4Q17901047 # show system central-management
   config system central-management
       set type fortimanager
       set fmg "172.18.60.115"
   end
   ```
3. If FortiGate changes from factory reset, you can see it in central management in `config-touched=1`.

   ```
   FG201E4Q17901047 # diagnose fdsm fmg-auto-discovery-status
   dhcp: fmg-ip=172.18.60.115, fmg-domain-name='', config-touched=1(/bin/dhcpcd)
   ```

Example of a spoofing DHCP server with a fake FortiManager IP

```
config options
    edit 1
        set code 240
        set type ip
        set ip "172.18.60.117"
    end
```

After FortiGate reboots and gets DHCP renew, central management will not use the fake FortiManager IP because `config-touched=1` shows that the FortiGate is not in factory reset.

```
FG201E4Q17901047 # diagnose fdsm fmg-auto-discovery-status
dhcp: fmg-ip=0.0.0.0, fmg-domain-name='', config-touched=1(/bin/dhcpcd)

FG201E4Q17901047 # show system central-management
config system central-management
    set type fortimanager
    set fmg "172.18.60.115"
end
```

Dashboards and widgets

FortiOS includes predefined dashboards so administrators can easily monitor device inventory, security threats, traffic, and network health. You can customize the appearance of a default dashboard to display data pertinent to your security fabric, or combine widgets to create custom dashboards. Many dashboards also allow you to switch views between fabric devices.

Each dashboard contains a set of widgets and monitors that allow you to view drill down data and take actions to prevent threats. Use widgets to perform tasks such as viewing device inventory, creating and deleting DHCP reservations, and disconnecting dial-up users. You can add or remove widgets to a dashboard, or save a widget as a standalone monitor.

This section contains the following topics:

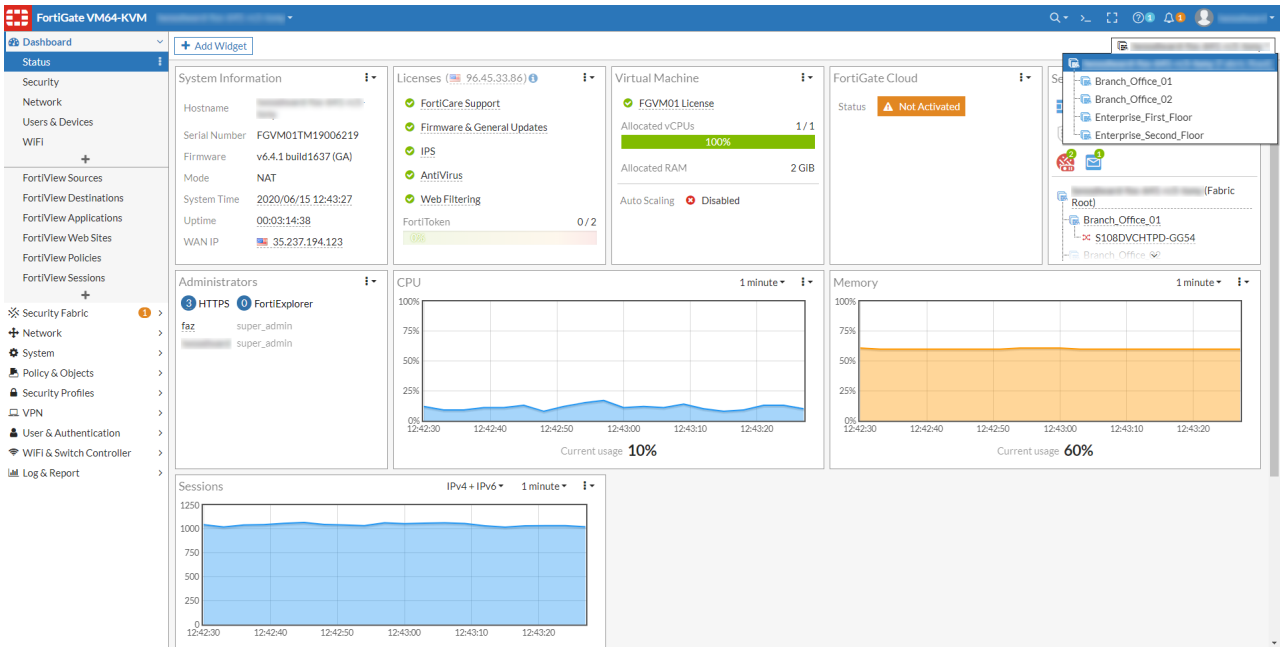
- Using dashboards on page 74
- Using widgets on page 79
- Monitor dashboards and widgets on page 81
- FortiView on page 101

Using dashboards

You can use the dashboard GUI to view fabric devices in the security fabric. You can also combine widgets to create custom dashboards.

To view downstream fabric devices in the GUI:

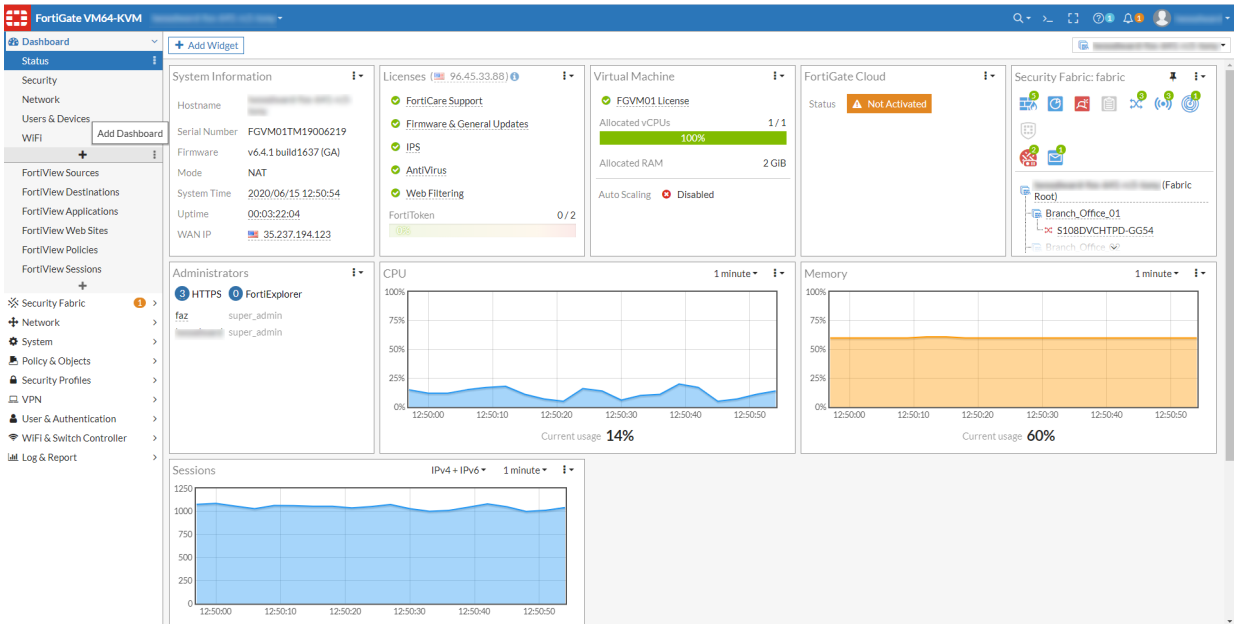
1. At the right side of dashboard, click the device dropdown and select a device.



The device dropdown is available in the *Status*, *Security*, *Network*, *Users & Devices*, and *WiFi* dashboards. You can also enable the dropdown when you create a dashboard.

To create a new dashboard in the GUI:

1. Under *Dashboard*, click the *Add Dashboard* button. The *Add Dashboard* window opens.



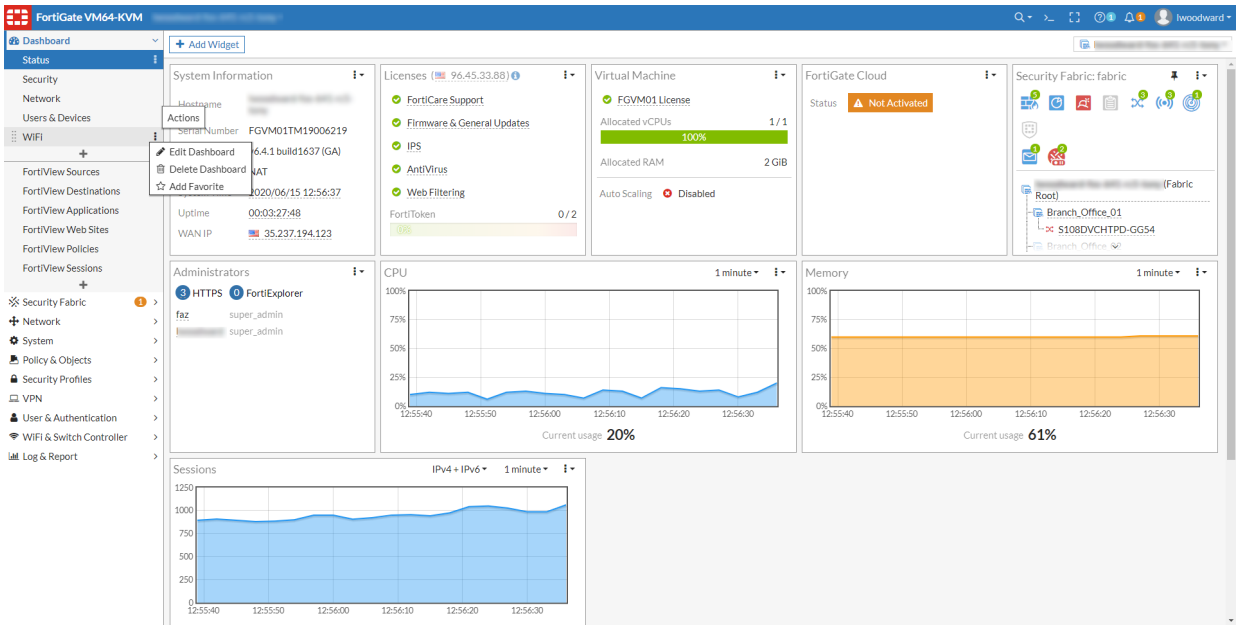
2. Enter a name in the *Name* field and click *OK*. The new dashboard opens.

To add a widget to a dashboard in the GUI:

1. In the tree menu, select a dashboard.
2. (Optional) Click the device dropdown, and select a device in the network.
3. In the banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
4. Click the *Add* button next to the widget. You can use the *Search* field to search for a widget. Click *Show More* to view more widgets in a category.
5. Configure the widget settings and click *Add Widget*.
6. Click *Close*.

To delete a dashboard in the GUI:

1. Click the *Actions* menu at the right side of the dashboard and select*Delete Dashboard*.



2. Click *Delete Dashboard* . The *Confirm* window opens.
3. *Click OK.*

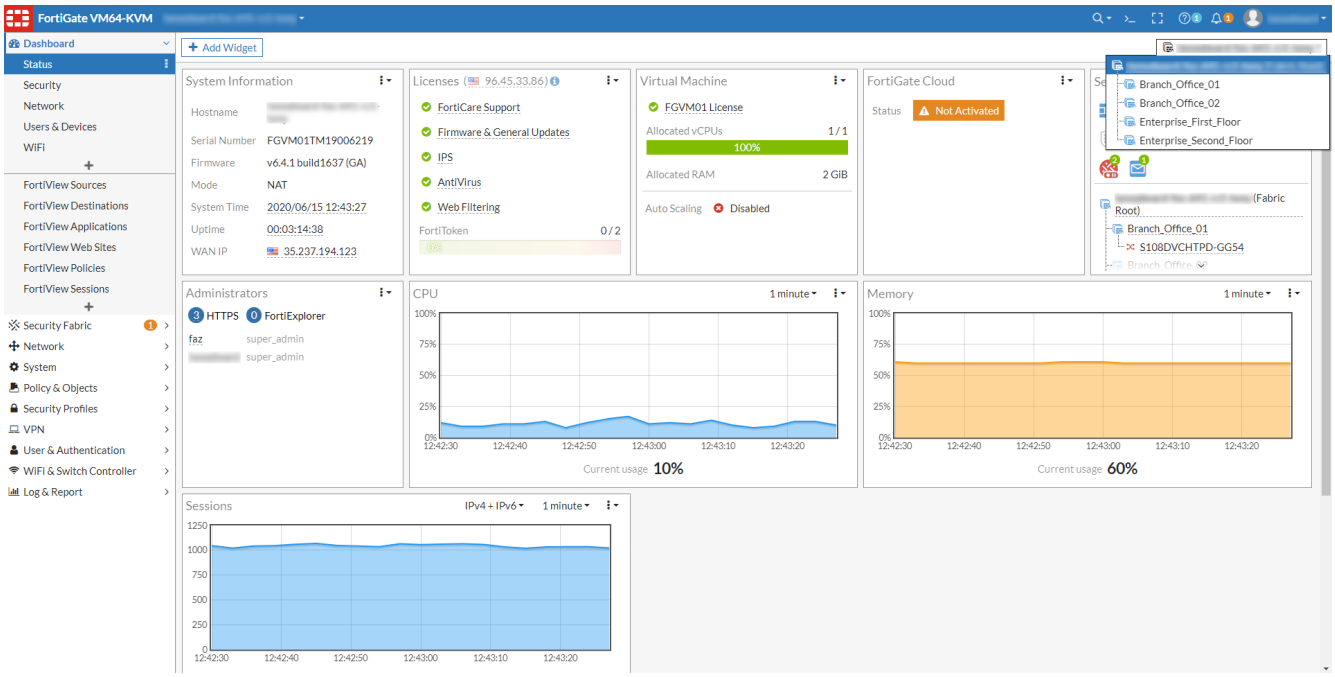
To edit a dashboard in the GUI:

1. Click the *Actions* menu at the right side of the dashboard and select*Edit Dashboard*.
2. Edit the dashboard and click *OK*.

Viewing device dashboards in the security fabric

Use the device dropdown in the built-in dashboards to quickly navigate between downstream fabric devices. You can also create dedicated device dashboards devices or log in and configure fabric devices.

To view fabric devices, click the device dropdown at the right side of the page, and select a device from the list.





The device dropdown is available in the *Status*, *Security*, *Network*, *Users & Devices*, and *WiFi* dashboards. You can also enable the dropdown when you create a dashboard.

To log into a device from the device dropdown:

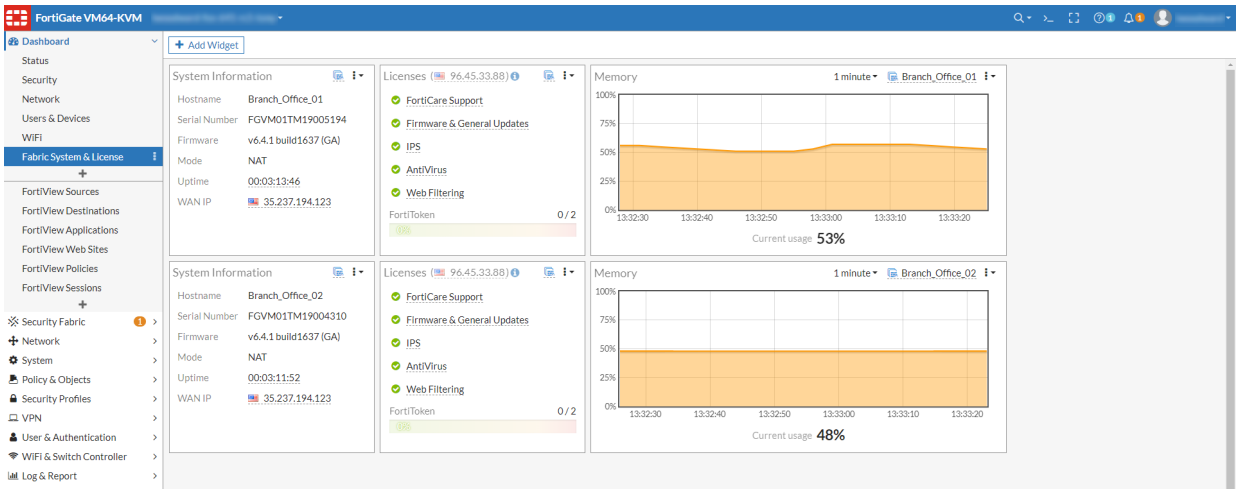
1. Hover over the device in the dropdown, and click *Login* You are redirected to the device login page or System dashboard if you are already logged in.

To configure a device from the device dropdown:

1. Hover over the device in the dropdown, and click *Configure*. The *Configure* page opens.

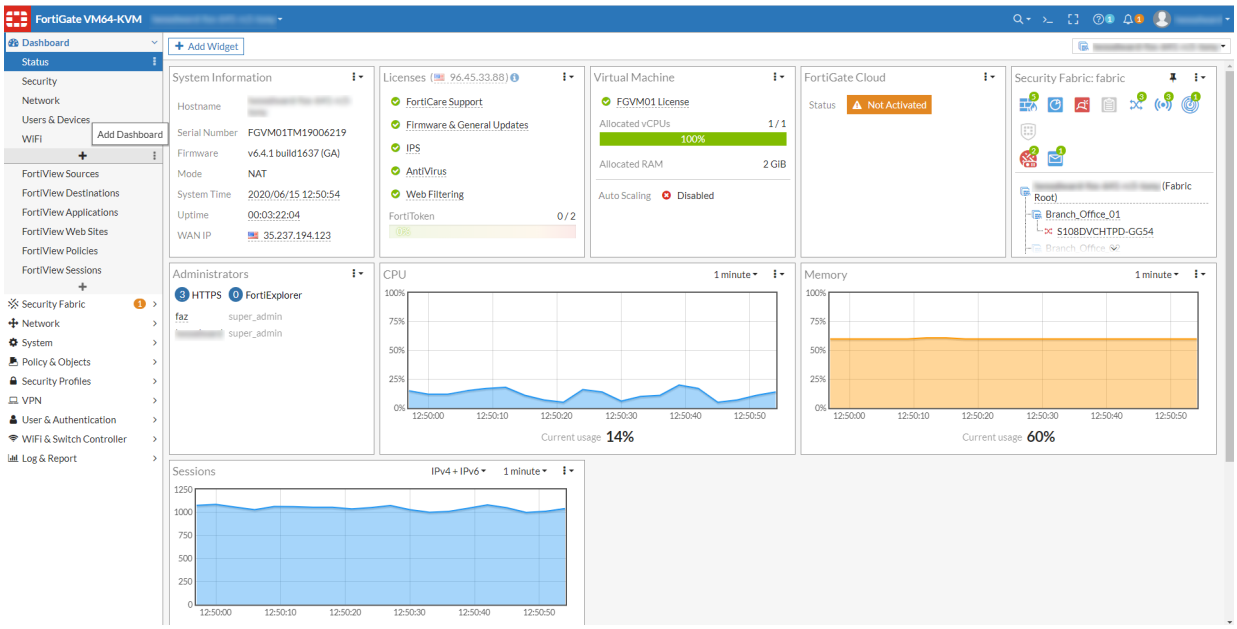
Creating a fabric system and license dashboard

Create a dashboard summary page to monitor all the fabric devices in a single view. You can use the dashboard to monitor aspects of the devices such as system information, VPN, and routing.



To create a system dashboard in the GUI:

1. Click the *Add Dashboard* button. The *Add Dashboard* window opens.



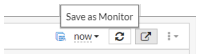
2. In the *Name* field, enter a name such as *Fabric System & License*, and click *OK*. The new dashboard appears.
3. In the banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens. You can use the *Search* field to search for a specific widget (for example, *License Status*, *System Information*, and *Memory Usage*).
4. Click the *Add* button next to widget. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
5. In the *Fabric member* area, select *Specify* and select a device in the security fabric.
6. Click *Add Widget*. The widget is added to the dashboard.
   Repeat this step for all the devices you want to view in the dashboard.
7. (Optional) Arrange the widgets in the dashboard by fabric device.

Using widgets

You can save a widget as a standalone monitor, change the view type, as well as configure tables and filter data.

To save a dashboard widget as a monitor:

1. Hover over a widget in the dashboard, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.
2. In the top menu, click the *Save as Monitor* icon. The *Add Monitor* window opens.



3. Enter a name for the monitor in the *Name* field, and click *OK*.

To view the widget settings:

1. Click the menu dropdown at the right side of the widget and select *Settings*.
2. Configure the widget settings and click *OK*.



The settings will vary depending on the widget.

To configure a table in the widget:

1. Hover over the left side of the table header and click the *Configure Table* icon.
2. Configure the table options.

Option	Description
Best Fit All Columns	Resizes all of the columns in a table to fit their content.
Reset Table	Resets the table to the default view.
Select Columns	Adds or removes columns from the view.

3. Click *Apply*.

To filter or configure a column in a table:

1. Hover over a column heading, and click the *Filter/Configure Column* icon.
2. Configure the column options, and click *Apply*.

Option	Description
Resize to Contents	Resizes the column to fit the content.
Group by this Column	Groups the table rows by the contents in the selected column.

3. To filter a column, enter a value in the *Filter* field, and click *Apply*.

Filtering is not supported in all the widgets.

Changing the default dashboard template

You can use the GUI to change the default dashboard template. The *Optimal* template contains a set of popular default dashboards and FortiView monitors. The *Comprehensive* template contains a set of default dashboards as well as all monitors and FortiViews. The Comprehensive template will be familiar to users coming from previous versions of FortiOS.

Changing the default template will remove the dashboards and monitors you added and reset the settings in the widgets.

To change the default in the GUI:

1. Click the *Actions* menu at the right side of *Add Dashboard* or *Add Monitor* and click *Reset All Dashboards*. The *Dashboard Setup* window opens.



2. Select a default template and click *OK*.
   The following dashboards and monitors are included in the default templates:

Optimal	Dashboards	• Status, • Security • Network • Users & Devices • WiFi
	Monitors	• FortiView Sources • FortiView Destinations • FortiView Applications • FortiView Web Sites • FortiView Policies • FortiView Sessions
Comprehensive	Dashboards	• Status • WiFi
	Monitors	• FortiView Sources • FortiView Destinations • FortiView Applications • FortiView Web Sites

	• FortiView Threats • FortiView Compromised Hosts • FortiView Policies • FortiView Sessions • Device Inventory Monitor • Routing Monitor • DHCP Monitor • SD-WAN Monitor • FortiGuard Quota Monitor • IPsec Monitor • SSL-VPN Monitor • Firewall User Monitor • Quarantine Monitor • FortiClient Monitor • FortiAP Clients Monitor • Rogue APs Monitor

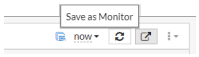
Monitor dashboards and widgets

Monitor dashboards and widgets allows you to view various states of your FortiGate pertaining to routing, VPN, DHCP, devices, users, quarantine, and wireless connections.

The following default monitor dashboards are built into FortiOS:

- Network
- Users & Devices
- WiFi

Each built-in dashboard contains multiple widgets which can be expanded for detail view. To save a view as its own monitor, click *Save as Monitor* at the right side of the banner.



For more information, see Using widgets on page 79

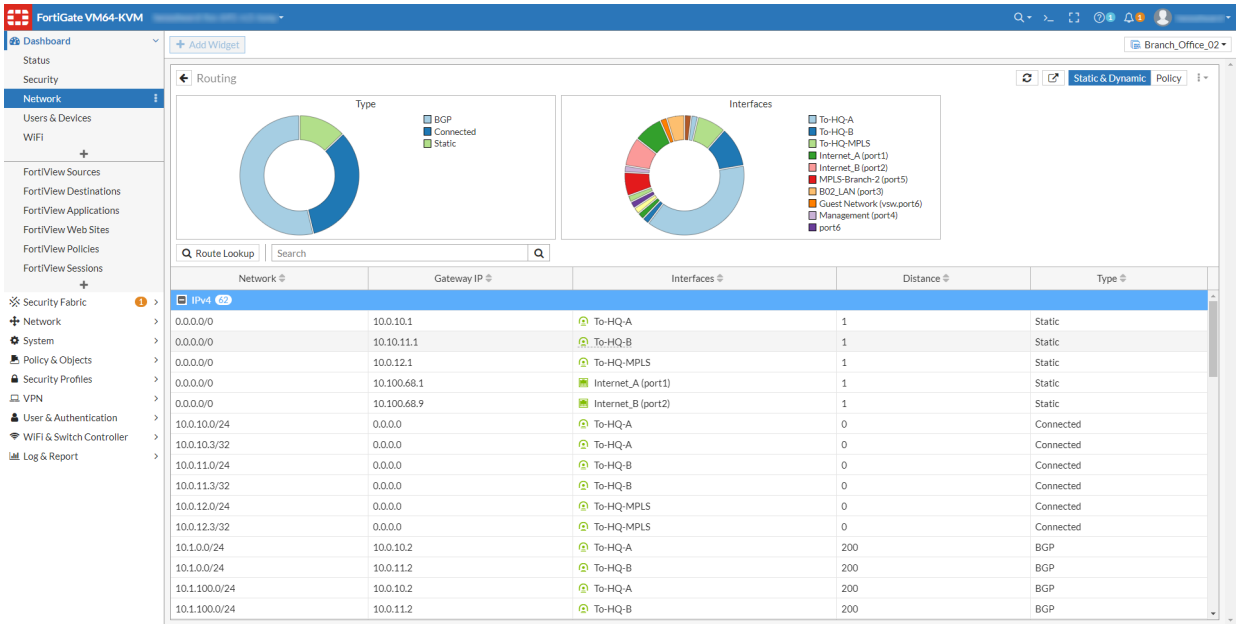
To view the widgets available in each dashboard category, click *Add Widget*.

Category	Use these widgets to:
Users & Devices	• View users and devices connected to the network • Identify threats from individual users and devices, and quarantine them. • View FortiGuard and FortiClient data • Monitor traffic bandwidth over time
Network	• Monitor DHCP clients • Monitor IPsec VPN connections • Monitor current routing table • Monitor SD-WAN status

Category	Use these widgets to:
	• Monitor SSL-VPN connections
WiFi	• View FortiAP status, channel utilization, and clients • View login failures and signal strength • View the number of WiFi clients

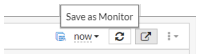
Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor

The *Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor* displays the routing table on the FortiGate including all static and dynamic routing protocols in IPv4 and IPv6. You can also use this monitor to view the firewall policy route.



To view the routing monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *Routing* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Routing* monitor opens.
3. To view the policy monitor, click the *Policy* tab.
4. To filter the *Interfaces* and *Type* columns:
   a. Hover over the column heading, and click the *Filter/Configure Column* icon.
   b. Click *Group By This Column*, then click *Apply*.
5. (Optional) Click *Save as Monitor* to save the widget as monitor.



To look up a route in the GUI:

1. Click *Route Lookup*.
2. Enter an IP address in the *Destination* field, then click *Search*. The matching route is highlighted on the *Routing* monitor.

To view the routing table in the CLI:

```
# get route info routing-table all
```

Sample output:

```
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
* - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S* 0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 10.0.10.1, To-HQ-A
[1/0] via 10.0.12.1, To-HQ-MPLS
[1/0] via 10.10.11.1, To-HQ-B
[1/0] via 10.100.67.1, port1
[1/0] via 10.100.67.9, port2
C 10.0.10.0/24 is directly connected, To-HQ-A
C 10.0.10.2/32 is directly connected, To-HQ-A
C 10.0.11.0/24 is directly connected, To-HQ-B
C 10.0.11.2/32 is directly connected, To-HQ-B
C 10.0.12.0/24 is directly connected, To-HQ-MPLS
C 10.0.12.2/32 is directly connected, To-HQ-MPLS
C 10.1.0.0/24 is directly connected, port3
C 10.1.0.2/32 is directly connected, port3
C 10.1.0.3/32 is directly connected, port3
C 10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, vsw.port6
```

To look up a firewall route in the CLI:

```
# diagnose firewall proute list
```

Sample output:

```
list route policy info(vf=root):

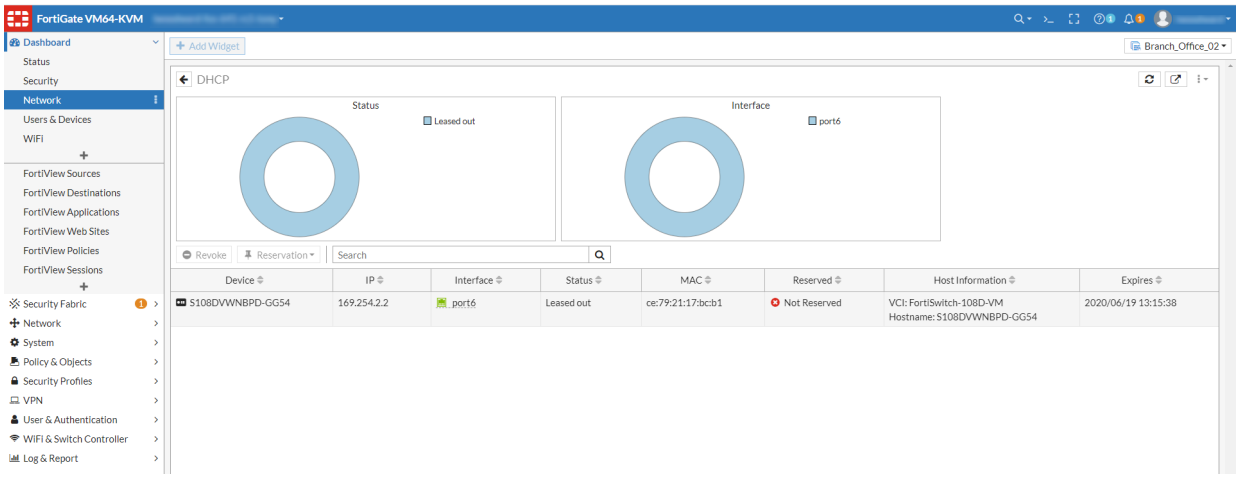

id=0x7f450002 vwl_service=2(BusinessCritialCloudApp) vwl_mbr_seq=4 5 3 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff
     flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=3
     (port1) oif=4(port2) oif=18(To-HQ-MPLS)
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
destination wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
internet service(4): Microsoft.Office.365(4294837472,0,0,0, 33182) Microsoft.Office.Online
     (4294837475,0,0,0, 16177) Salesforce(4294837976,0,0,0, 16920) GoToMeeting
     (4294836966,0,0,0, 16354)
hit_count=0 last_used=2020-03-30 10:50:18

id=0x7f450003 vwl_service=3(NonBusinessCriticalCloudApp) vwl_mbr_seq=4 5 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff
     flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=3
     (port1) oif=4(port2)
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
destination wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
internet service(2): Facebook(4294836806,0,0,0, 15832) Twitter(4294838278,0,0,0, 16001)
hit_count=0 last_used=2020-03-30 10:50:18
```

```
id=0x7f450004 vwl_service=4(Ping-Policy) vwl_mbr_seq=1 2 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0
      tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=1 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=16(To-HQ-A)
      oif=17(To-HQ-B)
```

DHCP monitor

The DHCP monitor displays all the addresses leased out by FortiGate's DHCP servers. You can use the monitor to revoke an address for a device, or create, edit, and delete address reservations.



To view the DHCP monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *DHCP* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

To revoke a lease:

1. Select a device in the table.
2. In the toolbar, click *Revoke*, or right-click the device, and click *Revoke*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.



A confirmation window opens only if there is an associated address reservation. If there is no address, the lease will be removed immediately upon clicking *Revoke*.

To create a DHCP reservation:

1. Select a server in the table.
2. In the toolbar, click *Reservation*, or right-click the device and click *Create DHCP Reservation*. The *Create New DHCP Reservation* window opens.

3. Configure the DHCP settings.
4. Click *OK*.

To view top sources by bytes:

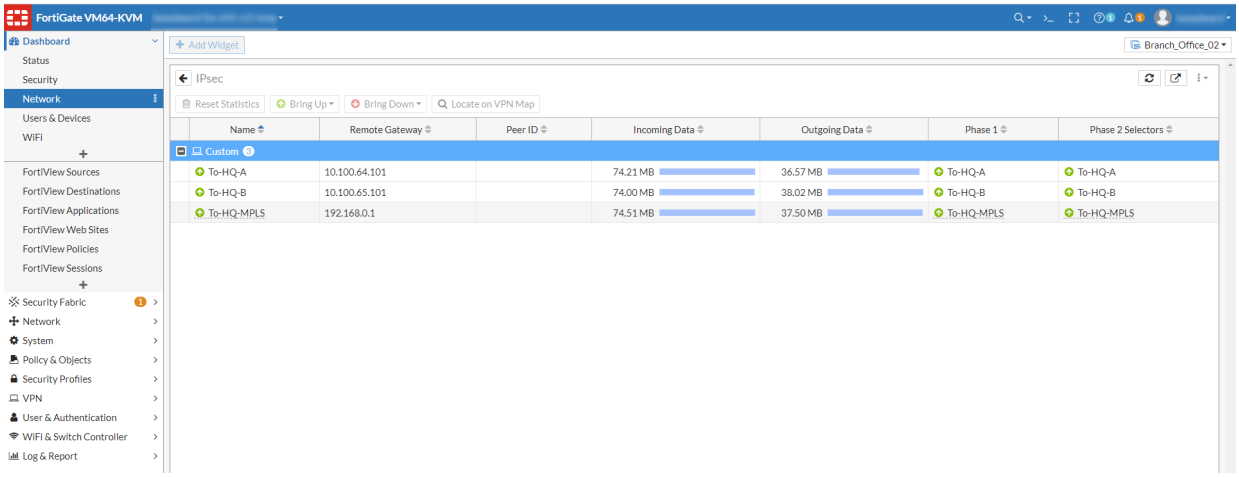
1. Right-click a device in the table and click *Show in FortiView*. The *Top Sources by Bytes* widget opens.

To view the DHCP lease list in the CLI:

```
# execute dhcp lease-list
```

IPsec monitor

The IPsec monitor displays all connected Site to Site VPN and Dial-up VPNs. You can use the monitor to bring a phase 2 tunnel up or down or disconnect dial-up users.



To view the IPSEC monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *IPsec* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

To reset statistics:

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. In the toolbar, click *Reset Statistics* or right-click the tunnel, and click *Reset Statistics*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

To bring a tunnel up:

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. Click *Bring Up*, or right-click the tunnel, and click *Bring Up*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

To bring a tunnel down:

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. Click *Bring Down*, or right-click the tunnel, and click *Bring Down*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

To locate a tunnel on the VPN Map:

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. Click *Locate on VPN Map*, or right-click the tunnel, and click *Locate on VPN Map*. You are taken to *VPN* > *VPN Location Map*.

To view the IPsec monitor in the CLI:

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
```

Sample output:

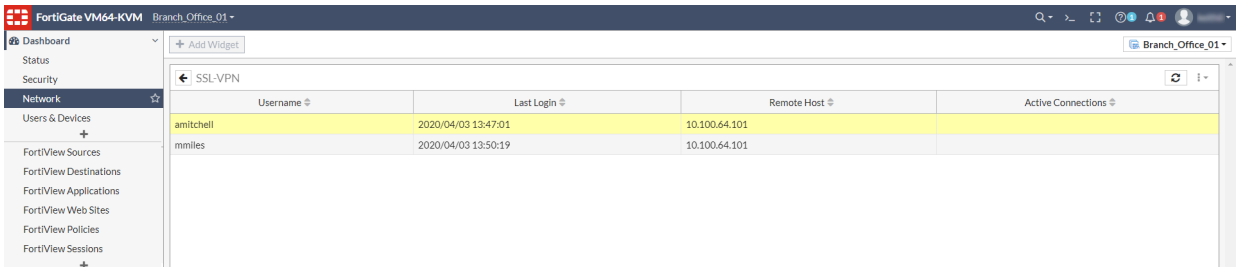
```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=fct-dialup ver=1 serial=4 10.100.67.5:0->0.0.0.0:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=3 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-rfc
     accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

proxyid_num=0 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=5545 olast=5545 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=0
------------------------------------------------------
name=To-HQ-MPLS ver=2 serial=3 192.168.0.14:0->192.168.0.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
     frag-rfc accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=22 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=66693 txp=29183 rxb=33487128 txb=1908427
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=To-HQ-MPLS proto=0 sa=1 ref=6 serial=1 adr
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=3 options=32203 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=266/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=2c5e esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00002ea3 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=1773/1800
dec: spi=700c9198 esp=aes key=16 ebd04605de6148c8a92ced48b30930fa
ah=sha1 key=20 5f0201f67d7c714a046025a1df41d40376437f6a
enc: spi=5aaccc20 esp=aes key=16 13d5d4b46e5e9c42eef509f2d9879188
ah=sha1 key=20 2dde67ef7a2a78b622d9a7ec6d75ad3c55d241e1
dec:pkts/bytes=11938/5226964, enc:pkts/bytes=11357/1312184
```

SSL-VPN monitor

The SSL-VPN monitor displays user logins and active connections. You can use the monitor to disconnect a specific connection.



To view the SSL-VPN monitor in the GUI:

1. Go *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *SSL-VPN* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

To disconnect a user:

1. Select a user in the table.
2. In the table, right-click the user, and click *End Session*. The Confirm window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

To monitor SSL-VPN users in the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
```

Sample output

```
SSL VPN Login Users:
Index User Group Auth Type Timeout From HTTP in/out HTTPS in/out
0 amitchell TAC 1(1) 296 10.100.64.101 3838502/11077721 0/0
1 mmiles Dev 1(1) 292 10.100.64.101 4302506/11167442 0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
Index User Group Source IP Duration I/O Bytes Tunnel/Dest IP
```

Firewall Users Monitor

The Firewall Users monitor displays all firewall users currently logged in. You can use the monitor to diagnose user-related logons or to highlight and deauthenticate a user.

To view the firewall monitor in the CLI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to *Dashboard* > *Firewall User Monitor*. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 80.
2. Hover over the *Firewall Users* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.
3. To show FSSO logons, click *Show all FSSO Logons* at the top right of the page.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

To deauthenticate a user:

1. (Optional) Use the *Search* field to search for a specific user.
2. In the toolbar, click *Deauthenticate*, or right-click the user, and click *Deauthenticate*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

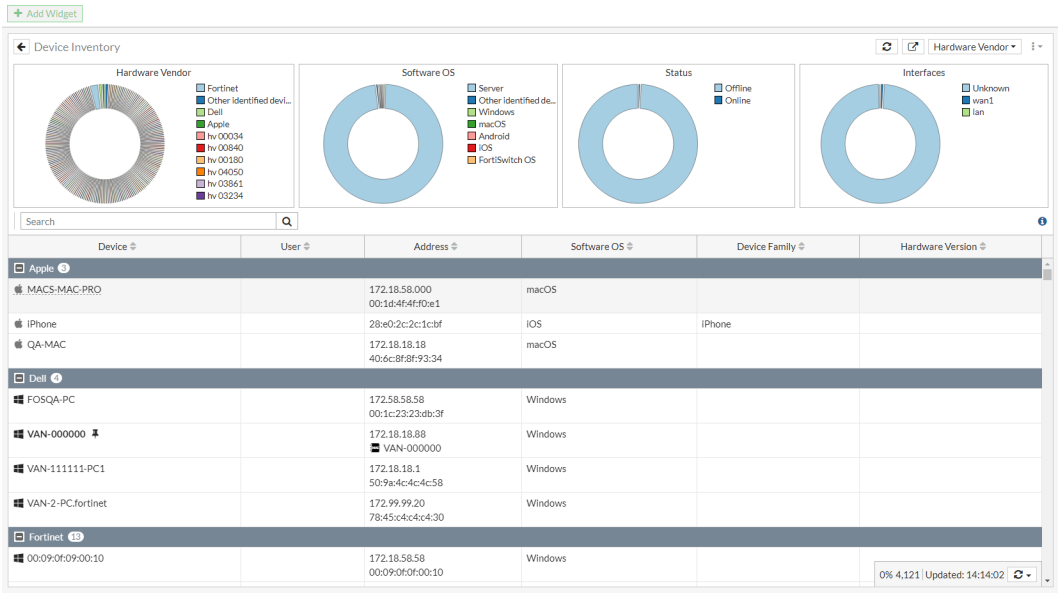
To view firewall users in the CLI:

```
# diagnose firewall auth list
```

Implement a user device store to centralize device data

Device data collected from different daemons is centralized in a user device store for quick access and performance. Thousands of devices can be displayed in the GUI in seconds. The maximum number of devices and users that are stored in the database can be configured.

For example, go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* and expand the *Device Inventory* widget.



To configure the maximum number of devices and users that are stored in the database:

```
config system global
     set user-device-store-max-devices <value>
     set user-device-store-max-users <value>
end
```

To view the user or device on disk session information:

- List all records:

  ```
  diagnose user-device-store {device | user} disk list
  ```

- Query by SQL WHERE clause:

  ```
  diagnose user-device-store {device | user} disk query <SQL WHERE clause>
  ```

To view the user or device in memory session information:

- List all records:

  ```
  diagnose user-device-store {device | user} memory list
  ```

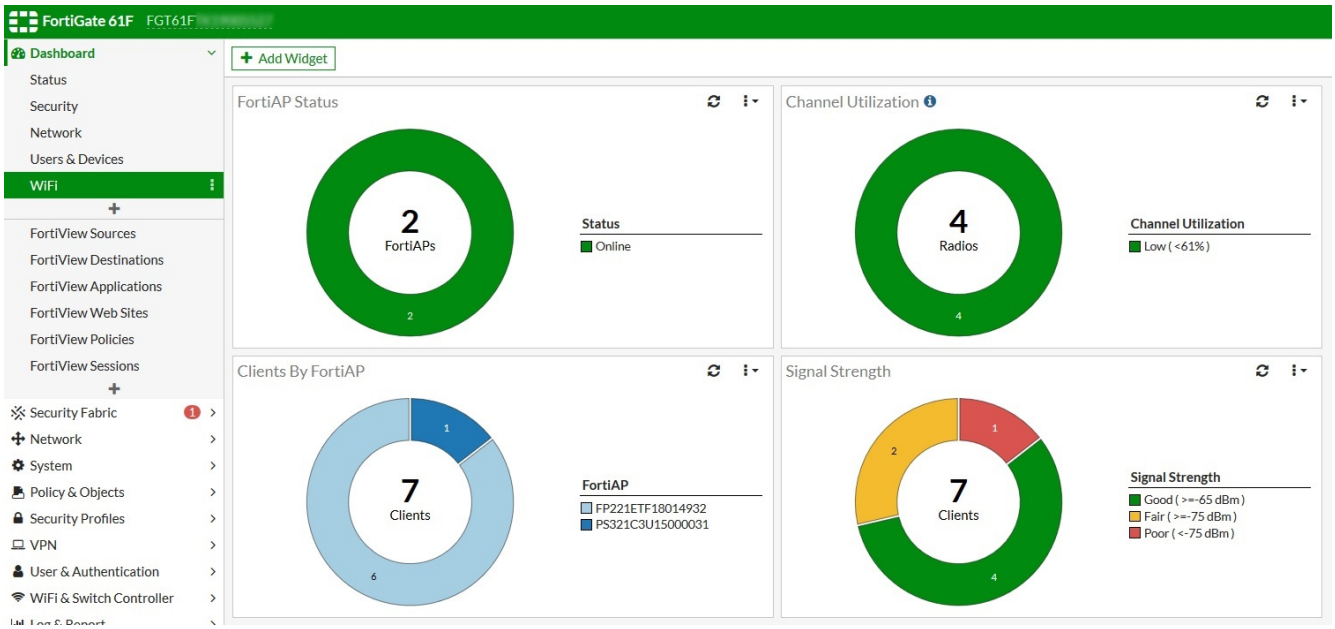
- Query by username or IP address:

  ```
  diagnose user-device-store {device | user} memory query {ip | username} <value>
  ```

WiFi Dashboard

The WiFi Dashboard is one of the default monitor dashboards built into FortiOS. It allows you to view FortiAP status, channel utilization, WiFi clients and associated information, login failures and signal strength, and so on.

Go to *Dashboard* > *WiFi* to access the WiFi Dashboard:



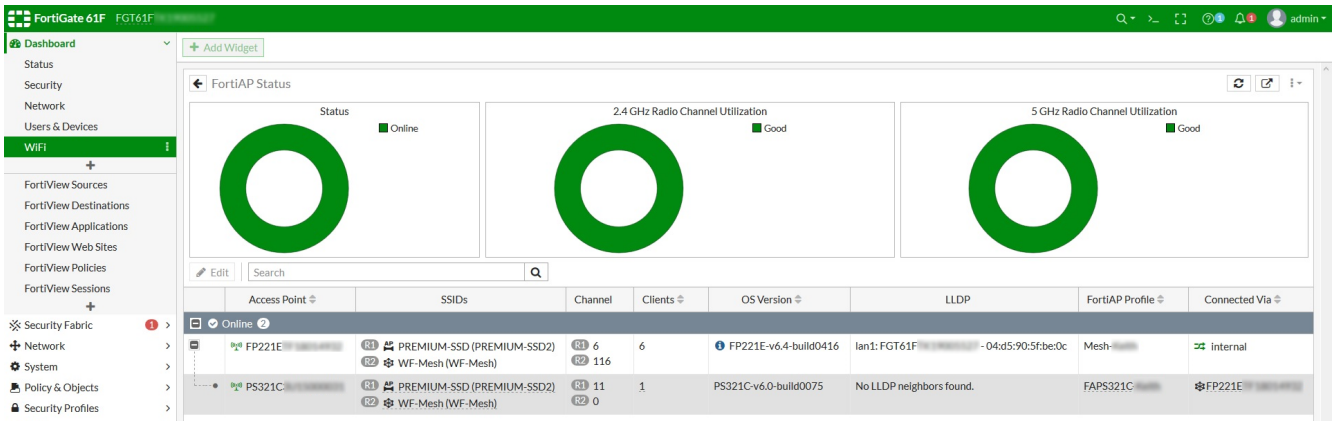
You may customize the WiFi dashboard as per your requirements. To know more about using and modifying dashboards and widgets, see Dashboards and widgets on page 74.

This section describes the following monitors available for the WiFi Dashboard:

- FortiAP Status monitor on page 90
- Clients by FortiAP monitor on page 92

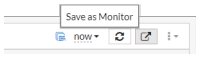
FortiAP Status monitor

The *FortiAP Status* monitor displays the status and the channel utilization of the radios of FortiAP devices connected to a FortiGate. It also provides access to tools to diagnose and analyze connected APs.



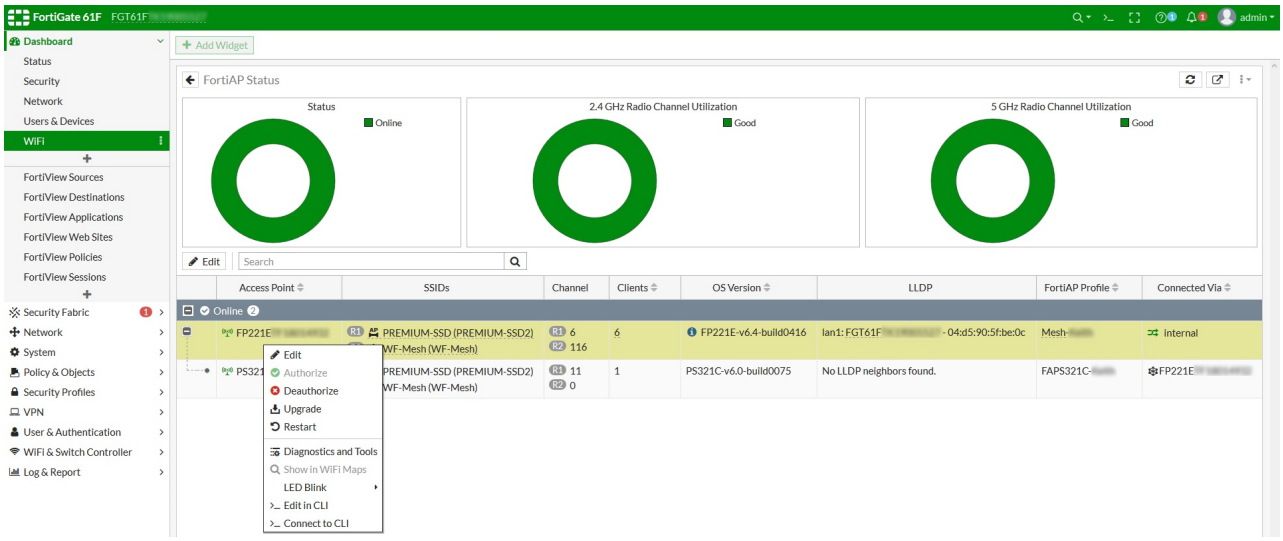
To view the *FortiAP Status* monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *WiFi*.
2. Hover over the *FortiAP Status* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *FortiAP Status* monitor opens.
3. (Optional) Click *Save as Monitor* to save the widget as monitor.

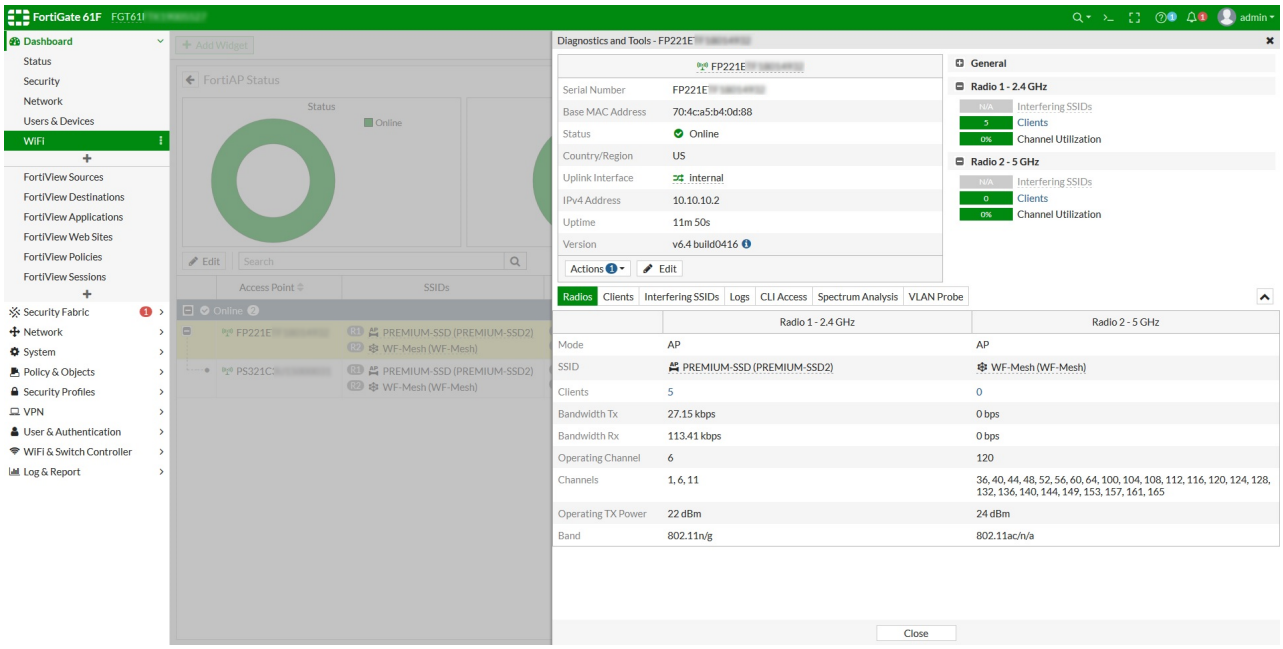


To view the *Diagnostics and Tools* menu in the GUI:

1. Select and right-click on an *Access Point* entry in the table on the *FortiAP Status* monitor page.



2. Click *Diagnostics and Tools*. The *Diagnostics and Tools* dialog for the selected FortiAP device slides in on the screen.

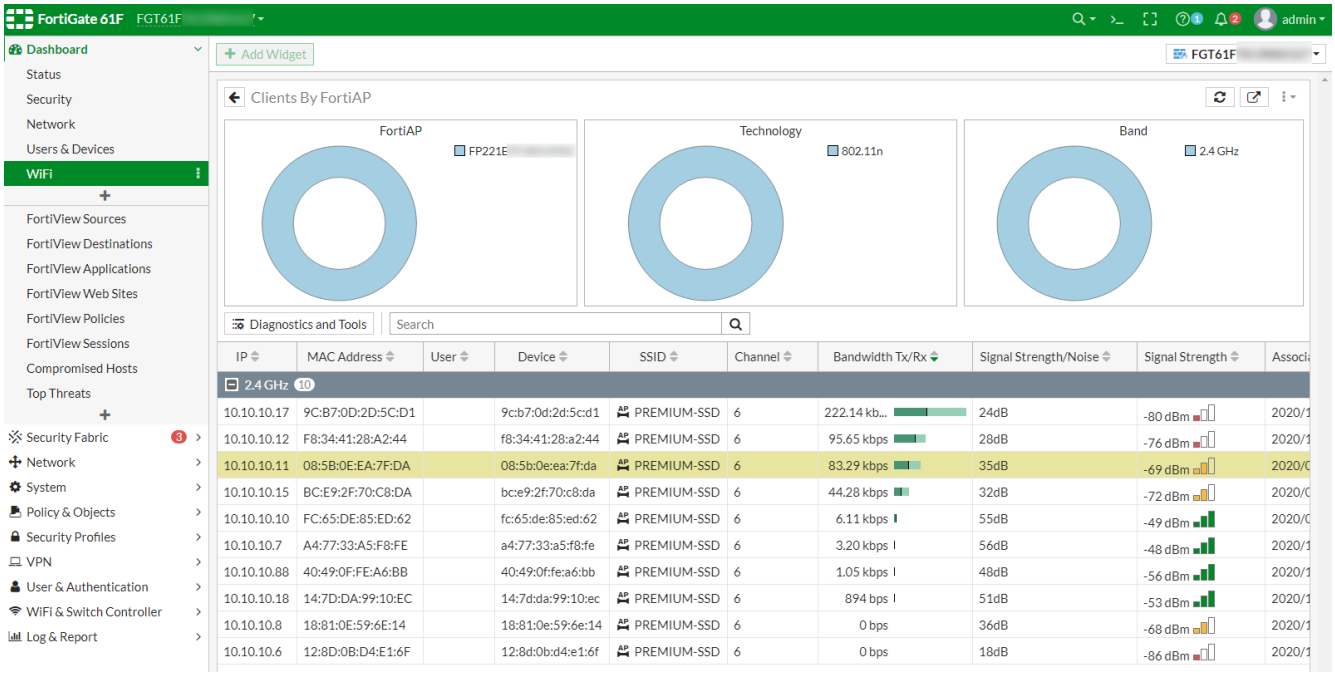


3. You may click on the various tabs in the *Diagnostics and Tools* dialog like *Clients*, *Spectrum Analysis*, *VLAN Probe*, and so on, to monitor and analyze the FortiAP device.

The *Diagnostics and Tools* dialog is similar to the device dialog from *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiAPs*. To learn more about the various tabs and their functions, see Support for spectrum analysis of FortiAP E models, VLAN probe report, and Standardize wireless health metrics.

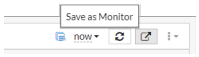
Clients by FortiAP monitor

The *Clients by FortiAP* monitor allows you to view detailed information about the health of individual WiFi connections in the network. It also provides access to tools to diagnose and analyze connected wireless devices.



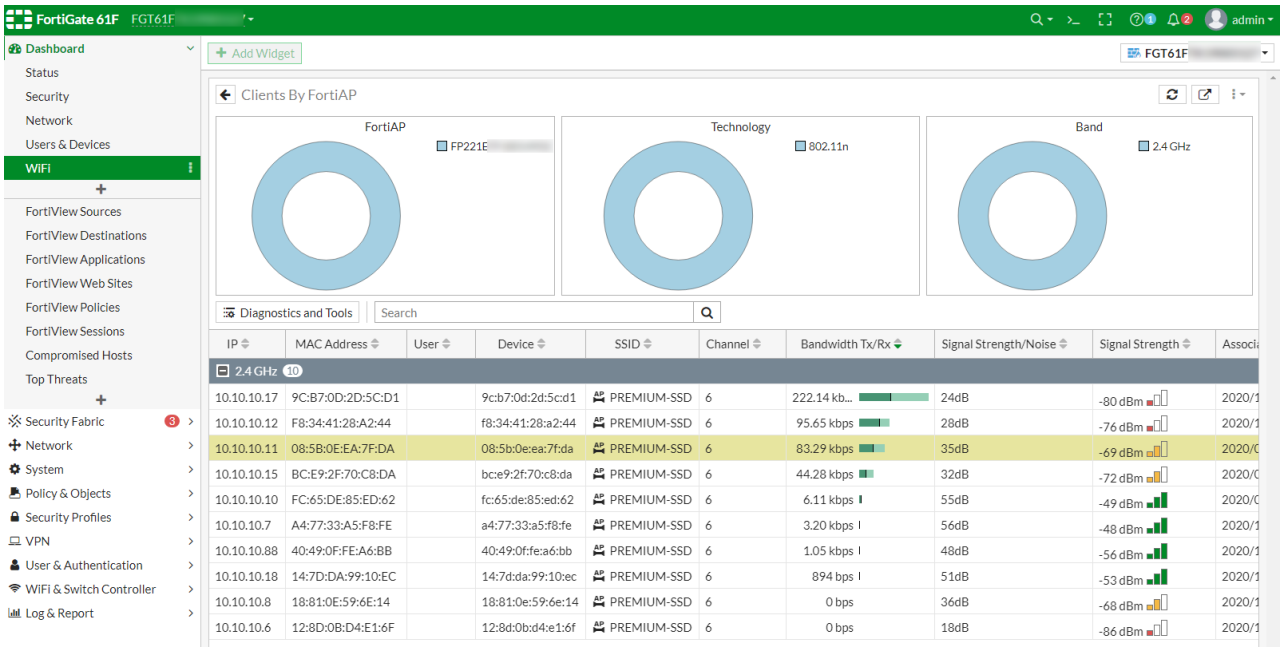
To view the *Clients by FortiAP* monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *WiFi*.
2. Hover over the *Clients by FortiAP* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Clients by FortiAP* monitor opens.
3. (Optional) Click *Save as Monitor* to save the widget as monitor.

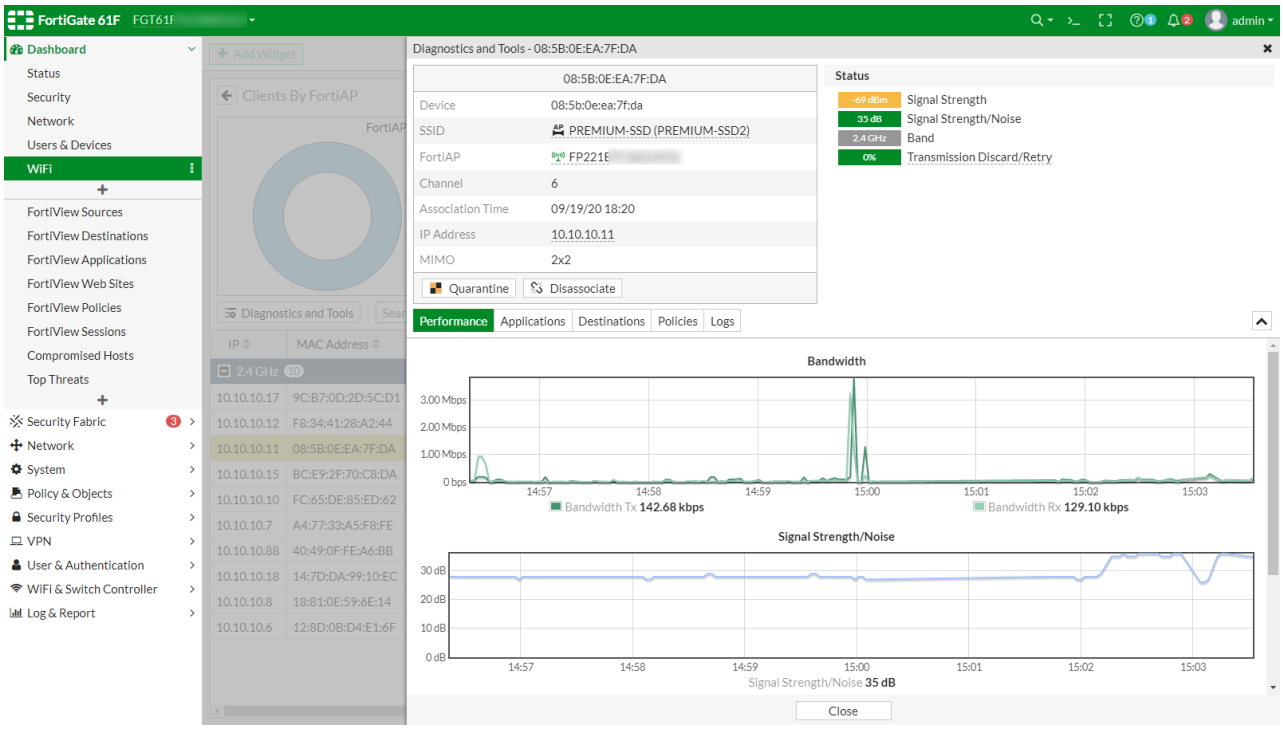


To view the summary page for a wireless client in the GUI:

1. Select a client entry in the table on the *Clients by FortiAP* monitor page.



2. Right-lick on the selected client entry in the table and select *Diagnostics and Tools*. The summary dialog for the selected client slides in on the screen.



3. You may click on *Quarantine* to quarantine, or *Disassociate* to disassociate the selected wireless client.

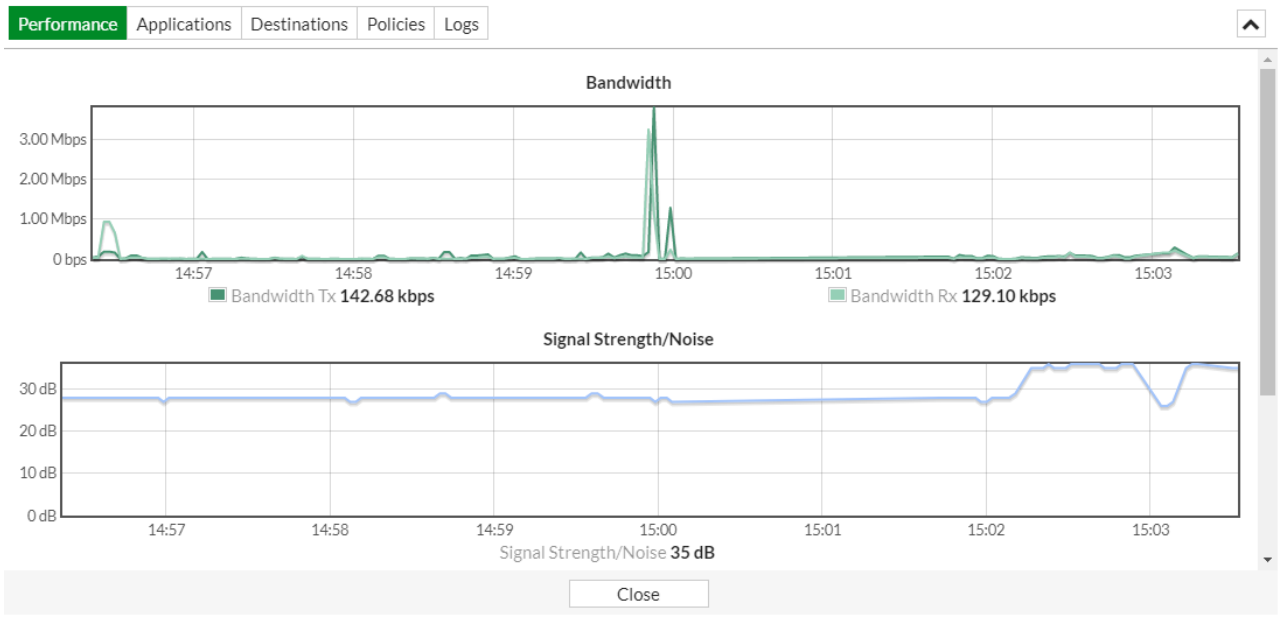
From the summary page, the *Health* section displays the overall health for the wireless connection. The overall health of the connection is:

- Good if the value range for all three conditions are *Good*
- Fair or poor if one of the three conditions is *Fair* or *Poor* respectively.

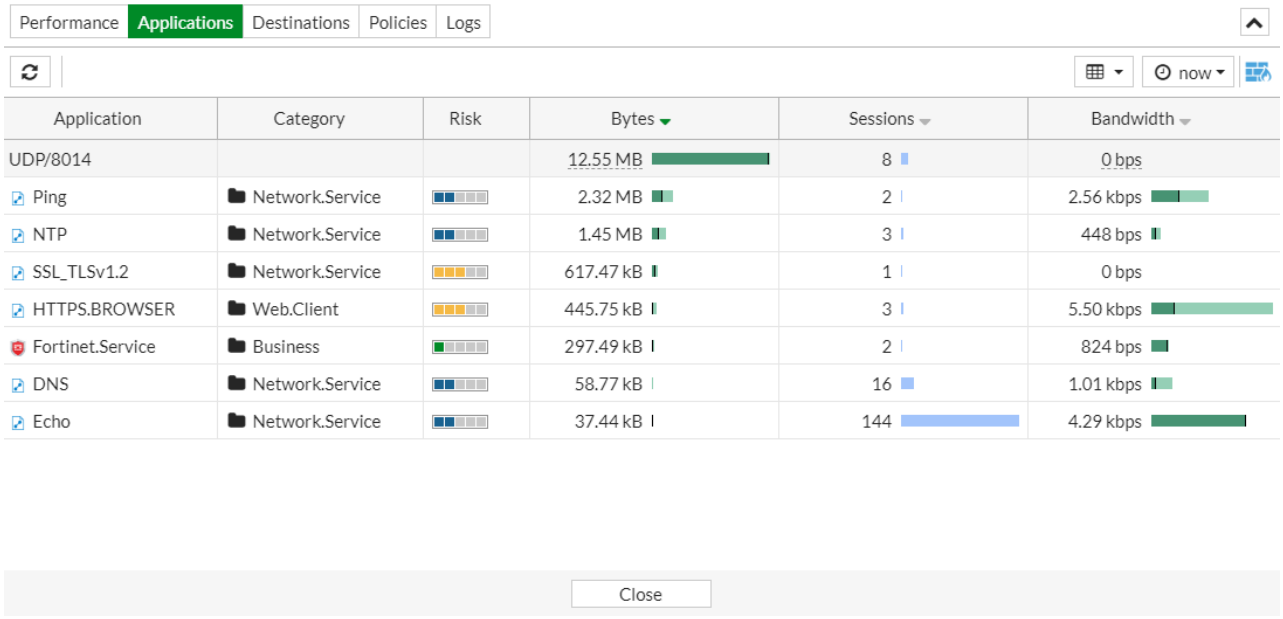
Condition	Value Range
Signal Strength	• *Good > -56dBm* • *-56dBm > Fair > -75dBm* • *Poor < -75dBm*
Signal Strength/Noise	• *Good > 39dBm* • *20dBm < Fair < 39dBm* • *Poor < 20dBm*
Band	• *Good = 5G band* • *Fair = 2.4G band*

The summary page also has the following FortiView tabs:

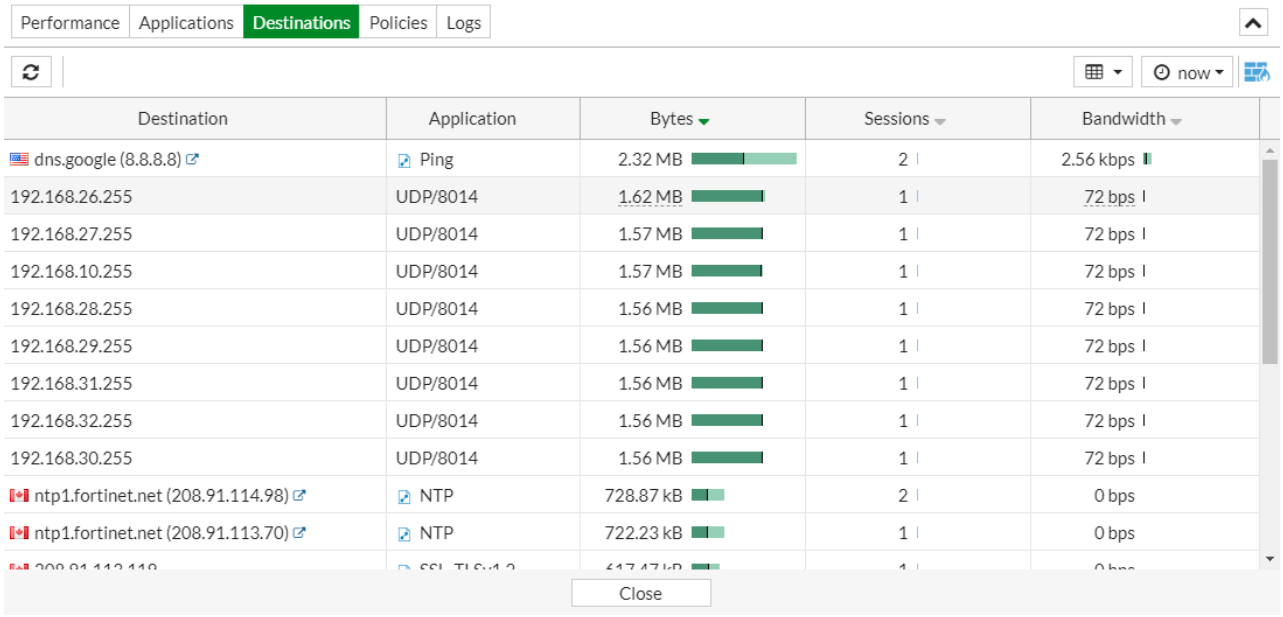
- *Performance*



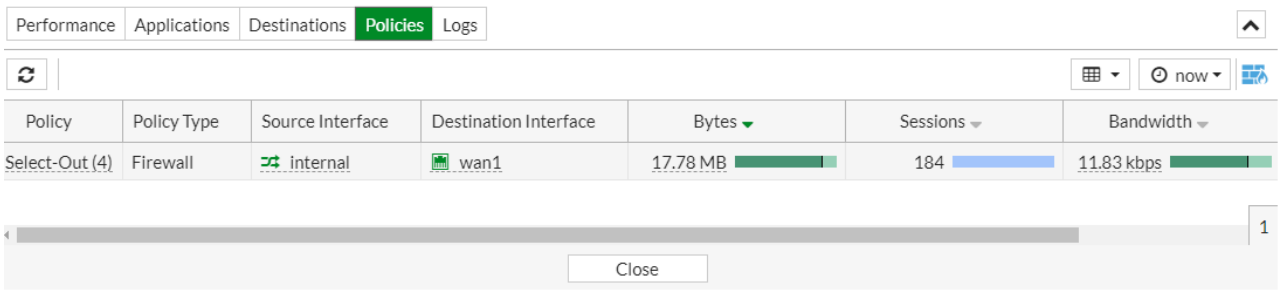
- *Applications*



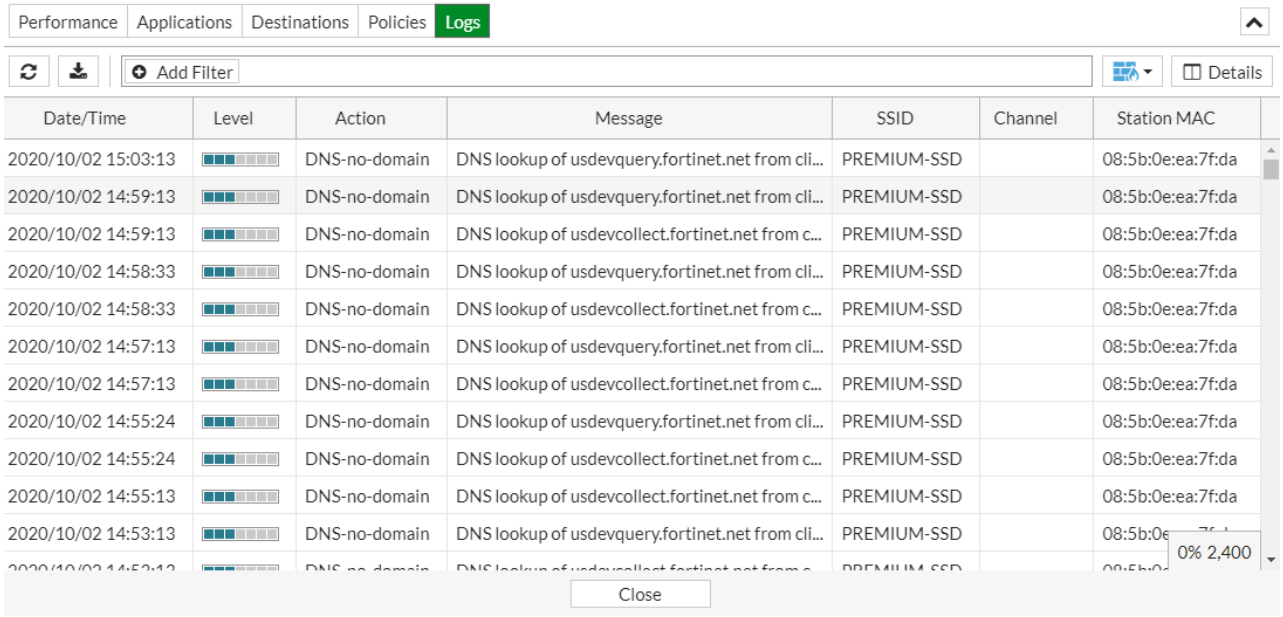
- *Destinations*



- *Policies*



- *Logs*



The *Clients by FortiAP* monitor is a drilled-down version of the *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *WiFi Clients* page.

Device inventory

You can enable device detection to allow FortiOS to monitor your networks and gather information about devices operating on those networks, including:

- MAC address
- IP address
- Operating system
- Hostname
- Username
- When FortiOS detected the device and on which interface

You can enable device detection separately on each interface in *Network* > *Interfaces*.

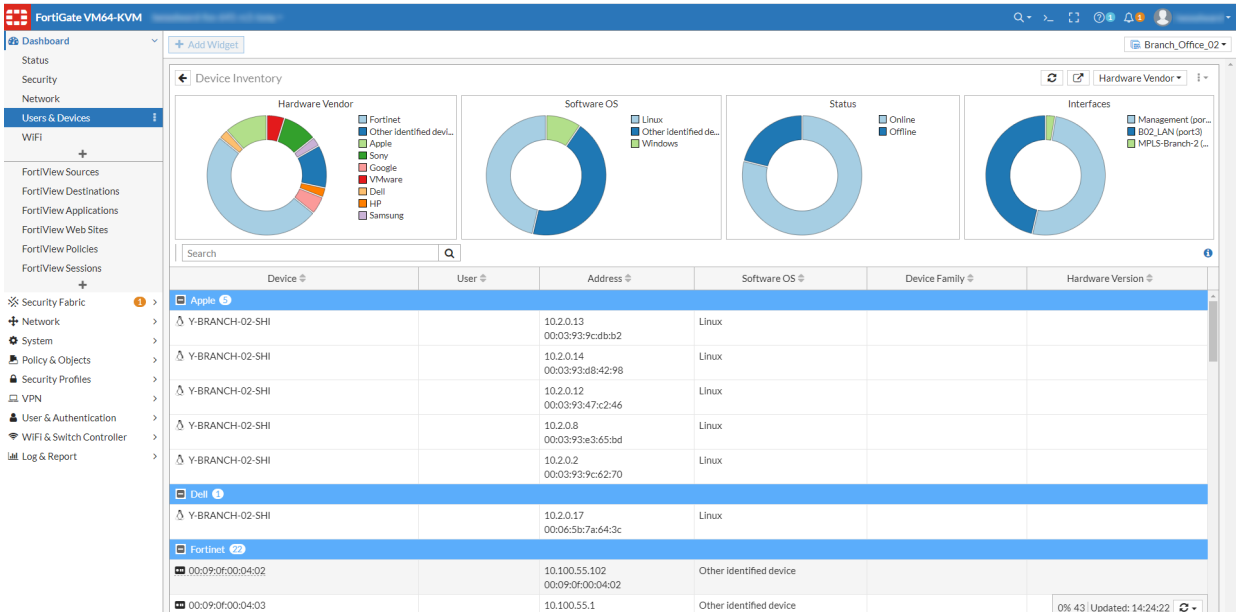
Device detection is intended for devices directly connected to your LAN ports. If enabled on a WAN port, device detection may be unable to determine the OS on some devices. You can enable active scanning on the interface to find hosts whose device types FortiOS cannot determine passively.

You can also manually add devices to Device Inventory to ensure that a device with multiple interfaces displays as a single device.

To view the device inventory monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to *Dashboard* > *Device Inventory Monitor*. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 80.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Device Inventory* pane appears.

To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading, and click *Filter/Configure Column*. See Device inventory and filtering on page 97.



Device inventory and filtering

The *Device Inventory* widget contains a series of summary charts that provide an overview of the hardware, operating system, status, and interfaces. You can use these clickable charts to simplify filtering among your devices.

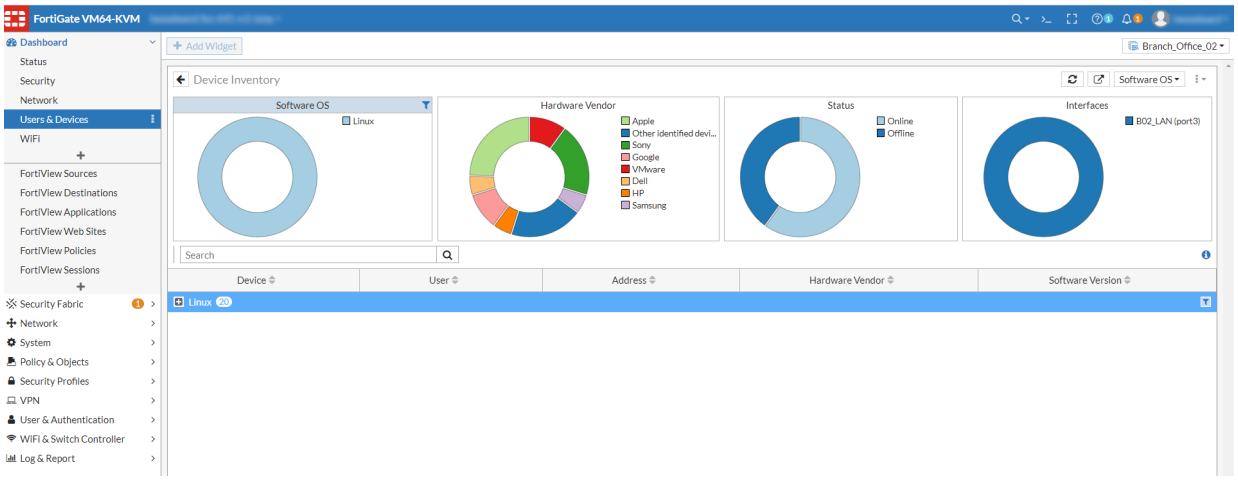
To view the device inventory and apply a filter:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to Dashboard > Device Inventory Monitor. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 80.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Device Inventory* pane appears.
3. To filter the order of the charts by operating system, click the dropdown in the top menu bar and select *Software OS*.
4. To filter a chart, click an item in the legend or chart area. The table displays the filter results.
5. To combine filters, hover over a column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.
6. Click the filter icon in the top-right corner of the chart to remove the filter.

Filter examples

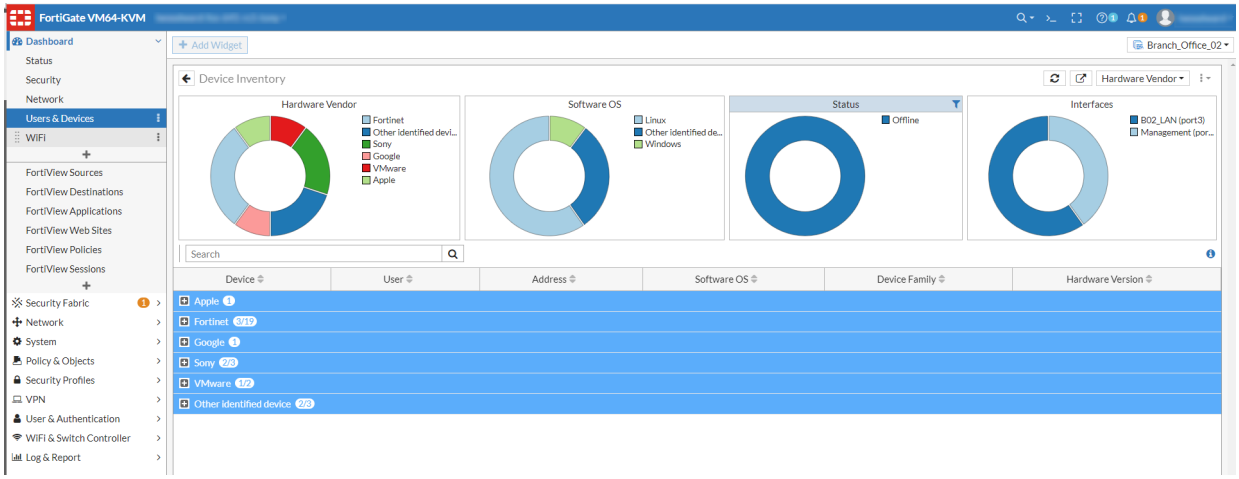
To filter all Linux devices:

1. In the *Software OS* chart, click *Linux* .



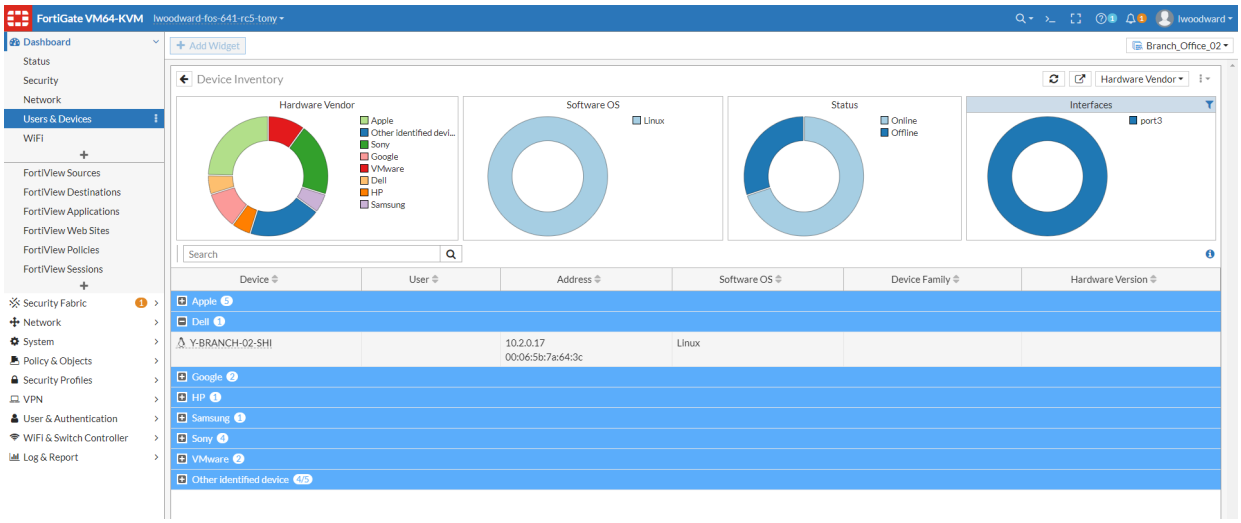
To filter all offline devices:

1. In the *Status* chart, click *Offline*.



To filter all devices discovered on port4:

1. In the *Interfaces* chart, click *port3*.



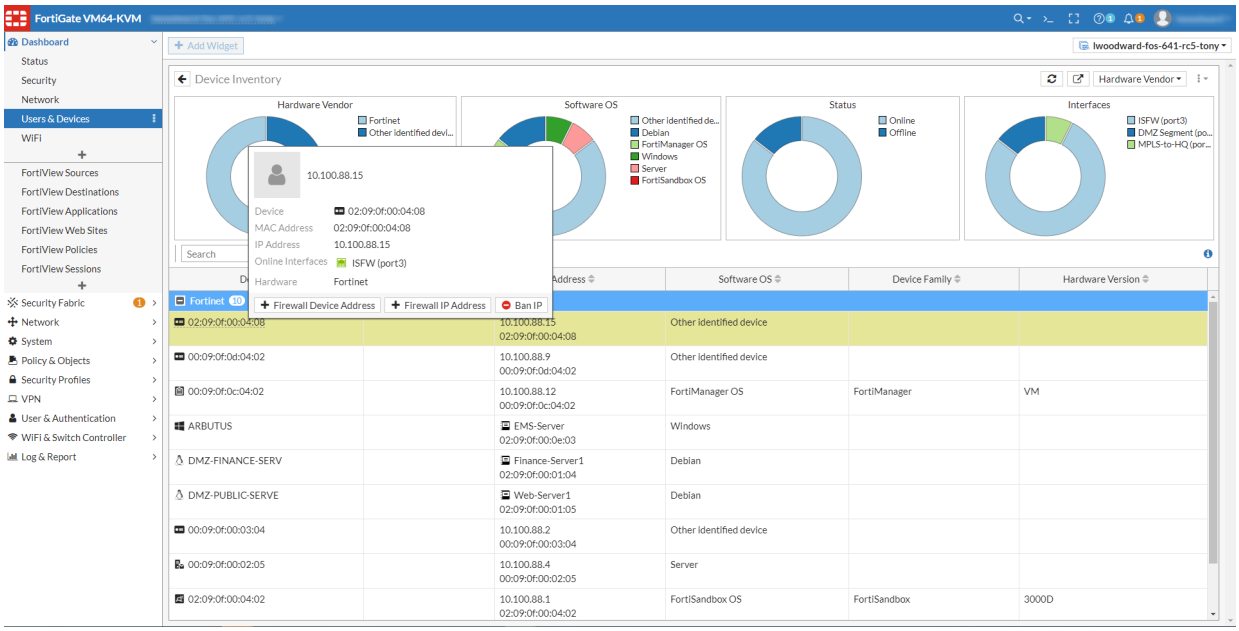
Adding MAC-based addresses to devices

Assets detected by device detection appear in the *Device Inventory* widget. You can manage policies around devices by adding a new device object (MAC-based address) to a device. Once you add the MAC-based address, the device can be used in address groups or directly in policies.

To add a MAC-based address to a device:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to *Dashboard* > *Device Inventory Monitor*. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 80.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Device Inventory* monitor opens.

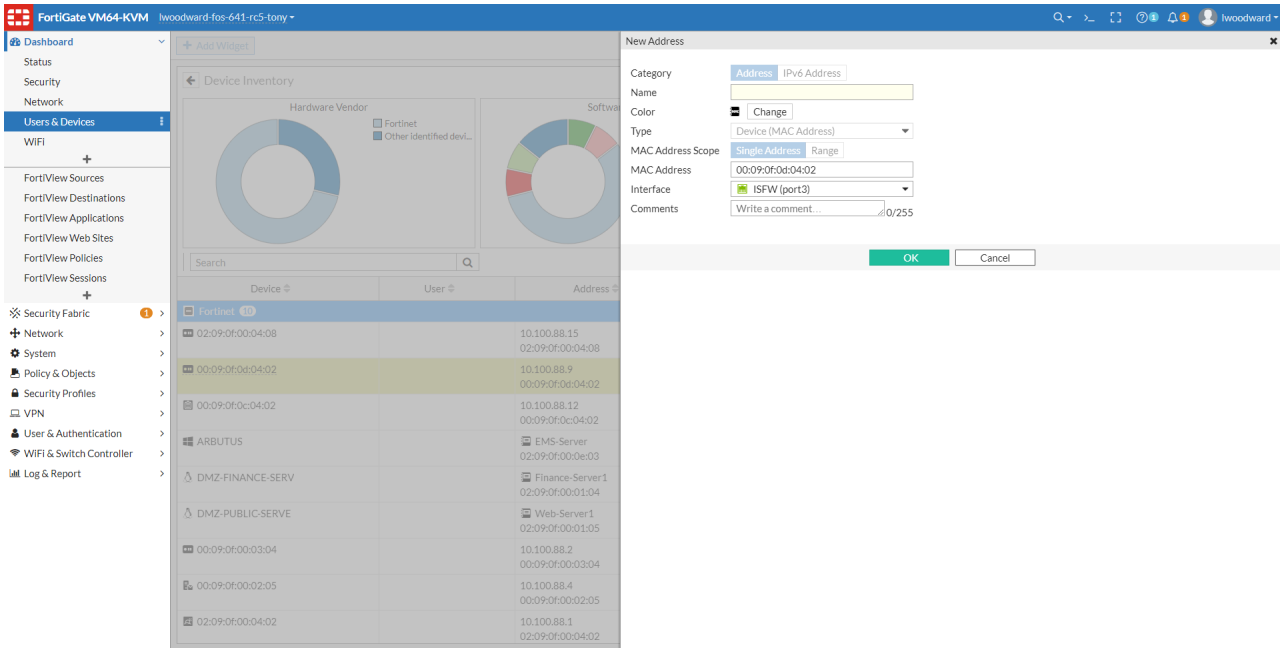
3. Click a device and then click *Firewall Device Address*.



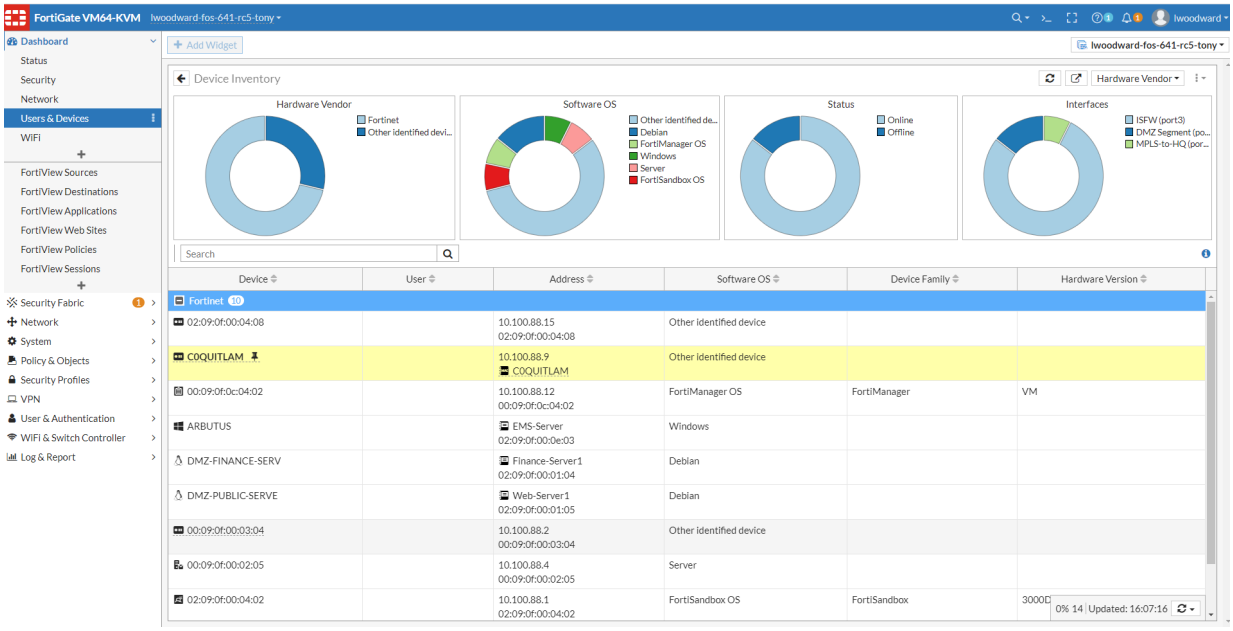
4. (Optional) In the *Name* field, give the device a descriptive name.



Use the *Name* field to assign a descriptive name to a device so it is easier to find it in the *Device* column. After you finish configuring the device, refresh the page to see the new name in the dashboard.



5. Click *OK*. The MAC address icon appears in the *Address* column next to the device name.



FortiView

FortiView is the FortiOS log view tool and comprehensive monitoring system for your network. FortiView integrates real-time and historical data into a single view on your FortiGate. It can log and monitor network threats, keep track of administration activities, and more.

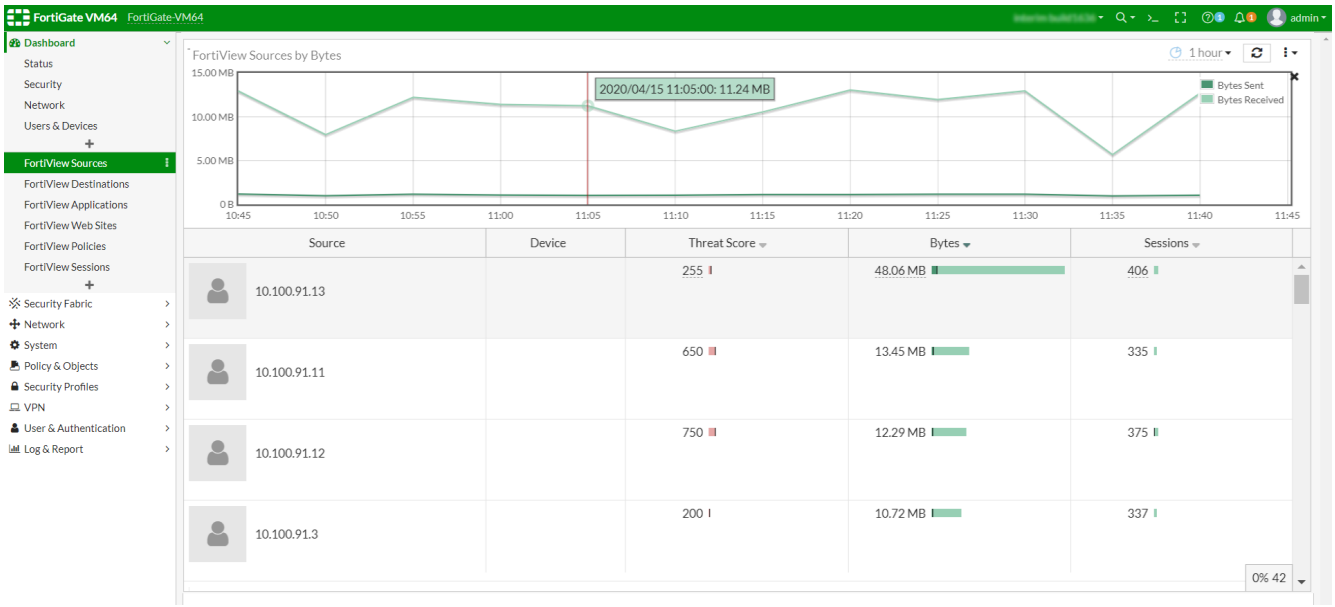
Use FortiView dashboards and widgets to investigate traffic activity such as user uploads and downloads, or videos watched on YouTube. You can view the traffic on the whole network, by user group or by individual. FortiView displays the information in both text and visual format, giving you an overall picture of your network traffic activity so that you can quickly decide on actionable items.

FortiView is integrated with many UTM functions and each release adds more features. For example, you can quarantine an IP address directly in FortiView or create custom devices and addresses from a FortiView entry.

The logging range and depth will depend on the FortiGate model.

FortiView monitors and widgets

FortiView dashboards and widgets are available in the tree menu under the *Dashboards* module. The module contains several core dashboards for the top categories. Non-core FortiView pages are available as widgets that can be added to the dashboards. You can also use non-core pages to create standalone monitors.



Core FortiView dashboards

The following core dashboards are available in the tree menu under the *Dashboard* console:

Dashboard	Usage
FortiView Sources	Displays Top Sources by traffic volume and drilldown by Source.
FortiView Destinations	Displays Top Destinations by traffic volume and drilldown by Destination.
FortiView Applications	Displays Top Applications by traffic volume and drilldown by Application.
FortiView Websites	Displays Top Websites by session count and drilldown by Domain.
FortiView Policies	Displays Top Policies by traffic volume and drilldown by Policy number
FortiView Sessions	Displays Top Sessions by traffic source and can be used to end sessions.

Usage is based on default settings. The pages may be customized further and sorted by other fields.



You can quarantine a host and ban an IP from all of the core FortiView monitors.

FortiView widgets

FortiView widgets allow you to create custom dashboards to monitor vulnerabilities, scan summaries, and top items from selected FortiView categories. You can also customize widgets to show information that is most important to you, such as the time range, source logging device, and other information. For information, see Adding FortiView widgets on page 103

Adding FortiView widgets

Non-core FortiView pages are available in the *Add Dashboard* window.You can add a FortiView widget to a dashboard or save the widget as a monitor.



You cannot add widgets to a core FortiView monitor.

To add a FortiView widget in the GUI:

1. In the tree menu, select a dashboard and click *Add Widget*.
2. In the *FortiView* section, click *Add* next to a widget. You can use the *Search* field to search for a specific widget or click *Show More* to view more widgets.
3. In the *Fabric member* area, click *Default* or *Specify* to select a FortiGate device in the security fabric.
4. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select the time period. This option is not available in all widgets.
5. In the *Visualization* area, select *Table View* or *Bubble Chart*.
6. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select the sorting method.
7. Click *Add Widget*.

Widgets by category

Usage is based on the default settings. The widgets may be customized further and sorted by other fields.

LAN/DMZ

Widget	Sort by	Usage
Applications	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top applications and drilldown by application.
Cloud Applications	Bytes/Sessions/Files(Up/Down)	Displays top cloud applications and drilldown by application .
Cloud Users	Bytes/Sessions/Files(Up/Down)	Displays top cloud users and drilldown by cloud user.
Compromised Hosts	Verdict	Displays compromised hosts and drilldown by source.
Countries/Regions	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top countries/regions and drilldown by countries/regions.
Destination Firewall Objects	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top destination firewall objects and drilldown by destination objects.
Destination Owners	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top destination owners and drilldown by destination.

Widget	Sort by	Usage
Destinations	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top destinations and drilldown by destination.
Search Phrases	Count	Displays top search phrases and drilldown by search phrase.
Source Firewall Objects	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top search phrases and drilldown by source object.
Sources	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top sources and drilldown by source.
Threats	Threat level/Threat Score/Sessions	Displays top threats and drilldown by threat.
Traffic Shaping	Dropped Bytes/Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top traffic shaping and drilldown by shaper.
Web Categories	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top web categories and drilldown by category.
Web Sites	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top web sites and drilldown by domain.
WiFi Clients	Bytes/Sessions	Displays top WiFi clients and drilldown by source.

WAN

Widget	Sort by	Usage
Servers	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top servers and drilldown by server address.
Sources	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top sources and drilldown by device.
Threats	Threat Level/Threat Score/Sessions	Displays top threats and drilldown by threat.

All Segments

Widget	Sort by	Usage
Admin Logins	Configuration Changes/Logins/Failed Logins	Displays top admin logins by username.
Destination Interfaces	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top destination interfaces by destination interface.
Endpoint Vulnerabilities	Severity	Displays top endpoint vulnerabilities by vulnerability name.
Failed Authentication	Failed Attempts	Displays top failed authentications by failed authentication source.
FortiSandbox Files	Submitted	Displays top FortiSandbox files by file name.

Widget	Sort by	Usage
Interface Pairs	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top interface pairs by source interface.
Policies	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top policies by policy.
Source Interfaces	Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets	Displays top source interfaces by source interface.
System Events	Level/Events	Displays top system events by event name.
VPN	Connections/Bytes	Displays top VPN connections by user.
Vulnerable Endpoint Devices	Detected Vulnerabilities	Displays top vulnerable endpoint devices by device.

A maximum of 25 interfaces can be monitored at one time on a device.

VDOMs and dashboards

Dashboards are created per VDOM when VDOM mode is enabled. Some features and widgets are not available depending on Multi or Split-task VDOM mode.

Multi-VDOM mode

The following widgets and dashboard setting are not available Multi-VDOM mode because it does not support Security Fabric:

- Security Fabric related widgets
- *FortiGate Selection* option

Split-task mode

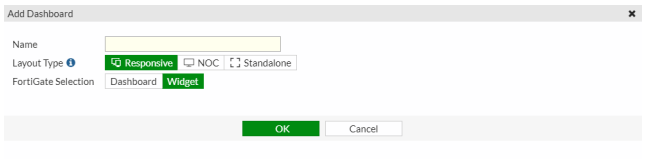
Split-task VDOM mode is limited to two VDOMs, the root VDOM and the FortiGate traffic VDOM. The root VDOM is for all management related settings and the FortiGate traffic VDOM is for all traffic related settings.

The *FortiGate Selection* option is available when you create a dashboard in Split-Task VDOM mode.

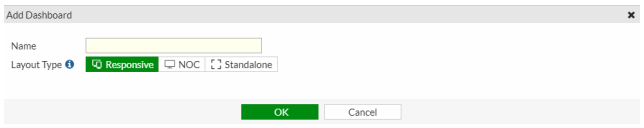
For information about VDOM modes, see Virtual Domains on page 904.

Examples

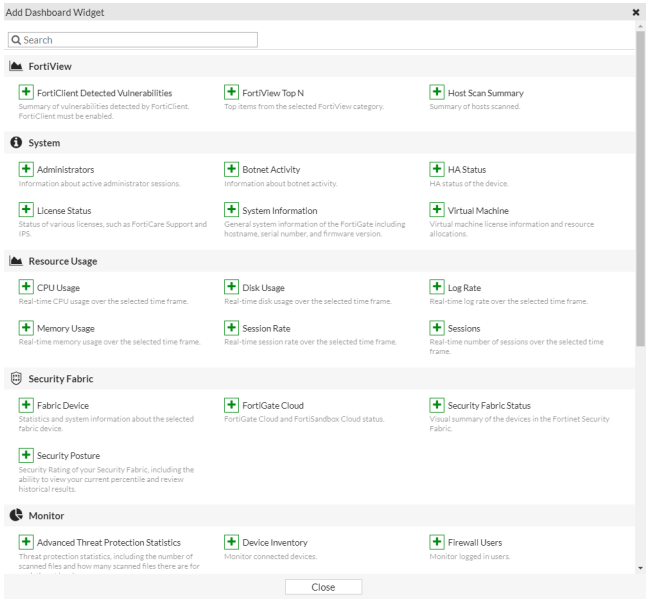
When VDOM mode is disabled, the *FortiGate Selection* option is available in the *Add Dashboard* window:



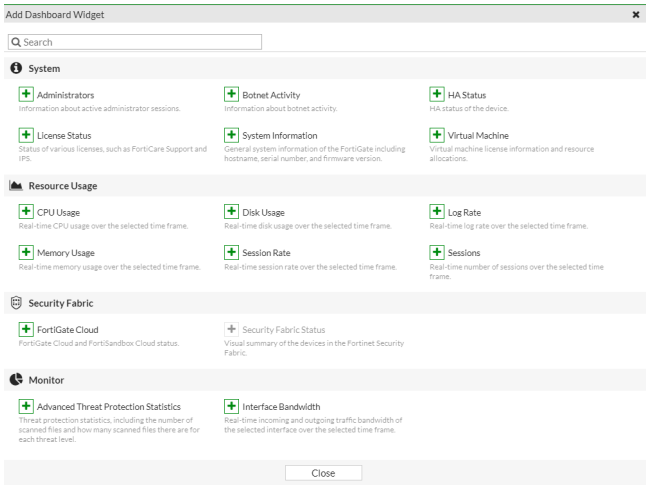
When Multi-VDOM mode is enabled, the *FortiGate Selection* is not available in the *Add Dashboard* window:



When Multi-VDOM mode is disabled, all the widgets in the *Add Dashboard Widget* menu are enabled:



When Multi-VDOM mode is enabled, the *Security Fabric Status* widget is disabled:



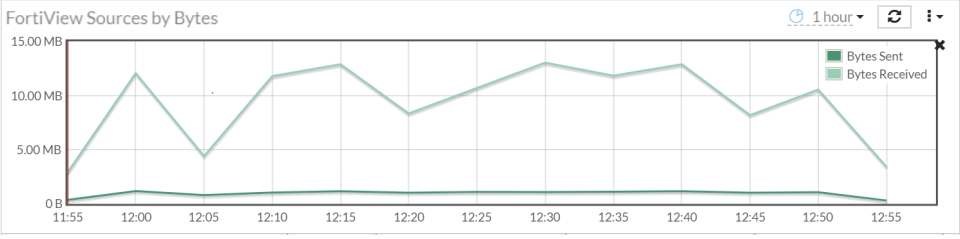
FortiView interface

Use the FortiView interface to customize the view and visualizations within a dashboard to find the information you are looking for. The tools in the top menu bar allow you to change the time display, refresh the data, customize the data source, and filter the results. You can also right-click a table in the dashboard to view drilldown information for an entry.

Top menu bar

The top menu bar contains the following settings:

- A *time display* dropdown to switch between current and historical data.
- A *Refresh* button to update the displayed data.
- A *Settings* dropdown to change the information shown on the dashboard.

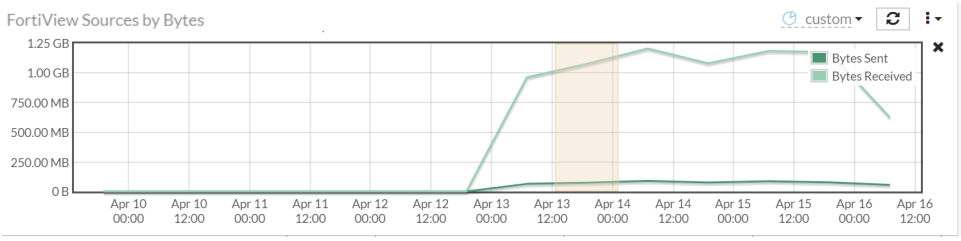


Time period display

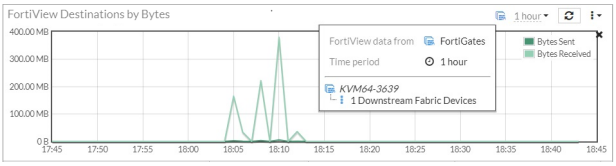
Use the *time display* dropdown to select the time period to display on the current dashboard. Time display options vary depending on the dashboard and can include current information (*now*) and historical information (*1 hour*, *24 hours*, and *7 days*).

Disk logging or remote logging must be enabled to view historical information.

You can use a chart to create a custom time display by selecting the time range with your cursor.



The icon next to the time period identifies the data source (FortiGate Disk, FortiAnalyzer, or FortiGate Cloud). You can hover over the icon to see a description of the device.

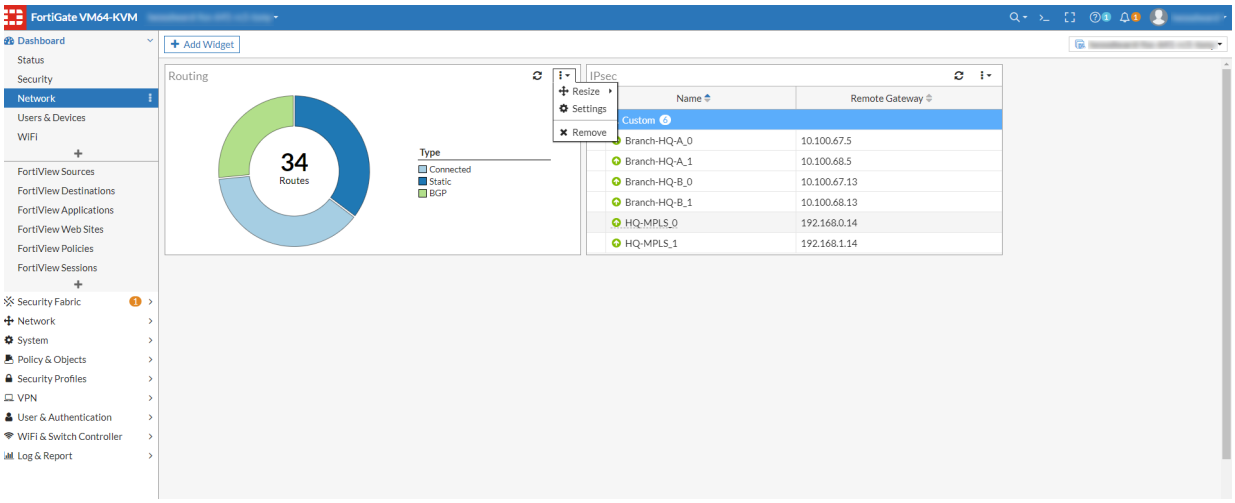


View settings

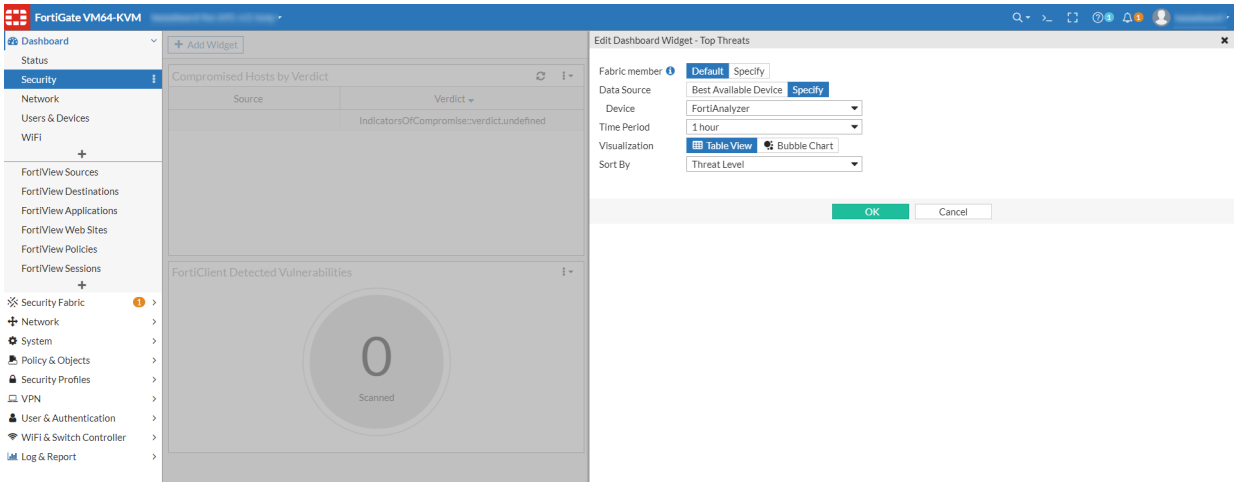
Use the *Settings* menu to change the data source, sort by information, and visualization.

To change the widget settings:

1. Click the dropdown menu at the right side of the top menu bar, and select *Settings*.



2. Configure the widget settings, and click *OK*.



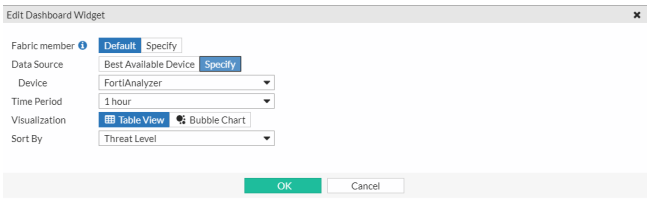
The *Data Source* dropdown only appears when FortiGate is connected to another data source.

For information about widget settings, see Adding FortiView widgets on page 103

For dashboards with multiple widgets, you cannot access the settings dropdown when the widget is expanded to full screen. To change the settings, click the back button to return to the dashboard, and click the dropdown.

Data source

FortiView gathers information from a variety of data sources. If there are no log disk or remote logging configured, the data will be drawn from the FortiGate's session table, and the *Time Period* is set to *Now*.



Other data sources that can be configured are:

- FortiGates (disk)
- FortiAnalyzer
- FortiGate Cloud

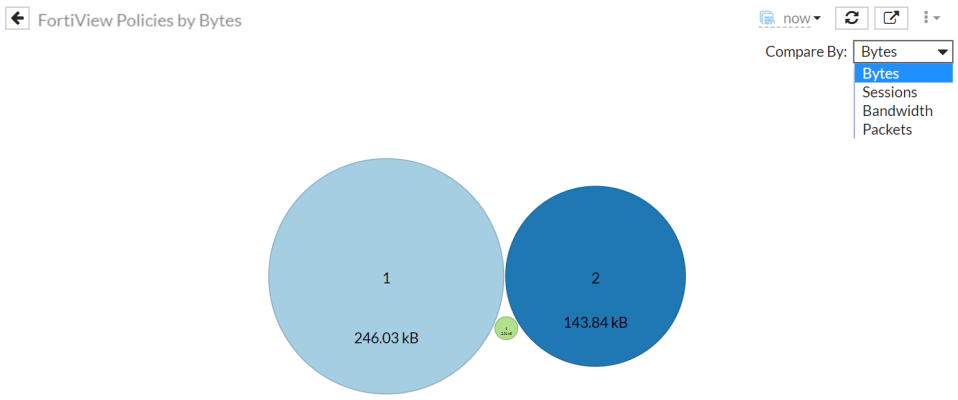
When *Data Source* is set to *Best Available Device*, FortiAnalyzer is selected when available, then FortiGate Cloud, and then FortiGate Disk.

Display types

Bubble charts

Display types include table view, bubble charts, and country maps. Not all display types are supported by all dashboards.

Bubble charts allow you to sort information using the *Compare By* dropdown menu. The size of each bubble represents the related amount of data. You can place your cursor over a bubble to display a tool-tip with detailed information on that item, and click on a bubble to drilldown into greater detail.



Country maps

Country maps display traffic activity as regions on a map. Hover over the highlighted region to view information about the entry. You can also compare data by *Bytes*, *Sessions*, *Bandwidth*, and *Packets*. Country maps are not available in all dashboards and widgets.

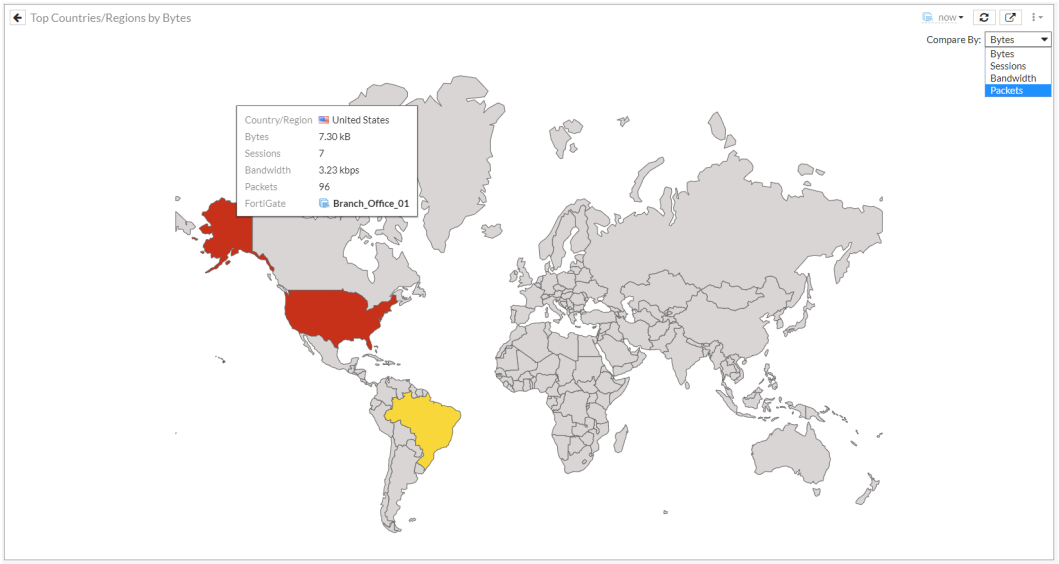
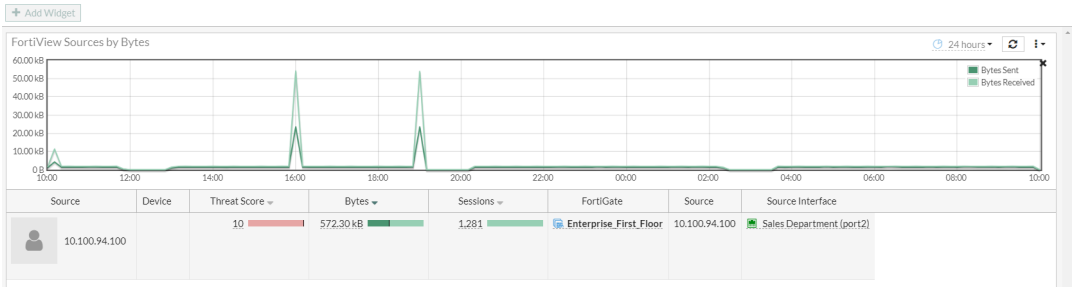


Table view

Table view displays traffic activity as a graph and a table. To remove the table, click close, at the top right corner of the graph. To view the graph, click *Show Graph*.

Source view

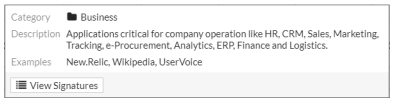


Time	• *Now* entries are determined by the FortiGate's system session list. • Historical or *1 hour* or later entries are determined by traffic logs, with additional information coming from UTM logs. The dropdown only shows *now* if there is no disk.
Graph	• The graph shows the bytes sent/received in the time frame. • Users can customize the time frame by selecting a time period within the graph.
Columns	• *Source* shows the IP address (and user as well as user avatar if configured) of the source device. • *Device* shows the device information as listed in the *Device Inventory* widget. Device detection should be enabled on the applicable interfaces for best function. For

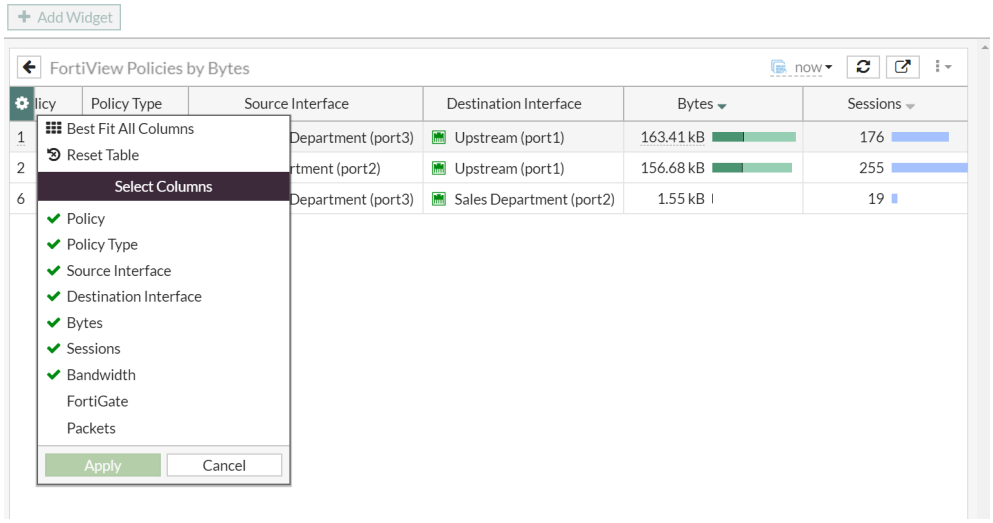
information about adding widgets, see Using widgets on page 79.

- *Threat Score* is the threat score of the source based on UTM features such as Web Filter and antivirus. It shows threat scores allowed and threat scores blocked.
- *Bytes* is the accumulated bytes sent/received. In realtime, this is calculated from the session list, and in historical it is from logs.
- *Sessions* is the total sessions blocked/allowed. In realtime, this is calculated from the session list, and in historical it is from logs.
- *Source* is a simplified version of the first column, including only the IP address without extra information.
- *Source Interface* is the interface from which the traffic originates. In realtime, this is calculated from the session list, and in historical it is from the logs.
- *FortiGate* is the name of the fabric device.
- More information can be shown in a tooltip while hovering over these entries.
- For realtime, two more columns are available, *Bandwidth* and *Packets*, both of which come from the session list.

Hover over linked items in an entry to view additional information. Some information windows provide links to other areas of FortiOS such as the application signatures page.



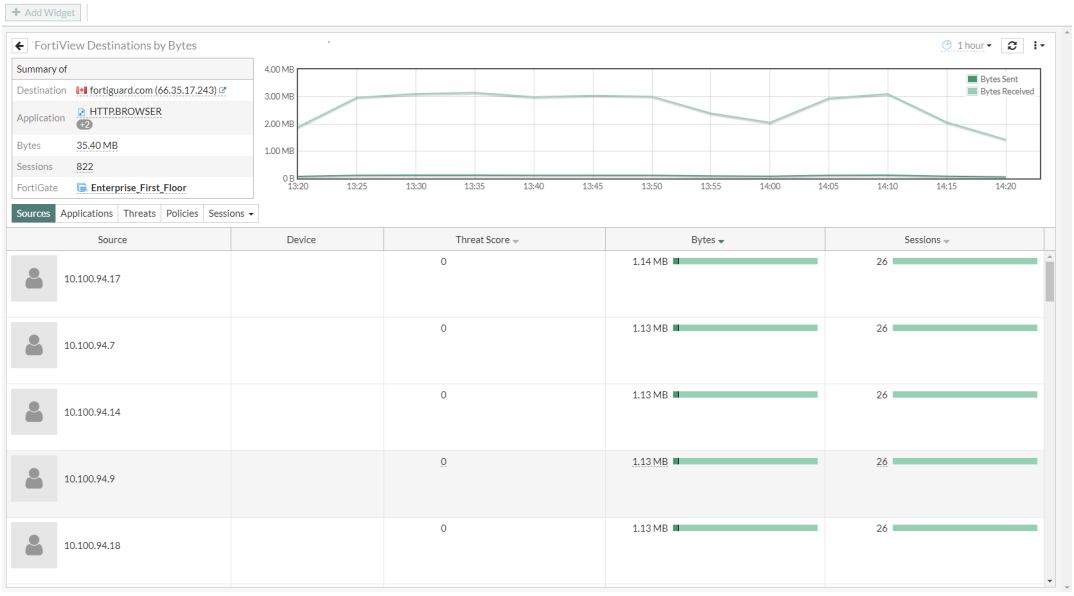
To select the columns displayed in a table, hover over the header in the first column, and click the *configure table* icon.



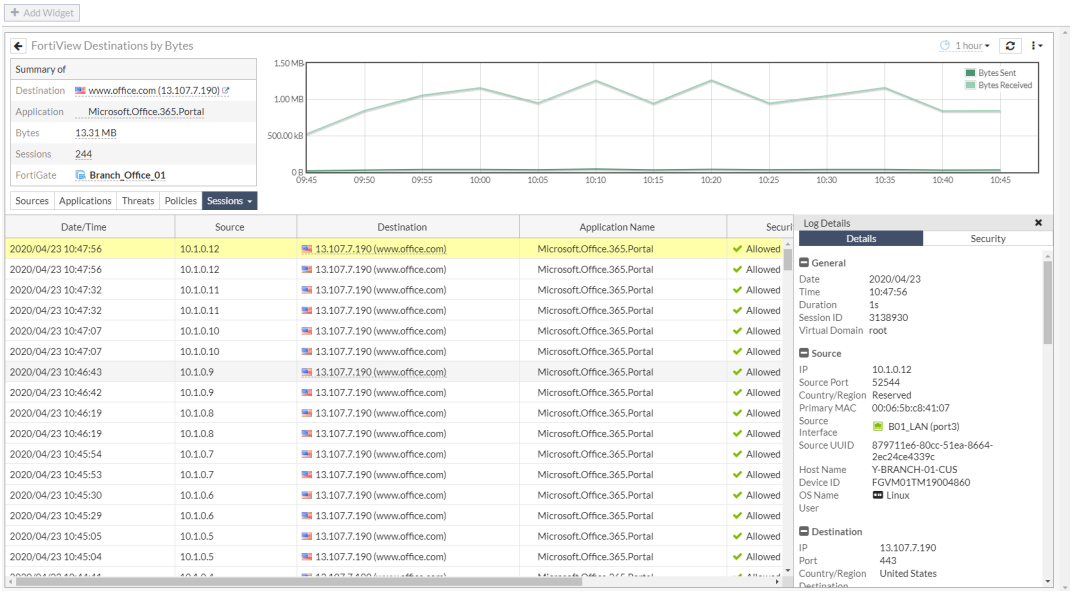
Drilldown information

Double-click or right-click an entry in a FortiView dashboard and select *Drill Down to Details* to view additional details about the selected traffic activity. Click the *Back* icon in the toolbar to return to the previous view.

You can group drilldown information into different drilldown views. For example, you can group the drilldown information in the *Top* FortiView Destinations dashboard by *Sources*, *Applications*, *Threats*, and *Policies*.



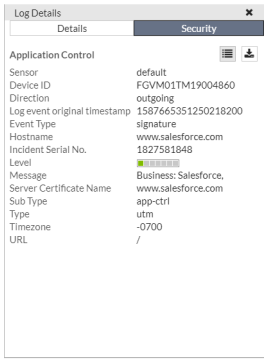
Double-click an entry to view the logs in *Sessions* view. Double-click a session to view the logs.



Graph	• The graph shows the bytes sent/received in the time frame. Realtime does not include a chart. • Users can customize the time frame by selecting a time period within the graph.
Summary Information	• Shows information such as the user/avatar, avatar/source IP, bytes, and sessions total for the time period. • Can quarantine host (access layer quarantine) if they are behind a FortiSwitch or FortiAP. • Can ban IP addresses, adds the source IP address into the quarantine list.
Tabs	• Drilling down entries in any of these tabs (except sessions tab) will take you to the underlying traffic log in the sessions tab.

- *Applications* shows a list of the applications attributed to the source IP. This can include scanned applications (using Application Control in a firewall policy or unscanned applications.
  ```
  config log gui-display
     set fortiview-unscanned-apps enable
  end
  ```
- *Destinations* shows destinations grouped by IP address/FQDN.
- *Threats* lists the threats caught by UTM profiles. This can be from antivirus, IPS, Web Filter, Application Control, etc.
- *Web Sites* contains the websites which were detected either with webfilter, or through FQDN in traffic logs.
- *Web Categories* groups entries into their categories as dictated by the Web Filter Database.
- *Policies* groups the entries into which polices they passed through or were blocked by.
- *Sessions* shows the underlying logs (historical) or sessions (realtime). Drilldowns from other tabs end up showing the underlying log located in this tab.
- *Search Phrases* shows entries of search phrases on search engines captured by a Web Filter UTM profile, with deep inspection enabled in firewall policy.
- More information can be shown in a tooltip while hovering over these entries.

To view matching logs or download a log, click the *Security* tab in the *Log Details* .



FortiView from disk

FortiView from disk is available on all FortiGates with an SSD disk.

Restrictions

Model	Supported view
Desktop models (100 series) with SSD	Five minutes and one hour
Medium models with SSD	Up to 24 hours
Large models (1500D and above) with SSD	Up to seven days To enable seven days view:

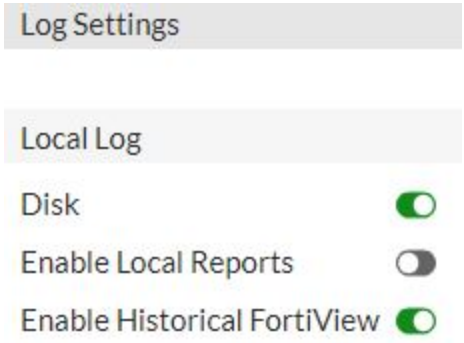
Model	Supported view
	config log setting set fortiview-weekly-data enable end

Configuration

A firewall policy needs to be in place with traffic logging enabled. For optimal operation with FortiView, internal interface roles should be clearly defined as LAN. DMZ and internet facing or external interface roles should be defined as WAN.

To configure logging to disk in the GUI:

1. Enable disk logging from the FortiGate GUI.
   a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* > *Local Traffic Log*.
   b. Select the checkbox next to *Disk*.
2. Enable historical FortiView from the FortiGate GUI.
   a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* > *Local Traffic Log*.
   b. Select the checkbox next to *Enable Historical FortiView*.



3. Click *Apply*.

To include sniffer traffic and local-deny traffic when FortiView from Disk:

```
config report setting
   set report-source forward-traffic sniffer-traffic local-deny-traffic
end
```

This feature is only supported through the CLI.

To configure the data source in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources*.
2. Select a time range other than *now* from the drop-down list to view historical data.
3. In the top menu, click the dropdown, and select *Settings*. The *Edit Dashboard Widget* window opens.
   a. In the *Data Source* area, click *Specify*.
   b. From the dropdown, select *Disk*, then click *OK*.
   For information see, FortiView interface on page 106.

Troubleshooting

Use `execute report flush-cache` and `execute report recreate-db` to clear up any irregularities that may be caused by upgrading or cache issues.

FortiView from FortiAnalyzer

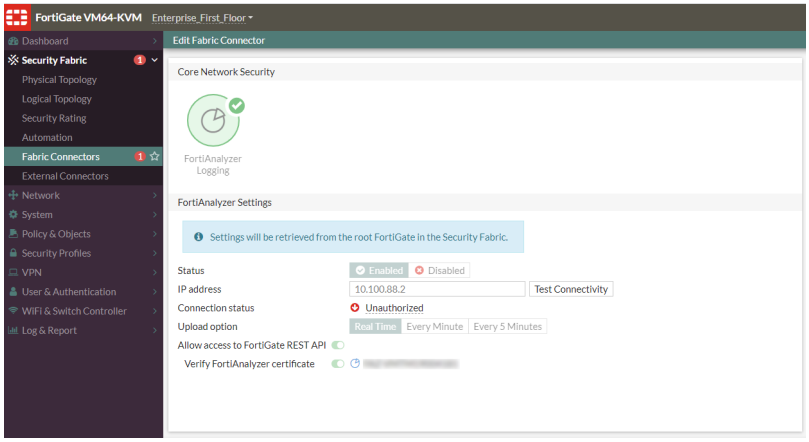
Attach a FortiAnalyzer to FortiGate to increase the functionality of FortiView. Adding a FortiAnalyzer is useful when adding widgets such as the *Compromised Hosts* widget. It also allows historical view for up to seven days.

Requirements

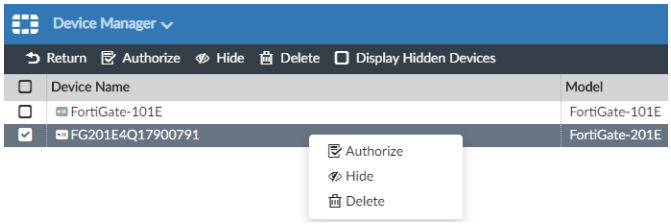
- A FortiGate or FortiOS
- A compatible FortiAnalyzer (see Compatibility with FortiOS)

To configure logging to the FortiAnalyzer:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
2. Enter the IP address of the FortiAnalyzer device.
3. Click *Test Connectivity*. A message will be shown stating that the FortiGate is not authorized on the FortiAnalyzer.

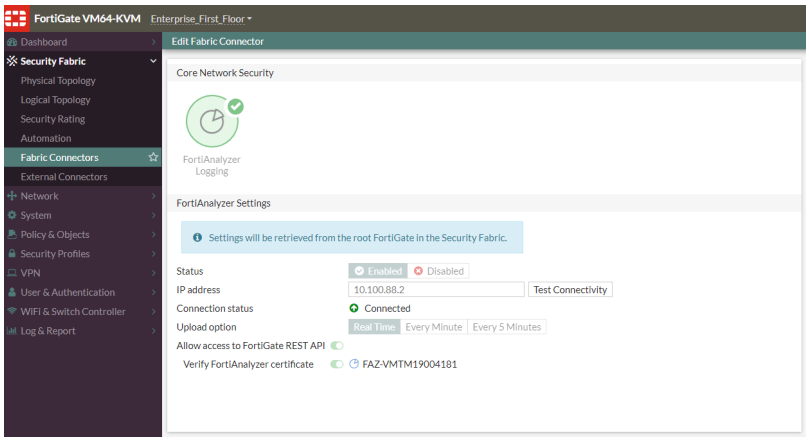


4. On the FortiAnalyzer, go to *Device Manager*, and click the *Unauthorized* tab.
5. In the device list, right-click the FortiGate, then click *Authorize*.



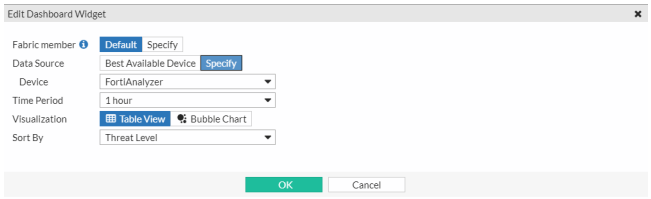
6. On FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.

7. Click *Test Connectivity* to confirm that the device is now authorized.



To enable FortiView from FortiAnalyzer:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources*.
2. Select a time range other than *now* from the drop-down list to view historical data.
3. In top menu, click the dropdown, and select *Settings*. The *Edit Dashboard Widget* window opens.
   a. In the *Data Source* area, click *Specify*.
   b. From the dropdown, select *FortiAnalyzer*, and click *OK*.



All the historical information now comes from the FortiAnalyzer.

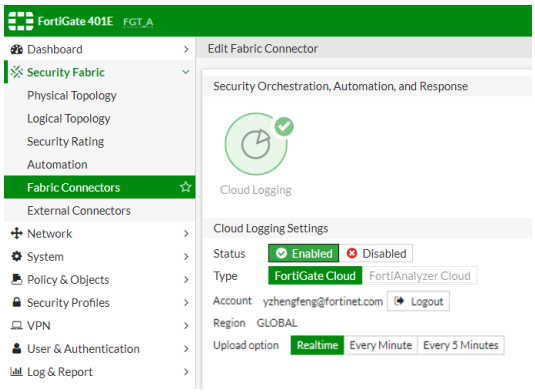
When *Data Source* is set to *Best Available Device*, FortiAnalyzer is selected when available, then FortiGate Cloud, and then FortiGate Disk.

FortiView from FortiGate Cloud

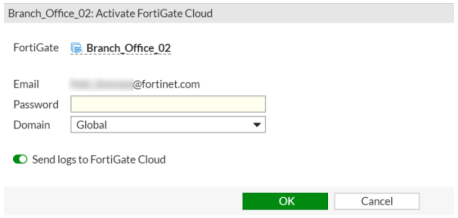
This function requires a FortiGate that is registered and logged into a compatible FortiGate Cloud. When using FortiGate Cloud, the Time Period can be set to up to 24 hours.

To configure logging to FortiGate Cloud:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and double-click the *Cloud Logging* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enabled*.
3. For *Type*, click *FortiGate Cloud*.
   If the FortiGate is registered and logged into FortiGate Cloud, the *Account* and *Region* is displayed.



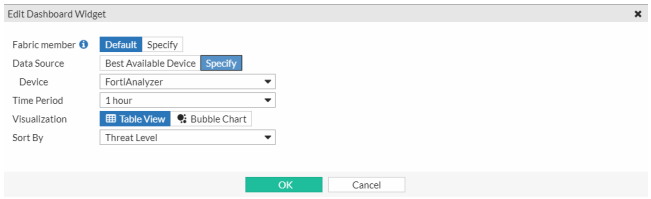
If the FortiGate is logged out from FortiGate Cloud, click *Activate* and log in, and ensure *Send logs to FortiGate Cloud* is selected.



4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* and set the following:
   a. Set *Event Logging* to *All*.
   b. Set *Local Traffic Log* to *All*.
   c. Click *Apply*.

To enable FortiView with log source as FortiGate Cloud:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources*.
2. In the top menu, click the dropdown, and select *Settings*. The *Edit Dashboard Widget* window opens.
   a. In the *Data Source* area, click *Specify*.
   b. From the dropdown, select *FortiGate Cloud*, then click *OK*.





You can select FortiGate Cloud as the data source for all available FortiView pages and widgets.

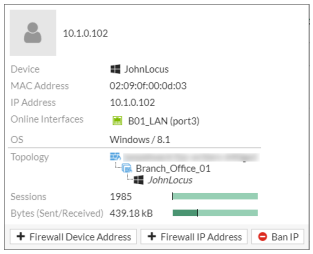
FortiView sources

The *FortiView Sources* dashboard displays top sources sorted by Bytes, Sessions or Threat Score. The information can be displayed in real time or historical views. You can use the dashboard to create or edit a firewall device address or

IP address definitions, and temporarily or permanently ban IPs.

To add a firewall device address:

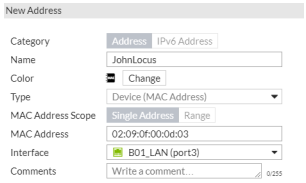
1. In the *Device* column, hover over the device MAC address. An information window opens.



2. Click *Firewall Device Address*. The *New Address* window opens.
3. Configure the address settings, and click *Return*.

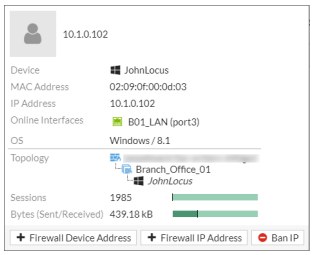


Use the *Name* field to assign a descriptive name to a device so it is easier to find it in the *Device* column. After you finish configuring the device, refresh the page to see the new name in the dashboard.



To add a firewall IP address:

1. In the *Device* column, hover over the device MAC address. An information window opens.

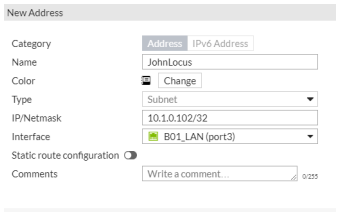


2. Click *Firewall IP Address*. The *New Address* window opens.

3. Configure the address settings, and click *Return*.

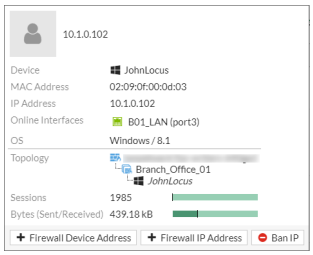


Use the *Name* field to assign a descriptive name to a device so it is easier to find it in the *Device* column. After you finish configuring the device, refresh the page to see the new name in the dashboard.

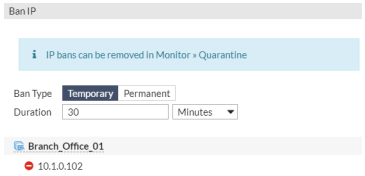


To ban an IP address:

1. In the *Device* column, hover over the device MAC address. An information window opens.



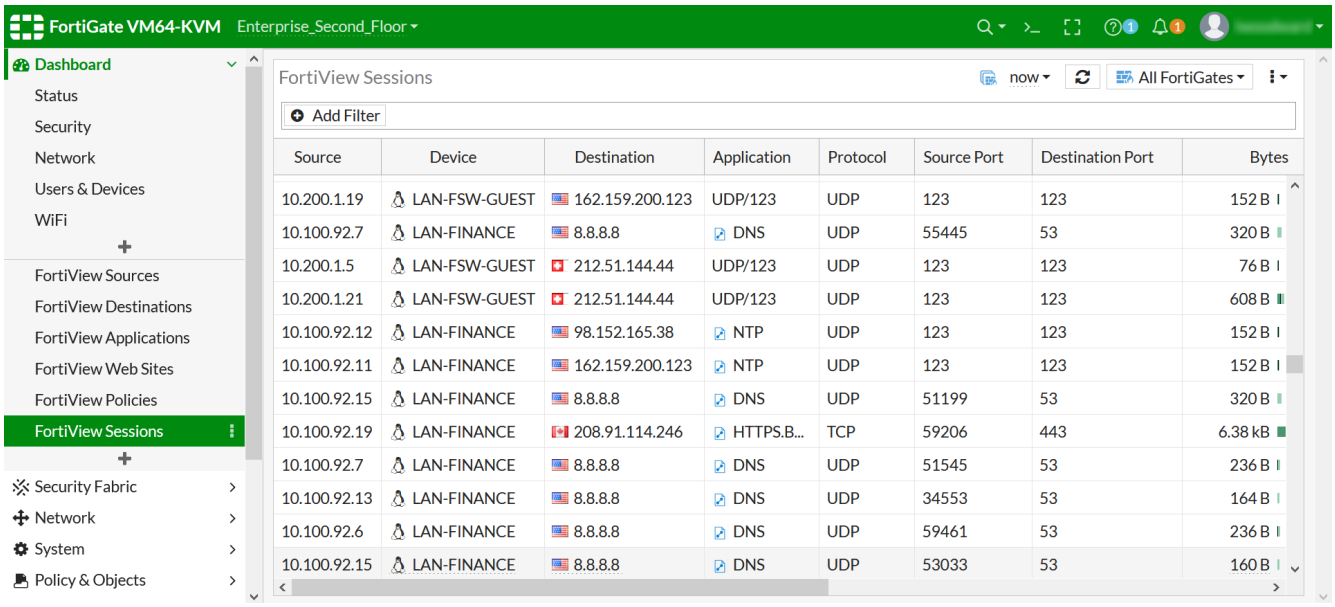
2. Click *Ban IP* . The *Ban IP* window opens.
3. Configure the ban IP settings, and click *OK*.



FortiView Sessions

The *FortiView Sessions* dashboard is one of the core FortiView dashboards available in FortiOS. It displays *Top Sessions* by traffic source and can be used to end sessions. You may customize the dashboard as per your needs by using the sort and filter capabilities.

To view the *FortiView Sessions* dashboard, go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sessions*.

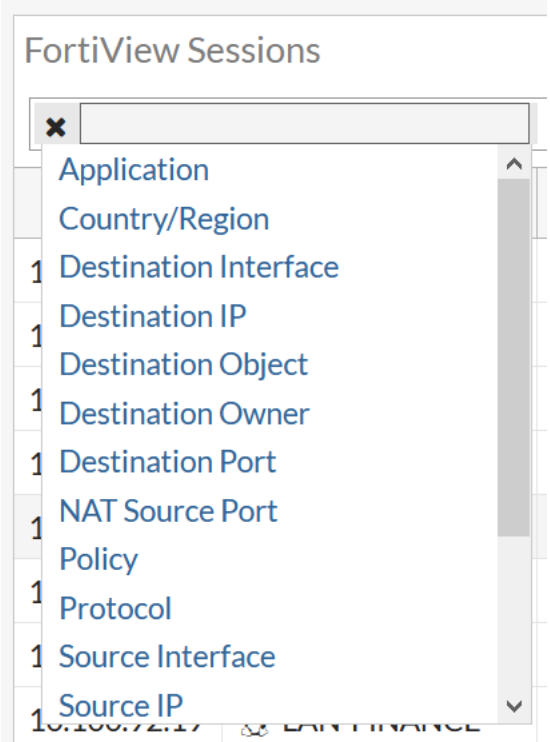


The session table displayed on the *FortiView Sessions* dashboard is useful when verifying open connections. For example, if you have a web browser open to browse the Fortinet website, you would expect a session entry from your computer on port 80 to the IP address for the Fortinet website. You can also use a session table to investigate why there are too many sessions for FortiOS to process.

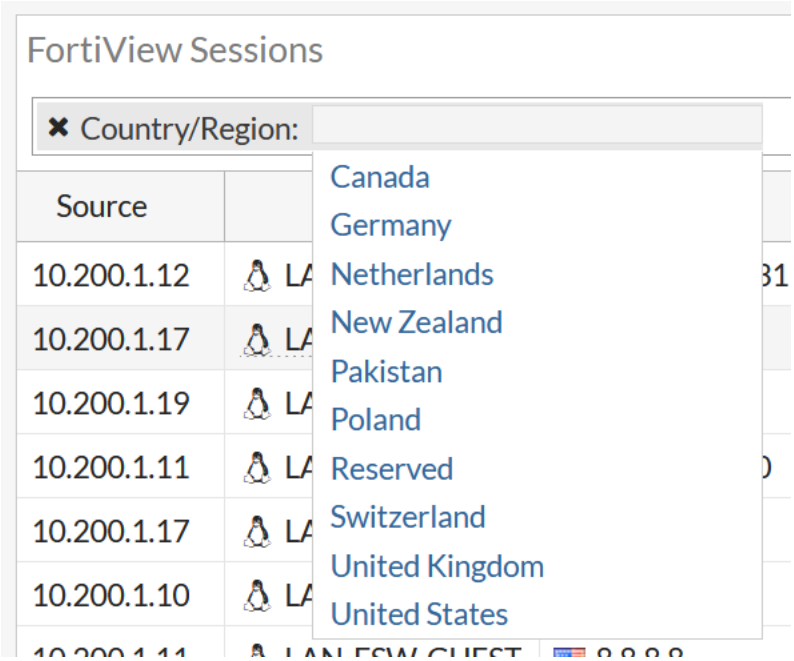
You can filter the sessions displayed in the session table by setting up the available filtering options.

To filter sessions in the session table:

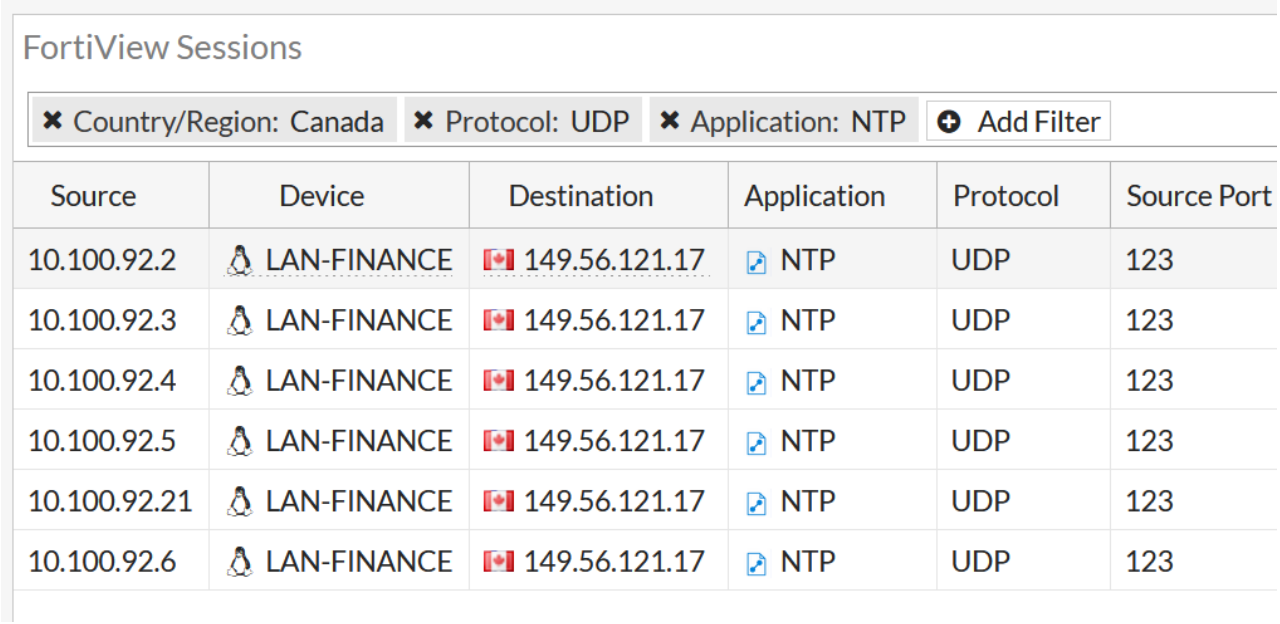
1. Click on the *Add Filter* button at the top of the session table. A list of selectable filtering options drops down.



2. Select the required filtering option. For example you may select *Country/Region*, and select a country from the list of countries. The session table updates as per the selected country.



3. You may add one or more filters depending upon your requirements. To add more filters, repeat the above steps for a different set of filters.



You can be really specific with the way you use filters and target sessions based on different filter combinations. For example, you may want to view all sessions from a computer with a particular IP, and you can do that by adding the *Source IP* filter. Similarly, you may need to target all the sessions having a particular *Destination IP* and *Destination Port*, and so on.

You may also see the session data in the CLI.

To view session data using the CLI:

```
# diagnose sys session list
```

The session table output in the CLI is very large. You can use the supported filters in the CLI to show only the data you need.

To view session data with filters using the CLI:

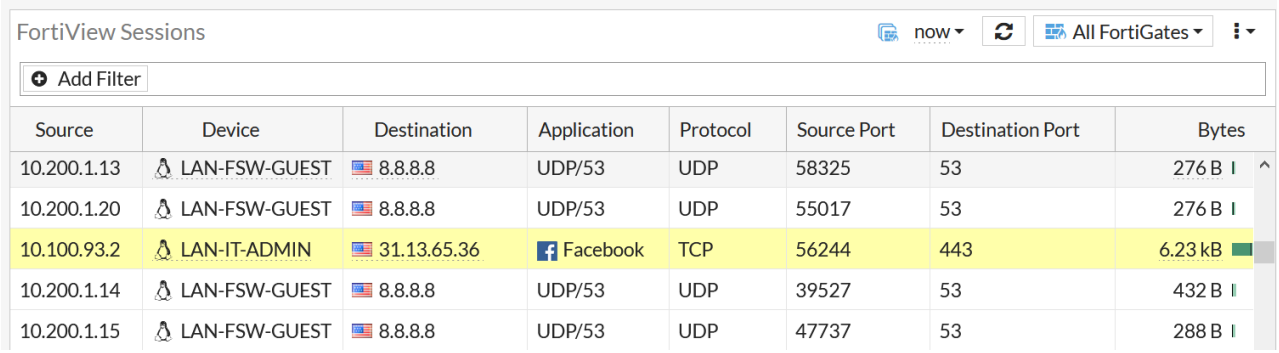
```
# diagnose sys session filter <option>
```

See Using a session table on page 2168 to learn more about using the supported filters in the CLI.

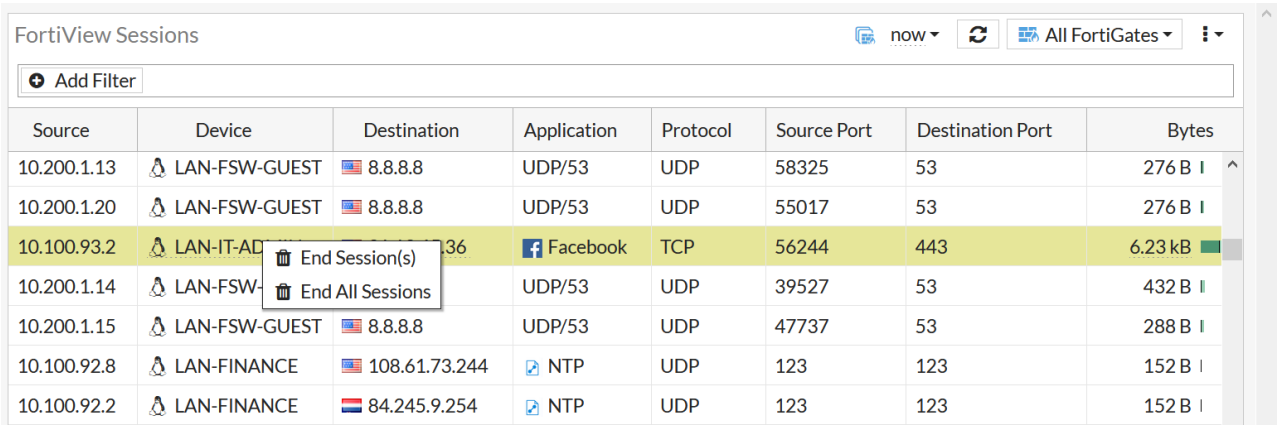
You may also decide to end a particular session or all sessions for administrative purposes.

To end sessions from the GUI:

1. Select a session that you want to end by clicking on it. To select multiple sessions, hold the *Ctrl* or *Shift* key on your keyboard while clicking the session entries in the table.

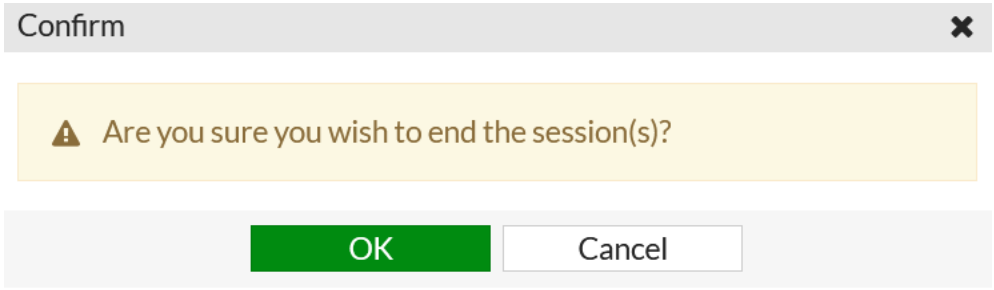


2. Right-click on the selected sessions you want to end. A menu with options appears.



3. Click on *End Session(s)* to end the selected sessions, or *End All Sessions* to end all the active sessions.

4. Click *OK* in the confirmation dialog. The selected sessions are now ended.

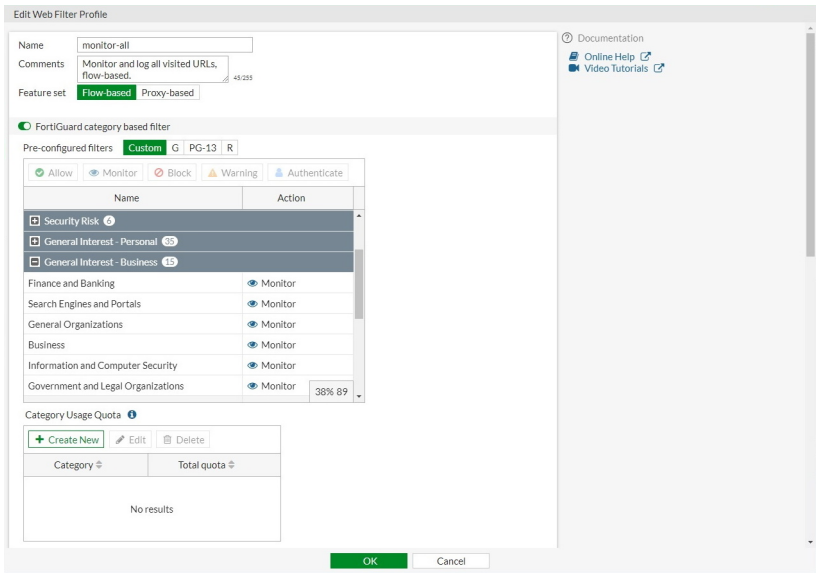


Viewing top websites and sources by category

You can use FortiGuard web categories to populate the category fields in various FortiView pages such as *FortiView Web Categories*, *FortiView Websites* or *FortiView Sources*. To view the categories in a dashboard, the web filter profile must be configured to at least monitor for FortiGuard category based filter, and applied to a firewall policy for outbound traffic.

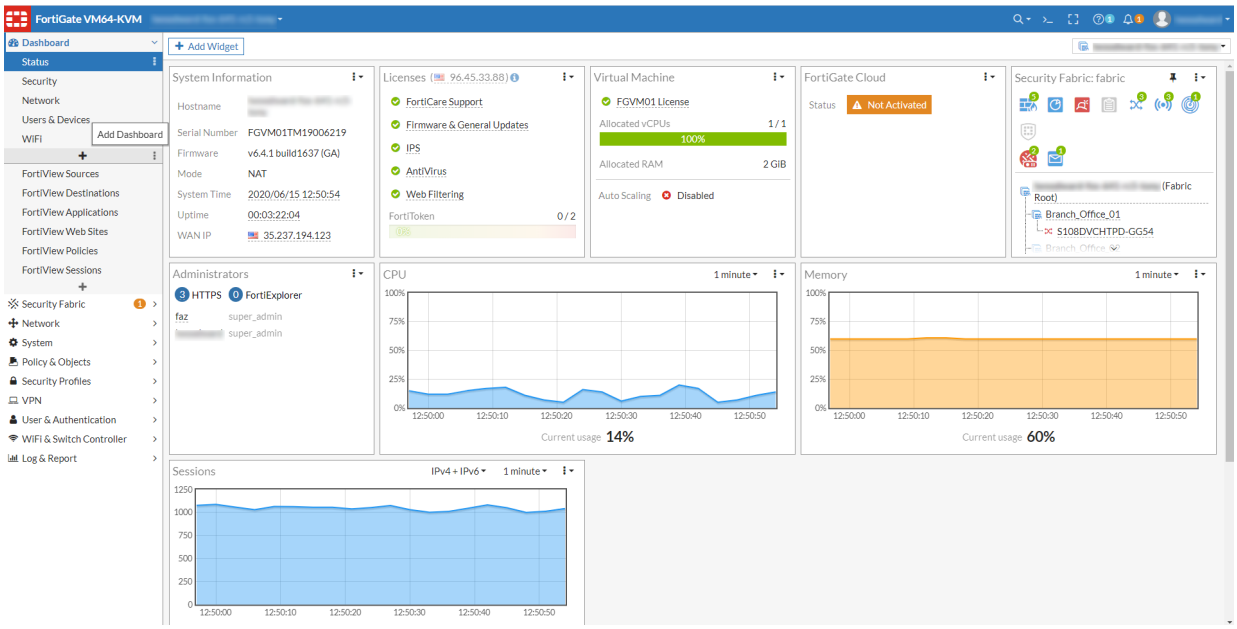
To verify the web filter profile is monitor-only:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Double-click a web filter that is applied to an outbound traffic firewall policy. The *Edit Web Filter Profile* window opens.
3. Ensure *FortiGuard category based filter* is enabled.
   In the image below, the *General Interest - Business* categories are monitor-only.



To create a Web categories dashboard:

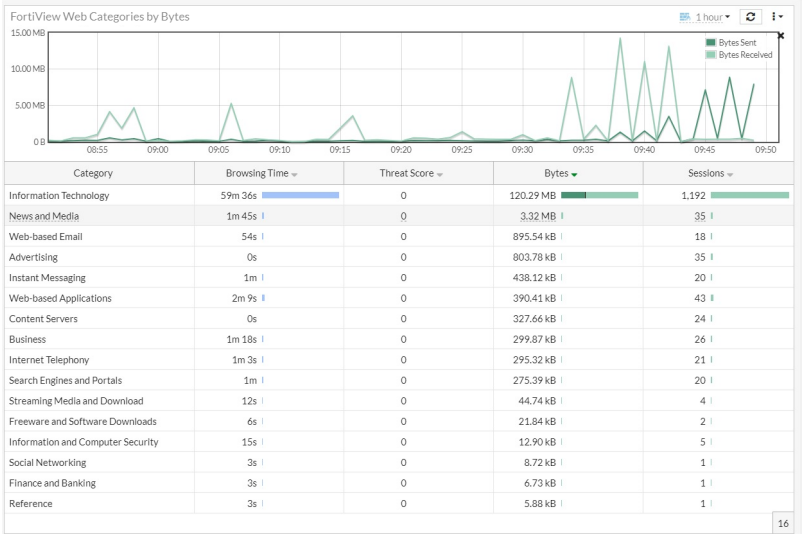
1. Under *Dashboard*, click *Add Dashboard*. The *Add Dashboard* window opens.



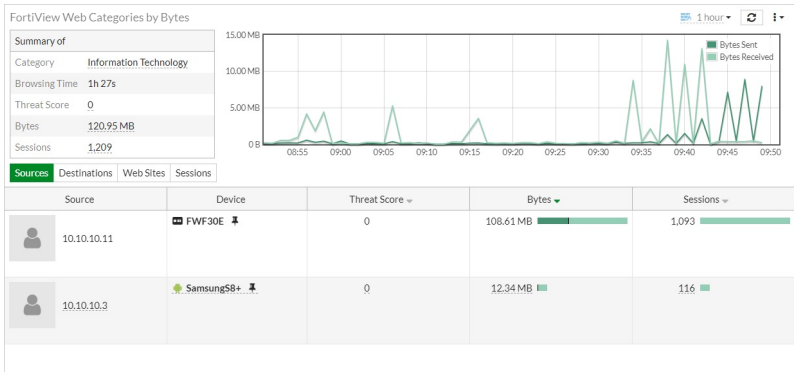
2. In the *Name* field, enter a name such as *FortiView Web Categories* and click *OK*. The new dashboard opens.
3. In the banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
4. In the *Search* field, type *FortiView Web Categories* and click the *Add* button next to the widget name.
5. In the *Fabric Member* area, click *Default* or *Specify* to select a device in the security fabric.
6. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select a time period greater than *Now*.
7. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select *Bytes*, *Sessions*, *Bandwidth*, or *Packets*.
8. Click *Add Widget*. The widget is added to the dashboard.

Viewing the web filter category

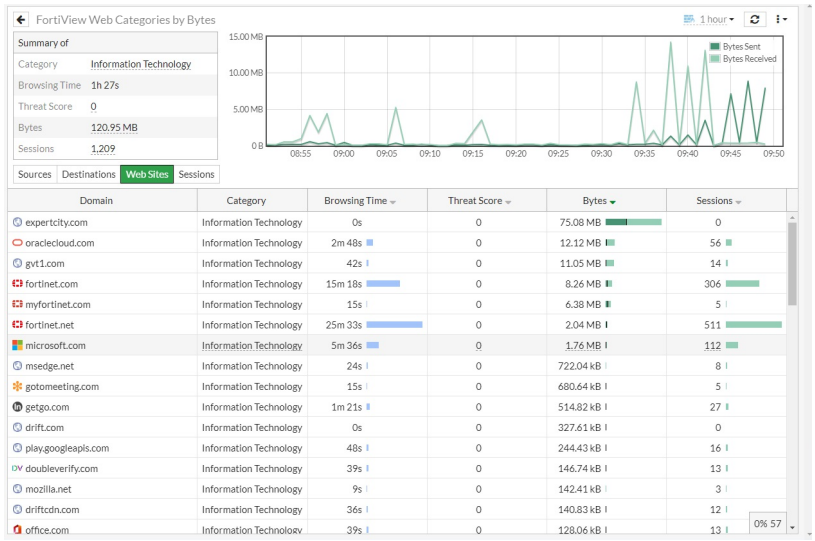
The web filter category name appears in the *Category* column of the dashboard.



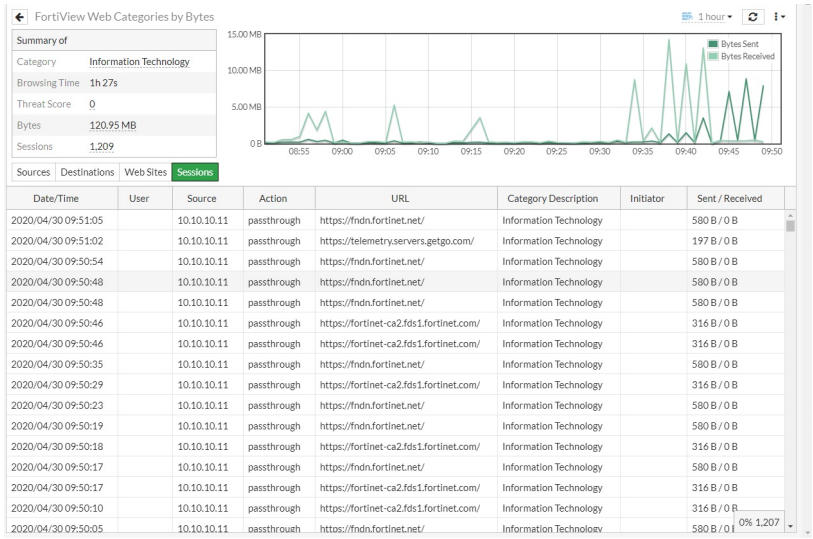
Click an entry in the table. The category name appears at the top of *Summary of* box.



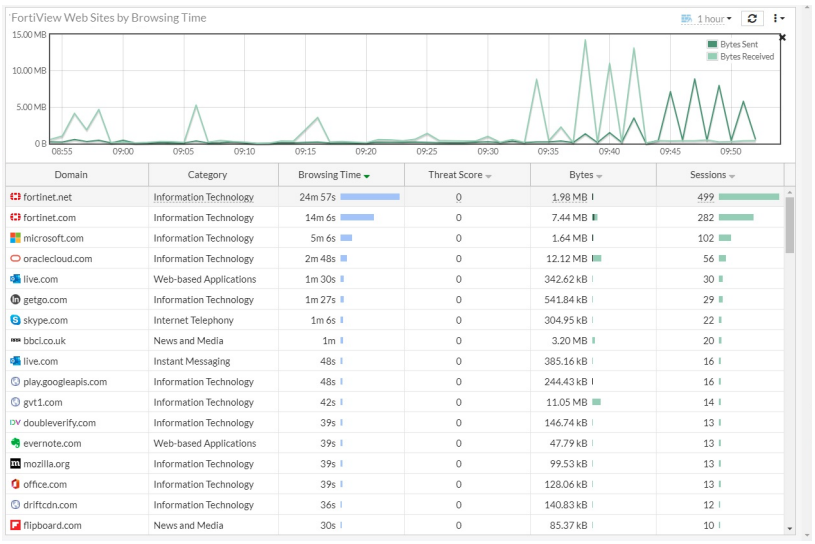
Click the *Web Sites* tab. The category name appears in the *Category* column.



Click the *Sessions* tab. The category name appears in the *Category Description* column.



The category name also appears in the *Category* column in the *FortiView Websites* and *FortiView Sources* dashboards.



Cloud application view

To see different cloud application views, set up the following:

- A FortiGate with a firewall policy that uses the *Application Control* security profile.
- A FortiGate with log data from the local disk or FortiAnalyzer.
- Optional but highly recommended: *SSL Inspection* set to *deep-inspection* in the related firewall policies.

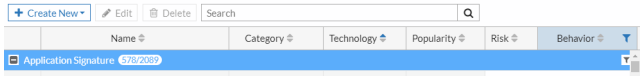
Viewing cloud applications

Cloud applications

All cloud applications require *SSL Inspection* set to *deep-inspection* on the firewall policy. For example, `Facebook_File.Download` can monitor Facebook download behavior which requires *SSL deep-inspection* to parse the deep information in the network packets.

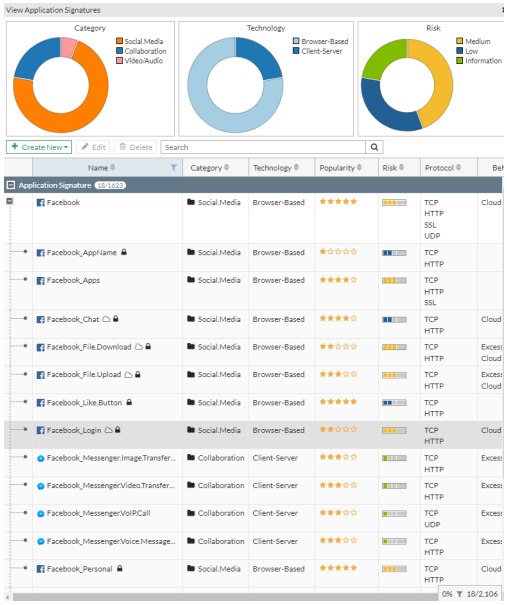
To view cloud applications:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Select a relative Application Control profile used by the firewall policy and click *Edit*.
3. On the *Edit Application Sensor* page, click *View Application Signatures*.
4. Hover over a column heading or the *Application Signature* bar. In the right gutter area, click the filter icon to filter the applications.

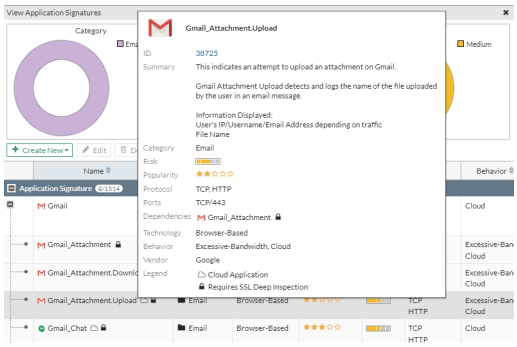


Cloud applications have a cloud icon beside them.

The lock icon indicates that the application requires SSL deep inspection.



5. Hover over an item to see its details.
   This example shows *Gmail_Attachment.Download*, a cloud application signature based sensor which requires SSL deep inspection. If any local network user behind the firewall logs into Gmail and downloads a Gmail attachment, that activity is logged.



Applications with cloud behavior

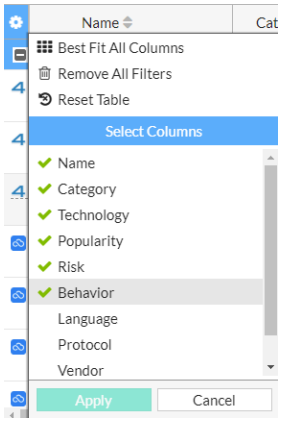
Applications with cloud behavior is a superset of cloud applications.

Some applications do not require SSL deep inspection, such as Facebook, Gmail, and YouTube. This means that if any traffic trigger application sensors for these applications, there is a FortiView cloud application view for that traffic.

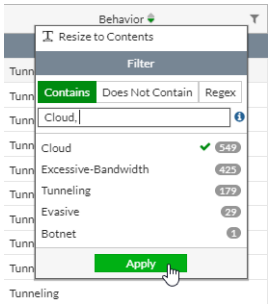
Other applications require SSL deep inspection, such as Gmail attachment, Facebook_Workplace, and so on.

To view applications with cloud behavior:

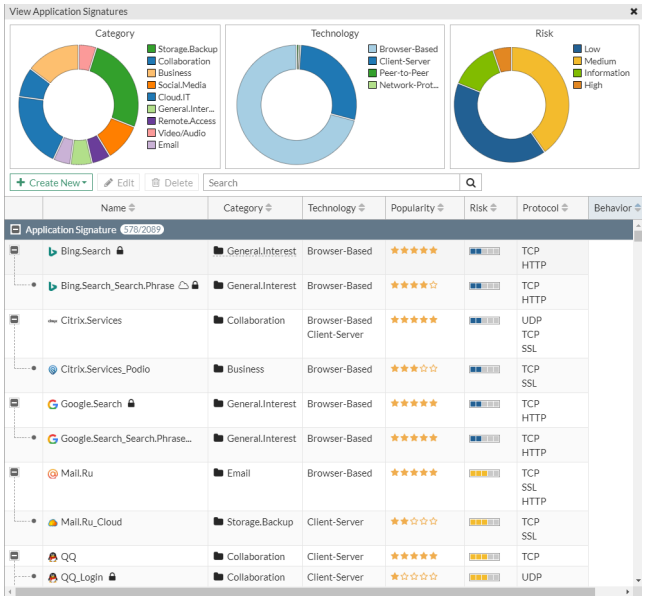
1. In the *Application Signature* page, ensure the *Behavior* column is displayed. If necessary, add the *Behavior* column.
   a. Hover over the left side of the table column headings to display the *Configure Table* icon.
   b. Click *Configure Table* and select *Behavior*.
   c. Click *Apply*.



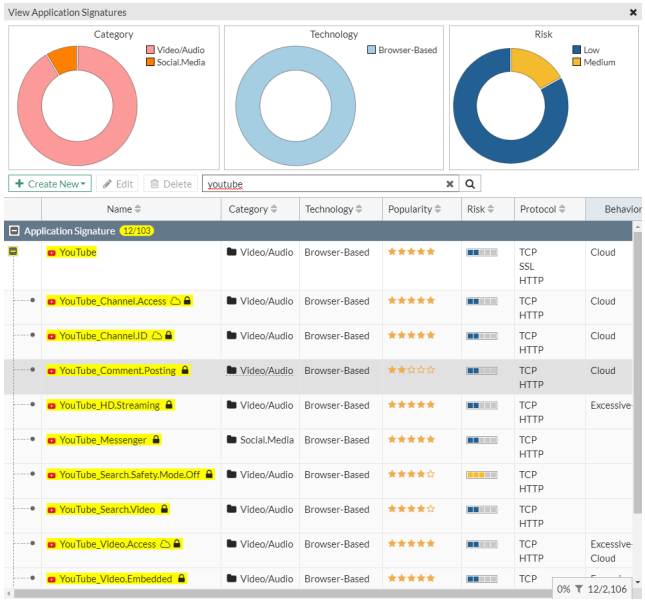
2. Click the filter icon in the *Behavior* column and select *Cloud* to filter by Cloud. Then click *Apply*.



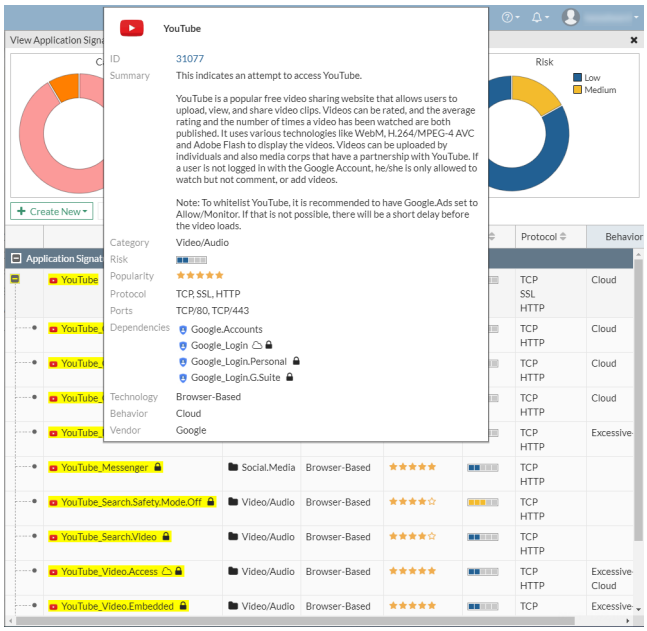
3. The *Application Signature* page displays all applications with cloud behavior.



4. Use the *Search* box to search for applications. For example, you can search for *youtube*.

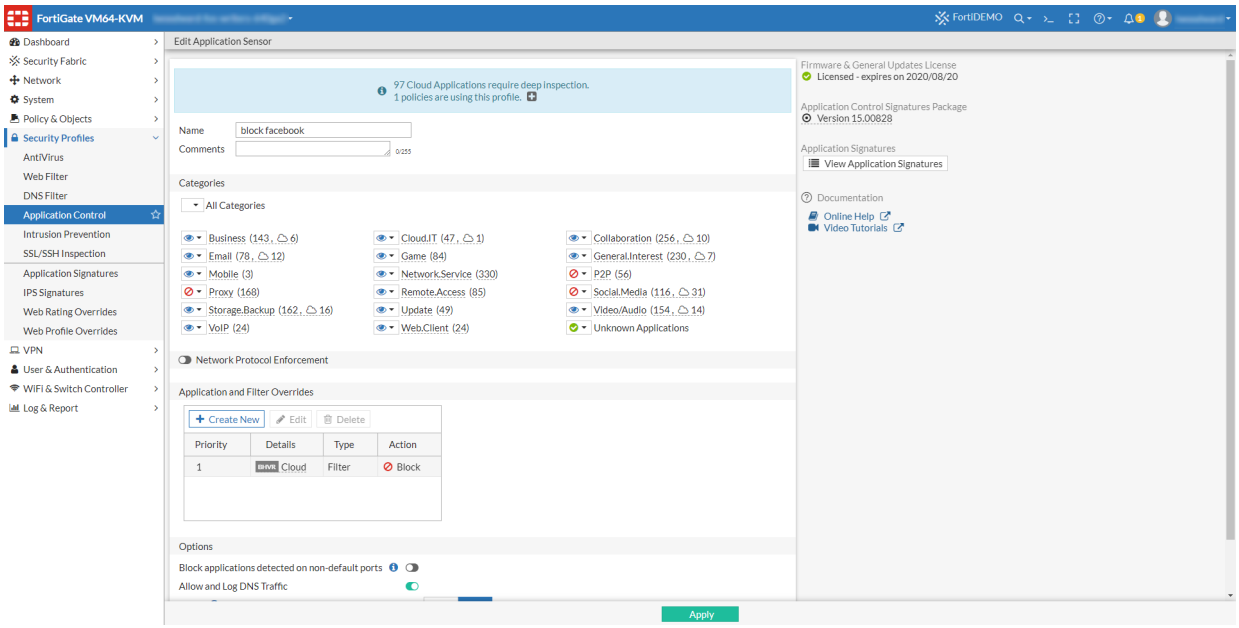


5. Hover over an item to see its details.
This example shows an application sensor with no lock icon which means that this application sensor does not require SSL deep inspection. If any local network user behind the firewall tries to navigate to the YouTube website, that activity is logged.



Configuring the Cloud Applications widget

On the *Edit Application Sensor* page in the *Categories* section, the eye icon next to a category means that category is monitored and logged.

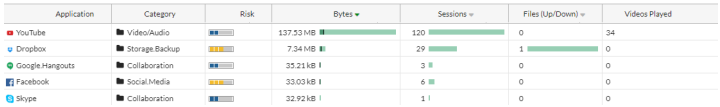


To add the Cloud Applications widget in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* , and select a dashboard in the tree menu.
2. In the dashboard banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
3. In the *Search* field, enter *FortiView Cloud Applications* and click the *Add* button next to the widget.
4. In the *Fabric Member* area, click *Default* or *Specify* to select a device in the security fabric.
5. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select a time period greater than *Now*.
6. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select *Bytes*, *Sessions*, or *Files (Up/Down)*.
7. Click *Add Widget*. The widget is added to the dashboard.
8. Click *Close*.
9. Hover the *FortiView Cloud Applications* widget and click *Expand to Full Screen*.
10. If SSL deep inspection is enabled in the related firewall policy, then the widget shows the additional details that are logged, such as *Files (Up/Down)* and *Videos Played*.

    For YouTube, the *Videos Played* column is triggered by the *YouTube_Video.Play* cloud application sensor. This shows the number of local network users who logged into YouTube and played YouTube videos.

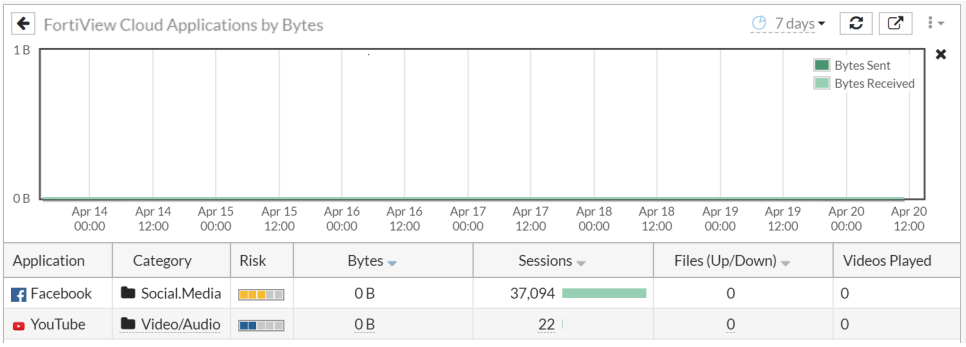
    For Dropbox, the *Files (Up/Down)* column is triggered by *Dropbox_File.Download* and *Dropbox_File.Upload* cloud application sensors. This shows the number of local network users who logged into Dropbox and uploaded or downloaded files.



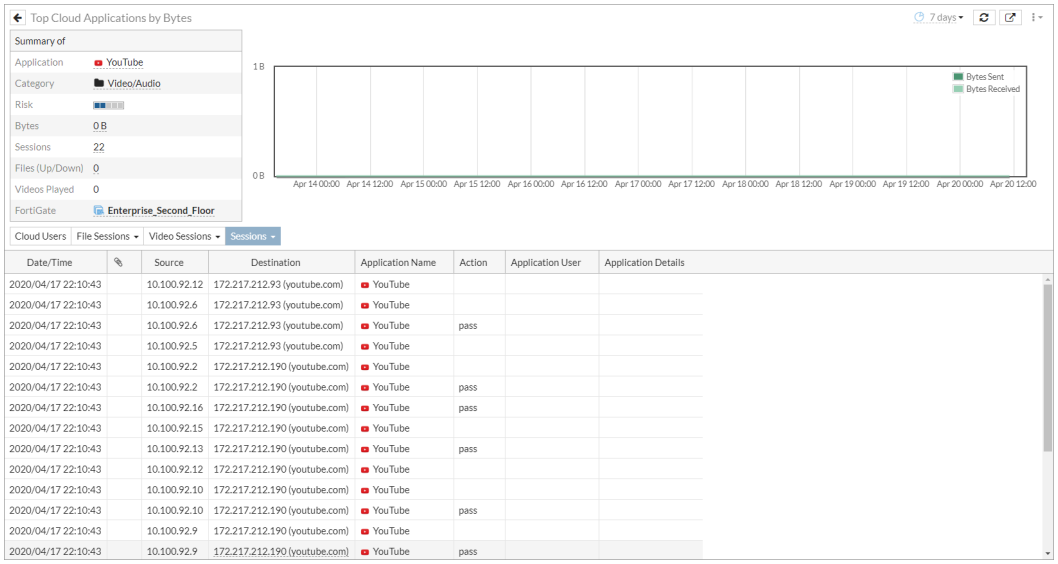
Using the Cloud Applications widget

To see additional information in the Cloud Applications widget:

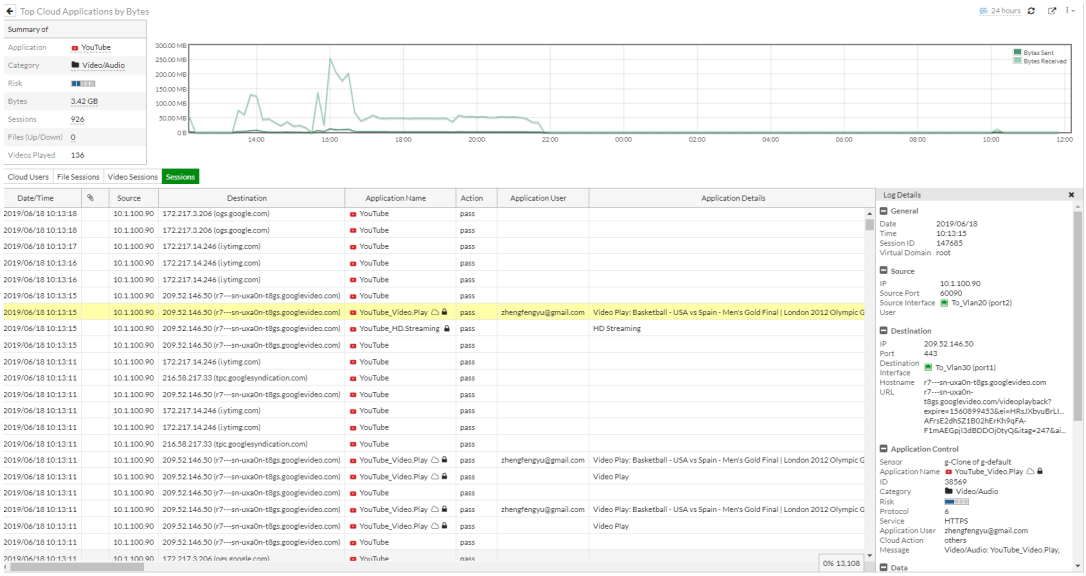
1. Hover over the widget in the dashboard, and click *Expand to full screen*.



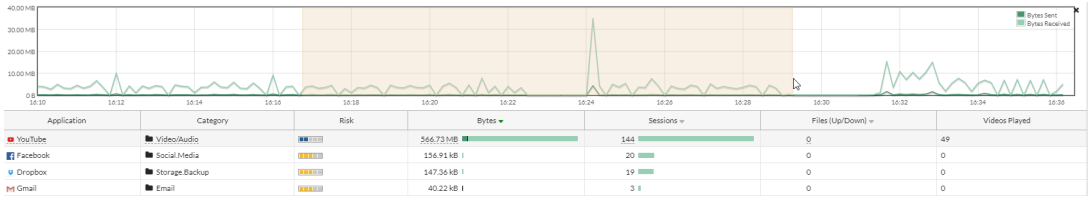
2. For details about a specific entry, double-click the entry or right-click the entry and select *Drill Down to Details*.
3. To see all the sessions for an application, click *Sessions*.
   In this example, the *Application Name* column shows all applications related to YouTube.



4. To view log details, double-click a session to display the *Log Details* pane.
   Sessions monitored by SSL deep inspection (in this example, Youtube_Video.Play) captured deep information such as *Application User*, *Application Details*, and so on. The *Log Details* pane also shows additional deep information such as application *ID*, *Message*, and so on.
   Sessions not monitored by SSL deep inspection (YouTube) did not capture the deep information.



5. To display a specific time period, select and drag in the timeline graph to display only the data for that time period.



Top application: YouTube example

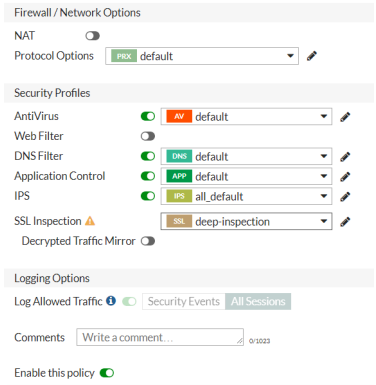
Monitoring network traffic with SSL deep inspection

This example of monitors network traffic for YouTube using *FortiView Applications* view with SSL deep inspection.

To monitor network traffic with SSL deep inspection:

1. Use a firewall policy with the following settings. If necessary, create a policy with these settings.
   - *Application Control* is enabled.
   - *SSL Inspection* is set to *deep-inspection*.

- *Log Allowed Traffic* is set to *All Sessions*.



2. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
3. Select a relative Application Control profile used by the firewall policy and click *Edit*.
4. Because YouTube cloud applications are categorized into *Video/Audio*, ensure the *Video/Audio* category is monitored.
   Monitored categories are indicate by an eye icon.
5. Click *View Application Signatures* and hover over YouTube cloud applications to view detailed information about YouTube application sensors.
6. Expand *YouTube* to view the Application Signatures associated with the application.

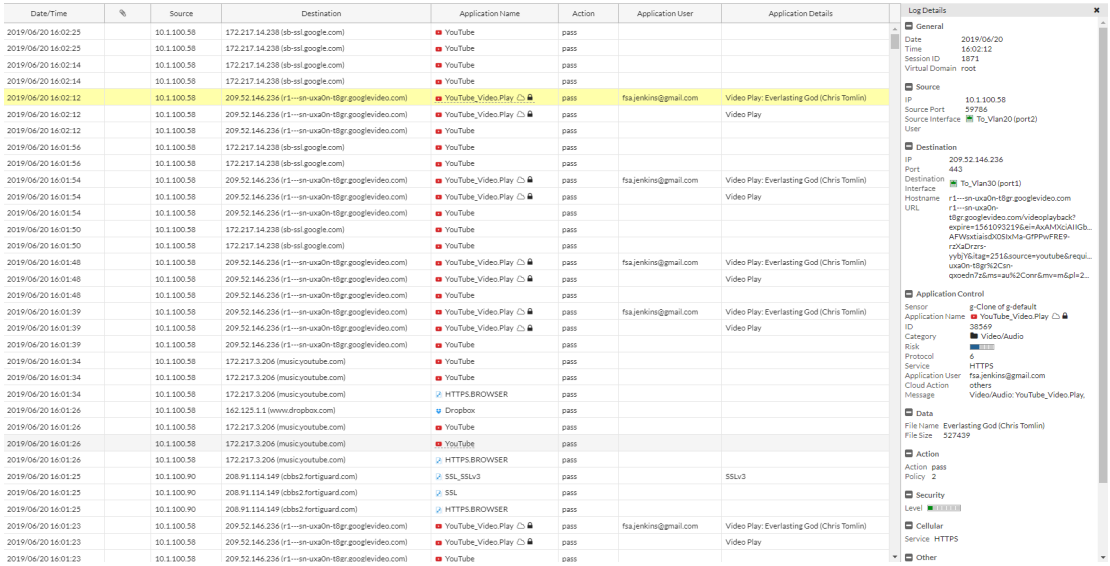
Application Signature	Description	Application ID
YouTube_Video.Access	An attempt to access a video on YouTube.	16420
YouTube_Channel.ID	An attempt to access a video on a specific channel on YouTube.	44956
YouTube_Comment.Posting	An attempt to post comments on YouTube.	31076
YouTube_HD.Streaming	An attempt to watch HD videos on YouTube.	33104
YouTube_Messenger	An attempt to access messenger on YouTube.	47858
YouTube_Video.Play	An attempt to download and play a video from YouTube.	38569
YouTube_Video.Upload	An attempt to upload a video to YouTube.	22564
YouTube	An attempt to access YouTube. This application sensor does not depend on SSL deep inspection so it does not have a cloud or lock icon.	31077
YouTube_Channel.Access	An attempt to access a video on a specific channel on YouTube.	41598



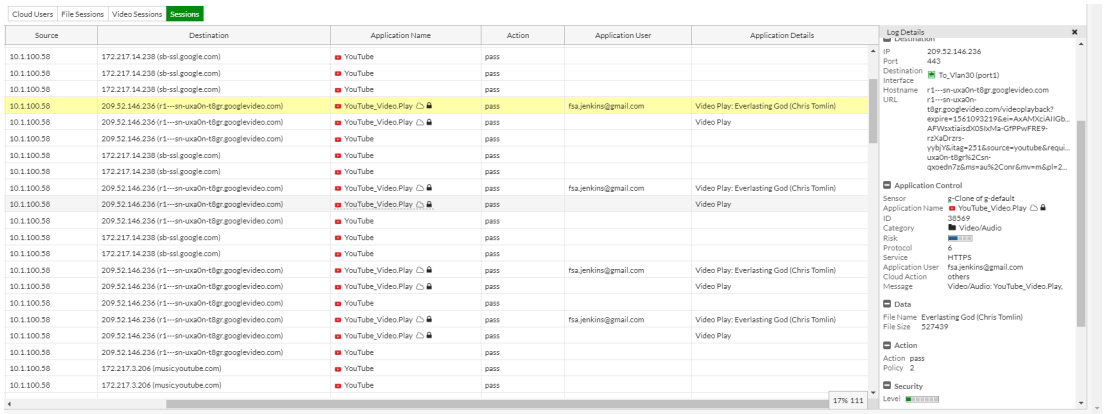
To view the application signature description, click the ID link in the information window.

7. On the test PC, log into YouTube and play some videos.
8. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Application Control* and look for log entries for browsing and playing YouTube videos.

In this example, note the *Application User* and *Application Details*. Also note that the *Application Control ID* is *38569* showing that this entry was triggered by the application sensor *YouTube_Video.Play*.



9. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Applications*.
10. In the *FortiView Applications* dashboard, double-click *YouTube* to view the drilldown information.
11. Select the *Sessions* tab to see all the entries for the videos played. Check the sessions for *YouTube_Video.Play* with the ID *38569*.



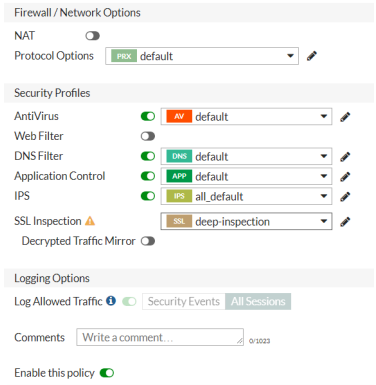
Monitoring network traffic without SSL deep inspection

This example of monitors network traffic for YouTube using FortiView cloud application view without SSL deep inspection.

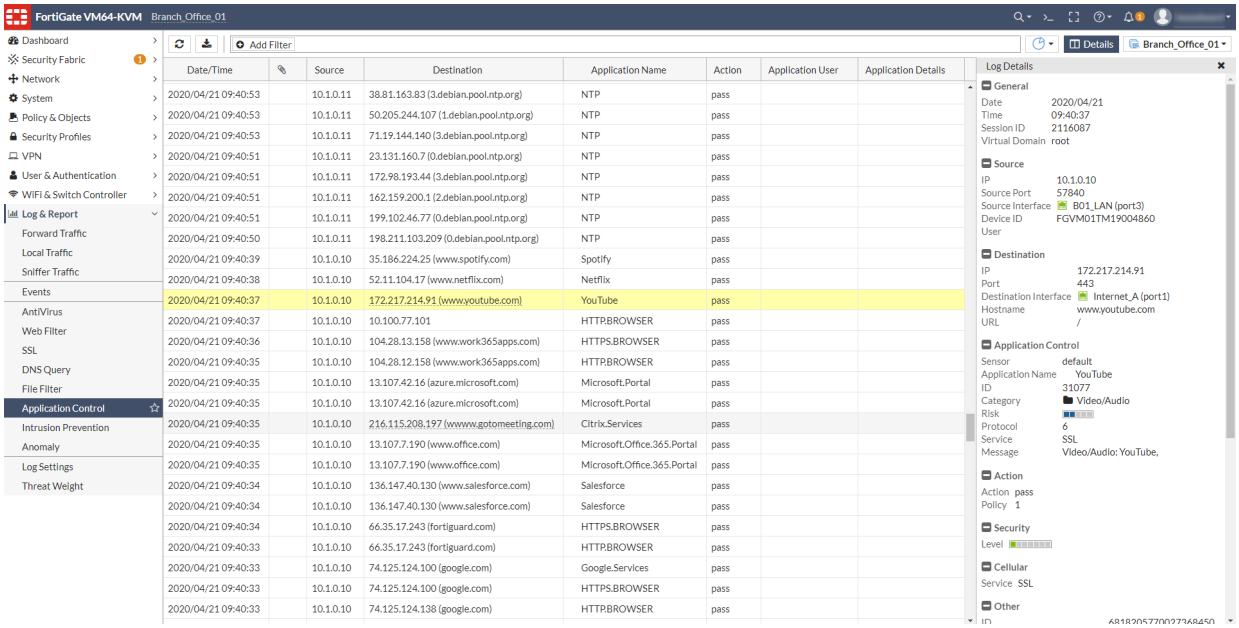
To monitor network traffic without SSL deep inspection:

1. Use a firewall policy with the following settings. If necessary, create a policy with these settings.
   - *Application Control* is enabled.
   - *SSL Inspection* is set to *certificate-inspection*.

- *Log Allowed Traffic* is set to *All Sessions*.

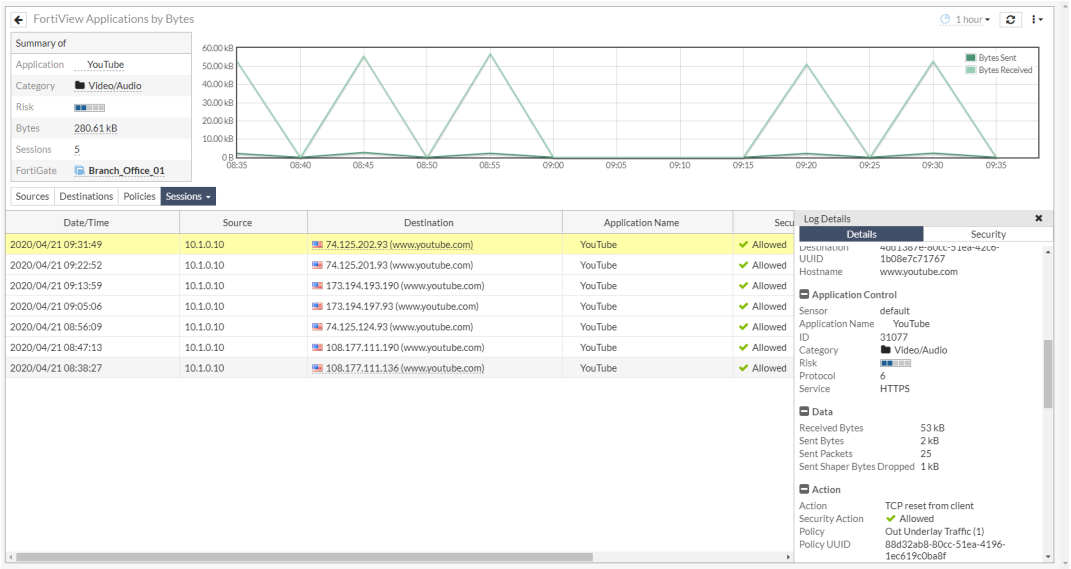


2. On the test PC, log into YouTube and play some videos.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Application Control* and look for log entries for browsing and playing YouTube videos.
   In this example, the log shows only applications with the name YouTube. The log cannot show YouTube application sensors which rely on SSL deep inspection.



4. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Applications*.
   The *FortiView Cloud Application by Bytes* dashboard shows the YouTube cloud application without the video played information that requires SSL deep inspection.

5. Double-click *YouTube* and click the *Sessions* tab.
   These sessions were triggered by the application sensor *YouTube* with the ID *31077*. This is the application sensor with cloud behavior which does not rely on SSL deep inspection.



FortiView Top Source and Top Destination Firewall Objects widgets

The *FortiView Source Firewall Objects* and *FortiView Destination Firewall Objects* widgets leverage UUID to resolve firewall object address names for improved usability.

Requirements

To have a historical *Firewall Objects*-based view, address objects' UUIDs need to be logged.

To enable address object UUID logging in the CLI:

```
config system global
   set log-uuid-address enable
end
```

To add a firewall object widget in the GUI:

1. Open a dashboard and click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
2. In the *Search* field, type *Destination Firewall Objects* and click the *Add* button next to the dashboard name.
3. In the *Fabric Member* area, select *Default* or *Specify* to select a device in the security fabric.
4. In the *Data Source* area, select *Best Available* or *Specify*. For information about data sources, see FortiView interface on page 106.
5. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select the time period.
6. In the *Visualization* area, select *Table View* or *Bubble Chart*.
7. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select *Bytes*, *Sessions*, *Bandwidth*, or *Packets*.
8. Click *Add Widget*.

Example

In this example, firewall addresses have been configured and associated with a unique UUID.

In the *FortiView Source Firewall Objects* and *FortiView Destination Firewall Objects* widgets, firewall objects can be displayed in real-time or in a historical chart. Objects can also be drilled down for more details.

To view Firewall Object-based charts in real-time:

1. Open a dashboard, and click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
2. In the *Search* field, type *Destination Firewall Objects* and click the *Add* button next to the widget name.
3. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select *Now*.
4. Click *Add Widget*.

To view Firewall Object-based charts over a historical period:

1. Open a dashboard, and click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
2. In the *Search* field, type *Destination Firewall Objects* and click the *Add* button next to the widget name.
3. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select a time period other than *Now*.
4. Click *Add Widget*.

To drill down Firewall Objects:

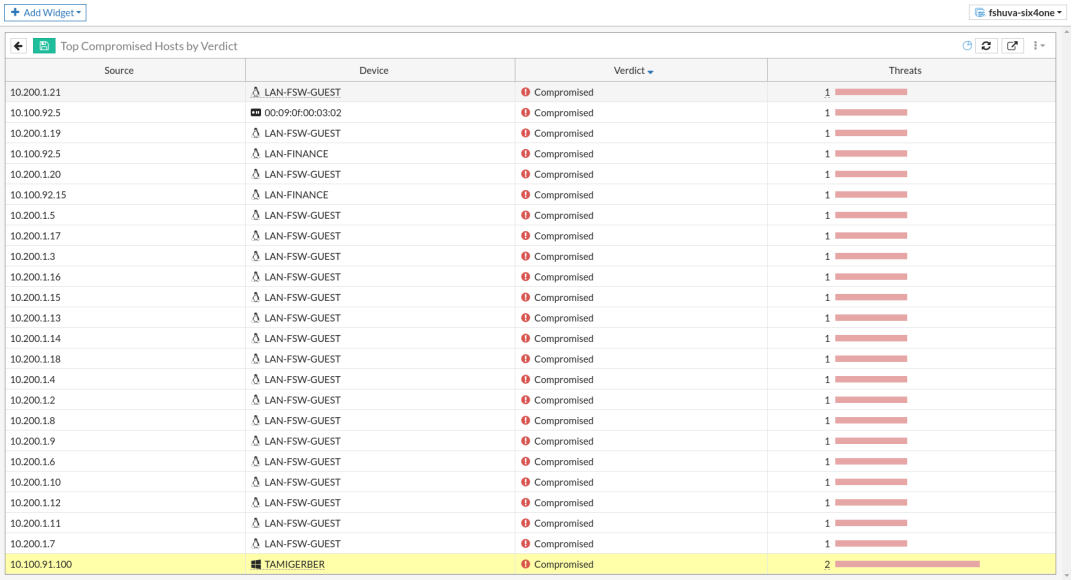
1. Right-click on any *Source* or *Destination Object* in the view results.
2. Select *Drill Down to Details*. More information displays about the object; there are additional criteria to filter data.

Viewing session information for a compromised host

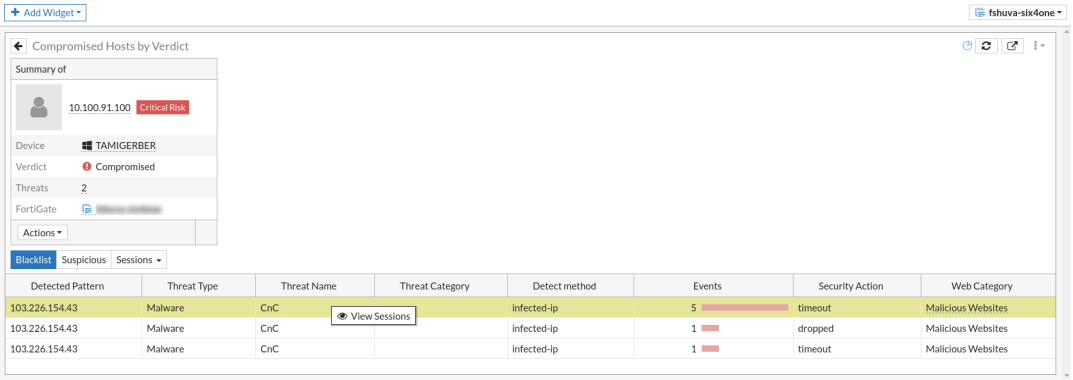
You can use the *Compromised Hosts by Verdict* widget to view the session information for a compromised host.

To view session information for a compromised host in the GUI:

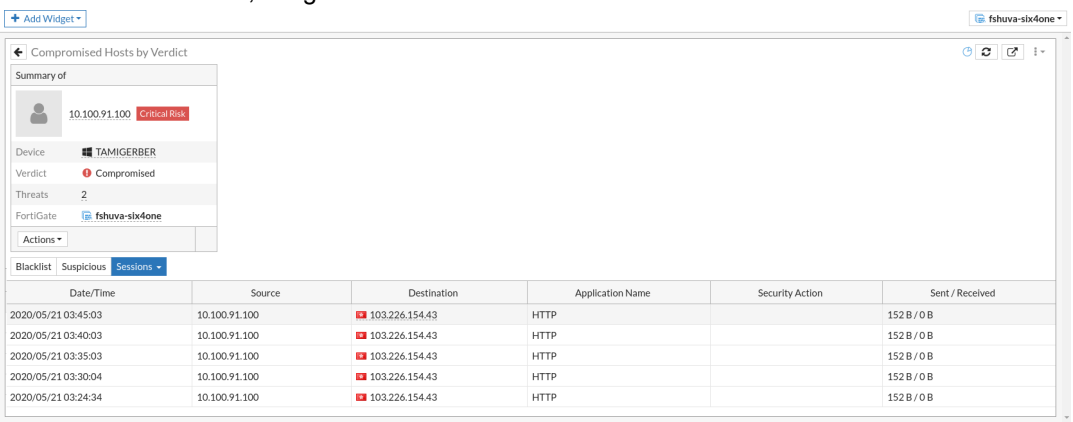
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Security* and expand the *Compromised Hosts by Verdict* widget.



2. Double-click a compromised host to view the session information. You can also right-click a compromised host, and select *View Sessions*.



3. Double-click a session, or right-click the session and select *View Sessions* to view the information.



Fortinet Security Fabric

The Fortinet Security Fabric provides an intelligent architecture that interconnects discrete security solutions into an integrated whole to detect, monitor, block, and remediate attacks across the entire attack surface. It delivers broad protection and visibility into every network segment and device, be they hardware, virtual, or cloud based.

- The physical topology view shows all connected devices, including access layer devices. The logical topology view shows information about the interfaces that each device is connected to.
- Security rating checks analyze the Security Fabric deployment to identify potential vulnerabilities and highlight best practices to improve the network configuration, deploy new hardware and software, and increase visibility and control of the network.
- Fabric connectors provide integration with multiple SDN, cloud, and partner technology platforms to automate the process of managing dynamic security updates without manual intervention.
- Automation pairs an event trigger with one or more actions to monitor the network and take the designated actions automatically when the Security Fabric detects a threat.

Security Fabric settings and usage

This section contains information about how to configure the following devices as part of the Fortinet Security Fabric:

- Components on page 140
- Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates
- Configuring FortiAnalyzer
- Configuring FortiGate Cloud on page 151
- Configuring FortiAnalyzer Cloud service on page 153
- Configuring FortiManager on page 156
- Configuring FortiManager Cloud service on page 157
- Configuring FortiSandbox on page 159
- Configuring FortiClient EMS on page 161
- Synchronizing FortiClient EMS tags and configurations on page 167
- Configuring FortiNAC on page 170
- Configuring FortiAP and FortiSwitch on page 172
- Configuring FortiMail on page 173
- Configuring FortiVoice on page 175
- Configuring additional devices on page 179
- Using the Security Fabric
- Deploying the Security Fabric on page 194
- Synchronizing objects across the Security Fabric on page 202
- Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager on page 211
- Security Fabric over IPsec VPN on page 213
- Leveraging LLDP to simplify security fabric negotiation on page 218

System requirements

To set up the Security Fabric, the devices that you want to include must meet the Product Integration and Support requirements in the FortiOS Release Notes.

Some features of the Security Fabric are only available in certain firmware versions and models. Not all FortiGate models can run the FortiGuard Security Rating Service if they are the root FortiGate in a Security Fabric. For more information, see the Special Notices in the FortiOS Release Notes.

Prerequisites

- If devices are not already installed in your network, complete basic installation and configuration tasks by following the instructions in the device documentation.
- FortiGate devices must either have VDOMs disabled or be running in split-task VDOM mode in order to be added to the Security Fabric. See Virtual Domains on page 904.
- FortiGate devices must be operating in NAT mode.

Components

The Fortinet Security Fabric consists of different components that work together to secure you network.

The following devices are required to create a Security Fabric:

Device	Description
FortiGate	FortiGate devices are the core of the Security Fabric and can have one of the following roles: • **Root**: The root FortiGate is the main component in the Security Fabric. It is typically located on the edge of the network and connects the internal devices and networks to the Internet through your ISP. From the root FortiGate, you can see information about the entire Security Fabric on the Physical and Logical Topology pages in the GUI. • **Downstream**: After a root FortiGate is installed, all other FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric act as Internal Segmentation Firewalls (ISFWs), located at strategic points in your internal network, rather than on the network edge. This allows extra security measures to be taken around key network components, such as servers that contain valuable intellectual property. ISFW FortiGate devices create network visibility by sending traffic and information about the devices that are connected to them to the root FortiGate. See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 143 for more information about adding FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric. FortiGate documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortigate
FortiAnalyzer	FortiAnalyzer gives you increased visibility into your network, centralized monitoring, and awareness of threats, events, and network activity by collecting and correlating logs from all Security Fabric devices. This gives you a deeper and more comprehensive view across the entire Security Fabric. See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 149 for more information about adding FortiAnalyzer devices in the Security Fabric.

Device	Description
	FortiAnalyzer documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortianalyzer  FortiAnalyzer Cloud 6.4.4 can be included in the security fabric if the root FortiGate is running FortiOS 6.4.4 and later.

The following devices are recommended:

Device	Description
FortiADC	FortiADC devices optimize the availability, user experience, and scalability of enterprise application delivery. They enable fast, secure, and intelligent acceleration and distribution of even the most demanding enterprise applications. See Configuring additional devices on page 179 for more information about adding FortiADC devices in the Security Fabric. FortiADC documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiadc
FortiAP	Add FortiAP devices to extend the Security Fabric to your wireless devices. Devices connected to a FortiAP appear in the Physical and Logical Topology pages in the Security Fabric menu. See Configuring FortiAP and FortiSwitch on page 172 for more information about adding FortiAP devices in the Security Fabric. FortiAP documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiap
FortiClient	FortiClient adds endpoint control to devices that are located in the Security Fabric, allowing only traffic from compliant devices to flow through the FortiGate. FortiClient compliance profiles are applied by the first FortiGate that a device's traffic flows through. Device registration and on-net status information for a device that is running FortiClient appears only on the FortiGate that applies the FortiClient profile to that device. FortiClient documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/forticlient
FortiClient EMS	FortiClient EMS is used in the Security Fabric to provide visibility across your network, securely share information, and assign security profiles to endpoints. See Configuring FortiClient EMS on page 161 for more information about adding FortiClient EMS devices in the Security Fabric. FortiClient EMS documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/forticlient
FortiDDoS	FortiDDoS is a Network Behavior Anomaly (NBA) prevention system that detects and blocks attacks that intend to disrupt network service by overutilizing server resources. See Configuring additional devices on page 179 for more information about adding FortiDDoS devices in the Security Fabric. FortiDDoS documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiddos
FortiMail	FortiMail antispam processing helps offload from other devices in the Security Fabric that would typically carry out this process. See Configuring additional devices on page 179 for more information about adding FortiMail devices in the Security Fabric. FortiMail documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortimail

Device	Description
FortiManager	Add FortiManager to simplify the network management of devices in the Security Fabric by centralizing management access in a single device. This allows you to easily control the deployment of security policies, FortiGuard content security updates, firmware revisions, and individual configurations for devices in the Security Fabric. See Configuring FortiManager on page 156 for more information about adding FortiManager devices in the Security Fabric. FortiManager documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortimanager
FortiSandbox	Add FortiSandbox to your Security Fabric to improve security with sandbox inspection. Sandbox integration allows FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric to automatically receive signature updates from FortiSandbox and add the originating URL of any malicious file to a blocked URL list. See Configuring FortiSandbox on page 159 for more information about adding FortiSandbox devices in the Security Fabric. FortiSandbox documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortisandbox
FortiSwitch	A FortiSwitch can be added to the Security Fabric when it is managed by a FortiGate that is in the Security Fabric with the FortiLink protocol, and connected to an interface with *Security Fabric Connection* enabled. FortiSwitch ports to become logical extensions of the FortiGate. Devices connected to the FortiSwitch appear in the Physical and Logical Topology pages in the Security Fabric menu, and security features, such as FortiClient compliance profiles, are applied to them. See Configuring FortiAP and FortiSwitch on page 172 for more information about adding FortiSwitch devices in the Security Fabric. FortiSwitch documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiswitch
FortiWeb	Add FortiWeb to defend the application attack surface from attacks that target application exploits. You can also configure FortiWeb to apply web application firewall features, virus scanning, and web filtering to HTTP traffic to help offload from other devices in the Security Fabric that would typically carry out these processes. See Configuring additional devices on page 179 for more information about adding FortiWeb devices in the Security Fabric. FortiWeb documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiweb
FortiWLC	FortiWLC delivers seamless mobility and superior reliability with optimized client distribution and channel utilization. Both single and multi channel deployment options are supported, maximizing efficiency to make the most of available wireless spectrum. See Configuring additional devices on page 179 for more information about adding FortiWLC devices in the Security Fabric. FortiWLC documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/wireless-controller

The following devices are optional:

Device	Description
Other Fortinet products	Many other Fortinet products can be added to the Security Fabric, including FortiAuthenticator, FortiToken, FortiCache, and FortiSIEM. Documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/

Device	Description
Third-party products	Third-party products that belong to the Fortinet Fabric-Ready Partner Program can be added to the Security Fabric.

Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates

The following procedures include configuration steps for a typical Security Fabric implementation, where the edge FortiGate is the root FortiGate, and the downstream FortiGate devices are all devices that are downstream from the root FortiGate.

For information about the recommended number of downstream FortiGates, see the *FortiOS 6.4 Best Practices*.

Prerequisites

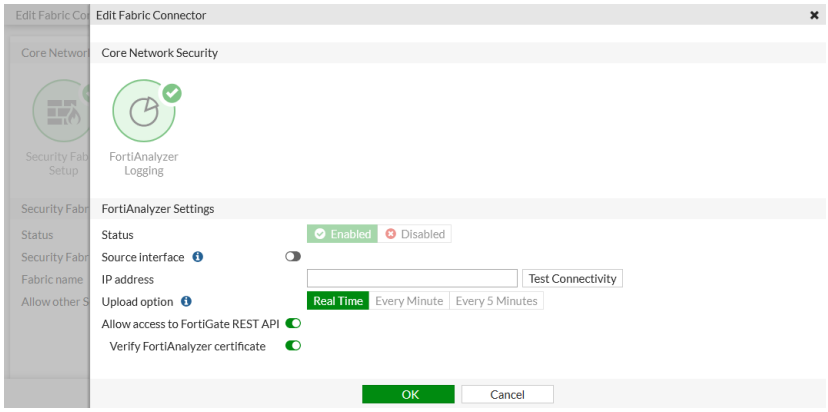
- FortiGate devices must either have VDOMs disabled or be running in split-task VDOM mode in order to be added to the Security Fabric. See Virtual Domains on page 904.
- FortiGate devices must be operating in NAT mode.

Configure the root FortiGate

The edge FortiGate is typically configured as the root FortiGate, as this allows you to view the full topology of the Security Fabric from the top down.

To configure the root FortiGate:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
3. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Serve as Fabric Root*. FortiAnalyzer logging is automatically enabled and the settings can be configured.



4. Optionally, enable *Source Interface* and select an interface to communicate with FortiAnalyzer. If disabled, the interface will be determined based on the routing table.
5. Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP and select the *Upload option*.
6. In the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* section, in the *IP address* field, enter the IP address of the FortiAnalyzer.

7. If required, enable *Allow access to FortiGate REST API* and, optionally, *Verify FortiAnalyzer certificate*.
   The REST API accesses the FortiGate topology and shares data and results. The FortiGate will verify the FortiAnalyzer by retrieving its serial number and checking it against the FortiAnalyzer certificate. When verified, the FortiAnalyzer serial number is stored in the FortiGate configuration. When authorizing the FortiGate on the FortiAnalyzer, the FortiGate admin credentials do not need to be entered.
8. Click *Test Connectivity*.
   If you select *Test Connectivity* and this is the first time that you are connecting the FortiGate to the FortiAnalyzer, you will receive a warning message because the FortiGate has not yet been authorized on the FortiAnalyzer. You can configure this authorization when you configure the FortiAnalyzer. See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 149.
9. Click *OK*. The FortiAnalyzer serial number is verified.
10. Enter a *Fabric name*.
11. Ensure *Allow other Security Fabric devices to join* is enabled and add the interfaces.
12. Click *OK*.

Using the root FortiGate with disk to store historic user and device information

This backend implementation allows the root FortiGate in a Security Fabric to store historic user and device information in a database on its disk. This will allow administrators to visualize users and devices over a period of time.

A new daemon, user_info_history, stores this data on the disk. The information source for the historical data will be the user_info daemon, which would be recorded on the disk when user_info notifies user_info_history that a user has logged out or the device is no longer connected.

Add downstream devices

Downstream FortiGate devices can be securely added to the Security Fabric without sharing the password of the root FortiGate.

Downstream device serial numbers can be authorized from the root FortiGate, or allowed to join by request. New authorization requests include the device serial number, IP address, and HA members. HA members can include up to four serial numbers and is used to ensure that, in the event of a fail over, the secondary FortiGate is still authorized.

A downstream device's certificate can also be used to authorize the device by uploaded the certificate to the root FortiGate.



You can use the FortiIPAM service to automatically assign subnets to downstream FortiGates to prevent duplicate IP addresses from overlapping within the same Security Fabric. See Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service on page 444.

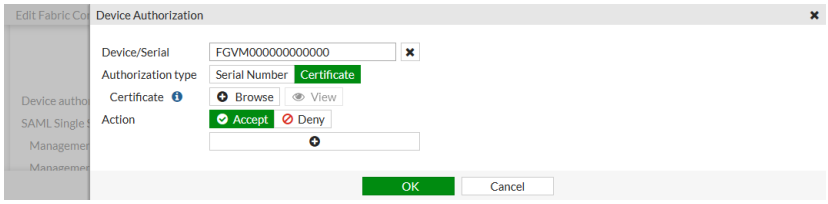
Pre-authorizing the downstream FortiGate

When a downstream Fortinet device's serial number or certificate is added to the trusted list on the root FortiGate, the device can join the Security Fabric as soon as it connects. After the new device is authorized, connected FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices are automatically included in the topology, where they can be authorized with one click.

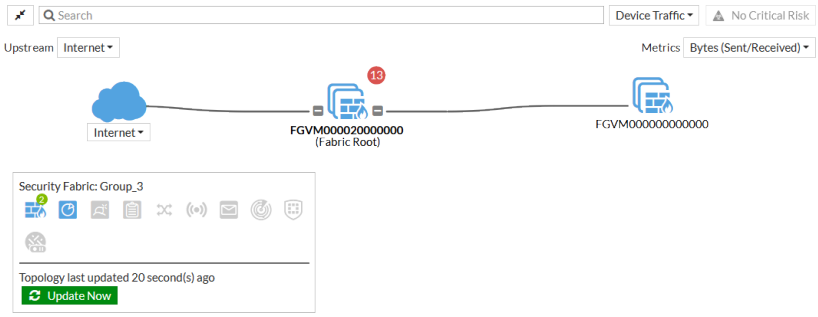
The interface that connects to the downstream FortiGate must have *Security Fabric Connection* enabled.

To pre-authorize a FortiGate:

1. Configure the root FortiGate:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. In the *Device authorization* field click *Edit*. The *Device Authorization* window opens.
   c. Enter the device's serial number in the *Device/Serial* field.
   d. Select the *Authorization type*, either *Serial Number* or *Certificate*.
   e. If *Certificate* is selected, click *Browse* to upload the downstream device's certificate from the management computer.



   f. Select the *Action*, either *Accept* or *Deny*.
   g. Add more devices as required, then click *OK*.
   h. Click *OK*.
2. Configure the downstream FortiGate:
   a. On the downstream FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Set *Status* to *Enable*.
   c. Set *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. Enter the IP address of the root FortiGate in the *Upstream FortiGate IP* field.
   e. Click *OK*.
3. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* and verify that the downstream FortiGate that you added appears in the Security Fabric topology.



Using LLDP

You can automatically prompt downstream FortiGate devices to join the Security Fabric using Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) and interface role assignments.

1. On the root FortiGate, assign the LAN role to all interfaces that may connect to downstream FortiGate devices. When the LAN role is assigned to an interface, LLDP transmission is enabled by default.
2. When a downstream FortiGate is installed, assign the WAN role to the interface that connects to the upstream FortiGate.
   When the WAN role is assigned, LLDP reception is enabled by default. The newly installed FortiGate uses LLDP to discover the upstream FortiGate, and the administrator is prompted to configure the FortiGate to join the Security

Fabric.

3. On the root FortiGate, the new FortiGate must be authorized before it can join the Security Fabric.

If the network contains switches or routers, LLDP may not function as expected because some devices do not pass LLDP packets.

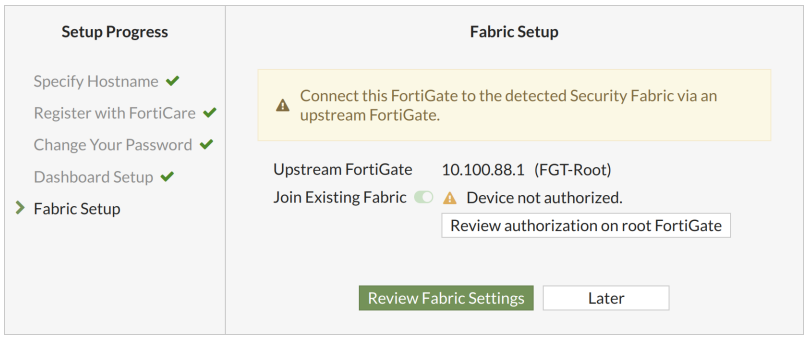
Authorizing a downstream FortiGate

When you log in to an unauthorized, downstream FortiGate, the log in prompt includes the option to authorize the device on the root FortiGate.

When the Security Fabric is disabled on the FortiGate, and a neighboring FortiGate is detected on the same network using LLDP, the log in prompt gives the option to join the Security Fabric.

To authorize a downstream FortiGate:

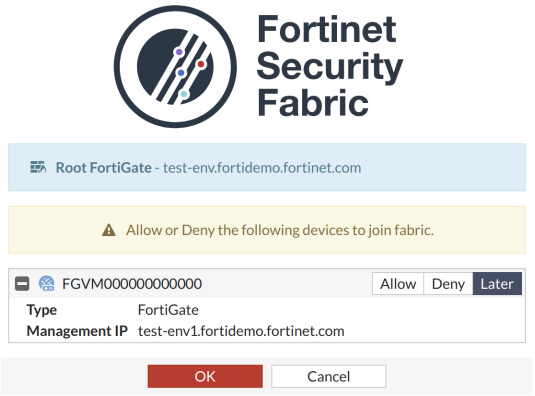
1. Log in to the unauthorized, downstream device.



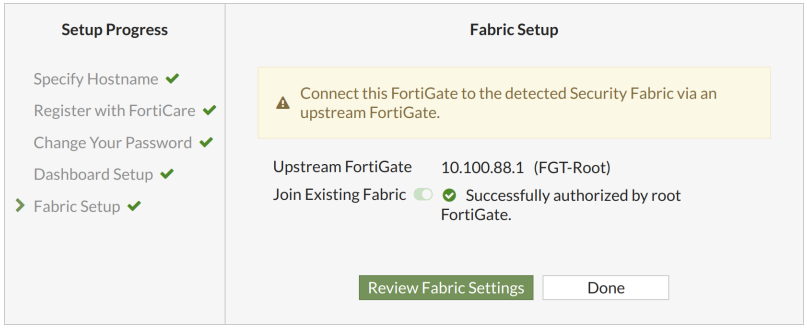
2. On the *Fabric Setup* step, click *Review authorization on root FortiGate*.
A pop-up window opens to a log in screen for the root FortiGate.



3. Enter the log in credentials for the root FortiGate, then click *Login*.
A list of pending authorizations is shown.



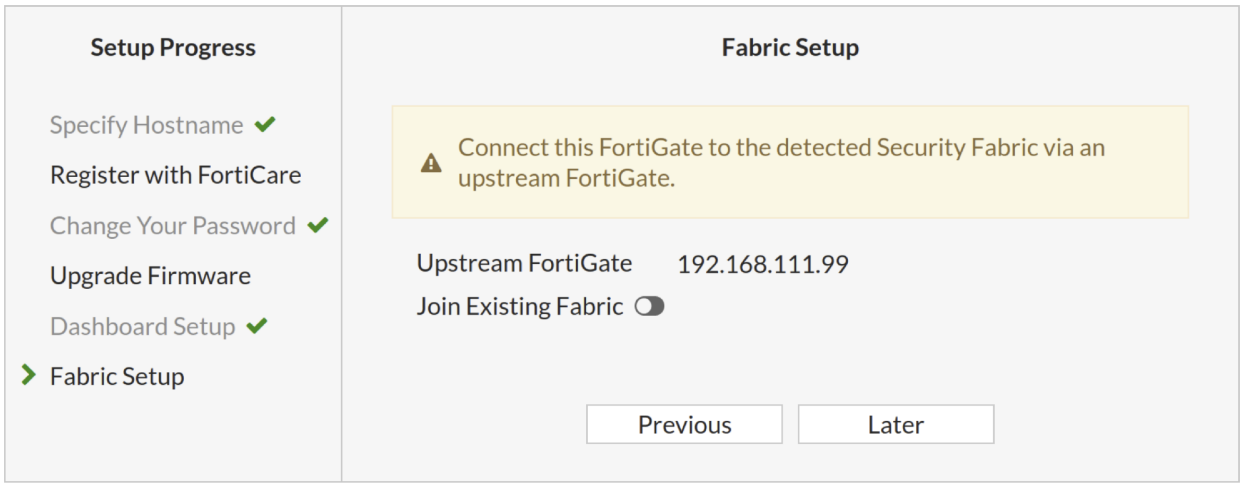
4. Select *Allow* and then click *OK* to authorize the downstream FortiGate. You can also select *Deny* to reject the authorization, or *Later* to postpone the decision to the next time that you log in.
   When authorization is allowed, the pop-up window closes, and the log in prompt shows that the downstream FortiGate has been authorized.



5. Click *Done* to log in to the downstream FortiGate.

To join an existing fabric that is detected on the same network:

1. Log in to the device.



2. On the *Fabric Setup* step, enable *Join Existing Fabric*.
3. Authorize the FortiGate, as previously shown.

To review authorization on the downstream FortiGate:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. In the gutter on the right side of the screen, click *Review authorization on root FortiGate*.
   The root FortiGate pop-up window shows the state of the device authorization.

Device request

A device can request to join the Security Fabric from another FortiGate, but it must have the IP address of the root FortiGate. The administrator of the root FortiGate must also authorize the device before it can join the Security Fabric.

The root FortiGate must have *Security Fabric Connection* enabled on the interface that the device connects to.

To enable FortiTelemetry on an interface:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the interface that the device that you authorizing to join the Security Fabric is connected to.
3. Under *Administrative Access*, enable *Security Fabric Connection*.
4. Under *Network*, turn on *Device Detection*.

To join the Security Fabric by device request:

1. Connect to the unauthorized FortiGate or FortiWiFi device, and go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
3. Set *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
4. Set *Upstream FortiGate IP* to the IP address of the upstream FortiGate.
5. Connect to the root FortiGate and go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. The new FortiGate appears in the topology tree as unauthorized.
6. Click the unauthorized device and select *Authorize* to authorize the device.

CLI commands

Use the following commands to view, accept, and deny authorization requests, to view upstream and downstream devices, and to list or test fabric devices:

Command	Description
diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list	View pending authorization requests on the root FortiGate.
diagnose sys csf authorization accept <serial-number-value>	Authorize a device to join the Security Fabric.
diagnose sys csf authorization deny <serial-number-value>	Deny a device from joining the Security Fabric.
diagnose sys csf downstream	Show connected downstream devices.
diagnose sys csf upstream	Show connected upstream devices.

Command	Description
diagnose sys csf fabric-device list	List all known fabric devices.
diagnose sys csf fabric-device test	Test connections to locally configured fabric devices.

Desynchronizing settings

By default, the settings for FortiAnalyzer logging, central management, sandbox inspection, and FortiClient EMS are synchronized between all FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric. To disable the automatic synchronization of these settings, use the following CLI command:

```
config system csf
   set configuration-sync local
end
```

Deauthorizing a device

A device can be deauthorized to remove it from the Security Fabric.

To deauthorize a device:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*
2. In the topology tree, click the device and select *Deauthorize*.

After devices are deauthorized, the devices' serial numbers are saved in a trusted list that can be viewed in the CLI using the `show system csf` command. For example, this result shows a deauthorized FortiSwitch:

```
show system csf
   config system csf
      set status enable
      set group-name "Office-Security-Fabric"
      set group-password ENC 1Z2X345V678
      config trusted-list
         edit "FGT6HD391806070"
         next
         edit "S248DF3X17000482"
            set action deny
         next
      end
   end
```

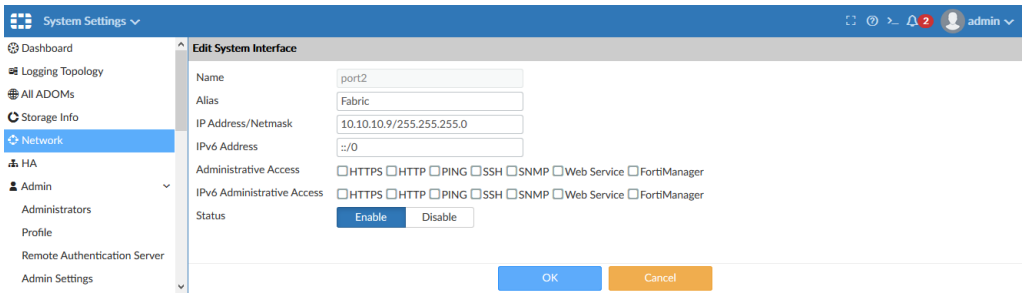
Configuring FortiAnalyzer

FortiAnalyzer is a required component for the Security Fabric. In 6.4.4 and above, either FortiAnalyzer or FortiAnalyzer Cloud can be used to meet this requirement. FortiAnalyzer allows the Security Fabric to show historical data for the Security Fabric topology and logs for the entire Security Fabric.

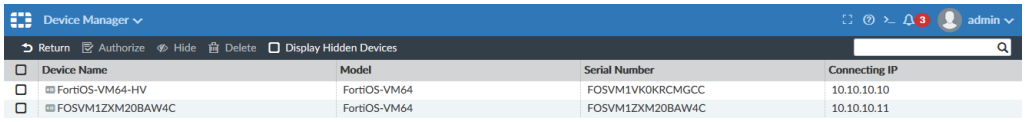
For more information about using FortiAnalyzer, see the FortiAnalyzer Administration Guide.

To connect a FortiAnalyzer to the Security Fabric:

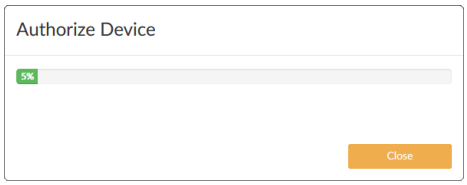
1. Enable *FortiAnalyzer Logging* on the root FortiGate. See Configure the root FortiGate on page 143.
2. On the FortiAnalyzer, go to *System Settings* > *Network* and click *All Interfaces*.
3. Edit the port that connects to the root FortiGate.
4. Set the *IP Address/Netmask* to the IP address that is used for the Security Fabric on the root FortiGate.



5. Click *OK*.
   If the FortiGates have already been configured, it will now be listed as an unauthorized device.
6. Go to *Device Manager* > *Devices Unauthorized*. The unauthorized FortiGate devices are listed.



7. Select the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGate devices in the list, then click *Authorize*. The *Authorize Device* page opens.
8. Click *OK* to authorize the selected devices.



9. On the FortiGate devices, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card. The page will now show the ADOM on the FortiAnalyzer that the FortiGate is in, and the storage, analytics, and archive usage.

Sending traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud

FortiGates running version 6.4.4. or later, with a FortiCloud Premium subscription (AFAC) for Cloud-based Central Logging & Analytics, can send traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud in addition to UTM logs and event logs. After the Premium subscription is registered through FortiCare, FortiGuard will verify the purchase and authorize the AFAC contract. Once the contract is verified, FortiGuard will deliver the contract to FortiGate.

FortiGates with a Standard FortiAnalyzer Cloud subscription (FAZC) can only send UTM and event logs. FortiGates with a Premium subscription will send the UTM and event logs even if the Standard subscription has expired.

For information about cloud logging, see Configuring FortiAnalyzer Cloud service on page 153



FortiAnalyzer Cloud does not support DLP/IPS archives at this time.

To verify the status a FortiCloud subscription with the CLI:

```
# diagnose test update info
```

The `FAZC` and `AFAC` fields display the subscription expiration date. The `Support contract` field displays the FortiCare account information. The `User ID` field displays the ID for FortiAnalyzer-Cloud instance.

```
...
FAZC,Tue Sep 24 16:00:00 2030
AFAC,Mon Nov 29 16:00:00 2021
...
Support contract: pending_registration=255 got_contract_info=1
account_id=[****@fortinet.com] company=[Fortinet] industry=[Technology]
User ID: 979090
```

Configuring FortiGate Cloud

FortiGate Cloud is a hosted security management and log retention service for FortiGate devices. It provides centralized reporting, traffic analysis, configuration management, and log retention without the need for additional hardware or software.

FortiGate Cloud offers a wide range of features:

- **Simplified central management**
  FortiGate Cloud provides a central GUI to manage individual or aggregated FortiGate and FortiWiFi devices. Adding a device to the FortiGate Cloud management subscription is straightforward. FortiGate Cloud has detailed traffic and application visibility across the whole network.
- **Hosted log retention with large default storage allocated**
  Log retention is an integral part of any security and compliance program, but administering a separate storage system is onerous. FortiGate Cloud takes care of this automatically and stores the valuable log information in the cloud. Different types of logs can be stored, including Traffic, System Events, Web, Applications, and Security Events.
- **Monitoring and alerting in real time**
  Network availability is critical to a good end-user experience. FortiGate Cloud enables you to monitor your FortiGate network in real time with different alerting mechanisms to pinpoint potential issues. Alerting mechanisms can be delivered via email.
- **Customized or pre-configured reporting and analysis tools**
  Reporting and analysis are your eyes and ears into your network's health and security. Pre-configured reports are available, as well as custom reports that can be tailored to your specific reporting and compliance requirements. The reports can be emailed as PDFs, and can cover different time periods.
- **Maintain important configuration information uniformly**
  The correct configuration of the devices within your network is essential for maintaining optimum performance and security posture. In addition, maintaining the correct firmware (operating system) level allows you to take advantage of the latest features.
- **Service security**
  All communication (including log information) between the devices and the cloud is encrypted. Redundant data centers are always used to give the service high availability. Operational security measures have been put in place to make sure your data is secure — only you can view or retrieve it.

Registration and activation



Before you can activate a FortiGate Cloud account, you must first register your device.

FortiGate Cloud accounts can be registered manually through the FortiGate Cloud website, https://www.forticloud.com, or you can easily register and activate your account directly from your FortiGate.

To activate your FortiGate Cloud account:

1. On your device, go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. In the *FortiGate Cloud* widget, click the *Not Activated* > *Activate* button in the *Status* field.
3. A pane will open asking you to register your FortiGate Cloud account. Click *Create Account*, enter your information, view and accept the terms and conditions, and then click *OK*.
4. A second dialogue window open , asking you to enter your information to confirm your account. This sends a confirmation email to your registered email. The dashboard widget then updates to show that confirmation is required.
5. Open your email, and follow the confirmation link it contains.
   A FortiGate Cloud page will open, stating that your account has been confirmed. The *Activation Pending* message on the dashboard will change to state the type of account you have, and will provide a link to the FortiGate Cloud portal.

Enabling logging to FortiGate Cloud

To enable logging to FortiGate Cloud:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Cloud Logging* or *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.
2. Enable *Cloud Logging*.
3. Select an upload option: *Realtime*, *Every Minute*, or *Every 5 Minutes* (default).
4. Click *Apply*.

Logging into the FortiGate Cloud portal

Once logging has been configured and you have registered your account, you can log into the FortiGate Cloud portal and begin viewing your logging results. There are two methods to reach the FortiGate Cloud portal:

- If you have direct network access to the FortiGate:
  a. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
  b. In the *FortiGate Cloud* widget, in the *Status* field, click *Activated* > *Launch Portal*, or, in the *Licenses* widget, click *FortiCare Support* > *Launch Portal*.
- If you do not have access to the FortiGate's interface, visit the FortiGate Cloud website (https://www.forticloud.com) and log in remotely, using your email and password. It will ask you to confirm the FortiGate Cloud account you are connecting to and then you will be granted access.

Cloud sandboxing

FortiGate Cloud can be used for automated sample tracking, or sandboxing, for files from a FortiGate. This allows suspicious files to be sent to be inspected without risking network security. If the file exhibits risky behavior, or is found to

contain a virus, a new virus signature is created and added to the FortiGuard antivirus signature database.

To configure cloud sandboxing:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. For status, click *Enable*.
3. Set the *Type* to *FortiSandbox Cloud*.



By default, the *FortiSandbox Cloud* option is not visible. See Feature visibility on page 1049 for instructions on making it visible.

4. Select the *FortiSandbox cloud region*.
5. Click *OK*.
   Sandboxing results are shown on the *Sandbox* tab in the FortiGate Cloud portal.

For more information about FortiGate Cloud, see the FortiGate Cloud documentation.

Configuring FortiAnalyzer Cloud service

FortiGate supports the FortiAnalyzer Cloud service for event logging.



Traffic logs are not currently supported by FortiAnalyzer Cloud without a FortiCloud Premium subscription (AFAC). For information, see Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 149.

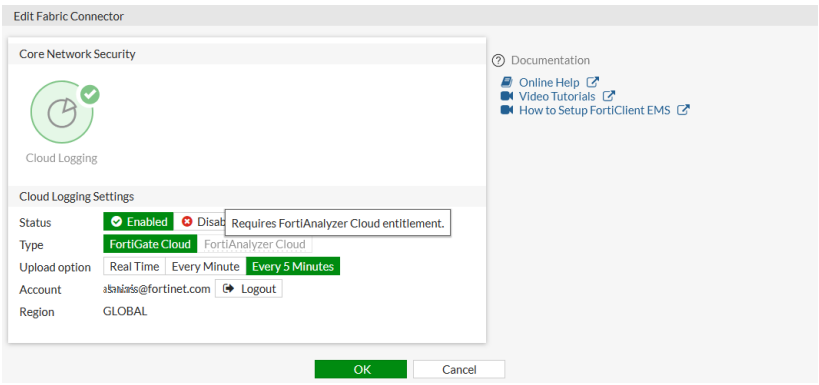
When FortiAnalyzer Cloud is licensed and enabled (see Deploying FortiAnalyzer Cloud for more information), all event logs are sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud by default. All traffic logs, security logs, and archive files are not sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

FortiAnalyzer Cloud differs from FortiAnalyzer in the following ways:

- You cannot enable FortiAnalyzer Cloud in `vdom override-setting` when global FortiAnalyzer Cloud is disabled.
- You must use the CLI to retrieve and display logs sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud. The FortiOS GUI is not supported.
- You cannot enable FortiAnalyzer Cloud and FortiGate Cloud at the same time.

Sample settings panes

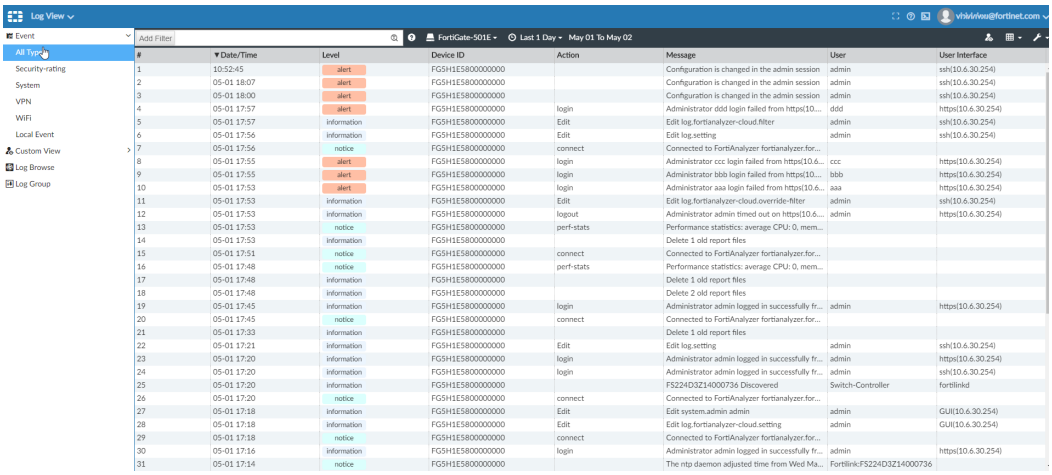
In the FortiOS *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Cloud Logging* card settings page, *FortiAnalyzer Cloud* is grayed out when you do not have a FortiAnalyzer Cloud entitlement.



When you have a FortiAnalyzer Cloud entitlement, *FortiAnalyzer Cloud* is available.

You can also view the FortiAnalyzer Cloud settings in the *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* pane.

In FortiAnalyzer Cloud, you can view logs from *FortiOS* in the *Event* > *All Types* pane.



To enable fortianalyzer-cloud using the CLI:

```
config log fortianalyzer-cloud setting
   set status enable
   set ips-archive disable
   set access-config enable
   set enc-algorithm high
   set ssl-min-proto-version default
   set conn-timeout 10
   set monitor-keepalive-period 5
   set monitor-failure-retry-period 5
   set certificate ''
   set source-ip ''
   set upload-option realtime
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud filter
   set severity information
   set forward-traffic disable
   set local-traffic disable
   set multicast-traffic disable
   set sniffer-traffic disable
```

```
   set anomaly disable
   set voip disable
   set dlp-archive disable
   set dns disable
   set ssh disable
   set ssl disable
   set cifs disable
   set filter ''
   set filter-type include
end
```

To disable fortianalyzer-cloud for a specific VDOM using the CLI:

```
config log setting
   set faz-override enable
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting
   set status disable
end
```

To set fortianalyzer-cloud filter for a specific vdom using the CLI:

```
config log setting
   set faz-override enable
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting
   set status enable
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-filter
   set severity information
   set forward-traffic disable
   set local-traffic disable
   set multicast-traffic disable
   set sniffer-traffic disable
   set anomaly disable
   set voip disable
   set dlp-archive disable
   set dns disable
   set ssh disable
   set ssl disable
   set cifs disable
   set filter ''
   set filter-type include
end
```

To display fortianalyzer-cloud log using the CLI:

```
execute log filter device fortianalyzer-cloud
execute log filter category event
execute log display
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-01 time=17:57:45 idseq=60796052214644736 bid=100926 dvid=1027 itime="2019-05-01
     17:57:48" euid=3 epid=3 dsteuid=0 dstepid=3 logver=602000890 logid=0100032002
     type="event" subtype="system" level="alert" srcip=10.6.30.254 dstip=10.6.30.9
```

```
      action="login" msg="Administrator ddd login failed from https(10.6.30.254) because of
      invalid user name" logdesc="Admin login failed" sn="0" user="ddd" ui="https
      (10.6.30.254)" status="failed" reason="name_invalid" method="https"
      eventtime=1556758666274548325 devid="FG5H1E5818900076" vd="root" dtime="2019-05-01
      17:57:45" itime_t=1556758668 devname="FortiGate-501E"
date=2019-05-01 time=17:57:21 idseq=60796052214644736 bid=100926 dvid=1027 itime="2019-05-01
      17:57:23" euid=3 epid=3 dsteuid=0 dstepid=3 logver=602000890 logid=0100044546
      type="event" subtype="system" level="information" action="Edit" msg="Edit
      log.fortianalyzer-cloud.filter " logdesc="Attribute configured" user="admin" ui="ssh
      (10.6.30.254)" cfgtid=164757536 cfgpath="log.fortianalyzer-cloud.filter"
      cfgattr="severity[information->critical]" eventtime=1556758642413367644
      devid="FG5H1E5818900076" vd="root" dtime="2019-05-01 17:57:21" itime_t=1556758643
      devname="FortiGate-501E"
```

Configuring FortiManager

When a FortiManager device is added to the Security Fabric, it automatically synchronizes with any connected downstream devices.

To add a FortiManager to the Security Fabric, configure it on the root FortiGate. The root FortiGate then pushes this configuration to downstream FortiGate devices. The FortiManager provides remote management of FortiGate devices over TCP port 541. The FortiManager must have internet access for it to join the Security Fabric.

Once configured, the FortiGate can receive antivirus and IPS updates, and allows remote management through FortiManager or the FortiGate Cloud service. The FortiGate management option must be enabled so that the FortiGate can accept management updates to its firmware and FortiGuard services.

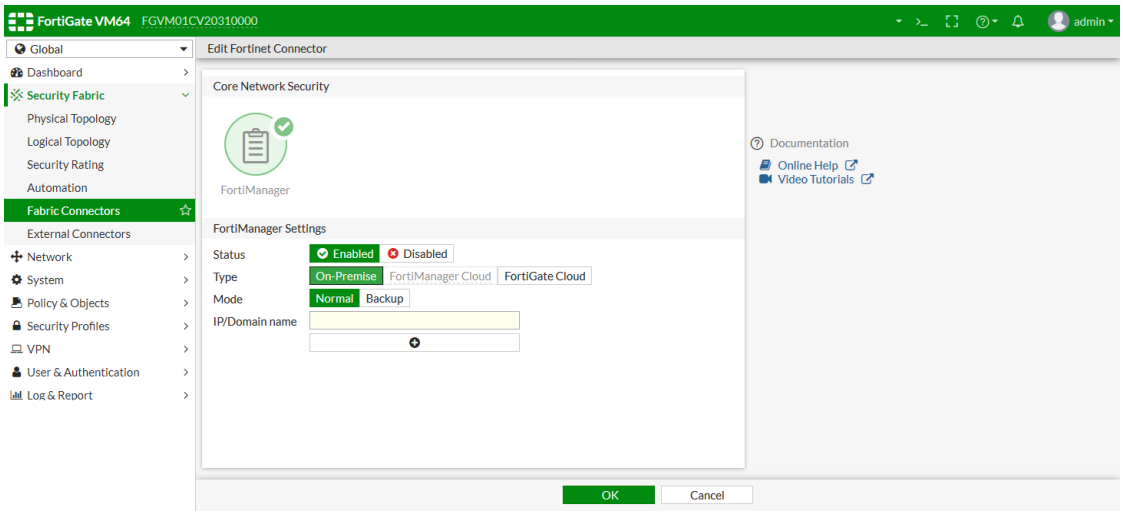
To add a FortiManager to the Security Fabric using the CLI:

```
config system central-management
  set type fortimanager
  set fmg {<IP_address> | <FQDN_address>}
end
```

To add a FortiManager to the Security Fabric using the GUI:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiManager* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enable*.

3. For *Type*, click *On-Premise*.



4. Enter the *IP/Domain Name* of the FortiManager.
5. Click *OK*.
6. On the FortiManager, go to *Device Manager* and find the FortiGate in the *Unauthorized Devices* list.
7. Select the FortiGate device or devices, and click *Authorize* in the toolbar.
8. In the *Authorize Device* pop-up, adjust the device names as needed, then click *OK*.
   For more information about using FortiManager, see the FortiManager Administration Guide.

Configuring FortiManager Cloud service

This cloud-based SaaS management service is available through FortiManager. This service is included in FortiCloud accounts with a FortiManager Cloud account level subscription (ALCI).

Configuring a per-device license

Once the FortiGate has acquired a contract named *FortiManager Cloud*, FortiCloud creates a cloud-based FortiManager instance under the user account. You can launch the portal for the cloud-based FortiManager from FortiCloud, and its URL starts with the User ID.

You can use a FortiGate with a contract for *FortiManager Cloud* to configure central management by using the FQDN of *fortimanager.forticloud.com*. A FortiGate-FortiManager tunnel is established between FortiGate and the FortiManager instance.

After the tunnel is established, you can execute FortiManager functions from the cloud-based FortiManager portal.

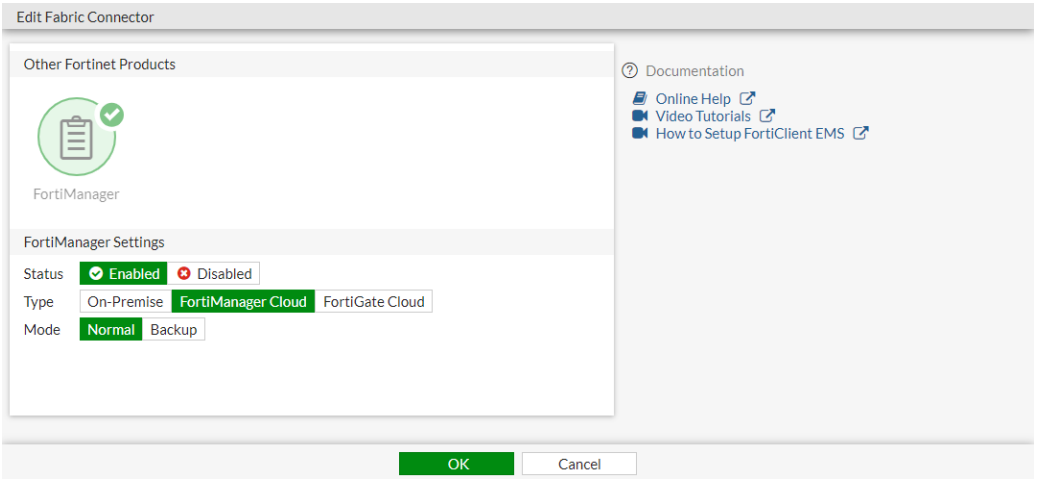
To configure FortiManager Cloud central management:

1. Enable FortiManager Cloud:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiManager* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   c. For *Type*, click *FortiManager Cloud*.

d. Click *OK*.



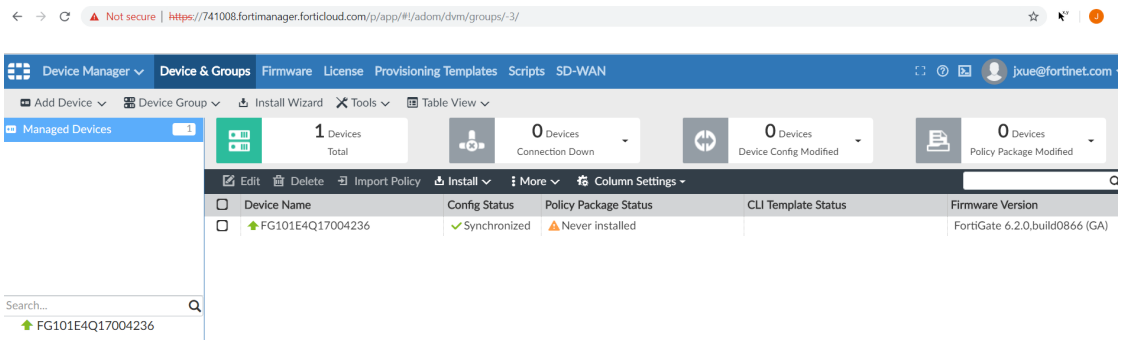
The *FortiManager Cloud* button can only be selected if you have a FortiManager Cloud product entitlement.



2. In the FortiManager Cloud instance, go to *Device Manager* and authorize the FortiGate. See Authorizing devices for more information.
When using FortiGate to enable FortiManager Cloud, the FortiGate appears as an unauthorized device.



After authorizing the FortiGate, it becomes a managed device.



In FortiOS, the *Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors* page now displays green arrow in the *FortiManager* card because FortiManager Cloud is registered.

Diagnostics

To verify the contract information:

```
# diagnose test update info contract
...
System contracts:
    ...
Account contracts:
    FMGC,Thu Dec  2 16:00:00 2021
...
```

To verify the FortiManager Cloud instance has launched and the FortiGate is registered:

```
# diagnose fdsm central-mgmt-status
Connection status: Up
Registration status: Registered
```

Configuring FortiSandbox

The Security Fabric supports FortiSandbox appliances and FortiSandbox Cloud. A FortiGate Cloud account is not required.

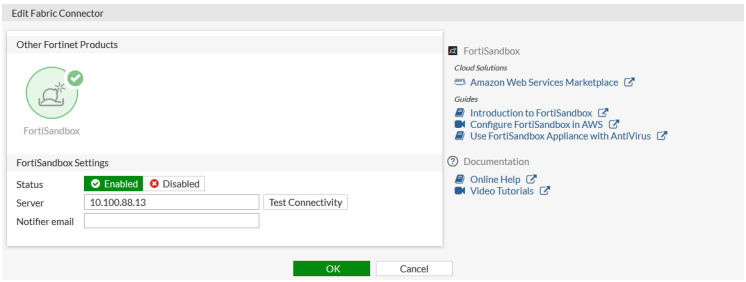
To use FortiSandbox in a Security Fabric, connect the FortiSandbox to the Security Fabric, then configure an antivirus profile to send files to the FortiSandbox. Sandbox inspection can also be used in web filter profiles.

FortiSandbox settings are configured on the root FortiGate of the Security Fabric. After configuration, the root FortiGate pushes the settings to other FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric.

Either a FortiSandbox appliance or FortiSandbox Cloud can be configured. If one is configured, then the other will not be available.

To add a FortiSandbox appliance to the Security Fabric:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. Set *Status* to *Enable*.
3. In the *Server* field, enter the FortiSandbox device's IP address.

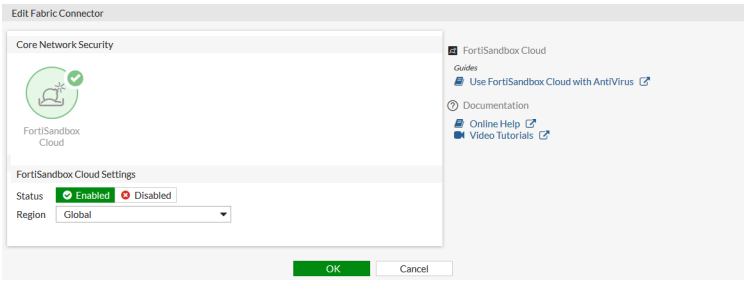


4. Optionally, enter a *Notifier email*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. On the FortiSandbox device, go to *Scan Input* > *Device*.

7. Edit the root FortiGate.
8. Under *Permissions*, check the *Authorized* box.
9. Click *OK*.
10. Authorize the rest of the FortiGate devices that are in the Security Fabric.

To add a FortiSandbox cloud instance to the Security Fabric:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox Cloud* card.
2. Set *Status* to *Enable*.
3. Select the FortiSandbox cloud *Region* from the dropdown list. Data from your network will only be sent to servers in the selected region.



4. Click *OK*.

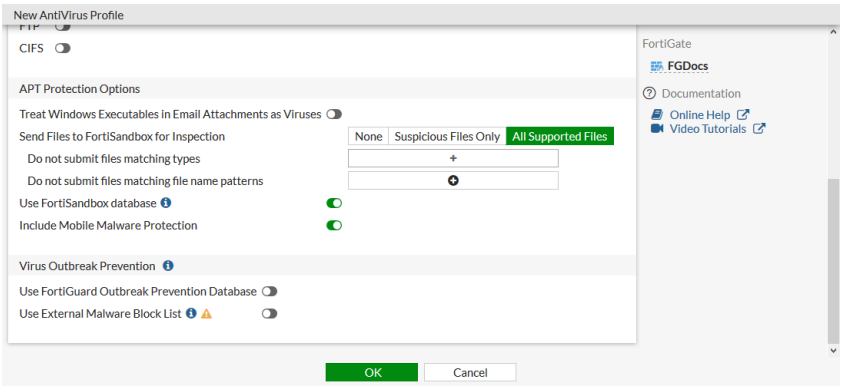
If *FortiSandbox Cloud* is not visible in the GUI, run the `execute forticloud-sandbox region` and `execute forticloud-sandbox update` commands.

Antivirus profiles

An antivirus profile must be configured to send files to the FortiSandbox.

To configure an antivirus profile:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Profile* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Create, edit, or clone an antivirus profile.



3. Under *APT Protection Options*, set *Send Files to FortiSandbox Appliance for Inspection* to *All Supported Files*.
4. Optionally, configure file exceptions.

5. Enable *Use FortiSandbox database*.
6. Click *OK*.

Web Filter profiles

Sandbox inspection can be used in Web Filter profiles.

To configure a web filter profile:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Create, edit, or clone a profile.
3. Under *Static URL Filter*, enable *Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox*.
4. Click *OK*.

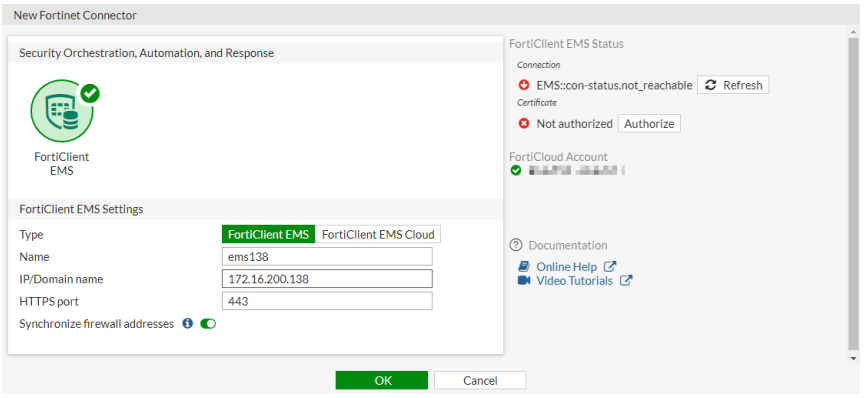
Configuring FortiClient EMS

The FortiGate Security Fabric root device can link to FortiClient Endpoint Management System (EMS) and FortiClient EMS Cloud (a cloud-based EMS solution) for endpoint connectors and automation. Up to three EMS servers can be added to the Security Fabric, including a FortiClient EMS Cloud server. EMS settings are synchronized between all fabric members.

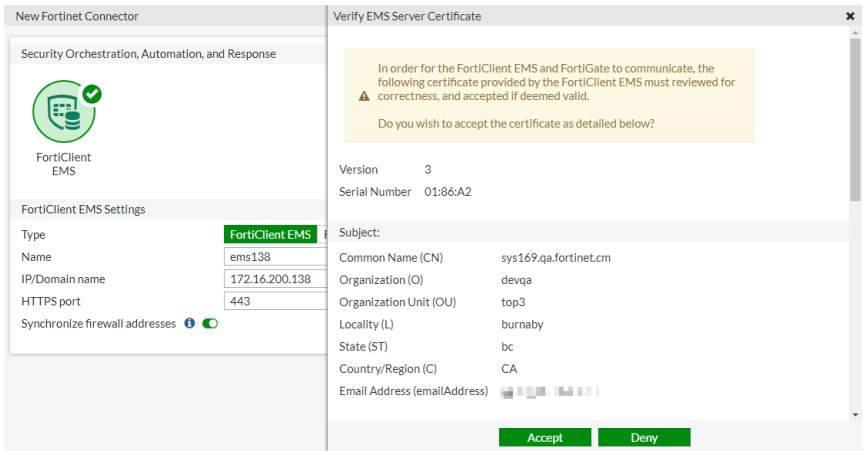
To enable cloud-based EMS services, the FortiGate must be registered to FortiCloud with an appropriate user account. The following examples presume that the EMS certificate has already been configured.

To add an on-premise FortiClient EMS server to the Security Fabric in the GUI:

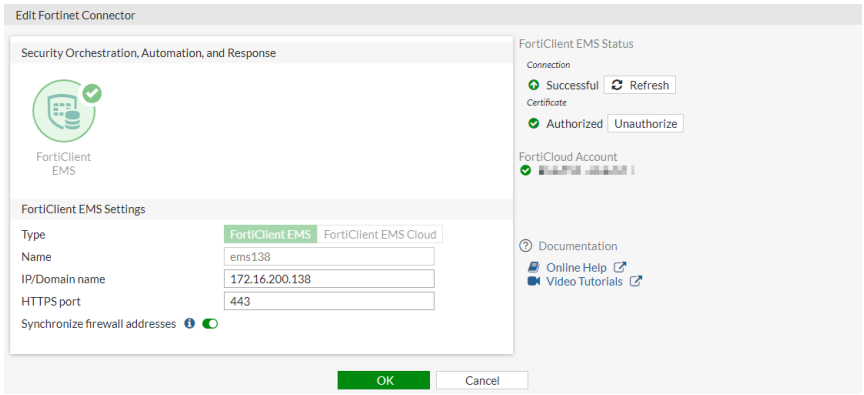
1. On the root FortiGate, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *Endpoint Control*.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
3. Click *Create New* and click *FortiClient EMS*.
4. For *Type*, click *FortiClient EMS*.
5. Enter a name and IP address or FQDN. When connecting to a multitenancy-enabled EMS, Fabric connectors must use an FQDN to connect to EMS, where the FQDN hostname matches a site name in EMS (including "Default"). The following are examples of FQDNs to provide when configuring the connector to connect to the default site and to a site named SiteA, respectively: default.ems.yourcompany.com, sitea.ems.yourcompany.com. See Multitenancy.



6. Click *OK*.
   A window appears to verify the EMS server certificate:



7. Click *Accept*.
   The *FortiClient EMS Status* section displays a *Successful* connection and an *Authorized* certificate:



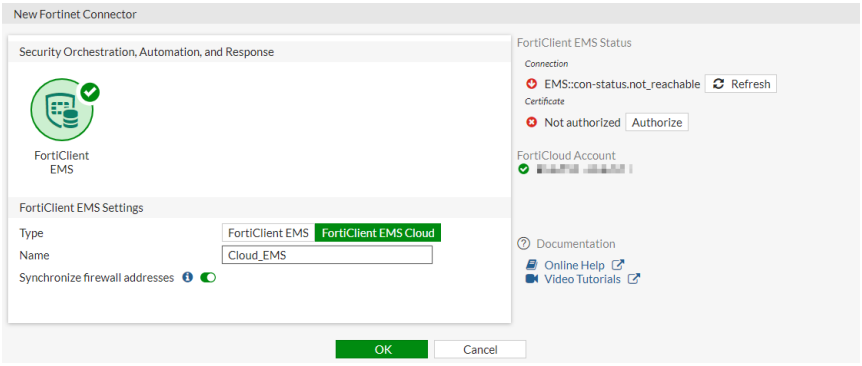
To add a FortiClient EMS Cloud server to the Security Fabric in the GUI:

FortiClient EMS Cloud can only be configured when the FortiGate is registered to FortiCloud and the EMS Cloud entitlement is verified.

If the FortiCloud account does not pass the FortiClient EMS Cloud entitlement check, the option is not selectable in the FortiClient EMS connector settings.

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New* and click *FortiClient EMS*.
3. Set *Type* to *FortiClient EMS Cloud*.

4. Enter a name.



5. Click *OK*.
   A window appears to verify the EMS server certificate.
6. Click *Accept*.
   The *FortiClient EMS Status* section displays a *Successful* connection and an *Authorized* certificate.

To test connectivity with the EMS server:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiClient EMS* or *FortiClient EMS Cloud* card.
2. In the *FortiClient EMS Status* section under *Connection*, click *Refresh*.

To add an on-premise FortiClient EMS server to the Security Fabric in the CLI:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
    edit <ems_name>
        set server <ip_address>
        set certificate <string>
        set https-port <integer>
        set source-ip <ip_address>
    next
end
```

The `https-port` is the EMS HTTPS access port number, and the `source-ip` is the REST API call source IP address.

To add a FortiClient EMS Cloud server to the Security Fabric in the CLI:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
    edit <name>
        set fortinetone-cloud-authentication enable
        set certificate <string>
    next
end
```

To verify the EMS Cloud entitlement in the CLI:

```
# diagnose test update info
```

To verify an EMS certificate in the CLI:

```
# execute fctems verify ems137
```

```
        Subject:     C = CA, ST = bc, L = burnaby, O = devqa, OU = top3, CN =
sys169.qa.fortinet.cm, emailAddress = xxxx@xxxxxxxx.xxx
        Issuer:      CN = 155-sub1.fortinet.com
        Valid from:  2017-12-05 00:37:57  GMT
        Valid to:    2027-12-02 18:08:13  GMT
        Fingerprint: D3:7A:1B:84:CC:B7:5C:F0:A5:73:3D:BB:ED:21:F2:E0
        Root CA:     No
        Version:     3
        Serial Num:
                01:86:a2
        Extensions:
                Name:     X509v3 Basic Constraints
                Critical: yes
                Content:
                CA:FALSE

                Name:     X509v3 Subject Key Identifier
                Critical: no
                Content:
                35:B0:E2:62:AF:9A:7A:E6:A6:8E:AD:CB:A4:CF:4D:7A:DE:27:39:A4

                Name:     X509v3 Authority Key Identifier
                Critical: no
                Content:
                keyid:66:54:0F:78:78:91:F2:E4:08:BB:80:2C:F6:BC:01:8E:3F:47:43:B1

DirName:/C=CA/ST=bc/L=burnaby/O=devqa/OU=top3/CN=fac155.fortinet.com/emailAddress=xyguo@fort
inet.com
serial:01:86:A4

                Name:     X509v3 Subject Alternative Name
                Critical: no
                Content:
                DNS:sys169.qa.fortinet.cm

                Name:     X509v3 Key Usage
                Critical: no
                Content:
                Digital Signature, Non Repudiation, Key Encipherment, Data Encipherment, Key
Agreement, Certificate Sign, CRL Sign, Encipher Only, Decipher Only

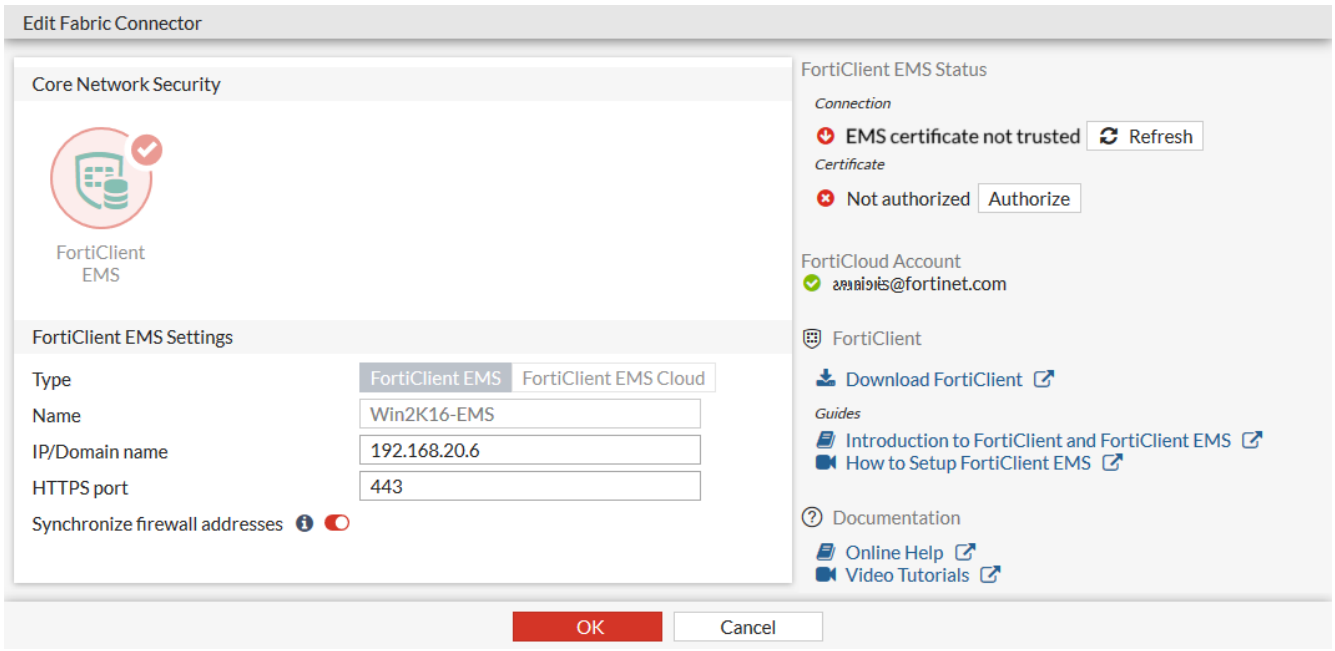
                Name:     X509v3 Extended Key Usage
                Critical: no
                Content:
                TLS Web Server Authentication, TLS Web Client Authentication

EMS configuration needs user to confirm server certificate.
Do you wish to add the above certificate to trusted remote certificates? (y/n)y
```

Troubleshooting

Certificate not trusted

When configuring a new connection to an EMS server, the certificate might not be trusted.



When you click *Authorize*, a warning displays: *The server certificate cannot be authenticated with installed CA certificates. Please install its CA certificates on this FortiGate*.

In the CLI, an error message displays when you try to verify the certificate:

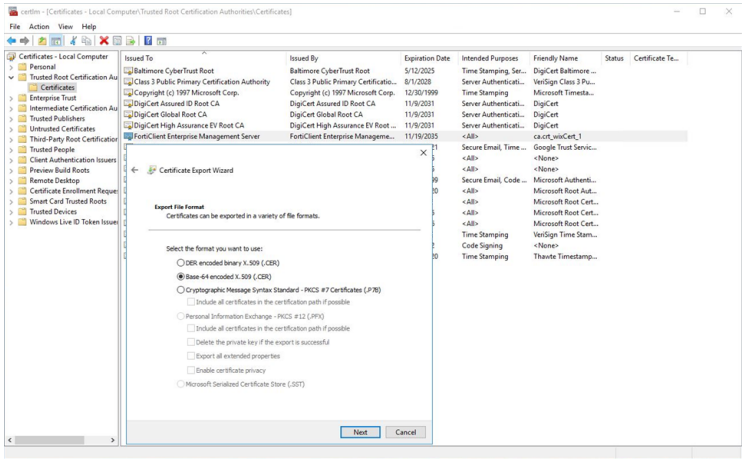
```
# execute fctems verify Win2K16-EMS
certificate not configured/verified: 2
Could not verify server certificate based on current certificate authorities.
Error 1--92-60-0 in get SN call: EMS Certificate is not signed by a known CA.
```

The default FortiClient EMS certificate that is used for the SDN connection is signed by the CA certificate that is saved on the Windows server when FortiClient EMS is first installed. You can manually export and install it on the FortiGate.

To manually export and install the certificate on to the FortiGate:

1. Export the EMS certificate on the server that EMS is installed on:
   a. On the Windows server that EMS is installed on, go to *Settings* > *Manage computer certificates*.
   b. In the certificate management module, go to *Trusted Root Certification Authorities* > *Certificates*.
   c. Right click on the certificate issued by FortiClient Enterprise Management Server and select *All Tasks* > *Export*.
   d. The *Certificate Export Wizard* opens. Click *Next*.

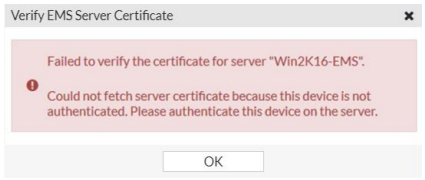
e. Select *Base-64 encoded X.509*, then click *Next*.



f. Enter a file name for the certificate and click *Browse* to select the folder where it will be located, then click *Next*.

g. Review the settings, then click *Finish*. The certificate is downloaded to the specified folder.

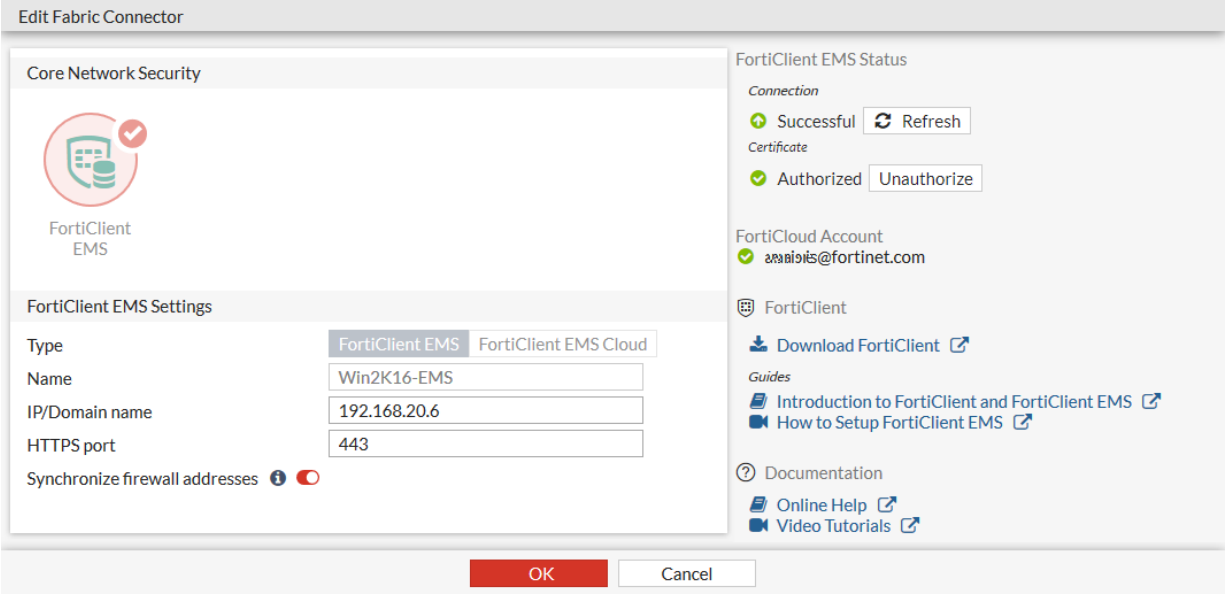
2. On the FortiGate, import the certificate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Certificate*. By default, the *Certificate* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 1049 for information.
   b. Click *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Set *Type* to *File*, and click *Upload* to import the certificate from the management computer.
   d. Click *OK*. The imported certificate is shown in the *Remote CA Certificate* section of the certificate table.
3. Try to authorize the certificate on the FortiGate:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and edit the FortiClient EMS connector. The connection status should now say that the certificate is not authorized.
   b. Click *Authorize*. The following warning is shown:



   The warning can also be seen in the CLI:

```
# execute fctems verify Win2K16-EMS
failure in certificate configuration/verification: -4
Could not verify EMS. Error 1--94-0-401 in get SN call: Authentication denied.
```

4. Authorize the FortiGate on EMS:
   a. Log in to the EMS server console and go to *Administration* > *Fabric Devices*.
   b. Select the serial number of the FortiGate device, then click *Authorize*.
5. Try to authorize the certificate on the FortiGate again:
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and edit the FortiClient EMS connector.
   b. Click *Authorize*.
   c. When presented with the EMS server certificate, click *Accept* to accept the certificate.
   Your connection should now be successful and authorized.



d. Click *OK*.

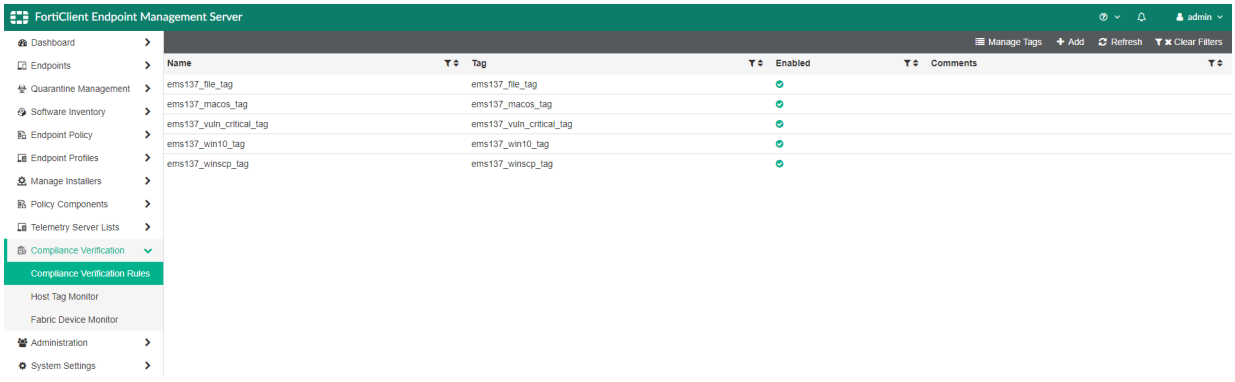
Synchronizing FortiClient EMS tags and configurations

An option under the FortiClient EMS settings on the FortiGate consolidates the setup of EMS connectors to support EMS tags. EMS tags are pulled into the FortiGate via TCP/8013 and automatically synced with the EMS server. They are converted into read-only dynamic firewall addresses that can be used in firewall policies, routing, and so on.

You can test connectivity to the EMS on the FortiGate with the `diagnose endpoint fctems test-connectivity <EMS_ENTRY_NAME>` command.

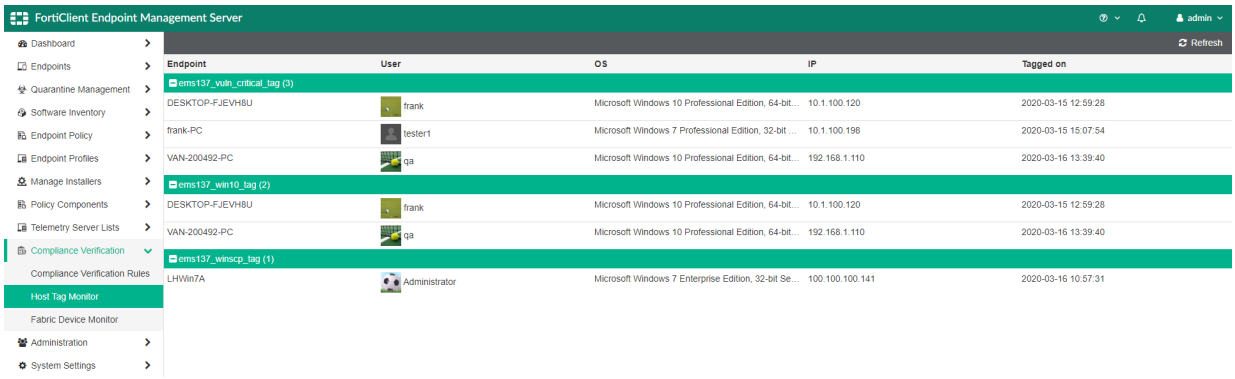
These examples presume the following have been configured in FortiClient EMS:

- Tags have been created on the *Compliance Verification* > *Compliance Verification Rules* page.



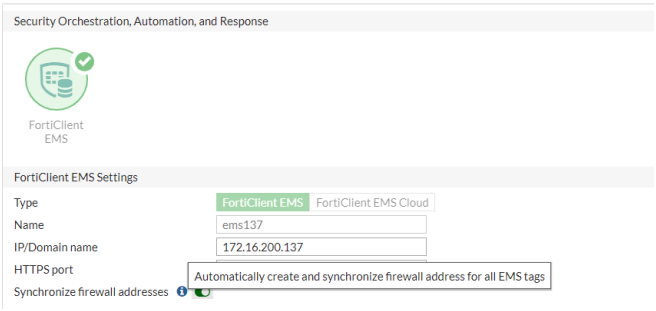
- There are registered users who match the defined tags that are visible on the *Compliance Verification* > *Host Tag*

Monitor page.



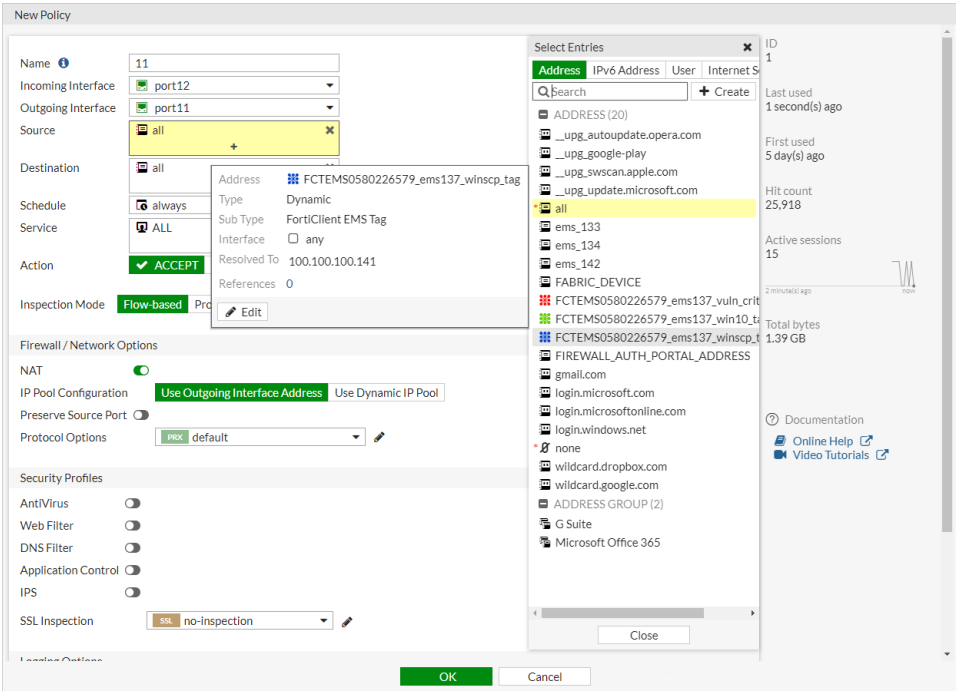
To configure FortiClient EMS with tag synchronization in the GUI:

1. Configure the EMS Fabric Connector:
   a. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New* and click *FortiClient EMS*.
   c. Enable *Synchronize firewall addresses*.



   d. Configure the other settings as needed and validate the certificate.
   e. Click *OK*.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and hover over the EMS tag to view which IPs it resolves to.

3. Configure a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
   b. For the *Source Address*, add the EMS tag dynamic address.



   c. Configure the other settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure FortiClient EMS with tag synchronization in the CLI:

1. Configure the EMS Fabric Connector:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
    edit "ems137"
        set fortinetone-cloud-authentication disable
        set server "172.16.200.137"
        set https-port 443
        set source-ip 0.0.0.0
        set pull-sysinfo enable
        set pull-vulnerabilities enable
        set pull-avatars enable
        set pull-tags enable
        set call-timeout 5000
        set certificate "REMOTE_Cert_1"
    next
end
```

2. Verify which IPs the dynamic firewall address resolves to:

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list
List all dynamic addresses:
FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_vuln_critical_tag: ID(118)
        ADDR(10.1.100.120)
        ADDR(10.1.100.198)
```

```
FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_winscp_tag: ID(155)
        ADDR(100.100.100.141)

FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_win10_tag: ID(182)
        ADDR(10.1.100.120)

# diagnose firewall dynamic address FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_vuln_critical_tag
FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_vuln_critical_tag: ID(118)
        ADDR(10.1.100.120)
        ADDR(10.1.100.198)

Total dynamic list entries: 1.
Total dynamic addresses: 2
Total dynamic ranges: 0
```

3. Configure a firewall policy that uses the EMS tag dynamic firewall address as a source.

Configuring FortiNAC

A FortiNAC device can be added to the Security Fabric on the root FortiGate. After the device has been added and authorized, you can log in to the FortiNAC from the FortiGate topology views.



Adding a FortiNAC to the Security Fabric requires a FortiNAC with a license issued in the year 2020 or later that includes an additional certificate. The device cannot be added if it has an older license. Use the `licensetool` in the FortiNAC CLI to determine if your license includes the additional certificate.

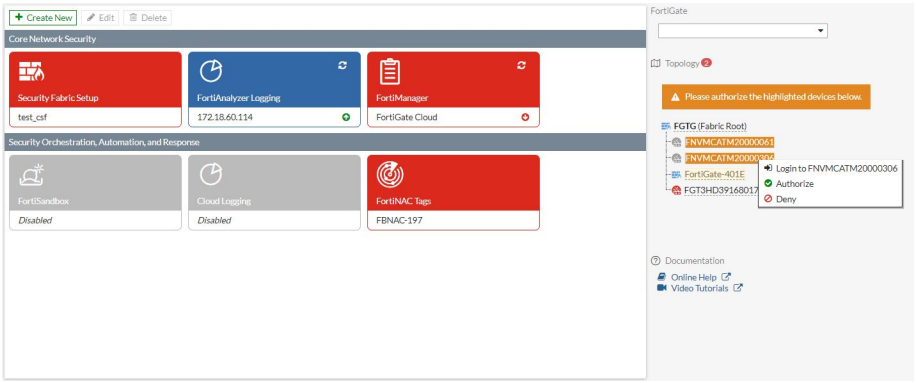
To add a FortiNAC to the Security Fabric:

1. On the FortNAC, configure telemetry and input the IP address of the root FortiGate. See Security Fabric Connection in the *FortiNAC Administration Guide* for more information.
2. On the root FortiGate, authorize the FortiNAC.
3. Verify the connection status in the topology views.

To authorize the FortiNAC on the root FortiGate in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. The FortiNAC device will be highlighted in the topology list in the right panel with the status *Waiting for Authorization*.

3. Click on the highlighted FortiNAC and select *Authorize*.



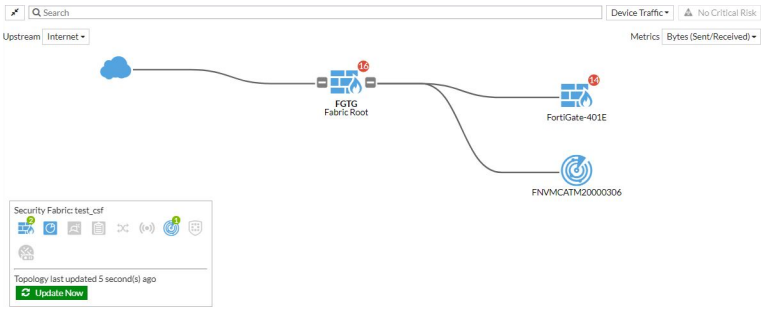
Optionally, you can also deny authorization to the FortiNAC to remove it from the list.

To authorize the FortiNAC on the root FortiGate in the CLI:

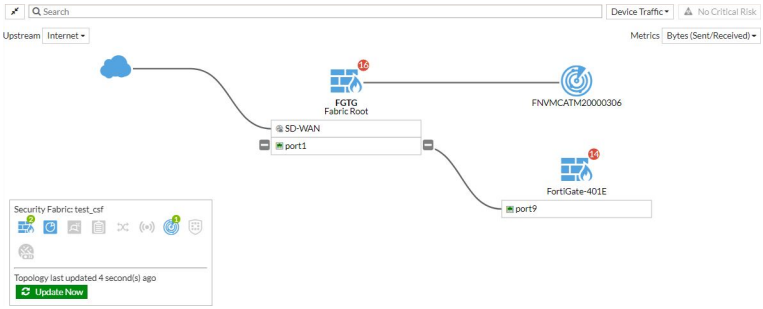
```
config system csf
    config trusted-list
        edit "FNVMCATM20000306"
            set action accept
        next
    end
end
```

To verify the connection status:

1. After the FortiNAC is authorized, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* and confirm that it is included in the topology.



2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology* and confirm the FortiNAC is also displayed there.

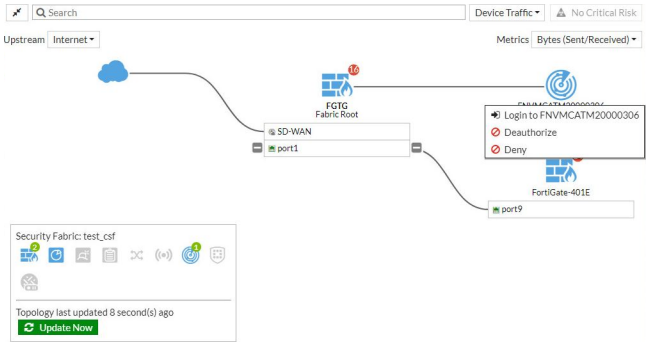


3. Run the following command in the CLI to view information about the FortiNAC device's status:

```
# diagnose sys csf downstream-devices fortinac
{
  "path":"FG5H1E5818900126:FNVMCATM20000306",
  "mgmt_ip_str":"10.1.100.197",
  "mgmt_port":0,
  "admin_port":8443,
  "serial":"FNVMCATM20000306",
  "host_name":"adnac",
  "device_type":"fortinac",
  "upstream_intf":"port2",
  "upstream_serial":"FG5H1E5818900126",
  "is_discovered":true,
  "ip_str":"10.1.100.197",
  "downstream_intf":"eth0",
  "authorizer":"FG5H1E5818900126",
  "idx":1
}
```

To log in to the FortiNAC from the FortiGate:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
2. Click on the FortiNAC and select *Login to <serial_number>*.



A new tab will open to the FortiNAC log in page.

3. Enter the username and password to log in to the FortiNAC.

Configuring FortiAP and FortiSwitch

FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices can be authorized in the Security Fabric with one click. After connecting a FortiAP or FortiSwitch device to an authorized FortiGate, it will automatically be listed in the topology tree.

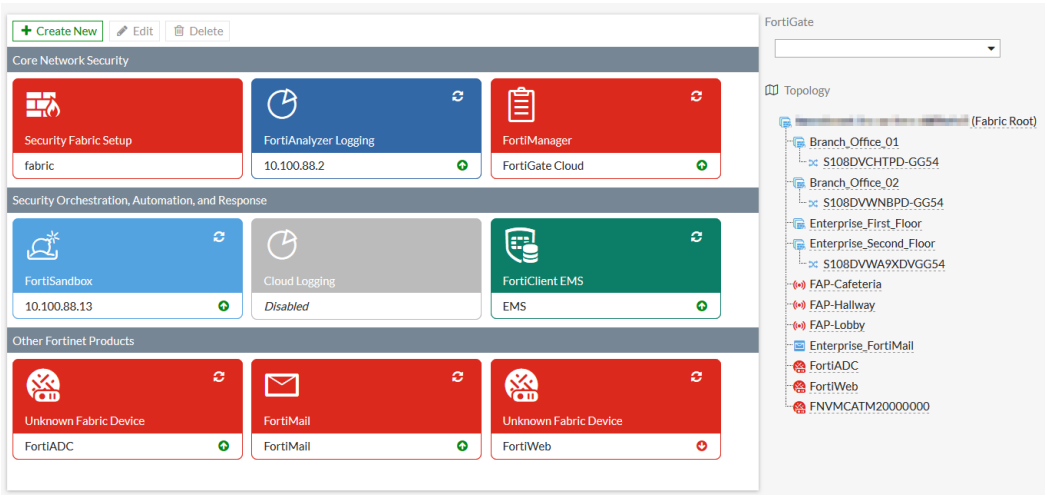
If the default `auto-auth-extension-device` settings on the FortiAP or FortiSwitch have been modified, manual authorization in the Security Fabric may not be required.

For more information about configuring FortiAPs, see Configuring the FortiGate interface to manage FortiAP units and Discovering, authorizing, and deauthorizing FortiAP units.

For more information about configuring FortiSwitches, see Using the FortiGate GUI.

To authorize FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices:

1. Connect the FortiAP or FortiSwitch device to a FortiGate.
2. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. The new device is shown in the *Topology* tree.
3. Click the device and select *Authorize*.



Configuring FortiMail

FortiMail can be authorized into the Security Fabric using either the gutter on the *Fabric Connectors* page, or by pre-authorizing using the FortiMail serial number or certificate.

To join the Security Fabric from FortiMail:

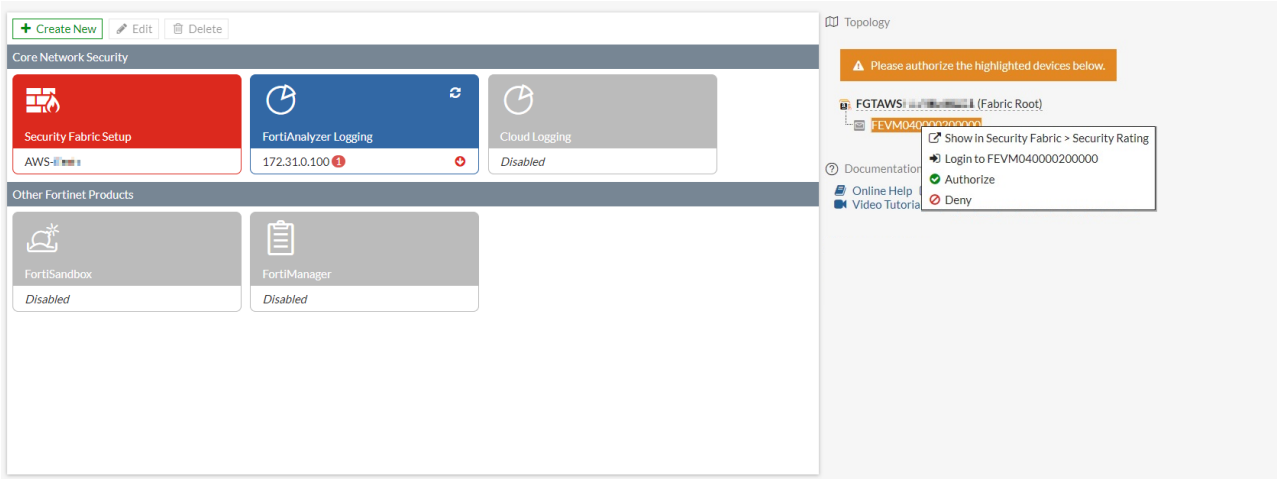
1. Go to *System* > *Customization* and click the *Corporate Security Fabric* tab (or the *Corporate Security Fabric* tab in FortiMail 6.4.2 and earlier).
2. Click the toggle to enable the Fabric.
3. Enter the *Upstream IP Address* (root FortiGate) and the *Management IP* of the FortiMail.
4. Click *Apply*.

Authorizing using FortiOS

If the FortiMail was added to the Security Fabric but not pre-authorized, you can authorize it in FortiOS on the *Fabric Connectors* page.

To authorize FortiMail:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. In the topology tree, hover over the FortiMail and click *Authorize*.



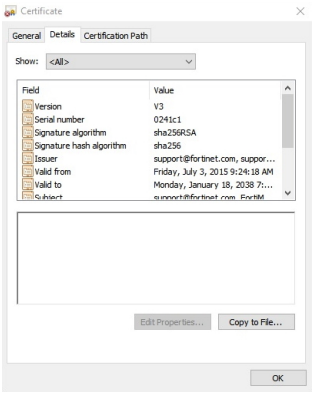
3. Verify the certificate is correct, then click *Accept*.

Pre-authorizing using the FortiMail certificate

FortiMail can be pre-authorized using its serial number or certificate. When you pre-authorize, the FortiMail can join at any time, and you will not need to authorize it FortiOS. In this example, FortiMail is pre-authorized using a certificate.

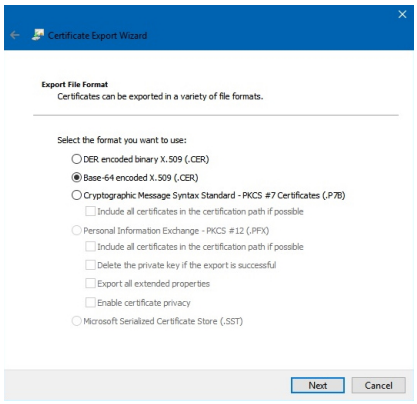
To pre-authorize FortiMail using a third-party or default certificate:

1. Log in to FortiMail.
2. Download the certificate. For example, in Chrome:
   a. In the left side of the address bar, click the icon to view the site information.
   b. Click *Certificate*.
   c. Click the *Details* tab, then click *Copy to File*.



   d. The *Certificate Export Wizard* opens. Click *Next* to continue.

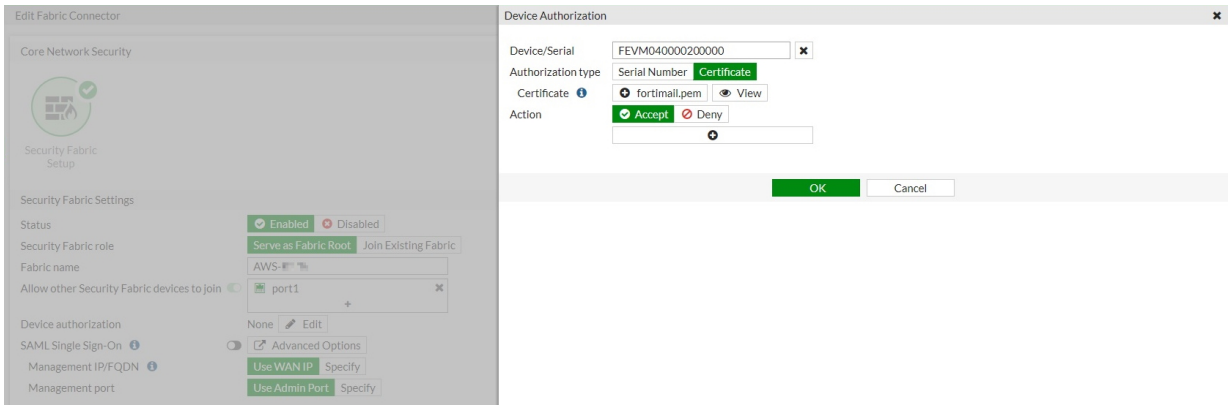
e. For the file format, select *Base-64 encoded X.509 (.CER)*, then click *Next*.



f. Browse to the folder location and enter a file name, then click *Next*.

g. Click *Finish*, then click *OK* to close the dialog box.

3. In FortiOS, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
4. Beside *Device authorization*, click *Edit* and configure the following:
   a. Enter the FortiMail serial number.
   b. For *Authorization type*, select *Serial Number*.
   c. For *Certificate*, upload the .CER file you saved previously.



d. Click *OK*.

Configuring FortiVoice

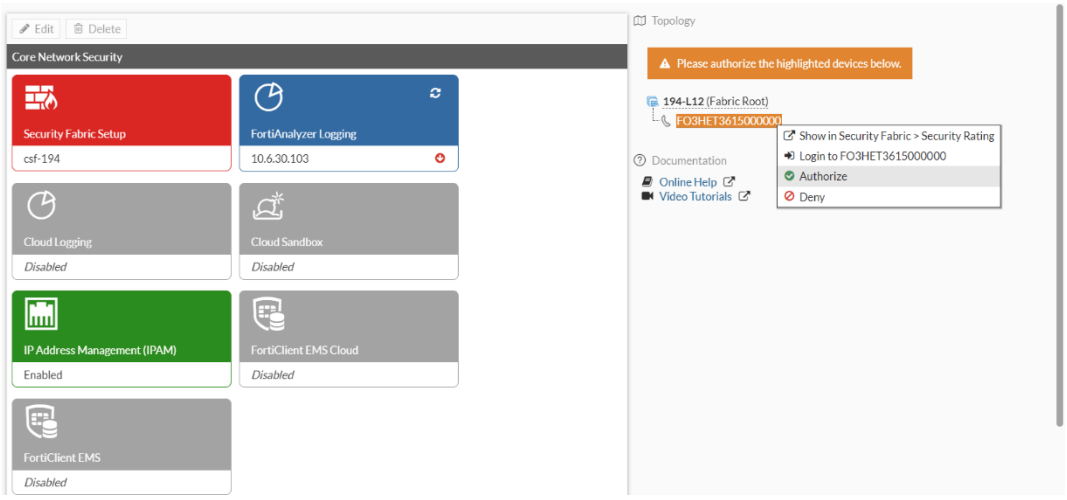
A FortiVoice can be added to the Security Fabric on the root FortiGate. Once the FortiVoice is added and authorized, you can log in to the device from the Security Fabric topology pages or the topology tree. A FortiVoice can be authorized in FortiOS, or can be pre-authroized with its serial number or certificate. A FortiVoice can be added to the dashboard as a Fabric device widget.

Authorizing using the FortiOS GUI

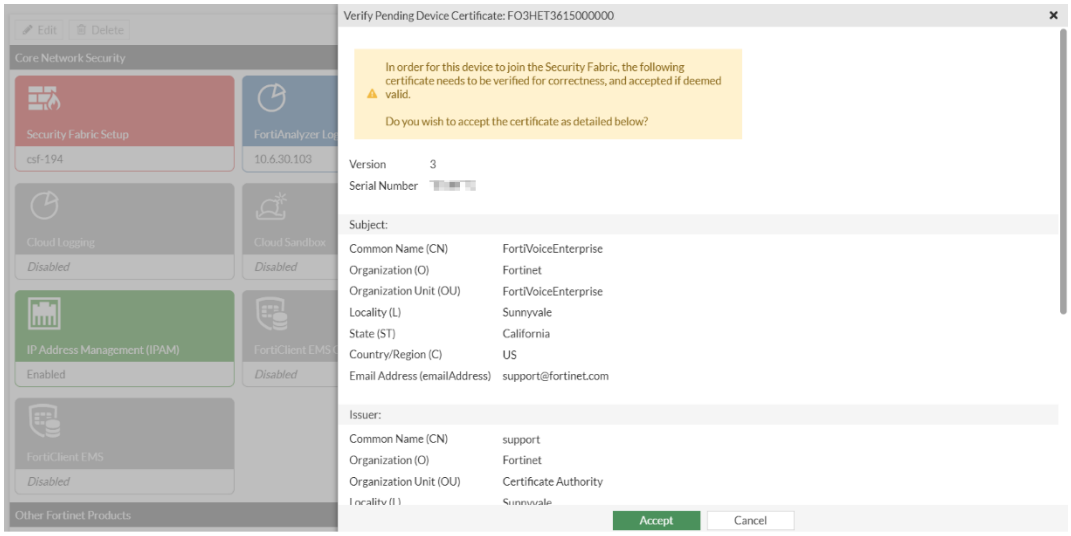
To authorize a FortiVoice to join the Security Fabric:

1. On the FortiVoice, enable the Security Fabric. See Enabling Security Fabric in the FortiVoice Phone System Administration Guide.

2. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors*. The FortiVoice is highlighted in the topology list in the right panel with the status *Waiting for Authorization*.
3. Click the highlighted FortiVoice and select *Authorize*.



4. Verify that the certificate is correct, then click *Accept*.



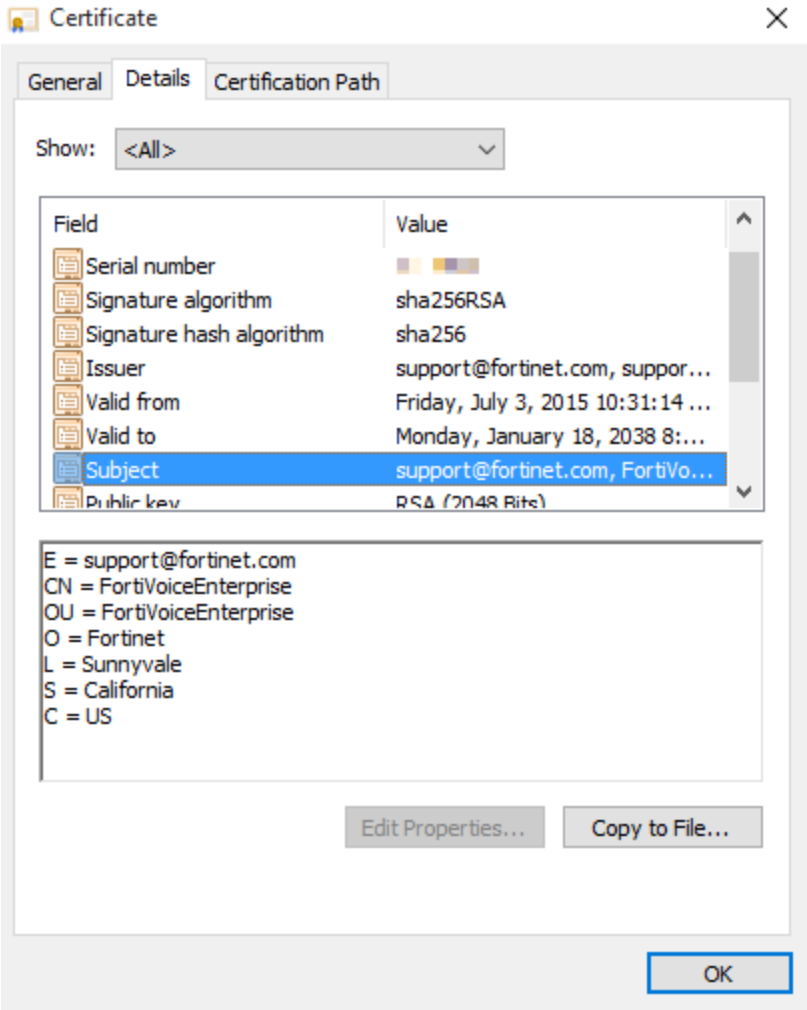
Pre-authorizing using the FortiVoice certificate

A FortiVoice can be pre-authorized using its serial number or certificate. When pre-authorizing, the FortiVoice can join at any time, and it will not need to be authorized in FortiOS. In the following example, the FortiVoice is pre-authorized using a certificate.

To pre-authorize a FortiVoice using a third-party or default certificate in the GUI:

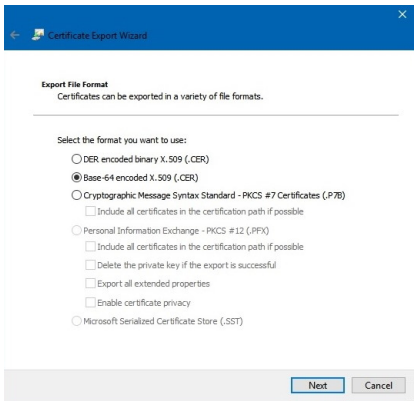
1. Log in to the FortiVoice.
2. Download the certificate. For example, in Chrome:
   a. In the left side of the address bar, click the icon to view the site information.
   b. Click *Certificate*.

c. In the *Certificate* window, click the *Details* tab, then click *Copy to File*.



d. The *Certificate Export Wizard* opens. Click *Next*.

e. Set the format to *Base-64 encoded X.509 (.CER)*, then click *Next*.

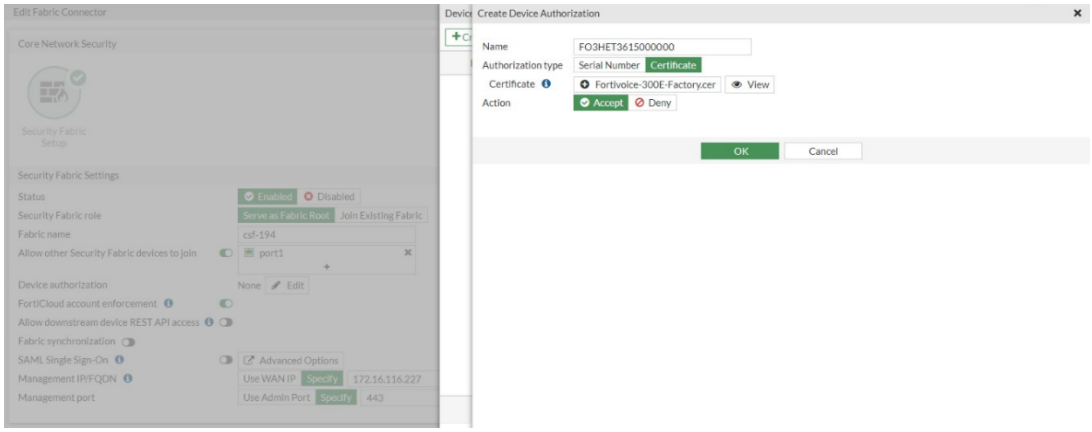


f. Browse to the folder location, enter a file name, then click *Next*.

g. Click *Finish*, then click *OK* to close the wizard.

3. In FortiOS, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.

4. Beside *Device authorization*, click *Edit*.
5. Click *Create New* and enter the following:
   a. In the *Name* field, enter the FortiVoice serial number.
   b. Set the *Authorization type* to *Certificate*.
   c. Upload the .CER file.



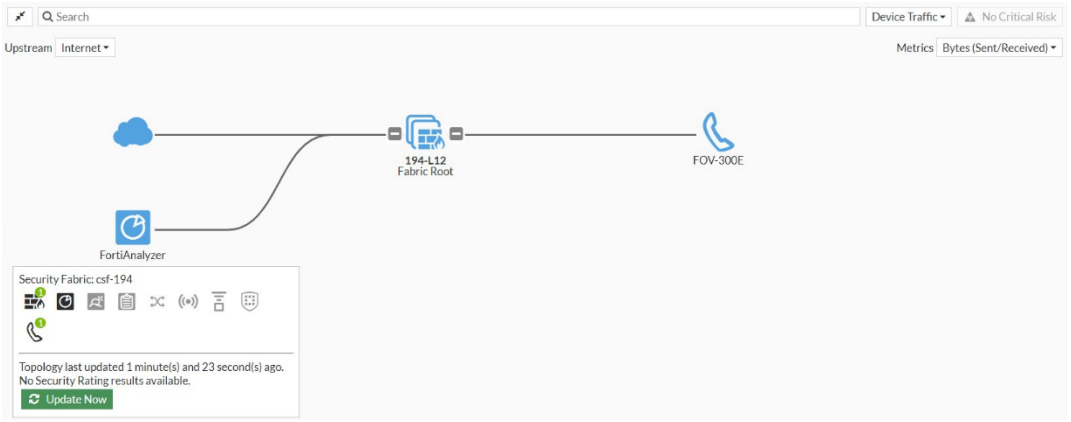
   d. Click *OK*, then close the *Device authorization* pane.

To pre-authorize a FortiVoice using a third-party or default certificate in the CLI:

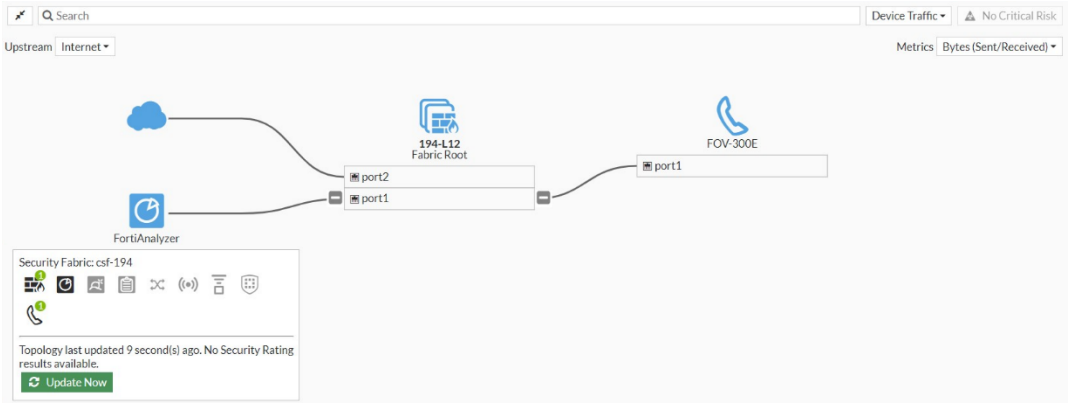
```
config system csf
    config trusted-list
        edit "FOV-300E"
            set action accept
            set authorization-type certificate
            set certificate "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
...
<encrypted_certificate_data>
...
-----END CERTIFICATE-----"
        next
    end
end
```

To verify the connection status:

1. After the FortiVoice is authorized, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* and confirm that it is included in the topology.



2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology* and confirm the FortiVoice is also displayed there.



Logging in to the FortiVoice using the Security Fabric

To log in using a topology page:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
2. Click on the FortiVoice and select *Login to <serial_number>*.

To log in using the Fabric Connectors page:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. In the topology tree, click the FortiVoice and select *Login to <serial_number>*.

Configuring additional devices

The following Fortinet devices are supported by the Security Fabric:

- FortiADC
- FortiDDoS
- FortiSandbox
- Configuring FortiMail on page 173

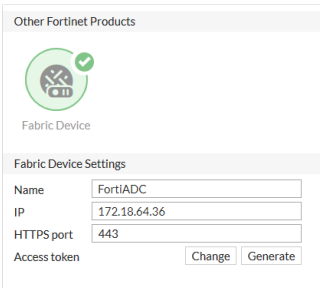
- FortiWeb
- FortiWLC

Security Fabric supports standalone FortiSandbox devices, FortiSandbox HA-Cluster primary, and FortiSandbox cluster IP.

In FortiOS, the device details can be shown in the *Security Fabric* and *Fabric Device* dashboard widgets, as well as the Fabric Connectors page, and physical and logical topologies.

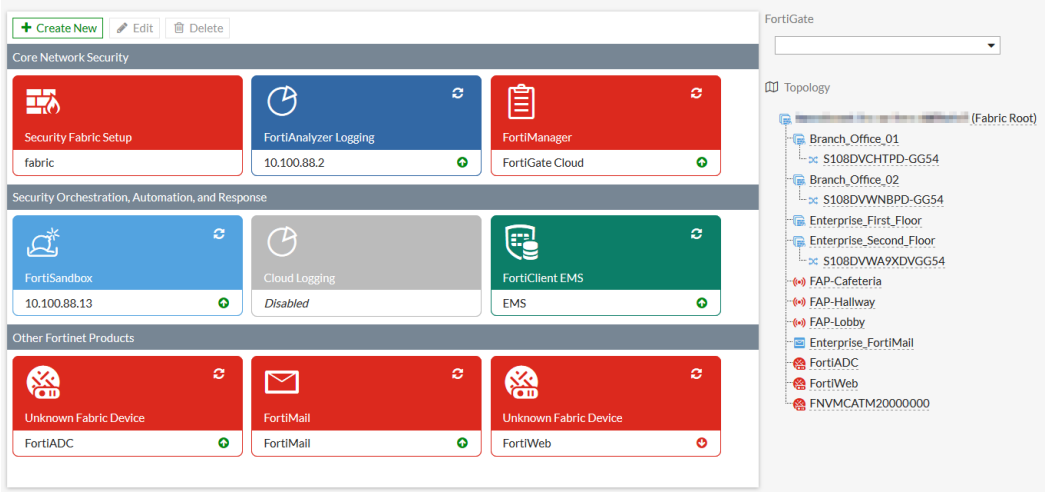
To add one or more of the devices to the Security Fabric in the GUI:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Fabric Device*.
3. Enter the *Name*, *IP*, *HTTPS port* for the device.



FortiSandbox only supports HTTPS port 443.

4. Click Generate to generate an access token. The *Generate Access Token* pane opens.
   a. Enter the device's username and password.
   b. Click *OK*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Add more devices as required.
   The additional devices are shown on the *Fabric Connectors* page under *Other Fortinet Products* and in the *Topology* tree.



To add one or more of the devices to the Security Fabric in the CLI:

```
config system csf
    ...
    config fabric-device
        edit "FortiADC"
            set device-ip 172.18.64.36
            set access-token xxxxxx
        next
    end
end
```

Using the Security Fabric

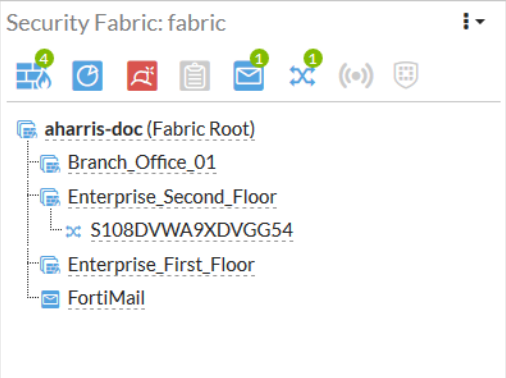
Dashboard widgets

Security Fabric widgets can be added to FortiGate dashboards, including:

- Security Fabric status on page 181
- Fabric Device on page 182
- FortiGate Cloud on page 183

Security Fabric status

The Security Fabric status widget shows a summary of the devices in the Security Fabric.



Hover the cursor over the top icons to view pop-ups showing the statuses of the devices in the fabric.

The device tree shows devices that are connected, or could be connected, to you Security Fabric, according to the following color scheme:

- Blue: connected to the network
- Gray: not configured or not detected
- Red: no longer connected or not authorized

Hover over a device in the tree to view details about the device, such as it's serial number, operation mode, IP address, CPU and memory usage, and others, depending on the device type.

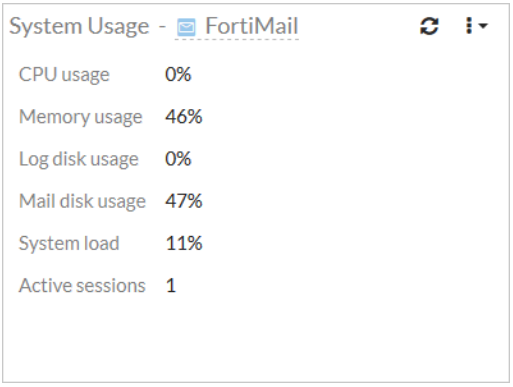
Unauthorized FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices are highlighted in the list, and can be authorized by clicking on the device name.

Fabric Device

The Fabric Device widget shows statistics and system information about the selected fabric device.

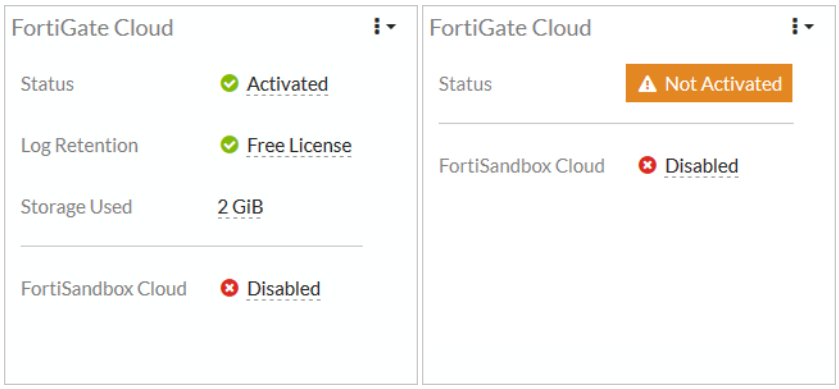
For a FortiMail device, the widget can show:

- Mail Statistics: a chart of the total messages and total spam messages over time.
- Statistics Summary: a pie chart summarizes mail statistics.
- System Information: The FortiMail System Information widget
- System Usage: System usage information, such as CPU, memory, and disk usage, as well as the number of active sessions.



FortiGate Cloud

The FortiGate Cloud widget shows the FortiGate Cloud status and information. If your account is not activated, you can activate it from the widget.



To activate your FortiGate Cloud account:

1. Click on the *Not Activated* button and select *Activate*. The *Activate FortiGate Cloud* pane opens.
2. If you already have an account:
   a. Fill in your email address, password, country or region, and reseller.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. If you are creating an account:
   a. In the *FortiCloud* field select *Create Account*.
   b. Fill in all of the required information.
   c. Click *OK*.

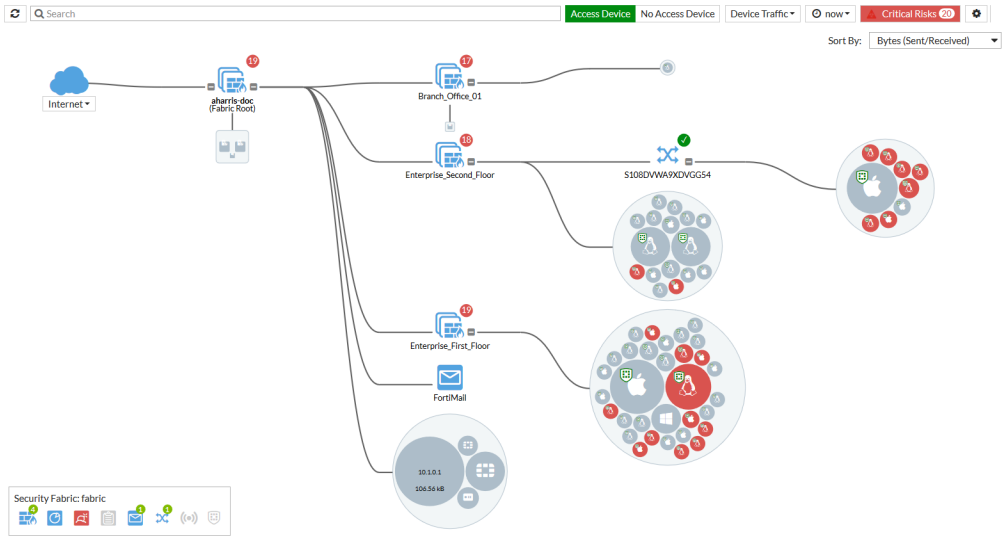
Topology

The full Security Fabric topology can be viewed on the root FortiGate. Downstream FortiGate devices' topology views do not include upstream devices.

The Physical Topology shows the physical structure of your network, including all connected devices and the connections between them. The Logical Topology shows information about the interfaces that connect devices to the Security Fabric. Only Fortinet devices are shown in the topologies.

In both topology pages, you can use filtering and sorting options to control the information that is shown. Hover the cursor over a device icon, port number, or endpoint to open a tooltip that shows information about that specific device, port, or endpoint. Right-click on a device to log in to it or to deauthorize it. Right-click on an endpoint to perform various tasks, including drilling down for more details on sources or compromised hosts, quarantining the host, and banning the IP address.

The small number that might be shown on the top right corner of a device icon is the number of security ratings recommendations or warnings for that device. The color of the circle shows the severity of the highest security rating check that failed. Clicking it opens the Security Rating page. See Security rating on page 237 for more information.



Servers and server clusters are represented by squares with rounded corners. They are grouped separately from circular endpoints. Devices are grouped by type and are colored based on their risk level. Endpoint groups are represented by donut charts or bubble packs depending on the current view settings (see Endpoint groups for more information). The size of the bubbles in the topology vary based on traffic volume.

AWS assets are grouped by AWS security groups or subnets, and information about detected Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVEs), as well as the instance details and ID, are shown.

Views

The topology views can be focused using filters and by sorting in different ways to help you locate the information that you need.

Select one of *Access Device* or *No Access Device* to only show access or no access devices in the physical topology.

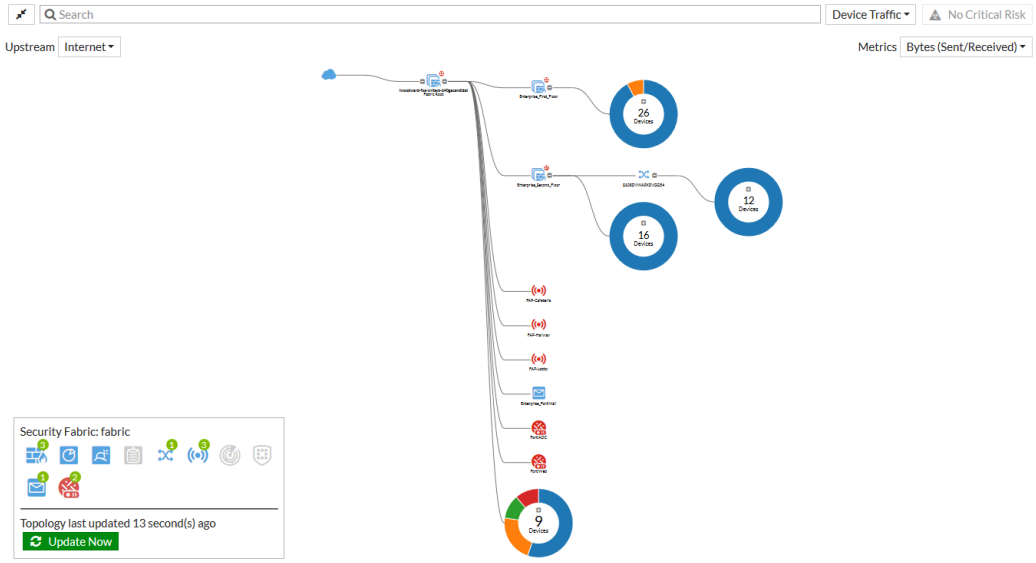
From the *Endpoint Option* dropdown list, select one of the following views:

- *Device Traffic*: Organize devices by traffic.
- *Device Count*: Organize devices by the number of devices connected to it.
- *Device Operating System*: Organize devices by operating system.
- *Device Hardware Vendor*: Organize devices by hardware vendor.
- *Risk*: Only include devices that have endpoints with medium, high, or critical risk values of the specified type: *All*, *Compromised Host*, *Vulnerability*, or *Threat Score*.
- *No Devices*: Do not show endpoints.

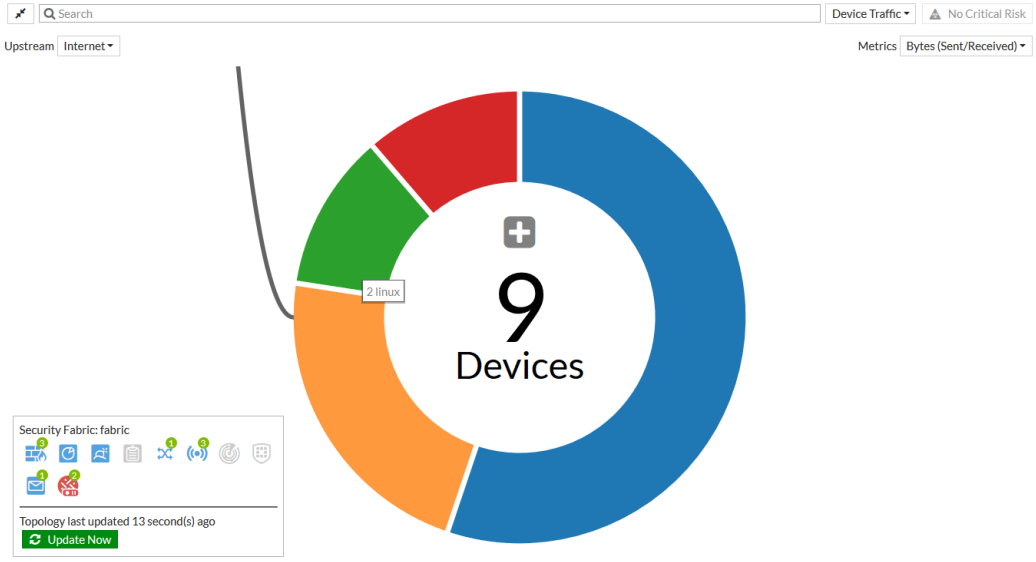
The time period dropdown list filters the view by time. Options include: *now* (real time), *5 minutes*, *1 hour*, *24 hours*, or *7 days*.

Endpoint groups

The Device Traffic and Device Count views display endpoint groups as donut charts, with the total number of endpoints in the group in the center of the chart. Each sector of the donut chart represents a different endpoint operating system.



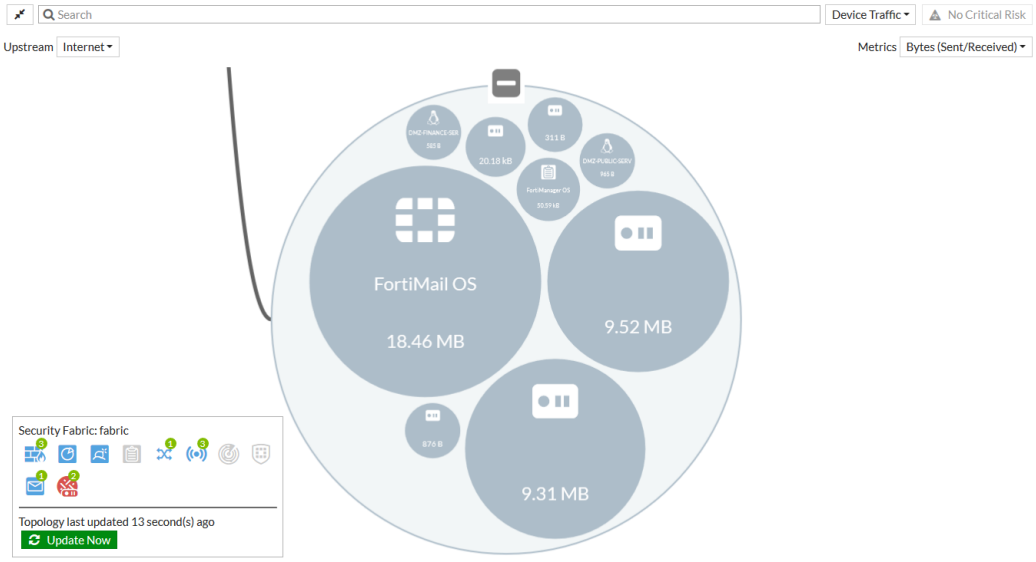
To zoom in on a donut chart, click any chart sector. Each sector represents a different endpoint OS. Hovering over each sector allows you to see the OS that the sector represents and the number of endpoints that have that OS installed.



In this example, the endpoint group contains a total of nine endpoints, with the following OSes installed:

Donut sector color	OS	Number of endpoints
Orange	Linux	2
Green	FortiMail	1
Red	FortiManager	1
Blue	Other	5

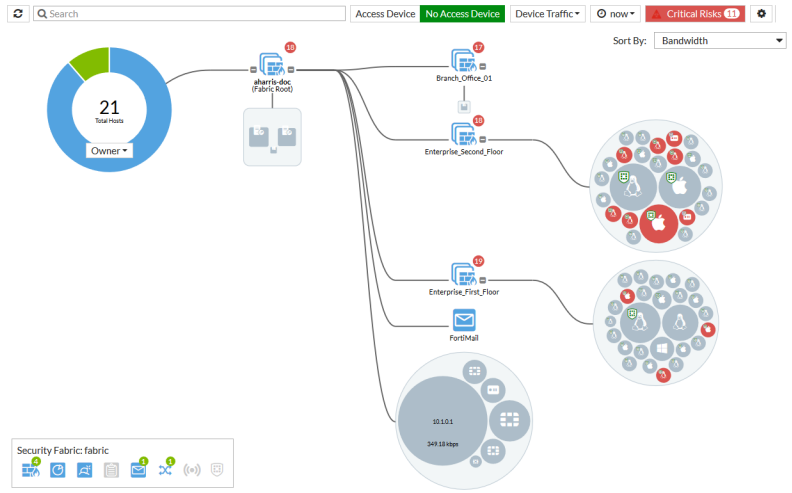
To view the endpoint group in a bubble pack display, click the + button in the center of the donut chart. You can view each individual endpoint in the bubble pack view.



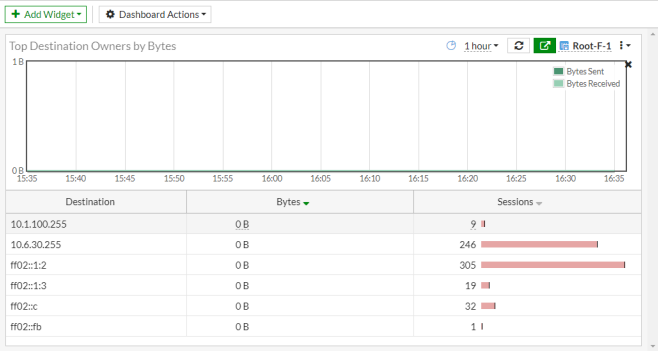
WAN cloud

The WAN cloud icon includes a dropdown menu for selecting where the destination data comes from. The available options are: *Internet*, *Owner*, *IP Address*, and *Country/Region*. These options are only available when the filtering is based on *Device Traffic*.

When *Owner* is selected, the destination hosts are shown as donut charts that show the percentage of internal (with private IP addresses) and Internet hosts. Hover over either color in the chart to see additional information.



To view more details, right-click on the chart and select *Destination Owner Details*. The *Top Destination Owners by Bytes* widget opens. Click the green icon (*Standalone FortiView page* icon) to add the widget to a new dashboard.



Alternatively, you can add the *FortiView Destination Owners* widget as a standalone page or to an existing dashboard (see Adding FortiView widgets on page 103).

FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices

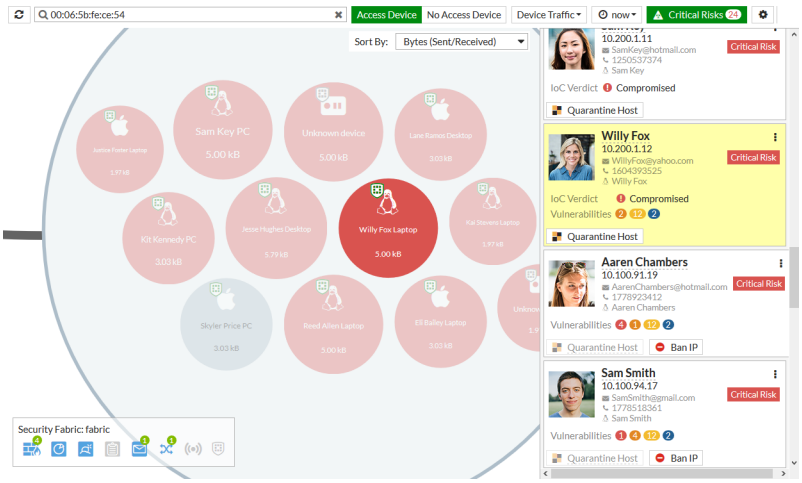
Newly discovered FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices are initial shown in the topologies with gray icons to indicate that they have not been authorized. To authorize a device, click on the device icon or name and select *Authorize*. Once authorized, the device icon will turn blue.

Right-click on an authorized FortiAP device to *Deauthorize* or *Restart* the device. Right-click on a FortiSwitch device to *Deauthorize*, *Restart*, or *Upgrade* the device, or to *Connect to the CLI*.

FortiAP and FortiSwitch links are enhanced to show link aggregation groups for the inter-switch link (ISL-LAG). To differentiate them from physical links, ISL-LAG links are shown with a thicker line. The endpoint circles can also be used as a reference to identify ISL-LAG groups that have more than two links.

Critical risks

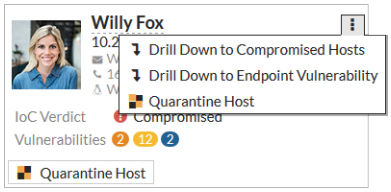
Click the *Critical Risks* button to see a list of endpoints that are deemed critical risks, organized by threat severity. These are the red endpoints in the current topology view.



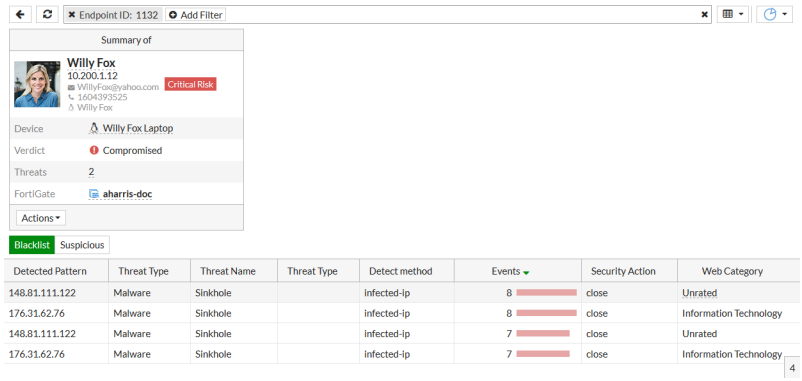
For each endpoint, the user's photo, name, IP address, email address, and phone number are shown. The number of vulnerabilities of each severity is shown, and if the IoC verdict is that the endpoint is compromised.

If applicable, the endpoint's host can be quarantined or their IP address banned, by clicking the *Quarantine Host* on *Ban IP* button.

The dropdown menu also provides options to drill down to more information on compromised hosts or endpoint vulnerabilities.



Click *Drill Down to Compromised Hosts* to open the *Top Compromised Hosts* page that shows a summary for the selected endpoint.

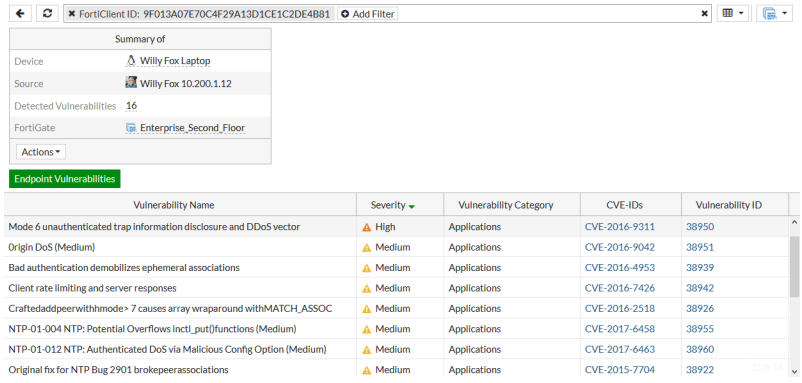


Compromised host information can also be viewed on the FortiAnalyzer in *SOC* > *FortiView* > *Threats* > *Compromised Hosts*.



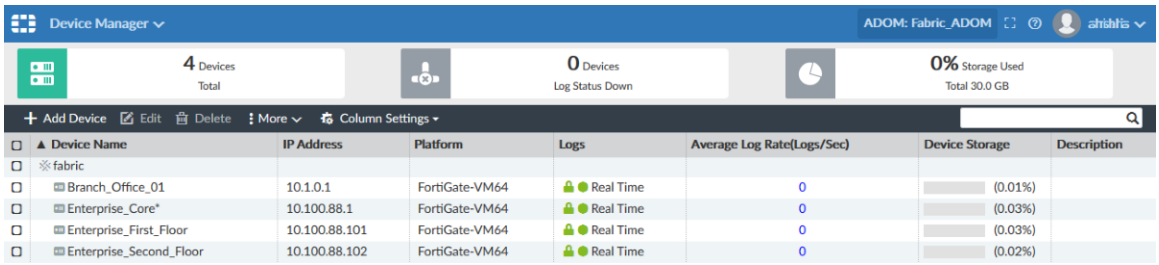
The FortiAnalyzer must have a FortiGuard Indicators of Compromise service license in order to see compromised hosts.

Click *Drill Down to Endpoint Vulnerability* to open the vulnerabilities page that shows a summary of the vulnerabilities on the selected endpoint.

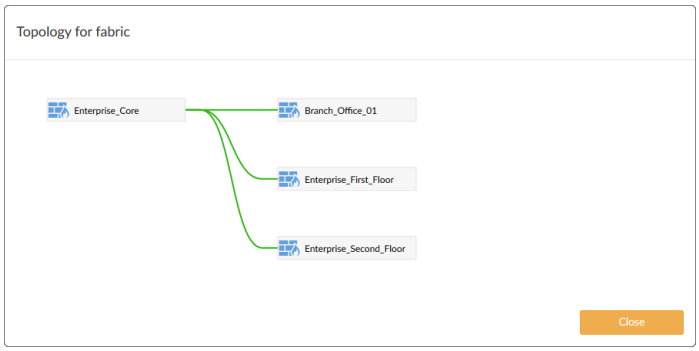


FortiAnalyzer

The Security Fabric topology can also be seen on the FortiAnalyzer device. In the *Device Manager*, FortiGate devices are shown as part of a Security Fabric group with an asterisk next to the name of the root FortiGate.



To view the Security Fabric topology, right-click on the fabric group and select *Fabric Topology*. Only Fortinet devices are shown in the Security Fabric topology views.

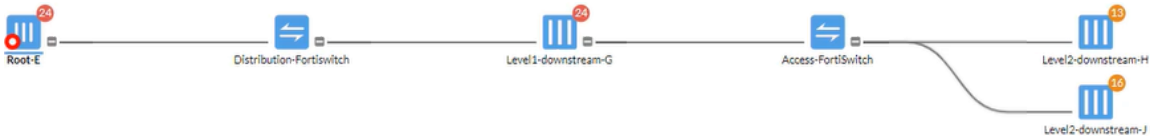


Topology view — consolidated risk

The topology view shows endpoints based on their highest severity event.

In the default topology view, you can view hosts with critical vulnerabilities and compromised hosts identified as critical risks.

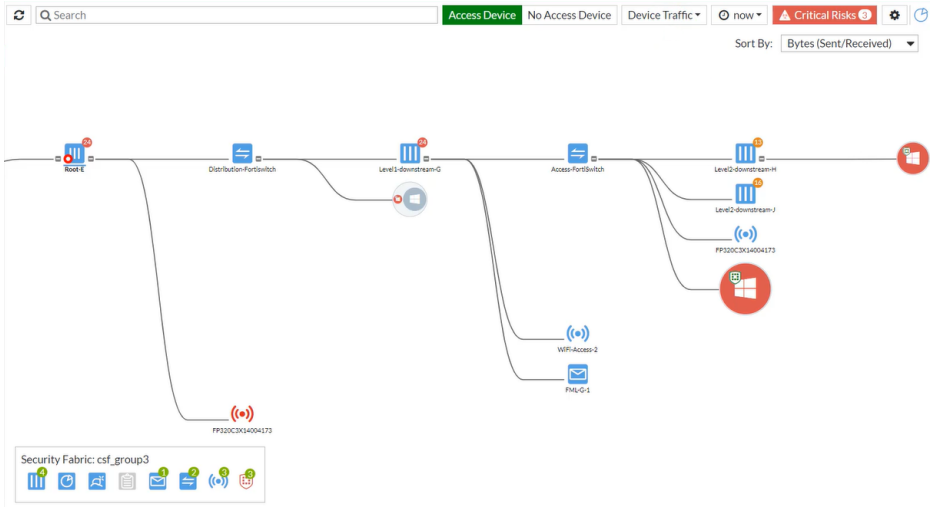
The consolidated *Risk* view mode displays different risks within the Security Fabric topology. You can use the *Risk* view mode to filter threats by *Compromised Hosts*, *Vulnerability*, and *Threat Score*.



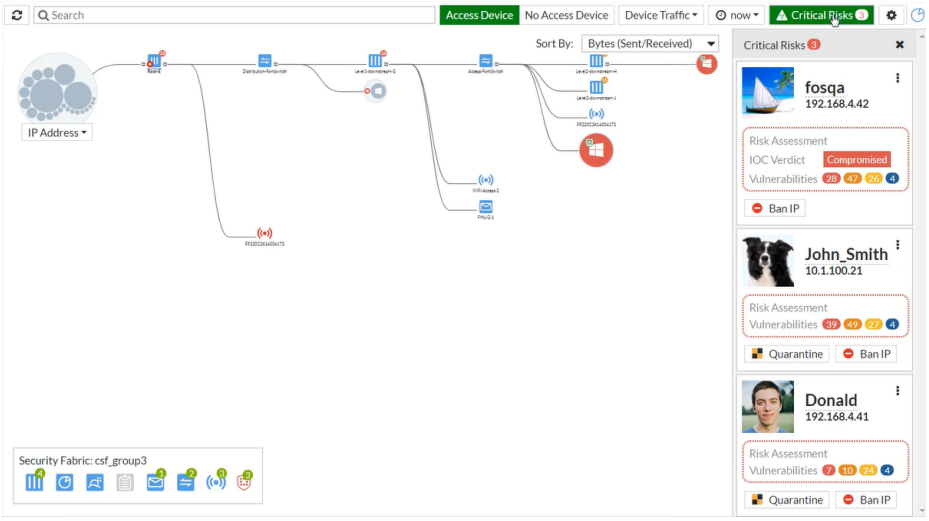
To access the default topology view:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   The default topology view highlights hosts with critical vulnerabilities and compromised hosts as critical risks (three critical risks in the example).

a. Hover over the tooltips for more details.

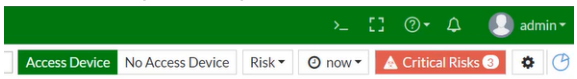


2. To view the critical risk summary, click *Critical Risks*.
The *Critical Risks* pane displays on the right-side of the screen.

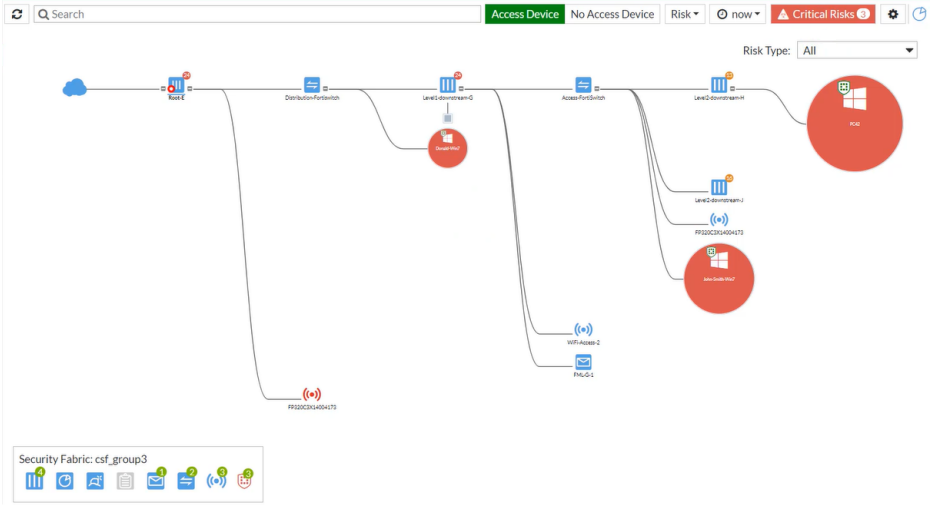


To access the consolidated Risk view mode:

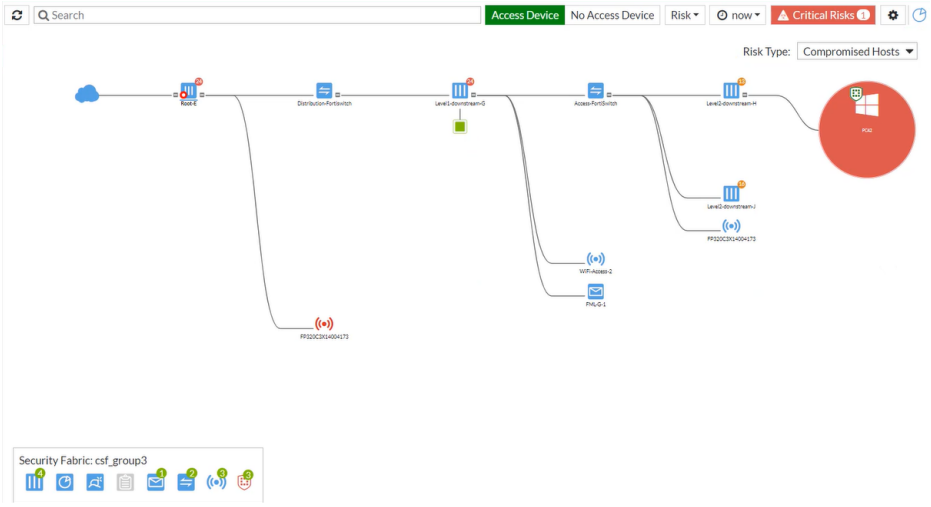
1. In the view option dropdown button, select *Risk*.



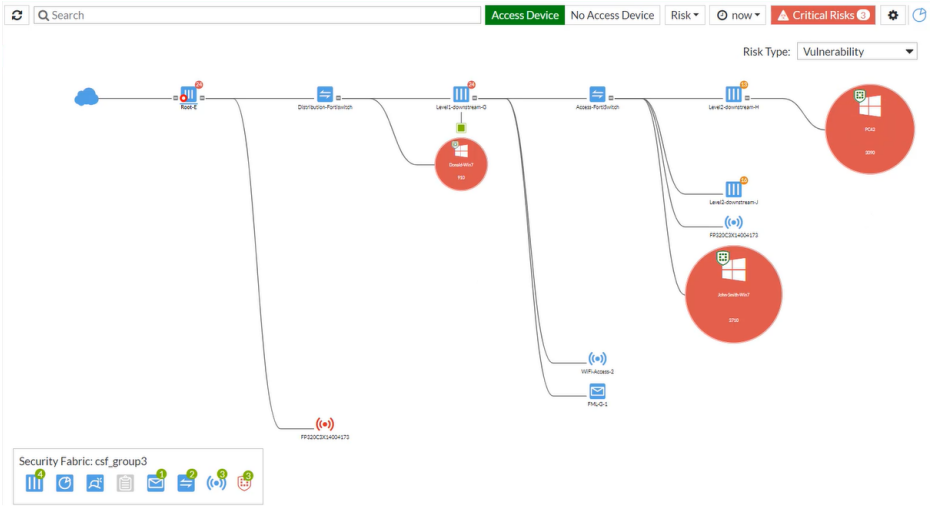
2. Select one of the following options from the *Risk Type* dropdown menu:
   - *All*



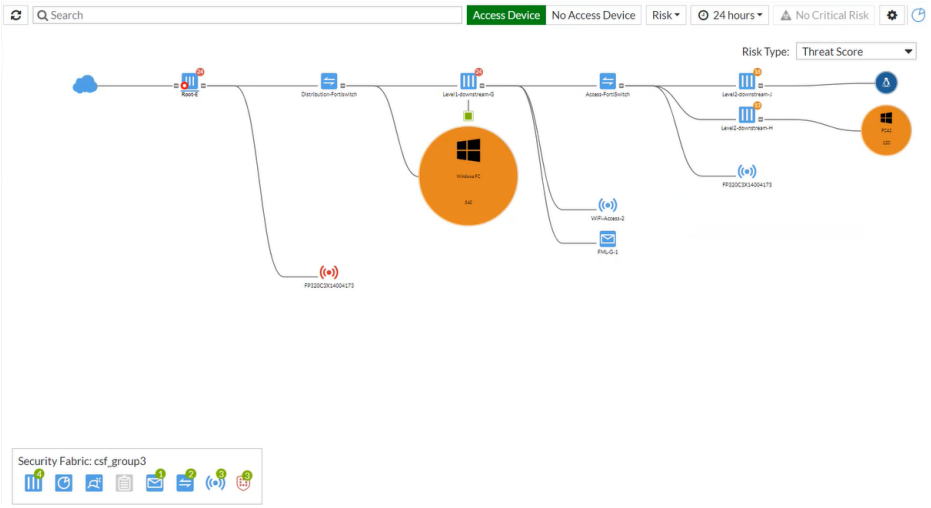
   - *Compromised Hosts*



   - *Vulnerability*



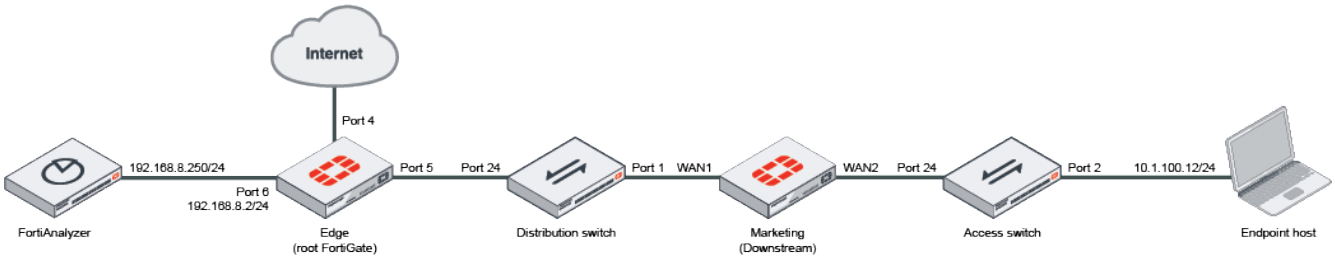
- *Threat Score*



Viewing and controlling network risks via topology view

This topic shows how to view and control compromised hosts via the *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology* view.

In the following topology, the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) is connected to the root FortiGate (Edge) through a FortiSwitch (Distribution). The Endpoint Host is connected to the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) through another FortiSwitch (Access).



This topic consists of the following steps:

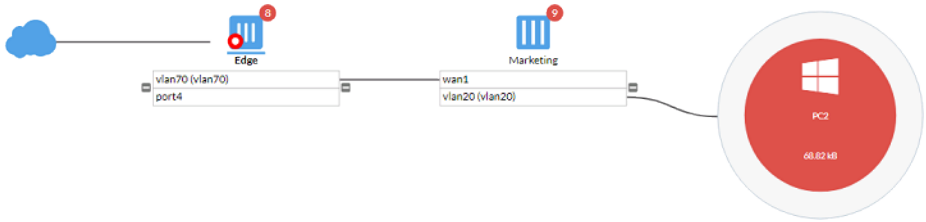
1. View the compromised endpoint host.
2. Quarantine the compromised endpoint host.
3. Run diagnose commands.

To view the compromised endpoint host:

1. Test that FortiGate detects a compromised endpoint host by opening a browser on the endpoint host and entering a malicious website URL. The browser displays a *Web Page Blocked!* warning and does not allow access to the website.
2. In FortiOS on the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*. The endpoint host, connected to the Access FortiSwitch, is highlighted in red. Mouse over the endpoint host to view a tooltip that shows the IoC verdict. The endpoint host is compromised.



3. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*. The endpoint host, connected to the downstream FortiGate, is highlighted in red. Mouse over the endpoint host to view a tooltip that shows the IoC verdict. The endpoint host is compromised.



To quarantine the compromised endpoint host:

1. In FortiOS on the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
2. Right-click the endpoint host and select *Quarantine Host*. Click *OK* to confirm the confirmation dialog.
3. Go to *Monitor* > *Quarantine Monitor*. From the dropdown list at the top right corner, select *All FortiGates*. The quarantined endpoint host displays in the content pane.
4. On the endpoint host, open a browser and visit a website such as https://www.fortinet.com/. If the website cannot be accessed, this confirms that the endpoint host is quarantined.

To run diagnose commands:

1. To show the downstream FortiGate after it joins the Security Fabric, run the `diagnose sys csf downstream` command in the root FortiGate (Edge) CLI. The output should resemble the following:

```
Edge # diagnose sys csf downstream
1: FG101ETK18002187 (192.168.7.3) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0 parent:
     FG201ETK18902514
path:FG201ETK18902514:FG101ETK18002187
data received: Y downstream intf:wan1 upstream intf:vlan70 admin-port:443
authorizer:FG201ETK18902514
```

2. To show the upstream FortiGate after the downstream FortiGate joins the Security Fabric, run the `diagnose sys csf upstream` command in the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) CLI. The output should resemble the following:

```
Marketing # diagnose sys csf upstream
Upstream Information:
Serial Number:FG201ETK18902514
IP:192.168.7.2
Connecting interface:wan1
Connection status:Authorized
```

3. To show the quarantined endpoint host in the connected FortiGate, run the following commands in the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) CLI:

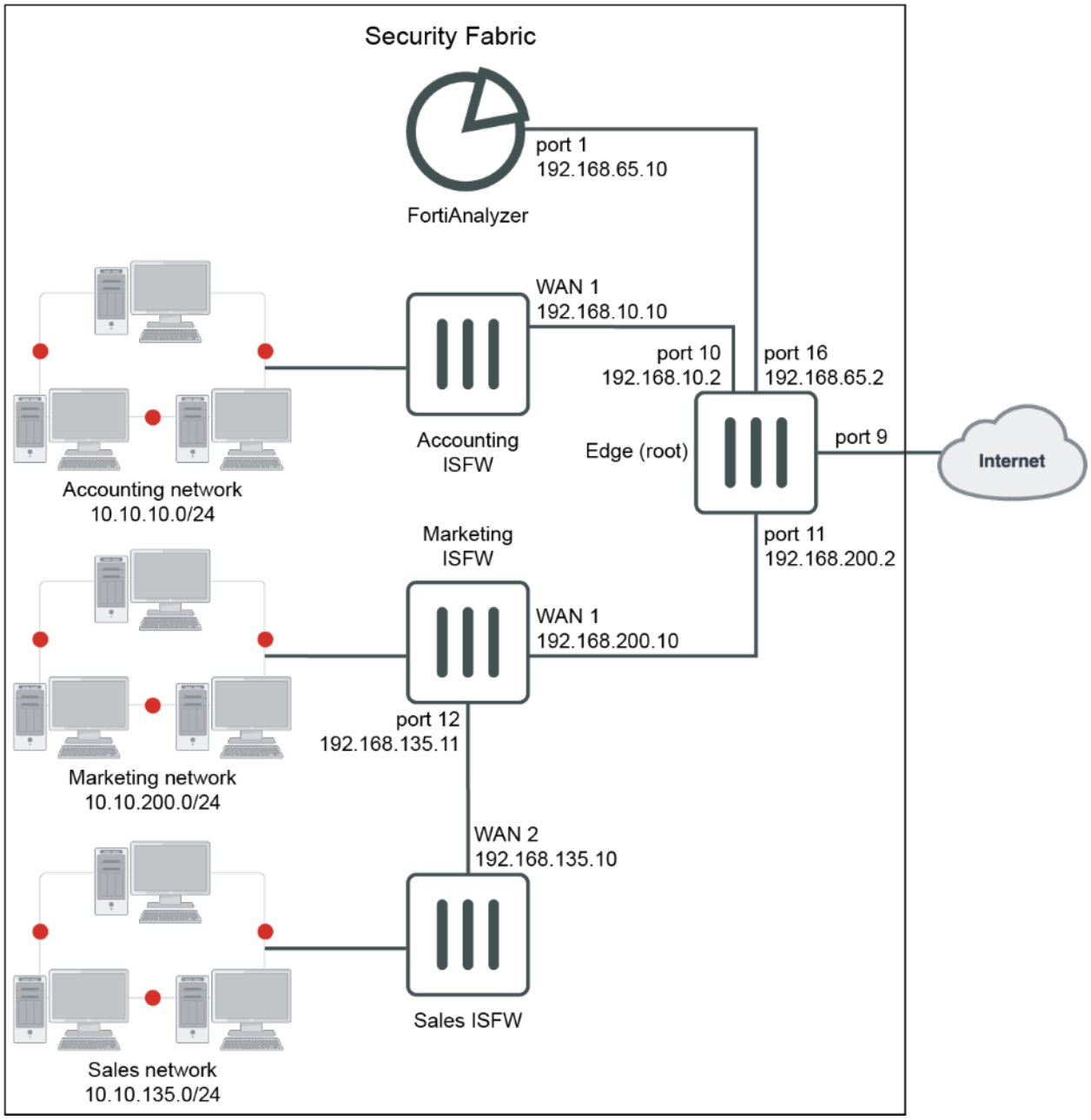
```
Marketing # show user quarantine
config user quarantine
   config targets
      edit "PC2"
         set description "Manually quarantined"
         config macs
            edit 00:0c:29:3d:89:39
```

```
                set description "manual-qtn Hostname: PC2"
            next
        end
    next
  end
end
```

Deploying the Security Fabric

This topic provides an example of deploying Security Fabric with three downstream FortiGates connecting to one root FortiGate. To deploy Security Fabric, you need a FortiAnalyzer running firmware version 6.2 or later.

The following shows a sample network topology with three downstream FortiGates (Accounting, Marketing, and Sales) connected to the root FortiGate (Edge).



To configure the root FortiGate (Edge):

1. Configure interfaces:
   a. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port16*:
      - Set *Role* to *DMZ*.
      - For the interface connected to FortiAnalyzer, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.65.2/255.255.255.0*

c. Edit *port10*:
- Set *Role* to *LAN*.
- For the interface connected to the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.10.2/255.255.255.0*

d. Edit *port11*:
- Set *Role* to *LAN*.
- For the interface connected to the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.200.2/255.255.255.0*

2. Configure Security Fabric:
a. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Serve as Fabric Root*. The FortiAnalyzer settings can be configured.
d. Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP (*192.168.65.10*) and select and *Upload option* (the default is *Real Time*).
e. Click *Test Connectivity*.
A warning message indicates that the FortiGate is not authorized on the FortiAnalyzer. The authorization is configured in a later step on the FortiAnalyzer.
f. Click *OK*. The FortiAnalyzer serial number is verified.
g. Enter a *Fabric name*, such as *Office-Security-Fabric*.
h. Ensure *Allow other Security Fabric devices to join* is enabled and add *port10* and *port11*.
i. Click *OK*.
3. Create a policy to allow the downstream FortiGate (Accounting) to access the FortiAnalyzer:
a. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
b. Click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *FAZ-addr*.
- Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
- Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.65.10/32*.
- Set *Interface* to *any*.

c. Click *OK*.
d. Click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *Accounting*.
- Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
- Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.10.10/32*.
- Set *Interface* to *any*.

e. Click *OK*.
f. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *Accounting-to-FAZ*.
- Set *srcintf* to *port10*.
- Set *dstintf* to *port16*.
- Set *srcaddr* to *Accounting-addr*.
- Set *dstaddr* to *FAZ-addr*.
- Set *Action* to *Accept*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Enable *NAT*.
- Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

g. Click *OK*.

4. Create a policy to allow the two downstream FortiGates (Marketing and Sales) to access the FortiAnalyzer:
   a. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *Marketing-addr*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.200.10/32*.
      - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   b. Click *OK*.
   c. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *Marketing-to-FAZ*.
      - Set *srcintf* to *port11*.
      - Set *dstintf* to *port16*.
      - Set *srcaddr* to *Marketing-addr*.
      - Set *dstaddr* to *FAZ-addr*.
      - Set *Action* to *Accept*.
      - Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
      - Set *Service* to *All*.
      - Enable *NAT*.
      - Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure the downstream FortiGate (Accounting):

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit interface *wan1*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to root, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.10.10/255.255.255.0*
2. Configure the default static route to connect to the root FortiGate (Edge):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.10.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
      FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Accounting) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.10.2* set in the previous step.
   e. Disable *Allow other FortiGates to join*, because there is no downstream FortiGate connecting to it.
   f. Click *OK*.

To configure the downstream FortiGate (Marketing):

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port12*:
      - Set *Role* to *LAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the downstream FortiGate (Sales), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.135.11/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *wan1*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the root FortiGate (Edge), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.200.10/255.255.255.0*.
2. Configure the default static route to connect to the root FortiGate (Edge):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.200.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Marketing) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.200.2* set in the previous step.
   e. Enable *Allow other FortiGates to join* and add *port12*.
   f. Click *OK*.
4. Create a policy to allow another downstream FortiGate (Sales) going through FortiGate (Marketing) to access the FortiAnalyzer:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *FAZ-addr*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.65.10/32*.
      - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   b. Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *Sales-addr*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.135.10/32*.
      - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   d. Click *OK*.

e. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *Sales-to-FAZ*.
- Set *srcintf* to *port12*.
- Set *dstintf* to *wan1*.
- Set *srcaddr* to *Sales-addr*.
- Set *dstaddr* to *FAZ-addr*.
- Set *Action* to *Accept*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Enable *NAT*.
- Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

f. Click *OK*.

To configure the downstream FortiGate (Accounting):

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit interface *wan1*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to root, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.10.10/255.255.255.0*
2. Configure the default static route to connect to the root FortiGate (Edge):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.10.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Accounting) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.10.2* set in the previous step.
   e. Disable *Allow other FortiGates to join*, because there is no downstream FortiGate connecting to it.
   f. Click *OK*.

To configure the downstream FortiGate (Sales):

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Sales), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *wan2*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the upstream FortiGate (Marketing), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.135.10/255.255.255.0*.

2. Configure the default static route to connect to the upstream FortiGate (Marketing):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Sales), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan2*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.135.11*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Sales), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Sales) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.135.11* set in the previous step.
   e. Disable *Allow other FortiGates to join*, because there is no downstream FortiGate connecting to it.
   f. Click *OK*.

To authorize downstream FortiGates (Accounting, Marketing, and Sales) on the root FortiGate (Edge):

1. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   The *Topology* tree highlights two connected FortiGates with their serial numbers and asks you to authorize the highlighted devices.
2. Select the highlighted FortiGates and select *Authorize*.
   After they are authorized, the two downstream FortiGates (Accounting and Marketing) appear in the *Topology* tree in the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Security Fabric Setup* page. This means that the two downstream FortiGates (Accounting and Marketing) have successfully joined the Security Fabric.
3. The *Topology* tree now highlights the FortiGate with the serial number that is connected to the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) and asks you to authorize the highlighted device.
4. Select the highlighted FortiGates and select *Authorize*.
   After it is authorized, the downstream FortiGate (Sales) appears in the *Topology* tree in the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Security Fabric Setup* page. This means that the downstream FortiGates (Sales) has successfully joined the Security Fabric.

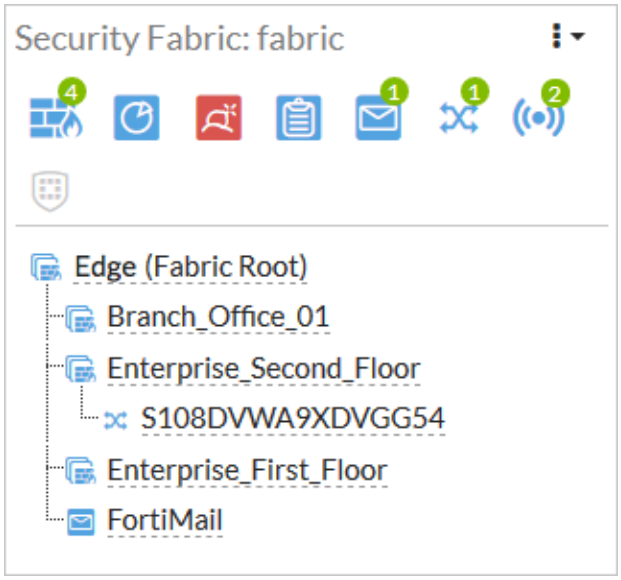
To use FortiAnalyzer to authorize all the Security Fabric FortiGates:

1. Authorize all the Security Fabric FortiGates on the FortiAnalyzer side:
   a. On the FortiAnalyzer, go to *System Settings* > *Network* > *All Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port1* and set *IP Address/Netmask* to *192.168.65.10/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Go to *Device Manager* > *Unauthorized*. All of the FortiGates are listed as unauthorized.
      i. Select all the FortiGates and select *Authorize*. The FortiGates are now listed as authorized.
      After a moment, a warning icon appears beside the root FortiGate (Edge) because the FortiAnalyzer needs administrative access to the root FortiGate (Edge) in the Security Fabric.
      ii. Click the warning icon and enter the admin username and password of the root FortiGate (Edge).

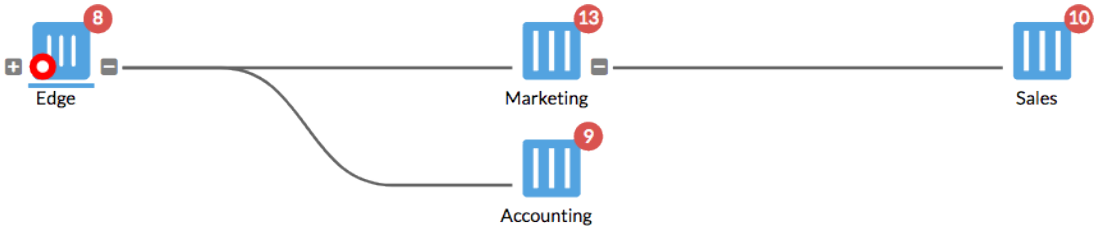
2. Check FortiAnalyzer status on all the Security Fabric FortiGates:
   a. On each FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
   b. Check that *Storage usage* information is shown.

To check Security Fabric deployment result:

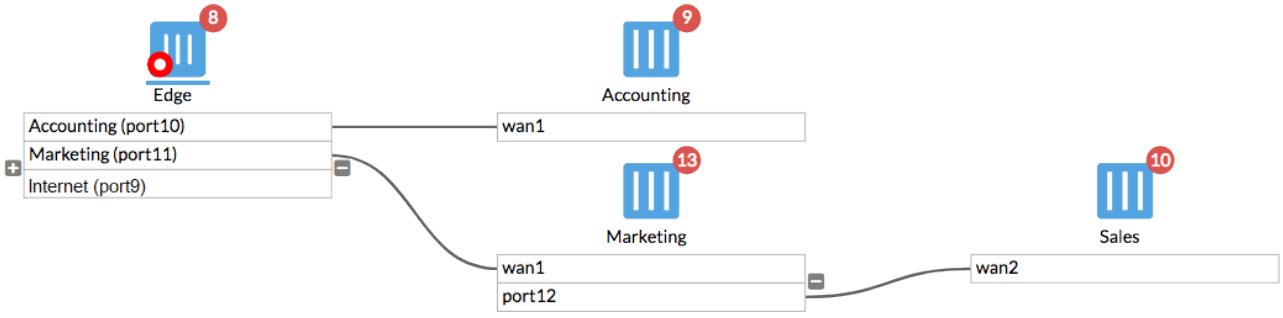
1. On FortiGate (Edge), go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
   The *Security Fabric* widget displays all the FortiGates in the Security Fabric.



2. On FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   This page shows a visualization of access layer devices in the Security Fabric.



3. On FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   This dashboard shows information about the interfaces of each device in the Security Fabric.



To run diagnose commands:

1. Run the `diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list` command in the root FortiGate to show the downstream FortiGate pending for root FortiGate authorization:

```
Edge # diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list
Serial                  IP Address      HA-Members    Path
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
FG201ETK18902514        0.0.0.0                       FG3H1E5818900718:FG201ETK18902514
```

2. Run the `diagnose sys csf downstream` command in the root or middle FortiGate to show the downstream FortiGates after they join Security Fabric:

```
Edge # diagnose sys csf downstream
1:     FG201ETK18902514 (192.168.200.10) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0
parent: FG3H1E5818900718
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FG201ETK18902514
        data received: Y downstream intf:wan1 upstream intf:port11 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
2:     FGT81ETK18002246 (192.168.10.10) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0 parent:
FG3H1E5818900718
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FGT81ETK18002246
        data received: Y downstream intf:wan1 upstream intf:port10 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
3:     FG101ETK18002187 (192.168.135.10) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0
parent: FG201ETK18902514
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FG201ETK18902514:FG101ETK18002187
        data received: Y downstream intf:wan2 upstream intf:port12 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
```

3. Run the `diagnose sys csf upstream` command in any downstream FortiGate to show the upstream FortiGate after downstream FortiGate joins Security Fabric:

```
Marketing # diagnose sys csf upstream
Upstream Information:
Serial Number:FG3H1E5818900718
IP:192.168.200.2
Connecting interface:wan1
Connection status:Authorized
```

Synchronizing objects across the Security Fabric

When the Security Fabric is enabled, various objects such as addresses, services, and schedules are synced from the upstream FortiGate to all downstream devices by default. FortiOS has the following settings for object synchronization across the Security Fabric:

- Set object synchronization (`fabric-object-unification`) to `default` or `local` on a downstream device.
- Set a per object option to toggle whether the specific Fabric object will be synchronized or not. After upgrading from 6.4.3, this option is disabled for supported Fabric objects. The synchronized Fabric objects are kept as locally created objects on downstream FortiGates.
- Define the number of task workers to handle synchronizations.

The firewall object synchronization wizard helps identify objects that are not synchronized and resolves any conflicts. A warning message appears in the topology tree if there is a conflict.

Summary of CLI commands

Object synchronization can be configured as follows:

```
config system csf
    set fabric-object-unification {default | local}
    set configuration-sync {default | local}
    set fabric-workers <integer>
    ...
    next
end
```

Parameter	Description
fabric-object-unification	*default*: Global CMDB objects will be synchronized in the Security Fabric. *local*: Global CMDB objects will not be synchronized to and from this device. This command is available on the root FortiGate. If set to local, the device does not synchronize objects from the root, but will send the synchronized objects downstream.
configuration-sync	*default*: Synchronize configuration for FortiAnalyzer, FortiSandbox, and Central Management to root node. *local*: Do not synchronize configuration with root node. If downstream FortiGates are set to local, the synchronized objects from the root to downstream are not applied locally. However, the downstream FortiGate will send the configuration to lower FortiGates.
fabric-workers	Define how many task worker process are created to handle synchronizations (1-4, default = 2). The worker processes dies if there is no task to perform after 60 seconds.

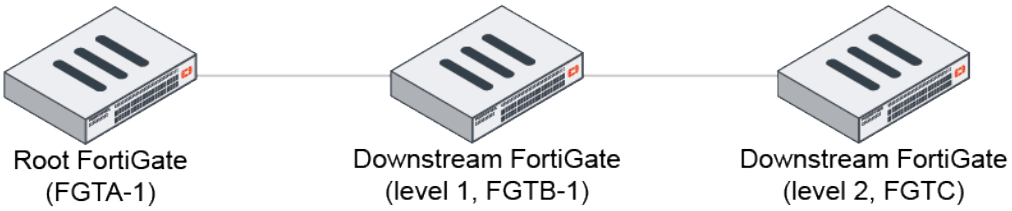
The per object setting can be configured on the root FortiGate as follows:

```
config firewall <object>
    edit <name>
        set fabric-object {enable | disable}
        ...
    next
end
```

Where:

- `<object>` is one of the following: `address`, `address6`, `addrgrp`, `addrgrp6`, `service category`, `service custom`, `service group`, `schedule group`, `schedule onetime`, or `schedule recurring`.
- Enabling `fabric-object` sets the object as a Security Fabric-wide global object that is synchronized to downstream FortiGates.
- Disabling `fabric-object` sets the object as local to this Security Fabric member.

Sample topology



In this Security Fabric, the root FortiGate (FGTA-1) has `fabric-object-unification` set to `default` so the Fabric objects can be synchronized to the downstream FortiGate. The level 1 downstream FortiGate (FGTB-1) has `configuration-sync` set to `local`, so it will not apply the synchronized objects locally. The level 2 downstream FortiGate (FGTC) has `configuration-sync` set to `default`, so it will apply the synchronized objects locally.

In this example, firewall addresses and address groups are used. Other supported Fabric objects have the same behaviors. The following use cases illustrate common synchronization scenarios:

- If no conflicts exist, firewall addresses and address groups can be synchronized to downstream FortiGates (see example below).
- If a conflict exists between the root and downstream FortiGates, it can be resolved with the conflict resolution wizard. After the conflict is resolved, the firewall addresses and address groups can be synchronized to downstream FortiGates (see example below).
- If `set fabric-object` (*Fabric synchronization* option in the GUI) is disabled for firewall addresses and address groups on the root FortiGate, they will not be synchronized to downstream FortiGates (see example below).

To configure the FortiGates used in this example:

```
FGTA-1 # config system csf
    set status enable
    set group-name "csf_script"
    set fabric-object-unification default
    ...
end
```

```
FGTB-1 # config system csf
    set status enable
    set upstream-ip 10.2.200.1
    set configuration-sync local
    ...
end
```

```
FGTC # config system csf
    set status enable
    set upstream-ip 192.168.7.2
    set configuration-sync default
    ...
end
```

To synchronize a firewall address and address group in the Security Fabric:

1. Configure the firewall address on the root FortiGate:

```
FGTA-1 # config firewall address
    edit "add_subnet_1"
```

```
        set fabric-object enable
        set subnet 22.22.22.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure the address group on the root FortiGate:

```
FGTA-1 # config firewall addrgrp
    edit "group_subnet_1"
        set member "add_subnet_1"
        set fabric-object enable
    next
end
```

3. Check the firewall address and address group on the downstream FortiGates:

```
FGTB-1 # show firewall address add_subnet_1
entry is not found in table
```

```
FGTB-1 # show firewall addrgrp group_subnet_1
entry is not found in table
```

The synchronized objects are not applied locally on this FortiGate because `configuration-sync` is set to `local`.

```
FGTC # show firewall address add_subnet_1
config firewall address
    edit "add_subnet_1"
        set uuid 378a8094-34cb-51eb-ce40-097f298fcfdc
        set fabric-object enable
        set subnet 22.22.22.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

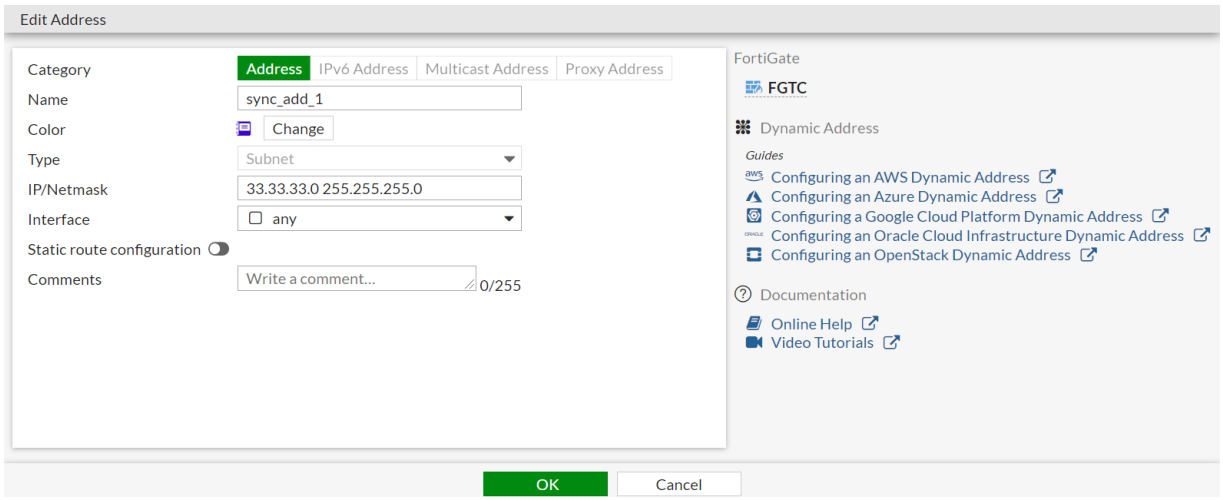
```
FGTC # show firewall addrgrp group_subnet_1
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "group_subnet_1"
        set uuid 4d7a8a52-34cb-51eb-fce7-d93f76915319
        set member "add_subnet_1"
        set color 19
        set fabric-object enable
    next
end
```

The objects are synchronized on this FortiGate because `configuration-sync` is set to `default`.

To resolve a firewall address and address group conflict in the Security Fabric:

1. On FGTC, create a firewall address:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following:

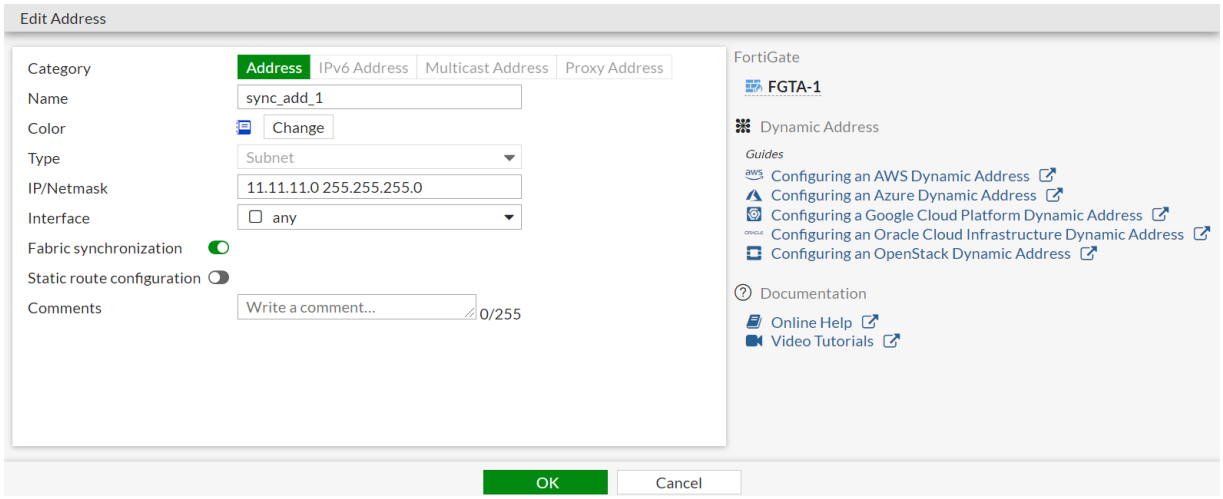
Name	sync_add_1
IP/Netmask	33.33.33.0 255.255.255.0



c. Click *OK*.

2. On FGTA-1 (Fabric root), create the firewall address with same name but a different subnet:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following:

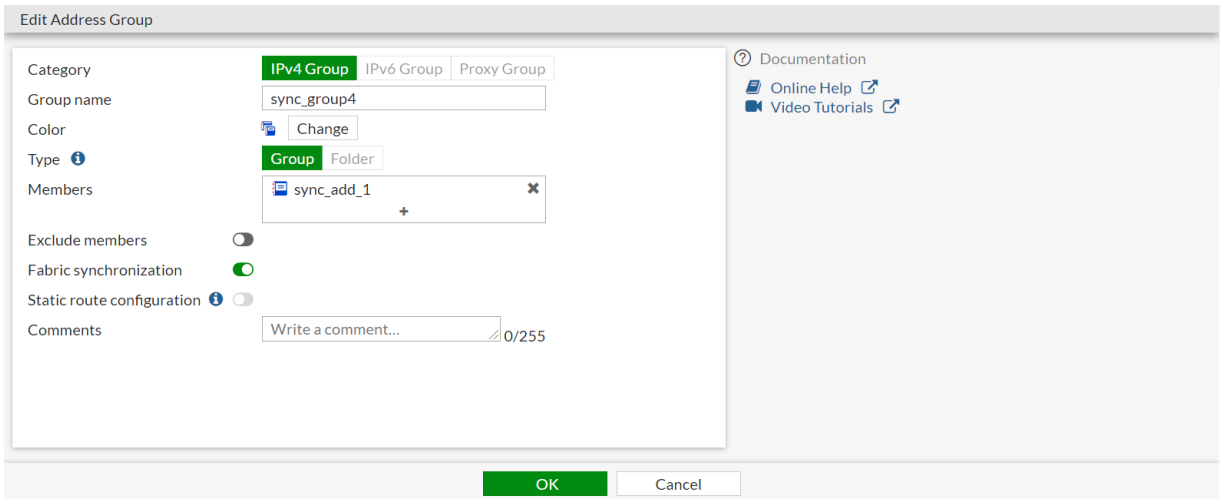
Name	sync_add_1
IP/Netmask	11.11.11.0 255.255.255.0
Fabric synchronization	Enable



c. Click *OK*.

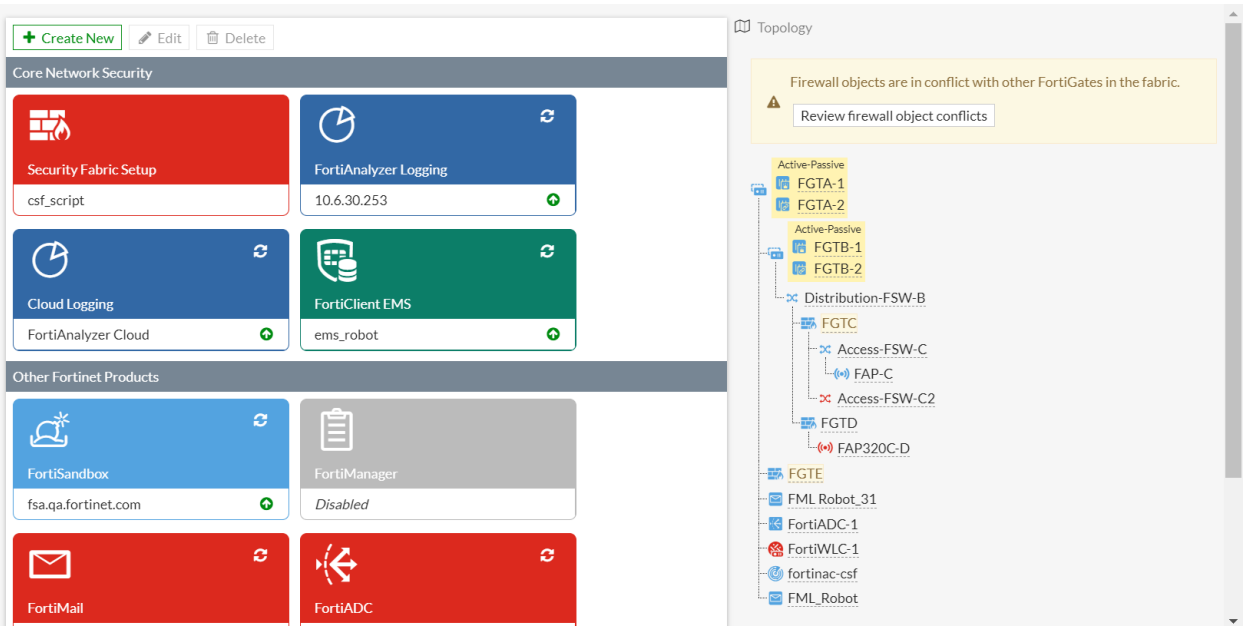
3. Add the address to a different address group than what is configured on FGTC:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address Group*.
   b. Configure the following:

Name	sync_group4
Members	sync_add_1
Fabric synchronization	Enable

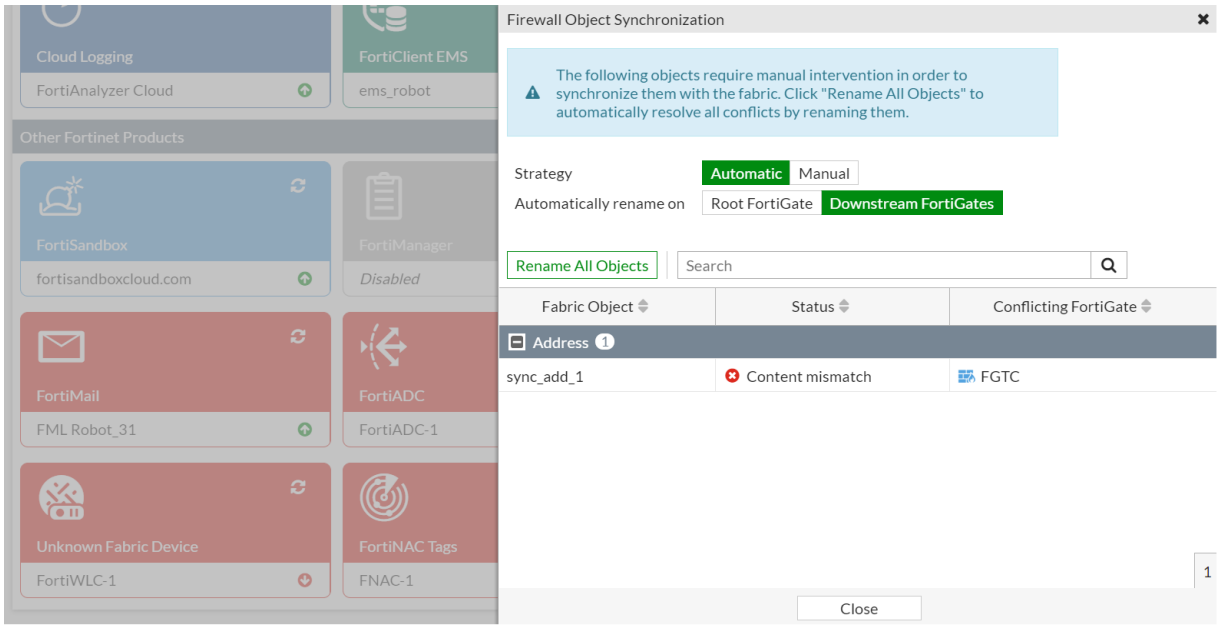


c. Click *OK*.

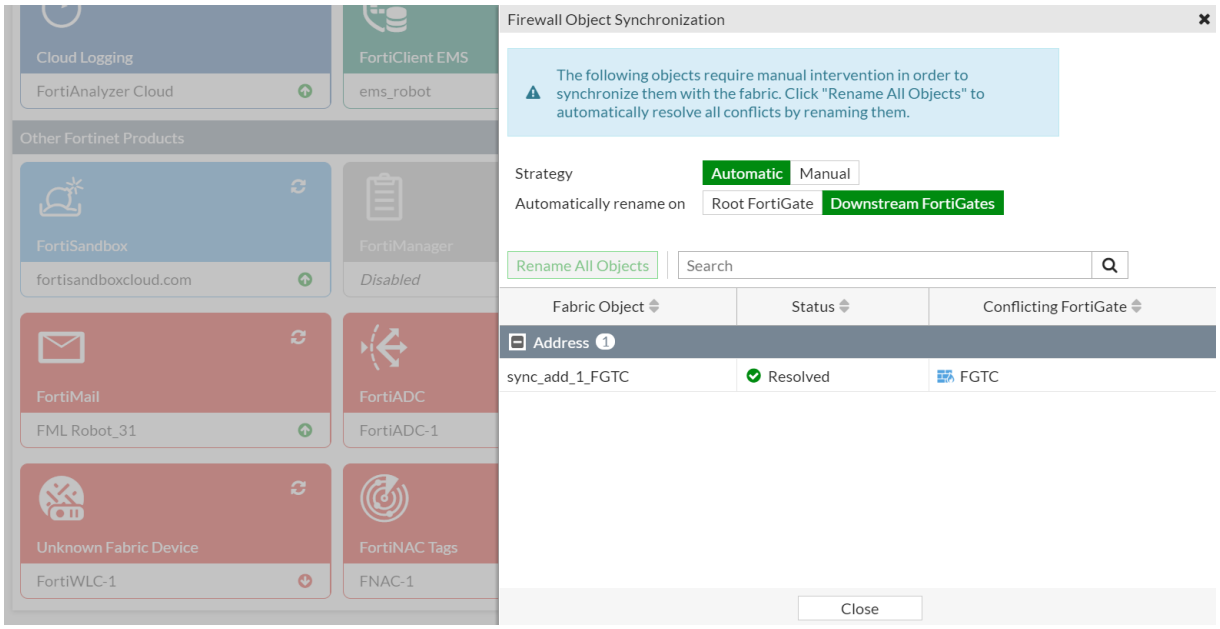
4. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. In the topology tree, there is a message that *Firewall objects are in conflict with other FortiGates in the fabric*.



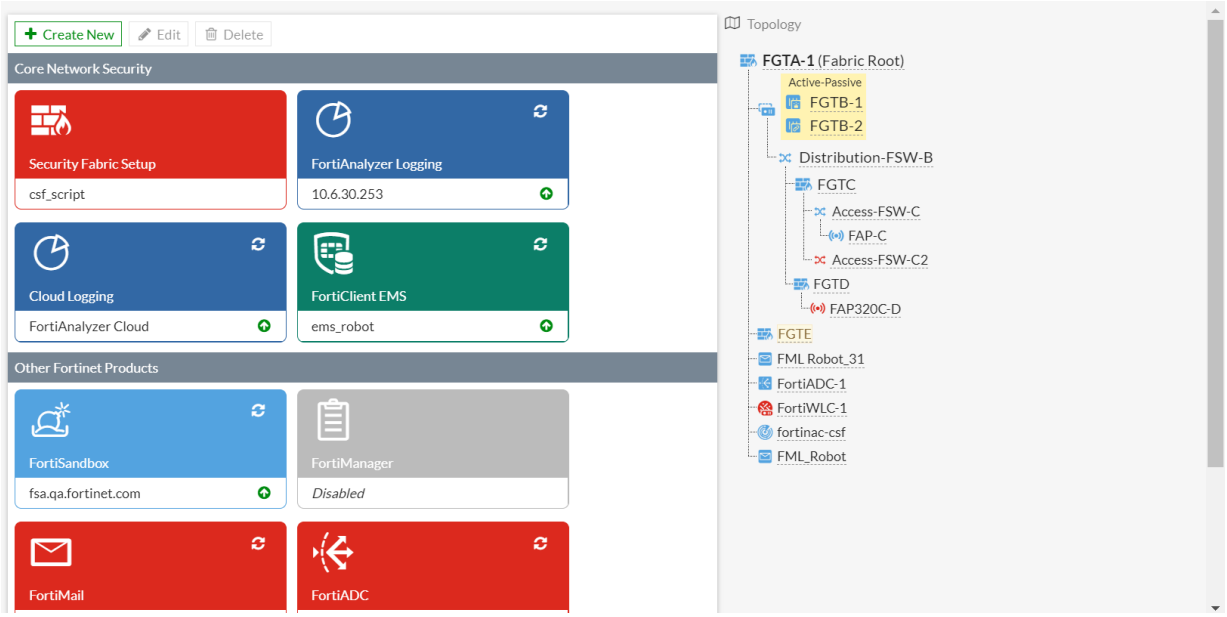
5. Resolve the conflict:
   a. Click *Review firewall object conflicts*. The *Firewall Object Synchronization* pane opens.
   b. Click *Rename All Objects*. The conflicted object will be renamed on the downstream FortiGate.



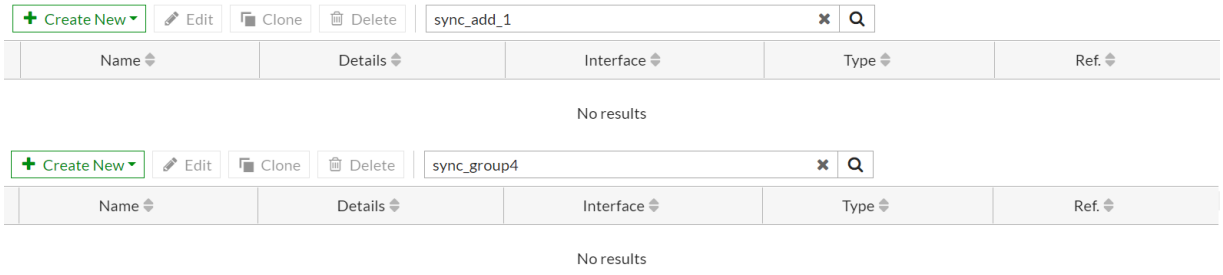
   c. The conflict is resolved. Click *Close* to exit the *Firewall Object Synchronization* pane.



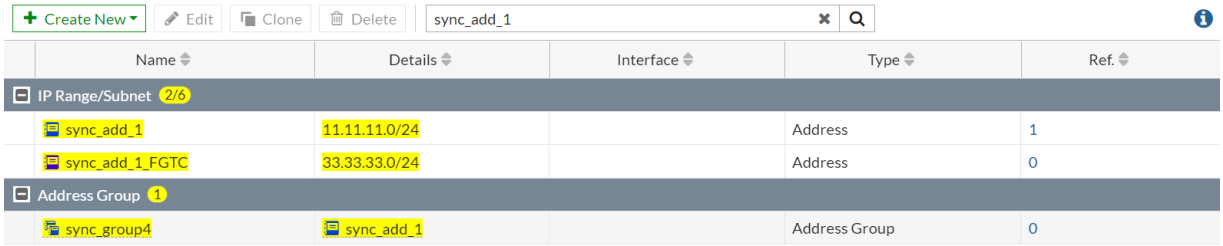
d. The topology tree no longer indicates there is a conflict.



6. Verify the results on the downstream FortiGates:
   a. On FGTB-1, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Search for *sync_add_1* and *sync_group4*. No results are found. The synchronized objects are not applied locally on this FortiGate because `configuration-sync` is set to `local`.



   c. On FGTC, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   d. Search for *sync_add_1*. The original firewall address *sync_add_1* was renamed to *sync_add_1_FGTC* by resolving the conflict on FGTA-1. The address *sync_add_1* and address group *sync_group4* are synchronized from FGTA-1.



To disable Fabric synchronization on the root FortiGate in the GUI:

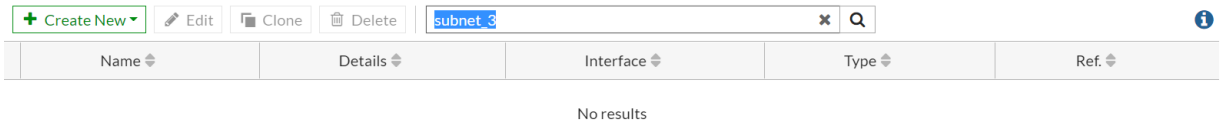
1. On FGTA-1, create a firewall address:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following:

Name	add_subnet_3
IP/Netmask	33.33.33.0 255.255.255.0
Fabric synchronization	Disable

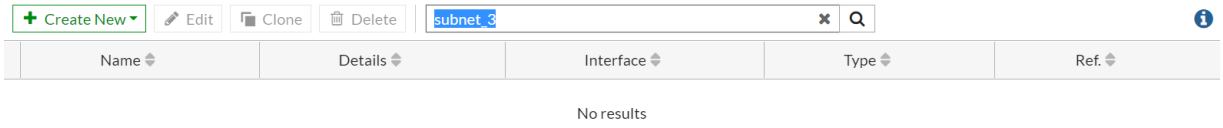
   c. Click *OK*.
2. Create the firewall address group and add the address:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address Group*.
   b. Configure the following:

Name	group_subnet_3
Members	add_subnet_3
Fabric synchronization	Disable

   c. Click *OK*.
3. On FGTB-1, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and search for *subnet_3*. No results are found because Fabric synchronization is disabled on the root FortiGate (FGTA-1).



4. On FGTC, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and search for *subnet_3*. No results are found because Fabric synchronization is disabled on the root FortiGate (FGTA-1).



To disable Fabric synchronization on the root FortiGate in the CLI:

1. Configure the firewall address on the root FortiGate:

```
FGTA-1 # config firewall address
    edit "add_subnet_3"
        set subnet 33.33.33.0 255.255.255.0
        set fabric-object disable
    next
end
```

2. Configure the address group on the root FortiGate:

```
FGTA-1 # config firewall addrgrp
    edit "group_subnet_3"
        set member "add_subnet_3"
        set fabric-object disable
```

```
    next
end
```

3. Check the firewall address and address group on the downstream FortiGates:

```
FGTB-1 # show firewall address add_subnet_3
entry is not found in table

FGTB-1 # show firewall addrgrp group_subnet_3
entry is not found in table

FGTC # show firewall address add_subnet_3
entry is not found in table

FGTC # show firewall addrgrp group_subnet_3
entry is not found in table
```

   The objects are not synchronized from the root FortiGate (FGTA-1) because the `fabric-object` setting is disabled.

Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager

Address objects from external connectors that are learned by FortiManager are synchronized to FortiGate. These objects can be grouped together with the FortiGate CLI to simplify selecting connector objects in the FortiGate GUI. Multiple groups can be created.

This option is only available for objects that are synchronized from FortiManager.

To add an object to a connector group:

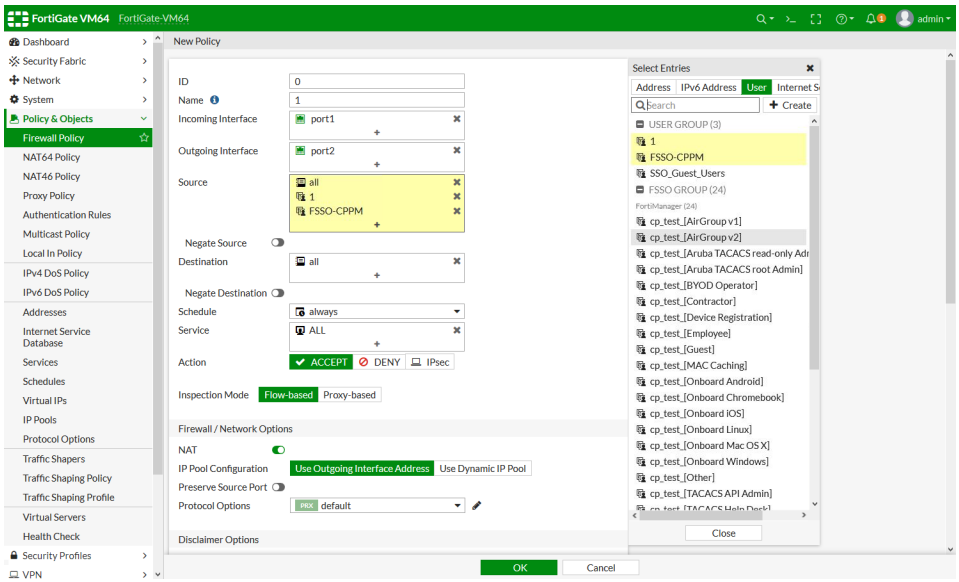
```
config user adgrp
    edit <object_name>
        set server-name "FortiManager"
        set connector-source <group_name>
    next
end
```

Example

In this example, objects learned by the FortiManager from an Aruba ClearPass device are synchronized to the FortiGate. Some of the objects are then added to a group called *ClearPass* to make them easier to find in the object list when creating a firewall policy.



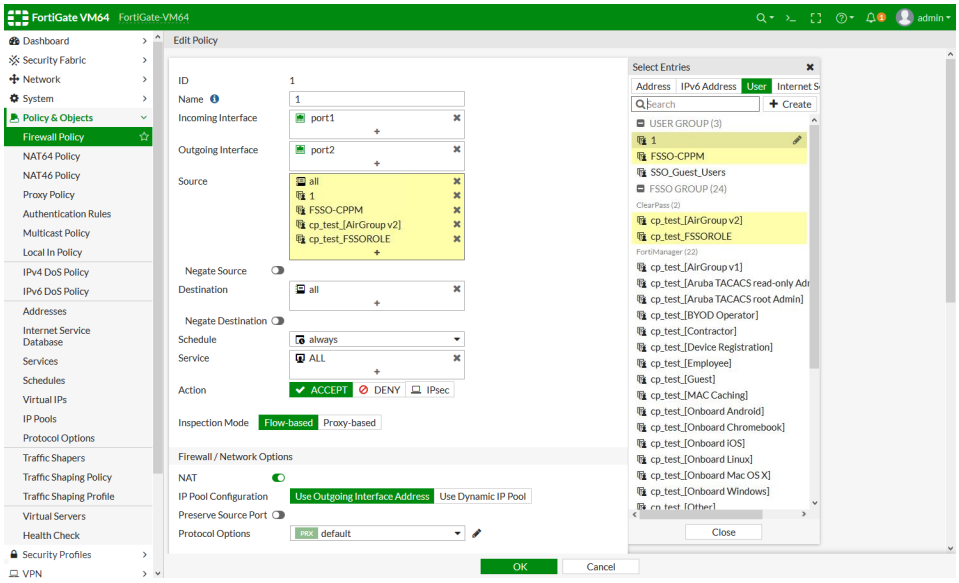
Prior to being grouped, the synchronized objects are listed under the FortiManager heading in the object lists.



To add some of the objects to a group:

```
config user adgrp
    edit "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
        set connector-source "ClearPass"
    next
    edit "cp_test_[AirGroup v2]"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
        set connector-source "ClearPass"
    next
end
```

The objects are now listed under the *ClearPass* heading.

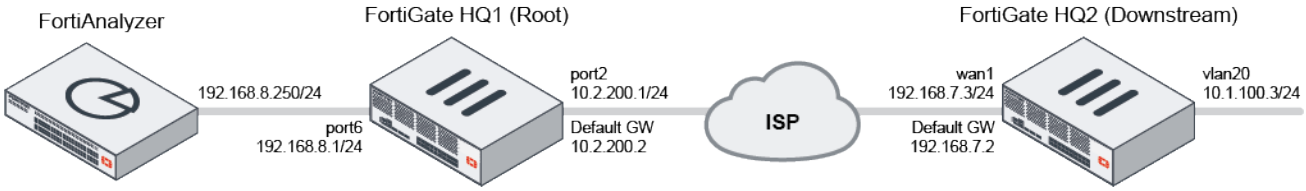


Security Fabric over IPsec VPN

This is an example of configuring Security Fabric over IPsec VPN.

Sample topology

This sample topology shows a downstream FortiGate (HQ2) connected to the root FortiGate (HQ1) over IPsec VPN to join Security Fabric.



Sample configuration

To configure the root FortiGate (HQ1):

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port2*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the Internet, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.2.200.1/255.255.255.0*
   c. Edit *port6*:
      - Set *Role* to *DMZ*.
      - For the interface connected to FortiAnalyzer, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.8.250/255.255.255.0*
2. Configure the static route to connect to the Internet:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *port2*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *10.2.200.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure IPsec VPN:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2*.
      - Set *Template Type* to *Custom*.
      - Click *Next*.
      - Set *Authentication* to *Method*.
      - Set *Pre-shared Key* to *123456*.
   b. Leave all other fields in their default values and click *OK*.

4. Configure the IPsec VPN interface IP address which will be used to form Security Fabric:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *To-HQ2*:
      - Set *Role* to *LAN*.
      - Set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.1/255.255.255.255*.
      - Set *Remote IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.3/255.255.255.0*.
5. Configure IPsec VPN local and remote subnet:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_2*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.3/32*.
   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2_local_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.8.0/24*.
   e. Click *OK*.
   f. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *10.1.100.0/24*.
   g. Click *OK*.
6. Configure IPsec VPN static routes:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*
   b. Click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Interface* to *To-HQ2*.

      Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Interface* to *Blackhole*.
      - Set *Administrative Distance* to *254*.
   d. Click *OK*.
7. Configure IPsec VPN policies:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*
   b. Click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ2_local*.
      - Set *Incoming Interface* to *port6*.
      - Set *Outgoing Interface* to *To-HQ2*.
      - Set *Source* to *To-HQ2_local_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Destination* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
      - Set *Service* to *All*.
      - Disable *NAT*.

c. Click *OK*.
d. Click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ2_remote*.
- Set *Incoming Interface* to *To-HQ2*.
- Set *Outgoing Interface* to *port6*.
- Set *Source* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1, To-HQ2_remote_subnet_2*.
- Set *Destination* to *To-HQ2_local_subnet_1*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Enable *NAT*.
- Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

e. Click *OK*.

8. Configure Security Fabric:
a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
After *FortiGate Telemetry* is enabled, FortiAnalyzer automatically enables *Logging* and *Upload* is set to *Real Time*.
c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Serve as Fabric Root*. The FortiAnalyzer settings can be configured.
d. Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP (*192.168.8.250*).
e. Click *OK*. The FortiAnalyzer serial number is verified.
f. Enter a *Fabric name*, such as *Office-Security-Fabric*.
g. Ensure *Allow other Security Fabric devices to join* is enabled and add VPN interface *To-HQ2*.
h. Click *OK*.

To configure the downstream FortiGate (HQ2):

1. Configure interface:
a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
b. Edit interface *wan1*:
- Set *Role* to *WAN*.
- For the interface connected to the Internet, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.7.3/255.255.255.0*.

c. Edit interface *vlan20*:
- Set *Role* to *LAN*.
- For the interface connected to local endpoint clients, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.1.100.3/255.255.255.0*.

2. Configure the static route to connect to the Internet:
a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
- Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
- Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
- Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.7.2*.

b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure IPsec VPN:
a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
- Set *VPN Name* to *To-HQ1*.
- Set *Template Type* to *Custom*.
- Click *Next*.

- In the *Network IP Address*, enter *10.2.200.1*.
- Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
- Set *Authentication* to *Method*.
- Set *Pre-shared Key* to *123456*.

b. Leave all other fields in their default values and click *OK*.

4. Configure the IPsec VPN interface IP address which will be used to form Security Fabric:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *To-HQ1*:
   - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
   - Set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.3/255.255.255.255*.
   - Set *Remote IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.1/255.255.255.0.0*.

5. Configure IPsec VPN local and remote subnet:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*
   - Set *Name* to *To-HQ1_local_subnet_1*.
   - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
   - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *10.1.100.0/24*.

   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*
   - Set *Name* to *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
   - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
   - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.8.0/24*.

   e. Click *OK*.

6. Configure IPsec VPN static routes:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
   - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
   - Set *Interface* to *To-HQ1*.

   b. Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
   - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
   - Set *Interface* to *Blackhole*.
   - Set *Administrative Distance* to *254*.

   d. Click *OK*.

7. Configure IPsec VPN policies:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   - Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ1_local*.
   - Set *Incoming Interface* to *vlan20*.
   - Set *Outgoing Interface* to *To-HQ1*.
   - Set *Source* to *To-HQ1_local_subnet_1*.
   - Set *Destination* to *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
   - Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
   - Set *Service* to *All*.
   - Disable *NAT*.

   b. Click *OK*.

c. Click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ1_remote*.
- Set *Incoming Interface* to *To-HQ1*.
- Set *Outgoing Interface* to *vlan20*.
- Set *Source* to *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
- Set *Destination* to *-HQ1_local_subnet_1*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Disable *NAT*.

d. Click *OK*.

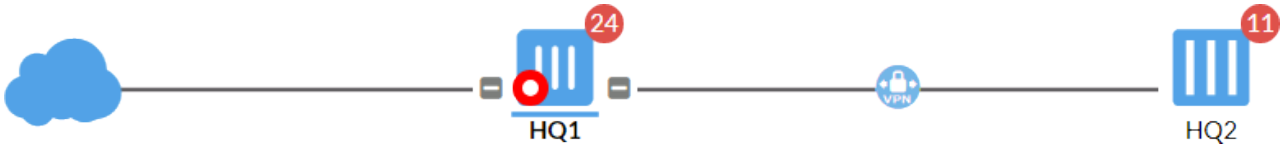
8. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. FortiAnalyzer settings will be retrieved when the downstream FortiGate connects to the root FortiGate.
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. Set the *Upstream FortiGate IP* to *10.10.10.1*.
   e. Click *OK*.

To authorize the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) on the root FortiGate (HQ1):

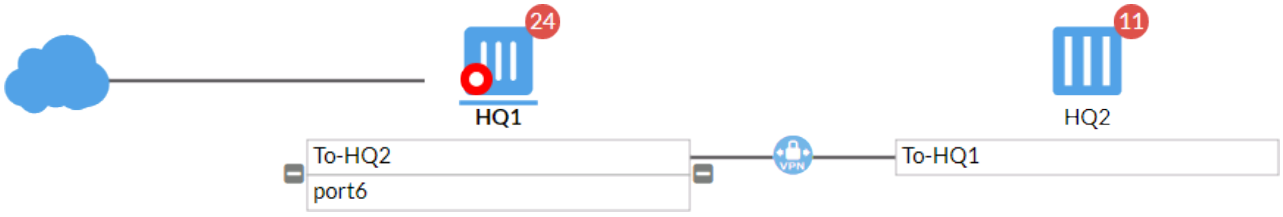
1. In the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   The *Topology* tree highlights the connected FortiGate (HQ2) with the serial number and asks you to authorize the highlighted device.
2. Select the highlighted FortiGates and select *Authorize*.
   After authorization, the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) appears in the *Topology* tree in the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Security Fabric Setup* page. This means the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) has successfully joined the Security Fabric.

To check Security Fabric over IPsec VPN:

1. On the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   The root FortiGate (HQ1) is connected by the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) with VPN icon in the middle.



2. On the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
   The root FortiGate (HQ1) VPN interface *To-HQ2* is connected by downstream FortiGate (HQ2) VPN interface *To-HQ1* with VPN icon in the middle.



To run diagnose commands:

1. Run the `diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list` command in the root FortiGate (HQ1) to show the downstream FortiGate pending for root FortiGate authorization:

```
HQ1 # diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list
Serial                  IP Address      HA-Members
Path
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
FG101ETK18002187        0.0.0.0
FG3H1E5818900718:FG101ETK18002187
```

2. Run the `diagnose sys csf downstream` command in the root FortiGate (HQ1) to show the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) after it joins Security Fabric:

```
HQ1 # diagnose sys csf downstream
 1:     FG101ETK18002187 (10.10.10.3) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0 parent:
FG3H1E5818900718
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FG101ETK18002187
        data received: Y downstream intf:To-HQ1 upstream intf:To-HQ2 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
```

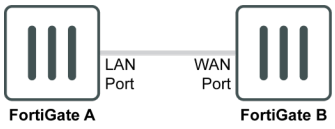
3. Run the `diagnose sys csf upstream` command in the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) to show the root FortiGate (HQ1) after the downstream FortiGate joins Security Fabric:

```
HQ2 # diagnose sys csf upstream
Upstream Information:
Serial Number:FG3H1E5818900718
IP:10.10.10.1
Connecting interface:To-HQ1
Connection status:Authorized
```

Leveraging LLDP to simplify security fabric negotiation

This feature enables LLDP reception on WAN interfaces, and prompts FortiGates that are joining the Security Fabric if the upstream FortiGate asks.

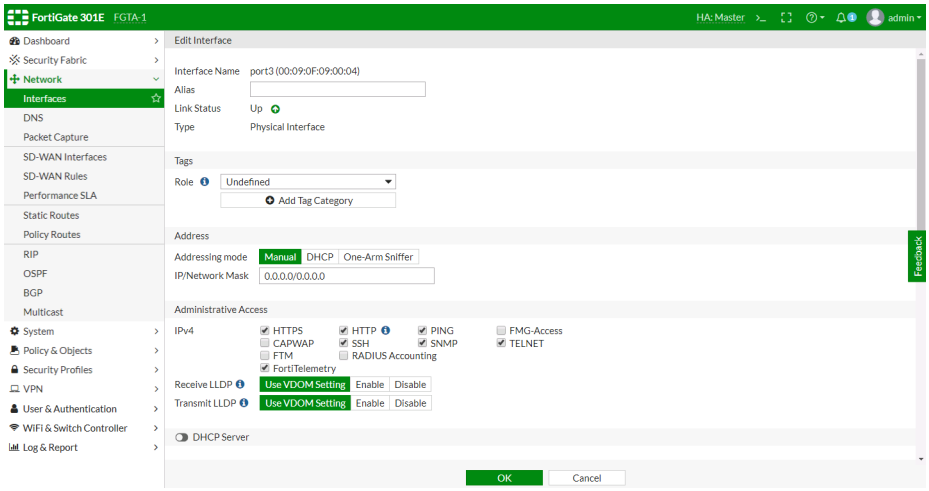
- If an interface's role is undefined, LLDP reception and transmission inherit settings from the VDOM.
- If an interface's role is WAN, LLDP reception is enabled.
- If an interface's role is LAN, LLDP transmission is enabled.



When a FortiGate B's WAN interface detects that FortiGate A's LAN interface is immediately upstream (through the default gateway), and FortiGate A has Security Fabric enabled, FortiGate B will show a notification on the GUI asking to join the Security Fabric.

To configure LLDP reception and join a Security Fabric:

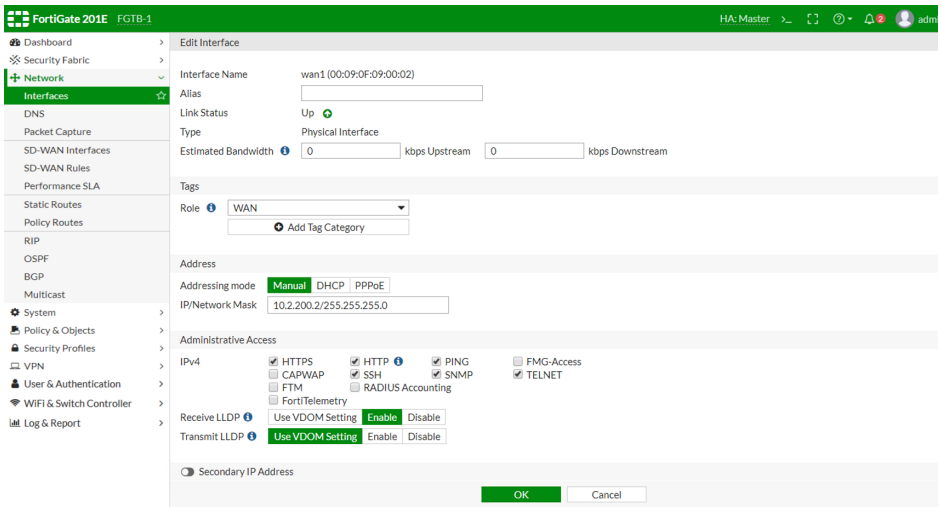
1. Go To *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Configure an interface:
   - If the interface's role is undefined, under *Administrative Access*, set *Receive LLDP* and *Transmit LLDP* to *Use VDOM Setting*.



Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "port3"
        set lldp-reception vdom
        set lldp-transmission vdom
        set role undefined
        ...
    next
end
```

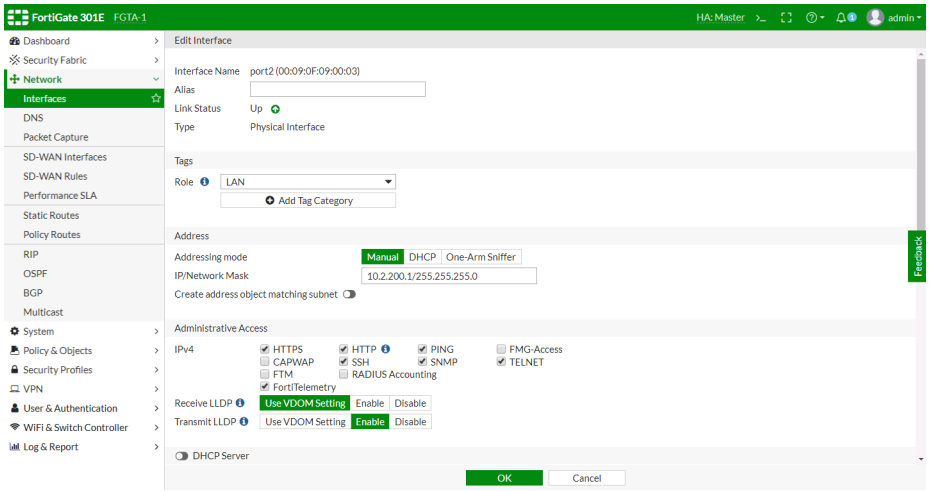
   - If the interface's role is WAN, under *Administrative Access*, set *Receive LLDP* to *Enable* and *Transmit LLDP* to *Use VDOM Setting*.



Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set lldp-reception enable
        set lldp-transmission vdom
        set role wan
        ...
    next
end
```

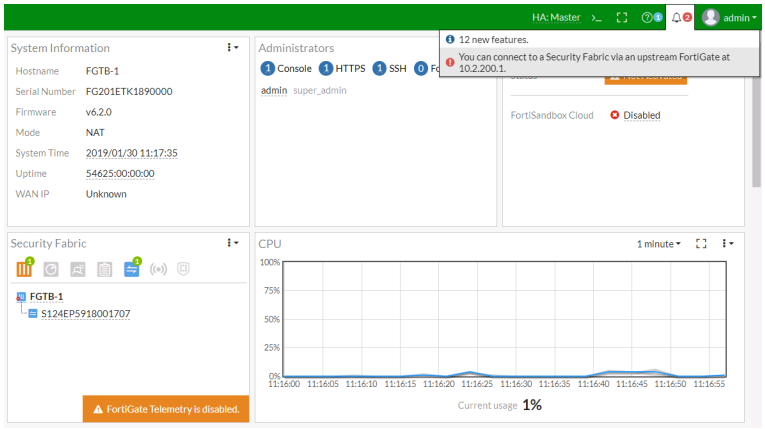
- If the interface's role is LAN, under *Administrative Access*, set *Receive LLDP* to *Use VDOM Setting* and *Transmit LLDP* to *Enable*.



Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set lldp-reception vdom
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set role lan
        ...
    next
end
```

A notification will be shown on FortiGate B.



3. Click the notification. The *Core Network Security* page with the Security Fabric settings opens. All the required settings automatically configured.

4. Click *OK* to apply the settings, or use the following CLI commands:

```
config system csf
    set status enable
    set upstream-ip 10.2.200.1
end
```

Configuring the Security Fabric with SAML

Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) is an open standard for exchanging authentication and authorization data between one Identity Provider (IdP) and one or more Service Providers (SP). Both parties exchange messages using the XML protocol as transport. FortiGate firewall devices can be configured as IdPs or SPs.

When the Security Fabric is enabled, you can configure the root FortiGate as the IdP. You can also configure downstream FortiGates to be automatically configured as SPs, with all links required for SAML communication, when added to the Security Fabric. Administrators must still be authorized on each device. Credentials are verified by the root FortiGate, and login credentials are shared between devices. Once authorized, an administrator can move between fabric devices without logging in again.

Optionally, the downstream FortiGate can also be manually configured as an SP, and then linked to the root FortiGate.

The authentication service is provided by the root FortiGate using local system admin accounts for authentication. Any of the administrator account types can be used for SAML log in. After successful authentication, the administrator logs in to the first downstream FortiGate SP, and can then connect to other downstream FortiGates that have the SSO account properly configured, without needing to provide credentials again, as long as admins use the same browser session. In summary, the root FortiGate IdP performs SAML SSO authentication, and individual device administrators define authorization on FortiGate SPs by using security profiles.

Configuring single-sign-on in the Security Fabric

SAML SSO enables a single FortiGate device to act as the identify provider (IdP), while other FortiGate devices act as service providers (SP) and redirect logins to the IdP.



Only the root FortiGate can be the identity provider (IdP). The downstream FortiGates can be configured as service providers (SP).

The process is as follows:

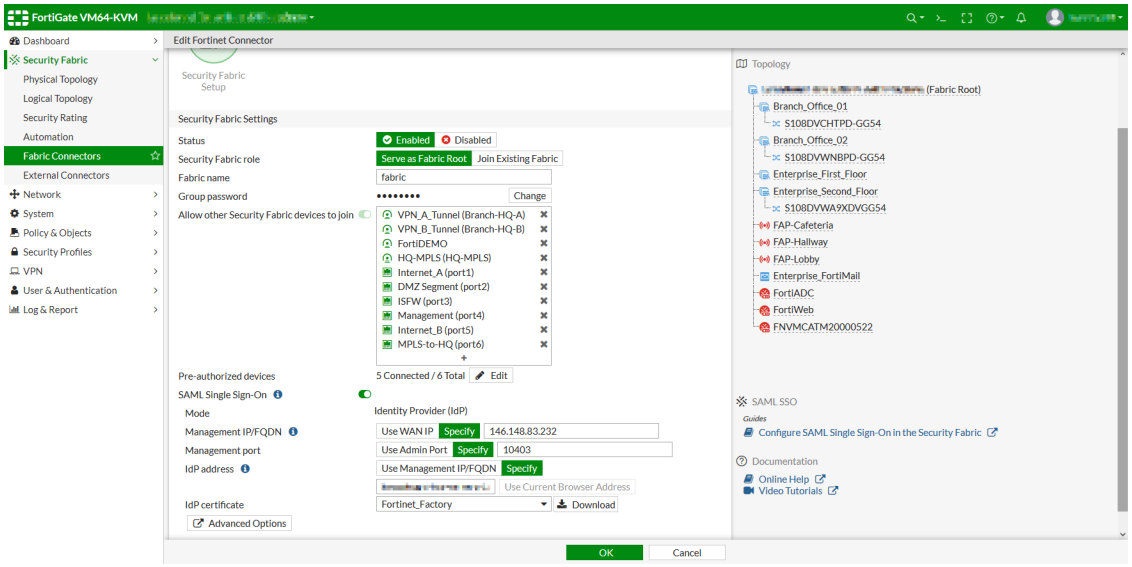
1. Configuring the root FortiGate as the IdP on page 221
2. Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP on page 222
3. Configuring certificates for SAML SSO on page 224
4. Verifying the single-sign-on configuration on page 225

You can also use the CLI. See CLI commands for SAML SSO on page 226.

Configuring the root FortiGate as the IdP

To configure the root FortiGate as the IdP:

1. Log in to the root FortiGate.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. Enable *SAML Single Sign-On*. The *Mode* field is automatically populated as *Identity Provider (IdP)*.
4. Enter an IP address in the *Management IP/FQDN* box.
5. Enter a management port in the *Management port* box.
   The *Management IP/FQDN* will be used by the SPs to redirect the login request. The *Management IP/FQDN* and *Management port* must be reachable from the user's device.
6. Select the *IdP certificate*.
7. Click *OK*.



Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP

There are two ways to configure the downstream FortiGate:

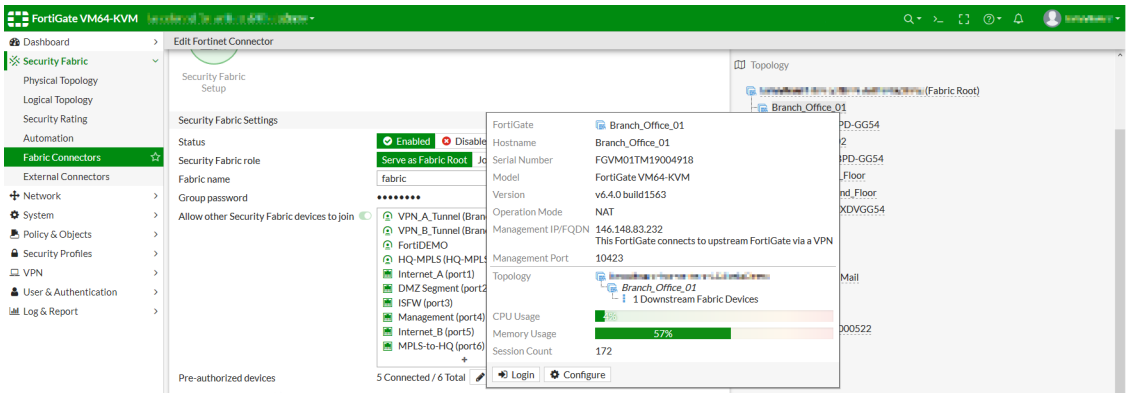
- From the root FortiGate
- From within the downstream device

An SP must be a member of the Security Fabric before you configure it.

To configure the downstream FortiGate from the root FortiGate:

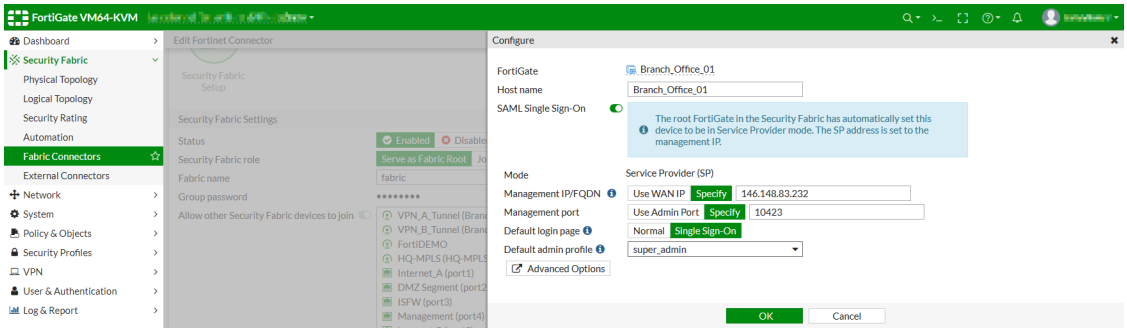
1. Log in to the root FortiGate.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.

3. In the *Topology* tree, hover over a FortiGate and click *Configure*.



The *Configure* pane opens.

4. Enable *SAML Single Sign-On*. The *Mode* field is automatically populated as *Service Provider (SP)*.
5. Enter an IP address in the *Management IP/FQDN* box.
6. Enter a management port in the *Management port* box.
   The *Management IP/FQDN* will be used by the IdP and so other SPs can redirect to each other. The *Management port* must be reachable from the user's device.
7. Select a *Default login page* option.
8. Select one of the following *Default admin profile* types: *prof_admin*, *super_admin*, or *super_admin_readonly*. The *no_access_admin profile* is set as the default.
9. Click *OK*.



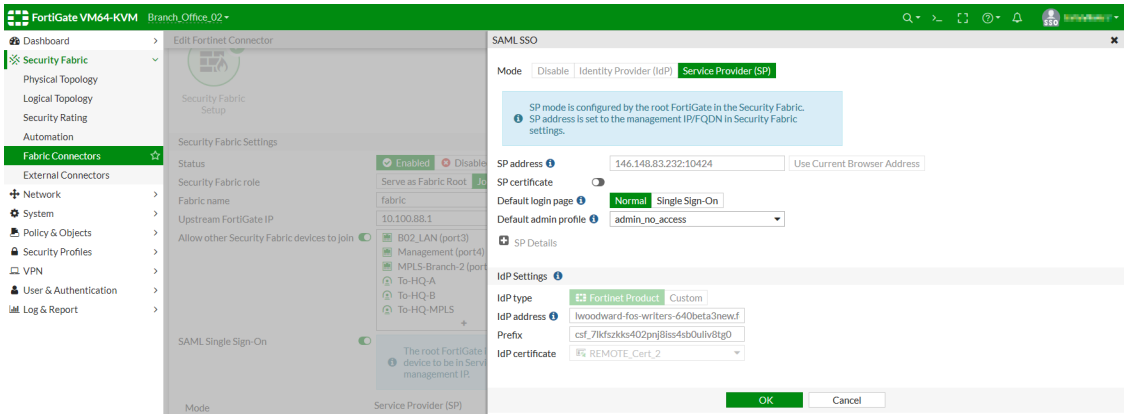
To configure the downstream FortiGate within the device:

1. Log in to the downstream FortiGate.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. Enable *SAML Single Sign-On*. The *Mode* field is automatically populated as *Service Provider (SP)*.
4. Enter an IP address in the *Management IP/FQDN* box.
5. Enter a management port in the *Management port* box.
   The *Management IP/FQDN* will be used by the IdP and so other SPs can redirect to each other. The *Management port* must be reachable from the user's device.
6. Select a *Default login page* option.
7. Select one of the following *Default admin profile* types: *prof_admin*, *super_admin*, or *super_admin_readonly*. The *no_access_admin profile* is set as the default.
8. Click *OK*.

Configuring certificates for SAML SSO

Because communication between the root FortiGate IdP and FortiGate SPs is secured, you must select a local server certificate in the *IdP certificate* option on the root FortiGate. When downstream SPs join the IdP (root FortiGate), the SP automatically obtains the certificate.

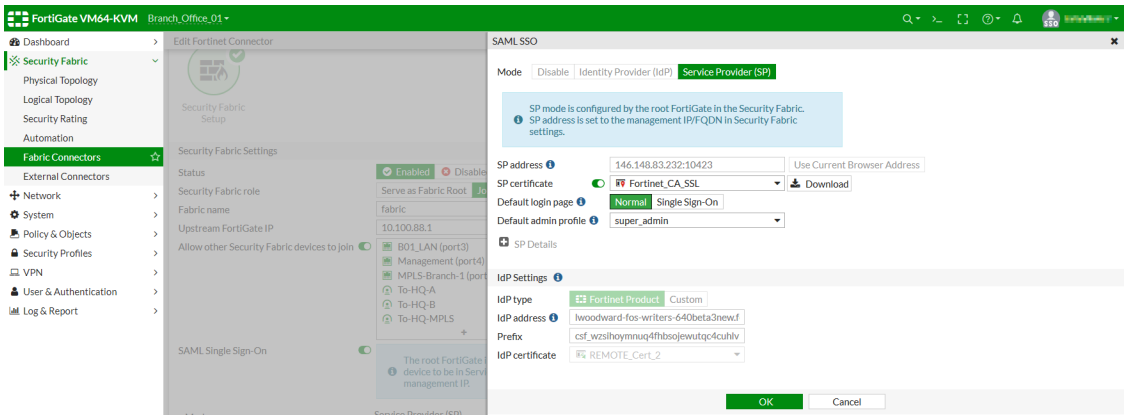
In the following SP example, the *IdP certificate* displays *REMOTE_Cert_2*, which is the root server certificate for the IdP:



It is possible to manually import a certificate from an SP to the IdP so it can be used for authentication.

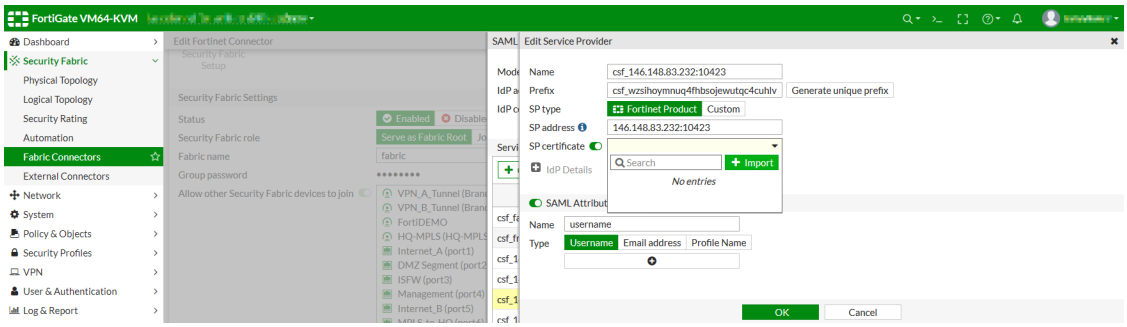
To manually import an SP certificate to an IdP:

1. Add the certificate:
   a. On the SP, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
   c. Enable *SP certificate* and select a certificate from the dropdown box.
   d. Click *Download*. The certificate is downloaded on the local file system.
   e. Click *OK*.



2. Import the certificate:
   a. On the IdP, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
   c. In the *Service Providers* table, select the SP from step 1 and click *Edit*.

d. Enable *SP certificate* and in the dropdown box, click *Import*.



The *Upload Remote Certificate* window opens.

e. Click *Upload* and select the certificate downloaded in step 1.

f. Click *OK*. The certificate is imported.

g. Click *OK*.

h. In the *IdP certificate* list, select the certificate that you imported.

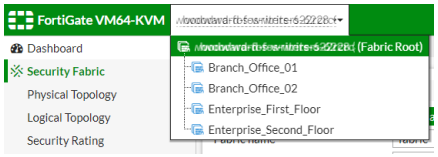
i. Click *OK*.

Verifying the single-sign-on configuration

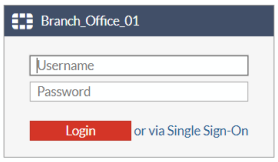
After you have logged in to a Security Fabric member using SSO, you can navigate between any Security Fabric member with SSO configured.

To navigate between Security Fabric members:

1. Log in to a Security Fabric member that is using SSO.
2. In the top banner, click the name of the device you are logged in to. A list of Security Fabric members displays.

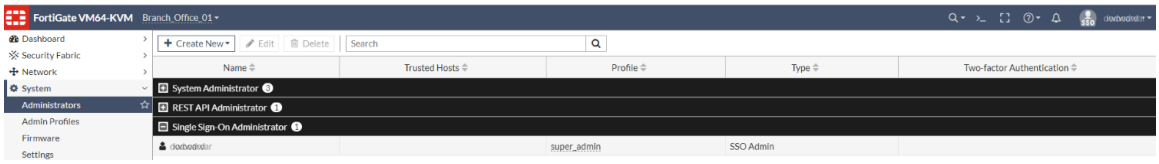


3. Click a Security Fabric member. The login page appears.
4. Select the option to log in *via Single-Sign-On*.



You are now logged in to the Security Fabric member with SSO. The letters "SSO" also display beside the user name in the top banner.

5. Go to *System* > *Administrators* > *Single-Sign-On Administrator* to view the list of SSO admins created.



CLI commands for SAML SSO

To enter a question mark (?) or a tab, Ctrl + V must be entered first. Question marks and tabs cannot be typed or copied into the CLI Console or some SSH clients.

To configure the IdP:

```
config system saml
    set status enable
    set role identity-provider
    set cert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set server-address "172.16.106.74"
    config service-providers
        edit "csf_172.16.106.74:12443"
            set prefix "csf_ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20"
            set sp-entity-id "http://172.16.106.74/metadata/"
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
                edit "username"
                next
                edit "tdoc@fortinet.com"
                    set type email
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

To configure an SP:

```
config system saml
    set status enable
    set cert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set idp-entity-id "http://172.16.106.74/saml-idp/csf_
ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20/metadata/"
    set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.16.106.74/csf_
ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20/login/"
    set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml-idp/csf_
ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20/logout/"
    set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_1"
    set server-address "172.16.106.74:12443"
end
```

To configure an SSO administrator:

```
config system sso-admin
    edit "SSO-admin-name"
        set accprofile <SSO admin user access profile>
        set vdom <Virtual domain(s) that the administrator can access>
    next
end
```

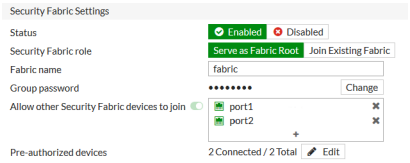
SAML SSO with pre-authorized FortiGates

You can set up SAML SSO authentication in a Security Fabric environment by starting with a root FortiGate that has one or more pre-authorized FortiGates.

After the initial configuration, you can add more downstream FortiGates to the Security Fabric, and they are automatically configured with default values for a service provider.

To set up basic SAML SSO for the Security Fabric:

1. Log in to the root FortiGate of the Security Fabric.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. Join two pre-authorized FortiGates to the root FortiGate.



4. Configure the IdP (see Configuring the root FortiGate as the IdP on page 221).
5. Configure the SPs (see Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP on page 222).

Navigating between Security Fabric members with SSO

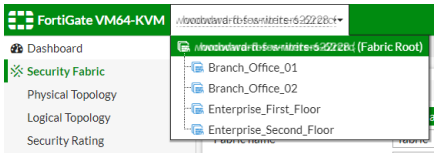
After you have logged in to a Security Fabric member by using SSO, you can navigate between any Security Fabric member with SSO configured. This can be done using the Security Fabric members dropdown menu or by logging in to a FortiGate SP from the root FortiGate IdP.

Security Fabric members dropdown

The Security Fabric members dropdown menu allows you to easily switch between all FortiGate devices that are connected to the Security Fabric. You can also use this menu to customize a FortiGate in the Security Fabric.

To navigate between Security Fabric members:

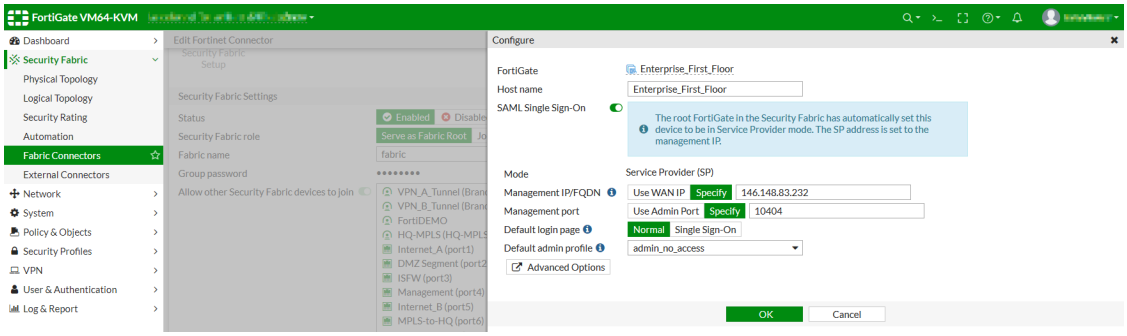
1. Log in to a Security Fabric member by using SSO.
2. In the top banner, click the name of the device you are logged into with SSO.
   A list of Security Fabric members is displayed.



3. Click the Security Fabric member.
   You are logged in to the Security Fabric member without further authentication.

To customize a FortiGate in the Security Fabric:

1. In the Security Fabric members dropdown menu, hover the cursor over a FortiGate so the tooltip is shown.
2. Click *Configure*. The *Configure* pane opens.



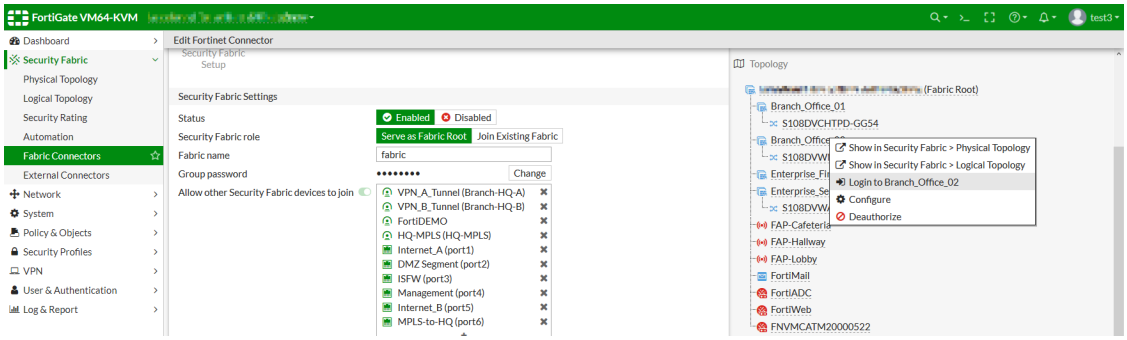
3. Edit the settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

Logging in to an SP from the root IdP

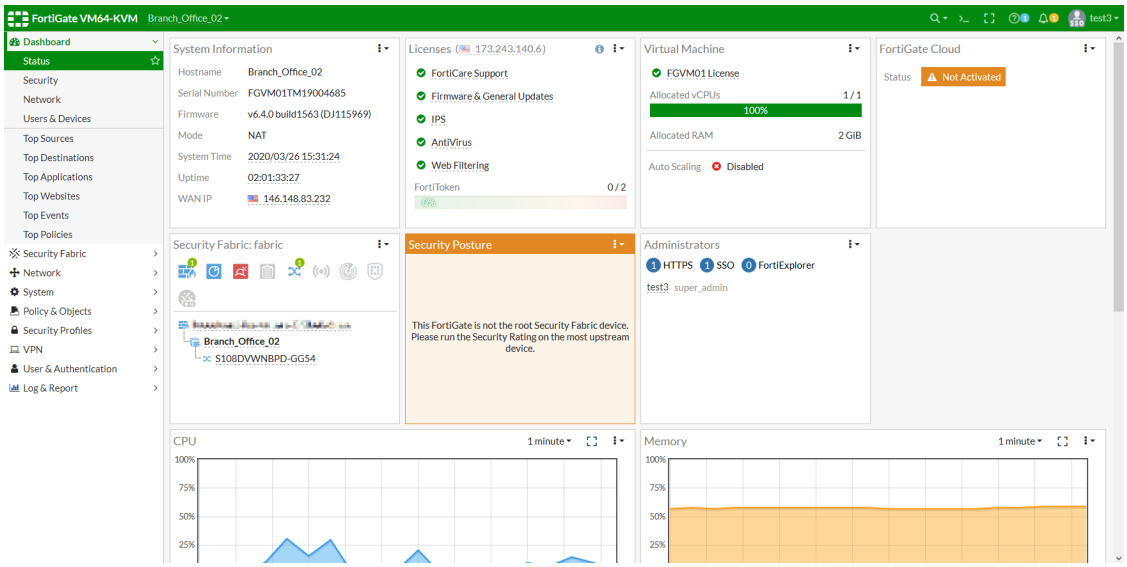
The following example describes how to log in to a root FortiGate IdP, and navigate to other FortiGate SPs in the Security Fabric without further authentication. The local administrator account is named *test3*. The local administrator account must also be available as an SSO administrator account on all downstream FortiGate SPs. Different tabs of the same browser are used to log in to the various FortiGates.

To log in to a FortiGate SP from a root FortiGate IdP:

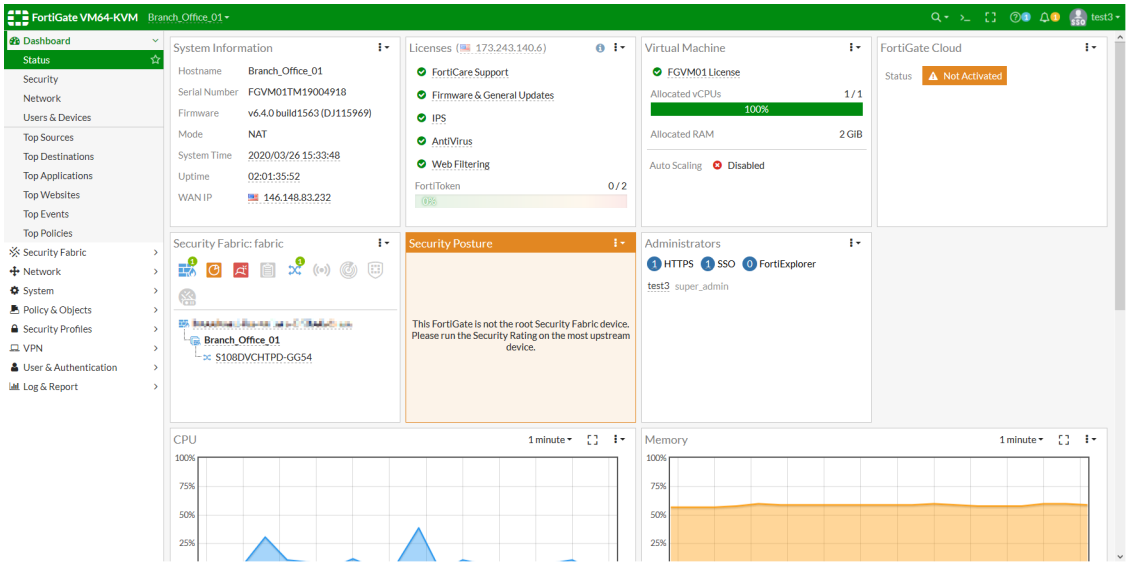
1. Log in to the root FortiGate IdP by using the local administrator account.
   In this example, the local administrator account is named *test3*.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. In the *Topology* tree, click one of the downstream FortiGate SPs, and select *Login to <name of FortiGate>*.



   The login screen is displayed.
4. In the login screen, select *Single Sign-On*.
   By using cookies in your local browser for the already-authenticated SSO administrator, FortiGate logs you in to the downstream FortiGate SP as the SSO administrator. In this example, the SSO administrator name is *test3*.



5. While still logged into the root FortiGate IdP in your browser, go to the browser tab for the root FortiGate IdP, and log in to another FortiGate SP that is displayed on the *Security Fabric* pane in the GUI.



SAML SSO login uses *SAML_IDP* session cookies of already authenticated admin users in your local browser cache to send to the root FortiGate IdP for authentication. If your browser cache is manually cleared, or you close your browser, you must authenticate again.

It is possible to log in to one downstream FortiGate SP in a Security Fabric, and then open another tab in your browser to connect to another FortiGate SP that is not a member of the Security Fabric.

This is useful in cases where the SSO administrator and the local system administrator on the FortiGate SP both have the same login name, but are two different entities.

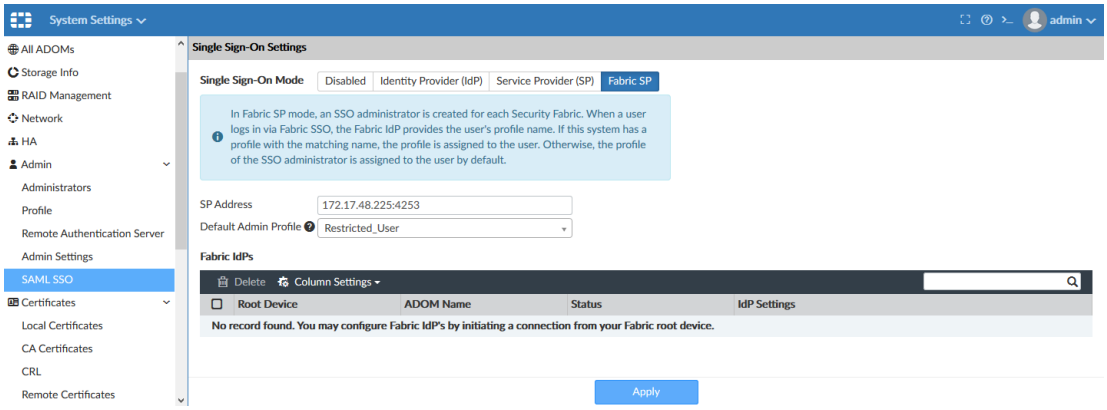
Integrating FortiAnalyzer management using SAML SSO

When a FortiGate is configured as the SAML SSO IdP, FortiAnalyzer can register itself as the SP (FortiAnalyzer must be running version 6.4.0). Once registered, FortiAnalyzer will be added automatically to the Security Fabric navigation in FortiOS. A similar dropdown navigation is displayed in FortiAnalyzer where users can navigate to the FortiGate using SAML SSO.

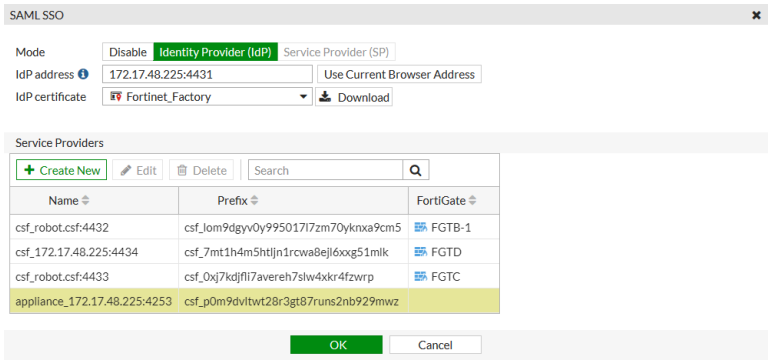
The following example assumes the root FortiGate (FGTA-1, server address 172.17.48.225:4431) has been configured as the SAML SSO IdP, and FortiAnalyzer logging has been enabled in the Security Fabric settings.

To enable FortiAnalyzer as a Fabric SP in the GUI:

1. In FortiAnalyzer, go to *System Settings* > *Admin* > *SAML SSO*.
2. For *Single Sign-On Mode*, click *Fabric SP* and enter the *SP Address*.



3. Click *Apply*.
   FortiAnalyzer will automatically register itself on the FortiGate as an appliance visible in the list of SPs. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, edit the *Security Fabric Setup* connector, then click *Advanced Options* to view the list of SPs.



To enable FortiAnalyzer as a Fabric SP in the CLI:

1. In FortiAnalyzer, enable the device as a Fabric SP:

```
config system saml
    set status enable
    set role FAB-SP
```

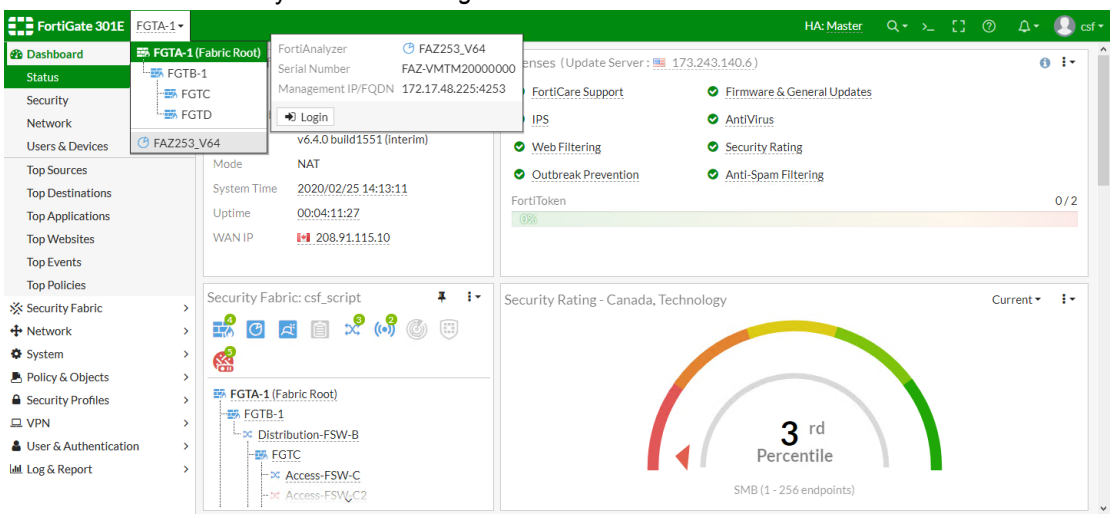
```
    set server-address "172.17.48.225:4253"
end
```

FortiAnalyzer will register itself on the FortiGate as an appliance. To view the configuration in FortiOS:

```
show system saml
    config service-providers
        edit "appliance_172.17.48.225:4253"
            set prefix "csf_p0m9dvltwt28r3gt87runs2nb929mwz"
            set sp-entity-id "http://172.17.48.225:4253/metadata/"
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.17.48.225:4253/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.17.48.225:4253/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.17.48.225:4253/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
                edit "username"
                next
                edit "profilename"
                    set type profile-name
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

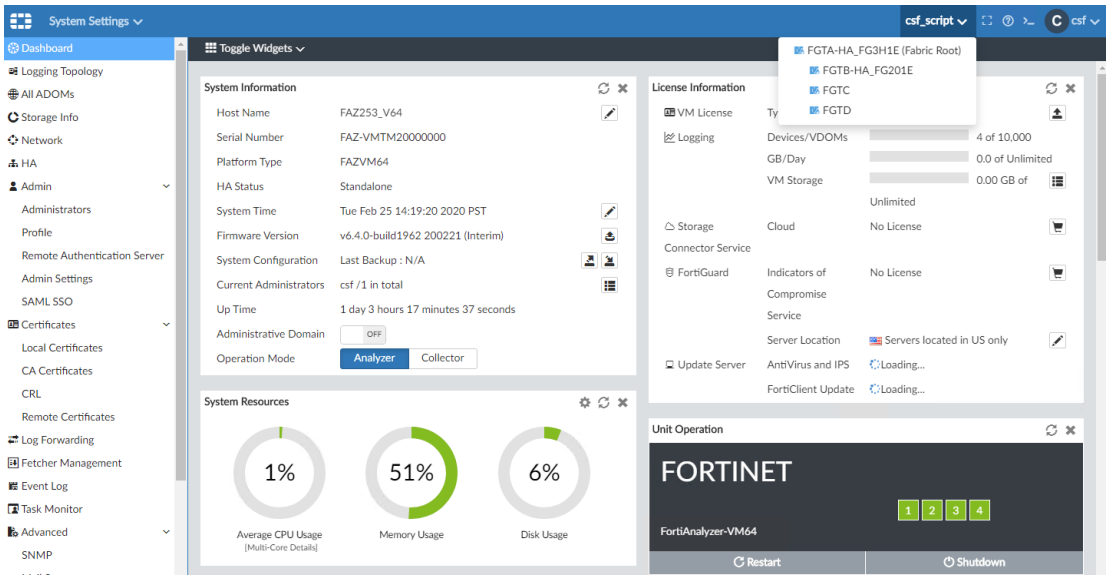
To navigate between devices using SAML SSO:

1. Log in to the root FortiGate.
2. In the toolbar, click the device name to display the Security Fabric members dropdown.
3. Hover over the FortiAnalyzer and click *Login*.



4. Log in to the FortiAnalyzer using SAML SSO.

5. In the toolbar, click the Security Fabric members dropdown to navigate between other FortiGates.

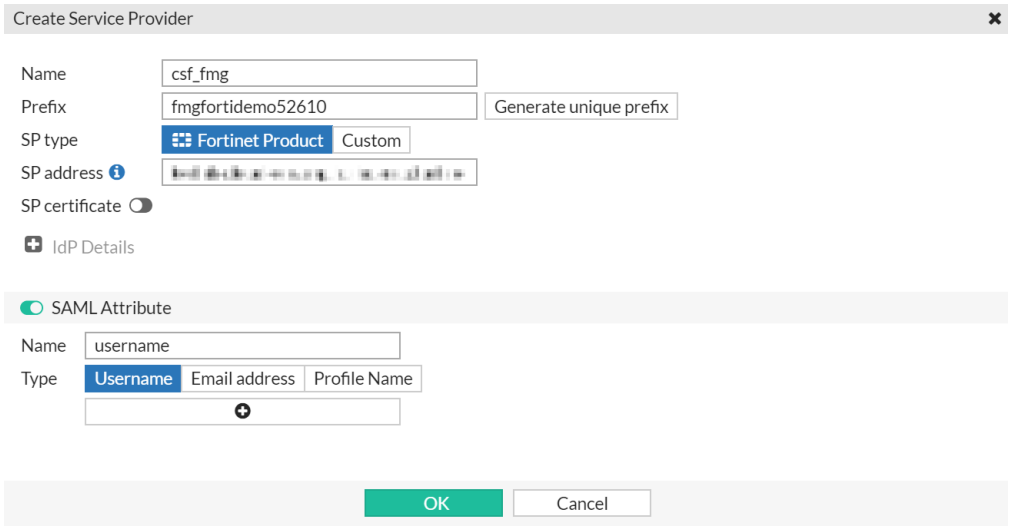


Integrating FortiManager management using SAML SSO

When a FortiGate is configured as the SAML SSO IdP, FortiManager can be added as an SP.

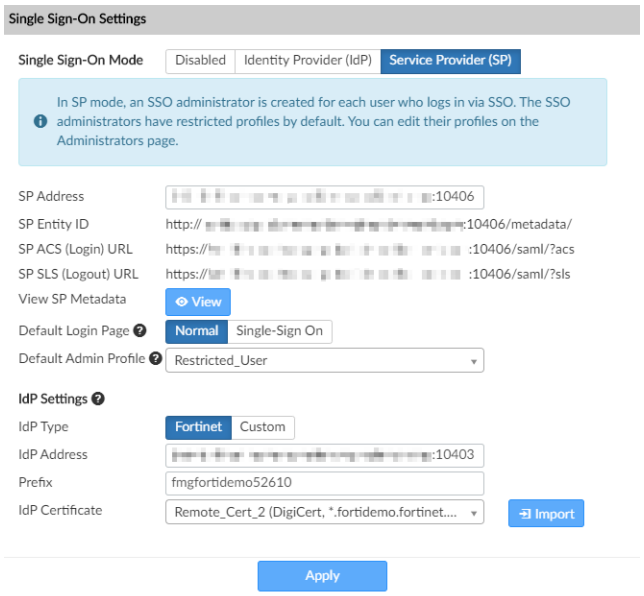
To configure FortiManager as a Fabric SP:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and edit the *Security Fabric Setup* connector.
2. In the *Security Fabric Settings* section, click *Advanced Options*.
3. In the *Service Providers* section, click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name and a prefix for the SP. FortiOS generates a unique prefix, but you can enter your own.
5. In *SP address*, enter the FortiManager address including the port number.

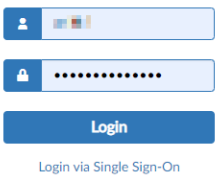


6. Click *OK*.
7. In FortiManager, go to *System Settings* > *Admin* > *SAML SSO* and in the *Single Sign-On Mode* section, click *Service Provider (SP)*.

8. Configure the *IdP Settings*:
   a. For *IdP Type*, click *Fortinet*.
   b. For *IdP Address*, enter the root FortiGate address including the port number.
   c. Enter the *Prefix* of the SP.
   d. For *IdP Certificate*, import the same certificate used on the root FortiGate.
   e. Click *Apply*.



9. To verify that the configuration works, log out of FortiManager and log in using the *Login via Single-Sign-On* link.

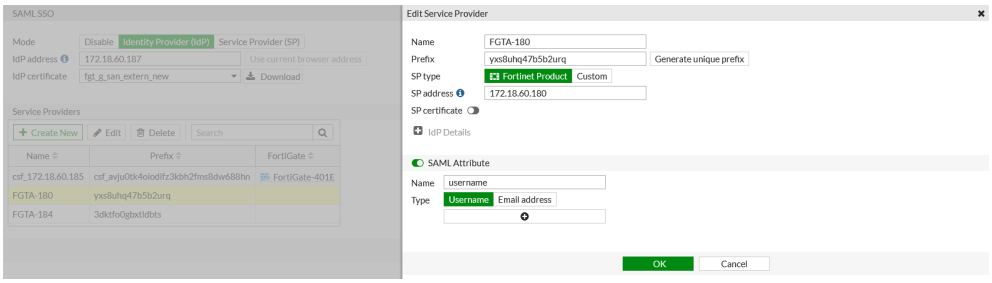


Advanced option - FortiGate SP changes

From a root FortiGate IdP, you can edit each of the FortiGate SPs. For example, you can edit a FortiGate SP to generate a new prefix, or you can add or modify SAML attributes. When you generate a new prefix value, it is propagated to the respective downstream FortiGates.

To edit an SP from the root FortiGate (IdP):

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
3. In the *Service Providers* table, select a device, and click *Edit*. The *Edit Service Provider* pane opens.
4. Edit the settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.



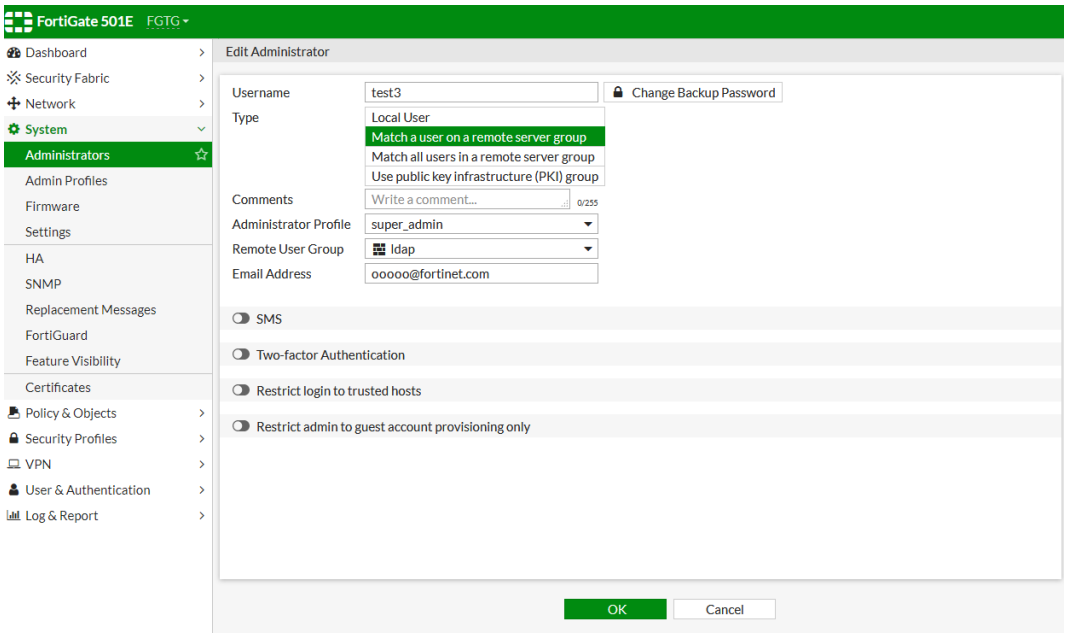
Advanced option - unique SAML attribute types

The default SAML attribute type is *username*. When the attribute type is set to *username*, SSO administrator accounts created on FortiGate SPs use the login username that is provided by the user for authentication on the root FortiGate IdP.

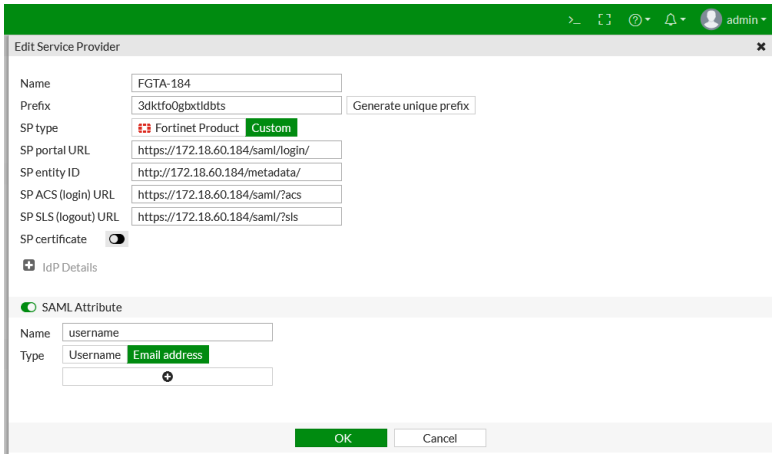
Because user names might not be unique, cases can occur where the user name is the same for the SSO administrator and the local administrator on the FortiGate SP. As a result, you might be unable to distinguish between actions taken by the local administrator and the SSO administrator on the FortiGate SP when looking at the system log. By using a unique SAML attribute type, such as an email address, you can create unique user names to better track what actions were taken by each administrator.

To configure a unique SAML attribute using the GUI:

1. On the root FortiGate (IdP), assign a unique email address to local administrator.
   In this example, the local administrator name is *test3*.
   a. Go to *System* > *Administrators*, and expand the list of local users.
   b. Select the local user, and click *Edit*.
   c. In the *Type* field, select *Match a user on a remote server group*.
   d. In the *Remote User Group* field, select a group.
   e. In the *Email Address* field, enter the email address.
   f. Click *OK*.



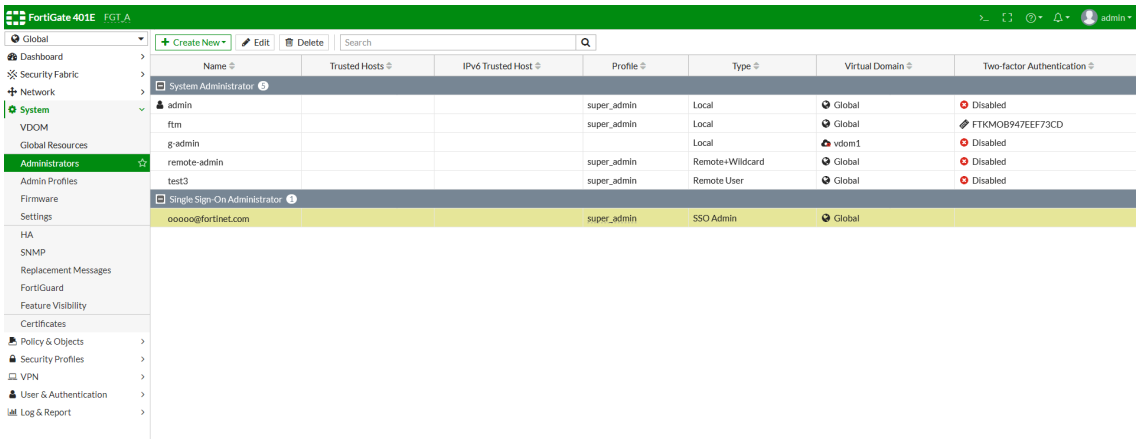
2. On the root FortiGate (IdP), update the SAML configuration:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
   c. In the *Service Providers* table, select the FortiGate, and click *Edit*. The *Edit Service Provider* pane opens.
   d. For *SP type*, select *Custom*.
   e. In the *SAML Attribute* section for *Type*, select *Email address*.
   f. Beside *Type*, select *Email address*.
   g. Click *OK*.



After the administrator (test3) logs in to the FortiGate SP for the first time, SAML authentication occurs on FortiGate SP. A new SSO administrator account is created, and the account name is now the email address instead of the login name (test3).

To view the new SSO administrator account:

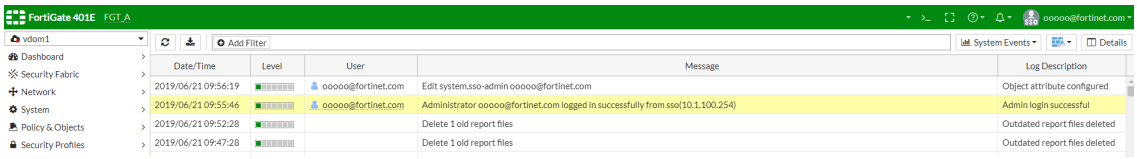
1. In the SP, go to *System* > *Administrators*, and expand the list of SSO administrators.
   The email address (*ooooo@fortinet.com*) is listed as the account name:



   If the SAML attribute had been set to the default setting of *username*, the user name for the SSO administrator account would have been (*test3*).

To view the SSO administrator activity in the log files:

1. In the SP, go to *Log & Report* > *Events*.
   Because the SAML attribute is set to *Custom*, the SSO administrator account *ooooo@fortinet.com* is used as the user name on the FortiGate SP, and it appears in the log files:



To configure a unique SAML attribute using the CLI:

```
config system saml
   set status enable
   set role identity-provider
   set cert "fgt_g_san_extern_new"
   set server-address "172.18.60.187"
   config service-providers
      edit "csf_172.18.60.185"
         set prefix "csf_avju0tk4oiodifz3kbh2fms8dw688hn"
         set sp-entity-id "http://172.18.60.185/metadata/"
         set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.60.185/saml/?acs"
         set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.60.185/saml/?sls"
         set sp-portal-url "https://172.18.60.185/saml/login/"
         config assertion-attributes
            edit "username"
            next
         end
      next
      edit "FGTA-180"
         set prefix "yxs8uhq47b5b2urq"
         set sp-entity-id "http://172.18.60.180/metadata/"
```

```
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.60.180/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.60.180/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.18.60.180/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
               edit "username"
               next
            end
         next
         edit "FGTA-184"
            set prefix "3dktfo0gbxtldbts"
            set sp-entity-id "http://172.18.60.184/metadata/"
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.60.184/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.60.184/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.18.60.184/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
               edit "username"
                  set type email
               next
            end
         next
      end
   end
```

The `csf_172.18.60.185` service provider was automatically added when the FortiGate SP 172.18.60.185 joined the root FortiGate IdP in the Security Fabric.

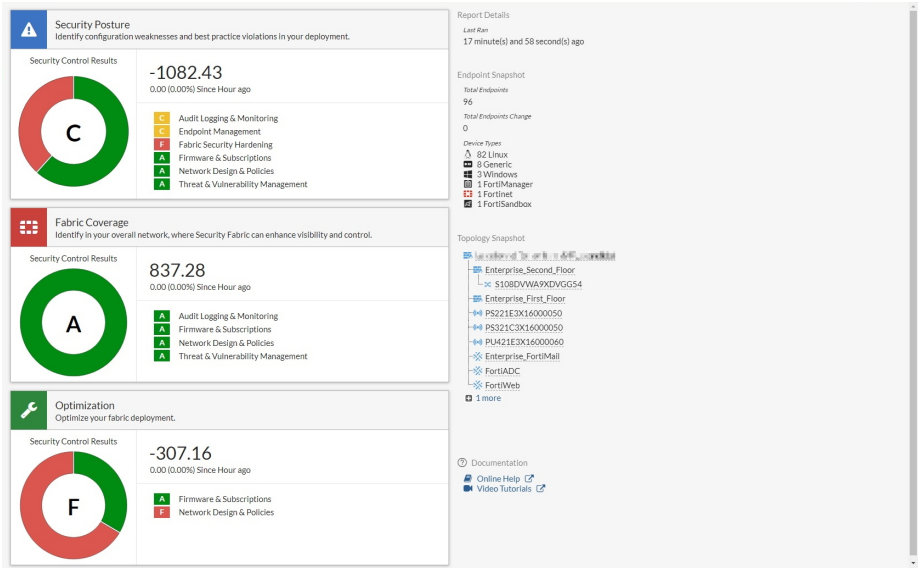
All `sp-*` options, such as `sp-portal-url`, are set with default values when a service provider is created, but can be modified using the CLI or GUI.

Security rating

The security rating uses real-time monitoring to analyze your Security Fabric deployment, identify potential vulnerabilities, highlight best practices that can be used to improve the security and performance of your network, and calculate Security Fabric scores.

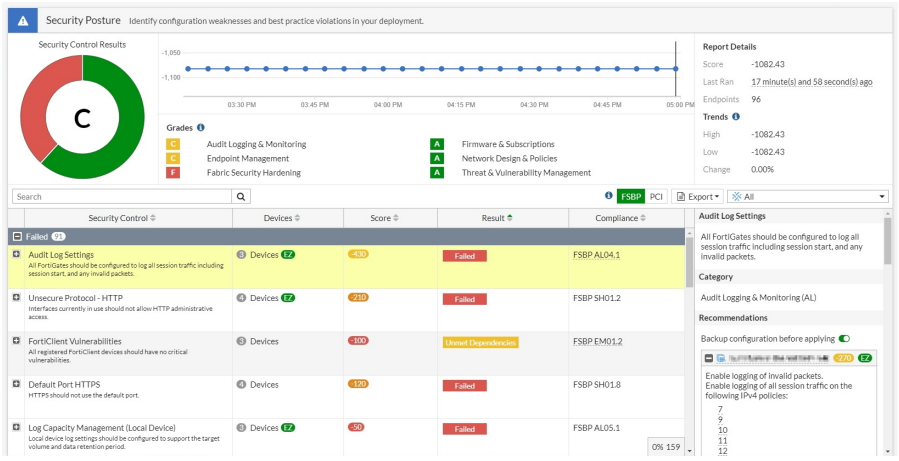
To view the security rating, go to *Security Fabric* > *Security Rating* on the root FortiGate.

The *Security Rating* page is separated into three major scorecards: *Security Posture*, *Fabric Coverage*, and *Optimization*, which provide an executive summary of the three largest areas of security focus in the Security Fabric.

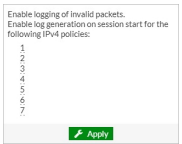


The scorecards show an overall letter grade and breakdown of the performance in sub-categories. Clicking a scorecard drills down to a detailed report of itemized results and compliance recommendations. The point score represents the net score for all passed and failed items in that area. In the drill down report, hover the cursor over a score to view the calculation breakdown.

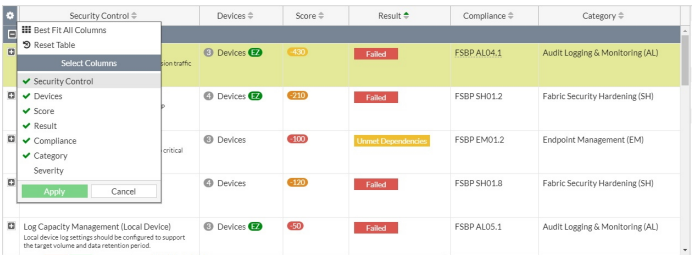
The report includes the security controls that were tested against, linking to specific FSBP or PCI compliance policies. Click the *FSBP* and *PCI* buttons to reference the corresponding standard. Users can search or filter the report results.



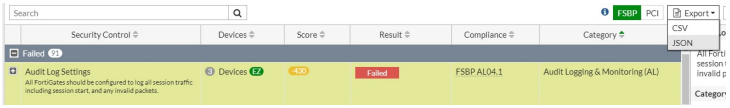
Certain remediations marked with an *EZ* symbol represent configuration recommendations that support *Easy Apply*. In the panel on the right, in the *Recommendations* section, click *Apply* to apply the changes to resolve the failed security control.



The report table can be customized by adding more columns, such as *Category*, to view, filter, or sort the results based on scorecard categories. Click the gear icon to customize the table.



Users can also export the reports as CSV or JSON files by clicking the *Export* dropdown.





To exit the current view, click the icon beside the scorecard title to return to the summary view.

For more information about security ratings, and details about each of the checks that are performed, go to Security Best Practices & Security Rating Feature.



The following licensing options are available for security rating checks:

- A base set of free checks
- A licensed set that requires a FortiGuard Security Rating Service subscription

The base set can be run locally on any FortiGate and on all other devices in the Security Fabric. On licensed FortiGates, ratings scores can be submitted to and received from FortiGuard for ranking networks by percentile.

For a list of base and licensed security rating checks, see FortiGuard Security Rating Service.

Security rating check scheduling

Security rating checks by default are scheduled to run automatically every four hours.

To disable automatic security checks using the CLI:

```
config system global
    security-rating-run-on-schedule disable
end
```

To manually run a report using the CLI:

```
# diagnose report-runner trigger
```

Opt out of ranking

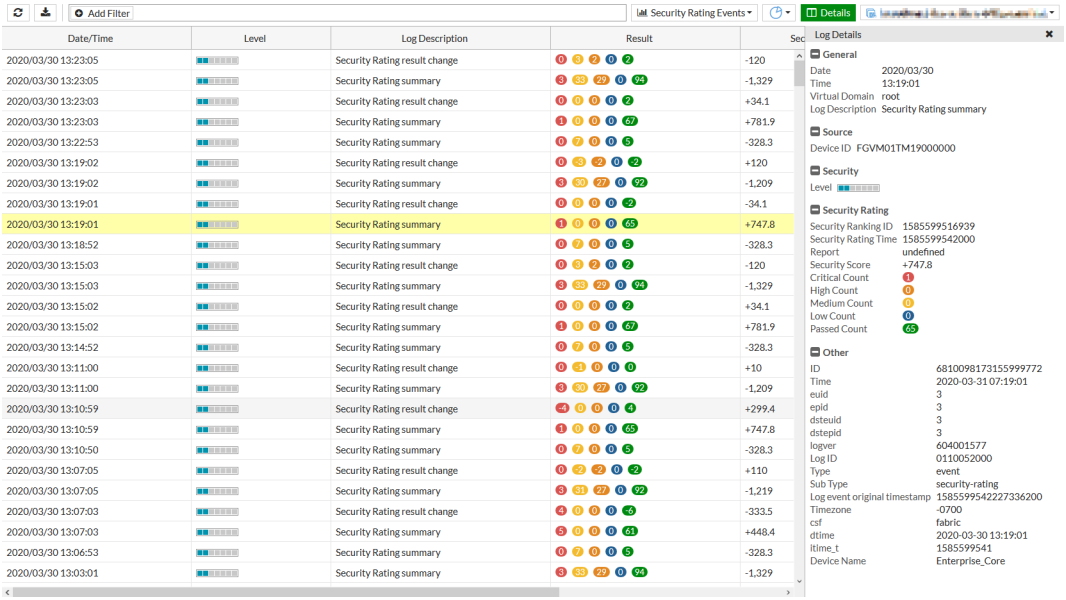
Security rating scores can be submitted to FortiGuard for comparison with other organizations' scores, allowing a percentile score to be calculated. If you opt out of submitting your score, only an absolute score will be available.

To opt out of submitting the score using the CLI:

```
config system global
    set security-rating-result-submission {enable | disable}
end
```

Logging the security rating

The results of past security checks is available in *Log & Report* > *Events* by selecting *Security Rating Events* from the event type dropdown list.



An event filter subtype can be created for the Security Fabric rating so that event logs are created on the root FortiGate that summarize the results of a check, and show detailed information for the individual tests.

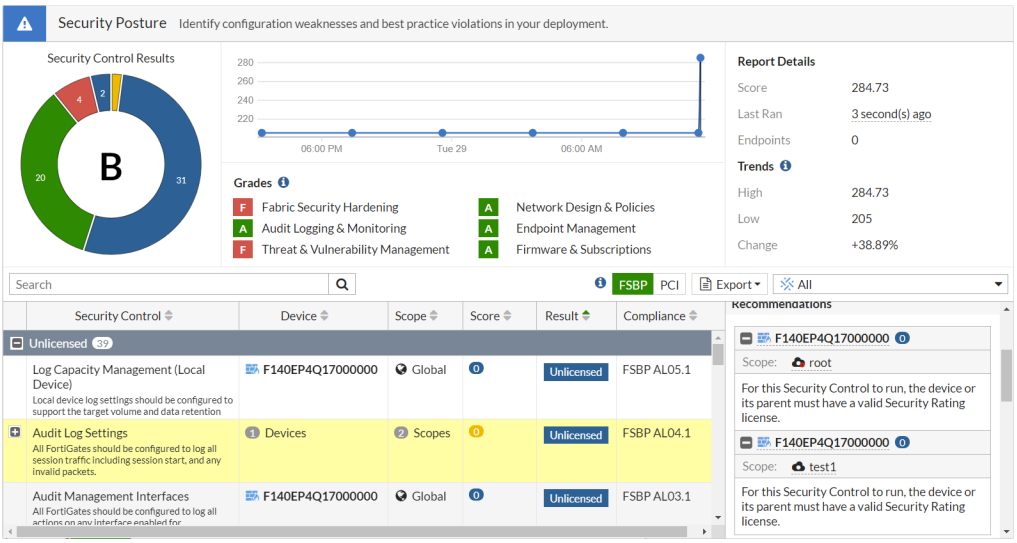
To configure security rating logging using the CLI:

```
config log eventfilter
    set security-rating enable
end
```

Multi VDOM mode

In multi VDOM mode, security rating reports can be generated in the Global VDOM for all of the VDOMs on the device. Administrators with read/write access can run the security rating report in the Global VDOM. Administrators with read-only access can only view the report.

On the report scorecards, the *Scope* column shows the VDOM or VDOMs that the check was run on. On checks that support *Easy Apply*, the remediation can be run on all of the associated VDOMs.



The security rating event log is available on the root VDOM.

Security Fabric score

The Security Fabric score is calculated when a security rating check is run, based on the severity level of the checks that are passed or failed. A higher scores represents a more secure network. Points are added for passed checks and removed for failed checks.

Severity level	Weight (points)
Critical	50
High	25
Medium	10
Low	5

To calculate the number of points awarded to a device for a passed check, the following equation is used:

$$\text{score} = \frac{\text{<severity level weight>}}{\text{<\# of FortiGates>}} \times \text{<secure FortiGate multiplier>}$$

The secure FortiGate multiplier is determined using logarithms and the number of FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric.

For example, if there are four FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric that all pass the compatible firmware check, the score for each FortiGate device is calculated with the following equation:

$$\frac{50}{4} \times 1.292 = 16.15 \text{ points}$$

All of the FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric must pass the check in order to receive the points. If any one of the FortiGate devices fails a check, the devices that passed are not awarded any points. For the device that failed the check, the following equation is used to calculated the number of points that are lost:

score = <severity level weight> x <secure FortiGate multiplier>

For example, if the check finds two critical FortiClient vulnerabilities, the score is calculated with the following equation:

-50 × 2 = -100 points

Scores are not affected by checks that do not apply to your network. For example, if there are no FortiAP devices in the Security Fabric, no points will be added or subtracted for the FortiAP firmware version check.

Automation stitches

Automation stitches automate the activities between the different components in the Security Fabric, decreasing the response times to security events. Events from any source in the Security Fabric can be monitored, and action responses can be set up to any destination.



Automation stitches can also be used on FortiGate devices that are not part of a Security Fabric.

Automation stitches that use cloud-based actions, such as AWS Lambda and Azure Function, have the option to delay an action after the previous action is completed.

An automation stitch consists of two parts, the trigger and the actions. The trigger is the condition or event on the FortiGate that activates the action, for example, a specific log, or a failed log in attempt. The action is what the FortiGate does in response to the trigger.

Diagnose commands are available in the CLI to test, log, and display the history and settings of stitches.



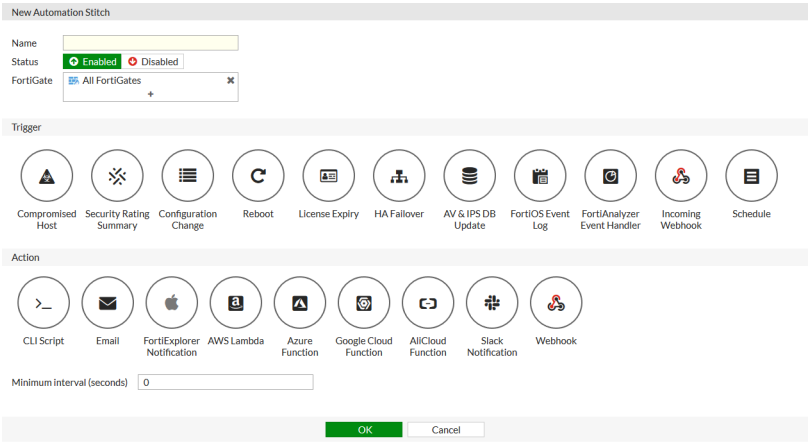
Automation stitches can only be created on the root FortiGate in a Security Fabric.

Creating automation stitches

To create an automation stitch, a trigger event and a response action or actions are selected. Automation stitches can be tested after they are created.

To create an automation stitch in the GUI:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Automation Stitch* page opens.



3. Enter the following information:

Name	Enter a name for the automation stitch.
Status	Enable/disable the stitch.
FortiGate	Select the FortiGate device to apply the automation stitch to, or select *All FortiGates* to apply it to all of them.
Trigger	Select a trigger.
Action	Select and configure one or more actions.
Minimum interval (seconds)	Enter a minimum time interval during which notifications for the same trigger event will not be sent. After the time interval elapses, an alert is sent that includes the last event since the time interval elapsed.

4. Click *OK*.

To create an automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit <automation-trigger-name>
        set trigger-type {event-based | scheduled}
        set event-type <option>
        set license-type <option>
        set ioc-level {medium | high}
        set logid <integer>
        set trigger-frequency {hourly | daily | weekly | monthly}
        set trigger-weekday <option>
        set trigger-day <integer>
        set trigger-hour <integer>
        set trigger-minute <integer>
        set faz-event-severity <string>
```

```
        set faz-event-tags <string>
    next
end
```

The available options will vary depending on the selected event type.

2. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit <name>
        set action-type <option>
        set email-to <names>
        set email-from <string>
        set email-subject <string>
        set message <string>
        set minimum-interval <integer>
        set delay <integer>
        set required {enable | disable}
        set aws-api-id <string>
        set aws-region <string>
        set aws-domain <string>
        set aws-api-stage <string>
        set aws-api-path <string>
        set aws-api-key <string>
        set azure-app <string>
        set azure-function <string>
        set azure-domain <string>
        set azure-function-authorization {anonymous | function | admin}
        set azure-api-key <string>
        set gcp-function-region <string>
        set gcp-project <string>
        set gcp-function-domain <string>
        set gcp-function <string>
        set alicloud-account-id <string>
        set alicloud-region <string>
        set alicloud-function-domain <string>
        set alicloud-version <string>
        set alicloud-service <string>
        set alicloud-function <string>
        set alicloud-function-authorization {anonymous | function}
        set alicloud-access-key-id <string>
        set alicloud-access-key-secret <string>
        set protocol {http | https}
        set method {post | put | get | patch | delete}
        set uri <string>
        set http-body <string>
        set port <integer>
        set headers <header>
        set script <string>
        set security-tag <string>
        set sdn-connector <connector_name>
    next
end
```



Enter `edit 0` to get the next available ID.

3. Create an automation destination:

```
config system automation-destination
    edit <name>
        set type {fortigate | ha-cluster}
        set destination <serial numbers>
        set ha-group-id <integer>
    next
end
```

4. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit <automation-stitch-name>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set trigger <trigger-name>
        set action <action-name>
        set destination <serial-number>
    next
end
```

To test an automation stitch:

In the GUI, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*, right-click on the automation stitch and select *Test Automation Stitch*.

In the CLI, enter the following command:

```
diagnose automation test <stitch-name> <log>
```

Default automation stitches

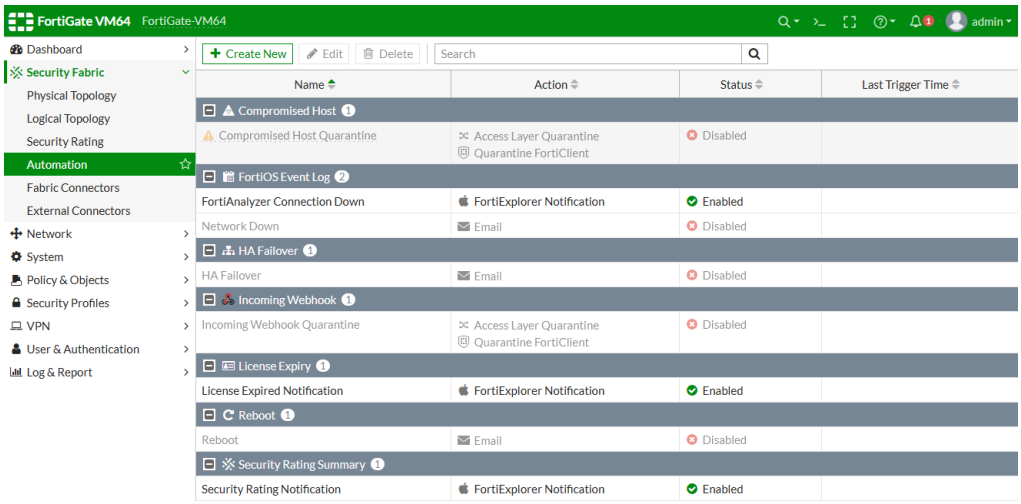
The *Automation* menu contains eight webhook automation stitches, including an *Incoming Webhook Quarantine* trigger for API calls to the FortiGate, as well as a predefined *License Expired Notification* that replaces the existing license expiry alerts.

The automation stitches are available in new FortiGate installations and after upgrading from previous versions.

The following default stitches are included in the *Automation* menu:

- Compromised Host Quarantine
- Incoming Webhook quarantine
- HA Failover
- Network Down
- Reboot
- FortiAnalyzer Connection Down
- License Expired Notification
- Security rating Notification

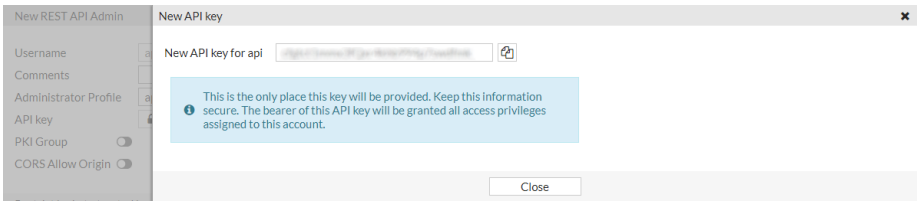
To view the CLI configurations for the new automation stitches, see CLI configuration on page 249. To view the automation stitches in the GUI, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.



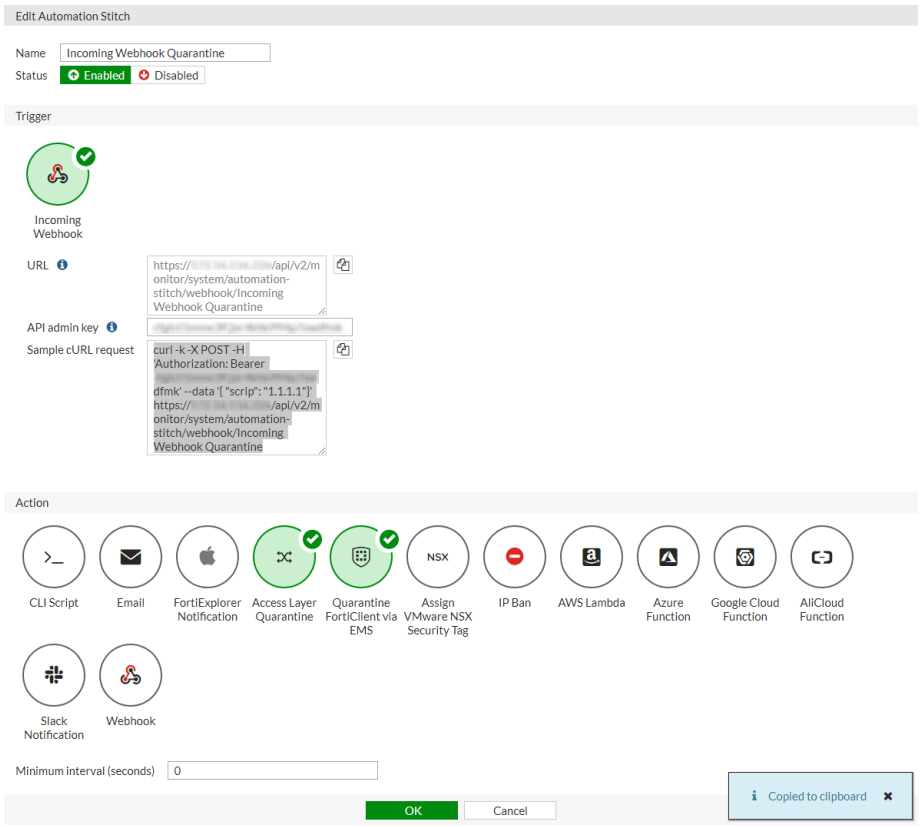
Triggering a stitch example

To trigger an Incoming Webhook Quarantine stitch in the GUI:

1. Create new API user:
   a. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
   c. Configure the *New REST API Admin* settings, and record the API key.



2. Get the sample cURL request:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
   b. Under *Incoming Webhook*, right-click *Incoming Webhook Quarantine*, and select *Edit*.
   c. Click *Enabled*, to enable the rule.
   d. In the *API admin key* field, enter the API key you recorded in the previous step. A *Sample cURL request* is created.
   e. Copy the *Sample cURL request*.



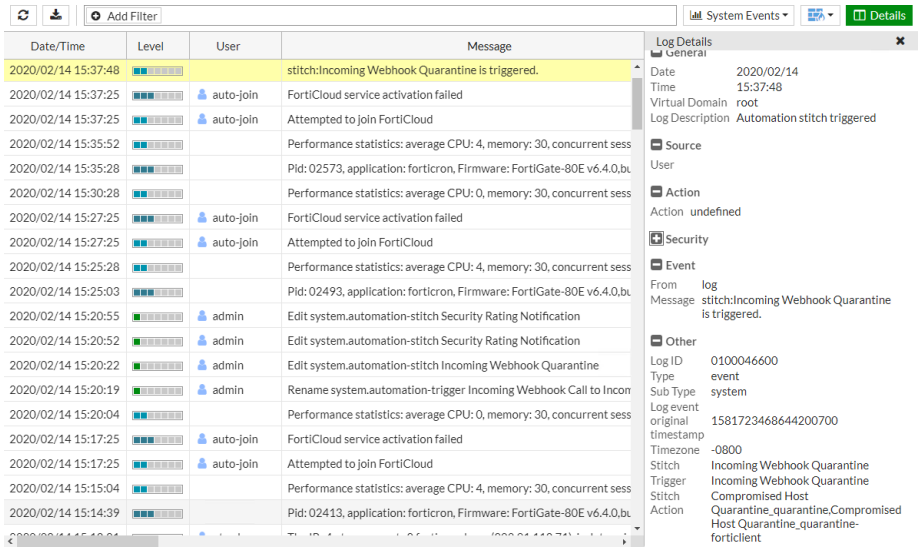
3. Execute the request:
   a. Edit the sample cURL you recorded in the previous step.
   b. Add parameters to the `data` field (`"mac"` and *"fctuid"*), and then execute the request.

```
root@pc:~# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
cfgtct1mmx3fQxr4khb994p7swdfmk' --data '{ "mac":"0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0", "fctuid":
"0000BB0B0ABD0D00B0D0A0B0E0F0B00B"}'
https://172.16.116.226/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-
stitch/webhook/Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine
{
   "http_method":"POST",
   "status":"success",
   "http_status":200,
   "serial":"FGT00E0Q00000000",
   "version":"v6.4.0",
   "build":1545
```



Encode spaces in the automation-stitch name with `%20`. For example, `Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine`

The automation rule *Incoming Webhook Quarantine* is triggered. The MAC address is quarantined in FortiGate and an event log is created. The FortiClient UUID is quarantined by EMS on the server side.



To trigger an Incoming Webhook Quarantine stitch in the CLI:

1. Create new API user and record the API key:

```
config system api-user
   edit "api"
      set api-key ENC SH00vqP0GKWKyZNz0FP0/jq00O0Ka/DHVEKdxUi+0kRDNKPpZppnnMk0KeunBI=
      set accprofile "api_profile"
      set vdom "root"
      config trusthost
         edit 1
            set ipv4-trusthost 10.6.30.0 200.200.200.0
         next
      end
   next
end
```

2. Configure the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
      set status enable
      set trigger "Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
      set action "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine" "Compromised Host Quarantine_
           quarantine-forticlient"
   next
end
```

3. Add parameters in the `data` field (`"mac"` and `"fctuid"`), then execute the request on a device:

```
root@pc56:~# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
cfgtct1mmx0fQxr4khb000p70wdfmk' --data '{ "mac":"0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0", "fctuid":
"3000BB0B0ABD0D00B0D0A0B0E0F0B00B"}'
https://100.10.100.200/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-
stitch/webhook/Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine
{
   "http_method":"POST",
   "status":"success",
   "http_status":200,
   "serial":"FGT80E0Q00000000",
   "version":"v6.4.0",
```

```
   "build":1545
```



Encode spaces in the automation-stitch name with `%20`. For example, `Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine`

The automation rule *Incoming Webhook Quarantine* is triggered. The MAC address is quarantined in FortiGate, and an event log is created. The FortiClient UUID will be quarantined on the EMS server side.

```
config user quarantine
   config targets
      edit "0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0"
         config macs
            edit 0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0
               set description "Quarantined by automation stitch: Incoming Webhook
                    Quarantine"
            next
         end
      next
   end
end
date=2020-02-14 time=15:37:48 logid="0100046600" type="event" subtype="system"
     level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1581723468644200712 tz="-0800"
     logdesc="Automation stitch triggered" stitch="Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
     trigger="Incoming Webhook Quarantine" stitchaction="Compromised Host Quarantine_
     quarantine,Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine-forticlient" from="log"
     msg="stitch:Incoming Webhook Quarantine is triggered."
```

CLI configuration

Compromised host

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine"
      set action-type quarantine
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine-forticlient"
      set action-type quarantine-forticlient
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type ioc
      set ioc-level high
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Compromised Host Quarantine"
```

```
      set action "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine" "Compromised Host Quarantine_
           quarantine-forticlient"
   next
end
```

FortiAnalyzer connection down

```
config system automation-action
   edit "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down_ios-notification"
      set action-type ios-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type event-log
      set logid 22902
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
   edit "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down"
      set status enable
      set trigger "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down"
      set action "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down_ios-notification"
   next
end
```

Network down

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Network Down_email"
      set action-type email
      set email-from ''
      set email-subject "Network Down"
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "%%log%%"
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Network Down"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type event-log
      set logid 20099
      config fields
         edit 1
            set name "status"
            set value "DOWN"
         next
      end
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
```

```
   edit "Network Down"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Network Down"
      set action "Network Down_email"
   next
end
```

HA failover

```
config system automation-action
   edit "HA Failover_email"
      set action-type email
      set email-from ''
      set email-subject "HA Failover"
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "%%log%%"
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "HA Failover"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type ha-failover
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
   edit "HA Failover"
      set status disable
      set trigger "HA Failover"
      set action "HA Failover_email"
   next
end
```

Incoming Webhook Quarantine

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine"
      set action-type quarantine
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine-forticlient"
      set action-type quarantine-forticlient
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Incoming Webhook Call"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type incoming-webhook
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
```

```
   edit "Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Incoming Webhook Call"
      set action "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine" "Compromised Host Quarantine_
           quarantine-forticlient"
   next
end
```

License expired

```
config system automation-action
   edit "License Expired Notification_ios-notification"
      set action-type ios-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "License Expired Notification"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type license-near-expiry
      set license-type any
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
   edit "License Expired Notification"
      set status enable
      set trigger "License Expired Notification"
      set action "License Expired Notification_ios-notification"
   next
end
```

Reboot

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Reboot_email"
      set action-type email
      set email-from ''
      set email-subject "Reboot"
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "%%log%%"
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Reboot"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type reboot
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Reboot"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Reboot"
      set action "Reboot_email"
```

```
   next
end
```

Security rating

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Security Rating Notification_ios-notification"
      set action-type ios-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Security Rating Notification"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type security-rating-summary
      set report-type PostureReport
   next
end
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Security Rating Notification"
      set status enable
      set trigger "Security Rating Notification"
      set action "Security Rating Notification_ios-notification"
   next
end
```

Chaining and delaying actions

Automation stitches that use cloud-based or webhook actions have the option to delay an action after the previous action is completed. The execution of the actions can be delayed by up to 3600 seconds (one hour).

To configure this option in the GUI, select a cloud-based action, then enter the required value, in seconds, in the action configuration's *Delay* field.

To configure a delay in the CLI, use the following command:

```
config system automation-action
    edit <name>
        set action-type {aws-lambda | azure-function | google-cloud-function | alicloud-
function | webhook}
        set required {enable | disable}
        set delay <seconds>
    next
end
```

Triggers

The following table outlines the available automation stitch triggers:

Trigger	Description
Compromised Host	An Indicator of Compromise (IoC) is detected on a host endpoint. The threat level must be selected and can be *Medium* or *High*. If *Medium* is selected, both medium and high level threats are included. **Note:** Additional actions are available only for *Compromised Host* triggers: • Access Layer Quarantine • Quarantine FortiClient via EMS • Assign VMware NSX Security Tag • IP Ban
Security Rating Summary	A summary is available for a recently run Security Rating.
Configuration Change	A FortiGate configuration change has occurred.
Reboot	A FortiGate is rebooting.
Low memory	This option is only available in the CLI. Conserve mode due to low memory. See Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 293 for an example.
High CPU	This option is only available in the CLI. High CPU usage. See Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 293 for an example.
License Expiry	A FortiGuard license is expiring. The license type must be selected. Options include: • FortiCare Support • FortiGuard Web Filter • FortiGuard AntiSpam • FortiGuard AntiVirus • FortiGuard IPS • FortiGuard Management Service • FortiGate Cloud
HA Failover	An HA failover is occurring.
AV & IPS DB Update	The antivirus and IPS database is updating.
FortiOS Event Log	The specified FortiOS log has occurred. The event must be selected from the event list.
FortiAnalyzer Event Handler	The specified FortiAnalyzer event handler has occurred. See FortiAnalyzer event handler trigger on page 255 for details.
Schedule	A scheduled monthly, weekly, daily, or hourly trigger. Set to occur on a specific minute of an specific hour on a specific day.
FortiGate Cloud-Based IOC	IOC detection from the FortiGate Cloud IOC service. This option requires an IOC license, a web filter license, and FortiCloud logging must be enabled.

FortiAnalyzer event handler trigger

You can trigger automation stitches based on FortiAnalyzer event handlers. This allows you to define rules based on complex correlations across devices, log types, frequencies, and other criteria.

To set up a FortiAnalyzer event handler trigger:

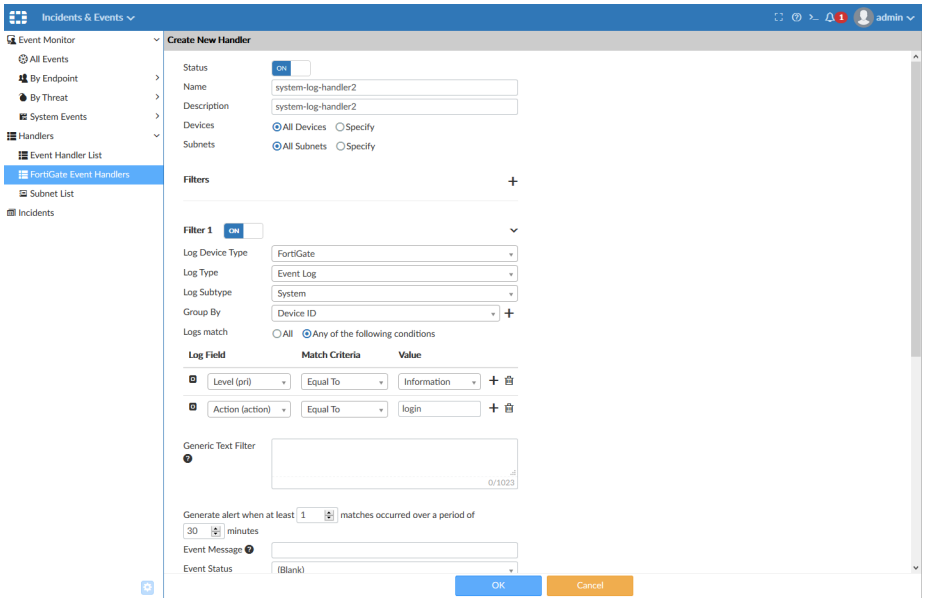
1. Configure a FortiGate event handler on the FortiAnalyzer
2. Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate on page 255
3. Configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler on page 256

Configure a FortiGate event handler on the FortiAnalyzer

On the FortiAnalyzer, configure an event handler for the automation stitch. In this example, the event handler is triggered when an administrator logs in to the FortiGate.

To configure an event handler on the FortiAnalyzer:

1. Go to *Incidents & Events* > *Handlers* > *FortiGate Event Handlers*.
2. Configure an event handler for the automation stitch.



3. Click *OK*.

Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate

See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 149 for more information.

To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
2. Click *Enabled* and configure the settings as needed.
3. Click *OK*.

To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the CLI:

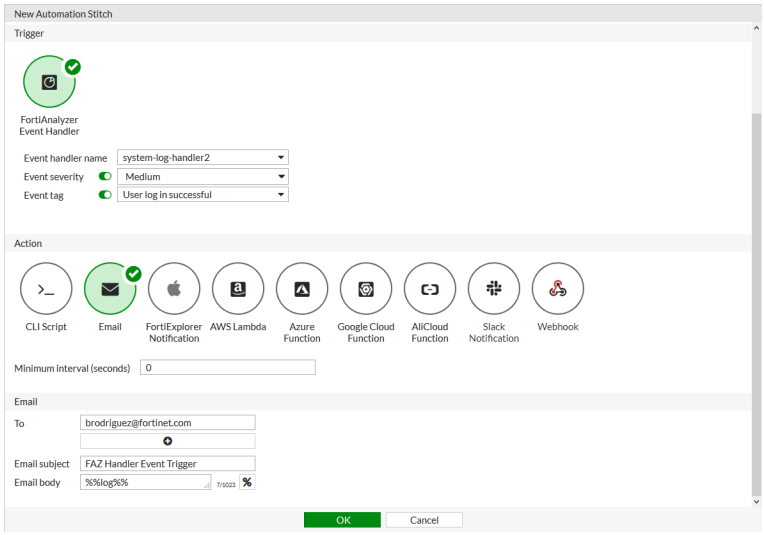
```
config log fortianalyzer setting
    set status enable
    set server "10.6.30.250"
    set serial "FL-4HET318900407"
    set upload-option realtime
    set reliable enable
end
```

Configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler

When a FortiAnalyzer event handler is triggered, it sends a notification to the FortiGate automation framework, which generates a log and triggers the automation stitch.

To configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Trigger* section, select *FortiAnalyzer Event Handler*.
4. Set *Event handler name* to the event that was created on the FortiAnalyzer.
5. Set the *Event severity*, and select or create an *Event tag*.



6. In the *Action* section, select *Email* and configure the email recipient and message.
7. Click *OK*.

To configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto-faz-1_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "jnjssll@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert"
        set message "User login FortiGate successfully."
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-faz-1"
        set event-type faz-event
        set faz-event-name "system-log-handler2"
        set faz-event-severity "medium"
        set faz-event-tags "User login successfully"
    next
end
```

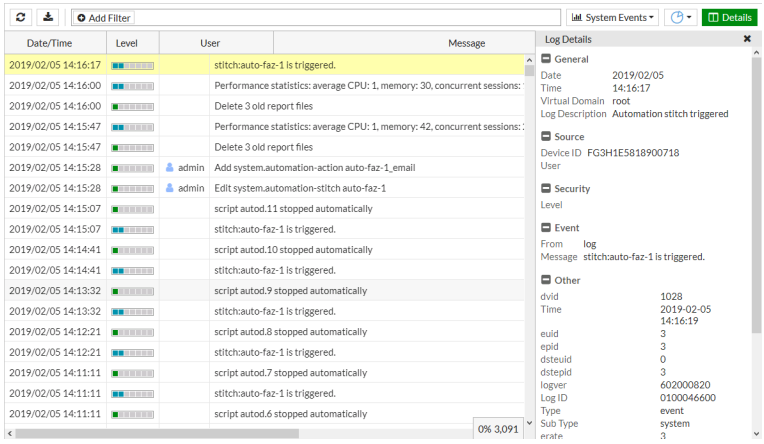
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-faz-1"
        set trigger "auto-faz-1"
        set action "auto-faz-1_email"
    next
end
```

View the trigger event log

To see the trigger event log in the GUI:

1. Log in to the FortiGate.
   The FortiAnalyzer sends notification to the FortiGate automation framework, generates an event log on the FortiGate, and triggers the automation stitch.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *System Events*.

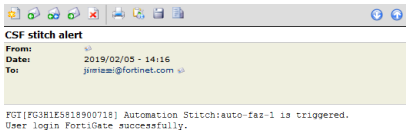


To see event logs in the CLI:

```
execute log display
    ...
    date=2019-02-05 time=14:16:17 logid="0100046600" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1549404977 logdesc="Automation stitch triggered"
stitch="auto-faz-1" trigger="auto-faz-1" from="log" msg="stitch:auto-faz-1 is triggered."
    ...
```

Sample email

The email sent by the action will look similar to the following:



Actions

The following table outlines the available automation stitch actions. Multiple actions can be added and reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.

Action	Description
Alert	Generate a FortiOS dashboard alert. This option is only available in the CLI.
CLI Script	Run one or more CLI scripts. See CLI script action on page 259 for details. See Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 293 for an example.
Disable SSID	Disable the SSID interface. This option is only available in the CLI.
Email	Send a custom email message to the selected recipients. At least one recipient and an email subject must be specified. The email body can use parameters from logs or previous action results. Wrapping the parameter with %% will replace the expression with the JSON value for the parameter, for example: *%%results.source%%* is the source property from the previous action.
FortiExplorer Notification	Send push notifications to FortiExplorer. The FortiGate must be registered to FortiCare on the iOS App that will receive the notification.
Access Layer Quarantine	This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers. Impose a dynamic quarantine on multiple endpoints based on the access layer.
Quarantine FortiClient via EMS	This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers. Use FortiClient EMS to block all traffic from the source addresses that are flagged as compromised hosts. Quarantined devices are flagged on the Security Fabric topology views. Go to the *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* > *Quarantine* widget to view and manage quarantined IP addresses.
Quarantine via FortiNAC	This option is only available for Compromised Host and Incoming Webhook triggers. Use FortiNAC to quarantine a client PC and disable its MAC address. See Quarantine via FortiNAC action on page 261 for details.

Action	Description
Assign VMware NSX Security Tag	This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers. If an endpoint instance in a VMware NSX environment is compromised, the configured security tag is assigned to the compromised endpoint. See Assign VMware NSX security tag action on page 265 and Assign VMware NSX-T security tag action on page 268 for details.
IP Ban	This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers. Block all traffic from the source addresses flagged by the IoC. Go to the *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* > *Quarantine* widget to view and manage quarantined IP addresses.
AWS Lambda	Send log data to an integrated AWS service. See AWS Lambda action on page 272 for details.
Azure Function	Send log data to an Azure function. See Azure Function action on page 274 for details.
Google Cloud Function	Send log data to a Google Cloud function. See Google Cloud Function action on page 276 for details.
AliCloud Function	Send log data to an AliCloud function. See AliCloud Function action on page 278 for details.
Slack Notification	Send a notification to a Slack channel. See Slack Notification action on page 281 for details.
Webhook	Send an HTTP request using a REST callback. See Webhook action on page 284 for details, and Slack integration webhook on page 290 and Microsoft Teams integration webhook on page 291 for examples.

CLI script action

CLI scripts can be run when an automation stitch is triggered. The scripts can be manually entered, uploaded as a file, or recorded in the CLI console. The output of the script can be sent as an email action.



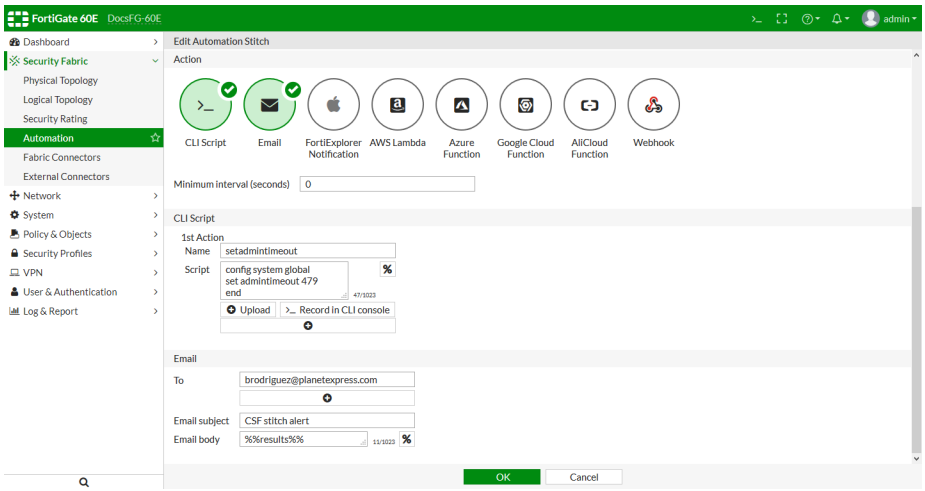
The maximum size of the CLI script action output is 16K characters.

In this example, the script sets the idle timeout value to 479 minutes, and sends an email with the script output.

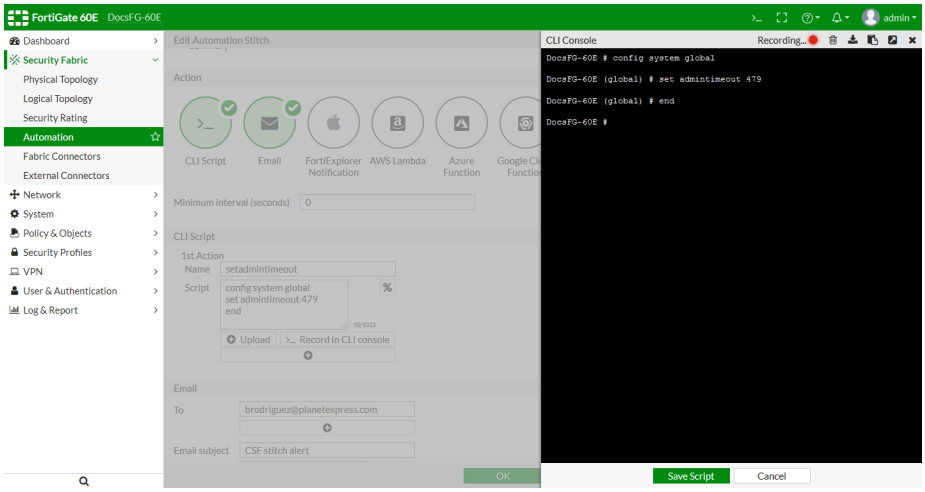
To configure a CLI script automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.
5. Select *CLI Script* and *Email* actions.
6. Configure the CLI script:

- To manually enter the script, type it into the *Script* field.



- To upload a script file, click *Upload* and locate the file on your management computer.
- To record the script in the CLI console, click *>_Record in CLI console*, then enter the CLI commands.



7. Configure the email action.
8. Click *OK*.

To configure a CLI script automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "set admintimeout479"
        set action-type cli-script
        set minimum-interval 0
        set delay 0
        set required enable
        set script "config system global
            set admintimeout 479
            end"
    next
    edit "auto-cli-1_email"
        set action-type email
```

```
        set email-to "jnkssll@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert"
        set message "%%results%%"
        set minimum-interval 0
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

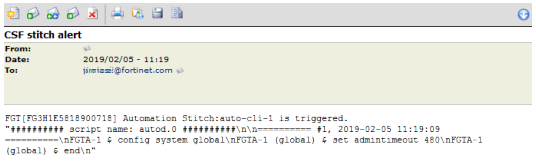
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-cli-1"
        set trigger-type event-based
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-cli-1"
        set status enable
        set trigger "auto-cli-1"
        set action "set admintimeout479" "auto-cli-1_email"
    next
end
```

Email sample

The email sent by the action will look similar to the following:



Quarantine via FortiNAC action

Users can configure an automation stitch with the *Quarantine via FortiNAC* action with a *Compromised Host* or *Incoming Webhook* trigger. When the automation is triggered, the client PC will be quarantined and its MAC address is disabled in the configured FortiNAC.

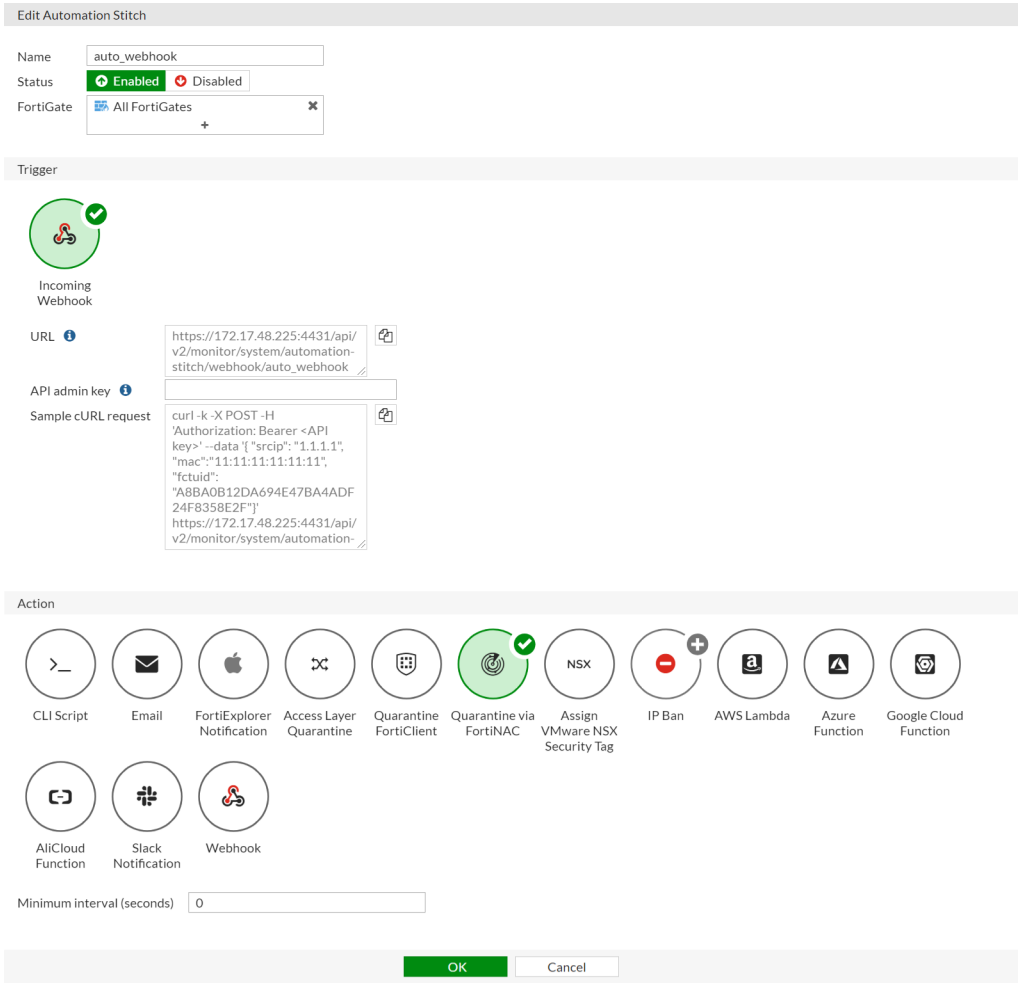
In this example, the FortiNAC has been configured to join an enabled Security Fabric (see FortiNAC for more information).

The FortiNAC must also be configured to isolate disabled hosts:

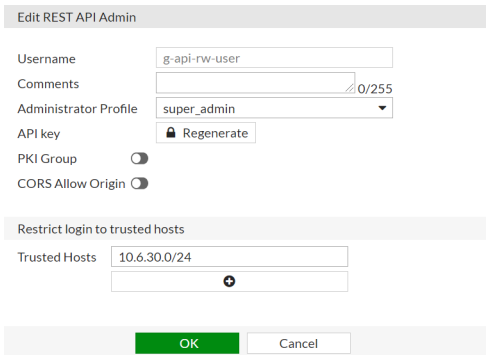
- Endpoints connecting to FortiWiFi or wired ports on FortiGate:
  - See the requisite *Configure FortiNAC* section in the FortiGate Endpoint Management Integration Guide.
- Endpoints connecting to FortiAP:
  - Set the *Dead End* VLAN. See Model configuration.
- Endpoints connecting to FortiSwitch:
  - Set the *Dead End* VLAN. See Model configuration.
  - Add the switch to the physical address filtering group. See Systems groups and Modify a group.

To configure a FortiNAC quarantine automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Configure the automation stitch:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Trigger* section, select *Incoming Webhook*.
   c. In the *Action* section, select *Quarantine via FortiNAC*.
   d. Click *OK*.

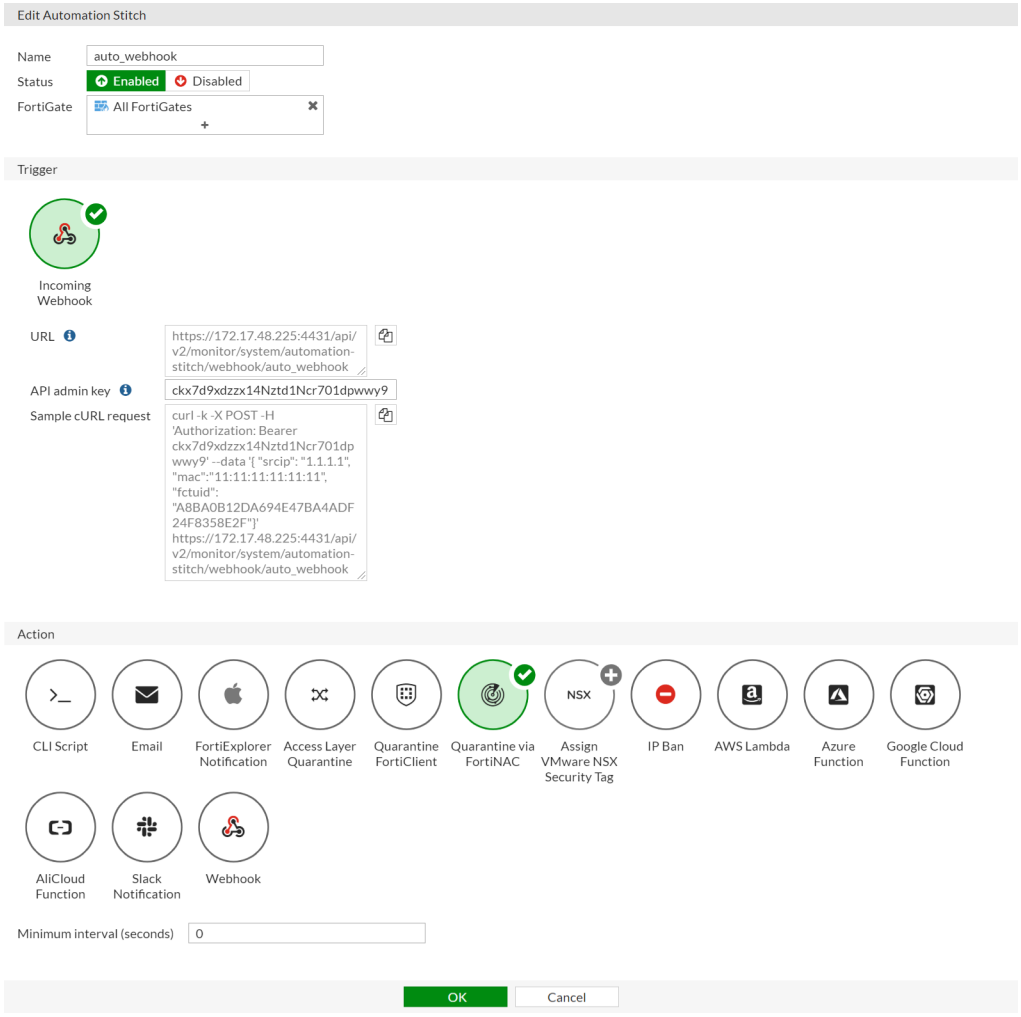


2. Create a new API user and generate the API key:
   a. Go to *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
   b. Configure the settings as needed.



c. Click *OK*. The *New API key* window opens.
d. Copy the key to the clipboard and click *Close*.
e. Click *OK*.

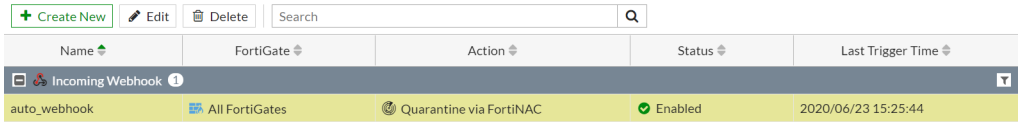
3. Add the API key to the automation stitch:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* and edit the automation stitch created in step 1.
   b. Paste the key in the *API admin key* field.
   c. Click *OK*.



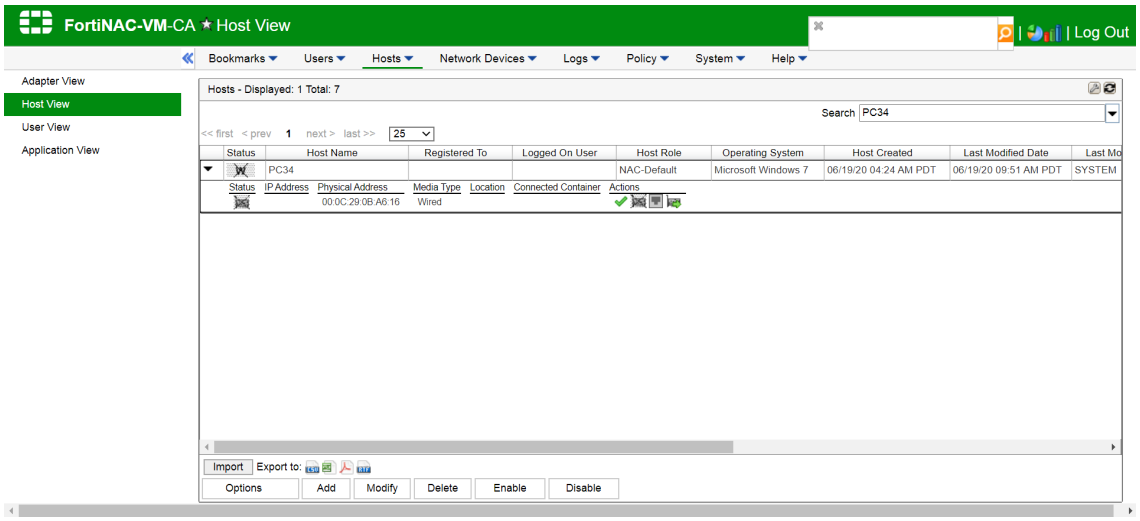
4. On a Linux PC accessible by the FortiGate, create a cURL request to trigger the automation stitch:

```
root@pc56:~# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer ckx7d9xdzzx14Nztd1Ncr701dpwwy9' -
-data '{ "srcip": "1.1.1.1", "mac":"00:0C:29:0B:A6:16", "fctuid":
"A8BA0B12DA694E47BA4ADF24F8358E2F"}'
https://172.17.48.225:4431/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-stitch/webhook/auto_webhook
```

5. In FortiOS, verify the automation stitch is triggered and the action is executed:
   a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *System Events* to confirm that the stitch was activated.
   b. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* to see the last time that the stitch was triggered.



In FortiNAC, the *Host View* shows the status of the client PC. It is quarantined and its MAC address is disabled.



To configure a FortiNAC quarantine automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Configure the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_webhook_quarantine-fortinac"
        set action-type quarantine-fortinac
    next
end

config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_webhook"
        set event-type incoming-webhook
    next
end

config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_webhook"
        set trigger "auto_webhook"
        set action "auto_webhook_quarantine-fortinac"
    next
end
```

2. Create a new API user and generate the API key:

```
config system api-user
    edit "g-api-rw-user"
        set api-key ENC SH2SHFEtfJQ9OsfH/keh4kdULAp3V4ps7HkxBuDIzpR4Cmsckaa9wJ6kw28dFQ=
        set accprofile "super_admin"
        set vdom "root"
```

```
        config trusthost
            edit 1
                set ipv4-trusthost 10.6.30.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. On a Linux PC accessible by the FortiGate, create a cURL request to trigger the automation stitch:

```
root@pc56:~# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer ckx7d9xdzzx14Nztd1Ncr701dpwwy9' -
-data '{ "srcip": "1.1.1.1", "mac":"00:0C:29:0B:A6:16", "fctuid":
"A8BA0B12DA694E47BA4ADF24F8358E2F"}'
https://172.17.48.225:4431/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-stitch/webhook/auto_webhook
```

4. In FortiOS, verify the automation stitch is triggered and the action is executed:

```
# diagnose test application autod 2
csf: enabled    root:yes
version:1592949233 sync time:Tue Jun 23 15:03:15 2020

total stitches activated: 1

stitch: auto_webhook
        destinations: all
        trigger: auto_webhook

                (id:15)service=auto_webhook

        local hit: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
        actions:
                auto_webhook_quarantine-fortinac type:quarantine-fortinac interval:0

date=2020-06-23 time=15:25:44 logdesc="Internal Message" path="system" name="automation-
stitch" action="webhook" mkey="auto_webhook" srcip="1.1.1.1" mac="00:0C:29:0B:A6:16"
fctuid="A8BA0B12DA694E47BA4ADF24F8358E2F" vdom="root" service="auto_webhook"

date=2020-06-23 time=15:25:44 logid="0100046600" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1592951144401490054 tz="-0700" logdesc="Automation
stitch triggered" stitch="auto_webhook" trigger="auto_webhook" stitchaction="auto_
webhook_quarantine-fortinac" from="log" msg="stitch:auto_webhook is triggered."
```

Assign VMware NSX security tag action

If an endpoint instance in a VMware NSX environment is compromised, this action will assign the configured security tag to the compromised endpoint.

This action is only available when the automation trigger is set to compromised host.

To set up the NSX quarantine action, you need to:

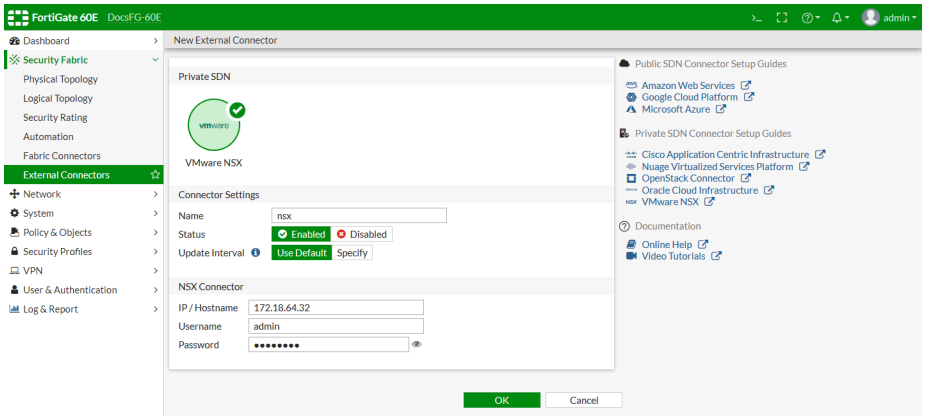
1. Configure a VMware NSX SDN connector
2. Configure an NSX security tag automation stitch
3. Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate

Configure a VMware NSX SDN connector

The FortiGate retrieves security tags from the VMware NSX server through the connector.

To configure a VMware NSX SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Select *VMware NSX*.
4. Configure the settings.



5. Click *OK*.

To configure a VMware NSX SDN connector in the CLI:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.32"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
    next
end
```

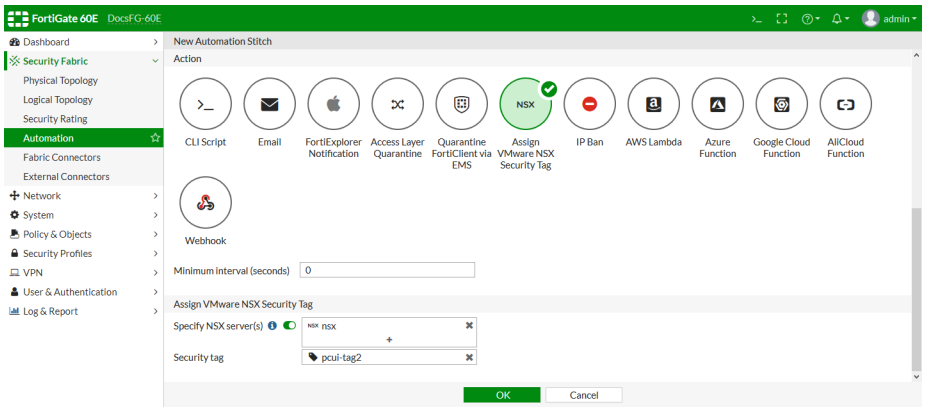
Configure an NSX security tag automation stitch

Security tags are retrieved from the VMware NSX server through the NSX SDN connector.

To configure an NSX security tag automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Trigger* section, select *Compromised Host*.
4. In the *Action* section, select *Assign VMware NSX Security Tag*.

5. Configure the settings.



6. Click *OK*.

To configure an NSX security tag automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "pcui-test_quarantine-nsx"
        set action-type quarantine-nsx
        set security-tag "pcui-tag2"
        set sdn-connector "nsx"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "pcui-test"
        set ioc-level high
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "pcui-test"
        set trigger "pcui-test"
        set action "pcui-test_quarantine-nsx"
    next
end
```

Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate

The FortiAnalyzer is used to send endpoint compromise notification to the FortiGate.

See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 149 for more information.

To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the GUI:

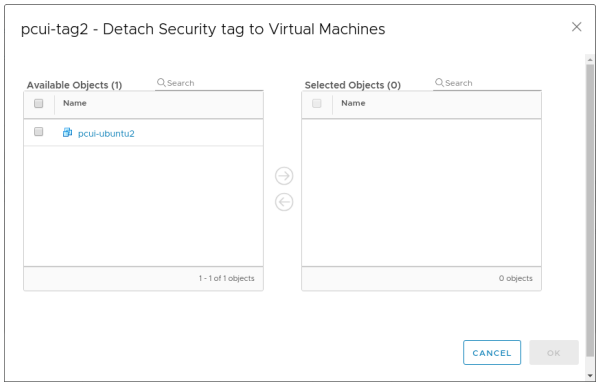
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
2. Click *Enabled* and configure the settings as needed.
3. Click *Apply*.

To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the CLI:

```
config log fortianalyzer setting
    set status enable
    set server "172.18.64.234"
    set serial "FL-8HFT718900132"
    set upload-option realtime
    set reliable enable
end
```

When an endpoint instance is compromised

When an endpoint instance, such as *pcui-ubuntu2*, in the VMware NSX environment is compromised, the automation stitch is triggered. The FortiGate then assigns the configured security tag, *pcui-tag2* in this example, to the compromised NSX endpoint instance.



Assign VMware NSX-T security tag action

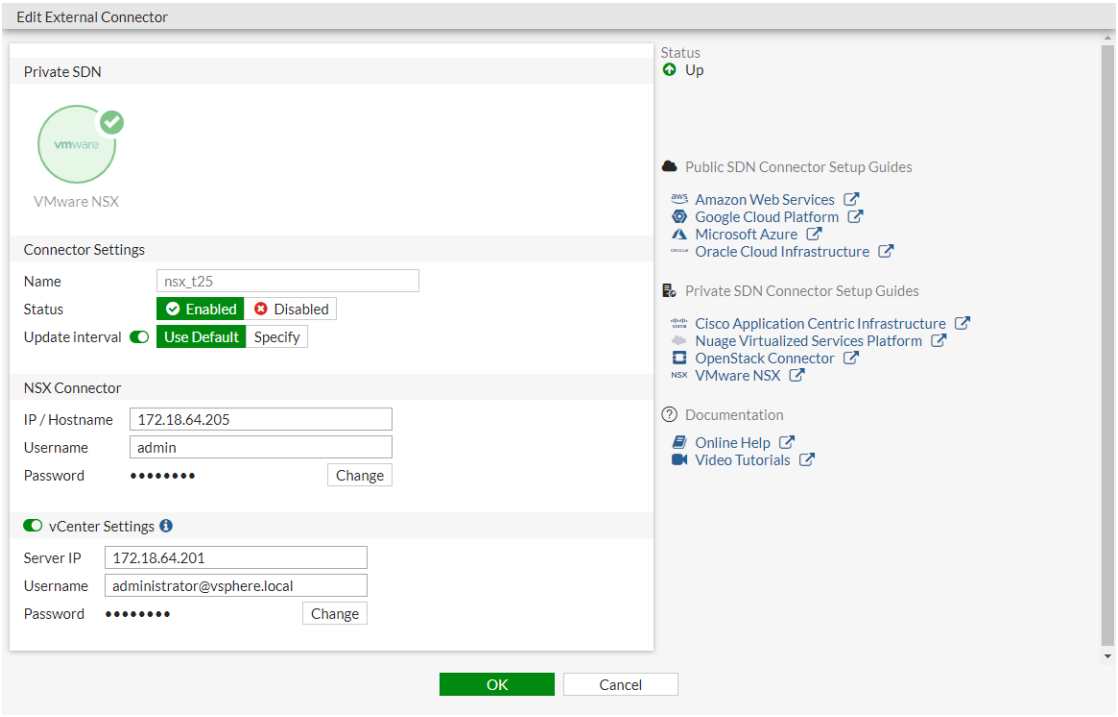
VMware NSX SDN connectors' vCenter server and credentials can be configured so the FortiGate resolves NSX-T VMs. The FortiGate uses the *Assign VMWare NSX Security Tag* automation action to assign a tag to the VM through an automation stitch.

The FortiGate is notified of a compromised host on the NSX-T network by an incoming webhook or other means, such as FortiGuard IOC. An automation stitch can be configured to process this trigger and action it by assigning a VMware NSX security tag on the VM instance.

To configure an automation stitch to assign a security tag to NSX-T VMs in the GUI:

1. Configure the NSX SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select *VMware NSX*.
   c. Configure the connector settings.

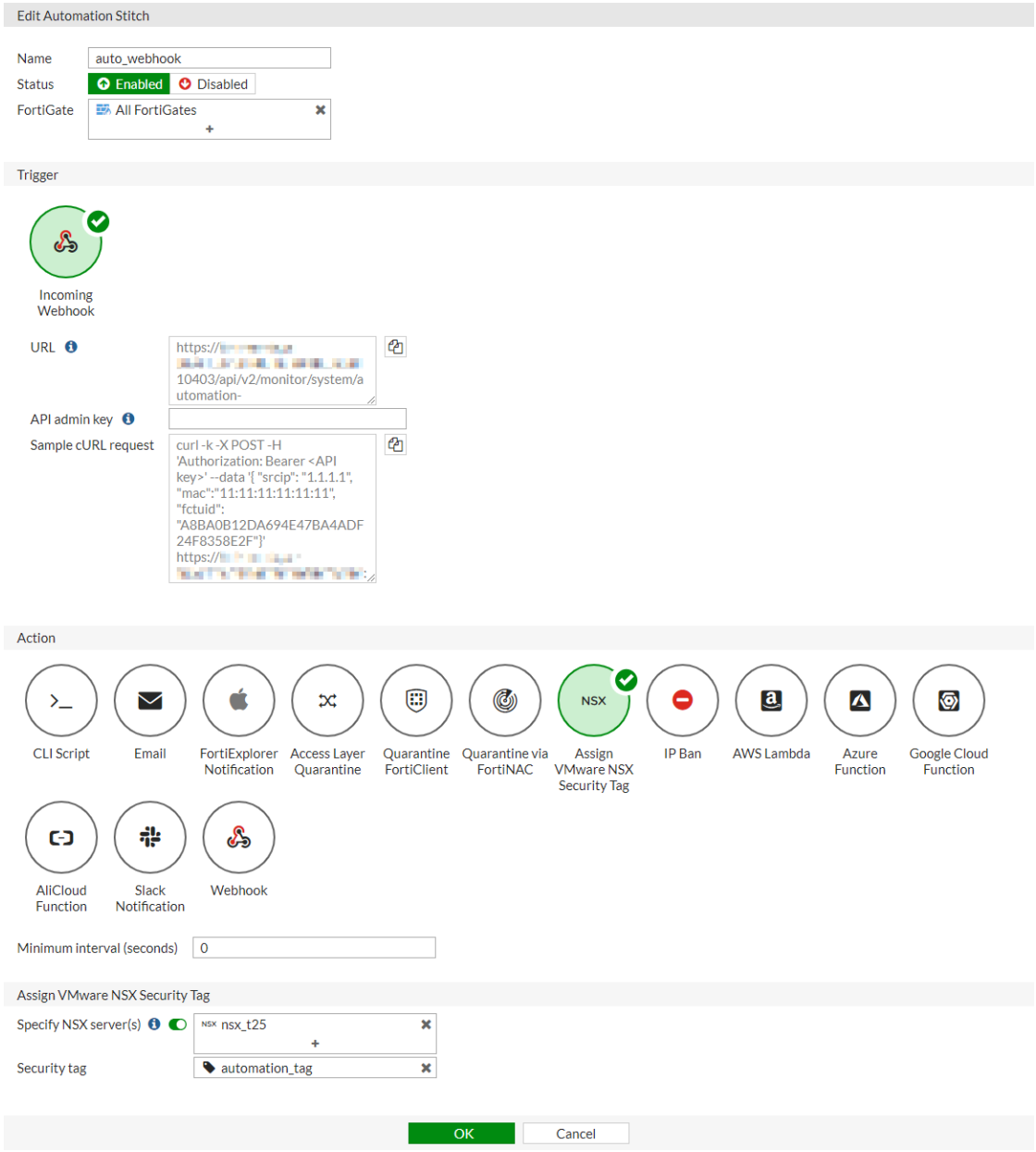
d. Enable *vCenter Settings* and configure as needed.



e. Click *OK*.

2. Configure the automation stitch:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Trigger* section, select *Incoming Webhook*.
   c. In the *Action* section, select *Assign VMwareNSX Security Tag*.
   d. Enable *Specify NSX server(s)* and enter a server.
   e. Enter a *Security tag*.

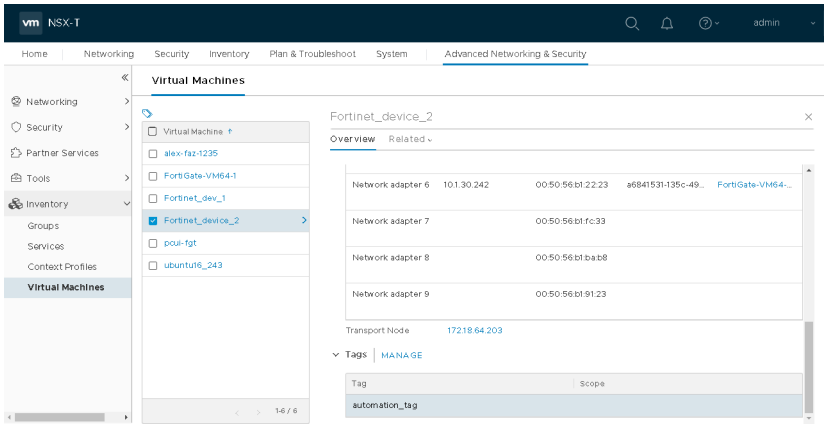
f. Click *OK*.



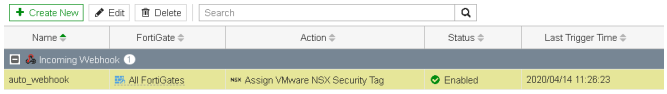
3. In NSX-T, create a cURL request to trigger the automation stitch on the FortiGate:

```
root@pc56:/home# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
3fdxNG08mgNg0fh4NQ51g1NQ1QHcxx' --data '{ "srcip": "10.1.30.242"}'
https://172.16.116.230/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-stitch/webhook/auto_webhook
{
  "http_method":"POST",
  "status":"success",
  "http_status":200,
  "serial":"FGVM08TM20000220",
  "version":"v6.4.0",
  "build":1608
}
```

The automation stitch is triggered and the configured tag is added to the NSX-T VM.



In FortiOS, the *Security Fabric* > *Automation* page shows the last trigger time.



To configure an automation stitch to assign a security tag to NSX-T VMs in the CLI:

1. Configure the NSX SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx_t25"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.205"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
        set vcenter-server "172.18.64.201"
        set vcenter-username "administrator@vsphere.local"
        set vcenter-password xxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Configure the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_webhook_quarantine-nsx"
        set action-type quarantine-nsx
        set security-tag "automation_tag"
        set sdn-connector "nsx_t25"
    next
end

config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_webhook"
        set trigger-type event-based
        set event-type incoming-webhook
    next
end

config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_webhook"
        set status enable
```

```
        set trigger "auto_webhook"
        set action "auto_webhook_quarantine-nsx"
    next
end
```

3. In NSX-T, create a cURL request to trigger the automation stitch on the FortiGate:

```
root@pc56:/home# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
3fdxNG08mgNg0fh4NQ51g1NQ1QHcxx' --data '{ "srcip": "10.1.30.242"}'
https://172.16.116.230/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-stitch/webhook/auto_webhook
{
  "http_method":"POST",
  "status":"success",
  "http_status":200,
  "serial":"FGVM08TM20000220",
  "version":"v6.4.0",
  "build":1608
}
```

To verify the automation stitch is triggered and the action is executed:

```
# diagnose test application autod 2

csf: enabled root:yes
version:1586883541 sync time:Tue Apr 14 11:04:05 2020

total stitches activated: 1

stitch: auto_webhook
destinations: all
trigger: auto_webhook

(id:15)service=auto_webhook

local hit: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
actions:
auto_webhook_quarantine-nsx type:quarantine-nsx interval:0
security tag:automation_tag
sdn connector:
nsx_t25;
```

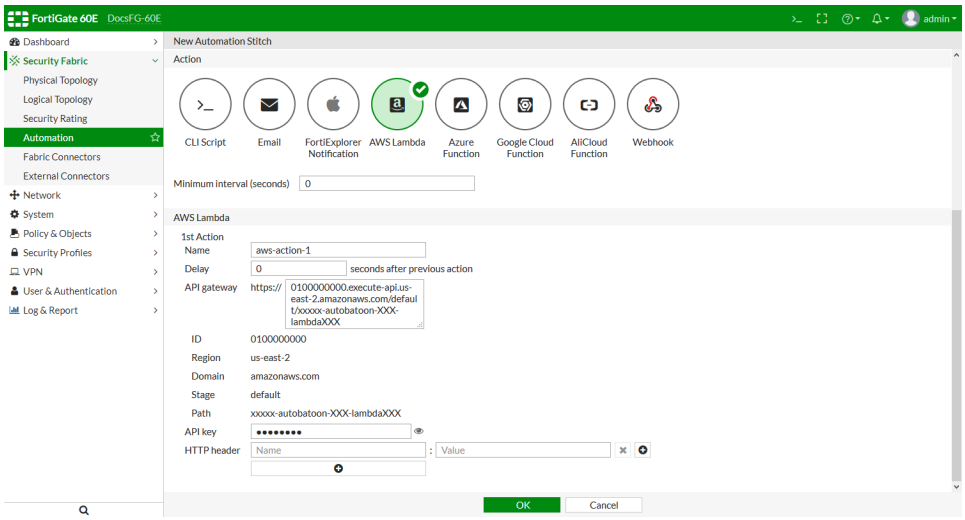
AWS Lambda action

AWS Lambda functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

To configure an AWS Lambda function automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.

5. Select *AWS Lambda Function* and configure its settings.



Name	The action name.
Delay	The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0).
API gateway	The API gateway URL, in the format: `{restapi-id}.execute-api.{region}.{domain}/{stage}/{path}` The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters.
API key	The API key configured in your API gateway.
HTTP header	The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added.
+	Click to add another action. Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.
Name	The action name.
Delay	The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0).

6. Click *OK*.

To configure an AWS Lambda function automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "aws-action-1"
        set action-type aws-lambda
        set aws-api-id "0100000000"
        set aws-region "us-east-2"
        set aws-api-stage "default"
        set aws-api-path "xxxxx-autobatoon-XXX-lambdaXXX"
        set aws-api-key *************
    next
end
```

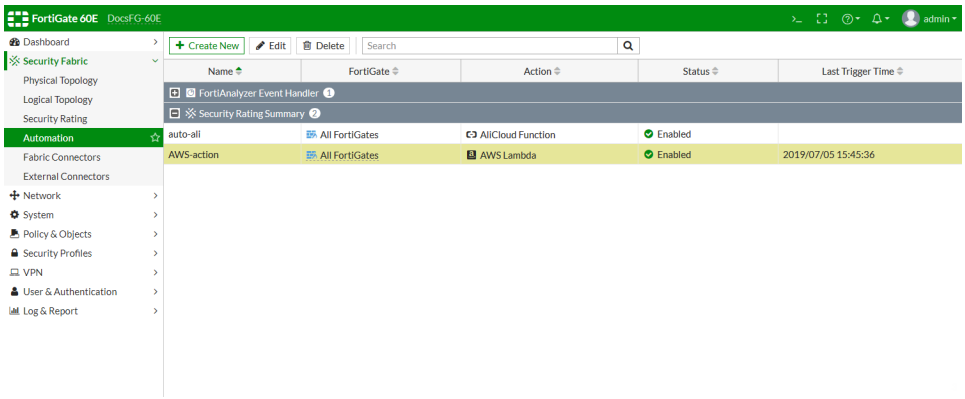
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-aws"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-aws"
        set trigger "auto-aws"
        set action "aws-action-1"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:



In AWS, the log shows that the function was called, executed, and finished.

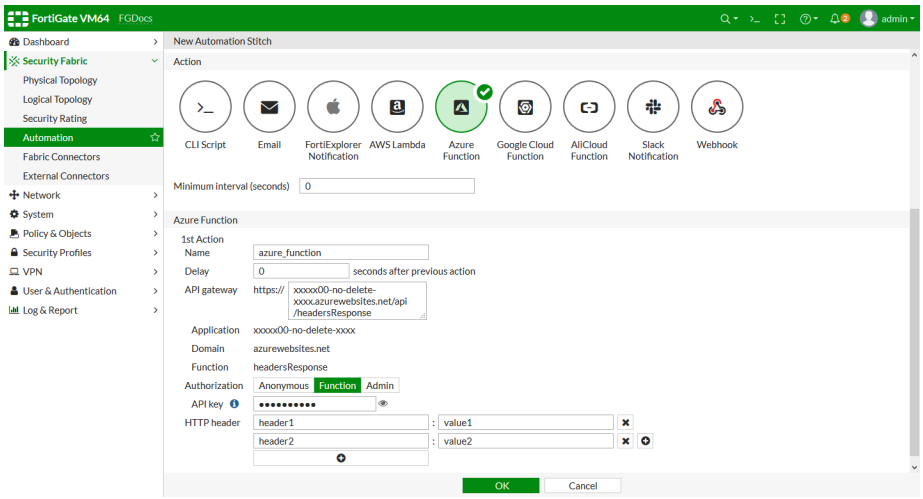
Azure Function action

Azure functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

To configure an Azure function automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.

5. Select *Azure Function* and configure its settings.



Name	The action name.
Delay	The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0).
API gateway	The API gateway URL, in the format: `{application}.{domain}/api/{function}` The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters.
Authorization	The authorization level: *Anonymous*, *Function*, or *Admin*.
API key	The API key configured in your API gateway. This options is only available when *Authorization* is not *Anonymous*.
HTTP header	The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added.
+	Click to add another action. Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.

6. Click *OK*.

To configure an Azure function automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "azure_function"
        set action-type azure-function
        set azure-app "xxxxx00-no-delete-xxxx"
        set azure-function "headersResponse"
        set azure-function-authorization function
        set azure-api-key **********
        set headers "header1:value1" "header2:value2"
    next
end
```

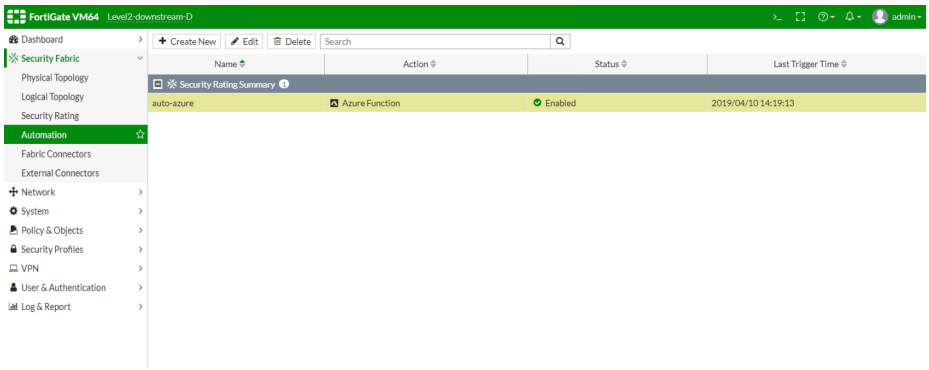
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-azure"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

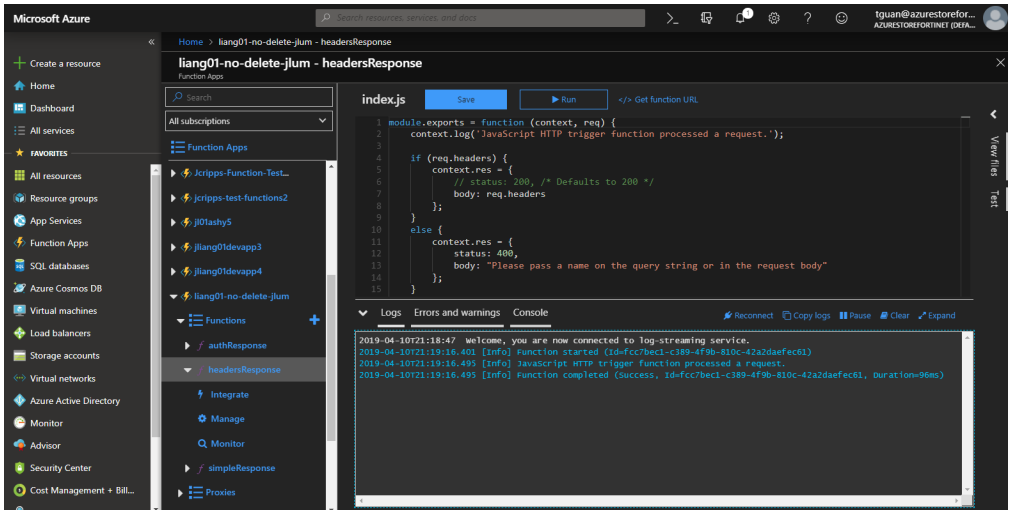
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-azure"
        set trigger "auto-azure"
        set action "azure_function"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:



In Azure, the function log shows that the function was called, executed, and finished:

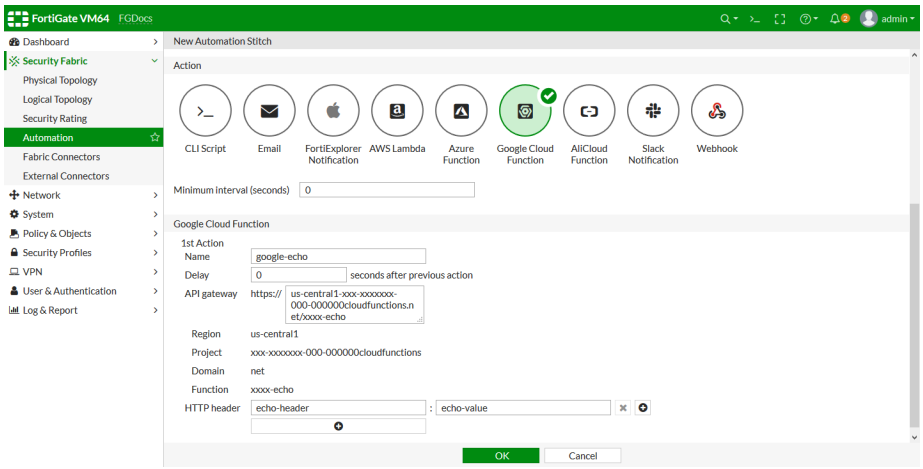


Google Cloud Function action

Google Cloud functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

To configure a Google Cloud function automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.
5. Select *Google Cloud Function* and configure its settings.



Name	The action name.
Delay	The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0).
API gateway	The API gateway URL, in the format: `{region}-{project}{domain}/{function}` The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters.
HTTP header	The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added.
+	Click to add another action. Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.

6. Click *OK*.

To configure a Google Cloud function automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "google-echo"
        set action-type google-cloud-function
        set gcp-function-region "us-central1"
        set gcp-project "xxx-xxxxxxx-000-000000"
        set gcp-function-domain "cloudfunctions.net"
        set gcp-function "xxxx-echo"
        set headers "echo-header:echo-value"
    next
end
```

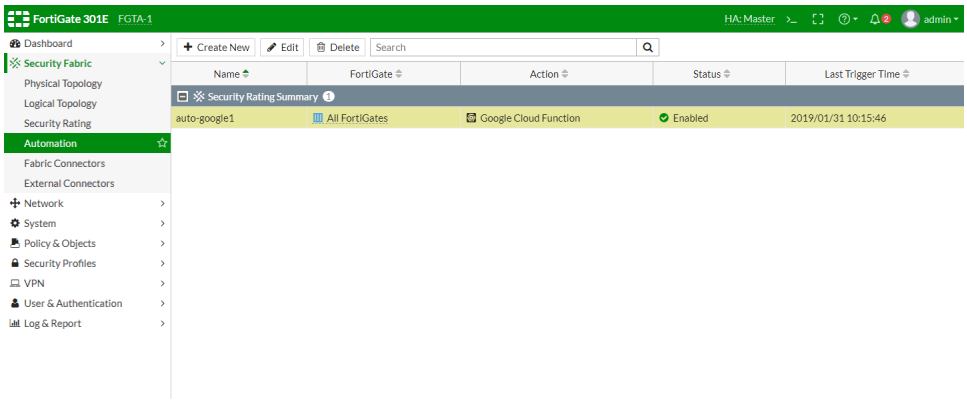
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-google1"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

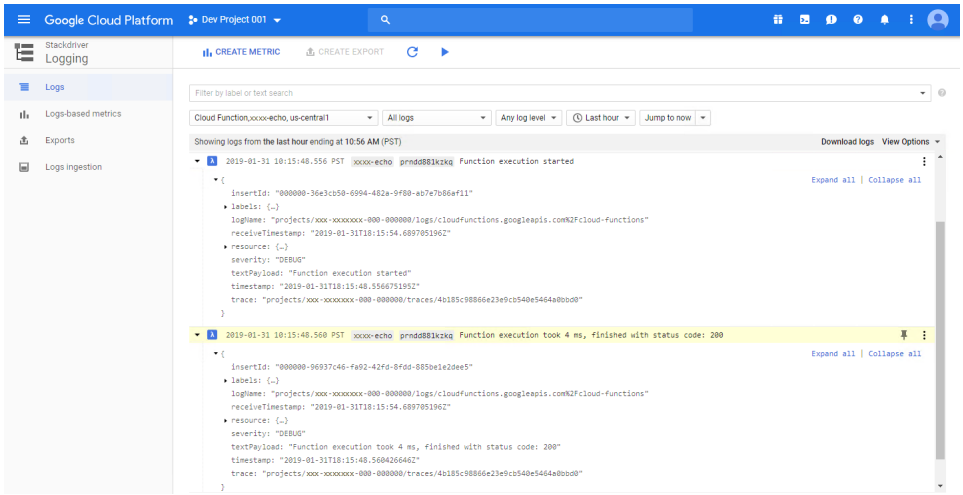
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-google1"
        set trigger "auto-google1"
        set action "google-echo"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:



In Google Cloud, go to *Logs* to see the function log showing that the configured function was called, executed, and finished:

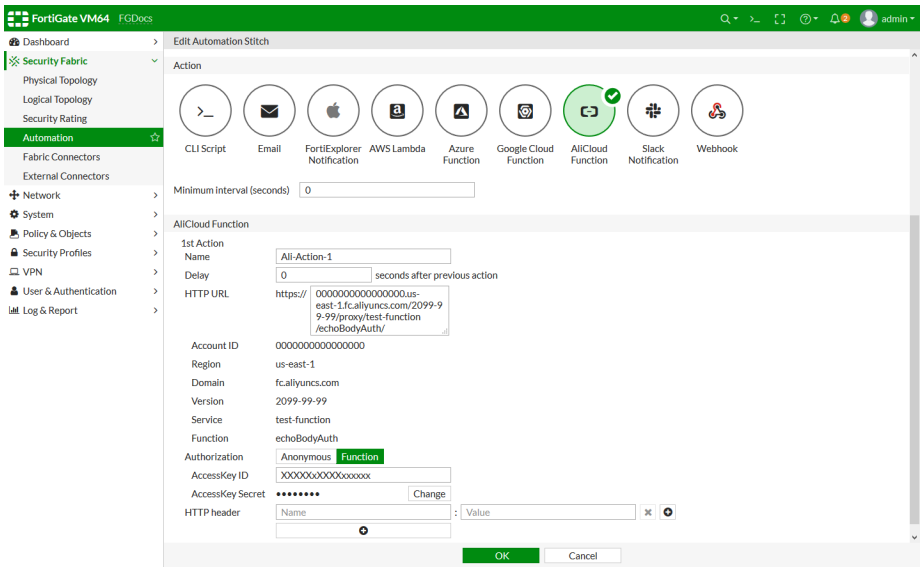


AliCloud Function action

AliCloud functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

To configure an AliCloud function automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.
5. Select *AliCloud Function* and configure its settings.



Name	The action name.
Delay	The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0).
HTTP URL	The HTTP URL, in the format: `{account id}.{region}.{domain}/{version}/proxy/{service}/{function}` The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters.
Authorization	The authorization level: *Anonymous*, or *Function*.
AccessKey ID	The access key ID This options is only available when *Authorization* is *Function*.
AccessKey Secret	The access key secret. This options is only available when *Authorization* is *Function*.
HTTP header	The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added.
+	Click to add another action. Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.

6. Click *OK*.

To configure an AliCloud function automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "Ali-Action-1"
        set action-type alicloud-function
        set alicloud-account-id "0000000000000000"
        set alicloud-region "us-east-1"
        set alicloud-version "2099-99-99"
        set alicloud-service "test-function"
        set alicloud-function "echoBodyAuth"
        set alicloud-function-authorization function
        set alicloud-access-key-id "XXXXXxXXXXxxxxxx"
        set alicloud-access-key-secret xxxxxx
    next
end
```

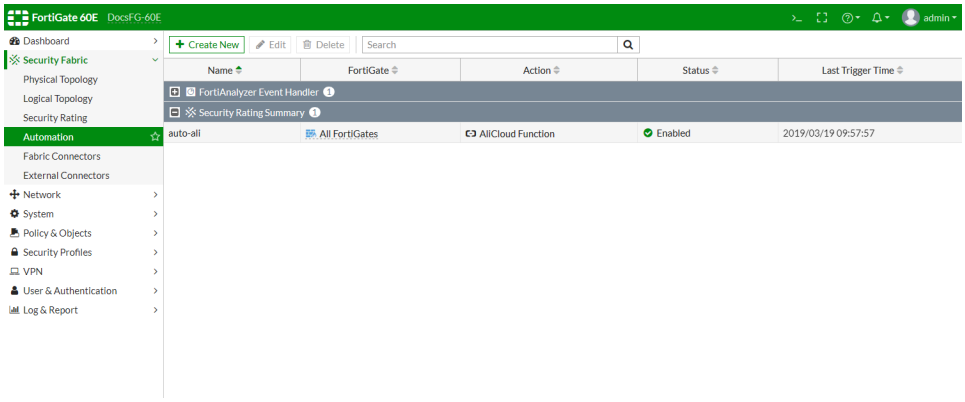
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-ali"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

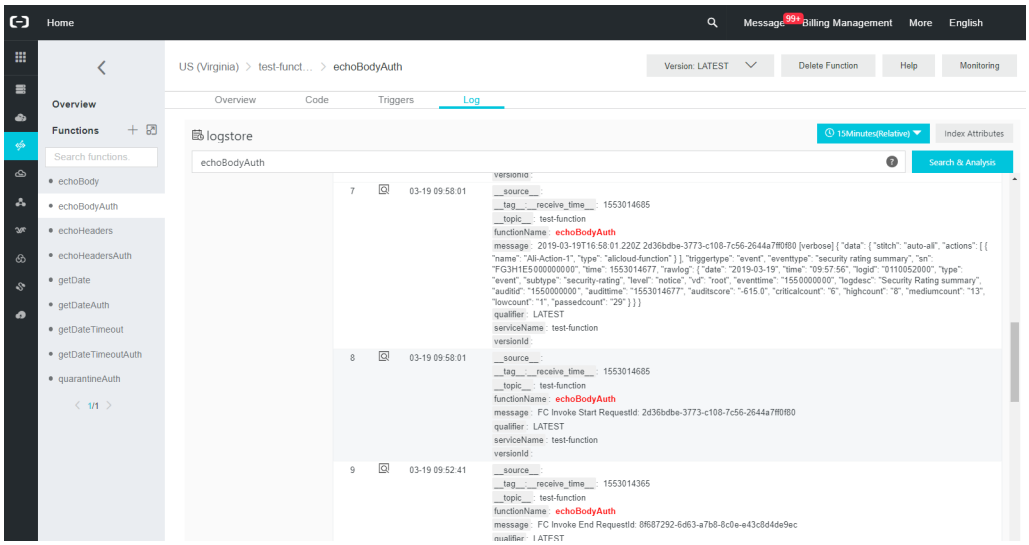
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-ali"
        set trigger "auto-ali"
        set action "Ali-Action-1"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:



In AliCloud, the function log shows that the function was called, executed, and finished:



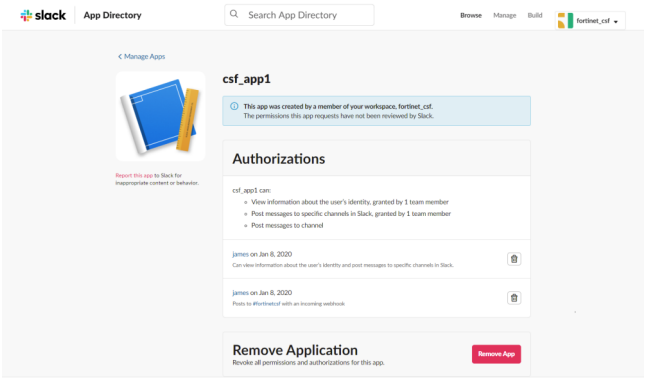
Slack Notification action

To configure an automation stitch with a Slack Notification action, you first need to configure an incoming webhook in Slack. Then you can enter the webhook URL when you configure the Slack Notification action.

This example uses a Security Rating Summary trigger in the automation stitch with two Slack Notification actions with different notification messages. One message is a custom message, and the other is for the Security Rating Summary log with a 90 second delay.

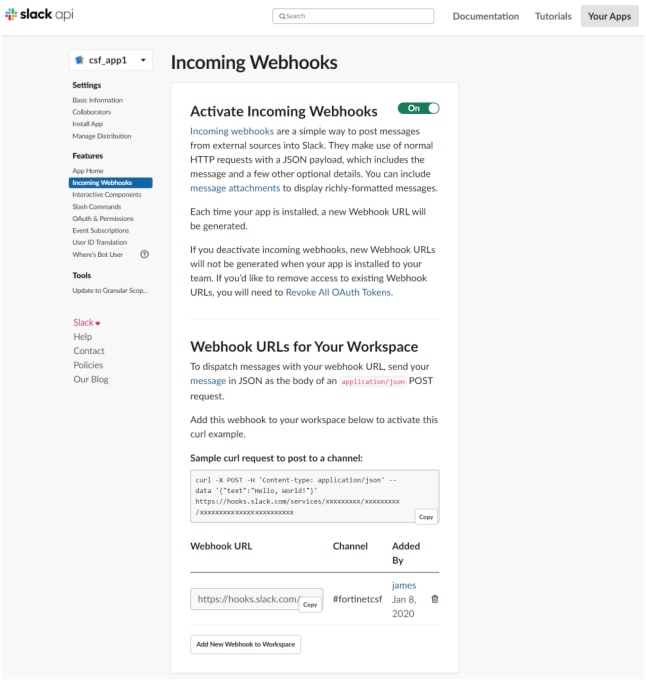
To create an Incoming Webhook in Slack:

1. Go to the Slack website, and create a workspace.
2. Create a Slack application for the workspace.



3. Add an Incoming Webhook to a channel in the workspace (see Sending messages using Incoming Webhooks for more details).

4. Activate the Incoming Webhook, and copy the *Webhook URL* to the clipboard.



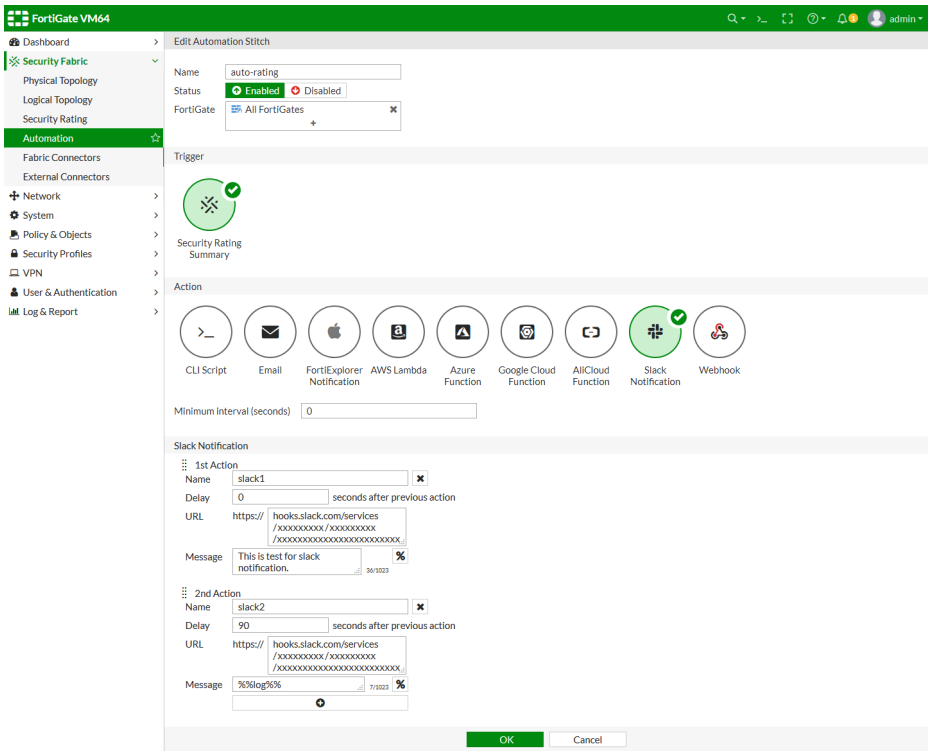
To configure an automation stitch with Slack Notification actions in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
3. For *Trigger*, select *Security Rating Summary*.
4. For action, select *Slack Notification*, and configure the notification settings.
   a. First action:

Name	slack1
Delay	0
URL	Paste the webhook URL from the clipboard
Message	This is test for slack notification.

   b. Click the + and configure the second action:

Name	slack2
Delay	90
URL	Paste the webhook URL from the clipboard
Message	%%log%%



5. Click *OK*.
6. Run the automation stitch to trigger the action.

To configure an automation stitch with Slack Notification actions in the CLI:

1. Create the Slack Notification actions:

```
config system automation-action
   edit "slack1"
      set action-type slack-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "This is test for slack notification."
      set uri "hooks.slack.com/services/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
   next
   edit "slack2"
      set action-type slack-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 90
      set required disable
      set message "%%log%%"
      set uri "hooks.slack.com/services/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
   next
end
```

2. Create the automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "auto-rating"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type security-rating-summary
   next
```

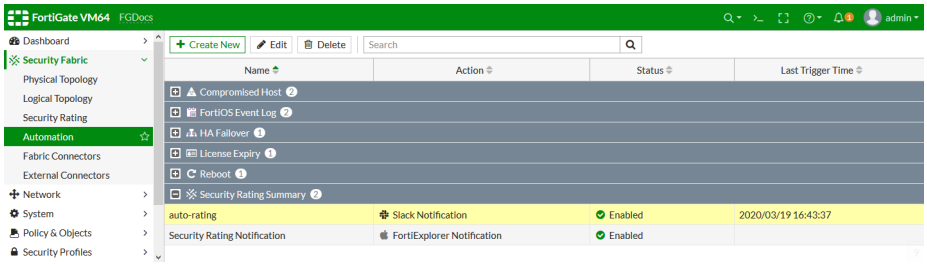
```
end
```

3. Configure the automation stitch:

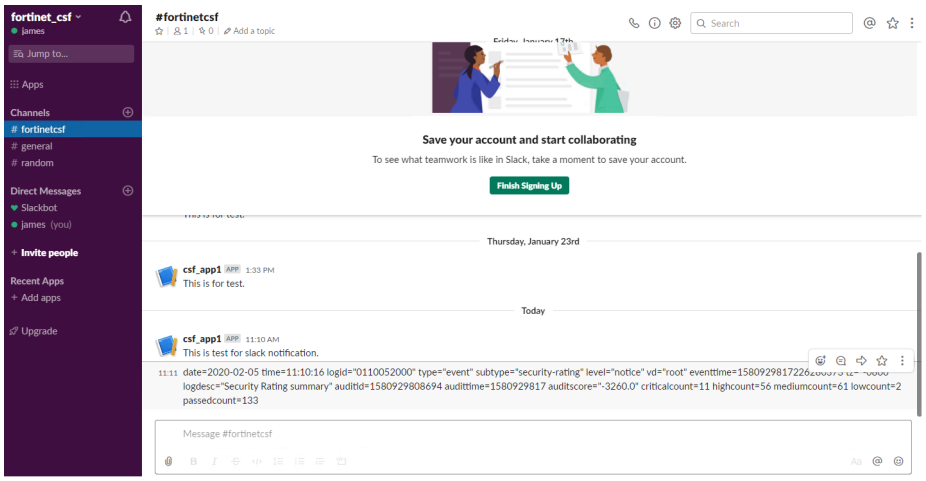
```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "auto-rating"
      set status enable
      set trigger "auto-rating"
      set action "slack1" "slack2"
   next
end
```

4. Trigger the automation stitch.

The notification action is triggered in FortiGate.



The message you entered in the automation stitch is delivered to the Slack channel.



Webhook action

The webhook automation stitch action makes HTTP and HTTPS requests to a specified server, with custom headers, bodies, ports, and methods. It can be used to leverage the ubiquity of HTML requests and APIs to integrate with many other tools.

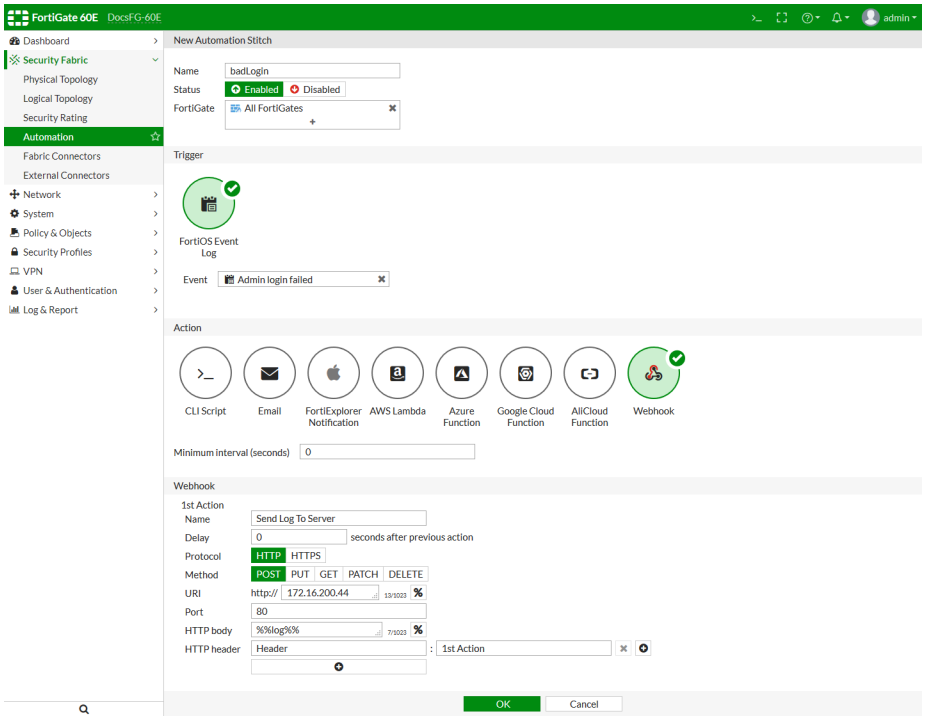


The URI and HTTP body can use parameters from logs or previous action results. Wrapping the parameter with %% will replace the expression with the JSON value for the parameter, for example: *%%results.source%%* is the source property from the previous action.

In this example, a specific log message (failed administrator log in attempt) triggers the FortiGate to send the contents of the log to a server. The server responds with a generic reply. This example assumes that the server is already configured and able to communicate with the FortiGate.

To configure the webhook automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select the trigger *FortiOS Event Log*.
5. Set *Event* to *Admin login failed*.
6. Select *Webhook* and configure the settings:



Name	The action name.
Delay	The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0).
Protocol	The request protocol to use: *HTTP* or *HTTPS*.
Method	The request method: *POST*, *PUT*, *GET*, *PATCH*, or *DELETE*.
URI	The request API URI.
Port	The protocol port.
HTTP body	The request body, if required, as a serialized JSON string. Use the parameter *%%log%%* to send the contents of the log from the trigger.
HTTP header	The HTTP request header name and value.

+	Click to add another action. Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.

7. Click *OK*.

To configure the webhook automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create the automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "Send Log To Server"
        set action-type webhook
        set uri "172.16.200.44"
        set http-body "%%log%%"
        set port 80
        set headers "Header:1st Action"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

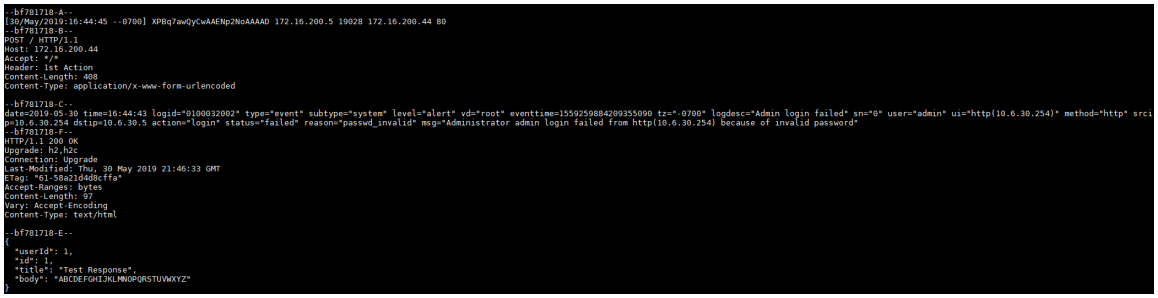
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "badLogin"
        set event-type event-log
        set logid 32002
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "badLogin"
        set trigger "badLogin"
        set action "Send Log To Server"
    next
end
```

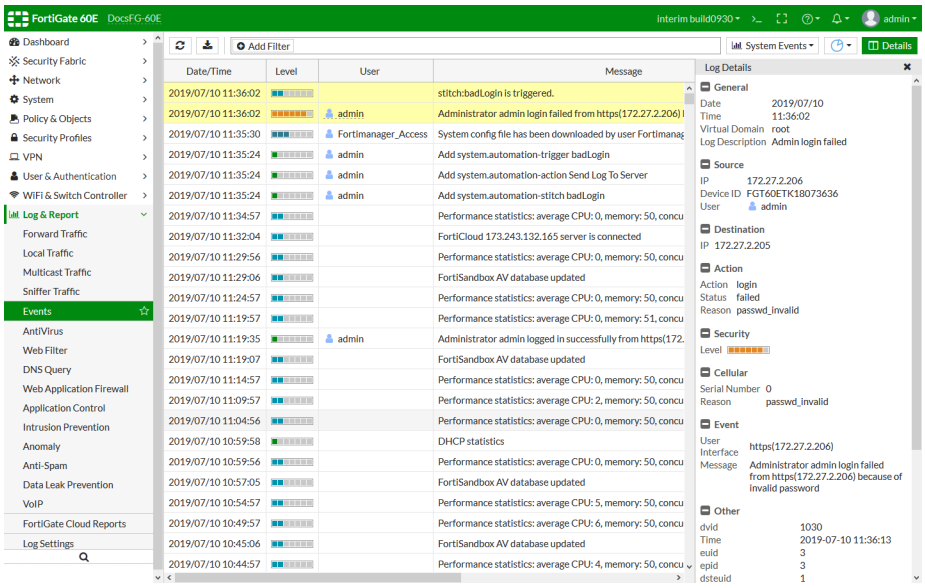
To test the automation stitch:

1. Attempt to log in to the FortiGate with an incorrect username or password.
2. On the server, check the log to see that its contents have been sent by the FortiGate.

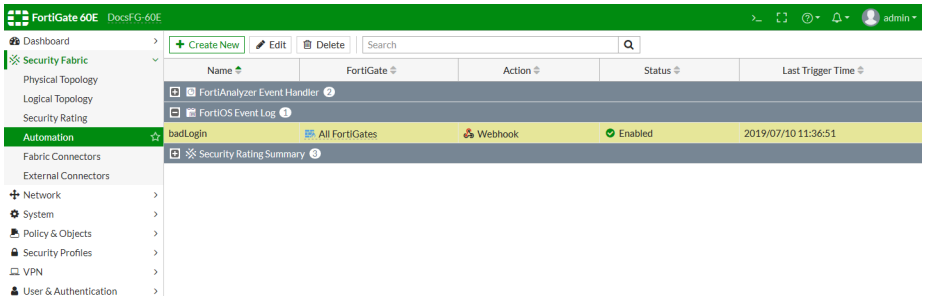


The body content is replaced with the log of the trigger.

3. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *System Events* to confirm that the stitch was activated.



4. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* to see the last time that the stitch was triggered.



Diagnose commands

- Enable log dumping:

```
# diagnose test application autod 1

autod dumped total:1 logs, num of logids:1
autod log dumping is enabled

vdom:root(0) logid:32002 len:408 log:
date=2019-05-30 time=17:41:03 logid="0100032002" type="event" subtype="system"
level="alert" vd="root" eventtime=1559263263858888451 tz="-0700" logdesc="Admin login
failed" sn="0" user="admin" ui="http(10.6.30.254)" method="http" srcip=10.6.30.254
dstip=10.6.30.5 action="login" status="failed" reason="passwd_invalid"
msg="Administrator admin login failed from http(10.6.30.254) because of invalid
password"
autod log dumping is disabled

autod logs dumping summary:
        logid:32002 count:1

autod dumped total:1 logs, num of logids:1
```

- Show automation settings:

```
# diagnose test application autod 2
csf: enabled   root:yes
total stitches activated: 2

stitch: badLogin
       destinations: all
       trigger: badLogin

       local hit: 6 relayed to: 6 relayed from: 6
       actions:
               Send Log To Server type:webhook interval:0
                       delay:0 required:no
                       proto:0 method:0 port:80
                       uri: 172.16.200.44
                       http body: %%log%%
                       headers:
                       0. Header:1st Action
```

- Show automation statistics:

```
# diagnose test application autod 3

stitch: badLogin

       local hit: 1 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
       last trigger:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019
       last relay:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019

       actions:
               Send Log To Server:
                       done: 1 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
                       last trigger:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019
                       last relay:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019

logid2stitch mapping:
id:32002  local hit: 3 relayed to: 3 relayed from: 3
       badLogin

action run cfg&stats:
total:55 cur:0 done:55 drop:0
       email:
               flags:10
               stats: total:4 cur:0 done:4 drop:0
       ios-notification:
               flags:1
               stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       alert:
               flags:0
               stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       disable-ssid:
               flags:7
               stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine:
               flags:7
               stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
```

```
        quarantine-forticlient:
                flags:4
                stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
        quarantine-nsx:
                flags:4
                stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
        ban-ip:
                flags:7
                stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
        aws-lambda:
                flags:11
                stats: total:21 cur:0 done:21 drop:0
        webhook:
                flags:11
                stats: total:6 cur:0 done:6 drop:0
        cli-script:
                flags:10
                stats: total:4 cur:0 done:4 drop:0
        azure-function:
                flags:11
                stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
        google-cloud-function:
                flags:11
                stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
        alicloud-function:
                flags:11
                stats: total:20 cur:0 done:20 drop:0
```

- Enable debug output and turn on automation debug messages for about 30 minutes:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application autod -1

__auto_generate_generic_curl_request()-358: Generating generic automation CURL request
for action (Send Log To Server).
__auto_generate_generic_curl_request()-406: Generic automation CURL request POST data
for action (Send Log To Server):
date=2019-05-30 time=16:44:43 logid="0100032002" type="event" subtype="system"
level="alert" vd="root" eventtime=1559259884209355090 tz="-0700" logdesc="Admin login
failed" sn="0" user="admin" ui="http(10.6.30.254)" method="http" srcip=10.6.30.254
dstip=10.6.30.5 action="login" status="failed" reason="passwd_invalid"
msg="Administrator admin login failed from http(10.6.30.254) because of invalid
password"

__auto_generic_curl_request_close()-512: Generic CURL request response body from
http://172.16.200.44:
{
  "userId": 1,
  "id": 1,
  "title": "Test Response",
  "body": "ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ"
}
```

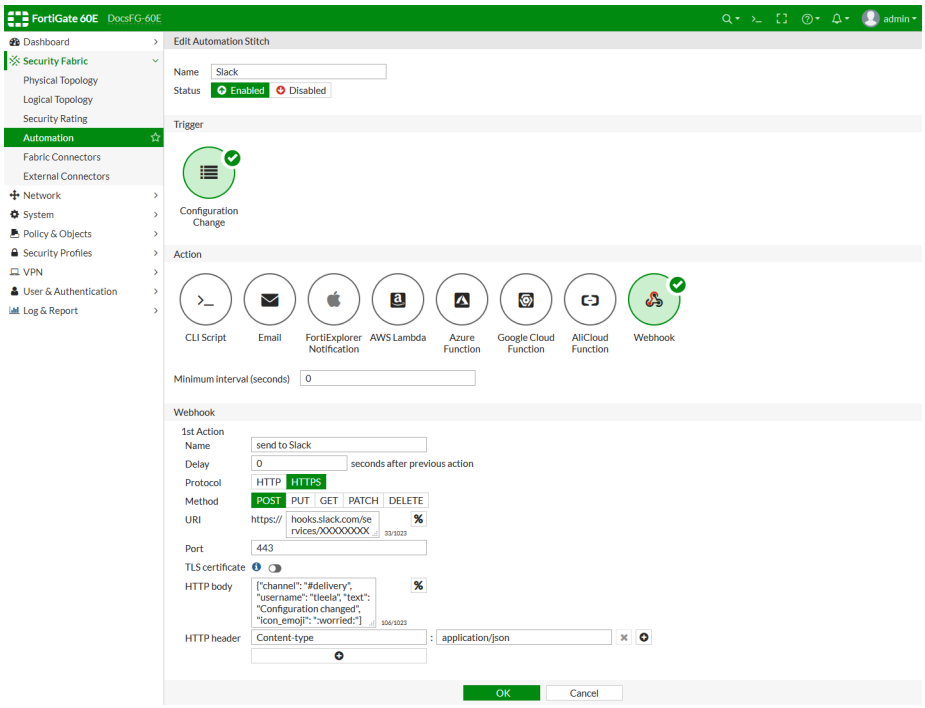
Slack integration webhook

A webhook can be created to post messages and notifications to Slack. For information about using incoming webhooks in Slack, see https://api.slack.com/incoming-webhooks.

In this example, a configuration change triggers the FortiGate to post a message to Slack.

To create a webhook automation stitch for Slack integration in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch.
4. Select the trigger *Configuration Change*.
5. Select *Webhook* and configure the settings:



6. Click *OK*.

To create a webhook automation stitch for Slack integration in the CLI:

1. Create the automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "send to Slack"
        set action-type webhook
        set protocol https
        set uri "hooks.slack.com/services/XXXXXXXX"
        set http-body "{\"channel\": \"#delivery\", \"username\": \"tleela\", \"text\":
\"Configuration changed\", \"icon_emoji\": \":worried:\"}"
        set port 443
        set headers "Content-type:application/json"
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Create the automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "config change"
        set event-type config-change
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "Slack"
        set trigger "config change"
        set action "send to Slack"
    next
end
```

Microsoft Teams integration webhook

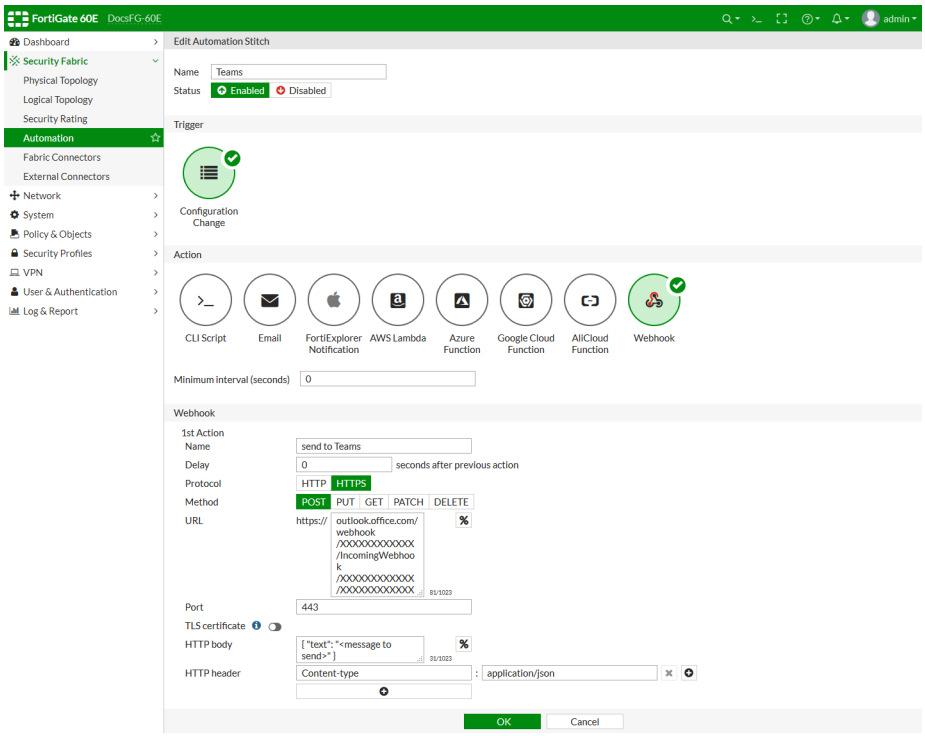
A webhook can be created to post messages and notifications to Microsoft Teams.

In this example, a configuration change triggers the FortiGate to post a message to Teams.

To create a webhook automation stitch for Teams integration in the GUI:

1. Create an incoming webhook in Teams. See https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoftteams/platform/webhooks-and-connectors/how-to/add-incoming-webhook for information.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name for the stitch.
5. Select the trigger *Configuration Change*.

6. Select *Webhook* and configure the settings:



The *URI* is the URL from the incoming webhook created in Teams. The *HTTP body* can also contain log parameters.

7. Click *OK*.

To create a webhook automation stitch for Teams integration in the CLI:

1. Create an incoming webhook in Teams. See https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoftteams/platform/webhooks-and-connectors/how-to/add-incoming-webhook for information.
2. Create the automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "send to Teams"
        set action-type webhook
        set protocol https
        set uri
"outlook.office.com/webhook/XXXXXXXXXXXX/IncomingWebhook/XXXXXXXXXXXX/XXXXXXXXXXXX"
        set http-body "{ \"text\": \"<message to send>\" }"
        set port 443
        set headers "Content-type:application/json"
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "Teams"
        set event-type config-change
    next
end
```

4. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "Teams"
        set trigger "Teams"
        set action "send to Teams"
    next
end
```



For information about more advanced messages that can be configured and sent to the webhook, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoftteams/platform/webhooks-and-connectors/how-to/connectors-using

Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds

Automation stitches can be created to run a CLI script and send an email message when CPU or memory usage exceeds specified thresholds.

In this example, two automation stitches are created that run a CLI script to collect debug information, and then email the results of the script to a specified email address when CPU usage threshold is exceeded or memory usage causes the FortiGate to enter conserve mode.



Automation stitches that use *High CPU* and *Conserve Mode* triggers can only be created in the CLI. Once create, they can be edited in the GUI.

To define CPU and memory usage thresholds:

```
config system global
    set cpu-use-threshold <percent>
    set memory-use-threshold-extreme <percent>
    set memory-use-threshold-green <percent>
    set memory-use-threshold-red <percent>
end
```

Where:

cpu-use-threshold	Threshold at which CPU usage is reported, in percent of total possible CPU utilization (default = 90).
memory-use-threshold-extreme	Threshold at which memory usage is considered extreme, and new sessions are dropped, in percent of total RAM (default = 95).
memory-use-threshold-green	Threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to exit conserve mode, in percent of total RAM (default = 82).
memory-use-threshold-red	Threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to enter conserve mode, in percent of total RAM (default = 88).

Configure the automation stitches

High CPU usage stitch

To create an automation stitch for high CPU usage:

1. Create an automation action to run a CLI script:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "high_cpu_debug"
        set action-type cli-script
        set required enable
        set script "diagnose debug cli 8
diagnose debug console timestamp enable
diagnose debug enable
diagnose sys top 5 20 5
diagnose debug crashlog read
get system performance status
get system session status
diagnose sys session full-stat
diagnose firewall iprope state
diagnose sys flash list
diagnose hardware sysinfo memory
diagnose hardware sysinfo slab
diagnose hardware sysinfo shm
diagnose hardware deviceinfo disk
get system arp
diagnose ip arp list
diagnose ip address list
get router info routing-table all
get router info kernel
diagnose ip rtcache list"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation action to send an email:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_high_cpu_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "person@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert: high_cpu"
        set message "%%results%%"
    next
end
```

3. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_high_cpu"
        set event-type high-cpu
    next
end
```

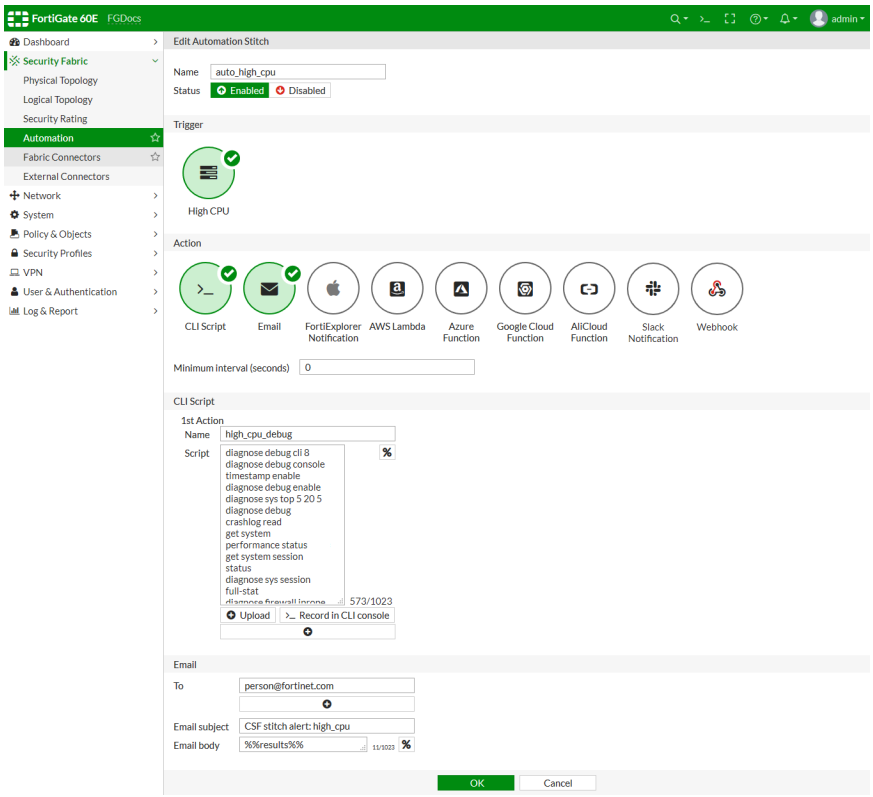
4. Create an automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_high_cpu"
```

```
        set trigger "auto_high_cpu"
        set action "high_cpu_debug" "auto_high_cpu_email"
    next
end
```

To edit the automation stitch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Double click the *auto_high_cpu* stitch.



3. Edit the stitch as required, then click *OK*.

High memory usage stitch

To create an automation stitch for high memory usage:

1. Create an automation action to run a CLI script:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "high_memory_debug"
        set action-type cli-script
        set required enable
        set script "diagnose debug cli 8
diagnose debug console timestamp enable
diagnose debug enable
diagnose sys top 5 20 5
diagnose debug crashlog read
get system performance status
get system session status
```

```
diagnose sys session full-stat
diagnose firewall iprope state
diagnose sys flash list
diagnose hardware sysinfo memory
diagnose hardware sysinfo slab
diagnose hardware sysinfo shm
diagnose hardware deviceinfo disk
get system arp
diagnose ip arp list
diagnose ip address list
get router info routing-table all
get router info kernel
diagnose ip rtcache list"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation action to send an email:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_high_memory_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "person@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert: high_memory"
        set message "%%results%%"
    next
end
```

3. Create an automation trigger:

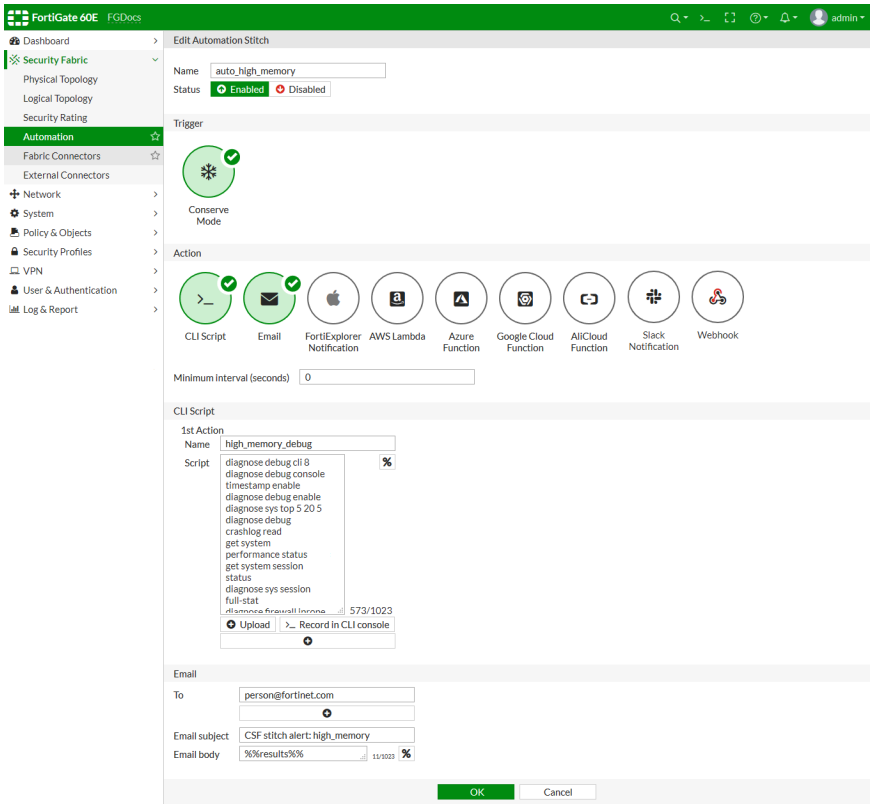
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_high_memory"
        set event-type low-memory
    next
end
```

4. Create an automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_high_memory"
        set trigger "auto_high_memory"
        set action "high_memory_debug" "auto_high_memory_email"
    next
end
```

To edit the automation stitch in the GUI:

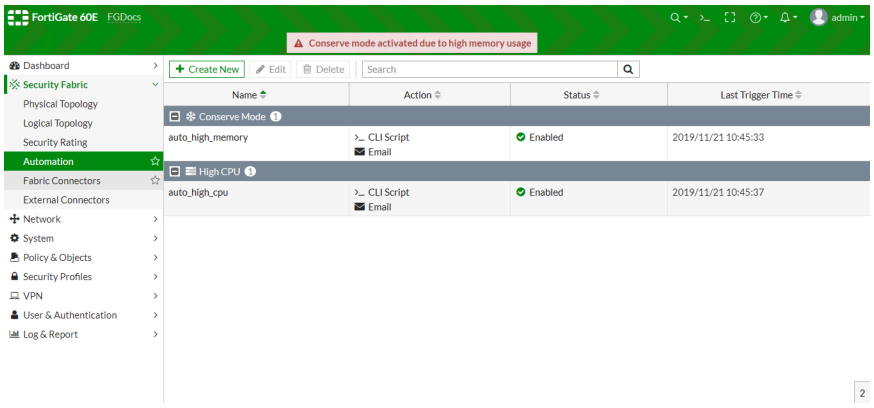
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Double click the *auto_high_memory* stitch.



3. Edit the stitch as required, then click *OK*.

Results

When FortiGate enters conserve mode due to the `memory-use-threshold-red` being exceeded, the GUI displays a notice, and the *auto_high_memory* automation stitch is triggered, causing the CLI script to run and the results of the script to be emailed to the specified address.



Here is an example of the email message:

```
CSF stitch alert: high_memory
noreply@notification.fortinet.net
Thu 11/21/2019 11:06 AM
Jaohn Doe
FGT[FGVM16TM19000026] Automation Stitch:auto_high_memory is triggered.
########## script name: autod.47 ##########
========== #1, 2019-11-21 11:07:24 ==========
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb cli 8
Debug messages will be on for 25 minutes.
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb console timestamp enable
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb enable
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb crashlog read
1: 2019-08-08 11:35:25 the killed daemon is /bin/dhcpcd: status=0x0
2: 2019-08-08 17:52:47 the killed daemon is /bin/pyfcgid: status=0x0
3: 2019-08-23 11:32:31 from=license status=INVALID
4: 2019-08-23 11:32:32 from=license status=INVALID
5: 2019-11-21 09:53:31 from=license status=VALID
...
```

Public and private SDN connectors

Cloud SDN connectors provide integration and orchestration of Fortinet products with public and private cloud solutions. In a typical cloud environment, resources are dynamic and often provisioned and scaled on-demand. By using an SDN connector, you can ensure that changes to cloud environment attributes are automatically updated in the Security Fabric.

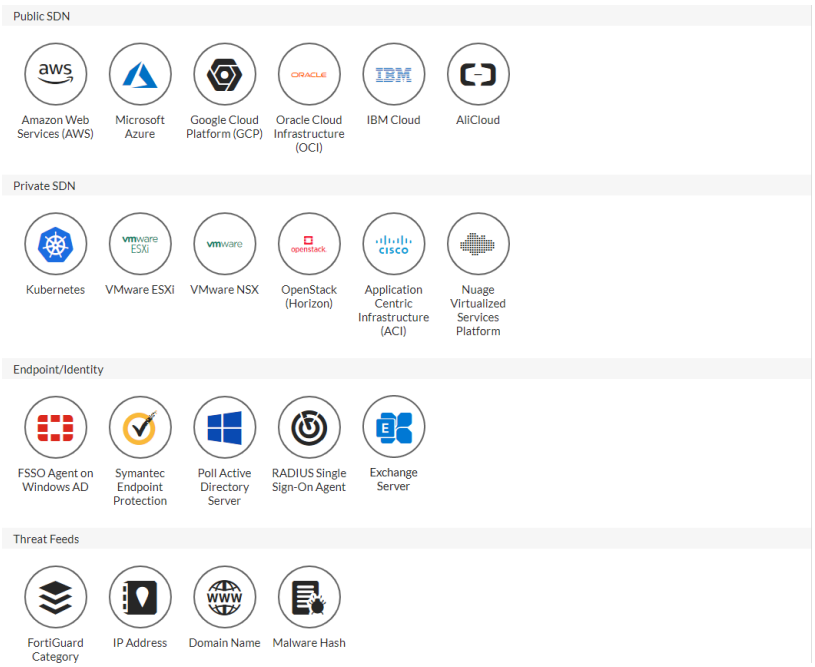
To protect the East-West or North-South traffic in these environments, the FortiGate uses the SDN connector to sync the dynamic addresses that these volatile environments use. You can then configure the dynamic address objects as sources or destinations for firewall policies. When you make changes to cloud environment resources, such as moving them to a new location or assigning different IP addresses to them, you do not need to modify the policy in FortiOS, as the SDN connector syncs changes to the cloud address objects.

These configurations consist of three primary steps:

1. Configure the cloud SDN connector to connect your FortiGate and public or private cloud account.
2. Create dynamic address objects to use the SDN connector. Use filters to sync only cloud address objects that you require.
3. Apply the dynamic address objects to your firewall policy to protect your traffic.

This chapter explores the steps in detail and describes how to connect to each currently supported cloud platform. This chapter does not discuss cloud account role-based or permission requirements. The respective cloud documents contain this information.

The following external connector categories are available in the Security Fabric: Public SDN, Private SDN, Endpoint/Identity, and Threat Feeds.



If VDOMs are enabled, SDN and Threat Feeds connectors are in the global settings, and Endpoint/Identity connectors are per VDOM.

Getting started with public and private SDN connectors

You can use SDN connectors to connect your FortiGate to public and private cloud solutions. By using an SDN connector, you can ensure that changes to cloud environment attributes are automatically updated in the Security Fabric. You can use SDN connector address objects to create policies that provide dynamic access control based on cloud environment attribute changes. There is no need to manually reconfigure addresses and policies whenever changes to the cloud environment occur.

There are four steps to creating and using an SDN connector:

1. Gather the required information. The required information depends on which public or private cloud solution SDN connector you are configuring.
2. Creating the SDN connector on page 300
3. Creating an SDN connector address on page 300
4. Adding the address to a firewall policy on page 302

The following provides general instructions for creating an SDN connector and using the dynamic address object in a firewall policy. For instructions for specific public and private cloud solutions, see the relevant topic in this guide. For advanced scenarios regarding SDN connectors, see the appropriate FortiOS 6.4 cloud platform guide.

Creating the SDN connector

To create an SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click the desired public or private cloud.
4. Enter the *Name*, *Status*, and *Update Interval* for the connector.
5. Enter previously collected information for the connector as needed.
6. Click *OK*.

To create an SDN connector in the CLI:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit <name>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set type {connector type}
        ...
        set update-interval <integer>
    next
end
```



The available CLI commands vary depending on the selected SDN connector type.

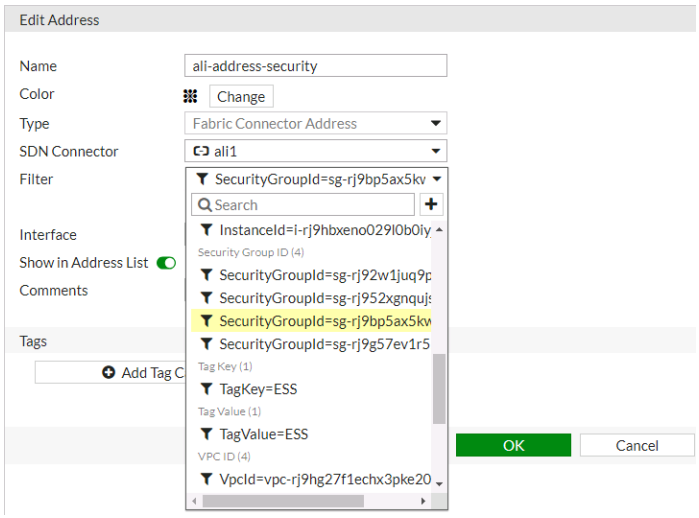
Creating an SDN connector address

You can use an SDN connector address in the following ways:

- As the source or destination address for firewall policies.
- To automatically update changes to addresses in the public or private cloud environment, based on specified filters.
- To automatically apply changes to firewall policies that use the address, based on specified filters.

To create an SDN connector address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Configure the address:
   a. Set the *Type* to *Dynamic*.
   b. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
   c. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select the desired SDN connector.
   d. From the *Filter* dropdown list, configure the desired filter. The filters available depend on the selected SDN connector type. The SDN connector automatically populates and updates IP addresses only for instances that satisfy the filter requirements. In this example, the address automatically populates and updates IP addresses only for AliCloud instances that belong to the specified security group:



You can set filtering conditions using multiple entries with AND ("&") or OR ("|"). When both AND and OR are specified, AND is interpreted first, then OR.

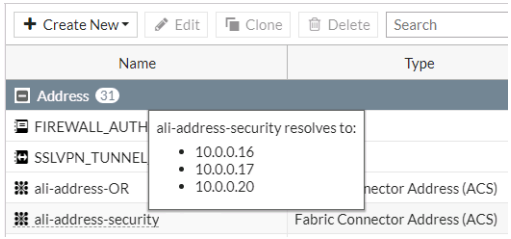
e. Configure other settings as desired.

f. Click *OK*.

4. Ensure that the SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses as configured:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.

b. Hover over the address that you created to see a list of IP addresses for instances that satisfy the filter that you configured. In this case, the IP addresses of instances that belong to the specified security group display:



To create an SDN connector address in the CLI:

1. Create the address:

```
config firewall address
   edit <name>
      set type dynamic
      set sdn <sdn_connector>
      set visibility enable
      set associated-interface <interface_name>
      set color <integer>
      ...
      set comment <comment>
      config tagging
         edit <name>
            set category <string>
            set tags <strings>
         next
      end
   next
end
```

2. Ensure that the SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses as configured by running `show`. The following shows example output:

```
config firewall address
   edit "ali-address-security"
      set type dynamic
      config list
         edit "10.0.0.16"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.17"
         next
         edit "10.0.20.20"
         next
      end
      ...
   next
end
```



The available CLI commands vary depending on the selected SDN connector type.

Adding the address to a firewall policy

You can use an SDN connector address as the source or destination address in a policy.

To add the address to a firewall policy in the GUI:

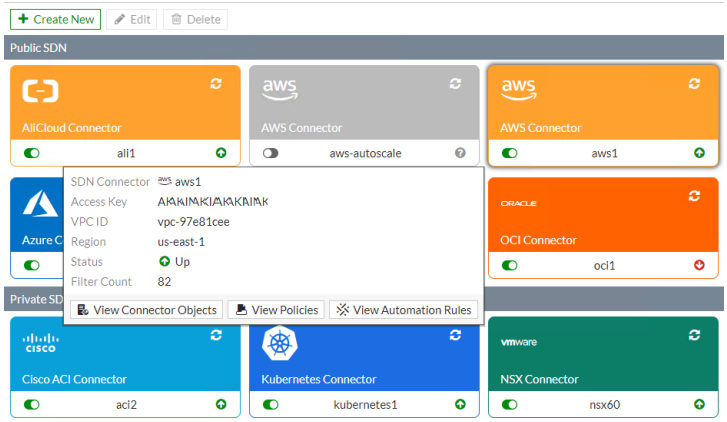
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Use the SDN connector address as the source or destination address.
4. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

To add the address to a firewall policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set name <name>
        set srcintf <port_name>
        set dstintf <port_name>
        set srcaddr <firewall_address>
        set dstaddr <firewall_address>
        set action accept
        set schedule <schedule>
        set service <service>
    next
end
```

Connector tooltips

In *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, hover over an SDN connector to view a tooltip that shows basic configuration information.



Three buttons provide additional information:

Button	Information
View Connector Objects	Connector's dynamic objects, such as filters and instances.
View Policies	List of policies that use the dynamic addresses from the connector.
View Automation Rules	List of automation actions that use the connector.

AliCloud SDN connector using access key

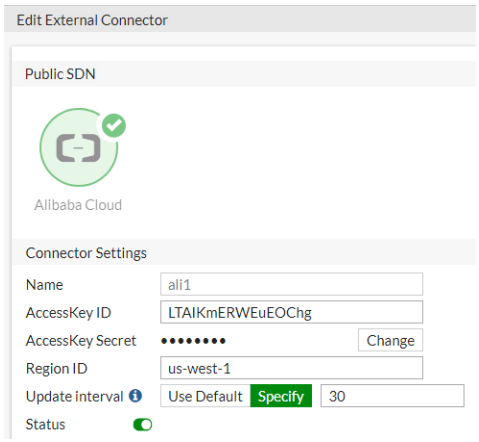
FortiOS automatically updates dynamic addresses for AliCloud using an AliCloud SDN connector, including mapping the following attributes from AliCloud instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

- ImageId
- InstanceId
- SecurityGroupId
- VpcId
- VSwitchId
- TagKey
- TagValue

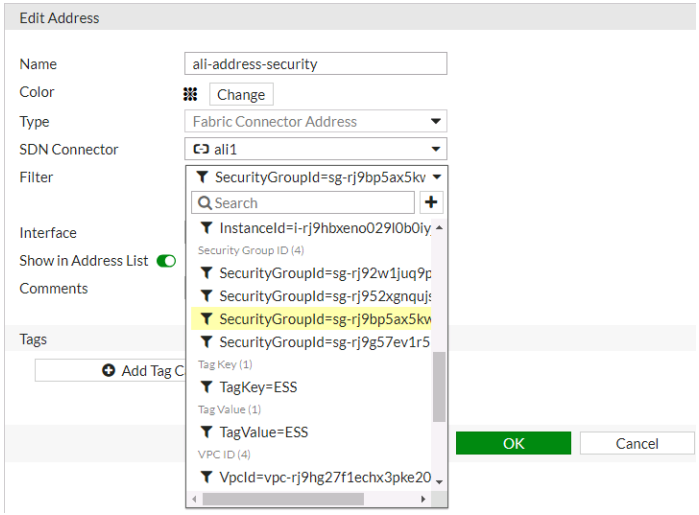
To configure AliCloud SDN connector using the GUI:

1. Configure the AliCloud SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *AliCloud*.
   c. Configure as shown, substituting the access key, secret, and region ID for your deployment. The update

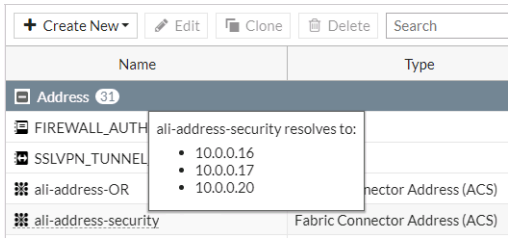
interval is in seconds.



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AliCloud SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the address automatically populates and updates IP addresses only for AliCloud instances that belong to the specified security group:



3. Ensure that the AliCloud SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the security group configured in step 2:



To configure AliCloud SDN connector using CLI commands:

1. Configure the AliCloud SDN connector:
```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "ali1"
      set type acs
      set access-key "LTAIKmERWEuEOChg"
      set secret-key xxxxx
      set region "us-west-1"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```
2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AliCloud SDN connector with the supported AliCloud filter. In this example, the AliCloud SDN connector automatically populates and updates IP addresses only for instances that belong to the specified security group:
```
config firewall address
   edit "ali-address-security"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "ali1"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-rj9bp5ax5kwy3gqdizqb"
   next
end
```
3. Confirm that the AliCloud SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:
```
config firewall address
   edit "ali-address-security"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "ali1"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-rj9bp5ax5kwy3gqdizqb"
      config list
         edit "10.0.0.16"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.17"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.20"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

AWS SDN connector using certificates

FortiOS automatically updates dynamic addresses for AWS using an AWS SDN connector, including mapping attributes from AWS instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS.

Configuring the SDN connector using the GUI, then checking the configuration using the CLI is recommended.

To configure an AWS SDN connector using the GUI:

1. Configure the AWS SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Amazon Web Services (AWS)*.
   c. In the *Access key ID* field, enter the key created in the AWS management portal.

d. In the *Secret access key* field, enter the secret access key accompanying the access key.
e. In the *Region name* field, enter the region name. Refer to AWS Regions and Endpoints for the desired region name.
f. In the *VPC ID* field, enter the VPC ID within the specified region you desire to cover with the SDN connector.
g. Click *OK*.

2. Check the configuration using the CLI:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "<connector-name>"
      show
```

The output resembles the following:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "<connector-name>"
      set access-key "<example-access-key>"
      set secret-key ENC <example-secret-key>
      set region "us-west-2"
      set vpc-id "vpc-e1e4b587"
      set update-interval 1
   next
end
```

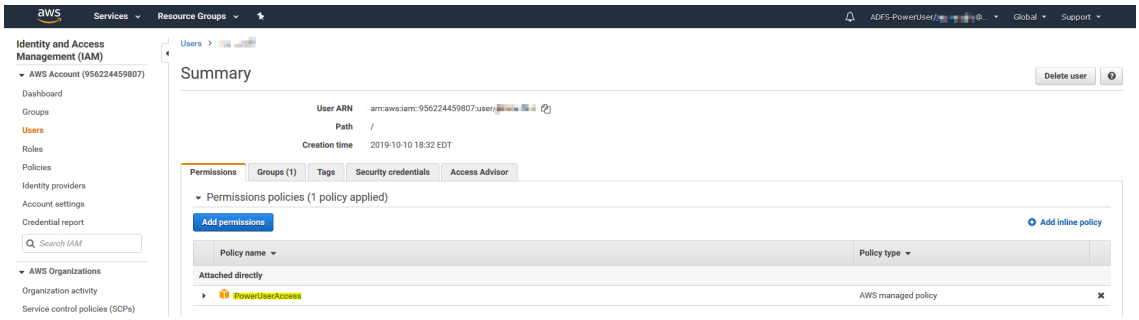
If you see that the SDN connector is not enabled in *Security Fabric > External Connectors* in the GUI, run the following commands to enable the SDN connector:

```
diagnose deb application awsd -1
diagnose debug enable
```

The output may display an error like the following:

```
FGT # awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN prepare to update
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN start updating
aws curl response err, 403
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Response><Errors><Error><Code>UnauthorizedOperation</Code><Message>You are not
     authorized to perform this
     operation.</Message></Error></Errors><RequestID>8403cc11-b185-41da-ad6d-
     23bb4db7d00a</RequestID></Response>
awsd curl failed 403
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN failed to get instance list
aws curl response err, 403
{"Message":"User: arn:aws:iam::956224459807:user/jcarcavallo is not authorized to
     perform: eks:ListClusters on resource: arn:aws:eks:us-east-
     1:956224459807:cluster/*"}
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN get EKS cluster list failed
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN list EKS cluster failed
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN start updating IP addresses
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN finish updating IP addresses
awsd reap child pid: 569
```

In this case, you must configure power user access for the current administrator in the AWS management console:



After configuring power user access, run the following commands:

```
diagnose deb application awsd -1
diagnose debug enable
```

The output should display without error, as follows:

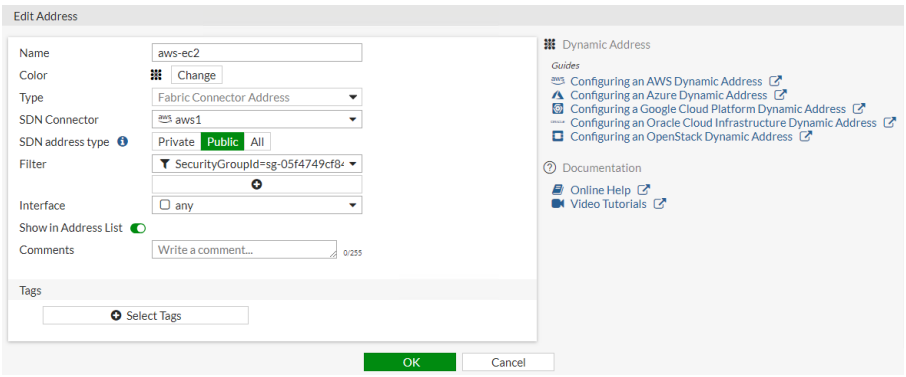
```
FGT # AWSD: update sdn connector AWS_SDN status to enabled
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN prepare to update
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN start updating
awsd get ec2 instance info successfully
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN start updating IP addresses
awsd sdn connector AWS_SDN finish updating IP addresses
awsd reap child pid: 893
```

The AWS connector is now enabled.

3. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AWS SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Dynamic*.
   d. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.

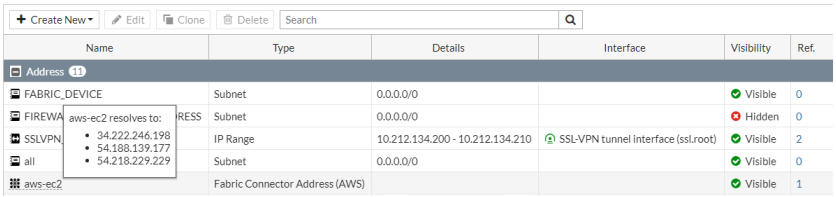
e. In the *Filter* field, add the desired filters. The following filters are supported:

Description	Key	Example value
Architecture	architecture	x86
Autoscaling group	AutoScaleGroup	10703c-4f731e90-fortigate-payg-auto-scaling-group
AZ	placement.availabilityzone	us-east-1a
Group name	placement.groupname	
Image ID	imageId	ami-123456
Instance ID	instanceId	i-12345678
Instance type	instanceType	t2.micro
Key name	keyName	
Kubernetes cluster	k8s_cluster	
Kubernetes label and its name	k8s_label.Name	
Kubernetes namespace	k8s_namespace	
Kubernetes node name	k8s_nodename	
Kubernetes pod name	k8s_podname	
Kubernetes region	k8s_region	
Kubernetes service name	k8s_servicename	
Kubernetes zone	k8s_zone	
Private DNS name	privateDnsName	ip-172-31-10-211.us-west-2.compute.internal
Public DNS name	publicDnsName	ec2-54-202-168-254.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com
Security group ID	SecurityGroupId	
Subnet ID	subnetId	sub-123456
Tag and its name. This key supports a maximum of eight tags.	tag.Name	
Tenancy placement	placement.tenancy	
VPC ID	VpcId	

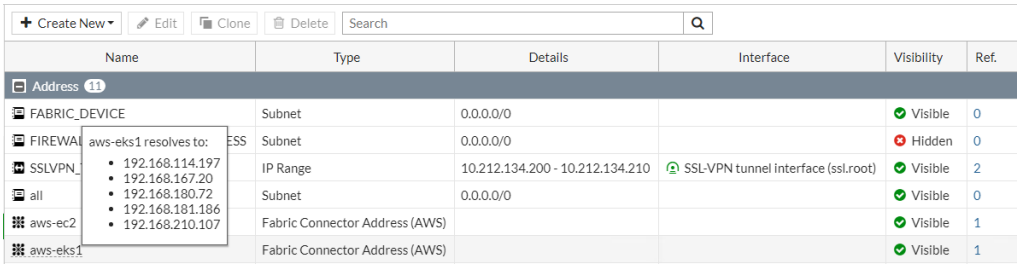


4. Ensure that the AWS SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the security group configured in step 2.

   The following is an example for a public SDN address type:



   The following is an example for a private SDN address type:



To configure AWS SDN connector using CLI commands:

1. Configure the AWS connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "<connector-name>"
      set access-key "<example-access-key>"
      set secret-key ENC <example-secret-key>
      set region "us-west-2"
      set vpc-id "vpc-e1e4b587"
      set update-interval 1
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AWS SDN connector with the supported filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "aws-ec2"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "<connector-name>"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
```

```
      set sdn-addr-type public
    next
    edit "aws-eks1"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "<connector-name>"
      set filter "K8S_Region=us-west-2"
    next
end
```

3. Confirm that the AWS SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
  edit "aws-ec2"
    set type dynamic
    set sdn "<connector-name>"
    set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
    set sdn-addr-type public
    config list
      edit "34.222.246.198"
      next
      edit "54.188.139.177"
      next
      edit "54.218.229.229"
      next
    end
  next
  edit "aws-eks1"
    set type dynamic
    set sdn "<connector-name>"
    set filter "K8S_Region=us-west-2"
    config list
      edit "192.168.114.197"
      next
      edit "192.168.167.20"
      next
      edit "192.168.180.72"
      next
      edit "192.168.181.186"
      next
      edit "192.168.210.107"
      next
    end
  next
end
```

To add an EC2 instance to test automatic address population:

1. Assume that you want to boot up another instance with an IP address of 34.222.246.178, which is currently stopped. This instance belongs to the security group that the aws-ec2 address is filtering for. In the AWS management portal, start the instance.
2. Verify that the instance is running.
3. At this point, running `show` again shows the SDN connector has automatically populated and added the 34.222.246.178 instance.

```
config firewall address
  edit "aws-ec2"
    set type dynamic
    set sdn "<connector-name>"
```

```
        set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
        set sdn-addr-type public
        config list
           edit "34.222.246.198"
           next
           edit "54.188.139.177"
           next
           edit "54.218.229.229"
           next
           edit "34.222.246.178"
           next
        end
     next
end
```

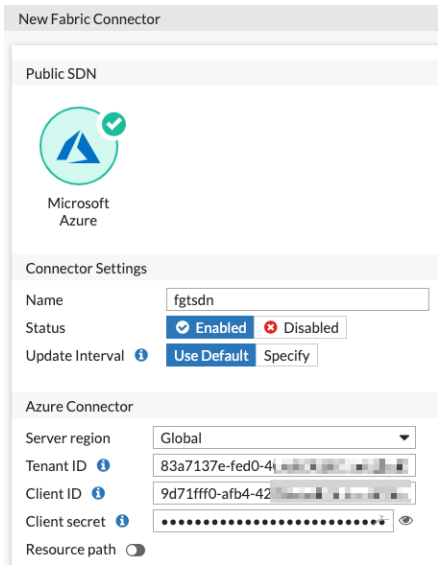
Therefore, administrators do not need to add this instance to the address manually. When a firewall policy is applied to this address, 34.222.246.178 is automatically covered.

Azure SDN connector using service principal

FortiOS automatically updates dynamic addresses for Azure using Azure SDN connector, including mapping attributes from Azure instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS.

To configure the Azure SDN connector using service principal:

1. Create an Azure SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select *Microsoft Azure*.
   c. Configure the connector. See Azure SDN connector service principal configuration requirements:



   d. Click *OK*.
2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the Azure connector.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Dynamic*.
   c. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.

d. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select the Azure SDN connector.
e. In the *Filter* field, add filters as desired. The Azure SDN connector supports the following filters:
   - `vm=<VM name>`
   - `securitygroup=<nsg id>`
   - `vnet=<VNet id>`
   - `subnet=<subnet id>`
   - `vmss=<VM scale set>`
   - `tag.<key>=<value>`
   - `servicetag=<value>`
   - `tag.<key>=<value>`
f. Click *OK*.
g. Hover the cursor over the address name to see the dynamic IP addresses that the connector resolves.

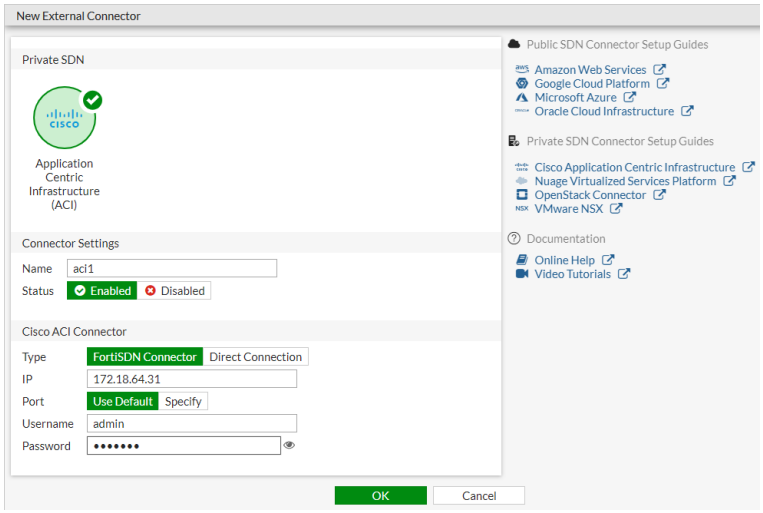
Cisco ACI SDN connector using a standalone connector

Cisco ACI (Application Centric Infrastructure) SDN connectors can be used in dynamic firewall addresses.

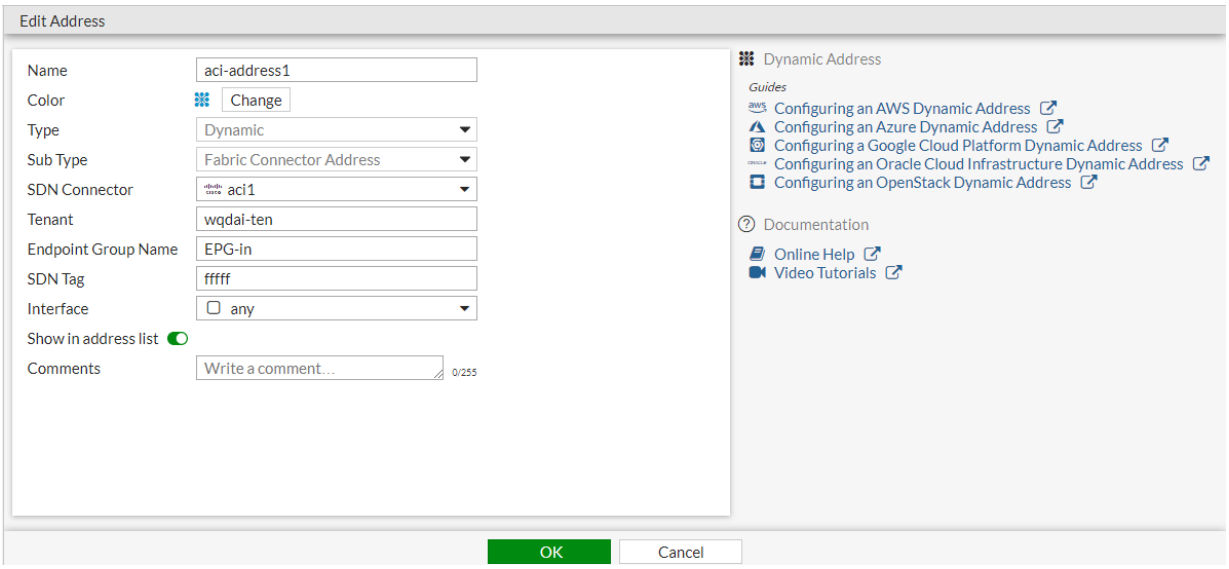
The Fortinet SDN Connector for Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks is a standalone connector that connects to SDN controllers within Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks. You must configure a connection to the Fortinet SDN connector in FortiOS to query the dynamic addresses.

To configure a Cisco ACI connector in the GUI:

1. Create the Cisco ACI SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Private SDN* section, click *Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI)*.
   c. In the *Cisco ACI Connector* section, for *Type*, select *Fortinet SDN Connector* and configure the remaining settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.



2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following settings:
      i. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. For *Sub Type*, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
      iii. For *SDN Connector*, select the first ACI connector.
      iv. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
   c. Click *OK*.



To verify the dynamic firewall IPs are resolved by the SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. In the address table, hover over the address to view which IPs it resolves to.

To configure a Cisco ACI connector in the CLI:

1. Create the SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "aci1"
        set type aci
        set server "172.18.64.31"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aci-address1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aci1"
        set color 17
        set tenant "wqdai-ten"
```

```
            set epg-name "EPG-in"
            set sdn-tag "fffff"
        next
    end
```

To verify the dynamic firewall IPs are resolved by the SDN connector in the CLI:

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list

List all dynamic addresses:
aci1.aci.wqdai-ten.EPG-in.fffff: ID(171)
        ADDR(192.168.100.20)
```

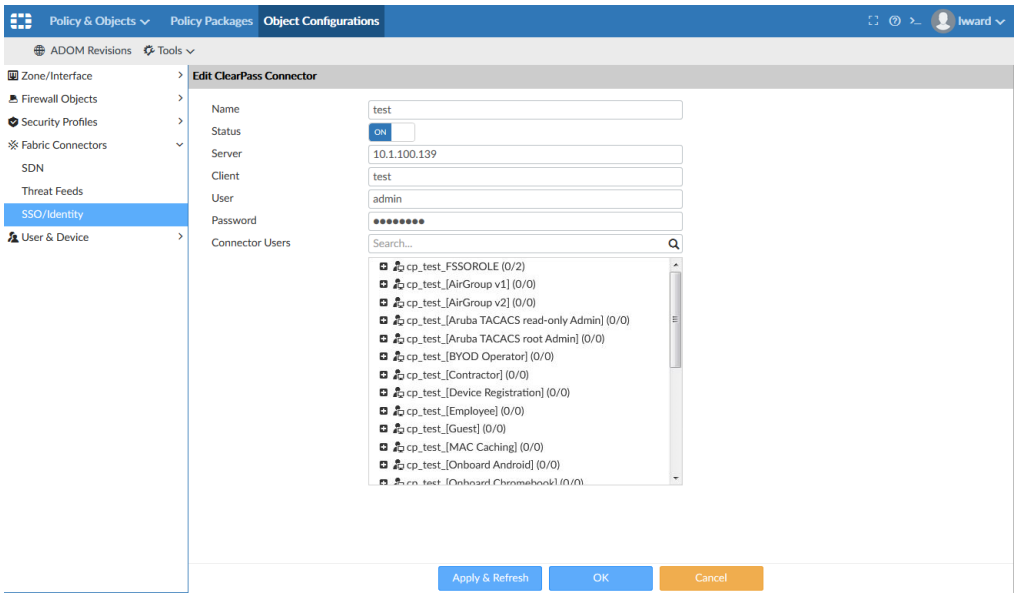
ClearPass endpoint connector via FortiManager

ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) is a network access system that can send information about authenticated users to third party systems, such as a FortiGate or FortiManager.

In this example, communications are established between CPPM and FortiManager, and then the FortiManager forwards information to a managed FortiGate. On the FortiGate, the user information can be used in firewall policies and added to FSSO dynamic addresses.

Configure the FortiManager

Establish communications between FortiManager and CPPM so that FortiManager can synchronize CPPM user groups. See Creating a ClearPass connector in the FortiManager Administration Guide.

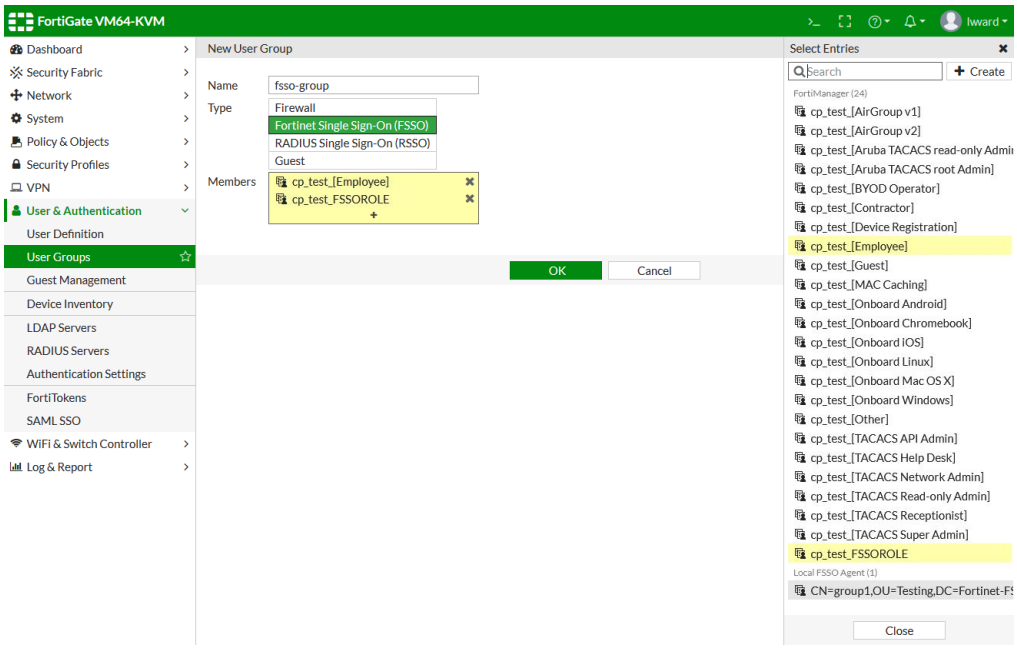


FortiManager forwards the group information to managed FortiGates.

Adding CPPM FSSO user groups to a local user group

To add CPPM user groups to a local user group in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group and set *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*.
4. Click the *Members* field, and add one or more FSSO groups.
   FSSO groups can come from multiple sources; CPPM FSSO groups are prefixed with *cp_* and are listed under the *FortiManager* heading.



5. Click *OK*.

To add CPPM user groups to a local user group in the CLI:

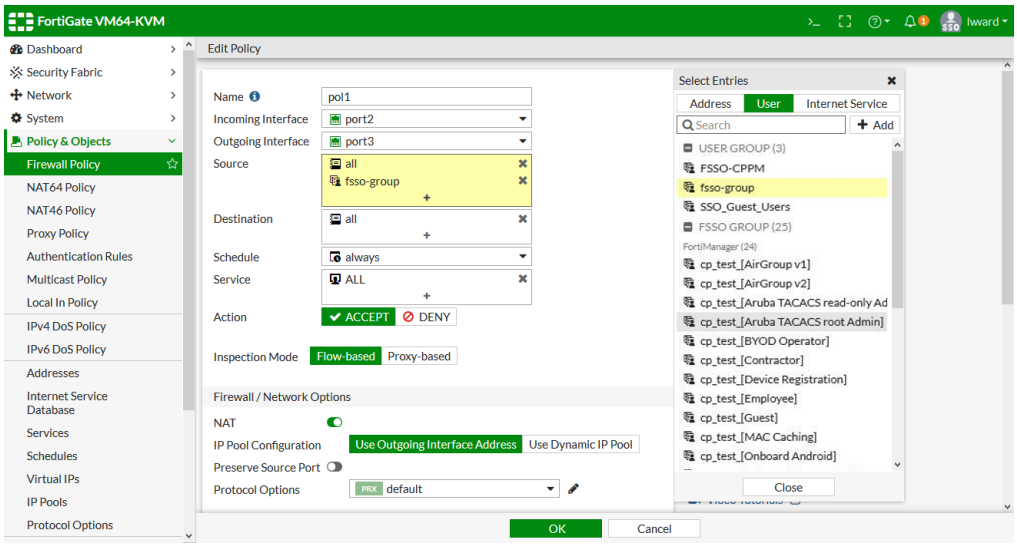
```
config user group
    edit fsso-group
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "cp_test_[Employee]" "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
    next
end
```

Using the local FSSO user group in a firewall policy

To add the local FSSO user group to a firewall policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy, or edit an existing one.

3. Click in the *Source* field and add the *fsso-group* user group.



   CPPM user groups can also be added directly to the policy.
4. Click *OK*.

To add the local FSSO user group to a firewall policy in the CLI:

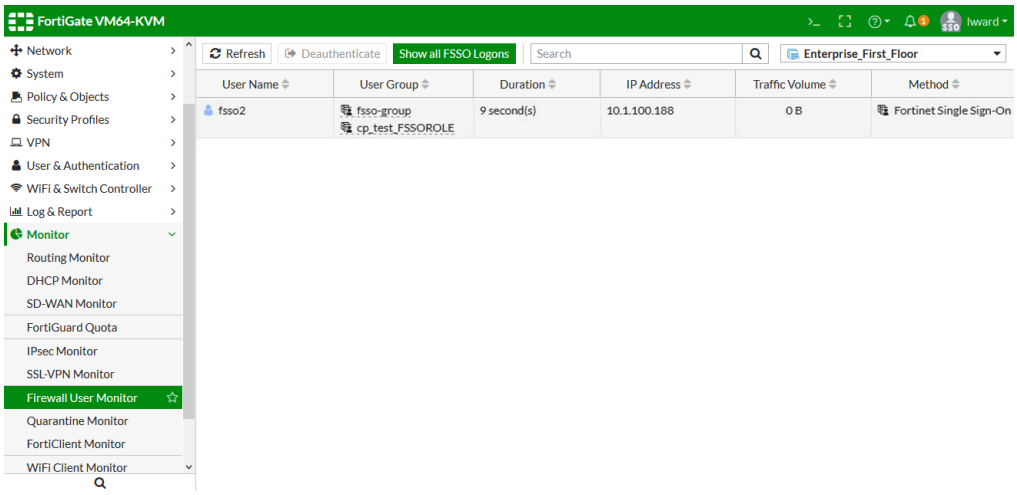
```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "pol1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "fsso-group"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Verification

To verify that a user was added to the FSSO list on the FortiGate:

1. Log on to the client and authenticate with CPPM.
   After successful authentication, the user is added to the FSSO list on the FortiGate.

2. On the FortiGate, go to *Monitor* > *Firewall User Monitor* to verify that the user was added.



The user group *cp_test_FSSOROLE* is listed separately because the user is a member of that group on the CPPM.

To verify that traffic can pass the firewall:

1. Log on to the client and browse to an external website.
2. On the FortiGate, go to *FortiView* > *Sources*.
3. Double-click on the user and select the *Destinations* tab to verify that traffic is being passed by the firewall.

To verify the user address groups:

```
show user adgrp
    config user adgrp
        edit "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[AirGroup v1]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[AirGroup v2]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Aruba TACACS read-only Admin]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Aruba TACACS root Admin]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[BYOD Operator]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Contractor]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Device Registration]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        ...
```

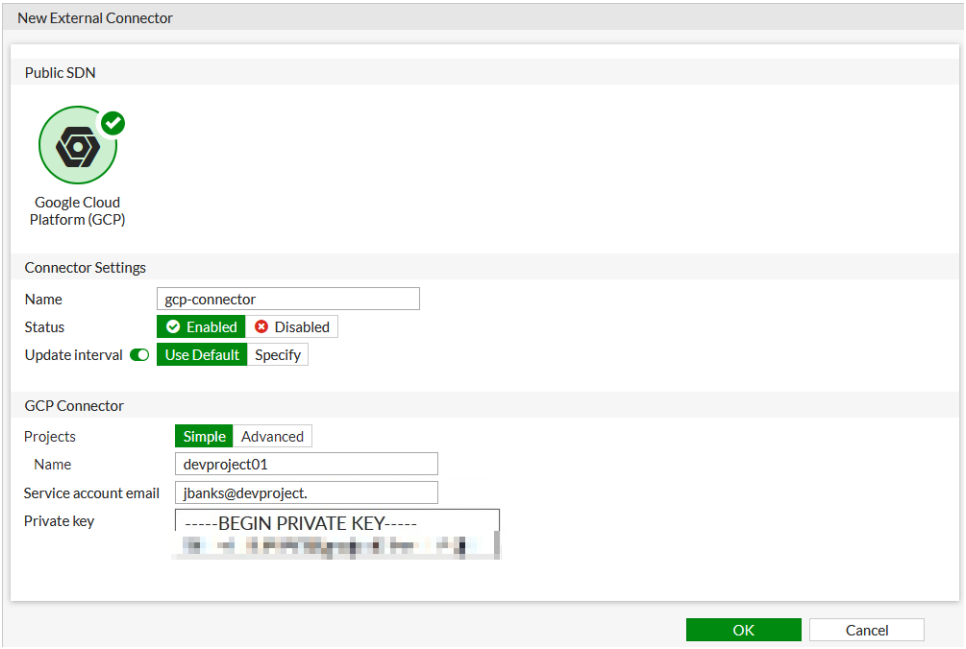
```
        edit "CN=group1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM"
            set server-name "Local FSSO Agent"   <----- !!!
        next
    end
```

GCP SDN connector using service account

FortiOS automatically updates dynamic addresses for GCP using a GCP SDN connector, including mapping attributes from GCP instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS.

To configure a GCP connector using the GUI:

1. In FortiOS, go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*, and select *Google Cloud Platform (GCP)*.
   Note you can create only one SDN Connector per connector type. For example, you can create one entry for GCP.
3. Configure the connector as follows:
   a. *Projects*: Select *Simple*.
   b. *Name*: Enter the name of the GCP project. The VMs whose IP addresses you want to populate should be running within this project.
   c. *Service account email*: Enter the email address associated with the service account that calls APIs to the GCP project specified.
   d. *Private key*: Enter the private key statement as shown in the text box. For details, see Creating a GCP service account.
   e. Click *OK*.



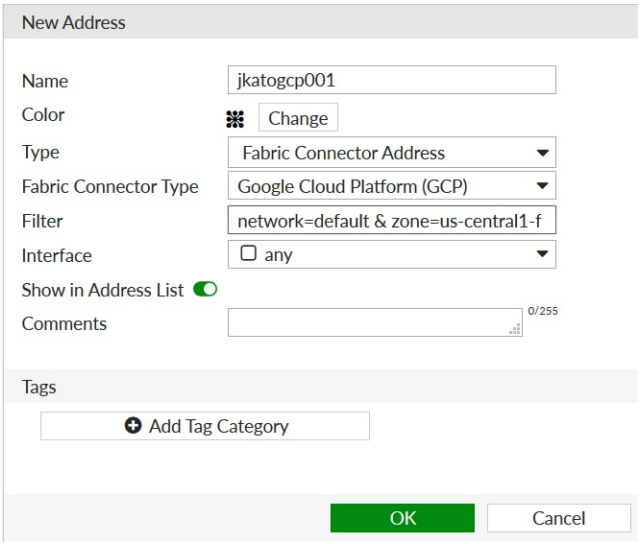
Once the connector is successfully configured, a green indicator appears at the bottom right corner. If the indicator is red, the connector is not working. See Troubleshooting GCP SDN Connector.

4. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured GCP SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   b. Configure the address:
      i. *Name*: Enter the desired name.
      ii. *Type*: Select *Dynamic*.
      iii. *Fabric Connector Type*: Select *Google Cloud Platform (GCP)*.
      iv. *Filter*: The SDN connector automatically populates and updates only instances that match this filtering condition. Currently GCP supports the following filters:
      - `id=<instance id>` : This matches an VM instance ID.
      - `name=<instance name>` : This matches a VM instance name.
      - `zone=<gcp zones>` : This matches a zone name.
      - `network=<gcp network name>` : This matches a network name.
      - `subnet=<gcp subnet name>` : This matches a subnet name.
      - `tag=<gcp network tags>` : This matches a network tag.
      - `label.<gcp label key>=<gcp label value>` : This matches a free form GCP label key and its value.

      In the example, the filter is set as `'network=default & zone=us-central-1f'`. This configuration populates all IP addresses that belong to the default network in the zone us-central-1f.

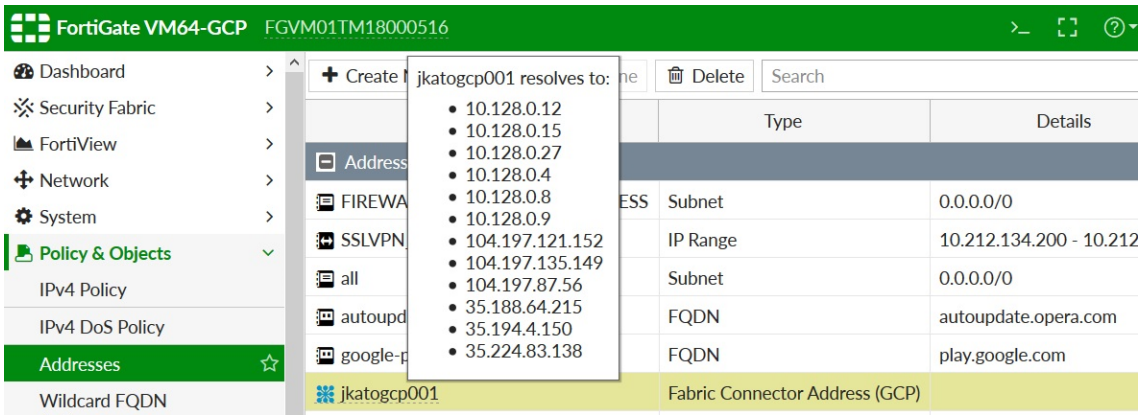
      You can set filtering conditions using multiple entries with AND ("&") or OR ("|"). When both AND and OR are specified, AND is interpreted first, then OR.

      Note that wildcards (such as the asterisk) are not allowed in filter values.



      v. Click *OK*.

The address has been created. Wait for a few minutes before the setting takes effect. You will know that the address is in effect when the exclamation mark disappears from the address entry. When you hover over the address, you can see the list of populated IP addresses.



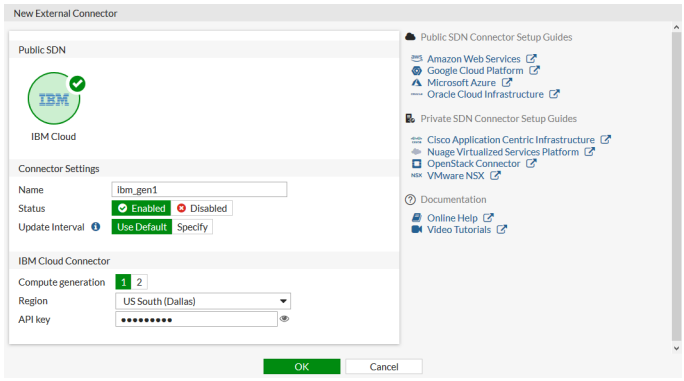
If the exclamation mark does not disappear, check the address settings.

IBM Cloud SDN connector using API keys

FortiOS can automatically update dynamic addresses for IBM Cloud using an SDN connector.

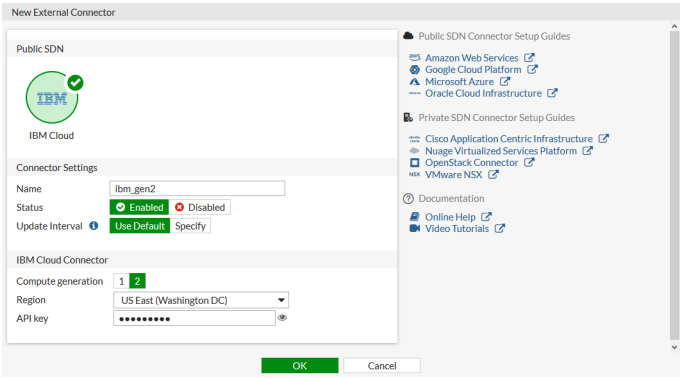
To configure IBM Cloud SDN connectors using the GUI:

1. Create SDN connectors for compute generation 1 and 2:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *IBM Cloud*.
   c. Configure the connector for computer generation 1:



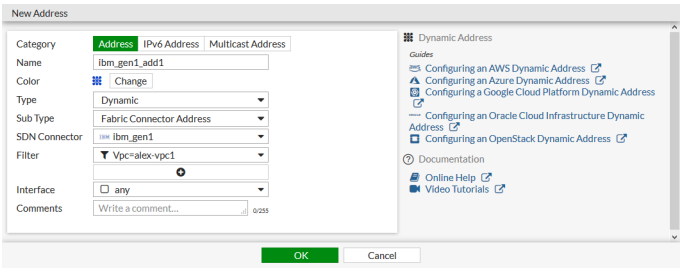
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Click *Create New*, then select *IBM Cloud*.

f. Configure the connector for computer generation 2:



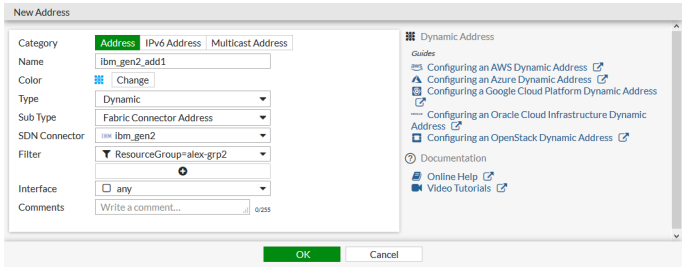
g. Click *OK*.

2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured connectors:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
   c. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Dynamic*.
   d. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
   e. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select the IBM SDN connector.
   f. In the *Filter* field, add the desired filters. The following filters are supported:
      - <InstanceId>
      - <InstanceName>
      - <ImageId>
      - <ImageName>
      - <Architecture>
      - <Profile>
      - <Vpc>
      - <Zone>
      - <Subnet>
      - <ResourceGroup>



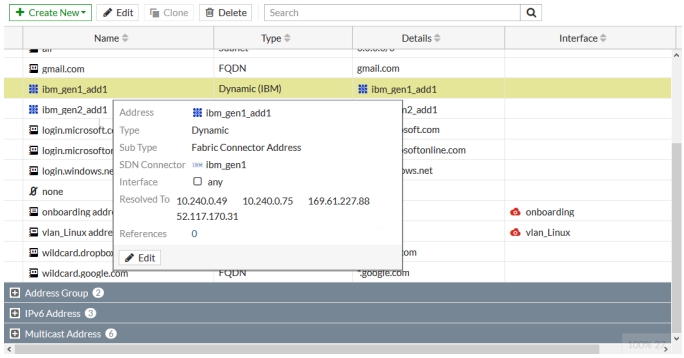
g. Click *OK*.
h. Click *Create New* > *Address*.

i. Repeat the process for computer generation 2:



j. Click *OK*.

3. Ensure that the connectors resolve dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the addresses created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses that the connector has resolved:



To configure IBM Cloud SDN connectors using the CLI:

1. Create SDN connectors for compute generation 1 and 2:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "ibm_gen1"
        set status enable
        set type ibm
        set api-key xxxxxx
        set compute-generation 1
        set ibm-region us-south
        set update-interval 60
    next
    edit "ibm_gen2"
        set status enable
        set type ibm
        set api-key xxxxxx
        set compute-generation 2
        set ibm-region us-east
        set update-interval 60
    next
end
```

2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured connectors:

```
config firewall address
    edit "ibm_gen1_add1"
        set type dynamic
```

```
        set sdn "ibm_gen1"
        set color 19
        set filter "Vpc=alex-vpc1"
    next
    edit "ibm_gen2_add1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "ibm_gen2"
        set color 19
        set filter "ResourceGroup=alex-grp2"
    next
end
```

3. Ensure that the connectors resolve dynamic firewall IP addresses:

```
# show firewall address ibm_gen1_add1
config firewall address
    edit "ibm_gen1_add1"
        set uuid 586841c4-7f46-51ea-dc66-dbf840af03d3
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "ibm_gen1"
        set color 19
        set filter "Vpc=alex-vpc1"
        config list
            edit "10.240.0.49"
            next
            edit "10.240.0.75"
            next
            edit "169.61.227.88"
            next
            edit "52.117.170.31"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

```
# show firewall address ibm_gen2_add1
config firewall address
    edit "ibm_gen2_add1"
        set uuid 5868c4f0-7f46-51ea-2b79-b5170fbfd4a8
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "ibm_gen2"
        set color 19
        set filter "ResourceGroup=alex-grp2"
        config list
            edit "10.241.128.4"
            next
            edit "10.241.128.5"
            next
            edit "10.241.129.4"
            next
            edit "52.117.126.69"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Kubernetes (K8s) SDN connectors

The following topics provide information about configuring Kubernetes SDN connectors:

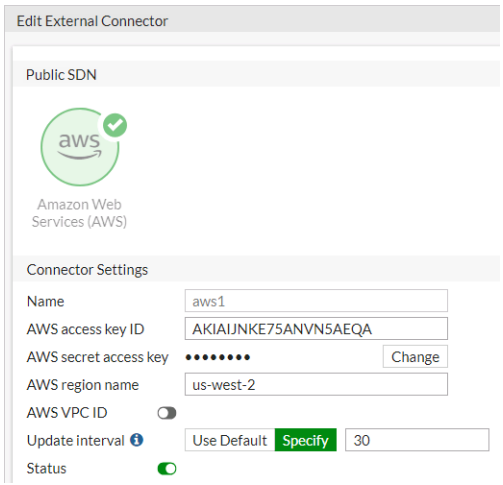
- AWS Kubernetes (EKS) SDN connector using access key on page 324
- Azure Kubernetes (AKS) SDN connector using client secret on page 326
- GCP Kubernetes (GKE) SDN connector using service account on page 329
- Oracle Kubernetes (OKE) SDN connector using certificates on page 331
- Private cloud K8s SDN connector using secret token on page 335

AWS Kubernetes (EKS) SDN connector using access key

AWS SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on AWS Kubernetes (EKS) filters.

To enable an AWS SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from AWS Kubernetes:

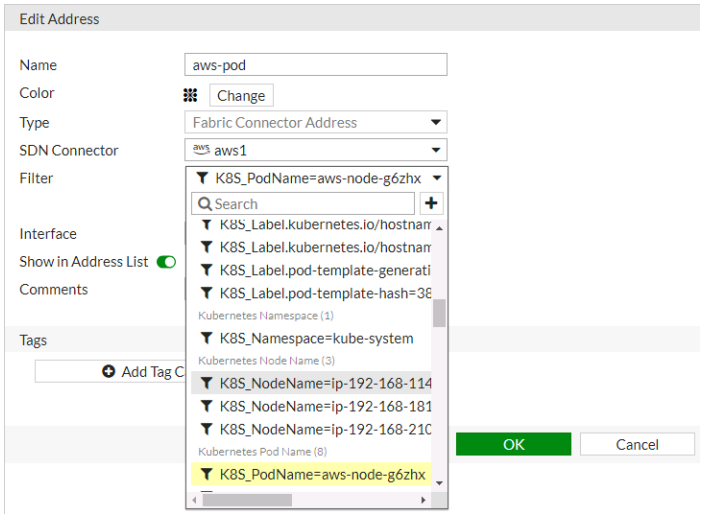
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*. Click *Create New*, then select *Amazon Web Services (AWS)*. Configure the SDN connector as desired. See AWS SDN connector using certificates on page 305



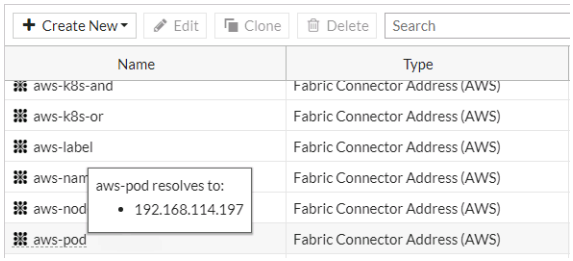
2. Go to *Policies & Objects* > *Addresses*. Click *Create New* > *Address* to create a dynamic firewall address for the configured SDN connector using the supported Kubernetes filter.
3. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Dynamic*.
4. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
5. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select the desired SDN connector.
6. In the *Filter* field, add the desired filters. The following filters are supported:

Filter	Description
k8s_cluster	Name of Kubernetes cluster.
k8s_namespace	Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod.
k8s_svcname	Name of a Kubernetes service.
k8s_nodename	Name of a Kubernetes node.

Filter	Description
k8s_zone	Zone of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_region	Region of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_podname	Name of a Kubernetes pod.
k8s_label.xxx	Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/pod).



7. Configure the rest of the settings, then click *OK*.
8. Ensure that the SDN connector resolves the dynamic firewall address IP addresses by going to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and hovering over the newly created address.



To configure an AWS Kubernetes SDN connector through the CLI:

1. Configure the SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "aws1"
      set type aws
      set access-key "AKIAIJNKE75ANVN5AEQA"
      set secret-key xxxxx
      set region "us-west-2"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported Kubernetes filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "aws-pod"
      set type dynamic
```

```
        set sdn "aws1"
        set filter "K8S_PodName=aws-node-g6zhx"
    next
end
```

The SDN connector resolves the dynamic firewall address IP address:

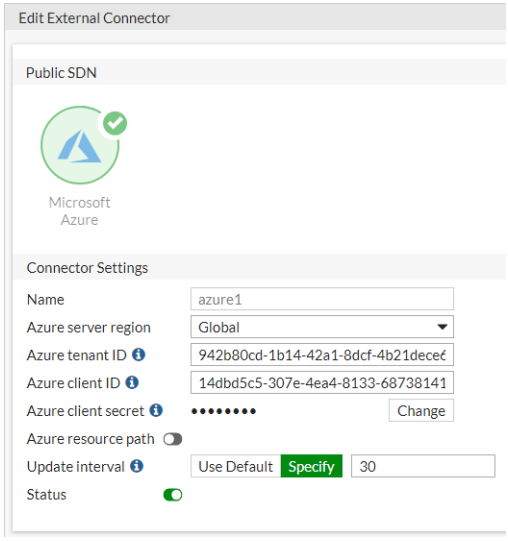
```
config firewall address
    edit "aws-pod"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aws1"
        set filter "K8S_PodName=aws-node-g6zhx"
        config list
            edit "192.168.114.197"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Azure Kubernetes (AKS) SDN connector using client secret

Azure SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on Azure Kubernetes (AKS) filters.

To enable an Azure SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from Azure Kubernetes:

1. Configure the Azure SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Azure*.
   c. Configure as shown substituting the region, tenant and client IDs, and client secret for your deployment. See Azure SDN connector service principal configuration requirements.

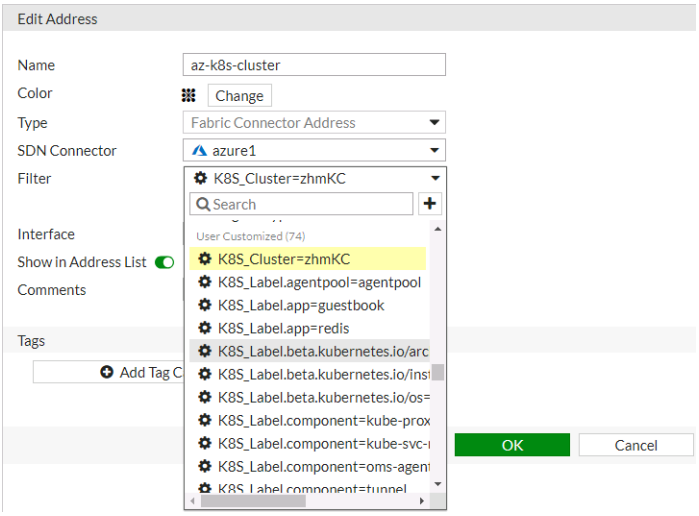


2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured K8s SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Dynamic*.
   d. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
   e. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select the desired SDN connector.

f. In the *Filter* field, add the desired filter. The following filters are supported:

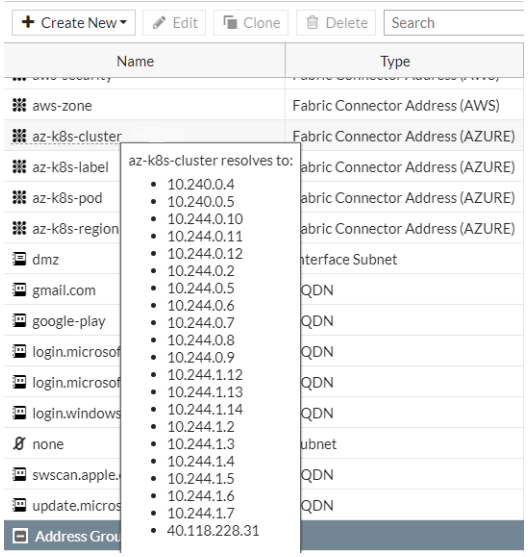
Filter	Description
k8s_cluster	Name of Kubernetes cluster.
k8s_namespace	Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod.
k8s_svcname	Name of a Kubernetes service.
k8s_nodename	Name of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_zone	Zone of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_region	Region of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_podname	Name of a Kubernetes pod.
k8s_label.xxx	Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/pod).

In this example, the address is configured to automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the zhmKC cluster:



3. Ensure that the K8s SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the

zhmKC cluster as configured in step 2:



To configure an Azure Kubernetes SDN connector through the CLI:

1. Configure the SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "azure1"
      set type azure
      set tenant-id "942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba"
      set client-id "14dbd5c5-307e-4ea4-8133-68738141feb1"
      set client-secret xxxxx
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported Kubernetes filter. In this example, the address will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the zhmKC cluster:

```
config firewall address
   edit "az-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "azure1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhmKC"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the Azure SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "az-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "azure1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhmKC"
      config list
         edit "10.240.0.4"
         next
         edit "10.240.0.5"
         next
         edit "10.244.0.10"
         next
      end
```

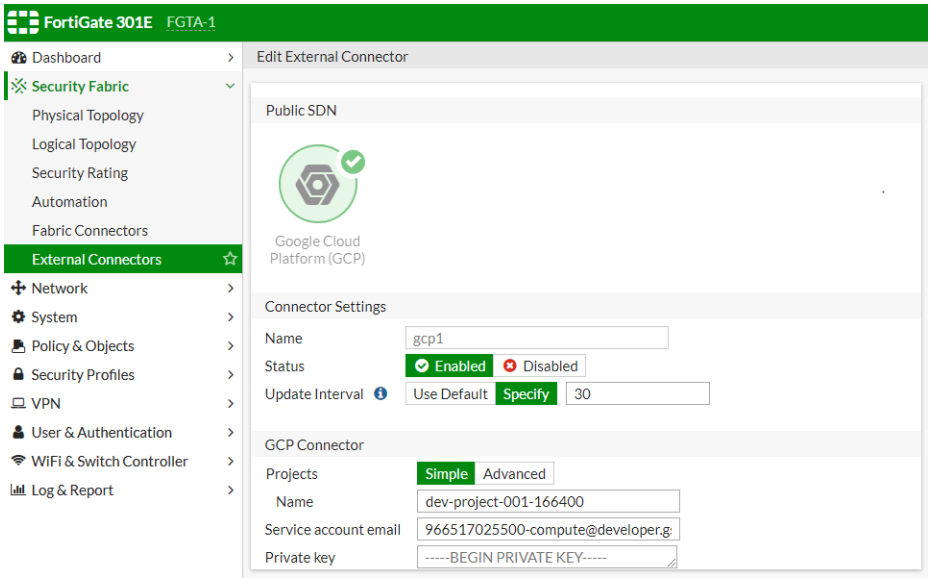
```
    next
end
```

GCP Kubernetes (GKE) SDN connector using service account

Google Cloud Platform (GCP) SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on GCP Kubernetes Engine (GKE) filters.

To enable a GCP SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from GKE:

1. Configure an SDN connector for GCP:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*. Click *Create New*, and select *Google Cloud Platform (GCP)*.
   b. Enter a connector name, then configure the following settings for the GCP connector:
      i. *Projects*: Select *Simple*.
      ii. *Name*: Enter the name of the GCP project.
      iii. *Service account email*: Enter the email address associated with the service account that will call APIs to the GCP project specified above.
      iv. *Private key*: Enter the private key statement.

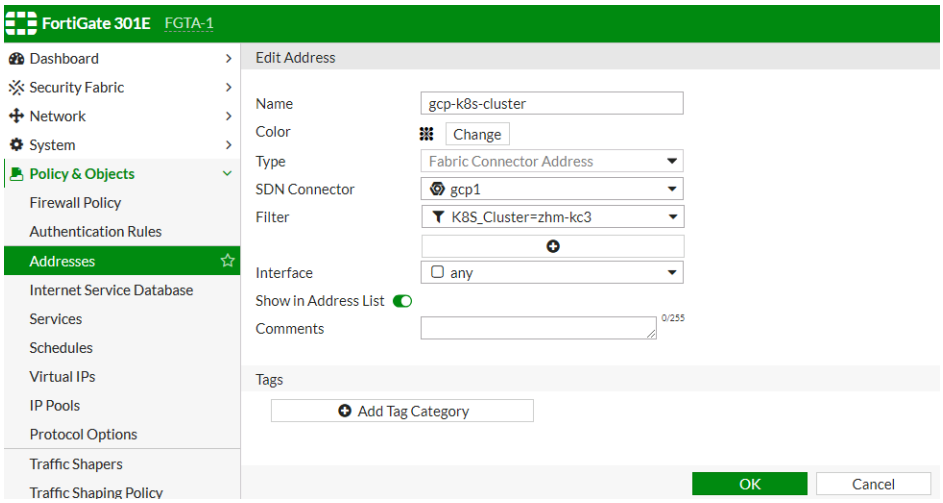


   c. Click *OK*.
2. Go to *Policies & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a dynamic firewall address for the configured SDN connector using the supported Kubernetes filter.
3. To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, select the address filter or filters. The following filters are supported:

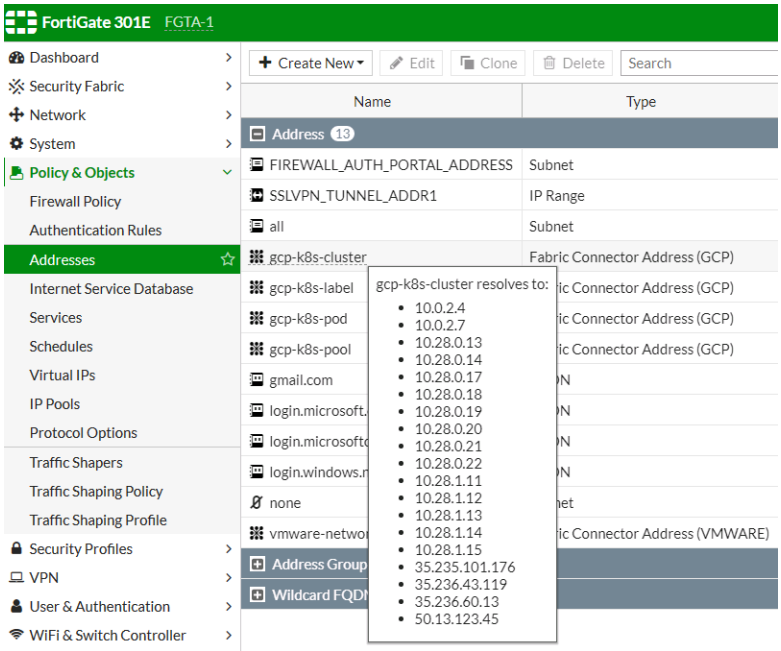
Filter	Description
k8s_cluster	Name of Kubernetes cluster.
k8s_namespace	Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod.
k8s_svcname	Name of a Kubernetes service.

Filter	Description
k8s_nodename	Name of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_zone	Zone of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_region	Region of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_podname	Name of a Kubernetes pod.
k8s_label.xxx	Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/Pod).

In this example, the GCP SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the zhm-kc3 cluster:



4. Configure the rest of the settings, then click *OK*.
The dynamic firewall address IP is resolved by the SDN connector.



To configure a GCP Kubernetes SDN connector through the CLI:

1. Configure an SDN connector for Kubernetes:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "gcp1"
      set type gcp
      config gcp-project-list
         edit "dev-project-001-166400"
      next
      set service-account "966517025500-compute@developer.gserviceaccount.com"
      set private-key **********
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported Kubernetes filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "gcp-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "gcp1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhm-kc3"
   next
end
```

The dynamic firewall address IP is resolved by the SDN connector:

```
config firewall address
   edit "gcp-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "gcp1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhm-kc3"
      config list
         edit "10.0.2.4"
         next
         edit "10.0.2.7"
         next
         edit "10.28.0.13"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

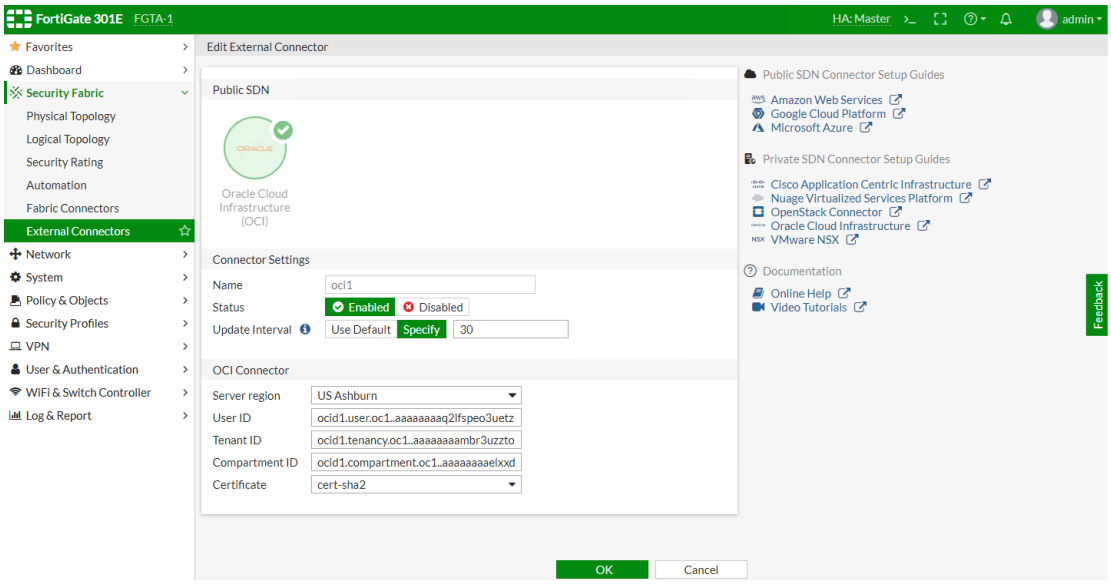
Oracle Kubernetes (OKE) SDN connector using certificates

OCI SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on Oracle Kubernetes (OKE) filters.

To enable an OCI SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from Oracle Kubernetes:

1. Configure the OCI SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI)*.
   c. Configure as shown substituting the region, tenant and client IDs, and client secret for your deployment. The

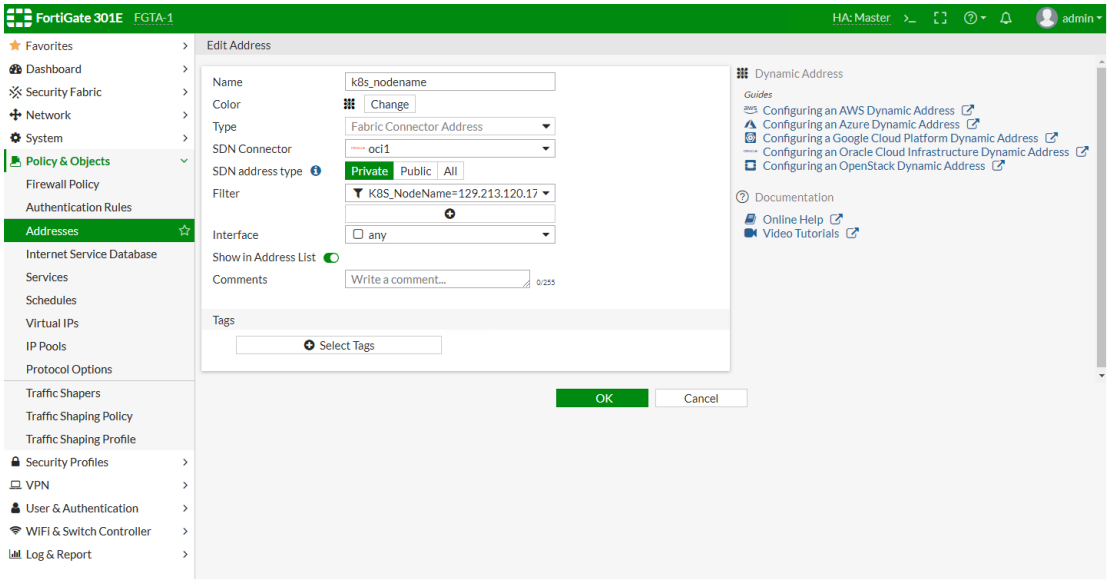
update interval is in seconds.



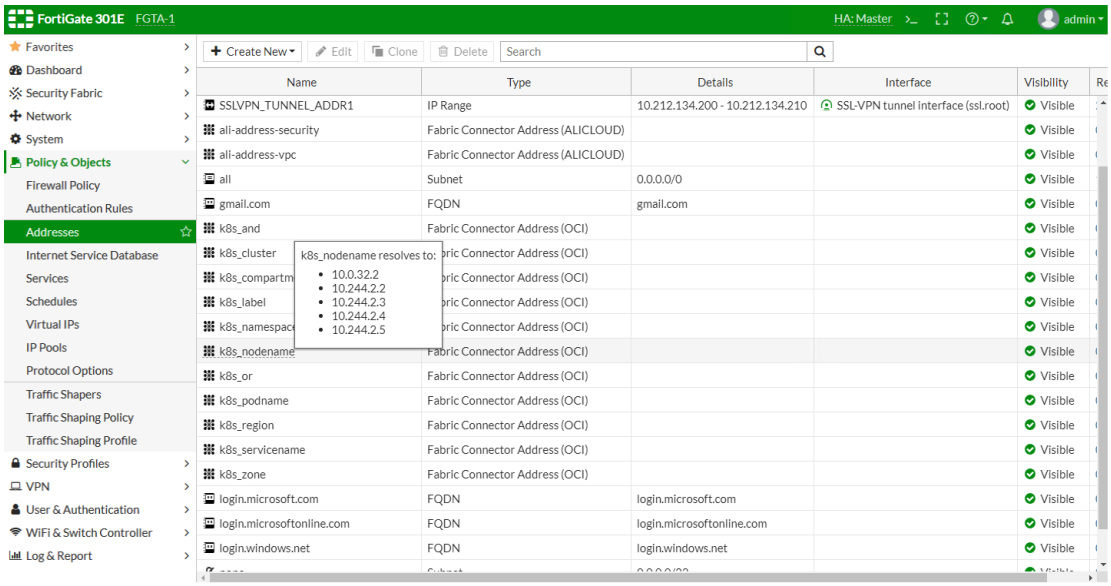
2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured SDN connector with supported Kubernetes filter:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.

c. In the *Filter* field, select the desired filters. The following filters are supported:

Filter	Description
k8s_cluster	Name of Kubernetes cluster.
k8s_namespace	Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod.
k8s_svcname	Name of a Kubernetes service.
k8s_nodename	Name of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_zone	Zone of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_region	Region of a Kubernetes node.
k8s_podname	Name of a Kubernetes pod.
k8s_label.xxx	Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/Pod).



3. Confirm that the SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances:



To configure an SDN connector through the CLI:

1. Configure the OCI SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "oci1"
      set type oci
      set tenant-id
           "ocid1.tenancy.oc1..aaaaaaaambr3uzztoyhweohbzqqdo775h7d3t54zpmzkp4b2cf35vs5
           5cxxx"
      set user-id
           "ocid1.user.oc1..aaaaaaaaq2lfspeo3uetzbzpiv2pqvzzevozccnys347stwssvizqlatfx
           xx"
      set compartment-id
           "ocid1.compartment.oc1..aaaaaaaaelxxdjazqo7nzczpgypyiqcgkmytjry6nfq5345vw7e
           avpwnmxxx"
      set oci-region ashburn
      set oci-cert "cert-sha2"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured SDN connector with supported Kubernetes filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "oci1"
      set filter "K8S_NodeName=129.213.120.172"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
```

```
        set sdn "oci1"
        set filter "K8S_NodeName=129.213.120.172"
        config list
           edit "10.0.32.2"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.2"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.3"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.4"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.5"
           next
        end
     next
  end
```

Private cloud K8s SDN connector using secret token

FortiOS automatically updates dynamic and cluster IP addresses for Kubernetes (K8s) by using a K8s SDN connector, enabling FortiOS to manage K8s pods as global address objects, as with other connectors. This includes mapping the following attributes from K8s instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

Filter	Description
Namespace	Filter service IP addresses in a given namespace.
ServiceName	Filter service IP addresses by the given service name.
NodeName	Filter node IP addresses by the given node name.
PodName	Filter IP addresses by the pod name.
Label.XXX	Filter service or node IP addresses with the given label XXX. For example: `K8S_Label.app=nginx`.

FortiOS 6.2.3 and later collects cluster IP addresses in addition to external IP addresses for exposed K8s services.



There is no maximum limit for the number of IP addresses populated with the filters.

To configure K8s SDN connector using the GUI:

1. Configure the K8s SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* > *Create New Connector*.
   b. Select *Kubernetes*.
   c. In the *IP* field, enter the IP address that you obtained in Obtaining the IP address, port, and secret token in Kubernetes.
   d. In the *Port* field, select *Specify*, then enter the port that you obtained in Obtaining the IP address, port, and secret token in Kubernetes.

e. In the *Secret token* field, enter the token that you obtained in Obtaining the IP address, port, and secret token in Kubernetes.

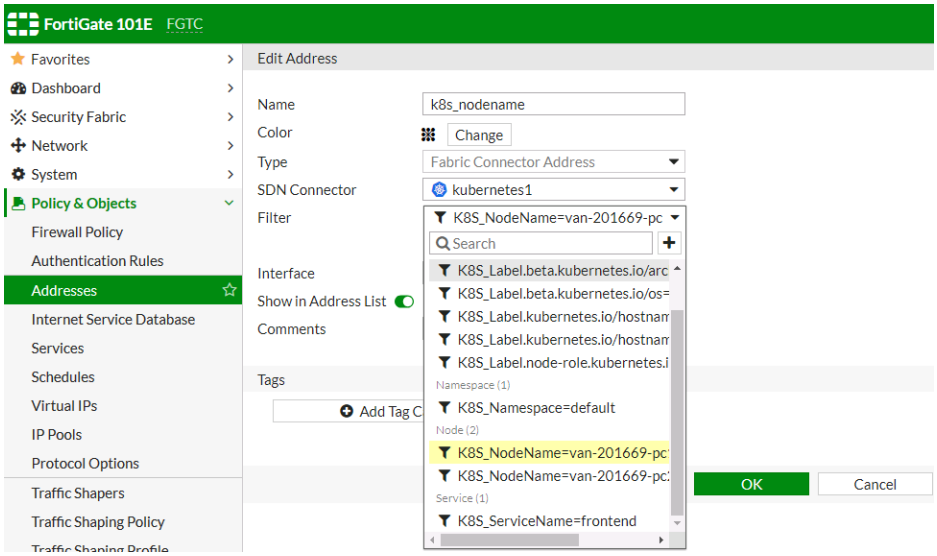
f. Configure the other fields as desired.

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured K8S SDN connector:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.

b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.

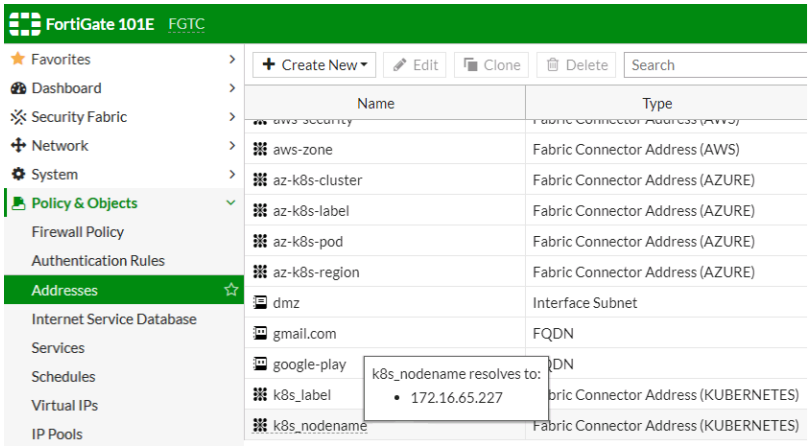
c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the K8s SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for node instances that match the specified node name:



3. Ensure that the K8s SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.

b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for node instances that match the node name configured in step 2:



To configure K8s SDN connector using CLI commands:

1. Configure the K8s SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "kubernetes1"
      set type kubernetes
```

```
      set server "<IP address obtained in Obtaining the IP address, port, and secret
          token in Kubernetes>"
      set server-port <Port obtained in Obtaining the IP address, port, and secret token
          in Kubernetes>
      set secret-token <Secret token obtained in Obtaining the IP address, port, and
          secret token in Kubernetes>
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured K8s SDN connector with the supported K8s filter. In this example, the K8s SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for node instances that match the specified node name:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "kubernetes1"
      set filter "K8S_NodeName=van-201669-pc1"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the K8s SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "kubernetes1"
      set filter "K8S_NodeName=van-201669-pc1"
      config list
         edit "172.16.65.227"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To troubleshoot the connection:

1. In FortiOS, run the following commands:

```
diagnose deb application kubed -1
diagnose debug enable
```

2. Reset the connection on the web UI to generate logs and troubleshoot the issue. The following shows the output in the case of a failure:

```
fortigate # diagnose deb application kubed -1
Debug messages will be on for 30 minutes.

fortigate # diagnose debug enable

fortigate # k8s: update sdn connector kubernetes1 status to enabled
k8s: update sdn connector kubernetes2 status to disabled
kubed sdn connector kubernetes1 prepare to update
getting token
kubed sdn connector kubernetes1 start updating
kube url: https://172.17.215.10:6443/api/v1/services
kube host: 172.17.215.10:6443:172.17.215.10
{"kind":"Status","apiVersion":"v1","metadata":{},"status":"Failure","message":"s
ervices is forbidden: User \"system:serviceaccount:default:fortigateconnector\"
cannot list resource \"services\" in API group \"\" at the cluster scope","reaso
n":"Forbidden","details":{"kind":"services"},"code":403}

kubed failed to list kubernetes services.
kubed failed to get IPs from kubedrnetes services.
kubed failed to get ip addr list
kubed reap child pid: 1226
```

The following shows the output in the case of a success:

```
 kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.180.1.2, podname: metrics-server-v0.3.6-64655c969-djt8s, namespac
e: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.138.0.6, podname: netd-4qvvn, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.138.0.5, podname: netd-756ch, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.138.0.4, podname: netd-hr75d, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.138.0.6, podname: prometheus-to-sd-59trp, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.138.0.4, podname: prometheus-to-sd-q6qv5, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.138.0.5, podname: prometheus-to-sd-rq2zm, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.180.1.3, podname: stackdriver-metadata-agent-cluster-level-6c4f64
f8cc-zgnp5, namespace: kube-system
k8s pod ip: 10.180.0.3, podname: nginx-deployment-c68885cbb-sf6f5, namespace: ng
inx
k8s pod ip: 10.180.1.4, podname: nginx-deployment-c68885cbb-w5w2b, namespace: ng
inx
kubed get IP address list from Kubernetes:
kubed sdn connector kubernetes2 start updating IP addresses
kubed checking firewall address object gcp-address, vd 0
 address num change 0/3, new ip list:
  10.180.0.3
  10.180.1.4
  10.184.0.1
kubed sdn connector kubernetes2 finish updating IP addresses
kubed reap child pid: 1252
```

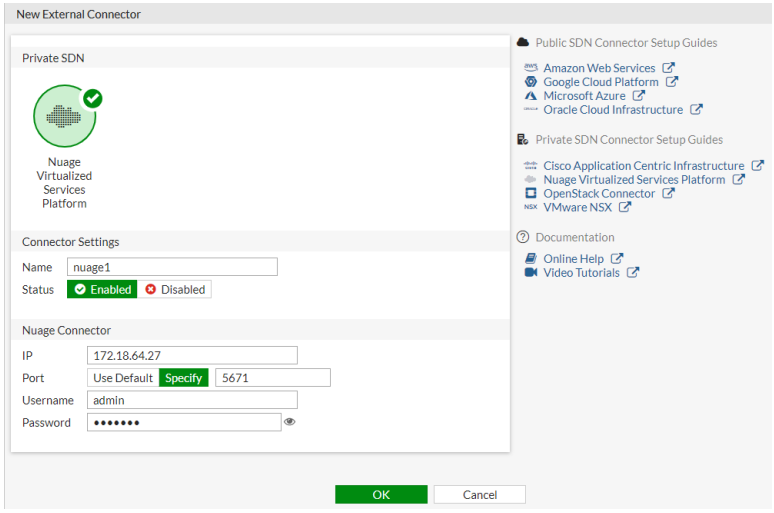
Nuage SDN connector using server credentials

You can use Nuage SDN connectors in dynamic firewall addresses.

The Fortinet SDN Connector for Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks is a standalone connector that connects to SDN controllers within Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks. You must configure a connection to the Fortinet SDN connector in FortiOS to query the dynamic addresses.

To configure a Nuage connector in the GUI:

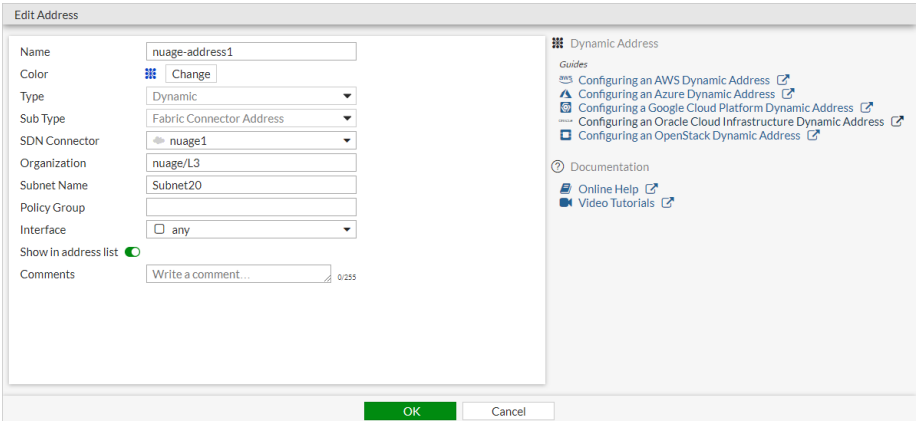
1. Create the Nuage SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Private SDN* section, click *Nuage Virtualized Services Platform*.
   c. Configure the settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.



2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following settings:
      i. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. For *Sub Type*, select *Fabric Connector Address*.

iii. For *SDN Connector*, select the Nuage connector.
iv. Configure the remaining settings as needed.

c. Click *OK*.



To verify the SDN connector resolves the dynamic firewall IP addresses in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. In the address table, hover over an address to view which IP addresses it resolves to.

To configure a Nuage connector in the CLI:

1. Create the SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nuage1"
        set type nuage
        set server "172.18.64.27"
        set server-port 5671
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "nuage-address1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "nuage1"
        set color 19
        set organization "nuage/L3"
        set subnet-name "Subnet20"
    next
end
```

To verify the SDN connector resolves the dynamic firewall IP addresses in the CLI:

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list

List all dynamic addresses:
nuage1.nuage.nuage/L3.Subnet20.*: ID(196)
```

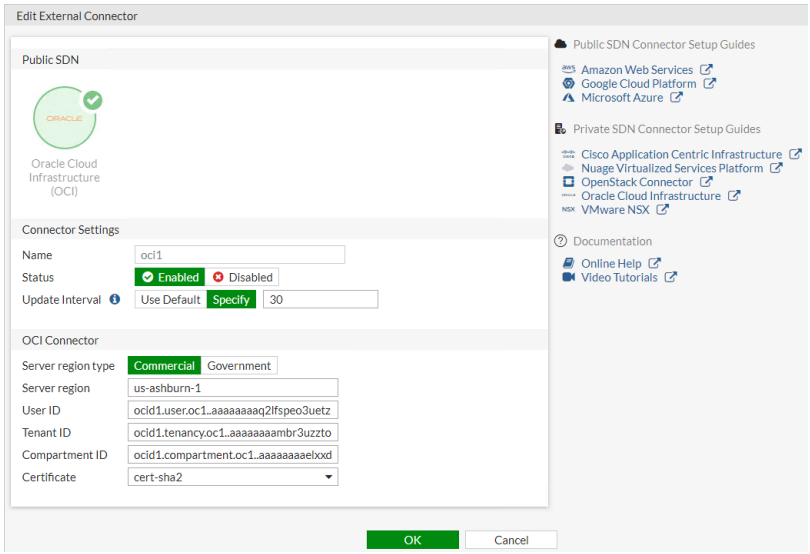
```
ADDR(192.168.20.92)
ADDR(192.168.20.240)
```

OCI SDN connector using certificates

You can configure SDN connector integration with Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI).

To configure an OCI SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Public SDN* section, select *Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI)*.
3. Configure the connector as desired:
   a. *User ID*: Enter the OCID of the OCI user who belongs to the administrator group. See Certificate-based SDN connector requirements.
   b. For the *OCI Certificate* field, you must select a certificate that satisfies OCI key size limits. The minimum size is 2048 bits. Do one of the following:
      i. Select the built-in default certificate called Fortinet_Factory.
      ii. Follow steps 1-2 in Using custom certificates to configure a custom certificate.



4. Click *OK*.
5. At this stage, you must register the certificate's fingerprint to the specified OCI user.
   a. Go to the OCI user, then *API Keys* > *Add Public Key*.
   b. If you selected the Fortinet_Factory certificate in step 2f, do the following:
      i. In FortiOS, go to *System* > *Certificate*. Select Fortinet_Factory, then click *Download*.
      ii. You now have the Fortinet_Factory.cer file. Create a public key file in PEM format from it, using a freely available tool of your choice such as OpenSSL.
   c. Copy and paste the content of the certificate PEM key file in the *Add Public Key* window in OCI. Click *Add*.

d. You now see the fingerprint.



You can configure the following for the fingerprint:

1. *Update Interval*: The default value is 60 seconds. You can change the value to between 1 and 3600 seconds.
2. *Status*: Green means that the connector is enabled. You can disable it at any time by toggling the switch.

e. Click *OK*.

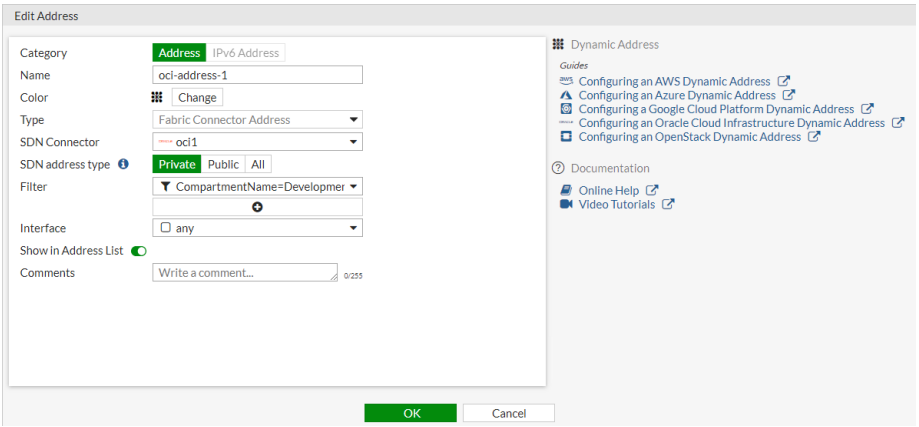
6. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
7. Configure the address as needed, selecting the OCI connector in the *SDN Connector* field. The following filters are supported:

   `'vm_name=<vm name>'`: matches VM instance name.

   `'instance_id=<instance id>'`: matches instance OCID.

   `'tag.<key>=<value>'`: matches freeform tag key and its value.

   `'definedtag.<namespace>.<key>=<value>'`: matches a tag namespace, tag key, and its value.



8. Click *OK*.

To configure an OCI SDN connector in the CLI:

1. Configure an SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "oci1"
        set status enable
        set type oci
        set tenant-id
"ocid1.tenancy.oc1..aaaaaaaaaaa3aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa77xxxxxx54bbbbbb4xxxx35xx55xxxx"
        set user-id
"ocid1.user.oc1..aaaaaaaaa2laaaaa3aaaaaaaaaabbbbbbbbbbcccc3ccccccccccxxxxxxxx"
        set compartment-id
"ocid1.compartment.oc1..aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa7bbbbbbbbbbccccccccc6xxx53xxxx7xxxxxxxxx"
        set oci-region "us-ashburn-1"
```

```
        set oci-region-type commercial
        set oci-cert "cert-sha2"
        set update-interval 30
    next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported filter:

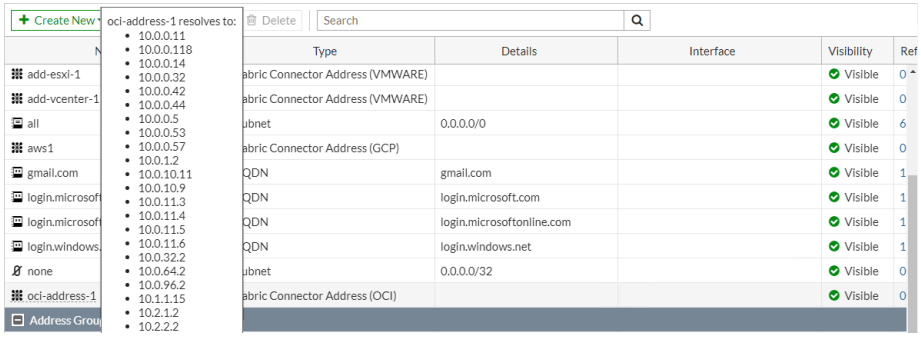
```
config firewall address
    edit "oci-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "oci1"
        set filter "CompartmentName=DevelopmentEngineering"
    next
end
```

To confirm that dynamic firewall addresses are resolved by the SDN connector:

1. In the CLI, check that the addresses are listed:

```
config firewall address
    edit "oci-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "oci1"
        set filter "CompartmentName=DevelopmentEngineering"
        config list
            edit "10.0.0.11"
            next
            edit "10.0.0.118"
            next
            ...
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. In the GUI, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and hover the cursor over the address name.

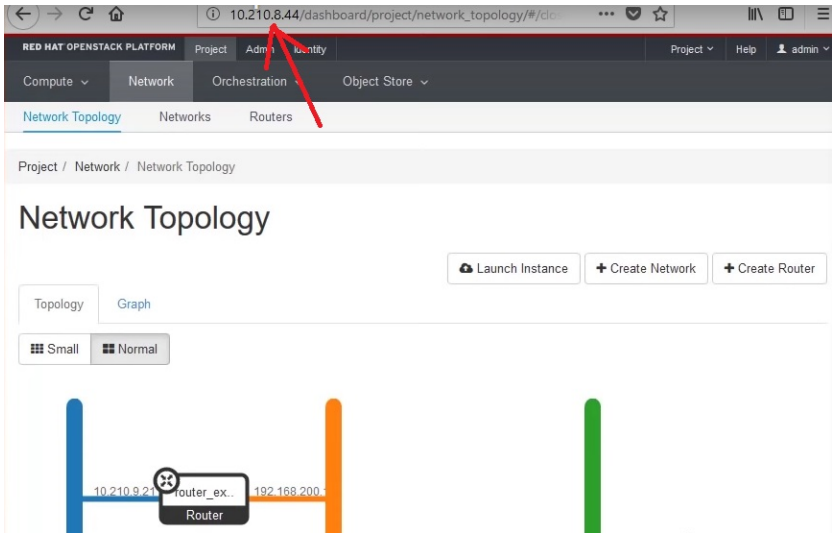


OpenStack SDN connector using node credentials

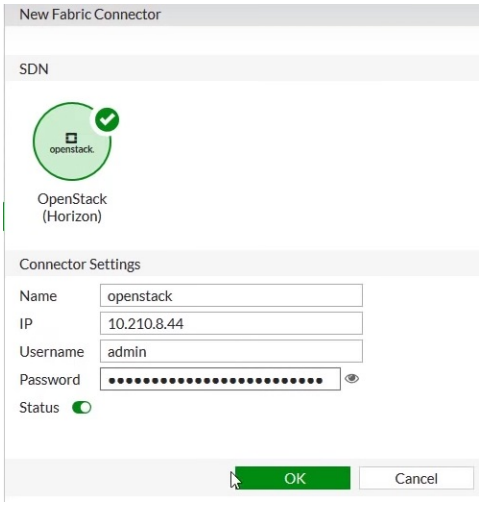
To configure OpenStack SDN connector using node credentials:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*, then select *OpenStack (Horizon)*.

3. Configure the fields as follows:
   a. *Name*: Name the connector as desired.
   b. *IP*: Enter the OpenStack management component's IP address. Generally you can find it in the OpenStack identity.



   c. *User name*: Enter the specified node's administrator name.
   d. *Password*: Enter the administrator password.



4. Click *OK*. The SDN connector is now configured.

To configure a dynamic firewall address:

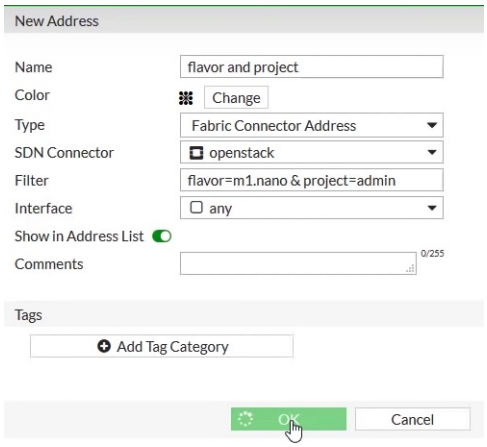
The next step is to create an address that will be used as an address group or single address that acts as the source/destination for firewall policies. The address is based on IP addresses and contains VM instances' IP addresses.

No matter what changes occur to the instances, the SDN connector populates and updates the changes automatically based on the specified filtering condition so that administrators do not need to reconfigure the address content manually. Appropriate firewall policies using the address are applied to instances that are members of the address.

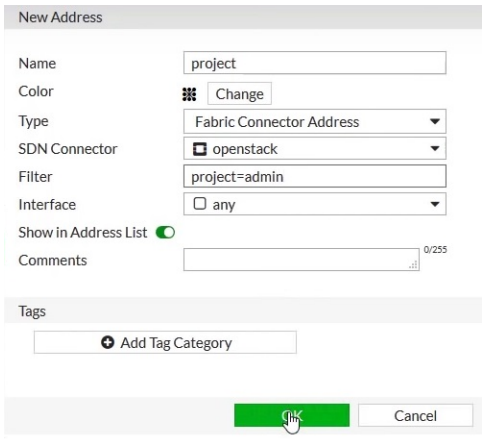
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address*. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
2. Configure the address as follows:
   a. *Name*: Name the address as desired.
   b. *Type*: Select *Dynamic*.
   c. *Sub Type*: Select *Fabric Connector Address*.
   d. *SDN Connector*: Select *openstack*.
   e. *Filter*: The SDN connector automatically populates and updates only IP addresses belonging to the specified filter that matches the condition. OpenStack Horizon connectors support the following filters:
      i. `id=<instance id>`: This matches a VM instance ID.
      ii. name=<instance name>: This matches a VM instance name.
      iii. `flavor=<instance flavor name>`: This matches an instance flavor name.
      iv. `keypair=<key pair name>`: This matches a key pair name.
      v. `network=<net name>`: This matches a network name.
      vi. `project=<project name>`: This matches a project name.
      vii. `availabilityzone=<zone name>`: This matches an availability zone name.
      viii. `servergroup=<group name>`: This matches a server group name.
      ix. `securitygroup=<security group name>`: This matches a security group name.
      x. `metadata.<key>=<value>`: This matches metadata with its key and value pair.

   You can set filtering conditions using multiple entries with AND ("&") or OR ("|"). When both AND and OR are specified, AND is interpreted first, then OR.

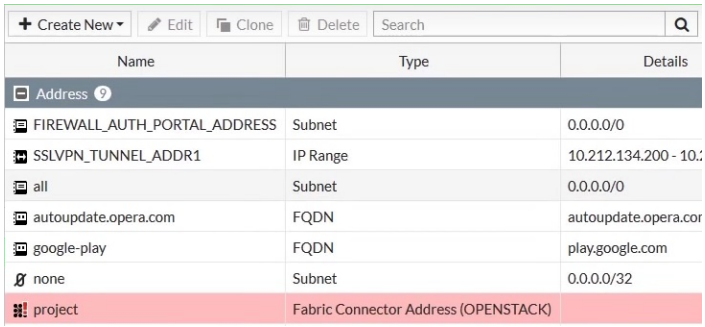
   For example, you could enter `flavor=m1.nano&project=admin`. In this case, IP addresses of instances that match both the flavor name and project name are populated. Wildcards (asterisks) are not allowed in values.



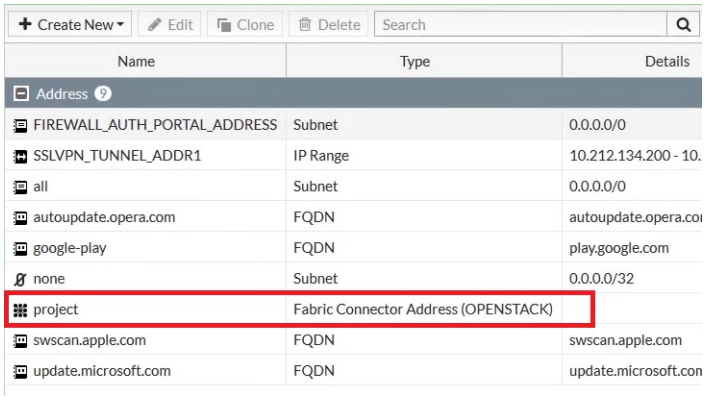
In this example, let's use project=admin, assuming the project name is admin.

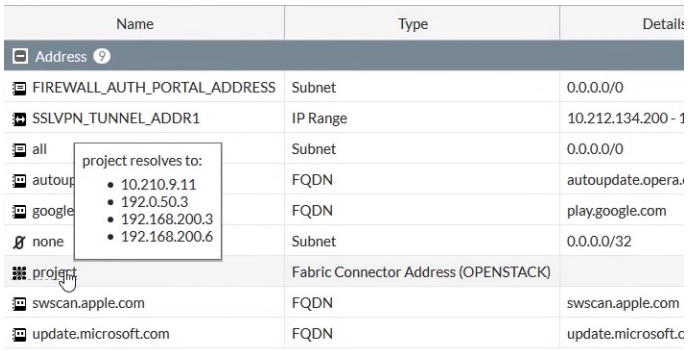


3. Click *OK* after completing all required fields.
4. Ensure that the address was created.



5. After a few minutes, the new address takes effect. Hover your cursor on the address to see a list of IP addresses and instances with the project name "admin".





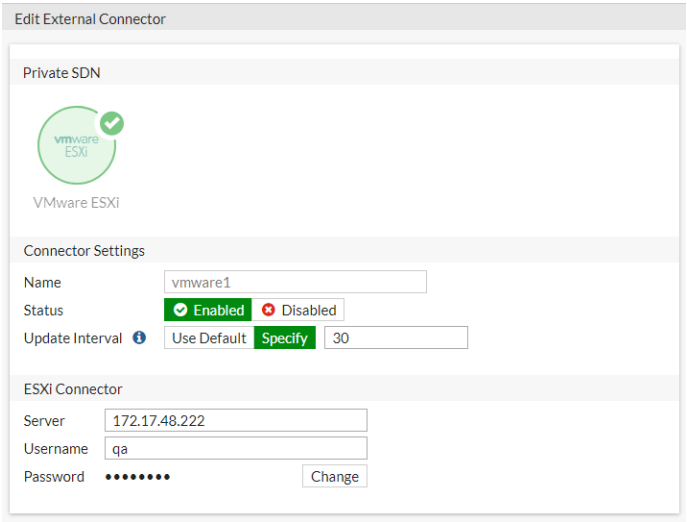
VMware ESXi SDN connector using server credentials

Dynamic addresses for VMware ESXi and vCenter servers can be automatically updated by using a VMware ESXi SDN connector, including mapping the following attributes from VMware ESXi and vCenter objects to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

- vmid
- host
- name
- uuid
- vmuuid
- vmnetwork
- guestid
- guestname
- annotation

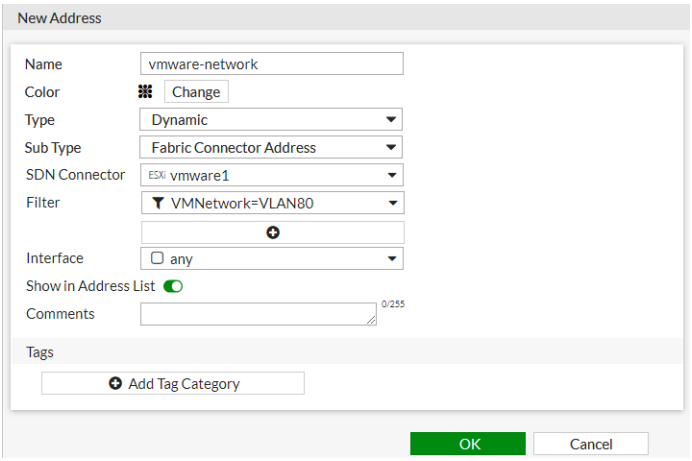
To configure VMware ESXi SDN connector using the GUI:

1. Configure the VMware ESXi SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *VMware ESXi*.
   c. Configure the fields, using the server IP address, username, and password for your deployment. The update interval is in seconds. The password cannot contain single or double quotes.

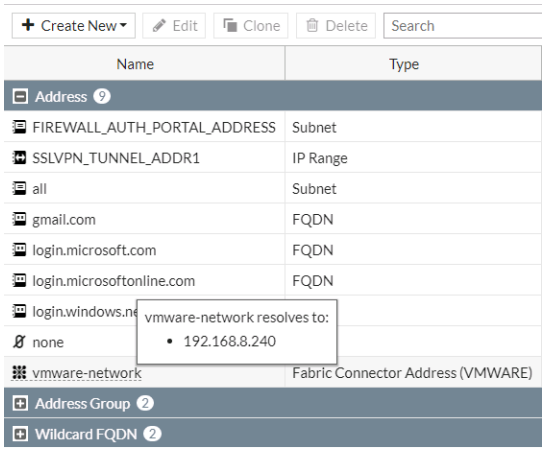


2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured VMware ESXi SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address:
      i. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. From the *Sub Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
      iii. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select the connector that you created.
      iv. In the *Filter* dropdown list, select the desired filter. In this example, the VMware ESXi SDN connector automatically populates and updates IP addresses only for instances that belong to VLAN80.

v. Configure other fields as desired, then click *OK*.



3. Ensure that the VMware ESXi SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to VLAN80 as configured in step 2:



To configure VMware ESXi SDN connector using CLI commands:

1. Configure the VMware ESXi SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "vmware1"
      set type vmware
      set server "172.17.48.222"
      set username "example_username"
      set password xxxxx
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured VMware ESXi SDN connector with the supported VMware ESXi filter. In this example, the VMware ESXi SDN connector automatically populates and updates IP addresses only for instances that belong to the specified VLAN:

```
config firewall address
   edit "vmware-network"
      set type dynamic
```

```
        set sdn "vmware1"
        set filter "vmnetwork=VLAN80"
    next
end
```

3. Confirm that the VMware ESXi SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

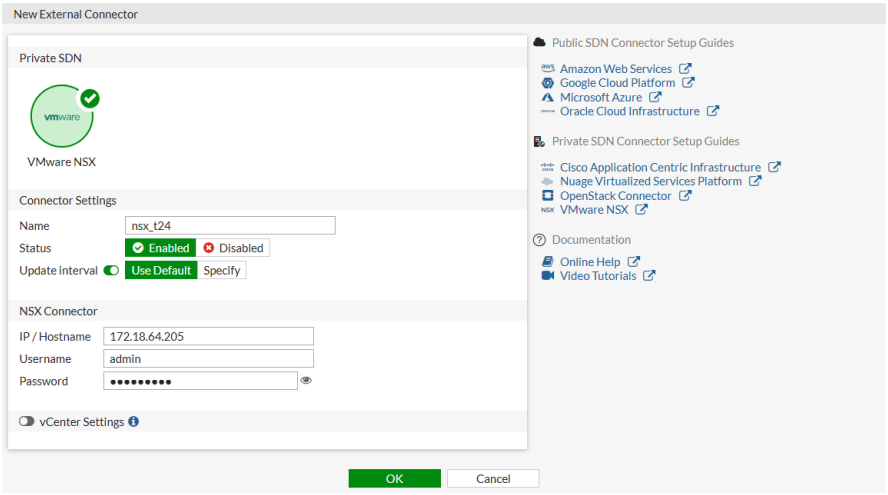
```
config firewall address
    edit "vmware-network"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "vmware1"
        set filter "vmnetwork=VLAN80"
        config list
            edit "192.168.8.240"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

VMware NSX-T Manager SDN connector using NSX-T Manager credentials

This feature provides SDN connector configuration for VMware NSX-T manager. You can import specific groups, or all groups from the NSX-T Manager.

To configure SDN connector for NSX-T Manager in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Private SDN* section, click *VMware NSX*.



3. Configure the settings and click *OK*.

To configure SDN connector for NSX-T Manager in the CLI:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx_t24"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.205"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
```

```
    next
end
```

To import a specific group from the NSX-T Manager:

```
# execute nsx group import nsx_t24 root csf_ns_group
[1] 336914ba-0660-4840-b0f1-9320f5c5ca5e csf_ns_group:
  Name:csf_ns_group
  Address:1.1.1.0
  Address:1.1.1.1
  Address:172.16.10.104
  Address:172.16.20.104
  Address:172.16.30.104
  Address:2.2.2.0
  Address:2.2.2.2
  Address:4.4.4.0
  Address:5.5.5.0
  Address:6.6.6.6
  Address:7.7.7.7
```

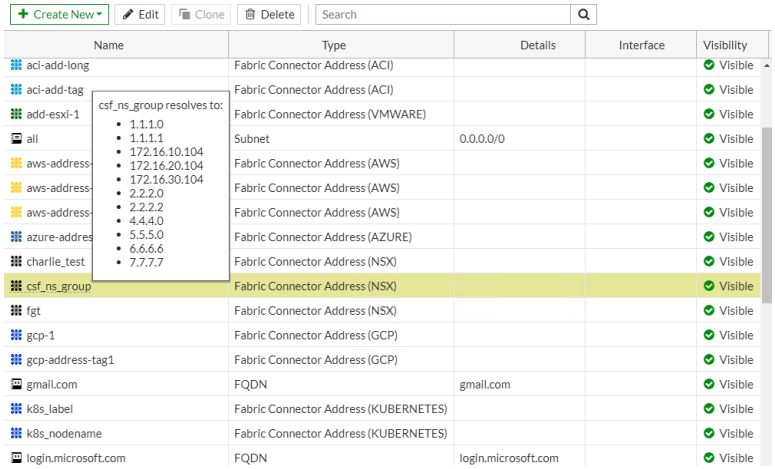
To import all groups from NSX-T Manager:

```
# execute nsx group import nsx_t24 root
[1] 663a7686-b9a3-4659-b06f-b45c908349a0 ServiceInsertion_NSGroup:
  Name:ServiceInsertion_NSGroup
  Address:10.0.0.2
[2] 336914ba-0660-4840-b0f1-9320f5c5ca5e csf_ns_group:
  Name:csf_ns_group
  Address:1.1.1.0
  Address:1.1.1.1
  Address:172.16.10.104
  Address:172.16.20.104
  Address:172.16.30.104
  Address:2.2.2.0
  Address:2.2.2.2
  Address:4.4.4.0
  Address:5.5.5.0
  Address:6.6.6.6
  Address:7.7.7.7
[3] c462ec4d-d526-4ceb-aeb5-3f168cecd89d charlie_test:
  Name:charlie_test
  Address:1.1.1.1
  Address:2.2.2.2
  Address:6.6.6.6
  Address:7.7.7.7
[4] ff4dcb08-53cf-46bd-bef4-f7aeda9c0ad9 fgt:
  Name:fgt
  Address:172.16.10.101
  Address:172.16.10.102
  Address:172.16.20.102
  Address:172.16.30.103
[5] 3dd7df0d-2baa-44e0-b88f-bd21a92eb2e5 yongyu_test:
  Name:yongyu_test
  Address:1.1.1.0
  Address:2.2.2.0
```

```
Address:4.4.4.0
Address:5.5.5.0
```

To view the dynamic firewall IP addresses that are resolved by the SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* to view the IP addresses resolved by an SDN connector.



To view the dynamic firewall IP addresses that are resolved by the SDN connector in the CLI:

```
# show firewall address csf_ns_group
config firewall address
    edit "csf_ns_group"
        set uuid ee4a2696-bacd-51e9-f828-59457565b880
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "nsx_t24"
        set obj-id "336914ba-0660-4840-b0f1-9320f5c5ca5e"
        config list
            edit "1.1.1.0"
            next
            edit "1.1.1.1"
            next
            edit "172.16.10.104"
            next
            edit "172.16.20.104"
            next
            edit "172.16.30.104"
            next
            edit "2.2.2.0"
            next
            edit "2.2.2.2"
            next
            edit "4.4.4.0"
            next
            edit "5.5.5.0"
            next
            edit "6.6.6.6"
            next
            edit "7.7.7.7"
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

Multiple concurrent SDN connectors

You can configure multiple instances configured for every SDN connector. The specific connector instance must be specified when creating a dynamic firewall address.

This topic provides examples of how to create two Microsoft Azure SDN connectors and use them in new dynamic firewall addresses.

To create and use two new SDN connectors with the CLI:

1. Create two new SDN connectors:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "azure1"
        set type azure
        set tenant-id "942b80cd-bbbb-42a1-8888-4b21dece61ba"
        set subscription-id "2f96c44c-cccc-4621-bbbb-65ba45185e0c"
        set client-id "14dbd5cc-3333-4ea4-8888-68738141feb1"
        set client-secret xxxxx
        set update-interval 30
    next
    edit "azure2"
        set type azure
        set tenant-id "942b80cd-bbbb-42a1-8888-4b21dece61ba"
        set client-id "3baa0acc-ffff-4444-b292-0777a2c36be6"
        set client-secret xxxxx
        set update-interval 30
    next
end
```

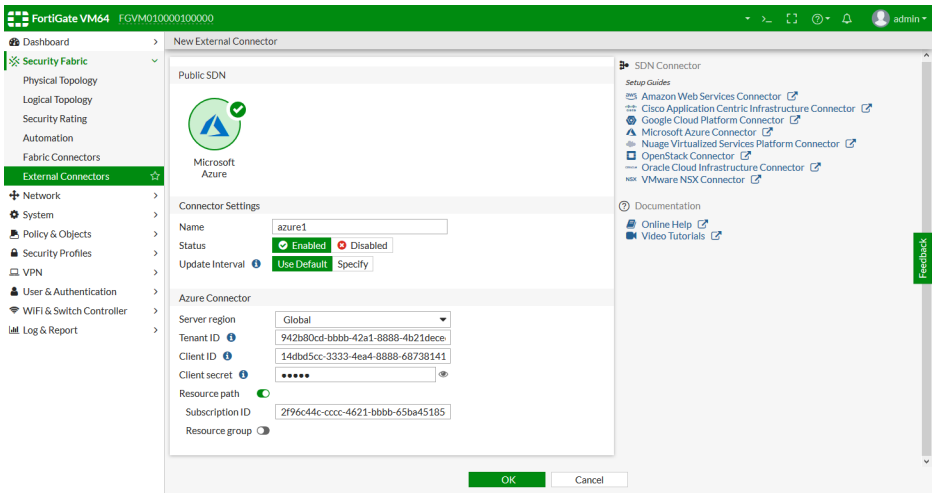
2. Create new dynamic firewall addresses that use the new connectors:

```
config firewall address
    edit "azure-address-location1"
        set type dynamic
        set color 2
        set sdn azure1
        set filter "location=WestUs"
    next
    edit "azure-address-location2"
        set type dynamic
        set color 2
        set sdn azure2
        set filter "location=NorthEurope"
    next
end
```

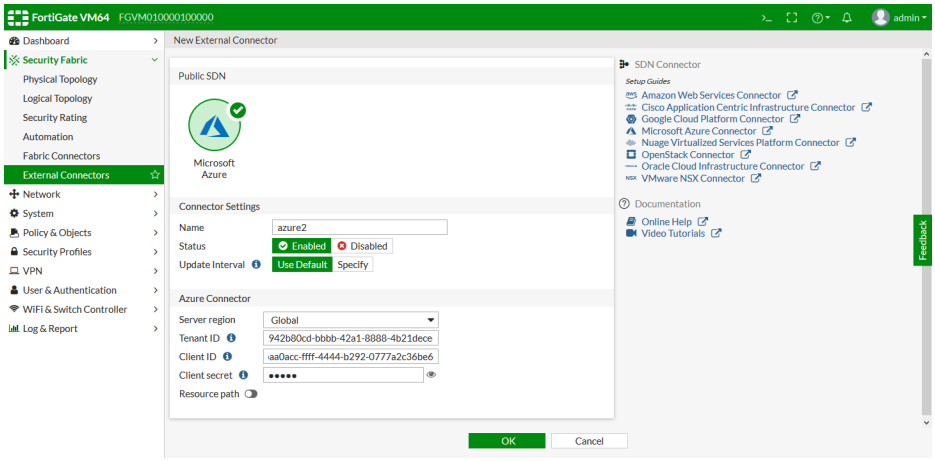
To create and use two new SDN connectors with the GUI:

1. Create two new SDN connectors:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, and click *Create New* in the toolbar.
   b. Click on *Microsoft Azure*.

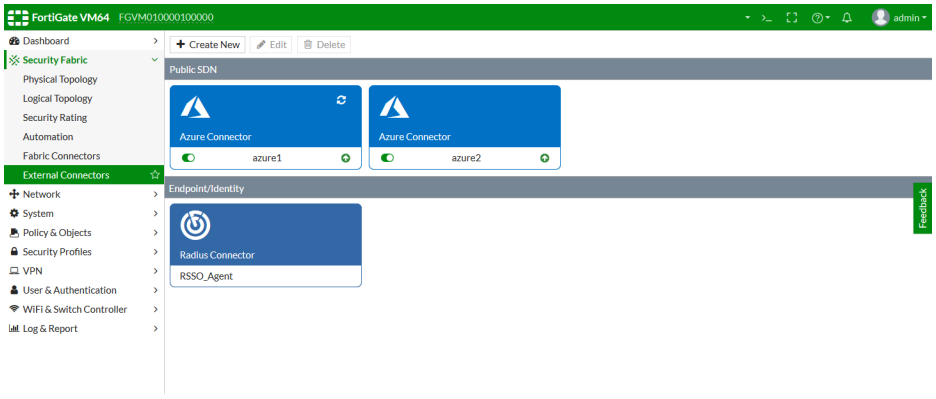
c. Fill in the required information, then click *OK*.



d. Repeat the steps for the second connector.

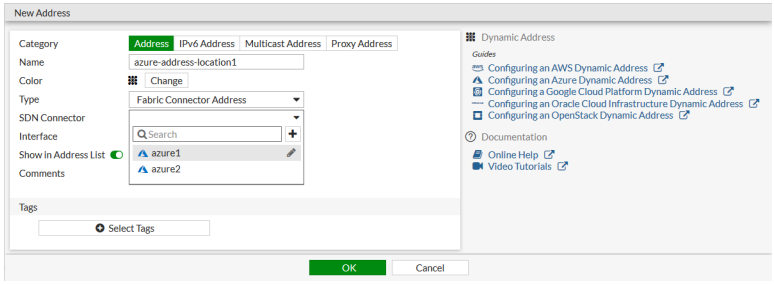


Two Microsoft Azure connectors will now be created.



2. Create new dynamic firewall addresses that use the new connectors:
   a. Go to *Policy and Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address* in the toolbar.
   b. Enter a name for the address, and select *Fabric Connector Address* for the *Type*.

c. Select one of the previously created SDN connectors from the *SDN Connector* drop down list.



d. Configure the rest of the required information, then click *OK* to create the address.

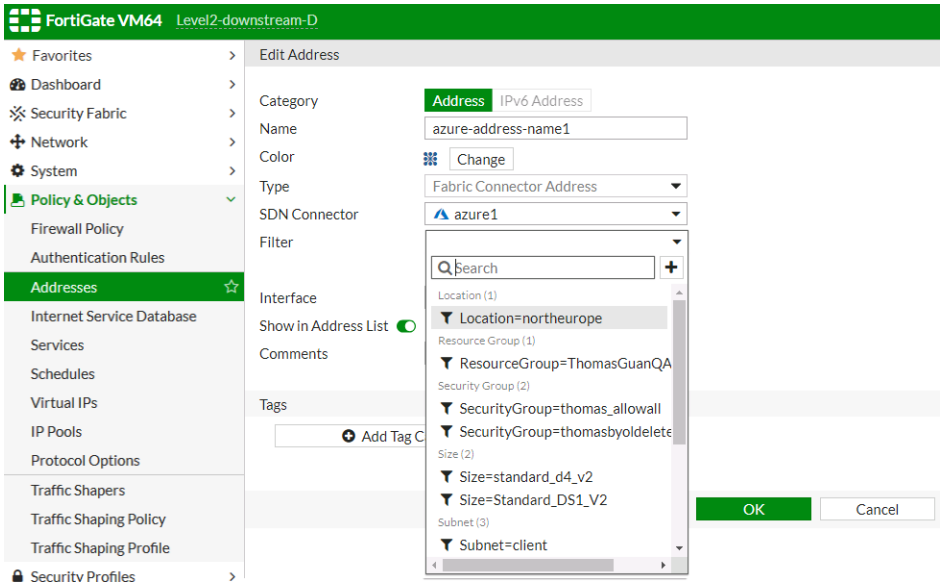
e. Repeat the steps to create the second address, selecting the other Microsoft Azure SDN connector.

Filter lookup in SDN connectors

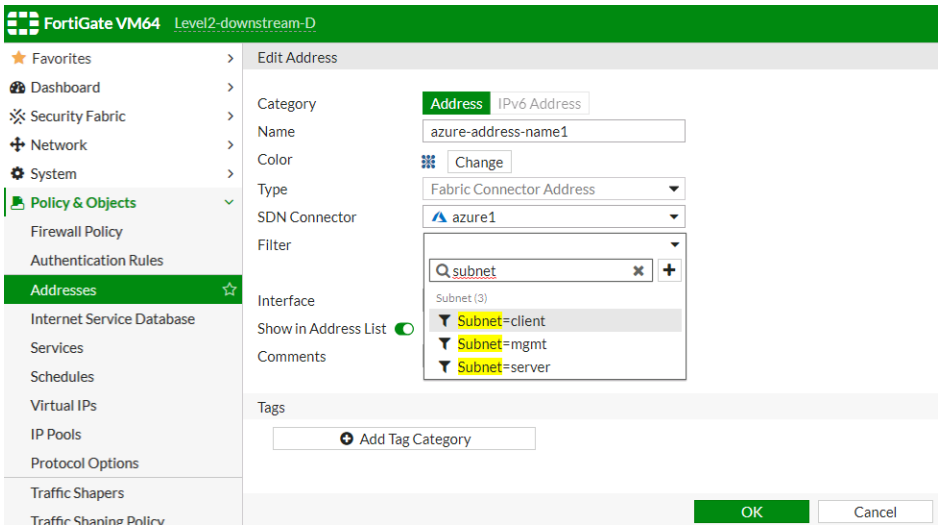
When configuring dynamic address mappings for filters in SDN connectors for Azure, GCP, OpenStack, Kubernetes, and AliCloud, FortiGate can query the filters automatically.

To use the filter lookup:

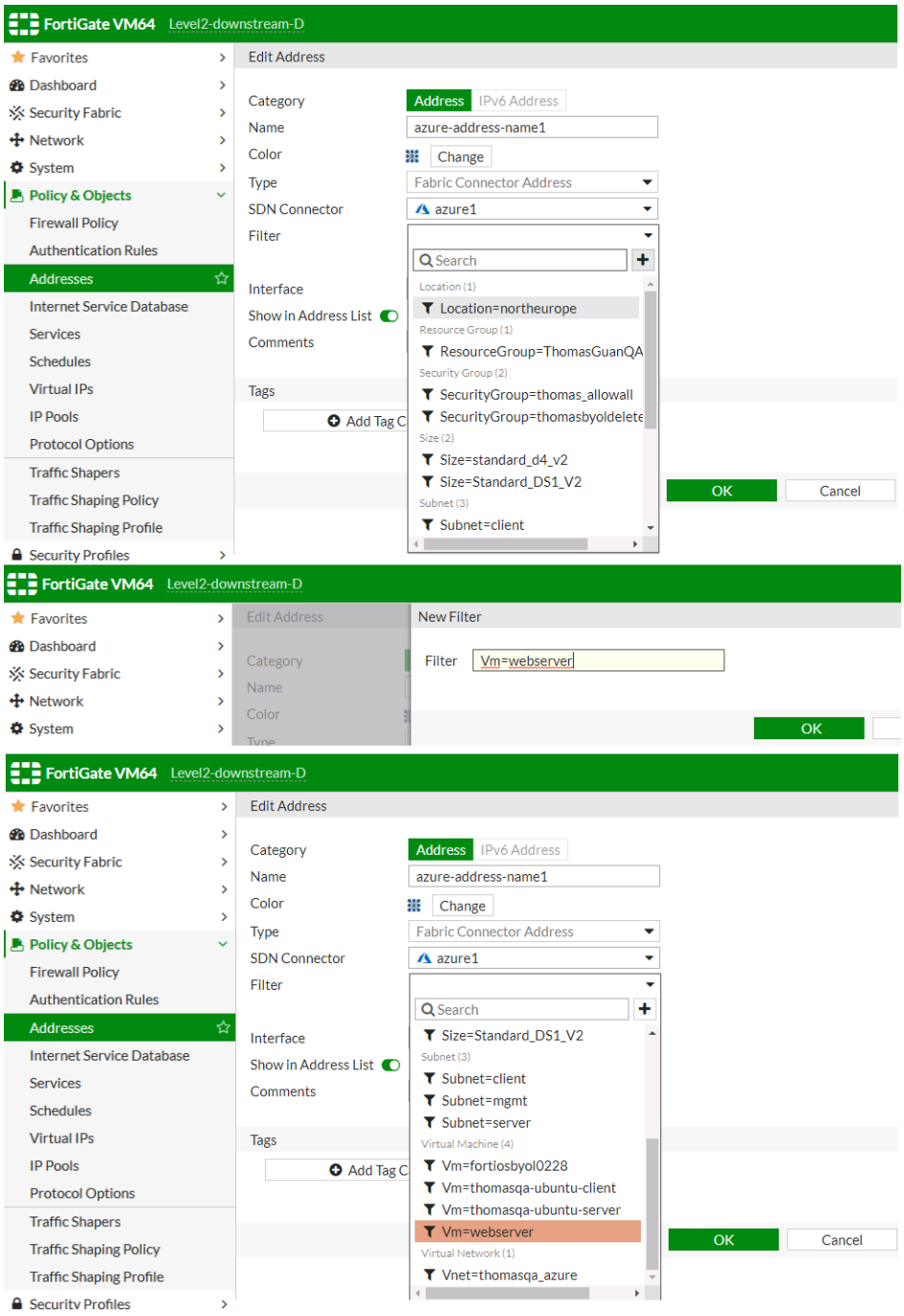
1. Navigate to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Create or edit an SDN connector type dynamic IP address.
   Supported SDN connector types include: AWS, Azure, GCP, OpenStack, Kubernetes, and AliCloud. The example below is for an Azure SDN connector.
3. In the address *Filter* field, you can perform the following actions:
   - List all available filters.



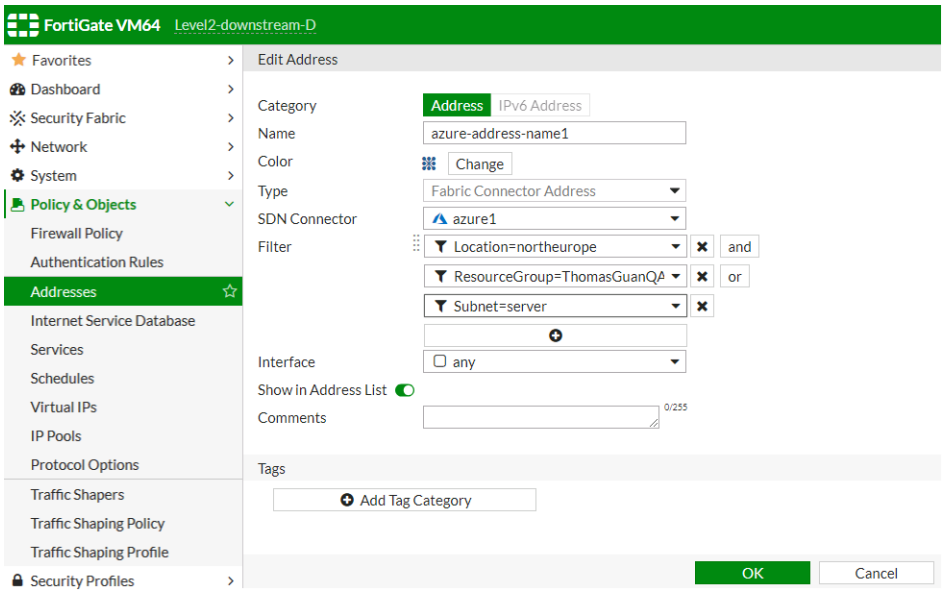
- Search the available filters.



- Create custom filters.



- Set filter logic [and|or].



Support for wildcard SDN connectors in filter configurations

Wildcards are supported for SDN connectors when configuring dynamic address filters.

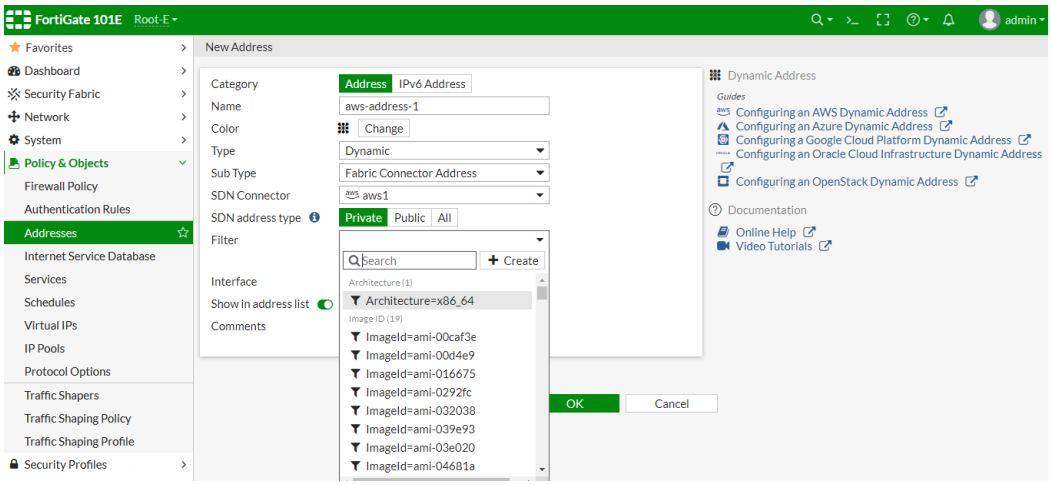
The following SDN connector types are currently supported:

- AWS
- Azure
- Google Cloud Platform
- Kubernetes
- OpenStack
- Oracle Cloud Infrastructure
- VMware ESXi

To configure a dynamic address filter for AWS in the GUI:

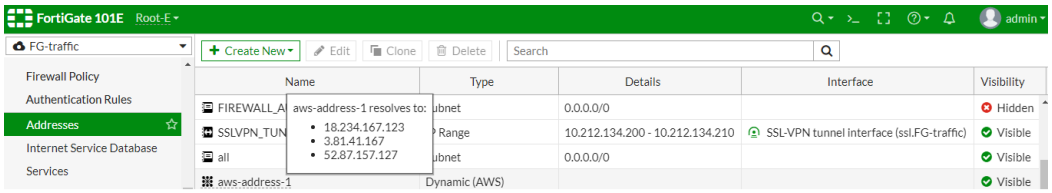
1. Create the SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Public SDN* section, click *Amazon Web Services (AWS)*.
   d. Configure the settings as needed.
   e. Click *OK*.
2. Create the dynamic firewall address:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Address*
   c. Enter a name for the address, then configure the following settings:
      - Set *Type* to *Dynamic*.
      - Set *Sub Type* to *Fabric Connector Address*.
      - Set *SDN Connector* to *aws1*.

- Set *SDN address type* to *Private*.
- For *Filter*, click *Create*, enter `Tag.Name=aws*`, the click *OK*.

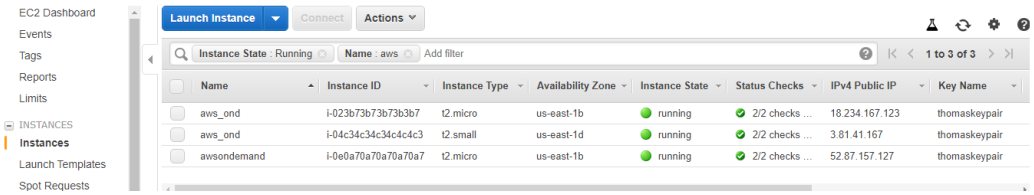


d. Click *OK*.

3. In the address table, hover over the address to view what IPs it resolves to.



4. In AWS, verify to confirm the IP addresses match.



To configure a dynamic address filter for AWS in the CLI:

1. Configure the SDN connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aws-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aws1"
        set filter "Tag.Name=aws*"
        set sdn-addr-type public
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address and verify where the IP addresses resolve to:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aws-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aws1"
```

```
            set filter "Tag.Name=aws*"
            set sdn-addr-type public
            config list
                edit "18.234.167.123"
                next
                edit "3.81.41.167"
                next
                edit "52.87.157.127"
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

3. In AWS, verify that the IP addresses match.

Endpoint/Identity connectors

SSO fabric connectors integrate SSO authentication into the network. This allows users to enter their credentials only once, and have those credentials reused when accessing other network resources through the FortiGate.

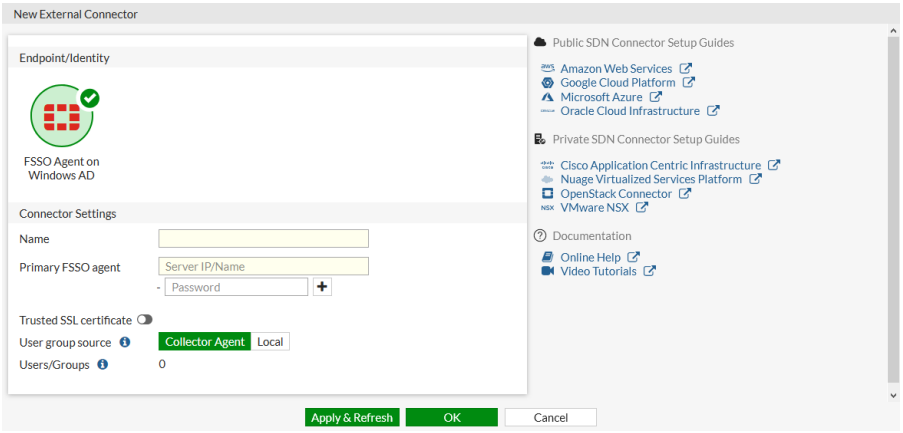
The following fabric connectors are available:

- Fortinet single sign-on agent on page 358
- Poll Active Directory server on page 359
- Symantec endpoint connector on page 359
- RADIUS single sign-on agent on page 365
- Exchange Server connector on page 368

Fortinet single sign-on agent

To create an FSSO agent connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *FSSO Agent on Windows AD*.



4. Fill in the *Name*, and *Primary FSSO Agent* server IP address or name and *Password*.

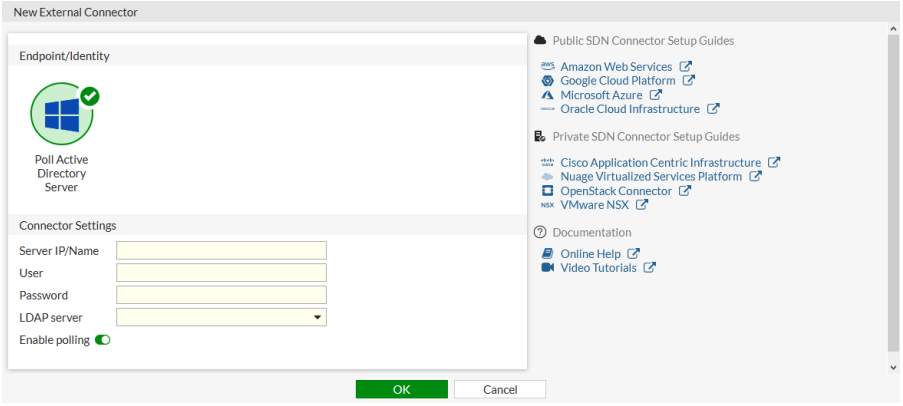
5. Optionally, add more FSSO agents by clicking the plus icon.
6. Optionally, enable *Trusted SSL certificate* and select or import a certificate.
7. Select the *User group source*:
   - *Collector Agent*: User groups will be pushed to the FortiGate from the collector agent. Click *Apply & Refresh* to fetch group filters from the collector agent.
   - *Local*: User groups will be specified in the FortiGate unit's configuration. Select the LDAP server from the list, then click *Edit* to select the *Users*, *Groups*, and *Organizational Units*. Optionally, enable *Proactively retrieve from LDAP server* and configure the *Search filter* and *Interval*.
8. Click *OK*.

Poll Active Directory server

The FortiGate unit can authenticate users and allow them network access based on groups membership in Windows Active Directory (AD).

To create an AD server connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Poll Active Directory Server*.



4. Fill in the *Server IP/Name*, *User*, and *Password* for the AD server.
5. Select the LDAP server from the list.
6. If necessary, disable *Enable Polling*. This can be used to temporarily stop the FortiGate from polling security event logs on the Windows logon server, for troubleshooting purposes.
7. Click *OK*.

Symantec endpoint connector

With the Fabric connector for Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager (SEPM), you can use the client IP information from SEPM to assign to dynamic IP addresses on FortiOS.

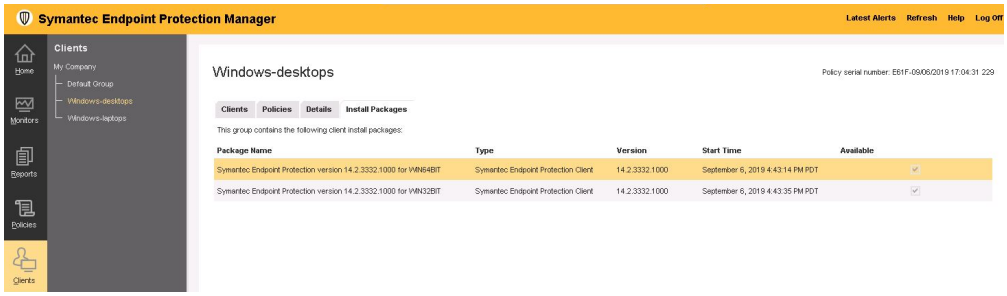
When communication between FortiGate and SEPM is established, FortiGate polls every minute for updates via TLS over port 8446. You can use the CLI to change the default one minute polling interval.

For example, you can create a dynamic Fabric Connector IP address subtype and use it in firewall policies as the source address. The dynamic IP address contains all IP addresses sent by SEPM.

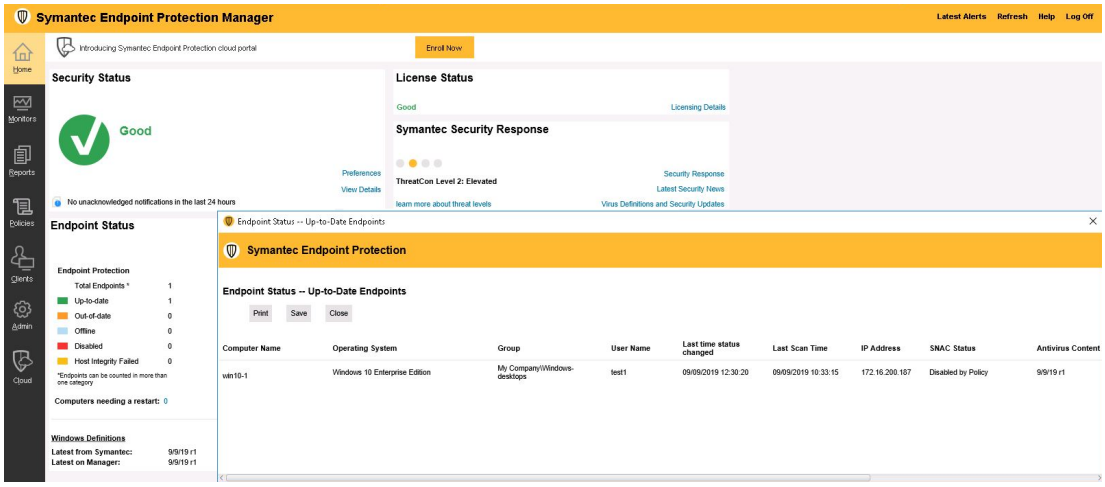
This example shows a dynamic IP address with SEPM and one client PC managed by SEPM using FortiGate as the default gateway.

To configure SEPM on a managed client PC:

1. In SEPM, create client packages for client hosts and group them into SEPM groups.
   You can install packages locally on clients or download them directly from SEPM.



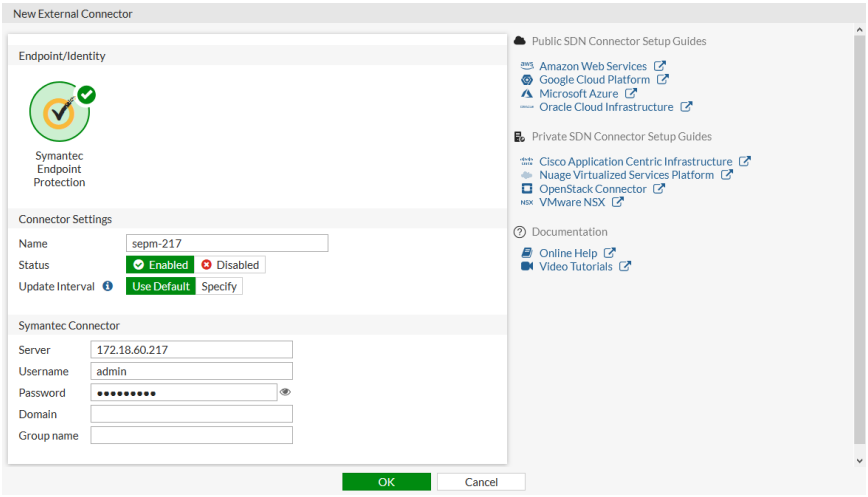
2. When a package is installed on the client host, the host is considered managed by SEPM.
   Even if the host has multiple interfaces, only one IP per host is displayed.



To configure Symantec endpoint connector on FortiGate in the GUI:

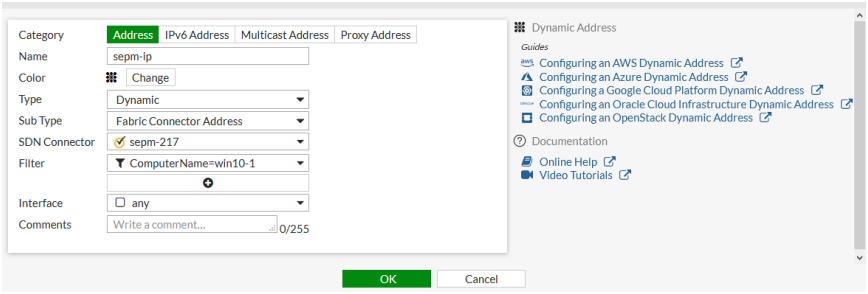
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*:
   a. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Symantec Endpoint Protection*.
   b. Fill in the *Name*, and set the *Status* and *Update Interval*.
   c. Set *Server* to the SEPM IP address.
   d. Enter the *Username* and *Password* for the server.

e. To limit the domain or group that is monitored, enter them in the requisite fields.



f. Click *OK*.
When the connection is established, you can see a green up arrow in the bottom right of the card. You might need to refresh your browser to see the established connection.

2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*:
   a. Fill in the address *Name*.
   b. Set *Type* to *Dynamic*.
   c. Set *Sub Type* to *Fabric Connector Address*.
   d. Set *SDN Connector* to the fabric connector that you just created.
   e. Add *Filters* as needed.



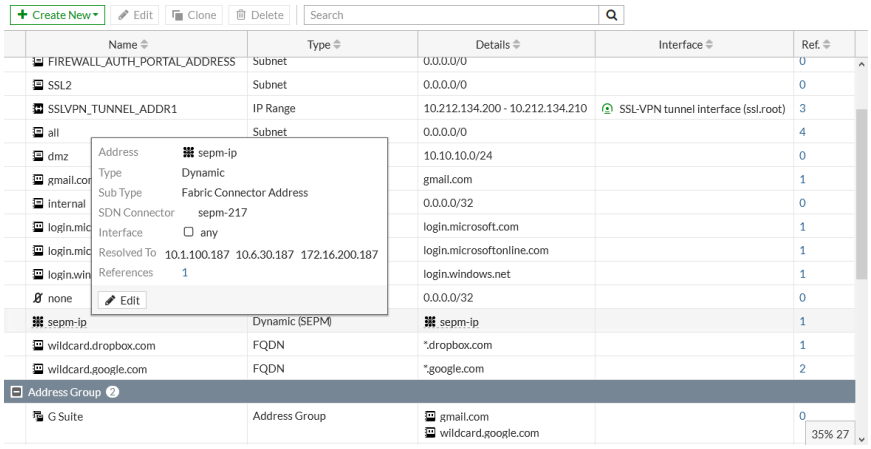
f. Click *OK*.



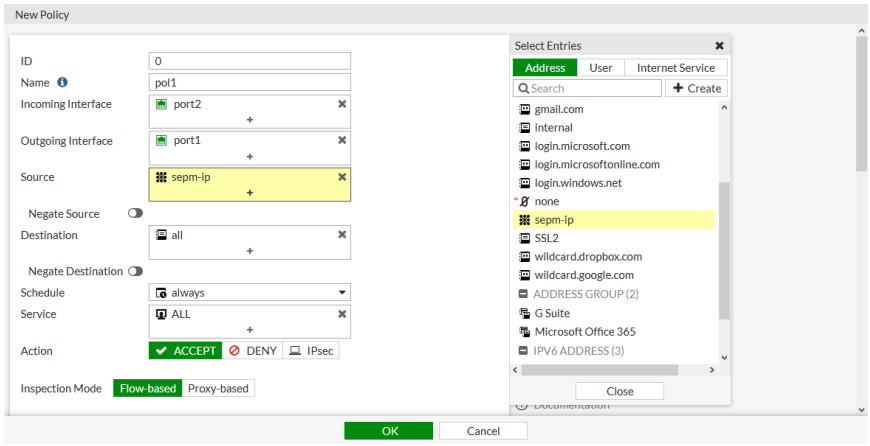
Filter options are only available for active computers that are configured and registered in SEPM. Free-form filters can be created manually by clicking *Create* and entering the filter, in the format: `filter_type=value`.

Possible manual filter types are: `GroupName`, `GroupID`, `ComputerName`, `ComputerUUID`, and `OSName`. For example: `GroupName=MyGroup`.

3. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and hover the cursor over the name of the new address to see the resolved IP addresses of the host.

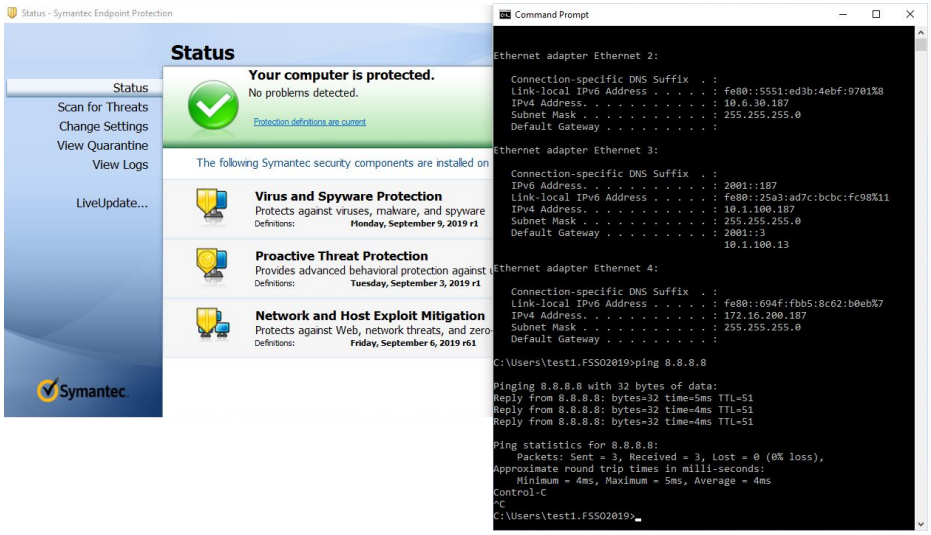


4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, click *Create New*, and add a policy that uses the dynamic IP address.

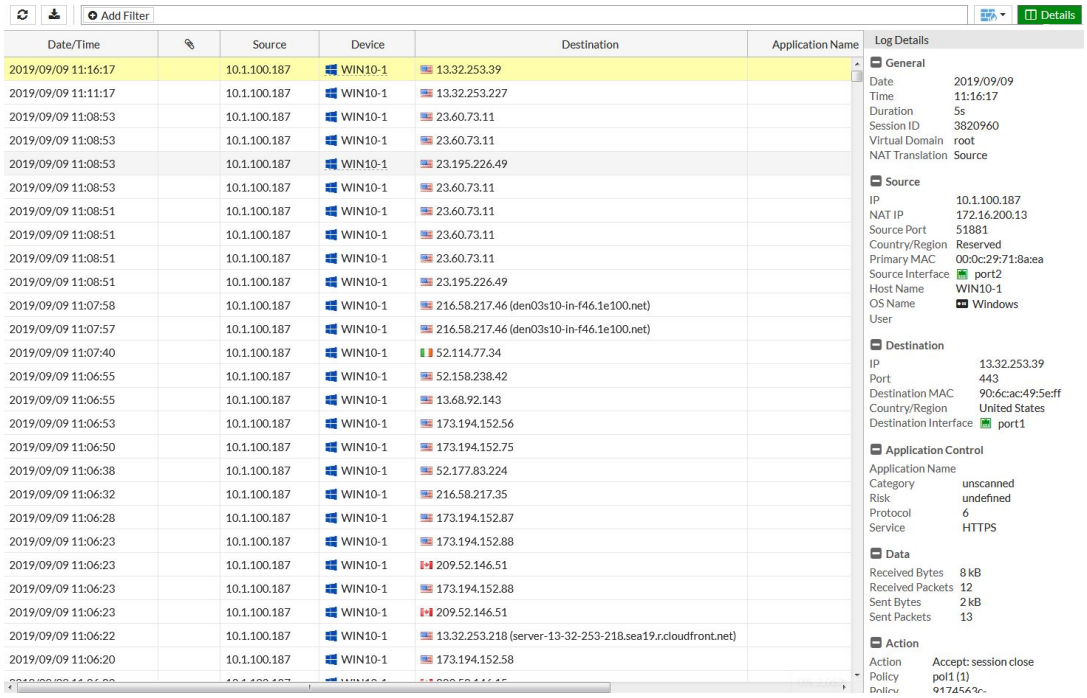


To verify the configuration:

1. On the client PC, check that it is managed by SEPM to access the Internet.



2. On the FortiGate, you can check in *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources* and *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.





Because this traffic is not authenticated traffic but is based on source IP address only, it is not shown in the GUI firewall monitor or in the `diagnose firewall auth list` CLI command.

To configure Symantec endpoint connector on FortiGate in the CLI:

1. Create the fabric connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "sepm-217"
        set type sepm
        set server "172.18.60.217"
        set username "admin"
        set password *********
        set status enable
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic IP address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "sepm-ip"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "sepm-217"
        set filter "ComputerName=win10-1"
        config list
            edit "10.1.100.187"
            next
            edit "10.6.30.187"
            next
```

```
            edit "172.16.200.187"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Add the dynamic IP address to the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "pol1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "sepm-ip"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To troubleshoot Symantec SD connector in the CLI:

```
# diagnose debug application sepmd -1

Output is sent every minute (default). All IPv4 learned from SEPM. IPv6 also sent but not
yet supported.

2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd checking firewall address object sepm-ip, vd 0
2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 finish updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd reap child pid: 18079
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 prepare to update
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepm-217 sdn connector will retrieve token after 9526 secs
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 172.16.200.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.6.30.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.1.100.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:02:09 2001:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0187 is not in IPv4 presentation
```

```
format


2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd checking firewall address object sepm-ip, vd 0
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 finish updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd reap child pid: 18089
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 prepare to update
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sepm-217 sdn connector will retrieve token after 9466 secs
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 172.16.200.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.6.30.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.1.100.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:03:09 2001:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0187 is not in IPv4 presentation
format
```

To list the SEPM daemon SDN connectors:

```
# diagnose test application sepmd 1
sepm SDN connector list:
  name: sepm-217, status: enabled, updater_interval: 60
```

To list the SEPM daemon SDN filters:

```
# diagnose test application sepmd 2
sepm SDN connector sepm-217 filter list:
  name: sepm-ip, vd 0, filter 'ComputerName=win10-1'
```

RADIUS single sign-on agent

With RADIUS single sign-on (RSSO), a FortiGate can authenticate users who have authenticated on a remote RADIUS server. Based on which user group the user belongs to, the security policy applies the appropriate UTM profiles.

The FortiGate does not interact with the remote RADIUS server; it only monitors RADIUS accounting records that the server forwards (originating from the RADIUS client). These records include the user IP address and user group. The remote RADIUS server sends the following accounting messages to the FortiGate:

Message	Action
Start	If the information in the start message matches the RSSO configuration on the FortiGate, the user is added to the local list of authenticated firewall users.

Message	Action
Stop	The user is removed from the local list of authenticated firewall users because the user session no longer exists on the RADIUS server.

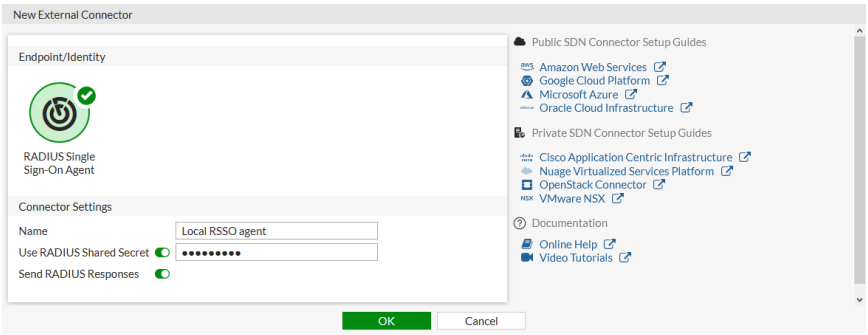
You can configure an RSSO agent connector using the FortiOSGUI; however, in most cases, you will need to use the CLI. There are some default options you may need to modify, which can only be done in the CLI.

To configure an RSSO agent connector:

1. Create the new connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *RADIUS Single Sign-On Agent*. The *New Fabric Connector* pane opens.
   d. Enter the connector name.
   e. Enable *Use RADIUS Shared Secret*.

   The value entered in *Use RADIUS Shared Secret* must be identical to what the remote RADIUS server uses to authenticate when it sends RADIUS accounting messages to the FortiGate.

   f. Enable *Send RADIUS Responses*.

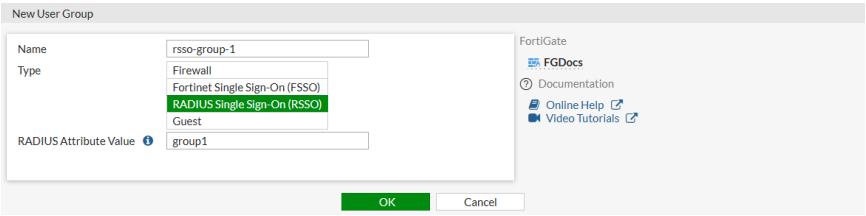


   You should enable *Send RADIUS Responses* because some RADIUS servers continue to send the same RADIUS accounting message several times if there is no response.

   g. Click *OK*.
2. Edit the network interface:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Double-click the interface that will receive the RADIUS accounting messages. The *Edit Interface* pane opens.
   c. In the *Administrative Access* section, select the *RADIUS Accounting* checkbox. This will open listening for port 1813 on this interface. The FortiGate will then be ready to receive RADIUS accounting messages.
   d. Click *OK*.
3. Create a local RSSO user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Enter the group name.

d. For the *Type* field, click *RADIUS Single-Sign-ON (RSSO)*.

e. Enter a value for *RADIUS Attribute Value*.
This value by default is the class attribute. The FortiGate uses the content of this attribute in RADIUS accounting start messages to map a user to a FortiGate group, which then can be used in firewall policies.
In this example configuration, the FortiGate will only add a remote RADIUS user to the local firewall user list if the class attribute in the RADIUS accounting START message contains the value group1.



If your users are in multiple groups, you will need to add multiple local RSSO user group.

If the RADIUS attribute value used to map users to a local RSSO group is different than the RADIUS attribute in the RADIUS accounting messages forwarded by the server, you must change it in the CLI.

f. Click *OK*.

4. Edit the local RSSO agent to modify default options using the CLI.
For example, the default value for `rsso-endpoint-attribute` might work in common remote access scenarios where users are identified by their unique `Calling-Station-Id`, but in other scenarios the user name might be in a different attribute.

```
config user radius
    edit "Local RSSO Agent"
        set rsso-endpoint-attribute <attribute>
        set sso-attribute <attribute>
    next
end
```

5. Add the local RSSO user group to a firewall policy.

Verifying the RSSO configuration

Verification requires a working remote RADIUS server configured for RADIUS accounting forwarding and wireless or wired clients that use RADIUS for user authentication.

For a quick test, you can use one of the publicly available RADIUS test tools to send RADIUS accounting start and stop messages to the FortiGate. You can also use radclient.

To verify the RSSO configuration:

1. In radclient, enter the RADIUS attributes. These attributes are then executed with the FortiGate IP parameters (sends accounting messages to port 1813) and shared password you configured. `-x` is used for verbose output:

```
root@ControlPC:~# echo "Acct-Status-Type =Start,Framed-Ip-Address=10.1.100.185,User-
Name=test2,Acct-Session-Id=0211a4ef,Class=group1,Calling-Station-Id=00-0c-29-44-BE-B8" |
 radclient -x 10.1.100.1 acct 123456
Sending Accounting-Request of id 180 to 10.1.100.1 port 1813
        Acct-Status-Type = Start
        Framed-IP-Address = 10.1.100.185
        User-Name = "test2"
        Acct-Session-Id = "0211a4ef"
        Class = 0x67726f757031
        Calling-Station-Id = "00-0c-29-44-BE-B8"
rad_recv: Accounting-Response packet from host 10.1.100.1 port 1813, id=180, length=20
root@ControlPC:~#
```

2. Verify that the user is in the local firewall user list with the correct type (`rsso`) and local firewall group (`rsso-group1`):

```
# diagnose firewall auth l

10.1.100.185, test2
        type: rsso, id: 0, duration: 5, idled: 5
        flag(10): radius
        server: vdom1
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 3
        group_name: rsso-group-1

----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

Exchange Server connector

FortiGate can collect additional information about authenticated users from corporate Microsoft Exchange Servers. After a user logs in, the additional information can be viewed in various parts of the GUI.

The Exchange connector must be mapped to the LDAP server that is used for authentication.

The following attributes are retrieved:

USER_INFO_FULL_NAME	USER_INFO_COMPANY	USER_INFO_CITY
USER_INFO_FIRST_NAME	USER_INFO_DEPARTMENT	USER_INFO_STATE
USER_INFO_LAST_NAME	USER_INFO_GROUP	USER_INFO_POSTAL_CODE
USER_INFO_LOGON_NAME	USER_INFO_TITLE	USER_INFO_COUNTRY
USER_INFO_TELEPHONE	USER_INFO_MANAGER	USER_INFO_ACCOUNT_EXPIRES
USER_INFO_EMAIL	USER_INFO_STREET	
USER_INFO_USER_PHOTO	USER_INFO_POST_OFFICE_BOX	

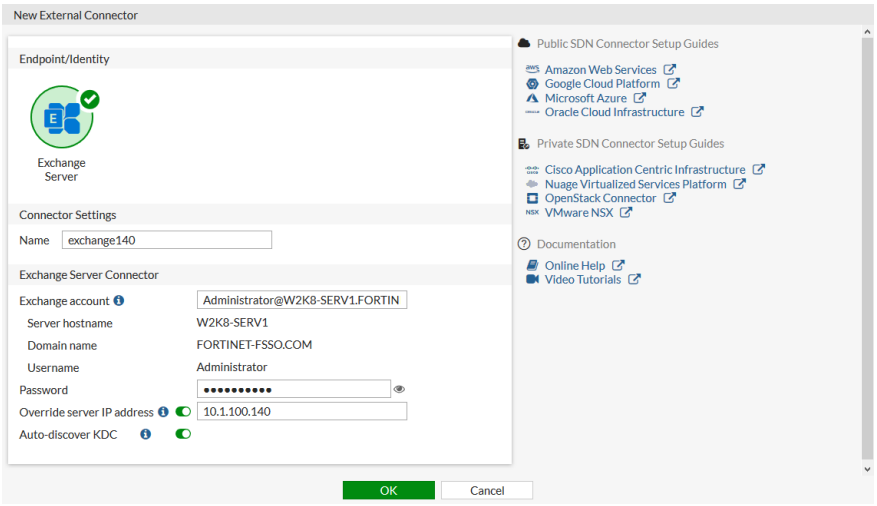
Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC) automatic discovery is enabled by default. The FortiGate must be able to use DNS to resolve the KDC IP addresses, otherwise the FortiGate will be unable to retrieve additional user information from the Exchange Server.

KDC automatic discovery can be disabled, and one or more internal IP addresses that the FortiGate can reach can be configured for KDC.

The Override server IP address is enabled when the IP address of the Exchange server cannot be resolved by DNS and must be entered manually.

To configure an Exchange connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Exchange Server*.
3. Set *Name* to *exchange140*.
4. Set *Exchange account* to *Administrator@W2K8-SERV1.FORTINET-FSSO.COM*. *Administrator* is the username, *W2K8-SERV1* is the exchange server name, and *FORTINET-FSSO.COM* is the domain name.
5. Set *Password* to the password.
6. Enable *Override server IP address* and set it to *10.1.100.140*.
7. Ensure that *Auto-discover KDC* is enabled.

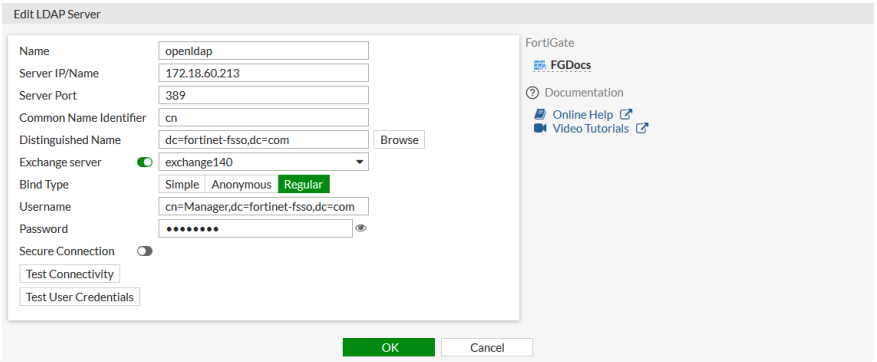


If *Auto-discover KDC* is disabled, one or more KDC IP addresses can be manually entered.

8. Click *OK*.

To link the connector to the LDAP server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
2. Edit an existing LDAP server, or click *Create New* to create a new one.
3. Enable *Exchange server*, and select the connector from the list.
4. Configure the remaining settings as required.



5. Click *OK*.

To configure an Exchange connector with automatic KDC discovery in the CLI:

```
config user exchange
    edit "exchange140"
        set server-name "W2K8-SERV1"
        set domain-name "FORTINET-FSSO.COM"
        set username "Administrator"
        set password **********
        set ip 10.1.100.140
        set auto-discover-kdc enable
    next
end
```

To link the connector to the LDAP server in the CLI:

```
config user ldap
    edit "openldap"
        set server "172.18.60.213"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Manager,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set group-object-filter "(&(objectclass=groupofnames)(member=*))"
        set member-attr "member"
        set user-info-exchange-server "exchange140"
    next
end
```

Verification

To verify that KDC auto-discovery is working:

```
# diagnose wad debug enable category all
# diagnose wad debug enable level verbose
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose wad user exchange test-auto-discover
```

```
wad_diag_session_acceptor(3115): diag socket 20 accepted.
__wad_fmem_open(557): fmem=0x12490bd8, fmem_name='cmem 9188 bucket', elm_sz=9188, block_
sz=73728, overhead=0, type=advanced
Starting auto-discover test for all configured user-exchanges.
[NOTE]: If any errors are returned, try manually configuring IPs for the reported errors.

wad_rpc_nspi_test_autodiscover_kdc(1835): Starting DNS SRV request for srv(0x7f938e052050)
query(_kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM)
wad_dns_send_srv_query(705): 1:0: sending DNS SRV request for remote peer _kerberos._
udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM id=0
1: DNS response received for remote host _kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM req-id=0
wad_dns_parse_srv_resp(409): _kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM: resp_type(SUCCESS)
  srv[0]: name(w2k12-serv1.fortinet-fsso.com) port(88) priority(0) weight(100)
    addr[0]: 10.1.100.131
    addr[1]: 10.6.30.131
    addr[2]: 172.16.200.131
```

```
    addr[3]: 2003::131
    addr[4]: 2001::131
  srv[1]: name(fsso-core-DC.Fortinet-FSSO.COM) port(88) priority(0) weight(100)
    addr[0]: 10.6.30.16
    addr[1]: 172.16.200.16
  srv[2]: name(w2k12-serv1.Fortinet-FSSO.COM) port(88) priority(0) weight(100)
    addr[0]: 10.1.100.131
    addr[1]: 172.16.200.131
    addr[2]: 10.6.30.131
    addr[3]: 2001::131
    addr[4]: 2003::131
wad_rpc_nspi_dns_on_discover_kdc_done(1787): Received response for DNS autodiscover req
(0x7f938dfe8050) query(_kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM) n_rsp(3)

Completed auto-discover test for all configured user-exchanges.
```

To check the collected information after the user has been authenticated:

1. In the GUI, go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*, expand the *Firewall Users* widget, and hover over the user name.
2. In the CLI, run the following diagnose command:

```
# diagnose wad user info 20 test1
'username' = 'test1'
'sourceip' = '10.1.100.185'
'vdom' = 'root'
'cn' = 'test1'
'givenName' = 'test1'
'sn' = 'test101'
'userPrincipalName' = 'test1@Fortinet-FSSO.COM'
'telephoneNumber' = '604-123456'
'mail' = 'test1@fortinet-fsso.com'
'thumbnailPhoto' = '/tmp/wad/user_info/76665fff62ffffffffffffffffff75ff68fffffffa'
'company' = 'Fortinet'
'department' = 'Release QA'
'memberOf' = 'CN=group321,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'memberOf' = 'CN=g1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'memberOf' = 'CN=group21,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'memberOf' = 'CN=group1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'manager' = 'CN=test6,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'streetAddress' = 'One Backend Street 1901'
'l' = 'Burnaby'
'st' = 'BC'
'postalCode' = '4711'
'co' = 'Canada'
'accountExpires' = '9223372036854
```

If the results are not as expected, verify what information FortiGate can collect from the Exchanger Server:

```
# diagnose test application wad 2500
# diagnose test application wad 162
```

Threat feeds

Threat feeds dynamically import an external block lists from an HTTP server in the form of a plain text file. Block lists can be used to enforce special security requirements, such as long term policies to always block access to certain websites, or short term requirements to block access to known compromised locations. The lists are dynamically imported, so that any changes are immediately imported by FortiOS.

There are four types of threat feeds:

FortiGuard Category	The file contains one URL per line. It is available as a *Remote Category* in Web Filter profiles, SSL inspection exemptions, and proxy addresses. See Web rating override on page 1472 for more information.
	Example:
	`http://example/com.url`
	`https://example.com/url`
	`http://example.com:8080/url`

IP Address	The file contains one IP/IP range/subnet per line. It is available as an *External IP Block List* in DNS Filter profiles, and as a *Source/Destination* in IPv4, IPv6, and proxy policies.
	Example:
	`192.168.2.100`
	`172.200.1.4/16`
	`172.16.1.2/24`
	`172.16.8.1-172.16.8.100`
	`2001:0db8::eade:27ff:fe04:9a01/120`
	`2001:0db8::eade:27ff:fe04:aa01-2001:0db8::eade:27ff:fe04:ab01`

Domain Name	The file contains one domain per line. Simple wildcards are supported. It is available as a *Remote Category* in DNS Filter profiles. See External resources for DNS filter on page 378 for more information.
	Example:
	`mail.*.example.com`
	`*-special.example.com`
	`www.*example.com`
	`example.com`

Malware Hash	The file contains one hash per line in the format `<hex hash> [optional hash description]`. Each line supports MD5, SHA1, and SHA256 hex hashes. It is automatically used for virus outbreak prevention on antivirus profiles with `external-blocklist` enabled.
	Note: For optimal performance, do not mix different hashes in the list. Only use one of MD5, SHA1, or SHA256.
	Example:
	`292b2e6bb027cd4ff4d24e338f5c48de`
	`dda37961870ce079defbf185eeeef905 Trojan-Ransom.Win32.Locky.abfl`
	`3fa86717650a17d075d856a41b3874265f8e9eab Trojan-Ransom.Win32.Locky.abfl`
	`c35f705df9e475305c0984b05991d444450809c35dd1d96106bb8e7128b9082f Trojan-Ransom.Win32.Locky.abfl`
	See External malware block list on page 1295 for an example.

External resources file format

File format requirements for an external resources file:

- The file is in plain text format with each URL list, IP address, domain name, or malware hash occupying one line.
- The file is limited to 10 MB or 128 × 1024 (131072) entries, whichever limit is hit first.
- The entry limit also follows the table size limitation defined by CMDB per model.
- The external resources update period can be set to 1 minute, hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly (43200 min, 30 days).
- The external resources type as category (URL list) and domain (domain name list) share the category number range 192 to 221 (total of 30 categories).
- There is no duplicated entry validation for the external resources file (entry inside each file or inside different files).
- If the number of entries exceed the limit, a warning is displayed. Additional entries beyond the threshold will not be loaded.

For domain name list (type = domain):

- Simple wildcards are allowed in the domain name list, for example: *.test.com.
- IDN (international domain name) is supported.

For IP address list (type = address):

- The IP address can be a single IP address, subnet address, or address range. For example, 192.168.1.1, 192.168.10.0/24, or 192.168.100.1-192.168.100.254.
- The address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. An IPv6 address does not need to be in [ ] format.

For URL list (type=category):

- The scheme is optional, and will be truncated if found; https:// and http:// are not required.
- Wildcards are allowed at the beginning or end or the URL, for example: *.domain.com or domain.com.*.
- IDN and UTF encoding URL are supported .
- The URL can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. An IPv6 URL must be in [ ] format.

To determine the external resource table size limit for your device:

```
# print tablesize
...
system.external-resource: 0 256 512
...
```

For this device, a FortiGate 60E, the global limit is 512 and the limit per VDOM is 256.

Create a threat feed

To create a threat feed in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Thread Feeds* section, click on the required feed type.

4. Configure the connector settings:

Name	Enter a name for the threat feed connector.
URI of external resource	Enter the link to the external resource file. The file should be a plain text file with one entry on each line.
HTTP basic authentication	Enable/disable basic HTTP authentication. When enabled, enter the username and password in the requisite fields.
Refresh Rate	The time interval to refresh the external resource, in minutes (1 - 43200, default = 5). The applicable threat feed will be triggered to refresh between 0 minutes and the configured value. When the refresh is triggered, if another task is being processed be the schedule worker, the refresh task will be added to the queue.
Comments	Optionally, enter a description of the connector.
Status	Enable/disable the connector.

5. Click *OK*.

To create a threat feed in the CLI:

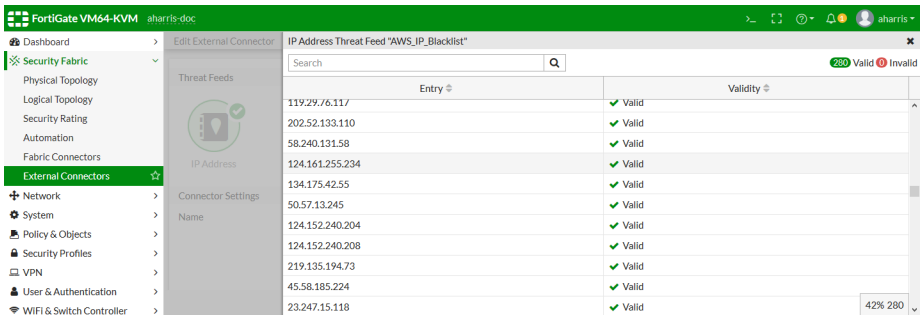
```
config system external-resource
    edit <name>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set type {category | address | domain | malware}
        set category <integer>
        set username <string>
        set password <string>
        set comments <string>
        *set resource <resource-uri>
        set user-agent <string>
        *set refresh-rate <integer>
        set source-ip <ip address>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    next
end
```

Parameters marked with an asterisk (*) are mandatory and must be filled in. Other parameters either have default values or are optional.

Update history

To review the update history of a threat feed, go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, select a feed, and click *Edit*. The *Last Update* field shows the date and time that the feed was last updated.

Click *View Entries* to view the current entries in the list.



External blocklist – Policy

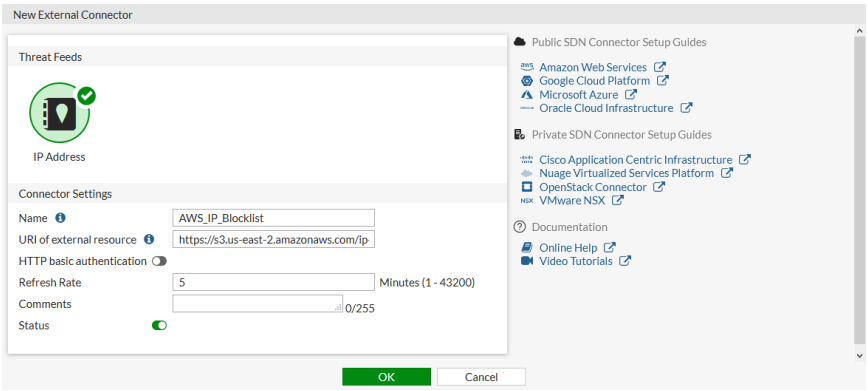
You can use the external blocklist (threat feed) for web filtering, DNS, and in firewall policies.

Sample configuration

In this example, an IP address blocklist connector is created so that it can be used in a firewall policy.

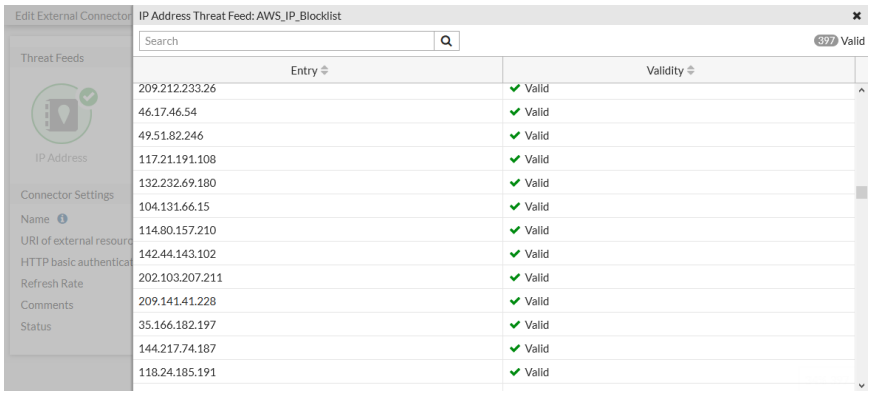
To configure an external block list connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Threat Feeds* section, click *IP Address*.
3. Set *Name* to *AWS_IP_Blocklist*.
4. Set the *URI of external resource* to *https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/ip-blocklist/ip.txt*.



5. Configure the remaining settings as required, then click *OK*.

6. Edit the connector, then click *View Entries* to view the IP addresses in the feed.



The blocklist can now be used in web filter and DNS profiles, and in firewall policies.

To configure an external block list connector in the CLI:

```
config system external-resource
   edit "AWS_IP_Blocklist"
      set status enable
      set type address
      set username ' '
      set password *********
      set comments ''
      set resource "https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/ip-blocklist/ip.txt"
      set refresh-rate 15
   next
end
```

To apply an external block list to a firewall policy in the CLI:

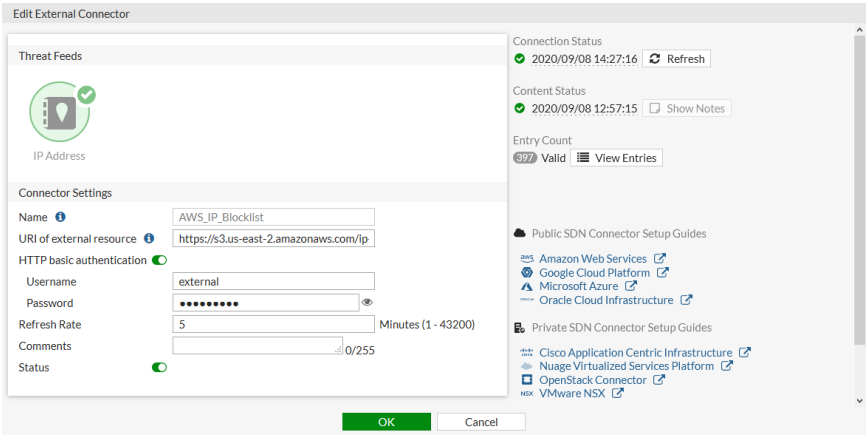
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "policyid-1"
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "AWS_IP_Blocklist"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set logtraffic all
      set auto-asic-offload disable
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

External blocklist - Authentication

Thread feed external connectors support username and password authentication.

To enable username and password authentication in a thread feed connector:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Edit an existing *Threat Feed* or create a new one by selecting *Create New*.
3. Enable *HTTP basic authentication*
4. Enter the *Username* and *Password*.



5. Click *OK*.

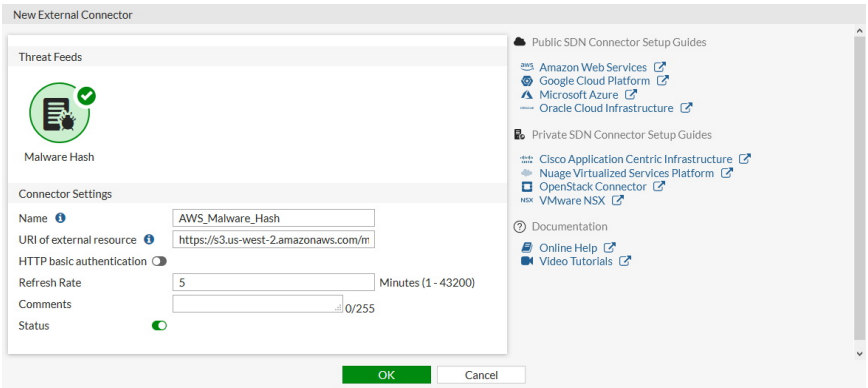
External blocklist - File hashes

The malware hash threat feed connector supports a list of file hashes that can be used as part of virus outbreak prevention.

This example retrieves a malware hash from an Amazon S3 bucket, and then enables malware block lists in a antivirus profile.

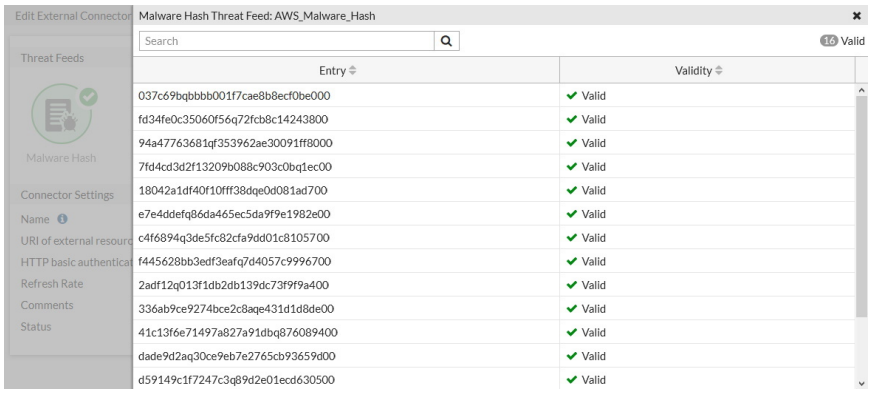
To configure a malware hash connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Threat Feeds* section, click *Malware Hash*.
3. Set *Name* to *AWS_Malware_Hash*.
4. Set the *URI of external resource* to *https://s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/malware-hash-feeds/fortinet-malware-hash-list*.



5. Click *OK*.

6. Edit the connector, then click *View Entries* to view the hash list.



7. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus* and create a new profile, or edit an existing one.
8. Enable *Use External Malware Block List*.
9. Click *Apply*.

To configure a malware hash connector in the CLI:

```
config system external-resource
    edit "AWS_Malware_Hash"
        set type malware
        set resource "https://s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/malware-hash-feeds/fortinet-
malware-hash-list"
    next
end

config antivirus profile
    edit "av-profile"
        config outbreak-prevention
            set external-blocklist enable
        end
    next
end
```

Logs

The `filehash` and `filehashsrc` are included in outbreak prevention detection event logs.

This example shows the log generated when a file is detected by external malware hash list outbreak prevention:

```
1: date=2018-07-30 time=13:59:41 logid="0207008212" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="malware-list" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1532984381 msg="Blocked by
local malware list." action="blocked" service="HTTP" sessionid=174963 srcip=192.168.101.20
dstip=172.16.67.148 srcport=37045 dstport=80 srcintf="lan" srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="wan1"
dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming" filename="mhash_block.com"
checksum="90f0cb57" quarskip="No-skip" virus="mhash_block.com" dtype="File Hash"
filehash="93bdd30bd381b018b9d1b89e8e6d8753" filehashsrc="test_list"
url="http://172.16.67.148/mhash_block.com" profile="mhash_test" agent="Firefox/43.0"
analyticssubmit="false"
```

External resources for DNS filter

External resources provides the ability to dynamically import an external block list into an HTTP server. This feature enables the FortiGate to retrieve a dynamic URL, domain name, IP address, or malware hash list from an external HTTP server periodically. The FortiGate uses these external resources as the web filter's remote categories, DNS filter's remote categories, policy address objects, or antivirus profile's malware definitions. If external resources are updated, FortiGate objects are also updated dynamically.

External resource is divided into four types:

- URL list (type = category)
- Domain name list (type = domain)
- IP address list (type = address)
- Malware hash list (type = malware)

Remote categories and external IP block list

The DNS filter profile can use two types of external resources: *domain type* (domain name list) and *address type* (IP address list).

When a *domain type* external resource is configured, it is treated as a remote category in the DNS filter profile. If the domain name in DNS query matches the entry in this external resource file, it is treated as the remote category and follows the action configured for this category in DNS filter profile.

When an *address type* external resource is configured, it can be enabled as *external-ip-blocklist* in DNS filter profile. If a DNS resolved IP address in DNS response matches the entry in the *external-ip-blocklist*, this DNS query is blocked by the DNS filter.

For external resources file format and limits, see External resources file format on page 373.

Configuring external resources in the CLI

In the CLI, you can configure external resources files in an external HTTP server. Under global, configure the external resources file location and specify the resource type.

To configure external resources:

```
config system external-resource
   edit "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-1"
      set type domain
      set category 194
      set resource "http://172.16.200.66/external-resources/Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-
1.txt"
      set refresh-rate 1
   next
   edit "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-1"
      set status enable
      set type address
      set username ' '
      set password *********
      set comments ''
      set resource "http://172.16.200.66/external-resources/Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-
1.txt"
      set refresh-rate 1
```

```
   next
end
```

In each VDOM, the domain type external resource can be used in the DNS filter as remote category. In this example, the domain name list in the Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-1.txt file is treated as a remote category (category ID 194). The IP address list in the Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-1.txt file can be applied in the DNS filter as an `external-ip-blocklist`. If the DNS resolved IP address matches any entry in the list in that file, the DNS query is blocked.

To configure the external IP block list and apply it to a policy:

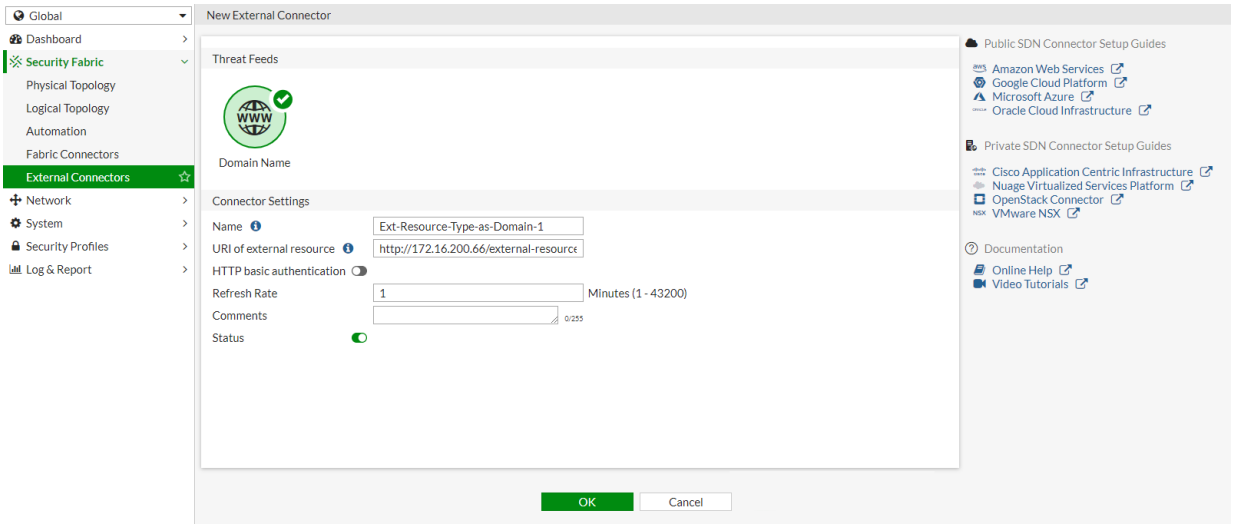
```
config dnsfilter profile
   edit "default"
      set comment "Default dns filtering."
      config ftgd-dns
         config filters
            edit 1
               set category 194
               set action block
            next
            edit 2
               set category 12
            next
            edit 3
            next
         end
      end
      set block-botnet enable
      set external-ip-blocklist "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-1"
   next
end
```

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "DNSFilter"
      set srcintf "port10"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set utm-status enable
      set logtraffic all
      set dnsfilter-profile "default"
      set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
      set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

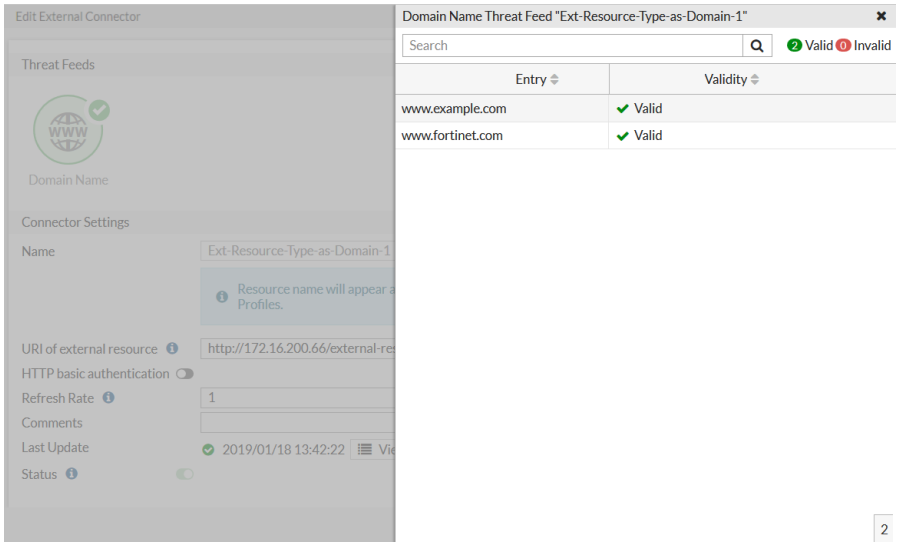
Configuring external resources in the GUI

To configure, edit, or view the entries for external resources in the GUI:

1. Go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Threat Feeds* section, select *Domain Name* or *IP Address*.
4. Enter the Resource *Name*, URL, location of the resource file, resource authentication credentials, and *Refresh Rate*.

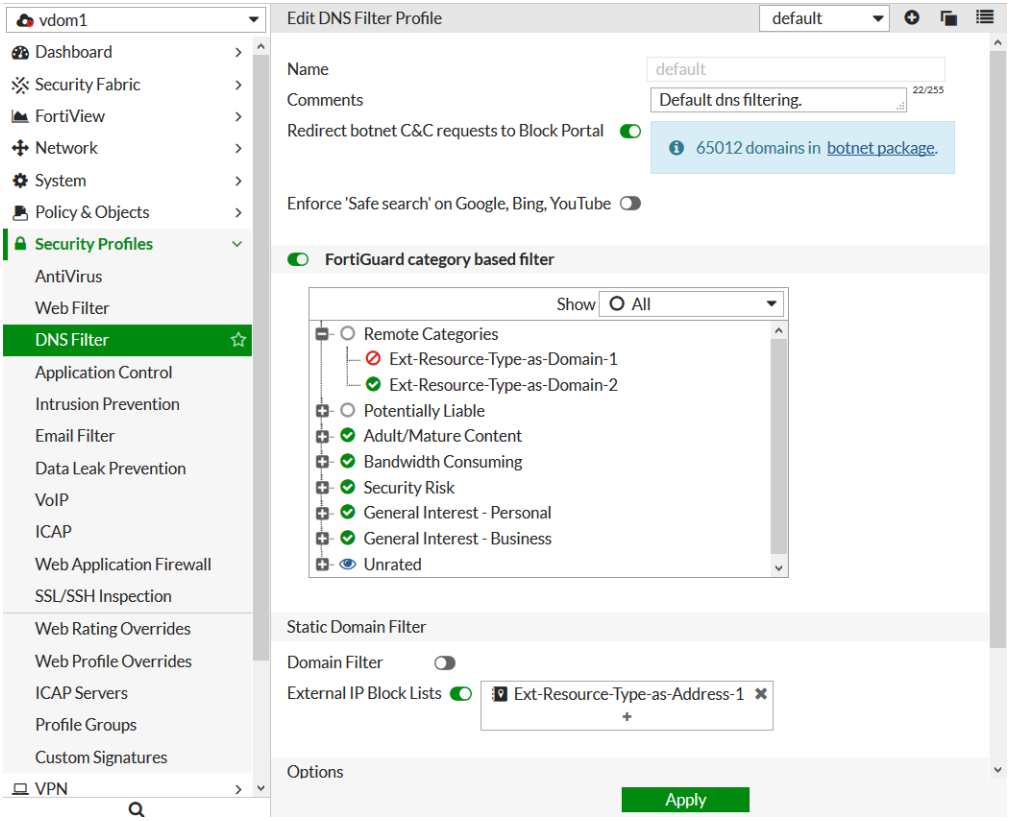


5. Click *OK*.
6. Double-click the *Threat Feeds Object* you just configured to open the *Edit* page
7. Click *View Entries* to view the entry list in the external resources file.



8. Go to *VDOM* > *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and open a DNS filter profile. The configured external resources

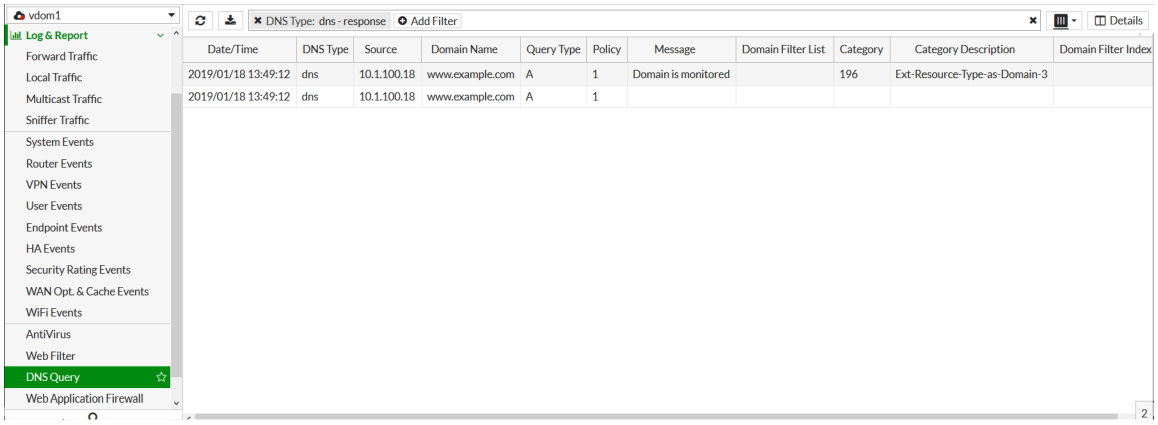
displays, and you can apply it in each DNS filter profile (remote category or external IP block lists).



Log sample

Remote categories

Go to *VDOM* > *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*. Some domains that match the remote category list are rated as remote category, overriding their original domain rating.



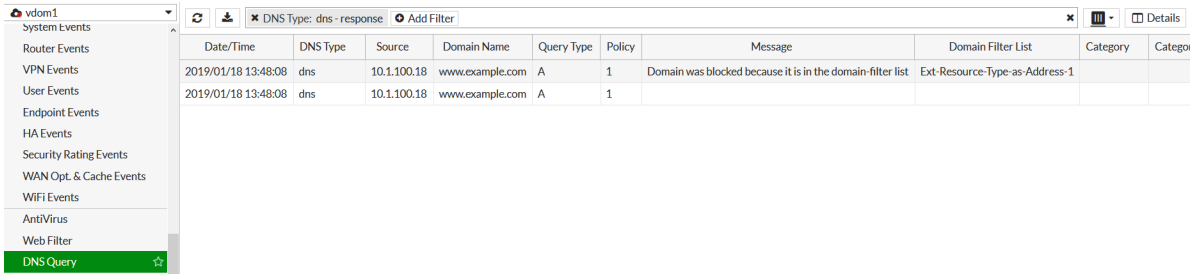
Log example:

```
1: date=2019-01-18 time=13:49:12 logid="1501054802" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848151 policyid=1 sessionid=82998
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=42985 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=38234
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="93.184.216.34" msg="Domain
is monitored" action="pass" cat=196 catdesc="Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-3"

2: date=2019-01-18 time=13:49:12 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848151 policyid=1 sessionid=82998
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=42985 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=38234
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

External IP block lists

Go to *VDOM* > *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*. If the DNS query resolved IP address matches the entry in the `external-ip-blocklist`, the DNS query is blocked.



Log example:

```
1: date=2019-01-18 time=13:50:53 logid="1501054400" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848253 policyid=1 sessionid=83206
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=47281 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=7501
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" msg="Domain was blocked because it
is in the domain-filter list" action="redirect" domainfilteridx=0 domainfilterlist="Ext-
Resource-Type-as-Address-1"

2: date=2019-01-18 time=13:50:53 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848253 policyid=1 sessionid=83206
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=47281 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=7501
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

Monitoring the Security Fabric using FortiExplorer for Apple TV

FortiExplorer for Apple TV allows you to use a TV screen to monitor your entire Security Fabric.

FortiExplorer for Apple TV is an analysis tool that provides easy to use NOC and SOC monitoring capabilities. The app features real-time data traffic, visual alerts, as well as a general overview of hardware devices, operating systems, and

interfaces. The monitor also provides a wireless health summary of your entire network across multiple buildings. If an access point goes offline, you will be notified about the network's health. After the issues are resolved, you will immediately see the health update on your screen.



Getting started with FortiExplorer for Apple TV

Download FortiExplorer for Apple TV from the app store on Apple TV. After the app is installed, add devices using the Apple TV remote or by sharing a login profile with FortiExplorer. Once the devices are added, you can use FortiExplorer for Apple TV to view real-time data in the Network Operations Center, Security Operations Center, and Software-Defined Branch.

To get started with FortiExplorer for Apple TV:

1. Download the app and add devices to FortiExplorer for Apple TV.
   You can add devices by sharing a login profile with FortiExplorer or logging into the device directly on FortiExplorer for Apple TV.
2. View the physical topology of the Fabric to identify risks
3. View the Fabric components as seen on the root FortiGate.
4. View an executive summary of the three largest areas of security focus in the Security Fabric.
5. View data collected by FortiAnalyzer on the endpoints on your network.
6. View vulnerability data collected by FortiClient EMS.
7. Use the Software-Defined Branch module to monitor interface SD-WAN usage and associated service level agreements.

NOC and SOC example

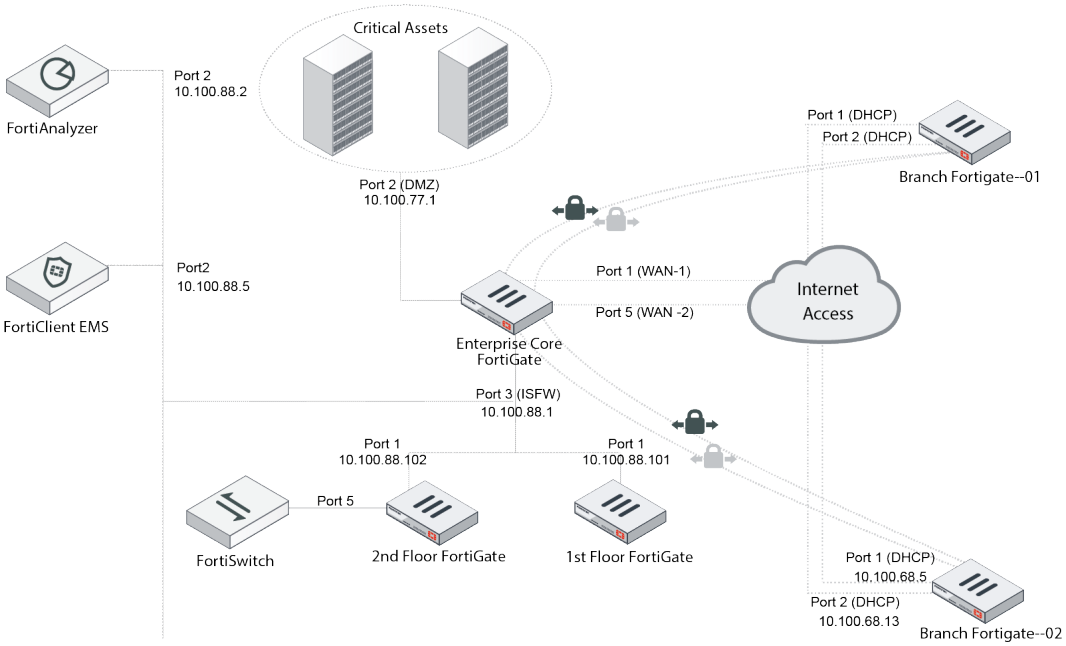
In this example, you have configured your FortiGates, FortiAnalyzer and other devices in your Security Fabric. Now you want to use FortiExplorer for Apple TV to display the status of the devices on a TV in your Network Operation Center or Security Operation Center.

Topology

This topology has a Headquarter and two Branches. Within the Headquarter is the Enterprise Core and two FortiGates acting as ISFWs. In addition, an on-premise FortiAnalyzer collects all logging information from the fabric devices. The FortiClient EMS manages all the endpoints within the topology.

The two branches are configured with SD-WAN with VPN overlays to the Enterprise Core. Traffic is steered towards the overlays and underlays based on SD-WAN Rules.

Using FortiExplorer for Apple TV, you will be able to monitor the different components in this topology.



To take advantage of the views in the FortiExplorer for Apple TV, you should configure:

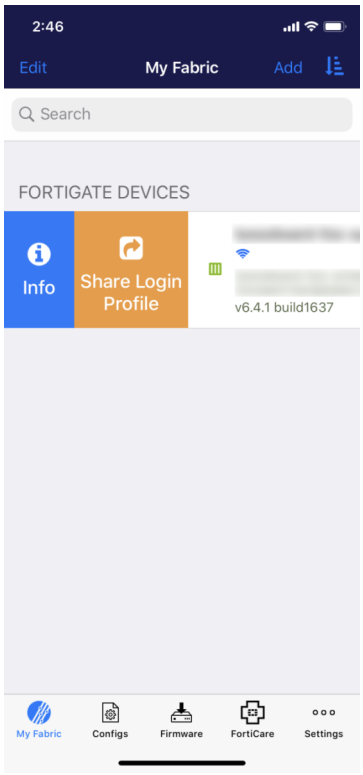
- Security Fabric on all FortiGates. See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 143.
- FortiAnalyzer Logging. See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 149.
- FortiClient EMS. See Configuring FortiClient EMS on page 161

Adding the root FortiGate to FortiExplorer for Apple TV

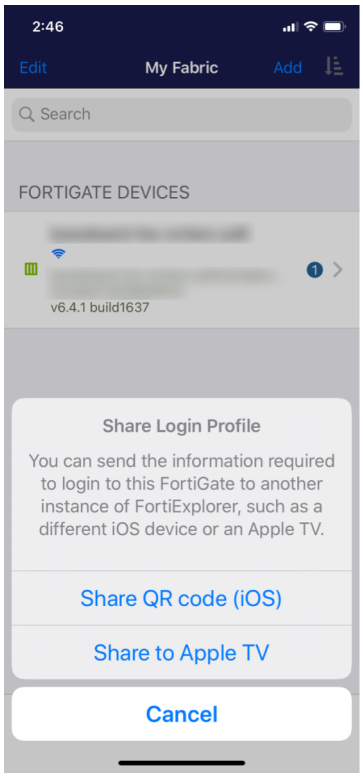
By adding the root FortiGate, you can view the entire topology and navigate to branch FortiGates in the SD-WAN view. If you are already using FortiExplorer on a mobile device, you can connect the same FortiGate device to Apple TV by sharing the login credentials on both devices. Alternatively, you can manually connect to your root FortiGate directly from the app.

To share login credentials between FortiExplorer and FortiExplorer for Apple TV:

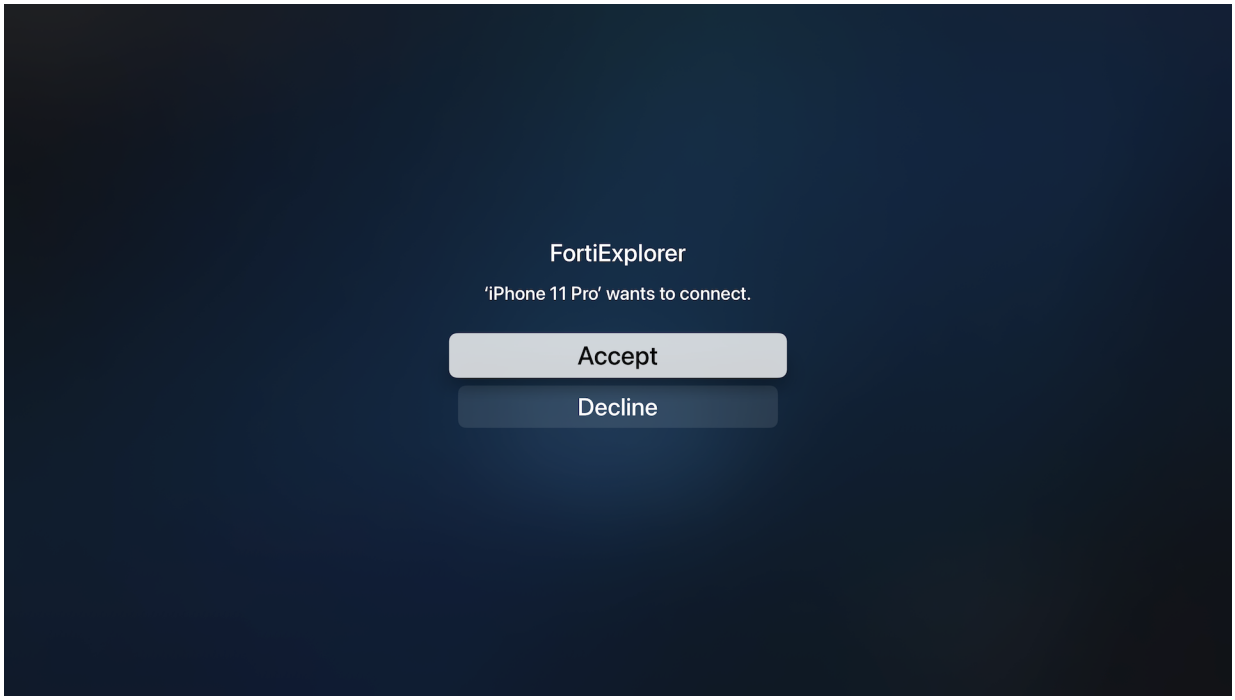
1. Connect the FortiExplorer and FortiExplorer for Apple TV devices to the same network.
2. On FortiExplorer for Apple TV, click *New FortiGate*.
3. In FortiExplorer, go to *My Fabric*.
4. Swipe right on the device you want to share, and tap *Share Login Profile*.



5. Tap *Share to Apple TV*.

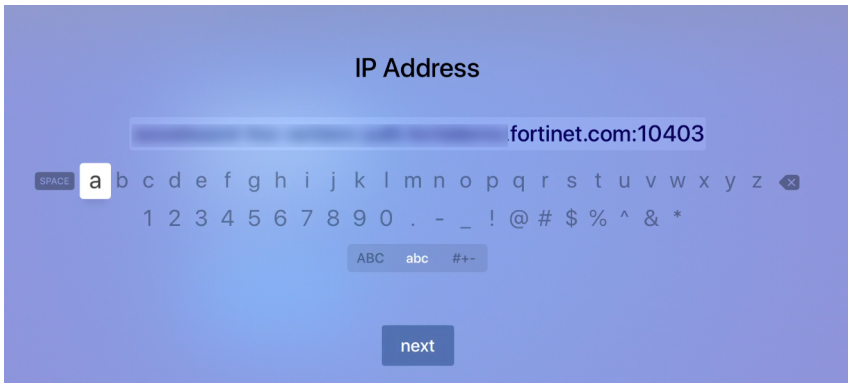


6. On Apple TV, click *Accept*. FortiExplorer for Apple TV confirms the request and proceeds to the device main menu.



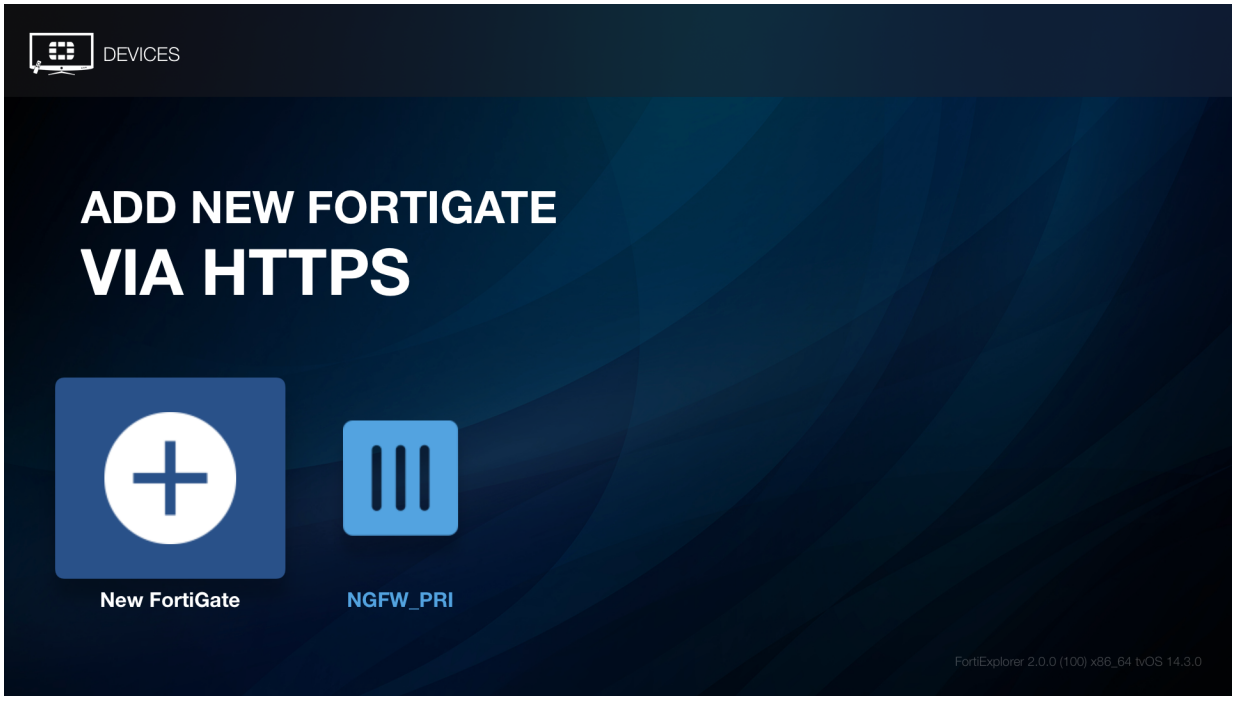
To add devices to FortiExplorer for Apple TV:

1. In the *Devices* menu, click *New FortiGate*. The *Login to FortiGate* dialog box is displayed.
2. In the *IP Address/Host Name* field, take one of the following actions:
   - Enter the device IP address and port, if not using the default admin port 443
   - Enter the full host name including the domain. Enter port if not using the default admin port 443.



3. Enter the *Username* and *Password* for the FortiGate device.
4. Click *Remember* to save time entering the login credentials later.
5. Click *Login*. The device is added to FortiExplorer for Apple TV.

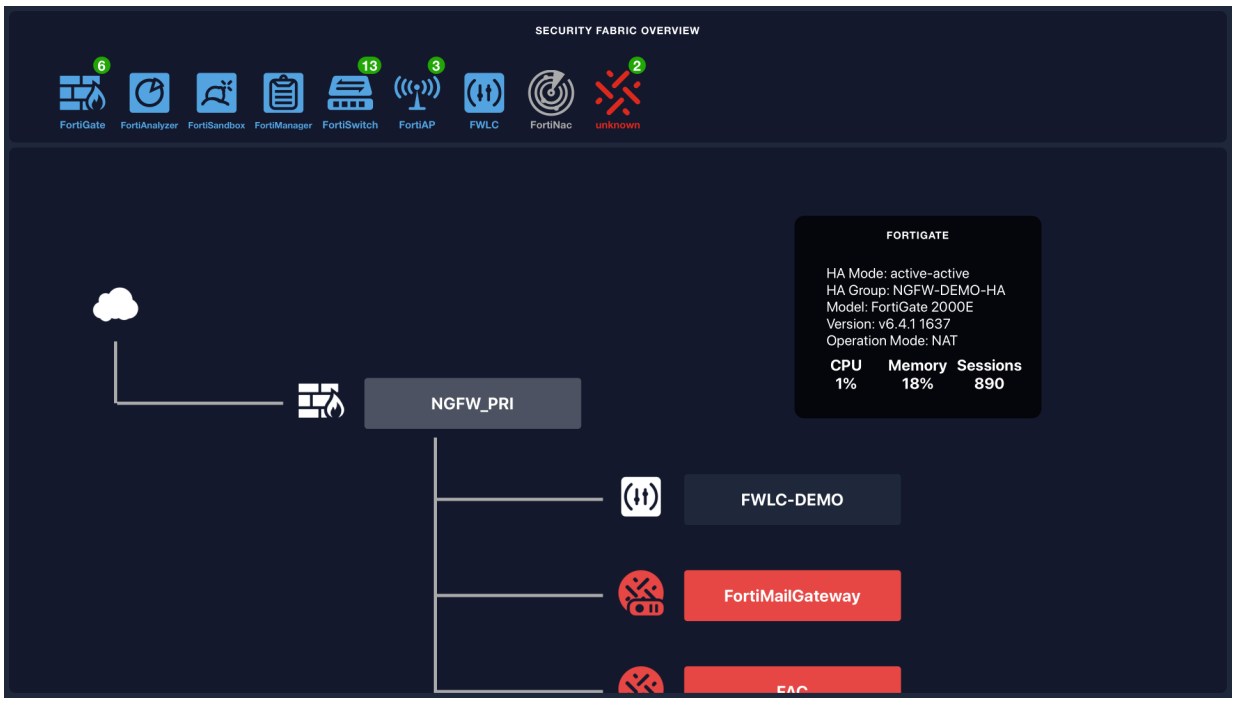
If the IP or hostname is not defined in the CN or SAN field of your certificate, you will receive a prompt that "Your connection is not private". You may choose to continue with your connection.



Viewing the Fabric Topology monitor

Use the Fabric Topology monitor to view the physical topology of the Fabric to identify risks. FortiGate devices with version 6.4. and above can drilldown further to see additional information for devices such as FortiGates, FortiAPs, and FortiSwitches.

To view the Fabric Topology monitor, go to *Network Operations Center* > *Fabric Topology*. This monitor displays the same information as the *Physical Topology* on the FortiGate



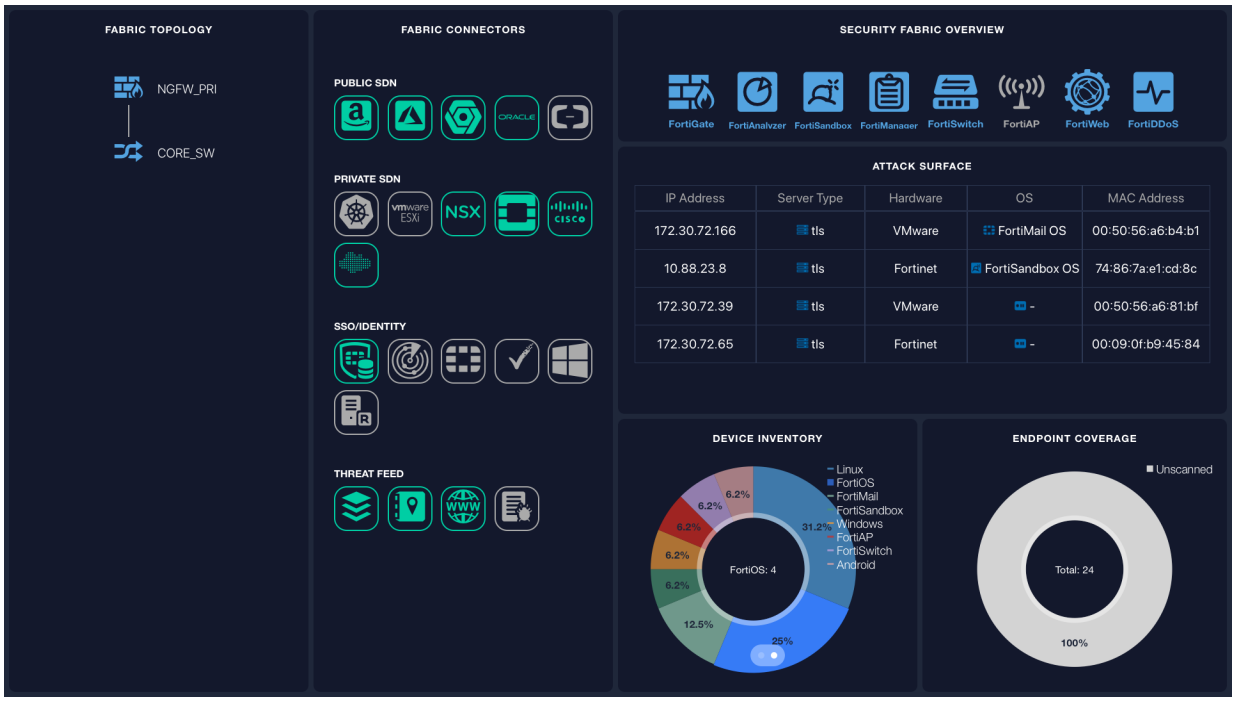
Use your remote to navigate through the devices in the Fabric topology. Click a device to view the drilldown information. To return to the default view, click the *Menu* button.

Viewing the Fabric Overview monitor

Use the Fabric Overview monitor to view the Fabric components as seen on the Dashboard of the Fabric Root FortiGate in the example topology. Each device must be authorized and be part of the Fabric.

For information about configuring the Security Fabric, see Fortinet Security Fabric on page 139

To view the Fabric Overview monitor, go to *Network Operations Center* > *Fabric Overview*.



The Security Fabric monitor has multiple panes. To see data populated on the panes, ensure that proper configurations are applied on the Fabric devices:

Pane	Description	Configuration
Fabric Connectors	Displays external SDN connectors that are enabled.	Configure *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
Security Fabric Overview	Displays the number of devices in the topology.	Configure *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
Attack Surface	Displays devices detected by the FortiGate with a server tag.	Ensure Device Detection is configured on the interfaces(s). Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
Device Inventory	Displays devices based on Hardware Vendor and detected OS	Ensure Device Detection is configured on the interface(s). Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
Endpoint Coverage	Displays the number of online devices and the percentage of Unscanned, Vulnerable, and Secured devices.	Ensure Device Detection is configured on the interface(s). Vulnerability scan results come from FortiClient EMS. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.

Device related information only corresponds to devices local to the FortiGate. Device information from downstream FortiGates do not propagate to the Upstream FortiGate.

Viewing the Security Rating monitor

The Security Rating monitor is separated into three major scorecards: *Security Posture*, *Fabric Coverage*, and *Optimization*, which provide an executive summary of the three largest areas of security focus in the Security Fabric.

To see the Security Rating summary, the root FortiGate and all FortiGates within the Fabric should have the proper FortiGuard Security Rating license. Security rating is performed on the root FortiGate. Its reports are generated periodically.

To view the Security Rating monitor, go to *Network Operations Center* > *Security Rating*.



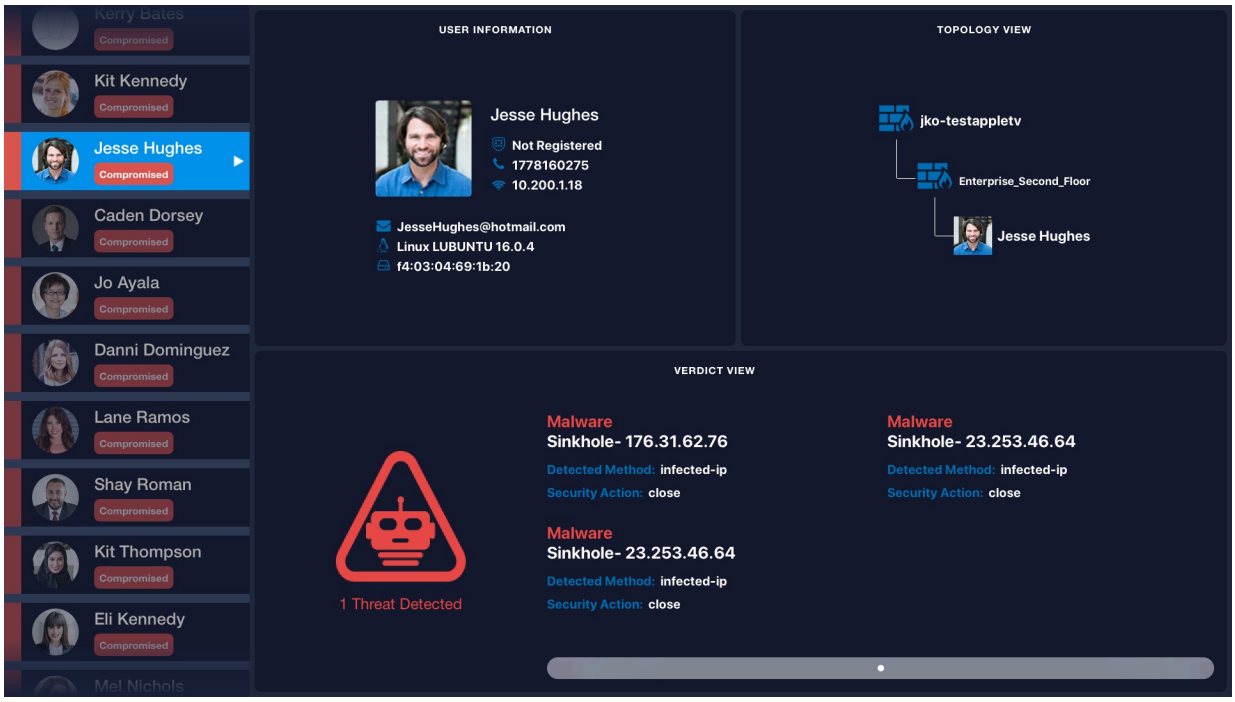
The scorecards show an overall score of the performance and sub-categories. The point score represents the net score for all passed and failed items in that area.

For more information about the Security Rating score, see Security Fabric score on page 241.

Viewing the Compromised Hosts monitor

The Compromised Hosts monitor leverages the data collected by FortiAnalyzer on the endpoints on your network. To see compromised hosts, the FortiAnalyzer must have a FortiGuard Indicators of Compromise license. The IOC service helps identify compromised hosts based on infected websites that it may have visited.

This monitor captures the same information as seen on the *Compromised Hosts* monitor on the FortiGate.



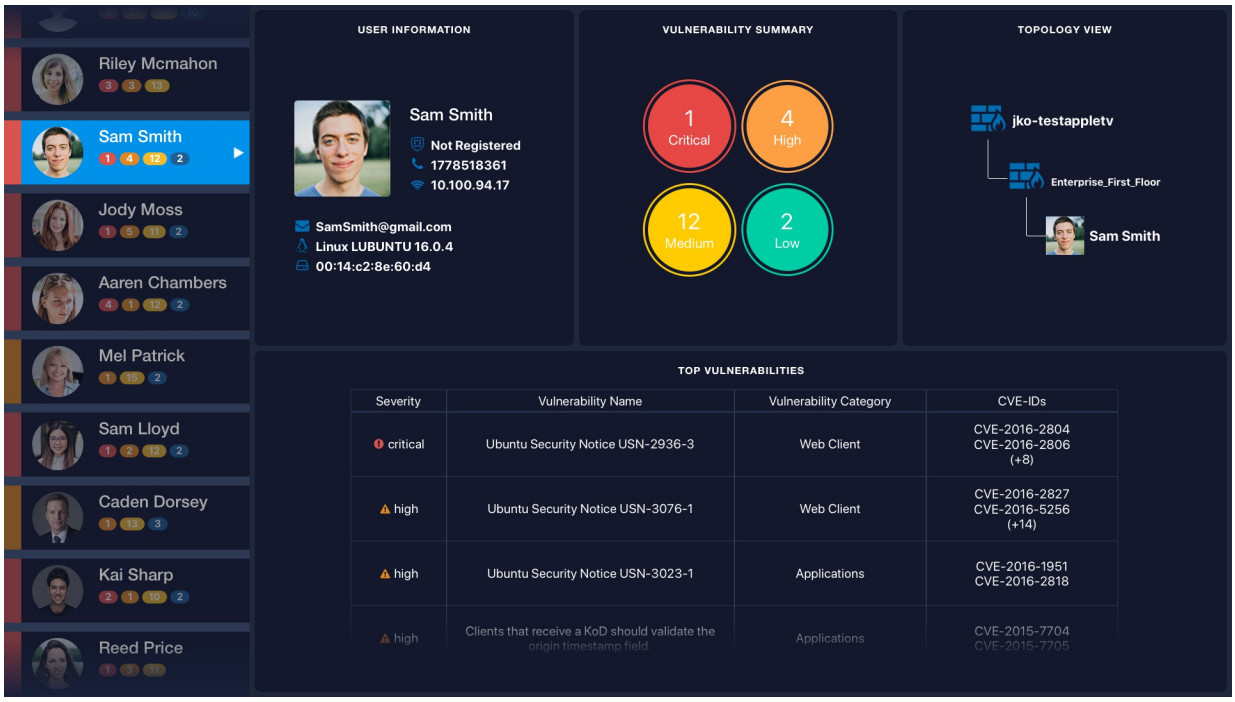
To view the Compromised Hosts monitor:

1. Go to *Security Operations Center* > *Compromised Hosts*.
2. In the left-hand pane, scroll through the user list. The monitor displays three panes:
   - The *User Information* pane displays the user's contact information and IP address.
   - The *Topology View* pane displays the user's location in the topology.
   - The *Verdict View* pane displays the *Malware*, *Detected Method*, and *Security Action*.

Viewing the Vulnerability Monitor

The Vulnerability Monitor obtains data from FortiClient EMS. It displays vulnerabilities detected by the FortiClient endpoint, categorized into Critical, High, Medium and Low risk. In this example, an on-premise FortiClient EMS is connected on the root FortiGate's Fabric Connector.

This monitor captures the same information as seen on the *Top Vulnerable Endpoint Devices* monitor on the FortiGate.



To view the Vulnerability Monitor:

1. Go to *Security Operations Center* > *Vulnerability Monitor*. The monitor displays a user list and their vulnerabilities.
2. Use your remote to scroll through the user list. The vulnerability details are displayed on the right side of the monitor.

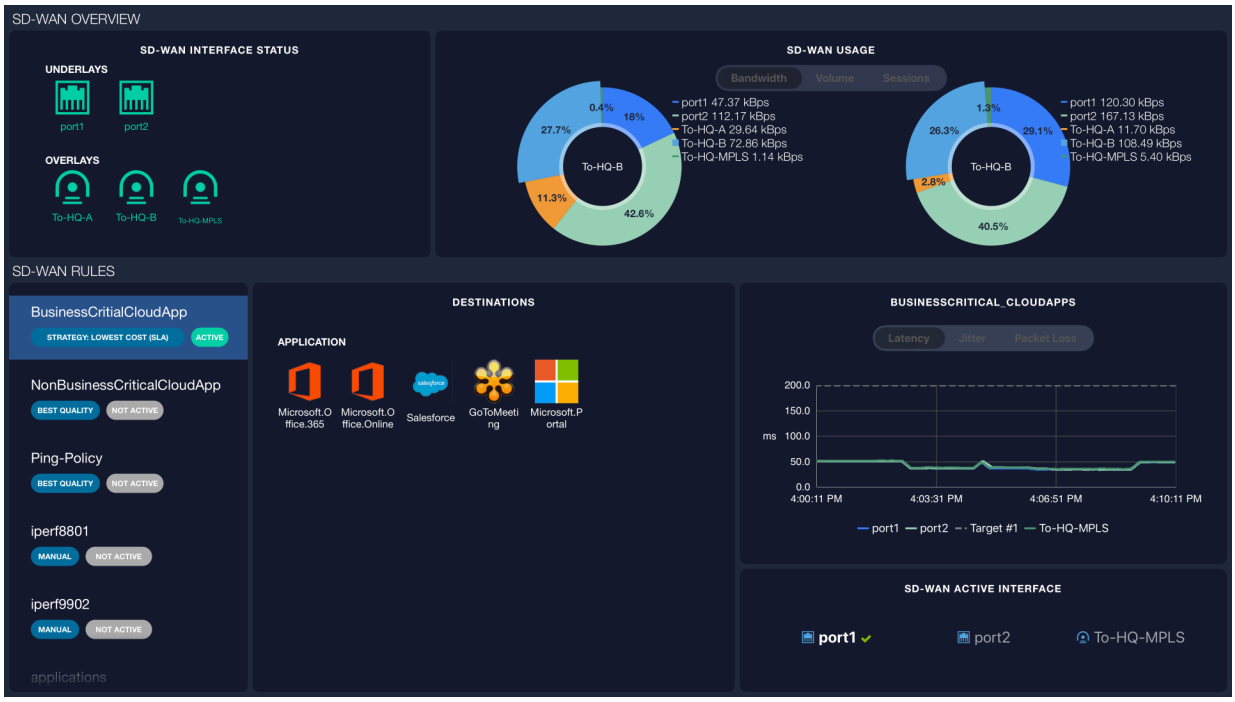
- The *User Information* pane displays the user's contact details and IP address.
- The *Vulnerability Summary* pane displays the number of vulnerabilities categorized into *Critical*, *High*, *Medium* and *Low* risk.
- The *Topology View pane* displays the user's location in the topology.
- The *Top Vulnerabilities* pane displays the top vulnerabilities by severity.

Using the SD-WAN monitor

In the example topology, the branches are configured to use SD-WAN. You can use the top-right navigation menu in the SD-WAN monitor to navigate to the Branch FortiGate to display information about the SD-WAN.

To view the SD-WAN monitor, go to *Software-Defined Branch* > *SD-WAN Monitor*.

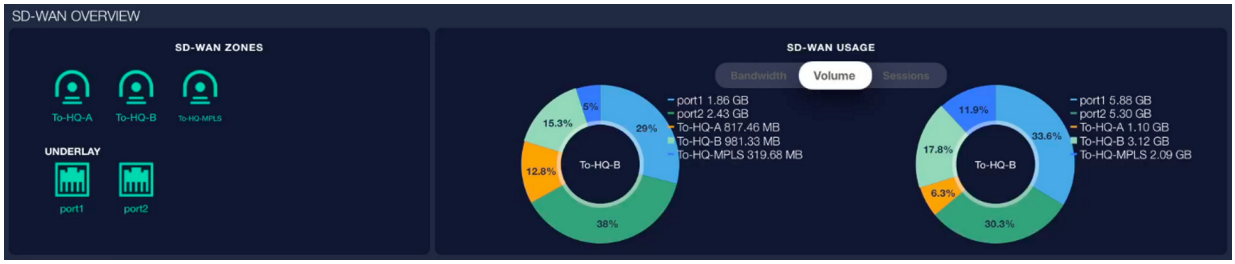
The SD-WAN monitor summarizes the SD-WAN members, Zones, SD-WAN Rules and health checks deployed on the FortiGate. It shows the interface member's SD-WAN usage and its associated service level agreements. The monitor contains a chart that shows if the ports are meeting the SLA target for bandwidth, jitter and latency per the health check in use in each SD-WAN Rule.



Some of the SD-WAN statistics are only available in FOS 6.4.1 and higher.

To view SD-WAN usage charts:

1. In the *SD-WAN Overview* area, Use your remote to select the *SD-WAN Usage* pane.
2. Scroll left and right to view *Bandwidth*, *Volume* and *Sessions* charts for the *VIRTUAL-WAN-LINK* and *Underlay* interfaces in the *SD-WAN Zones* pane.



To view SLA targets:

1. In the *SD-WAN Rules* area, use your remote to scroll the rules pane at the left-side of the monitor.
   - The *Destinations* pane displays the destination details.
   - The *Performance SLA* pane displays the SLA targets for the rule.
   - The *SD-WAN Active Interface* pane displays a checkmark next to the active interface.

2. Use your remote to navigate between the *Latency*, *Jitter*, and *Packet Loss* charts.

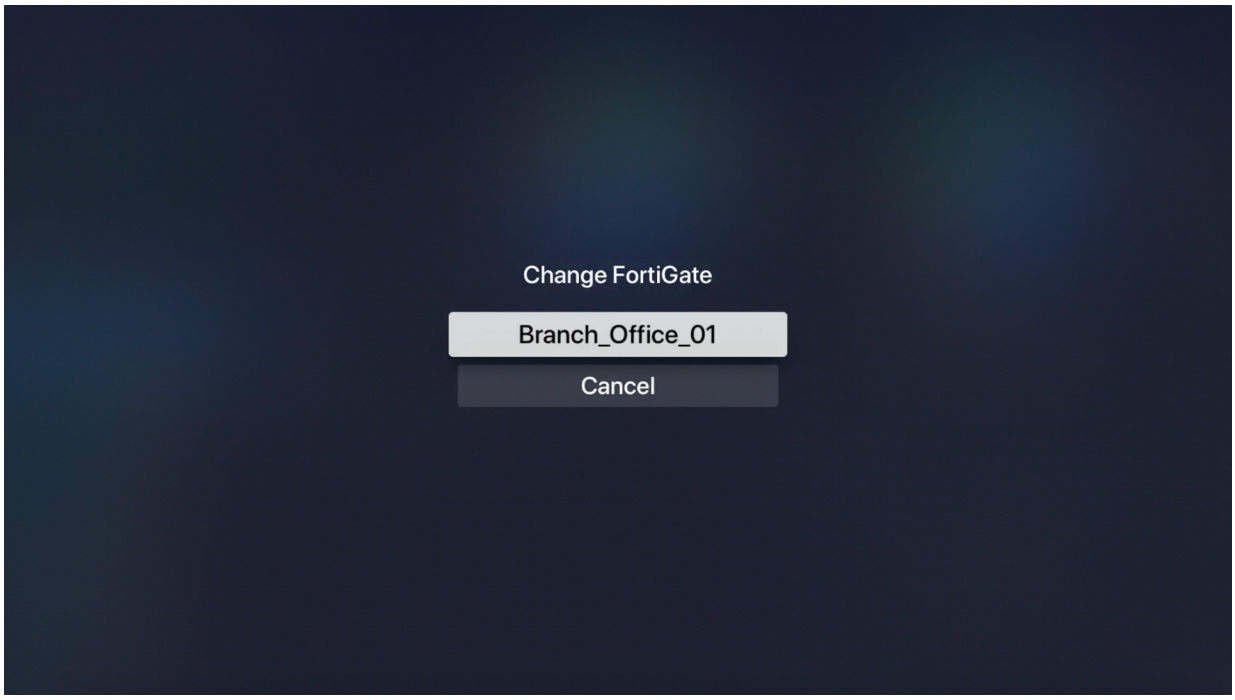


To view a branch in the topology:

1. Use your remote to swipe to the top navigation in the monitor. Wait for the topology to load.
2. At the top-right of the monitor, select the current device.



3. Select the device you want to view.



Troubleshooting

The following topics provide troubleshooting information for the Fortinet Security Fabric:

- Viewing a summary of all connected FortiGates in a Security Fabric on page 396
- Diagnosing automation stitches on page 398

Viewing a summary of all connected FortiGates in a Security Fabric

In downstream FortiGates, the `diagnose sys csf global` command shows a summary of all of the connected FortiGates in the Security Fabric.

To view a Security Fabric summary on a downstream FortiGate:

```
# diagnose sys csf global
Current vision:
[
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10403,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"identity-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "host_name":"admin-root",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "subtree_members":[
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000002"
      },
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000003"
      },
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000004"
      },
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000005"
      }
    ]
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000002",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10423,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000002",
    "host_name":"Branch_Office_01",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
```

```
    "upstream_intf":"Branch-HQ-A",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.0.10.2",
    "downstream_intf":"To-HQ-A",
    "idx":1
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000003",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10407,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000003",
    "host_name":"Enterprise_Second_Floor",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"port3",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.100.88.102",
    "downstream_intf":"port1",
    "idx":2
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000004",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10424,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000004",
    "host_name":"Branch_Office_02",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"HQ-MPLS",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
```

```
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.0.12.3",
    "downstream_intf":"To-HQ-MPLS",
    "idx":3
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000005",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10404,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000005",
    "host_name":"Enterprise_First_Floor",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"port3",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.100.88.101",
    "downstream_intf":"port1",
    "idx":4
  }
]
```


Diagnosing automation stitches

Diagnose commands are available to:

- Test an automation stitch
- Enable or disable log dumping for automation stitches
- Display the settings of every automation stitch
- Display statistics on every automation stitch

To test an automation stitch:

```
diagnose automation test <automation-stitch-name>
```

Example:

```
# diagnose automation test HA-failover
automation test is done. stitch:HA-failover
```

To toggle log dumping:

```
diagnose test application autod 1
```

Examples:

```
# diagnose test application autod 1
autod log dumping is enabled
```

```
# diagnose test application autod 1
autod log dumping is disabled

autod logs dumping summary:
autod dumped total:7 logs, num of logids:4
```

To display the settings for all of the automation stitches:

```
diagnose test application autod 2
```

Example:

```
# diagnose test application autod 2
csf: enabled root:yes
total stitches activated: 3

stitch: Compromised-IP-Banned
        destinations: all
        trigger: Compromised-IP-Banned

       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
        actions:
               Compromised-IP-Banned_ban-ip type:ban-ip interval:0

stitch: HA-failover
        destinations: HA-failover_ha-cluster_25;
        trigger: HA-failover

       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
        actions:
               HA-failover_email type:email interval:0
               subject: HA Failover
               mailto:admin@example.com;

stitch: rebooot
       destinations: all
       trigger: reboot

       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
       actions:
               action1 type:alicloud-function interval:0
                       delay:1 required:yes
                       Account ID: id
                       Region: region
                       Function domain: fc.aliyuncs.com
                       Version: versoin
```

```
                        Service name: serv
                        Function name: funcy
                        headers:
```

To display statistic on all of the automation stitches:

```
diagnose test application autod 3
```

Example:

```
    stitch: Compromised-IP-Banned
           local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
           last trigger:Wed Dec 31 20:00:00 1969
           last relay:Wed Dec 31 20:00:00 1969
           actions:
                   Compromised-IP-Banned_ban-ip:
                           done: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
                           last trigger:Wed Dec 31 20:00:00 1969
                           last relay:

    stitch: HA-failover
           local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
           last trigger:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
           last relay:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
           actions:
                   HA-failover_email:
                           done: 1 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
                           last trigger:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
                           last relay:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018

    stitch: rebooot
           local hit: 2 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
           last trigger:Fri May  3 13:30:56 2019
           last relay:Fri May  3 13:30:23 2019
           actions:
                   action1
                           done: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
                           last trigger:Fri May  3 13:30:56 2019
                           last relay:

    logid2stitch mapping:
    id:20103  local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
           License Expiry
           lambada

    id:32138  local hit: 2 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
           Compromised-IP-Banned
           HA-failover
           rebooot

    action run cfg&stats:
    total:2 cur:0 done:1 drop:1
           email:
                   flags:10
                   stats: total:1 cur:0 done:1 drop:0
           ios-notification:
                   flags:1
```

```
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
alert:
        flags:0
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
disable-ssid:
        flags:7
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
quarantine:
        flags:7
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
quarantine-forticlient:
        flags:4
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
quarantine-nsx:
        flags:4
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
ban-ip:
        flags:7
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
aws-lambda:
        flags:11
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
webhook:
        flags:11
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
cli-script:
        flags:10
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
azure-function:
        flags:11
        stats: total:1 cur:0 done:0 drop:1
google-cloud-function:
        flags:11
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
alicloud-function:
        flags:11
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
```

Network

The following topics provide information about network settings:

- Interfaces on page 402
- DNS on page 457
- Explicit and transparent proxies on page 470
- SD-WAN on page 661
- DHCP servers and relays on page 524
- Static routing on page 533
- Dynamic routing on page 558
- Multicast on page 608
- FortiExtender on page 613
- Direct IP support for LTE/4G on page 617
- LLDP reception on page 620
- Virtual routing and forwarding on page 623
- NetFlow on page 644
- sFlow on page 658

Interfaces

Physical and virtual interfaces allow traffic to flow between internal networks, and between the internet and internal networks. FortiGate has options for setting up interfaces and groups of subnetworks that can scale as your organization grows. You can create and edit VLAN, EMAC-VLAN, switch interface, zones, and so on.

The following topics provide information about interfaces:

- Interface settings on page 403
- Aggregation and redundancy on page 406
- VLANs on page 408
- Enhanced MAC VLANs on page 414
- Inter-VDOM routing on page 417
- Software switch on page 422
- Hardware switch on page 424
- Zone on page 427
- Virtual Wire Pair on page 429
- Virtual VLAN switch on page 431
- Failure detection for aggregate and redundant interfaces on page 437
- VLAN inside VXLAN on page 437
- Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN on page 440
- QinQ 802.1Q in 802.1ad on page 442
- QinQ 802.1Q in 802.1Q on page 442

- Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service on page 444
- Implementing VRF on page 623
- Interface MTU packet size on page 451
- One-arm sniffer on page 453
- Captive portals on page 454

Interface settings

Administrators can configure both physical and virtual FortiGate interfaces in *Network* > *Interfaces*. There are different options for configuring interfaces when FortiGate is in NAT mode or transparent mode.

To configure an interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Interface*.
3. Configure the interface fields:

Interface Name	Physical interface names cannot be changed.
Alias	Enter an alternate name for a physical interface on the FortiGate unit. This field appears when you edit an existing physical interface. The alias does not appear in logs. The maximum length of the alias is 25 characters.
Type	The configuration type for the interface, such as VLAN or Software Switch.
Link Status	Indicates whether the interface is connected to a network or not (link status is up or down). This field is available when you edit an existing physical interface.
Interface	This field is available when *Type* is set to *VLAN*. Select the name of the physical interface that you want to add a VLAN interface to. Once created, the VLAN interface is listed below its physical interface in the *Interface* list. You cannot change the physical interface of a VLAN interface except when you add a new VLAN interface.
VLAN ID	This field is available when *Type* is set to *VLAN*. Enter the VLAN ID. The VLAN ID can be any number between 1 and 4094 and must match the VLAN ID added by the IEEE 802.1Q-compliant router or switch that is connected to the VLAN subinterface. The VLAN ID cannot be edited after the interface is added.
Virtual Domain	Select the virtual domain to add the interface to. Only administrator accounts with the *super_admin* profile can change the *Virtual Domain*.
Role	Set the role setting for the interface. Different settings will be shown or hidden when editing an interface depending on the role. • *LAN*: Used to connected to a local network of endpoints. It is default role for new interfaces.

	• *WAN*: Used to connected to the internet. When WAN is selected, the *Estimated bandwidth* setting is available, and the following settings are not: *DHCP server*, *Create address object matching subnet*, *Device detection*, *Security mode*, *One-arm sniffer*, *Dedicate to extension/fortiap modes*, and *Admission Control*.and will show Estimated Bandwidth settings. • *DMZ*: Used to connected to the DMZ. When selected, *DHCP server* and *Security mode* are not available. • *Undefined*: The interface has no specific role. When selected, *Create address object matching subnet* is not available.
Interface Members	This section can has different formats depending on the *Type*: *Software Switch*: This field is read-only, and shows the interfaces that belong to the virtual interface of the software switch. *802.3ad Aggregate* or *Redundant Interface*: This field includes the available and selected interface lists.
Addressing mode	Select the addressing mode for the interface. • *Manual*: Add an IP address and netmask for the interface. If IPv6 configuration is enabled,you can add both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address. • *DHCP*: Get the interface IP address and other network settings from a DHCP server. • *PPPoE*: Get the interface IP address and other network settings from a PPPoE server. This option is only available on the low-end FortiGate models. • *Auto-managed by FortiIPAM*: Assign subnets to prevent duplicate IP addresses from overlapping within the same Security Fabric. See Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service on page 444. • *One-Arm Sniffer*: Set the interface as a sniffer port so it can be used to detect attacks.
IP/Netmask	If *Addressing Mode* is set to *Manual*, enter an IPv4 address and subnet mask for the interface. FortiGate interfaces cannot have multiple IP addresses on the same subnet.
IPv6 Address/Prefix	If *Addressing Mode* is set to *Manual* and IPv6 support is enabled, enter an IPv6 address and subnet mask for the interface. A single interface can have an IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or both.
Create address object matching subnet	This option is available when *Role* is set to *LAN* or *DMZ*. Enable this option to automatically create an address object that matches the interface subnet.
Secondary IP Address	Add additional IPv4 addresses to this interface.
IPv4 Administrative Access	Select the types of administrative access permitted for IPv4 connections to this interface. See Configure administrative access to interfaces on page 405.
IPv6 Administrative Access	Select the types of administrative access permitted for IPv6 connections to this interface. See Configure administrative access to interfaces on page 405.
DHCP Server	Select to enable a DHCP server for the interface.

Device Detection	Enable/disable passively gathering device identity information about the devices on the network that are connected to this interface.
Security Mode	Enable/disable captive portal authentication for this interface. After enabling captive portal authentication, you can configure the authentication portal, user and group access, custom portal messages, exempt sources and destinations/services, and redirect after captive portal.
Outbound shaping profile	Enable/disable traffic shaping on the interface. This allows you to enforce bandwidth limits on individual interfaces. See Interface-based traffic shaping profile on page 1241 for more information.
Comments	Enter a description of the interface of up to 255 characters.
Status	Enable/disable the interface. • *Enabled*: The interface is active and can accept network traffic. • *Disabled*: The interface is not active and cannot accept traffic.

4. Click *OK*.

To configure an interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "<Interface_Name>"
        set vdom "<VDOM_Name>"
        set mode static/dhcp/pppoe
        set ip <IP_address> <netmask>
        set security-mode {none | captive-portal}
        set egress-shaping-profile <Profile_name>
        set device-identification {enable | disable}
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set secondary-IP enable
        config secondaryip
            edit 1
                set ip 9.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
                set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Configure administrative access to interfaces

You can configure the protocols that administrators can use to access interfaces on the FortiGate. This helps secure access to the FortiGate by restricting access to a limited number of protocols. It helps prevent users from accessing interfaces that you don't want them to access, such as public-facing ports.

As a best practice, you should configure administrative access when you're setting the IP address for a port.

To configure administrative access to interfaces in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Create or edit an interface.

3. In the *Administrative Access* section, select which protocols to enable for *IPv4* and *IPv6 Administrative Access*.

HTTPS	Allow secure HTTPS connections to the FortiGate GUI through this interface. If configured, this option is enabled automatically.
HTTP	Allow HTTP connections to the FortiGate GUI through this interface. This option can only be enabled if HTTPS is already enabled.
PING	The interface responds to pings. Use this setting to verify your installation and for testing.
FMG-Access	Allow FortiManager authorization automatically during the communication exchanges between FortiManager and FortiGate devices.
SSH	Allow SSH connections to the CLI through this interface.
SNMP	Allow a remote SNMP manager to request SNMP information by connecting to this interface.
FTM	Allow FortiToken Mobile Push (FTM) access.
RADIUS Accounting	Allow RADIUS accounting information on this interface.
Security Fabric Connection	Allow Security Fabric access. This enables FortiTelemetry and CAPWAP.

Aggregation and redundancy

Link aggregation (IEEE 802.3ad) enables you to bind two or more physical interfaces together to form an aggregated (combined) link. This new link has the bandwidth of all the links combined. If a link in the group fails, traffic is transferred automatically to the remaining interfaces. The only noticeable effect is reduced bandwidth.

This feature is similar to redundant interfaces. The major difference is a redundant interface group only uses one link at a time, where an aggregate link group uses the total bandwidth of the functioning links in the group, up to eight (or more).

An interface is available to be an aggregate interface if:

- It is a physical interface and not a VLAN interface or subinterface.
- It is not already part of an aggregate or redundant interface.
- It is in the same VDOM as the aggregated interface. Aggregate ports cannot span multiple VDOMs.
- It does not have an IP address and is not configured for DHCP or PPPoE.
- It is not referenced in any security policy, VIP, IP Pool, or multicast policy.
- It is not an HA heartbeat interface.
- It is not one of the FortiGate-5000 series backplane interfaces.

When an interface is included in an aggregate interface, it is not listed on the *Network* > *Interfaces* page. Interfaces still appear in the CLI although configuration for those interfaces do not take affect. You cannot configure the interface individually and it is not available for inclusion in security policies, VIPs, IP pools, or routing.

Sample configuration

This example creates an aggregate interface on a FortiGate-140D POE using ports 3-5 with an internal IP address of 10.1.1.123, as well as the administrative access to HTTPS and SSH.

To create an aggregate interface using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and select *Create New* > *Interface*.
2. For *Interface Name*, enter *Aggregate*.
3. For the Type, select *802.3ad Aggregate*.
4. In the physical *Interface Members*, click to add interfaces and select ports 4, 5, and 6.
5. For *Addressing mode*, select *Manual*.
6. For the IP address for the port, enter *10.1.1.123/24*.
7. For *Administrative Access*, select *HTTPS* and *SSH*.
8. Select *OK*.

To create an aggregate interface using the CLI:

```
FG140P3G15800330 (aggregate) # show
config system interface
    edit "aggregate"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.1.123 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http fgfm radius-acct capwap ftm
        set type aggregate
        set member "port3" "port4" "port5"
        set device-identification enable
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set fortiheartbeat enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 45
    next
end
```

Redundancy

In a redundant interface, traffic only goes over one interface at any time. This differs from an aggregated interface where traffic goes over all interfaces for increased bandwidth. This difference means redundant interfaces can have more robust configurations with fewer possible points of failure. This is important in a fully-meshed HA configuration.

An interface is available to be in a redundant interface if:

- It is a physical interface and not a VLAN interface.
- It is not already part of an aggregated or redundant interface.
- It is in the same VDOM as the redundant interface.
- It does not have an IP address and is not configured for DHCP or PPPoE.
- It has no DHCP server or relay configured on it.
- It does not have any VLAN subinterfaces.
- It is not referenced in any security policy, VIP, or multicast policy.
- It is not monitored by HA.
- It is not one of the FortiGate-5000 series backplane interfaces.

When an interface is included in a redundant interface, it is not listed on the *Network* > *Interfaces* page. You cannot configure the interface individually and it is not available for inclusion in security policies, VIPs, or routing.

Sample configuration

To create a redundant interface using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and select *Create New* > *Interface*.
2. For *Interface Name*, enter *Redundant*.
3. For the Type, select *Redundant Interface*.
4. In the physical *Interface Members*, click to add interfaces and select ports 4, 5, and 6.
5. For *Addressing mode*, select *Manual*.
6. For the IP address for the port, enter *10.13.101.100/24*.
7. For *Administrative Access*, select *HTTPS* and *SSH*.
8. Select *OK*.

To create a redundant interface using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "red"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.13.101.100 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https http
        set type redundant
        set member "port4" "port5" "port6"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 9
    next
end
```

VLANs

Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) multiply the capabilities of your FortiGate unit and can also provide added network security. VLANs use ID tags to logically separate devices on a network into smaller broadcast domains. These smaller domains forward packets only to devices that are part of that VLAN domain. This reduces traffic and increases network security.

VLANs in NAT mode

In NAT mode, the FortiGate unit functions as a layer-3 device. In this mode, the FortiGate unit controls the flow of packets between VLANs and can also remove VLAN tags from incoming VLAN packets. The FortiGate unit can also forward untagged packets to other networks such as the Internet.

In NAT mode, the FortiGate unit supports VLAN trunk links with IEEE 802.1Q-compliant switches or routers. The trunk link transports VLAN-tagged packets between physical subnets or networks. When you add VLAN subinterfaces to the FortiGate's physical interfaces, the VLANs have IDs that match the VLAN IDs of packets on the trunk link. The FortiGate unit directs packets with VLAN IDs to subinterfaces with matching IDs.

You can define VLAN subinterfaces on all FortiGate physical interfaces. However, if multiple virtual domains are configured on the FortiGate unit, you only have access to the physical interfaces on your virtual domain. The FortiGate unit can tag packets leaving on a VLAN subinterface. It can also remove VLAN tags from incoming packets and add a different VLAN tag to outgoing packets.

Normally in VLAN configurations, the FortiGate unit's internal interface is connected to a VLAN trunk, and the external interface connects to an Internet router that is not configured for VLANs. In this configuration, the FortiGate unit can apply different policies for traffic on each VLAN interface connected to the internal interface, which results in less network traffic and better security.

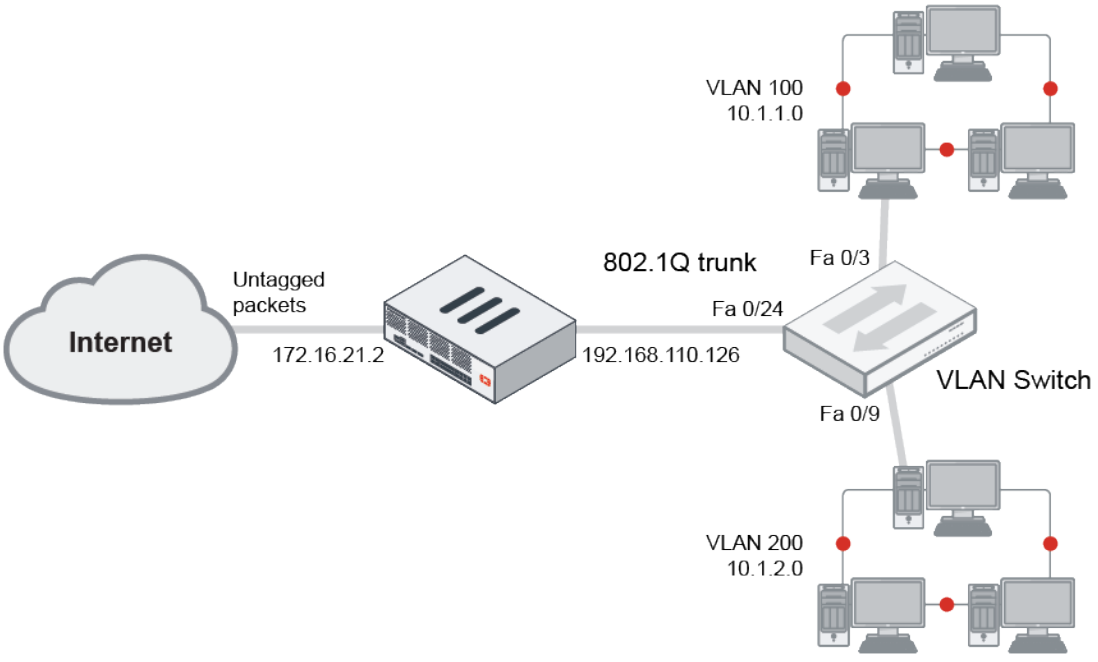
Sample topology

In this example, two different internal VLAN networks share one interface on the FortiGate unit and share the connection to the Internet. This example shows that two networks can have separate traffic streams while sharing a single interface. This configuration can apply to two departments in a single company or to different companies.

There are two different internal network VLANs in this example. VLAN_100 is on the 10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet, and VLAN_200 is on the 10.1.2.0/255.255.255.0 subnet. These VLANs are connected to the VLAN switch.

The FortiGate internal interface connects to the VLAN switch through an 802.1Q trunk. The internal interface has an IP address of 192.168.110.126 and is configured with two VLAN subinterfaces (VLAN_100 and VLAN_200). The external interface has an IP address of 172.16.21.2 and connects to the Internet. The external interface has no VLAN subinterfaces.

When the VLAN switch receives packets from VLAN_100 and VLAN_200, it applies VLAN ID tags and forwards the packets of each VLAN both to local ports and to the FortiGate unit across the trunk link. The FortiGate unit has policies that allow traffic to flow between the VLANs, and from the VLANs to the external network.



Sample configuration

In this example, both the FortiGate unit and the Cisco 2950 switch are installed and connected and basic configuration has been completed. On the switch, you need access to the CLI to enter commands. No VDOMs are enabled in this example.

General configuration steps include:

1. Configure the external interface.
2. Add two VLAN subinterfaces to the internal network interface.

3. Add firewall addresses and address ranges for the internal and external networks.
4. Add security policies to allow:
   - the VLAN networks to access each other.
   - the VLAN networks to access the external network.

To configure the external interface:

```
config system interface
    edit external
        set mode static
        set ip 172.16.21.2 255.255.255.0
end
```

To add VLAN subinterfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit VLAN_100
        set vdom root
        set interface internal
        set type vlan
        set vlanid 100
        set mode static
        set ip 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https ping
    next
    edit VLAN_200
        set vdom root
        set interface internal
        set type vlan
        set vlanid 200
        set mode static
        set ip 10.1.2.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https ping
end
```

To add the firewall addresses:

```
config firewall address
    edit VLAN_100_Net
        set type ipmask
        set subnet 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit VLAN_200_Net
        set type ipmask
        set subnet 10.1.2.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

To add security policies:

Policies 1 and 2 do not need NAT enabled, but policies 3 and 4 do need NAT enabled.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf VLAN_100
        set srcaddr VLAN_100_Net
```

```
        set dstintf VLAN_200
        set dstaddr VLAN_200_Net
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat disable
        set status enable
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf VLAN_200
        set srcaddr VLAN_200_Net
        set dstintf VLAN_100
        set dstaddr VLAN_100_Net
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat disable
        set status enable
    next
    edit 3
        set srcintf VLAN_100
        set srcaddr VLAN_100_Net
        set dstintf external
        set dstaddr all
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    next
    edit 4
        set srcintf VLAN_200
        set srcaddr VLAN_200_Net
        set dstintf external
        set dstaddr all
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    end
```

VLANs in transparent mode

In transparent mode, the FortiGate unit behaves like a layer-2 bridge but can still provide services such as antivirus scanning, web filtering, spam filtering, and intrusion protection to traffic. Some limitations of transparent mode is that you cannot use SSL VPN, PPTP/L2TP VPN, DHCP server, or easily perform NAT on traffic. The limits in transparent mode apply to IEEE 802.1Q VLAN trunks passing through the unit.

You can insert the FortiGate unit operating in transparent mode into the VLAN trunk without making changes to your network. In a typical configuration, the FortiGate unit internal interface accepts VLAN packets on a VLAN trunk from a VLAN switch or router connected to internal network VLANs. The FortiGate external interface forwards VLAN-tagged packets through another VLAN trunk to an external VLAN switch or router and on to external networks such as the Internet. You can configure the unit to apply different policies for traffic on each VLAN in the trunk.

To pass VLAN traffic through the FortiGate unit, you add two VLAN subinterfaces with the same VLAN ID, one to the internal interface and the other to the external interface. You then create a security policy to permit packets to flow from the internal VLAN interface to the external VLAN interface. If required, create another security policy to permit packets to flow from the external VLAN interface to the internal VLAN interface. Typically in transparent mode, you do not permit packets to move between different VLANs. Network protection features such as spam filtering, web filtering, and anti-virus scanning, are applied through the UTM profiles specified in each security policy, enabling very detailed control over traffic.

When the FortiGate unit receives a VLAN-tagged packet on a physical interface, it directs the packet to the VLAN subinterface with the matching VLAN ID. The VLAN tag is removed from the packet and the FortiGate unit then applies security policies using the same method it uses for non-VLAN packets. If the packet exits the FortiGate unit through a VLAN subinterface, the VLAN ID for that subinterface is added to the packet and the packet is sent to the corresponding physical interface.

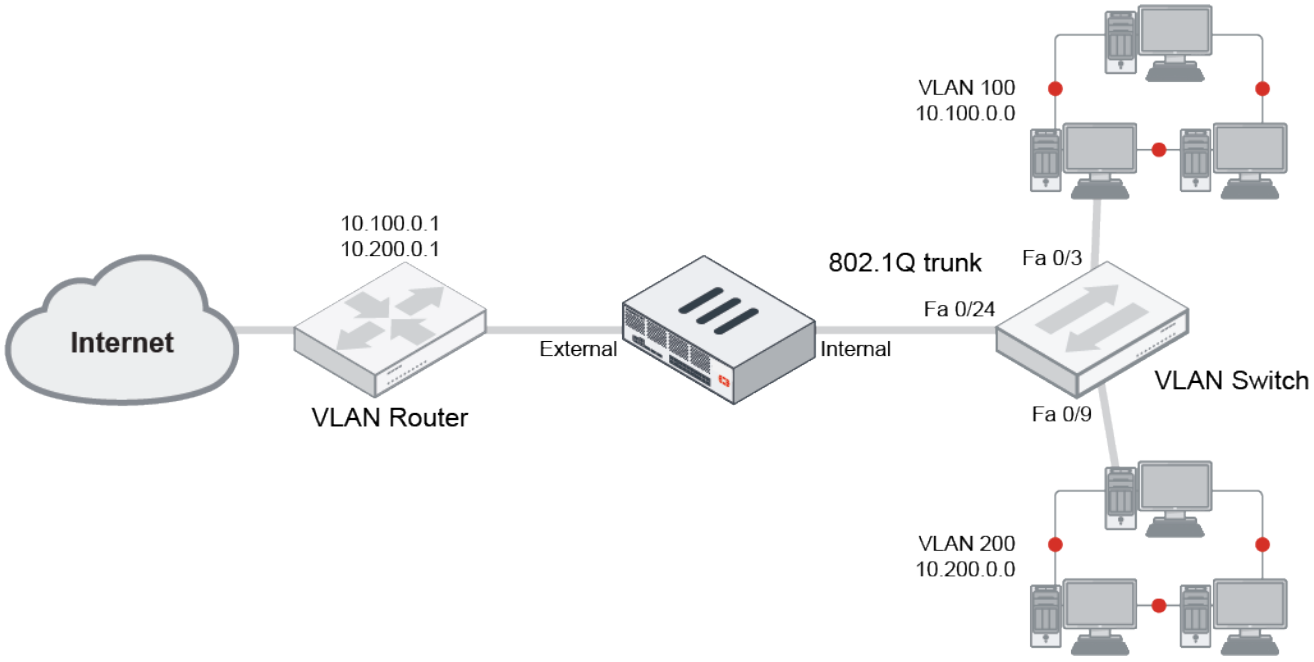
Sample topology

In this example, the FortiGate unit is operating in transparent mode and is configured with two VLANs: one with an ID of 100 and the other with ID 200. The internal and external physical interfaces each have two VLAN subinterfaces, one for VLAN_100 and one for VLAN_200.

The IP range for the internal VLAN_100 network is 10.100.0.0/255.255.0.0, and for the internal VLAN_200 network is 10.200.0.0/255.255.0.0.

The internal networks are connected to a Cisco 2950 VLAN switch which combines traffic from the two VLANs onto one in the FortiGate unit's internal interface. The VLAN traffic leaves the FortiGate unit on the external network interface, goes on to the VLAN switch, and on to the Internet. When the FortiGate units receives a tagged packet, it directs it from the incoming VLAN subinterface to the outgoing VLAN subinterface for that VLAN.

In this example, we create a VLAN subinterface on the internal interface and another one on the external interface, both with the same VLAN ID. Then we create security policies that allow packets to travel between the VLAN_100_int interface and the VLAN_100_ext interface. Two policies are required: one for each direction of traffic. The same is required between the VLAN_200_int interface and the VLAN_200_ext interface, for a total of four security policies.



Sample configuration

There are two main steps to configure your FortiGate unit to work with VLANs in transparent mode:

1. Add VLAN subinterfaces.
2. Add security policies.

You can also configure the protection profiles that manage antivirus scanning, web filtering, and spam filtering.

To add VLAN subinterfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit VLAN_100_int
        set type vlan
        set interface internal
        set vlanid 100
    next
    edit VLAN_100_ext
        set type vlan
        set interface external
        set vlanid 100
    next
    edit VLAN_200_int
        set type vlan
        set interface internal
        set vlanid 200
    next
    edit VLAN_200_ext
        set type vlan
        set interface external
        set vlanid 200
    end
```

To add security policies:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf VLAN_100_int
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_100_ext
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf VLAN_100_ext
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_100_int
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 3
        set srcintf VLAN_200_int
```

```
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_200_ext
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 4
        set srcintf VLAN_200_ext
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_200_int
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
end
```

Enhanced MAC VLANs

The Media Access Control (MAC) Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) feature in Linux allows you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

FortiGate implements an enhanced MAC VLAN consisting of a MAC VLAN with bridge functionality. Because each MAC VLAN has a unique MAC address, virtual IP addresses (VIPs) and IP pools are supported, and you can disable Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) in policies.

MAC VLAN cannot be used in a transparent mode virtual domain (VDOM). In a transparent mode VDOM, a packet leaves an interface with the MAC address of the original source instead of the interface's MAC address. FortiGate implements an enhanced version of MAC VLAN where it adds a MAC table in the MAC VLAN which learns the MAC addresses when traffic passes through.

If you configure a VLAN ID for an enhanced MAC VLAN, it won't join the switch of the underlying interface. When a packet is sent to this interface, a VLAN tag is inserted in the packet and the packet is sent to the driver of the underlying interface. When the underlying interface receives a packet, if the VLAN ID doesn't match, it won't deliver the packet to this enhanced MAC VLAN interface.



When using a VLAN ID, the ID and the underlying interface must be a unique pair, even if the belong to different VDOMs. This is because the underlying, physical interface uses the VLAN ID as the identifier to dispatch traffic among the VLAN and enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces.

If you use an interface in an enhanced MAC VLAN, do not use it for other purposes such as a management interface, HA heartbeat interface, or in Transparent VDOMs.

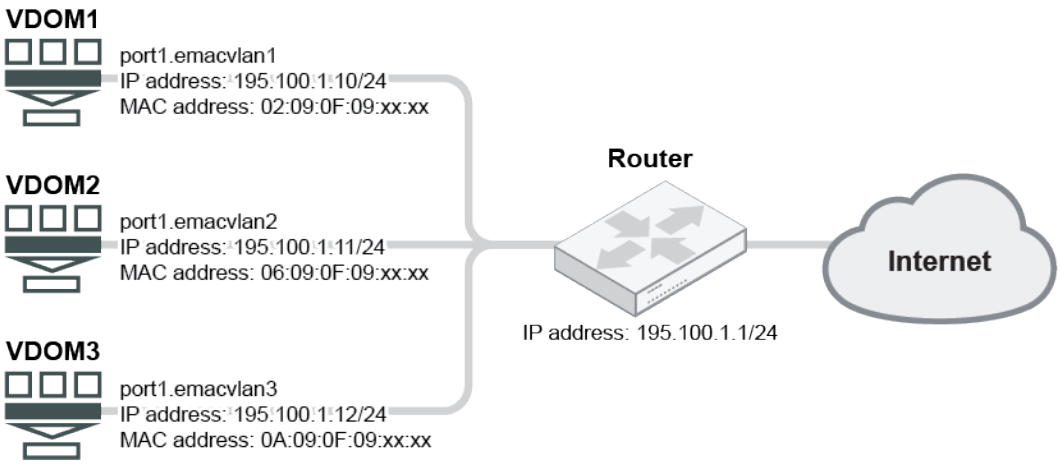
If a physical interface is used by an EMAC VLAN interface, you cannot use it in a Virtual Wire Pair.

In high availability (HA) configurations, enhanced MAC VLAN is treated as a physical interface. It's assigned a unique physical interface ID and the MAC table is synchronized with the secondary devices in the same HA cluster.

Example 1: Enhanced MAC VLAN configuration for multiple VDOMs that use the same interface or VLAN

In this example, a FortiGate is connected, through port 1 to a router that's connected to the Internet. Three VDOMs share the same interface (port 1) which connects to the same router that's connected to the Internet. Three enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces are configured on port 1 for the three VDOMs. The enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces are in the same IP subnet segment and each have unique MAC addresses.

The underlying interface (port 1) can be a physical interface, an aggregate interface, or a VLAN interface on a physical or aggregate interface.



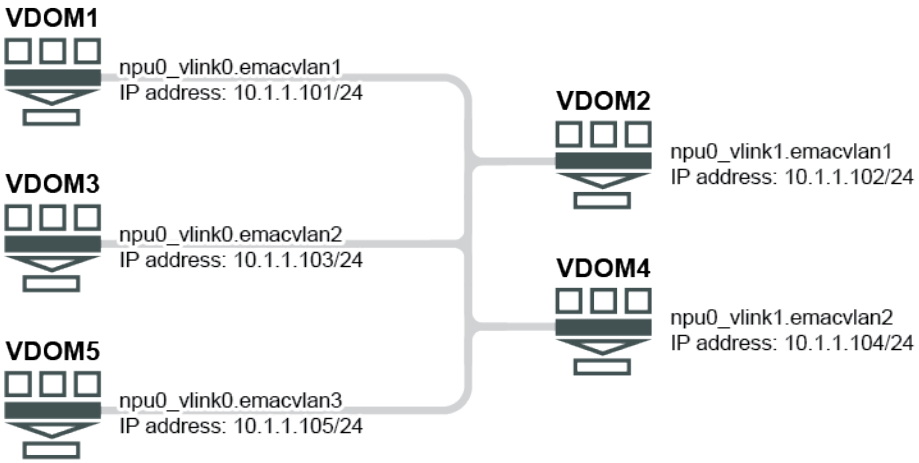
To configure enhanced MAC VLAN for this example in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit port1.emacvlan1
        set vdom VDOM1
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface port1
    next
    edit port 1.emacvlan2
        set vdom VDOM2
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface port1
    next
    edit port1.emacvlan3
        set vdom VDOM3
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface port1
    next
end
```

Example 2: Enhanced MAC VLAN configuration for shared VDOM links among multiple VDOMs

In this example, multiple VDOMs can connect to each other using enhanced MAC VLAN on network processing unit (NPU) virtual link (Vlink) interfaces.

FortiGate VDOM links (NPU-Vlink) are designed to be peer-to-peer connections and VLAN interfaces on NPU Vlink ports use the same MAC address. Connecting more than two VDOMs using NPU Vlinks and VLAN interfaces is not recommended.



To configure enhanced MAC VLAN for this example in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit npu0_vlink0.emacvlan1
        set vdom VDOM1
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface npu0_vlink0
    next
    edit npu0_vlink0.emacvlan2
        set vdom VDOM3
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface npu0_vlink0
    next
    edit npu0_vlink1.emacvlan1
        set vdom VDOM2
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface npu0_vlink1
    next
end
```

Example 3: Enhanced MAC VLAN configuration for unique MAC addresses for each VLAN interface on the same physical port

Some networks require a unique MAC address for each VLAN interface when the VLAN interfaces share the same physical port. In this case, the enhanced MAC VLAN interface is used the same way as normal VLAN interfaces.

To configure this, use the `set vlanid` command for the VLAN tag. The VLAN ID and interface must be a unique pair, even if they belong to different VDOMs.

To configure enhanced MAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
```

```
        set vlanid <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    next
end
```

Inter-VDOM routing

VDOM links allow VDOMs to communicate internally without using additional physical interfaces.

Inter-VDOM routing is the communication between VDOMs. VDOM links are virtual interfaces that connect VDOMs. A VDOM link contains a pair of interfaces, each one connected to a VDOM and forming either end of the inter-VDOM connection.

When VDOMs are configured on your FortiGate unit, configuring inter-VDOM routing and VDOM links is like creating a VLAN interface. VDOM links can be managed in either the CLI or in the network interface list in the GUI.



VDOM link does not support traffic offload. If you want to use traffic offload, use NPU-VDOM-LINK.

To configure a VDOM link in the GUI:

1. In the Global VDOM, go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *VDOM Link*.
3. Configure the fields, including the *Name*, *Virtual Domain*, IP information, *Administrative Access*, and others, then click *OK*.



By default, VDOM links are created as point-to-point (ppp) links. If required, the link type can be changed in the CLI.

For example, when running OSPF in IPv6, a link-local address is required in order to communicate with OSPF neighbors. For a VDOM link to obtain a link-local address its type must be set to `ethernet`.

To configure a VDOM link in the CLI:

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        edit "<vdom-link-name>"
            set type {ppp | ethernet}
        next
    end
    config system interface
        edit "<vdom-link-name0>"
            set vdom "<VDOM Name>"
            set type vdom-link
        next
        edit "<vdom-link-name1>"
            set vdom "<VDOM Name>"
            set type vdom-link
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

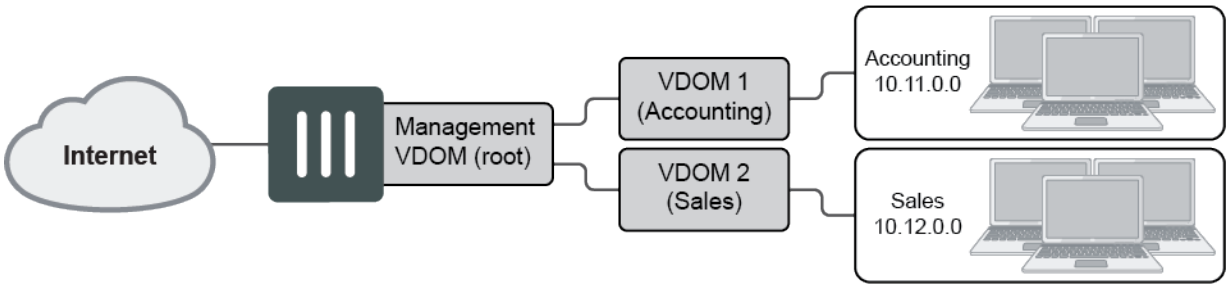
To delete a VDOM link in the GUI:

1. In the Global VDOM, go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select a *VDOM Link* and click *Delete*.

To delete a VDOM link in the CLI:

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        delete <VDOM-LINK-Name>
    end
end
```

Example



This example shows how to configure a FortiGate unit to use inter-VDOM routing.

Two departments of a company, Accounting and Sales, are connected to one FortiGate. The company uses a single ISP to connect to the Internet.

This example includes the following general steps. We recommend following the steps in the order below.

Create the VDOMs

To enable VDOMs:

```
config system global
    set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
```

You will be logged out of the device when VDOM mode is enabled.

To create the Sales and Accounting VDOMs:

```
config global
    config vdom
        edit Accounting
        next
        edit Sales
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

Configure the physical interfaces

Next, configure the physical interfaces. This example uses three interfaces on the FortiGate unit: port2 (internal), port3 (DMZ), and port1 (external). Port2 and port3 interfaces each have a department's network connected. Port1 is for all traffic to and from the Internet and uses DHCP to configure its IP address, which is common with many ISPs.

To configure the interfaces:

```
config global
    config system interface
        edit port2
            set alias AccountingLocal
            set vdom Accounting
            set mode static
            set ip 172.100.1.1 255.255.0.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "The accounting dept internal interface"
        next
        edit port3
            set alias SalesLocal
            set vdom Sales
            set mode static
            set ip 192.168.1.1 255.255.0.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "The sales dept. internal interface"
        next
        edit port1
            set alias ManagementExternal
            set vdom root
            set mode dhcp
            set allowaccess https ssh snmp
            set description "The system wide management interface."
        next
    end
end
```

Configure the VDOM links

To complete the connection between each VDOM and the management VDOM, add the two VDOM links. One pair is the Accounting – management link and the other is the Sales – management link.

When configuring inter-VDOM links, you do not have to assign IP addresses to the links unless you are using advanced features such as dynamic routing that require them. Not assigning IP addresses results in faster configuration and more available IP addresses on your networks.

To configure the Accounting and management VDOM link:

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        edit AccountVlnk
        next
```

```
    end
    config system interface
        edit AccountVlnk0
            set vdom Accounting
            set ip 11.11.11.2 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Accounting side of the VDOM link"
        next
        edit AccountVlnk1
            set vdom root
            set ip 11.11.11.1 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Management side of the VDOM link"
        next
    end
end
```

To configure the Sales and management VDOM link:

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        edit SalesVlnk
        next
    end
    config system interface
        edit SalesVlnk0
            set vdom Sales
            set ip 12.12.12.2 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Sales side of the VDOM link"
        next
        edit SalesVlnk1
            set vdom root
            set ip 12.12.12.1 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Management side of the VDOM link"
        next
    end
end
```

Configure the firewall and security profile

With the VDOMs, physical interfaces, and VDOM links configured, the firewall must now be configured to allow the proper traffic. Firewalls are configured per-VDOM, and firewall objects and routes must be created for each VDOM separately.

To configure the firewall policies from AccountingLocal to Internet:

```
config vdom
    edit Accounting
        config firewall policy
            edit 1
                set name "Accounting-Local-to-Management"
                set srcintf port2
                set dstintf AccountVlnk0
```

```
                set srcaddr all
                set dstaddr all
                set action accept
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set nat enable
            next
        end
    next
    edit root
        config firewall policy
            edit 2
                set name "Accounting-VDOM-to-Internet"
                set srcintf AccountVlnk1
                set dstintf port1
                set srcaddr all
                set dstaddr all
                set action accept
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set nat enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure the firewall policies from SalesLocal to the Internet:

```
config vdom
    edit Sales
        config firewall policy
            edit 3
                set name "Sales-local-to-Management"
                set srcintf port3
                set dstintf SalesVlnk0
                set srcaddr all
                set dstaddr all
                set action accept
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set nat enable
            next
        end
    next
    edit root
        config firewall policy
            edit 4
                set name "Sales-VDOM-to-Internet"
                set srcintf SalesVlnk1
                set dstintf port1
                set srcaddr all
                set dstaddr all
                set action accept
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set nat enable
```

```
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Test the configuration

When the inter-VDOM routing has been configured, test the configuration to confirm proper operation. Testing connectivity ensures that physical networking connections, FortiGate unit interface configurations, and firewall policies are properly configured.

The easiest way to test connectivity is to use the `ping` and `traceroute` commands to confirm the connectivity of different routes on the network.

Test both from AccountingLocal to the internet and from SalesLocal to the internet.

Software switch

A software switch is a virtual switch that is implemented at the software or firmware level and not at the hardware level. A software switch can be used to simplify communication between devices connected to different FortiGate interfaces. For example, using a software switch, you can place the FortiGate interface connected to an internal network on the same subnet as your wireless interfaces. Then devices on the internal network can communicate with devices on the wireless network without any additional configuration on the FortiGate unit, such as additional security policies.

A software switch can also be useful if you require more hardware ports for the switch on a FortiGate unit. For example, if your FortiGate unit has a 4-port switch, WAN1, WAN2, and DMZ interfaces, and you need one more port, you can create a soft switch that can include the four-port switch and the DMZ interface, all on the same subnet. These types of applications also apply to wireless interfaces, virtual wireless interfaces, and physical interfaces such as those in FortiWiFi and FortiAP units.

Similar to a hardware switch, a software switch functions like a single interface. It has one IP address and all the interfaces in the software switch are on the same subnet. Traffic between devices connected to each interface are not regulated by security policies, and traffic passing in and out of the switch are controlled by the same policy.

When setting up a software switch, consider the following:

- Ensure that you have a back up of the configuration.
- Ensure that you have at least one port or connection, such as the console port, to connect to the FortiGate unit. If you accidentally combine too many ports, you need a way to undo errors.
- The ports that you include must not have any link or relation to any other aspect of the FortiGate unit, such as DHCP servers, security policies, and so on.
- For increased security, you can create a captive portal for the switch to allow only specific user groups access to the resources connected to the switch.

Some of the difference between software and hardware switches are:

Feature	Software switch	Hardware switch
Processing	Packets are processed in software by the CPU.	Packets are processed in hardware by the hardware switch controller, or SPU where applicable.
STP	Not Supported	Supported

Feature	Software switch	Hardware switch
Wireless SSIDs	Supported	Not Supported
Intra-switch traffic	Allowed by default. Can be explicitly set to require a policy.	Allowed by default.

To create a software switch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Interface*.
3. Set *Type* to *Software Switch*.
4. Configure the *Name*, *Interface members*, and other fields as required.
   To add an interface to a software switch, it cannot be referenced by an existing configuration and its IP address must be set to 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0.
5. Click *OK*.

To create a software switch in the CLI:

```
config system switch-interface
    edit <interface>
        set vdom <vdom>
        set member <interface_list>
        set type switch
    next
end
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set vdom <vdom>
        set type switch
        set ip <ip_address>
        set allowaccess https ssh ping
    next
end
```

To add an interface to a software switch, it cannot be referenced by an existing configuration and its IP address must be set to 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0.

Example

For this example, the wireless interface (WiFi) needs to be on the same subnet as the DMZ1 interface to facilitate wireless synchronizing from an iPhone and a local computer. Because synchronizing between two subnets is problematic, putting both interfaces on the same subnet allows the synchronizing will work. The software switch will accomplish this.

1. Clear the interfaces and back up the configuration:
   a. Ensure the interfaces are not used for other security policy or for other use on the FortiGate unit.
   b. Check the WiFi and DMZ1 ports to ensure that DHCP is not enabled and that there are no other dependencies on these interfaces.
   c. Save the current configuration so that it can be recovered if something foes wrong.
2. Merge the WiFi port and DMZ1 port to create a software switch named `synchro` with an IP address of 10.10.21.12 and administrative access for HTTPS, SSH and PING:

```
config system switch-interface
    edit synchro
        set vdom "root"
        set type switch
        set member dmz1 wifi
    next
end
config system interface
    edit synchro
        set ip 10.10.21.12 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https ssh ping
    next
end
```

After the switch is set up, you add security policies, DHCP servers, and any other settings that are required.

Hardware switch

A hardware switch is a virtual switch interface that groups different ports together so that the FortiGate can use the group as a single interface. Supported FortiGate models have a default hardware switch called either *internal* or *lan*. The hardware switch is supported by the chipset at the hardware level.

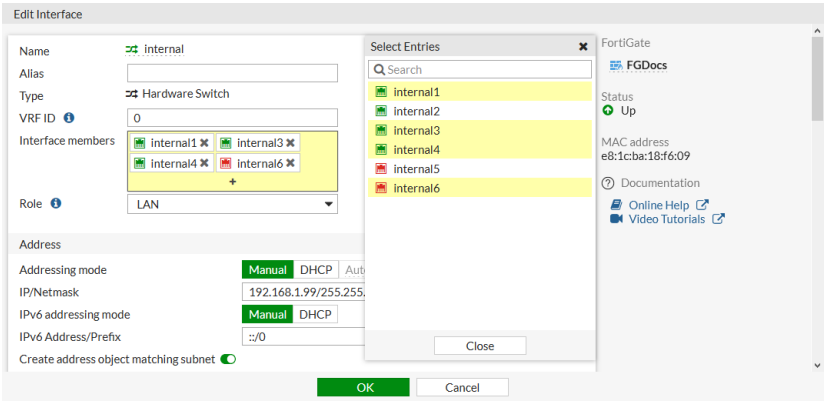
Ports that are connected to the same hardware switch behave like they are on the same physical switch in the same broadcast domain. Ports can be removed from a hardware switch and assigned to another switch or used as standalone interfaces.

Some of the difference between hardware and software switches are:

Feature	Hardware switch	Software switch
Processing	Packets are processed in hardware by the hardware switch controller, or SPU where applicable.	Packets are processed in software by the CPU.
STP	Supported	Not Supported
Wireless SSIDs	Not Supported	Supported
Intra-switch traffic	Allowed by default.	Allowed by default. Can be explicitly set to require a policy.

To change the ports in a hardware switch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interface* and edit the hardware switch.
2. Click inside the *Interface members* field.



3. Select interfaces to add or remove them from the hardware switch, then click *Close*.
   To add an interface to a hardware switch, it cannot be referenced by an existing configuration and its IP address must be set to 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0.
4. Click *OK*.
   Removed interfaces will now be listed as standalone interfaces in the *Physical Interface* section.

To remove ports from a hardware switch in the CLI:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "internal"
        config port
            delete internal2
            delete internal5
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

To add ports to a hardware switch in the CLI:

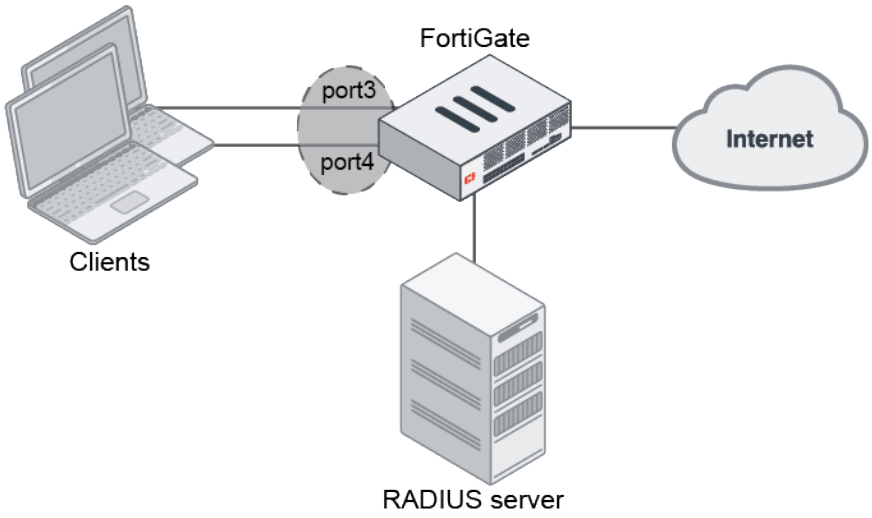
```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "internal"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        config port
            edit "internal1"
            next
            edit "internal3"
            next
            edit "internal4"
            next
            edit "internal6"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To add an interface to a hardware switch, it cannot be referenced by an existing configuration and its IP address must be set to 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0.

Using 802.1X on virtual switches for certain NP6 platforms

802.1X is supported under the hardware switch interface on the following NP6 platforms: FG-30xE, FG-40xE, and FG-110xE.

In this example, port3 and port4 are part of a hardware switch interface. The hardware switch acts as a virtual switch so that devices can connect directly to these ports and perform 802.1X authentication on the port.



Prerequisites:

1. Configure a RADIUS server (see RADIUS servers on page 1936).
2. Define a user group named test to use the remote RADIUS server and for 802.1X authentication (see User definition and groups on page 1916).
3. Configure a hardware switch (named 18188) with port3 and port4 as the members.
4. Configure a firewall policy that allows traffic from the 18188 hardware switch to go to the internet.
5. Enable 802.1X authentication on the client devices.

To configure 802.1X authentication on a hardware switch in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the hardware switch.
2. In the *Network* section, enable *Security mode* and select *802.1X*.
3. Click the + to add the *User group*.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure 802.1X authentication on a hardware switch in the CLI:

1. Configure the virtual hardware switch interfaces:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "18188"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
```

```
        config port
            edit "port3"
            next
            edit "port4"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure 802.1X authentication:

```
config system interface
    edit "18188"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp fgfm ftm
        set type hard-switch
        set security-mode 802.1X
        set security-groups "test"
        set device-identification enable
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 52
    next
end
```

To verify the that the 802.1X authentication was successful:

1. Get a client connected to port3 to authenticate to access the internet.
2. In FortiOS, verify the 802.1X authentication port status:

```
# diagnose sys 802-1x status

Virtual switch '18188' (default mode) 802.1x member status:
  port3: Link up, 802.1X state: authorized
  port4: Link up, 802.1X state: unauthorized
```

Zone

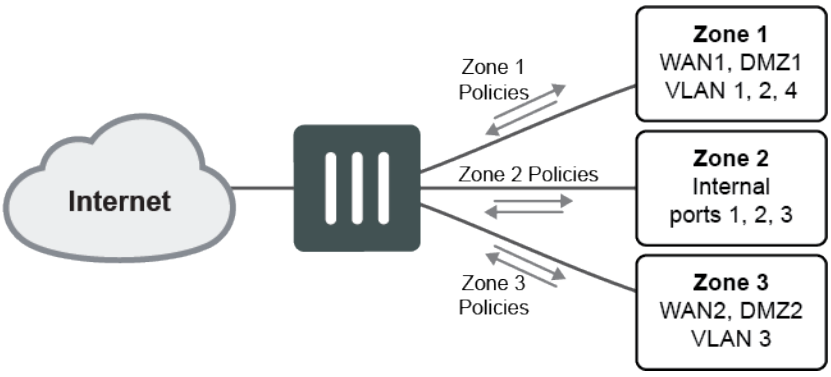
Zones are a group of one or more physical or virtual FortiGate interfaces that you can apply security policies to control inbound and outbound traffic. Grouping interfaces and VLAN subinterfaces into zones simplifies the creation of security policies where a number of network segments can use the same policy settings and protection profiles.

When you add a zone, you select the names of the interfaces and VLAN subinterfaces to add to the zone. Each interface still has its own address. Routing is still done between interfaces, that is, routing is not affected by zones. You can use security policies to control the flow of intra-zone traffic.

For example, in the sample configuration below, the network includes three separate groups of users representing different entities on the company network. While each group has its own set of ports and VLANs in each area, they can all use the same security policy and protection profiles to access the Internet. Rather than the administrator making nine separate security policies, he can make administration simpler by adding the required interfaces to a zone and creating three policies.

Sample configuration

You can configure policies for connections to and from a zone but not between interfaces in a zone. For this example, you can create a security policy to go between zone 1 and zone 3, but not between WAN2 and WAN1, or WAN1 and DMZ1.



To create a zone in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.

   If VDOMs are enabled, go to the VDOM to create a zone.

2. Click *Create New* > *Zone*.
3. Configure the *Name* and add the *Interface Members*.

To configure a zone to include the internal interface and a VLAN using the CLI:

```
config system zone
    edit Zone_1
        set interface internal VLAN_1
        set intrazone deny/allow
    next
end
```

Using zone in a firewall policy

To configure a firewall policy to allow any interface to access the Internet using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set name "2"
        set srcintf "Zone_1"
        set dstintf "port15"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Intra-zone traffic

In the zone configuration you can `set intrazone deny` to prohibit the different interfaces in the same zone to talk to each other.

For example, if you have ten interfaces in your zone and the `intrazone` setting is `deny`. You now want to allow traffic between a very small number of networks on different interfaces that are part of the zone but you do not want to disable the intra-zone blocking.

In this example, the zone VLANs are defined as: `192.168.1.0/24`, `192.168.2.0/24`, ... `192.168.10.0/24`.

This policy allows traffic from 192.168.1.x to 192.168.2.x even though they are in the same zone and intra-zone blocking is enabled. The intra-zone blocking acts as a default deny rule and you have to specifically override it by creating a policy within the zone.

To enable intra-zone traffic, create the following policy:

Source Interface	Zone-name, e.g., `Vlans`
Source Address	192.168.1.0/24
Destination	Zone-name (same as Source Interface, i.e., `Vlans`)
Destination Address	192.168.2.0/24

Virtual Wire Pair

A virtual wire pair consists of two interfaces that do not have IP addressing and are treated like a transparent mode VDOM. All traffic received by one interface in the virtual wire pair can only be forwarded to the other interface, provided a virtual wire pair firewall policy allows this traffic. Traffic from other interfaces cannot be routed to the interfaces in a virtual wire pair. Redundant and 802.3ad aggregate (LACP) interfaces can be included in a virtual wire pair.

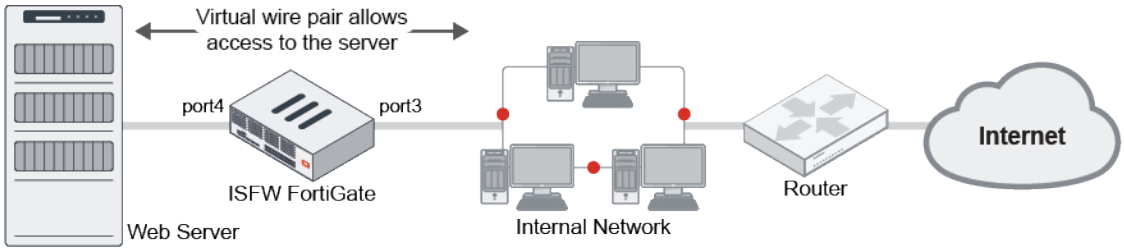
Virtual wire pairs are useful for a typical topology where MAC addresses do not behave normally. For example, port pairing can be used in a Direct Server Return (DSR) topology where the response MAC address pair may not match the request's MAC address pair.

Example

In this example, a virtual wire pair (port3 and port4) makes it easier to protect a web server that is behind a FortiGate operating as an Internal Segmentation Firewall (ISFW). Users on the internal network access the web server through the ISFW over the virtual wire pair.



Interfaces used in a virtual wire pair cannot be used to access the ISFW FortiGate. Before creating a virtual wire pair, make sure you have a different port configured to allow admin access using your preferred protocol.



To add a virtual wire pair using the CLI:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "VWP-name"
        set member "port3" "port4"
        set wildcard-vlan disable
    next
end
```

To add a virtual wire pair using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Virtual Wire Pair*.
3. Select the *Interface Members* to add to the virtual wire pair.
   These interfaces cannot be part of a switch, such as the default LAN/internal interface.
4. If required, enable *Wildcard VLAN* and set the *VLAN Filter*.
5. Click *OK*.

To create a virtual wire pair policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "VWP-Policy"
        set srcintf "port3" "port4"
        set dstintf "port3" "port4"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

To create a virtual wire pair policy using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Virtual Wire Pair Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Select the direction that traffic is allowed to flow.
4. Configure the other fields.
5. Click *OK*.

Virtual VLAN switch

The hardware switch ports on FortiGate models that support virtual VLAN switches can be used as a layer 2 switch. Virtual VLAN switch mode allows 802.1Q VLANs to be assigned to ports, and the configuration of one interface as a trunk port.

The following FortiGate series are supported in FortiOS 6.4: 60F, 100E, 100F, 140E, 300E, 400E, 1100E, 1800F, 2600F, 4200F, and 4400F.

The `virtual-switch-vlan` option must be enabled in the CLI to configure VLAN switch mode from the GUI or CLI.

To enable VLAN switches:

```
config system global
    set virtual-switch-vlan enable
end
```

After this setting is enabled, any previously configured hardware switches will appear in the *Network* > *Interfaces* page under *VLAN Switch*.

To enable VLAN switch mode in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *View Settings* section, enable *VLAN switch mode*.
3. Click *Apply*.

Basic configurations

Hardware switch ports can be configured as either a VLAN switch port or a trunk port. The available interfaces and allowable VLAN IDs that can be used depend on the FortiGate model. It is recommended to remove ports from the default VLAN switch before you begin configurations.

To create a new VLAN and assign ports in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and click *Create New* > *Interface*.
2. Enter a name and configure the following:
   a. Set the *Type* to *VLAN Switch*.
   b. Enter a *VLAN ID*.
   c. Click the + and add the *Interface Members*.
   d. Configure the *Address* and *Administrative Access* settings as needed.
3. Click *OK*.

To create a new VLAN and assign ports in the CLI:

1. Configure the VLAN:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "VLAN10"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        set vlan 10
        config port
```

```
            edit "internal1"
            next
            edit "internal2"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the VLAN switch interface addressing:

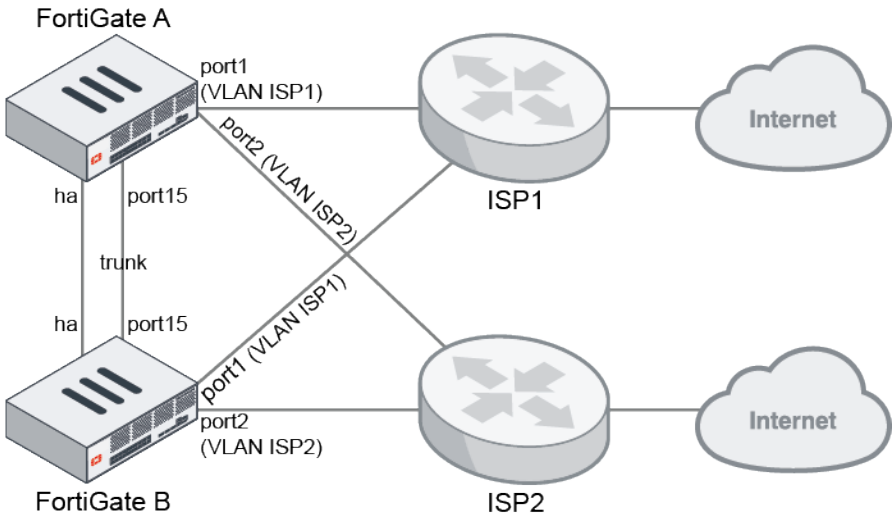
```
config system interface
    edit "VLAN10"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.10.99 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http fgfm
        set type hard-switch
    next
end
```

To designate an interface as a trunk port:

```
config system interface
    edit internal5
        set trunk enable
    next
end
```

Example 1: HA using a VLAN switch

In this example, two FortiGates in an HA cluster are connected to two ISP routers. Instead of connecting to external L2 switches, each FortiGate connects to each ISP router on the same hardware switch port on the same VLAN. A trunk port connects the two FortiGates to deliver the 802.1Q tagged traffic to the other. A full mesh between the FortiGate cluster and the ISP routers is achieved where no single point of failure will cause traffic disruptions.



This example assumes that the HA settings are already configured. The interface and VLAN switch settings are identical between cluster members and synchronized. See HA using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch on page 962 for a similar example that does not use a VLAN switch.

To configure the VLAN switches:

1. Configure the ISP interfaces with the corresponding VLAN IDs:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "ISP1"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        set vlan 2951
        config port
            edit "port1"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "ISP2"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        set vlan 2952
        config port
            edit "port2"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the VLAN switch interface addressing:

```
config system interface
    edit "ISP1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.10.99 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set type hard-switch
    next
    edit "ISP2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.20.99 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set type hard-switch
    next
end
```

3. Designate port15 as the trunk port:

```
config system interface
    edit port15
        set trunk enable
    next
end
```

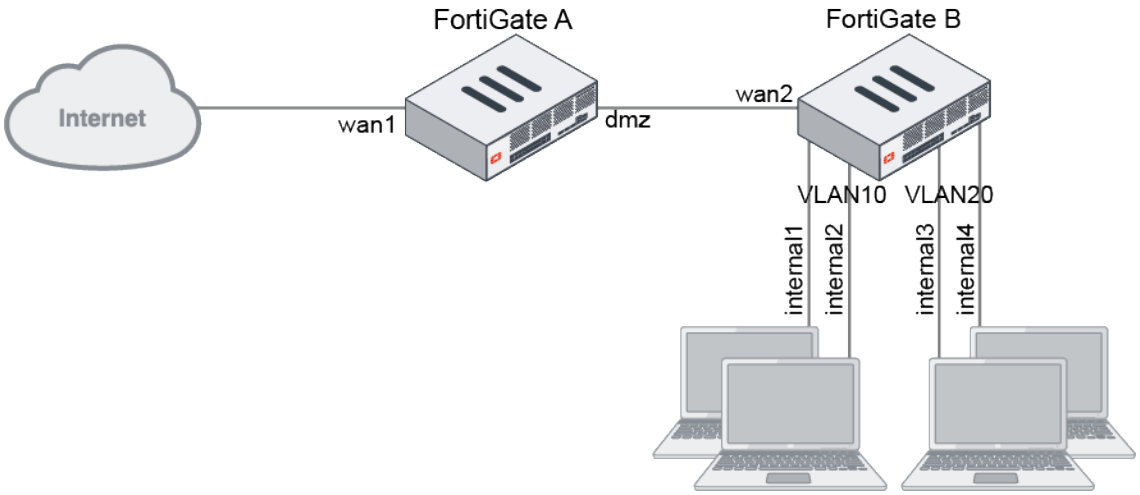
4. Configure firewall policies to allow outgoing traffic on the ISP1 and ISP2 interfaces:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port11"
        set dstintf "ISP1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port11"
        set dstintf "ISP2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Example 2: LAN extension

In this example, two hardware switch ports are assigned VLAN10, and two ports are assigned VLAN20 on FortiGate B. The wan2 interface is designated as the trunk port, and is connected to the upstream FortiGate A. The corresponding VLAN subinterfaces VLAN10 and VLAN20 on the upstream FortiGate allow further access to other networks.



The available interfaces and VLAN IDs varies between FortiGate models. The FortiGate B in this example is a 60F model.

To configure FortiGate B:

1. Configure the VLAN interfaces:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "VLAN10"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        set vlan 10
        config port
            edit "internal1"
            next
            edit "internal2"
```

```
            next
        end
    next
    edit "VLAN20"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        set vlan 20
        config port
            edit "internal3"
            next
            edit "internal4"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the VLAN switch interface addressing:

```
config system interface
    edit "VLAN10"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.10.99 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http fgfm
        set type hard-switch
    next
    edit "VLAN20"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.20.99 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http fgfm
        set type hard-switch
    next
end
```

3. Designate wan2 as the trunk port:

```
config system interface
    edit wan2
        set trunk enable
    next
end
```

To configure FortiGate A:

1. Configure the VLAN subinterfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "VLAN10"
        set ip 192.168.10.98 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh
        set role lan
        set interface "dmz"
        set vlanid 10
    next
    edit "VLAN20"
        set ip 192.168.20.98 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh
        set role lan
        set interface "dmz"
        set vlanid 20
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Configure the DHCP server on VLAN10:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 0
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 192.168.10.98
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "VLAN10 "
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 192.168.10.100
                set end-ip 192.168.10.254
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
    next
end
```

3. Configure firewall policies that allow traffic from the VLAN10 and VLAN20 interfaces to the internet:

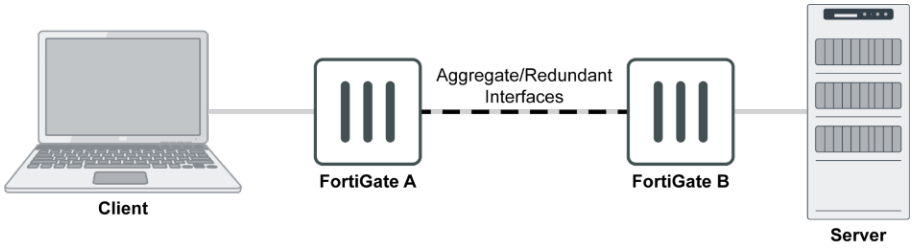
```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set name "VLAN10-out"
        set srcintf "VLAN10"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 0
        set name "VLAN20-out"
        set srcintf "VLAN20"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To test the connection:

1. Connect a PC to internal1 on FortiGate B.
2. Verify that it receives an IP address from FortiGate A's DHCP server.
3. From the PC, ping FortiGate B on 192.168.10.99.
4. Ping FortiGate A on 192.168.10.98.
5. Connect to the internet. Traffic is allowed by the VLAN10-out policy.

Failure detection for aggregate and redundant interfaces

When an aggregate or redundant interface goes down, the corresponding fail-alert interface changes to down. When an aggregate or redundant interface comes up, the corresponding fail-alert interface changes to up.



Fail-detect for aggregate and redundant interfaces can be configured using the CLI.

To configure an aggregate interface so that port3 goes down with it:

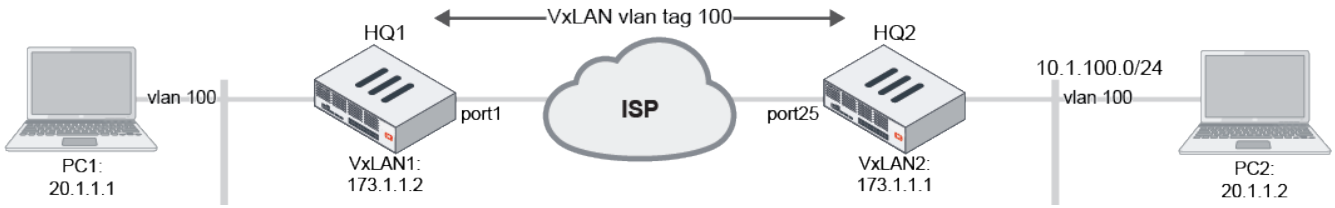
```
config system interface
   edit "agg1"
      set vdom "root"
      set fail-detect enable
      set fail-alert-method link-down
      set fail-alert-interfaces "port3"
      set type aggregate
      set member "port1" "port2"
   next
end
```

To configure a redundant interface so that port4 goes down with it:

```
config system interface
   edit "red1"
      set vdom "root"
      set fail-detect enable
      set fail-alert-method link-down
      set fail-alert-interfaces "port4"
      set type redundant
      set member "port1" "port2"
   next
end
```

VLAN inside VXLAN

VLANs can be assigned to VXLAN interfaces. In a data center network where VXLAN is used to create an L2 overlay network and for multitenant environments, a customer VLAN tag can be assigned to VXLAN interface. This allows the VLAN tag from VLAN traffic to be encapsulated within the VXLAN packet.



To configure VLAN inside VXLAN on HQ1:

1. Configure VXLAN:

```
config system vxlan
   edit "vxlan1"
      set interface port1
      set vni 1000
      set remote-ip 173.1.1.1

   next
end
```

2. Configure system interface:

```
config system interface
   edit vlan100
     set vdom root
     set vlanid 100
     set interface dmz
   next
   edit vxlan100
     set type vlan
     set vlanid 100
     set vdom root
     set interface vxlan1
   next
end
```

3. Configure software-switch:

```
config system switch-interface
   edit sw1
      set vdom root
      set member vlan100 vxlan100
      set intra-switch-policy implicit
   next
end
```

The default `intra-switch-policy implicit` behavior allows traffic between member interfaces within the switch. Therefore, it is not necessary to create firewall policies to allow this traffic.

Instead of creating a software-switch, it is possible to use a virtual-wire-pair as well. See Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN on page 440.

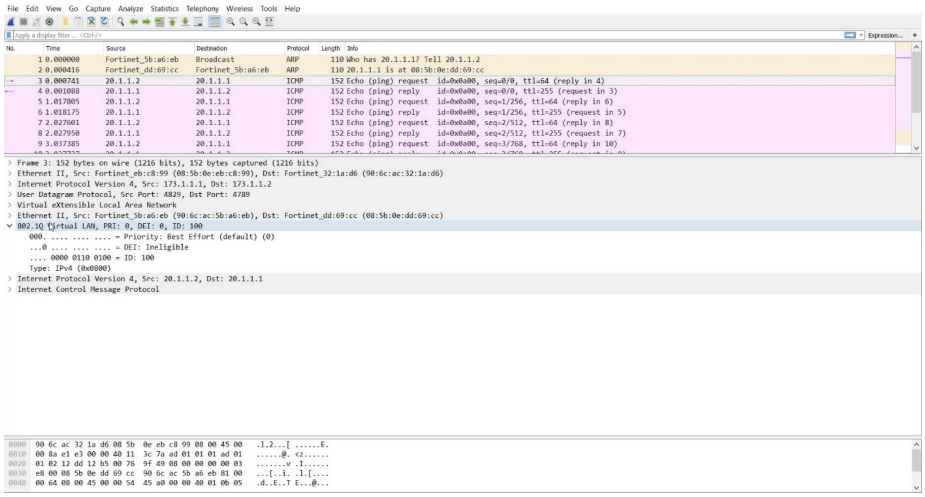
To configure VLAN inside VXLAN on HQ2:

1. Configure VXLAN:
```
config system vxlan
   edit "vxlan2"
      set interface port25
      set vni 1000
      set remote-ip 173.1.1.2
   next
end
```
2. Configure system interface:
```
config system interface
      edit vlan100
      set vdom root
      set vlanid 100
      set interface port20
   next
   edit vxlan100
      set type vlan
      set vlanid 100
      set vdom root
      set interface vxlan2
   next
end
```
3. Configure software-switch:
```
config system switch-interface
   edit sw1
      set vdom root
      set member vlan100 vxlan100
   next
end
```

To verify the configuration:

Ping PC1 from PC2.

The following is captured on HQ2:

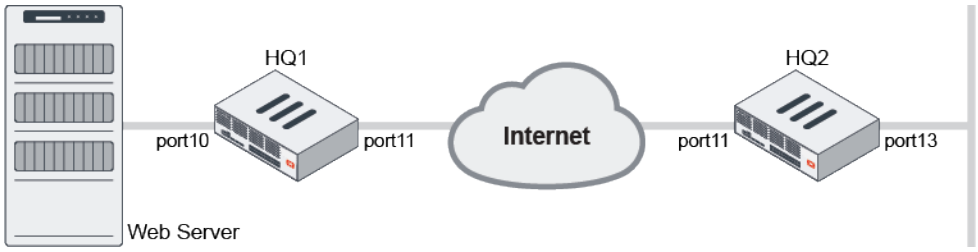


This captures the VXLAN traffic between 172.1.1.1 and 172.1.1.2 with the VLAN 100 tag inside.

Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN

Virtual wire pairs can be used with VXLAN interfaces.

In this examples, VXLAN interfaces are added between FortiGate HQ1 and FortiGate HQ2, a virtual wire pair is added in HQ1, and firewall policies are created on both HQ1 and HQ2.



To create VXLAN interface on HQ1:

```
config system interface
    edit "port11"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.2.2.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp telnet
    next
end
config system vxlan
    edit "vxlan1"
        set interface "port11"
        set vni 1000
        set remote-ip "10.2.2.2"
    next
end
```

To create VXLAN interface on HQ2:

```
config system interface
    edit "port11"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http
    next
end
config system vxlan
    edit "vxlan1"
        set interface "port11"
        set vni 1000
        set remote-ip "10.2.2.1"
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "vxlan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp
```

```
    next
end
```

To create a virtual wire pair on HQ1:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "vwp1"
        set member "port10" "vxlan1"
    next
end
```

To create a firewall policy on HQ1:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "vxlan-policy"
        set srcintf "port10" "vxlan1"
        set dstintf "port10" "vxlan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set webfilter-profile "default"
        set dnsfilter-profile "default"
        set ips-sensor "default"
        set application-list "default"
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

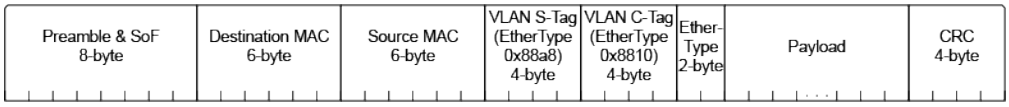
To create a firewall policy on HQ2:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "vxlan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

QinQ 802.1Q in 802.1ad

QinQ (802.1ad) allows multiple VLAN tags to be inserted into a single frame, and can be configured on supported FortiGate devices.

In this example, the customer connects to a provider that uses 802.1ad double-tagging to separate their customer VLANs. The FortiGate connecting to the provider double-tags its frames with an outer provider-tag (S-Tag) and an inner customer-tag (C-Tag).



The customer identifies itself with the provider-tag (S-Tag) 232 and uses the customer-tag (C-Tag) 444 for traffic to its VLAN.

To configure the interfaces:

1. Configure the interface to the provider that uses the outer tag (S-Tag):

```
config system interface
    edit "vlan-8021ad"
        set vdom "root"
        set vlan-protocol 8021ad
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 47
        set interface "PORT"
        set vlanid 232
    next
end
```

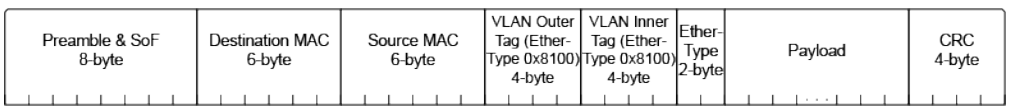
2. Configure a dynamic VLAN interface that uses the inner tag (C-Tag):

```
config system interface
    edit "DVLAN"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 48
        set interface "vlan-8021ad"
        set vlanid 444
    next
end
```

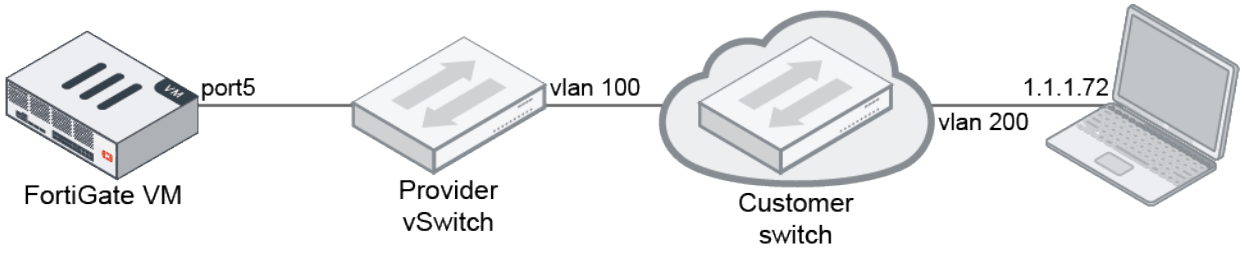
The following FortiGate devices are not supported: 3800D, 3810D, 3815D, 3960E, 3980E.

QinQ 802.1Q in 802.1Q

QinQ (802.1Q in 802.1Q) is supported for FortiGate VM models, where multiple VLAN tags can be inserted into a single frame.



In this example, the FortiGate VM is connected to a provider vSwitch and then a customer switch. The FortiGate encapsulates the frame with an outer 802.1Q tag of VLAN 100 and an inner 802.1Q tag of VLAN 200; port5 is used as the physical port. The provider vSwitch strips the outer tag and forwards traffic to the appropriate customer. Then the customer switch strips the inner tag and forwards the packet to the appropriate customer VLAN.



To configure the interfaces:

1. Configure the interface to the provider that uses the outer tag:

```
config system interface
    edit "vlan-8021q"
        set vdom "root"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set interface "port5"
        set vlan-protocol 8021q
        set vlanid 100
    next
end
```

2. Configure the interface to the provider that uses the inner tag:

```
config system interface
    edit "vlan-qinq8021q"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 1.1.1.71 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set interface "vlan-8021q"
        set vlanid 200
    next
end
```

To verify the traffic:

1. From the FortiGate, ping 1.1.1.72:

```
# execute ping 1.1.1.72
PING 1.1.1.72 (1.1.1.72): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 1.1.1.72: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 1.1.1.72: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.1 ms
64 bytes from 1.1.1.72: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.1 ms
64 bytes from 1.1.1.72: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.1 ms
^C
--- 1.1.1.72 ping statistics ---
```

```
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.1/0.1/0.2 ms
```

2. Verify the packet capture frame header output captured from the FortiGate's port5:

```
Frame 2: 106 bytes on wire (848 bits), 106 bytes captured (848 bits)
Ethernet II, Src: VMware_93:ae:8f (00:50:56:93:ae:8f), Dst: VMware_93:e3:72
(00:50:56:93:e3:72)
    Destination: VMware_93:e3:72 (00:50:56:93:e3:72)
    Source: VMware_93:ae:8f (00:50:56:93:ae:8f)
    Type: 802.1Q Virtual LAN (0x8100)
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 0, DEI: 0, ID: 100
    000. .... .... .... = Priority: Best Effort (default) (0)
    ...0 .... .... .... = DEI: Ineligible
    .... 0000 0110 0100 = ID: 100
    Type: 802.1Q Virtual LAN (0x8100)
802.1Q Virtual LAN, PRI: 0, DEI: 0, ID: 200
    000. .... .... .... = Priority: Best Effort (default) (0)
    ...0 .... .... .... = DEI: Ineligible
    .... 0000 1100 1000 = ID: 200
    Type: IPv4 (0x0800)
Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 1.1.1.71, Dst: 1.1.1.72
Internet Control Message Protocol
```

The outer tag (first tag) is an 802.1Q tag with VLAN ID 100. The inner tag (second tag) is also an 802.1Q tag with VLAN ID 200.

Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service

The FortiIPAM (IP Address Management) service automatically assigns subnets to FortiGate to prevent duplicate IP addresses from overlapping within the same Security Fabric.

After the FortiIPAM registration is synced to FortiGuard from FortiCare, FortiGate can use FortiIPAM to automatically assign IP addresses based on the configured network size for the FortiGate interface.

Requirements:

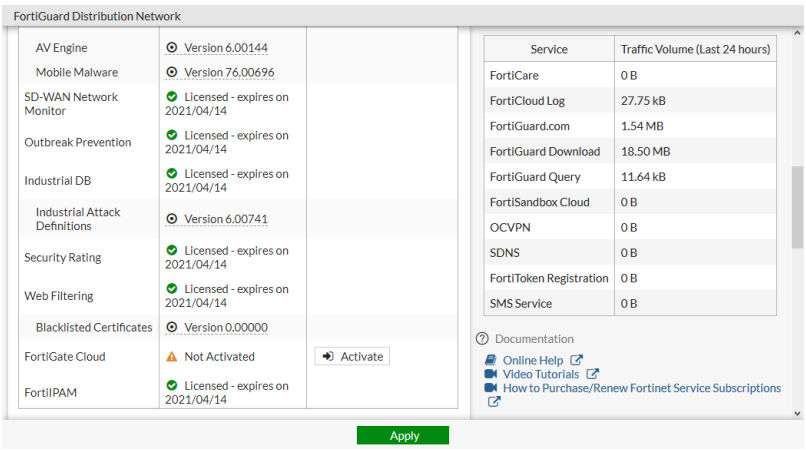
Register the FortiIPAM service for FortiGate in FortiCare.



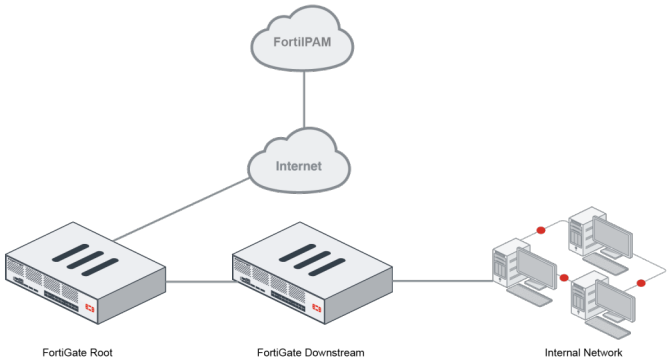
FortiIPAM is a paid service.

To verify the FortiIPAM service registration in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* to verify the FortiIPAM service is registered. If the service is registered, the *FortiIPAM* area at the bottom of the page displays a check mark as well as the license expiry date.



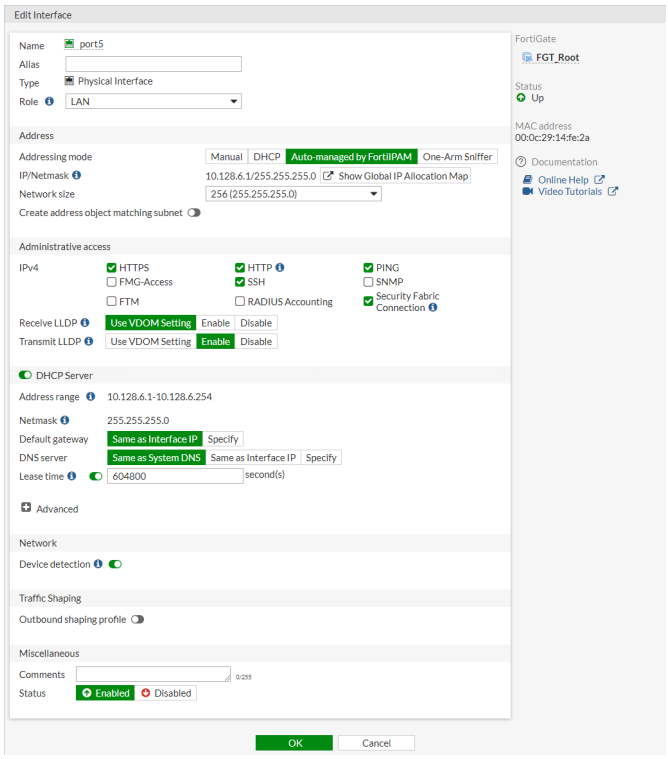
Example



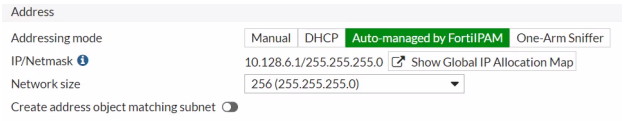
In this example, you will configure port5 on *FortiGate Root* to be managed by FortiIPAM and specify the network size. Next you will enable DHCP on the interface to supply IP addresses to this network.

Once FortiIPAM is designated as the IP source, you will configure the port5 interface on *FortiGate Downstream* to obtain an IP from DHCP to connect it to *FortiGate Root* and add it to the Security Fabric. Lastly, you will use FortiIPAM to assign IP addresses to the *Internal Network*.

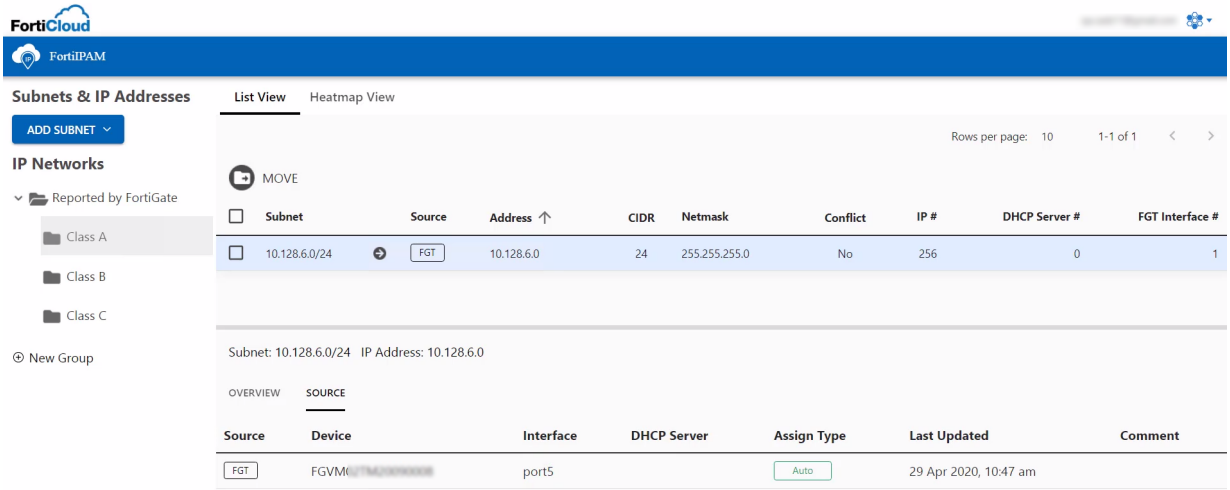
1. On *FortiGate Root*, edit port5 and configure the interface to be managed by FortiIPAM.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*, and double-click port5 to edit it. The *Edit Interface* window opens.
   b. From the *Role* dropdown, select *LAN*.
   c. In the *Addressing mode* area, select *Auto-managed by FortiIPAM*. An information icon appears next to *IP/Netmask* and below the *Network Size* dropdown indicating FortiIPAM will allocate an IP subnet with the selected size.
   d. From the *Network Size* dropdown, select the size of the network segment for this interface.
   e. Enable *DHCP Server* to allow the interface to supply IP addresses to this network.
   You do not need to configure *Address range* and *Netmask*. These will be configured by FortiIPAM.
   f. Click *OK*. Port5 gets an IP address from FortiIPAM corresponding to the network size. It will also start assigning addresses through DHCP. Refresh this page if an IP has not been assigned.



2. View the IP allocation map.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*, and double-click port5 to view it.
   b. In the *IP/Netmask* area, click *Show Global IP Allocation Map*. You are redirected to FortiCloud.

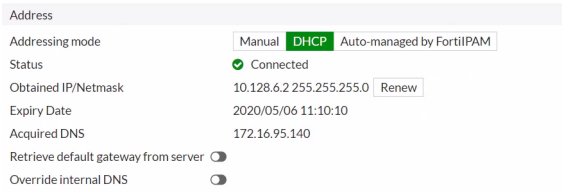


   c. Click *Login*. The FortiIPAM portal opens. The *List View* displays the assigned IP entries.
   d. Double-click an IP entry and click the *Source* tab. The IP source appears in the *Device* column. The *Interface* column displays the port. *Assign Type* displays *Auto*. *Last Updated* displays the assign time.

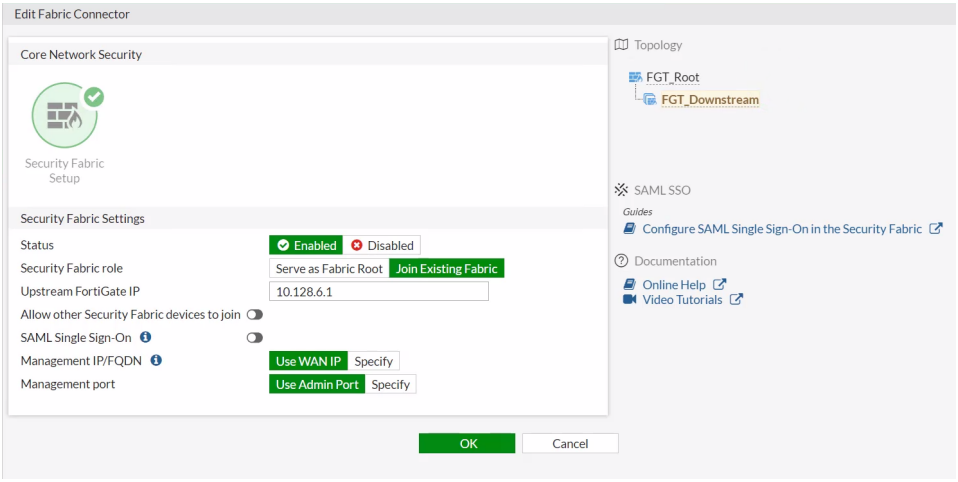


3. On *FortiGate Root* go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. The *DHCP Server* settings are configured automatically.

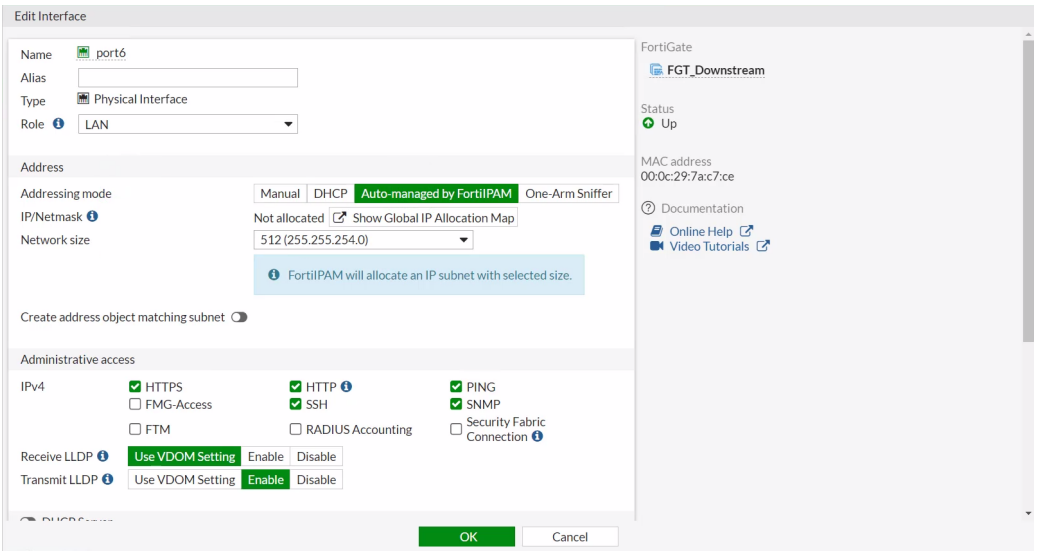
4. On *FortiGate Downstream*, configure port5 to obtain an IP from DHCP.
   a. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*, and verify FortiIPAM is licensed.
   b. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*, and double click port5 to edit it.
   c. In the *Addressing mode* area, select *DHCP* and click *OK*. The interface will get its IP address from the DHCP server configured on *FortiGate Root*.
   d. In *Network* > *Interfaces*, double-click port5. The following fields appear in the *Address* area:
      - *Status*.
      - *Obtained IP/Netmask*
      - *Expiry Date*
      - *Acquired DNS*



5. Add *FortiGate Downstream* to the Security Fabric.
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. In the *Security Fabric Settings* area, set *Status* to *Enabled*.
   b. In the *Upstream FortiGate IP* field, enter the IP address for *FortiGate Root*, and click *OK*. The *Topology* pane shows the connection is established.



6. On *FortiGate Downstream*, configure port6 to use FortiIPAM.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. Double-click port6 to edit it.
   b. From the *Role* dropdown, select *LAN*.
   c. In the *Address mode* area, select *Auto-managed by FortiIPAM*.
   d. From the *Network size* dropdown, select a different network size. In this example, the network size was increased to 512.



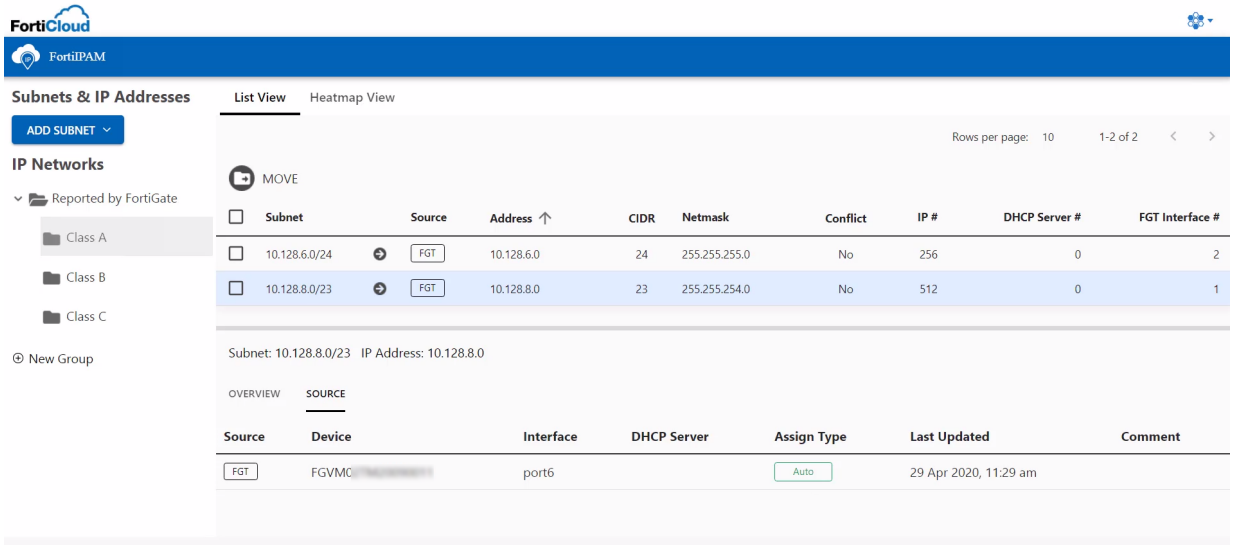
e. Wait a while and then double-click port6. The *IP/Netmask* is auto-populated.

f. Enable *DHCP Server* to allow the interface to supply IP addresses to this network.

7. Go back to the FortiIPAM portal in FortiCloud.

a. The *List View* tab shows the IP addresses for the downstream FortiGates.

b. Select a subnet, and click the *Source* tab. The source details show that the IP is different from the root FortiGate, preventing conflicts.



To view the FortiIPAM service details in the CLI:

Use the `diagnose` command to view the FortiIPAM service information in FortiGate.

```
Root-E (global) # diagnose test update info
...
System contracts:
...
IPMC,Thu Apr 15 17:00:00 2021
```



You can also use the REST API to get the FortiIPAM service information.

```
https://172.16.116.xxx/api/v2/monitor/license/status
..."fortiipam_cloud":{
   "type":"live_cloud_service",
   "status":"licensed",
   "expires":1618531200,
   "entitlement":"IPMC"
}
```

To configure FortiIPAM in the CLI:

1. On *FortiGate Root* , edit port5 and configure the interface to be managed by FortiIPAM. Use `managed-subnetwork-size` to specify the network size of the network segment for this interface.
   In this example, the network size 256.

```
config system interface
   edit "port5"
      set ip-managed-by-fortiipam enable
      set managed-subnetwork-size 256
   next
end
```

2. On the same interface, enable DHCP server on this interface to supply IP addresses to this network.



No configuration is required unless you need to change the defaults.

```
config system dhcp server
   edit 1
      set interface "port5"
      set dhcp-settings-from-fortiipam enable
   next
end
```

3. Once FortiIPAM completes the address configuration, the configurations will appear as follows:

```
show system interface
   ...
   edit "port5"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 10.128.6.1 255.255.255.0
      set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
      set type physical
      set device-identification enable
      set lldp-transmission enable
      set role lan
      set snmp-index 5
      set ip-managed-by-fortiipam enable
   next
   ...
end
show system dhcp server
   edit 1
      set dns-service default
      set default-gateway 10.128.6.1
      set netmask 255.255.255.0
```

```
      set interface "port5"
      config ip-range
         edit 1
            set start-ip 10.128.6.1
            set end-ip 10.128.6.254
         next
      end
      set dhcp-settings-from-fortiipam enable
      config exclude-range
         edit 1
            set start-ip 10.128.6.1
            set end-ip 10.128.6.1
         next
      end
   next
end
```

4. On *FortiGate Downstream*, configure port5 to obtain an IP from DHCP.

```
config system interface
   edit "port5"
      set mode dhcp
   next
end
```

5. After the IP is assigned and the device is connected to *FortiGate Root* , add *FortiGate Downstream* to the Security Fabric.
6. Once *FortiGate Downstream* is connected to the Security Fabric, you can configure the port6 interface to use the FortiIPAM service as well.
7. On *FortiGate Downstream* , set the interface to be managed by the FortiIPAM service, and increase the `managed-subnetwork-size` value.

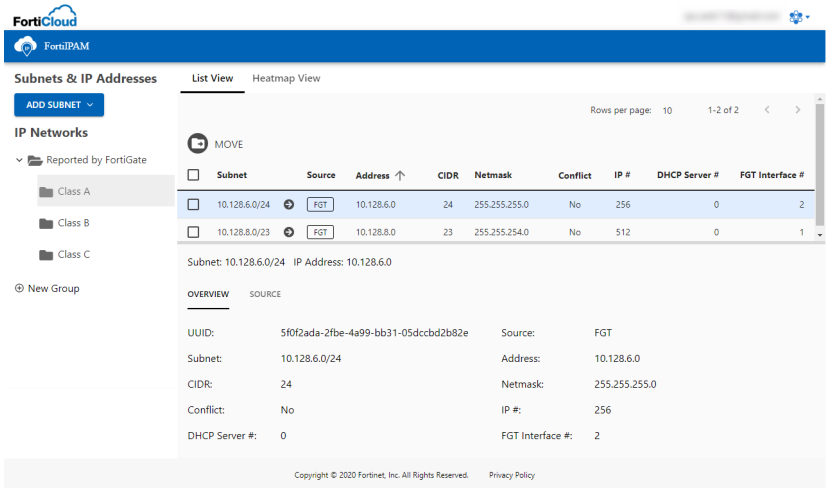
   In this example, the network size was increased to 512.

```
config system interface
   edit "port5"
      set ip-managed-by-fortiipam enable
      set managed-subnetwork-size 512
   next
end
```

8. Configure the DHCP server on this port to assign IP addresses to this subnet.

```
config system dhcp server
   edit 1
      set interface "port6"
      set dhcp-settings-from-fortiipam enable
   next
end
```

9. Go to the FortiIPAM Portal to view the IP addresses.



Interface MTU packet size

Changing the maximum transmission unit (MTU) on FortiGate interfaces changes the size of transmitted packets. Most FortiGate device's physical interfaces support jumbo frames that are up to 9216 bytes, but some only support 9000 or 9204 bytes.

To avoid fragmentation, the MTU should be the same as the smallest MTU in all of the networks between the FortiGate and the destination. If the packets sent by the FortiGate are larger than the smallest MTU, then they are fragmented, slowing down the transmission. Packets with the DF flag set in the IPv4 header are dropped and not fragmented .

On many network and endpoint devices, the path MTU is used to determine the smallest MTU and to transmit packets within that size.

- ASIC accelerated FortiGate interfaces, such as NP6, NP7, and SOC4 (np6xlite), support MTU sizes up to 9216 bytes.
- FortiGate VMs can have varying maximum MTU sizes, depending on the underlying interface and driver.
- Virtual interfaces, such as VLAN interfaces, inherit their MTU size from their parent interface.

To verify the supported MTU size:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set mtu-override enable
        set mtu ?
            <integer>    Maximum transmission unit (<min>-<max>)
    next
end
```

To change the MTU size:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set mtu-override enable
        set mtu <max bytes>
```

```
    next
end
```

Maximum MTU size on a path

To manually test the maximum MTU size on a path, you can use the ping command on a Windows computer.

For example, you can send ICMP packets of a specific size with a DF flag, and iterate through increasing sizes until the ping fails.

- The `-f` option specifies the Do not Fragment (DF) flag.
- The `-l` option specifies the length, in bytes, of the Data field in the echo Request messages. This does not include the 8 bytes for the ICMP header and 20 bytes for the IP header. Therefore, if the maximum MTU is 1500 bytes, then the maximum supported data size is: 1500 - 8 - 20 = 1472 bytes.

To determine the maximum MTU size on a path:

1. In Windows command prompt, try a likely MTU size:

```
>ping 4.2.2.1 -l 1472 -f

Pinging 4.2.2.1 with 1472 bytes of data:
Reply from 4.2.2.1: bytes=1472 time=41ms TTL=52
Reply from 4.2.2.1: bytes=1472 time=42ms TTL=52
Reply from 4.2.2.1: bytes=1472 time=103ms TTL=52
Reply from 4.2.2.1: bytes=1472 time=38ms TTL=52

Ping statistics for 4.2.2.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
    Minimum = 38ms, Maximum = 103ms, Average = 56ms
```

2. Increase the size and try the ping again:

```
>ping 4.2.2.1 -l 1473 -f

Pinging 4.2.2.1 with 1473 bytes of data:
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 4.2.2.1:
    Packets: Sent = 1, Received = 0, Lost = 1 (100% loss),
```

   The second test fails, so the maximum MTU size on the path is 1472 bytes + 8-byte ICMP header + 20-byte IP header = 1500 bytes

Maximum segment size

The TCP maximum segment size (MSS) is the maximum amount of data that can be sent in a TCP segment. The MSS is the MTU size of the interface minus the 20 byte IP header and 20 byte TCP header. By reducing the TCP MSS, you can effectively reduce the MTU size of the packet.

The TCP MSS can be configured in a firewall policy, or directly on an interface.

To configure the MSS in a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policy ID>
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "10.10.10.6"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set tcp-mss-sender 1448
        set tcp-mss-receiver 1448
    next
end
```

To configure the MSS on an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan2"
        set vdom "root"
        set mode dhcp
        set allowaccess ping fgfm
        set type physical
        set tcp-mss 1448
        set role wan
    next
end
```

One-arm sniffer

You can use a one-arm sniffer to configure a physical interface as a one-arm intrusion detection system (IDS). Traffic sent to the interface is examined for matches to the configured security profile. The matches are logged, and then all received traffic is dropped. Sniffing only reports on attacks; it does not deny or influence traffic.

You can also use the one-arm sniffer to configure the FortiGate to operate as an IDS appliance to sniff network traffic for attacks without actually processing the packets. To configure a one-arm IDS, enable sniffer mode on a physical interface and connect the interface to the SPAN port of a switch or a dedicated network tab that can replicate the traffic to the FortiGate.

To assign an interface as a sniffer interface in the GUI, go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the interface. For *Addressing mode*, select *One-Arm Sniffer*.

If the option is not available, the interface is in use. Ensure that the interface is not selected in any firewall policies, routes, virtual IPs, or other features where a physical interface is specified. The option does not appear it the role is set to WAN. Ensure the role is set to LAN, DMZ, or undefined.

The following table lists some of the one-arm sniffer settings you can configure:

Field	Description
Filters	Enable this setting to include filters that define a more granular sniff of network traffic. Select specific hosts, ports, VLANs, and protocols.

Field	Description
	In all cases, enter a number or range for the filter type. The standard protocols are: • UDP: 17 • TCP: 6 • ICMP: 1
Include IPv6 Packets	If the network is running IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, enable this setting to sniff both types; otherwise, the FortiGate will only sniff IPv4 traffic.
Include Non-IPv6 Packets	Enable this setting for a more intense content scan of the traffic.
Security Profiles	The following profiles are configurable in the GUI and CLI: • Antivirus • Web filter • Application control • IPS The following profiles are only configurable in the CLI: • Email filter • DLP • IPS DoS

CPU usage and packet loss

Traffic scanned on the one-arm sniffer interface is processed by the CPU, even if there is an SPU, such as NPU or CP, present. The one-arm sniffer may cause higher CPU usage and perform at a lower level than traditional inline scanning, which uses NTurbo or CP to accelerate traffic when present.

The absence of high CPU usage does not indicate the absence of packet loss. Packet loss may occur due to the capacity of the TAP devices hitting maximum traffic volume during mirroring, or on the FortiGate when the kernel buffer size is exceeded and it is unable to handle bursts of traffic.

Captive portals

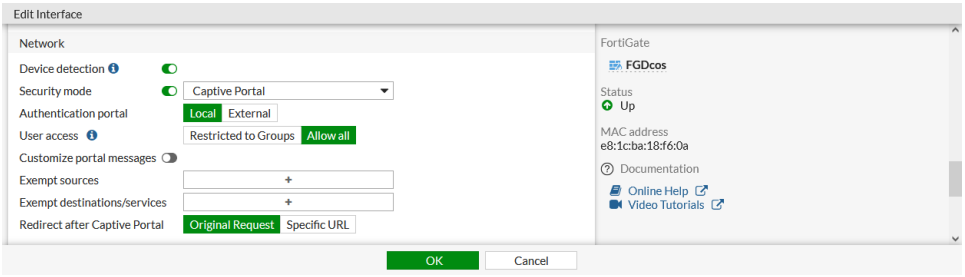
A captive portal is used to enforce authentication before web resources can be accessed. Until a user authenticates successfully, any HTTP request returns the authentication page. After successfully authenticating, a user can access the requested URL and other web resources, as permitted by policies. The captive portal can also be configured to only allow access to members of specific user groups.

Captive portals can be hosted on the FortiGate or an external authentication server. They can be configured on any network interface, including VLAN and WiFi interfaces. On a WiFi interface, the access point appears open, and the client can connect to access point with no security credentials, but then sees the captive portal authentication page. See Configuring WiFi captive portal security, in the FortiWiFi and FortiAP Configuration Guide for more information.

All users on the interface are required to authenticate. Exemption lists can be created for devices that are unable to authenticate, such as a printer that requires access to the internet for firmware upgrades.

To configure a captive portal in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the interface that the users connect to. The interface *Role* must be *LAN* or *Undefined*.
2. Enable *Security mode*.



3. Configure the following settings, then click *OK*.

Authentication Portal	Configure the location of the portal: • *Local*: the portal is hosted on the FortiGate unit. • *External*: enter the FQDN or IP address of external portal.
User access	Select if the portal applies to all users, or selected user groups: • *Restricted to Groups*: restrict access to the selected user groups. The *Login page* is shown when a user tried to log in to the captive portal. • *Allow all*: all users can log in, but access will be defined by relevant policies. The *Disclaimer page* is shown when a user tried to log in to the captive portal.
Customize portal messages	Enable to use custom portal pages, then select a replacement message group. See Custom captive portal pages on page 456.
Exempt sources	Select sources that are exempt from the captive portal. Each exemption is added as a rule in an automatically generated exemption list.
Exempt destinations/services	Select destinations and services that are exempt from the captive portal. Each exemption is added as a rule in an automatically generated exemption list.
Redirect after Captive Portal	Configure website redirection after successful captive portal authentication: • *Original Request*: redirect to the initially browsed to URL . • *Specific URL*: redirect to the specified URL.

To configure a captive portal in the CLI:

1. If required, create a security exemption list:

```
config user security-exempt-list
    edit <list>
        config rule
            edit 1
                set srcaddr <source(s)>
                set dstaddr <source(s)>
```

```
                set service <service(s)>
            next
            edit 2
                set srcaddr <source(s)>
                set dstaddr <source(s)>
                set service <service(s)>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure captive portal authentication on the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set security-mode {none | captive-portal}
        set security-external-web <string>
        set replacemsg-override-group <group>
        set security-redirect-url <string>
        set security-exempt-list <list>
        set security-groups <group(s)>
    next
end
```

Custom captive portal pages

Portal pages are HTML files that can be customized to meet user requirements.

Most of the text and some of the HTML in the message can be changed. Tags are enclosed by double percent signs (%%); most of them should not be changed because they might carry information that the FortiGate unit needs. For information about customizing replacement messages, see Modifying replacement messages on page 1023.

The images on the pages can be replaced. For example, your organization's logo can replace the Fortinet logo. For information about uploading and using new images in replacement messages, see Replacement message images on page 1025.

The following pages are used by captive portals:

Login Page	Requests user credentials. The *%%QUESTION%%* tag provides the *Please enter the required information to continue.* text. This page is shown to users that are trying to log in when *User access* is set to *Restricted to Groups*.
Login Failed Page	Reports that incorrect credentials were entered, and requests correct credentials. The *%%FAILED_MESSAGE%%* tag provides the *Firewall authentication failed. Please try again.* text.
Disclaimer Page	A statement of the legal responsibilities of the user and the host organization that the user must agree to before proceeding. This page is shown users that are trying to log in when *User access* is set to *Allow all*.
Declined Disclaimer Page	Shown if the user does not agree to the statement on the Disclaimer page. Access is denied until the user agrees to the disclaimer.

DNS

Domain name system (DNS) is used by devices to locate websites by mapping a domain name to a website's IP address.

A FortiGate can serve different roles based on user requirements:

- A FortiGate can control what DNS server a network uses.
- A FortiGate can function as a DNS server.

FortiGuard Dynamic DNS (DDNS) allows a remote administrator to access a FortiGate's Internet-facing interface using a domain name that remains constant even when its IP address changes.

FortiOS supports DNS configuration for both IPv4 and IPv6 addressing. When a user requests a website, the FortiGate looks to the configured DNS servers to provide the IP address of the website in order to know which server to contact to complete the transaction.

The FortiGate queries the DNS servers whenever it needs to resolve a domain name into an IP address, such as for NTP or web servers defined by their domain names.

The following topics provide information about DNS:

- Important DNS CLI commands on page 457
- DNS domain list on page 459
- FortiGate DNS server on page 460
- DDNS on page 463
- DNS latency information on page 466
- DNS over TLS on page 468
- DNS troubleshooting on page 469

Important DNS CLI commands

DNS settings can be configured with the following CLI command:

```
config system dns
    set primary <ip_address>
    set secondary <ip_address>
    set dns-over-tls {enable | disable | enforce}
    set ssl-certificate <string>
    set domain <domains>
    set ip6-primary <ip6_address>
    set ip6-secondary <ip6_address>
    set timeout <integer>
    set retry <integer>
    set dns-cache-limit <integer>
    set dns-cache-ttl <integer>
    set cache-notfound-responses {enable | disable}
    set source-ip <class_ip>
end
```

For a FortiGate with multiple logical CPUs, you can set the DNS process number from 1 to the number of logical CPUs. The default DNS process number is 1.

```
config system global
    set dnsproxy-worker-count <integer>
end
```

dns-over-tls

DNS over TLS (DoT) is a security protocol for encrypting and wrapping DNS queries and answers via the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. It can be enabled, disabled, or enforced:

- `disable`: Disable DNS over TLS (default).
- `enable`: Use TLS for DNS queries if TLS is available.
- `enforce`: Use only TLS for DNS queries. Does not fall back to unencrypted DNS queries if TLS is unavailable.

For more information, see DNS over TLS on page 468.

cache-notfound-responses

When enabled, any DNS requests that are returned with `NOT FOUND` can be stored in the cache. The DNS server is not asked to resolve the host name for `NOT FOUND` entries. By default, this option is disabled.

dns-cache-limit

Set the number of DNS entries that are stored in the cache (0 to 4294967295, default = 5000). Entries that remain in the cache provide a quicker response to requests than going out to the Internet to get the same information.

dns-cache-ttl

The duration that the DNS cache retains information, in seconds (60 to 86400 (1 day), default = 1800).

VDOM DNS

When the FortiGate is in multi-vdom mode, DNS is handled by the management VDOM. However in some cases, administrators may want to configure custom DNS settings on a non-management VDOM. For example, in a multi-tenant scenario, each VDOM might be occupied by a different tenant, and each tenant might require its own DNS server.

To configure a custom VDOM within a non-management VDOM:

```
config vdom
edit <vdom>
config system vdom-dns
    set vdom-dns enable
    set primary <primary_DNS>
    set secondary <secondary_DNS>
    set protocol {cleartext dot doh}
    set ip6-primary <primary_IPv6_DNS>
    set ip6-secondary <secondary_IPv6_DNS>
    set source-ip <IP_address>
```

```
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
end
```

DNS domain list

You can configure up to eight domains in the DNS settings using the GUI or the CLI.

When a client requests a URL that does not include an FQDN, FortiOS resolves the URL by traversing through the DNS domain list and performing a query for each domain until the first match is found.

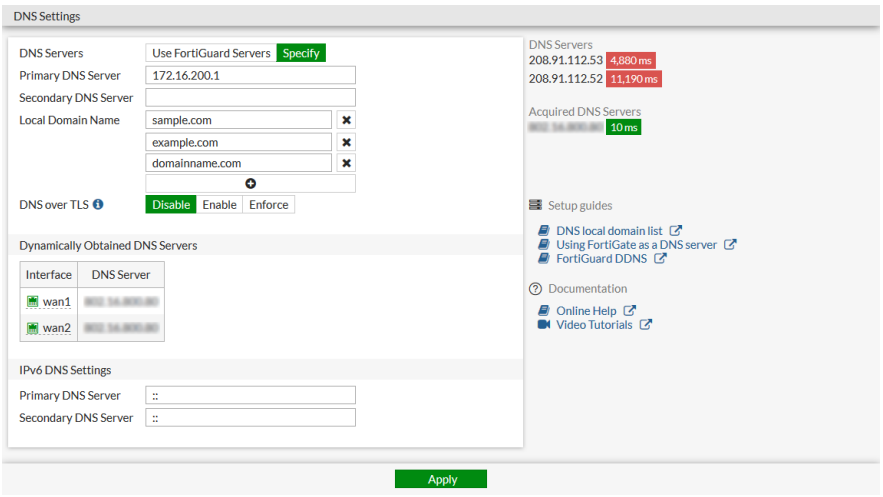
By default, FortiGate uses FortiGuard's DNS servers:

- Primary: 208.91.112.53
- Secondary: 208.91.112.52

You can also customize the DNS timeout time and the number of retry attempts.

To configure a DNS domain list in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS*.
2. Set *DNS Servers* to *Specify*.
3. Configure the primary and secondary DNS servers as needed.
4. In the *Local Domain Name* field, enter the first domain (`sample.com` in this example).
5. Click the + to add more domains (`example.com` and `domainname.com` in this example). You can enter up to eight domains.



6. Configure additional DNS settings as needed.
7. Click *Apply*.

To configure a DNS domain list in the CLI:

```
config system dns
    set primary 172.16.200.1
    set domain "sample.com" "example.com" "domainname.com"
end
```

Verify the DNS configuration

In the following example, the local DNS server has the entry for *host1* mapped to the FQDN of *host1.sample.com*, and the entry for *host2* is mapped to the FQDN of *host2.example.com*.

To verify that the DNS domain list is configured:

1. Open Command Prompt.
2. Enter `ping host1`.
   The system returns the following response:
   ```
   PING host1.sample.com (1.1.1.1): 56 data bytes
   ```
   As the request does not include an FQDN, FortiOS traverses the configured DNS domain list to find a match. Because *host1* is mapped to the *host1.sample.com*, FortiOS resolves *host1* to *sample.com*, the first entry in the domain list.
3. Enter `ping host2`.
   The system returns the following response:
   ```
   PING host2.example.com (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
   ```
   FortiOS traverses the domain list to find a match. It first queries sample.com, the first entry in the domain list, but does not find a match. It then queries the second entry in the domain list, example.com. Because *host2* is mapped to the FQDN of *host2.example.com*, FortiOS resolves *host2* to *example.com*.

DNS timeout and retry settings

The DNS timeout and retry settings can be customized using the CLI.

```
config system dns
    set timeout <integer>
    set retry <integer>
end
```

Variable	Description
timeout <integer>	The DNS query timeout interval, in seconds (1 - 10, default = 5).
retry <integer>	The number of times to retry the DNS query (0 - 5, default - 2).

FortiGate DNS server

You can create local DNS servers for your network. Depending on your requirements, you can either manually maintain your entries (primary DNS server), or use it to refer to an outside source (secondary DNS server).

A local, primary DNS server requires that you to manually add all URL and IP address combinations. Using a primary DNS server for local services can minimize inbound and outbound traffic, and access time. Making it authoritative is not recommended, because IP addresses can change, and maintaining the list can become labor intensive.

A secondary DNS server refers to an alternate source to obtain URL and IP address combinations. This is useful when there is a primary DNS server where the entry list is maintained.

FortiGate as a DNS server also supports TLS connections to a DNS client. See DNS over TLS on page 468 for details.

By default, DNS server options are not available in the FortiGate GUI.

To enable DNS server options in the GUI:

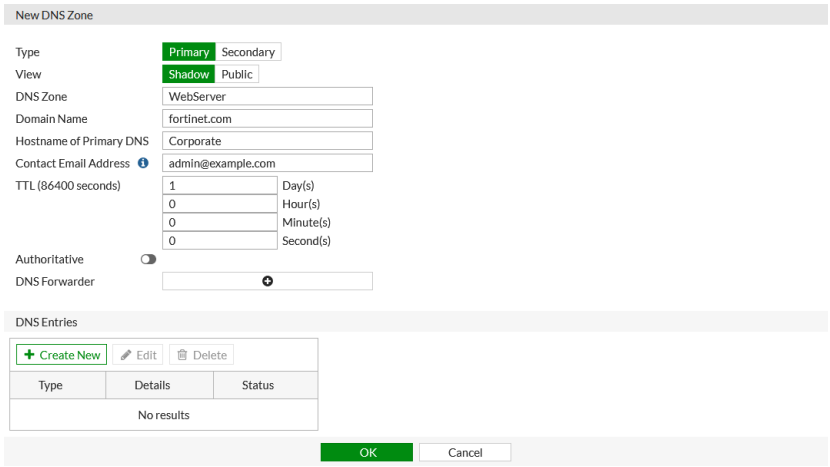
1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. Enable *DNS Database* in the *Additional Features* section.
3. Click *Apply*.

Example configuration

This section describes how to create an unauthoritative primary DNS server. The interface mode is recursive so that, if the request cannot be fulfilled, the external DNS servers will be queried.

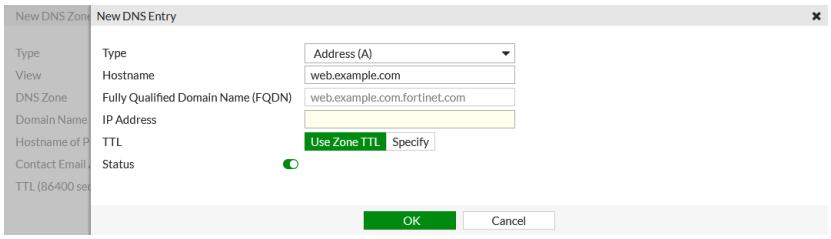
To configure FortiGate as a primary DNS server in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
2. In the *DNS Database* table, click *Create New*.
3. Set *Type* to *Primary*.
4. Set *View* to *Shadow*.
   The *View* setting controls the accessibility of the DNS server. If you select *Public*, external users can access or use the DNS server. If you select *Shadow*, only internal users can use it.
5. Enter a *DNS Zone*, for example, *WebServer*.
6. Enter the *Domain Name* of the zone, for example, *fortinet.com*.
7. Enter the *Hostname* of the DNS server, for example, *Corporate*.
8. Enter the *Contact Email Address* for the administrator, for example, *admin@example.com*.
9. Disable *Authoritative*.



10. Add DNS entries:
    a. In the *DNS Entries* table, click *Create New*.
    b. Select a *Type*, for example *Address (A)*.

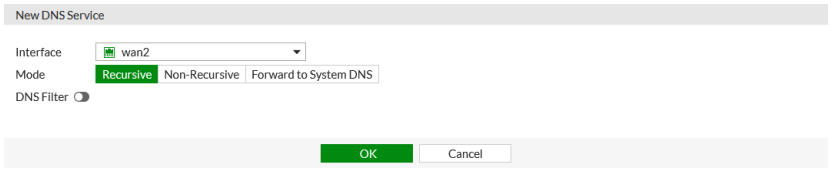
c. Set the *Hostname*, for example *web.example.com*.



d. Configure the remaining settings as needed. The options vary depending on the selected *Type*.

e. Click *OK*.

11. Add more DNS entries as needed.
12. Click *OK*.
13. Enable DNS services on an interface:
    a. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
    b. In the *DNS Service on Interface* table, click *Create New*.
    c. Select the *Interface* for the DNS server, such as *wan2*.
    d. Set the *Mode* to *Recursive*.



    e. Click *OK*.

To configure FortiGate as a primary DNS server in the CLI:

```
config system dns-database
    edit WebServer
        set domain example.com
        set type master
        set view shadow
        set ttl 86400
        set primary-name corporate
        set contact admin@example.com
        set authoritative disable
        config dns-entry
            edit 1
                set hostname web.example.com
                set type A
                set ip 192.168.21.12
                set status enable
            next
        end
    next
end

config system dns-server
    edit wan1
        set mode recursive
    next
end
```

DDNS

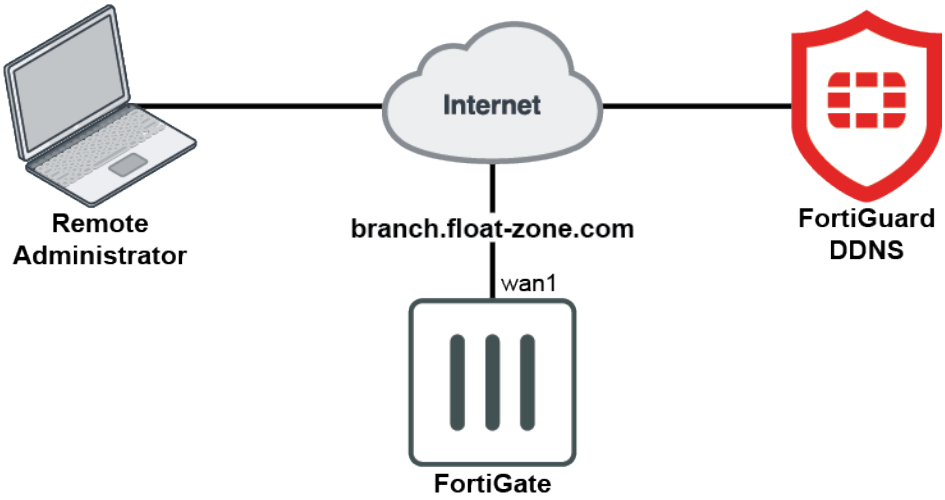
If your external IP address changes regularly and you want a static domain name, you can configure the external interface to use a dynamic DNS (DDNS) service. This ensures that external users and customers can always connect to your company firewall. You can configure FortiGuard as the DDNS server using the GUI or CLI.

A license or subscription is not required to use the DDNS service, but configuring DDNS in the GUI is not supported if:

- The FortiGate model is a 1000-series or higher.
- The FortiGate is a VM.
- The DNS server is not using FortiGuard as the DNS.

FortiGate does not support DDNS when in transparent mode.

Sample topology

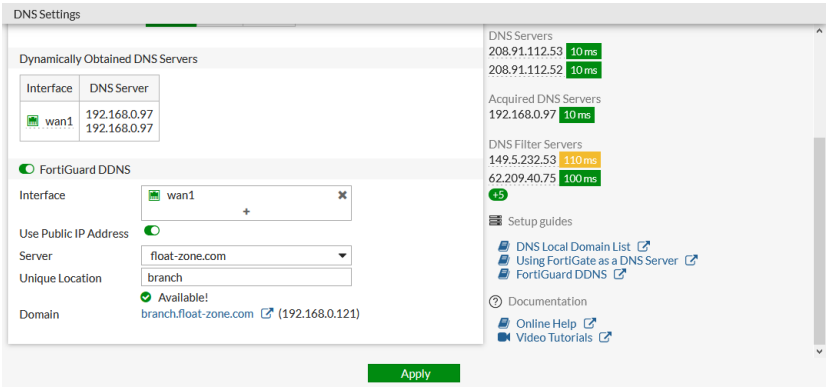


In this example, FortiGuard DDNS is enabled and the DDNS server is set to *float-zone.com*. Other DDNS server options include *fortiddns.com* and *fortidyndns.com*.

To configure FortiGuard as the DDNS server in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS*
2. Enable *FortiGuard DDNS*.
3. Select the *Interface* with the dynamic connection.
4. Select the *Server* that you have an account with.

5. Enter your *Unique Location*.



6. Click *Apply*.

To configure FortiGuard as the DDNS server in the CLI:

```
config system ddns
    edit 1
        set ddns-server FortiGuardDDNS
        set ddns-domain "branch.float-zone.com"
        set monitor-interface "wan1"
    next
end
```

DDNS servers other than FortiGuard

If you do not have a FortiGuard subscription, or want to use a different DDNS server, you can configure a DDNS server for each interface. Only the first configure port appears in the GUI. The available commands vary depending on the selected DDNS server.

To configure DDNS servers other than FortiGuard in the CLI:

```
config system ddns
    edit <DDNS_ID>
        set monitor-interface <external_interface>
        set ddns-server <ddns_server_selection>
        ...
    next
end
```

Refresh DDNS IP addresses

You can configure FortiGate to refresh DDNS IP addresses. FortiGate periodically checks the DDNS server that is configured.

To configure FortiGate to refresh DDNS IP addresses using the CLI:

```
config system ddns
    edit 1
        set ddns-server FortiGuardDDNS
```

```
        set use-public-ip enable
        set update-interval seconds
    next
end
```

Disable cleartext

When `clear-text` is disabled, FortiGate uses the SSL connection to send and receive (DDNS) updates.

To disable cleartext and set the SSL certificate using the CLI:

```
config system ddns
    edit <1>
        set clear-text disable
        set ssl-certificate <cert_name>
    next
end
```

DDNS update override

A DHCP server has an override command option that allows DHCP server communications to go through DDNS to perform updates for the DHCP client. This enforces a DDNS update of the A field every time even if the DHCP client does not request it. This allows support for the `allow`, `ignore`, and `deny client-updates` options.

To enable DDNS update override using the CLI:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
        set ddns-update enable
        set ddns-update_override enable
        set ddns-server-ip <ddns_server_ip>
        set ddns-zone <ddns_zone>
    next
end
```

Troubleshooting

To debug DDNS:

```
# diagnose debug application ddnscd -1
# diagnose debug enable
```

To check if a DDNS server is available:

```
# diagnose test application ddnscd 3
```

Not available:

```
FortiDDNS status:
ddns_ip=0.0.0.0 ddns_port=443 svr_num=0 domain_num=0
```

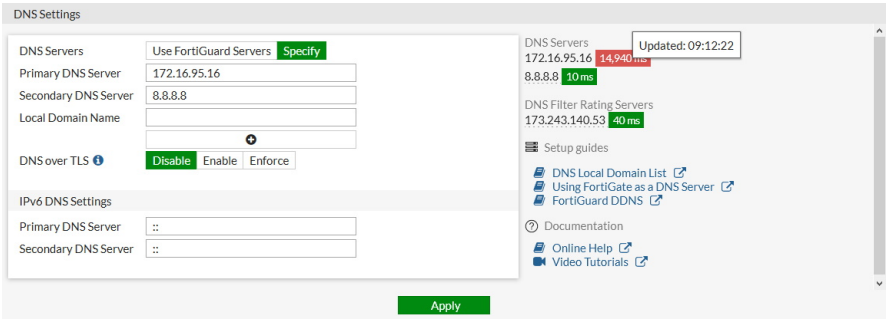
Available:

```
FortiDDNS status:
ddns_ip=208.91.113.230 ddns_port=443 svr_num=1 domain_num=3
svr[0]= 208.91.113.230
domain[0]= fortiddns.com
domain[1]= fortidyndns.com
domain[2]= float-zone.com
```

DNS latency information

High latency in DNS traffic can result in an overall sluggish experience for end-users. In the *DNS Settings* pane, you can quickly identify DNS latency issues in your configuration.

Go to *Network* > *DNS* to view DNS latency information in the right side bar. If you use FortiGuard DNS, latency information for DNS, DNS filter, web filter, and outbreak prevention servers is also visible. Hover your pointer over a latency value to see when it was last updated.



To view DNS latency information using the CLI:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 2
worker idx: 0
worker: count=1 idx=0
retry_interval=500 query_timeout=1495
DNS latency info:
vfid=0 server=2001::1 latency=1494 updated=73311
vfid=0 server=208.91.112.52 latency=1405 updated=2547
vfid=0 server=208.91.112.53 latency=19 updated=91
SDNS latency info:
vfid=0 server=173.243.138.221 latency=1 updated=707681
DNS_CACHE: alloc=35, hit=26
RATING_CACHE: alloc=1, hit=49
DNS UDP: req=66769 res=63438 fwd=83526 alloc=0 cmp=0 retrans=16855 to=3233
          cur=111 switched=8823467 num_switched=294 v6_cur=80 v6_switched=7689041 num_v6_
switched=6
         ftg_res=8 ftg_fwd=8 ftg_retrans=0
DNS TCP: req=0, res=0, fwd=0, retrans=0 alloc=0, to=0
FQDN: alloc=45 nl_write_cnt=9498 nl_send_cnt=21606 nl_cur_cnt=0
Botnet: searched=57 hit=0 filtered=57 false_positive=0
```

To view the latency from web filter and outbreak protection servers using the CLI:

```
# diagnose debug rating
Locale    : english
```

```
Service  : Web-filter
Status   : Enable
License  : Contract

Service  : Antispam
Status   : Disable

Service  : Virus Outbreak Prevention
Status   : Disable

-=- Server List (Tue Jan 22 08:03:14 2019) -=-

IP               Weight RTT Flags  TZ  Packets  Curr Lost Total Lost  Updated Time
173.243.138.194  10     0 DI       -8  700      0         2           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.195  10     0          -8  698      0         4           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.198  10     0          -8  698      0         4           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.196  10     0          -8  697      0         3           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.197  10     1          -8  694      0         0           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
96.45.33.64      10     22 D       -8  701      0         6           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
64.26.151.36     40     62         -5  704      0         10          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
64.26.151.35     40     62         -5  703      0         9           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
209.222.147.43   40     70 D       -5  696      0         1           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
66.117.56.42     40     70         -5  697      0         3           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
66.117.56.37     40     71         -5  702      0         9           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
65.210.95.239    40     74         -5  695      0         1           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
65.210.95.240    40     74         -5  695      0         1           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.88     90     142        0   706      0         12          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.87     90     155        0   714      0         20          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.85     90     156        0   711      0         17          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.86     90     159        0   704      0         10          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
62.209.40.72     100    157        1   701      0         7           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
62.209.40.74     100    173        1   705      0         11          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
62.209.40.73     100    173        1   699      0         5           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
121.111.236.179  180    138        9   706      0         12          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
121.111.236.180  180    138        9   704      0         10          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
```

2019

DNS over TLS

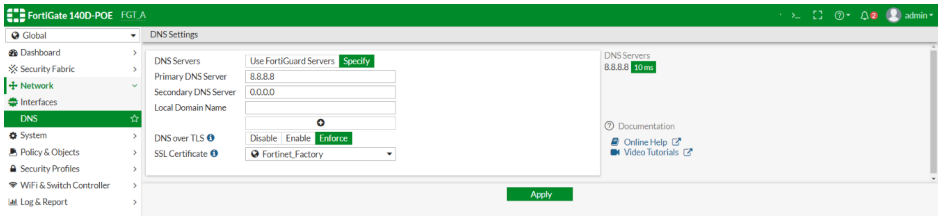
DNS over TLS (DoT) is a security protocol for encrypting and wrapping DNS queries and answers via the TLS protocol. The goal of DNS over TLS is to increase user privacy and security by preventing eavesdropping and manipulation of DNS data via man-in-the-middle attacks. There is an option in the FortiOS DNS profile settings to enforce DoT for this added security.

Before enabling DoT , ensure that it is supported by the DNS servers. The default FortiGuard DNS servers do not support DoT queries, and will drop these packets. At times, the latency status of the DNS servers might also appear high or unreachable.

Disabling DoT is recommended when it is not supported by the DNS servers.

To configure DoT in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS*. The *DNS Settings* pane opens.
2. For *DNS over TLS*, click *Enforce*.



3. Click *Apply*.

To configure DoT in the CLI:

```
config system dns
    set primary 8.8.8.8
    set dns-over-tls enforce
    set ssl-certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
end
```

FortiGuard DNS rating service

DNS over TLS connections to the FortiGuard secure DNS server is supported. The CLI options are only available when `fortiguard-anycast` is enabled. DNS filtering connects to the FortiGuard secure DNS server over anycast by default.

To configure DoT to the secure DNS server in the CLI:

```
config system fortiguard
    set fortiguard-anycast enable
    set fortiguard-anycast-source fortinet
    set anycast-sdns-server-ip 0.0.0.0
    set anycast-sdns-server-port 853
end
```

DNS troubleshooting

The following diagnose command can be used to collect DNS debug information. If you do not specify worker ID, the default worker ID is `0`.

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy
worker idx: 0
1. Clear DNS cache
2. Show stats
3. Dump DNS setting
4. Reload FQDN
5. Requery FQDN
6. Dump FQDN
7. Dump DNS cache
8. Dump DNS DB
9. Reload DNS DB
10. Dump secure DNS policy/profile
11. Dump Botnet domain
12. Reload Secure DNS setting
13. Show Hostname cache
14. Clear Hostname cache
15. Show SDNS rating cache
16. Clear SDNS rating cache
17. DNS debug bit mask
99. Restart dnsproxy worker
```

To view useful information about the ongoing DNS connection:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 3
```

Important fields include:

`tls`	1 if the connection is TLS, 0 if the connection is not TLS.
`rt`	The round trip time of the DNS latency.
`probe`	The number of probes sent.

To dump the second DNS worker's cache:

```
diagnose test application dnsproxy 7 1
```

To enable debug on the second worker:

```
diagnose debug application dnsproxy -1 1
```

To enable debug on all workers by specifying -1 as worker ID:

```
diagnose debug application dnsproxy -1 -1
```

Explicit and transparent proxies

This section contains instructions for configuring explicit and transparent proxies.

- Explicit web proxy on page 470
- Transparent proxy on page 475
- FTP proxy on page 474
- Proxy policy addresses on page 478
- Proxy policy security profiles on page 486
- Explicit proxy authentication on page 492
- Transparent web proxy forwarding on page 498
- Upstream proxy authentication in transparent proxy mode on page 499
- Multiple dynamic header count on page 501
- Restricted SaaS access on page 503
- Explicit proxy and FortiSandbox Cloud on page 512
- Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers) on page 514
- Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy on page 519
- Multiple LDAP servers in Kerberos keytabs and agentless NTLM domain controllers on page 522
- Learn client IP addresses on page 523

Explicit web proxy

Explicit web proxy can be configured on FortiGate for proxying HTTP and HTTPS traffic.

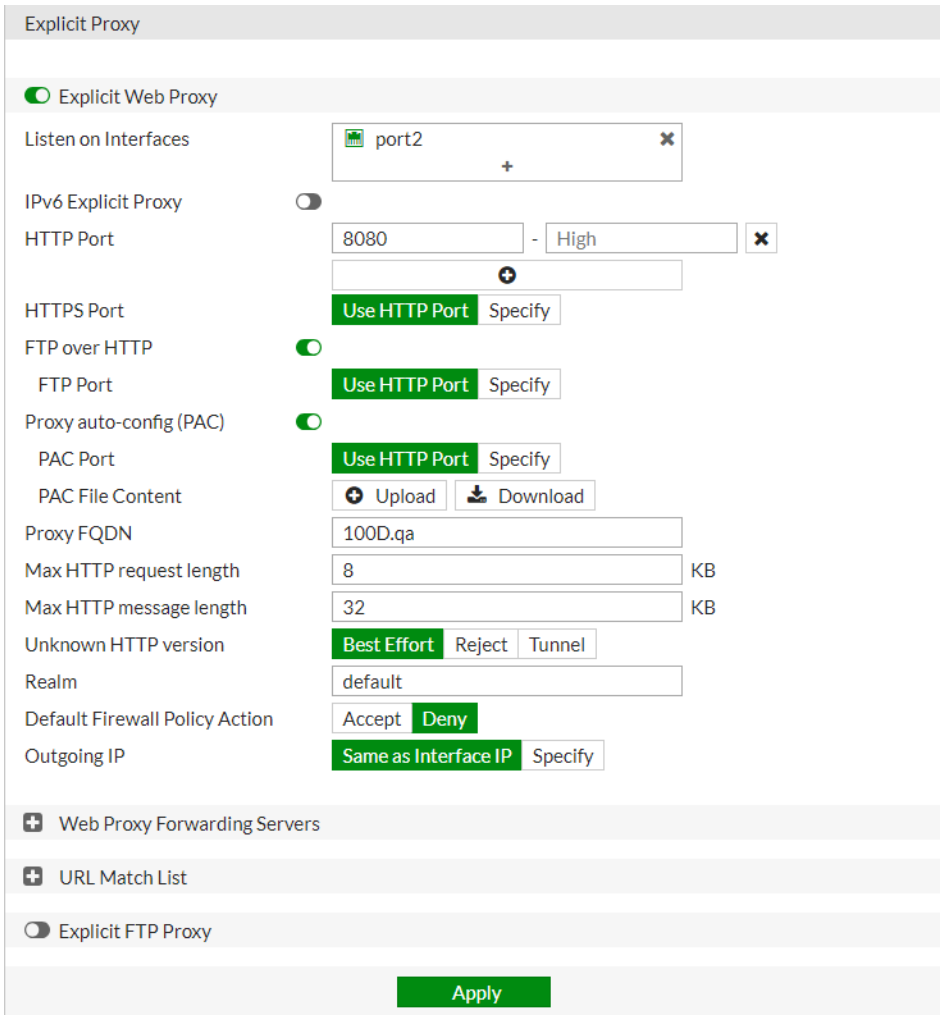
To deploy explicit proxy, individual client browsers can be manually configured to send requests directly to the proxy, or they can be configured to download proxy configuration instructions from a Proxy Auto-Configuration (PAC) file.

When explicit proxy is configured on an interface, the interface IP address can be used by client browsers to forward requests directly to the FortiGate. FortiGate also supports PAC file configuration.

To configure explicit web proxy in the GUI:

1. Enable and configure explicit web proxy:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*.
   b. Enable *Explicit Web Proxy*.
   c. Select *port2* as the *Listen on Interfaces* and set the *HTTP Port* to *8080*.

d. Configure the remaining settings as needed.



e. Click *Apply*.

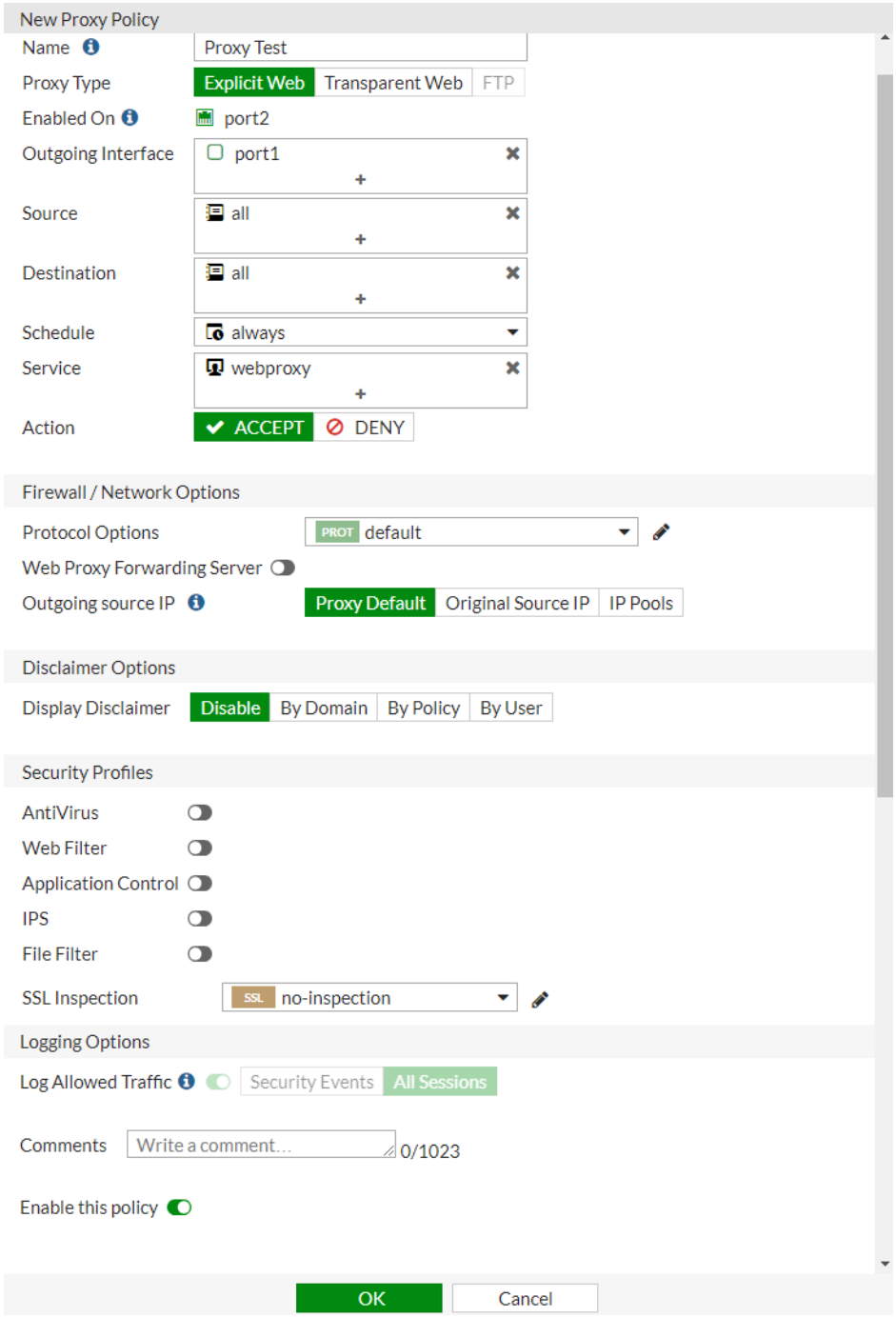
2. Create an explicit web proxy policy:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.

b. Click *Create New*.

c. Set *Proxy Type* to *Explicit Web* and *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.

d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *webproxy*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.



e. Click *OK* to create the policy.



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

3. Configure a client to use the FortiGate explicit proxy:
   Set the FortiGate IP address as the proxy IP address in the browser, or use an automatic configuration script for the PAC file.

To configure explicit web proxy in the CLI:

1. Enable and configure explicit web proxy:

```
config web-proxy explicit
    set status enable
    set ftp-over-http enable
    set socks enable
    set http-incoming-port 8080
    set ipv6-status enable
    set unknown-http-version best-effort
end
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
        set type physical
        set explicit-web-proxy enable
        set snmp-index 12
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create an explicit web proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
    next
end
```



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

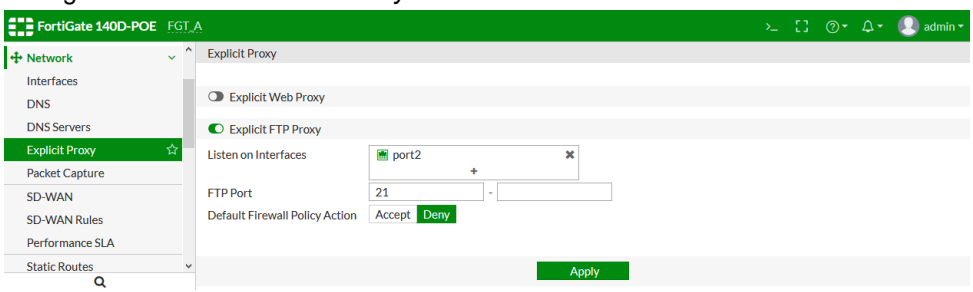
3. Configure a client to use the FortiGate explicit web proxy:
   Set the FortiGate IP address as the proxy IP address in the browser, or use an automatic configuration script for the PAC file.

FTP proxy

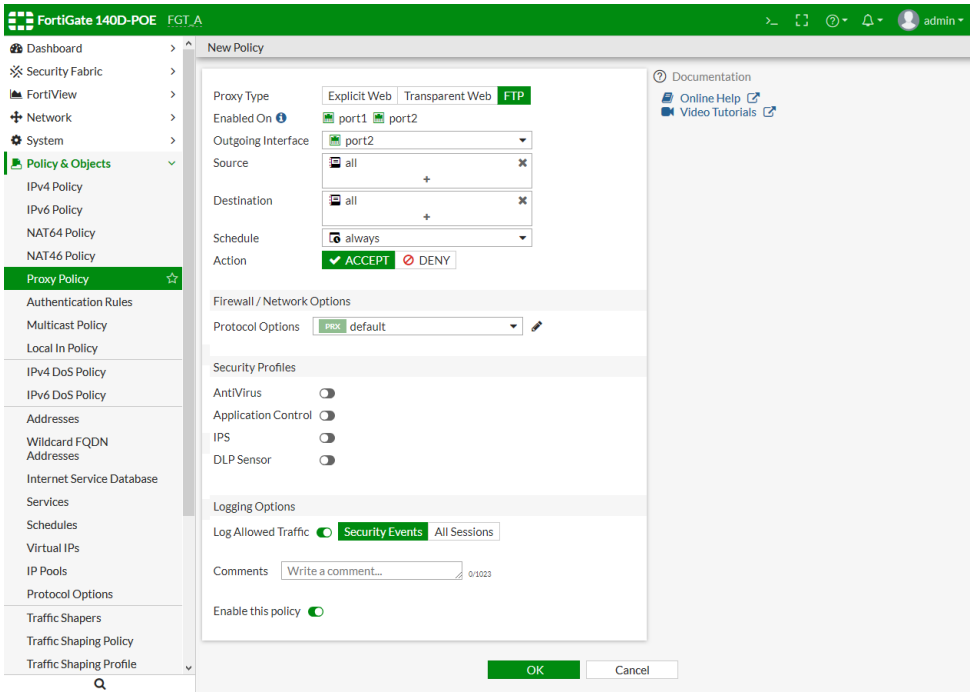
FTP proxies can be configured on the FortiGate so that FTP traffic can be proxied. When the FortiGate is configured as an FTP proxy, FTP client applications should be configured to send FTP requests to the FortiGate.

To configure explicit FTP proxy in the GUI:

1. Enable and configure explicit FTP proxy:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*.
   b. Enable *Explicit FTP Proxy*.
   c. Select *port2* as the *Listen on Interfaces* and set the *HTTP Port* to *21*.
   d. Configure the *Default Firewall Policy Action* as needed.



   e. Click *Apply*.
2. Create an explicit FTP proxy policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set *Proxy Type* to *FTP* and *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.



   e. Click *OK* to create the policy.



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled.

3. Configure the FTP client application to use the FortiGate IP address.

To configure explicit FTP proxy in the CLI:

1. Enable and configure explicit FTP proxy:

```
config ftp-proxy explicit
    set status enable
    set incoming-port 21
end
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
        set type physical
        set explicit-ftp-proxy enable
        set snmp-index 12
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create an explicit FTP proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 4
        set proxy ftp
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled.

3. Configure the FTP client application to use the FortiGate IP address.

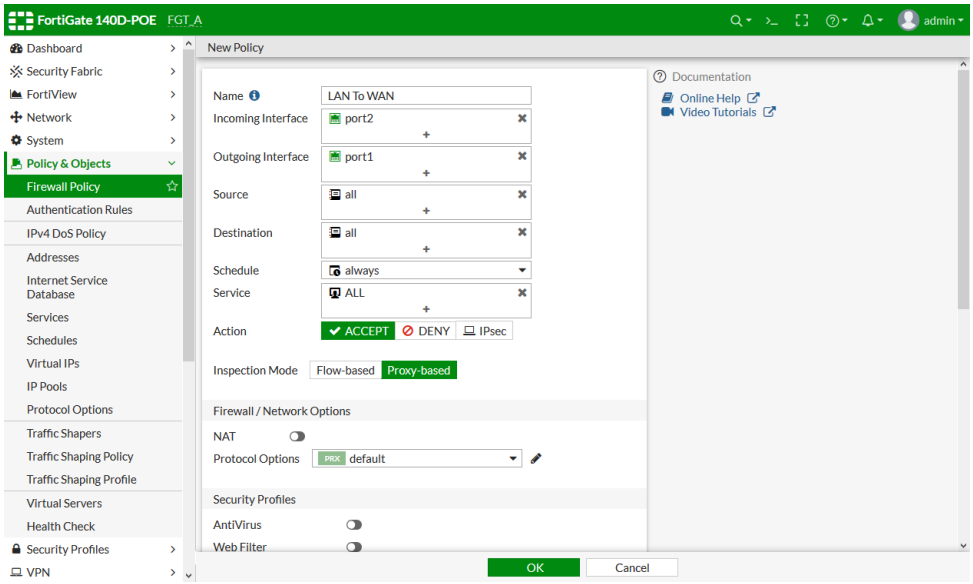
Transparent proxy

In a transparent proxy deployment, the user's client software, such as a browser, is unaware that it is communicating with a proxy.

Users request Internet content as usual, without any special client configuration, and the proxy serves their requests. FortiGate also allows user to configure in transparent proxy mode.

To configure transparent proxy in the GUI:

1. Configure a regular firewall policy with HTTP redirect:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Name the policy appropriately, set the *Incoming Interface* to *port2*, and set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.
   e. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based* and *SSL Inspection* to *deep-inspection*.



   f. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
   g. Click *OK*.

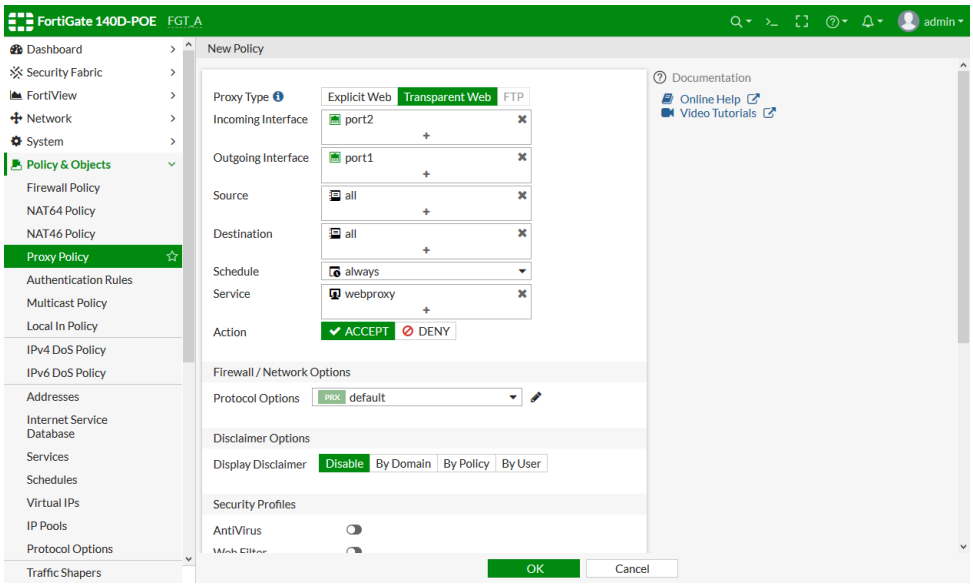


By default, HTTP redirect can only be enabled in the CLI. Enable *Policy Advanced Options* in *Feature Visibility* to configure it in the GUI. See Feature visibility on page 1049 on page 1 for more information.

To redirect HTTPS traffic, SSL inspection is required.

2. Configure a transparent proxy policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set *Proxy Type* to *Transparent Web*, set the *Incoming Interface* to *port2*, and set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.

d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule*to *always*, *Service* to *webproxy*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.



e. Configure the remaining settings as needed.

f. Click *OK* to create the policy.

This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

---

3. No special configure is required on the client to use FortiGate transparent proxy. As the client is using the FortiGate as its default gateway, requests will first hit the regular firewall policy, and then be redirected to the transparent proxy policy.

To configure transparent proxy in the CLI:

1. Configure a regular firewall policy with HTTP redirect:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set http-policy-redirect enable
        set fsso disable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

2. Configure a transparent proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 5
        set proxy transparent-web
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

3. No special configure is required on the client to use FortiGate transparent proxy. As the client is using the FortiGate as its default gateway, requests will first hit the regular firewall policy, and then be redirected to the transparent proxy policy.

Proxy policy addresses

Proxy addresses are designed to be used only by proxy policies. The following address types are available:

- Host regex match on page 479
- URL pattern on page 479
- URL category on page 480
- HTTP method on page 481
- HTTP header on page 482
- User agent on page 483
- Advanced (source) on page 484
- Advanced (destination) on page 485

Fast policy match

The fast policy match function improves the performance of IPv4 explicit and transparent web proxies on FortiGate devices.

When enabled, after the proxy policies are configured, the FortiGate builds a fast searching table based on the different proxy policy matching criteria. When fast policy matching is disabled, web proxy traffic is compared to the policies one at a time from the beginning of the policy list.

Fast policy matching is enabled by default, and can be configured with the following CLI command:

```
config web-proxy global
    set fast-policy-match {enable | disable}
end
```

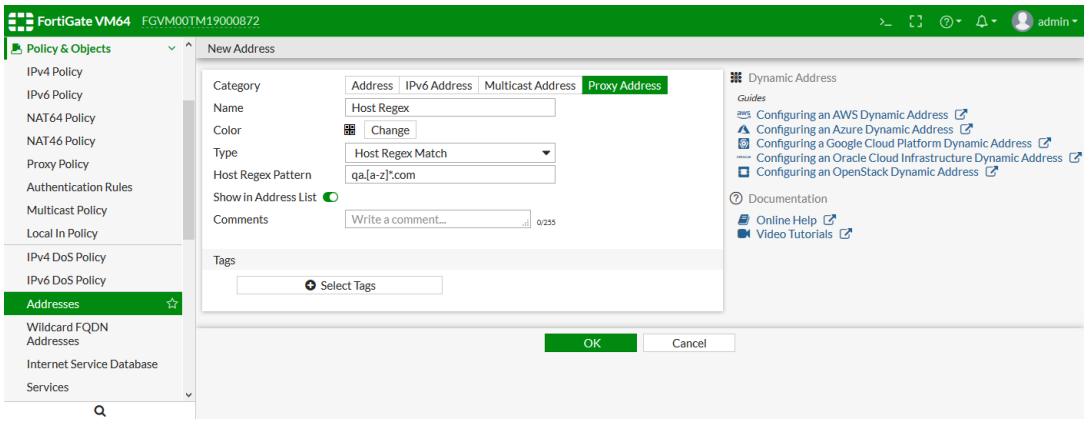
Host regex match

In this address type, a user can create a hostname as a regular expression. Once created, the hostname address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the regular expression.

This example creates a host regex match address with the pattern *qa.[a-z]*.com*.

To create a host regex match address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *Host Regex*,
   - *Type* to *Host Regex Match*, and
   - *Host Regex Pattern* to *qa.[a-z]*.com*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a host regex match address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "Host Regex"
        set type host-regex
        set host-regex "qa.[a-z]*.com"
    next
end
```

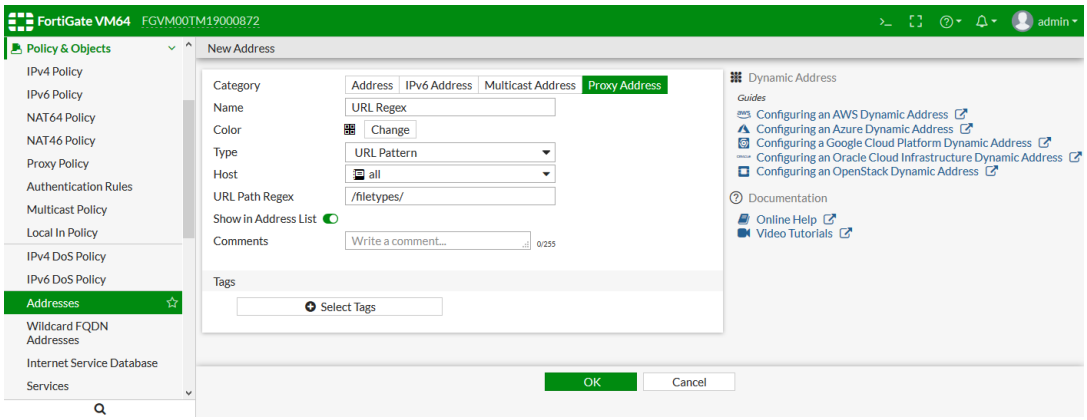
URL pattern

In this address type, a user can create a URL path as a regular expression. Once created, the path address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the regular expression.

This example creates a URL pattern address with the pattern */filetypes/*.

To create a URL pattern address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *URL Regex*,
   - *Type* to *URL Pattern*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *URL Path Regex* to */filetypes/*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a URL pattern address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "URL Regex"
        set type url
        set host "all"
        set path "/filetypes/"
    next
end
```

URL category

In this address type, a user can create a URL category based on a FortiGuard URL ID. Once created, the address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the URL category.

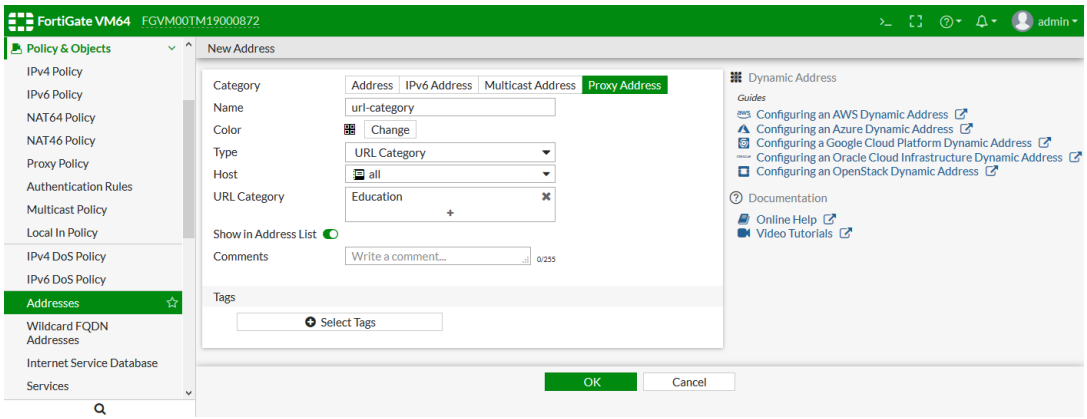
The example creates a URL category address for URLs in the *Education* category. For more information about categories, see https://fortiguard.com/webfilter/categories.

For information about creating and using custom local and remote categories, see Web rating override on page 1472 and Threat feeds on page 372.

To create a URL category address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.

3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *url-category*,
   - *Type* to *URL Category*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *URL Category* to *Education*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a URL category address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "url-category"
        set type category
        set host "all"
        set category 30
    next
end
```

To see a list of all the categories and their numbers, when editing the address, enter `set category ?`.

HTTP method

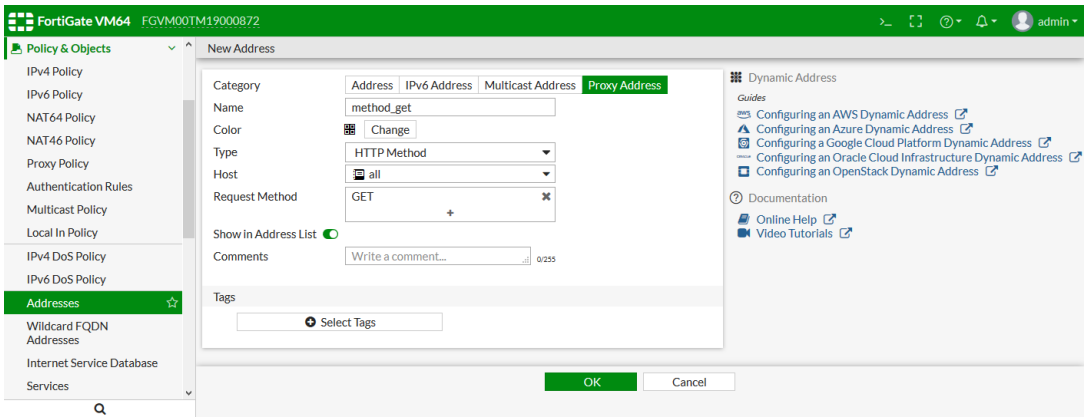
In this address type, a user can create an address based on the HTTP request methods that are used. Multiple method options are supported, including: *CONNECT*, *DELETE*, *GET*, *HEAD*, *OPTIONS*, *POST*, *PUT*, and *TRACE*. Once created, the address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the selected HTTP method.

The example creates a HTTP method address that uses the GET method.

To create a HTTP method address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *method_get*,
   - *Type* to *HTTP Method*,

- *Host* to *all*, and
- *Request Method* to *GET*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a HTTP method address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "method_get"
        set type method
        set host "all"
        set method get
    next
end
```

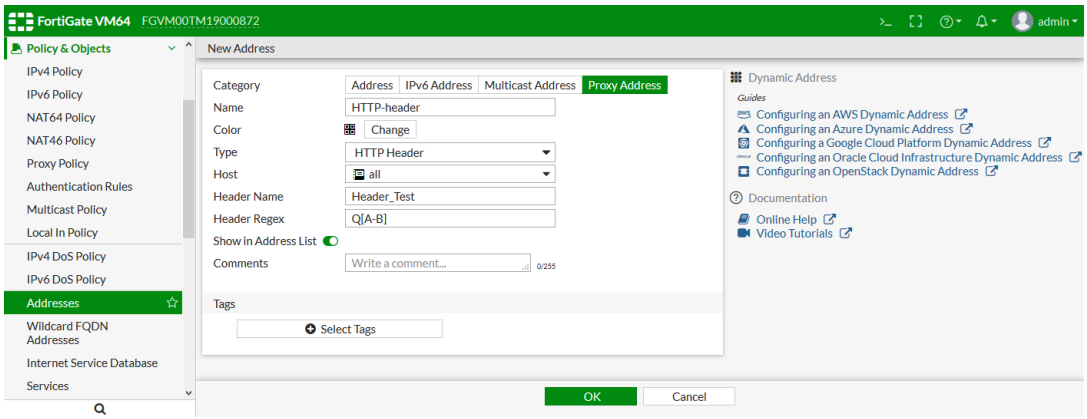
HTTP header

In this address type, a user can create a HTTP header as a regular expression. Once created, the header address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests where the HTTP header matches the regular expression.

This example creates a HTTP header address with the pattern *Q[A-B]*.

To create a HTTP header address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *HTTP-header*,
   - *Type* to *HTTP Header*,
   - *Host* to *all*,
   - *Header Name* to *Header_Test*, and
   - *Header Regex* to *Q[A-B]*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a HTTP header address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "method_get"
        set type header
        set host "all"
        set header-name "Header_Test"
        set header "Q[A-B]"
    next
end
```

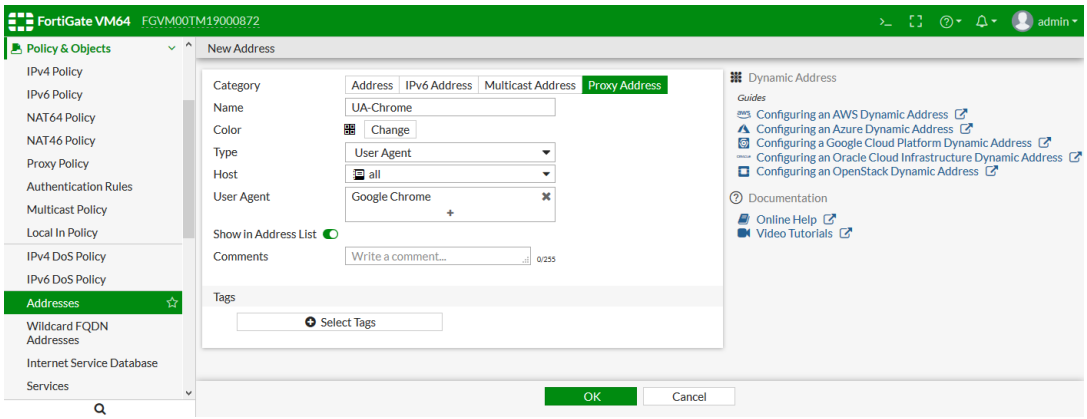
User agent

In this address type, a user can create an address based on the names of the browsers that are used as user agents. Multiple browsers are supported, such as Chrome, Firefox, Internet Explorer, and others. Once created, the address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests from the specified user agent.

This example creates a user agent address for Google Chrome.

To create a user agent address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *UA-Chrome*,
   - *Type* to *User Agent*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *User Agent* to *Google Chrome*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a user agent address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "UA-Chrome"
        set type ua
        set host "all"
        set ua chrome
    next
end
```

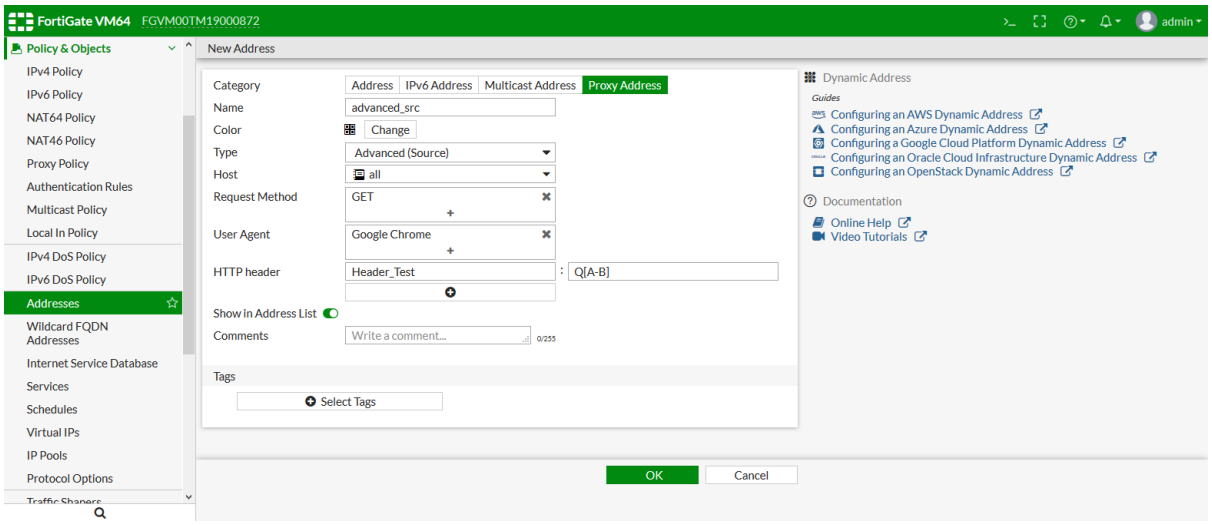
Advanced (source)

In this address type, a user can create an address based on multiple parameters, including HTTP method, User Agent, and HTTP header. Once created, the address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the selected address.

This example creates an address that uses the get method, a user agent for Google Chrome, and an HTTP header with the pattern *Q[A-B]*.

To create an advanced (source) address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *advanced_src*,
   - *Type* to *Advanced (Source)*,
   - *Host* to *all*,
   - *Request Method* to *GET*,
   - *User Agent* to *Google Chrome*, and
   - *HTTP header* to *Header_Test* : *Q[A-B]*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create an advanced (source) address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "advance_src"
        set type src-advanced
        set host "all"
        set method get
        set ua chrome
        config header-group
            edit 1
                set header-name "Header_Test"
                set header "Q[A-B]"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Advanced (destination)

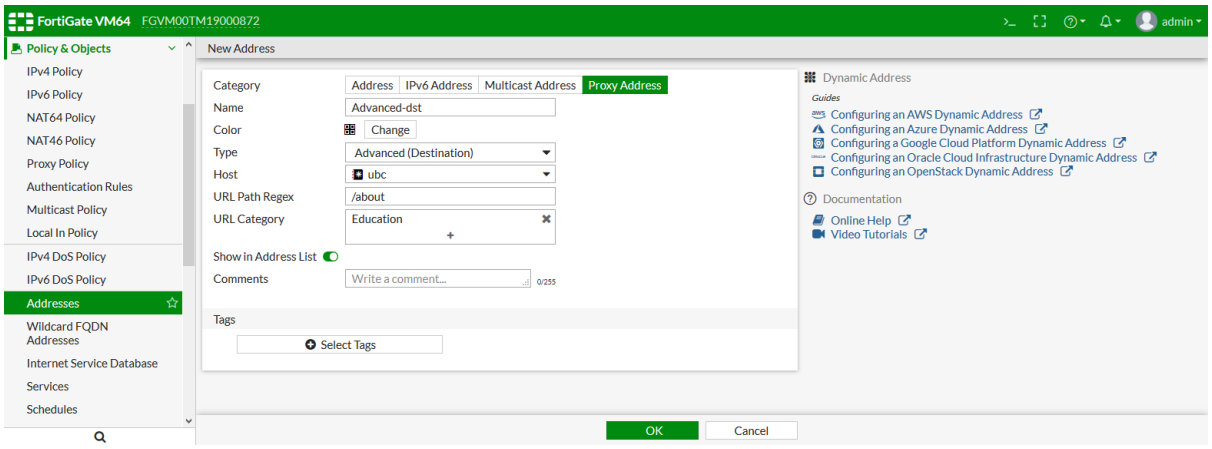
In this address type, a user can create an address based on URL pattern and URL category parameters. Once created, the address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the selected address.

This example creates an address with the URL pattern */about* that are in the *Education* category. For more information about categories, see https://fortiguard.com/webfilter/categories.

To create an advanced (destination) address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *Advanced-dst*,

- *Type* to *Advanced (Destination)*,
- *Host* to *all*,
- *URL Path Regex* to */about*, and
- *URL Category* to *Education*.



4. Click *OK*.

To create an advanced (destination) address in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "Advanced-dst"
        set type dst-advanced
        set host "ubc"
        set path "/about"
        set category 30
    next
end
```

Proxy policy security profiles

Web proxy policies support most security profile types.



Security profiles must be created before they can be used in a policy, see Security Profiles on page 1277 for information.

Explicit web proxy policy

The security profiles supported by explicit web proxy policies are:

- *AntiVirus*
- *Web Filter*
- *Application Control*
- *IPS*
- *DLP Sensor*
- *ICAP*

- *Web Application Firewall*
- *SSL Inspection*

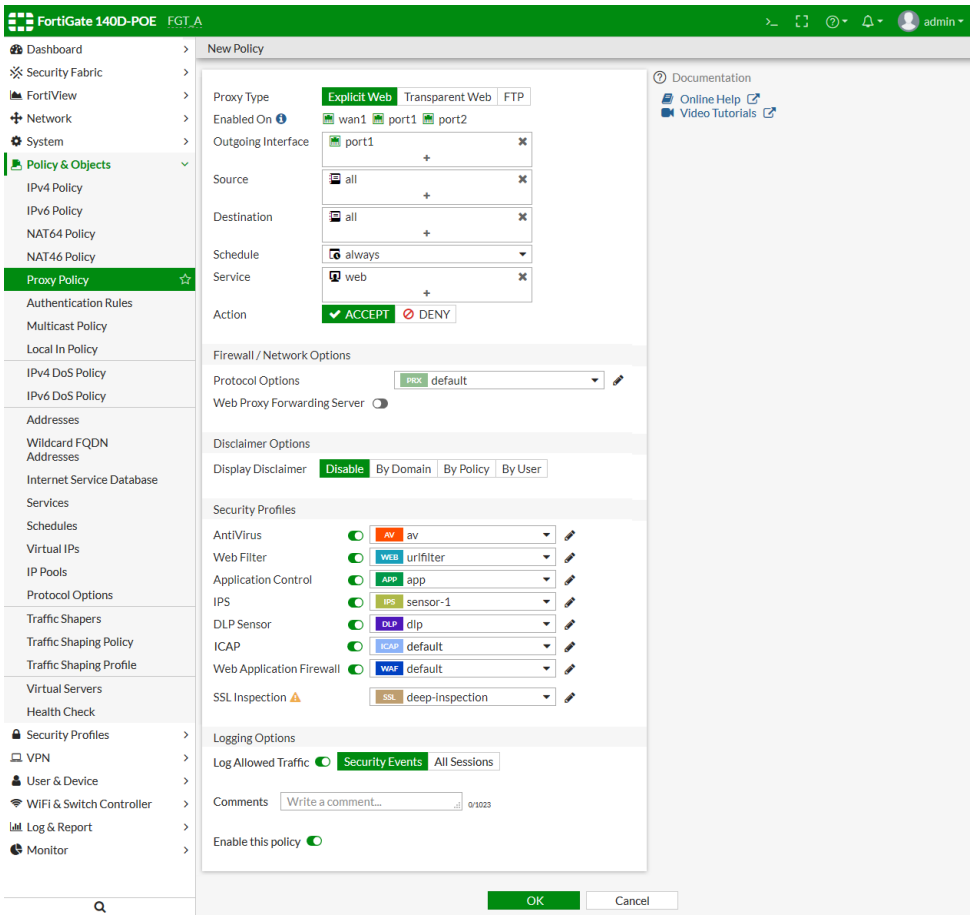
To configure security profiles on an explicit web proxy policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:

Proxy Type	Explicit Web
Outgoing Interface	port1
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	webproxy
Action	ACCEPT

4. In the *Firewall / Network Options* section, set *Protocol Options* to *default*.
5. In the *Security Profiles* section, make the following selections (for this example, these profiles have all already been created):

AntiVirus	av
Web Filter	urlfiler
Application Control	app
IPS	Sensor-1
DLP Sensor	dlp
ICAP	default
Web Application Firewall	default
SSL Inspection	deep-inspection



6. Click *OK* to create the policy.

To configure security profiles on an explicit web proxy policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "web"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set webfilter-profile "urlfilter"
        set dlp-sensor "dlp"
        set ips-sensor "sensor-1"
        set application-list "app"
        set icap-profile "default"
        set waf-profile "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
    next
end
```

Transparent proxy

The security profiles supported by transparent proxy policies are:

- *AntiVirus*
- *Web Filter*
- *Application Control*
- *IPS*
- *DLP Sensor*
- *ICAP*
- *Web Application Firewall*
- *SSL Inspection*

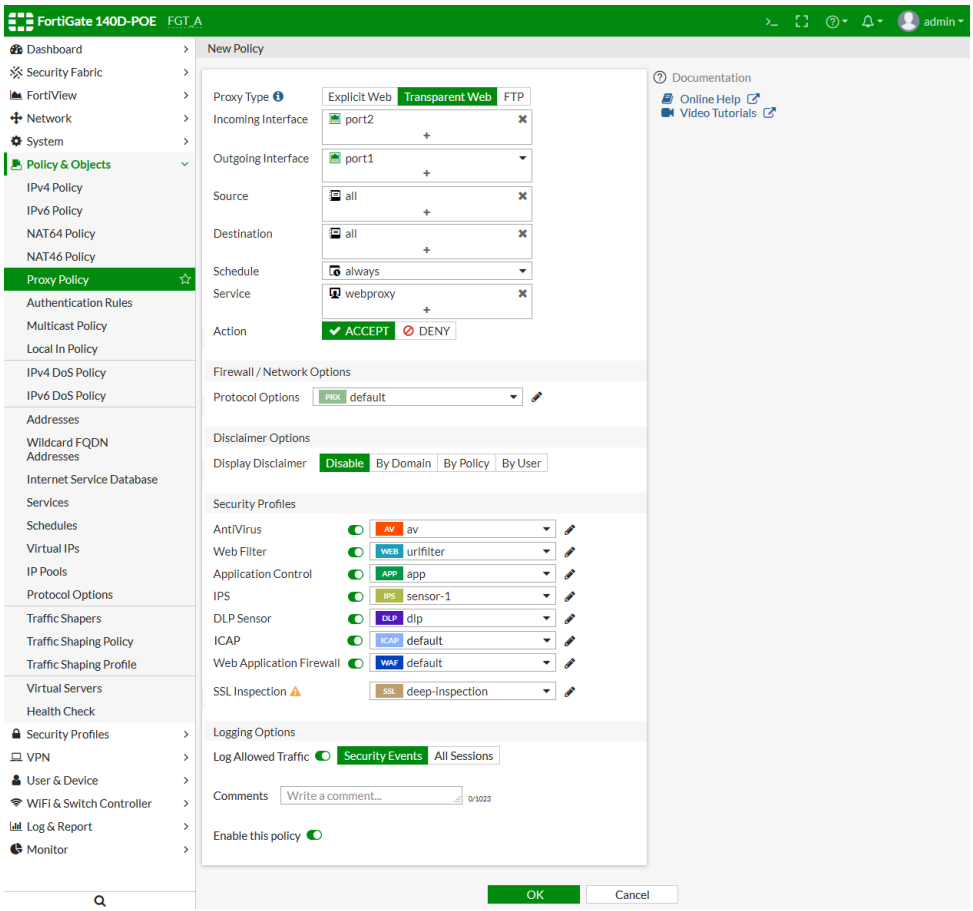
To configure security profiles on a transparent proxy policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:

Proxy Type	Transparent Web
Incoming Interfae	port2
Outgoing Interface	port1
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	webproxy
Action	ACCEPT

4. In the *Firewall / Network Options* section, set *Protocol Options* to *default*.
5. In the *Security Profiles* section, make the following selections (for this example, these profiles have all already been created):

AntiVirus	av
Web Filter	urlfiler
Application Control	app
IPS	Sensor-1
DLP Sensor	dlp
ICAP	default
Web Application Firewall	default
SSL Inspection	deep-inspection



6. Click *OK* to create the policy.

To configure security profiles on a transparent proxy policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 2
        set proxy transparent-web
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set webfilter-profile "urlfilter"
        set dlp-sensor "dlp"
        set ips-sensor "sensor-1"
        set application-list "app"
        set icap-profile "default"
        set waf-profile "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
    next
end
```

FTP proxy

The security profiles supported by FTP proxy policies are:

- *AntiVirus*
- *Application Control*
- *IPS*
- *DLP Sensor*

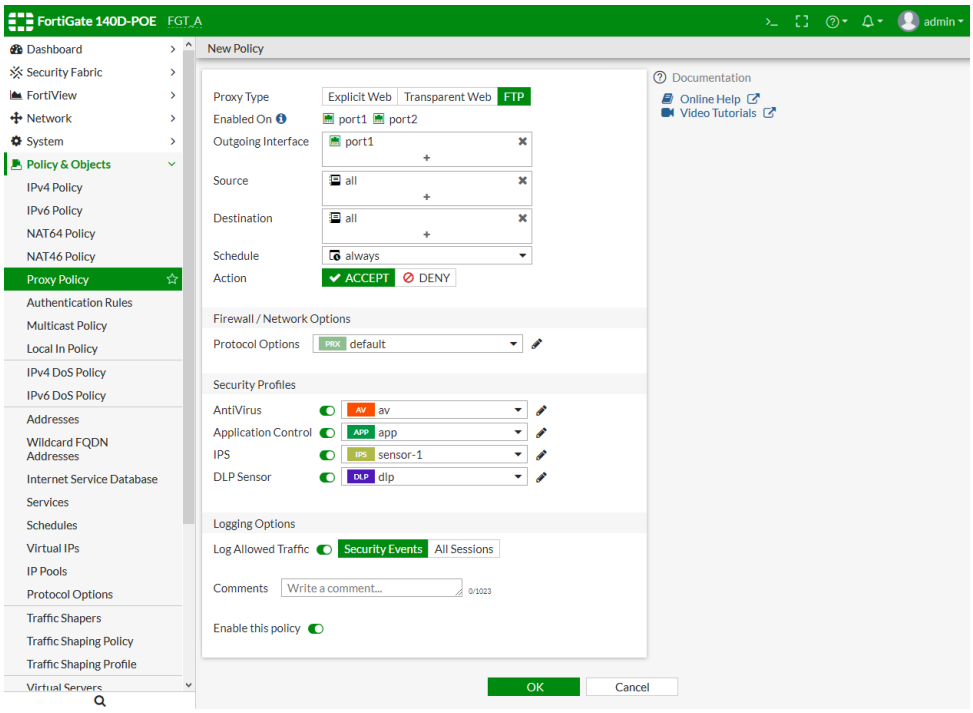
To configure security profiles on an FTP proxy policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:

Proxy Type	FTP
Outgoing Interface	port1
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Action	ACCEPT

4. In the *Firewall / Network Options* section, set *Protocol Options* to *default*.
5. In the *Security Profiles* section, make the following selections (for this example, these profiles have all already been created):

AntiVirus	av
Application Control	app
IPS	Sensor-1
DLP Sensor	dlp



6. Click *OK* to create the policy.

To configure security profiles on an FTP proxy policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 3
        set proxy ftp
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set dlp-sensor "dlp"
        set ips-sensor "sensor-1"
        set application-list "app"
    next
end
```

Explicit proxy authentication

FortiGate supports multiple authentication methods. This topic explains using an external authentication server with Kerberos as the primary and NTLM as the fallback.

To configure Explicit Proxy with authentication:

1. Enable and configure the explicit proxy on page 493.
2. Configure the authentication server and create user groups on page 493.
3. Create an authentication scheme and rules on page 495.

4. Create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to the policy on page 496.
5. Verify the configuration on page 497.

Enable and configure the explicit proxy

To enable and configure explicit web proxy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*.
2. Enable *Explicit Web Proxy*.
3. Select *port2* as the *Listen on Interfaces* and set the *HTTP Port* to *8080*.
4. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
5. Click *Apply*.

To enable and configure explicit web proxy in the CLI:

```
config web-proxy explicit
    set status enable
    set ftp-over-http enable
    set socks enable
    set http-incoming-port 8080
    set ipv6-status enable
    set unknown-http-version best-effort
end
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
        set type physical
        set explicit-web-proxy enable
        set snmp-index 12
        end
    next
end
```

Configure the authentication server and create user groups

Since we are using an external authentication server with Kerberos authentication as the primary and NTLM as the fallback, Kerberos authentication is configured first and then FSSO NTLM authentication is configured.

For successful authorization, the FortiGate checks if user belongs to one of the groups that is permitted in the security policy.

To configure an authentication server and create user groups in the GUI:

1. Configure Kerberos authentication:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
   b. Click *Create New*.

c. Set the following:

Name	ldap-kerberos
Server IP	172.18.62.220
Server Port	389
Common Name Identifier	cn
Distinguished Name	dc=fortinetqa,dc=local

d. Click *OK*

2. Define Kerberos as an authentication service. This option is only available in the CLI. For information on generating a keytab, see Generating a keytab on a Windows server on page 497.
3. Configure FSSO NTLM authentication:
FSSO NTLM authentication is supported in a Windows AD network. FSSO can also provide NTLM authentication service to the FortiGate unit. When a user makes a request that requires authentication, the FortiGate initiates NTLM negotiation with the client browser, but does not process the NTLM packets itself. Instead, it forwards all the NTLM packets to the FSSO service for processing.
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New* and select *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent* from the *Endpoint/Identity* category.
   c. Set the *Name* to *FSSO*, *Primary FSSO Agent* to *172.16.200.220*, and enter a password.
   d. Click *OK*.
4. Create a user group for Kerberos authentication:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *Ldap-Group*, and *Type* to *Firewall*.
   d. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*, and set the *Remote Server* to the previously created *ldap-kerberos* server.
   e. Click *OK*.
5. Create a user group for NTLM authentication:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *NTLM-FSSO-Group*, *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*, and add *FORTINETQA/FSSO* as a member.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure an authentication server and create user groups in the CLI:

1. Configure Kerberos authentication:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-kerberos"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
        set password *********
    next
end
```

2. Define Kerberos as an authentication service:

```
config user krb-keytab
    edit "http_service"
        set pac-data disable
        set principal "HTTP/FGT.FORTINETQA.LOCAL@FORTINETQA.LOCAL"
        set ldap-server "ldap-kerberos"
        set keytab
"BQIAAABFAAIAEEZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwABEhUVFAAFEZHVC5GT1JUSU5FVFFBLkxPQ0FMAAAAAQAAAAAEAAE
ACKLCMonpitnVAAAARQACABBGT1JUSU5FVFFBLkxPQ0FMAARIVFRQABRGR1QuRk9SVElORVRRQS5MT0NBTAAAAAE
AAAAABAADAAiiwjKJ6YrZ1QAAAE0AAgAQRk9SVElORVRRQS5MT0NBTAAESFRUUAAURkdULkZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9
DQUwAAAABAAAAAAQAFwAQUHo9uqR9cSkzyxdzKCEXdwAAAF0AAgAQRk9SVElORVRRQS5MT0NBTAAESFRUUAAURkd
ULkZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwAAAABAAAAAAQAEgAgzee854Aq1HhQiKJZvV4tL2Poy7hMIARQpK8MCB//BIAAAAB
NAAIAEEZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwABEhUVFAAFEZHVC5GT1JUSU5FVFFBLkxPQ0FMAAAAAQAAAAAEABEAEG49vHE
iiBghr63Z/lnwYrU="
    next
end
```

   For information on generating a keytab, see Generating a keytab on a Windows server on page 497.

3. Configure FSSO NTLM authentication:

```
config user fsso
    edit "1"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set password *********
    next
end
```

4. Create a user group for Kerberos authentication:

```
config user group
    edit "Ldap-Group"
        set member "ldap" "ldap-kerberos"
    next
end
```

5. Create a user group for NTLM authentication:

```
config user group
    edit "NTLM-FSSO-Group"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "FORTINETQA/FSSO"
    next
end
```

Create an authentication scheme and rules

Explicit proxy authentication is managed by authentication schemes and rules. An authentication scheme must be created first, and then the authentication rule.

To create an authentication scheme and rules in the GUI:

1. Create an authentication scheme:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Authentication Rules*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Authentication Schemes*.

c. Set the *Name* to *Auth-scheme-Negotiate* and select *Negotiate* as the *Method*.
d. Click *OK*.

2. Create an authentication rule:
a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Authentication Rules*.
b. Click *Create New* > *Authentication Rules*.
c. Set the *Name* to *Auth-Rule*, *Source Address* to *all*, and *Protocol* to *HTTP*.
d. Enable *Authentication Scheme*, and select the just created *Auth-scheme-Negotiate* scheme.
e. Click *OK*.

To create an authentication scheme and rules in the CLI:

1. Create an authentication scheme:

```
config authentication scheme
    edit "Auth-scheme-Negotiate"
        set method negotiate       <<< Accepts both Kerberos and NTLM as fallback
    next
end
```

2. Create an authentication rule:

```
config authentication rule
    edit "Auth-Rule"
        set status enable
        set protocol http
        set srcaddr "all"
        set ip-based enable
        set active-auth-method "Auth-scheme-Negotiate"
        set comments "Testing"
    next
end
```

Create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to the policy

To create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to it in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set *Proxy Type* to *Explicit Web* and *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
4. Set *Source* to *all*, and the just created user groups *NTLM-FSSO-Group* and *Ldap-Group*.
5. Also set *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *webproxy*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.
6. Click *OK*.

To create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to it in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "web"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "NTLM-FSSO-Group" "Ldap-Group"
        set av-profile "av"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
    next
end
```

Verify the configuration

Log in using a domain and system that would be authenticated using the Kerberos server, then enter the `diagnose wad user list` CLI command to verify:

```
# diagnose wad user list
ID: 8, IP: 10.1.100.71, VDOM: vdom1
  user name    : test1@FORTINETQA.LOCAL
  duration     : 389
  auth_type    : IP
  auth_method : Negotiate
  pol_id       : 1
  g_id         : 1
  user_based   : 0
  expire       : no
  LAN:
    bytes_in=4862 bytes_out=11893
  WAN:
    bytes_in=7844 bytes_out=1023
```

Log in using a system that is not part of the domain. The NTLM fallback server should be used:

```
# diagnose wad user list
ID: 2, IP: 10.1.100.202, VDOM: vdom1
  user name    : TEST31@FORTINETQA
  duration     : 7
  auth_type    : IP
  auth_method : NTLM
  pol_id       : 1
  g_id         : 5
  user_based   : 0
  expire       : no
  LAN:
    bytes_in=6156 bytes_out=16149
  WAN:
    bytes_in=7618 bytes_out=1917
```

Generating a keytab on a Windows server

A keytab is used to allow services that are not running Windows to be configured with service instance accounts in the Active Directory Domain Service (AD DS). This allows Kerberos clients to authenticate to the service through Windows Key Distribution Centers (KDCs).

For an explanation of the process, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/administration/windows-commands/ktpass.

To generate a keytab on a Windows server:

1. On the server, create a user for the FortiGate:
   - The service name is the FQDN for the explicit proxy interface, such as the hostname in the client browser proxy configuration. In this example, the service name is *FGT*.
   - The account only requires *domain users* membership.
   - The password must be very strong.
   - The password is set to never expire.
2. Add the FortiGate FQDN in to the Windows DNS domain, as well as in-addr.arpa.
3. Generate the Kerberos keytab using the `ktpass` command on Windows servers and many domain workstations:

   ```
   # ktpass -princ HTTP/<domain name of test fgt>@realm -mapuser <user> -pass <password> -crypto all -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -out fgt.keytab
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   ktpass -princ HTTP/FGT.FORTINETQA.LOCAL@FORTINETQA.LOCAL -mapuser FGT -pass ********** -crypto all -ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL -out fgt.keytab
   ```

   If the FortiGate is handling multiple keytabs in Kerberos authentication, use different passwords when generating each keytab.

4. Encode the keytab to base64 in a text file:
   - On Windows: `certutil -encode fgt.keytab tmp.b64 && findstr /v /c:- tmp.b64 > fgt.txt`
   - On Linux: `base64 fgt.keytab > fgt.txt`
   - On MacOS: `base64 -i fgt.keytab -o fgt.txt`
5. Use the code in `fgt.txt` as the keytab parameter when configuring the FortiGate.

Transparent web proxy forwarding

In FortiOS, there is an option to enable proxy forwarding for transparent web proxy policies and regular firewall policies for HTTP and HTTPS.

In previous versions of FortiOS, you could forward proxy traffic to another proxy server (proxy chaining) with explicit proxy. Now, you can forward web traffic to the upstream proxy without having to reconfigure your browsers or publish a proxy auto-reconfiguration (PAC) file.

Once configured, the FortiGate forwards traffic generated by a client to the upstream proxy. The upstream proxy then forwards it to the server.

To enable proxy forwarding using the CLI:

1. Configure the web proxy forwarding server:

   ```
   config web-proxy forward-server
       edit "PC_03"
           set ip 172.16.200.46
           set healthcheck enable
           set monitor "http://www.google.ca"
   ```

```
    next
end
```

2. Append the web proxy forwarding server to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "LAN to WAN"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic all
        set webproxy-forward-server "PC_03"
        set fsso disable
        set av-profile "av"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Upstream proxy authentication in transparent proxy mode

A downstream proxy FortiGate that needs to be authenticated by the upstream web proxy can use the basic authentication method to send its username and password, in the base64 format, to the upstream web proxy for authentication. If the authentication succeeds, web traffic that is forwarded from the downstream proxy FortiGate to the upstream proxy can be accepted and forwarded to its destinations.

In this example, a school has a FortiGate acting as a downstream proxy that is configured with firewall policies for each user group (students and staff). In each policy, a forwarding server is configured to forward the web traffic to the upstream web proxy.

The username and password that the upstream web proxy uses to authenticate the downstream proxy are configured on the forwarding server, and are sent to the upstream web proxy with the forwarded HTTP requests.

	Username	Password
student.proxy.local:8080	students	ABC123
staff.proxy.local:8081	staff	123456

On the downstream FortiGate, configure forwarding servers with the usernames and passwords for authentication on the upstream web proxy, then apply those servers to firewall policies for transparent proxy. For explicit web proxy, the forwarding servers can be applied to proxy policies.

When the transparent proxy is configured, clients can access websites without configuring a web proxy in their browser. The downstream proxy sends the username and password to the upstream proxy with forwarded HTTP requests to be authenticated.

To configure the forwarding server on the downstream FortiGate:

```
config web-proxy forward-server
    edit "Student_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set addr-type fqdn
        set fqdn "student.proxy.local"
        set port 8080
        set username "student"
        set password ABC123
    next
    edit "Staff_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set addr-type fqdn
        set fqdn "staff.proxy.local"
        set port 8081
        set username "staff"
        set password 123456
    next
end
```

To configure firewall policies for transparent proxy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "Vlan_Student"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "Student_Subnet"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set av-profile "av"
        set webproxy-forward-server "Student_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "Vlan_Staff"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "Staff_Subnet"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set av-profile "av"
        set webproxy-forward-server "Staff_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Multiple dynamic header count

Multiple dynamic headers are supported for web proxy profiles, as well as Base64 encoding and the append/new options.

Administrators only have to select the dynamic header in the profile. The FortiGate will automatically display the corresponding static value. For example, if the administrator selects the `$client-ip` header, the FortiGate will display the actual client IP address.

The supported headers are:

`$client-ip`	Client IP address
`$user`	Authentication user name
`$domain`	User domain name
`$local_grp`	Firewall group name
`$remote_grp`	Group name from authentication server
`$proxy_name`	Proxy realm name

To configure dynamic headers using the CLI:

Since authentication is required, FSSO NTLM authentication is configured in this example.

1. Configure LDAP:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-kerberos"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set cnid "cn"a
        set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
        set password *********
    next
end
```

2. Configure FSSO:

```
config user fsso
    edit "1"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set password *********
    next
end
```

3. Configure a user group:

```
config user group
    edit "NTLM-FSSO"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "FORTINETQA/FSSO"
    next
end
```

4. Configure an authentication scheme:

```
config authentication scheme
    edit "au-sch-ntlm"
        set method ntlm
    next
end
```

5. Configure an authentication rule:

```
config authentication rule
    edit "au-rule-fsso"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set active-auth-method "au-sch-ntlm"
    next
end
```

6. Create a web proxy profile that adds a new dynamic and custom `Via` header:

```
config web-proxy profile
    edit "test"
        set log-header-change enable
        config headers
            edit 1
                set name "client-ip"
                set content "$client-ip"
            next
            edit 2
                set name "Proxy-Name"
                set content "$proxy_name"
            next
            edit 3
                set name "user"
                set content "$user"
            next
            edit 4
                set name "domain"
                set content "$domain"
            next
            edit 5
                set name "local_grp"
                set content "$local_grp"
            next
            edit 6
                set name "remote_grp"
                set content "$remote_grp"
            next
            edit 7
                set name "Via"
                set content "Fortigate-Proxy"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

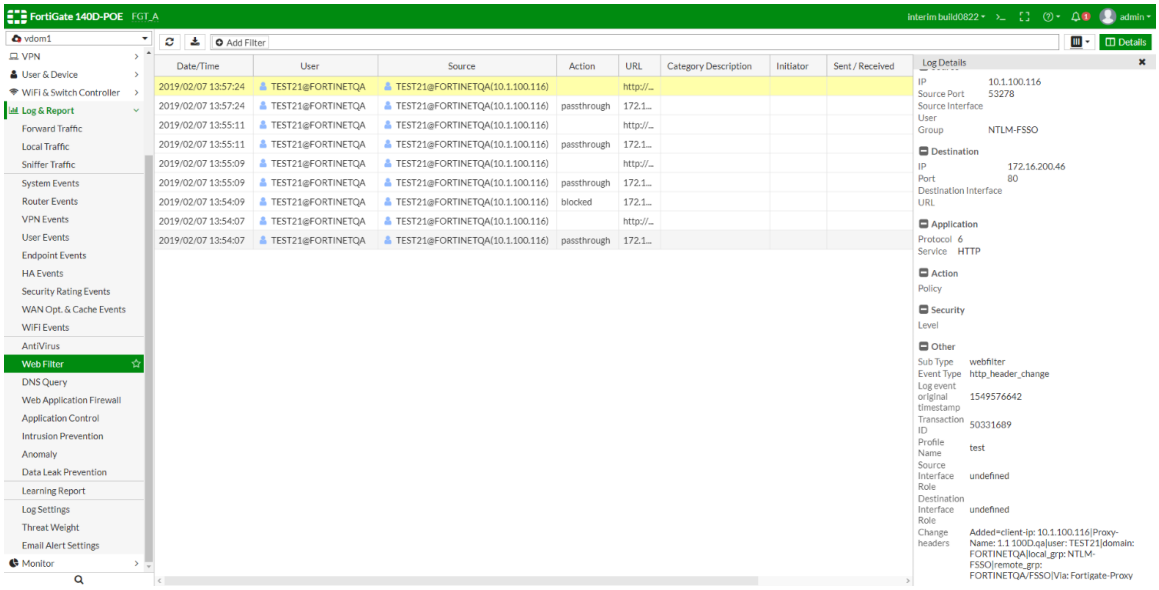
7. In the proxy policy, append the web proxy profile created in the previous step:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
```

```
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "web"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "NTLM-FSSO"
        set webproxy-profile "test"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set webfilter-profile "content"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
    next
end
```

8. Once traffic is being generated from the client, look at the web filter logs to verify that it is working.
   The corresponding values for all the added header fields displays in the *Change headers* section at the bottom of the *Log Details* pane.

```
1: date=2019-02-07 time=13:57:24 logid="0344013632" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="http_header_change" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1549576642 policyid=1
transid=50331689 sessionid=1712788383 user="TEST21@FORTINETQA" group="NTLM-FSSO"
profile="test" srcip=10.1.100.116 srcport=53278 dstip=172.16.200.46 dstport=80
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port1" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTP" url="http://172.16.200.46/" agent="curl/7.22.0" chgheaders="Added=client-
ip: 10.1.100.116|Proxy-Name: 1.1 100D.qa|user: TEST21|domain: FORTINETQA|local_grp:
NTLM-FSSO|remote_grp: FORTINETQA/FSSO|Via: Fortigate-Proxy"
```



Restricted SaaS access

Large organizations may want to restrict SaaS access to resources like Microsoft Office 365, Google Workspace, and Dropbox by tenant to block non-company login attempts and secure the users from accessing non-approved cloud resources. Many cloud vendors enable this by applying tenant restrictions for access control. For example, users

accessing Microsoft 365 applications with tenant restrictions through the corporate proxy will only be allowed to log in as the company's tenant and access the organization's applications.

To implement this, access requests from the clients pass through the company's web proxy, which inserts headers to notify the SaaS service to apply tenant restrictions with the permitted tenant list. Users are redirected the SaaS service login page, and are only allowed to log in if they belong to the permitted tenant list.

For more information, refer to the vendor-specific documentation:

- Office 365: Restrict access to a tenant
- Google Workspace: Block access to consumer accounts
- Dropbox: Network control

Basic configuration

A web proxy profile can specify access permissions for Microsoft Office 365, Google Workspace, and Dropbox by inserting vendor-defined headers that restrict access to the specific accounts. Custom headers can also be inserted for any destination. The web proxy profile can then be applied to a firewall policy to control the header's insertion.

To implement Office 365 tenant restriction, Google Workspace account access control, and Dropbox network access control:

1. Configure a web proxy profile according to the vendors' specifications:
   a. Set the header name (defined by the service provider).
   b. Set the traffic destination (the service provider).
   c. Set the HTTP header content to be inserted into the traffic (defined by your settings).

```
config web-proxy profile
    edit <name>
        config headers
            edit <id>
                set name <string>
                set dstaddr <address>
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content <string>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Apply the web proxy profile to a policy. SSL deep inspection must be used in the firewall policy:

The following table lists the vendor-specific `config headers` settings that must be configured in the web proxy profile (`config web-proxy profile`):

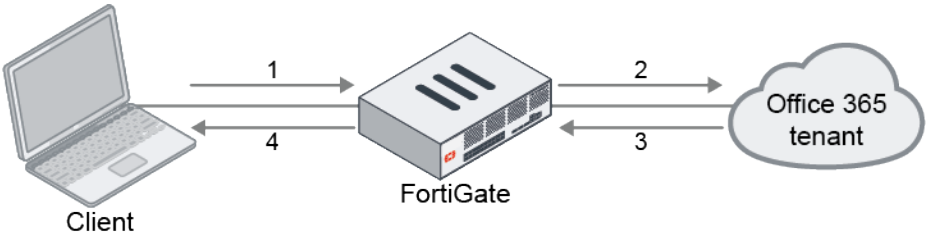
Setting	Vendor specification		
	Microsoft Office 365	Google Workspace	Dropbox
`name <string>`	• `Restrict-Access-To-`	• `X-GoogApps-Allowed-Domains`	• `X-Dropbox-allowed-Team-Ids`

Setting	Vendor specification		
	Microsoft Office 365	Google Workspace	Dropbox
	Tenants • Restrict-Access-Context		
dstaddr <address>	• Use the built-in Microsoft Office 365 address.	• Use the built-in G Suite address.	• Use the built-in wildcard.dropbox.com address.
content <string>	• Enter the domain for Restrict-Access-To-Tenants. • Enter the directory ID for Restrict-Access-Context.	• Enter the domain.	• Enter the Dropbox team ID.

Due to vendors' changing requirements, these settings may no longer comply with the vendors' official guidelines. See the vendor documentation for more details.

Microsoft Office 365 example

In this example, a web proxy profile is created to control permissions for Microsoft Office 365 to allow corporate domains and deny personal accounts, such as Hotmail and Outlook that are accessed through login.live.com.



1. When a user attempts to access login.microsoftonline.com, login.microsoft.com, or login.windows.net, the traffic will match a proxy inspection mode firewall policy with the assigned web proxy profile.
2. The web proxy profile adds new headers to the customer tenant, indicating the allowed domain and restricted access for personal accounts. Next, the FortiGate starts a new connection with the Microsoft Office 365 domain controller including the new headers.
3. The Microsoft Office 365 domain controller assesses this data and will allow or deny this access, then sends a reply to the FortiGate.
4. The FortiGate sends a reply to the client.

The FortiGate will only indicate the correct domains to be allowed or denied through the headers to Microsoft. The custom sign-in portal in the browser is generated by Microsoft.

Configuration summary

The following must be configured in FortiOS:

- An FQDN address for login.live.com
- An SSL inspection profile that uses deep inspection with an exemption for login.live.com



Ensure that the firewall certificate is installed on the client machines. A company certificate signed by an internal CA is recommended.

- A web filter profile in proxy mode with static URL filters for the SNI URLs
- A web proxy profile that adds new headers to the customer tenant
- A firewall policy using proxy mode inspection that applies the configured SSL SSL inspection, web filter, and web proxy profiles

The `Restrict-Access-To-Tenants` and `Restrict-Access-Context` headers are inserted for incoming requests to: login.microsoftonline.com, login.microsoft.com, and login.windows.net, which are part of the `Microsoft Office 365` address group.

To restrict access to personal accounts using the login.live.com domain, the `sec-Restrict-Tenant-Access-Policy` header is inserted and uses `restrict-msa` as the header content.

Before configuring the FortiGate, collect the information related to the company domain in the Office 365 contract.

- `Restrict-Access-To-Tenants`: your <domain.com>
- `Restrict-Access-Context`: Directory ID



To find the Directory ID related to the domain, locate it in the Azure portal, or use the whatismytenantid.com open tool.

To configure the FortiGate:

1. Add the FQDN address for login.live.com:

```
config firewall address
    edit "login.live.com"
        set type fqdn
        set fqdn "login.live.com"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the SSL inspection profile. In this example, the `deep-inspection` profile is cloned, and the `live.com` FQDN is removed from the exemption list.
   a. Clone the `deep-inspection` profile:

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    clone "deep-inspection" to "Tenant"
end
```

   b. Edit the `Tenant` profile and remove `live.com` from the `config ssl-exempt` list.
3. Configure the URL filter list:

```
config webfilter urlfilter
    edit 1
        set name "Auto-webfilter-urlfilter"
        config entries
```

```
            edit 1
                set url "login.microsoftonline.com"
                set action allow
            next
            edit 2
                set url "login.microsoft.com"
                set action allow
            next
            edit 3
                set url "login.windows.net"
                set action allow
            next
            edit 4
                set url "login.live.com"
                set action allow
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. Configure the web filter profile:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "Tenant"
        set comment "Office 365"
        set feature-set proxy
        config web
            set urlfilter-table 1
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure the web proxy profile (enter the header names exactly as shown):

```
config web-proxy profile
    edit "SaaS-Tenant-Restriction"
        set header-client-ip pass
        set header-via-request pass
        set header-via-response pass
        set header-x-forwarded-for pass
        set header-x-forwarded-client-cert pass
        set header-front-end-https pass
        set header-x-authenticated-user pass
        set header-x-authenticated-groups pass
        set strip-encoding disable
        set log-header-change disable
        config headers
            edit 1
                set name "Restrict-Access-To-Tenants"
                set dstaddr "login.microsoft.com" "login.microsoftonline.com"
"login.windows.net"
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content <domain>
            next
```

```
            edit 2
                set name "Restrict-Access-Context"
                set dstaddr "login.microsoftonline.com" "login.microsoft.com"
"login.windows.net"
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content <directory_ID>
            next
            edit 3
                set name "sec-Restrict-Tenant-Access-Policy"
                set dstaddr "login.live.com"
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content "restrict-msa"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

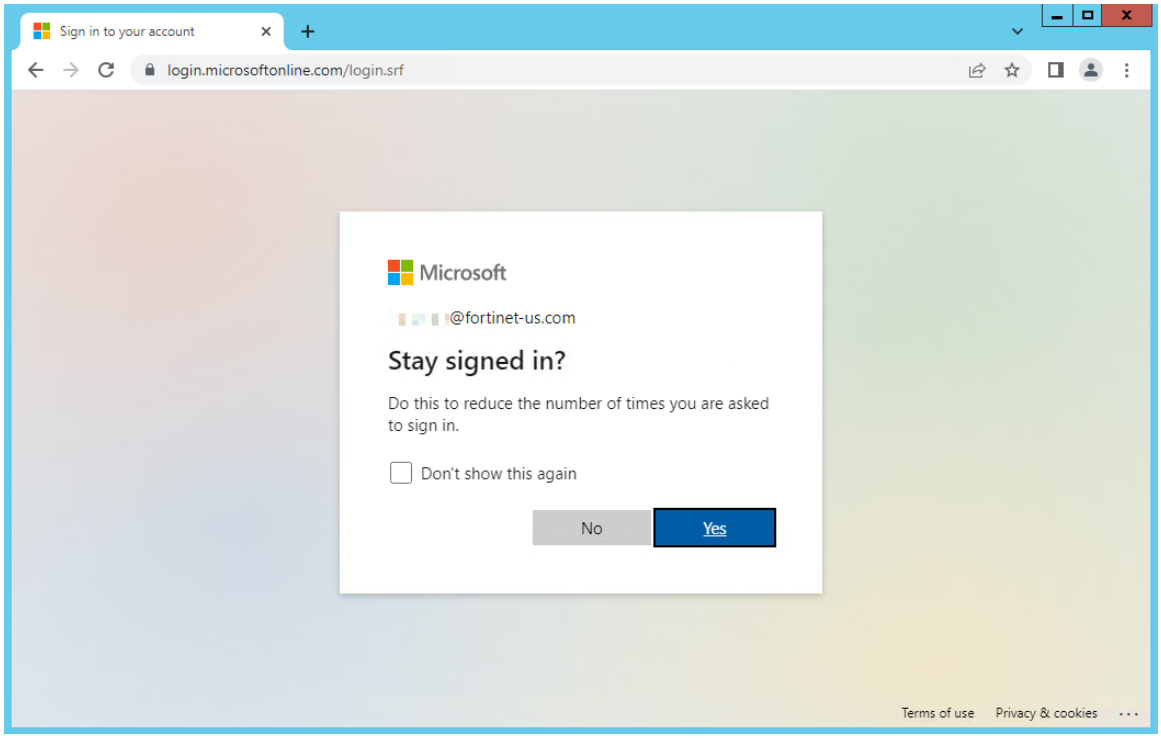
6. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 10
        set name "Tenant"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set action accept
        set srcaddr "users-lan"
        set dstaddr "login.microsoft.com" "login.microsoftonline.com"
"login.windows.net" "login.live.com"
        set schedule "always"
        set service "HTTP" "HTTPS"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set webproxy-profile "SaaS-Tenant-Restriction"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "Tenant"
        set webfilter-profile "Tenant"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Testing the access

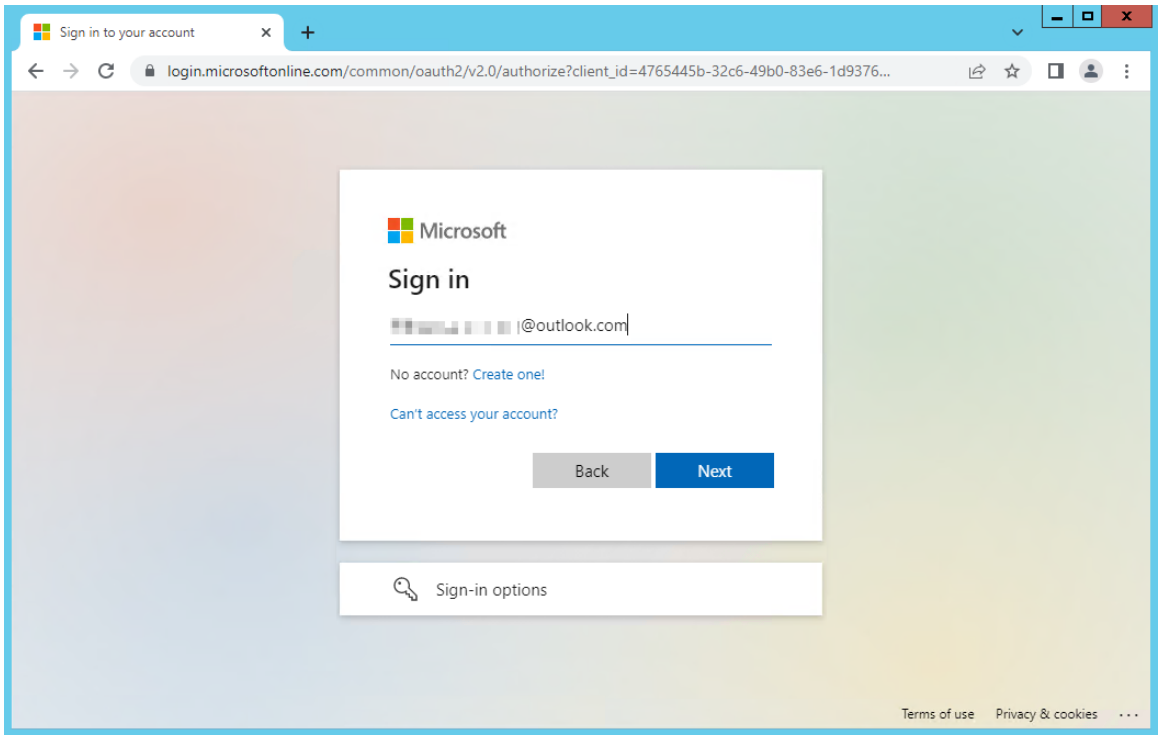
To test the access to corporate domains and personal accounts:

1. Get a client to log in with their corporate email using the login.microsoftonline.com domain.

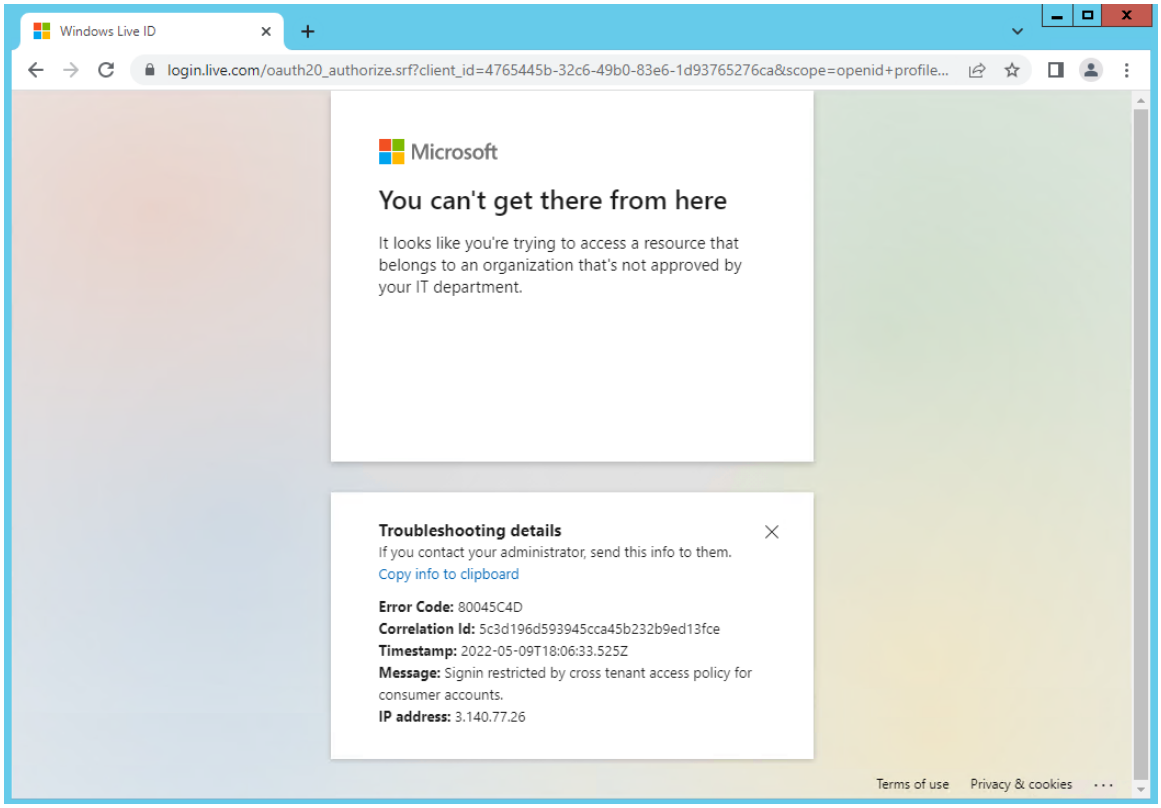


2. The client is able to enter their credentials and log in successfully.

3. Get a client to log in to their personal Outlook account.



4. After the client enters their credentials, a message appears that they cannot access this resource because it is restricted by the cross-tenant access policy.



Verifying the header insertion

To verify the header insertion for corporate domains and personal accounts:

1. On the FortiGate, start running the WAD debugs:

```
# diagnose wad debug enable category http
# diagnose wad debug enable level info
# diagnose debug enable
```

2. After a client attempts to access corporate domains, verify that the header information is sent to the Microsoft Active Directory:

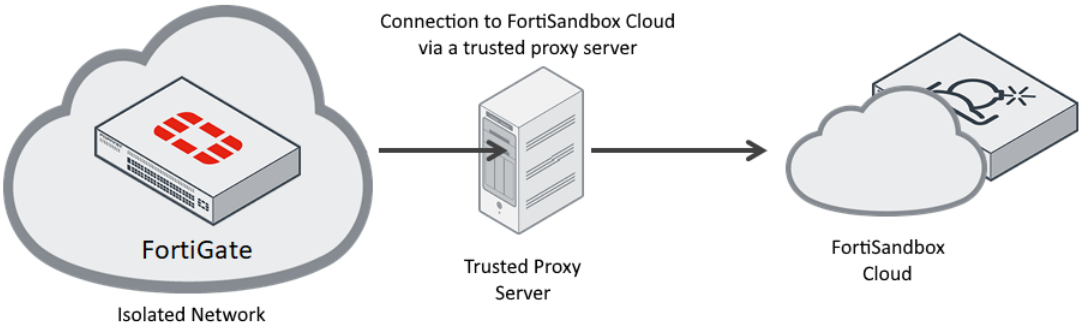
```
[I][p:234][s:2481][r:33] wad_dump_fwd_http_req            :2567  hreq=0x7fc75f0cd468
Forward request to server:
POST /common/GetCredentialType?mkt=en-US HTTP/1.1
Host: login.microsoftonline.com
Connection: keep-alive
Content-Length: 1961
sec-ch-ua: " Not A;Brand";v="99", "Chromium";v="101", "Google Chrome";v="101"
hpgrequestid: d7f706a8-1143-4cdd-ad52-1cc69dc7bb00
sec-ch-ua-mobile: ?0
User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 6.3; Win64; x64) AppleWebKit/537.36 (KHTML, like
Gecko) Chrome/101.0.4951.54 Safari/537.36
client-request-id: 5c3d196d-5939-45cc-a45b-232b9ed13fce
...
Restrict-Access-To-Tenants: fortinet-us.com
Restrict-Access-Context: ********-****-452f-8535-************
```

3. After a client attempts to access a personal account, verify that the header information is sent to the Microsoft Active Directory:

```
[I][p:234][s:2519][r:34] wad_dump_fwd_http_req            :2567  hreq=0x7fc75f0ce6a8
Forward request to server:
GET /oauth20_authorize.srf?client_id=4765445b-32c6-49b0-83e6-
1d93765276ca&scope=openid+profile+https%3a%2f%2fwww.office.com%2fv2%2fOfficeHome.All&red
irect_uri=https%3a%2f%2fwww.office.com%2flandingv2&response_type=code+id_
token&state=7tAtndYhcA3132S--UOTyLVEtyIZs8FgndTpeYM9mJ1EeA-
X5nfqrSalnnPH41cHxfHGug6N5cbliK676v6xZgszgH_
JARVKrptZwBvjI2cbnZ4mttYNNdK1FTlbEtu5VBjgtBOX2u6v3F_
9g7UikCpGTnBRGhvO2pyTndT3EEIyAHvhg9LsKRtY3kxce8dQkfk1iDjLcc3q-01r4rpxSx2xZSbwg_
KkAN3kCRQ9uLfE0ziHAcpvunuKmzGBWKnBhC4sJJkXrMEfXwCg4nsOjg&response_mode=form_
post&nonce=637877163655610380.MjNjZmM4NzQtOTU5My00OGZlLTk0NTItZTE5NDU2YjVlODdjNjViOTQwYm
UtOTZlMS00M2Y5LTkyN2MtN2QyMjgwNjcxY2Uz&x-client-SKU=ID_NETSTANDARD2_0&x-client-
Ver=6.12.1.0&uaid=5c3d196d593945cca45b232b9ed13fce&msproxy=1&issuer=mso&tenant=common&u
i_locales=en-US&epct=AQABAAAAAAD--DLA3VO7QrddgJg7WevrfA6SLaDsJUcjb1Bg9OKonF3d_
lfNJsdDAIH5hlJdUSGejEBIqsko-A7JX67PzaGdEJgOIGa37VhJzGTYBZ-KgATe9FHssnNmLjM_
dojr0dAT83xDhiqQTN2-UcYdcP2s3vPainF7Nqes5ecXRaEoE9Vw9-
sN7jfASOkPRWW03aI6buz0niABvA860YOWDb98vdJWPGkWE-euDr6n8_
zI5iAA&jshs=0&username=***************%40outlook.com&login_
hint=***************%40outlook.com HTTP/1.1
Host: login.live.com
Connection: keep-alive
...
Referer: https://login.microsoftonline.com/
Accept-Encoding: gzip, deflate, br
Accept-Language: en-US,en;q=0.9
sec-Restrict-Tenant-Access-Policy: restrict-msa
```

Explicit proxy and FortiSandbox Cloud

Explicit proxy connections can leverage FortiSandbox Cloud for advanced threat scanning and updates. This allows FortiGates behind isolated networks to connect to FortiCloud services.



To configure FortiGuard services to communicate with an explicit proxy server:

```
config system fortiguard
    set proxy-server-ip 172.16.200.44
    set proxy-server-port 3128
    set proxy-username "test1"
    set proxy-password *********
end
```

To verify the explicit proxy connection to FortiSandbox Cloud:

```
# diagnose debug application forticldd -1
Debug messages will be on for 30 minutes.
# diagnose debug enable
[2942] fds_handle_request: Received cmd 23 from pid-2526, len 0
[40] fds_queue_task: req-23 is added to Cloud-sandbox-controller
[178] fds_svr_default_task_xmit: try to get IPs for Cloud-sandbox-controller
[239] fds_resolv_addr: resolve aptctrl1.fortinet.com
[169] fds_get_addr: name=aptctrl1.fortinet.com, id=32, cb=0x2bc089
[101] dns_parse_resp: DNS aptctrl1.fortinet.com -&gt; 172.16.102.21
[227] fds_resolv_cb: IP-1: 172.16.102.21
[665] fds_ctx_set_addr: server: 172.16.102.21:443
[129] fds_svr_default_pickup_server: Cloud-sandbox-controller: 172.16.102.21:443
[587] fds_https_start_server: server: 172.16.102.21:443
[579] ssl_new: SSL object is created
[117] https_create: proxy server 172.16.200.44 port:3128
[519] fds_https_connect: https_connect(172.16.102.21) is established.
[261] fds_svr_default_on_established: Cloud-sandbox-controller has connected to
ip=172.16.102.21
[268] fds_svr_default_on_established: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-23
[102] fds_pack_objects: number of objects: 1
[75] fds_print_msg: FCPC: len=109
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Command=RegionList
[81] fds_print_msg: Firmware=FG101E-FW-6.02-0917
```

```
[81] fds_print_msg: SerialNumber=FG101E4Q17002429
[81] fds_print_msg: TimeZone=-7
[75] fds_print_msg: http req: len=248
[81] fds_print_msg: POST https://172.16.102.21:443/FCPService HTTP/1.1
[81] fds_print_msg: User-Agent: Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows NT 5.1)
[81] fds_print_msg: Host: 172.16.102.21:443
[81] fds_print_msg: Cache-Control: no-cache
[81] fds_print_msg: Connection: close
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Type: application/octet-stream
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Length: 301
[524] fds_https_connect: http request to 172.16.102.21: header=248, ext=301.
[257] fds_https_send: sent 248 bytes: pos=0, len=248
[265] fds_https_send: 172.16.102.21: sent 248 byte header, now send 301-byte body
[257] fds_https_send: sent 301 bytes: pos=0, len=301
[273] fds_https_send: sent the entire request to server: 172.16.102.21:443
[309] fds_https_recv: read 413 bytes: pos=413, buf_len=2048
[332] fds_https_recv: received the header from server: 172.16.102.21:443, [HTTP/1.1 200
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
Content-Length: 279
Date: Thu, 20 Jun 2019 16:41:11 GMT
Connection: close]
[396] fds_https_recv: Do memmove buf_len=279, pos=279
[406] fds_https_recv: server: 172.16.102.21:443, buf_len=279, pos=279
[453] fds_https_recv: received a packet from server-172.16.102.21:443: sz=279, objs=1
[194] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[839] ssl_free: Done
[830] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
[481] fds_https_recv: obj-0: type=FCPR, len=87
[294] fds_svr_default_on_response: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-23
[75] fds_print_msg: fcpr:  len=83
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Response=202
[81] fds_print_msg: ResponseItem=Region:Europe,Global,Japan,US
[81] fds_print_msg: existing:Japan
[3220] aptctrl_region_res: Got rsp: Region:Europe,Global,Japan,US
[3222] aptctrl_region_res: Got rsp: Region existing:Japan
[439] fds_send_reply: Sending 28 bytes data.
[395] fds_free_tsk: cmd=23; req.noreply=1
# [136] fds_on_sys_fds_change: trace
[2942] fds_handle_request: Received cmd 22 from pid-170, len 0
[40] fds_queue_task: req-22 is added to Cloud-sandbox-controller
[587] fds_https_start_server: server: 172.16.102.21:443
[579] ssl_new: SSL object is created
[117] https_create: proxy server 172.16.200.44 port:3128
[519] fds_https_connect: https_connect(172.16.102.21) is established.
[261] fds_svr_default_on_established: Cloud-sandbox-controller has connected to
ip=172.16.102.21
[268] fds_svr_default_on_established: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-22
[102] fds_pack_objects: number of objects: 1
[75] fds_print_msg: FCPC: len=146
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Command=UpdateAPT
[81] fds_print_msg: Firmware=FG101E-FW-6.02-0917
[81] fds_print_msg: SerialNumber=FG101E4Q17002429
[81] fds_print_msg: TimeZone=-7
[81] fds_print_msg: TimeZoneInMin=-420
```

```
[81] fds_print_msg: DataItem=Region:US
[75] fds_print_msg: http req: len=248
[81] fds_print_msg: POST https://172.16.102.21:443/FCPService HTTP/1.1
[81] fds_print_msg: User-Agent: Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows NT 5.1)
[81] fds_print_msg: Host: 172.16.102.21:443
[81] fds_print_msg: Cache-Control: no-cache
[81] fds_print_msg: Connection: close
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Type: application/octet-stream
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Length: 338
[524] fds_https_connect: http request to 172.16.102.21: header=248, ext=338.
[257] fds_https_send: sent 248 bytes: pos=0, len=248
[265] fds_https_send: 172.16.102.21: sent 248 byte header, now send 338-byte body
[257] fds_https_send: sent 338 bytes: pos=0, len=338
[273] fds_https_send: sent the entire request to server: 172.16.102.21:443
[309] fds_https_recv: read 456 bytes: pos=456, buf_len=2048
[332] fds_https_recv: received the header from server: 172.16.102.21:443, [HTTP/1.1 200
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
Content-Length: 322
Date: Thu, 20 Jun 2019 16:41:16 GMT
Connection: close]
[396] fds_https_recv: Do memmove buf_len=322, pos=322
[406] fds_https_recv: server: 172.16.102.21:443, buf_len=322, pos=322
[453] fds_https_recv: received a packet from server-172.16.102.21:443: sz=322, objs=1
[194] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[839] ssl_free: Done
[830] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
[481] fds_https_recv: obj-0: type=FCPR, len=130
[294] fds_svr_default_on_response: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-22
[75] fds_print_msg: fcpr:  len=126
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Response=202
[81] fds_print_msg: ResponseItem=Server1:172.16.102.51:514
[81] fds_print_msg: Server2:172.16.102.52:514
[81] fds_print_msg: Contract:20210215
[81] fds_print_msg: NextRequest:86400
[615] parse_apt_contract_time_str: The APTContract is valid to Mon Feb 15 23:59:59 2021
[616] parse_apt_contract_time_str: FGT current local time is Thu Jun 20 09:41:16 2019
[3289] aptctrl_update_res: Got rsp: APT=172.16.102.51:514 APTAlter=172.16.102.52:514 next-
upd=86400
[395] fds_free_tsk: cmd=22; req.noreply=1
```

Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers)

For the explicit web proxy you can configure web proxy forwarding servers to use proxy chaining to redirect web proxy sessions to other proxy servers. Proxy chaining can be used to forward web proxy sessions from the FortiGate unit to one or more other proxy servers on your network or on a remote network. You can use proxy chaining to integrate the FortiGate explicit web proxy with a web proxy solution that you already have in place.

A FortiGate unit can forward sessions to most web proxy servers including a remote FortiGate unit with the explicit web proxy enabled. No special configuration of the explicit web proxy on the remote FortiGate unit is required.

You can deploy the explicit web proxy with proxy chaining in an enterprise environment consisting of small satellite offices and a main office. If each office has a FortiGate unit, users at each of the satellite offices can use their local FortiGate unit as an explicit web proxy server. The satellite office FortiGate units can forward explicit web proxy sessions to an explicit web proxy server at the central office. From here the sessions can connect to web servers on the Internet.

FortiGate proxy chaining does not support web proxies in the proxy chain authenticating each other.

The following examples assume explicit web proxy has been enabled.

To enable explicit web proxy in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. In the *Security Features* column, enable *Explicit Proxy*.
3. Configure the explicit web proxy settings. See Explicit web proxy on page 470.

To add a web proxy forwarding server in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*. The *Explicit Proxy* page opens.
2. In the *Web Proxy Forwarding Servers* section, click *Create New*.
3. Configure the server settings and click *OK*.

Name	Enter the name of the forwarding server.
Proxy Address Type	Select the type of IP address of the forwarding server. A forwarding server can have an *FQDN* or *IP* address.
Proxy Address	Enter the IP address of the forwarding server.
Port	Enter the port number on which the proxy receives connections. Traffic leaving the FortiGate explicit web proxy for this server has its destination port number changed to this number.
Server Down Action	Select the action the explicit web proxy will take if the forwarding server is down. • *Block*: Blocks the traffic if the remote server is down. • *Use Original Server*: Forwards the traffic from the FortiGate to its destination as if no forwarding server is configured.
Health Monitor	Select to enable health check monitoring.
Health Check Monitor Site	Enter the address of a remote site.

Example

The following example adds a web proxy forwarding server named `fwd-srv` at address `proxy.example.com` and port `8080`.

To add a web proxy forwarding server in the CLI:

```
config web-proxy forward-server
   edit fwd-srv
      set addr-type fqdn
      set fqdn proxy.example.com
      set port 8080
   end
```

Web proxy forwarding server monitoring and health checking

By default, a FortiGate unit monitors a web proxy forwarding server by forwarding a connection to the remote server every 10 seconds. The remote server is assumed to be down if it does not respond to the connection. FortiGate continues checking the server. The server is assumed to be back up when the server sends a response. If you enable health checking, the FortiGate unit attempts to get a response from a web server every 10 seconds by connecting through the remote forwarding server.

You can configure health checking for each remote server and specify a different website to check for each one.

If the remote server is found to be down you can configure the FortiGate unit to block sessions until the server comes back up or to allow sessions to connect to their destination, bypassing the remote forwarding server. You cannot configure the FortiGate unit to fail over to another remote forwarding server.

To configure proxy server monitor and health checking in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*. The *Explicit Proxy* page opens.
2. In the *Web Proxy Forwarding Servers* section, select a server and click *Editi*.
3. Configure the *Server Down Action* and *Health Monitor* settings.

Server Down Action	Select the action the explicit web proxy will take if the forwarding server is down. • *Block*: Blocks the traffic if the remote server is down. • *Use Original Server*: Forwards the traffic from the FortiGate to its destination as if no forwarding server configured.
Health Monitor	Select to enable health check monitoring.
Health Check Monitor Site	Enter the address of a remote site.

4. Click *OK*.

Example

The following example enables health checking for a web proxy forwarding server and sets the server down option to bypass the forwarding server if it is down.

To configure proxy server monitor and health checking in the CLI:

```
config web-proxy forward-server
   edit fwd-srv
      set healthcheck enable
      set monitor http://example.com
      set server-down-option pass
   end
```

Grouping forwarding servers and load balancing traffic to the servers

You can add multiple web proxy forwarding servers to a forwarding server group and then add the server group to an explicit web proxy policy instead of adding a single server. Forwarding server groups are created from the FortiGate CLI but can be added to policies from the web-based manager (or from the CLI).

When you create a forwarding server group you can select a load balancing method to control how sessions are load balanced to the forwarding servers in the server group. Two load balancing methods are available:

- *Weighted* load balancing sends more sessions to the servers with higher weights. You can configure the weight for each server when you add it to the group.
- *Least-session* load balancing sends new sessions to the forwarding server that is processing the fewest sessions.

When you create a forwarding server group you can also enable *affinity*. Enable affinity to have requests from the same client processed by the same server. This can reduce delays caused by using multiple servers for a single multi-step client operation. Affinity takes precedence over load balancing.

You can also configure the behavior of the group if all of the servers in the group are down. You can select to block traffic or you can select to have the traffic pass through the FortiGate explicit proxy directly to its destination instead of being sent to one of the forwarding servers.

Example

The following example adds a forwarding server group that uses weighted load balancing to load balance traffic to three forwarding servers. Server weights are configured to send most traffic to `server2`. The group has `affinity` enabled and blocks traffic if all of the forward servers are down.

To configure load balancing in the CLI:

```
config web-proxy forward-server
   edit server_1
      set ip 172.20.120.12
      set port 8080
   next
   edit server_2
      set ip 172.20.120.13
      set port 8000
   next
   edit server_3
      set ip 172.20.120.14
      set port 8090
   next
   end
config web-proxy forward-server-group
   edit New-fwd-group
      set affinity enable
      set ldb-method weighted
      set group-down-option block
         config server-list
            edit server_1
               set weight 10
            next
            edit server_2
               set weight 40
            next
            edit server_3
               set weight 10
            next
   end
```

Adding proxy chaining to an explicit web proxy policy

You can enable proxy chaining for web proxy sessions by adding a web proxy forwarding server or server group to an explicit web proxy policy. In a policy you can select one web proxy forwarding server or server group. All explicit web

proxy traffic accepted by this security policy is forwarded to the specified web proxy forwarding server or server group.

To add an explicit web proxy forwarding server in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the policy settings:

Proxy Type	Explicit Web
Outgoing Interface	wan1
Source	Internal_subnet
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	webproxy
Action	Accept

3. Enable *Web Proxy Forwarding Server* and select the forwarding server, (for example,*fwd-srv*).
4. Click *OK*.

Example

The following example adds a security policy that allows all users on the `10.31.101.0` subnet to use the explicit web proxy for connections through the `wan1` interface to the Internet. The policy forwards web proxy sessions to a remote forwarding server named *fwd-srv*.

To add an explicit web proxy forwarding server in the CLI:

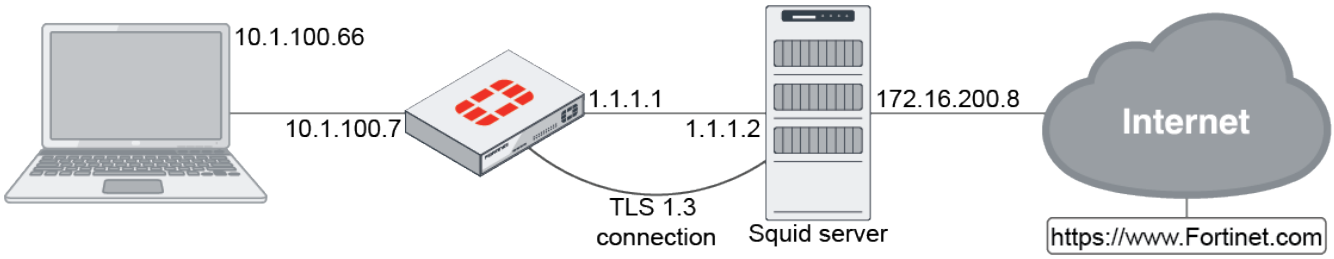
```
config firewall proxy-policy
   edit 0
      set proxy explicit-web
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "Internal_subnet"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set service "webproxy"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set webproxy-forward-server "fwd-srv"
   end
```

Using TLS 1.3 with web proxy forward servers

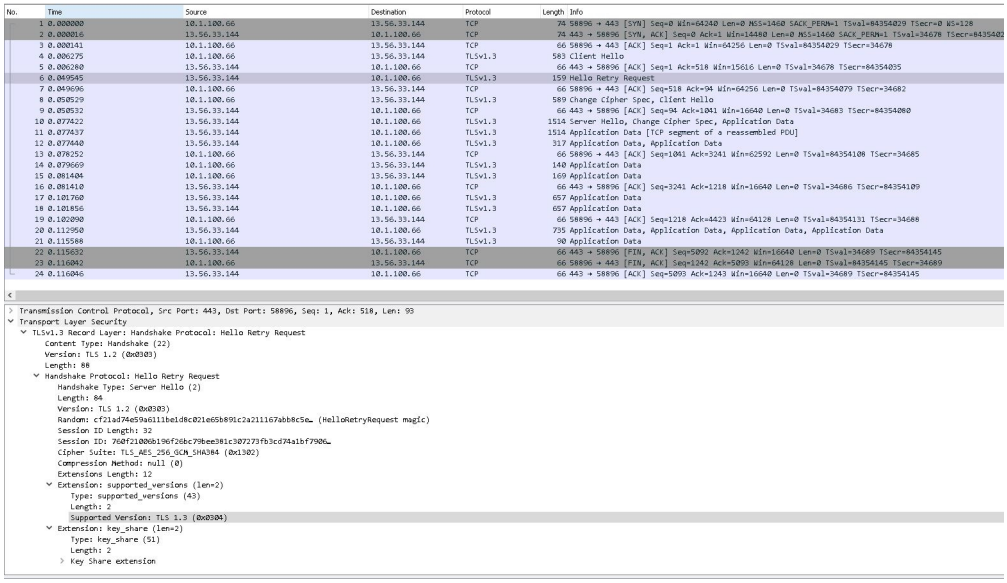
A FortiGate can handle TLS 1.3 traffic in both deep and certificate inspection modes.

Example

The following example demonstrates that the Squid server and the FortiGate can handle TLS 1.3 traffic.



The following output from the Squid server demonstrates that the FortiGate supports TLS 1.3 traffic and forwards the hello retry request back to the client PC. The client PC then sends the client hello again, and the connection is successfully established.



Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy

Agentless Windows NT LAN Manager (NTLM) authentication includes support for the following items:

- Multiple servers
- Individual users

You can use multiple domain controller servers for the agentless NTLM. They can be used for load balancing and high service stability.

You can also use user-based matching in groups for Kerberos and agentless NTLM. In these scenarios, FortiOS matches the user's group information from an LDAP server.

To support multiple domain controllers for agentless NTLM using the CLI:

1. Configure an LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap-kerberos"
      set server "172.18.62.177"
      set cnid "cn"
      set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
```

```
      set type regular
      set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
      set password *********
   next
end
```

2. Configure multiple domain controllers:

```
config user domain-controller
   edit "dc1"
      set ip-address 172.18.62.177
      config extra-server
         edit 1
            set ip-address 172.18.62.220
         next
      end
      set ldap-server "ldap-kerberos"
   next
end
```

3. Create an authentication scheme and rule:

```
config authentication scheme
   edit "au-ntlm"
      set method ntlm
      set domain-controller "dc1"
   next
end
config authentication rule
   edit "ru-ntlm"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set ip-based disable
      set active-auth-method "au-ntlm"
   next
end
```

4. In the proxy policy, append the user group for authorization:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
   edit 1
      set proxy explicit-web
      set dstintf "port1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set service "web"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set groups "ldap-group"
      set utm-status enable
      set av-profile "av"
      set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
   next
end
```

   This configuration uses a round-robin method. When the first user logs in, the FortiGate sends the authentication request to the first domain controller. Later when another user logs in, the FortiGate sends the authentication request to another domain controller.

5. Verify the behavior after the user successfully logs in:

```
# diagnose wad user list
ID: 1825, IP: 10.1.100.71, VDOM: vdom1
   user name : test1
   duration : 497
```

```
auth_type : Session
auth_method : NTLM
pol_id : 1 g_id : 5
user_based : 0 e
xpire : 103
LAN:
   bytes_in=2167 bytes_out=7657
WAN:
   bytes_in=3718 bytes_out=270
```

To support individual users for agentless NTLM using the CLI:

1. Configure an LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap-kerberos"
      set server "172.18.62.177"
      set cnid "cn"
      set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
      set type regular
      set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
      set password *********
   next
end
```

2. Configure the user group and allow user-based matching:

```
config user group
   edit "ldap-group"
      set member "ldap" "ldap-kerberos"
      config match
         edit 1
            set server-name "ldap-kerberos"
            set group-name "test1"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

3. Create an authentication scheme and rule:

```
config authentication scheme
   edit "au-ntlm"
      set method ntlm
      set domain-controller "dc1"
   next
end
config authentication rule
   edit "ru-ntlm"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set ip-based disable
      set active-auth-method "au-ntlm"
   next
end
```

4. In the proxy policy, append the user group for authorization:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
   edit 1
      set proxy explicit-web
      set dstintf "port1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
```

```
      set service "web"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set groups "ldap-group"
      set utm-status enable
      set av-profile "av"
      set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
   next
end
```

This implementation lets you configure a single user instead of a whole group. The FortiGate will now allow the user named `test1`.

To verify the configuration using the CLI:

```
diagnose wad user list
   ID: 1827, IP: 10.1.15.25, VDOM: vdom1
   user name : test1
   duration : 161
   auth_type : Session
   auth_method : NTLM
   pol_id : 1
   g_id : 5
   user_based : 0
   expire : 439
   LAN:
      bytes_in=1309 bytes_out=4410
   WAN:
      bytes_in=2145 bytes_out=544
```

Multiple LDAP servers in Kerberos keytabs and agentless NTLM domain controllers

Multiple LDAP servers can be configured in Kerberos keytabs and agentless NTLM domain controllers for multi-forest deployments.

To use multiple LDAP servers in Kerberos keytabs and agentless NTLM domain controllers:

1. Add multiple LDAP servers:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-kerberos"
        set server "172.16.200.98"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
        set password xxxxxxxxx
    next
    edit "ldap-two"
        set server "172.16.106.128"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "OU=Testing,DC=ad864r2,DC=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Testadmin,cn=users,dc=AD864R2,dc=com"
        set password xxxxxxxxx
```

```
        next
    end
```

2. Configure a Kerberos keytab entry that uses both LDAP servers:

```
config user krb-keytab
    edit "http_service"
        set pac-data disable
        set principal "HTTP/FGT.FORTINETQA.LOCAL@FORTINETQA.LOCAL"
        set ldap-server "ldap-kerberos" "ldap-two"
        set keytab xxxxxxxxx
    next
end
```

3. Configure a domain controller that uses both LDAP servers:

```
config user domain-controller
    edit "dc1"
        set ip-address 172.16.200.98
        set ldap-server "ldap-two" "ldap-kerberos"
    next
end
```

Learn client IP addresses

Learning the actual client IP addresses is imperative for authorization. This function identifies the real client IP address when there is a NATing device between the FortiGate and the client.

```
config web-proxy global
    set learn-client-ip {enable | disable}
    set learn-client-ip-from-header {true-client-ip | x-real-ip | x-forwarded-for}
    set learn-client-ip-srcaddr <address> ... <address>
end
```

`learn-client-ip {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable learning the client's IP address from headers.
`learn-client-ip-from-header {true-client-ip | x-real-ip | x-forwarded-for}`	Learn client IP addresses from the specified headers.
`learn-client-ip-srcaddr <address> ... <address>`	The source address names.

Example

In this example, the real client IP address is used to match a policy for FSSO authentication.

To enable learning the client IP address:

```
config web-proxy global
    set proxy-fqdn "default.fqdn"
    set webproxy-profile "default"
    set learn-client-ip enable
```

```
        set learn-client-ip-from-header x-forwarded-for
    set learn-client-ip-srcaddr "all"
end
```

To configure the proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "mgmt1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "w"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set groups "fsso1"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set dlp-sensor "default"
        set profile-protocol-options "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
    next
end
```

To configure the authentication scheme and rule:

```
config authentication scheme
    edit "scheme1"
        set method fsso
    next
end
config authentication rule
    edit "rule1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set sso-auth-method "scheme1"
    next
end
```

DHCP servers and relays

A DHCP server dynamically assigns IP addresses to hosts on the network connected to the interface. The host computers must be configured to obtain their IP addresses using DHCP. You can configure one or more DHCP servers on any FortiGate interface.

A DHCP server can be in server or relay mode. In server mode, you can define one or more address ranges it assigns addresses from, and options such as the default gateway, DNS server, lease time, and other advanced options. In relay mode, the interface forwards DHCP requests from DHCP clients to an external DHCP server and returns the responses to the DHCP clients. The DHCP server must have appropriate routing so that its response packets to the DHCP clients arrive at the unit.

If an interface is connected to multiple networks through routers, you can add a DHCP server for each network. The IP range of each DHCP server must match the network address range. The routers must be configured for DHCP relay.



DHCP server options are not available in transparent mode.

For more information about options, see:

- DHCP options on page 529
- IP address assignment with relay agent information option on page 530
- DHCP client options on page 532

Configure DHCP on the FortiGate

A DHCP server can be configured on an interface in the GUI from *Network* > *Interfaces*.

To add a DHCP server on the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit an interface.
3. Enable the *DHCP Server* option and configure the settings.
4. Click *OK*.

Field	Description
Address Range	By default, the FortiGate unit assigns an address range based on the address of the interface for the complete scope of the address. For example, if the interface address is 172.20.120.230, the default range created is 172.20.120.231 to 172.20.120.254. Select the range and select *Edit* to adjust the range or select *Create New* to add a different range.
Netmask	Enter the netmask of the addresses that the DHCP server assigns.
Default Gateway	Select this to use either *Same as Interface IP* or select *Specify* and enter the IP address of the default gateway that the DHCP server assigns to DHCP clients.
DNS Server	Select this to use *Same as system DNS*, *Same as Interface IP* or select *Specify* and enter the IP address of the DNS server.
Mode	Select the type of DHCP server FortiGate will be. By default, it is a *Server*. Select *Relay* if needed. When *Relay* is selected, the above configuration is replaced by a field to enter the *DHCP Server IP* address.
DNS Server IP	This appears only when *Mode* is *Relay*. Enter the IP address of the DHCP server where FortiGate obtains the requested IP address.
Type	Select this to use the DHCP in *Regular* or *IPsec* mode.
Additional DHCP Options	Use this to create new DHCP options.
Add from DHCP Client List	If the client is currently connected and using an IP address from the DHCP server, you can select this option to select the client from the list.

To add a DHCP server on the CLI:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 192.168.1.2
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port1"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 192.168.1.1
                set end-ip 192.168.1.1
            next
            edit 2
                set start-ip 192.168.1.3
                set end-ip 192.168.1.254
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
        set tftp-server "172.16.1.2"
    next
end
```

Default DHCP server for low-end FortiGates

On low-end FortiGate units, a DHCP server is configured on the internal interface, by default, with the following values:

Field	Value
Address Range	192.168.1.110 to 192.168.1.210
Netmask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.168.1.99
Lease Time	7 days
DNS Server 1	192.168.1.99

These settings are appropriate for the default internal interface IP address of 192.168.1.99. If you change this address to a different network, you need to change the DHCP server settings to match.

Configuring the lease time

The lease time determines the length of time an IP address remains assigned to a client. Once the lease expires, the address is released for allocation to the next client that requests an IP address.

To configure the lease time:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit <server_entry_number>
        set interface <interface>
        set netmask <netmask>
```

```
        set lease-time <seconds>
    next
end
```

The default lease time is seven days. To have an unlimited lease time, set the value to zero.

The lease time can also be configured in the GUI in the *Lease time* field within the *DHCP server* section of the *Edit Interface* dialog.

Configuring TFTP servers

You can configure multiple TFTP servers for a DHCP server. For example, you may want to configure a main TFTP server and a backup TFTP server.

The `tftp-server` command allows you to configure the TFTP servers, using either their hostnames or IP addresses. Separate multiple server entries with spaces.

To configure TFTP servers:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit <server ID>
        set interface <interface>
        set netmask <netmask>
        set tftp-server <hostname/IP address> <hostname/IP address>
    next
end
```

TFTP servers can also be configured in the GUI in the *TFTP server(s)* field within the *DHCP server* > *Advanced* section of the *Edit Interface* dialog.

Configuring the DHCP renew time

You can set a minimum DHCP renew time for an interface acting as a DHCP client. This option is available only when mode is set to DCHP.

To set the DHCP renew time:

```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        set vdom <vdom>
        set interface <interface>
        set mode dhcp
        set dhcp-renew-time <seconds>
    next
end
```

The possible values for `dhcp-renew-time` are 300 to 605800 seconds (five minutes to seven days). To use the renew time that the server provides, set this entry to 0.

FortiGate DHCP works with DDNS to allow FQDN connectivity to leased IP addresses

As clients are assigned IP addresses, they send back information that would be found in an A record to the FortiGate DHCP server, which can take this information and pass it back to a corporate DNS server so that even devices using leased IP address can be reached using FQDNs. You can configure the settings for this feature using the `ddns-update` CLI command and some other DDNS related options. Please refer to *DDNS update override* in the DDNS on page 463 topic for further details.

Breaking an address lease

If you need to end an IP address lease, you can break the lease. This is useful if you have limited addresses and longer lease times when some leases are no longer necessary, for example, with corporate visitors.

To break a lease:

```
# execute dhcp lease-clear <ip_address>
```

To break a lease for all IP addresses for the DHCP servers in the current VDOM:

```
# execute dhcp lease-clear all
```

Excluding addresses in DHCP

If you have a large address range for the DHCP server, you can block a range of addresses that will not be included in the available addresses for the connecting users using the `config exclude-range` subcommand.

To exclude addresses in DHCP:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit <server_entry_number>
        config exclude-range
            edit <sequence_number>
                set start-ip <address>
                set end-ip <address>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Viewing information about DHCP server connections

To view information about DHCP server connections, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *DHCP* monitor widget. On this page, you can also add IP addresses to the reserved IP address list.

DHCP options

When adding a DHCP server, you can include DHCP codes and options. The DHCP options are BOOTP vendor information fields that provide additional vendor-independent configuration parameters to manage the DHCP server. For example, you might need to configure a FortiGate DHCP server that gives out a separate option as well as an IP address, such as an environment that needs to support PXE boot with Windows images.

The option numbers and codes are specific to the application. The documentation for the application indicates the values to use. The option is a value between 1 and 255.

For detailed information about DHCP options, see RFC 2132, DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions.

Option 82

The DHCP relay agent information option (option 82 in RFC 3046) helps protect the FortiGate against attacks such as spoofing (forging) of IP addresses and MAC addresses, and DHCP IP address starvation.

This option is disabled by default. However, when `dhcp-relay-service` is enabled, `dhcp-relay-agent-option` becomes enabled.

To configure the DHCP relay agent option using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set vdom root
        set dhcp-relay-service enable
        set dhcp-relay-ip <ip>
        set dhcp-relay-agent-option enable
        set vlanid <id>
    next
end
```

See IP address assignment with relay agent information option on page 530 for an example.

Option 42

This option specifies a list of the NTP servers available to the client by IP address.

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 2
        set ntp-service {local | default | specify}
        set ntp-server1 <class_ip>
        set ntp-server2 <class_ip>
        set ntp-server3 <class_ip>
    next
end
```

The NTP service options include:

- `local`: The IP address of the interface that the DHCP server is added to becomes the client's NTP server IP address.
- `default`: Clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured NTP servers.
- `specify`: Specify up to three NTP servers in the DHCP server configuration.

DHCP server option fields

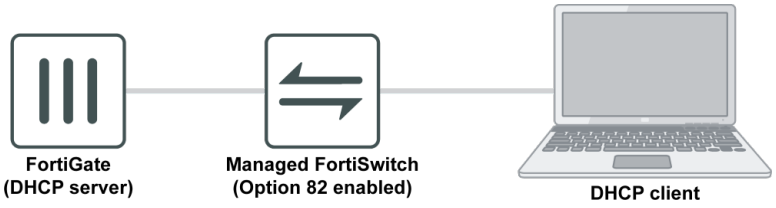
In place of specific fields, the DHCP server maintains a table for the potential options. The FortiOS DHCP server supports up to a maximum of 30 custom options. These optional fields are set in the CLI.

To get to the DHCP server:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit <integer - ID of the specific DHCP server>
    config options
        edit <integer>
            set code <option integer>
            set type {hex | string | ip | fqdn}
            set value <option content for DHCP option types hex and string>
        next
    end
end
```

IP address assignment with relay agent information option

Option 82 (DHCP relay information option) helps protect the FortiGate against attacks such as spoofing (or forging) of IP and MAC addresses, and DHCP IP address starvation.



The following CLI variables are included in the `config system dhcp server` > `config reserved-address` command:

`circuit-id-type {hex | string}`	DHCP option type; hex or string (default).
`circuit-id <value>`	Option 82 circuit ID of the client that will get the reserved IP address. Format: *vlan-mod-port* • vlan: VLAN ID (2 bytes) • mod: 1 = snoop, 0 = relay (1 byte) • port: port number (1 byte)
`remote-id-type {hex | string}`	DHCP option type; hex or string (default).
`remote-id <value>`	Option 82 remote ID of the client that will get the reserved IP address. Format: the MAC address of the client.
`type {mac | option82}`	The DHCP reserved address type; mac (default) or option82.

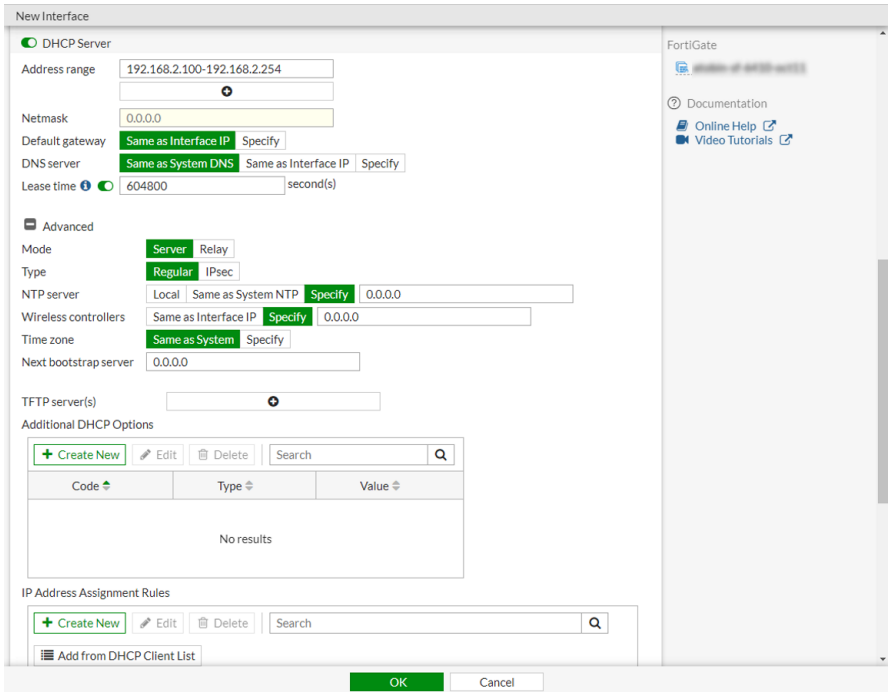
To create an IP address assignment rule using option 82 in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit an existing port, or create a new one.



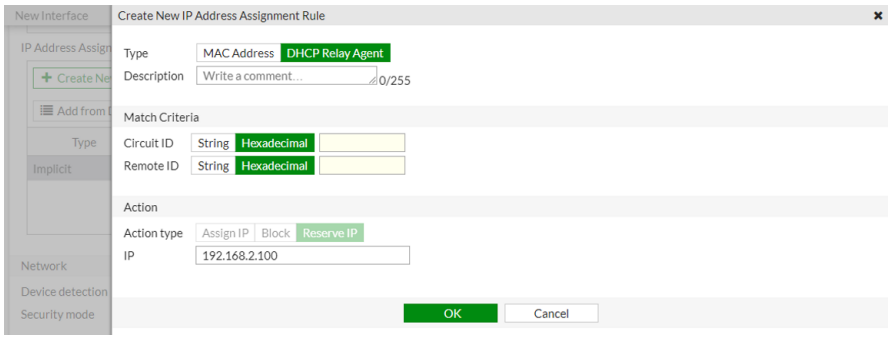
The port *Role* must be *LAN* or *Undefined*.

3. Enable *DHCP Server*.
4. Configure the address ranges and other settings as needed.
5. Click + to expand the *Advanced* options.



6. In the *IP Address Assignment Rules* table, click *Create New*.
   The *Create New IP Address Assignment Rule* pane opens.
7. Configure the new rule:
   a. For the *Type*, select *DHCP Relay Agent*.
   b. Enter the *Circuit ID* and *Remote ID*.
   c. Enter the *IP* address that will be reserved.

8. Click *OK*.



To create an IP address assignment rule using option 82 with the CLI:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port4"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 192.168.2.100
                set end-ip 192.168.2.254
            next
        end
        config reserved-address
            edit 1
                set type option82
                set ip 192.168.2.100
                set circuit-id-type hex
                set circuit-id "00010102"
                set remote-id-type hex
                set remote-id "704ca5e477d6"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

DHCP client options

When an interface is in DHCP addressing mode, DHCP client options can be configured in the CLI. For example, a vendor class identifier (usually DCHP client option 60) can be specified so that a request can be matched by a specific DHCP offer.

Multiple options can be configured, but any options not recognized by the DHCP server are discarded.

To configure client option 60 - vendor class identifier:

```
config system interface
    edit port1
        set vdom vdom1
        set mode dhcp
        config client-options
            edit 1
```

```
                set code 60
                set type hex
                set value aabbccdd
            next
        end
        set type physical
        set snmp-index 4
    next
end
```

Variable	Description
`code <integer>`	DHCP client option code (0 - 255, default = 0). See Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) Parameters for a list of possible options.
`type {hex | string | ip | fqdn}`	DHCP client option type (default = hex).
`value <string>`	DHCP client option value.
`ip <ip>`	DHCP client option IP address. This option is only available when `type` is `ip`.

Static routing

Static routing is one of the foundations of firewall configuration. It is a form of routing in which a device uses manually-configured routes. In the most basic setup, a firewall will have a default route to its gateway to provide network access. In a more complex setup with dynamic routing, ADVPN, or SD-WAN involved, you would still likely find static routes being deployed.

This section explores concepts in using static routing and provides examples in common use cases:

- Routing concepts on page 534
- Policy routes on page 546
- Equal cost multi-path on page 548
- Dual internet connections on page 552

The following topics include additional information about static routes:

- Deploying the Security Fabric on page 194
- Security Fabric over IPsec VPN on page 213
- Viewing and controlling network risks via topology view on page 192
- Adding a static route on page 667
- NAT mode on page 913
- NAT and transparent mode on page 922
- IPsec VPN in an HA environment on page 1629
- IPsec VPN to Azure with virtual network gateway on page 1551
- FortiGate as dialup client on page 1573
- ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol on page 1693
- ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol on page 1702
- ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol on page 1711

- Basic site-to-site VPN with pre-shared key on page 1514
- Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1519
- Site-to-site VPN with overlapping subnets on page 1525
- Tunneled Internet browsing on page 1604
- FortiGate multiple connector support on page 2119
- IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1635
- Use MAC addresses in SD-WAN rules and policy routes on page 714
- Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules on page 750

Routing concepts

This section contains the following topics:

- Default route on page 534
- Adding or editing a static route on page 534
- Configuring FQDNs as a destination address in static routes on page 535
- Routing table on page 536
- Viewing the routing database on page 539
- Kernel routing table on page 539
- Route cache on page 541
- Route look-up on page 541
- Blackhole routes on page 542
- Reverse path look-up on page 542
- Asymmetric routing on page 543
- Routing changes on page 545

Default route

The default route has a destination of `0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0`, representing the least specific route in the routing table. It is a catch all route in the routing table when traffic cannot match a more specific route. Typically this is configured with a static route with an administrative distance of `10`. In most instances, you will configure the next hop interface and the gateway address pointing to your next hop. If your FortiGate is sitting at the edge of the network, your next hop will be your ISP gateway. This provides internet access for your network.

Sometimes the default route is configured through DHCP. On some desktop models, the WAN interface is preconfigured in DHCP mode. Once the WAN interface is plugged into the network modem, it will receive an IP address, default gateway, and DNS server. FortiGate will add this default route to the routing table with a distance of `5`, by default. This will take precedence over any default static route with a distance of `10`. Therefore, take caution when you are configuring an interface in DHCP mode, where *Retrieve default gateway from server* is enabled. You may disable it and/or change the distance from the *Network* > *Interfaces* page when you edit an interface.

Adding or editing a static route

To add a static route using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the following information:

Dynamic Gateway	When enabled, a selected DHCP/PPPoE interface will automatically retrieve its dynamic gateway.
Destination	• Subnet Enter the destination IP address and netmask. A value of `0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0` creates a default route. • Named Address Select an address or address group object. Only addresses with static route configuration enabled will appear on the list. This means a geography type address cannot be used. • Internet Service Select an Internet Service. These are known IP addresses of popular services across the Internet.
Interface	Select the name of the interface that the static route will connect through.
Gateway Address	Enter the gateway IP address. When selecting an IPsec VPN interface or SD-WAN creating a blackhole route, the gateway cannot be specified.
Administrative Distance	Enter the distance value, which will affect which routes are selected first by different protocols for route management or load balancing. The default is 10.
Advanced Options	Optionally, expand *Advanced Options* and enter a *Priority*. When two routes have an equal distance, the route with a lower priority number will take precedence. The default is 0.

3. Click *OK*.

Configuring FQDNs as a destination address in static routes

You can configure FQDN firewall addresses as destination addresses in a static route, using either the GUI or the CLI.

In the GUI, to add an FQDN firewall address to a static route in the firewall address configuration, enable the *Static Route Configuration* option. Then, when you configure the static route, set *Destination* to *Named Address*.

To configure an FQDN as a destination address in a static route using the CLI:

```
config firewall address
    edit 'Fortinet-Documentation-Website'
        set type fqdn
        set fqdn docs.fortinet.com
        set allow-routing enable
    next
end

config router static
    edit 0
        set dstaddr Fortinet-Documentation-Website
        ...
    next
end
```

Routing table

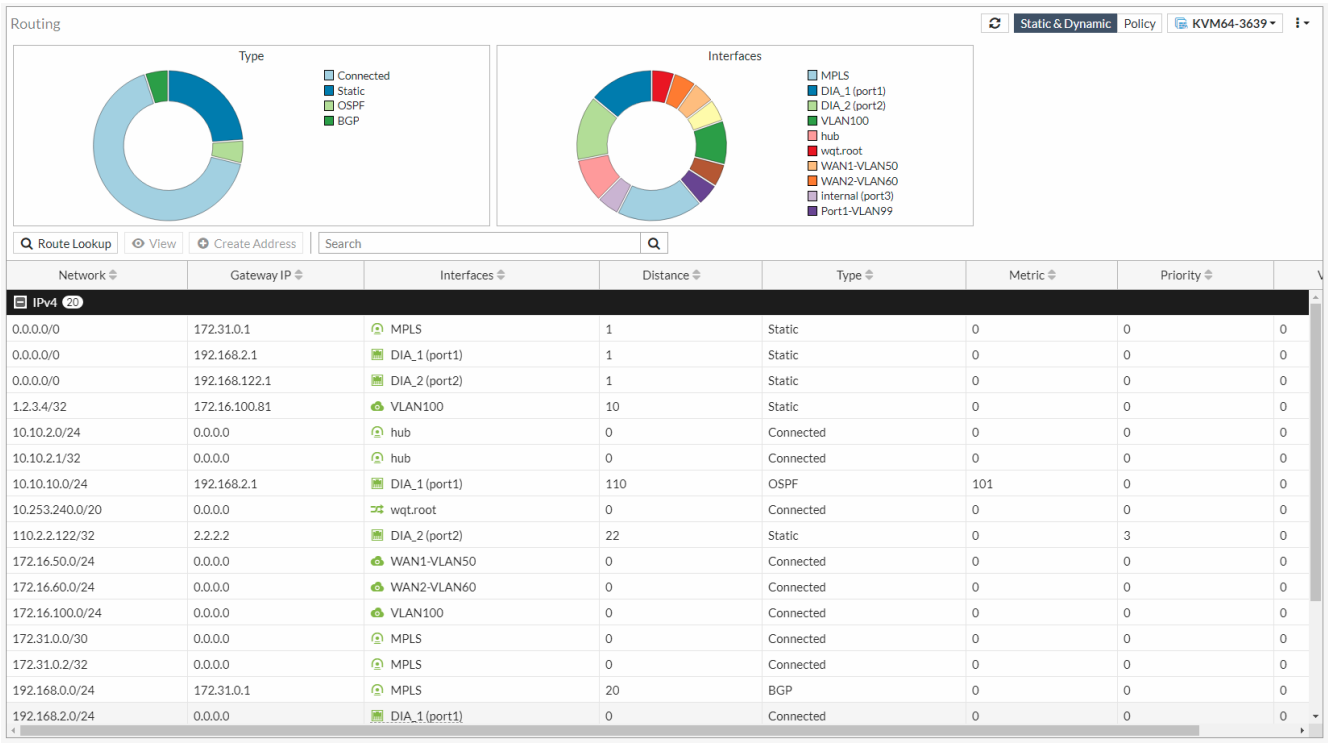
A routing table consists of only the best routes learned from the different routing protocols. The most specific route always takes precedence. If there is a tie, then the route with a lower administrative distance will be injected into the routing table. If administrative distances are also equal, then all the routes are injected into the routing table, and *Cost* and *Priority* become the deciding factors on which a route is preferred. If these are also equal, then FortiGate will use Equal cost multi-path on page 548 to distribute traffic between these routes.

Viewing the routing table in the GUI

You can view routing tables in the FortiGate GUI under *Dashboard* > *Network* > *Static & Dynamic Routing* by default. Expand the widget to see the full page. Additionally, if you want to convert the widget into a dashboard, click on the *Save as Monitor* icon on the top right of the page.

You can also monitor policy routes by toggling from *Static & Dynamic* to *Policy* on the top right corner of the page. The active policy routes include policy routes that you created, SD-WAN rules, and Internet Service static routes. It also supports downstream devices in the Security Fabric.

The following figure show an example of the static and dynamic routes in the Routing Monitor:



To view more columns, right-click on the column header to select the columns to be displayed:

Field	Description
IP Version	Shows whether the route is IPv4 or IPv6.
Network	The IP addresses and network masks of destination networks that the FortiGate can reach.
Gateway IP	The IP addresses of gateways to the destination networks.

Field	Description
Interfaces	The interface through which packets are forwarded to the gateway of the destination network.
Distance	The administrative distance associated with the route. A lower value means the route is preferable compared to other routes to the same destination.
Type	The type values assigned to FortiGate routes (Static, Connected, RIP, OSPF, or BGP): • *Connected*: All routes associated with direct connections to FortiGate interfaces • *Static*: The static routes that have been added to the routing table manually • *RIP*: All routes learned through RIP • *RIPNG*: All routes learned through RIP version 6 (which enables the sharing of routes through IPv6 networks) • *BGP*: All routes learned through BGP • *OSPF*: All routes learned through OSPF • *OSPF6*: All routes learned through OSPF version 6 (which enables the sharing of routes through IPv6 networks) • *IS-IS*: All routes learned through IS-IS • *HA*: RIP, OSPF, and BGP routes synchronized between the primary unit and the subordinate units of a high availability (HA) cluster. HA routes are maintained on subordinate units and are visible only if you're viewing the router monitor from a virtual domain that is configured as a subordinate virtual domain in a virtual cluster.
Metric	The metric associated with the route type. The metric of a route influences how the FortiGate dynamically adds it to the routing table. The following are types of metrics and the protocols they are applied to: • *Hop count*: Routes learned through RIP • *Relative cost*: Routes learned through OSPF • *Multi-Exit Discriminator (MED)*: Routes learned through BGP. By default, the MED value associated with a BGP route is zero. However, the MED value can be modified dynamically. If the value was changed from the default, the Metric column displays a non-zero value.
Priority	In static routes, priorities are 0 by default. When two routes have an equal distance, the route with the lower priority number will take precedence.
VRF	Virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) allows multiple routing table instances to co-exist. VRF can be assigned to an Interface. Packets are only forwarded between interfaces with the same VRF.
Up Since	The total accumulated amount of time that a route learned through RIP, OSPF, or BGP has been reachable.

Viewing the routing table in the CLI

Viewing the routing table using the CLI displays the same routes as you would see in the GUI.

If VDOMs are enabled on the FortiGate, all routing-related CLI commands must be run within a VDOM and not in the global context.

To view the routing table using the CLI:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area

N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2

E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
 i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
 * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 172.31.0.1, MPLS [1/0]via 192.168.2.1, port1 [1/0] via
192.168.122.1, port2
S       1.2.3.4/32 [10/0] via 172.16.100.81, VLAN100
C       10.10.2.0/24 is directly connected, hub
C       10.10.2.1/32 is directly connected, hub
O       10.10.10.0/24 [110/101] via 192.168.2.1, port1, 01:54:18
C       10.253.240.0/20 is directly connected, wqt.root
S       110.2.2.122/32 [22/0] via 2.2.2.2, port2, [3/3]
C       172.16.50.0/24 is directly connected, WAN1-VLAN50
C       172.16.60.0/24 is directly connected, WAN2-VLAN60
C       172.16.100.0/24 is directly connected, VLAN100
C       172.31.0.0/30 is directly connected, MPLS
C       172.31.0.2/32 is directly connected, MPLS
B       192.168.0.0/24 [20/0] via 172.31.0.1, MPLS, 00:31:43
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       192.168.20.0/24 is directly connected, port3
C       192.168.99.0/24 is directly connected, Port1-VLAN99
C       192.168.122.0/24 is directly connected, port2
Routing table for VRF=10
C       172.16.101.0/24 is directly connected, VLAN101
```

Examining an entry:

```
B       192.168.0.0/24 [20/0] via 172.31.0.1, MPLS, 00:31:43
```

Value	Description
`B`	BGP. The routing protocol used.
`192.168.0.0/24`	The destination of this route, including netmask.
`[20/0]`	`20` indicates an administrative distance of `20` out of a range of `0` to `255`. `0` is an additional metric associated with this route, such as in OSPF.
`172.31.0.1`	The gateway or next hop.
`MPLS`	The interface that the route uses.
`00:31:43`	The age of the route in `HH:MM:SS`.

Viewing the routing database

The routing database consists of all learned routes from all routing protocols before they are injected into the routing table. This likely lists more routes than the routing table as it consists of routes to the same destinations with different distances. Only the best routes are injected into the routing table. However, it is useful to see all learned routes for troubleshooting purposes.

To view the routing database using the CLI:

```
# get router info routing-table database
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area

N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
     E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       > - selected route, * - FIB route, p - stale info
Routing table for VRF=0
S     *> 0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 172.31.0.1, MPLS
      *>           [1/0] via 192.168.2.1, port1
      *>           [1/0] via 192.168.122.1, port2
S     *> 1.2.3.4/32 [10/0] via 172.16.100.81, VLAN100
C     *> 10.10.2.0/24 is directly connected, hub
C     *> 10.10.2.1/32 is directly connected, hub
O     *> 10.10.10.0/24 [110/101] via 192.168.2.1, port1, 02:10:17
C     *> 10.253.240.0/20 is directly connected, wqt.root
S     *> 110.2.2.122/32 [22/0] via 2.2.2.2, port2, [3/3]
C     *> 172.16.50.0/24 is directly connected, WAN1-VLAN50
C     *> 172.16.60.0/24 is directly connected, WAN2-VLAN60
C     *> 172.16.100.0/24 is directly connected, VLAN100
O        172.31.0.0/30 [110/201] via 192.168.2.1, port1, 00:47:36
C     *> 172.31.0.0/30 is directly connected, MPLS
```

Selected routes are marked by the > symbol. In the above example, the OSPF route to destination `172.31.0.0/30` is not selected.

Kernel routing table

The kernel routing table makes up the actual Forwarding Information Base (FIB) that used to make forwarding decisions for each packet. The routes here are often referred to as kernel routes. Parts of this table are derived from the routing table that is generated by the routing daemon.

To view the kernel routing table using the CLI:

```
# get router info kernel
tab=254 vf=0 scope=0 type=1 proto=11 prio=0 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0 pref=0.0.0.0
        gwy=172.31.0.1 flag=04 hops=0 oif=31(MPLS)
        gwy=192.168.2.1 flag=04 hops=0 oif=3(port1)
        gwy=192.168.122.1 flag=04 hops=0 oif=4(port2)
tab=254 vf=0 scope=0 type=1 proto=17 prio=0 192.168.122.98/255.255.255.255/0->1.1.1.1/32
pref=0.0.0.0 gwy=192.168.122.1 dev=4(port2)
tab=254 vf=0 scope=0 type=1 proto=17 prio=0 172.31.0.2/255.255.255.255/0->1.1.1.1/32
pref=0.0.0.0 gwy=172.31.0.1 dev=31(MPLS)
```

```
tab=254 vf=0 scope=0 type=1 proto=17 prio=0 192.168.2.5/255.255.255.255/0->1.1.1.1/32
pref=0.0.0.0 gwy=192.168.2.1 dev=3(port1)
tab=254 vf=0 scope=0 type=1 proto=11 prio=0 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0/0->1.2.3.4/32 pref=0.0.0.0
gwy=172.16.100.81 dev=20(VLAN100)
tab=254 vf=0 scope=0 type=1 proto=17 prio=0 192.168.122.98/255.255.255.255/0->8.8.8.8/32
pref=0.0.0.0 gwy=192.168.122.1 dev=4(port2)
```

The kernel routing table entries are:

Value	Description
`tab`	Table number: It will either be `254` (unicast) or `255` (multicast).
`vf`	Virtual domain of the firewall: It is the VDOM index number. If VDOMs are not enabled, this number is `0`.
`type`	Type of routing connection. Valid values include: • `0` - unspecific • `1` - unicast • `2` - local • `3` - broadcast • `4` - anycast • `5` - multicast • `6` - blackhole • `7` - unreachable • `8` - prohibited
`proto`	Type of installation that indicates where the route came from. Valid values include: • `0` - unspecific • `2` - kernel • `11` - ZebOS routing module • `14` - FortiOS • `15` - HA • `16` - authentication based • `17` - HA1
`prio`	Priority of the route. Lower priorities are preferred.
`->0.0.0.0/0 (->x.x.x.x/mask)`	The IP address and subnet mask of the destination.
`pref`	Preferred next hop along this route.
`gwy`	Gateway: The address of the gateway this route will use.
`dev`	Outgoing interface index: This number is associated with the interface for this route. If VDOMs are enabled, the VDOM is also included here. If an interface alias is set for this interface, it is also displayed here.

Route cache

The route cache contains recently used routing entries in a table. It is consulted before the routing table to speed up the route look-up process.

To view the route cache using the CLI:

```
# diagnose ip rtcache list
family=02 tab=254 vrf=0 vf=0 type=01 tos=0 flag=00000200
0.0.0.0@0-&gt;208.91.113.230@3(port1) gwy=192.168.2.1 prefsrc=192.168.2.5
ci: ref=0 lastused=1 expire=0 err=00000000 used=5 br=0 pmtu=1500

family=02 tab=254 vrf=0 vf=0 type=01 tos=0 flag=00000200
192.168.2.5@0-&gt;8.8.8.8@3(port1) gwy=192.168.2.1 prefsrc=0.0.0.0
ci: ref=0 lastused=0 expire=0 err=00000000 used=2 br=0 pmtu=1500

family=02 tab=254 vrf=0 vf=0 type=02 tos=8 flag=80000200
8.8.8.8@31(MPLS)-&gt;172.31.0.2@6(root) gwy=0.0.0.0 prefsrc=172.31.0.2
ci: ref=1 lastused=0 expire=0 err=00000000 used=0 br=0 pmtu=16436

family=02 tab=254 vrf=0 vf=0 type=02 tos=0 flag=84000200
192.168.20.6@5(port3)-&gt;192.168.20.5@6(root) gwy=0.0.0.0 prefsrc=192.168.20.5
ci: ref=2 lastused=0 expire=0 err=00000000 used=1 br=0 pmtu=16436
...
```

The size of the route cache is calculated by the kernel, but can be modified.

To modify the size of the route cache:

```
config system global
    set max-route-cache-size <number_of_cache_entries>
end
```

Route look-up

Route look-up typically occurs twice in the life of a session. Once when the first packet is sent by the originator and once more when the first reply packet is sent from the responder. When a route look-up occurs, the routing information is written to the session table and the route cache. If routing changes occur during the life of a session, additional routing look-ups may occur.

FortiGate performs a route look-up in the following order:

1. Policy-based routes: If a match occurs and the action is to forward, traffic is forwarded based on the policy route.
2. Route Cache: If there are no matches, FortiGate looks for the route in the route cache.
3. Forwarding Information Base, otherwise known as the kernel routing table.
4. If no match occurs, the packet is dropped.

Searching the routing table

When there are many routes in your routing table, you can perform a quick search by using the search bar to specify your criteria, or apply filters on the column header to display only certain routes. For example, if you want to only display static routes, you may use "static" as the search term, or filter by the *Type* field with value *Static*.

Route look-up on the other hand provides a utility for you to enter criteria such as *Destination*, *Destination Port*, *Source*, *Protocol* and/or *Source Interface*, in order to determine the route that a packet will take. Once you click *Search*, the corresponding route will be highlighted.

You can also use the CLI for a route look-up. The CLI provides a basic route look-up tool.

To look-up a route in the CLI:

```
# get router info routing-table details 4.4.4.4
Routing table for VRF=0
Routing entry for 0.0.0.0/0
      Known via "static", distance 1, metric 0, best
      * 172.31.0.1, via MPLS distance 0
      * 192.168.2.1, via port1 distance 0
      * 192.168.122.1, via port2 distance 0
```

Blackhole routes

Sometimes upon routing table changes, it is not desirable for traffic to be routed to a different gateway. For example, you may have traffic destined for a remote office routed through your IPsec VPN interface. When the VPN is down, traffic will try to re-route to another interface. However, this may not be viable and traffic will instead be routed to your default route through your WAN, which is not desirable. Traffic may also be routed to another VPN, which you do not want. For such scenarios, it is good to define a blackhole route so that traffic is dropped when your desired route is down. Upon reconnection, your desired route is once again added to the routing table and your traffic will resume routing to your desired interface. For this reason, blackhole routes are created when you configure an IPsec VPN using the IPsec wizard.

To create a blackhole route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Static Route* screen appears.
3. Specify a *Destination* type.
4. Select *Blackhole* from the *Interface* field.
5. Type the desired *Administrative Distance*.
6. Click *OK*.



Route priority for a *Blackhole* route can only be configured from the CLI.

Reverse path look-up

Whenever a packet arrives at one of the interfaces on a FortiGate, the FortiGate determines whether the packet was received on a legitimate interface by doing a reverse look-up using the source IP address in the packet header. This protects against IP spoofing attacks. If the FortiGate does not have a route to the source IP address through the interface on which the packet was received, the FortiGate drops the packet as per Reverse Path Forwarding (RPF) check. There are two modes of RPF – feasible path and strict. The default feasible RPF mode checks only for the existence of at least

one active route back to the source using the incoming interface. The strict RPF check ensures the best route back to the source is used as the incoming interface.

To configure a strict Reverse Path Forwarding check in the CLI:

```
config system settings
    set strict-src-check enable
end
```

You can remove RPF state checks without needing to enable asymmetric routing by disabling state checks for traffic received on specific interfaces. Disabling state checks makes a FortiGate less secure and should only be done with caution for troubleshooting purposes.

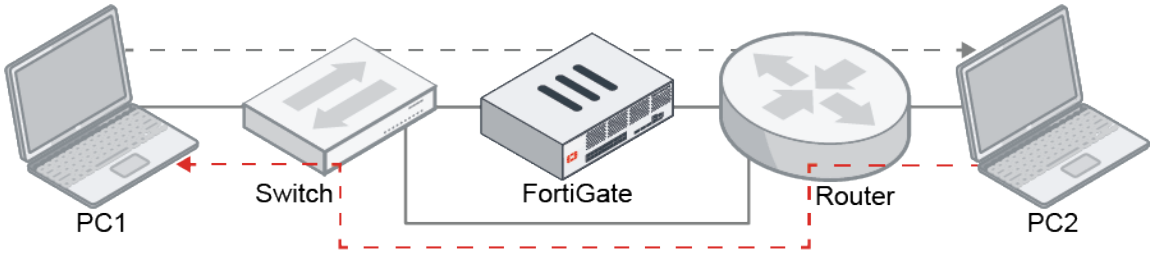
To remove Reverse Path Forwarding checks from the state evaluation process in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface_name>
        set src-check disable
    next
end
```

Asymmetric routing

Asymmetric routing occurs when request and response packets follow different paths that do not cross the same firewall.

In the following topology, traffic between PC1 and PC2 takes two different paths.



Traffic from PC1 to PC2 goes through the FortiGate, while traffic from PC2 to PC1 does not.

In TCP, if the packets in the request and response directions follow different paths, the FortiGate will block the packets, since the TCP three-way handshake is not established through the FortiGate.

Scenario 1: PC1 starts a TCP connection with PC2

1. The TCP SYN is allowed by the FortiGate.
2. The TCP SYN/ACK bypasses the FortiGate.
3. The TCP ACK is blocked by the FortiGate.
4. Subsequent TCP packets are blocked by the FortiGate.

Scenario 2: PC2 starts a TCP connection with PC1

1. The TCP SYN bypasses the FortiGate.
2. The TCP SYN/ACK is blocked by the FortiGate.
3. Subsequent TCP packets are blocked by the FortiGate.

In ICMP, consider the following scenarios.

Scenario 1: PC1 pings PC2

1. The ICMP request passes through the FortiGate. A session is created.
2. The ICMP reply bypasses the FortiGate, but reaches PC1. The ping is successful.
3. The ICMP request passes through the FortiGate, and it matches the previous session.
4. The ICMP reply bypasses the FortiGate, but it reaches PC1. The ping is successful.
5. Subsequent ICMP requests are allowed by the FortiGate.

Scenario 2: PC2 pings PC1

1. The ICMP request bypasses the FortiGate, but it reaches PC1.
2. The ICMP reply passes through the FortiGate. No session is matched, and the packet is dropped.
3. Subsequent ICMP replies are blocked by the FortiGate.

If an ICMP request does not pass through the FortiGate, but the response passes through the FortiGate, then by default it blocks the packet as invalid.

Permitting asymmetric routing

If required, the FortiGate can be configured to permit asymmetric routing.

To permit asymmetric routing:

```
config system settings
    set asymroute enable
end
```

This setting should be used only when the asymmetric routing issue cannot be resolved by ensuring both directions of traffic pass through the FortiGate.

When asymmetric routing is enabled and occurs, the FortiGate cannot inspect all traffic. Potentially malicious traffic may pass through and compromise the security of the network.

Asymmetric routing behaves as follows when it is permitted by the FortiGate:

TCP packets

Scenario 1: PC1 starts a TCP connection with PC2

1. The TCP SYN is allowed by the FortiGate. The FortiGate creates a session, checks the firewall policies, and applies the configuration from the matching policy (UTM inspection, NAT, traffic shaping, and so on).
2. The TCP SYN/ACK bypasses the FortiGate.
3. The TCP ACK is allowed by the FortiGate. The packet matches the previously created session.
4. Subsequent TCP packets are allowed by the FortiGate. The packets in the session can also be offloaded where applicable.

Scenario 2: PC2 starts a TCP connection with PC1

1. The TCP SYN bypasses the FortiGate.
2. The TCP SYN/ACK is allowed by the FortiGate. No session is matched. The packet passes to the CPU and is forwarded based on the routing table.
3. The TCP ACK bypasses the FortiGate.
4. Subsequent TCP packets are allowed by the FortiGate. The FortiGate acts as a router that only makes routing decisions. No security inspection is performed.

ICMP packets

Scenario 1: PC1 pings PC2

1. There is no difference from when asymmetric routing is disabled.

Scenario 2: PC2 pings PC1

1. The ICMP request bypasses the FortiGate, but it reaches PC1.
2. The ICMP reply passes through the FortiGate. No session is matched. The packet passes to the CPU and is forwarded based on the routing table.
3. Subsequent ICMP replies are allowed by the FortiGate. The FortiGate acts as a router that only makes routing decisions. No security inspection is performed.

UDP packets

Asymmetric routing does not affect UDP packets. UDP packets are checked by the session table regardless of asymmetric routing. A policy is required to allow UDP.

Routing changes

When routing changes occur, routing look-up may occur on an existing session depending on certain configurations.

Routing changes without SNAT

When a routing change occurs, FortiGate flushes all routing information from the session table and performs new routing look-up for all new packets on arrival by default. You can modify the default behavior using the following commands:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set preserve-session-route enable
    next
end
```

By enabling `preserve-session-route`, the FortiGate marks existing session routing information as persistent. Therefore, routing look-up only occurs on new sessions.

Routing changes with SNAT

When SNAT is enabled, the default behavior is opposite to that of when SNAT is not enabled. After a routing change occurs, sessions with SNAT keep using the same outbound interface as long as the old route is still active. This may be

the case if the priority of the static route was changed. You can modify this default behavior using the following commands:

```
config system global
    set snat-route-change enable
end
```

By enabling `snat-route-change`, sessions with SNAT will require new route look-up when a routing change occurs. This will apply a new SNAT to the session.

Policy routes

Policy routing allows you to specify an interface to route traffic. This is useful when you need to route certain types of network traffic differently than you would if you were using the routing table. You can use the incoming traffic's protocol, source or destination address, source interface, or port number to determine where to send the traffic.

When a packet arrives, the FortiGate starts at the top of the policy route list and attempts to match the packet with a policy. For a match to be found, the policy must contain enough information to route the packet. At a minimum, this requires the outgoing interface to forward the traffic, and the gateway to route the traffic to. If one or both of these are not specified in the policy route, then the FortiGate searches the routing table to find the best active route that corresponds to the policy route. If no routes are found in the routing table, then the policy route does not match the packet. The FortiGate continues down the policy route list until it reaches the end. If no matches are found, then the FortiGate does a route lookup using the routing table.



Policy routes are sometimes referred to as Policy-based routes (PBR).

Configuring a policy route

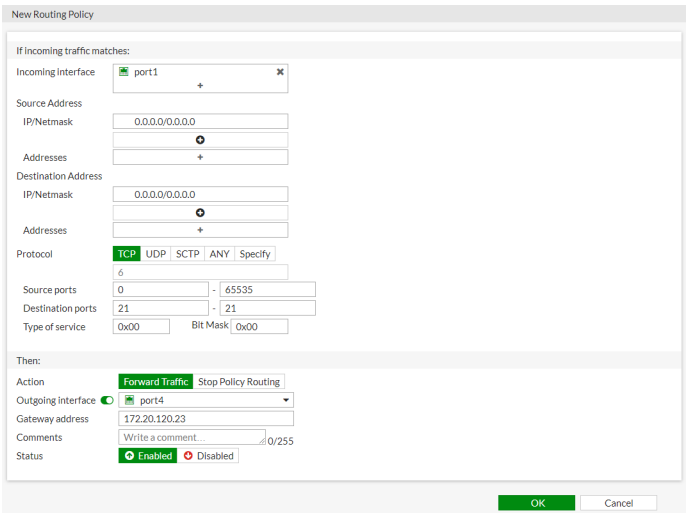
In this example, a policy route is configured to send all FTP traffic received at port1 out through port4 and to a next hop router at 172.20.120.23. To route FTP traffic, the protocol is set to TCP (6) and the destination ports are set to 21 (the FTP port).

To configure a policy route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Policy Routes*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Policy Route*.
3. Configure the following fields:

Incoming interface	port1
Source Address	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Destination Address	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Protocol	TCP
Destination ports	21 - 21

Type of service	0x00
Bit Mask	0x00
Outgoing interface	Enable and select port4
Gateway address	172.20.120.23



4. Click *OK*.

To configure a policy route in the CLI:

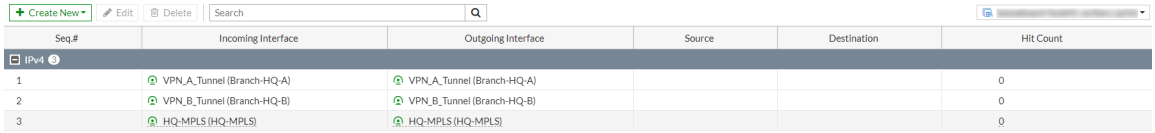
```
config router policy
    edit 1
        set input-device "port1"
        set src "0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0"
        set dst "0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0"
        set protocol 6
        set start-port 21
        set end-port 21
        set gateway 172.20.120.23
        set output-device "port4"
        set tos 0x00
        set tos-mask 0x00
    next
end
```

Moving a policy route

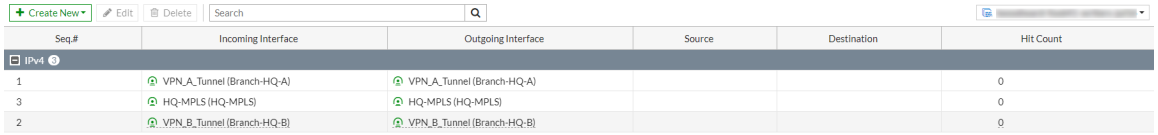
A routing policy is added to the bottom of the table when it is created. Routing policies can be moved to a different location in the table to change the order of preference. In this example, routing policy 3 will be moved before routing policy 2.

To move a policy route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Policy Routes*.
2. In the table, select the policy route.



3. Drag the selected policy route to the desired position.



To move a policy route in the CLI:

```
config router policy
    move 3 after 1
end
```

Equal cost multi-path

Equal cost multi-path (ECMP) is a mechanism that allows a FortiGate to load-balance routed traffic over multiple gateways. Just like routes in a routing table, ECMP is considered after policy routing, so any matching policy routes will take precedence over ECMP.

ECMP pre-requisites are as follows:

- Routes must have the same destination and costs. In the case of static routes, costs include distance and priority
- Routes are sourced from the same routing protocol. Supported protocols include static routing, OSPF, and BGP

ECMP and SD-WAN implicit rule

ECMP and SD-WAN implicit rule are essentially similar in the sense that an SD-WAN implicit rule is processed after SD-WAN service rules are processed. See Implicit rule on page 700 to learn more.

The following table summarizes the different load-balancing algorithms supported by each:

ECMP	SD-WAN (GUI)	SD-WAN (CLI)	Description
`source-ip-based`	Source IP	`source-ip-based`	Traffic is divided equally between the interfaces. Sessions that start at the same source IP address use the same path. This is the default selection.
`weight-based`	Sessions	`weight-based`	The workload is distributed based on the number of sessions that are connected through the interface.

ECMP	SD-WAN (GUI)	SD-WAN (CLI)	Description
			The weight that you assign to each interface is used to calculate the percentage of the total sessions allowed to connect through an interface, and the sessions are distributed to the interfaces accordingly.
`usage-based`	Spillover	`usage-based`	The interface is used until the traffic bandwidth exceeds the ingress and egress thresholds that you set for that interface. Additional traffic is then sent through the next interface member.
`source-dest-ip-based`	Source-Destination IP	`source-dest-ip-based`	Traffic is divided equally between the interfaces. Sessions that start at the same source IP address and go to the same destination IP address use the same path.
Not supported	Volume	`measured-volume-based`	This mode is supported in SD-WAN only. The workload is distributed based on the number of packets that are going through the interface.

To configure the ECMP algorithm from the CLI:

- At the VDOM-level:
```
config system settings
   set v4-ecmp-mode {source-ip-based* | weight-based | usage-based | source-dest-ip-
        based}
end
```
- If SD-WAN is enabled, the above option is not available and ECMP is configured under the SD-WAN settings:
```
config system sdwan
   set sdwan enable
   set load-balance-mode {source-ip-based* | weight-based | usage-based | source-dest-ip-
        based | measured-volume-based}
end
```

For ECMP in IPv6, the mode must also be configured under SD-WAN.

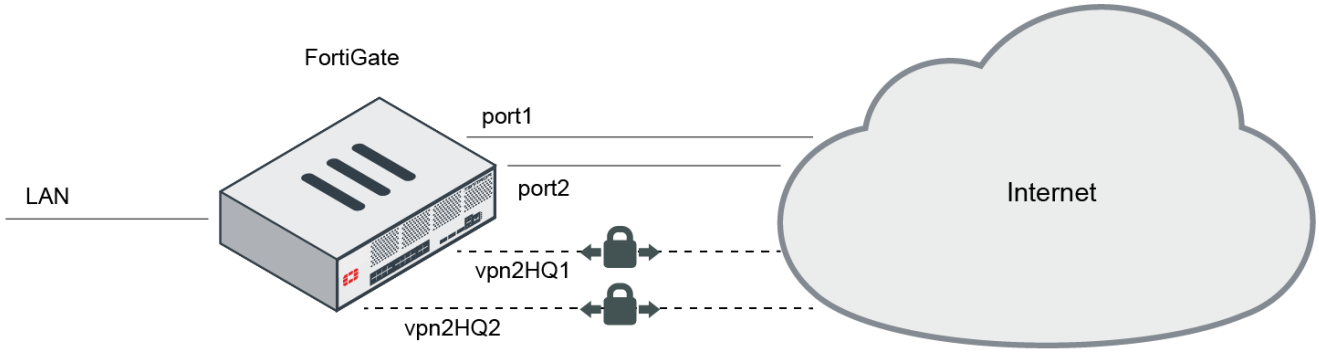
```
# diagnose sys vd list
system fib version=63
list virtual firewall info:
name=root/root index=0 enabled fib_ver=40 use=168 rt_num=46 asym_rt=0 sip_helper=0, sip_nat_
     trace=1, mc_fwd=0, mc_ttl_nc=0, tpmc_sk_pl=0
ecmp=source-ip-based, ecmp6=source-ip-based asym_rt6=0 rt6_num=55 strict_src_check=0 dns_
     log=1 ses_num=20 ses6_num=0 pkt_num=19154477
```

To change the number of paths allowed by ECMP:

```
config system settings
   set ecmp-max-paths <number of paths>
end
```

Setting `ecmp-max-paths` to the lowest value of `1` is equivalent to disabling ECMP.

ECMP configuration examples



The following examples demonstrate the behavior of ECMP in different scenarios:

- Example 1: Default ECMP on page 550
- Example 2: Same distance, different priority on page 550
- Example 3: Weight-based ECMP on page 551
- Example 4: Load-balancing BGP routes on page 551

Example 1: Default ECMP

```
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.151.1
      set device "port1"
   next
   edit 2
      set gateway 192.168.2.1
      set device "port2"
   next
end

# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
S*    0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.151.1, port1
                [10/0] via 192.168.2.1, port2
C    172.16.151.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C    192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

Result:

Both routes are added to the routing table and load-balanced based on the source IP.

Example 2: Same distance, different priority

```
config router static
```

```
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.151.1
      set priority 5
      set device "port1"
   next
   edit 2
      set gateway 192.168.2.1
      set device "port2"
   next
end

# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
S*    0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 192.168.2.1, port2
                [10/0] via 172.16.151.1, port1, [5/0]
C    172.16.151.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C    192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

Result:

Both routes are added to the routing table, but traffic is routed to `port2` which has a lower priority value with a default of `0`.

Example 3: Weight-based ECMP

```
config router static
   edit 3
      set dst 10.10.30.0 255.255.255.0
      set weight 80
      set device "vpn2HQ1"
   next
   edit 5
      set dst 10.10.30.0 255.255.255.0
      set weight 20
      set device "vpn2HQ2"
   next
end

# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
...
S    10.10.30.0/24 [10/0] is directly connected, vpn2HQ1, [0/80]
                   [10/0] is directly connected, vpn2HQ2, [0/20]
C    172.16.151.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C    192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, port3
C    192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

Result:

Both routes are added to the routing table, but 80% of the sessions to `10.10.30.0/24` are routed to `vpn2HQ1`, and 20% are routed to `vpn2HQ2`.

Example 4: Load-balancing BGP routes

```
config router bgp
```

```
    set as 64511
    set router-id 192.168.2.86
    set ebgp-multipath enable
    config neighbor
      edit "192.168.2.84"
        set remote-as 64512
      next
      edit "192.168.2.87"
        set remote-as 64512
      next
    end
end

# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
...
C    172.16.151.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C    192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, port3
C    192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
B    192.168.80.0/24 [20/0] via 192.168.2.84, port2, 00:00:33
                     [20/0] via 192.168.2.87, port2, 00:00:33
```

Result:

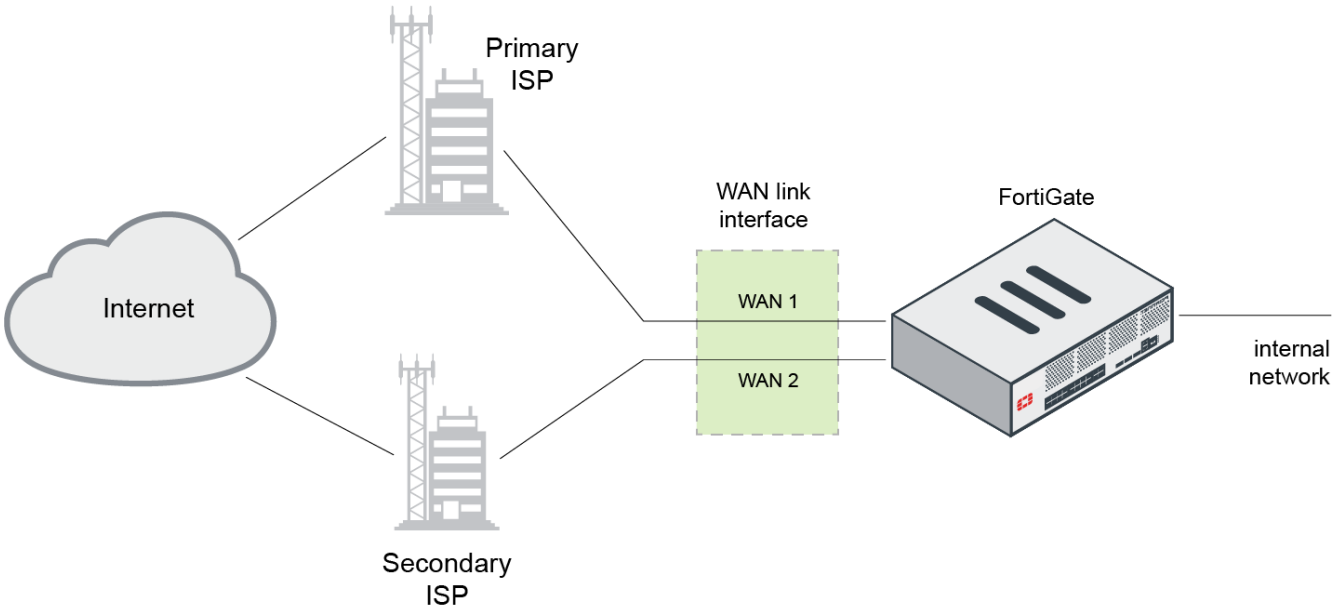
The network `192.168.80.0/24` is advertised by two BGP neighbors. Both routes are added to the routing table, and traffic is load-balanced based on Source IP.

For multiple BGP paths to be added to the routing table, you must enable `ebgp-multipath` for eBGP or `ibgp-multipath` for iBGP. These settings are disabled by default.

Dual internet connections

Dual internet connections, also referred to as dual WAN or redundant internet connections, refers to using two FortiGate interfaces to connect to the Internet. This is generally accomplished with SD-WAN, but this legacy solution provides the means to configure dual WAN without using SD-WAN. You can use dual internet connections in several ways:

- Link redundancy: If one interface goes down, the second interface automatically becomes the main connection.
- Load sharing: This ensures better throughput.
- Use a combination of link redundancy and load sharing.



This section describes the following dual internet connection scenarios:

- Scenario 1: Link redundancy and no load-sharing on page 553
- Scenario 2: Load-sharing and no link redundancy on page 555
- Scenario 3: Link redundancy and load-sharing on page 557

Scenario 1: Link redundancy and no load-sharing

Link redundancy ensures that if your Internet access is no longer available through a certain port, the FortiGate uses an alternate port to connect to the Internet.

In this scenario, two interfaces, WAN1 and WAN2, are connected to the Internet using two different ISPs. WAN1 is the primary connection. In the event of a failure of WAN1, WAN2 automatically becomes the connection to the Internet. For this configuration to function correctly, you must configure the following settings:

- Link health monitor on page 553: To determine when the primary interface (WAN1) is down and when the connection returns.
- Routing on page 554: Configure a default route for each interface.
- Security policies on page 555: Configure security policies to allow traffic through each interface to the internal network.

Link health monitor

Adding a link health monitor is required for routing failover traffic. A link health monitor confirms the device interface connectivity by probing a gateway or server at regular intervals to ensure it is online and working. When the server is not accessible, that interface is marked as down.

Set the `interval` (how often to send a ping) and `failtime` (how many lost pings are considered a failure). A smaller interval value and smaller number of lost pings results in faster detection, but creates more traffic on your network.

The link health monitor supports both IPv4 and IPv6, and various other protocols including ping, tcp-echo, udp-echo, http, and twamp.

To add a link health monitor (IPv4) using the CLI:

```
config system link-monitor
    edit <link-monitor-name>
        set addr-mode ipv4
        set srcintf <interface-name>
        set server <server-IP-address>
        set protocol {ping tcp-echo udp-echo http twamp}
        set gateway-ip <gateway-IP-address>
        set interval <seconds>
        set failtime <retry-attempts>
        set recoverytime <number-of-successful-responses>
        set status enable
    next
end
```

Option	Description
`set update-cascade-interface {enable | disable}`	This option is used in conjunction with fail-detect and fail-alert options in interface settings to cascade the link failure down to another interface. See the Bring other interfaces down when link monitor fails KB article for details.
`set update-static-route {enable | disable}`	When the link fails, all static routes associated with the interface will be removed.

Routing

You must configure a default route for each interface and indicate your preferred route as follows:

- Specify different distances for the two routes. The lower of the two distance values is declared active and placed in the routing table

  OR
- Specify the same distance for the two routes, but give a higher priority to the route you prefer by defining a lower value. Both routes will be added to the routing table, but the route with a higher priority will be chosen as the best route

In the following example, we will use the first method to configure different distances for the two routes. You might not be able to connect to the backup WAN interface because the FortiGate does not route traffic out of the backup interface. The FortiGate performs a reverse path look-up to prevent spoofed traffic. If an entry cannot be found in the routing table that sends the return traffic out through the same interface, the incoming traffic is dropped.

To configure the routing of the two interfaces using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*, and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the following information:

Destination	For an IPv4 route, enter a subnet of `0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0`. For an IPv6 route, enter a subnet of `::/0`.
Interface	Select the primary connection. For example, `wan1`.

Gateway Address	Enter the gateway address.
Administrative Distance	Leave as the default of `10`.

3. Click *OK*.
4. Repeat the above steps to set *Interface* to `wan2` and *Administrative Distance* to `20`.

To configure the routing of the two interfaces using the CLI:

```
config router {static | static6}
    edit 0
        set dst 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set device wan1
        set gateway <gateway_address>
        set distance 10
    next
    edit 0
        set dst 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set device wan2
        set gateway <gateway_address>
        set distance 20
    next
end
```

Security policies

When you create security policies, you need to configure duplicate policies to ensure that after traffic fails over WAN1, regular traffic is allowed to pass through WAN2, as it did with WAN1. This ensures that failover occurs with minimal effect to users.

Scenario 2: Load-sharing and no link redundancy

Load sharing may be accomplished in a few of the following ways of the many possible ways:

- By defining a preferred route with a lower distance, and specifying policy routes to route certain traffic to the secondary interface.
- By defining routes with same distance values but different priorities, and specifying policy routes to route certain traffic to the secondary interface.
- By defining routes with same distance values and priorities, and use equal-cost multi-path (ECMP) routing to equally distribute traffic between the WAN interfaces.

In our example, we will use the first option for our configuration. In this scenario, because link redundancy is not required, you do not have to configure a link monitor.



Traffic behaviour without a link monitor is as follows:

- If the remote gateway is down but the primary WAN interface of a FortiGate is still up, the FortiGate will continue to route traffic to the primary WAN. This results in traffic interruptions.
- If the primary WAN interface of a FortiGate is down due to physical link issues, the FortiGate will remove routes to it and the secondary WAN routes will become active. Traffic will failover to the secondary WAN.

Routing

Configure routing as you did in Scenario 1: Link redundancy and no load-sharing on page 553 above.

Policy routes

By configuring policy routes, you can redirect specific traffic to the secondary WAN interface. This works in this case because policy routes are checked before static routes. Therefore, even though the static route for the secondary WAN is not in the routing table, traffic can still be routed using the policy route.

In this example, we will create a policy route to route traffic from one address group to the secondary WAN interface.

To configure a policy route from the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Policy Routes*, and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the following information:

Incoming interface	Define the source of the traffic. For example, `internal`.
Source Address	If we prefer to route traffic only from a group of addresses, define an address or address group, and add here.
Destination Address	Because we want to route all traffic from the address group here, we do not specify a destination address.
Protocol	Specify any protocol.
Action	Forward traffic.
Outgoing interface	Select the secondary WAN as the outbound interface. For example, `wan2`.
Gateway address	Input the gateway address for your secondary WAN. Because its default route has a higher distance value and is not added to the routing table, the gateway address must be added here.

3. Click OK.

To configure a policy route from the CLI:

```
config router policy
   edit 1
      set input-device "internal"
      set srcaddr "Laptops"
      set gateway <gateway_address>
      set output-device "wan2"
   next
end
```

Security policies

Your security policies should allow all traffic from `internal` to WAN1. Because link redundancy is not needed, you do not need to duplicate all WAN1 policies to WAN2. You will only need to define policies used in your policy route.

Scenario 3: Link redundancy and load-sharing

In this scenario, both the links are available to distribute Internet traffic with the primary WAN being preferred more. Should one of the interfaces fail, the FortiGate will continue to send traffic over the other active interface. The configuration is a combination of both the link redundancy and the load-sharing scenarios. The main difference is that the configured routes have equal distance values, with the route with a higher priority being preferred more. This ensures both routes are active in the routing table, but the route with a higher priority will be the best route.

Link health monitor

Link monitor must be configured for both the primary and the secondary WAN interfaces. This ensures that if the primary or the secondary WAN fails, the corresponding route is removed from the routing table and traffic re-routed to the other WAN interface.

For configuration details, see sample configurations in Scenario 1: Link redundancy and no load-sharing on page 553.

Routing

Both WAN interfaces must have default routes with the same distance. However, preference is given to the primary WAN by giving it a higher priority.

To configure the routing of the two interfaces using the CLI:

```
config router {static | static6}
   edit 0
      set dst 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
      set device wan1
      set gateway <gateway_address>
      set distance 10
      set priority 0
   next
   edit 0
      set dst 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
      set device wan2
      set gateway <gateway_address>
      set distance 10
      set priority 10
   next
end
```

Policy routes

The policy routes configuration is very similar to that of the policy routes in Scenario 2: Load-sharing and no link redundancy on page 555, except that the gateway address should not be specified. When a policy route is matched and the gateway address is not specified, the FortiGate looks at the routing table to obtain the gateway. In case the secondary WAN fails, traffic may hit the policy route. Because there is no gateway specified and the route to the secondary WAN is removed by the link monitor, the policy route will by bypassed and traffic will continue through the primary WAN. This ensures that the policy route is not active when the link is down.

Security policies

When you create security policies, you need to configure duplicate policies to ensure that after traffic fails over WAN1, regular traffic is allowed to pass through WAN2, as it was with WAN1. This ensures that failover occurs with minimal effect to users.

Dynamic routing

Dynamic routing protocols attempt to build a map of the network topology to identify the best routes to reach different destinations. Instead of manually defining static routes, which is not scalable, dynamic routing typically involves defining neighbors and peer routers that share their network topology and routing updates with each other. Protocols like distance vector, link state, and path vector are used by popular routing protocols. FortiGate supports RIP, OSPF, BGP, and IS-IS, which are interoperable with other vendors. When different dynamic routing protocols are used, the administrative distance of each protocol helps the FortiGate decide which route to pick.

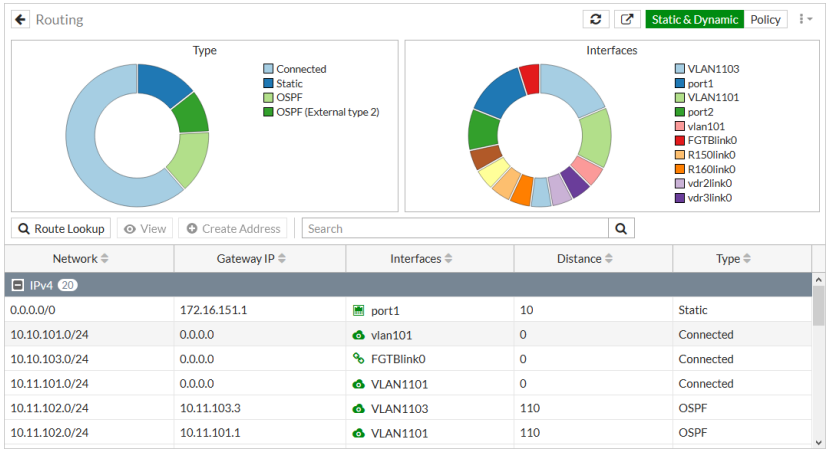


Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *Advanced Routing* to configure dynamic routing options in the GUI. See Feature visibility on page 1049 for more information.

This section includes:

- RIP on page 559
- OSPF on page 576
- BGP on page 587
- BFD on page 604

To view the routing table and perform route look-ups in the GUI, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *Routing* widget.



To view the routing table from the CLI:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
```

```
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
S*   0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 192.168.0.1, wan1
C    10.10.10.0/24 is directly connected, internal
C    169.254.2.1/32 is directly connected, Dialup-test
C    172.31.0.0/30 is directly connected, toKVM-MPLS
C    172.31.0.1/32 is directly connected, toKVM-MPLS
C    192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
O    192.168.2.0/24 [110/101] via 10.10.10.11, internal, 00:00:26
S    192.168.20.0/24 [10/0] via 172.31.0.2, toKVM-MPLS
       [10/0] via 10.10.10.11, internal
```

RIP

Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is a distance-vector routing protocol that is intended for small and relatively homogeneous networks. It works well when there are minimal redundant paths and limited hop counts. FortiGate supports RIP version 1 (RFC 1058), RIP version 2 (RFC 2453), and RIPng (RFC 2080).

Basic configuration

To configure the FortiGate to participate in RIP using the most basic configurations in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. Set the *Version*.
3. Add the networks that the FortiGate will advertise in and that will participate in RIP.
4. If the interface settings, such as passive interface, authentication, or enabling send/receive updates, must be edited, add the interfaces to the *Interface* table.
5. Click *Apply*.

To configure the FortiGate to participate in RIP using the most basic configurations in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix <subnet> <netmask>
        next
    end
    config interface
        edit <interface>
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

Default route injection

Enabling *Inject default route* (`default-information-originate`) advertises a default route into the FortiGate's RIP network.

To enable/disable default route injection in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. Expand the *Advanced Options*.
3. Enable/disable *Inject Default Route*.
4. Click *OK*.

To enable/disable default route injection in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    set default-information-originate {enable | disable}
end
```

Default metric

The default metric setting sets the default metric for all redistributed routes. If the default metric is set to five, and static routes are redistributed, then static routes have a metric of five. This value can be overridden by setting a specific metric value for a protocol. For example, the static route metric can be set to two, overriding the default metric.

```
config router rip
    set default-metric 5
    config redistribute "static"
        set status enable
        set metric 2
    end
end
```

The default metric is five, but redistributed static routes have a metric of two. So, the default metric is overridden and the metric for redistributed static routes is two.

Timers

RIP uses the update, timeout, and garbage timers to regulate its performance. The default timer settings are effective in most configurations. When customizing the settings, you must ensure that the new settings are compatible with your local routers and access servers.

Go to *Network* > *RIP* and expand the *Advanced Options* to configure the timers in the GUI, or use the CLI:

```
config router rip
    set timeout-timer <seconds>
    set update-timer <seconds>
    set garbage-timer <seconds>
end
```

Update timer

The update timer sets the interval between routing updates. The default value is 30 seconds. Randomness is added to help prevent network congestion due to multiple routers trying to update their neighbors simultaneously. The update timer must be at least three times shorter than the timeout timer.

If there is significant RIP traffic on the network, you can increase the update timer to send fewer updates. You must apply the same increase to all routers on the network to avoid timeouts that degrade your network speed.

Timeout timer

The timeout timer is the maximum amount of time that a reachable route is kept in the routing table since its last update. The default value is 180 seconds. If an update for the route is received before the timeout period elapses, then the timer is reset. The timeout timer should be at least three times longer than the update timer.

If routers are not responding to updates in time, increasing the timeout timer can help. A longer timeout timer results in longer update periods, and the FortiGate could wait a considerable amount of time for all of the timers to expire on an unresponsive route.

Garbage timer

The garbage timer is the amount of time that the FortiGate advertises a route as unreachable before deleting the route from the routing table. The default value is 120 seconds.

If the timer is short, older routes are removed from the routing table more quickly, resulting in a smaller routing table. This can be useful for large networks, or if the network changes frequently.

Authentication and key chain

RIP version 1 (RIPv1) has no authentication. RIP version 2 (RIPv2) uses text passwords or authentication keys to ensure that the routing information exchanged between routers is reliable. For authentication to work, both the sending and receiving routers must be set to use authentication and must be configured with the same password or keys. An authentication key that uses authentication key chains is more secure than a text password because the intervals when the key is valid can be configured.

A key chain is a list of one or more authentication keys that each have send and receive lifetimes. Keys are used to authenticate routing packets only during the keys specified lifetimes. The FortiGate migrates from one key to the next according to the scheduled lifetimes. The sending and receiving routers should have synchronized system dates and times to ensure that both ends are using the same keys at the same times. You can overlap the key lifetimes to make sure that a key is always available, even if there is some difference in the system times.

To configure a text password in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New*, or edit an existing interface.
3. Enable *Authentication* and select *Text* or *MD5*.
4. Click *Change*, and enter the password.
5. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
6. Click *OK*.
7. Click *Apply*.

To configure a text password in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    config interface
        edit <interface>
            set auth-mode {text | md5}
            set auth-string **********
        next
    end
end
```

To configure a key chain with two sequentially valid keys and use it in a RIP interface:

```
config router key-chain
    edit rip_key
        config key
            edit 1
                set accept-lifetime 09:00:00 23 02 2020 09:00:00 17 03 2020
                set send-lifetime 09:00:00 23 02 2020 09:00:00 17 03 2020
                set key-string **********
            next
            edit 2
                set accept-lifetime 09:01:00 17 03 2020 09:00:00 1 04 2020
                set send-lifetime 09:01:00 17 03 2020 09:00:00 1 04 2020
                set key-string **********
            next
        end
    next
end
```

```
config router rip
    config interface
        edit port1
            set auth-keychain "rip_key"
        next
    end
end
```

Passive RIP interfaces

By default, an active RIP interface keeps the FortiGate routing table current by periodically asking neighbors for routes and sending out route updates. This can generate a significant amount of extra traffic in a large network.

A passive RIP interface listens to updates from other routers, but does not send out route updates. This can reduce network traffic when there are redundant routers in the network that would always send out essentially the same updates.

This example shows how to configure a passive RIPv2 interface on port1 using MD5 authentication.

To configure a passive RIP interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New*.
3. Set *Interface* to the required interface.

4. Enable *Passive*.
5. Enable *Authentication* and set it to *MD5*.
6. Click *Change* and enter a password.
7. Set *Receive Version* to *2*.
8. Click *OK*.

To configure a passive RIP interface in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    set passive-interface "port1"
    config interface
        edit "port1"
            set auth-mode md5
            set auth-string **********
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

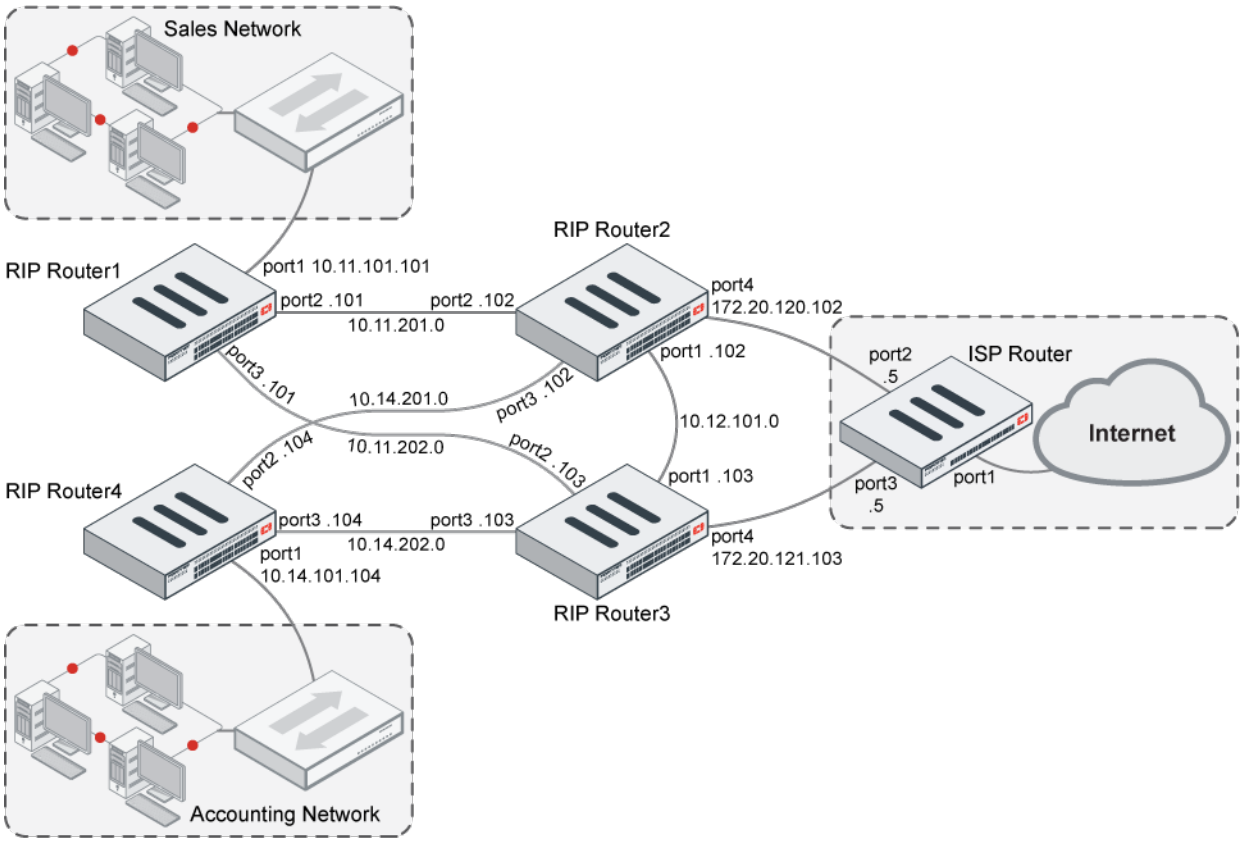
RIP and IPv6

RIP next generation (RIPng) is an extension of RIPv2 that includes support for IPv6.

Basic RIP example

In this example, a medium-sized network is configured using RIPv2.

- Two core routers, RIP Router2 and RIP Router3, connect to the ISP router for two redundant paths to the internet.
- Two other routers, RIP Router1 and RIP Router4, connect to the two core routers and to different local networks.
- The ISP router is using RIP for its connections to the core routers, and redistributes its default route to the network - that is, default route injection is enabled.
- The ISP router uses NAT and has a static route to the internet. None of the other routers use NAT or static routes.



All of the FortiGate routers are configured as shown, using netmask 255.255.255.0. Firewall policies have been configured to allow the required traffic to flow across the interfaces.

Router	Interface	Interface name	IP address
Router1	port1	LoSales	10.11.101.101
	port2	vd12link0	10.11.201.101
	port3	vd13link0	10.11.202.101
Router2	port1	vd23link0	10.12.101.102
	port2	vd12link1	10.11.201.102
	port3	vd42link1	10.14.201.102
	port4	vdr2link1	172.20.120.102
Router3	port1	vd23link1	10.12.101.103
	port2	vd13link1	10.11.202.103
	port3	vd43link1	10.14.202.103
	port4	vdr3link1	172.20.121.103

Router	Interface	Interface name	IP address
Router4	port1	LoAccounting	10.14.101.104
	port2	vd42link0	10.14.201.104
	port3	vd43link0	10.14.202.104
ISP Router	port1	port1	To internet
	port2	vdr2link0	172.20.120.5
	port3	vdr3link0	172.20.121.5

After configuring each router, you can check the status of the connections by viewing the RIP database, RIP interfaces, and routing table. See Verifying the configuration on page 569.

After the network is configured, you can test it to ensure that when network events occur, such as a downed link, routing updates are triggered and converge as expected. See Testing the configuration and routing changes on page 573.

ISP router

To configure the ISP Router in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. Set the *Version* to *2*.
3. Under *Networks*, add two networks:
   - *172.20.120.0/255.255.255.0*
   - *172.20.121.0/255.255.255.0*
4. Add the interfaces:
   a. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Interface* to *port2*.
   c. Leave the remaining settings as their default values.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Repeat these steps for *port3*.
5. Under *Advanced Options*, enable *Inject Default Route*.
   This setting allows the ISP router to share its default 0.0.0.0 routes with other routers in the RIP network.
6. Click *Apply*.

To configure the ISP Router in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    set default-information-originate enable
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.20.121.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 172.20.120.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
```

```
    config interface
        edit "port2"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port3"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

Router2 and Router3

Router2 and Router3 RIP configurations have different IP addresses, but are otherwise the same.

To configure Router2 and Router3 in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. Set the *Version* to *2*.
3. Under *Networks*, add the IP addresses for each port:

Router2	10.12.101.0/255.255.255.0
	10.11.201.0/255.255.255.0
	10.14.201.0/255.255.255.0
	172.20.120.0/255.255.255.0
Router3	10.12.101.0/255.255.255.0
	10.11.202.0/255.255.255.0
	10.14.202.0/255.255.255.0
	172.20.121.0/255.255.255.0

4. Add the interfaces:
   a. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Interface* to *port1*.
   c. Leave the remaining settings as their default values.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Repeat these steps for *port2*, *port3*, and *port4*.
5. Click *Apply*.

To configure Router2 in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.12.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
```

```
            set prefix 10.11.201.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 3
            set prefix 10.14.201.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 4
            set prefix 172.20.120.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
    config interface
        edit "port1"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port2"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port3"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port4"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

To configure Router3 in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.12.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.11.202.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 3
            set prefix 10.14.202.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 4
            set prefix 172.20.121.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
    config interface
        edit "port1"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port2"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port3"
```

```
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port4"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

Router1 and Router4

Router1 and Router4 RIP configurations have different IP addresses, but are otherwise the same.

To configure Router1 and Router4 in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *RIP*.
2. Set the *Version* to *2*.
3. Under *Networks*, add the IP addresses for each port:

Router1	10.11.101.0/255.255.255.0
	10.11.201.0/255.255.255.0
	10.11.202.0/255.255.255.0
Router4	10.14.101.0/255.255.255.0
	10.14.201.0/255.255.255.0
	10.14.202.0/255.255.255.0

4. Add the interfaces:
   a. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Interface* to *port1*.
   c. For port1 only, enable *Passive*.
   d. Leave the remaining settings as their default values.
   e. Click *OK*.
   f. Repeat these steps for *port2* and *port3*, making sure that *Passive* is disabled.
5. Click *Apply*.

To configure Router1 in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.11.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.11.201.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 3
            set prefix 10.11.202.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
        next
    end
    set passive-interface "port1"
    config interface
        edit "port1"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port2"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port3"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

To configure Router4 in the CLI:

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.14.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.14.201.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 3
            set prefix 10.14.202.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
    set passive-interface "port1"
    config interface
        edit "port1"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port2"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
        edit "port3"
            set receive-version 2
            set send-version 2
        next
    end
end
```

Verifying the configuration

The interface's names are shown in the debugs. The same commands should also be run on the other routers.

To verify the configuration after the ISP router, Router2, and Route3 have been configured:

This verification can be done after the ISP router, Router2, and Router3 have been configured. Only Router2's debugs are shown.

1. Check the RIP interface information:

```
# get router info rip interface
Router2 is up, line protocol is up
  RIP is not enabled on this interface
ssl.Router2 is up, line protocol is up
  RIP is not enabled on this interface
vdr2link1 is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Disabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      172.20.120.102/24
vd12link1 is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Disabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      10.11.201.102/24
vd42link1 is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Disabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      10.14.201.102/24
vd23link0 is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Disabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      10.12.101.102/24
```

   RIP starts exchanging routes as soon as the networks are added to the Router2 and Router3 configurations because the RIP interfaces are active by default, and start sending and receiving RIP updates when a matching interface on the subnet is found. The interface configuration allows the interface settings to be fine tuned, in this case to specify only RIPv2 support.

2. Check the RIP database:

```
# get router info rip database
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP
   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
R  0.0.0.0/0          172.20.120.5          2 172.20.120.5    vdr2link1 02:55
Rc 10.11.201.0/24                           1                 vd12link1
```

```
R  10.11.202.0/24     10.12.101.103         2 10.12.101.103   vd23link0 02:33
Rc 10.12.101.0/24                           1                 vd23link0
Rc 10.14.201.0/24                           1                 vd42link1
R  10.14.202.0/24     10.12.101.103         2 10.12.101.103   vd23link0 02:33
Rc 172.20.120.0/24                          1                 vdr2link1
R  172.20.121.0/24    10.12.101.103         2 10.12.101.103   vd23link0 02:33
```

3. Check the routing table:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
R*      0.0.0.0/0 [120/2] via 172.20.120.5, vdr2link1, 13:37:23
C       10.11.201.0/24 is directly connected, vd12link1
R       10.11.202.0/24 [120/2] via 10.12.101.103, vd23link0, 14:10:01
C       10.12.101.0/24 is directly connected, vd23link0
C       10.14.201.0/24 is directly connected, vd42link1
R       10.14.202.0/24 [120/2] via 10.12.101.103, vd23link0, 14:10:01
C       172.20.120.0/24 is directly connected, vdr2link1
R       172.20.121.0/24 [120/2] via 10.12.101.103, vd23link0, 13:20:36
```

Router2 has learned the default gateway from the ISP router, and has learned of other networks from Router3.

4. If firewall policies are correctly configured, the outside network can be reached:

```
# execute ping-options source 10.11.201.102
# execute ping 8.8.8.8
PING 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=0 ttl=115 time=4.5 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=115 time=4.2 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=115 time=4.2 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=3 ttl=115 time=4.2 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=4 ttl=115 time=4.1 ms
--- 8.8.8.8 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 4.1/4.2/4.5 ms
```

```
# execute traceroute 8.8.8.8
traceroute to 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84 byte packets
 1  172.20.120.5  0.101 ms  0.030 ms  0.014 ms
 2  172.16.151.1  0.169 ms  0.144 ms  0.131 ms
 3  * * *
```

To verify the configuration after Router1 and Router4 have also been configured:

This verification can be done after Router1 and Router4 have been configured. Only Router1's debugs are shown.

1. Check the RIP interface information:

```
# get router info rip interface
Router1 is up, line protocol is up
  RIP is not enabled on this interface
ssl.Router1 is up, line protocol is up
  RIP is not enabled on this interface
```

```
vd12link0 is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Disabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      10.11.201.101/24
vd13link0 is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Disabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      10.11.202.101/24
LoSales is up, line protocol is up
  Routing Protocol: RIP
    Receive RIPv2 packets only
    Send RIPv2 packets only
    Passive interface: Enabled
    Split horizon: Enabled with Poisoned Reversed
    IP interface address:
      10.11.101.101/24
      127.0.0.1/8
```

2. Check the RIP database:

```
# get router info rip database
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP
   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
R  0.0.0.0/0          10.11.202.103         3 10.11.202.103   vd13link0 02:35
Rc 10.11.101.0/24                           1                 LoSales
Rc 10.11.201.0/24                           1                 vd12link0
Rc 10.11.202.0/24                           1                 vd13link0
R  10.12.101.0/24     10.11.202.103         2 10.11.202.103   vd13link0 02:35
R  10.14.101.0/24     10.11.202.103         3 10.11.202.103   vd13link0 02:35
R  10.14.201.0/24     10.11.201.102         2 10.11.201.102   vd12link0 02:30
R  10.14.202.0/24     10.11.202.103         2 10.11.202.103   vd13link0 02:35
R  172.20.120.0/24    10.11.201.102         2 10.11.201.102   vd12link0 02:30
R  172.20.121.0/24    10.11.202.103         2 10.11.202.103   vd13link0 02:35
```

3. Check the routing table:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
R*      0.0.0.0/0 [120/3] via 10.11.202.103, vd13link0, 00:09:42
C       10.11.101.0/24 is directly connected, LoSales
C       10.11.201.0/24 is directly connected, vd12link0
C       10.11.202.0/24 is directly connected, vd13link0
```

```
R       10.12.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.11.202.103, vd13link0, 00:09:42
R       10.14.101.0/24 [120/3] via 10.11.202.103, vd13link0, 00:09:42
R       10.14.201.0/24 [120/2] via 10.11.201.102, vd12link0, 00:09:42
R       10.14.202.0/24 [120/2] via 10.11.202.103, vd13link0, 00:09:42
R       172.20.120.0/24 [120/2] via 10.11.201.102, vd12link0, 00:09:42
R       172.20.121.0/24 [120/2] via 10.11.202.103, vd13link0, 00:09:42
```

4. If firewall policies are correctly configured, the accounting network and the internet are reachable from the sales network:

```
# execute ping-options source 10.11.101.101
# execute ping 10.14.101.104
PING 10.14.101.104 (10.14.101.104): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.14.101.104: icmp_seq=0 ttl=254 time=0.1 ms
64 bytes from 10.14.101.104: icmp_seq=1 ttl=254 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 10.14.101.104: icmp_seq=2 ttl=254 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 10.14.101.104: icmp_seq=3 ttl=254 time=0.0 ms
64 bytes from 10.14.101.104: icmp_seq=4 ttl=254 time=0.0 ms
--- 10.14.101.104 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.0/0.0/0.1 ms
```

```
# execute traceroute 10.14.101.104
traceroute to 10.14.101.104 (10.14.101.104), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84
byte packets
 1  10.11.202.103  0.079 ms  0.029 ms  0.013 ms
 2  10.14.101.104  0.043 ms  0.020 ms  0.010 ms
```

```
# execute ping 8.8.8.8
PING 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=0 ttl=114 time=4.3 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=114 time=4.1 ms
--- 8.8.8.8 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 4.1/4.2/4.3 ms
```

```
# execute traceroute 8.8.8.8
traceroute to 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84 byte packets
 1  10.11.202.103  0.094 ms  0.036 ms  0.030 ms
 2  172.20.121.5  0.216 ms  0.045 ms  0.038 ms
```

Testing the configuration and routing changes

After the network is configured, test it to ensure that when network events occur, such as a downed link, routing updates are triggered and converge as expected.

In the following examples, we disable certain links to simulate network outages, then verify that routing and connectivity is restored after the updates have converged.

Example 1 - ISP router port3 interface goes down

In this example, a link outage occurs on port3 of the ISP router. Consequently, all routers must use Router2, and not Router3, to reach the internet. Note the RIP database before and after the link failure, and the time taken for the route updates to propagate and return to a functioning state.

Router4's debugs are shown.

Before:

```
# get router info rip database
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP
   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
R  0.0.0.0/0          10.14.202.103         3 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:31
R  10.11.101.0/24     10.14.202.103         3 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:31
R  10.11.201.0/24     10.14.201.102         2 10.14.201.102   vd42link0 02:47
R  10.11.202.0/24     10.14.202.103         2 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:31
R  10.12.101.0/24     10.14.202.103         2 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:31
Rc 10.14.101.0/24                           1                 LoAccounting
Rc 10.14.201.0/24                           1                 vd42link0
Rc 10.14.202.0/24                           1                 vd43link0
R  172.20.120.0/24    10.14.201.102         2 10.14.201.102   vd42link0 02:47
R  172.20.121.0/24    10.14.202.103         2 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:31

# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
R*      0.0.0.0/0 [120/3] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:45:15
R       10.11.101.0/24 [120/3] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:44:49
R       10.11.201.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.201.102, vd42link0, 02:45:15
R       10.11.202.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:45:15
R       10.12.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:45:15
C       10.14.101.0/24 is directly connected, LoAccounting
C       10.14.201.0/24 is directly connected, vd42link0
C       10.14.202.0/24 is directly connected, vd43link0
R       172.20.120.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.201.102, vd42link0, 02:45:15
R       172.20.121.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:45:15

# execute traceroute 8.8.8.8
traceroute to 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84 byte packets
 1  10.14.202.103  0.187 ms  0.054 ms  0.030 ms
 2  172.20.121.5  0.117 ms  0.062 ms  0.040 ms
 3  * * *
```

After:

- You might see different routes, and the routes might change, while convergence is occurring. During convergence, the metric for your default route increases to 16.

```
# get router info rip database
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP
   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
R  0.0.0.0/0          10.14.202.103        16 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 01:50
```

- After convergence is complete, the RIP database will look similar to the following:

```
# get router info rip database
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP
   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
R  0.0.0.0/0          10.14.201.102         3 10.14.201.102   vd42link0 02:53
R  10.11.101.0/24     10.14.202.103         3 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 03:00
```

```
R  10.11.201.0/24     10.14.201.102         2 10.14.201.102   vd42link0 02:53
R  10.11.202.0/24     10.14.202.103         2 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 03:00
R  10.12.101.0/24     10.14.202.103         2 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 03:00
Rc 10.14.101.0/24                           1                 LoAccounting
Rc 10.14.201.0/24                           1                 vd42link0
Rc 10.14.202.0/24                           1                 vd43link0
R  172.20.120.0/24    10.14.201.102         2 10.14.201.102   vd42link0 02:53
```

- The default router should point to Router2, with the same number of hops:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
R*      0.0.0.0/0 [120/3] via 10.14.201.102, vd42link0, 00:05:24
R       10.11.101.0/24 [120/3] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:58:13
R       10.11.201.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.201.102, vd42link0, 02:58:39
R       10.11.202.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:58:39
R       10.12.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 02:58:39
C       10.14.101.0/24 is directly connected, LoAccounting
C       10.14.201.0/24 is directly connected, vd42link0
C       10.14.202.0/24 is directly connected, vd43link0
R       172.20.120.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.201.102, vd42link0, 02:58:39
```

```
# execute traceroute 8.8.8.8
traceroute to 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84 byte packets
 1  10.14.201.102  0.167 ms  0.063 ms  0.029 ms
 2  172.20.120.5  0.117 ms  0.073 ms  0.041 ms
 3  172.16.151.1  0.303 ms  0.273 ms  0.253 ms
```

Example 2- Additional link failures on Router2

In addition to the link failure on the ISP router in example, port1 and port3 on Router2 have also failed. This means that Router4 must go through Router3, Router1, Router2, then the ISP router to reach the internet. Note that, for a period of time, some routes' metrics increase to 16. If no better routes are found for these networks, then they eventually disappear.

After the convergence completes, the RIP database and routing table on Router4 should resemble the following:

```
# get router info rip database
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP
   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
R  0.0.0.0/0          10.14.202.103         5 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:54
R  10.11.101.0/24     10.14.202.103         3 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:54
R  10.11.201.0/24     10.14.202.103         3 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:54
R  10.11.202.0/24     10.14.202.103         2 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:54
Rc 10.14.101.0/24                           1                 LoAccounting
Rc 10.14.202.0/24                           1                 vd43link0
R  172.20.120.0/24    10.14.202.103         4 10.14.202.103   vd43link0 02:54
```

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
```

```
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
R*      0.0.0.0/0 [120/5] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 00:03:54
R       10.11.101.0/24 [120/3] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 03:10:12
R       10.11.201.0/24 [120/3] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 00:03:54
R       10.11.202.0/24 [120/2] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 03:10:38
C       10.14.101.0/24 is directly connected, LoAccounting
C       10.14.202.0/24 is directly connected, vd43link0
R       172.20.120.0/24 [120/4] via 10.14.202.103, vd43link0, 00:03:54
```

Reaching the internet on the default gateway now requires five hops from Router4:

```
# execute traceroute 8.8.8.8
traceroute to 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84 byte packets
 1  10.14.202.103  0.087 ms  0.026 ms  0.012 ms
 2  10.11.202.101  0.045 ms  0.024 ms  0.025 ms
 3  10.11.201.102  0.048 ms  0.024 ms  0.015 ms
 4  172.20.120.5  0.050 ms  0.028 ms  0.019 ms
 5  * * *
```

OSPF

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) is a link state routing protocol that is commonly used in large enterprise networks with L3 switches, routers, and firewalls from multiple vendors. It can quickly detect link failures, and converges network traffic without networking loops. It also has features to control which routes are propagated, allowing for smaller routing tables, and provides better load balancing on external links when compared to other routing protocols.

To configure OSPF in the GUI, go to *Network* > *OSPF*:

Option	Description
Router ID	A unique ID to identify your router in the network, typically in the format x.x.x.x.
Areas	The areas that the router is part of. For each are area, define the *Area ID*, *Type*, and *Authentication* method.
Networks	The networks that OSPF is enabled in, and the area that they belong to.
Interfaces	OSPF interfaces for transmitting and receiving packets. Configure interface properties, such as *Network Type*, *Cost*, *Hello interval*, and others.
Summary Addresses	Summary addresses that summarize your routes to reduce the size of the routing table.
Default Settings (7.0)	The default settings for *Inject default route*, *Metric type*, *Metric value*, and *Route map*.
Redistribute	Enable redistribution by protocol. Configure the *Metric value*, *Metric type*, *Tag*, and *Route map*.
Advanced Settings	Advanced settings, including *ABR type*, *Default metric*, *Restart mode*, and *BFD*.

Option	Description
Distance Settings	The distance setting for each route type: External (E1, E2), Inter Area (IA), and Intra Area (O).
Overflow Settings	Overflow settings to control the LSDB overflow criteria.

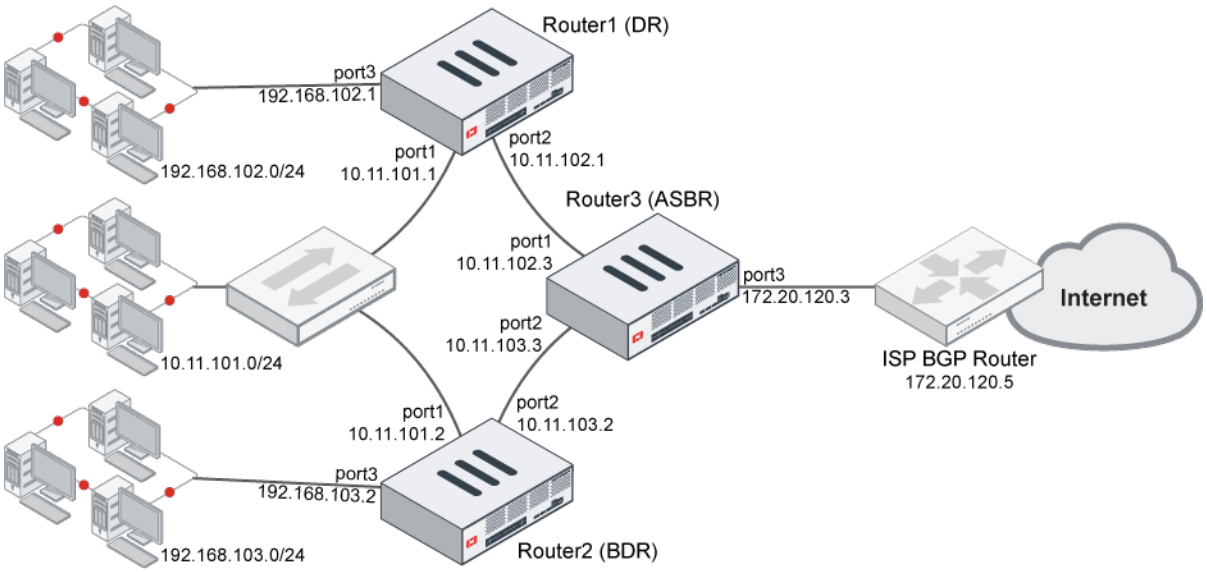
This section includes the following topics:

- Basic OSPF example on page 577

Basic OSPF example

In this example, three FortiGate devices are configured in an OSPF network.

- Router1 is the Designated Router (DR). It has the highest priority and the lowest IP address, to ensure that it becomes the DR.
- Router2 is the Backup Designated Router (BDR). It has a high priority to ensure that it becomes the BDR.
- Router3 is the Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR). It routes all traffic to the ISP BGP router for internet access. It redistributes routes from BGP and advertises a default route to its neighbors. It can allow different types of routes, learned outside of OSPF, to be used in OSPF. Different metrics can be assigned to these routes to make them more or less preferred than regular OSPF routes. Route maps could be used to further control what prefixes are advertised or received from the ISP.



FortiGate	Interface	IP address
Router1 (DR)	port1	10.11.101.1
	port2	10.11.102.1
	port3	192.168.102.1

FortiGate	Interface	IP address
Router2 (BDR)	port1	10.11.101.2
	port2	10.11.103.2
	port3	192.168.103.2
Router3 (ASBR)	port1	10.11.102.3
	port2	10.11.103.3
	port3	172.20.120.3

- Firewall policies are already configured to allow unfiltered traffic in both directions between all of the connected interfaces.
- The interfaces are already configured, and NAT is only used for connections to public networks. The costs for all of the interfaces is left at 0.
- The OSPF network belongs to Area 0, and is not connected to any other OSPF networks. All of the routers are part of the backbone 0.0.0.0 area, so no inter-area communications are needed.
- Router3 redistributes BGP routes into the OSPF AS and peers with the ISP BGP Router over eBGP. For information about configuring BGP, see BGP on page 587.
- The advertised networks - 10.11.101.0, 10.11.102.0, and 10.11.103.0 - are summarized by 10.11.0.0/16. Additional networks are advertised individually by the /24 subnet.

Router1

To configure Router1 in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *OSPF*.
2. Set *Router ID* to *10.11.101.1*.
3. In the *Areas* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area ID	0.0.0.0
Type	Regular
Authentication	None

4. Click *OK*.
5. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area	0.0.0.0
IP/Netmask	10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0

6. Click *OK*.
7. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New* again and set the following:

Area	0.0.0.0
IP/Netmask	192.168.102.0 255.255.255.0

8. Click *OK*.

9. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Name	Router1-Internal-DR
Interface	port1
Cost	0
Priority	255
Authentication	None
Timers	• Hello Interval: 10 • Dead Interval: 40

10. Click *OK*.
11. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* again and set the following:

Name	Router1-External
Interface	port2
Cost	0
Authentication	None
Timers	• Hello Interval: 10 • Dead Interval: 40

12. Click *OK*.
13. Click *Apply*.

To configure Router1 in the CLI:

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 10.11.101.1
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit "Router1-Internal-DR"
            set interface "port1"
            set priority 255
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
        edit "Router1-External"
            set interface "port2"
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0
        next
```

```
        edit 2
            set prefix 192.168.102.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

Router2

To configure Router2 in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *OSPF*.
2. Set *Router ID* to *10.11.101.2*.
3. In the *Areas* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area ID	0.0.0.0
Type	Regular
Authentication	None

4. Click *OK*.
5. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area	0.0.0.0
IP/Netmask	10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0

6. Click *OK*.
7. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New* again and set the following:

Area	0.0.0.0
IP/Netmask	192.168.103.0 255.255.255.0

8. Click *OK*.
9. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Name	Router2-Internal
Interface	port1
Cost	0
Priority	250
Authentication	None
Timers	• Hello Interval: 10 • Dead Interval: 40

10. Click *OK*.
11. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* again and set the following:

Name	Router2-External

Interface	port2
Cost	0
Authentication	None
Timers	• Hello Interval: 10 • Dead Interval: 40

12. Click *OK*.
13. Click *Apply*.

To configure Router2 in the CLI:

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 10.11.101.1
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit "Router2-Internal"
            set interface "port1"
            set priority 250
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
        edit "Router2-External"
            set interface "port2"
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 192.168.103.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

Router3

To configure Router3 in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *OSPF*.
2. Set *Router ID* to *10.11.103.3*.
3. Under *Default Settings*, set *Inject default route* to *Regular Areas*.
   A default route must be present on Router3 to advertise it to other routers.
4. Enable *Redistribute BGP* and use the default settings.
5. In the *Areas* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area ID	0.0.0.0
Type	Regular
Authentication	None

6. Click *OK*.
7. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area	0.0.0.0
IP/Netmask	10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0

8. Click *OK*.
9. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Name	Router3-Internal
Interface	port1
Cost	0
Authentication	None
Timers	• Hello Interval: 10 • Dead Interval: 40

10. Click *OK*.
11. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* again and set the following:

Name	Router3-Internal2
Interface	port2
Cost	0
Authentication	None
Timers	• Hello Interval: 10 • Dead Interval: 40

12. Click *OK*.
13. Click *Apply*.

To configure Router3 in the CLI:

```
config router ospf
    set default-information-originate enable
    set router-id 10.11.103.3
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit "Router3-Internal"
            set interface "port1"
            set dead-interval 40
```

```
            set hello-interval 10
        next
        edit "Router3-Internal2"
            set interface "port2"
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.11.0.0 255.255.0.0
        next
    end
    config redistribute "bgp"
        set status enable
    end
end
```

To configure BGP on Router3 in the CLI:

```
config router bgp
    set as 64511
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    config neighbor
        edit "172.20.120.5"
            set remote-as 64512
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.20.120.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

For more information on configuring BGP, see BGP on page 587.

Testing the configuration

Both the network connectivity and OSPF routing are tested. When a link goes down, routes should converge as expected.

Working state

- Router3:

```
Router3 # get router info ospf neighbor
OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
Neighbor ID     Pri   State           Dead Time   Address         Interface
10.11.101.1       1   Full/Backup     00:00:34    10.11.102.1     port1
10.11.101.2       1   Full/Backup     00:00:38    10.11.103.2     port2
```

```
Router3 # get router info ospf status
 Routing Process "ospf 0" with ID 10.11.103.3
 Process uptime is 18 hours 52 minutes
 Process bound to VRF default
```

```
 Conforms to RFC2328, and RFC1583Compatibility flag is disabled
 Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
 Supports opaque LSA
 Do not support Restarting
 This router is an ASBR (injecting external routing information)
 SPF schedule delay 5 secs, Hold time between two SPFs 10 secs
 Refresh timer 10 secs
 Number of incomming current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
 Number of outgoing current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
 Number of external LSA 3. Checksum 0x021B78
 Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum 0x000000
 Number of non-default external LSA 2
 External LSA database is unlimited.
 Number of LSA originated 16
 Number of LSA received 100
 Number of areas attached to this router: 1
    Area 0.0.0.0 (BACKBONE)
        Number of interfaces in this area is 2(2)
        Number of fully adjacent neighbors in this area is 2
        Area has no authentication
        SPF algorithm last executed 00:37:36.690 ago
        SPF algorithm executed 13 times
        Number of LSA 6. Checksum 0x03eafa
```

```
Router3 # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
B*      0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via 172.20.120.5, port3, 01:10:12
O       10.11.101.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.103.2, port2, 00:39:34
                       [110/2] via 10.11.102.1, port1, 00:39:34
C       10.11.102.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       10.11.103.0/24 is directly connected, port2
C       172.20.120.0/24 is directly connected, port3
O       192.168.102.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.102.1, port1, 02:24:59
O       192.168.103.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.103.2, port2, 02:14:32
B       192.168.160.0/24 [20/0] via 172.20.120.5, port3, 19:08:39
B       192.168.170.0/24 [20/0] via 172.20.120.5, port3, 01:10:12
```

- Router2:

```
Router2 # get router info ospf neighbor
OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
Neighbor ID     Pri   State           Dead Time   Address         Interface
10.11.101.1     255   Full/DR         00:00:35    10.11.101.1     port1
10.11.103.3       1   Full/DR         00:00:38    10.11.103.3     port3
```

```
Router2 # get router info ospf status
 Routing Process "ospf 0" with ID 10.11.101.2
 Process uptime is 2 hours 53 minutes
 Process bound to VRF default
 Conforms to RFC2328, and RFC1583Compatibility flag is disabled
 Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
```

```
 Supports opaque LSA
 Do not support Restarting
 SPF schedule delay 5 secs, Hold time between two SPFs 10 secs
 Refresh timer 10 secs
 Number of incomming current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
 Number of outgoing current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
 Number of external LSA 3. Checksum 0x021979
 Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum 0x000000
 Number of non-default external LSA 2
 External LSA database is unlimited.
 Number of LSA originated 5
 Number of LSA received 128
 Number of areas attached to this router: 1
    Area 0.0.0.0 (BACKBONE)
        Number of interfaces in this area is 3(3)
        Number of fully adjacent neighbors in this area is 2
        Area has no authentication
        SPF algorithm last executed 00:47:49.990 ago
        SPF algorithm executed 15 times
        Number of LSA 6. Checksum 0x03e8fb
```

```
Router2 # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
O*E2    0.0.0.0/0 [110/10] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 01:03:58
C       10.11.101.0/24 is directly connected, port1
O       10.11.102.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 00:49:01
                       [110/2] via 10.11.101.1, port1, 00:49:01
C       10.11.103.0/24 is directly connected, port2
O       192.168.102.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.101.1, port1, 00:49:01
C       192.168.103.0/24 is directly connected, port3
O E2    192.168.160.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 01:39:31
O E2    192.168.170.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 01:19:39
```

The default route advertised by Router3 using `default-information-originate` is considered an OSPF E2 route. Other routes redistributed from BGP are also E2 routes.

- Router1:

```
Router1 # get router info ospf neighbor
OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
Neighbor ID     Pri   State           Dead Time   Address         Interface
10.11.101.2     250   Full/Backup     00:00:36    10.11.101.2     port1
10.11.103.3       1   Full/DR         00:00:37    10.11.102.3     port2
```

```
Router1 # get router info ospf status
 Routing Process "ospf 0" with ID 10.11.101.1
 Process uptime is 3 hours 7 minutes
 Process bound to VRF default
 Conforms to RFC2328, and RFC1583Compatibility flag is disabled
 Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
 Supports opaque LSA
 Do not support Restarting
```

```
 SPF schedule delay 5 secs, Hold time between two SPFs 10 secs
 Refresh timer 10 secs
 Number of incomming current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
 Number of outgoing current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
 Number of external LSA 3. Checksum 0x02157B
 Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum 0x000000
 Number of non-default external LSA 2
 External LSA database is unlimited.
 Number of LSA originated 2
 Number of LSA received 63
 Number of areas attached to this router: 1
    Area 0.0.0.0 (BACKBONE)
        Number of interfaces in this area is 3(3)
        Number of fully adjacent neighbors in this area is 2
        Area has no authentication
        SPF algorithm last executed 00:54:08.160 ago
        SPF algorithm executed 11 times
        Number of LSA 6. Checksum 0x03e6fc
```

```
Router1 # get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
O*E2    0.0.0.0/0 [110/10] via 10.11.102.3, port2, 01:09:48
C       10.11.101.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       10.11.102.0/24 is directly connected, port2
O       10.11.103.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.102.3, port2, 00:54:49
                       [110/2] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 00:54:49
C       192.168.102.0/24 is directly connected, port3
O       192.168.103.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 00:54:49
O E2    192.168.160.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.102.3, port2, 01:45:21
O E2    192.168.170.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.102.3, port2, 01:25:29
```

Link down state

If port1 is disconnected on Router3:

- Router3:

```
Router3 # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
B*      0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via 172.20.120.5, VLAN20, 01:29:25
O       10.11.101.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.103.2, port2, 00:00:09
C       10.11.103.0/24 is directly connected, port2
C       172.20.120.0/24 is directly connected, port3
O       192.168.102.0/24 [110/3] via 10.11.103.2, port2, 00:00:09
O       192.168.103.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.103.2, port2, 02:33:45
```

```
B       192.168.160.0/24 [20/0] via 172.20.120.5, port3, 19:27:52
B       192.168.170.0/24 [20/0] via 172.20.120.5, port3, 01:29:25
```

- Router2:

```
Router2 # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
O*E2    0.0.0.0/0 [110/10] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 01:16:36
C       10.11.101.0/24 is directly connected, port1
O       10.11.102.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.101.1, port1, 00:02:27
C       10.11.103.0/24 is directly connected, port2
O       192.168.102.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.101.1, port1, 01:01:39
C       192.168.103.0/24 is directly connected, port3
O E2    192.168.160.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 01:52:09
O E2    192.168.170.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.103.3, port2, 01:32:17
```

- Router1:

```
Router1 # get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
O*E2    0.0.0.0/0 [110/10] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 00:05:14
C       10.11.101.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       10.11.102.0/24 is directly connected, port2
O       10.11.103.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 00:05:15
C       192.168.102.0/24 is directly connected, port3
O       192.168.103.0/24 [110/2] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 01:03:50
O E2    192.168.160.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 00:05:14
O E2    192.168.170.0/24 [110/10] via 10.11.101.2, port1, 00:05:14
```

BGP

Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) is a standardized routing protocol that is used to route traffic across the internet. It exchanges routing information between Autonomous Systems (AS) on the internet and makes routing decisions based on path, network policies, and rule sets. BGP contains two distinct subsets: internal BGP (iBGP) and external BGP (eBGP). iBGP is intended for use within your own networks. eBGP is used to connect different networks together and is the main routing protocol for the internet backbone.

To configure BGP in the GUI, go to *Network* > *BGP*:

Option	Description
Local AS	The AS number for the local router.

Option	Description
Router ID	A unique ID to identify your router in the network, typically in the format x.x.x.x.
Neighbors	The neighbors that the FortiGate will be peering with. Configure the remote router's AS number, any other properties used for peering with the neighbor, and IPv4 and IPv6 filtering.
Networks	The networks to be advertised to other BGP routers.
Redistribute	Enable redistribution by protocol.
Advanced Options	Advanced settings, including *Cluster ID*, *Timers*, and *Redistribute*.

This section includes the following topics:

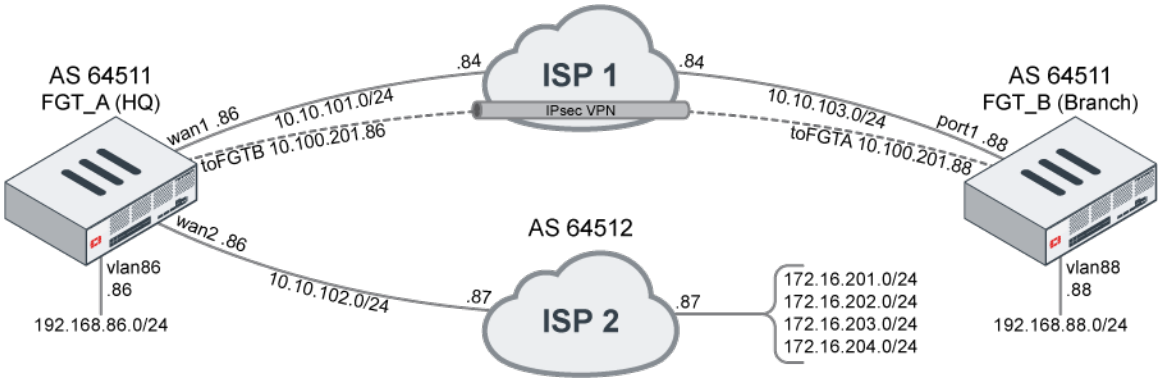
- Basic BGP example on page 588
- Route filtering with a distribution list on page 596
- Troubleshooting BGP on page 600

Basic BGP example

In this example, BGP is configured on two FortiGate devices. The FortiGates are geographically separated, and form iBGP peering over a VPN connection. FGT_A also forms eBGP peering with ISP2.

FGT_A learns routes from ISP2 and redistributes them to FGT_B while preventing any iBGP routes from being advertised.

The internal networks behind the FortiGates can communicate with each other, and the internal networks behind FGT_B can traverse FGT_A to reach networks that are advertised by ISP2.



- FGT_A and FGT_B have static routes to each other through ISP1. ISP1 does not participate in BGP.
- The IPsec VPN tunnel between FGT_A and FGT_B is configured with wildcard 0.0.0.0/0 networks for phase2 local and remote selectors. The VPN interfaces have IP addresses already configured and are used for peering between FGT_A and FGT_B.
- FGT_A is configure to peer with ISP2 on 10.10.108.86.
- The firewall policies between FGT_A and FGT_B are not NATed. The firewall policies egressing on wan2 are NATed.

Configuring iBGP peering

To configure FGT_A to establish iBGP peering with FGT_B in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *BGP*.
2. Set *Local AS* to *64511*
3. Set *Router ID* to *1.1.1.1*.
4. In the *Neighbors* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

IP	10.100.201.88
Remote AS	64511

5. Click *OK*.
6. Under *Networks*, set *IP/Netmask* to *192.168.86.0/24*.
7. Click *Apply*.
8. In the CLI, set the interface used as the source IP address of the TCP connection (where the BGP session, TCP/179, is connecting from) for the neighbor (`update-source`) to `toFGTB`.

To configure FGT_A to establish iBGP peering with FGT_B in the CLI:

```
config router bgp
    set as 64511
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.201.88"
            set remote-as 64511
            set update-source "toFGTB"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.86.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

To configure FGT_B to establish iBGP peering with FGT_A in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *BGP*.
2. Set *Local AS* to *64511*
3. Set *Router ID* to *2.2.2.2*.
4. In the *Neighbors* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

IP	10.100.201.86
Remote AS	64511

5. Click *OK*.
6. Under *Networks*, set *IP/Netmask* to *192.168.88.0/24*.
7. Click *Apply*.

8. In the CLI, set the interface used as the source IP address of the TCP connection (where the BGP session, TCP/179, is connecting from) for the neighbor (`update-source`) to `toFGTA`.

To configure FGT_B to establish iBGP peering with FGT_A in the CLI:

```
config router bgp
    set as 64511
    set router-id 2.2.2.2
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.201.86"
            set remote-as 64511
            set update-source "toFGTA"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.88.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

To check the FGT_A and FGT_B peering:

1. Check the BGP neighbors:

   ```
   # get router info bgp neighbors
   ```

2. Check the networks learned from neighbors:

   ```
   # get router info bgp network
   ```

3. Check that the routes are added to the routing table:

   ```
   # get router info routing-table all
   ```

To see the neighborship status, network, and routing table command outputs for the completed example, see Troubleshooting and debugging on page 592.

Configuring eBGP peering

By establishing eBGP peering with ISP2, learned routes will have a distance of 20 and will automatically be propagated to iBGP peers. iBGP peers do not change the next hop when they advertise a route. To make FGT_B receive a route with FGT_A as the next hop, and not ISP 2's network, *Next hop self* (`next-hop-self`) is enabled for routes advertised to FGT_B.

Additionally, to peer with another router that is multiple hops away, enable `ebg-enforce-multihop` in the neighbor configuration.

In this example, the iBGP routes are automatically advertised to the eBGP neighbor, so a route map is created to deny iBGP routes from being advertised to ISP 2. Prefixes from ISP 2 are advertised to FGT_A and FGT_B, but no prefixes are advertised from FGT_A to ISP 2.

To configure FGT_A to establish eBGP peering with ISP 2:

1. Configure a route map to prevent advertisement of iBGP routes to ISP 2:

```
config router route-map
    edit "exclude1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set action deny
                set match-origin igp
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Update the BGP configuration:

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.102.87"
            set remote-as 64512
            set route-map-out "exclude1"
        next
        edit "10.100.201.88"
            set next-hop-self enable
        next
    end
end
```

To see the neighborship status, network, and routing table command outputs for the completed example, see Troubleshooting and debugging on page 592.

Firewall policies

On FGT_A configure the following policies:

- Allow the internal subnet to the VPN interface. Do not enable NAT. Enable security profiles as required.
- Allow the VPN interface to the internal subnet. Do not enable NAT. Enable security profiles as required.
- Allow the internal subnet to wan2. Enable NAT and security profiles as required.
- Allow VPN traffic from toFGTA to wan2. Enable NAT and security profiles as required.

On FGT_B configure the following policies:

- Allow the internal subnet to the VPN interface. Do not enable NAT. Enable security profiles as required.
- Allow the VPN interface to the internal subnet. Do not enable NAT. Enable security profiles as required.

To verify that pinging from FGT_B to FGT_A is successful:

```
FGT_B # execute ping-options source 192.168.88.88
FGT_B # execute ping 192.168.86.86
PING 192.168.86.86 (192.168.86.86): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.86.86: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.5 ms
...
--- 192.168.86.86 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.3/0.3/0.5 ms
```

To verify that pinging from FGT_B to a subnet in ISP 2 is successful:

```
FGT_B # execute ping-options source 192.168.88.88
FGT_B # execute ping 172.16.201.87
PING 172.16.201.87 (172.16.201.87): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 172.16.201.87: icmp_seq=0 ttl=254 time=0.6 ms
...
--- 172.16.201.87 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.4/0.4/0.6 ms

FGT_B # execute traceroute-options source 192.168.88.88
FGT_B # execute traceroute 172.16.201.87
traceroute to 172.16.201.87 (172.16.201.87), 32 hops max, 3 probe packets per hop, 84 byte
packets
 1  10.100.201.86  0.315 ms  0.143 ms  0.110 ms
 2  172.16.201.87  0.258 ms  0.144 ms  0.222 ms
```

Troubleshooting and debugging

When troubleshooting issues, logically step through the debugs. For example, if peering cannot be established between FGT_A and FGT_B:

1. Verify the basic connectivity between the FGT_A wan1 interface and the FGT_B port1 interface.
2. Verify that the VPN between FGT_A and FGT_B is established.
3. Verify the connectivity between the VPN interfaces.
4. Check the neighborship status on each peer. Use the BGP state to help determine the possible issue, for example:

Idle state	The local FortiGate has not started the BGP process with the neighbor. This could be because the eBGP peer is multiple hops away, but multihop is not enabled.
Connect	The local FortiGate has started the BGP process, but has not initiated a TCP connection, possibly due to improper routing.
Active	The local FortiGate has initiated a TCP connection, but there is no response. This might indicate issues with the delivery or the response from the remote peer.

5. If there are issues establishing the TCP connection, use the command `diagnose sniffer packet any 'tcp and port 179'` to identify the problem at the packet level.

The following outputs show instances where all of the configurations are completed, peering has formed, and routes have been exchanged. The debug output during each configuration step might differ from these outputs. These debug outputs can be used to help identify what might be missing or misconfigured on your device.

To verify the status of the neighbors:

```
FGT_A # get router info bgp neighbors
VRF 0 neighbor table:
BGP neighbor is 10.10.102.87, remote AS 64512, local AS 64511, external link
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 192.168.2.87
  BGP state = Established, up for 01:54:37
  Last read 00:00:29, hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Configured hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Neighbor capabilities:
    Route refresh: advertised and received (old and new)
```

```
    Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
    Address family IPv6 Unicast: advertised and received
  Received 513 messages, 1 notifications, 0 in queue
  Sent 517 messages, 2 notifications, 0 in queue
  Route refresh request: received 0, sent 0
  Minimum time between advertisement runs is 30 seconds
 For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  BGP table version 5, neighbor version 0
  Index 3, Offset 0, Mask 0x8
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor (both)
  Outbound path policy configured
  Route map for outgoing advertisements is *exclude1root
  4 accepted prefixes, 4 prefixes in rib
  0 announced prefixes
 For address family: IPv6 Unicast
  BGP table version 1, neighbor version 0
  Index 3, Offset 0, Mask 0x8
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor (both)
  0 accepted prefixes, 0 prefixes in rib
  0 announced prefixes
 Connections established 4; dropped 3
Local host: 10.10.102.86, Local port: 20364
Foreign host: 10.10.102.87, Foreign port: 179
Nexthop: 10.10.102.86
Nexthop interface: wan2
Nexthop global: ::
Nexthop local: ::
BGP connection: non shared network
Last Reset: 01:54:42, due to BGP Notification sent
Notification Error Message: (CeaseUnspecified Error Subcode)
BGP neighbor is 10.100.201.88, remote AS 64511, local AS 64511, internal link
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 2.2.2.2
  BGP state = Established, up for 01:54:07
  Last read 00:00:11, hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Configured hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Neighbor capabilities:
    Route refresh: advertised and received (old and new)
    Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
    Address family IPv6 Unicast: advertised and received
  Received 527 messages, 3 notifications, 0 in queue
  Sent 543 messages, 8 notifications, 0 in queue
  Route refresh request: received 0, sent 0
  Minimum time between advertisement runs is 30 seconds
  Update source is toFGTB
 For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  BGP table version 5, neighbor version 4
  Index 1, Offset 0, Mask 0x2
  NEXT_HOP is always this router
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor (both)
  1 accepted prefixes, 1 prefixes in rib
  5 announced prefixes
 For address family: IPv6 Unicast
  BGP table version 1, neighbor version 1
  Index 1, Offset 0, Mask 0x2
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor (both)
  0 accepted prefixes, 0 prefixes in rib
```

```
  0 announced prefixes
 Connections established 7; dropped 6
Local host: 10.100.201.86, Local port: 179
Foreign host: 10.100.201.88, Foreign port: 6245
Nexthop: 10.100.201.86
Nexthop interface: toFGTB
Nexthop global: ::
Nexthop local: ::
BGP connection: non shared network
Last Reset: 01:54:12, due to BGP Notification received
Notification Error Message: (CeaseUnspecified Error Subcode)
```

```
FGT_B # get router info bgp neighbors
VRF 0 neighbor table:
BGP neighbor is 10.100.201.86, remote AS 64511, local AS 64511, internal link
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 1.1.1.1
  BGP state = Established, up for 01:56:04
  Last read 00:00:48, hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Configured hold time is 180, keepalive interval is 60 seconds
  Neighbor capabilities:
    Route refresh: advertised and received (old and new)
    Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
    Address family IPv6 Unicast: advertised and received
  Received 532 messages, 3 notifications, 0 in queue
  Sent 526 messages, 3 notifications, 0 in queue
  Route refresh request: received 0, sent 0
  Minimum time between advertisement runs is 30 seconds
  Update source is toFGTA
 For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  BGP table version 4, neighbor version 3
  Index 1, Offset 0, Mask 0x2
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor (both)
  5 accepted prefixes, 5 prefixes in rib
  1 announced prefixes
 For address family: IPv6 Unicast
  BGP table version 1, neighbor version 1
  Index 1, Offset 0, Mask 0x2
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor (both)
  0 accepted prefixes, 0 prefixes in rib
  0 announced prefixes
 Connections established 7; dropped 6
Local host: 10.100.201.88, Local port: 6245
Foreign host: 10.100.201.86, Foreign port: 179
Nexthop: 10.100.201.88
Nexthop interface: toFGTA
Nexthop global: ::
Nexthop local: ::
BGP connection: non shared network
Last Reset: 01:56:09, due to BGP Notification sent
Notification Error Message: (CeaseUnspecified Error Subcode)
```

`# get router info bgp neighbors <neighbor's IP>` can also be used to verify the status of a specific neighbor.

To verify the networks learned from neighbors or a specific network:

```
FGT_A # get router info bgp network
VRF 0 BGP table version is 5, local router ID is 1.1.1.1
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
              S Stale
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
   Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight RouteTag Path
*> 172.16.201.0/24  10.10.102.87             0             0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*> 172.16.202.0/24  10.10.102.87             0             0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*> 172.16.203.0/24  10.10.102.87             0             0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*> 172.16.204.0/24  10.10.102.87             0             0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*> 192.168.86.0     0.0.0.0                       100  32768        0 i <-/1>
*>i192.168.88.0     10.100.201.88            0    100      0        0 i <-/1>
Total number of prefixes 6
FGT_A # get router info bgp network 172.16.201.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 172.16.201.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
   10.100.201.88
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    10.10.102.87 from 10.10.102.87 (192.168.2.87)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Last update: Tue Dec 15 22:52:08 2020

FGT_A # get router info bgp network 192.168.88.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.88.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  Local
    10.100.201.88 from 10.100.201.88 (2.2.2.2)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, internal, best
      Last update: Tue Dec 15 22:52:39 2020

FGT_B # get router info bgp network
VRF 0 BGP table version is 4, local router ID is 2.2.2.2
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
              S Stale
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
   Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight RouteTag Path
*>i172.16.201.0/24  10.100.201.86            0    100      0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*>i172.16.202.0/24  10.100.201.86            0    100      0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*>i172.16.203.0/24  10.100.201.86            0    100      0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*>i172.16.204.0/24  10.100.201.86            0    100      0        0 64512 i <-/1>
*>i192.168.86.0     10.100.201.86            0    100      0        0 i <-/1>
*> 192.168.88.0     0.0.0.0                       100  32768        0 i <-/1>
Total number of prefixes 6
```

To verify the routing tables on FGT_A and FGT_B:

```
FGT_A # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
```

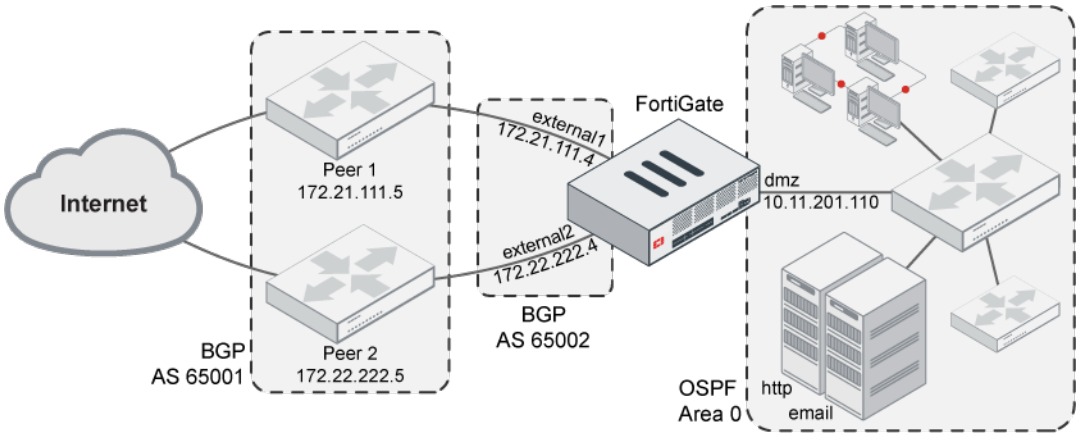
```
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.151.1, port1, [5/0]
                  [10/0] via 192.168.2.1, port2, [10/0]
C       10.10.101.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       10.10.102.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       10.10.103.0/24 [10/0] via 10.10.101.84, wan1
C       10.100.201.0/24 is directly connected, toFGTB
C       10.100.201.86/32 is directly connected, toFGTB
C       172.16.151.0/24 is directly connected, port1
B       172.16.201.0/24 [20/0] via 10.10.102.87, wan2, 02:09:50
B       172.16.202.0/24 [20/0] via 10.10.102.87, wan2, 02:09:50
B       172.16.203.0/24 [20/0] via 10.10.102.87, wan2, 02:09:50
B       172.16.204.0/24 [20/0] via 10.10.102.87, wan2, 02:09:50
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
C       192.168.86.0/24 is directly connected, vlan86
B       192.168.88.0/24 [200/0] via 10.100.201.88, toFGTB, 02:09:19

FGT_B # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 10.10.103.84, port1
C       10.10.103.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       10.100.201.0/24 is directly connected, toFGTA
C       10.100.201.88/32 is directly connected, toFGTA
B       172.16.201.0/24 [200/0] via 10.100.201.86, toFGTA, 02:11:36
B       172.16.202.0/24 [200/0] via 10.100.201.86, toFGTA, 02:11:36
B       172.16.203.0/24 [200/0] via 10.100.201.86, toFGTA, 02:11:36
B       172.16.204.0/24 [200/0] via 10.100.201.86, toFGTA, 02:11:36
B       192.168.86.0/24 [200/0] via 10.100.201.86, toFGTA, 02:11:36
C       192.168.88.0/24 is directly connected, vlan88
```

Route filtering with a distribution list

During BGP operations, routes can be propagated between BGP peers and redistributed from other routing protocols. In some situations, advertising routes from one peer to another might need to be prevented.

The Basic BGP example on page 588 explains using a route map to filter routes that are learned from iBGP to prevent them from propagating to an eBGP peer. In this example, a distribution list is used to prevent certain routes from one peer from being advertised to another peer.



- A company has its own web and email servers in an OSPF area, and needs to advertise routes to these resources to external peers. Users, routers, and other server all reside in the OSPF area.
- The FortiGate acts as the BGP border router, redistributing routes from the company's network to its BGP peers. It is connected to the OSPF area using its DMZ interface.
- Two ISP managed BGP peers in an AS (Peer 1 and Peer 2) are used to access the internet, and routes must not to be advertised from Peer 1 to Peer 2. The manufacturers of these routers, and information about other devices on the external BGP AS, are not known.
- Routes to the BGP peers are redistributed so that external locations can access the web and email servers in the OSPF area. The FortiGate device's external interfaces and the BGP peers are in different ASs, and form eBGP peers.
- Other networking devices must be configured for BGP. The peer routers must be updated with the FortiGate device's BGP information, including IP addresses, AS number, and any specific capabilities that are used, such as IPv6, graceful restart, BFD, and so on.
- It is assumed that security policies have been configured to allow traffic between the networks and NAT is not used. To tighten security, only the required services should be allowed inbound to the various servers.
- In a real life scenario, public IP addresses would be used in place of private IP addresses.

Configuring BGP

In this example, Peer 1 routes are blocked from being advertised to Peer 2 using an access list. All incoming routes from Peer 1 are blocked when updates are sent to Peer 2.

Routes learned from OSPF are redistributed into BGP. EBGP multi path is enabled to load-balance traffic between the peers using ECMP. See Equal cost multi-path on page 548 for more information.

To configure BGP:

1. Configure an access list to block Peer 1 routes:

```
config router access-list
    edit "block_peer1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set action deny
                set prefix 172.21.111.0 255.255.255.0
                set exact-match enable
            next
```

```
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure BGP:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65001
    set router-id 10.11.201.110
    set ebgp-multipath enable
    config neighbor
        edit "172.21.111.5"
            set remote-as 65001
        next
        edit "172.22.222.5"
            set distribute-list-out "block_peer1"
            set remote-as 65001
        next
    end
    config redistribute "ospf"
        set status enable
    end
end
```

Configuring OSPF

In this example, all of the traffic is within the one OSPF area, and there are other OSPF routers in the network. When adjacencies are formed, other routers receive the routes advertised from the FortiGate that are redistributed from BGP.

To configure OSPF in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *OSPF*.
2. Set *Router ID* to *10.11.201.110*.
3. In the *Areas* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area ID	0.0.0.0
Type	Regular
Authentication	None

4. Click *OK*.
5. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Area	0.0.0.0
IP/Netmask	10.11.201.0 255.255.255.0

6. Click *OK*.
7. In the *Interfaces* table, click *Create New* and set the following:

Name	OSPF_dmz_network
Interface	dmz

8. Click *OK*.

9. Under *Redistribute*, enable *BGP* and set the metric value to *1*.
10. Click *Apply*.

To configure OSPF in the CLI:

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 10.11.201.110
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit "OSPF_dmz_network"
            set interface "dmz"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.11.201.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
    config redistribute "bgp"
        set status enable
        set metric 1
    end
end
```

Testing the configuration

To test this configuration, run the standard connectivity checks, and also make sure that routes are being passed between protocols as expected. Use the following checklist to help verify that the FortiGate is configured successfully:

1. Check that the FortiGate has established peering with BGP Peer 1 and Peer 2:

   ```
   # get router info bgp summary
   # get router info bgp neighbors
   ```

2. Check that the FortiGate has formed adjacency with OSPF neighbors:

   ```
   # get router info ospf status
   # get router info ospf neighbors
   ```

3. Check the routing table on the FortiGate to make sure that routes from both OSPF and BGP are included:

   ```
   # get router info routing-table all
   ```

4. Check devices in the OSPF network for internet connectivity and to confirm that routes redistributed from BGP are in their routing tables.
5. Check the routing table on Peer 2 to confirm that no routes from Peer 1 are included.
6. Check that the routes from the internal OSPF network are redistributed to Peer 1 and Peer 2.
7. Verify connectivity to the HTTP and email servers.

Troubleshooting BGP

There are some features in BGP that are used to deal with problems that may arise. Typically, the problems with a BGP network that has been configured involve routes going offline frequently. This is called route flap and causes problems for the routers using that route.

Clearing routing table entries

To see if a new route is being properly added to the routing table, you can clear all or some BGP neighbor connections (sessions) using the `execute router clear bgp` command.

For example, if you have 10 routes in the BGP routing table and you want to clear the specific route to IP address 10.10.10.1, enter the following CLI command:

```
# execute router clear bgp ip 10.10.10.1
```

To remove all routes for AS number 650001, enter the following CLI command:

```
# execute router clear bgp as 650001
```

Route flap

When routers or hardware along a route go offline and back online that is called a route flap. Flapping is the term that is used if these outages continue, especially if they occur frequently.

Route flap is a problem in BGP because each time a peer or a route goes down, all the peer routers that are connected to that out-of-service router advertise the change in their routing tables. This creates a lot of administration traffic on the network and the same traffic re-occurs when that router comes back online. If the problem is something like a faulty network cable that alternates online and offline every 10 seconds, there could easily be an overwhelming amount of routing updates sent out unnecessarily.

Another possible reason for route flap occurs with multiple FortiGate devices in HA mode. When an HA cluster fails over to the secondary unit, other routers on the network may see the HA cluster as being offline, resulting in route flap. While this doesn't occur often, or more than once at a time, it can still result in an interruption in traffic which is disruptive for network users. The easy solution for this problem is to increase the timers on the HA cluster, such as TTL timers, so they don't expire during the failover process. Also, configuring graceful restart on the HA cluster helps with a smooth failover.

The first method of dealing with route flap is to check your hardware. If a cable is loose or bad, it can easily be replaced and eliminate the problem. If an interface on the router is bad, either avoid using that interface or swap in a functioning router. If the power source is bad on a router, either replace the power supply or use a power conditioning backup power supply. These quick and easy fixes can save you from configuring more complex BGP options. However, if the route flap is from another source, configuring BGP to deal with the outages will ensure your network users uninterrupted service.

Some methods of dealing with route flap in BGP include:

- Holdtime timer on page 600
- Dampening on page 601
- Graceful restart on page 602
- BFD on page 603

Holdtime timer

The first step to troubleshooting a flapping route is the holdtime timer. This timer reduces how frequently a route going down will cause a routing update to be broadcast.

Once activated, the holdtime timer won't allow the FortiGate to accept any changes to that route for the duration of the timer. If the route flaps five times during the timer period, only the first outage will be recognized by the FortiGate. For the duration of the other outages, there won't be changes because the Fortigate is essentially treating this router as down. If the route is still flapping after the timer expires, it will start again.

If the route isn't flapping (for example, if it goes down, comes up, and stays back up) the timer will still count down and the route is ignored for the duration of the timer. In this situation, the route is seen as down longer than it really is but there will be only the one set of route updates. This isn't a problem in normal operation because updates are not frequent.

The potential for a route to be treated as down when it's really up can be viewed as a robustness feature. Typically, you don't want most of your traffic being routed over an unreliable route. So if there's route flap going on, it's best to avoid that route if you can. This is enforced by the holdtime timer.

How to configure the holdtime timer

There are three different route flapping situations that can occur: the route goes up and down frequently, the route goes down and back up once over a long period of time, or the route goes down and stays down for a long period of time. These can all be handled using the holdtime timer.

For example, your network has two routes that you want to set the timer for. One is your main route (to 10.12.101.4) that all of your Internet traffic goes through, and it can't be down for long if it's down. The second is a low speed connection to a custom network that's used infrequently (to 10.13.101.4). The timer for the main route should be fairly short (for example, 60 seconds). The second route timer can be left at the default, since it's rarely used.

To configure the BGP holdtime timer:

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit 10.12.101.4
            set holdtime-timer 60
            set keep-alive-timer 60
        next
        edit 10.13.101.4
            set holdtime-timer 180
            set keep-alive-timer 60
        next
    end
end
```

Dampening

Dampening is a method that's used to limit the amount of network problems due to flapping routes. With dampening, the flapping still occurs but the peer routers pay less and less attention to that route as it flaps more often. One flap doesn't start dampening, but the second flap starts a timer where the router won't use that route because it is considered unstable. If the route flaps again before the timer expires, the timer continues to increase. There's a period of time called the reachability half-life, after which a route flap will be suppressed for only half the time. This half-life comes into effect when a route has been stable for a while but not long enough to clear all the dampening completely. For the flapping route to be included in the routing table again, the suppression time must expire.

If the route flapping was temporary, you can clear the flapping or dampening from the FortiGate device's cache by using one of the `execute router clear bgp` CLI commands:

```
# execute router clear bgp dampening {<ip_address> | <ip_address/netmask>}
```

or

```
# execute router clear bgp flap-statistics {<ip_address> | <ip_address/netmask>}
```

For example, to remove route flap dampening information for the 10.10.0.0/16 subnet, enter the following CLI command:

```
# execute router clear bgp dampening 10.10.0.0/16
```

To configure BGP route dampening:

```
config router bgp
    set dampening {enable | disable}
    set dampening-max-suppress-time <minutes_integer>
    set dampening-reachability-half-life <minutes_integer>
    set dampening-reuse <reuse_integer>
    set dampening-route-map <routemap-name_str>
    set dampening-suppress <limit_integer>
    set dampening-unreachability-half-life <minutes_integer>
end
```

Graceful restart

BGP4 has the capability to gracefully restart.

In some situations, route flap is caused by routers that appear to be offline but the hardware portion of the router (control plane) can continue to function normally. One example of this is when some software is restarting or being upgraded but the hardware can still function normally.

Graceful restart is best used for these situations where routing won't be interrupted, but the router is unresponsive to routing update advertisements. Graceful restart doesn't have to be supported by all routers in a network, but the network will benefit when more routers support it.

FortiGate HA clusters can benefit from graceful restart. When a failover takes place, the HA cluster advertises that it is going offline, and will not appear as a route flap. It will also enable the new HA main unit to come online with an updated and usable routing table. If there is a flap, the HA cluster routing table will be out-of-date.

For example, the FortiGate is one of four BGP routers that send updates to each other. Any of those routers may support graceful starting. When a router plans to go offline, it sends a message to its neighbors stating how long it expects to be offline. This way, its neighboring routers don't remove it from their routing tables. However, if that router isn't back online when expected, the routers will mark it offline. This prevents routing flap and its associated problems.

FortiGate devices support both graceful restart of their own BGP routing software and neighboring BGP routers.

To configure BGP graceful restart:

```
config router bgp
    set graceful-restart {disable | enable}
    set graceful-restart-time <seconds_integer>
    set graceful-stalepath-time <seconds_integer>
    set graceful-update-delay <seconds_integer>
    config neighbor
        edit 10.12.101.4
            set capability-graceful-restart {enable | disable}
        next
    end
end
```

Before the restart, the router sends its peers a message to say it's restarting. The peers mark all the restarting router's routes as stale, but they continue to use the routes. The peers assume the router will restart, check its routes, and take

care of them, if needed, after the restart is complete. The peers also know what services the restarting router can maintain during its restart. After the router completes the restart, the router sends its peers a message to say it's done restarting.

To restart the router:

```
# execute router restart
```

Scheduled time offline

Graceful restart is a means for a router to advertise that it is going to have a scheduled shutdown for a very short period of time. When neighboring routers receive this notice, they will not remove that router from their routing table until after a set time elapses. During that time, if the router comes back online, everything continues to function as normal. If that router remains offline longer than expected, then the neighboring routers will update their routing tables as they assume that the router will be offline for a long time.

The following example demonstrates if you want to configure graceful restart on the FortiGate where you expect the FortiGate to be offline for no more than two minutes, and after three minutes the BGP network should consider the FortiGate to be offline.

To configure graceful restart time settings:

```
config router bgp
    set graceful-restart enable
    set graceful-restart-time 120
    set graceful-stalepath-time 180
end
```

BFD

Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) is a protocol that you can use to quickly locate hardware failures in the network. Routers running BFD communicate with each other and if a timer runs out on a connection then that router is declared down. BFD then communicates this information to the routing protocol and the routing information is updated.

For more information about BFD, see BFD on page 604.

BGP path selection process

Sometimes the FortiGate may receive multiple BGP paths from neighbors and must decide which is the best path to take. The following criteria are used to determine the best path.

Consider only routes with no AS loops and a valid next hop, and then:

1. Prefer the highest weight (this attribute is local to the FortiGate).
2. Prefer the highest local preference (applicable within AS).
3. Prefer the route originated by the local router (next hop = 0.0.0.0).
4. Prefer the shortest AS path.
5. Prefer the lowest origin code (IGP > EGP > incomplete).
6. Prefer the lowest MED (exchanged between autonomous systems).
7. Prefer the EBGP path over IBGP path.
8. Prefer the path through the closest IGP neighbor.
9. Prefer the oldest route for EBGP paths.

10. Prefer the path with the lowest neighbor BGP router ID.
11. Prefer the path with the lowest neighbor IP address.

BFD

Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) is a protocol that you can use to quickly locate hardware failures in the network. Routers running BFD send packets to each other at a negotiated rate. If packets from a BFD-enabled router fail to arrive, that router is declared to be down. BFD communicates this information to the associated routing protocols and the routing information is updated. It helps detect one way device failure and is used for fast convergence of routing protocols.

BFD can run on an entire FortiGate, selected interfaces, or on a protocol, such as BGP, for all configured interfaces. The configuration hierarchy allows each lower level to override the BFD setting of the upper level. For example, if you enable BFD for an entire FortiGate, you can disable BFD for an interface or for BGP.



Echo mode and authentication are not supported for BFD on the FortiGate.

BFD can be enabled per device, VDOM, or interface. Once enabled, a BFD neighbor should be defined. Finally, enable BFD on a route or routing protocol.

To configure BFD for an entire FortiGate:

```
config system settings
    set bfd {enable | disable}
    set bfd-desired-min-tx <ms>
    set bfd-required-min-rx <ms>
    set bfd-detect-mult <multiplier>
    set bfd-dont-enforce-src-port {enable | disable}
end
```

To configure BFD for an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set bfd {global | enable | disable}
        set bfd-desired-min-tx <ms>
        set bfd-required-min-rx <ms>
        set bfd-detect-mult <multiplier>
    next
end
```

To configure BFD neighbors:

```
config router {bfd | bfd6}
    config neighbor
        edit <IP-address>
            set interface <interface-name>
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

To show BFD neighbors:

```
# get router {info | info6} bfd neighbor
```

To show BFD requests:

```
# get router {info | info6} bfd requests
```

BFD and static routes

BFD for static routes allows you to configure routing failover based on remote path failure detection. BFD removes a static route from the routing table if the FortiGate can't reach the route's destination and returns the route to the routing table if the route's destination is restored.

For example, you can add two static routes with BFD enabled. If one of the routes has a higher priority, all matching traffic uses that route. If BFD determines that the link to the gateway of the route with the higher priority is down, the higher priority route is removed from the routing table and all matching traffic uses the lower priority route. If the link to the gateway for the higher priority route comes back up, BFD adds the route back into the routing table and all matching traffic switches to use the higher priority route.

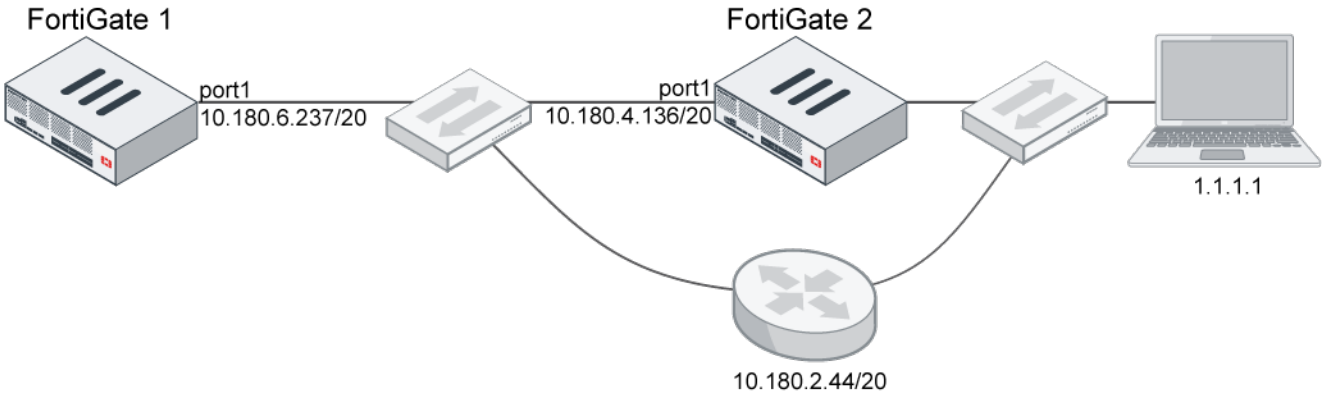
You can configure BFD for IPv4 and IPv6 static routes.

To configure BFD for static routes:

```
config router {static | static6}
    edit <sequence-number>
        set bfd {enable | disable}
        set device <gateway-out-interface>
    next
end
```

Example

The following example demonstrates the configuration of static routes between two FortiGates. There is a host behind FortiGate 2 with an IP address of 1.1.1.1. FortiGate 1 has multiple paths to reach the host.



To configure static routes:

1. Configure FortiGate 1:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.180.6.237 255.255.240.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set bfd enable
    next
end
config router bfd
    config neighbor
        edit 10.180.4.136
            set interface "port1"
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure FortiGate 2:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.180.4.136 255.255.240.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set bfd enable
    next
end
config router bfd
    config neighbor
        edit 10.180.6.237
            set interface "port1"
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure two static routes:

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.255
        set gateway 10.180.4.136
        set device "port1"
        set bfd enable
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.255
        set gateway 10.180.2.44
        set distance 20
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

4. Confirm that BFD neighborship is established:

```
# get router info bfd neighbor
OurAddress      NeighAddress    State       Interface       LDesc/RDesc
10.180.6.237    10.180.4.136    UP          port1           1/1
```

5. Review the active route in the routing table:

```
# get router info routing-table all
S       1.1.1.1/32 [10/0] via 10.180.4.136, port1
C       10.180.0.0/20 is directly connected, port1
```



The route with the lower distance is preferred in the routing table.

If port1 on FortiGate 2 goes down or FortiGate 1 is unable to reach 10.180.4.126, the BFD neighborship will go down.

```
# get router info bfd neighbor
OurAddress      NeighAddress    State       Interface       LDesc/RDesc
10.180.6.237    10.180.4.136    DOWN        port1           1/1
```

With BFD neighborship down, the FortiGate is unable to reach 1.1.1.1/32 through gateway 10.180.4.136. The routing table will be updated so that the route through gateway 10.180.2.44 is active in the routing table.

```
# get router info routing-table all
S       1.1.1.1/32 [20/0] via 10.180.2.44, port1
C       10.180.0.0/20 is directly connected, port1
```

BFD removes a static route from the routing table if the FortiGate cannot reach the route's destination. The static route will be returned to the routing table is the route's destination is restored.

BFD and OSPF

You can configure BFD for Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) on a FortiGate. FortiGate supports BFD for OSPF for both IPv4 and IPv6. BFD must be configured globally and per interface.

To configure BFD for OSPF:

```
config router {ospf | ospf6}
    set bfd {enable | disable}
end
```

To enable BFD on a specific OSPF interface:

```
config router {ospf | ospf6}
    set bfd enable
    config {ospf-interface | ospf6-interface}
        edit <ID>
            set bfd {global | enable | disable}
            set interface <interface-name>
            set area-id <IP address>
        next
    end
end
```

If BFD is configured when OSPF is not, no BFD packets will be sent. When both BFD and OSFP are configured, the neighbors for both will be the same. Use the following commands to confirm that the neighbor IP addresses match:

```
# get router info ospf neighbor
# get router info bfd neighbor
```

BFD and BGP

While BGP can detect route failures, BFD can be configured to detect these failures more quickly, which allows for faster responses and improved convergence. This can be balanced with the bandwidth BFD uses in its frequent route checking.

The `config router bgp` commands allow you to set the addresses of the neighbor units that are also running BFD. Both units must be configured with BFD in order to use it.

To configure BFD for BGP:

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit <neighbor-IP-address>
            set bfd {enable | disable}
            set remote-as <integer>
        next
    end
end
```

Troubleshooting BFD

You can troubleshoot BFD using the following commands:

```
# get router {info | info6} bfd neighbor
# get router {info | info6} bfd requests
# diagnose sniffer packet any <filter> <sniffer count>
# diagnose debug application bfdd <debug level>
# diagnose debug enable
```

Multicast

The following topics include information about multicast:

- Multicast routing and PIM support on page 608
- Configuring multicast forwarding on page 609

Multicast routing and PIM support

Multicasting (also called IP multicasting) consists of using a single multicast source to send data to many receivers. Multicasting can be used to send data to many receivers simultaneously while conserving bandwidth and reducing network traffic. Multicasting can be used for one-way delivery of media streams to multiple receivers and for one-way

data transmission for news feeds, financial information, and so on. Many dynamic routing protocols such as RIPv2, OSPF, and EIGRP use multicasting to share hello packets and routing information.

A FortiGate can operate as a Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) version 2 router. FortiGates support PIM sparse mode (RFC 4601) and PIM dense mode (RFC 3973), and can service multicast servers or receivers on the network segment to which a FortiGate interface is connected. Multicast routing is not supported in transparent mode.

To support PIM communications, the sending and receiving applications, and all connecting PIM routers in between, must be enabled with PIM version 2. PIM can use static routes, RIP, OSPF, or BGP to forward multicast packets to their destinations. To enable source-to-destination packet delivery, sparse mode or dense mode must be enabled on the PIM router interfaces. Sparse mode routers cannot send multicast messages to dense mode routers. If the FortiGate is located between a source and a PIM router, between two PIM routers, or is connected directly to a receiver, you must manually create a multicast policy to pass encapsulated (multicast) packets or decapsulated data (IP traffic) between the source and destination.

PIM domains

A PIM domain is a logical area comprising a number of contiguous networks. The domain contains at least one bootstrap router (BSR), and if sparse mode is enabled, a number of rendezvous points (RPs) and designated routers (DRs). When PIM is enabled, the FortiGate can perform any of these functions at any time as configured.

A PIM domain can be configured in the GUI by going to *Network* > *Multicast*, or in the CLI using `config router multicast`. Note that PIM version 2 must be enabled on all participating routers between the source and receivers. Use `config router multicast` to set the global operating parameters.

When PIM is enabled, the FortiGate allocates memory to manage mapping information. The FortiGate communicates with neighboring PIM routers to acquire mapping information and, if required, processes the multicast traffic associated with specific multicast groups.

Instead of sending multiple copies of generated IP traffic to more than one specific IP destination address, PIM-enabled routers encapsulate the data and use a Class D multicast group address (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) to forward multicast packets to multiple destinations. A single stream of data can be sent because one destination address is used. Client applications receive multicast data by requesting that the traffic destined for a certain multicast group address be delivered to them.

Configuring multicast forwarding

There is sometimes confusion between the terms forwarding and routing. These two functions should not take place at the same time. Multicast forwarding should be enabled when the FortiGate is in NAT mode and you want to forward multicast packets between multicast routers and receivers. However, this function should not be enabled when the FortiGate itself is operating as a multicast router, or has an applicable routing protocol that uses multicast.

Multicast forwarding is not supported on enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces. To use multicast with enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces, use PIM (Multicast routing and PIM support on page 608).

There are two steps to configure multicast forwarding:

1. Enabling multicast forwarding on page 610
2. Configuring multicast policies on page 610

Enabling multicast forwarding

Multicast forwarding is enabled by default. If a FortiGate is operating in transparent mode, adding a multicast policy enables multicast forwarding. In NAT mode you must use the `multicast-forward` setting to enable or disable multicast forwarding.

Multicast forwarding in NAT mode

When `multicast-forward` is enabled, the FortiGate forwards any multicast IP packets in which the TTL is 2 or higher to all interfaces and VLAN interfaces, except the receiving interface. The TTL in the IP header will be reduced by 1. Even though the multicast packets are forwarded to all interfaces, you must add multicast policies to allow multicast packets through the FortiGate.

To enable multicast forwarding in NAT mode:

```
config system settings
    set multicast-forward enable
end
```

Prevent the TTL for forwarded packets from being changed

You can use the `multicast-ttl-notchange` option so that the FortiGate does not increase the TTL value for forwarded multicast packets. Use this option only if packets are expiring before reaching the multicast router.

To prevent the TTL for forwarded packets from being changed:

```
config system settings
    set multicast-ttl-notchange enable
end
```

Disable multicast traffic from passing through the FortiGate without a policy check in transparent mode

In transparent mode, the FortiGate does not forward frames with multicast destination addresses. The FortiGate should not interfere with the multicast traffic used by routing protocols, streaming media, or other multicast communication. To avoid any issues during transmission, you can disable `multicast-skip-policy` and configure multicast security policies.

To disable multicast traffic from passing through the FortiGate without a policy check in transparent mode:

```
config system settings
    set multicast-skip-policy disable
end
```

Configuring multicast policies

Multicast packets require multicast policies to allow packets to pass from one interface to another. Similar to firewall policies, in a multicast policy you specify the source and destination interfaces, and the allowed address ranges for the

source and destination addresses of the packets. You can also use multicast policies to configure source NAT and destination NAT for multicast packets.

Keep the following in mind when configuring multicast policies:

- The matched forwarded (outgoing) IP multicast source IP address is changed to the configured IP address.
- The `snat` setting is optional. Use it when SNAT is needed.



IPv4 and IPv6 multicast policies can be configured in the GUI. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*, and enable *Multicast Policy* and *IPv6*.

Sample basic policy

In this basic policy, multicast packets received on an interface are flooded unconditionally to all interfaces on the forwarding domain, except the incoming interface.

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

The destination address (`dstaddr`) is a multicast address object. The `all` option corresponds to all multicast addresses in the range 224.0.0.0-239.255.255.255.

Sample policy with specific source and destination interfaces

This multicast policy only applies to the source port `wan1` and the destination port `internal`.

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

Sample policy with specific source address object

In this policy, packets are allowed to flow from `wan1` to `internal`, and sourced by the address 172.20.120.129, which is represented by the `example_addr-1` address object.

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "example_addr-1"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

Sample detailed policy

This policy accepts multicast packets that are sent from a PC with IP address 192.168.5.18 to destination address range 239.168.4.0-255. The policy allows the multicast packets to enter the `internal` interface and then exit the `external` interface. When the packets leave the external interface, their source address is translated to 192.168.18.10.

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.5.18"
        set subnet 192.168.5.18 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

```
config firewall multicast-address
    edit "239.168.4.0"
        set start-ip 239.168.4.0
        set end-ip 239.168.4.255
    next
end
```

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "external"
        set srcaddr "192.168.5.18"
        set dstaddr "239.168.4.0"
        set snat enable
        set snat-ip 192.168.18.10
    next
end
```



To configure multicast policies in the GUI, enable *Multicast Policy* in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.

Using multi VDOM mode

When using multi VDOM mode, it is important to avoid causing a multicast network loop by creating an all-to-all multicast policy. By default, on models that support NPU virtual links, changing the `vdom-mode` to `multi-vdom` will create a pair of npu0_vlink0 and npu0_vlink1 interfaces in the same root VDOM. By virtue of the all-to-all multicast policy and the fact the npu0_vlink interfaces are virtually connected, it forms a multicast network loop.

Therefore, when using multi VDOM mode:

1. Ensure there is no existing all-to-all multicast policy before changing to multi VDOM mode.
2. If an all-to-all multicast policy must be defined, ensure that no two connected interfaces (such as npu0_vlink0 and npu0_vlink1) belong in the same VDOM.

This configuration will result in a multicast loop:

```
config system global
    set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
```

```
        set logtraffic enable
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
show system interface
config system interface
    edit "npu0_vlink0"
        set vdom "root"
        set type physical
    next
    edit "npu0_vlink1"
        set vdom "root"
        set type physical
    next
end
```

FortiExtender

The following topics include information about FortiExtender:

- Adding a FortiExtender on page 613
- Data plan profiles on page 615



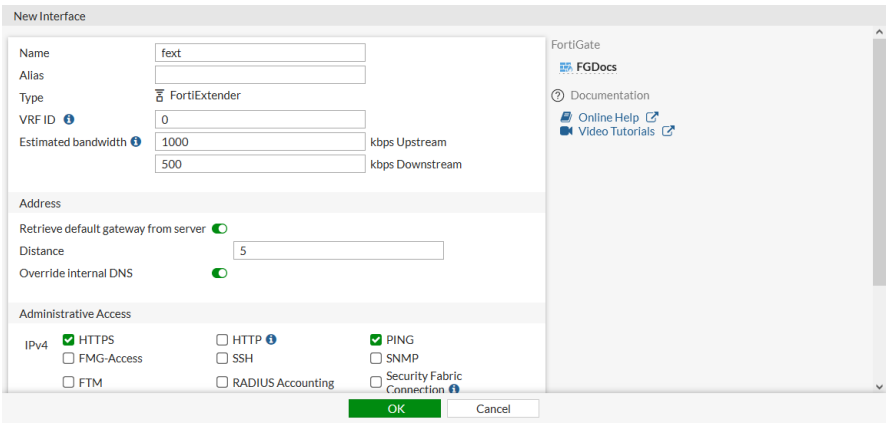
For information about configuring FortiExtender, see the FortiExtender Admin Guide (FGT-Managed) and Admin Guide (Standalone).

Adding a FortiExtender

To add a FortiExtender to the FortiGate, create a virtual FortiExtender interface, then add a FortiExtender and assign the interface to the modem. Like other interface types, the FortiExtender interface can be used in static routes, SD-WAN (see Manage dual FortiExtender devices), policies, and other functions.

To create a virtual FortiExtender interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and click *Create New* > *FortiExtender*.
2. Enter a name for the interface.
3. Configure the remaining settings as needed. See Interface settings on page 403 for more details.

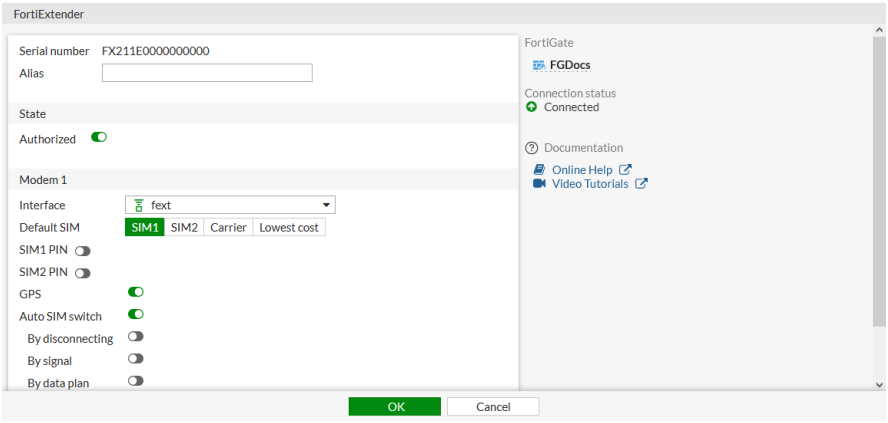


4. Click *OK*.

To edit a FortiExtender in the GUI:

FortiExtenders can only be manually added in the CLI.

1. Go to *Network* > *FortiExtender* and edit the FortiExtender.
2. Adjust the settings as required. See the FortiExtender Administration Guide for more information.



3. Click *OK*.
4. In the extenders list, right-click on the FortiExtender and select *Diagnostics and Tools* to review the modem and SIM status, and other details about the FortiExtender.

To create a virtual FortiExtender interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "fext"
        set vdom "root"
        set mode dhcp
        set allowaccess ping https speed-test
        set type fext-wan
        set estimated-upstream-bandwidth 1000
        set estimated-downstream-bandwidth 500
    next
end
```

To configure the FortiExtender in the CLI:

```
config extender-controller extender
    edit "FX211E0000000000"
        set id "FX211E0000000000"
        set authorized enable
        config modem1
            set ifname "fext"
        end
    next
end
```

To verify the modem settings in the CLI:

```
get extender modem-status FX211E0000000000 1
Modem 0:
    physical_port:       2-1.2
    manufacture:         Sierra Wireless, Incorporated
    product:             Sierra Wireless, Incorporated
    ....
```



For information about configuring FortiExtender, see the FortiExtender Admin Guide (FGT-Managed) and Admin Guide (Standalone).

Data plan profiles

The data plan profile allows users to configure connectivity settings based on modem, carrier, slot, SIM ID, or cost. Users can also specify billing details related to the data plan, as well as smart switch thresholds to define when to switch over to a different SIM.

A FortiExtender has multiple SIM card slots. Certain models also have multiple modems. Essentially, each modem can make one connection with one of the two SIMs associated with the modem. The data plan profile allows users to create general configurations that work across multiple SIMs, or specific profiles that work on a specific SIM. First, the data plan matches the criteria based on the modem ID and type.

Syntax

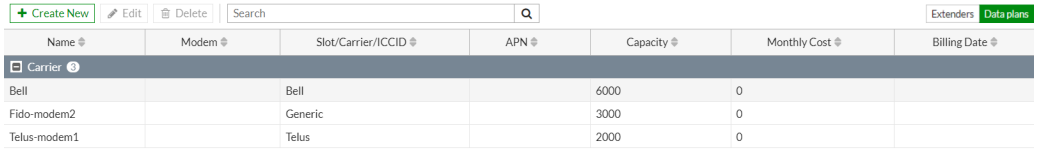
```
config extender-controller dataplan
    edit <name>
        set modem-id {modem1 | modem2 | all}
        set type {carrier | slot | iccid | generic}
    next
end
```

Variable	Description
set modem-id (*Available on* in the GUI)	Select the match criterion based on the modem: • `modem1`: Use modem 1. • `modem2`: Use modem 2. • `all`: Use both modems (default).

Variable	Description
set type (*Type* in the GUI)	Select the match criterion based on the type: `carrier`: Assign by SIM carrier. `slot`: Assign to SIM slot 1 or 2. `iccid`: Assign to a specific SIM by ICCID. `generic`: Compatible with any SIM (default). Assigned if no other data plan matches the chosen SIM.

When a modem connects to the network through a SIM, it will read the SIM information and try to match a data plan based on the modem ID and type. It then uses the data plan connectivity settings to connect (authentication, PDN type, preferred subnet, APN, private network). The billing details (such as the monthly data limit) and smart switch threshold settings define how the SIMs will be switched.

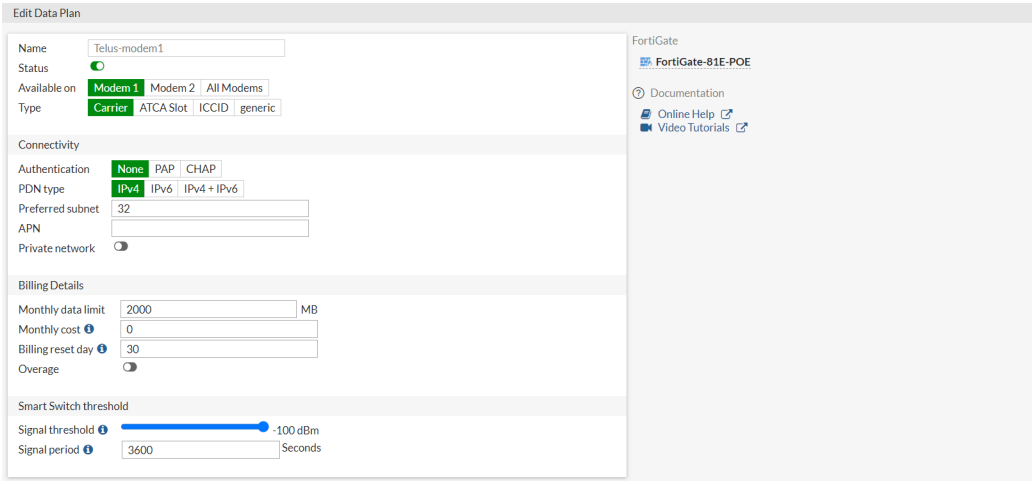
Multiple data plans can be configured:



Once the FortiExtender is controlled by the FortiGate, the data plan is sent to the FortiExtender. The format is identical between devices.

To configure a data plan in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *FortiExtender* and in the top menu, click *Data plans*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name and ensure that the *Status* is enabled.
4. Set *Available on* to *All Modems* or *Modem 1*.
5. Set the plan *Type*. If *Carrier* is selected, enter the carrier name. If *ICCID* is selected, enter the ICCID number.
6. Configure the other settings as needed.



7. Click *OK*.

To configure a data plan in the CLI:

```
config extender-controller dataplan
    edit "Telus-modem1"
        set modem-id modem1
        set type carrier
        set carrier "Telus"
        set capacity 2000
        set billing-date 30
    next
    edit "Fido-modem2"
        set modem-id modem2
        set type carrier
        set carrier "Generic"
        set capacity 3000
    next
    edit "Bell"
        set type carrier
        set carrier "Bell"
        set APN "pda.bell.ca"
        set capacity 6000
    next
end
```

Direct IP support for LTE/4G

Direct IP is a public IP address that is assigned to a computing device, which allows the device to directly access the internet.

When an LTE modem is enabled in FortiOS, a DHCP interface is created. As a result, the FortiGate can acquire direct IP (which includes IP, DNS, and gateway) from the LTE network carrier.

Since some LTE modems require users to input the access point name (APN) for the LTE network, the LTE modem configuration allows you to set the APN.



LTE modems can only be enabled by using the CLI.

To enable direct IP support using the CLI:

1. Enable the LTE modem:

```
config system lte-modem
  set status enable
end
```

2. Check that the LTE interface was created:

```
config system interface
  edit "wwan"
    set vdom "root"
```

```
    set mode dhcp
    set status down
    set distance 1
    set type physical
    set snmp-index 23
  next
end
```

Shortly after the LTE modem joins its carrier network, `wwan` is enabled and granted direct IP:

```
# config system interface
(interface) # edit wwan
(wwan) # get
name                : wwan
....
ip                  : 100.112.75.43 255.255.255.248
....
status              : up
....
defaultgw           : enable
DHCP Gateway        : 100.112.75.41
Lease Expires       : Thu Feb 21 19:33:27 2019
dns-server-override : enable
Acquired DNS1       : 184.151.118.254
Acquired DNS2       : 70.28.245.227
....
```

PCs can reach the internet via the following firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
....
  edit 5
    set name "LTE"
    set srcintf "port9"
    set dstintf "wwan"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set utm-status enable
    set fsso disable
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

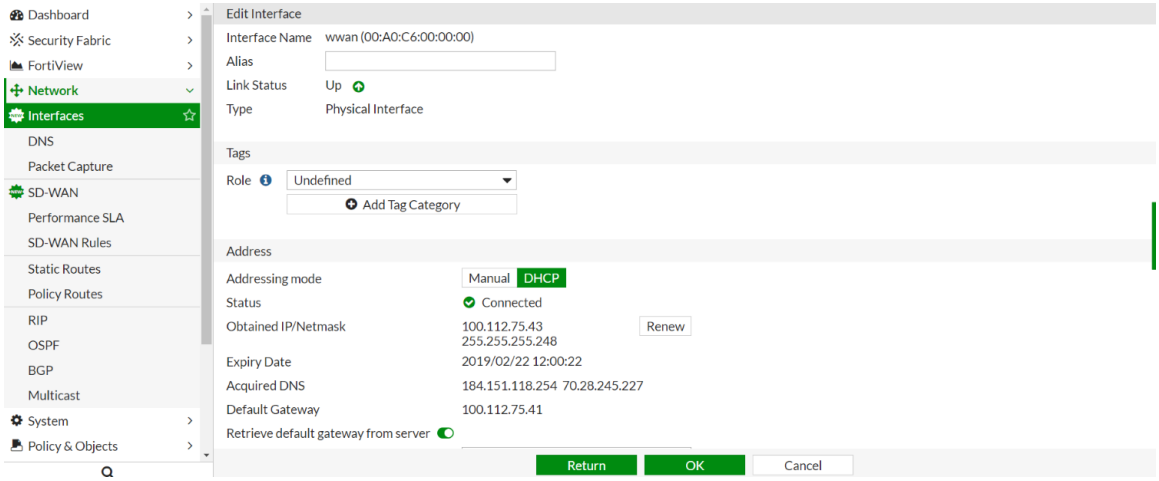
Sample LTE interface

When an LTE modem is enabled, you can view the LTE interface in the GUI and check the acquired IP, DNS, and gateway.

To view the LTE interface in the GUI:

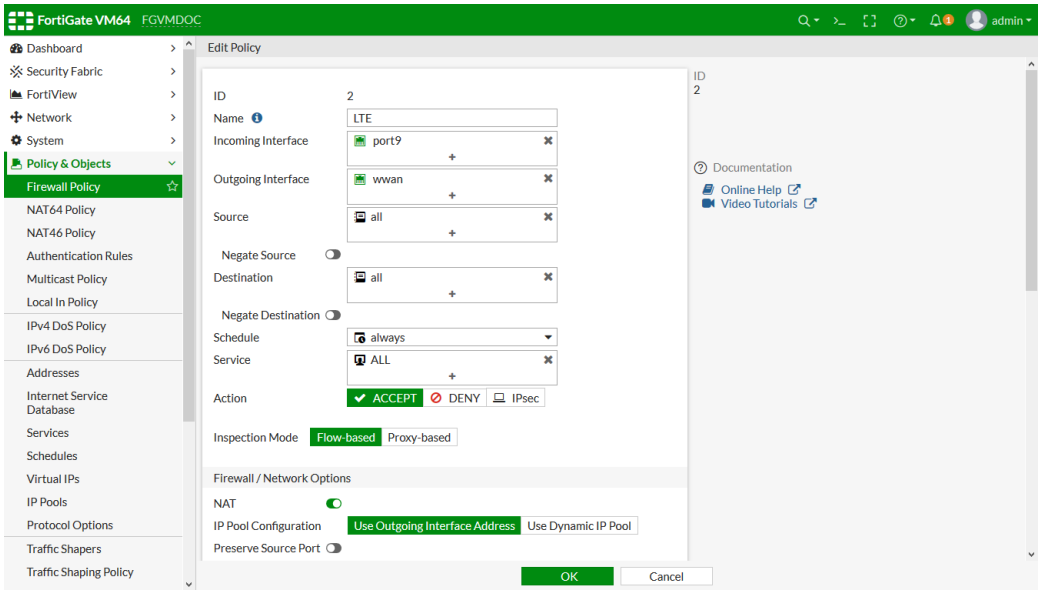
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Double-click the LTE interface to view the properties.

3. Look in the *Address* section to view the:
   a. *Obtained IP*
   b. *Acquired DNS*
   c. *Default Gateway*
4. Click *Return*.



To configure the firewall policy that uses the LTE interface:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Double-click the LTE policy. The *Edit Policy* pane opens.
3. In the *Outgoing Interface* field, select the interface (`wwan` in this example).
4. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.



5. Click *OK*.

Limitations

- Most LTE modems have a preset APN in their SIM card. Therefore, the APN does not need to be set in the FortiOS configuration. In cases where the internet cannot be accessed, consult with your carrier and set the APN in the LTE modem configuration (for example, inet.bell.ca):

```
config system lte-modem
  set status enable
  set apn "inet.bell.ca"
end
```

- Some models, such as the FortiGate 30E-3G4G, have built-in LTE modems. In this scenario, the LTE modem is enabled by default. The firewall policy via the LTE interface is also created by default. Once you plug in a SIM card, your network devices can connect to the internet.

  Sample FortiGate 30E-3G4G default configuration:

```
config system lte-modem
  set status enable
  set extra-init ''
  set manual-handover disable
  set force-wireless-profile 0
  set authtype none
  set apn ''
  set modem-port 255
  set network-type auto
  set auto-connect disable
  set gpsd-enabled disable
  set data-usage-tracking disable
  set gps-port 255
end

config firewall policy
....
  edit 3
    set srcintf "internal"
    set dstintf "wwan"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

LLDP reception

Natively, device detection can scan LLDP as a source for device identification. However, the FortiGate does not read or store the full information. Enabling LLDP reception allows the FortiGate to receive and store LLDP messages, learn about active neighbors, and makes the LLDP information available via the CLI, REST API, and SNMP.

You will need to enable `device-identification` at the interface level, and then `lldp-reception` can be enabled on three levels: globally, per VDOM, or per interface.

To configure device identification on an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <port>
        set device-identification enable
    next
end
```

To configure LLDP reception globally:

```
config system global
    set lldp-reception enable
end
```

To configure LLDP reception per VDOM:

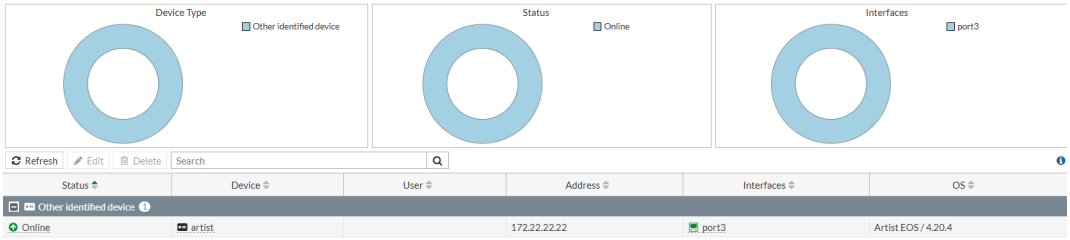
```
config system setting
    set lldp-reception enable
end
```

To configure LLDP reception per interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <port>
        set lldp-reception enable
    next
end
```

To view the LLDP information in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To view the received LLDP information in the CLI:

```
# diagnose user device list
    hosts
      vd root/0 44:0a:a0:0a:0a:0a gen 3 req S/2
        created 10290s gen 1 seen 0s port3 gen 1
        ip 172.22.22.22 src lldp
        type 20 'Other Network Device' src lldp id 155 gen 2
        os 'Artist EOS ' version '4.20.4' src lldp id 155
        host 'artist' src lldp
```

To view additional information about LLDP neighbors and ports:

```
# diagnose lldprx neighbor {summary | details | clear}
# diagnose lldprx port {details | summary | neighbor | filter}
# diagnose lldprx port neighbor {summary | details}
```

Note that the port index in the output corresponds to the port index from the following command:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port2 port3 | grep index
      if=port2 family=00 type=1 index=4 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
      if=port3 family=00 type=1 index=5 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
```

To view the received LLDP information in the REST API:


```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "mac":"90:9c:9c:c9:c9:90",
      "chassis_id":"90:9C:9C:C9:C9:90",
      "port":19,
      "port_id":"port12",
      "port_desc":"port12",
      "system_name":"S124DN3W00000000",
      "system_desc":"FortiSwitch-124D v3.6.6,build0416,180515 (GA)",
      "ttl":120,
      "addresses":[
        {
          "type":"ipv4",
          "address":"192.168.1.99"
        }
      ]
    }
  ],
  "vdom":"root",
  "path":"network",
  "name":"lldp",
  "action":"neighbors",
  "status":"success",
  "serial":"FG201E4Q00000000",
  "version":"v6.2.0",
  "build":866
}
```

```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "name":"port1",
      "rx":320,
      "neighbors":1
    }
  ],
  "vdom":"root",
  "path":"network",
  "name":"lldp",
```

```
  "action":"ports",
  "mkey":"port1",
  "status":"success",
  "serial":"FG201E4Q00000000",
  "version":"v6.2.0",
  "build":866
}
```


Virtual routing and forwarding

Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) is used to divide the FortiGate's routing functionality (layer 3), including interfaces, routes, and forwarding tables, into separate units. Packets are only forwarded between interfaces that have the same VRF.

VDOMs divide the FortiGate into two or more complete and independent virtual units that include all FortiGate functions. VDOMs can be used for routing segmentation, but that should not be the only reason to implement them when a less complex solution (VRFs) can be used. VDOMs also support administration boundaries, but VRFs do not.

Up to 32 VRFs can be configured in each VDOM, but only ten VDOMs can be configured by default on a FortiGate (more VDOMs can be configured on larger devices with additional licenses).

- Implementing VRF on page 623
- VRF routing support on page 625
- Route leaking between VRFs on page 629
- Route leaking between multiple VRFs on page 631
- IBGP and EBGP support in VRF on page 641

Implementing VRF

VRFs are always enabled and, by default, all routing is done in VRF 0. To use additional VRFs, assign a VRF ID to an interface. All routes relating to that interface are isolated to that VRF specific routing table. Interfaces in one VRF cannot reach interfaces in a different VRF.

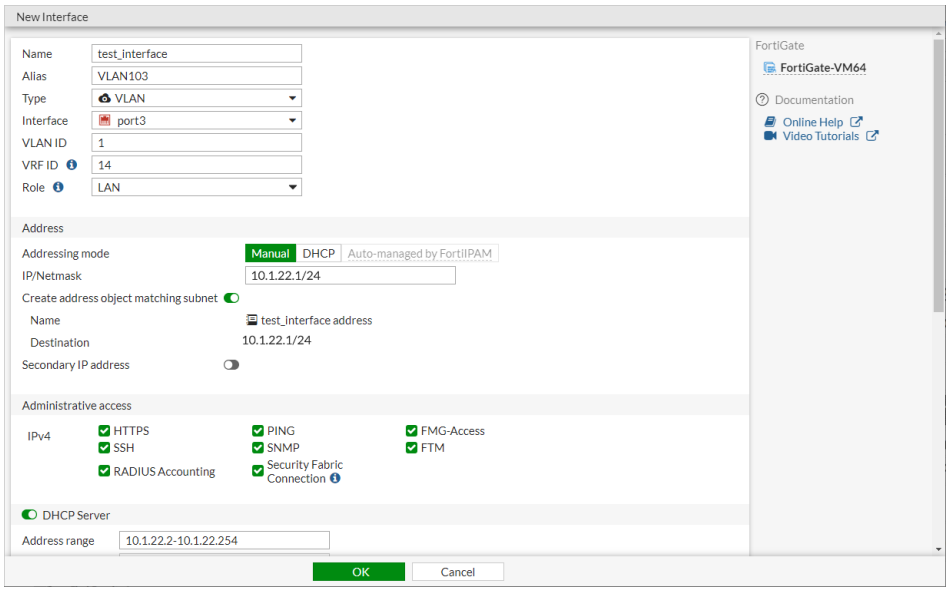
If some traffic does have to pass between VRFs, route leaking can be used. See Route leaking between VRFs on page 629.



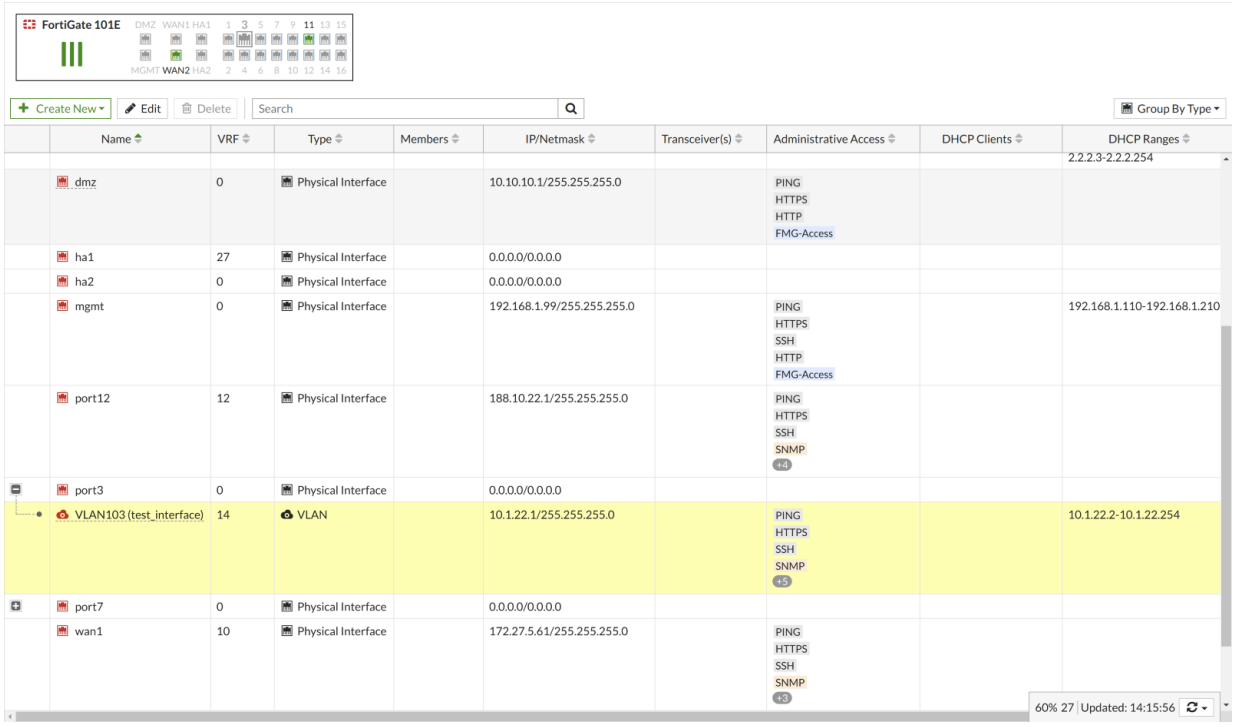
Enable *Advanced Routing* in *System* > *Feature Visibility* to configure VRFs.

To configure a VRF ID on an interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and click *Create New* > *Interface*.
2. Enter a value in the VRF ID field.
3. Configure the other settings as needed.



4. Click *OK*.
5. To add the VRF column in the interface table, click the gear icon, select *VRF*, and click *Apply*.

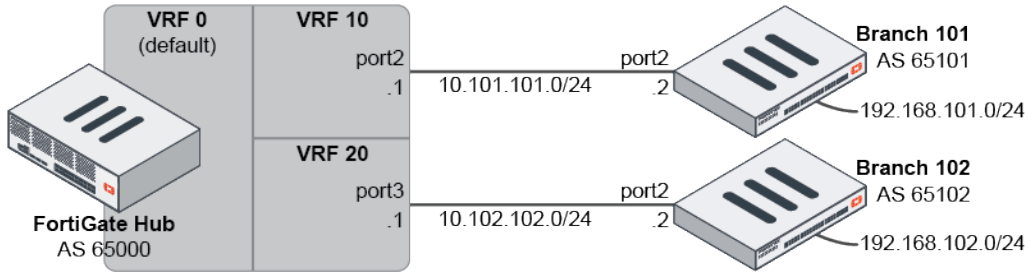


To configure a VRF ID on an interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit test_interface
        ...
        set vrf 14
    next
end
```

VRF routing support

VRF supports static routing, OSPF, and BGP. Other routing protocols require using VDOMs.



BGP

In this example, BGP is used to update the VRF that it is neighbors with.

The hub is configured with two neighbors connected to two interfaces. The branches are configured to match the hub, with branch networks configured to redistribute into BGP.

Policies must be created on the hub and branches to allow traffic between them.

To configure the hub:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65000
    config neighbor
        edit "10.101.101.2"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set interface "port2"
            set remote-as 65101
            set update-source "port2"
        next
        edit "10.102.102.2"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set interface "port3"
            set remote-as 65102
            set update-source "port3"
        next
    end
end
```

To configure branch 101:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65101
    config neighbor
        edit "10.101.101.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set interface "port2"
            set remote-as 65000
            set update-source "port2"
        next
```

```
    end
    config redistribute connected
        set status enable
    end
end
```

To configure branch 102:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65102
    config neighbor
        edit "10.102.102.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set interface "port2"
            set remote-as 65000
            set update-source "port2"
        next
    end
    config redistribute connected
        set status enable
    end
end
```

To verify the BGP neighbors and check the routing table on the hub:

```
# get router info bgp summary
BGP router identifier 192.168.0.1, local AS number 65000
BGP table version is 2
2 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor               V       AS              MsgRcvd MsgSent TblVer  InQ     OutQ Up/Down    State/Pf
10.101.101.2   4       65101           4               4               2               0       0
10.102.102.2   4       65102           3               3               1               0       0

Total number of neighbors 2
```

```
# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes (…)
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 192.168.0.254, port1
C       10.101.101.0/24 is directly connected, port2
C       10.102.102.0/24 is directly connected, port3
C       192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, port1
B       192.168.101.0/24 [20/0] via 10.101.101.2, port2, 00:01:25
B       192.168.102.0/24 [20/0] via 10.102.102.2, port3, 00:00:50
```

To configure VRF on the hub:

1. Put the interfaces into VRF:

```
config system interface
    edit port2
        set vrf 10
    next
    edit port3
```

```
        set vrf 20
    next
end
```

2. Restart the router to reconstruct the routing tables:

```
# execute router restart
```

3. Check the routing tables:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes (…)
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 192.168.0.254, port1
C       192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, port1

Routing table for VRF=10
C       10.101.101.0/24 is directly connected, port2
B       192.168.101.0/24 [20/0] via 10.101.101.2, port2, 00:02:25

Routing table for VRF=20
C       10.102.102.0/24 is directly connected, port3
B       192.168.102.0/24 [20/0] via 10.102.102.2, port2, 00:01:50
```

4. Check the BGP summary:

```
# get router info bgp summary

VRF 10 BGP router identifier 10.101.101.1, local AS number 65000
BGP table version is 1
2 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor               V       AS              MsgRcvd MsgSent TblVer  InQ     OutQ Up/Down    State
10.101.101.2   4       65101           4               4               2               0       0

Total number of neighbors 1

VRF 10 BGP router identifier 10.101.101.1, local AS number 65000
BGP table version is 1
2 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor               V       AS              MsgRcvd MsgSent TblVer  InQ     OutQ Up/Down    State
10.102.102.2   4       65102           3               3               1               0       0

Total number of neighbors 1
```

OSPF

OSPF routes in VRFs work the same as BGP: the interface that OSPF is using is added to the VRF.

To configure the hub:

1. Configure OSPF:

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit Branch101
            set interface "port2"
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
        edit Branch102
            set dead-interval 40
            set hello-interval 10
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 0
            set prefix 10.101.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 0
            set prefix 10.102.102.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 0
            set prefix 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

2. Put the interfaces into VRF:

```
config system interface
    edit port2
        set vrf 10
    next
    edit port3
        set vrf 20
    next
end
```

To configure branch 101:

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 101.101.101.101
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit HUB
            set interface port2
            set dead-interval 40
```

```
            set hello-interval 10
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 0
            set prefix 10.101.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 0
            set prefix 192.168.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

To check the routing table and OSPF summary:

```
# get router info routing-table ospf
# get router info ospf interface
```

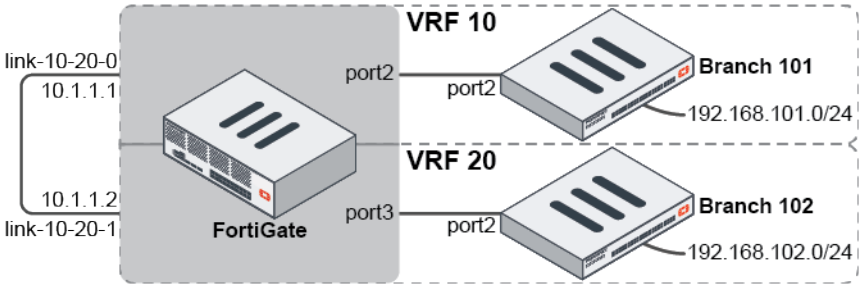
Route leaking between VRFs

Route leaking allows you to configure communication between VRFs. If route leaking is not configured, then the VRFs are isolated. This example shows route leaking with BGP using virtual inter-VDOM links.

In this example, a hub FortiGate forms BGP neighbors with two branches. It learns the networks 192.168.101.0/24 and 192.168.102.0/24 from the neighbors and separates them into VRF 10 and VRF 20.

To leak the learned routes to each other, an inter-VDOM link (IVL) is formed. An IVL normally bridges two VDOMs, but in this case the links reside on the same VDOM and are used to bridge the two VRFs. NPU links could also be used on models that support it to deliver better performance.

VRF 10 has a leaked route to 192.168.102.0/24 on IVL *link-10-20-0*, and VRF 20 has a leaked route to 192.168.101.0/24 on IVL *link-10-20-1*,



To configure route leaking:

1. Configure inter-VDOM links:

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        edit link-10-20-
        next
    end
    config system interface
        edit link-10-20-0
```

```
            set vdom “root”
            set vrf 10
            set ip 10.1.1.1/30
        next
        edit link-10-20-1
            set vdom “root”
            set vrf 20
            set ip 10.1.1.2/30
        next
    end
end
```

2. Create prefix lists:

   These object define the subnet and mask that are leaked.

```
config router prefix-list
    edit VRF10_Route
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.101.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
    edit VRF20_Route
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.102.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Create the route map:

   The route map can be used to group one or more prefix lists.

```
config router route-map
    edit "Leak_from_VRF10_to_VRF20"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "VRF10_Route"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "Leak_from_VRF20_to_VRF10"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "VRF20_Route"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. Configure the VRF leak in BGP, specifying a source VRF, destination VRF, an the route map to use:

```
config router bgp
    config vrf-leak
        edit "10"
```

```
            config target
                edit "20"
                    set route-map "Leak_from_VRF10_to_VRF20"
                    set interface "link-10-20-0"
                next
            end
        next
        edit "20"
            config target
                edit "10"
                    set route-map "Leak_from_VRF20_to_VRF10"
                    set interface "link-10-20-1"
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

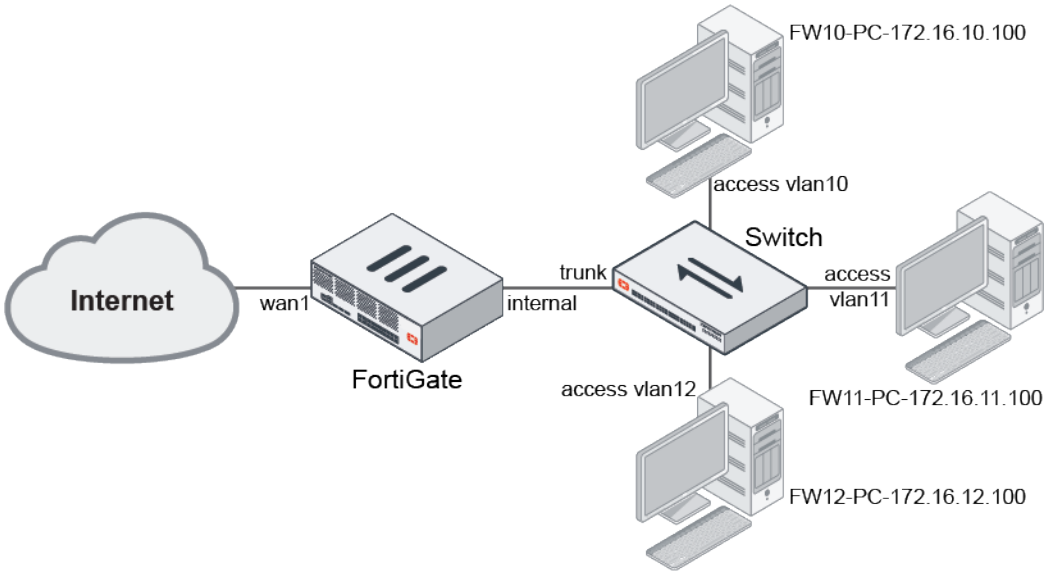
5. Create policies to allow traffic between the VRFs.
   Without a policy permitting traffic on the route between the VRFs, the VRFs are still isolated.

Route leaking between multiple VRFs

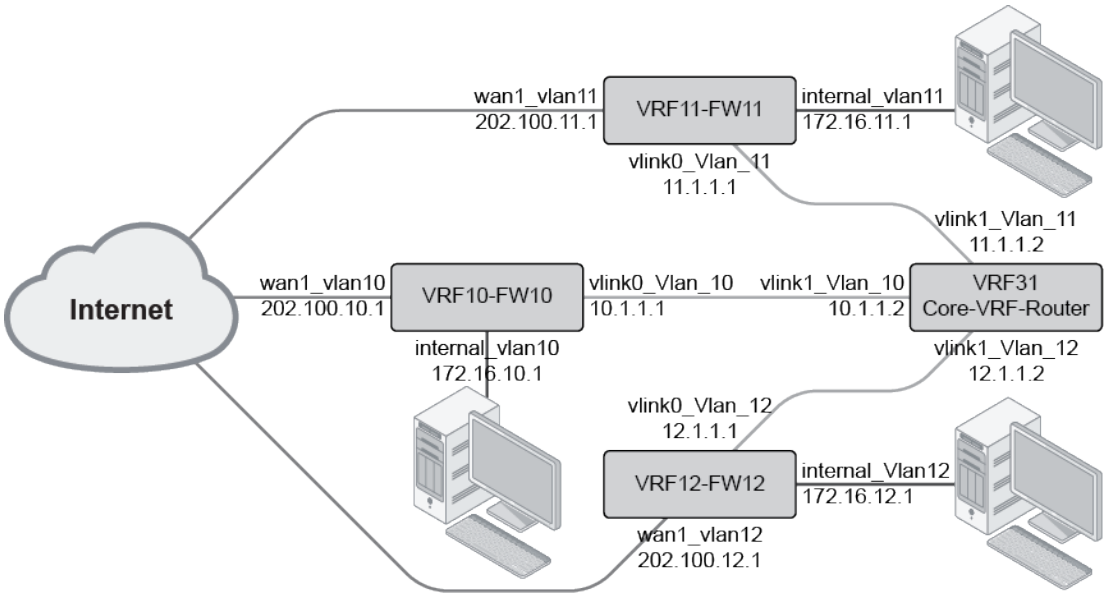
In this example, routing leaking between three VRFs in a star topology is configured. This allows the solution to be scaled to more VRFs without building full mesh, one-to-one connections between each pair of VRFs. VLAN subinterfaces are created on VDOM links to connect each VRF to the central VRF, allowing routes to be leaked from a VRF to the central VRF, and then to the other VRFs. Static routes are used for route leaking in this example.

For instructions on creating route leaking between two VRFs, see Route leaking between VRFs on page 629.

Physical topology:



Logical topology:



In this example, a specific route is leaked from each of the VRFs to each of the other VRFs. VLAN subinterfaces are created based on VDOM links to connect each VRF to the core VRF router.

Multi VDOM mode is enabled so that NP VDOM links can be used. The setup could be configured without enabling multi VDOM mode by manually creating non-NP VDOM links, but this is not recommended as the links are not offloaded to the NPU.

After VDOMs are enabled, all of the configuration is done in the *root* VDOM.

To configure the FortiGate:

1. Enable multi VDOM mode:

```
config system global
    set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
```

If the FortiGate has an NP, the VDOM links will be created:

```
# show system interface
config system interface
    ...
    edit "npu0_vlink0"
        set vdom "root"
        set type physical
    next
    edit "npu0_vlink1"
        set vdom "root"
        set type physical
    next
    ...
end
```

If multi VDOM mode is not used, the VDOM links can be manually created:

```
config system vdom-link
    edit <name of vdlink>
    next
end
```

2. Allow interface subnets to use overlapping IP addresses:

```
config vdom
    edit root
        config system settings
            set allow-subnet-overlap enable
        end
```

3. Configure the inter-connecting VLAN subinterfaces between VRF based on VDOM-LINK:

```
config system interface
    edit "vlink0_Vlan_10"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 10
        set ip 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.252
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "vlink0_Vlan_10"
        set role lan
        set interface "npu0_vlink0"
        set vlanid 10
    next
    edit "vlink1_Vlan_10"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 31
        set ip 10.1.1.2 255.255.255.252
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "vlink1_Vlan_10"
        set role lan
        set interface "npu0_vlink1"
        set vlanid 10
    next
    edit "vlink0_Vlan_11"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 11
        set ip 11.1.1.1 255.255.255.252
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "vlink0_Vlan_11"
        set role lan
        set interface "npu0_vlink0"
        set vlanid 11
    next
    edit "vlink1_Vlan_11"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 31
        set ip 11.1.1.2 255.255.255.252
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "vlink1_Vlan_11"
        set role lan
        set interface "npu0_vlink1"
        set vlanid 11
    next
    edit "vlink0_Vlan_12"
```

```
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 12
        set ip 12.1.1.1 255.255.255.252
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "vlink0_Vlan_12"
        set role lan
        set interface "npu0_vlink0"
        set vlanid 12
    next
    edit "vlink1_Vlan_12"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 31
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.252
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "vlink1_Vlan_12"
        set role lan
        set interface "npu0_vlink1"
        set vlanid 12
    next
end
```

4. Configure a zone to allow intrazone traffic between VLANs in the central VRF:

```
config system zone
    edit "Core-VRF-Router"
        set intrazone allow
        set interface "vlink1_Vlan_10" "vlink1_Vlan_11" "vlink1_Vlan_12"
    next
end
```

5. Add allow policies for the VRF31 core router:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set name "any_to_core_vrf31"
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "Core-VRF-Router"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
    edit 0
        set name "core_vrf31_to_any"
        set srcintf "Core-VRF-Router"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
end
```

6. Configure VRF10, VRF11, and VRF12 on the Internal and WAN VLAN sub-interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "Internal_VRF10"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 10
        set ip 172.16.10.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "Internal_VRF10"
        set role lan
        set interface "internal"
        set vlanid 10
    next
    edit "Internal_VRF11"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 11
        set ip 172.16.11.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "Internal_VRF11"
        set role lan
        set interface "internal"
        set vlanid 11
    next
    edit "Internal_VRF12"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 12
        set ip 172.16.12.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set alias "Internal_VRF12"
        set role lan
        set interface "internal"
        set vlanid 12
    next
    edit "wan1_VRF10"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 10
        set ip 202.100.10.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set alias "wan1_VRF10"
        set role wan
        set interface "wan1"
        set vlanid 10
    next
    edit "wan1_VRF11"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 11
        set ip 202.100.11.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set alias "wan1_VRF11"
        set role wan
        set interface "wan1"
        set vlanid 11
    next
    edit "wan1_VRF12"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 12
        set ip 202.100.12.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
```

```
        set alias "wan1_VRF12"
        set role wan
        set interface "wan1"
        set vlanid 12
    next
end
```

7. Configure static routing and route leaking between each VRF and Core-VRF-Router:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set dst 172.16.10.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 10.1.1.1
        set device "vlink1_Vlan_10"
        set comment "VRF31_Core_Router"
    next
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.11.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 11.1.1.1
        set device "vlink1_Vlan_11"
        set comment "VRF31_Core_Router"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 172.16.12.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
        set device "vlink1_Vlan_12"
        set comment "VRF31_Core_Router"
    next
    edit 4
        set dst 172.16.11.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 10.1.1.2
        set device "vlink0_Vlan_10"
        set comment "VRF10_Route_Leaking"
    next
    edit 5
        set dst 172.16.12.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 10.1.1.2
        set device "vlink0_Vlan_10"
        set comment "VRF10_Route_Leaking"
    next
    edit 6
        set dst 172.16.10.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 11.1.1.2
        set device "vlink0_Vlan_11"
        set comment "VRF11_Route_Leaking"
    next
    edit 7
        set dst 172.16.12.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 11.1.1.2
        set device "vlink0_Vlan_11"
        set comment "VRF11_Route_Leaking"
    next
    edit 8
        set dst 172.16.10.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 12.1.1.2
        set device "vlink0_Vlan_12"
```

```
        set comment "VRF12_Route_Leaking"
    next
    edit 9
        set dst 172.16.11.0 255.255.255.0
        set gateway 12.1.1.2
        set device "vlink0_Vlan_12"
        set comment "VRF12_Route_Leaking"
    next
    edit 10
        set gateway 202.100.10.254
        set device "wan1_VRF10"
        set comment "VRF10_Default_Route"
    next
    edit 11
        set gateway 202.100.11.254
        set device "wan1_VRF11"
        set comment "VRF11_Default_Route"
    next
    edit 12
        set gateway 202.100.12.254
        set device "wan1_VRF12"
        set comment "VRF12_Default_Route"
    next
end
```

In the GUI, go to *Network* > *Static Routes* to view the static routes.

8. Configure firewall policies for VRF10, VRF11, and VRF12

```
config firewall policy
    edit 6
        set name "VRF10_to_Internet_Policy"
        set srcintf "Internal_VRF10"
        set dstintf "wan1_VRF10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 7
        set name "VRF10_to_VRF_Leaking_Route"
        set srcintf "Internal_VRF10"
        set dstintf "vlink0_Vlan_10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
    edit 8
        set name "VRF_Leaking_Route_to_VRF10"
        set srcintf "vlink0_Vlan_10"
        set dstintf "Internal_VRF10"
```

```
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
    edit 9
        set name "VRF11_to_Internet_Policy"
        set srcintf "Internal_VRF11"
        set dstintf "wan1_VRF11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 10
        set name "VRF11_to_VRF_Leaking_Route"
        set srcintf "Internal_VRF11"
        set dstintf "vlink0_Vlan_11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
    edit 11
        set name "VRF_Leaking_Route_to_VRF11"
        set srcintf "vlink0_Vlan_11"
        set dstintf "Internal_VRF11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
    edit 12
        set name "VRF12_to_Internet_Policy"
        set srcintf "Internal_VRF12"
        set dstintf "wan1_VRF12"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 13
        set name "VRF12_to_VRF_Leaking_Route"
```

```
        set uuid 92bccf8e-b27b-51eb-3c56-6d5259af6299
        set srcintf "Internal_VRF12"
        set dstintf "vlink0_Vlan_12"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
    edit 14
        set name "VRF_Leaking_Route_to_VRF12"
        set srcintf "vlink0_Vlan_12"
        set dstintf "Internal_VRF12"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
end
```

In the GUI, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to view the policies.

To check the results:

1. On the FortiGate, check the routing table to see each VRF:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
C       10.6.30.0/24 is directly connected, mgmt

Routing table for VRF=10
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 202.100.10.254, wan1_VRF10
C       10.1.1.0/30 is directly connected, vlink0_Vlan_10
C       172.16.10.0/24 is directly connected, Internal_VRF10
S       172.16.11.0/24 [10/0] via 10.1.1.2, vlink0_Vlan_10
S       172.16.12.0/24 [10/0] via 10.1.1.2, vlink0_Vlan_10
C       202.100.10.0/24 is directly connected, wan1_VRF10

Routing table for VRF=11
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 202.100.11.254, wan1_VRF11
C       11.1.1.0/30 is directly connected, vlink0_Vlan_11
S       172.16.10.0/24 [10/0] via 11.1.1.2, vlink0_Vlan_11
C       172.16.11.0/24 is directly connected, Internal_VRF11
S       172.16.12.0/24 [10/0] via 11.1.1.2, vlink0_Vlan_11
C       202.100.11.0/24 is directly connected, wan1_VRF11
```

```
Routing table for VRF=12
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 202.100.12.254, wan1_VRF12
C       12.1.1.0/30 is directly connected, vlink0_Vlan_12
S       172.16.10.0/24 [10/0] via 12.1.1.2, vlink0_Vlan_12
S       172.16.11.0/24 [10/0] via 12.1.1.2, vlink0_Vlan_12
C       172.16.12.0/24 is directly connected, Internal_VRF12
C       202.100.12.0/24 is directly connected, wan1_VRF12

Routing table for VRF=31
C       10.1.1.0/30 is directly connected, vlink1_Vlan_10
C       11.1.1.0/30 is directly connected, vlink1_Vlan_11
C       12.1.1.0/30 is directly connected, vlink1_Vlan_12
S       172.16.10.0/24 [10/0] via 10.1.1.1, vlink1_Vlan_10
S       172.16.11.0/24 [10/0] via 11.1.1.1, vlink1_Vlan_11
S       172.16.12.0/24 [10/0] via 12.1.1.1, vlink1_Vlan_12
```

2. From the FW10-PC:

```
# ifconfig ens32
ens32: flags=4163<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>  mtu 1500
        inet 172.16.10.100  netmask 255.255.255.0  broadcast 172.16.10.255
        inet6 fe80::dbed:c7fe:170e:e61c  prefixlen 64  scopeid 0x20<link>
        ether 00:0c:29:2a:3a:17  txqueuelen 1000  (Ethernet)
        RX packets 1632  bytes 160001 (156.2 KiB)
        RX errors 0  dropped 52  overruns 0  frame 0
        TX packets 2141  bytes 208103 (203.2 KiB)
        TX errors 0  dropped 0 overruns 0  carrier 0  collisions 0

# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination     Gateway         Genmask         Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
0.0.0.0         172.16.10.1     0.0.0.0         UG    100    0        0 ens32
172.16.10.0     0.0.0.0         255.255.255.0   U     100    0        0 ens32
192.168.122.0   0.0.0.0         255.255.255.0   U     0      0        0 virbr0
```

   a. Ping a public IP address through VRF10:

```
# ping 8.8.8.8
PING 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=113 time=4.33 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=113 time=4.17 ms
64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_seq=3 ttl=113 time=4.04 ms
^C
--- 8.8.8.8 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2002ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 4.049/4.188/4.336/0.117 ms
```

   b. Ping the internet gateway through VRF10:

```
# ping 202.100.10.254
PING 202.100.10.254 (202.100.10.254) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 202.100.10.254: icmp_seq=1 ttl=254 time=0.294 ms
64 bytes from 202.100.10.254: icmp_seq=2 ttl=254 time=0.225 ms
64 bytes from 202.100.10.254: icmp_seq=3 ttl=254 time=0.197 ms
^C
--- 202.100.10.254 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.197/0.238/0.294/0.044 ms
```

c. Ping the FW11-PC on VRF11 from VRF10:

```
# ping 172.16.11.100
PING 172.16.11.100 (172.16.11.100) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 172.16.11.100: icmp_seq=1 ttl=61 time=0.401 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.11.100: icmp_seq=2 ttl=61 time=0.307 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.11.100: icmp_seq=3 ttl=61 time=0.254 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.11.100: icmp_seq=4 ttl=61 time=0.277 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.11.100: icmp_seq=5 ttl=61 time=0.262 ms
^C
--- 172.16.11.100 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 3999ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.254/0.300/0.401/0.054 ms
```

3. On the FortiGate, sniff traffic between VRF10 and VRF11:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any "icmp and host 172.16.11.100" 4 l 0
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp and host 172.16.11.100]
10.086656 Internal_VRF10 in 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request
10.086705 vlink0_Vlan_10 out 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request
10.086706 npu0_vlink0 out 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request

10.086711 vlink1_Vlan_10 in 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request
10.086739 vlink1_Vlan_11 out 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request
10.086740 npu0_vlink1 out 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request

10.086744 vlink0_Vlan_11 in 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request
10.086929 Internal_VRF11 out 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request
10.086930 internal out 172.16.10.100 -> 172.16.11.100: icmp: echo request

10.087053 Internal_VRF11 in 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
10.087061 vlink0_Vlan_11 out 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
10.087062 npu0_vlink0 out 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply

10.087066 vlink1_Vlan_11 in 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
10.087071 vlink1_Vlan_10 out 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
10.087072 npu0_vlink1 out 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply

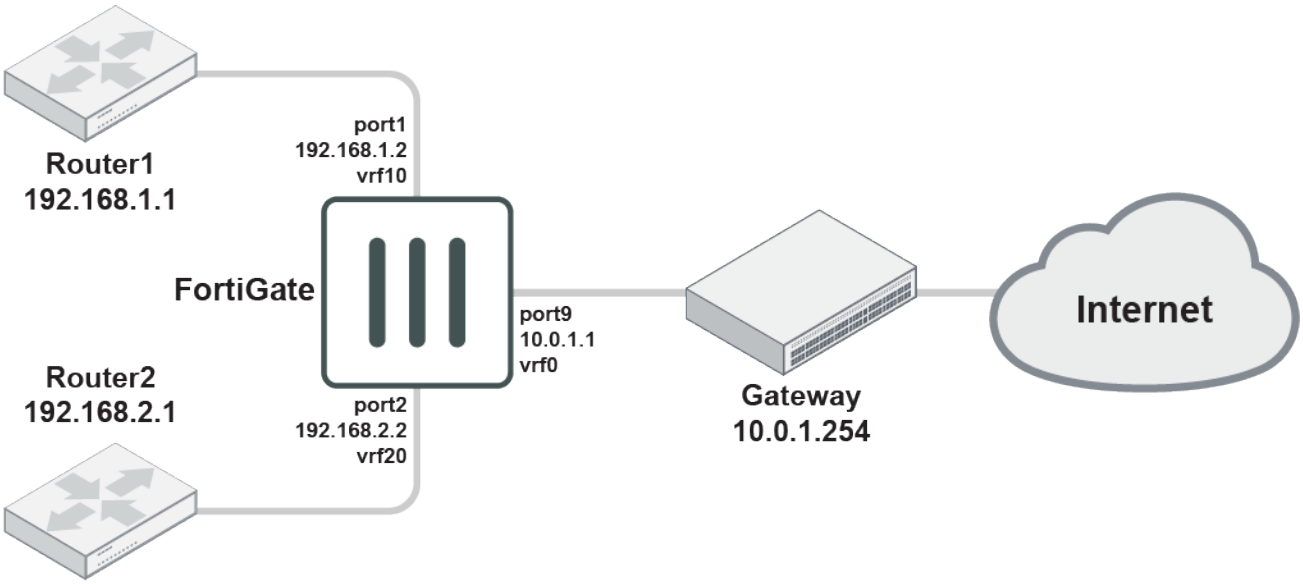
10.087076 vlink0_Vlan_10 in 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
10.087176 Internal_VRF10 out 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
10.087177 internal out 172.16.11.100 -> 172.16.10.100: icmp: echo reply
^C
20 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

IBGP and EBGP support in VRF

Support is included for internal and external border gateway protocols (IBGP and EBGP) in virtual routing and forwarding (VRF).

FortiGate can establish neighbor connections with other FortiGates or routers, and the learned routes are put into different VRF tables according to the neighbor's settings.

This example uses the following topology:



- BGP routes learned from the Router1 neighbor are put into vrf10.
- BGP routes learned from the Router2 neighbor are put into vrf20.

To configure this example:

```
config system interface
    edit port1
        set vrf 10
    next
    edit port2
        set vrf 20
    next
end
```

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit "192.168.1.1"
            set update-source port1
        next
        edit "192.168.2.1"
            set interface port2
        next
    end
end
```

Results

Using the above topology:

- Both Router1 and Router2 establish OSPF and BGP neighbor with the FortiGate.
- Router1 advertises 10.10.1.0/24 into OSPF and 10.10.2.0/24 into BGP.
- Router2 advertises 20.20.1.0/24 into OSPF and 20.20.2.0/24 into BGP.

When port1 and port2 have not set VRF, all of the routing is in VRF=0:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 10.0.1.254, port9
C       10.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, port9
O       10.10.1.0/24 [110/10] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:18:31
B       10.10.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:01:31
O       20.20.1.0/22 [110/10] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:19:05
B       20.20.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:01:31
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

After VRF is set for BGP, BGP routes are added to the VRF tables along with OSPF and connected routes:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 10.0.1.254, port9
C       10.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, port9

Routing table for VRF=10
O       10.10.1.0/24 [110/10] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:18:31
B       10.10.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:01:31
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, port1

Routing table for VRF=20
O       20.20.1.0/22 [110/10] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:19:05
B       20.20.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:01:31
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

BGP neighbor groups

This feature is also supported in the BGP neighbor groups. For example:

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor-group
        edit "FGT"
            set update-source "port1"
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.201.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "FGT"
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

Note that the `set interface` command is not supported.

NetFlow

NetFlow allows you to collect IP network traffic statistics for an interface, and then export those statistics for analysis. NetFlow samplers, that sample every packet, are configured per interface. Full NetFlow is supported through the information maintained in the firewall session.

To configure NetFlow:

```
config system netflow
    set collector-ip <ip>
    set collector-port <port>
    set source-ip <ip>
    set active-flow-timeout <integer>
    set inactive-flow-timeout <integer>
    set template-tx-timeout <integer>
    set template-tx-counter <integer>
end
```

`collector-ip <ip>`	Collector IP address.
`collector-port <port>`	NetFlow collector port number (0 - 65535)
`source-ip <ip>`	Source IP address, for communication with the NetFlow agent.
`active-flow-timeout <integer>`	Timeout to report active flows, in minutes (1 - 60, default = 30).
`inactive-flow-timeout <integer>`	Timeout for periodic report of finished flows, in seconds (10 - 600, default = 15).
`template-tx-timeout <integer>`	Timeout for periodic template flowset transmission, in minutes (1 - 1440, default = 30).
`template-tx-counter <integer>`	Counter of flowset records, before resending a template flowset record (10 - 6000, default = 20).

To configure NetFlow in a specific VDOM:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom>
        config system vdom-netflow
            set vdom-netflow enable
            set collector-ip <ip>
            set collector-port <port>
            set source-ip <ip>
        end
    next
end
```

To configure a NetFlow sampler on an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set netflow-sampler {disable | tx | rx | both}
    next
end
```

`disable`	Disable the NetFlow protocol on this interface (default).
`tx`	Monitor transmitted traffic on this interface.
`rx`	Monitor received traffic on this interface.
`both`	Monitor transmitted/received traffic on this interface.

Verification and troubleshooting

If data are not seen on the NetFlow collector after it has been configured, use the following sniffer commands to verify if the FortiGate and the collector are communicating:

- By collector port:

  ```
  # diagnose sniffer packet 'port <collector-port>'  6 0 a
  ```

- By collector IP address:

  ```
  # diagnose sniffer packet 'host <collector-ip>' 6 0 a
  ```

NetFlow uses the sflow daemon. The current NetFlow configuration can be viewed using test level 3 or 4:

```
# diagnose test application sflowd 3
```

```
# diagnose test application sflowd 4
Netflow Cache Stats:
vdoms=1 Collectors=1 Cached_intf=2 Netflow_enabled_intf=1 Live_sessions=0 Session cache max
count:71950
```

NetFlow templates

Netflow uses templates to capture and categorize the data that it collects. FortiOS supports the following Netflow templates:

Name	Template ID	Description
STAT_OPTIONS	256	Statistics information about exporter
APP_ID_OPTIONS	257	Application information
IPV4	258	No NAT IPv4 traffic
IPV6	259	No NAT IPv6 traffic
ICMP4	260	No NAT ICMPv4 traffic
ICMP6	261	No NAT ICMPv6 traffic

Name	Template ID	Description
IPV4_NAT	262	Source/Destination NAT IPv4 traffic
IPV4_AF_NAT	263	AF NAT IPv4 traffic (4->6)
IPV6_NAT	264	Source/Destination NAT IPv6 traffic
IPV6_AF_NAT	265	AF NAT IPv6 traffic (6->4)
ICMP4_NAT	266	Source/Destination NAT ICMPv4 traffic
ICMP4_AF_NAT	267	AF NAT ICMPv4 traffic (4->6)
ICMP6_NAT	268	Source/Destination NAT ICMPv6 traffic
ICMPv6_AF_NAT	269	AF NAT ICMPv6 traffic (6->4)

256 - STAT_OPTIONS

Description	Statistics information about exporter
Scope Field Count	1
Data Field Count	7
Option Scope Length	4
Option Length	28
Padding	0000

Scope fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	System	System (1)	2

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	TOTAL_BYTES_EXP	TOTAL_BYTES_EXP (40)	8
2	TOTAL_PKTS_EXP	TOTAL_PKTS_EXP (41)	8
3	TOTAL_FLOWS_EXP	TOTAL_FLOWS_EXP (42)	8
4	FLOW_ACTIVE_TIMEOUT	FLOW_ACTIVE_TIMEOUT (36)	2
5	FLOW_INACTIVE_TIMEOUT	FLOW_INACTIVE_TIMEOUT (37)	2
6	SAMPLING_INTERVAL	SAMPLING_INTERVAL (34)	4
7	SAMPLING_ALGORITHM	SAMPLING_ALGORITHM (35)	1

257 - APP_ID_OPTIONS

Description	Application information
Scope Field Count	1
Data Field Count	4
Option Scope Length	4
Option Length	16
Padding	0000

Scope fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	System	System (1)	2

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
2	APPLICATION_NAME	APPLICATION_NAME (96)	64
3	APPLICATION_DESC	APPLICATION_DESC (94)	64
4	applicationCategoryName	applicationCategoryName (372)	32

258 - IPV4

Description	No NAT IPv4 traffic
Data Field Count	17

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4

Field #	Field	Type	Length
7	L4_SRC_PORT	L4_SRC_PORT (7)	2
8	L4_DST_PORT	L4_DST_PORT (11)	2
9	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
10	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
11	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
12	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
13	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
14	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
15	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
16	IP_SRC_ADDR	IP_SRC_ADDR (8)	4
17	IP_DST_ADDR	IP_DST_ADDR (12)	4

259 - IPV6

Description	No NAT IPv6 traffic
Data Field Count	17

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	L4_SRC_PORT	L4_SRC_PORT (7)	2
8	L4_DST_PORT	L4_DST_PORT (11)	2
9	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
10	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
11	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
12	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9

Field #	Field	Type	Length
13	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
14	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
15	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
16	IPV6_SRC_ADDR	IPV6_SRC_ADDR (27)	16
17	IPV6_DST_ADDR	IPV6_DST_ADDR (28)	16

260 - ICMP4

Description	No NAT ICMPv4 traffic
Data Field Count	16

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
8	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
9	ICMP_TYPE	ICMP_TYPE (32)	2
10	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
11	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
12	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
13	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
14	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
15	IP_SRC_ADDR	IP_SRC_ADDR (8)	4
16	IP_DST_ADDR	IP_DST_ADDR(12)	4

261 - ICMP6

Description	No NAT ICMPv6 traffic
Data Field Count	16

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
8	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
9	ICMP_TYPE	ICMP_TYPE (32)	2
10	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
11	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
12	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
13	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
14	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
15	IPV6_SRC_ADDR	IPV6_SRC_ADDR (27)	16
16	IPV6_DST_ADDR	IPV6_DST_ADDR (28)	16

262 - IPV4_NAT

Description	Source/Destination NAT IPv4 traffic
Data Field Count	21

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8

Field #	Field	Type	Length
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	L4_SRC_PORT	L4_SRC_PORT (7)	2
8	L4_DST_PORT	L4_DST_PORT (11)	2
9	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
10	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
11	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
12	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
13	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
14	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
15	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
16	IP_SRC_ADDR	IP_SRC_ADDR (8)	4
17	IP_DST_ADDR	IP_DST_ADDR (12)	4
18	postNATSourceIPv4Address	postNATSourceIPv4Address (225)	4
19	postNATDestinationIPv4Address	postNATDestinationIPv4Address (226)	4
20	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
21	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

263 - IPV4_AF_NAT

Description	AF NAT IPv4 traffic (4->6)
Data Field Count	21

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4

Field #	Field	Type	Length
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	L4_SRC_PORT	L4_SRC_PORT (7)	2
8	L4_DST_PORT	L4_DST_PORT (11)	2
9	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
10	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
11	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
12	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
13	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
14	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
15	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
16	IPV6_SRC_ADDR	IPV6_SRC_ADDR (27)	16
17	IPV6_DST_ADDR	IPV6_DST_ADDR (28)	16
18	postNATSourceIPv6Address	postNATSourceIPv6Address (281)	16
19	postNATDestinationIPv6Address	postNATDestinationIPv6Address (282)	16
20	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
21	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

264 - IPV6_NAT

Description	Source/Destination NAT IPv6 traffic
Data Field Count	21

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4

Field #	Field	Type	Length
7	L4_SRC_PORT	L4_SRC_PORT (7)	2
8	L4_DST_PORT	L4_DST_PORT (11)	2
9	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
10	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
11	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
12	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
13	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
14	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
15	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
16	IP_SRC_ADDR	IP_SRC_ADDR (8)	4
17	IP_DST_ADDR	IP_DST_ADDR (12)	4
18	postNATSourceIPv6Address	postNATSourceIPv6Address (281)	16
19	postNATDestinationIPv6Address	postNATDestinationIPv6Address (282)	16
20	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
21	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

265 - IPV6_AF_NAT

Description	AF NAT IPv6 traffic (6->4)
Data Field Count	21

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	L4_SRC_PORT	L4_SRC_PORT (7)	2
8	L4_DST_PORT	L4_DST_PORT (11)	2

Field #	Field	Type	Length
9	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
10	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
11	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
12	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
13	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
14	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
15	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
16	IPV6_SRC_ADDR	IPV6_SRC_ADDR (27)	16
17	IPV6_DST_ADDR	IPV6_DST_ADDR (28)	16
18	postNATSourceIPv4Address	postNATSourceIPv4Address (225)	4
19	postNATDestinationIPv4Address	postNATDestinationIPv4Address (226)	4
20	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
21	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

266 - ICMPV4_NAT

Description	Source/Destination NAT ICMPv4 traffic
Data Field Count	20

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
8	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
9	ICMP_TYPE	ICMP_TYPE (32)	2
10	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1

Field #	Field	Type	Length
11	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
12	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
13	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
14	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
15	IP_SRC_ADDR	IP_SRC_ADDR (8)	4
16	IP_DST_ADDR	IP_DST_ADDR (12)	4
17	postNATSourceIPv4Address	postNATSourceIPv4Address (225)	4
18	postNATDestinationIPv4Address	postNATDestinationIPv4Address (226)	4
19	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
20	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

267 - ICMPV4_AF_NAT

Description	AF NAT ICMPv4 traffic (4->6)
Data Field Count	20

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
8	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
9	ICMP_TYPE	ICMP_TYPE (32)	2
10	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
11	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
12	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
13	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1

Field #	Field	Type	Length
14	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
15	IPV6_SRC_ADDR	IPV6_SRC_ADDR (27)	16
16	IPV6_DST_ADDR	IPV6_DST_ADDR (28)	16
17	postNATSourceIPv6Address	postNATSourceIPv6Address (281)	16
18	postNATDestinationIPv6Address	postNATDestinationIPv6Address (282)	16
19	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
20	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

268 - ICMPV6_NAT

Description	Source/Destination NAT ICMPv6 traffic
Data Field Count	20

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
8	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
9	ICMP_TYPE	ICMP_TYPE (32)	2
10	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
11	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
12	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
13	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
14	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
15	IP_SRC_ADDR	IP_SRC_ADDR (8)	4
16	IP_DST_ADDR	IP_DST_ADDR (12)	4

Field #	Field	Type	Length
17	postNATSourceIPv6Address	postNATSourceIPv6Address (281)	16
18	postNATDestinationIPv6Address	postNATDestinationIPv6Address (282)	16
19	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2
20	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

269 - ICMPV6_AF_NAT

Description	AF NAT ICMPv6 traffic (6->4)
Data Field Count	20

Data fields

Field #	Field	Type	Length
1	BYTES	BYTES (1)	8
2	OUT_BYTES	OUT_BYTES (23)	8
3	PKTS	PKTS (2)	4
4	OUT_PKTS	OUT_PKTS (24)	4
5	FIRST_SWITCHED	FIRST_SWITCHED (22)	4
6	LAST_SWITCHED	LAST_SWITCHED (21)	4
7	INPUT_SNMP	INPUT_SNMP (10)	2
8	OUTPUT_SNMP	OUTPUT_SNMP (14)	2
9	ICMP_TYPE	ICMP_TYPE (32)	2
10	PROTOCOL	PROTOCOL (4)	1
11	APPLICATION_ID	APPLICATION_ID (95)	9
12	FLOW_FLAGS	FLOW_FLAGS (65)	2
13	FORWARDING_STATUS	FORWARDING_STATUS (89)	1
14	flowEndReason	flowEndReason (136)	1
15	IPV6_SRC_ADDR	IPV6_SRC_ADDR (27)	16
16	IPV6_DST_ADDR	IPV6_DST_ADDR (28)	16
17	postNATSourceIPv4Address	postNATSourceIPv4Address (225)	4
18	postNATDestinationIPv4Address	postNATDestinationIPv4Address (226)	4
19	postNAPTSourceTransportPort	postNAPTSourceTransportPort (227)	2

Field #	Field	Type	Length
20	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort	postNAPTDestinationTransportPort (228)	2

sFlow

sFlow is a method of monitoring the traffic on your network to identify areas on the network that may impact performance and throughput. FortiGate supports sFlow v5. sFlow collector software is available from a number of third-party software vendors. For more information about sFlow, see www.sflow.org.

The packet information that the FortiGate's sFlow agent collects depends on the interface type:

- On an internal interface, when the interface receives packets from devices with private IP addresses, the collected information includes the private IP addresses.
- On an external, or WAN, interface, when the interface receives to route to or from the internet, the collected information includes the IP address of the WAN interface as the source or destination interface, depending on the direction of the traffic. It does not include IP addresses that are NATed on another interface.

sFlow datagrams contain the following information:

- Packet headers, such as MAC, IPv4, and TCP
- Sample process parameters, such as rate and pool
- Input and output ports
- Priority (802.1p and ToS)
- VLAN (802.1Q)
- Source prefixes, destination prefixes, and next hop addresses
- BGP source AS, source peer AS, destination peer AS, communities, and local preference
- User IDs (TACACS, RADIUS) for source and destination
- Interface statistics (RFC 1573, RFC 2233, and RFC 2358)

Configuring sFlow

sFlow can be configured globally, then on traffic VDOMs and individual interfaces.

When configuring sFlow on a VDOM, the collector can be specified, or the collector that is configured globally can be used.

sFlow is supported on some interface types, such as physical, VLAN, and aggregate. It is not supported on virtual interfaces, such as VDOM link, IPsec, GRE, or SSL. When configuring sFlow on an interface, the rate that the agent samples traffic, the direction of that traffic, and the frequency that the agent sends sFlow datagrams to the sFlow collector can be specified. If sFlow is configured on the VDOM that the interface belongs to, the agent sends datagrams to the collector configured for the VDOM. Otherwise, the datagrams are sent to the collector that is configured globally.

Configuring sFlow for an interface disables NP offloading for all traffic on that interface.

To configure sFlow globally:

```
config system sflow
    set collector-ip <ipv4_address>
    set collector-port <port>
    set source-ip <ipv4_address>
end
```

`collector-ip <ipv4_address>`	The IPv4 address of the sFlow collector that sFlow agents added to interface (default = 0.0.0.0).
`collector-port <port>`	The UDP port number used for sending sFlow datagrams (0 - 65535, default = 6343). Only configured this option if required by the sFlow collector or your network configuration.
`source-ip <ipv4_address>`	The source IPv4 address that the sFlow agent used to send datagrams to the collector (default = 0.0.0.0). If this option is not configured, the FortiGate uses the IP address of the interface that it sends the datagram through.

To configure sFlow for a VDOM:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom>
        config system vdom-sflow
            set vdom-sflow {enable | disable}
            set collector-ip <ipv4_address>
            set collector-port <port>
            set source-ip <ipv4_address>
        end
    next
end
```

`vdom-sflow {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable the sFlow configuration for the current VDOM (default = disable).
`collector-ip <ipv4_address>`	The IPv4 address of the sFlow collector that sFlow agents added to interface (default = 0.0.0.0). If this option is not configured, the global setting will be used.
`collector-port <port>`	The UDP port number used for sending sFlow datagrams (0 - 65535, default = 6343). Only configured this option if required by the sFlow collector or your network configuration. If this option is not configured, the global setting will be used.
`source-ip <ipv4_address>`	The source IPv4 address that the sFlow agent used to send datagrams to the collector (default = 0.0.0.0). If this option is not configured, the FortiGate uses the IP address of the interface that it sends the datagram through.

To configure sFlow on an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set sflow-sampler {enable | disable}
        set sample-rate <integer>
        set polling-interval <integer>
        set sample-direction {tx | rx | both}
    next
end
```

`sflow-sampler {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable sFlow on this interface (default = disable).
`sample-rate <integer>`	The average number of packets that the agent lets pass before taking a sample (10 - 99999, default = 2000). Setting a lower rate will sample a higher number of packets, increasing the accuracy or the sampling data, but also increasing the CPU and network bandwidth usage. The default value is recommended.
`polling-interval <integer>`	The amount of time that the agent waits between sending datagrams to the collector, in seconds (1 - 255, default = 20). Setting a higher value lowers the amount of data that the agent sends across the network, but makes the collector's view of the network less current.
`sample-direction {tx | rx | both}`	The direction of the traffic that the agent collects (default = both).

SD-WAN

The following topics provide information about SD-WAN:

- SD-WAN overview on page 661
- SD-WAN quick start on page 665
- SD-WAN zones on page 675
- Performance SLA on page 680
- SD-WAN rules on page 699
- Advanced routing on page 745
- VPN overlay on page 768
- Advanced configuration on page 798
- SD-WAN cloud on-ramp on page 814
- Hub and spoke SD-WAN deployment example on page 838
- Troubleshooting SD-WAN on page 850

SD-WAN overview

SD-WAN is a software-defined approach to managing Wide-Area Networks (WAN). It consolidates the physical transport connections, or underlays, and monitors and load-balances traffic across the links. VPN overlay networks can be built on top of the underlays to control traffic across different sites.

Health checks and SD-WAN rules define the expected performance and business priorities, allowing the FortiGate to automatically and intelligently route traffic based on the application, internet service, or health of a particular connection.

WAN security and intelligence can be extended into the LAN by incorporating wired and wireless networks under the same domain. FortiSwitch and FortiAP devices integrate seamlessly with the FortiGate to form the foundation of an SD-Branch.

Some of the key benefits of SD-WAN include:

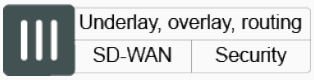
- Reduced cost with transport independence across MPLS, 4G/5G LTE, and others.
- Reduced complexity with a single vendor and single-pane-of-glass management.
- Improve business application performance thanks to increased availability and agility.
- Optimized user experience and efficiency with SaaS and public cloud applications.

SD-WAN components

SD-WAN can be broken down into three layers:

- Management and orchestration
- Control, data plane, and security
- Network access

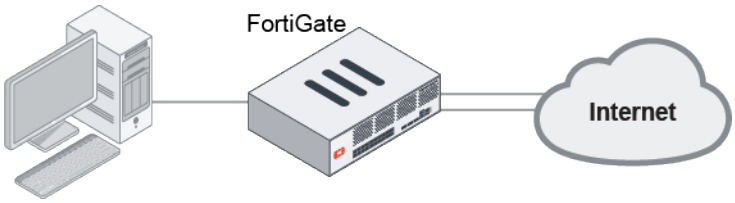
The control, data plane, and security layer can only be deployed on a FortiGate. The other two layers can help to scale and enhance the solution. For large deployments, FortiManager and FortiAnalyzer provide the management and orchestration capabilities FortiSwitch and FortiAP provide the components to deploy an SD-Branch.

Layer	Functions	Devices
Management and orchestration	• Unified management • Template based solution • Zero touch provisioning • Logging, monitoring, and analysis • Automated orchestration using the REST API	FortiManager  FortiAnalyzer 
Control, data plane, and security	• Consolidation of underlays and overlays into SD-WAN zones • Scalable VPN solutions using ADVPN • Static and dynamic routing definition • SD-WAN health-checks and monitoring • Application-aware steering and intelligence • NGFW firewalling	FortiGate 
Network access	• Wired and wireless network segmentation • Built-in network access control	FortiSwitch  FortiAP 

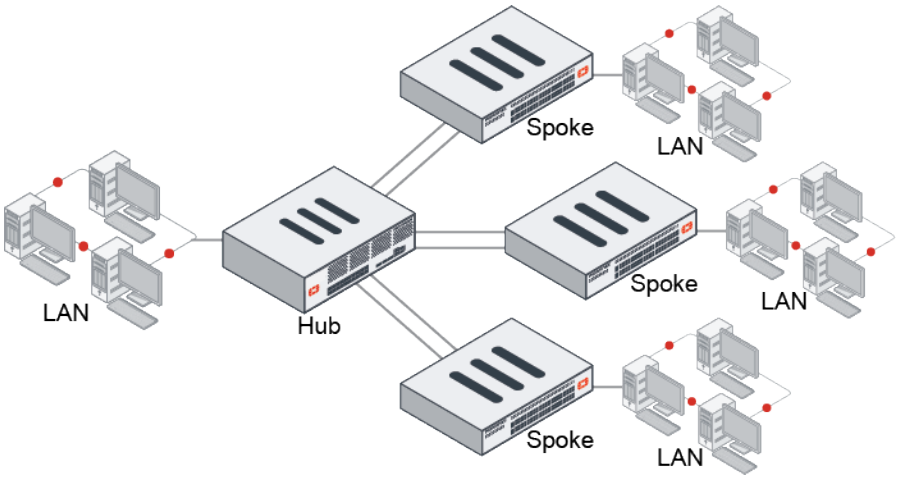
SD-WAN designs and architectures

The core functionalities of Fortinet's SD-WAN solution are built into the FortiGate. Whether the environment contains one FortiGate, or one hundred, you can use SD-WAN by enabling it on the individual FortiGates.

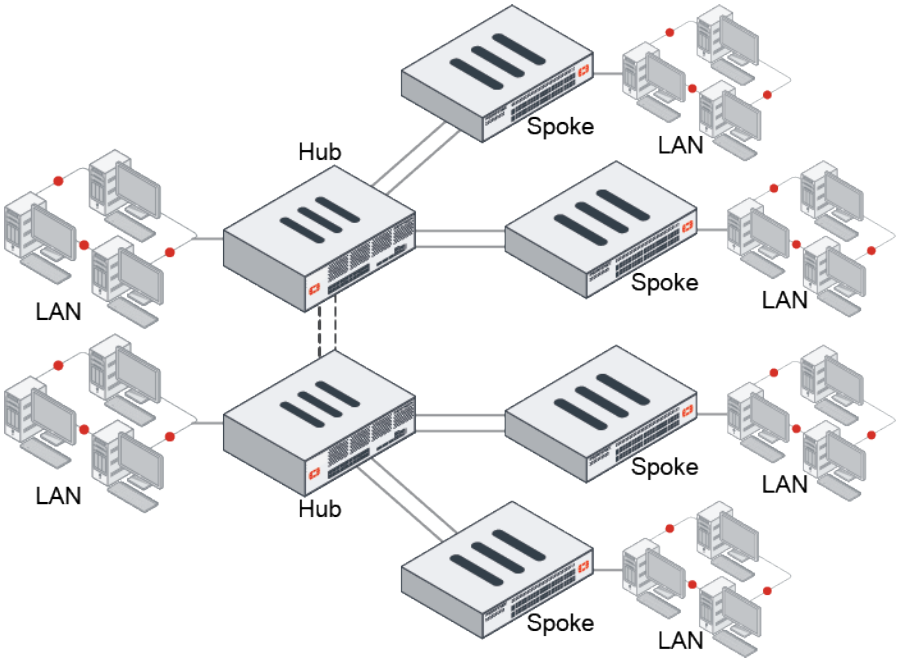
At a basic level, SD-WAN can be deployed on a single device in a single site environment:



At a more advanced level, SD-WAN can be deployed in a multi-site, hub and spoke environment:



At an enterprise or MSSP level, the network can include multiple hubs, possibly across multiple regions:



For more details, see the SD-WAN / SD-Branch Architecture for MSSPs guide.

SD-WAN designs principles

The Five-pillar approach, described in the SD-WAN / SD-Branch Architecture for MSSPs guide, is recommended when designing a secure SD-WAN solution.

Pillar	Overview
Underlay	Choose the WAN links to use.
Overlay	Choose the topology to interconnect your sites.
Routing	Choose how to propagate routes between your sites.

Pillar	Overview
Security	Choose how to protect each of the available paths.
SD-WAN	Choose the strategy used to pick one of the available paths.

Underlay

Determine the WAN links that will be used for the underlay network, such as your broadband link, MPLS, 4G/5G LTE connection, and others.

For each link, determine the bandwidth, quality and reliability (packet loss, latency, and jitter), and cost. Use this information to determine which link to prefer, what type of traffic to send across the each link, and to help you the baselines for health-checks.

Overlay

VPN overlays are needed when traffic must travel across multiple sites. These are usually site-to-site IPsec tunnels that interconnect branches, datacenters, and the cloud, forming a hub-and-spoke topology.

The management and maintenance of the tunnels should be considered when determining the overlay network requirements. Manual tunnel configuration might be sufficient in a small environment, but could become unmanageable as the environment size increases. ADVPN can be used to help scale the solution; see ADVPN on page 1689 for more information.

Routing

Traditional routing designs manipulate routes to steer traffic to different links. SD-WAN uses traditional routing to build the basic routing table to reach different destinations, but uses SD-WAN rules to steer traffic. This allows the steering to be based on criteria such as destination, internet service, application, route tag, and the health of the link. Routing in an SD-WAN solution is used to identify all possible routes across the underlays and overlays, which the FortiGate balances using ECMP.

In the most basic configuration, static gateways that are configured on an SD-WAN member interface automatically provide the basic routing needed for the FortiGate to balance traffic across the links. As the number of sites and destinations increases, manually maintaining routes to each destination becomes difficult. Using dynamic routing to advertise routes across overlay tunnels should be considered when you have many sites to interconnect.

Security

Security involves defining policies for access control and applying the appropriate protection using the FortiGate's NGFW features. Efficiently grouping SD-WAN members into SD-WAN zones must also be considered. Typically, underlays provide direct internet access and overlays provide remote internet or network access. Grouping the underlays together into one zone, and the overlays into one or more zones could be an effective method.

SD-WAN

The SD-WAN pillar is the intelligence that is applied to traffic steering decisions. It is comprised of four primary elements:

- **SD-WAN zones**

  SD-WAN is divided into zones. SD-WAN member interfaces are assigned to zones, and zones are used in policies as source and destination interfaces. You can define multiple zones to group SD-WAN interfaces together, allowing logical groupings for overlay and underlay interfaces. Routing can be configured per zone.

  See SD-WAN zones on page 675.
- **SD-WAN members**

  Also called interfaces, SD-WAN members are the ports and interfaces that are used to run traffic. At least one interface must be configured for SD-WAN to function.

  See Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 666.
- **Performance SLAs**

  Also called health-checks, performance SLAs are used to monitor member interface link quality, and to detect link failures. When the SLA falls below a configured threshold, the route can be removed, and traffic can be steered to different links in the SD-WAN rule. They can also be used in SD-WAN rules to select the preferred member interface for forwarding traffic.

  See Performance SLA on page 680.
- **SD-WAN rules**

  Also called services, SD-WAN rules control path selection. Specific traffic can be dynamically sent to the best link, or use a specific route

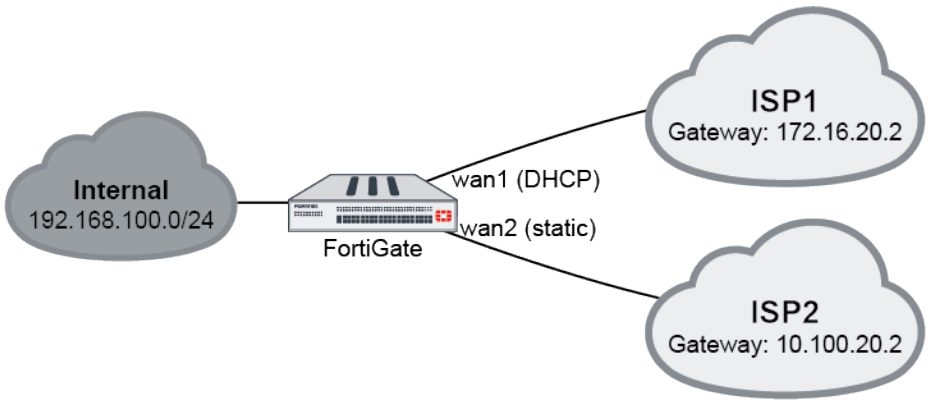
  Rules control the strategy that the FortiGate uses when selecting the outbound traffic interface, the SLAs that are monitored when selecting the outgoing interface, and the criteria for selecting the traffic that adheres to the rule. When no SD-WAN rules match the traffic, the implicit rule applies.

  See SD-WAN rules on page 699.

SD-WAN quick start

This section provides an example of how to start using SD-WAN for load balancing and redundancy.

In this example, two ISP internet connections, wan1 (DHCP) and wan2 (static), use SD-WAN to balance traffic between them at 50% each.



1. Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 666
2. Adding a static route on page 667
3. Selecting the implicit SD-WAN algorithm on page 667
4. Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 668

5. Link monitoring and failover on page 668
6. Results on page 669
7. Configuring SD-WAN in the CLI on page 673

Configuring the SD-WAN interface

First, SD-WAN must be enabled and member interfaces must be selected and added to a zone. The selected FortiGate interfaces can be of any type (physical, aggregate, VLAN, IPsec, and others), but must be removed from any other configurations on the FortiGate.

In this step, two interfaces are configured and added to the default SD-WAN zone (virtual-wan-link) as SD-WAN member interfaces. This example uses a mix of static and dynamic IP addresses; your deployment could also use only one or the other.

Once the SD-WAN members are created and added to a zone, the zone can be used in firewall policies, and the whole SD-WAN can be used in static routes.

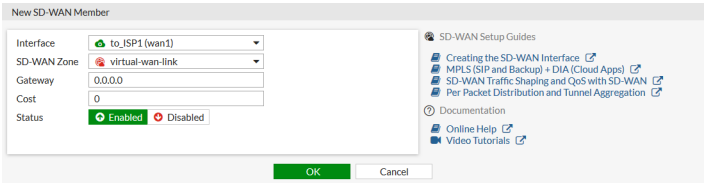
To configure SD-WAN members:

1. Configure the wan1 and wan2 interfaces. See Interface settings on page 403 for details.
   a. Set the wan1 interface *Addressing mode* to *DHCP* and *Distance* to *10*.

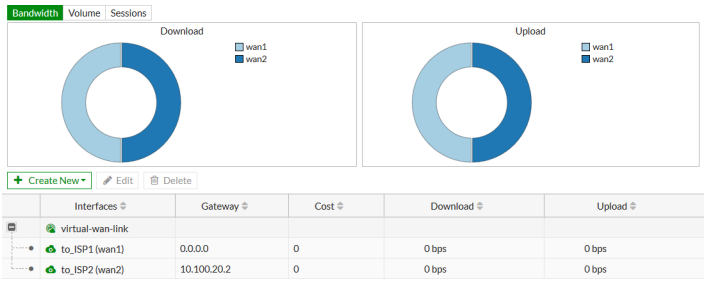
   By default, a DHCP interface has a distance of 5, and a static route has a distance of 10. It is important to account for this when configuring your SD-WAN for 50/50 load balancing by setting the DHCP interface's distance to 10.

   b. Set the wan2 interface *IP/Netmask* to *10.100.20.1 255.255.255.0*.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*. Routing for each SD-WAN interface is defined here.
3. Click *Create New* > *SD-Member*.
4. Set the *Interface* to *wan1*.
5. Leave *SD-WAN Zone* as *virtual-wan-link*.
6. As wan1 uses DHCP, leave *Gateway* set to *0.0.0.0*.
   If IPv6 visibility is enabled in the GUI, an IPv6 gateway can also be added for each member. See Feature visibility on page 1049 for details.
7. Leave *Cost* as *0*.
   The *Cost* field is used by the Lowest Cost (SLA) strategy. The link with the lowest cost is chosen to pass traffic. The lowest possible *Cost* is *0*.



8. Set *Status* to *Enable*, and click *OK*.

9. Repeat the above steps for wan2, setting *Gateway* to the ISP's gateway: *10.100.20.2*.

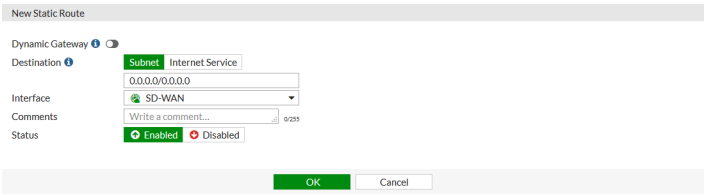


Adding a static route

You must configure a default route for the SD-WAN. The default gateways for each SD-WAN member interface do not need to be defined in the static routes table. FortiGate will decide what route or routes are preferred using Equal Cost Multi-Path (ECMP) based on distance and priority.

To create a static route for SD-WAN:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Static Route* page opens.
3. Set *Destination* to *Subnet*, and leave the IP address and subnet mask as *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
4. From the *Interface* drop-down list, select *SD-WAN*.



5. Ensure that *Status* is *Enabled*.
6. Click *OK*.

Selecting the implicit SD-WAN algorithm

SD-WAN rules define specific routing options to route traffic to an SD-WAN member.

If no routing rules are defined, the default *Implicit* rule is used. It can be configured to use one of five different load balancing algorithms. See Implicit rule on page 700 for more details and examples.

This example shows four methods to equally balance traffic between the two WAN connections. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* and edit the *sd-wan* rule to select the method that is appropriate for your requirements.

- *Source IP* (CLI command: `source-ip-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members according to a hash algorithm based on the source IP addresses.
- *Session* (`weight-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members by the session numbers ratio among its members. Use weight 50 for each of the 2 members.

- *Source-Destination IP* (`source-dest-ip-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members according to a hash algorithm based on the source and destination IP addresses.
- *Volume* (`measured-volume-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members according to the bandwidth ratio among its members.

Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN

SD-WAN zones can be used in policies as source and destination interfaces. Individual SD-WAN members cannot be used in policies.

You must configure a policy that allows traffic from your organization's internal network to the SD-WAN zone. Policies configured with the SD-WAN zone apply to all SD-WAN interface members in that zone.

To create a firewall policy for SD-WAN:

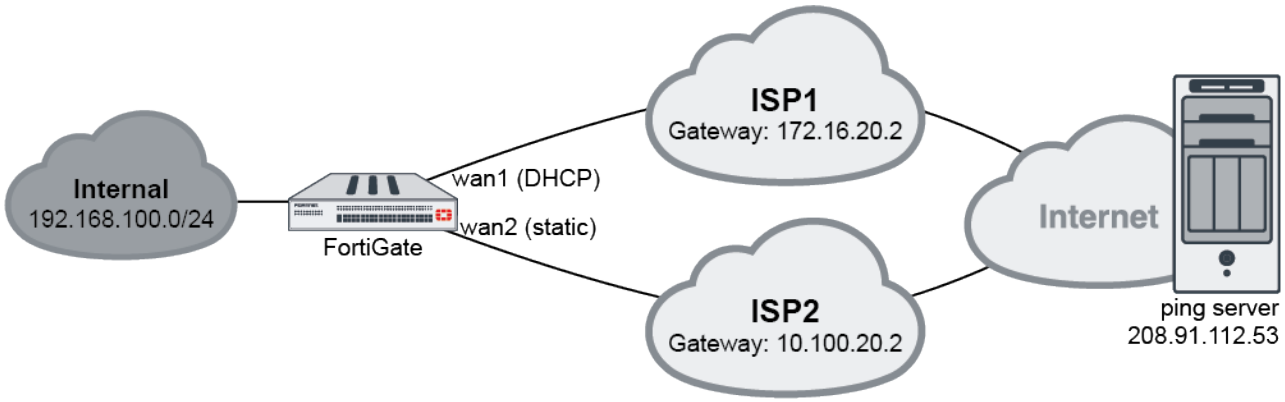
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Policy* page opens.
3. Configure the following:

Name	Enter a name for the policy.
Incoming Interface	*internal*
Outgoing Interface	*virtual-wan-link*
Source	*all*
Destination	*all*
Schedule	*always*
Service	*ALL*
Action	*ACCEPT*
Firewall / Network Options	Enable *NAT* and set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.
Security Profiles	Apply profiles as required.
Logging Options	Enable *Log Allowed Traffic* and select *All Sessions*. This allows you to verify results later.

4. Enable the policy, then click *OK*.

Link monitoring and failover

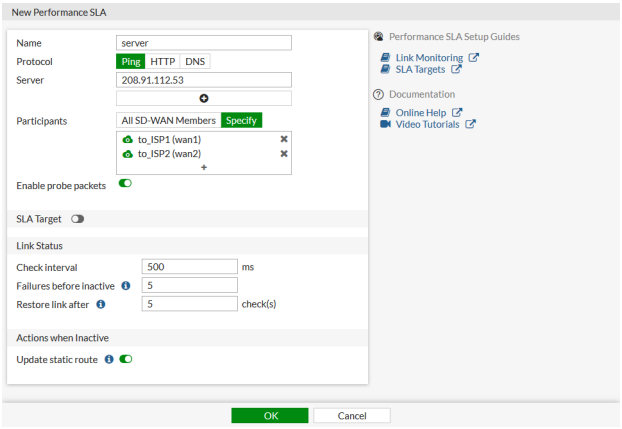
Performance SLA link monitoring measures the health of links that are connected to SD-WAN member interfaces by sending probing signals through each link to a server, and then measuring the link quality based on latency, jitter, and packet loss. If a link is broken, the routes on that link are removed and traffic is routed through other links. When the link is working again, the routes are re-enabled. This prevents traffic being sent to a broken link and lost.



In this example, the detection server IP address is 208.91.112.53. A performance SLA is created so that, if ping fails per the metrics defined, the routes to that interface are removed and traffic is detoured to the other interface. The ping protocol is used, but other protocols could also be selected as required.

To configure a performance SLA:

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Performance SLA* page opens.
3. Enter a name for the SLA and set *Protocol* to *Ping*.
4. In the *Server* field, enter the detection server IP address (208.91.112.53 in this example).
5. In the *Participants* field, select *Specify* and add wan1 and wan2.



SLA targets are not required for link monitoring.

6. Configure the required metrics in *Link Status*.
7. Ensure that *Update static route* is enabled. This disables static routes for the inactive interface and restores routes on recovery.
8. Click *OK*.

Results

The following GUI pages show the function of the SD-WAN and can be used to confirm that it is setup and running correctly:

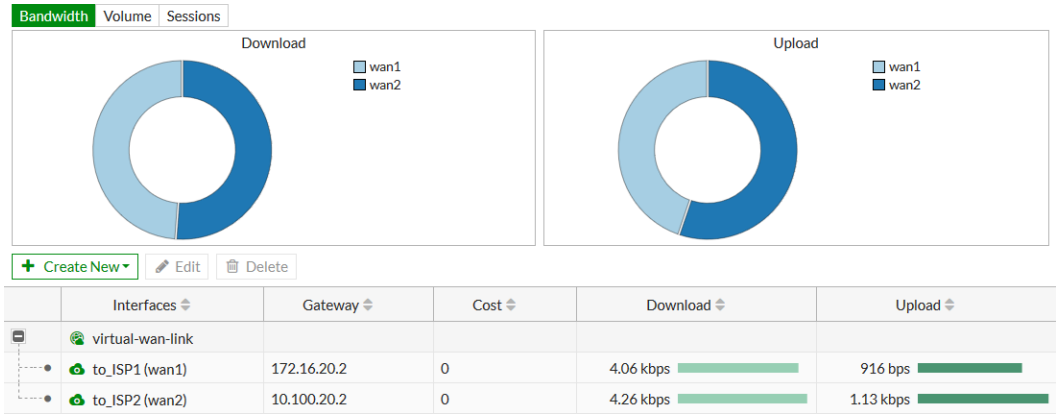
- Interface usage on page 670
- Performance SLA on page 671
- Routing table on page 673
- Firewall policy on page 673

Interface usage

Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* to review the SD-WAN interfaces' usage.

Bandwidth

Select *Bandwidth* to view the amount of downloaded and uploaded data for each interface.



Interfaces	Gateway	Cost	Download	Upload
virtual-wan-link				
to_ISP1 (wan1)	172.16.20.2	0	4.06 kbps	916 bps
to_ISP2 (wan2)	10.100.20.2	0	4.26 kbps	1.13 kbps

Volume

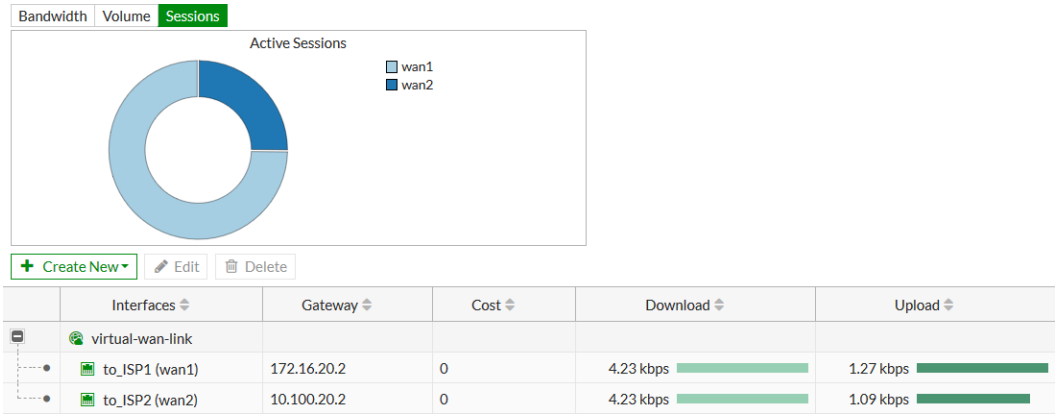
Select *Volume* to see donut charts of the received and sent bytes on the interfaces.



Interfaces	Gateway	Cost	Download	Upload
virtual-wan-link				
to_ISP1 (wan1)	172.16.20.2	0	3.72 kbps	1.01 kbps
to_ISP2 (wan2)	10.100.20.2	0	3.77 kbps	951 bps

Sessions

Select *Sessions* to see a donut chart of the number of active sessions on each interface.

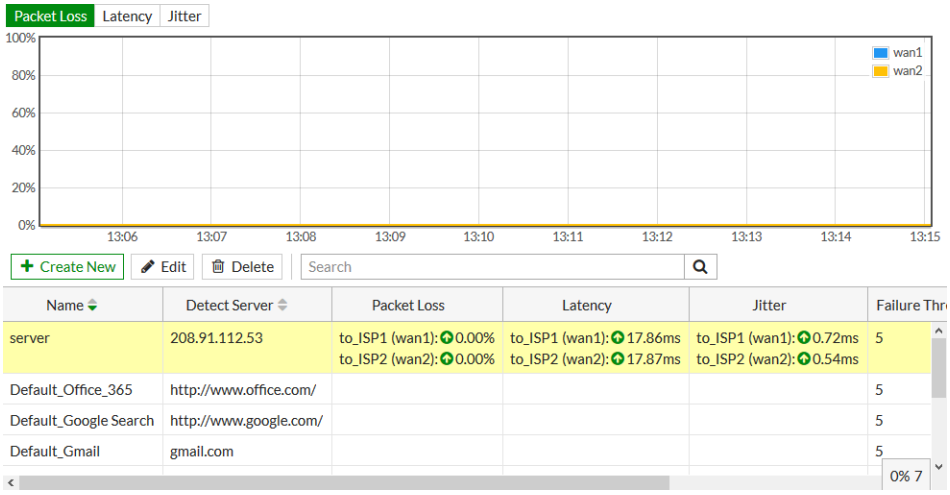


Performance SLA

Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select the SLA from the table (*server* in this example) to view the packet loss, latency, and jitter on each SD-WAN member in the health check server.

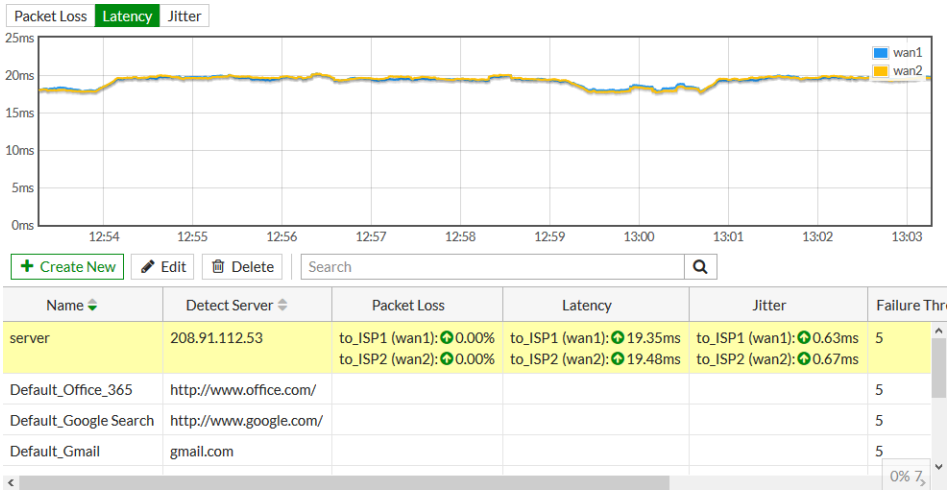
Packet loss

Select *Packet Loss* to see the percentage of packets lost for each member.



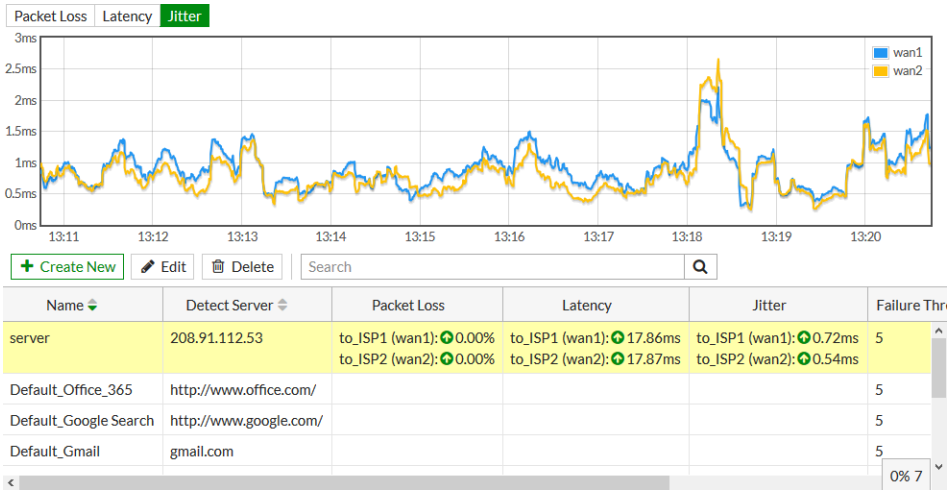
Latency

Select *Latency* to see the current latency, in milliseconds, for each member.



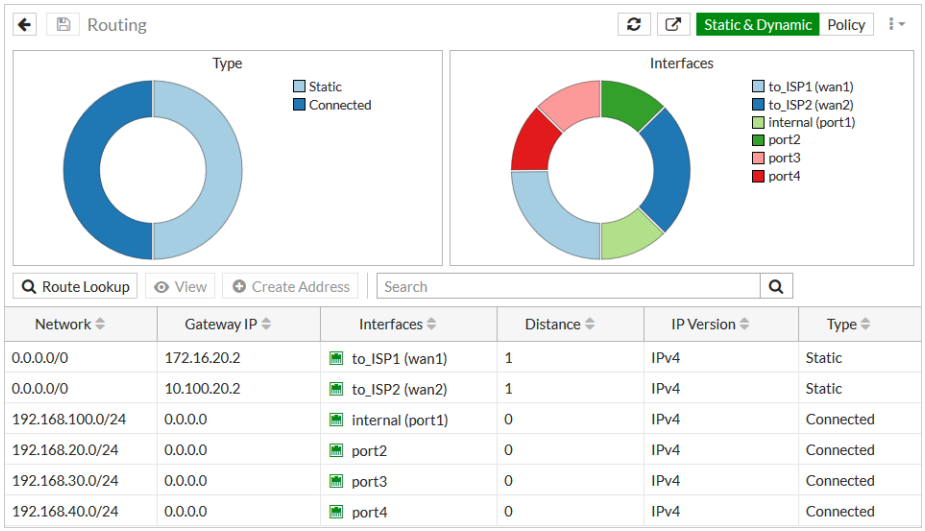
Jitter

Select *Jitter* to see the jitter, in milliseconds, for each member.



Routing table

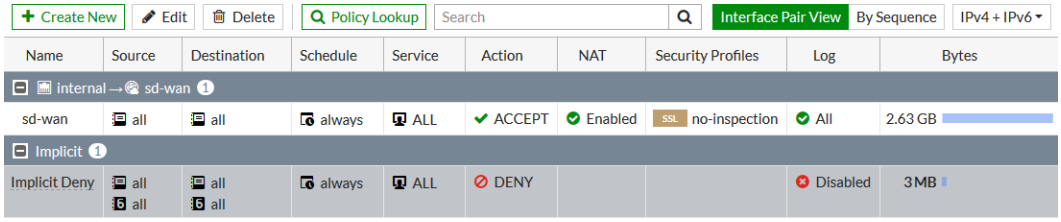
Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *Static & Dynamic Routing* widget to review all static and dynamic routes. For more information about the widget, see Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor on page 82.



Network	Gateway IP	Interfaces	Distance	IP Version	Type
0.0.0.0/0	172.16.20.2	to_ISP1 (wan1)	1	IPv4	Static
0.0.0.0/0	10.100.20.2	to_ISP2 (wan2)	1	IPv4	Static
192.168.100.0/24	0.0.0.0	internal (port1)	0	IPv4	Connected
192.168.20.0/24	0.0.0.0	port2	0	IPv4	Connected
192.168.30.0/24	0.0.0.0	port3	0	IPv4	Connected
192.168.40.0/24	0.0.0.0	port4	0	IPv4	Connected

Firewall policy

Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to review the SD-WAN policy.



Configuring SD-WAN in the CLI

This example can be entirely configured using the CLI.

To configure SD-WAN in the CLI:

1. Configure the wan1 and wan2 interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias to_ISP1
        set mode dhcp
        set distance 10
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias to_ISP2
        set ip 10.100.20.1 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Enable SD-WAN and add the interfaces as members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set gateway 10.100.20.2
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

3. Create a static route for SD-WAN:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set sdwan enable
    next
end
```

4. Select the implicit SD-WAN algorithm:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode {source-ip-based | weight-based | source-dest-ip-based |
measured-volume-based}
end
```

5. Create a firewall policy for SD-WAN:

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policy_id>
        set name <policy_name>
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile <profile_name>
        set av-profile <profile_name>
        set webfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set dnsfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set emailfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set ips_sensor <sensor_name>
        set application-list <app_list>
```

```
            set voip-profile <profile_name>
            set logtraffic all
            set nat enable
            set status enable
        next
    end
```

6. Configure a performance SLA:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "server"
            set server "208.91.112.53"
            set update-static-route enable
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

Results

To view the routing table:

```
# get router info routing-table all

Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 172.16.20.2, wan1
                  [1/0] via 10.100.20.2, wan2
C       10.100.20.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
C       172.16.20.2/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, internal
```

To diagnose the Performance SLA status:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(server):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(15.247), jitter(5.231) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.621), jitter(6.905) sla_map=0x0
```

SD-WAN zones

SD-WAN is divided into zones. SD-WAN member interfaces are assigned to zones, and zones are used in policies as source and destination interfaces.

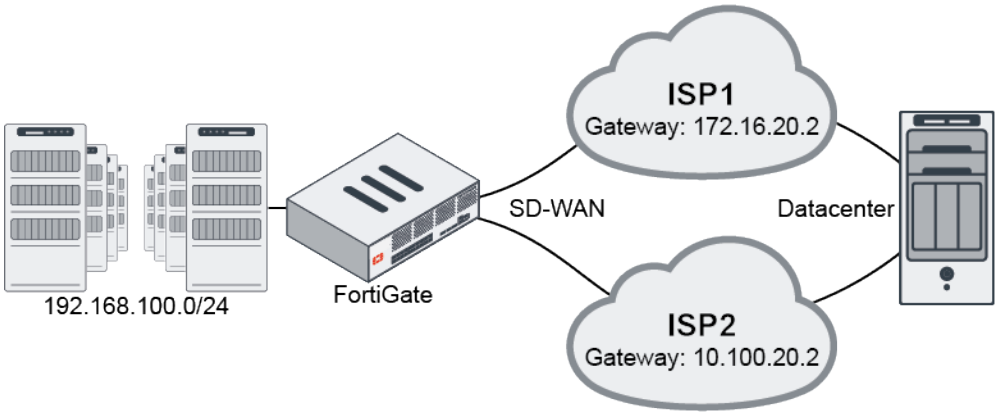
You can define multiple zones to group SD-WAN interfaces together, allowing logical groupings for overlay and underlay interfaces. The zones are used in firewall policies to allow for more granular control. SD-WAN members cannot be used directly in policies.

Static routes use the entire SD-WAN, not just individual zones or members.

In the CLI:

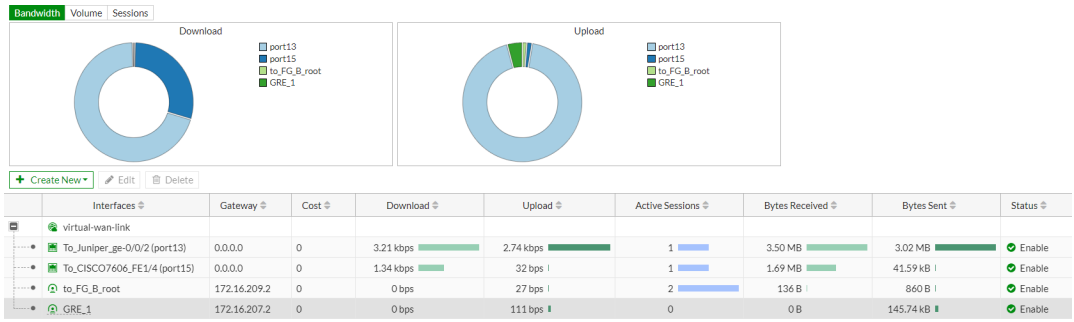
- `config system sdwan` has replaced `config system virtual-wan-link`.
- `diagnose sys sdwan` has replaced `diagnose sys virtual-wan-link`.
- When configuring a static route, the `sdwan` variable has replaced the `virtual-wan-link` variable.

When the Security Fabric is configured, SD-WAN zones are included in the Security Fabric topology views.

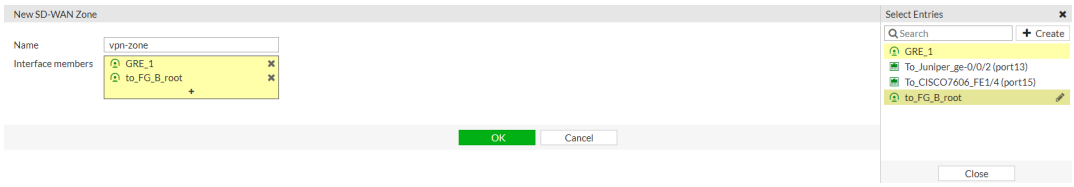


To create an SD-WAN zone in the GUI:

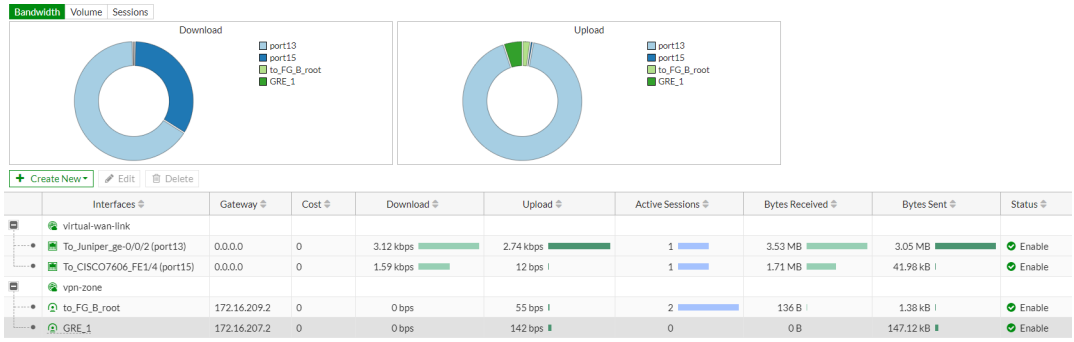
1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
   The default SD-WAN zone is *virtual-wan-link*.



2. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Zone*.
3. Enter a name for the new zone.
4. If SD-WAN members have already been created, add the required members to the zone.
   Members can also be added to the zone after it has been created by editing the zone, or when creating or editing the member.

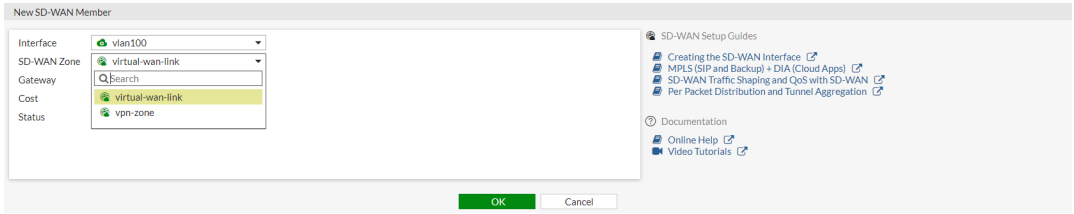


5. Click *OK*.

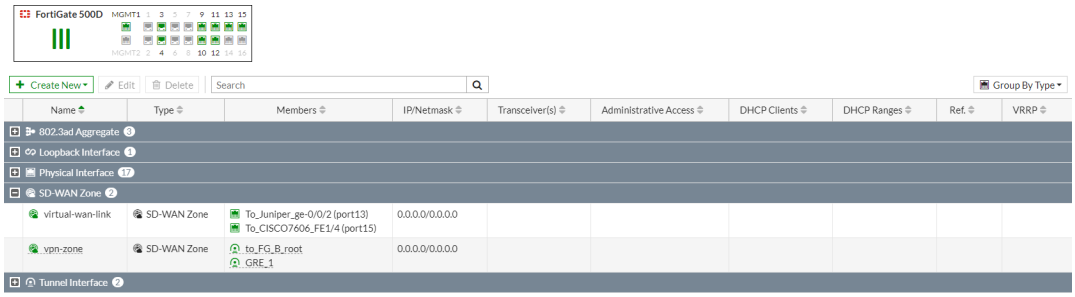


To create an SD-WAN interface member in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
3. Select an interface.
   The interface can also be left as *none* and selected later, or click *+VPN* to create an IPsec VPN for the SD-WAN member.
4. Select the SD-WAN zone that the member will join. A member can also be moved to a different zone at any time.



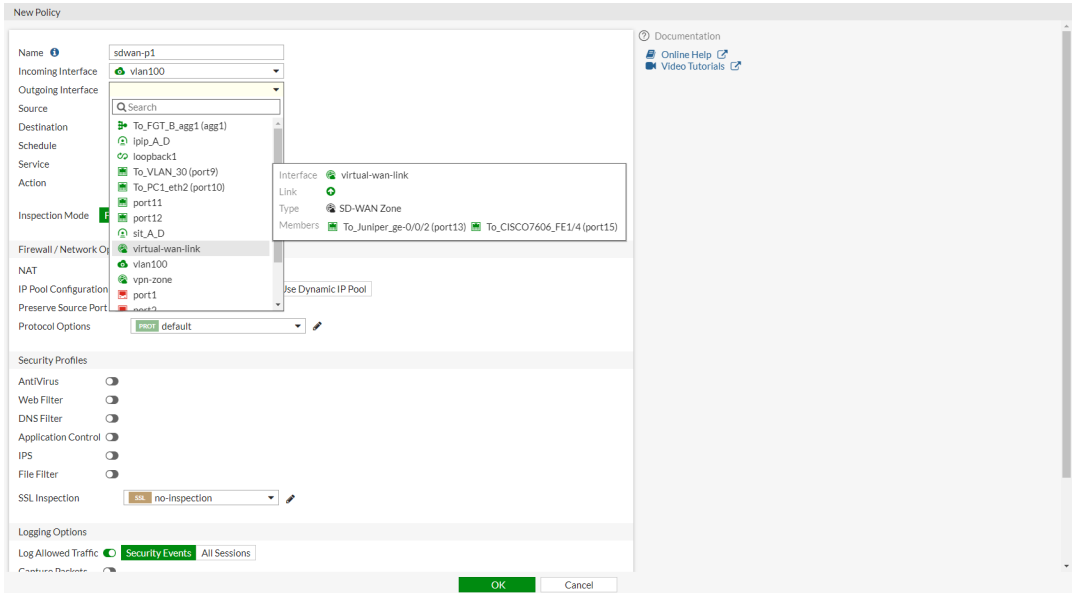
5. Set the *Gateway*, *Cost*, and *Status* as required.
6. Click *OK*.
   The interface list at *Network* > *Interfaces* shows the SD-WAN zones and their members.



To create a policy using the SD-WAN zone in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*, or *Policy & Objects* > *Security Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* .

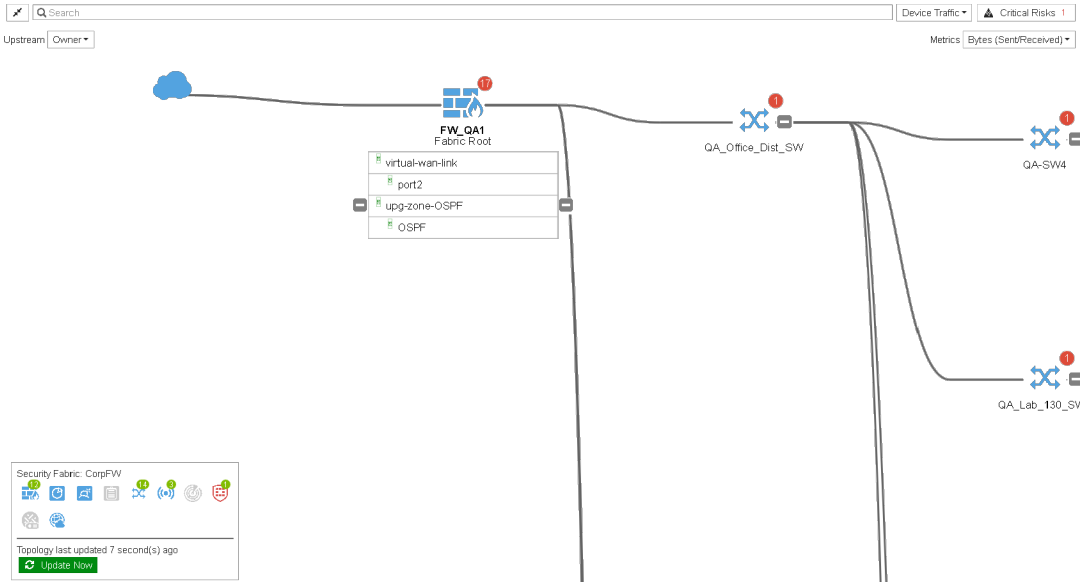
3. Configure the policy settings as needed, selecting an SD-WAN zone or zones for the incoming and/or outgoing interface.

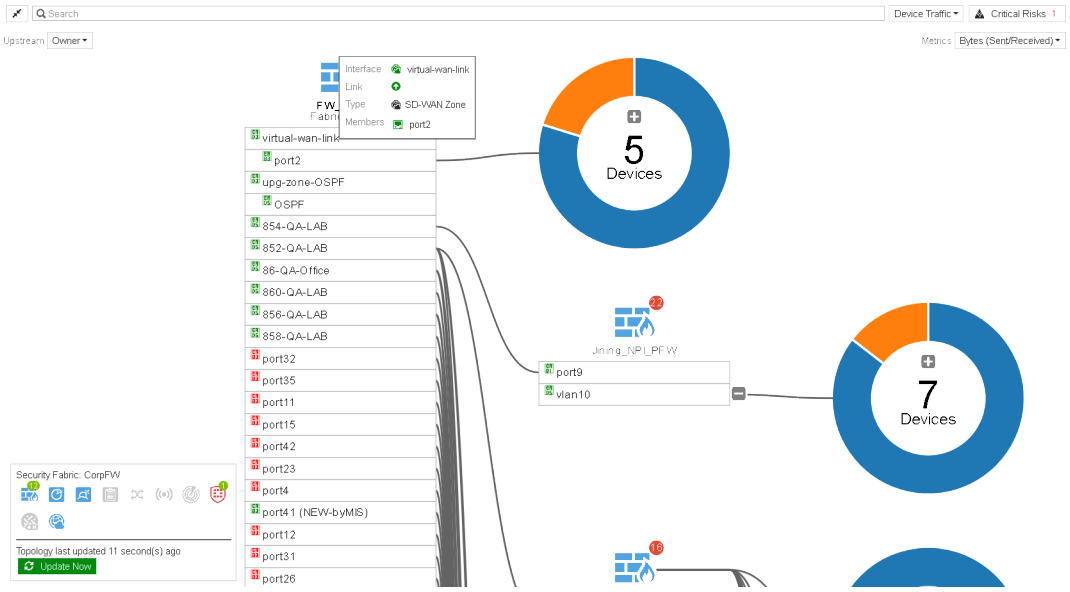


4. Click *OK*.

To view SD-WAN zones in a Security Fabric topology:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*. The SD-WAN zones and their members are shown.





To configure SD-WAN in the CLI:

1. Enable SD-WAN and create a zone:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config zone
        edit "vpn-zone"
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure SD-WAN members and add them to a zone:

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "to_FG_B_root"
            set zone "vpn-zone"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "GRE_1"
            set zone "vpn-zone"
        next
    end
end
```

To create a policy using the SD-WAN zone in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policy_id>
        set name <policy_name>
        set srcintf internal
        set dstintf vpn-zone
```

```
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile <profile_name>
        set av-profile <profile_name>
        set webfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set dnsfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set emailfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set ips_sensor <sensor_name>
        set application-list <app_list>
        set voip-profile <profile_name>
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    next
end
```

Performance SLA

The following topics provide instructions on configuring performance SLA:

- Link health monitor on page 680
- Factory default health checks on page 683
- Health check options on page 685
- Link monitoring example on page 688
- SLA targets example on page 689
- Health check packet DSCP marker support on page 691
- Interface speedtest on page 691
- Monitor performance SLA on page 693
- SLA monitoring using the REST API on page 696

Link health monitor

Performance SLA link health monitoring measures the health of links that are connected to SD-WAN member interfaces by sending probing signals through each link to a server and measuring the link quality based on latency, jitter, and packet loss. If a link fails all of the health checks, the routes on that link are removed from the SD-WAN link load balancing group, and traffic is routed through other links. When the link is working again the routes are reestablished. This prevents traffic being sent to a broken link and lost.

When an SD-WAN member has multiple health checks configured, all of the checks must fail for the routes on that link to be removed from the SD-WAN link load balancing group.

Two health check servers can be configured to ensure that, if there is a connectivity issue, the interface is at fault and not the server. A server can only be used in one health check.

The FortiGate uses the first server configured in the health check server list to perform the health check. If the first server is unavailable, then the second server is used. The second server continues to be used until it becomes unavailable, and then the FortiGate returns to the first server, if it is available. If both servers are unavailable, then the health check fails.

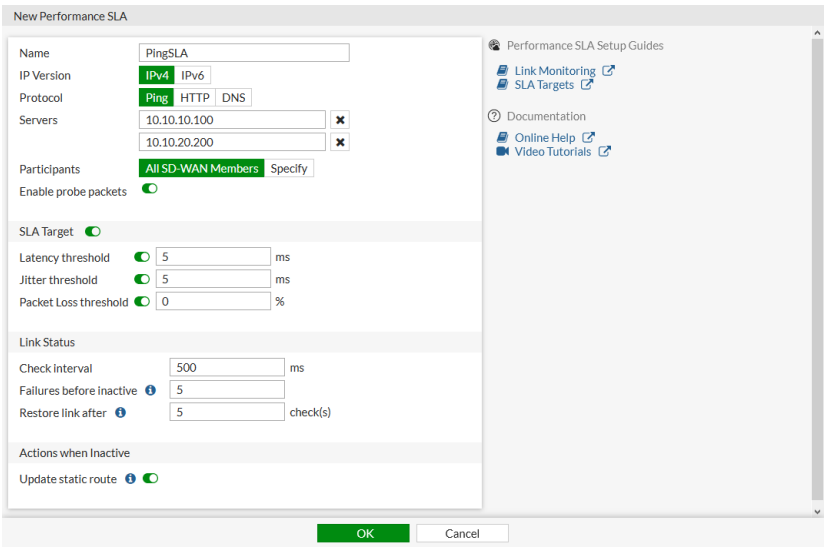
You can configure the protocol that is used for status checks, including: Ping, HTTP, DNS, TCP echo, UDP echo, two-way active measurement protocol (TWAMP), TCP connect, and FTP. In the GUI, only Ping, HTTP, and DNS are available.

You can view link quality measurements at *Network* > *Performance SLA*. The table shows the default health checks, the health checks that you configured, and information about each health check. The values shown in the *Packet Loss*, *Latency*, and *Jitter* columns are for the health check server that the FortiGate is currently using. The green up arrows indicate that the server is responding, and does not indicate if the health checks are being met. See Results on page 669 for more information.

To configure a link health monitor in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and click *Create New*.
2. Set a *Name* for the SLA.
3. Set the *Protocol* that you need to use for status checks: *Ping*, *HTTP*, or *DNS*.
4. Set *Server* to the IP addresses of up to two servers that all of the SD-WAN members in the performance SLA can reach.
5. Set *Participants* to *All SD-WAN Members*, or select *Specify* to choose specific SD-WAN members.
6. Set *Enable probe packets* to enable or disable sending probe packets.
7. Configure *SLA Target*:
   If the health check is used in an SD-WAN rule that uses *Manual* or *Best Quality* strategies, enabling *SLA Target* is optional. If the health check is used in an SD-WAN rule that uses *Lowest Cost (SLA)* or *Maximum Bandwidth (SLA)* strategies, then *SLA Target* is enabled.

   When *SLA Target* is enabled, configure the following:
   - *Latency threshold*: Calculated based on last 30 probes (default = 5ms).
   - *Jitter threshold*: Calculated based on last 30 probes (default = 5ms).
   - *Packet Loss threshold*: Calculated based on last 100 probes (default = 0%).
8. In the *Link Status* section configure the following:
   - *Check interval*: The interval in which the FortiGate checks the interface, in milliseconds (500 - 3600000, default = 500).
   - *Failures before inactive*: The number of failed status checks before the interface shows as inactive (1 - 3600, default =5). This setting helps prevent flapping, where the system continuously transfers traffic back and forth between links
   - *Restore link after*: The number of successful status checks before the interface shows as active (1 - 3600, default = 5). This setting helps prevent flapping, where the system continuously transfers traffic back and forth between links
9. In the *Actions when Inactive* section, enable *Update static route* to disable static routes for inactive interfaces and restore routes when interfaces recover.



10. Click *OK*.

To configure a link health monitor in the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "PingSLA"
            set addr-mode {ipv4 | ipv6}
            set server <server1_IP_address> <server2_IP_address>
            set protocol {ping | tcp-echo | udp-echo | http | twamp | dns | tcp-connect |
ftp}
            set probe-timeout <integer>
            set probe-packets {enable | disable}
            set interval <integer>
            set failtime <integer>
            set recoverytime <integer>
            set update-static-route {enable | disable}
            set members <member_number> ... <member_number>
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor {latency jitter packet-loss}
                    set latency-threshold <integer>
                    set jitter-threshold <integer>
                    set packetloss-threshold <integer>
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

Additional settings are available for some of the protocols:

Protocol	Additional options

http	`port <port_number>`
	`http-get <url>`
	`http-match <response_string>`

Protocol	Additional options

twamp	`port <port_number>`
	`security mode {none | authentication}`
	`password <password>`
	`packet-size <size>`

ftp	`ftp {passive | port}` `ftp-file <path>`

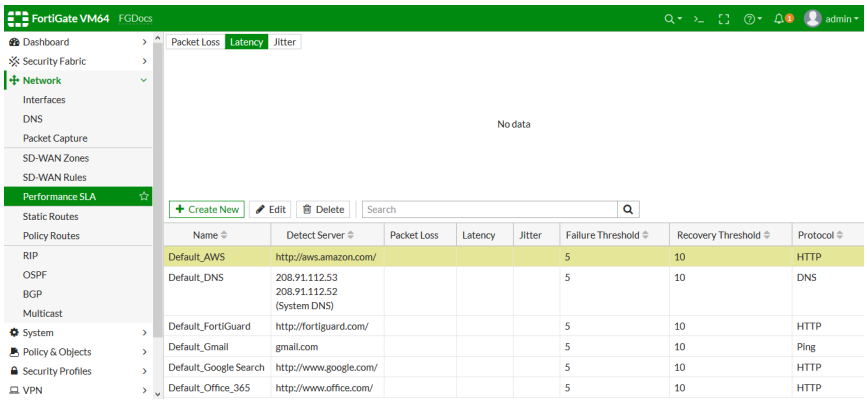
For more examples see Health check options on page 685.

Factory default health checks

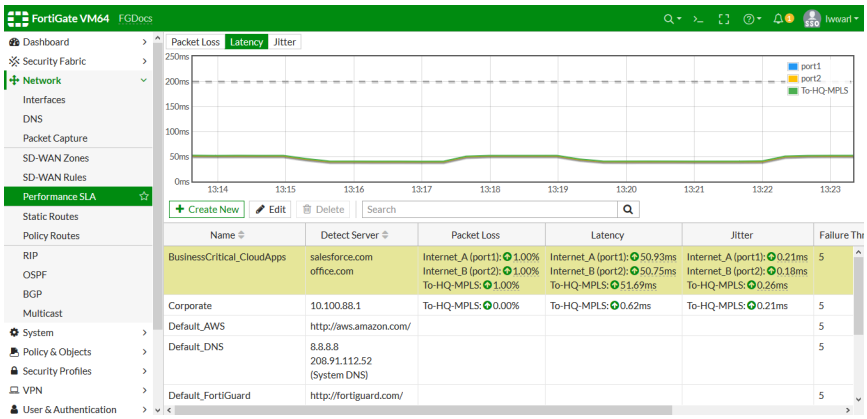
There are six predefined performance SLA profiles for newly created VDOMs or factory reset FortiGate devices:

- AWS
- System DNS
- FortiGuard
- Gmail
- Google Search
- Office 365

You can view and configure the SLA profiles in *Network* > *Performance SLA*.



After configuring a health check, you will be able to view packet loss, latency, and jitter data for the SLA profiles. If a value is colored red, it means that it failed to meet the SLA requirements.



To configure the performance SLA profiles in the CLI:

```
config health-check
    edit "Default_AWS"
        set server "aws.amazon.com"
        set protocol http
        set interval 1000
        set probe-timeout 1000
        set recoverytime 10
        config sla
            edit 1
                set latency-threshold 250
                set jitter-threshold 50
                set packetloss-threshold 5
            next
        end
    next
    edit "Default_DNS"
        set system-dns enable
        set interval 1000
        set probe-timeout 1000
        set recoverytime 10
        config sla
            edit 1
                set latency-threshold 250
                set jitter-threshold 50
                set packetloss-threshold 5
            next
        end
    next
    edit "Default_FortiGuard"
        set server "fortiguard.com"
        set protocol http
        set interval 1000
        set probe-timeout 1000
        set recoverytime 10
        config sla
            edit 1
                set latency-threshold 250
                set jitter-threshold 50
                set packetloss-threshold 5
```

```
            next
        end
    next
    edit "Default_Gmail"
        set server "gmail.com"
        set interval 1000
        set probe-timeout 1000
        set recoverytime 10
        config sla
            edit 1
                set latency-threshold 250
                set jitter-threshold 50
                set packetloss-threshold 2
            next
        end
    next
    edit "Default_Google Search"
        set server "www.google.com"
        set protocol http
        set interval 1000
        set probe-timeout 1000
        set recoverytime 10
        config sla
            edit 1
                set latency-threshold 250
                set jitter-threshold 50
                set packetloss-threshold 5
            next
        end
    next
    edit "Default_Office_365"
        set server "www.office.com"
        set protocol http
        set interval 1000
        set probe-timeout 1000
        set recoverytime 10
        config sla
            edit 1
                set latency-threshold 250
                set jitter-threshold 50
                set packetloss-threshold 5
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Health check options

Health checks include several protocols and protocol specific options.

The health check protocol options include:

ping	Use PING to test the link with the server.

tcp-echo	Use TCP echo to test the link with the server.
udp-echo	Use UDP echo to test the link with the server.
http	Use HTTP-GET to test the link with the server.
twamp	Use TWAMP to test the link with the server.
dns	Use DNS query to test the link with the server. The FortiGate sends a DNS query for an A Record and the response matches the expected IP address.
tcp-connect	Use a full TCP connection to test the link with the server. The method to measure the quality of the TCP connection can be: • `half-open`: FortiGate sends SYN and gets SYN-ACK. The latency is based on the round trip between SYN and SYN-ACK (default). • `half-close`: FortiGate sends FIN and gets FIN-ACK. The latency is based on the round trip between FIN and FIN-ACK.
ftp	Use FTP to test the link with the server. The FTP mode can be: • `passive`: The FTP health-check initiates and establishes the data connection (default). • `port`: The FTP server initiates and establishes the data connection.



SD-WAN health checks can generate traffic that becomes quite high as deployments grow. Please take this into consideration when setting DoS policy thresholds. For details on setting DoS policy thresholds, refer to DoS protection on page 1141.

To use UDP-echo and TCP-echo as health checks:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config health-check
        edit "h4_udp1"
            set protocol udp-echo
            set port 7
            set server <server>
        next
        edit "h4_tcp1"
            set protocol tcp-echo
            set port 7
            set server <server>
        next
        edit "h6_udp1"
            set addr-mode ipv6
            set server "2032::12"
            set protocol udp-echo
            set port 7
        next
    end
end
```

To use DNS as a health check, and define the IP address that the response must match:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config health-check
        edit "h4_dns1"
            set protocol dns
            set dns-request-domain "ip41.forti2.com"
            set dns-match-ip 1.1.1.1
        next
        edit "h6_dns1"
            set addr-mode ipv6
            set server "2000::15.1.1.4"
            set protocol dns
            set port 53
            set dns-request-domain "ip61.xxx.com"
        next
    end
end
```

To use TCP Open (SYN/SYN-ACK) and TCP Close (FIN/FIN-ACK) to verify connections:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config health-check
        edit "h4_tcpconnect1"
            set protocol tcp-connect
            set port 443
            set quality-measured-method {half-open | half-close}
            set server <server>
        next
        edit "h6_tcpconnect1"
            set addr-mode ipv6
            set server "2032::13"
            set protocol tcp-connect
            set port 444
            set quality-measured-method {half-open | half-close}
        next
    end
end
```

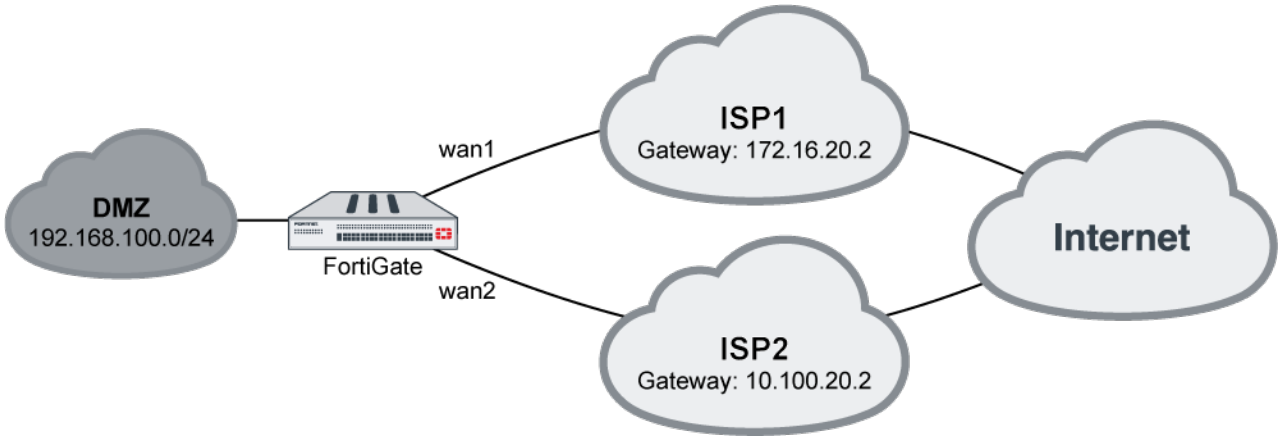
To use active or passive mode FTP to verify connections:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config health-check
        edit "h4_ftp1"
            set protocol ftp
            set port 21
            set user "root"
            set password ***********
            set ftp-mode {passive | port}
            set ftp-file "1.txt"
            set server <server>
        next
        edit "h6_ftp1"
```

```
            set addr-mode ipv6
            set server "2032::11"
            set protocol ftp
            set port 21
            set user "root"
            set password **********
            set ftp-mode {passive | port}
            set ftp-file "2.txt"
        next
    end
end
```

Link monitoring example

Performance SLA link monitoring measures the health of links that are connected to SD-WAN member interfaces by sending probing signals through each link to a server and measuring the link quality based on latency, jitter, and packet loss. If a link is broken, the routes on that link are removed, and traffic is routed through other links. When the link is working again, the routes are reenabbled. This prevents traffic being sent to a broken link and lost.



In this example:

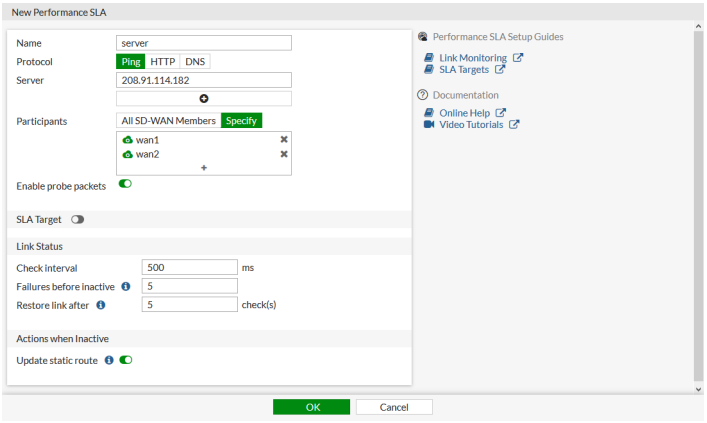
- Interfaces wan1 and wan2 connect to the internet through separate ISPs
- The detection server IP address is 208.91.114.182

A performance SLA is created so that, if one link fails, its routes are removed and traffic is detoured to the other link.

To configure a Performance SLA using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
3. Click *Create New*. The *Performance SLA* page opens.
4. Enter a name for the SLA and select a protocol.
5. In the *Server* field, enter the detection server IP address (208.91.114.182 in this example).

6. In the *Participants* field, select both wan1 and wan2.



7. Configured the remaining settings as needed, then click *OK*.

To configure a Performance SLA using the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "server"
            set server "208.91.114.182"
            set update-static-route enable
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

To diagnose the Performance SLA status:

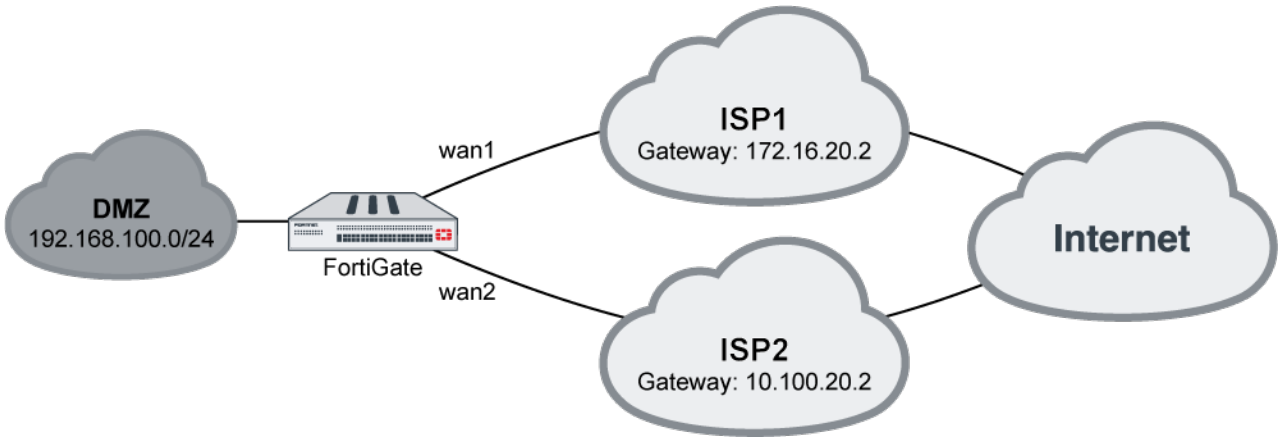
```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(server):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(15.247), jitter(5.231) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.621), jitter(6.905) sla_map=0x0
```

SLA targets example

SLA targets are a set of constraints that are used in SD-WAN rules to control the paths that traffic take.

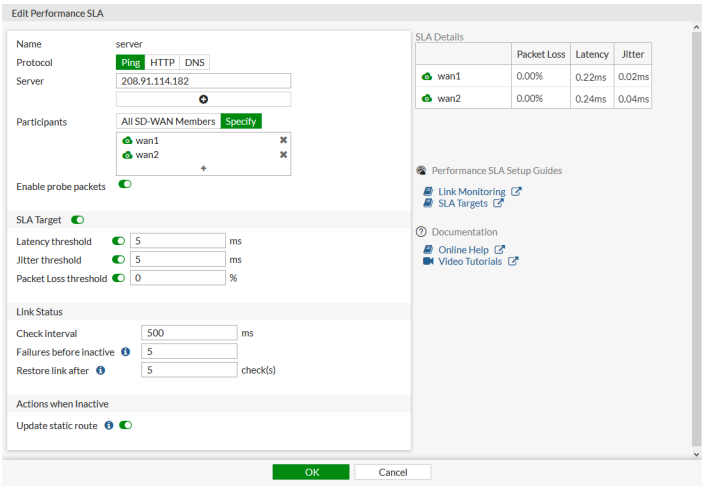
The available constraints are:

- *Latency threshold*: Latency for SLA to make decision, in milliseconds (0 - 10000000, default = 5).
- *Jitter threshold*: Jitter for SLA to make decision, in milliseconds (0 - 10000000, default = 5).
- *Packet loss threshold*: Packet loss for SLA to make decision, in percentage (0 - 100, default = 0).



To configure Performance SLA targets using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
3. Create a new Performance SLA or edit an existing one. See Link monitoring example on page 688.
4. Enable *SLA Targets*and configure the constraints. To add multiple SLA targets, use the CLI.



5. Configured the remaining settings as needed, then click *OK*.

To configure Performance SLA targets using the GUI:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "server"
            set server "208.91.114.182"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor latency jitter packet-loss
                    set latency-threshold 10
                    set jitter-threshold 10
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
```

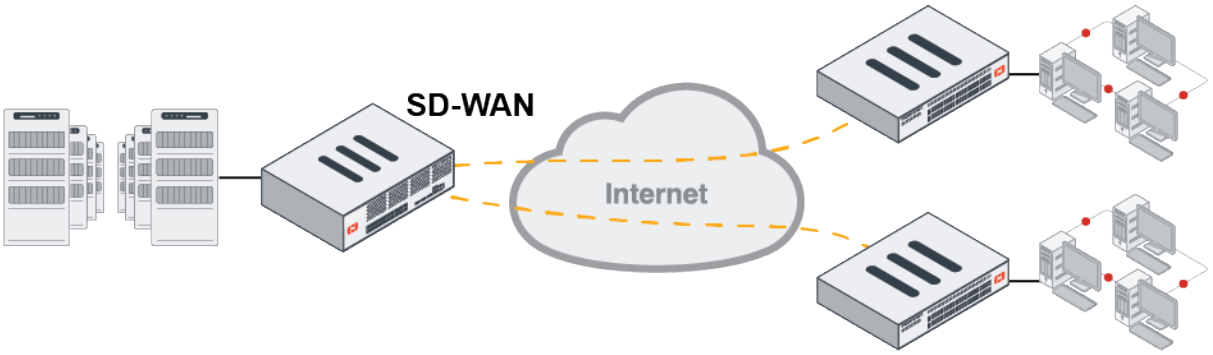
```
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

The `link-cost-factor` variable is used to select which constraints are enabled.

Health check packet DSCP marker support

SD-WAN health check probe packets support Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) markers for accurate evaluation of the link performance for high priority applications by upstream devices.

When the SD-WAN health check packet is sent out, the DSCP can be set with a CLI command.



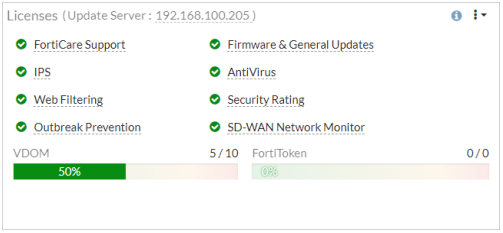
To mark health-check packets with DSCP:

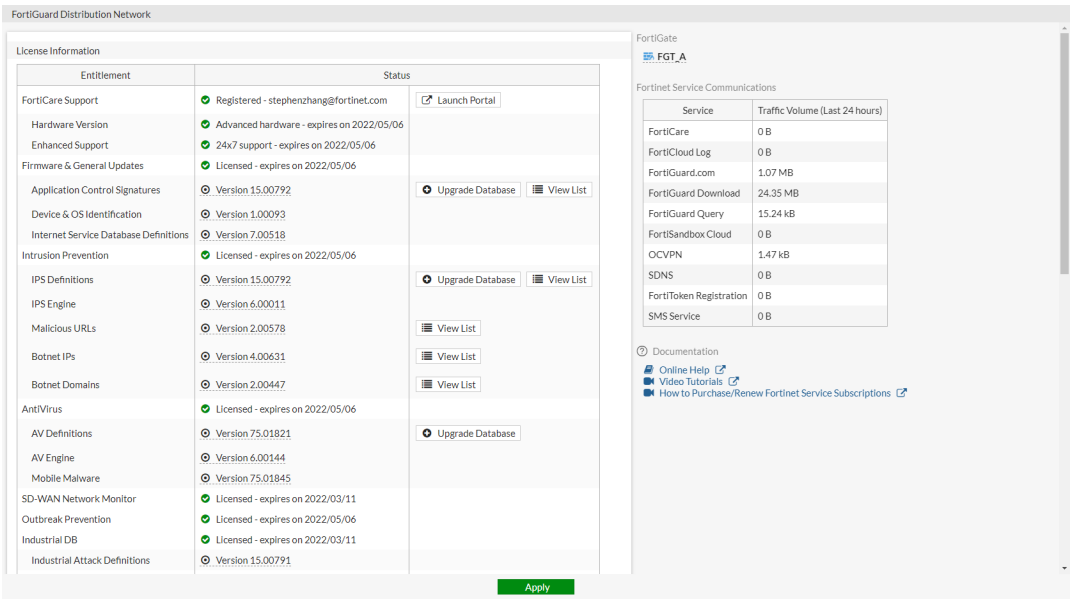
```
config system sdwan
   config health-check
      edit <name>
         set diffservcode <6 bits binary, range 000000-111111>
      next
   end
end
```

Interface speedtest

An interface speedtest can be performed on WAN interfaces in the GUI. The results of the test can be added to the interface's *Estimated bandwidth*. The estimated upstream and downstream bandwidths can be used in SD-WAN service rules to determine the best link to use when either Maximize Bandwidth or Best Quality strategies are selected.

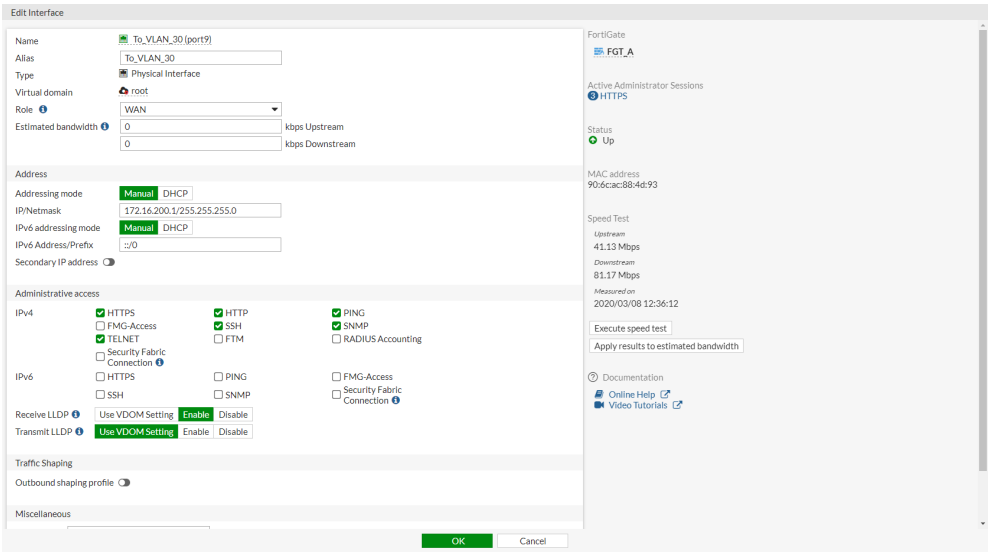
An SD-WAN Network Monitor license is required to use the speedtest. The *License* widget and the *System* > *FortiGuard* page show license status.



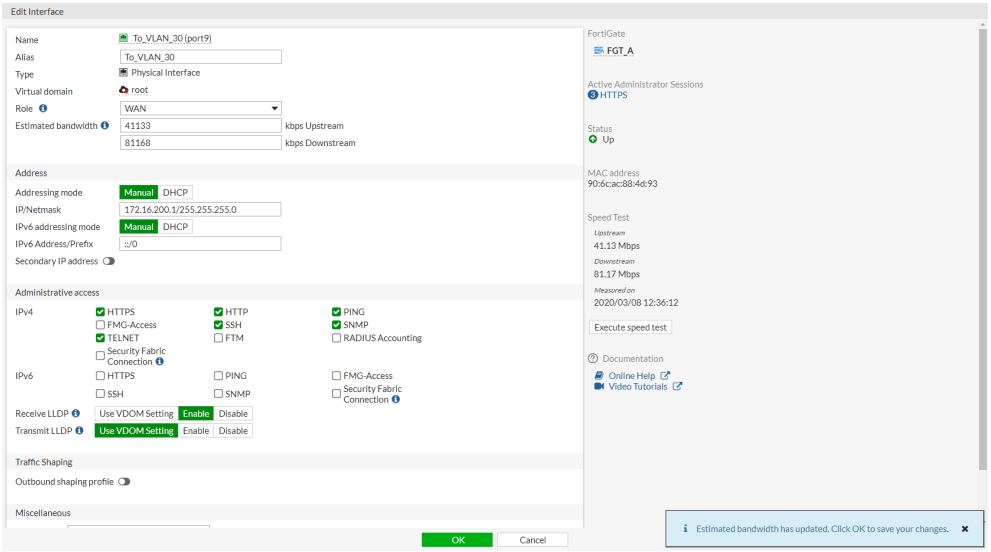


To run an interface speedtest in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit a WAN interface. The interfaces can be grouped by role using the grouping dropdown on the right side of the toolbar.
3. Click *Execute speed test* in the right pane.



4. When the test completes, click *Apply results to estimated bandwidth*.



The speedtest results are used to populate the *Estimated bandwidth* fields.

5. Click *OK*.

The FortiGate must be connected to FortiGuard, and able to reach either the AWS or Google speedtest servers.

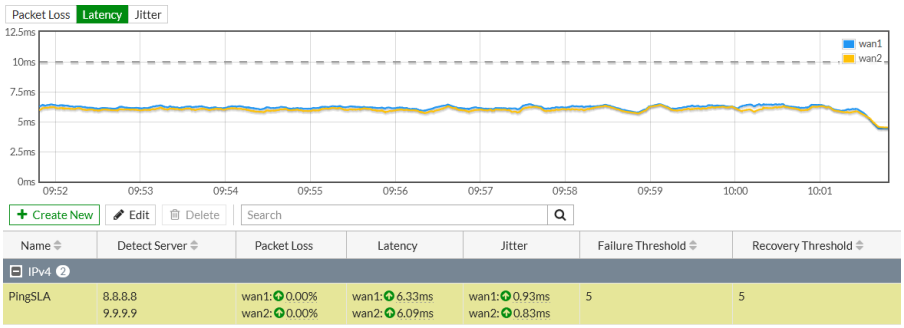
Monitor performance SLA

SD-WAN diagnostics can be used to help maintain your SD-WAN solution

Monitoring SD-WAN link quality status

Link quality plays a significant role in link selection for SD-WAN. Investigate any prolonged issues with packet loss, latency, or jitter to ensure that your network does not experience degraded performance or an outage.

You can monitor the link quality status of SD-WAN interface members at *Network* > *Performance SLA*.



The live charts show the packet loss, latency, or jitter for the selected health check. Hover the cursor over a line in the chart to see the specific value for that interface at that specific time.

The table shows information about each health check, including the configured servers, link quality data, and thresholds. The colored arrow indicates the status of the interface when the last status check was performed: green means that the interface was active, and red means that the interface was inactive. Hover the cursor over the arrow for additional information.

Monitoring system event logs

The features adds an SD-WAN daemon function to keep a short, 10 minute history of SLA that can be viewed in the CLI.

Performance SLA results related to interface selection, session failover, and other information, can be logged. These logs can then be used for long-term monitoring of traffic issues at remote sites, and for reports and views in FortiAnalyzer.

The time intervals that Performance SLA fail and pass logs are generated in can be configured.

To configure the fail and pass logs' generation time interval:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "PingSLA"
            set sla-fail-log-period 30
            set sla-pass-log-period 60
        next
    end
end
```

To view the 10 minute Performance SLA link status history:

```
FGDocs # diagnose sys sdwan sla-log PingSLA 1
Timestamp: Fri Sep  4 10:32:37 2020, vdom root, health-check PingSLA, interface: wan2,
status: up, latency: 4.455, jitter: 0.430, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Sep  4 10:32:37 2020, vdom root, health-check PingSLA, interface: wan2,
status: up, latency: 4.461, jitter: 0.436, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Sep  4 10:32:38 2020, vdom root, health-check PingSLA, interface: wan2,
status: up, latency: 4.488, jitter: 0.415, packet loss: 0.000%.
...
Timestamp: Fri Sep  4 10:42:36 2020, vdom root, health-check PingSLA, interface: wan2,
status: up, latency: 6.280, jitter: 0.302, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Sep  4 10:42:37 2020, vdom root, health-check PingSLA, interface: wan2,
status: up, latency: 6.261, jitter: 0.257, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Sep  4 10:42:37 2020, vdom root, health-check PingSLA, interface: wan2,
status: up, latency: 6.229, jitter: 0.245, packet loss: 0.000%.
```

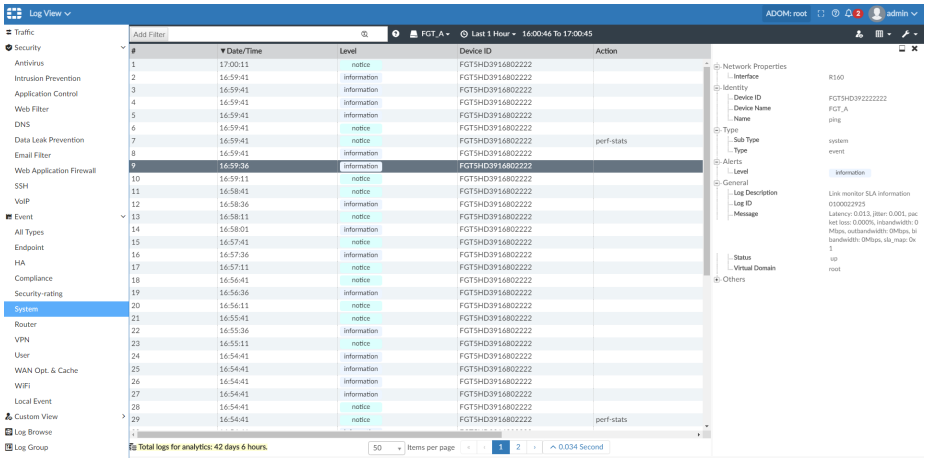
SLA pass logs

The FortiGate generates Performance SLA logs at the specified pass log interval (`sla-pass-log-period`) when SLA passes.

```
3: date=2019-02-28 time=11:53:26 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1551383604 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R160" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.013, jitter: 0.001, packet loss:
0.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 0Mbps, bibandwidth: 0Mbps, sla_map: 0x1"
7: date=2019-02-28 time=11:52:26 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1551383545 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
```

```
name="ping" interface="R160" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.013, jitter: 0.002, packet loss:
0.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 0Mbps, bibandwidth: 0Mbps, sla_map: 0x1"
```

In the FortiAnalyzer GUI:

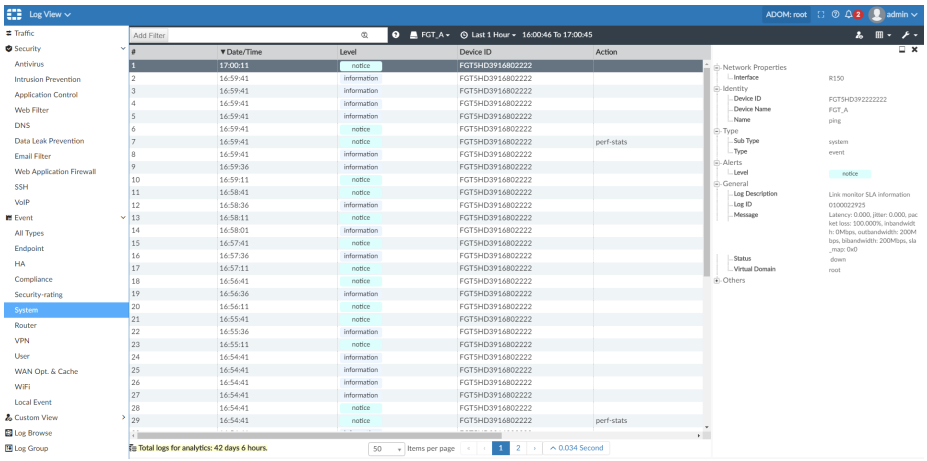


SLA fail logs

The FortiGate generates Performance SLA logs at the specified fail log interval (`sla-fail-log-period`) when SLA fails.

```
6: date=2019-02-28 time=11:52:32 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1551383552 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R150" status="down" msg="Latency: 0.000, jitter: 0.000, packet loss:
100.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth: 200Mbps, sla_map: 0x0"
8: date=2019-02-28 time=11:52:02 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1551383522 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R150" status="down" msg="Latency: 0.000, jitter: 0.000, packet loss:
100.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth: 200Mbps, sla_map: 0x0"
```

In the FortiAnalyzer GUI:



SLA monitoring using the REST API

SLA log information and interface SLA information can be monitored using the REST API. This feature is also be used by FortiManager as part of its detailed SLA monitoring and drill-down features.

Interface log command example:

```
https://172.172.172.9/api/v2/monitor/virtual-wan/interface-log
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "interface":"port13",
      "logs":[
        {
          "timestamp":1547087168,
          "tx_bandwidth":3447,
          "rx_bandwidth":3457,
          "bi_bandwidth":6904,
          "tx_bytes":748875,
          "rx_bytes":708799,
          "egress_queue":[
          ]
        },
        {
          "timestamp":1547087178,
          "tx_bandwidth":3364,
          "rx_bandwidth":3400,
          "bi_bandwidth":6764,
          "tx_bytes":753789,
          "rx_bytes":712835,
          "egress_queue":[
          ]
        },
....
....
```

SLA log command example:

```
https://172.172.172.9/api/v2/monitor/virtual-wan/sla-log
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "name":"ping",
      "interface":"spoke11-p1",
      "logs":[
        {
          "timestamp":1614813142,
          "link":"up",
          "latency":0.13763333857059479,
          "jitter":0.02996666356921196,
          "packetloss":0
        },
```

```
      "child_intfs":{
        "spoke11-p1_0":[
          {
            "timestamp":1614813142,
            "link":"up",
            "latency":0.12413334846496582,
            "jitter":0.028366668149828911,
            "packetloss":0
          },

    {
      "name":"ping",
      "interface":"spoke12-p1",
      "logs":[
        {
          "timestamp":1614813143,
          "link":"up",
          "latency":0.11373332887887955,
          "jitter":0.023099998012185097,
          "packetloss":0
        },

     "child_intfs":{
        "spoke12-p1_0":[
          {
            "timestamp":1614813143,
            "link":"up",
            "latency":0.0930333212018013,
            "jitter":0.011033335700631142,
            "packetloss":0
          },
....
....
```


Health check command example:


```
https://172.172.172.9/api/v2/monitor/virtual-wan/health-check
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":{
    "ping":{
      "spoke11-p1":{
        "status":"up",
        "latency":0.13406667113304138,
        "jitter":0.023000005632638931,
        "packet_loss":0,
        "packet_sent":29722,
        "packet_received":29718,
        "sla_targets_met":[
          1
        ],
        "session":2,
        "tx_bandwidth":1353,
        "rx_bandwidth":1536,
        "state_changed":1614798274,
        "child_intfs":{
```

```
            "spoke11-p1_0":{
              "status":"up",
              "latency":0.12929999828338623,
              "jitter":0.028200000524520874,
              "packet_loss":0,
              "packet_sent":29626,
              "packet_received":29625,
              "sla_targets_met":[
                1
              ],
              "session":0,
              "tx_bandwidth":2608,
              "rx_bandwidth":1491,
              "state_changed":0
            }
          }
        },
        "spoke12-p1":{
          "status":"up",
          "latency":0.11356667429208755,
          "jitter":0.015699999406933784,
          "packet_loss":0,
          "packet_sent":29722,
          "packet_received":29717,
          "sla_targets_met":[
            1
          ],
          "session":2,
          "tx_bandwidth":1353,
          "rx_bandwidth":1536,
          "state_changed":1614798274,
          "child_intfs":{
            "spoke12-p1_0":{
              "status":"up",
              "latency":0.095466658473014832,
              "jitter":0.0092999991029500961,
              "packet_loss":0,
              "packet_sent":29687,
              "packet_received":29686,
              "sla_targets_met":[
                1
              ],
              "session":0,
              "tx_bandwidth":1309,
              "rx_bandwidth":2553,
              "state_changed":0
            }
          }
        }
      }
    },
  ....
  ....
```

CLI diagnose commands:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan intf-sla-log port13
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:33:49 2019, used inbandwidth: 3208bps, used outbandwidth:
3453bps, used bibandwidth: 6661bps, tx bytes: 947234bytes, rx bytes: 898622bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:33:59 2019, used inbandwidth: 3317bps, used outbandwidth:
3450bps, used bibandwidth: 6767bps, tx bytes: 951284bytes, rx bytes: 902937bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:09 2019, used inbandwidth: 3302bps, used outbandwidth:
3389bps, used bibandwidth: 6691bps, tx bytes: 956268bytes, rx bytes: 907114bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:19 2019, used inbandwidth: 3279bps, used outbandwidth:
3352bps, used bibandwidth: 6631bps, tx bytes: 958920bytes, rx bytes: 910793bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:29 2019, used inbandwidth: 3233bps, used outbandwidth:
3371bps, used bibandwidth: 6604bps, tx bytes: 964374bytes, rx bytes: 914854bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:39 2019, used inbandwidth: 3235bps, used outbandwidth:
3362bps, used bibandwidth: 6597bps, tx bytes: 968250bytes, rx bytes: 918846bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:49 2019, used inbandwidth: 3165bps, used outbandwidth:
3362bps, used bibandwidth: 6527bps, tx bytes: 972298bytes, rx bytes: 922724bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:59 2019, used inbandwidth: 3184bps, used outbandwidth:
3362bps, used bibandwidth: 6546bps, tx bytes: 977282bytes, rx bytes: 927019bytes.

# diagnose sys sdwan sla-log ping 1 spoke11-p1_0
    Timestamp: Wed Mar  3 15:35:20 2021, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: spoke11-
p1_0, status: up, latency: 0.135, jitter: 0.029, packet loss: 0.000%.

# diagnose sys sdwan sla-log ping 2 spoke12-p1_0
    Timestamp: Wed Mar  3 15:36:08 2021, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: spoke12-
p1_0, status: up, latency: 0.095, jitter: 0.010, packet loss: 0.000%.

# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
    Health Check(ping):
    Seq(1 spoke11-p1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.156), jitter(0.043) sla_
map=0x1
    Seq(1 spoke11-p1_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.128), jitter(0.024)
sla_map=0x1
    Seq(2 spoke12-p1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.125), jitter(0.028) sla_
map=0x1
    Seq(2 spoke12-p1_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.093), jitter(0.008)
sla_map=0x1
```

SD-WAN rules

The following topics provide instructions on configuring SD-WAN rules:

- Implicit rule on page 700
- Best quality strategy on page 704
- Lowest cost (SLA) strategy on page 707
- Maximize bandwidth (SLA) strategy on page 710
- Minimum number of links for a rule to take effect on page 713
- Use MAC addresses in SD-WAN rules and policy routes on page 714
- SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS on page 715
- SDN dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN rules on page 720

- Application steering using SD-WAN rules on page 723
- DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN on page 734

Implicit rule

SD-WAN rules define specific policy routing options to route traffic to an SD-WAN member. When no explicit SD-WAN rules are defined, or if none of the rules are matched, then the default implicit rule is used.

In an SD-WAN configuration, the default route usually points to the SD-WAN interface, so each active member's gateway is added to the routing table's default route. FortiOS uses equal-cost multipath (ECMP) to balance traffic between the interfaces. One of five load balancing algorithms can be selected:

Source IP (`source-ip-based`)	Traffic is divided equally between the interfaces, including the SD-WAN interface. Sessions that start at the same source IP address use the same path. This is the default selection.
Sessions (`weight-based`)	The workload is distributing based on the number of sessions that are connected through the interface. The weight that you assign to each interface is used to calculate the percentage of the total sessions that are allowed to connect through an interface, and the sessions are distributed to the interfaces accordingly. Sessions with the same source and destination IP addresses (`src-ip` and `dst-ip`) are forwarded to the same path, but are still considered in later session ratio calculations. An interface's weight value cannot be zero.
Spillover (`usage-based`)	The interface is used until the traffic bandwidth exceeds the ingress and egress thresholds that you set for that interface. Additional traffic is then sent through the next SD-WAN interface member.
Source-Destination IP (`source-dest-ip-based`)	Traffic is divided equally between the interfaces. Sessions that start at the same source IP address and go to the same destination IP address use the same path.
Volume (`measured-volume-based`)	The workload is distributing based on the number of packets that are going through the interface. The volume weight that you assign to each interface is used to calculate the percentage of the total bandwidth that is allowed to go through an interface, and the bandwidth is distributed to the interfaces accordingly. An interface's volume value cannot be zero.

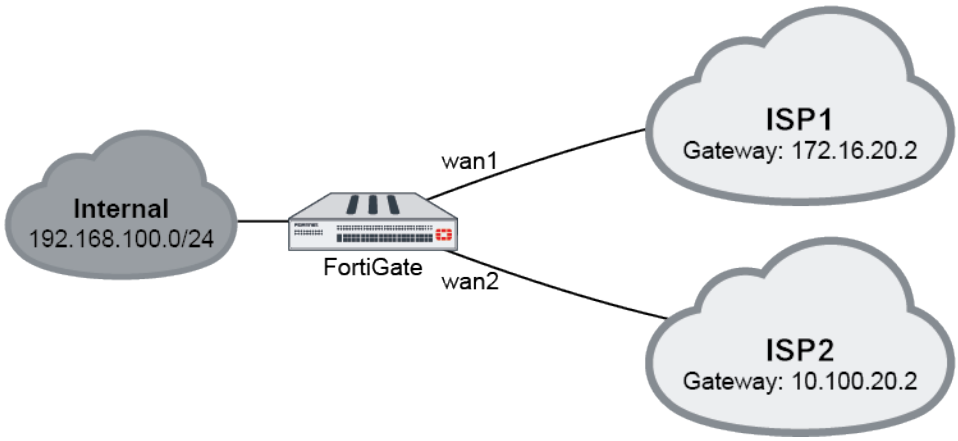


You cannot exclude an interface from participating in load balancing using the implicit rule. If the weight or volume were set to zero in a previous FortiOS version, the value is treated as a one.

Interfaces with static routes can be excluded from ECMP if they are configured with a lower priority than other static routes.

Examples

The following four examples demonstrate how to use the implicit rules (load-balance mode).



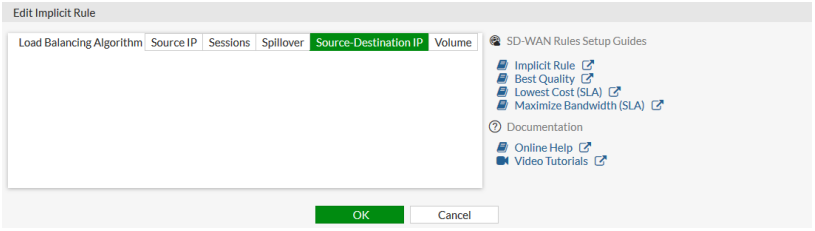
If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

Example 1

Outgoing traffic is equally balanced between wan1 and wan2, using *source-ip-based* or *source-dest-ip-based* mode.

Using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, enable SD-WAN and add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
3. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
4. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select either *Source IP* or *Source-Destination IP*.



5. Click *OK*.

Using the CLI:

1. Enable SD-WAN and add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Set the load balancing algorithm:
   Source IP based:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode source-ip-based
end
```

   Source-Destination IP based:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode source-dest-ip-based
end
```

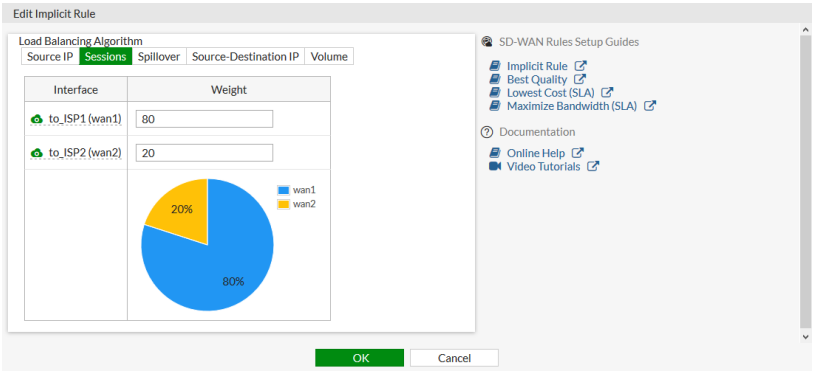
Example 2

Outgoing traffic is balanced between wan1 and wan2 with a customized ratio, using *weight-based* mode: wan1 runs 80% of the sessions, and wan2 runs 20% of the sessions.

Sessions with the same source and destination IP addresses (`src-ip` and `dst-ip`) will be forwarded to the same path, but will still be considered in later session ratio calculations.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
3. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select *Sessions*.
4. Enter 80 in the *wan1* field, and 20 in the *wan2* field.



5. Click *OK*.

Using the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode weight-based
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set weight 80
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set weight 20
        next
    end
end
```

Example 3

Outgoing traffic is balanced between wan1 and wan2 with a customized ratio, using *measured-volume-based* mode: wan1 runs 80% of the volume, and wan2 runs 20% of the volume.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
3. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select *Volume*.
4. Enter 80 in the *wan1* field, and 20 in the *wan2* field.
5. Click *OK*.

Using the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode measured-volume-based
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set volume-ratio 80
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set volume-ratio 20
        next
    end
end
```

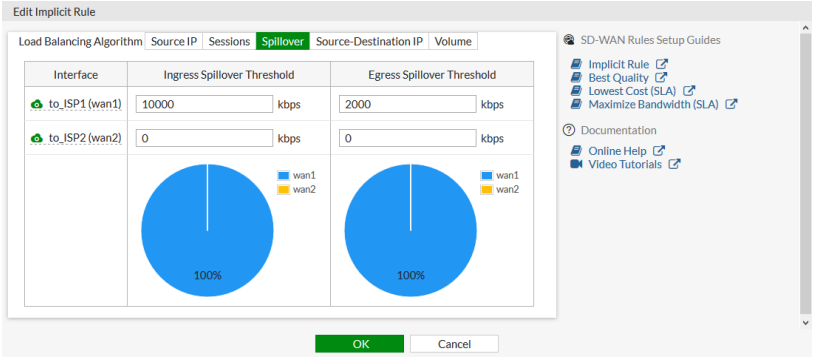
Example 4

Load balancing can be used to reduce costs when internet connections are charged at different rates. For example, if wan2 charges based on volume usage and wan1 charges a fixed monthly fee, we can use wan1 at its maximum bandwidth, and use wan2 for overflow.

In this example, wan1's bandwidth is 10Mbps down and 2Mbps up. Traffic will use wan1 until it reaches its spillover limit, then it will start to use wan2. Note that `auto-asic-offload` must be disabled in the firewall policy.

Using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, enable SD-WAN and add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
3. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
4. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select *Spillover*.
5. Enter 10000 in the *wan1 Ingress Spillover Threshold* field, and 2000 in the *wan1 Egress Spillover Threshold* field.



6. Click *OK*.

Using the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode usage-based
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set spillover-threshold 2000
            set ingress-spillover-threshold 10000
        next
    end
end
```

Best quality strategy

SD-WAN rules are used to control how sessions are distributed to SD-WAN members. Rules can be configured in one of five modes:

- `auto`: Interfaces are assigned a priority based on quality.
- Manual (`manual`): Interfaces are manually assigned a priority.
- Best Quality (`priority`): Interface are assigned a priority based on the link-cost-factor of the interface.
- Lowest Cost (SLA) (`sla`): Interfaces are assigned a priority based on selected SLA settings. See Lowest cost (SLA) strategy on page 707.
- Maximize Bandwith (SLA) (`load-balance`): Traffic is distributed among all available links based on the selected load balancing algorithm. See Maximize bandwidth (SLA) strategy on page 710.

When using *Best Quality* mode, SD-WAN will choose the best link to forward traffic by comparing the *link-cost-factor*, selected from one of the following:

GUI	CLI	Description
Latency	`latency`	Select a link based on latency.
Jitter	`jitter`	Select a link based on jitter.
Packet Loss	`packet-loss`	Select a link based on packet loss.
Downstream	`inbandwidth`	Select a link based on available bandwidth of incoming traffic.
Upstream	`outbandwidth`	Select a link based on available bandwidth of outgoing traffic.
Bandwidth	`bibandwidth`	Select a link based on available bandwidth of bidirectional traffic.
Customized profile	`custom-profile-1`	Select link based on customized profile. If selected, set the following weights: • packet-loss-weight: Coefficient of packet-loss. • latency-weight: Coefficient of latency. • jitter-weight: Coefficient of jitter. • bandwidth-weight: Coefficient of reciprocal of available bidirectional bandwidth.

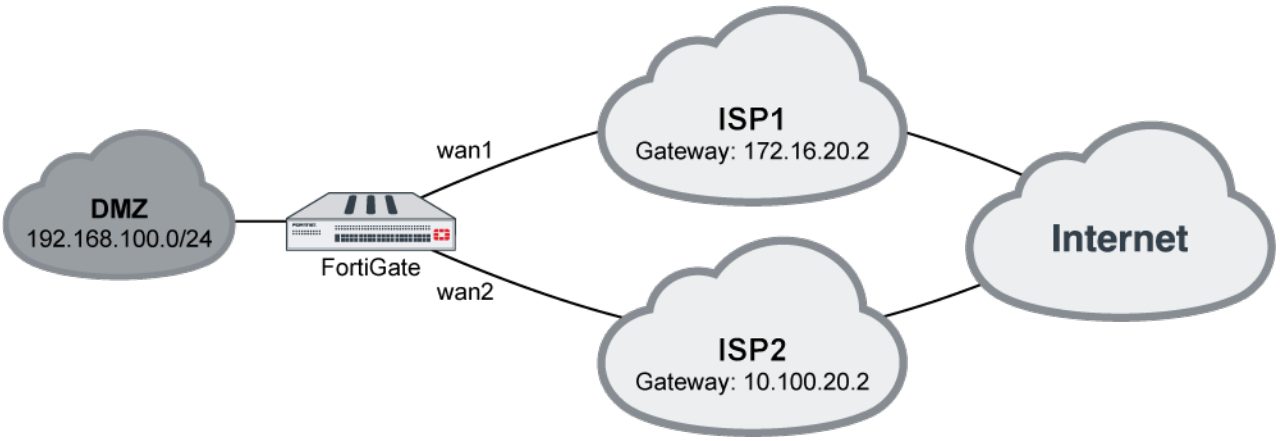
If the *Downstream* (`inbandwidth`), *Upstream* (`outbandwidth`), or *Bandwidth* (`bibandwidth`) quality criteria is used, the FortiGate will compare the bandwidth based on the configured upstream and downstream bandwidth values.

The interface speedtest can be used to populate the bandwidth values based on the speedtest results. See Interface speedtest on page 691 for details.

To manually configure the upstream and downstream bandwidth values:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set estimated-upstream-bandwidth <speed in kbps>
        set estimated-downstream-bandwidth <speed in kbps>
    next
end
```

Example

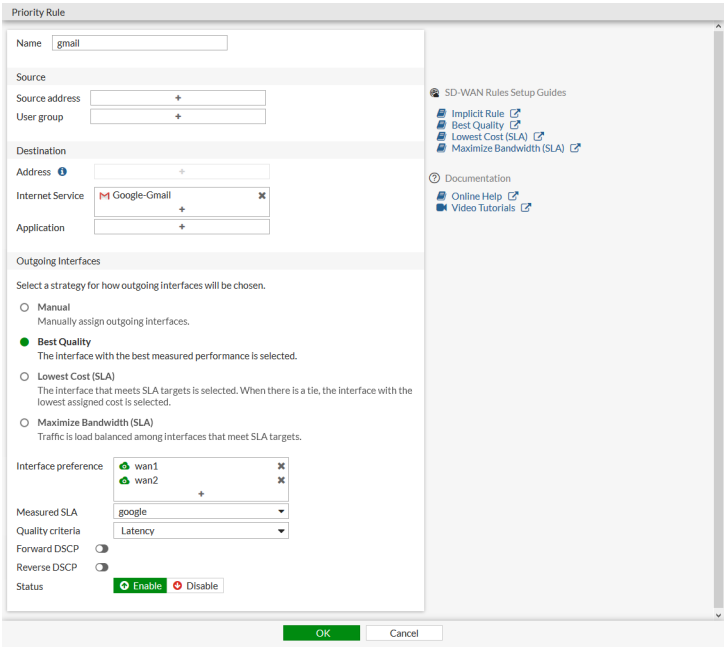


In this example, your wan1 and wan2 SD-WAN interfaces connect to two ISPs that both go to the public internet, and you want Gmail services to use the link with the least latency.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use Best Quality:

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Create a new Performance SLA named *google*. See Link monitoring example on page 688.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *gmail*.

6. Configure the following settings:



Field	Setting
Internet Service	Google-Gmail
Strategy	Best Quality
Interface preference	wan1 and wan2
Measured SLA	google (created in step 2).
Quality criteria	Latency

7. Click *OK* to create the rule.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use priority:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "google"
            set server "google.com"
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "gmail"
            set mode priority
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-id 65646
            set health-check "google"
            set link-cost-factor latency
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

To diagnose the Performance SLA status:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service 1
Service(1):

    TOS(0x0/0x0), protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(priority), link-cost-facotr(latency), link-
cost-threshold(10), health-check(google) Members:

        1: Seq_num(2), alive, latency: 12.633, selected
        2: Seq_num(1), alive, latency: 14.563, selected

    Internet Service: Google-Gmail(65646)
```

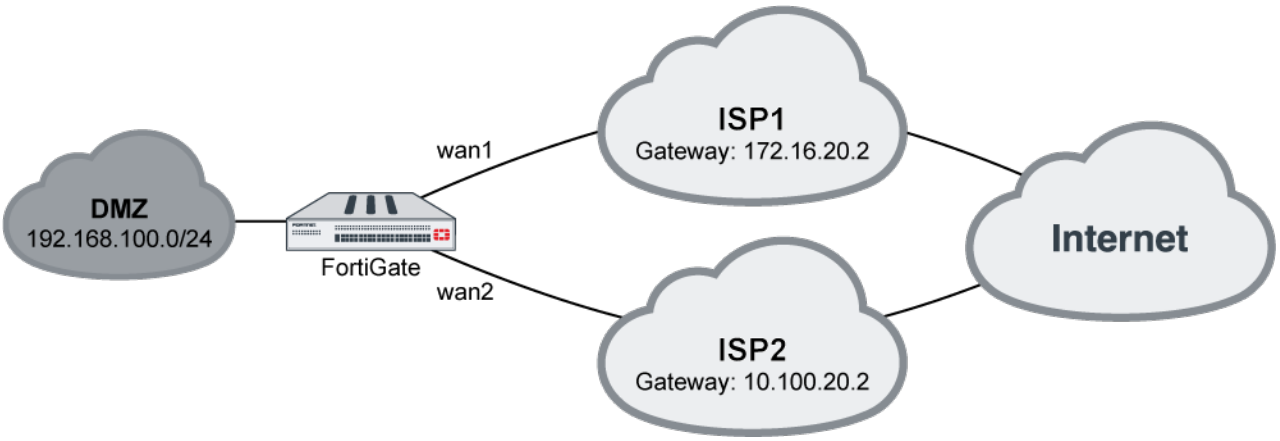
As wan2 has a smaller latency, SD-WAN will put Seq_num(2) on top of Seq_num(1) and wan2 will be used to forward Gmail traffic.

Lowest cost (SLA) strategy

SD-WAN rules are used to control how sessions are distributed to SD-WAN members. Rules can be configured in one of five modes:

- `auto`: Interfaces are assigned a priority based on quality.
- Manual (`manual`): Interfaces are manually assigned a priority.
- Best Quality (`priority`): Interface are assigned a priority based on the link-cost-factor of the interface. See Best quality strategy on page 704.
- Lowest Cost (SLA) (`sla`): Interfaces are assigned a priority based on selected SLA settings.
- Maximize Bandwidth (SLA) (`load-balance`): Traffic is distributed among all available links based on the selected load balancing algorithm. See Maximize bandwidth (SLA) strategy on page 710.

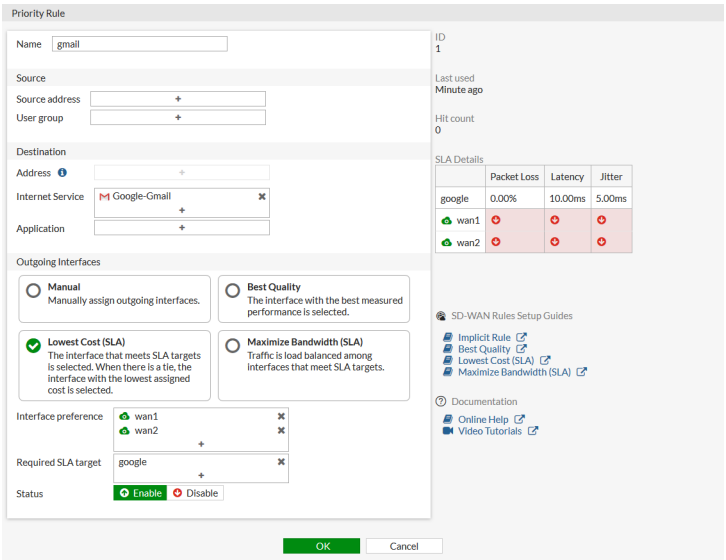
When using *Lowest Cost (SLA)* mode (`sla` in the CLI), SD-WAN will choose the lowest cost link that satisfies SLA to forward traffic. The lowest possible cost is `0`. If multiple eligible links have the same cost, the *Interface preference* order will be used to select a link.



In this example, your wan1 and wan2 SD-WAN interfaces connect to two ISPs that both go to the public internet. The cost of wan2 is less than that of wan1. You want to configure Gmail services to use the lowest cost interface, but the link quality must meet a standard of latency: 10ms, and jitter: 5ms.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use Lowest Cost (SLA):

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Create a new Performance SLA named *google* that includes an SLA Target with *Latency threshold* = 10ms and *Jitter threshold* = 5ms. See Link monitoring example on page 688.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *gmail*.
6. Configure the following settings:



Field	Setting
Internet Service	Google-Gmail

Field	Setting
Strategy	Lowest Cost (SLA)
Interface preference	wan1 and wan2
Required SLA target	google (created in step 2).

7. Click *OK* to create the rule.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SLA:

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set cost 10
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set cost 5
        next
    end
    config health-check
        edit "google"
            set server "google.com"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 10
                    set jitter-threshold 5
                next
            end
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "gmail"
            set mode sla
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-id 65646
            config sla
                edit "google"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

To diagnose the Performance SLA status:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service 1
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

    TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
    Members:<<BR>>

        1: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), selected
        2: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), selected

    Internet Service: Google.Gmail(65646)
```

When both wan1 and wan2 meet the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will only use wan2. If only wan1 meets the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will only use wan1, even though it has a higher cost. If neither interface meets the requirements, wan2 will be used.

If both interface had the same cost and both met the SLA requirements, the first link configured in `set priority-members` would be used.

Maximize bandwidth (SLA) strategy

SD-WAN rules are used to control how sessions are distributed to SD-WAN members. Rules can be configured in one of five modes:

- `auto`: Interfaces are assigned a priority based on quality.
- Manual (`manual`): Interfaces are manually assigned a priority.
- Best Quality (`priority`): Interface are assigned a priority based on the link-cost-factor of the interface. See Best quality strategy on page 704.
- Lowest Cost (SLA) (`sla`): Interfaces are assigned a priority based on selected SLA settings. See Lowest cost (SLA) strategy on page 707.
- Maximize Bandwidth (SLA) (`load-balance`): Traffic is distributed among all available links based on the selected load balancing algorithm.

When using *Maximize Bandwidth* mode (`load-balance` in the CLI), SD-WAN will choose all of the links that satisfies SLA to forward traffic based on a load balancing algorithm. The load balancing algorithm, or hash method, can be one of the following:

round-robin	All traffic are distributed to selected interfaces in equal portions and circular order. This is the default method, and the only option available when using the GUI.
source-ip-based	All traffic from a source IP is sent to the same interface.
source-dest-ip-based	All traffic from a source IP to a destination IP is sent to the same interface.
inbandwidth	All traffic are distributed to a selected interface with most available bandwidth for incoming traffic.

outbandwidth	All traffic are distributed to a selected interface with most available bandwidth for outgoing traffic.
bibandwidth	All traffic are distributed to a selected interface with most available bandwidth for both incoming and outgoing traffic.

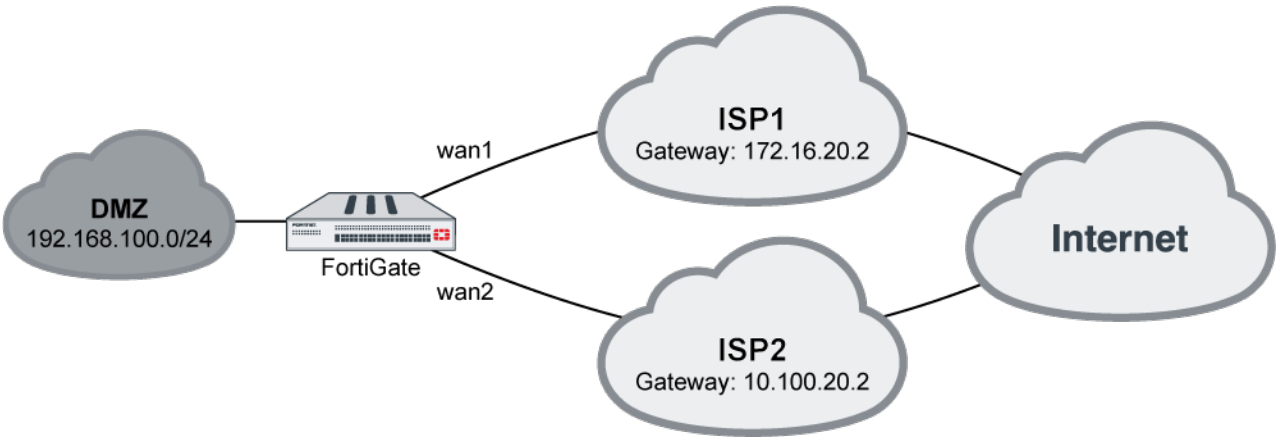
When the `inbandwidth`, `outbandwidth`), or `bibandwidth` load balancing algorithm is used, the FortiGate will compare the bandwidth based on the configured upstream and downstream bandwidth values.

The interface speedtest can be used to populate the bandwidth values based on the speedtest results. See Interface speedtest on page 691 for details.

To manually configure the upstream and downstream bandwidth values:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set estimated-upstream-bandwidth <speed in kbps>
        set estimated-downstream-bandwidth <speed in kbps>
    next
end
```

ADVPN is not supported in this mode.

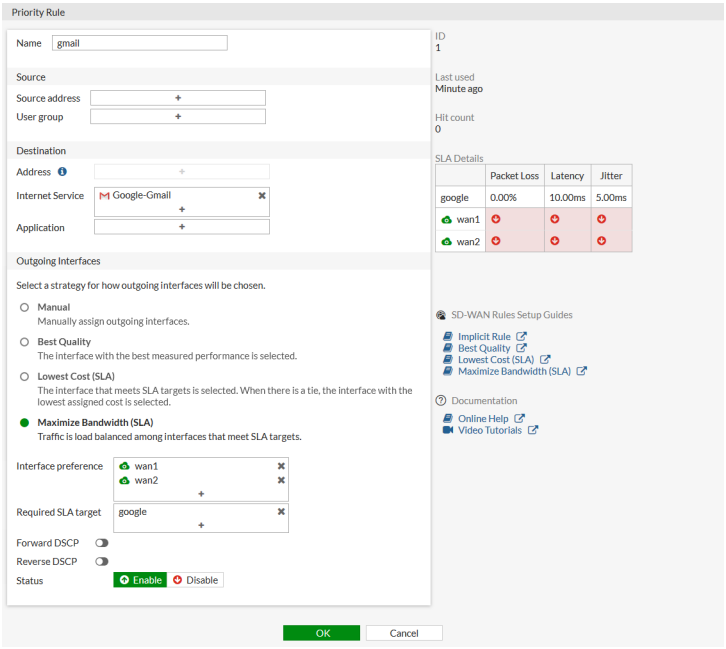


In this example, your wan1 and wan2 SD-WAN interfaces connect to two ISPs that both go to the public internet. You want to configure Gmail services to use both of the interface, but the link quality must meet a standard of latency: 10ms, and jitter: 5ms. This can maximize the bandwidth usage.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use Maximize Bandwidth (SLA):

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.
2. Create a new Performance SLA named *google* that includes an SLA Target 1 with *Latency threshold* = 10ms and *Jitter threshold* = 5ms. See Link monitoring example on page 688.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *gmail*.

6. Configure the following settings:



Field	Setting
Internet Service	Google-Gmail
Strategy	Maximize Bandwidth (SLA)
Interface preference	wan1 and wan2
Required SLA target	google (created in step 2).

7. Click *OK* to create the rule.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SLA:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "google"
            set server "google.com"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 10
                    set jitter-threshold 5
                next
            end
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "gmail"
            set addr-mode ipv4
            set mode load-balance
            set hash-mode round-robin
```

```
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-name Google-Gmail
            config sla
                edit "google"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

To diagnose the performance SLA status:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service 1
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

    TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(load-balance)
    Members:<<BR>>

        1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected
        2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected

    Internet Service: Google.Gmail(65646)
```

When both wan1 and wan2 meet the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will use both wan1 and wan2. If only one of the interfaces meets the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will only use that interface.

If neither interface meets the requirements but health-check is still alive, then wan1 and wan2 tie. The traffic will try to balance between wan1 and wan2, using both interfaces to forward traffic.

Minimum number of links for a rule to take effect

In `sla` and `load-balance` modes, you can specify the number of links that must be up for the rule to take effect.

Example

In this example, ports 1 to 4 each have 10Mbps of bandwidth, and port 5 has 50Mbps. An application requires 35Mbps of bandwidth, so the SD-WAN rule balances the traffic between ports 1 to 4. If one of the links goes down, all of the traffic must be passed to port 5, so the minimum required number of links is 4.

To set the minimum number of links in a rule:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode load-balance
            set minimum-sla-meet-members 4
            set dst <destination>
            config sla
```

```
                edit <sla>
                    set id <id>
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2 3 4
        next
    end
end
```

Use MAC addresses in SD-WAN rules and policy routes

You can use MAC addresses as the source in SD-WAN rules and policy routes.

The FABRIC_DEVICE address object (a dynamic object that includes the IPs of Security Fabric devices) can be used as a source or destination in SD-WAN rules and policy routes.

The `diagnose ip proute match` command accepts either the IP or MAC address format for the source:

```
diagnose ip proute match <destination> <source> <interface> <protocol> <port>
```

To configure a MAC address as a source for SD-WAN and a policy route:

1. Configure the MAC address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "mac-add"
        set type mac
        set start-mac 70:4c:a5:86:de:56
        set end-mac 70:4c:a5:86:de:56
    next
end
```

2. Configure the policy route:

```
config router policy
    edit 3
        set srcaddr "mac-add"
        set gateway 15.1.1.34
        set output-device ha
    next
end
```

3. Configure the SD-WAN rule:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set dst "all"
            set src "mac-add"
            set priority-members 1
        next
        edit 2
            set dst "FABRIC_DEVICE"
            set priority-members 2
        next
    end
end
```

To verify the policy route matching for a MAC address:

```
# diagnose ip proute match 3.1.1.34 70:4c:a5:86:de:56 port3 22 6
dst=3.1.1.34 src=0.0.0.0 smac=70:4c:a5:86:de:56 iif=11 protocol=22 dport=6
id=00000003 type=Policy Route
seq-num=3
```

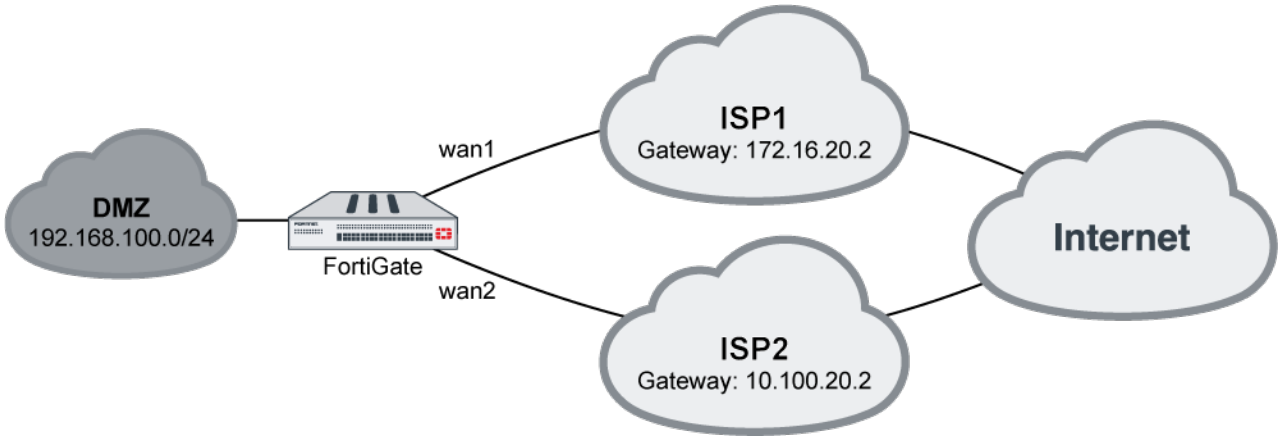
SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS

Use a traffic shaper in a firewall shaping policy to control traffic flow. You can use it to control maximum and guaranteed bandwidth, or put certain traffic to one of the three different traffic priorities: high, medium, or low.

An advanced shaping policy can classify traffic into 30 groups. Use a shaping profile to define the percentage of the interface bandwidth that is allocated to each group. Each group of traffic is shaped to the assigned speed limit based on the outgoing bandwidth limit configured on the interface.

For more information, see Traffic shaping on page 1208.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

This example shows a typical customer usage where the customer's SD-WAN uses the default zone, and has two member: wan1 and wan2, each set to 10Mb/s.

An overview of the procedures to configure SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS with SD-WAN includes:

1. Give HTTP/HTTPS traffic high priority and give FTP low priority so that if there are conflicts, FortiGate will forward HTTP/HTTPS traffic first.
2. Even though FTP has low priority, configure FortiGate to give it a 1Mb/s guaranteed bandwidth on each SD-WAN member so that if there is no FTP traffic, other traffic can use all the bandwidth. If there is heavy FTP traffic, it can still be guaranteed a 1Mb/s bandwidth.
3. Traffic going to specific destinations such as a VOIP server uses wan1 to forward, and SD-WAN forwards with an Expedited Forwarding (EF) DSCP tag 101110.

To configure SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS with SD-WAN in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665.
2. Add a firewall policy with *Application Control* enabled. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 668.
3. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers* and edit *low-priority*.
   a. Enable *Guaranteed Bandwidth* and set it to *1000* kbps.
4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
   a. Name the traffic shaping policy, for example, *HTTP-HTTPS*.
   b. Set the following:

Source	*all*
Destination	*all*
Service	*HTTP* and *HTTPS*
Outgoing	*virtual-wan-link*
Shared Shaper	Enable and set to *high-priority*
Reverse Shaper	Enable and set to *high-priority*

   c. Click *OK*.
5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
   a. Name the traffic shaping policy, for example, *FTP*.
   b. Set the following:

Source	*all*
Destination	*all*
Service	*FTP*, *FTP_GET*, and *FTP_PUT*
Outgoing	*virtual-wan-link*
Shared Shaper	Enable and set to *low-priority*
Reverse Shaper	Enable and set to *low-priority*

   c. Click *OK*
6. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* and click *Create New*.
   a. Enter a name for the rule, such as *Internet*.
   b. In the *Destination* section, click *Address* and select the VoIP server that you created in the firewall address.
   c. Under *Outgoing Interfaces* select *Manual*.
   d. For *Interface preference* select *wan1*.
   e. Click *OK*.
7. Use CLI commands to modify DSCP settings. See the DSCP CLI commands below.

To configure the firewall policy using the CLI:

```
connfig firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
```

```
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set application-list "default"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure the firewall traffic shaper priority using the CLI:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "high-priority"
        set maximum-bandwidth 1048576
        set per-policy enable
    next
    edit "low-priority"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 1000
        set maximum-bandwidth 1048576
        set priority low
        set per-policy enable
    next
end
```

To configure the firewall traffic shaping policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "http-https"
        set service "HTTP" "HTTPS"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set traffic-shaper "high-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "high-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "FTP"
        set service "FTP" "FTP_GET" "FTP_PUT"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set traffic-shaper "low-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "low-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

To configure SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS with SD-WAN in the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
```

```
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set gateway 172.16.20.2
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set gateway 10.100.20.2
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "SIP"
            set priority-members 1
            set dst "voip-server"
            set dscp-forward enable
            set dscp-forward-tag 101110
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

To use the diagnose command to check if specific traffic is attached to the correct traffic shaper:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=1 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=high-priority(2/0/134217728) reply=high-priority(2/0/134217728)
cos_fwd=0  cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=0 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(2): 36 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
service(2):
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(80,80)] helper:auto
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(443,443)] helper:auto

policy index=2 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=low-priority(4/128000/134217728) reply=low-priority(4/128000/134217728)
cos_fwd=0  cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=0 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(2): 36 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
service(3):
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(21,21)] helper:auto
```

```
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(21,21)] helper:auto
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(21,21)] helper:auto
```

To use the diagnose command to check if the correct traffic shaper is applied to the session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=11 expire=3599 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=5
origin-shaper=low-priority prio=4 guarantee 128000Bps max 1280000Bps traffic 1050Bps drops
0B
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 shaping_policy_id=2 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty npu npd os mif route_preserve
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=868/15/1 reply=752/10/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 76/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 66/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=39->38/38->39 gwy=172.16.200.55/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:58241->172.16.200.55:21(172.16.200.1:58241)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:21->172.16.200.1:58241(10.1.100.11:58241)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=4
serial=0003255f tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x100000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason:  offload-denied helper
total session 1
```

To use the diagnose command to check the status of a shared traffic shaper:

```
 # diagnose firewall shaper traffic-shaper list

name high-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 0 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 2
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name low-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 4
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name high-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
```

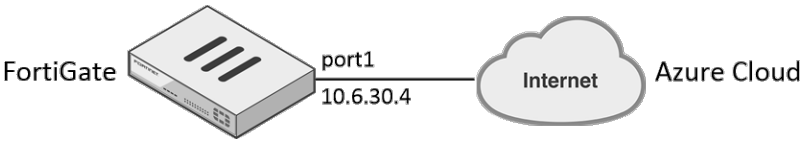
```
guaranteed-bandwidth 0 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 2
policy 1
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name low-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 4
policy 2
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0
```

SDN dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN rules

SDN dynamic connector addresses can be used in SD-WAN rules. FortiGate supports both public (AWS, Azure, GCP, OCI, AliCloud) and private (Kubernetes, VMware ESXi and NSX, OpenStack, ACI, Nuage) SDN connectors.

The configuration procedure for all of the supported SDN connector types is the same. This example uses an Azure public SDN connector.



There are four steps to create and use an SDN connector address in an SD-WAN rule:

1. Configure the FortiGate IP address and network gateway so that it can reach the Internet.
2. Create an Azure SDN connector.
3. Create a firewall address to associate with the configured SDN connector.
4. Use the firewall address in an SD-WAN service rule.

To create an Azure SDN connector:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Public SDN* section, click *Microsoft Azure*.

4. Enter the following:

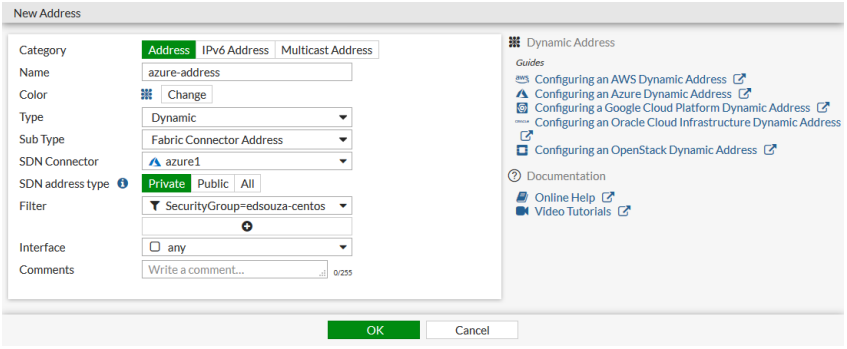
Name	azure1
Status	Enabled
Update Interval	Use Default
Server region	Global
Directory ID	942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba
Application ID	14dbd5c5-307e-4ea4-8133-68738141feb1
Client secret	xxxxxx
Resource path	disabled

5. Click *OK*.

To create a firewall address to associate with the configured SDN connector:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Enter the following:

Category	Address
Name	azure-address
Type	Dynamic
Sub Type	Fabric Connector Address
SDN Connector	azure1
SDN address type	Private
Filter	SecurityGroup=edsouza-centos
Interface	Any



4. Click *OK*.

To use the firewall address in an SD-WAN service rule:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the *Name* to *Azure1*.
4. For the *Destination Address* select *azure-address*.
5. Configure the remaining settings as needed. See SD-WAN rules on page 699 for details.
6. Click *OK*.

Diagnostics

Use the following CLI commands to check the status of and troubleshoot the connector.

To see the status of the SDN connector:

```
# diagnose sys sdn status

    SDN Connector       Type        Status          Updating        Last update
    ------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-
    azure1              azure       connected       no              n/a
```

To debug the SDN connector to resolve the firewall address:

```
# diagnose debug application azd -1
    Debug messages will be on for 30 minutes.

    ...
    azd sdn connector azure1 start updating IP addresses
    azd checking firewall address object azure-address-1, vd 0
     IP address change, new list:
      10.18.0.4
      10.18.0.12
      ...
      ...

# diagnose sys sdwan service

    Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
      TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
      Service role: standalone
      Member sub interface:
      Members:
        1: Seq_num(1), alive, selected
      Dst address:
            10.18.0.4 - 10.18.0.4
            10.18.0.12 - 10.18.0.12
             ... ...
             ... ...
             ... ...
```

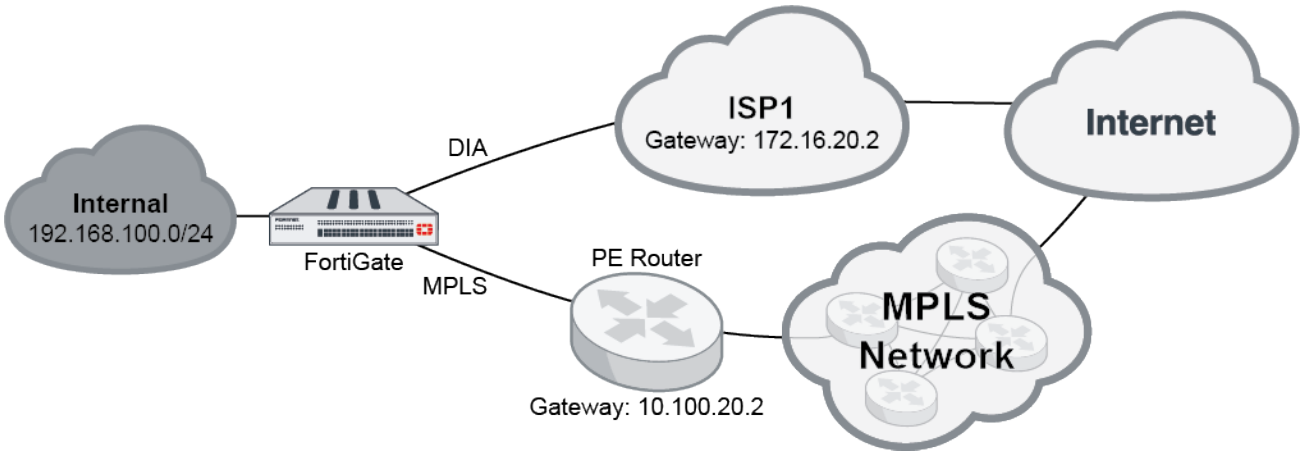
Application steering using SD-WAN rules

This topic covers how to use application steering in a topology with multiple WAN links. The following examples illustrate how to use different strategies to perform application steering to accommodate different business needs:

- Static application steering with a manual strategy on page 723
- Dynamic application steering with lowest cost and best quality strategies on page 726

Static application steering with a manual strategy

This example covers a typical usage scenario where the SD-WAN has two members: MPLS and DIA. DIA is primarily used for direct internet access to internet applications, such as Office365, Google applications, Amazon, and Dropbox. MPLS is primarily used for SIP, and works as a backup when DIA is not working.

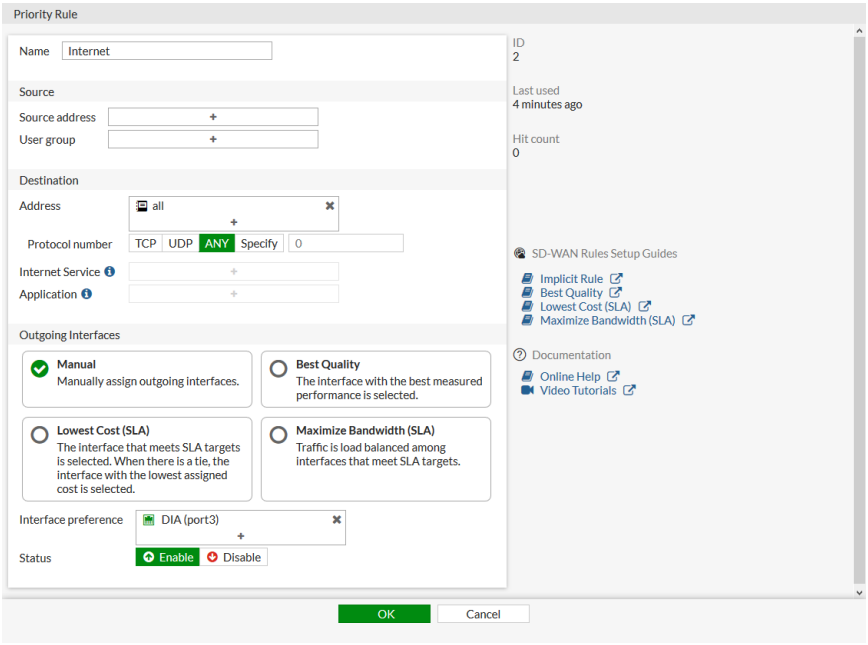


This example configures all SIP traffic to use MPLS while all other traffic uses DIA. If DIA is not working, the traffic will use MPLS.

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SIP and DIA in the GUI:

1. Add port1 (DIA) and port2 (MPLS) as SD-WAN members, and configure a static route. See Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 666 for details.
2. Create a firewall policy with an *Application Control* profile configured. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 668 for details.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *SIP*.
6. Click the *Application* field and select the applicable SIP applications from the *Select Entries* panel.
7. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Manual*.
8. For *Interface preference*, select *MPLS*.
9. Click *OK*.
10. Click *Create New* to create another rule.
11. Enter a name for the rule, such as *Internet*.
12. Click the *Address* field and select *all* from the panel.
13. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Manual*.

14. For *Interface preference*, select *DIA*.



15. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
        set application-list "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SIP and DIA using the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "MPLS"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "DIA"
        next
```

```
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "SIP"
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 34640 152305677 38938 26180 26179 30251
            set priority-members 2
        next
        edit 2
            set name "Internet"
            set dst "all"
            set priority-members 1
        next
    end
end
```

All SIP traffic uses MPLS. All other traffic goes to DIA. If DIA is broken, the traffic uses MPLS. If you use VPN instead of MPLS to run SIP traffic, you must configure a VPN interface, for example vpn1, and then replace member 1 from MPLS to vpn1 for SD-WAN member.



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

To use the diagnose command to check performance SLA status using the CLI:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service 1

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
Members:<<BR>>

1: Seq_num(1), alive, selected

Internet Service: SIP(4294836224 34640) SIP.Method(4294836225 152305677) SIP.Via.NAT
(4294836226 38938) SIP_Media.Type.Application(4294836227 26180) SIP_Message(4294836228
26179) SIP_Voice(4294836229 30251)
```

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service 2

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
Members:<<BR>>

1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected

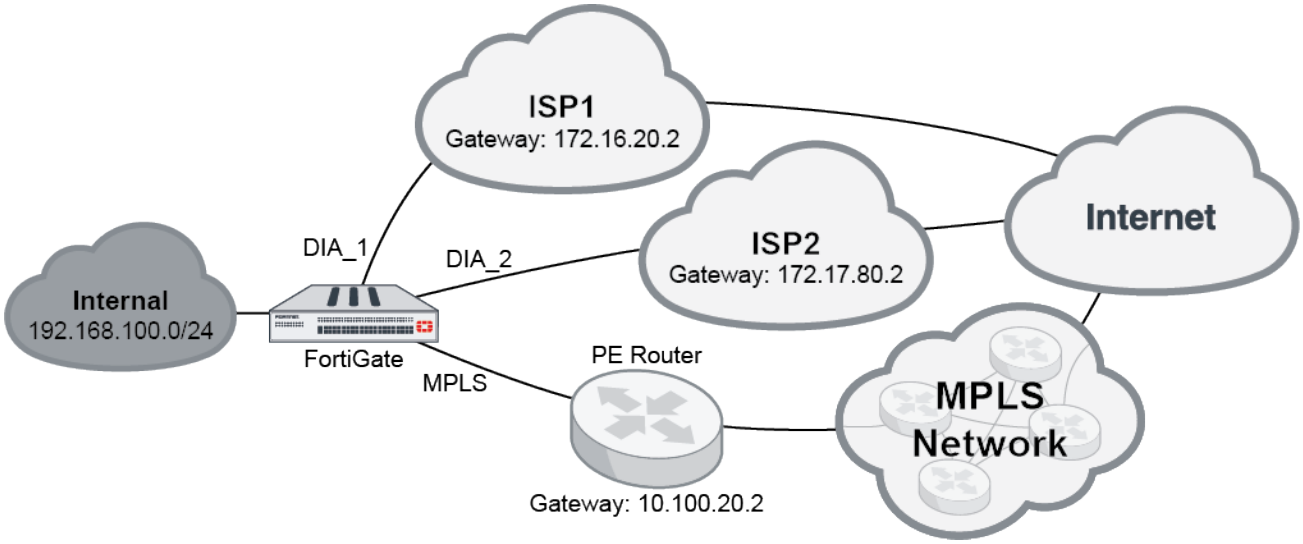
Dst address: 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

```
# diagnose sys sdwan internet-service-app-ctrl-list
Ctrl application(SIP 34640):Internet Service ID(4294836224)
Ctrl application(SIP.Method 152305677):Internet Service ID(4294836225)
Ctrl application(SIP.Via.NAT 38938):Internet Service ID(4294836226)
Ctrl application(SIP_Media.Type.Application 26180):Internet Service ID(4294836227)
```

```
Ctrl application(SIP_Message 26179):Internet Service ID(4294836228)
Ctrl application(SIP_Voice 30251):Internet Service ID(4294836229)
```

Dynamic application steering with lowest cost and best quality strategies

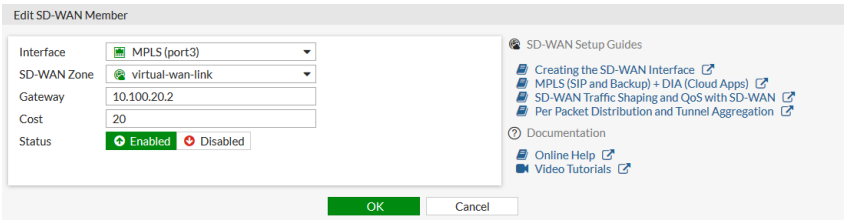
In this example, the SD-WAN has three members: two ISPs (DIA_1 and DIA_2) that are used for access to internet applications, and an MPLS link that is used exclusively as a backup for business critical applications.



Business applications, such as Office365, Google, Dropbox, and SIP, use the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy to provide application steering, and traffic falls back to MPLS only if both ISP1 and ISP2 are down. Non-business applications, such as Facebook and Youtube, use the *Best Quality* strategy to choose between the ISPs.

To configure the SD-WAN members, static route, and firewall policy in the GUI:

1. Add port1 (DIA_1), port2 (DIA_2), and port3 (MPLS) as SD-WAN members. Set the cost of DIA_1 and DIA_2 to *0*, and MPLS to *20*. See Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 666 for details.



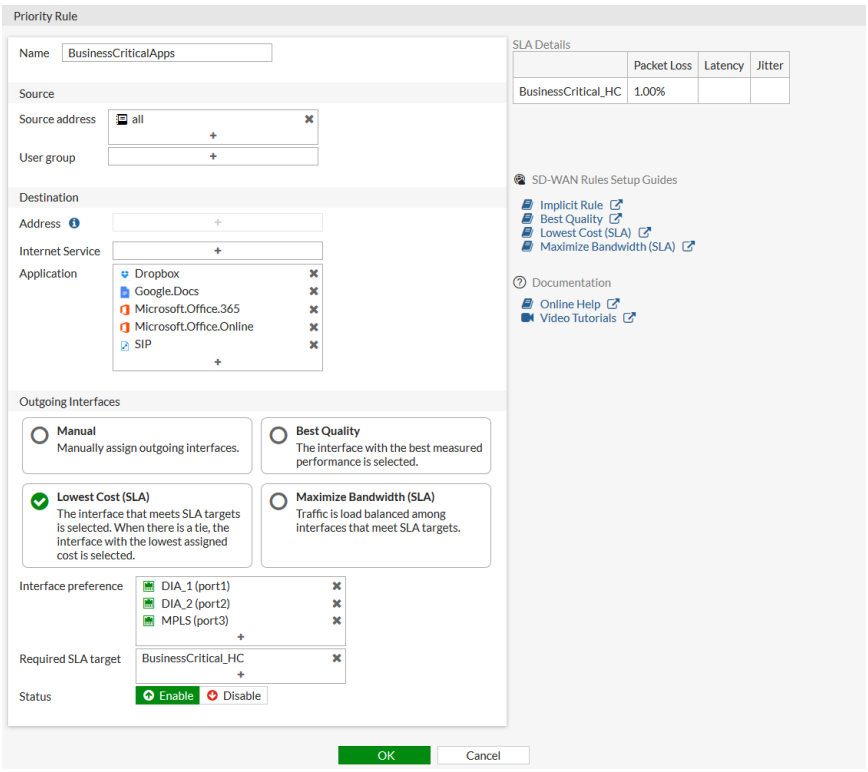
2. Configure a static route. See Adding a static route on page 667 for details.
3. Create a firewall policy to allow traffic out on SD-WAN, with an *Application Control* profile configured. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 668 for details.

To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for business critical application in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*, and click *Create New*.
2. Set the name to *BusinessCriticalApps*.
   This rule will steer your business critical traffic to the appropriate link based on the *Lowest Cost (SLA)*.
3. Set *Source address* to *all*.

4. Under *Destination*, set *Application* to your required applications. In this example: *Microsoft.Office.365*, *Microsoft.Office.Online*, *Google.Docs*, *Dropbox*, and *SIP*.
5. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Lowest Cost (SLA)*.
   The lowest cost is defined in the SD-WAN member interface settings (see Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 666). The lowest possible cost is *0*, which represents the most preferred link. In this example, DIA_1 and DIA_2 both have a cost of *0*, while MPLS has a cost of *20* because it is used for backup.
6. In *Interface preference*, add the interfaces in order of preference when the cost of the links is tied. In this example, DIA_1, DIA_2, then MPLS.
   MPLS will always be chosen last, because it has the highest cost. DIA_1 and DIA_2 have the same cost, so an interface is selected based on their order in the *Interface preference* list.
7. Set *Required SLA target* to ensure that only links that pass your SLA target are chosen in this SD-WAN rule:
   a. Click in the *Required SLA target* field.
   b. In the *Select Entries* pane, click *Create*. The *New Performace SLA* pane opens.
   c. Set *Name* to *BusinessCritical_HC*.
      This health check is used for business critical applications in your SD-WAN rule.
   d. Leave *Protocol* set to *Ping*, and add up to two servers, such as *office.com* and *google.com*.
   e. Set *Participants* to *Specify*, and add all three interfaces: DIA_1, DIA_2, and MPLS.
   f. Enable *SLA Target*.
      The attributes in your target determine the quality of your link. The SLA target of each link is compared when determining which link to use based on the lowest cost. Links that meet the SLA target are preferred over links that fail, and move to the next step of selection based on cost. If no links meet the SLA target, then they all move to the next step.
      In this example, disable *Latency threshold* and *Jitter threshold*, and set *Packet loss threshold* to *1*.
   g. Click *OK*.
   h. Select the new performance SLA to set it as the *Required SLA target*.

   When multiple SLA targets are added, you can choose which target to use in the SD-WAN rule.



8. Click *OK* to create the SD-WAN rule.

To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for non-business critical application in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*, and click *Create New*.
2. Set the name to *NonBusinessCriticalApps*.
   This rule will steer your non-business critical traffic to the appropriate link based on the *Best Quality*. No SLA target must be met, as the best link is selected based on the configured quality criteria and interface preference order.
3. Set *Source address* to *all*.
4. Under *Destination*, set *Application* to your required applications. In this example: *Facebook*, and *Youtube*.
5. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Best Quality*.
6. In *Interface preference*, add the interfaces in order of preference.
   By default, a more preferred link has an advantage of 10% over a less preferred link. For example, when latency is used, the preferred link's calculated latency = real latency / (1+10%).

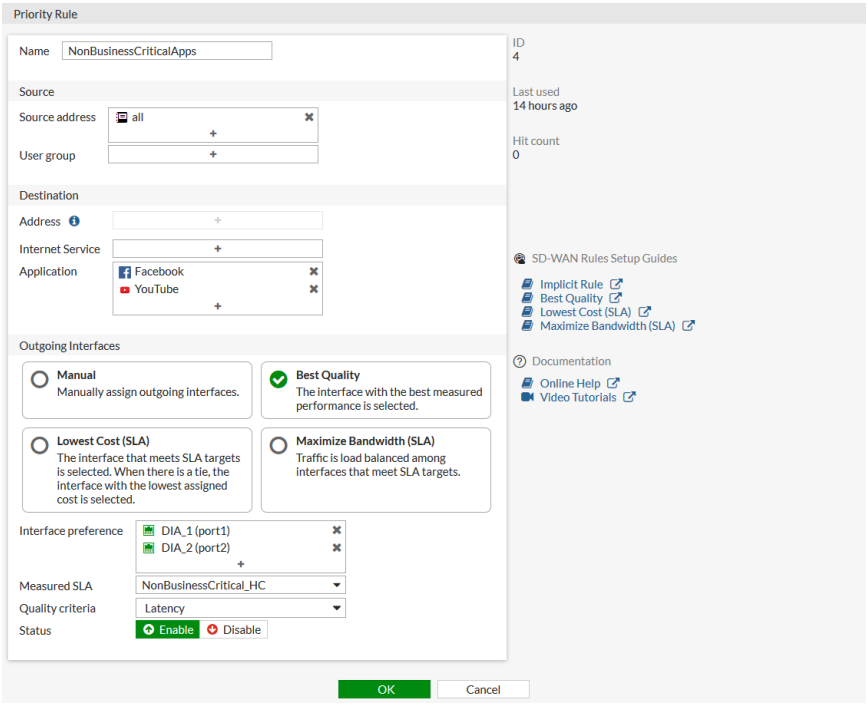


The preferred link advantage can be customized in the CLI when the mode is `priority` (*Best Quality*) or `auto`:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit <id>
            set link-cost-threshold <integer>
        next
    end
end
```

---

7. Create and apply a new performance SLA profile:
   a. Click in the *Measured SLA* field.
   b. In the drop-down list, click *Create*. The *New Performace SLA* pane opens.
   c. Set *Name* to *NonBusinessCritical_HC*.
      This health check is used for non-business critical applications in your SD-WAN rule.
   d. Leave *Protocol* set to *Ping*, and add up to two servers, such as *youtube.com* and *facebook.com*.
   e. Set *Participants* to *Specify*, and add the DIA_1 and DIA_2 interfaces. In this example, MPLS is not used for non-business critical applications.
   f. Leave *SLA Target* disabled.
   g. Click *OK*.
   h. Select the new performance SLA from the list to set it as the *Measured SLA*.
8. Set *Quality criteria* as required. In this example, *Latency* is selected.
   For bandwidth related criteria, such as *Downstream*, *Upstream*, and *Bandwidth* (bi-directional), the selection is based on available bandwidth. An estimated bandwidth should be configured on the interface to provide a baseline, maximum available bandwidth.



9. Click *OK* to create the SD-WAN rule.

To configure the SD-WAN members, static route, and firewall policy in the CLI:

1. Configure the interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set ip <class_ip&net_netmask>
        set alias "DIA_1"
        set role wan
    next
    edit "port2"
        set ip <class_ip&net_netmask>
```

```
        set alias "DIA_2"
        set role wan
    next
    edit "port3"
        set ip <class_ip&net_netmask>
        set alias "MPLS"
        set role wan
    next
end
```

2. Configure the SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
            set gateway 172.16.20.2
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "port2"
            set gateway 172.17.80.2
        next
        edit 3
            set interface "port3"
            set gateway 10.100.20.2
            set cost 20
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

3. Configure a static route. See Adding a static route on page 667 for details.
4. Create a firewall policy to allow traffic out on SD-WAN, with an *Application Control* profile configured. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 668 for details.

To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for business critical application in the CLI:

1. Configure the *BusinessCriticalApps_HC* health-check:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "BusinessCriticalApps_HC"
            set server "office.com" "google.com"
            set members 1 2 3
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

2. Configure the *BusinessCriticalApps* service to use *Lowest Cost (SLA)*:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "BusinessCriticalApps"
            set mode sla
            set src "all"
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 17459 16541 33182 16177 34640
            config sla
                edit "BusinessCriticalApps_HC"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2 3
        next
    end
end
```

To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for non-business critical application in the CLI:

1. Configure the *nonBusinessCriticalApps_HC* health-check:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "NonBusinessCriticalApps_HC"
            set server "youtube.com" "facebook.com"
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the *BusinessCriticalApps* service to use *Lowest Cost (SLA)*:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 4
            set name "NonBusinessCriticalApps"
            set mode priority
            set src "all"
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 15832 31077
            set health-check "NonBusinessCriticalApps_HC"
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

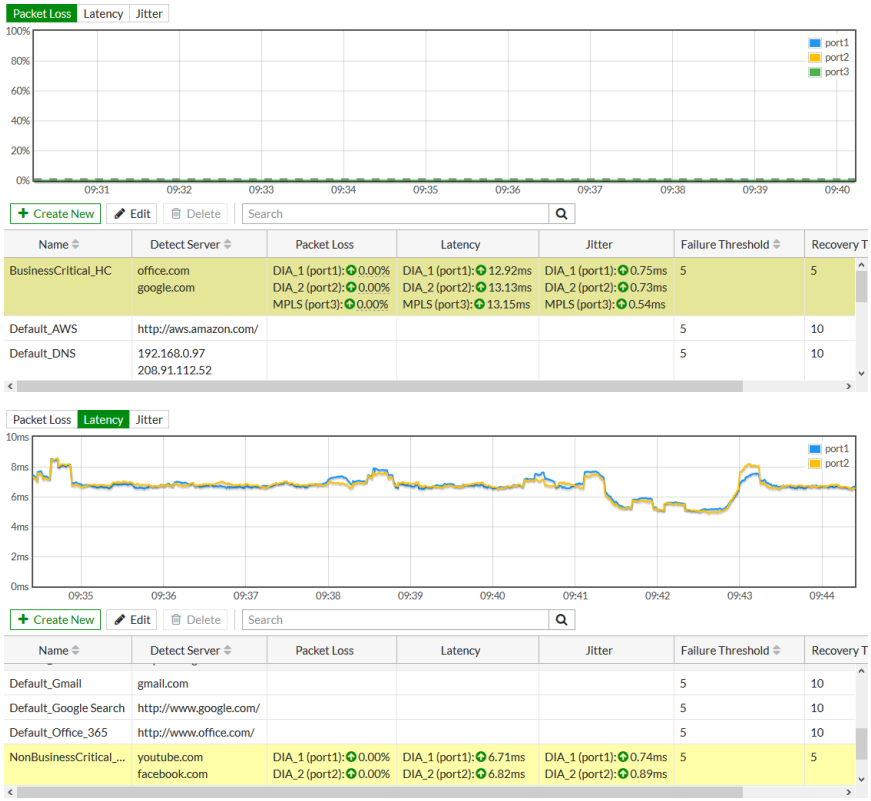
Verification

Check the following GUI pages, and run the following CLI commands to confirm that your traffic is being steered by the SD-WAN rules.

Health checks

To verify the status of each of the health checks in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select each of the health checks from the list.



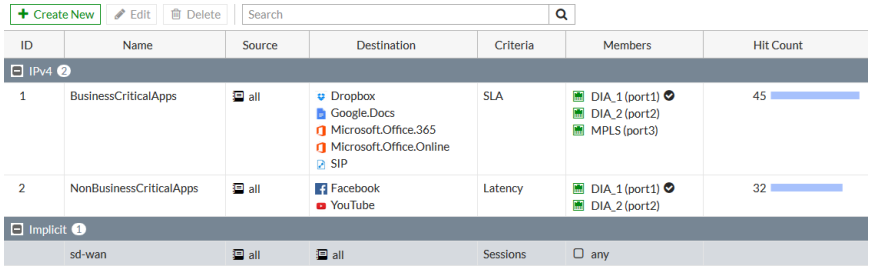
To verify the status of each of the health checks in the CLI:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(BusinessCritical_HC):
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.884), jitter(0.919) sla_map=0x1
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.018), jitter(0.723) sla_map=0x1
Seq(3 port3): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.018), jitter(0.923) sla_map=0x1
Health Check(NonBusinessCritical_HC):
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(6.888), jitter(0.953) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(6.805), jitter(0.830) sla_map=0x0
```

Rule members and hit count

To verify the active members and hit count of the SD-WAN rule in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.



   The interface that is currently selected by the rule has a checkmark next to its name in the *Members* column. Hover the cursor over the checkmark to open a tooltip that gives the reason why that member is selected. If multiple members are selected, only the highest ranked member is highlighted (unless the mode is *Maximize Bandwidth (SLA)*).

To verify the active members and hit count of the SD-WAN rule in the CLI:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(13), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
    3: Seq_num(3 port3), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(2), cost(20), selected
  Internet Service: Dropbox(4294836727,0,0,0 17459) Google.Docs(4294836992,0,0,0 16541)
Microsoft.Office.365(4294837472,0,0,0 33182) Microsoft.Office.Online(4294837475,0,0,0 16177)
SIP(4294837918,0,0,0 34640)
  Src address:
       0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

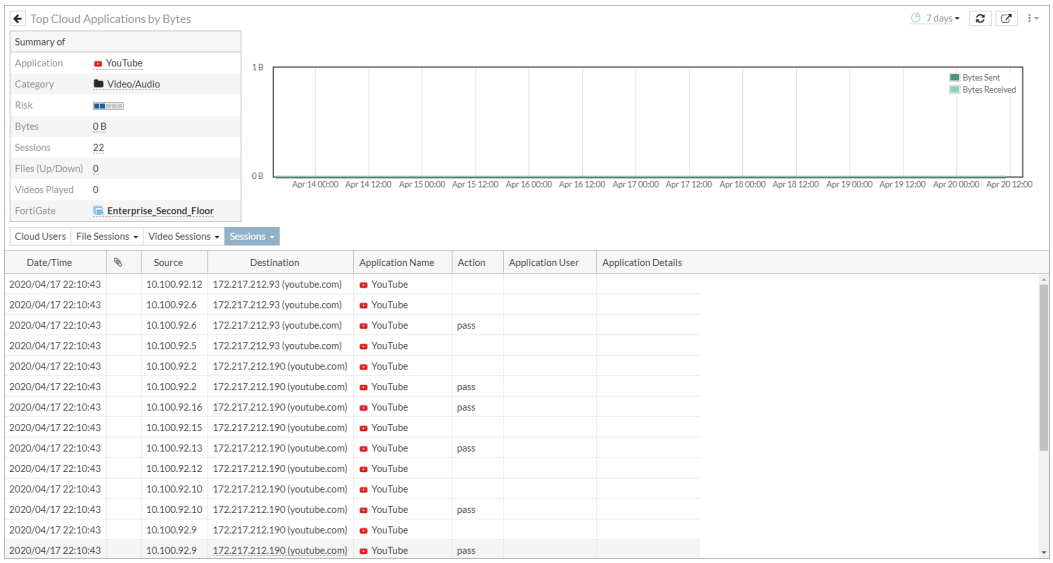
Service(4): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(211), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(priority), link-cost-factor(latency),
link-cost-threshold(10), heath-check(NonBusinessCritical_HC)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, latency: 5.712, selected
    2: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, latency: 5.511, selected
  Internet Service: Facebook(4294836806,0,0,0 15832) YouTube(4294838537,0,0,0 31077)
  Src address:
       0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

Applications and sessions

To verify sessions in FortiView:

1. Go to a dashboard and add the *Top Cloud Applications by Bytes* widget. See Cloud application view on page 126 for details.

2. Drill down on an application, such as *YouTube*, then select the *Sessions* tab.



To verify applications identified by Application Control in SD-WAN:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan internet-service-app-ctrl-list

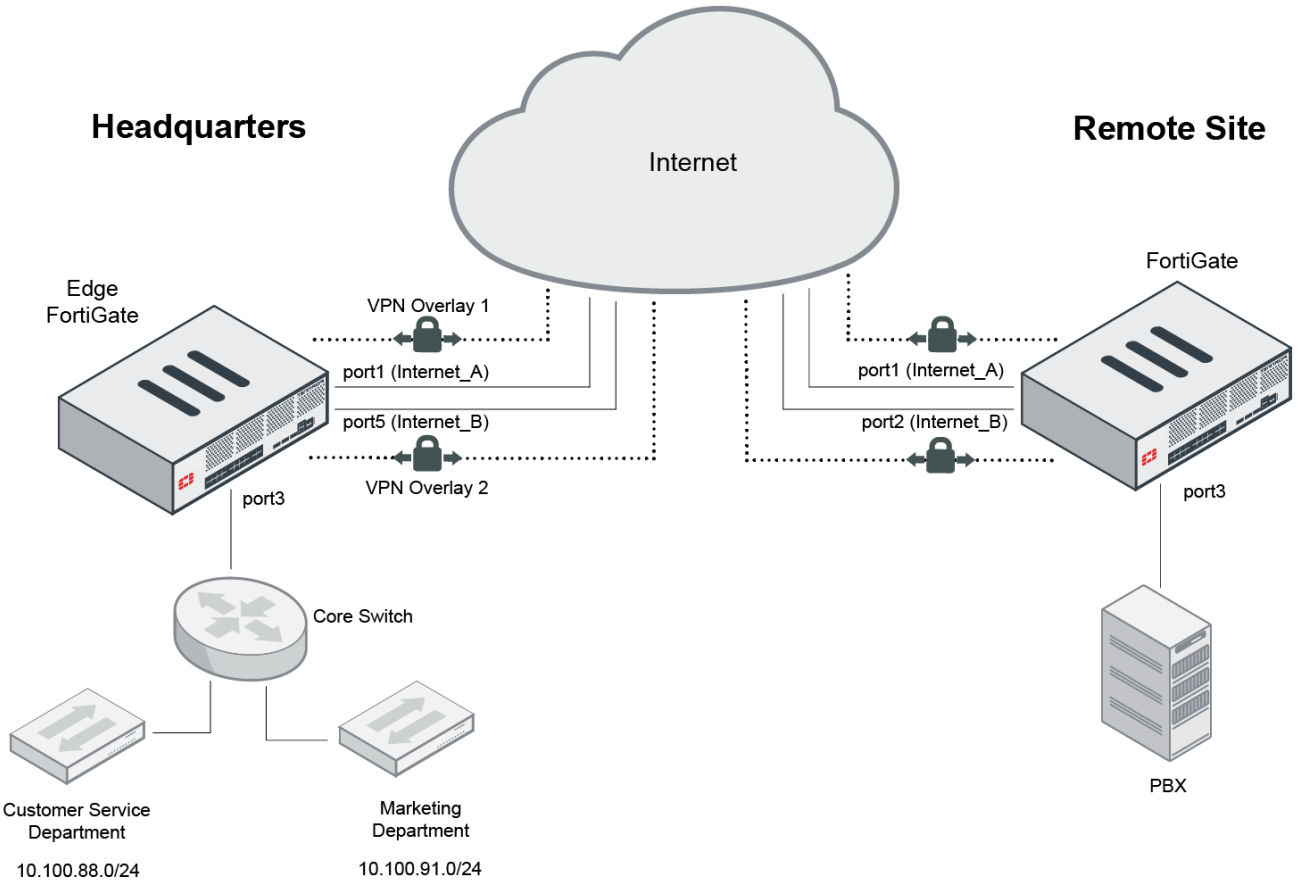
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 31.13.67.20 6 443 Fri April 17 22:33:39 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 31.13.67.35 6 443 Fri April 17 22:33:41 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 31.13.70.36 6 443 Fri April 17 22:36:41 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 157.240.11.22 6 443 Fri April 17 22:36:42 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 157.240.11.35 6 443 Fri April 17 22:36:41 2020
YouTube(31077 4294838227): 172.217.24.150 6 443 Fri April 17 22:32:16 2020
YouTube(31077 4294838227): 172.217.25.78 6 443 Fri April 17 22:32:16 2020
YouTube(31077 4294838227): 216.58.220.129 6 443 Fri April 17 22:32:34 2020
```

DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN

This document demonstrates the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) tag-based traffic steering in Fortinet secure SD-WAN. You can use this guide as an example to deploy DSCP tag-based traffic steering in Fortinet secure SD-WAN.

DSCP tags are often used to categorize traffic to provide quality of service (QoS). Based on DSCP tags, you can provide SD-WAN traffic steering on an edge device.

In this example, we have two different departments at the Headquarters site - Customer Service and Marketing. Traffic from each of these departments is marked with separate DSCP tags by the core switch, and passes through the core switch to the edge FortiGate. The edge FortiGate reads the DSCP tags and steers traffic to the preferred interface based on the defined SD-WAN rules.



In our example, we consider two types of traffic - social media traffic and VoIP traffic. VoIP traffic from Customer Service is considered to be more important than social media traffic. Each of these traffic types is marked with a DSCP tag by the core switch - VoIP traffic is marked with the DSCP tag of `011100`, and social media traffic is marked with the DSCP tag of `001100`. The DSCP tagged traffic is then passed on to the edge FortiGate. The edge FortiGate identifies the DSCP tagged traffic and based on the defined SD-WAN rules, the edge FortiGate steers:

- VoIP traffic to the preferred VPN overlay with the least jitter in order to provide the best quality of voice communication with the remote VoIP server (PBX)
- Social media traffic to the preferred Internet link with a lower cost (less expensive and less reliable)

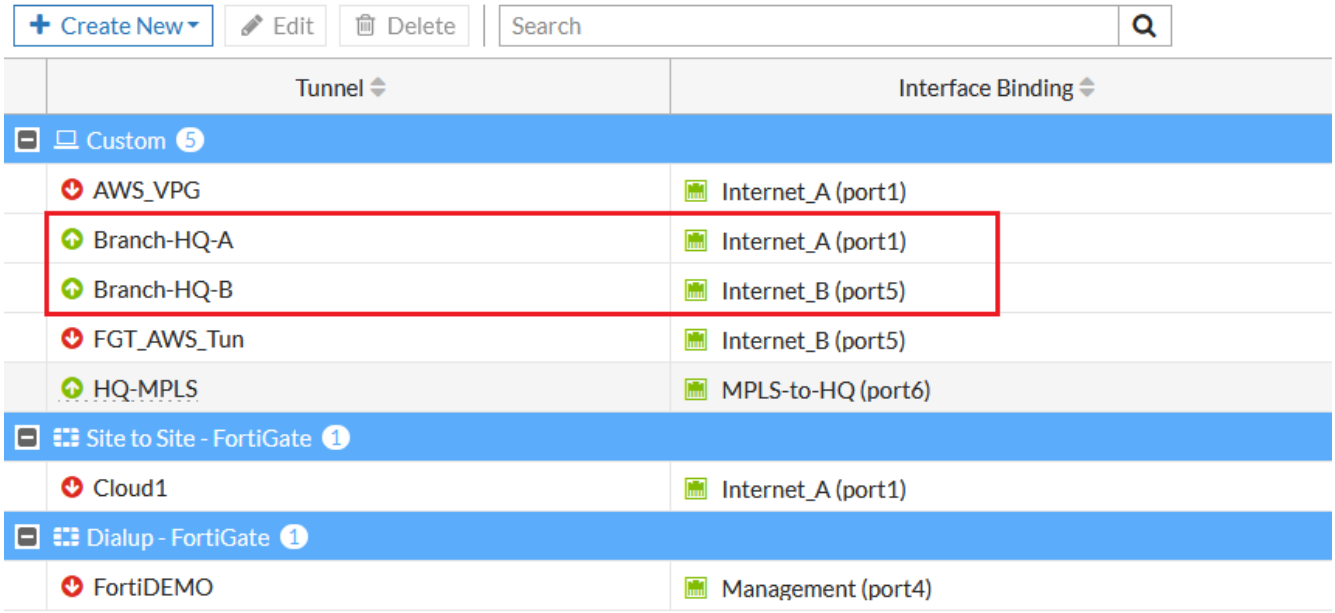
If you are familiar with SD-WAN configurations in FortiOS, you can directly jump to the Configuring SD-WAN rules on page 738 section to learn how to configure the SD-WAN rules to perform traffic steering. Otherwise, you can proceed with all of the following topics to configure the edge FortiGate:

- Configuring IPsec tunnels on page 736
- Configuring SD-WAN zones on page 736
- Configuring firewall policies on page 737
- Configuring Performance SLA test on page 737
- Configuring SD-WAN rules on page 738
- Results on page 742

Configuring IPsec tunnels

In our example, we have two interfaces `Internet_A (port1)` and `Internet_B(port5)` on which we have configured IPsec tunnels `Branch-HQ-A` and `Branch-HQ-B` respectively. To learn how to configure IPsec tunnels, refer to the IPsec VPNs on page 1488 section.

After you have configured the IPsec tunnels as required, verify your IPsec tunnels by navigating to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* from the tree menu on the left side of the GUI.

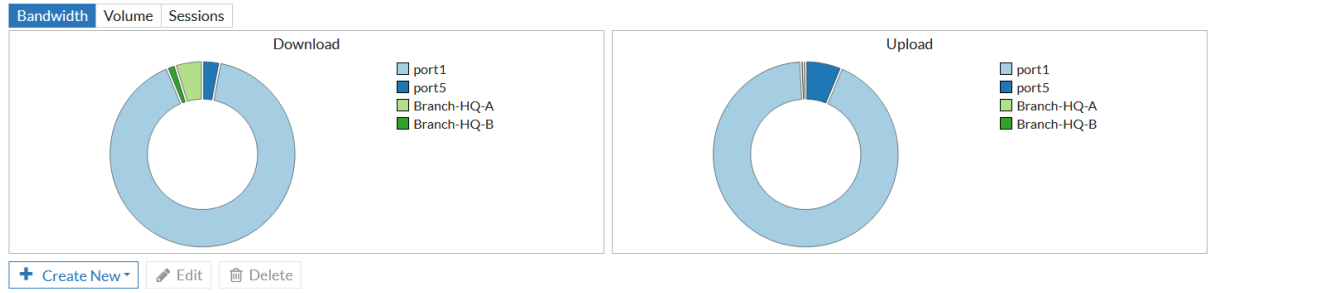


Configuring SD-WAN zones

In order for us to steer traffic based on SD-WAN rules, first we need to configure SD-WAN interface members and assign them to SD-WAN zones. To know more about SD-WAN zones, refer to theSD-WAN zones on page 675 section.

In our example, we created two SD-WAN zones. The `virtual-wan-link` SD-WAN zone for the underlay traffic passing through the `Internet_A(port1)` and `Internet_B(port5)` interfaces, and the `Overlay` SD-WAN zone for the overlay traffic passing through the `Branch-HQ-A` and `Branch-HQ-B` interfaces.

Verify the configurations on the *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* screen:



In the screenshot above, we have configured the `Internet_A(port1)` and `Internet_B (port5)` SD-WAN interface members with their *Cost* values being `0` and `10` respectively. A lower *Cost* value indicates that this member is the primary interface member, and is preferred more than a member with a higher *Cost* value when using the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy.

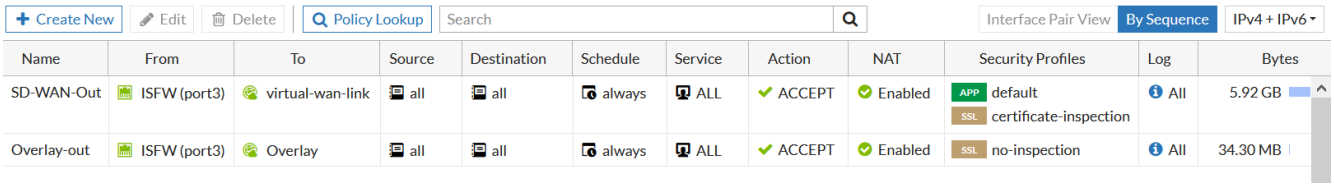
We also need to configure a static route that points to the *SD-WAN* interface. To know more about static routes, refer to the Adding a static route on page 667 section.

Configuring firewall policies

Configure firewall policies for both the overlay and underlay traffic. To know more about firewall policies, refer to the Policies on page 1090 section.

In this example, the *Overlay-out* policy governs the overlay traffic and the *SD-WAN-Out* policy governs the underlay traffic. The firewall policies are configured accordingly.

Once created, verify the firewall policies by navigating to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*:

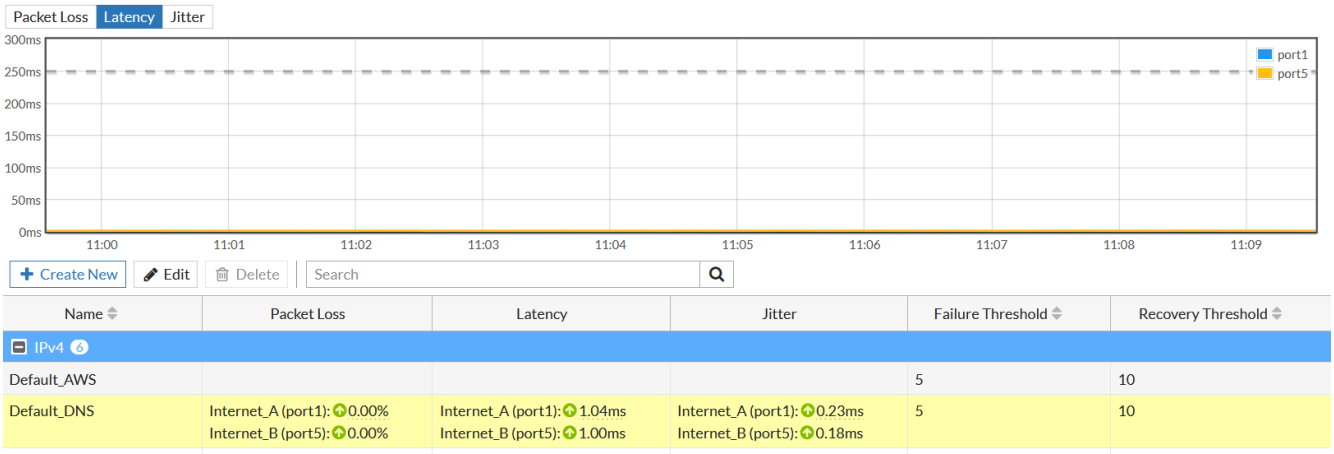


The *Security Profiles* column indicates that the *Overlay-out* firewall policy for the overlay traffic is set up to not scan any traffic, while the *SD-WAN-Out* firewall policy is set to scan all web traffic to identify and govern social media traffic as *Application Control* profile is active.

Configuring Performance SLA test

Configure a performance SLA test that will be tied to the SD-WAN interface members we created and assigned to SD-WAN zones. To know more about Performance SLA, refer to the SLA targets example on page 689 section.

In this example, we created a *Performance SLA* test *Default_DNS* with `Internet_A(port1)` and `Internet_B (port5)` interface members as participants. We will use the created *Performance SLA* test to steer all web traffic passing through the underlays other than social media traffic based on the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy.



Configuring SD-WAN rules

Configure SD-WAN rules to govern the steering of DSCP tag-based traffic to the appropriate interfaces. Traffic will be steered based on the *Criteria* configured as part of the SD-WAN rules configuration.

In our example, we configured three different SD-WAN rules to govern DSCP tagged traffic. We have one SD-WAN rule each for VoIP traffic, social media traffic (Facebook in this case), and all other web traffic. VoIP traffic is always steered to either of the two overlay SD-WAN zones - `VPN_A_tunnel(Branch-HQ-A)` or `VPN_B_tunnel(Branch-HQ-B)`. Similarly, social media traffic and other web traffic is always steered to either of the two underlay SD-WAN zones - `Internet_A(port1)` or `Internet_B(port5)`. The interface that is preferred by the system over another depends upon the *Criteria* configured in the SD-WAN rule definition.

We configured the following SD-WAN rules:

- SD-WAN rule for VoIP traffic on page 738
- SD-WAN rule for social media traffic on page 739
- SD-WAN rule for other web traffic on page 740

SD-WAN rule for VoIP traffic

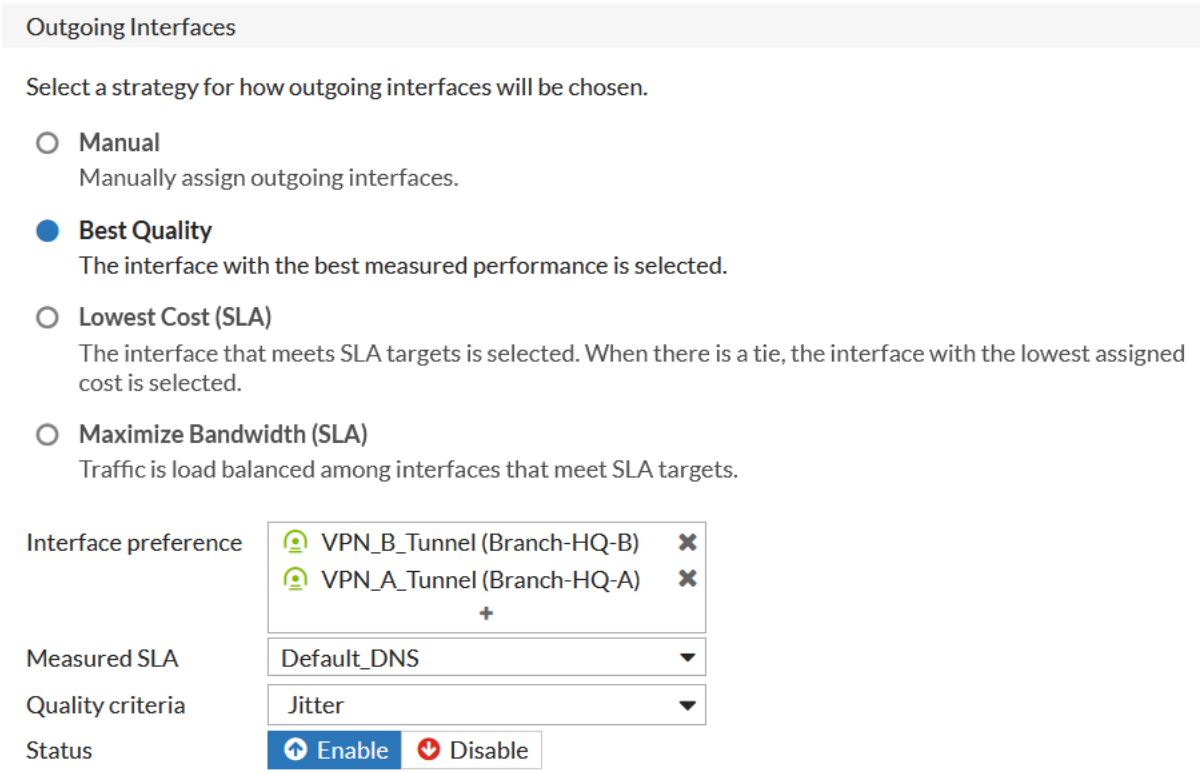
To configure SD-WAN rule for DSCP tagged VoIP traffic using the CLI:

```
FortiGate # config sys sdwan
   config service
      edit 5
         set name "VoIP-Steer"
         set mode priority
         set tos 0x70
         set tos-mask 0xf0
         set dst "all"
         set health-check "Default_DNS"
         set link-cost-factor jitter
         set priority-members 4 3
   end
```

The `VoIP-Steer` SD-WAN rule configured above governs the DSCP tagged VoIP traffic.

DSCP values commonly are 6-bit binary numbers that are padded with zeros at the end. Therefore, in this example, VoIP traffic with DSCP tag `011100` will become `01110000`. This 8-bit binary number `01110000` is represented in its hexadecimal form `0x70` as the `tos` (Type of Service bit pattern) value. The `tos-mask` (Type of Service evaluated bits) hexadecimal value of `0xf0` (binary `11110000`) is used to check the four most significant bits from the `tos` value in this case. Hence, the first four bits of the `tos` (`0111`) will be used to match the first four bits of the DSCP tag in our policy above. Only the non-zero bit positions are used for comparison and the zero bit positions are ignored from the `tos-mask`.

We used the *Best Quality* strategy to define the *Criteria* to select the preferred interface from the overlay SD-WAN zone. With the *Best Quality* strategy selected, the interface with the best measured performance is selected. The system prefers the interface with the least *Jitter*.



To know more about configuring SD-WAN rules with the *Best Quality* strategy, refer to the Best quality strategy on page 704 section.

SD-WAN rule for social media traffic

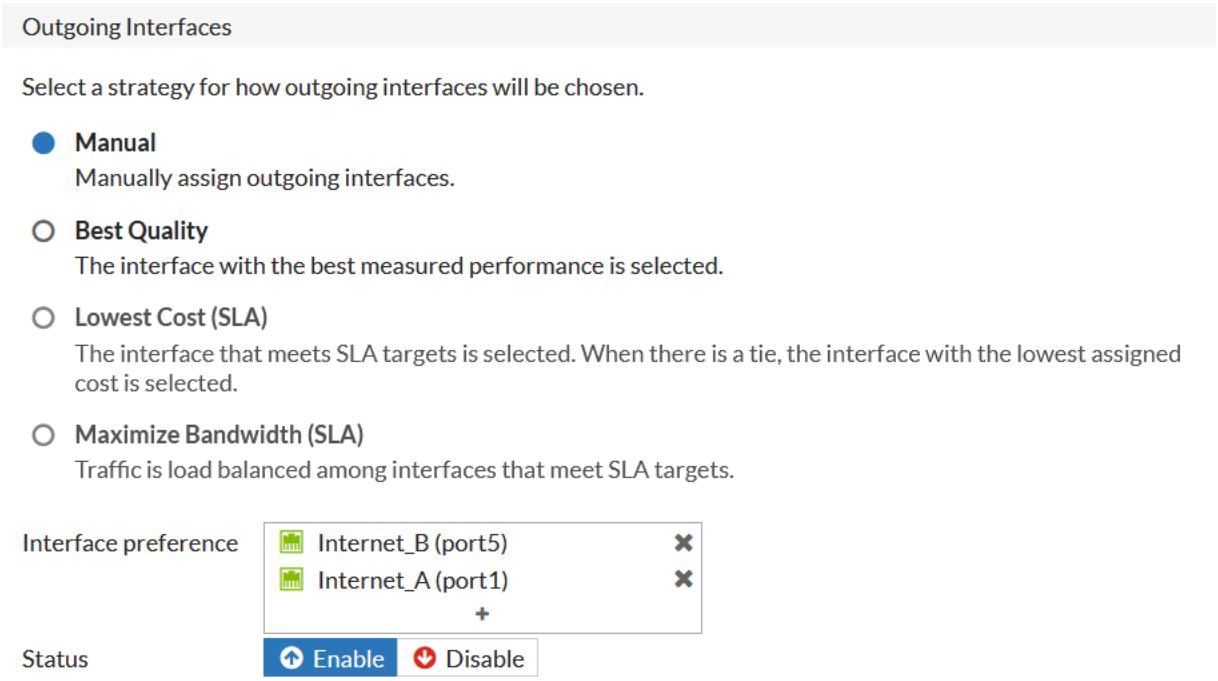
To configure SD-WAN rule for DSCP tagged social media traffic using the CLI:

```
FortiGate # config sys sdwan
   config service
      edit 3
         set name "Facebook-DSCP-steer"
         set tos 0x30
         set tos-mask 0xf0
         set dst "all"
         set priority-members 2 1
   end
```

The `Facebook-DSCP-steer` SD-WAN rule configured above governs the DSCP tagged social media traffic.

DSCP values commonly are 6-bit binary numbers that are padded with zeros at the end. Therefore, in this example, social media traffic with DSCP tag `001100` will become `00110000`. This 8-bit binary number `00110000` is represented in its hexadecimal form `0x30` as the `tos` (Type of Service bit pattern) value. The `tos-mask` (Type of Service evaluated bits) hexadecimal value of `0xf0` (binary `11110000`) is used to check the four most significant bits from the `tos` value in this case. Hence, the first four bits of the `tos` (`0011`) will be used to match the first four bits of the DSCP tag in our policy above. Only the non-zero bit positions are used for comparison and the zero bit positions are ignored from the `tos-mask`.

We used a manual strategy to select the preferred interface from the underlay SD-WAN zone. We manually select the preferred interface as *Internet_B(port5)* to steer all social media traffic to.



To know more about configuring SD-WAN rules with static application steering with a manual strategy, refer to the Static application steering with a manual strategy on page 723 section.

SD-WAN rule for other web traffic

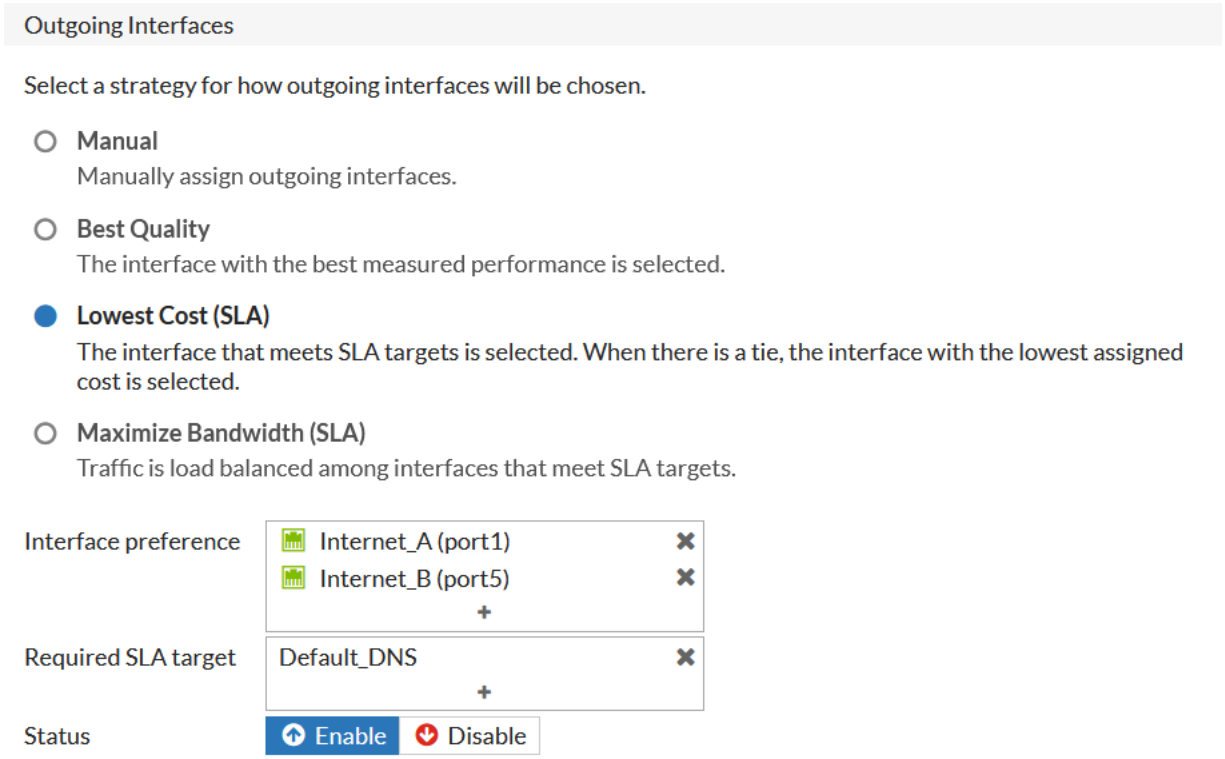
To configure SD-WAN rule for all other web traffic using the CLI:

```
FortiGate # config sys sdwan
   config service
      edit 2
         set name "All-traffic"
         set mode sla
         set dst "all"
         config sla
            edit "Default_DNS"
               set id 1
            next
         end
         set priority-members 1 2
```

```
end
```

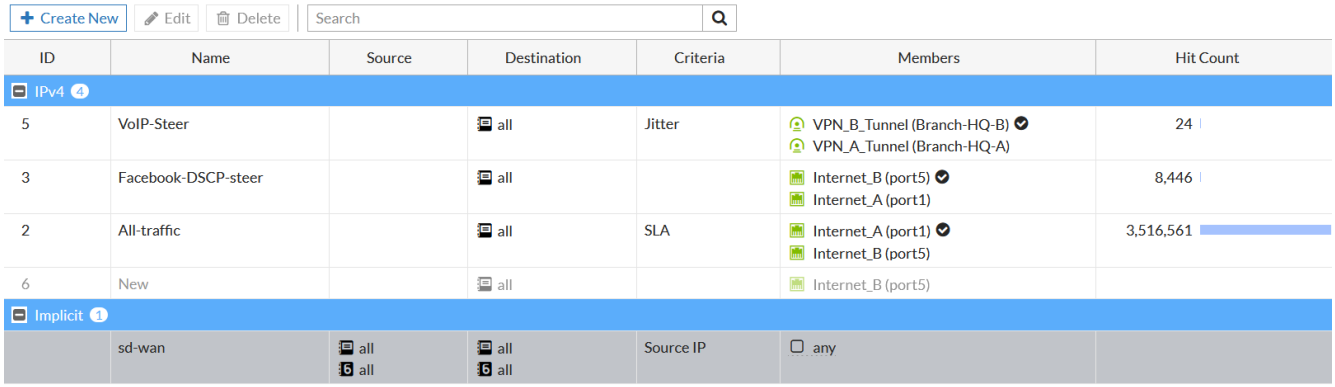
The `All-traffic` SD-WAN rule configured above governs all other web traffic.

We used the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy to define the *Criteria* to select the preferred interface from the underlay SD-WAN zone. With the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy selected, the interface that meets the defined *Performance SLA* targets (*Default_DNS* in our case) is selected. When there is a tie, the interface with the lowest assigned *Cost* (`Internet_A (port1)` in our case) is selected.



To know more about configuring SD-WAN rules with the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy, refer to the Lowest cost (SLA) strategy on page 707 section.

Once configured, verify your SD-WAN rules by navigating to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*:



Results

The following sections show the function of the FortiGate and specifically of secure SD-WAN with respect to DSCP tagged traffic steering, and can be used to confirm that it is setup and running correctly:

- Verifying the DSCP tagged traffic on FortiGate on page 742
- Verifying service rules on page 743
- Verifying traffic steering as per the defined SD-WAN rules on page 744
- Verifying steered traffic leaving the required interface on page 744

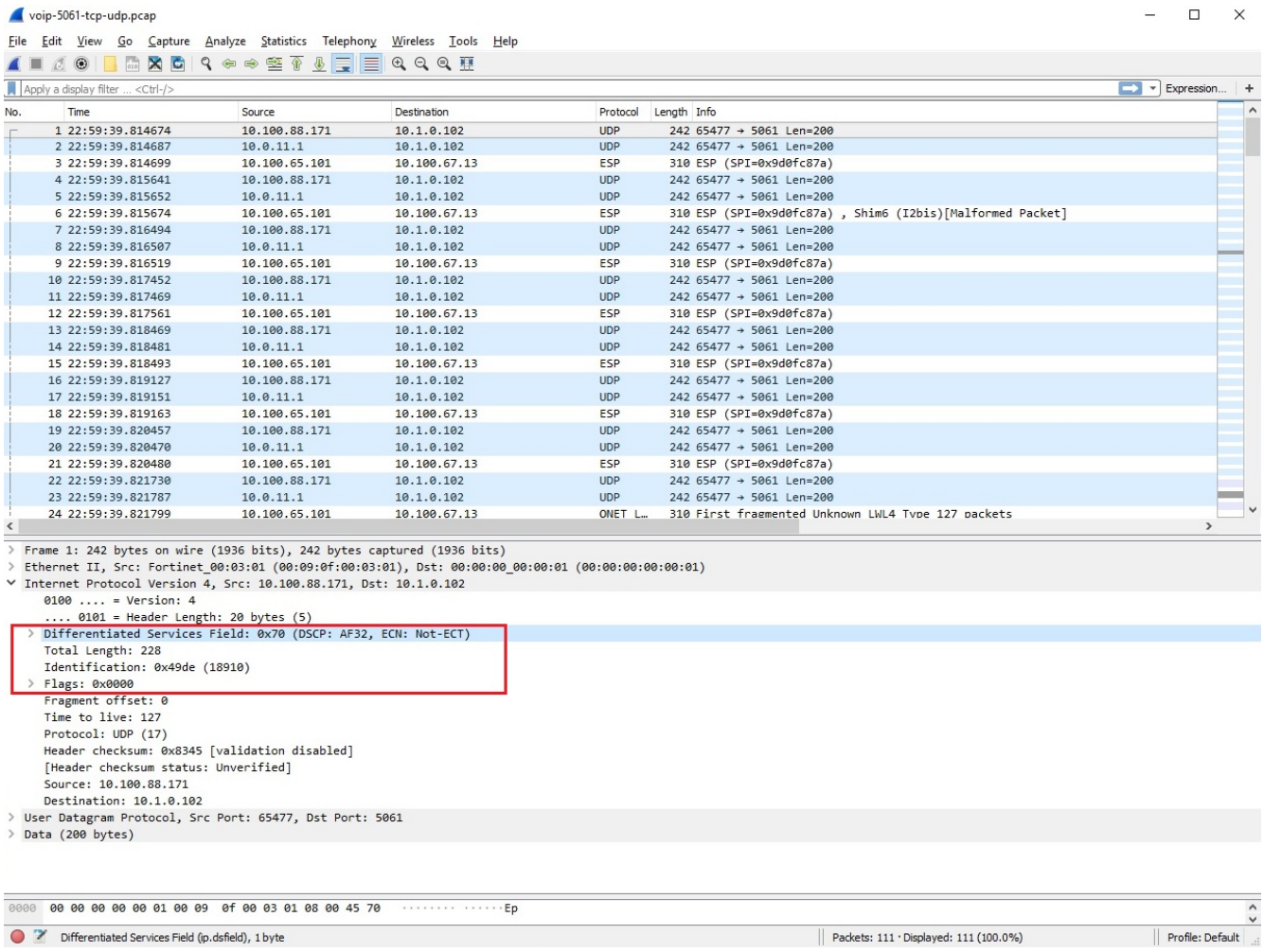
Verifying the DSCP tagged traffic on FortiGate

To verify the incoming DSCP tagged traffic, we used packet sniffing and converting the sniffed traffic to a desired format. To know more about packet sniffing, refer to the Using the FortiOS built-in packet sniffer guide on the *Fortinet Knowledge Base*.

For VoIP traffic that is marked with DSCP tag `0x70`:

```
FortiGate # diagnose sniffer packet any '(ip and ip[1] & 0xfc == 0x70)' 6 0 l
```

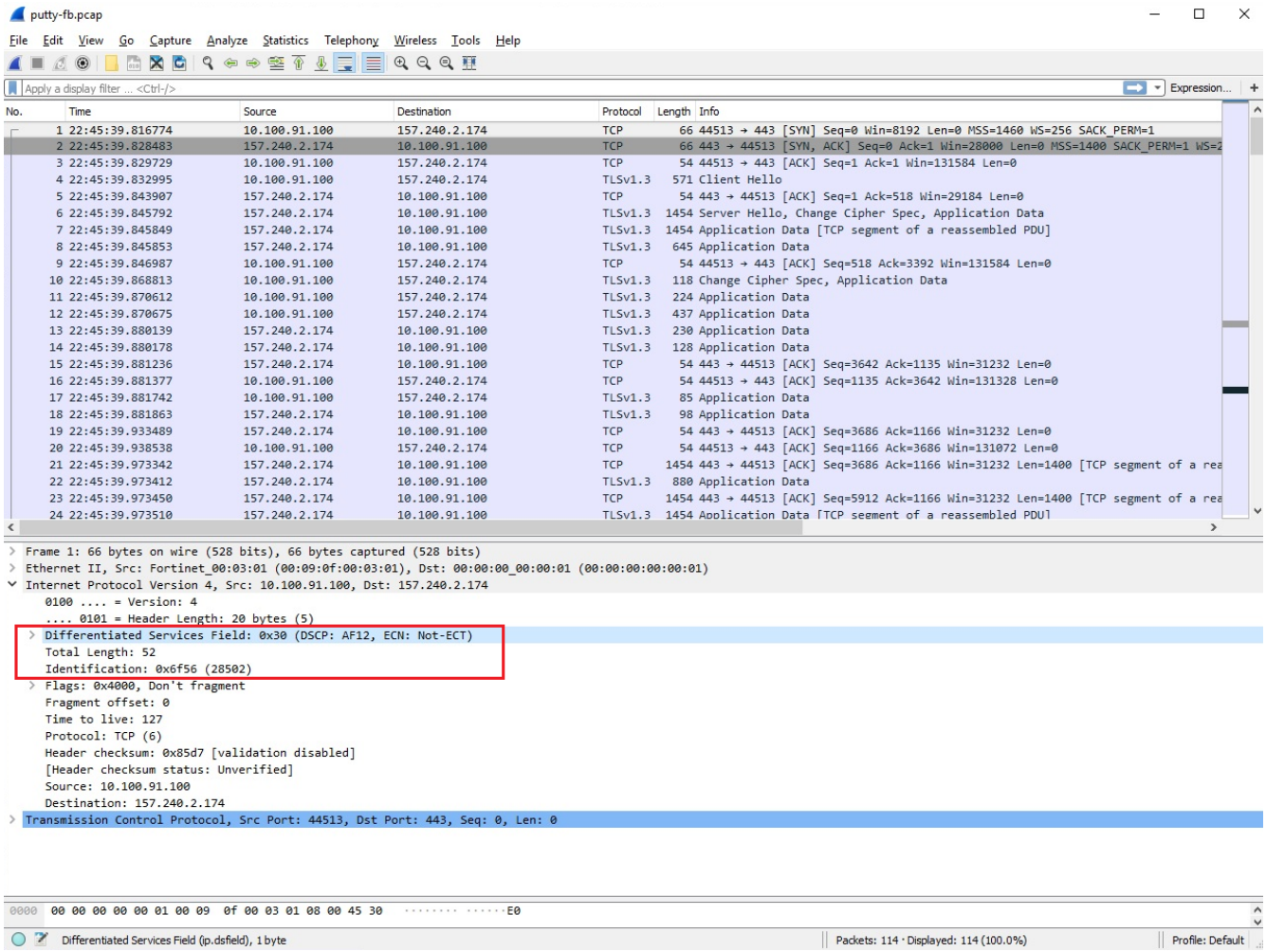
We used the open-source packet analyzer *Wireshark* to verify that VoIP traffic is tagged with the `0x70` DSCP tag.



For web traffic marked with DSCP tag `0x30`:

```
FortiGate # diagnose sniffer packet any '(ip and ip[1] & 0xfc == 0x30)' 6 0 l
```

We used the open-source packet analyzer *Wireshark* to verify that web traffic is tagged with the `0x30` DSCP tag.



Verifying service rules

The following CLI commands show the appropriate DSCP tags and the corresponding interfaces selected by the SD-WAN rules to steer traffic:

```
FortiGate # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(5): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
   Gen(1), TOS(0x70/0xf0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
   Members:
      1: Seq_num(4 Branch-HQ-B), alive, selected
   Dst address:
         0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

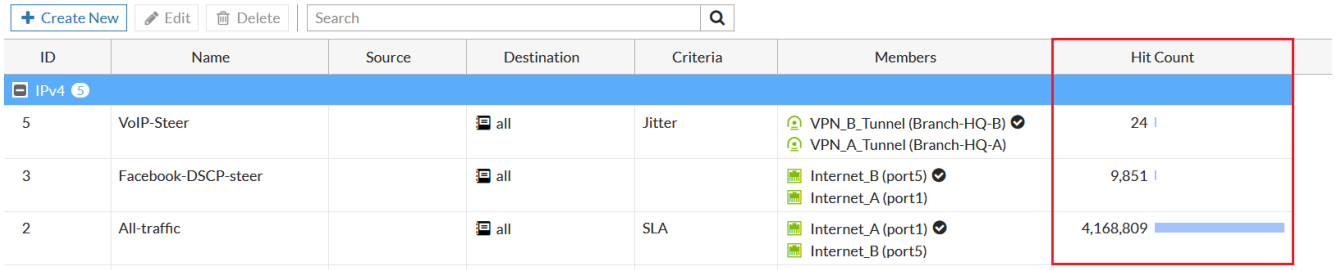
Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
   Gen(1), TOS(0x30/0xf0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
   Members:
```

```
      1: Seq_num(2 port5), alive, selected
   Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
   Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
   Members:
      1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
      2: Seq_num(2 port5), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(10), selected
   Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

Verifying traffic steering as per the defined SD-WAN rules

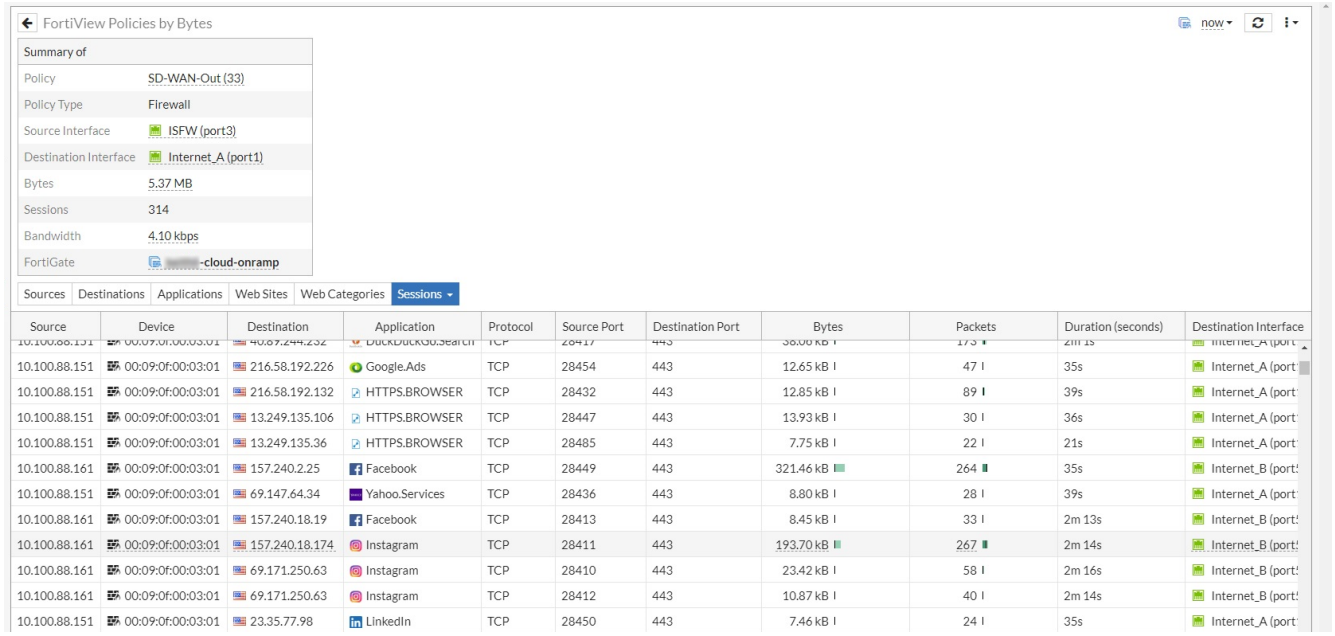
Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* to review the *Hit Count* on the appropriate SD-WAN interfaces.



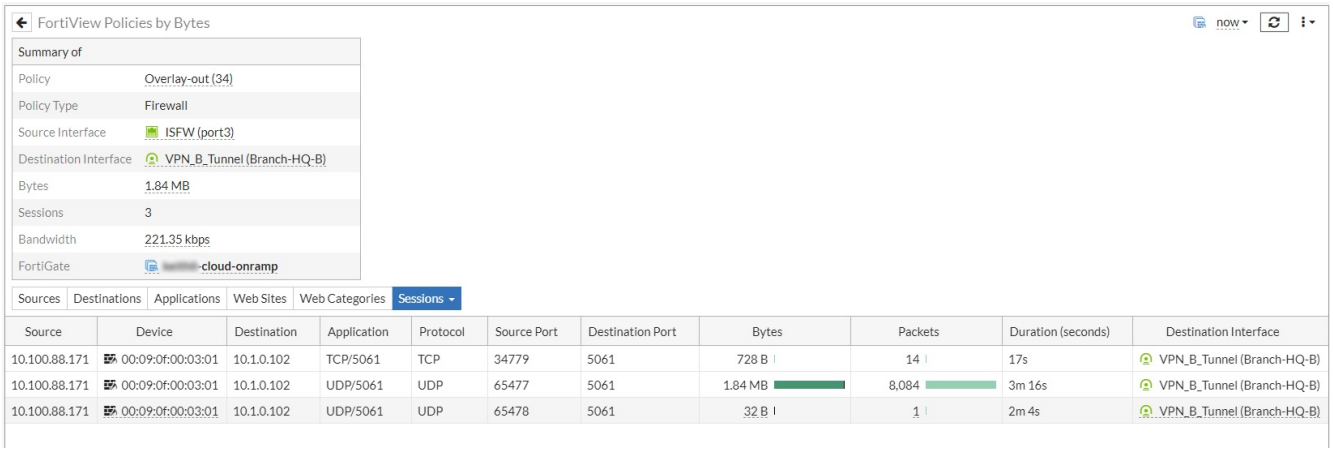
Verifying steered traffic leaving the required interface

Go to *Dashboard* > *Top Policies* to confirm that web traffic (port 443) flows through the right underlay interface members, and VoIP traffic flows through the right overlay interface member.

Web traffic leaves either `Interface_A(port1)` or `Interface_B(port5)`.



VoIP traffic leaves the preferred `VPN_B_Tunnel(Branch-HQ-B)` interface.



Advanced routing

The following topics provide instructions on SD-WAN advanced routing:

- Self-originating traffic on page 745
- Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules on page 750
- BGP multiple path support on page 753
- Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules on page 756
- Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors on page 762

Self-originating traffic



This topic applies to FortiOS 6.4.4 and later. In other versions, self-originating (local-out) traffic behaves differently.

By default, self-originating traffic, such as Syslog, FortiAnalyzer logging, FortiGuard services, remote authentication, and others, relies on routing table lookups to determine the egress interface that is used to initiate the connection. Policy routes generated by SD-WAN rules do not apply to this traffic.

Explicit proxy traffic uses policy routes and SD-WAN rules to select an egress interface. Self-originating VXLAN traffic uses SD-WAN rules to select an egress interface.

For the following features, self-originating traffic can be configured to use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

PING

IPv4 and IPv6 pings can be configured to use SD-WAN rules:

```
execute ping-options use-sdwan {yes | no}
execute ping6-options use-sd-wan {yes | no}
```

DNS

DNS and non-management VDOM DNS traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system {dns | vdom-dns}
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}	Select the interface selection method: • `auto`: Set the outgoing interface automatically (default). • `sdwan`: Set the interface by SD-WAN or policy routing rules. • `specify`: Set the interface manually.
interface <interface>	Specify the outgoing interface. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `specify`.

FortiGuard

FortiGuard traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system fortiguard
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

RADIUS

RADIUS, and individual accounting servers, traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config user radius
    edit <name>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
        config accounting-server
            edit <name>
                set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
                set interface <interface>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

LDAP

LDAP traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config user ldap
    edit <name>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
    next
end
```

TACACS+

TACACS+ traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config user tacacs+
    edit <name>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
    next
end
```

Central management

Central management traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system central-management
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

FortiAnalyzer

FortiAnalyzer and FortiAnalyzer Cloud log traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config log {fortianalyzer | fortianalyzer2 | fortianalyzer3 | fortianalyzer-cloud} {setting
| override-setting}
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

FortiGate Cloud logging

FortiGate Cloud log traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config log fortiguard setting
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

Syslog

Syslog traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config log {syslog | syslog2 | syslog3} {setting | override-setting}
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

Log disk upload

Log disk upload traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config log disk setting
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

FortiSandbox

FortiSandbox traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system fortisandbox
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

FSSO

FSSO traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system fsso
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

NTP server

NTP server traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system ntp
    config ntpserver
        edit <id>
            set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
            set interface <interface>
        next
    end
end
```

External resources

External resource traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system external-resource
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

DHCP proxy

DHCP proxy traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system settings
    set dhcp-proxy-interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set dhcp-proxy-interface <interface>
end
```

dhcp-proxy-interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}	Select the interface selection method: • `auto`: Set the outgoing interface automatically (default). • `sdwan`: Set the interface by SD-WAN or policy routing rules. • `specify`: Set the interface manually.
dhcp-proxy-interface <interface>	Specify the outgoing interface. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `specify`.

DHCP relay

DHCP relay traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set dhcp-relay-interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set dhcp-relay-interface <interface>
    next
end
```

dhcp-relay-interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}	Select the interface selection method: • `auto`: Set the outgoing interface automatically (default). • `sdwan`: Set the interface by SD-WAN or policy routing rules. • `specify`: Set the interface manually.
dhcp-relay-interface <interface>	Specify the outgoing interface. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `specify`.

CA and local certificate renewal with SCEP

Certificate renewal with SCEP traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config vpn certificate setting
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

IPS TLS protocol active probing

TLS active probing can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

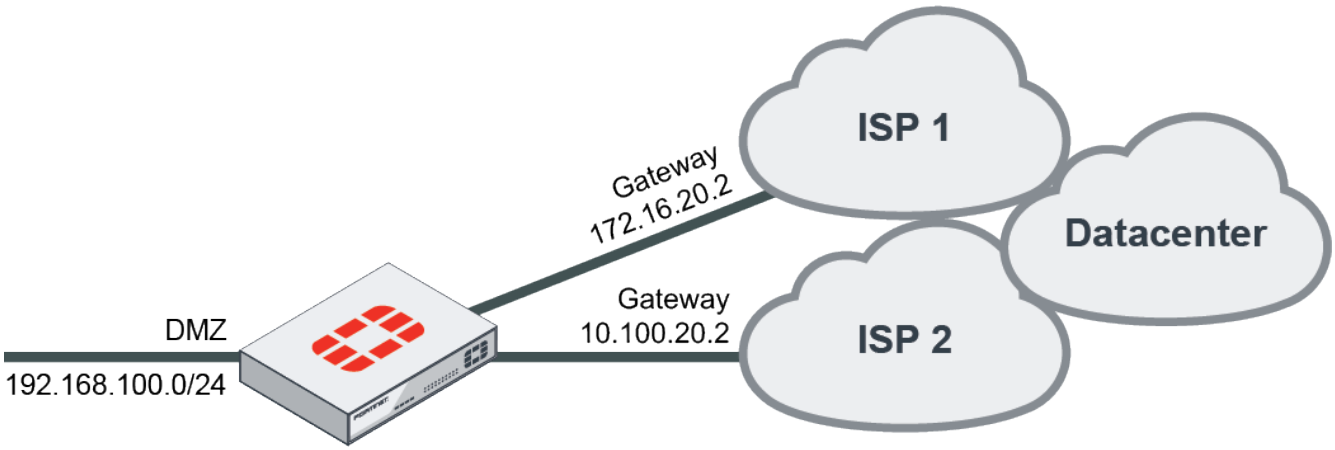
```
config ips global
    config tls-active-probe
        set interface-selection-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
        set vdom <VDOM>
        set source-ip <IPv4 address>
        set source-ip6 <IPv6 address>
    end
end
```

interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}	Select the interface selection method: • `auto`: Set the outgoing interface automatically (default). • `sdwan`: Set the interface by SD-WAN or policy routing rules. • `specify`: Set the interface manually.
interface <interface>	Specify the outgoing interface. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `specify`.
vdom <VDOM>	Specify the VDOM. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `sdwan` or `specify`.

source-ip <IPv4 address>	Specify the source IPv4 address. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `sdwan` or `specify`.
source-ip6 <IPv6 address>	Specify the source IPv6 address. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `sdwan` or `specify`.

Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules

SD-WAN rules can use Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) learned routes as dynamic destinations.



In this example, a customer has two ISP connections, wan1 and wan2. wan1 is used primarily for direct access to internet applications, and wan2 is used primarily for traffic to the customer's data center.

The customer could create an SD-WAN rule using the data center's IP address range as the destination to force that traffic to use wan2, but the data center's IP range is not static. Instead, a BGP tag can be used.

For this example, wan2's BGP neighbor advertises the data center's network range with a community number of 30:5.

This example assumes that SD-WAN is enabled on the FortiGate, wan1 and wan2 are added as SD-WAN members in the *virtual-wan-link* SD-WAN zone, and a policy and static route have been created. See SD-WAN quick start on page 665 for details.

FortiOS supports IPv4 and IPv6 route tags.

To configure BGP tags with SD-WAN rules:

1. Configure the community list:

```
config router community-list
    edit "30:5"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set action permit
                set match "30:5"
            next
```

```
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the route map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-community "30:5"
                set set-route-tag 15
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure BGP:

```
config router bgp
    set as xxxxx
    set router-id xxxx
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.20.2"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as xxxxx
            set route-map-in "comm1"
        next
    end
end
```

4. Configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

5. Edit the SD-WAN configuration:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set gateway 172.16.20.2
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
        next
```

```
        end
        config service
            edit 1
                set name "DataCenter"
                set mode manual
                set route-tag 15
                set priority-members 2
            next
        end
    end
```

Troubleshooting BGP tags with SD-WAN rules

Check the network community

Use the `get router info bgp network` command to check the network community:

```
# get router info bgp network
BGP table version is 5, local router ID is 1.1.1.1
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
              S Stale
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

   Network Next Hop Metric LocPrf Weight RouteTag Path
*> 0.0.0.0/0 10.100.1.5 32768 0 ?
*> 1.1.1.1/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.1.100.0/24 172.16.203.2 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.1.0/30 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.1.4/30 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.1.248/29 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.10.0/24 10.100.1.5 202 10000 15 20 e
*> 172.16.200.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.200.200/32
                    0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.201.0/24 172.16.200.4 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.203.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.204.0/24 172.16.200.4 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.205.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.206.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.207.1/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.207.2/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.212.1/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.212.2/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.17.200.200/32
                    0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.1.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.2.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.5.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.6.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.7.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.8.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.29.1.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.29.2.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?

Total number of prefixes 28
```

```
# get router info bgp network 10.100.11.0
BGP routing table entry for 10.100.10.0/24
Paths: (2 available, best 1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
   172.10.22.2
  20
    10.100.20.2 from 10.100.20.2 (6.6.6.6)
      Origin EGP metric 200, localpref 100, weight 10000, valid, external, best
      Community: 30:5 <<<<==========================
      Last update: Wen Mar 20 18:45:17 2019
```

Check dynamic BGP addresses

Use the `get router info route-map-address` command to check dynamic BGP addresses:

```
# get router info route-map-address
Extend-tag: 15, interface(wan2:16)
        10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0
```

Check dynamic BGP addresses used in policy routes

Use the `diagnose firewall proute list` command to check dynamic BGP addresses used in policy routes:

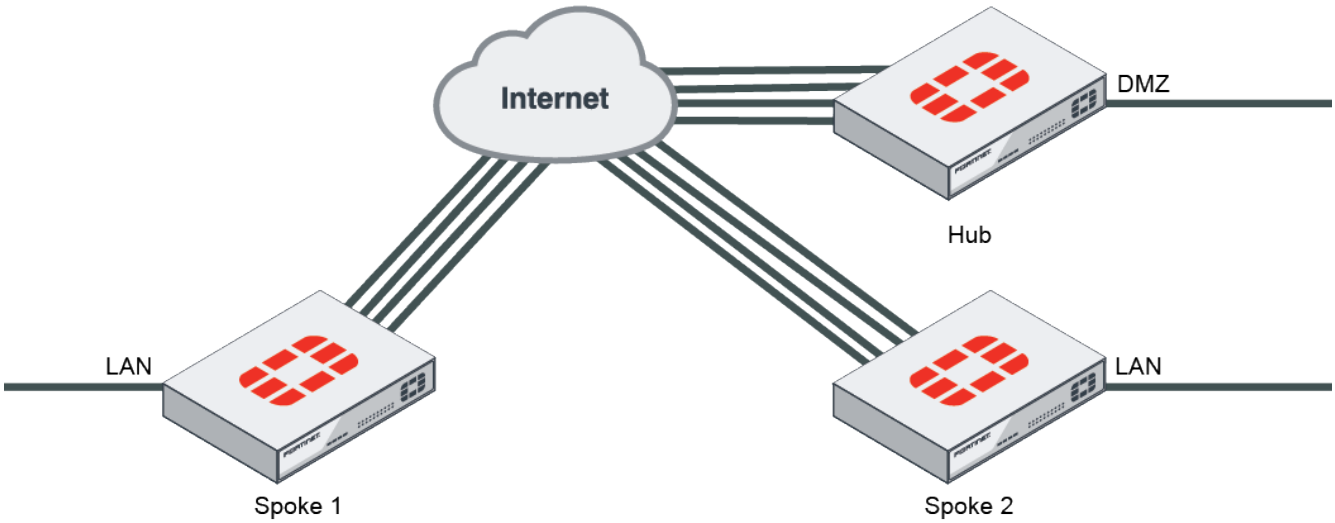
```
# diagnose firewall proute list
list route policy info(vf=root):

id=4278779905 vwl_service=1(DataCenter) flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0
sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=16
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
destination wildcard(1): 10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0
```

BGP multiple path support

BGP supports multiple paths, allowing an ADVPN to advertise multiple paths. This allows BGP to extend and keep additional network paths according to RFC 7911.

In this example, Spoke1 and Spoke2 each have four VPN tunnels that are connected to the Hub with ADVPN. The Spoke-Hub has established four BGP neighbors on all four tunnels.



Spoke 1 and Spoke 2 can learn four different routes from each other.

To configure the hub:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    set router-id 11.11.11.11
    set ibgp-multipath enable
    set additional-path enable
    set additional-path-select 4
    config neighbor-group
        edit "gr1"
            set capability-default-originate enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set additional-path both
            set adv-additional-path 4
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.0.0 255.255.0.0
            set neighbor-group "gr1"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 12
            set prefix 11.11.11.11 255.255.255.255
        next
    end
end
```

To configure a spoke:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    set router-id 2.2.2.2
    set ibgp-multipath enable
```

```
        set additional-path enable
        set additional-path-select 4
        config neighbor
            edit "10.10.100.254"
                set soft-reconfiguration enable
                set remote-as 65505
                set additional-path both
                set adv-additional-path 4
            next
            edit "10.10.200.254"
                set soft-reconfiguration enable
                set remote-as 65505
                set additional-path both
                set adv-additional-path 4
            next
            edit "10.10.203.254"
                set soft-reconfiguration enable
                set remote-as 65505
                set additional-path both
                set adv-additional-path 4
            next
            edit "10.10.204.254"
                set soft-reconfiguration enable
                set remote-as 65505
                set additional-path both
                set adv-additional-path 4
            next
        end
        config network
            edit 3
                set prefix 22.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    end
```

To view the BGP routing table on a spoke:

```
Spoke1 # get router info routing-table bgp
    Routing table for VRF=0
    B*      0.0.0.0/0 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, vd2-2, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.203.254, vd2-3, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.204.254, vd2-4, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, vd2-1, 03:57:26
    B       1.1.1.1/32 [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
            [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
            [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
            [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
    B       11.11.11.11/32 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, vd2-2, 03:57:51
            [200/0] via 10.10.203.254, vd2-3, 03:57:51
            [200/0] via 10.10.204.254, vd2-4, 03:57:51
            [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, vd2-1, 03:57:51
    B       33.1.1.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
            [200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
```

```
[200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
[200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
```

Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules

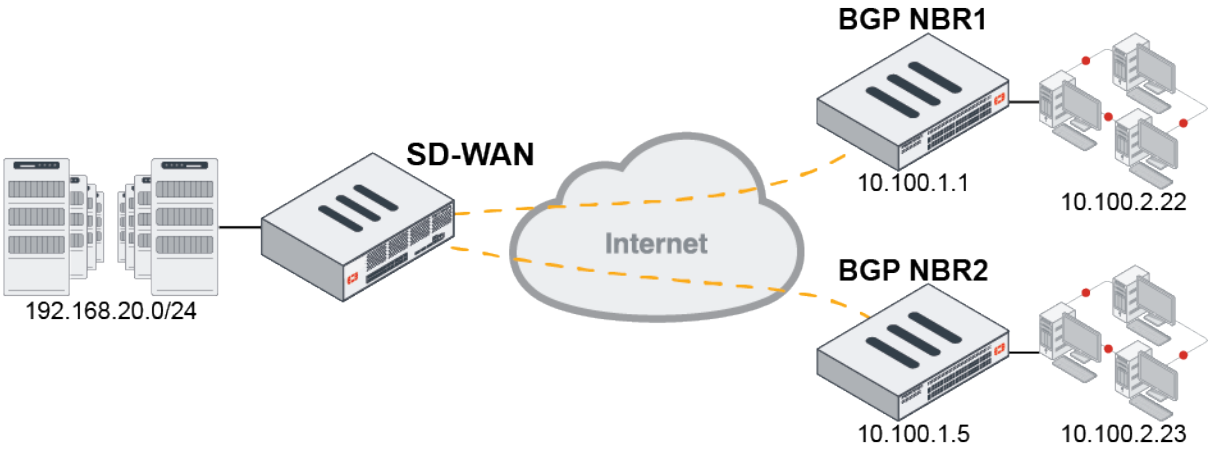
SD-WAN allows you to select different outbound WAN links based on performance SLAs. It is important that BGP neighbors are aware of these settings, and changes to them.

BGP can adapt to changes in SD-WAN link SLAs in the following ways:

- Applying different route-maps based on the SD-WAN's health checks. For example, different BGP community strings can be advertised to BGP neighbors when SLAs are not met.
- Traffic can be selectively forwarded based on the active BGP neighbor. If the SD-WAN service's role matches the active SD-WAN neighbor, the service is enabled. If there is no match, then the service is disabled.

Example

In this topology, a branch FortiGate has two SD-WAN gateways serving as the primary and secondary gateways. The gateways reside in different datacenters, but have a full mesh network between them.



This example shows how route-maps and service rules are selected based on performance SLAs and the member that is currently active. Traffic flows through the primary gateway unless the neighbor's health check is outside of its SLA. If that happens, traffic routes to the secondary gateway.

BGP NBR1 is the primary neighbor and BGP NBR2 is the secondary neighbor.

The branch FortiGate's wan1 and wan2 interfaces are members of the SD-WAN. When the SD-WAN neighbor status is primary, it will advertise community *20:1* to BGP NBR1 and *20:5* to BGP NBR2. When the SD-WAN neighbor status is secondary, it will advertise *20:5* to BGP NBR1 and *20:2* to BGP NBR2.

Only one of the primary or secondary neighbors can be active at one time. The SD-WAN neighbor status is used to decide which neighbor is selected:

- **Primary**: The primary neighbor takes precedence if its SLAs are met.
- **Secondary**: If the primary neighbor's SLAs are not met, the secondary neighbor becomes active if its SLAs are met.
- **Standalone**: If neither the primary or secondary neighbor's SLAs are met, the SD-WAN neighbor status becomes standalone.

Route map

SD-WAN is configured to let BGP advertise different communities when the SLA status changes. When the SLA is missed, it triggers BGP to advertise a different community to its BGP neighbor based on its route-map. The BGP neighbors can use the received community string to select the best path to reach the branch.

To configure BGP route-maps and neighbors:

1. Configure an access for the routes to be matched:

```
config router access-list
    edit "net192"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the primary neighbor's preferred route-map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "20:1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure the secondary neighbor's preferred route-map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "20:2"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. Configure the failed route-map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm5"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "20:5"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure BGP neighbors:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    set ibgp-multipath enable
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.1.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 20
            set route-map-out "comm5"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm1"
        next
        edit "10.100.1.5"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 20
            set route-map-out "comm5"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm2"
        next
    end
end
```

When SLAs are met, `route-map-out-preferable` is used. When SLAs are missed, `route-map-out` is used.

To configure SD-WAN:

1. Configure the SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "port2"
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure health checks for each member:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "ping"
```

```
            set server "10.100.2.22"
            set members 1
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
        next
        edit "ping2"
            set server "10.100.2.23"
            set members 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the SD-WAN neighbors and assign them a role and the health checks used to determine if the neighbor meets the SLA:
   SD-WAN neighbors can only be configured in the CLI.

```
config system sdwan
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.1.1"
            set member 1
            set role primary
            set health-check "ping"
            set sla-id 1
        next
        edit "10.100.1.5"
            set member 2
            set role secondary
            set health-check "ping2"
            set sla-id 1
        next
    end
end
```

Service rules

Create SD-WAN service rules to direct traffic to the primary neighbor when its SLAs are met, and to the secondary neighbor when the primary neighbor's SLAs are missed.

To configure the SD-WAN service rules:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "Primary-Out"
            set role primary
            set dst "all"
```

```
            set src "all"
            set priority-members 1
        next
        edit 2
            set name "Secondary-Out"
            set role secondary
            set dst "all"
            set src "all"
            set priority-members 2
        next
    end
end
```



If neither the primary nor secondary neighbors are active, the SD-WAN neighbor status becomes standalone. Only service rules with `standalone-action` enabled will continue to pass traffic. This option is disabled by default.

Verification

To verify when the primary neighbor is passing traffic:

1. Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.569), jitter(0.061) sla_
map=0x1
Health Check(ping2):
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(3.916), jitter(2.373) sla_
map=0x1
```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
SD-WAN neighbor status: hold-down(disable), hold-down-time(0), hold_boot_time(0)
        Selected role(primary) last_secondary_select_time/current_time in seconds 0/572
Neighbor(10.100.1.1): member(1) role(primary)
        Health-check(ping:1)  sla-pass selected alive
Neighbor(10.100.1.5): member(2) role(secondary)
        Health-check(ping2:1)  sla-pass alive
```

3. Verify service rules status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(3), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: primary
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

```
Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(6), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: secondary, disabled by unselected.
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    10.100.1.2 from 10.100.1.2 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:1
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 13:41:40 2020
```

   b. Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    10.100.1.6 from 10.100.1.6 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:5
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 13:41:39 2020
```

To verify when the secondary neighbor is passing traffic:

1. Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 port1): state(dead), packet-loss(54.000%) sla_map=0x0
Health Check(ping2):
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(4.339), jitter(3.701) sla_
map=0x1
```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
SD-WAN neighbor status: hold-down(disable), hold-down-time(0), hold_boot_time(0)
        Selected role(secondary) last_secondary_select_time/current_time in seconds
936/936
Neighbor(10.100.1.1): member(1) role(primary)
        Health-check(ping:1)  sla-fail dead
Neighbor(10.100.1.5): member(2) role(secondary)
        Health-check(ping2:1)  sla-pass selected alive
```

3. Verify service rules status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(4), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: primary, disabled by unselected.
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(7), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: secondary
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    10.100.1.2 from 10.100.1.2 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:5
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 15:41:58 2020
```

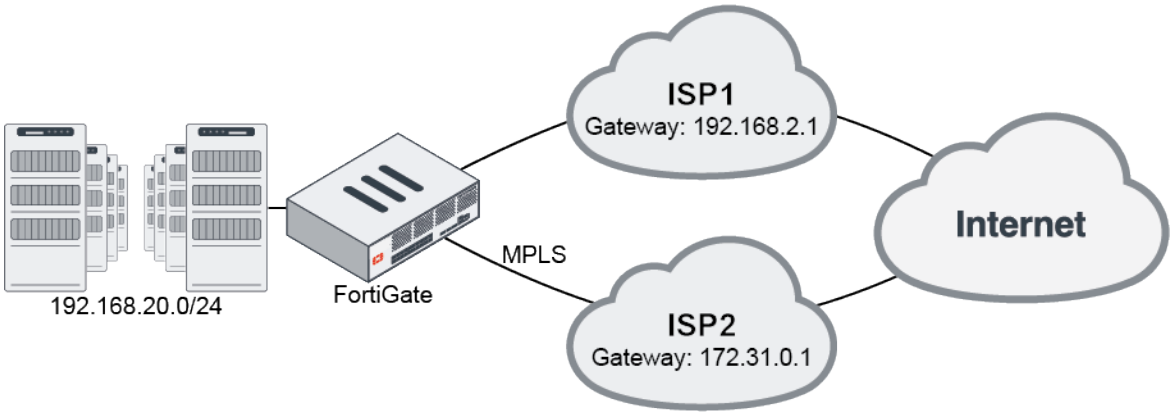
   b. Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    10.100.1.6 from 10.100.1.6 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:2
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 15:42:07 2020
```

Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors

Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules explained how BGP can apply different route-maps to the primary and secondary SD-WAN neighbors based on SLA health checks.

In this example, SD-WAN neighbors that are not bound to primary and secondary roles are configured.



The FortiGate has multiple SD-WAN links and has formed BGP neighbors with both ISPs.

ISP1 is used primarily for outbound traffic, and has an SD-WAN service rule using the lowest cost algorithm applied to it. When SLAs for ISP1 are not met, it will fail over to the MPLS line.

Inbound traffic is allowed by both WAN links, with each WAN advertising a community string when SLAs are met. When SLAs are not met, the WAN links advertise a different community string.

This example uses two SD-WAN links. The topology can be expanded to include more links as needed.

To configure BGP route-maps and neighbors:

1. Configure an access list for routes to be matched:

```
config router access-list
    edit "net192"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure route-maps for neighbor ISP1:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64511:1"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "comm-fail1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64511:5"
            next
```

```
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure route-maps for neighbor ISP2:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64522:1"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "comm-fail2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64522:5"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. Configure the BGP neighbors:

```
config router bgp
    set as 64512
    set keepalive-timer 1
    set holdtime-timer 3
    config neighbor
        edit "192.168.2.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 64511
            set route-map-out "comm-fail1"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm1"
        next
        edit "172.31.0.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 64522
            set route-map-out "comm-fail2"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm2"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

When SLAs are met, `route-map-out-preferable` is used. When SLAs are missed, `route-map-out` is used.

To configure SD-WAN:

1. Configure the SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
            set gateway 192.168.2.1
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "MPLS"
            set cost 20
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the health checks that must be met:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "pingserver"
            set server "8.8.8.8"
            set members 2 1
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 2
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the SD-WAN neighbors and assign them a role and the health checks used to determine if the neighbor meets the SLA:
   When no role is defined, the default role, `standalone`, is used.

```
config system sdwan
    config neighbor
        edit "192.168.2.1"
            set member 1
            set health-check "pingserver"
            set sla-id 1
        next
        edit "172.31.0.1"
            set member 2
            set health-check "pingserver"
            set sla-id 1
        next
    end
end
```

Service rules

Create SD-WAN service rules to direct traffic to the SD-WAN links based on the lowest cost algorithm The same SLA health check and criteria that are used for the SD-WAN neighbor are used for this SD-WAN service rule.

When no roles are defined in the service rule, the default role, `standalone`, is used.

To configure the SD-WAN service rule:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "OutboundAll"
            set mode sla
            set dst "all"
            set src "all"
            config sla
                edit "pingserver"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

Verification

To verify that when both SLAs are met, port1 is selected due to its lower cost:

1. Verify the health check status:

   ```
   FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
   Health Check(pingserver):
   Seq(2 MPLS): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(24.709), jitter(14.996) sla_
   map=0x1
   Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(28.771), jitter(14.840) sla_
   map=0x1
   ```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

   ```
   FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
   Neighbor(192.168.2.1): member(1) role(standalone)
           Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-pass selected alive
   Neighbor(172.31.0.1): member(2) role(standalone)
           Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-pass selected alive
   ```

3. Verify service rules status:
   Because the service role is `standalone`, it matches both neighbors. The mode (SLA) determines that port1 is lower cost.

   ```
   FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

   Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
     Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
     Service role: standalone
     Members:
   ```

```
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2 MPLS), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(20), selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    192.168.2.5 from 192.168.2.5 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64511:1
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 23:59:05 2020
```

   b. Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    172.31.0.2 from 172.31.0.2 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64522:1
      Last update: Fri May  1 00:11:28 2020
```

To verify that when neighbor ISP1 misses SLAs, MPLS is selected and BGP advertises a different community string for ISP1:

1. Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(pingserver):
Seq(2 MPLS): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(25.637), jitter(17.820) sla_
map=0x1
Seq(1 port1): state(dead), packet-loss(16.000%) sla_map=0x0
```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
Neighbor(192.168.2.1): member(1) role(standalone)
        Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-fail dead
Neighbor(172.31.0.1): member(2) role(standalone)
        Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-pass selected alive
```

3. Verify service rules status:
   As SLA failed for neighbor ISP1, MPLS is preferred.

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service
```

```
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(3), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
  Service role: standalone
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 MPLS), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(20), selected
    2: Seq_num(1 port1), dead, sla(0x0), cfg_order(0), cost(0)
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   The community received on ISP1 is updated.
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    192.168.2.5 from 192.168.2.5 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64511:5
      Last update: Fri May  1 00:33:26 2020
```

   b. Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    172.31.0.2 from 172.31.0.2 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64522:1
      Last update: Fri May  1 00:22:42 2020
```

VPN overlay

The following topics provide instructions on SD-WAN VPN overlays:

- ADVPN and shortcut paths on page 769
- SD-WAN monitor on ADVPN shortcuts on page 782
- SD-WAN integration with OCVPN on page 783
- Forward error correction on VPN overlay networks on page 790
- Dual VPN tunnel wizard on page 793
- Duplicate packets based on SD-WAN rules on page 794
- Duplicate packets on other zone members on page 796

ADVPN and shortcut paths

This topic provides an example of how to use SD-WAN and ADVPN together.

ADVPN (Auto Discovery VPN) is an IPsec technology that allows a traditional hub-and-spoke VPN's spokes to establish dynamic, on-demand, direct tunnels between each other to avoid routing through the topology's hub device. The primary advantage is that it provides full meshing capabilities to a standard hub-and-spoke topology. This greatly reduces the provisioning effort for full spoke-to-spoke low delay reachability, and addresses the scalability issues associated with very large fully meshed VPN networks.

If a customer's head office and branch offices all have two or more internet connections, they can build a dual-hub ADVPN network. Combined with SD-WAN technology, the customer can load-balance traffic to other offices on multiple dynamic tunnels, control specific traffic using specific connections, or choose better performance connections dynamically.

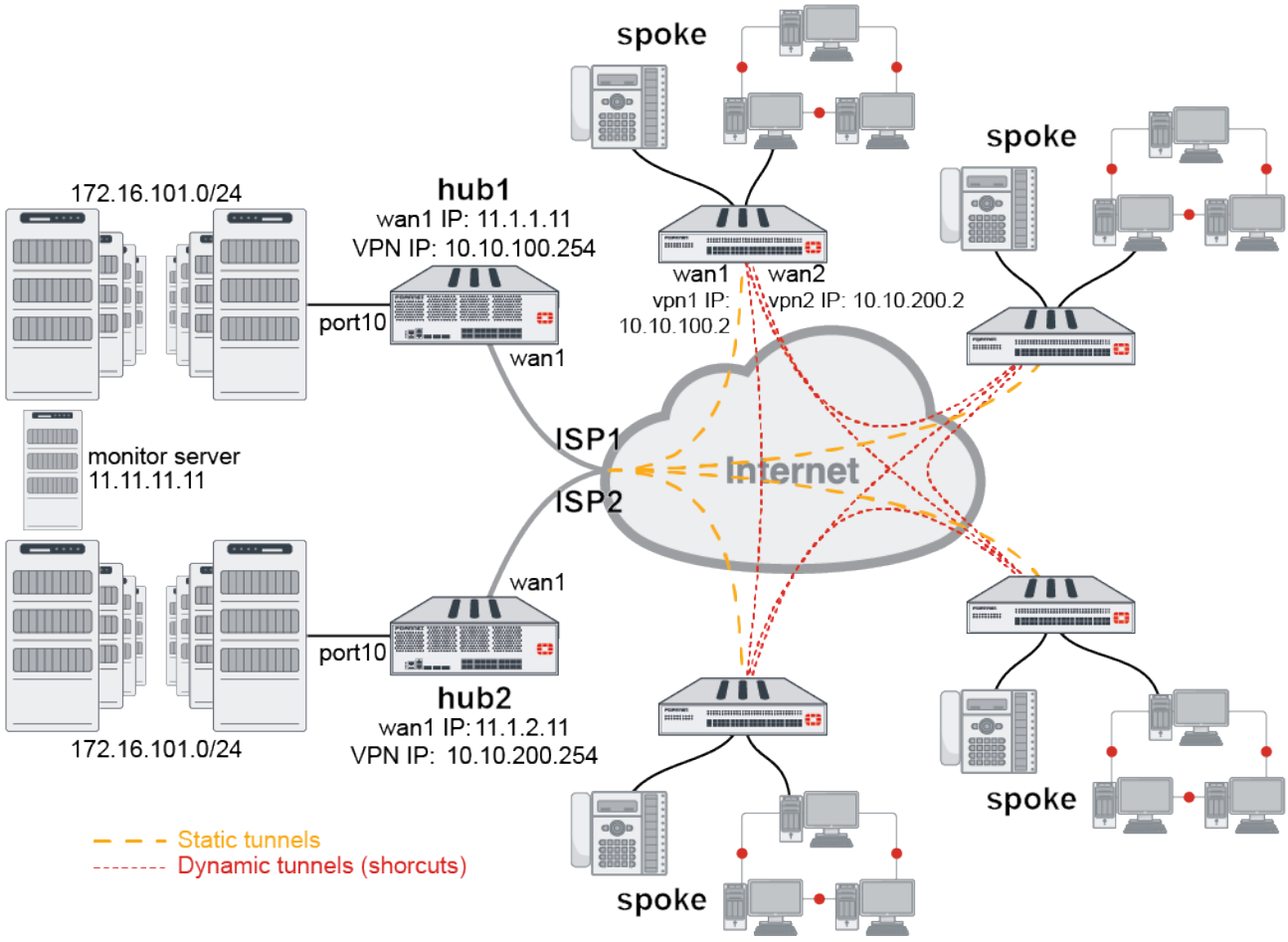


SD-WAN load-balance mode rules (or services) do not support ADVPN members. Other modes' rules, such as SLA and priority, support ADVPN members.

This topic covers three parts:

1. Configure dual-hub ADVPN with multiple branches.
2. Configure BGP to exchange routing information among hubs and spokes.
3. Configure SD-WAN on spoke to do load-balancing and control traffic.

Configuration example



A typical ADVPN configuration with SD-WAN usually has two hubs, and each spoke connects to two ISPs and establishes VPN tunnels with both hubs.

This example shows a hub-and-spoke configuration using two hubs and one spoke:

- Hub1 and Hub2 both use wan1 to connect to the ISPs and port10 to connect to internal network.
- Spoke1 uses wan1 to connect to ISP1 and wan2 to connect to ISP2.
- wan1 sets up VPN to hub1.
- wan2 sets up VPN to hub2.

The SD-WAN is configured on the spoke. It uses the two VPN interfaces as members and two rules to control traffic to headquarters or other spokes using ADVPN VPN interfaces. You can create more rules if required.

For this example:

- Use SD-WAN member 1 (via ISP1) and its dynamic shortcuts for financial department traffic if member 1 meets SLA requirements. If it doesn't meet SLA requirements, it will use SD-WAN member 2 (via ISP2).
- Use SD-WAN member 2 (via ISP2) and its dynamic shortcuts for engineering department traffic.
- Load balance other traffic going to hubs and other spokes between these two members.
- Set up all other traffic to go with their original ISP connection. All other traffic does not go through SD-WAN.
- Set up basic network configuration to let all hubs and spokes connect to their ISPs and the Internet.

Hub internal network	172.16.101.0/24
Spoke1 internal network	10.1.100.0/24
ADVPN 1 network	10.10.100.0/24
ADVPN 2 network	10.10.200.0/24
Hub1 wan1 IP	11.1.1.11
Hub2 wan1 IP	11.1.2.11
Hub1 VPN IP	10.10.100.254
Hub2 VPN IP	10.10.200.254
Spoke1 to hub1 VPN IP	10.10.100.2
Spoke1 to hub2 VPN IP	10.10.200.2
Ping server in Headquarters	11.11.11.11
Internal subnet of spoke1	22.1.1.0/24
Internal subnet of spoke2	33.1.1.0/24
Firewall addresses	Configure hub_subnets and spoke_subnets before using in policies. These can be customized.

The GUI does not support some ADVPN related options, such as auto-discovery-sender, auto-discovery-receiver, auto-discovery-forwarder, and IBGP neighbor-group setting, so this example only provides CLI configuration commands.

Hub1 sample configuration

To configure the IPsec phase1 and phase2 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-
sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "hub-phase2"
        set phase1name "hub-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-
sha256
```

```
    next
end
```

To configure the VPN interface and BGP:

```
config system interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.100.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.100.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    config neighbor-group
        edit "advpn"
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.100.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "advpn"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 11.11.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
    end
end
```

To configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "hub_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to headquarter"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to spokes"
    next
    edit 3
        set name "internal2spoke"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
        set srcaddr "hub_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from headquarter to spokes"
    next
end
```

Hub2 sample configuration

Hub2 configuration is the same as hub1 except the wan1 IP address, VPN interface IP address, and BGP neighbor-range prefix.

To configure the IPsec phase1 and phase2 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-
sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "hub-phase2"
        set phase1name "hub-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-
sha256
    next
end
```

To configure the VPN interface and BGP:

```
config system interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.200.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.200.253 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    config neighbor-group
        edit "advpn"
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.200.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "advpn"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 11.11.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
    end
end
```

To configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "hub_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to headquarter"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to spokes"
    next
    edit 3
        set name "internal2spoke"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
```

```
        set srcaddr "hub_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from headquarter to spokes"
    next
end
```

Spoke1 sample configuration

To configure the IPsec phase1 and phase2 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1-phase1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 11.1.1.11
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1-2-phase1"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 11.1.2.11
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1-phase2"
        set phase1name "spoke1-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1-2-phase2"
        set phase1name "spoke1-2-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

To configure the VPN interface and BGP:

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke1-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.100.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.100.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke1-2-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.200.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.200.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.100.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
        next
        edit "10.10.200.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

To configure SD-WAN:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "spoke1-phase1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "spoke1-2-phase1"
        next
    end
    config health-check
        edit "ping"
            set server "11.11.11.11"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 200
                    set jitter-threshold 50
                    set packetloss-threshold 5
                next
            end
```

```
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode sla
            set dst "financial-department"
            config sla
                edit "ping"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
        edit 2
            set priority-members 2
            set dst "engineering-department"
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

To configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets" "hub_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow internal traffic going out to headquarter and other spokes"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets" "hub_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow headquarter and other spokes traffic coming in"
    next
end
```

Troubleshooting ADVPN and shortcut paths

Before spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established

Use the following CLI commands to check status before spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established.

```
# get router info bgp summary
BGP router identifier 2.2.2.2, local AS number 65505
BGP table version is 13
3 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor        V         AS MsgRcvd MsgSent   TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down  State/PfxRcd
10.10.100.254   4      65505    3286    3270       11    0    0 00:02:15        5
10.10.200.254   4      65505    3365    3319       12    0    0 00:02:14        5

Total number of neighbors 2
```

```
# get router info routing-table bgp

Routing table for VRF=0
B*      0.0.0.0/0 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:00:58
                  [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:00:58
B       1.1.1.1/32 [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:01:29
                   [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:01:29
B       11.11.11.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:01:29
                      [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:01:29
B       33.1.1.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:00:58
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1, 00:00:58
                    [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:00:58
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1, 00:00:58
```

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 3
------------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-phase1 ver=1 serial=5 12.1.1.2:0->11.1.1.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=48 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=22 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=185 rxb=16428 txb=11111
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=4
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42820/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=ba esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42903/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a2a esp=aes key=16 56e673f0df05186aa657f55cbb631c13
       ah=sha1 key=20 b0d50597d9bed763c42469461b03da8041f87e88
  enc: spi=2ead61bc esp=aes key=16 fe0ccd4a3ec19fe6d520c437eb6b8897
       ah=sha1 key=20 e3e669bd6df41b88eadaacba66463706f26fb53a
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16368, enc:pkts/bytes=185/22360
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.1.11 npu_lgwy=12.1.1.2 npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
------------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-2-phase1 ver=1 serial=6 112.1.1.2:0->11.1.2.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
```

```
bound_if=90 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=21 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=186 rxb=16498 txb=11163
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=74
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1-2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42818/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=bb esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a2b esp=aes key=16 fe49f5042a5ad236250bf53312db1346
       ah=sha1 key=20 5dbb15c8cbc046c284bb1c6425dac2b3e15bec85
  enc: spi=2ead61bd esp=aes key=16 d6d97be52c3cccb9e88f28a9db64ac46
       ah=sha1 key=20 e20916ae6ea2295c2fbd5cbc8b8f5dd8b17f52f1
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16438, enc:pkts/bytes=186/22480
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.2.11 npu_lgwy=112.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

diagnose sys sdwan service

```
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
  Member sub interface:
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Member sub interface:
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
```

diagnose firewall proute list

```
list route policy info(vf=vd2):

id=2132869121 vwl_service=1 vwl_mbr_seq=1 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=70 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0

id=2132869122 vwl_service=2 vwl_mbr_seq=2 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
```

After spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established

Use the following CLI commands to check status after spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established.

get router info routing-table bgp

```
Routing table for VRF=0
```

```
B*      0.0.0.0/0 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:01:33
                  [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:01:33
B       1.1.1.1/32 [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:02:04
                   [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:02:04
B       11.11.11.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:02:04
                      [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:02:04
B       33.1.1.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1_0, 00:01:33
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1_0, 00:01:33
                    [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1_0, 00:01:33
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1_0, 00:01:33
```

diagnose sys sdwan service

```
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
  Member sub interface:
    1: seq_num(1), interface(spoke1-phase1):
       1: spoke1-phase1_0(111)
    2: seq_num(2), interface(spoke1-2-phase1):
       1: spoke1-2-phase1_0(113)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Member sub interface:
    1: seq_num(2), interface(spoke1-2-phase1):
       1: spoke1-2-phase1_0(113)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
```

diagnose vpn tunnel list

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 3
------------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-phase1 ver=1 serial=5 12.1.1.2:0->11.1.1.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=48 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=20 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=759 rxb=16428 txb=48627
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=4
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42536/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2f8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a42 esp=aes key=16 1f131bda108d33909d49fc2778bd08bb
       ah=sha1 key=20 14131d3f0da9b741a2fd13d530b0553aa1f58983
  enc: spi=2ead61d8 esp=aes key=16 81ed24d5cd7bb59f4a80dceb5a560e1f
       ah=sha1 key=20 d2ccc2f3223ce16514e75f672cd88c4b4f48b681
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16360, enc:pkts/bytes=759/94434
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.1.11 npu_lgwy=12.1.1.2 npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

```
----------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-2-phase1 ver=1 serial=6 112.1.1.2:0->11.1.2.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=90 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=756 rxb=16450 txb=48460
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=74
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42538/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2f5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a43 esp=aes key=16 7fc87561369f88b56d08bfda769eb45b
       ah=sha1 key=20 0ed554ef231c5ac16dc2e71d1907d7347dda33d6
  enc: spi=2ead61d9 esp=aes key=16 00286687aa1762e7d8216881d6720ef3
       ah=sha1 key=20 59d5eec6299ebcf038c190860774e2833074d7c3
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16382, enc:pkts/bytes=756/94058
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.2.11 npu_lgwy=112.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-phase1_0 ver=1 serial=55 12.1.1.2:0->13.1.1.3:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=48 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=vd2-1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=18 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42893/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a44 esp=aes key=16 c3b77a98e3002220e2373b73af14df6e
       ah=sha1 key=20 d18d107c248564933874f60999d6082fd7a78948
  enc: spi=864f6dba esp=aes key=16 eb6181806ccb9bac37931f9eadd4d5eb
       ah=sha1 key=20 ab788f7a372877a5603c4ede1be89a592fc21873
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.3 npu_lgwy=12.1.1.2 npu_selid=51 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
----------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-2-phase1_0 ver=1 serial=57 112.1.1.2:0->113.1.1.3:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=90 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=vd2-2 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=5 olast=5 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

```
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42900/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a45 esp=aes key=16 0beb519ed9f800e8b4c0aa4e1df7da35
       ah=sha1 key=20 bc9f38db5296cce4208a69f1cc8a9f7ef4803c37
  enc: spi=864f6dbb esp=aes key=16 1d26e3556afcdb9f8e3e33b563b44228
       ah=sha1 key=20 564d05ef6f7437e1fd0a88d5fee7b6567f9d387e
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=113.1.1.3 npu_lgwy=112.1.1.2 npu_selid=53 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

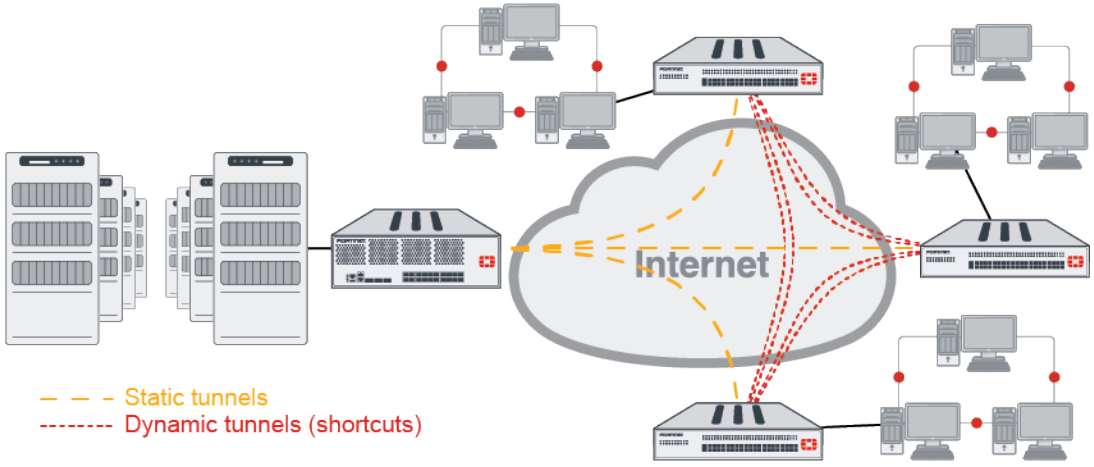
```
# diagnose firewall proute list
list route policy info(vf=vd2):

id=2132869121 vwl_service=1 vwl_mbr_seq=1 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=111 oif=70 oif=113 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0

id=2132869122 vwl_service=2 vwl_mbr_seq=2 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=113 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
```

SD-WAN monitor on ADVPN shortcuts

SD-WAN monitors ADVPN shortcut link quality by dynamically creating link monitors for each ADVPN link. The dynamic link monitor on the spoke will use ICMP probes and the IP address of the gateway as the monitored server. These ICMP probes will not be counted as actual user traffic that keeps the spoke-to-spoke tunnel alive.



- When no shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 tunnel-1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.038), jitter(0.006) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.035), jitter(0.004) sla_
map=0x3
```

- When one shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 tunnel-1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.039), jitter(0.003) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(1 tunnel-1_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.060), jitter(0.023) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.035), jitter(0.002) sla_
map=0x3
```

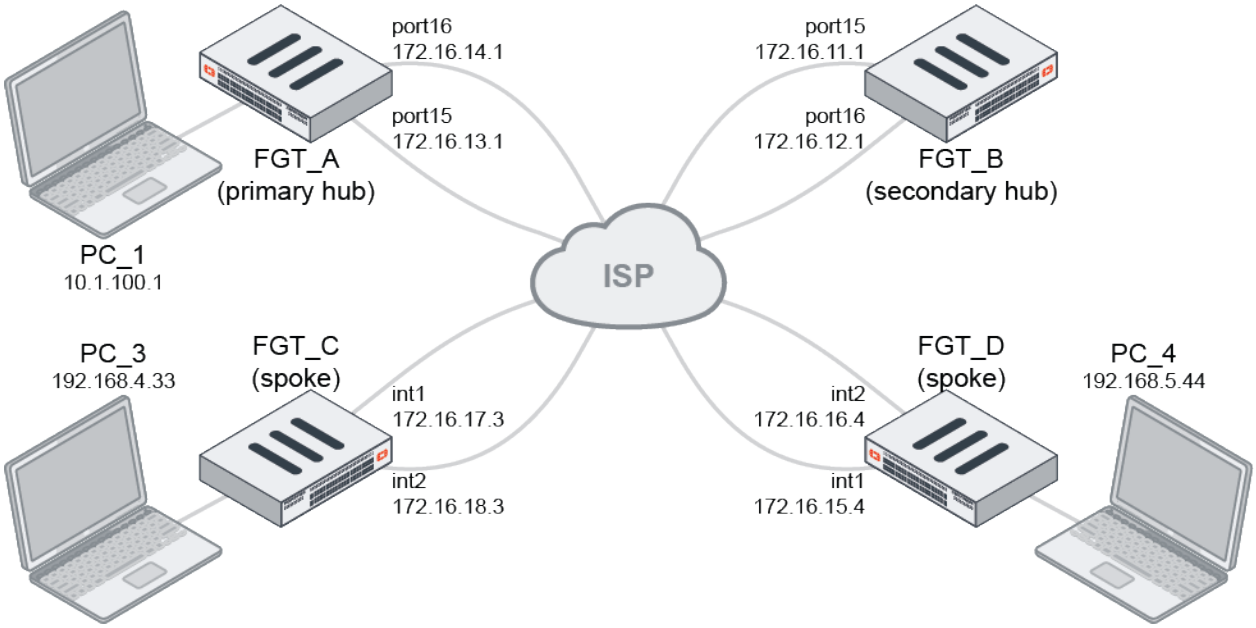
- When more than one shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 tunnel-1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.036), jitter(0.004) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(1 tunnel-1_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.041), jitter(0.009) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.030), jitter(0.005) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.031), jitter(0.004) sla_
map=0x3
```

SD-WAN integration with OCVPN

OCVPN has the capability to enable SD-WAN in order to dynamically add its tunnel interfaces as SD-WAN members. Users can configure SD-WAN health checks and service rules to direct traffic over the OCVPN tunnels.

The following example uses a dual hub and spoke topology. Each hub and spoke has two WAN link connections to the ISP. The spokes generate two IPsec tunnels to each hub (four tunnels in total). BGP neighbors are established over each tunnel and routes from the hubs and other spokes learned from all neighbors, which forms an ECMP scenario. All tunnels are placed as SD-WAN members, so traffic can be distributed across tunnels based on the configured SD-WAN service rules.

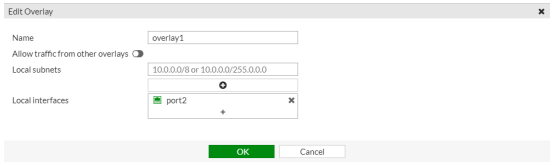


To integrate SD-WAN with OCVPN in the GUI:

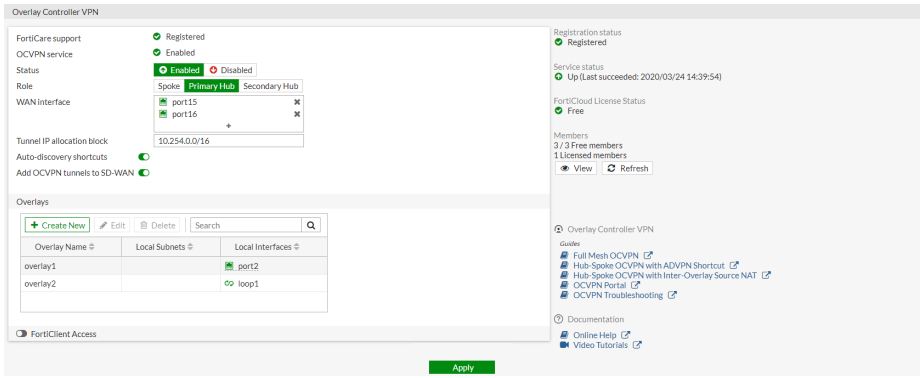
1. Configure the primary hub:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN* and set the *Status* to *Enable*.
   b. For *Role*, select *Primary Hub*.
   c. Enter the WAN interfaces (*port15* and *port16*) and tunnel IP allocation block (*10.254.0.0/16*).

   The WAN interface is position sensitive, meaning a tunnel will be created with the first position interface on the hub to the first position interface on the spoke, and so on. In this example, FGT_A (primary hub) will create two tunnels with FGT_C (spoke):
   - FGT_A port15 <==> FGT_C internal1
   - FGT_A port16 <==> FGT_C internal2

   d. Enable *Auto-discovery shortcuts*.
   e. Enable *Add OCVPN tunnels to SD-WAN*. The IPsec tunnels will be added automatically to the SD-WAN members if SD-WAN is enabled.
2. Configure the overlays on the primary hub:
   a. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name and add the local interface (*port2*). Note the overlay is either based on local subnets or local interfaces, but not both.
   By default, inter-overlay traffic is not enabled. Toggle *Allow traffic from other overlays* to enable it.
   c. Click *OK* and repeat these steps to create the second overlay (*loop1*).



   d. Click *Apply*.



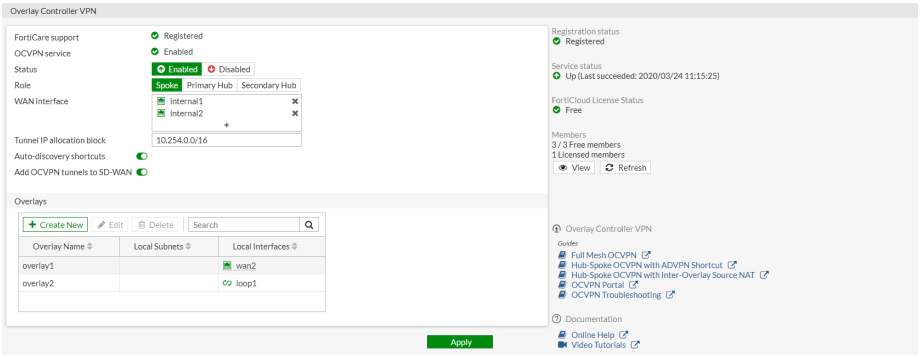
3. Configure the secondary hub with the same settings as the primary hub.
4. Configure the spoke:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN* and set the *Status* to *Enable*.
   b. For *Role*, select *Spoke*.
   c. Enter the WAN interfaces (*internal1* and *internal2*).
   d. Enable *Auto-discovery shortcuts*.
   e. Enable *Add OCVPN tunnels to SD-WAN*. The IPsec tunnels will be added automatically to the SD-WAN members if SD-WAN is enabled.

f. Configure the overlays.

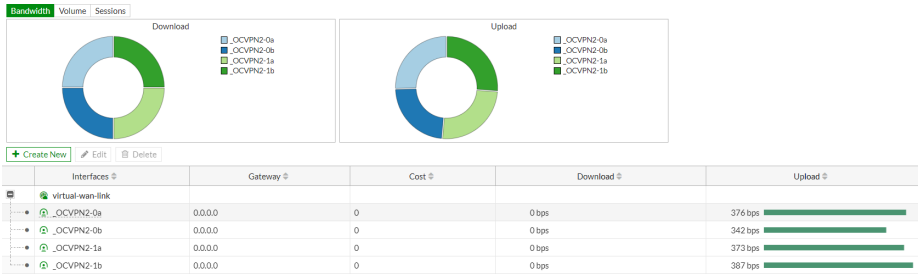


The overlay names on the spokes must match the hub for the traffic to be allowed through the same overlay.

g. Click *Apply*.



5. Configure the other spoke with the same settings.
6. On a spoke, go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* to view the configuration generated by OCVPN.



Firewall policies will be automatically generated by OCVPN between the local interfaces and the SD-WAN interface. Each policy will define the proper local and remote networks for its source and destination addresses.

To integrate SD-WAN with OCVPN in the CLI:

1. Configure the primary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set role primary-hub
    set sdwan enable
    set wan-interface "port15" "port16"
    set ip-allocation-block 10.254.0.0 255.255.0.0
    config overlays
        edit "overlay1"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "port2"
                next
            end
        next
        edit "overlay2"
            config subnets
```

```
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "loop1"
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the secondary hub with the same settings as the primary hub.
3. Configure the spoke:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set sdwan enable
    set wan-interface "internal1" "internal2"
    config overlays
        edit "overlay1"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "wan2"
                next
            end
        next
        edit "overlay2"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "loop1"
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

4. Configure the other spoke with the same settings.
5. Configure SD-WAN:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "_OCVPN2-0a"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "_OCVPN2-0b"
        next
        edit 3
            set interface "_OCVPN2-1a"
        next
        edit 4
            set interface "_OCVPN2-1b"
        next
    end
end
```

Firewall policies will be automatically generated by OCVPN between the local interfaces and the SD-WAN interface. Each policy will define the proper local and remote networks for its source and destination addresses.



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

To verify the integration is working after the ADVPN shortcut is triggered:

1. Check the routing table on the spoke:

```
FGT_C # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.17.2, internal1
                  [10/0] via 172.16.18.2, internal2
B       10.1.100.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.7.254, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:10:24
                      [200/0] via 10.254.15.254, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:10:24
B       10.1.200.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.7.254, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:10:24
                      [200/0] via 10.254.15.254, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:10:24
B       10.2.100.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.71.254, _OCVPN2-1a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.79.254, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:10:15
B       10.2.200.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.71.254, _OCVPN2-1a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.79.254, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:10:15
B       10.254.0.0/16 [200/0] via 10.254.7.254, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.15.254, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.71.254, _OCVPN2-1a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.79.254, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:10:15
C       10.254.0.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0a
C       10.254.0.1/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0a
C       10.254.8.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0b
C       10.254.8.1/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0b
C       10.254.64.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1a
C       10.254.64.1/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b_0 <==shortcut tunnel
C       10.254.64.2/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1a
C       10.254.72.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b
C       10.254.72.2/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b
                       is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b_0
C       172.16.17.0/24 is directly connected, internal1
C       172.16.18.0/24 is directly connected, internal2
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, internal
C       192.168.4.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
B       192.168.5.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
```

```
                        [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                        [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
C       192.168.44.0/24 is directly connected, loop1
B       192.168.55.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
```

2. Check the VPN tunnel state:

```
FGT_C # diagnose vpn tunnel list

list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1b_0 ver=2 serial=1c 172.16.18.3:0->172.16.15.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=9 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=4

 parent=_OCVPN2-1b index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=15 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=641 txp=1025 rxb=16436 txb=16446
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1b proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42650/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=407 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000280 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43186/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d9d esp=aes key=16 6cb33685bbc67d5c85488e0176ecf7b0
       ah=sha1 key=20 7d11b3babe62c840bf444b7b1f637b4324722a71
  enc: spi=7bc94bda esp=aes key=16 b4d8fc731d411eb24448b4077a5872ca
       ah=sha1 key=20 b724064d827304a6d80385ed4914461108b7312f
  dec:pkts/bytes=641/16368, enc:pkts/bytes=2053/123426
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.15.4 npu_lgwy=172.16.18.3 npu_selid=1f dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0a ver=2 serial=18 172.16.17.3:0->172.16.13.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=8 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=20 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1665 txp=2922 rxb=278598 txb=70241
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=7
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0a proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41599/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=890 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d95 esp=aes key=16 a6ffcc197bb1b46ec745d0b595cdd69a
       ah=sha1 key=20 8007c134e41edf282f95daf9c9033d688ef05ccc
```

```
  enc: spi=a1bf21bf esp=aes key=16 ead05be389b0dec222f969e2f9c46b1d
       ah=sha1 key=20 b04105d34d4b0e61b018f2e60591f9b1510783bb
  dec:pkts/bytes=1665/278538, enc:pkts/bytes=4237/265074
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.13.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.17.3 npu_selid=1b dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1a ver=2 serial=1a 172.16.17.3:0->172.16.11.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=8 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=3

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=2913 rxb=16376 txb=69642
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=5
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1a proto=0 sa=1 ref=28 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41653/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=887 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d9b esp=aes key=16 ee03f5b0f617a26c6177e91d60abf90b
       ah=sha1 key=20 f60cbbc4ebbd6d0327d23137da707b7ab2dc49e6
  enc: spi=a543a7d3 esp=aes key=16 1d37efab13a5c0347b582b2198b15cb8
       ah=sha1 key=20 427ee4c82bac6f26f0bcabfe04328c7f57ce682e
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16316, enc:pkts/bytes=4229/264036
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.11.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.17.3 npu_selid=1d dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0b ver=2 serial=19 172.16.18.3:0->172.16.14.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=9 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=2

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=20 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1665 txp=2917 rxb=278576 txb=69755
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=7
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0b proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41599/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=88b esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d96 esp=aes key=16 9d7eb233c1d095b30796c3711d53f2fd
       ah=sha1 key=20 d8feacd42b5e0ba8b5e38647b2f2734c94644bd1
  enc: spi=a1bf21c0 esp=aes key=16 d2c0984bf86dc504c5475230b24034f0
       ah=sha1 key=20 3946e4033e1f42b0d9a843b94448f56fd5b57bee
  dec:pkts/bytes=1665/278516, enc:pkts/bytes=4233/264411
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.14.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.18.3 npu_selid=1c dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1b ver=2 serial=1b 172.16.18.3:0->172.16.12.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=9 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=4

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=1 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=2922 rxb=16430 txb=70173
```

```
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=4
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1b proto=0 sa=1 ref=28 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41656/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=890 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42903/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d9c esp=aes key=16 a655767c1ed6cff4575857eb3981ad81
       ah=sha1 key=20 bfc2bccd7103a201be2641d4c6147d437d2c3f70
  enc: spi=a543a7d4 esp=aes key=16 7221b814e483165b01edfdc8260d261a
       ah=sha1 key=20 d54819643c2f1b20da2aea4282d50a1f1bc1d72a
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16370, enc:pkts/bytes=4238/265164
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.12.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.18.3 npu_selid=1e dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
```

3. Check the SD-WAN state:

```
FGT_C # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(Default_DNS):
Health Check(Default_Office_365):
Health Check(Default_Gmail):
Health Check(Default_AWS):
Health Check(Default_Google Search):
Health Check(Default_FortiGuard):
Health Check(ocvpn):
Seq(1 _OCVPN2-0a): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.364), jitter(0.028) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(2 _OCVPN2-0b): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.287), jitter(0.026) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(3 _OCVPN2-1a): state(dead), packet-loss(100.000%) sla_map=0x0
Seq(4 _OCVPN2-1b): state(dead), packet-loss(100.000%) sla_map=0x0
Seq(4 _OCVPN2-1b_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.289), jitter(0.029)
sla_map=0x0
```

Forward error correction on VPN overlay networks

This topic shows an SD-WAN with forward error correction (FEC) on VPN overlay networks. FEC is a technique used to control and correct errors in data transmission by sending redundant data across the VPN. It uses six parameters in IPsec phase1/phase1-interface settings:

`fec-ingress`	Enable/disable Forward Error Correction for ingress IPsec traffic (default = disable).
`fec-egress`	Enable/disable Forward Error Correction for egress IPsec traffic (default = disable).
`fec-base`	The number of base Forward Error Correction packets (1 - 100, default = 20).
`fec-redundant`	The number of redundant Forward Error Correction packets (1 - 100, default = 10).
`fec-send-timeout`	The time before sending Forward Error Correction packets, in milliseconds (1 - 1000, default = 8).
`fec-receive-timeout`	The time before dropping Forward Error Correction packets, in milliseconds (1 - 1000, default = 5000).

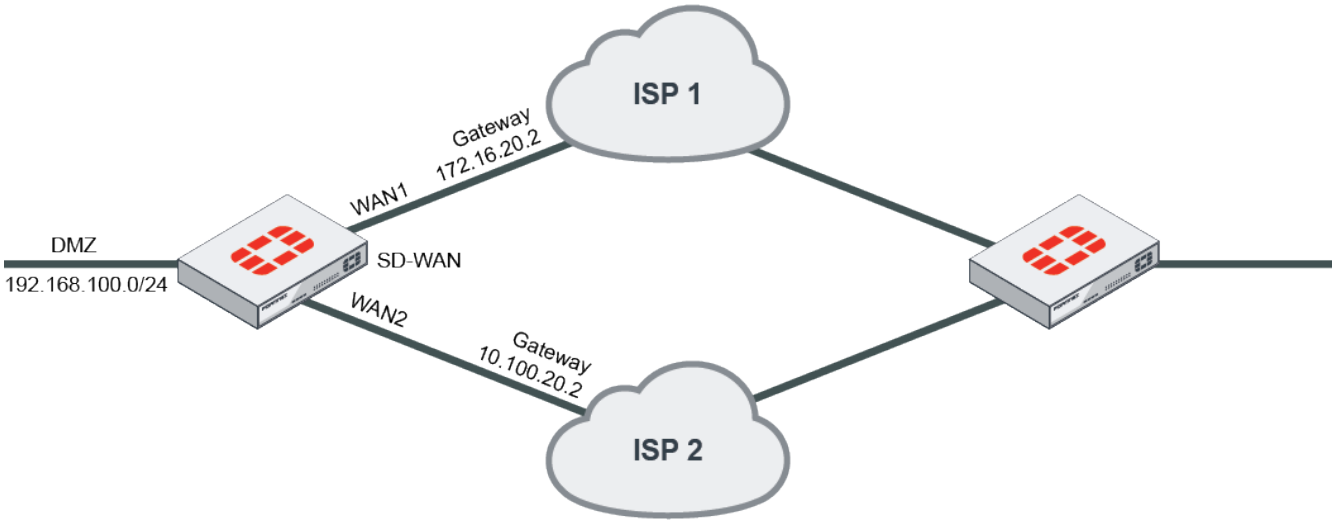
For every `fec-base` number of sent packets, the tunnel will send `fec-redundant` number of redundant packets.

If your FortiGate is NPU capable, disable `npu-offload` in your phase1 configurations:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <name>
        set npu-offload disable
    next
end
```

Example

For example, a customer has two ISP connections, wan1 and wan2. Using these two connections, create two IPsec VPN interfaces as SD-WAN members. Configure FEC on each VPN interface to lower packet loss ratio by re-transmitting the packets using its backend algorithm.



To configure IPsec VPN:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.201.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
        set fec-egress enable
        set fec-send-timeout 8
        set fec-base 20
        set fec-redundant 10
        set fec-ingress enable
        set fec-receive-timeout 5000
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
```

```
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
        set fec-egress enable
        set fec-send-timeout 8
        set fec-base 20
        set fec-redundant 10
        set fec-ingress enable
        set fec-receive-timeout 5000
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set phase1name "vd1-p1"
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set phase1name "vd1-p2"
    next
end
```

To configure the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set ip 172.16.211.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 172.16.211.2 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set ip 172.16.212.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 172.16.212.2 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

To configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf ""virtual-wan-link""
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure SD-WAN:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
```

```
        edit 1
            set interface "vd1-p1"
            set gateway 172.16.211.2
        next
        edit 1
            set interface "vd2-p2"
            set gateway 172.16.212.2
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

To use the diagnose command to check VPN FEC status:

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=vd1 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/3600 options[0e10]=create_dev
frag-rfc fec-egress fec-ingress  accept_traffic=1

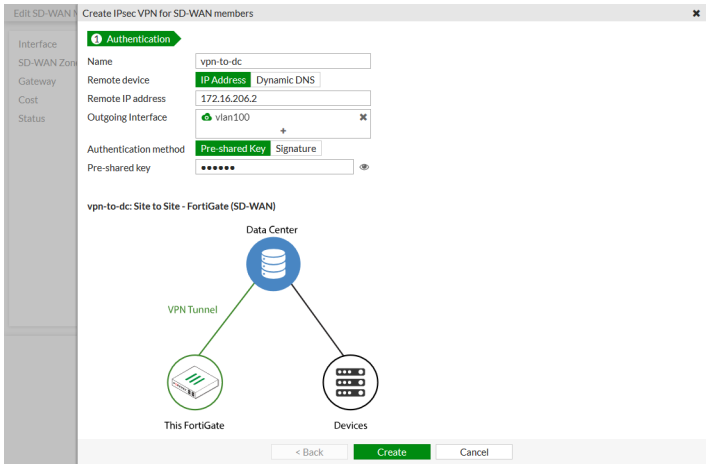
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
fec-egress: base=20 redundant=10 remote_port=50000     <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
fec-ingress: base=20 redundant=10                      <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
proxyid=demo proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:173.1.1.0/255.255.255.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1390 expire=42897/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=181f4f81 esp=aes key=16 6e8fedf2a77691ffdbf3270484cb2555
       ah=sha1 key=20 f92bcf841239d15d30b36b695f78eaef3fad05c4
  enc: spi=0ce10190 esp=aes key=16 2d684fb19cbae533249c8b5683937329
       ah=sha1 key=20 ba7333f89cd34cf75966bd9ffa72030115919213
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

Dual VPN tunnel wizard

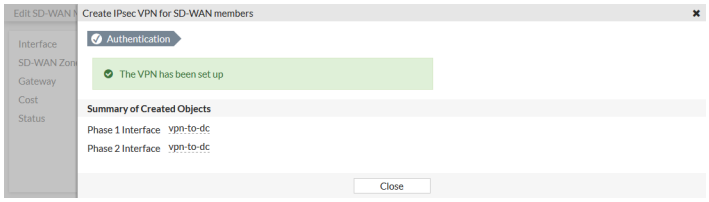
This wizard is used to automatically set up multiple VPN tunnels to the same destination over multiple outgoing interfaces. This includes automatically configuring IPsec, routing, and firewall settings, avoiding cumbersome and error-prone configuration steps.

To create a new SD-WAN VPN interface using the tunnel wizard:

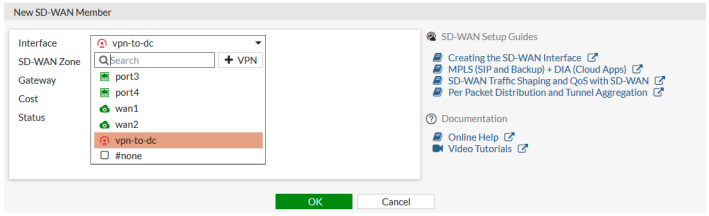
1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* and click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
2. In the *Interface* drop-down, click *+VPN*. The *Create IPsec VPN for SD-WAN members* pane opens.



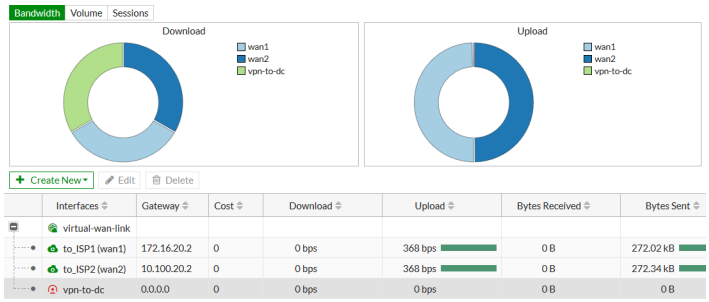
3. Enter the required information, then click *Create*.



4. Click *Close* to return to the SD-WAN page.
   The newly created VPN interface will be highlighted in the *Interface* drop-down list.



5. Select the VPN interface to add it as an SD-WAN member, then click *OK*.



Duplicate packets based on SD-WAN rules

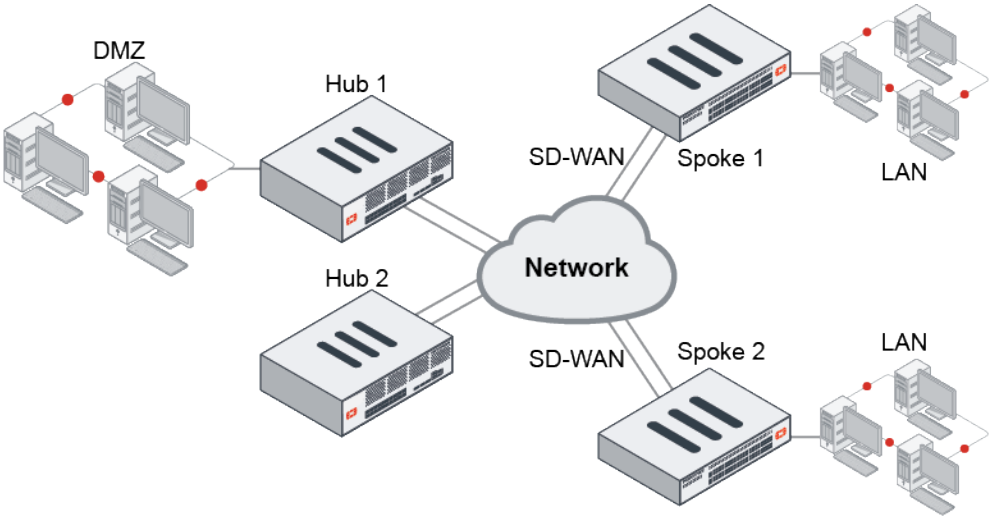
SD-WAN duplication rules can specify SD-WAN service rules to trigger packet duplication. This allows the duplication to occur based on an SD-WAN rule instead of the source, destination, and service parameters in the duplication rule.

1. Packets can be forced to duplicate to all members of the same SD-WAN zone. See Duplicate packets on other zone members on page 796 for details.

   For example, in Spoke 1 set `packet-duplication` to `force` so that when a client sends a packet to the server, it is duplicated to all members of the same zone as long as its health check is alive. If a members health check is dead, then the member is removed from the SD-WAN duplication zone.
2. Packets can be duplicated to other members of the SD-WAN zone only when the condition of the link is not good enough.

   Set `packet-duplication` to `on-demand` so that, when the SLA of the member does not match (sla_map=0) the packet is duplicated, but when the SLA does match (sla_map!=0) the packet is not duplicated.
3. Packets can be duplicated to all members of the same SD-WAN zone when the traffic matches one or more regular SD-WAN service rules.

The following example shows the third type of packet duplication.



In this example, SD-WAN is configured with three members: vpn1, vpn2, and vpn3. Service rule 1 controls all traffic from 10.100.20.0/24 to 172.16.100.0/24 using member 1.

To send a duplicate of the traffic that matches service rule 1 using member 2, members 1 and 2 are added to the same SD-WAN zone, and a duplicate rule is configured with service-id set to 1.

To send a duplicate of the traffic that matches service rule 1 using member 2:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config zone
        edit "virtual-wan-link"
        next
        edit "zone2"
        next
    end
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "vpn1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "vpn2"
        next
```

```
        edit 3
            set interface "vpn3"
            set zone "zone2"
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set dst "172.16.100.0"
            set src "10.100.20.0"
            set priority-members 1
        next
    end
    config duplication
        edit 1
            set service-id 1
            set packet-duplication force
        next
    end
end
```

Duplicate packets on other zone members

When duplication rules are used, packets are duplicated on other good links within the SD-WAN zone and de-duplicated on the destination FortiGate. Use `force` mode to force duplication on other links within the SD-WAN zone, or use `on-demand` mode to trigger duplication only when SLA fails on the selected member.

The duplication rule is configured in the CLI by using the `config duplication` command. The following options can be configured:

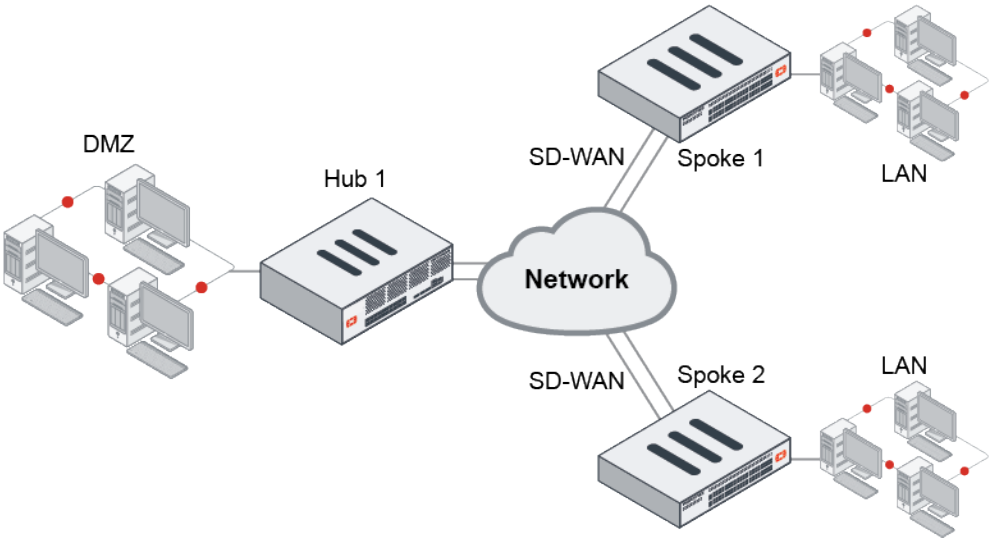
Parameter	Description
srcaddr	Source address or address group names.
dstaddr	Destination address or address group names.
srcaddr6	Source IPv6 address or IPv6 address group names.
dstaddr6	Destination IPv6 address or IPv6 address group names.
srcintf	Incoming (ingress) interfaces or zones.
dstintf	Outgoing (egress) interfaces or zones.
service	Service and service group names.
packet-duplication	Configure packet duplication method. • disable: Disable packet duplication (default). • force: Duplicate packets across all interface members of the SD-WAN zone. • on-demand: Duplicate packets across all interface members of the SD-WAN zone based on the link quality.
packet-de-duplication	Enable/disable discarding of packets that have been duplicated (default = disable).

The `duplication-max-num <integer>` option under `config system sdwan` is the maximum number of interface members that a packet is duplicated on in the SD-WAN zone (2 - 4, default = 2). If this value is set to 3, the

original packet plus two more copies are created. If there are three member interfaces in the SD-WAN zone and the `duplication-max-num` is set to 2, the packet duplication follows the configuration order, so the packets are duplicated on the second member.

Example

The packet duplication feature works best in a spoke-spoke or hub-and-spoke topology. In this example, a hub-and-spoke ADVPN topology is used. Before shortcuts are established, Hub 1 forwards the duplicate packets from Spoke 1 to Spoke 2. Once shortcuts are established, Hub 1 is transparent, and duplicate packets are exchanged directly between the spokes.



To configure packet duplication between Spoke 1 and Spoke 2:

1. Configure Spoke 1:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config zone
        edit "virtual-wan-link"
        next
        edit "sdwanzone_v4"
        next
    end
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "t1"
            set zone "sdwanzone_v4"
        next
        edit 4
            set interface "t21"
            set zone "sdwanzone_v4"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "t2"
            set zone "sdwanzone_v4"
```

```
            next
        end
        config health-check
            edit "h1"
                set server "10.34.1.1"
                set interval 1000
                set failtime 10
                set members 1 2
                config sla
                    edit 1
                        set packetloss-threshold 40
                    next
                end
            next
        end
        config duplication
            edit 1
                set srcaddr "all"
                set dstaddr "all"
                set srcintf "port1"
                set dstintf "sdwanzone_v4"
                set service "ALL"
                set packet-duplication force
                set packet-de-duplication enable
            next
        end
    end
```

2. Configure Spoke 2 with similar settings.

Advanced configuration

The following topics provide instructions on SD-WAN advanced configuration:

- SD-WAN with FGCP HA on page 798
- Configuring SD-WAN in an HA cluster using internal hardware switches on page 805
- SD-WAN configuration portability on page 808

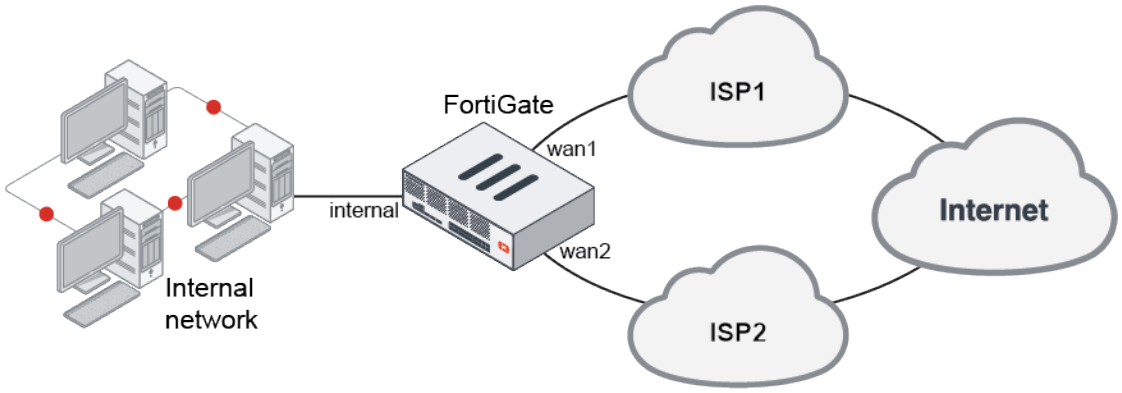
See also Per packet distribution and tunnel aggregation on page 1646.

SD-WAN with FGCP HA

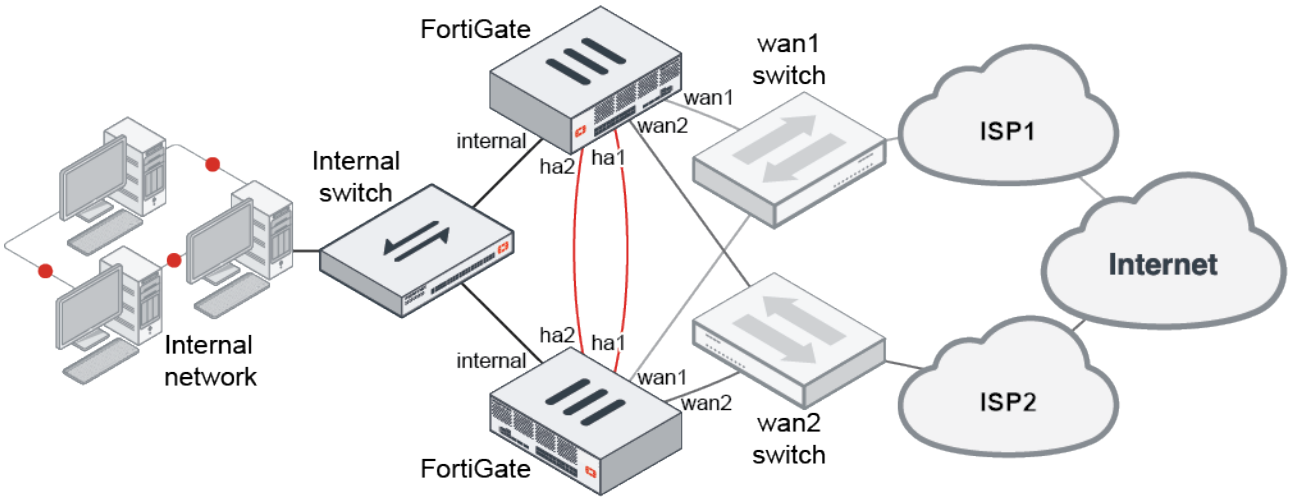
This example shows how to convert a standalone FortiGate SD-WAN solution to a FGCP HA cluster with full-mesh WAN set up. This configuration allows you to load balance your internet traffic between multiple ISP links. It also provides redundancy for your internet connection if your primary ISP in unavailable, or if one of the FortiGates in the HA cluster fails.

This example assumes that a standalone FortiGate has already been configured for SD-WAN by following the SD-WAN quick start on page 665.

Standalone FortiGate:



FGCP HA cluster:



The following devices are required to convert the topology to HA:

- A second FortiGate that is the same model running the same firmware version.
- Two switches for connecting each FortiGate's WAN interface to the corresponding ISP modem.

Before you begin:

- Ensure that the licenses and subscriptions on both HA members match.
- Ensure that there are one or more ports reserved for HA heartbeat.
- Ensure you have physical access to both HA members.



Enabling HA and re-cabling the WAN interfaces will cause network interruptions. This procedure should be performed during a maintenance window.

Configuring the standalone FortiGate for HA

After running the following commands, the FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. You might temporarily lose connectivity with the FortiGate as FGCP negotiations take place and the MAC addresses of the FortiGate interfaces are changed to HA virtual MAC addresses.

This configurations sets the HA mode to active-passive.

The ha1 and ha2 interfaces are configured as the heartbeat interfaces, with priorities set to 200 and 100 respectively. Setting different priorities for the heartbeat interfaces is a best practice, but is not required.

If you have more than one cluster on the same network, each cluster should have a different group ID. Changing the group ID changes the cluster interface's virtual MAC addresses. If the group IP causes a MAC address conflict on your network, select a different group ID.

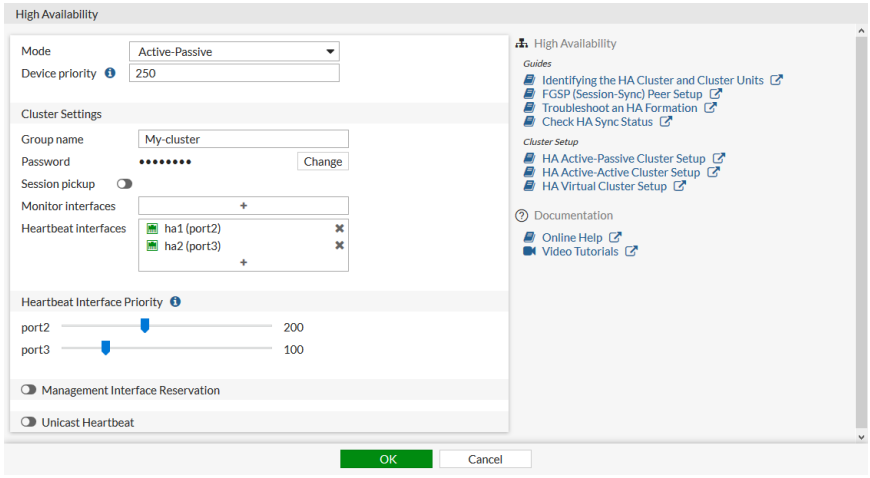
Enabling override and increasing the device priority means that this FortiGate always becomes the primary unit.

To configure the standalone FortiGate for HA in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings* and change the *Host name* so that the FortiGate can be easily identified as the primary unit.
2. Go to *System* > *HA* and configure the following options:

Mode	Active-Passive
Device priority	250
Group name	My-cluster
Password	<password>
Heartbeat interfaces	ha1 and ha2
Heartbeat Interface Priority	**port2** (ha1): 200 **port3** (ha2): 100

Override and the group ID can only be configured from the CLI.



3. Click *OK*.
   Connectivity with the FortiGate will temporarily be lost.

To configure the standalone FortiGate for HA in the CLI:

1. Change the host name so that the FortiGate can be easily identified:

```
config system global
    set hostname primary_FG
end
```

2. Configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-p
    set group-id 100
    set group-name My-cluster
    set password <password>
    set priority 250
    set override enable
    set hbdev ha1 200 ha2 100
end
```



If HA mode does not start after running the above steps, ensure that none of the FortiGate's interfaces use DHCP or PPPoE addressing.

Configuring the secondary FortiGate for HA

The secondary FortiGate must be the same model and running the same firmware version as the primary FortiGate. The HA settings are the same as the for the primary unit, except the secondary device has a lower priority and override is not enabled.



It is best practice to reset the FortiGate to factory default settings prior to configuring HA. This reduces the chance of synchronization problems.

```
# execute factoryreset
This operation will reset the system to factory default!
Do you want to continue? (y/n) y
```

This is unnecessary if the device is new from the factory.

To configure the secondary FortiGate for HA in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings* and change the *Host name* so that the FortiGate can be easily identified as the backup unit.
2. Go to *System* > *HA* and configure the options the same as for the primary FortiGate, except with a lower priority:

Mode	Active-Passive
Device priority	128
Group name	My-cluster

Password	<password>
Heartbeat interfaces	ha1 and ha2
Heartbeat Interface Priority	**port2** (ha1): 200 **port3** (ha2): 100

3. Click *OK*.

To configure the secondary FortiGate for HA in the CLI:

1. Change the host name so that the secondary FortiGate can be easily identified:

```
config system global
    set hostname secondary_FG
end
```

2. Configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-p
    set group-id 100
    set group-name My-cluster
    set password <password>
    set priority 128
    set hbdev ha1 200 ha2 100
end
```

Connecting the heartbeat interfaces between the FortiGates

To connect and check the heartbeat interfaces:

1. Connect the heartbeat interfaces ha1 and ha2 between the primary and secondary FortiGate.
   a. An HA primary device is selected. Because the primary FortiGate has a higher priority and override enabled, it assumes the role of HA primary.
   b. The secondary FortiGate synchronizes its configuration from the primary device.
2. Verify that the checksums match between the primary and secondary FortiGates:

```
# diagnose sys ha checksum cluster

================== FG5H0XXXXXXXXX0 ==================

is_manage_primary()=1, is_root_primary()=1
debugzone
global: 2b e9 81 38 c2 9d 4f db b7 0e 1f 49 42 c6 1e fb
root: af a6 48 c5 c2 9a 8b 81 a5 53 fb 27 e9 ae 01 6a
all: 89 1f 63 77 48 8a 30 ee 57 06 ca eb 71 e6 8e ad

checksum
global: 2b e9 81 38 c2 9d 4f db b7 0e 1f 49 42 c6 1e fb
root: af a6 48 c5 c2 9a 8b 81 a5 53 fb 27 e9 ae 01 6a
all: 89 1f 63 77 48 8a 30 ee 57 06 ca eb 71 e6 8e ad

================== FG5H0XXXXXXXXX1 ==================
```

```
is_manage_primary()=0, is_root_primary()=0
debugzone
global: 2b e9 81 38 c2 9d 4f db b7 0e 1f 49 42 c6 1e fb
root: af a6 48 c5 c2 9a 8b 81 a5 53 fb 27 e9 ae 01 6a
all: 89 1f 63 77 48 8a 30 ee 57 06 ca eb 71 e6 8e ad

checksum
global: 2b e9 81 38 c2 9d 4f db b7 0e 1f 49 42 c6 1e fb
root: af a6 48 c5 c2 9a 8b 81 a5 53 fb 27 e9 ae 01 6a
all: 89 1f 63 77 48 8a 30 ee 57 06 ca eb 71 e6 8e ad
```

If all of the cluster members have identical checksums, then their configurations are synchronized. If the checksums are not the same, wait for a few minutes, then repeat the command. Some parts of the configuration might take a significant amount of time to synchronize (tens of minutes).

Connecting other traffic interfaces

After the device configurations are synchronized, you can connect the rest of the traffic interfaces. Making these connections will disrupt traffic as cables are disconnected and reconnected.

Switches must be used between the cluster and the ISPs, and between the cluster and the internal network, as shown in the topology diagram.

Checking cluster operations

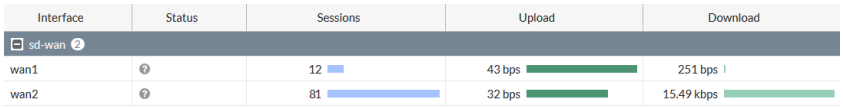
The *HA Status* dashboard widget shows the synchronization status. Hover over the host names of each FortiGate in the widget to verify that they are synchronized and have the same checksum.

To view more information about the cluster status, including the number of sessions passing through the cluster members, go to *System* > *HA*.

See Check HA sync status on page 948 for more information.

Results

1. Browse the internet on a computer in the internal network.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* to see the bandwidth, volume, and sessions for traffic on the SD-WAN interfaces. See Results on page 669 for details.
3. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*, and expand the *SD-WAN* widget to see information about each interface, such as the number of sessions and the bit rate.



Testing HA failover

All traffic should currently be flowing through the primary FortiGate. If it becomes unavailable, traffic fails over to the secondary FortiGate. When the primary FortiGate rejoins the cluster, the secondary FortiGate continues to operate as the primary FortiGate.

To test this, ping a reliable IP address from a computer in the internal network, and then power off the primary FortiGate.

There will be a momentary pause in the ping results until traffic diverts to the backup FortiGate, allowing the ping traffic to continue:

```
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=69 ttl=52 time=8.719 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=70 ttl=52 time=8.822 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=74 ttl=52 time=8.901 ms\
Request timeout for icmp_seq 75\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=76 ttl=52 time=8.860 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=77 ttl=52 time=9.174 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=83 ttl=52 time=8.639 ms}
```



If you are using port monitoring, you can also unplug the primary FortiGate's internet facing interface to test failover.

After the secondary FortiGate becomes the primary, you can log into the cluster using the same IP address as before the fail over. If the primary FortiGate is powered off, you will be logged into the backup FortiGate. Check the host name to verify what device you have logged into. The FortiGate continues to operate in HA mode, and if you restart the primary FortiGate, it will rejoin the cluster and act as the backup FortiGate. Traffic is not disrupted when the restarted FortiGate rejoins the cluster.

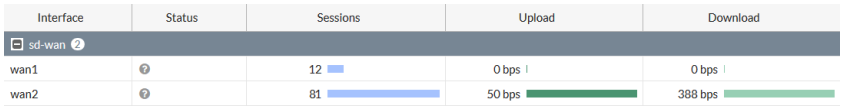
You can also use the CLI to force an HA failover. See Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations on page 973 for information.

Testing ISP failover

To test a failover of the redundant internet configuration, you need to simulate a failed internet connection to one of the ports. You can do this by disconnecting power from the wan1 switch, or by disconnecting the wan1 interfaces of both FortiGates from ISP1.

After disconnecting, verify that users still have internet access

- Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*, and expand the *SD-WAN* widget. The *Upload* and *Download* columns for wan1 show that traffic is not going through that interface.



- Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*. The *Bandwidth*, *Volume*, and *Sessions* tabs show that traffic is entirely diverted to wan2.



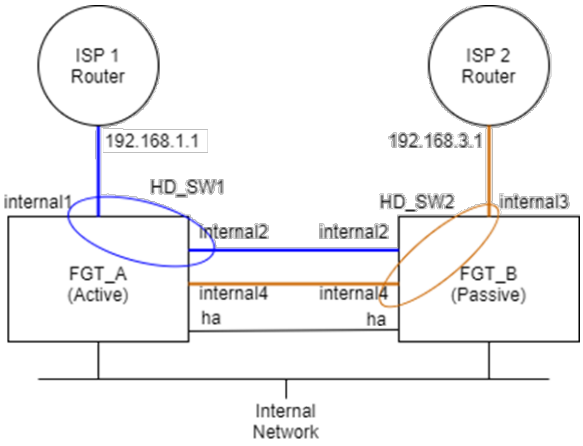
Users on the network should not notice the wan1 failure. If you are using the wan1 gateway IP address to connect to the administrator dashboard, it will appear as though you are still connecting through wan1.

After verifying a successful failover, reestablish the connection to ISP1.

Configuring SD-WAN in an HA cluster using internal hardware switches

In this SD-WAN configuration, two FortiGates in an active-passive (A-P) HA pair are used to provide hardware redundancy. Instead of using external switches to provide a mesh network connection to the ISP routers, the FortiGates use their built-in hardware switches to connect to the ISP routers.

Only FortiGate models that have hardware switches can be used for this solution. Ports in a software switch are not in a forwarding state when a FortiGate is acting as a secondary device in a A-P cluster.



In this topology:

- Two hardware switches are created, HD_SW1 and HD_SW2.
- HD_SW1 is used to connect to ISP 1 Router and includes the internal1 and internal2 ports.
- HD_SW2 is used to connect to ISP 2 Router and includes the internal3 and internal4 ports.
- Another interface on each device is used as the HA heartbeat interface, connecting the two FortiGates in HA.

The FortiGates create two hardware switches to connect to ISP 1 and ISP2. When FGT_A is the primary device, it reaches ISP 1 on internal1 in HD_SW1 and ISP 2 on internal4 in HD_SW2. When FGT_B is the primary device, it reaches ISP 1 on internal2 in HD_SW1 and ISP 2 on internal3 on HD_SW2.

HA failover

This is not a standard HA configuration with external switches. In the case of a device failure, one of the ISPs will no longer be available because the switch that is connected to it will be down.

For example, If FGT_A loses power, HA failover will occur and FGT_B will become the primary unit. Its connection to internal2 on HD_SW1 will also be down, so it will be unable to connect to ISP 1. Its SD-WAN SLAs will be broken, and traffic will only be routed through ISP 2.

A link on a hardware switch cannot be monitored in HA monitor, so it is impossible to perform link failure when a port in either of the hardware switches fails. Performing a link failure is unnecessary in this configuration though, because any link failure on the hardware switch will be experienced by both cluster members. SD-WAN SLA health checks should be used to monitor the health of each ISP.

Failure on a hardware switch or ISP router

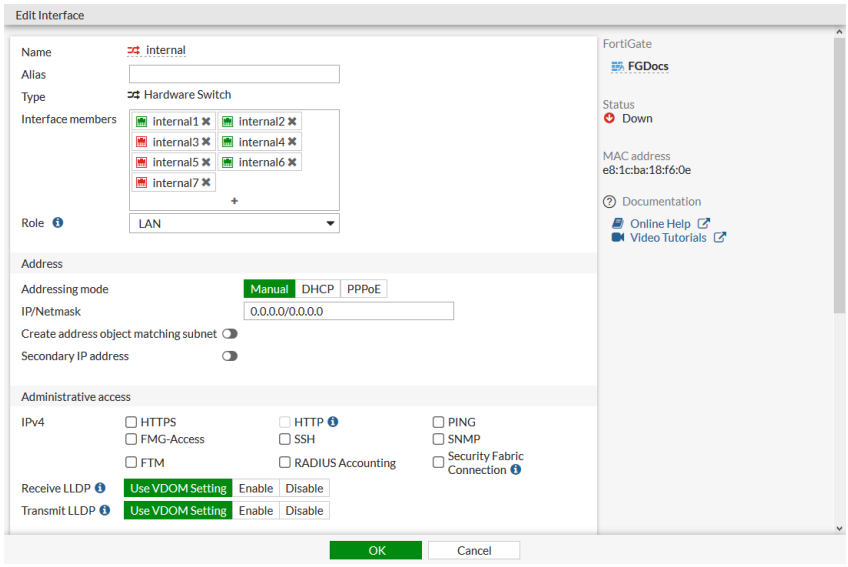
If a hardware switch or switch interface is down, or the ISP router is down, the SD-WAN can detect the broken SLA and continue routing to the other ISP.

For example, if FGT_A is the primary unit, and ISP 2 Router becomes unreachable, the SLA health checks on SD-WAN will detect the broken SLA and cause traffic to stop routing to ISP 2.

Configuration

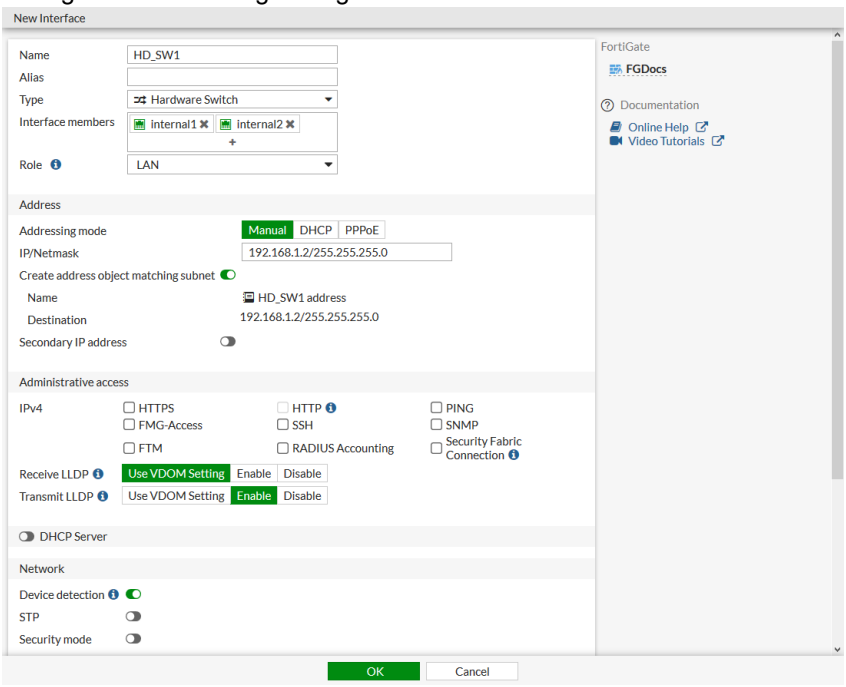
To configure the HA A-P cluster with internal hardware switches:

1. Configure two FortiGates with internal switches in an A-P HA cluster (follow the steps in HA active-passive cluster setup on page 942), starting by connecting the heartbeat interface.
2. When the HA cluster is up, connect to the primary FortiGate's GUI.
3. Remove the existing interface members from the default hardware switch:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. In the *LAN* section, double-click the *internal* interface to edit it.
   c. In *Interface Members*, remove all of the interfaces.



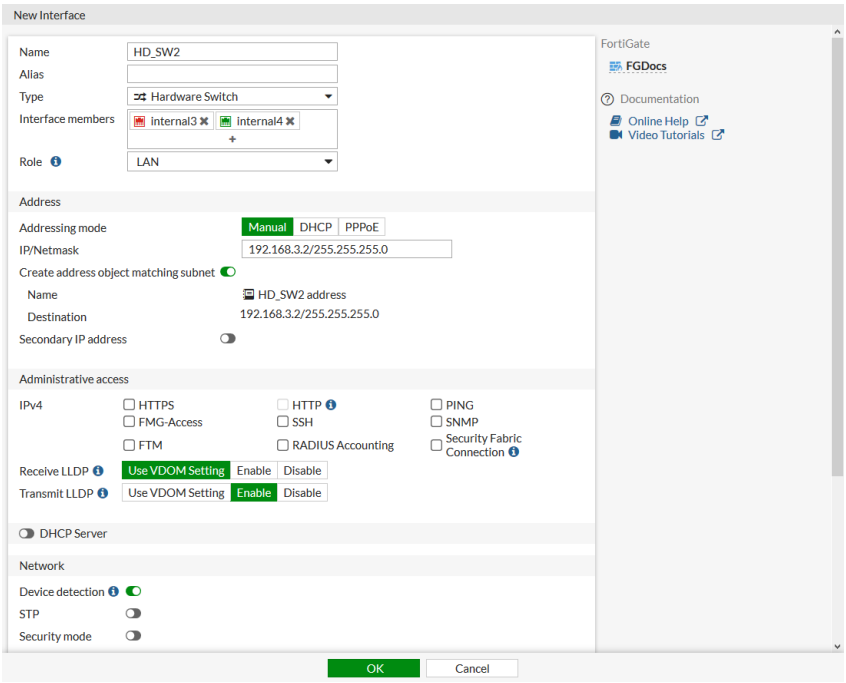
   d. Click *OK*.
4. Configure the hardware switch interfaces for the two ISPs:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and click *Create New* > *Interface*.
   b. Enter a name (*HD_SW1*).
   c. Set *Type* to *Hardware Switch*.
   d. In *Interface Members*, add two interfaces (*internal1* and *internal2*).
   e. Set *IP/Netmask* to 192.168.1.2/24.

f. Configure the remaining settings as needed.



g. Click *OK*.

h. Repeat these steps to create a second hardware switch interface (*HD_SW2*) with two interface members (*internal3* and *internal4*) and *IP/Netmask* set to *192.168.3.2/24*.



To connect the devices as shown in the topology:

1. Connect the incoming interface to the internal switch on both FortiGates.
2. On FGT_A, connect internal1 of HD_SW1 to ISP 1 Router.

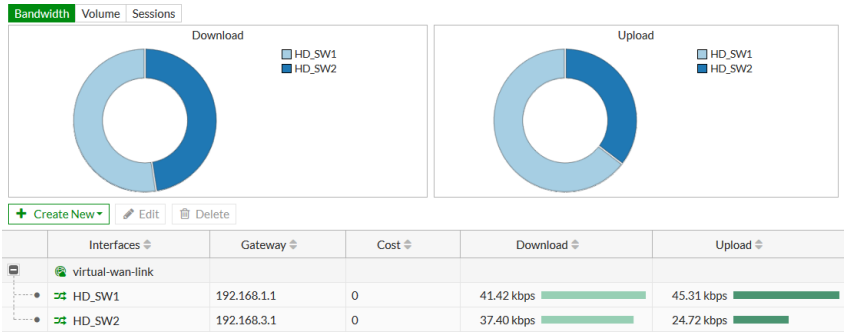
3. On FGT_B, connect internal3 of HD_SW2 to ISP 2 Router.
4. For HD_SW1, connect FGT_A internal2 directly to FGT_B internal2.
5. For HD_SW2, connect FGT_A internal4 directly to FGT_B internal4.

To configure SD-WAN:



The primary FortiGate makes all the SD-WAN decisions.

1. On the primary FortiGate, go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* and click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
2. In the *Interface* dropdown, select *HD_SW1*.
3. Leave *SD-WAN Zone* set to *virtual-wan-link*.
4. Enter the *Gateway* address *192.168.1.1*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Repeat these steps to add the second interface (*HD_SW2*) with the gateway *192.168.3.1*.
7. Click *Apply*.



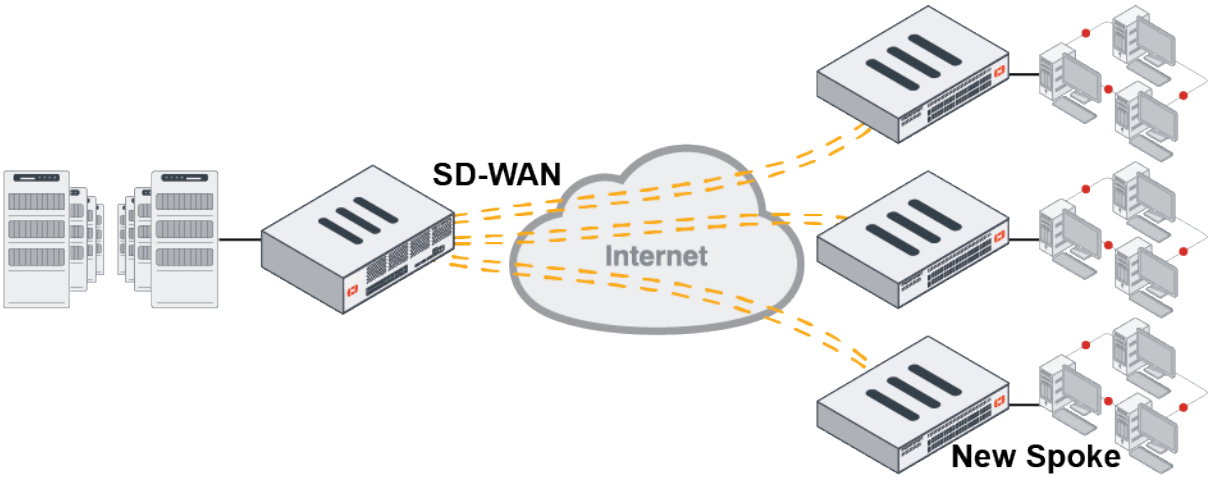
8. Create a health check:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Name* to *GW_HC*.
   c. Set *Protocol* to *Ping* and *Servers* to *8.8.8.8*.
   d. Set *Participants* to *All SD-WAN Members*.
   e. Enable *SLA Target* and leave the default values.
   f. Click *OK*.
9. Create SD-WAN rules as needed. The SLA health check can be used to determine when the ISP connections are in or out of SLA, and to failover accordingly.

SD-WAN configuration portability

When configuring SD-WAN, adding interfaces to members is optional.

This allows the SD-WAN to be configured without associating any interfaces to SD-WAN members. It also allows a configuration to be copied directly from one device to another, without requiring the devices to have interfaces with the same names.

After the configuration is created, add interfaces to the members make it functional.

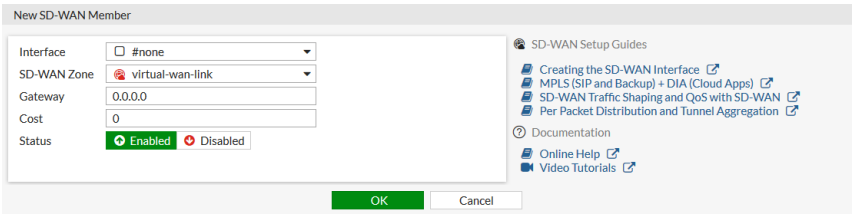


Example 1

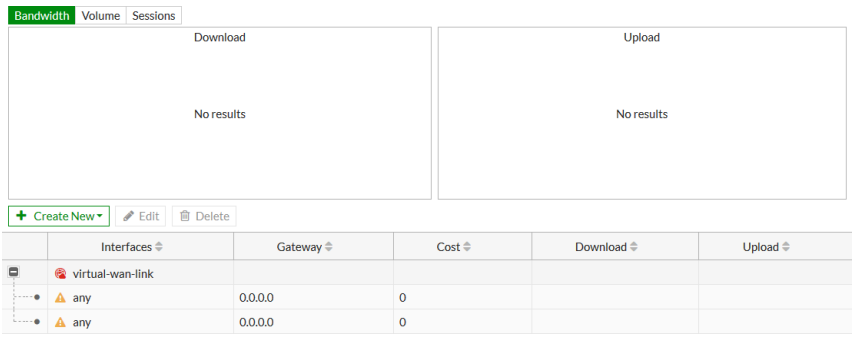
In this example, we create a template with two SD-WAN members configured without assigned interfaces that are used in a performance SLA and SD-WAN rule. The template can be used to configure new devices, as in Example 2 on page 812. Interfaces are then assigned to the members, and the configuration becomes active.

To create the SD-WAN members in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
3. Leave all the settings set to their default values and click *OK*.



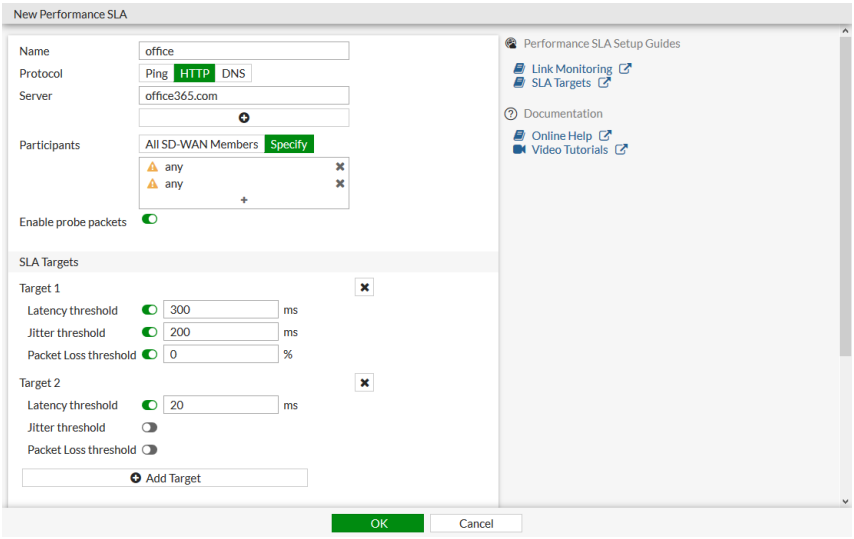
4. Repeat the above steps to create a second member.
   The empty members are listed on the *SD-WAN Zones* page.



   The members are disabled until interfaces are configured, but can still be used in performance SLAs and SD-WAN rules.

To create a performance SLA in the GUI:

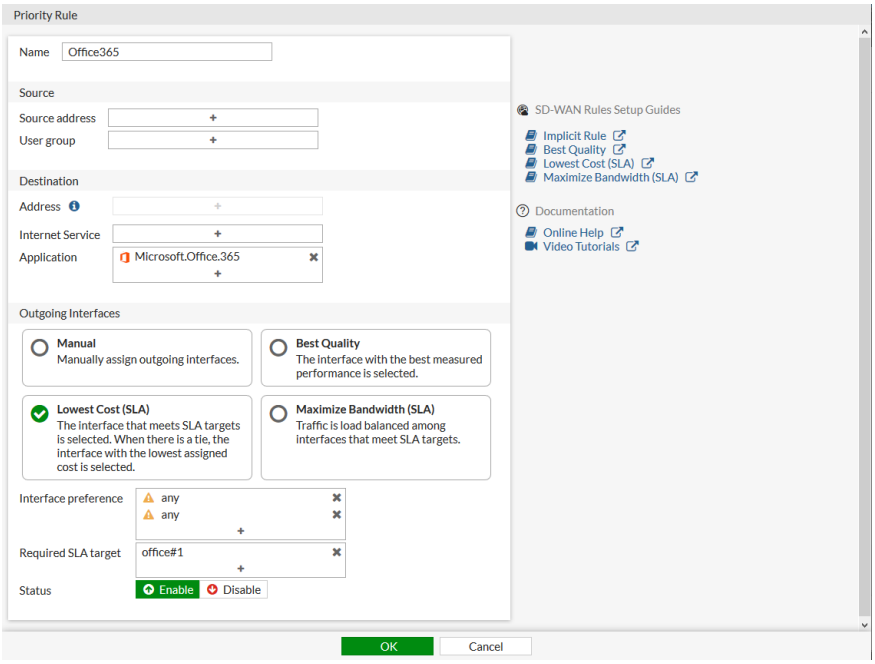
1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the performance SLA, specifying the empty members as participants.



4. Click *OK*.

To create an SD-WAN rule in the GUI:

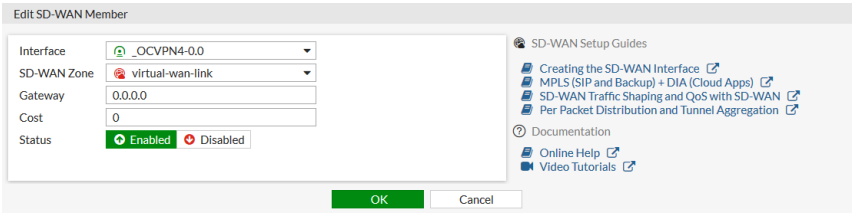
1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the rule, adding both members to the *Interface preference* field:



4. Click *OK*.

To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Edit the first member
3. Set Interface to an actual interface.



4. Click *OK*.
5. Repeat the above steps to assign an interface to the second member.

To configure the SD-WAN in the CLI:

1. Create SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
        next
        edit 2
        next
    end
end
```

2. Create a health check (performance SLA):

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "office"
            set server "office365.com"
            set protocol http
            set sla-fail-log-period 300
            set sla-pass-log-period 300
            set members 2 1
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 300
                    set jitter-threshold 200
                next
                edit 2
                    set link-cost-factor latency
                    set latency-threshold 20
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

3. Create a service (rule):

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 3
            set name "Office365"
            set mode sla
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 33182
            config sla
                edit "office"
                    set id 2
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

The SD-WAN configuration can now be used in as a template for new spokes, as in Example 2 on page 812.

To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members in the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.0"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.1"
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

Example 2

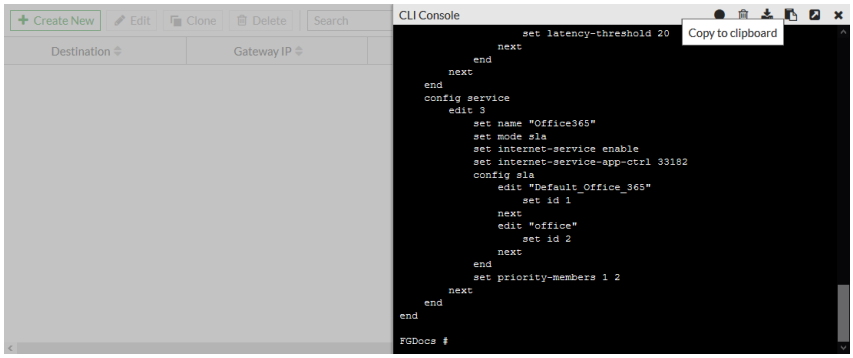
In this example, the configuration from Example 1 is copied onto a new FortiGate.

Using the CLI console and the GUI

To copy the SD-WAN configuration from the original FortiGate:

1. Optionally, change the console screen paging setting. See Screen paging on page 33 for details.
2. Open the CLI console.
3. If necessary, click *Clear console* to empty the console.
4. Enter the following command:
   ```
   show system sdwan
   ```

5. Either click *Download* and open the file in a text editor, or click *Copy to clipboard* and paste the content into a text editor.



6. Edit the CLI configuration as necessary. For example, the first line that shows the `show` command should be deleted, and the default health checks can be removed.
7. If required, save the CLI configuration as a text file.

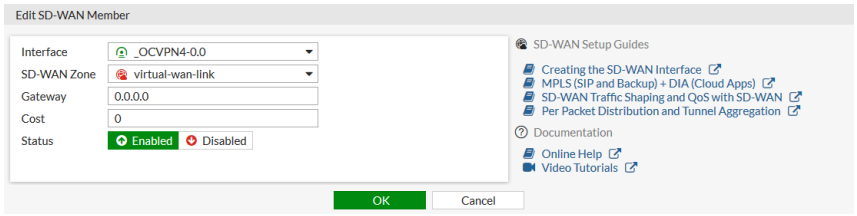
To paste the SD-WAN configuration onto a new FortiGate:

1. Copy the SD-WAN configuration from the text editor.
2. On the new FortiGate, open the CLI console.
3. Press *Ctrl* + *v* to paste the CLI commands.
4. In necessary, press *Enter* to apply the last `end` command.
   The SD-WAN configuration is copied to the new FortiGate.

   If the interfaces do not exist, the SD-WAN members are created without interfaces, and are disabled until interfaces are configured.

To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Edit the first member
3. Set Interface to an actual interface.



4. Click *OK*.
5. Repeat the above steps to assign an interface to the second member.

Using a terminal emulator

The following instructions use PuTTy. The steps may vary in other terminal emulators.

To copy the SD-WAN configuration from the original FortiGate:

1. Connect to the FortiGate. See Connecting to the CLI on page 26 for details.
2. Enter the following command:
   `show system sdwan`
3. Select the output, press *Ctrl* + *c* to copy it, and then paste it into a text editor.
4. Edit the CLI configuration as necessary. For example, the default health checks can be removed.
5. If required, save the CLI configuration as a text file.

To paste the SD-WAN configuration onto a new FortiGate:

1. Copy the SD-WAN configuration from the text editor.
2. Connect to the new FortiGate. See Connecting to the CLI on page 26 for details.
3. Right-click to paste the SD-WAN configuration.
4. In necessary, press *Enter* to apply the last `end` command.
   The SD-WAN configuration is copied to the new FortiGate.
   If the interfaces do not exist, the SD-WAN members are created without interfaces, and are disabled until interfaces are configured.

To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members::

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.0"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.1"
        next
    end
end
```



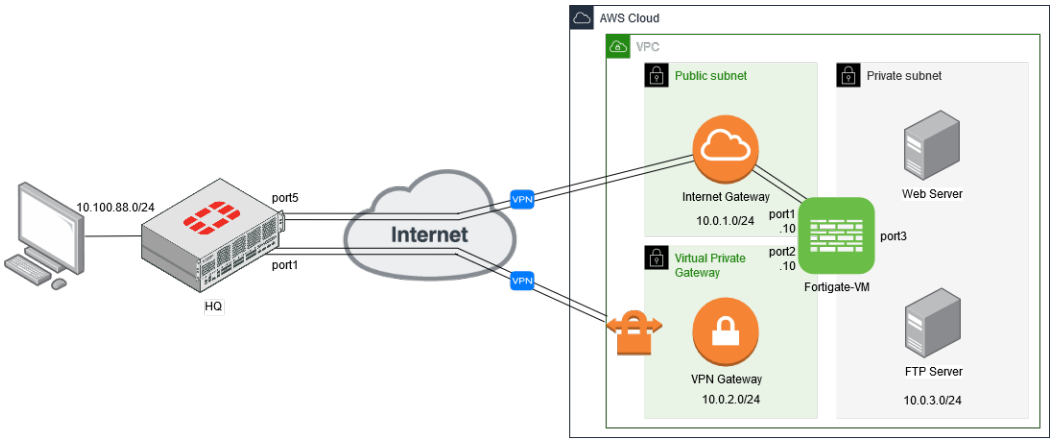
If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

SD-WAN cloud on-ramp

In this example, you configure a connection to a new cloud deployment that has some remote servers. SD-WAN is used to steer traffic through the required overlay tunnel.

The on-premise FortiGate has two internet connections, each with a single VPN connection. The two VPN gateways are configured on the cloud for redundancy, one terminating at the FortiGate-VM, and the other at the native AWS VPN Gateway.

This example uses AWS as the Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS) provider, but the same configuration can also apply to other services. A full mesh VPN setup is not shown, but can be added later if required.



To connect to the servers that are behind the cloud FortiGate-VM, virtual IP addresses (VIPs) are configured on port2 to map to the servers:

- VPN traffic terminating on port1 is routed to the VIP on port2 to access the web servers.
- VPN traffic terminating on the VPN gateway accesses the VIPs on port2 directly.

There are four major steps to configure this setup:

1. Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and cloud FortiGate-VM on page 815
2. Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and AWS native VPN gateway on page 820
3. Configuring the VIP to access the remote servers on page 823
4. Configuring the SD-WAN to steer traffic between the overlays on page 826

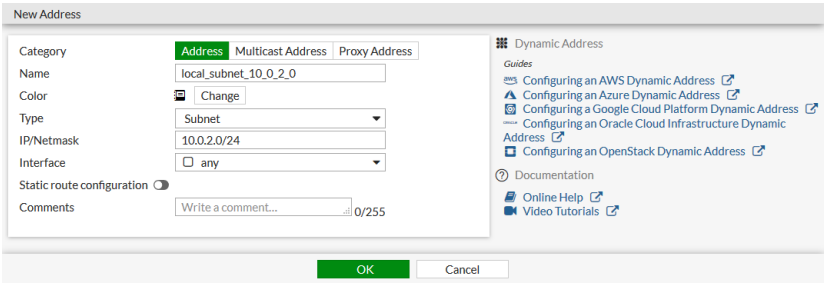
After the configuration is complete, verify the traffic to ensure that the configuration is working as expected, see Verifying the traffic on page 831.

Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and cloud FortiGate-VM

Configure the cloud FortiGate-VM

To create an address for the VPN gateway:

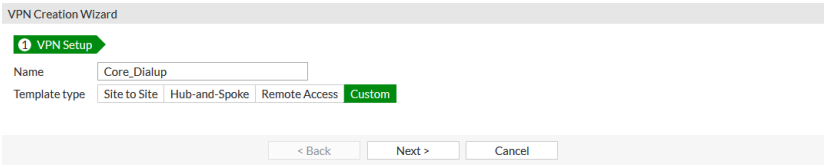
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *local_subnet_10_0_2_0*.
3. Set *IP/Netmask* to *10.0.2.0/24*.



4. Click *OK*.

To configure a custom IPsec VPN:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Set *Name* to *Core_Dialup*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*.

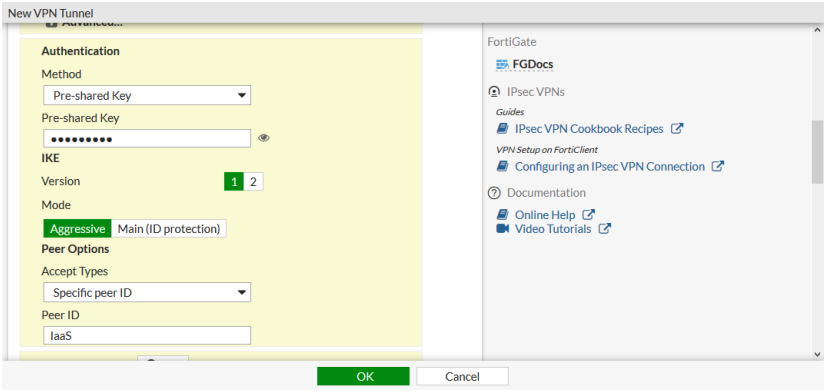


4. Click *Next*.
5. Configure *Network* settings:

Remote Gateway	Dialup User
Interface	port1
NAT Traversal	Enable

6. Configure *Authentication* settings:

Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the pre-shared key.
Version	1
Mode	Aggressive This setting allows the peer ID to be specified.
Accept Types	Specific peer ID
Peer ID	IaaS The other end of the tunnel needs to have its local ID set to IaaS.



7. Leave the default *Phase 1 Proposal* settings and disable *XAUTH*.

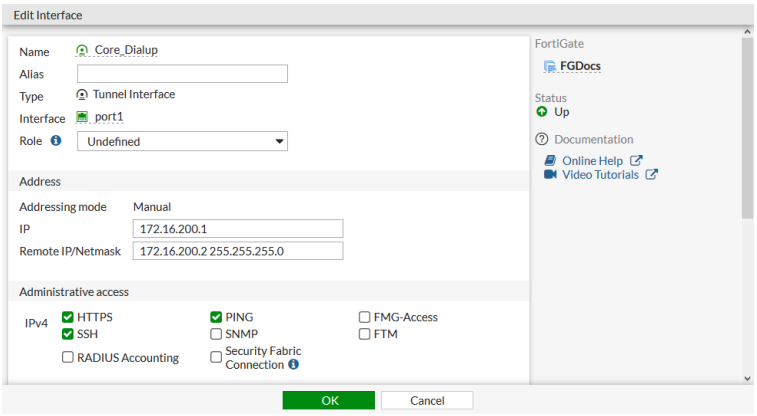
8. Configure the *Phase 2 Selector* settings:

Name	Ent_Core
Local Address	Named Address - *local_subnet_10_0_2_0*
Remote Address	Named Address - *all* This setting allows traffic originating from both the remote subnet 10.100.88.0 and the health checks from the VPN interface on the remote FortiGate. For increased security, each subnet can be specified individually.

9. Click *OK*.

To configure remote and local tunnel IP addresses:

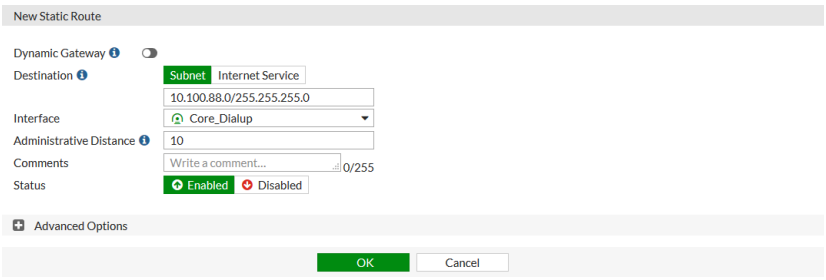
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *Core_Dialup* interface under *port1*.
2. Set *IP* to *172.16.200.1*.
3. Set *Remote IP/Netmask* to *172.16.200.2 255.255.255.0*. This is where remote health check traffic will come from.
4. Enable *Administrative access* for *HTTPS*, *PING*, and *SSH*.



5. Click *OK*.

To configure a route to the remote subnet through the tunnel:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter the IP address and netmask: *10.100.88.0/255.255.255.0*.
3. Set *Interface* to *Core_Dialup*.

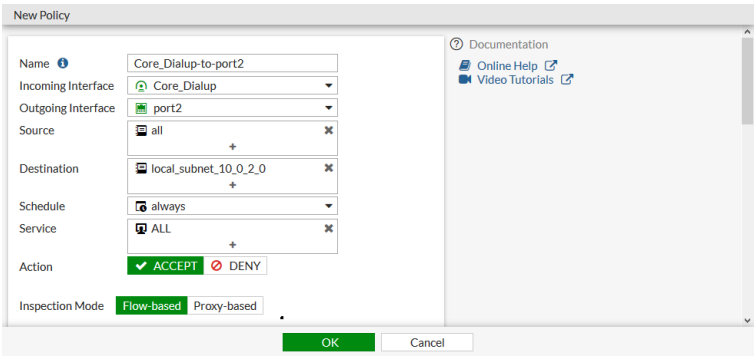


4. Click *OK*.

To configure a firewall policy to allow traffic from the tunnel to port2:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	Core_Dialup-to-port2
Incoming Interface	Core_Dialup
Outgoing Interface	port2
Source	all
Destination	local_subnet_10_0_2_0
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT



3. Configure the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

Configure the HQ FortiGate

To create an address for the VPN gateway:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *remote_subnet_10_0_2_0*.
3. Set *IP/Netmask* to *10.0.2.0/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure a custom IPsec VPN:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Set *Name* to *FGT_AWS_Tun*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*.
4. Click *Next*.

5. Configure *Network* settings:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	100.21.29.17
Interface	port5
NAT Traversal	Enable

6. Configure *Authentication* settings:

Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the pre-shared key.
Version	1
Mode	Aggressive This setting allows the peer ID to be specified.
Accept Types	Any peer ID

7. Leave the default *Phase 1 Proposal* settings, except set *Local ID* to *IaaS*.
8. Disable *XAUTH*.
9. Configure the *Phase 2 Selector* settings:

Name	FGT_AWS_Tun
Local Address	Named Address - *all* This setting allows traffic originating from both the local subnet 10.100.88.0 and the health checks from the VPN interface. For increased security, each subnet can be specified individually.
Remote Address	Named Address - *remote_subnet_10_0_2_0*

10. Click *OK*.

To configure local and remote tunnel IP addresses:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *FGT_AWS_Tun* interface under *port5*.
2. Set *IP* to *172.16.200.2*.
3. Set *Remote IP/Netmask* to *172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0*.
4. Enable *Administrative access* for *HTTPS*, *PING*, and *SSH*.
5. Click *OK*.



Routing is defined when creating the SD-WAN interface. The firewall policy is created after the SD-WAN interface is defined.

Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and AWS native VPN gateway

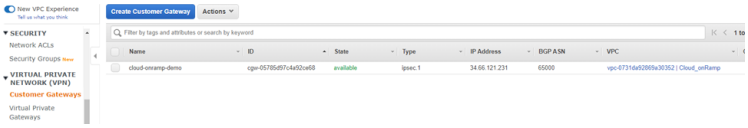
This example uses static routing. It is assumed that the AWS VPN Gateway is already configured, and that proper routing is applied on the corresponding subnet.

Verify the AWS configuration

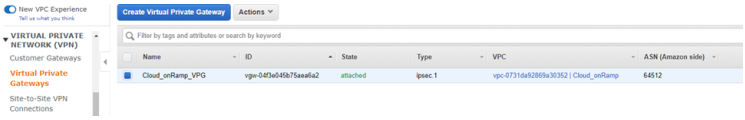
See Creating routing tables and associate subnets in the AWS Administration Guide for configuration details.

To check the AWS configuration:

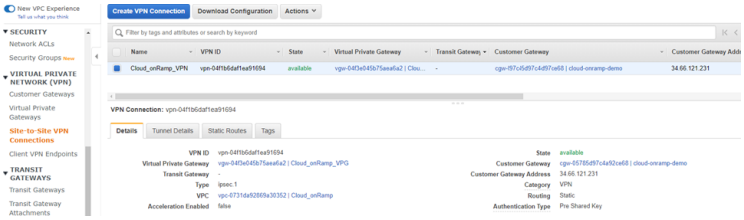
1. Go to *Virtual Private Network (VPN)* > *Customer Gateways* to confirm that the customer gateway defines the FortiGate IP address as its Gateway IP address, in this case *34.66.121.231*.



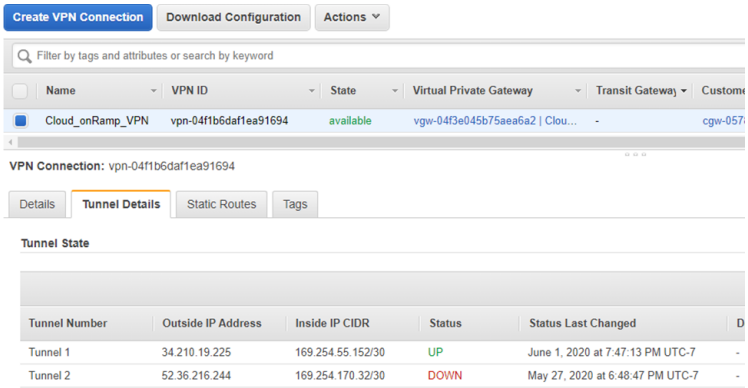
2. Go to *Virtual Private Network (VPN)* > *Virtual Private Gateways* to confirm that a virtual private gateway (VPG) has been created. In this case it is attached to the *Cloud_onRamp* VPC that contains the FortiGate and servers.



3. Go to *Virtual Private Network (VPN)* > *Site-to-Site VPN Connections* to confirm that site-to-site VPN connections have been created and attached to the customer gateway and virtual private gateway.
If *Routing Options* is *Static*, the IP prefix of the remote subnet on the HQ FortiGate (10.100.88.0) is entered here.

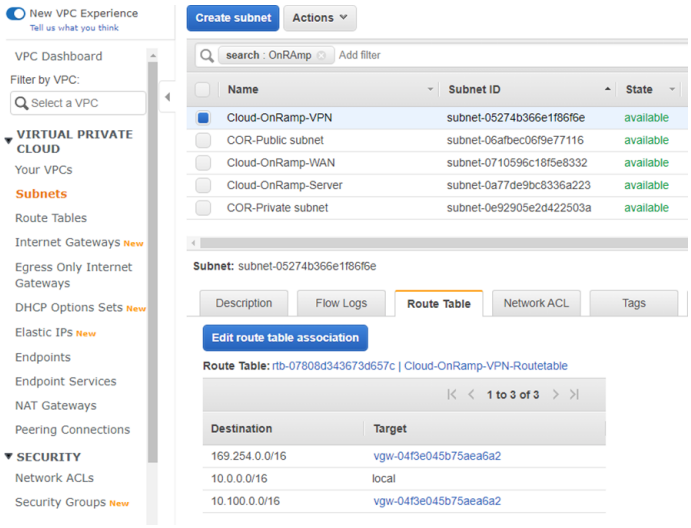


AWS site-to-site VPN always creates two VPN tunnels for redundancy. In this example, only Tunnel 1 is used.

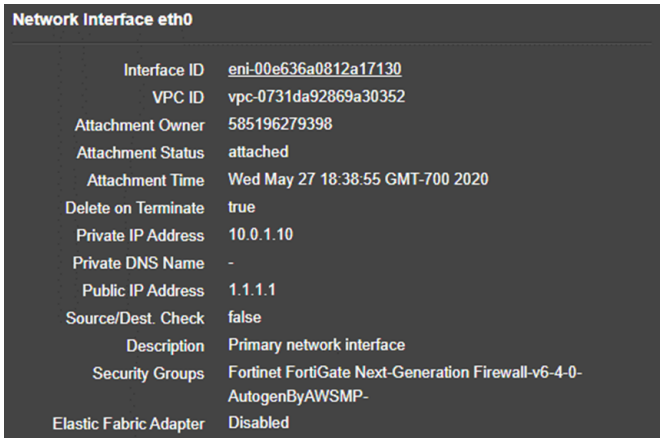


4. Click *Download Configuration* to download the FortiGate's tunnel configurations. The configuration can be referred to when configuring the FortiGate VPN.

5. The new VPG is attached to your VPC, but to successfully route traffic to the VPG, proper routing must be defined. Go to *Virtual Private Cloud* > *Subnets*, select the *Cloud-OnRamp-VPN*, and select the *Route Table* tab to verify that there are at least two routes to send traffic over the VPG.



   - *169.254.0.0/24* defines the tunnel IP address. Health check traffic originating from the FortiGate will come from this IP range.
   - *10.100.0.0/16* defines the remote subnet from the HQ FortiGate.
   - Both routes point to the just created VPG *vgw-04xxxx*.
6. On the cloud FortiGate-VM EC2 instances, ensure that port1 and port2 both have *Source/Dest. Check* set to *false*. This allows the FortiGate to accept and route traffic to and from a different network.
   If you launched the instance from the AWS marketplace, this setting defaults to *true*.

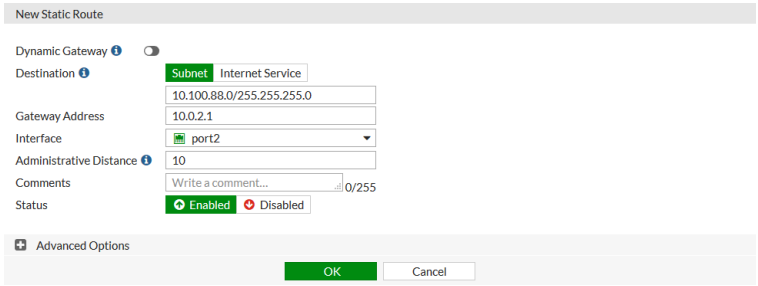


Configure routing to the VPG on the cloud FortiGate-VM

To configure routing to the VPG on the cloud FortiGate-VM:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter the IP address and netmask: *10.100.88.0/255.255.255.0*.
3. Set *Gateway Address* to *Specify* and enter *10.0.2.1*.

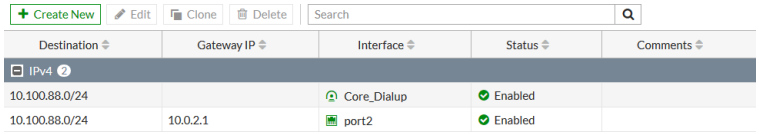
4. Set *Interface* to *port2*.



The new route must have the same *Administrative Distance* as the route that was created for traffic through the *Core_Dialup* tunnel to ensure that both routes are added to the routing table (see To configure a route to the remote subnet through the tunnel).

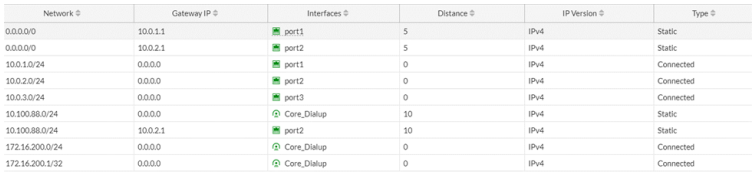
The *Gateway Address* is arbitrarily set to 10.0.2.1. The VPG does not have an IP address, but the address defined here allows the FortiGate to route traffic out of port2, while AWS routes the traffic based on its routing table.

5. Click *OK*.
6. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* to view the configured static routes:



7. If *Optimal* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the Routing widget to view the routing table.

If *Comprehensive* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Routing Monitor* and select *Static & Dynamic* in the widget toolbar to view the routing table:



Configure IPsec VPN on the HQ FortiGate

To configure a custom IPsec VPN:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Set *Name* to *AWS_VPG*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*.
4. Click *Next*.
5. Configure *Network* settings:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	34.210.19.225 This address is taken from the downloaded AWS configuration file.
Interface	port1
NAT Traversal	Enable

6. Configure *Authentication* settings:

Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the pre-shared key.
Version	1
Mode	Main

7. Configure the *Phase 1 Proposal* settings using information from the downloaded AWS configuration file.
8. Disable *XAUTH*.
9. Configure the *Phase 2 Selector* settings:

Name	AWS_VPG
Local Address	Named Address - *all* This setting allows traffic originating from both the local subnet 10.100.88.0 and the health checks from the VPN interface. For increased security, each subnet can be specified individually.
Remote Address	Named Address - *remote_subnet_10_0_2_0*

10. Click *OK*.

To configure local and remote tunnel IP addresses:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *AWS_VPG* interface under *port1*.
2. Set *IP* to *169.254.55.154*.
3. Set *Remote IP/Netmask* to *169.254.55.153 255.255.255.0*.
4. Enable *Administrative access* for *HTTPS* and *PING*.
5. Click *OK*.



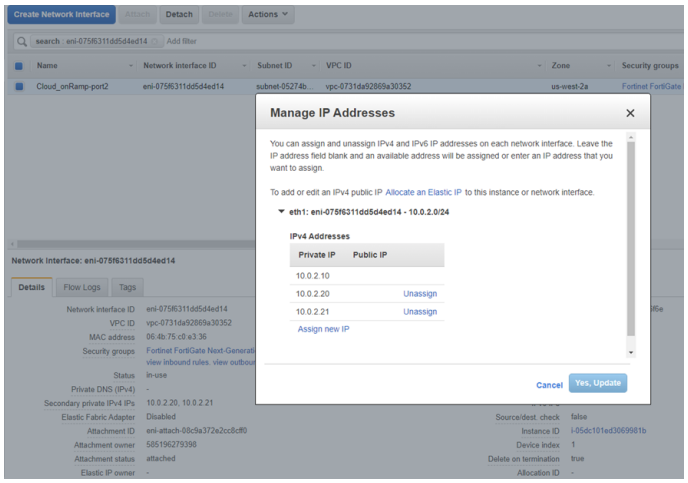
Routing is defined when creating the SD-WAN interface. The firewall policy is created after the SD-WAN interface is defined.

Configuring the VIP to access the remote servers

VIPs, interface IP addresses, and policies are created on the cloud FortiGate-VM to allow access to the remote servers.

To configure additional private IPs on AWS for the FortiGate VIP:

1. On the FortiGate EC2 instance, edit the *Elastic Network Interface* that corresponds to *port2*. In this example, Network Interface *eth1*.
2. Go to *Actions* > *Manage IP Addresses*.
3. Add two private IP address in the 10.0.2.0/24 subnet.
   These address will be used in the VIPs on the FortiGate. This ensures that traffic to these IP addresses is routed to the FortiGate by AWS.

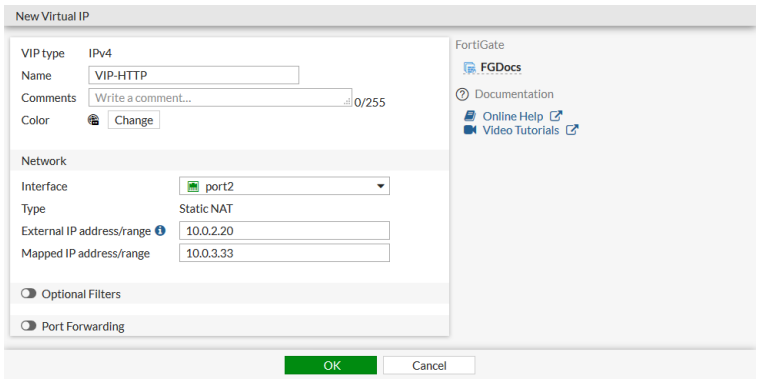


4. Click *Yes, Update*.

To configure VIPs on the cloud FortiGate-VM:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP*.
2. Configure the following:

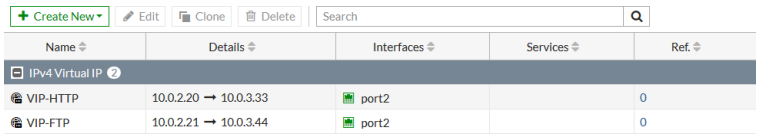
Name	VIP-HTTP
Interface	port2
External IP address/range	10.0.2.20
Mapped IP address/range	10.0.3.33



3. Click *OK*.

4. Create a second VIP for the FTP server with the following settings:

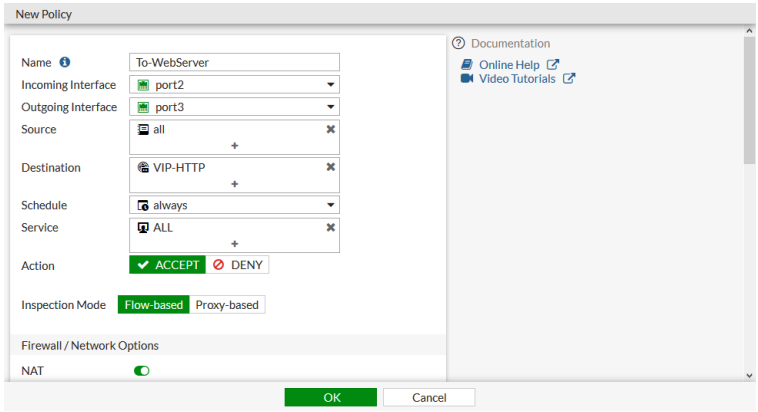
Name	VIP-FTP
Interface	port2
External IP address/range	10.0.2.21
Mapped IP address/range	10.0.3.44



To configure firewall policies to allow traffic from port2 to port3:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	To-WebServer
Incoming Interface	port2
Outgoing Interface	port3
Source	all
Destination	VIP-HTTP
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Enabled

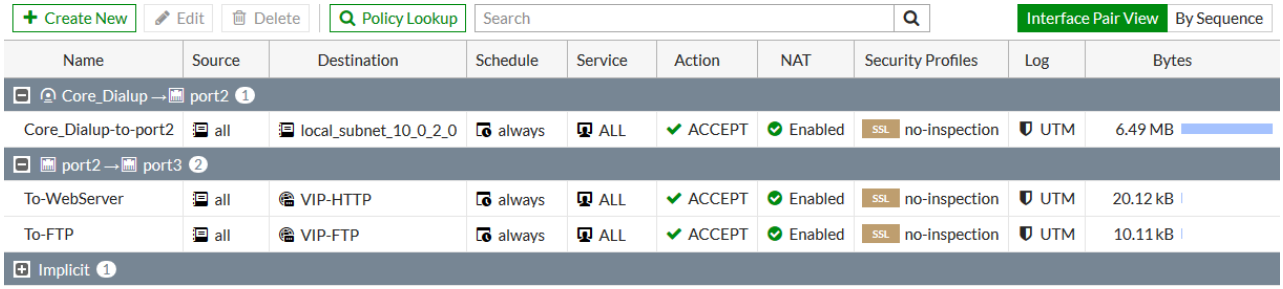


3. Configure the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

5. Create a second policy for the FTP VIP with the following settings:

Name	To-FTP
Incoming Interface	port2
Outgoing Interface	port3
Source	all
Destination	VIP-FTP
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Enabled

6. Click *OK*.



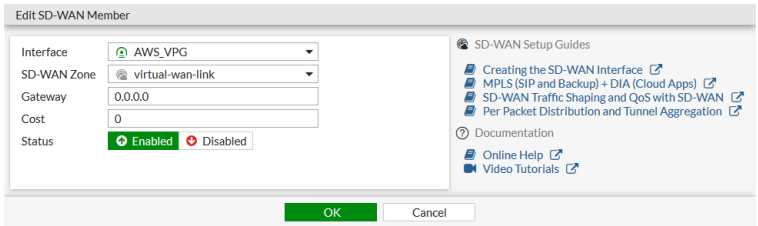
Configuring the SD-WAN to steer traffic between the overlays

Configure the HQ FortiGate to use two overlay tunnels for SD-WAN, steering HTTPS and HTTP traffic through the FGT_AWS_Tun tunnel, and SSH and FTP throguh the AWS_VPG tunnel.

1. Add SD-WAN member interfaces
2. Configure a route to the remote network
3. Configure firewall policies
4. Configure a health check
5. Configure SD-WAN rules

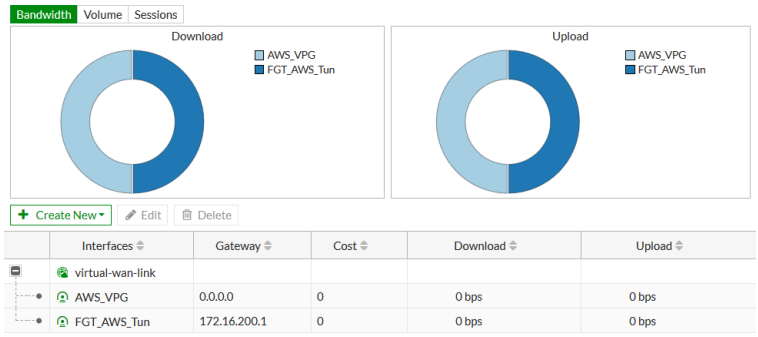
To add SD-WAN member interfaces:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* and click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
2. Set *Interface* to *AWS_VPG* then click *OK*.



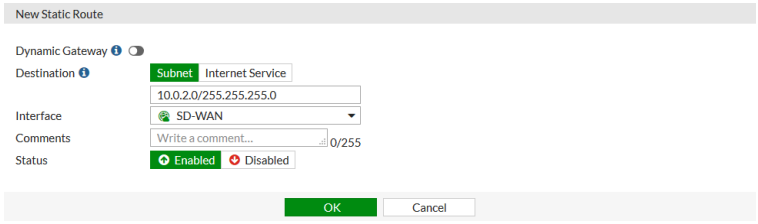
3. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member* again.

4. Set *Interface* to *FGT_AWS_Tun*.
5. Set *Gateway* to *172.16.200.1*.
6. Click *OK*.

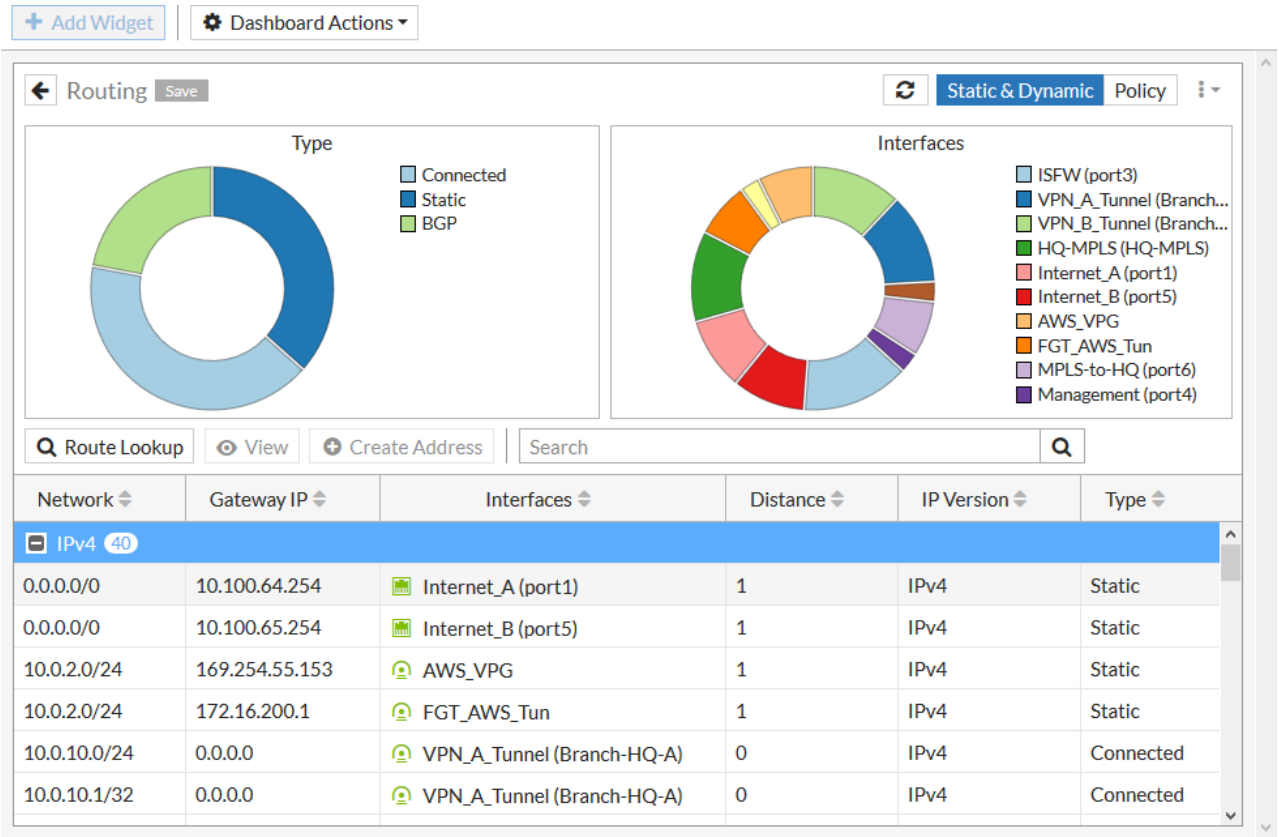


To configure a route to the remote network 10.0.2.0/24:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter the IP address and netmask: *10.0.2.0/255.255.255.0*.
3. Set *Interface* to *SD-WAN*.



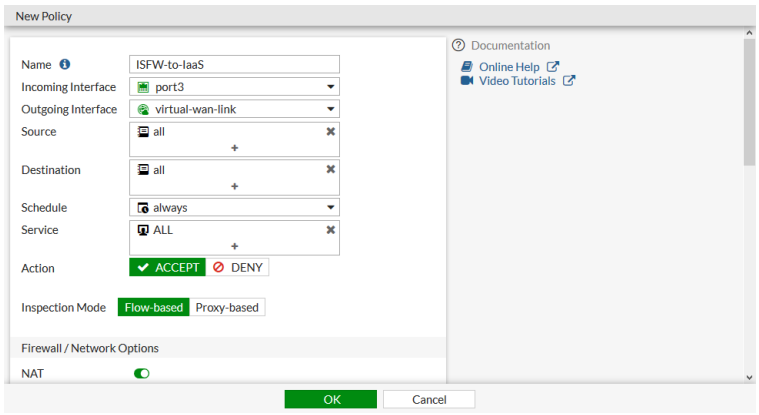
4. Click *OK*.
   Individual routes to each tunnel are automatically added to the routing table with the same distance:



To configure firewall policies to allow traffic from the internal subnet to SD-WAN:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	ISFW-to-IaaS
Incoming Interface	port3
Outgoing Interface	virtual-wan-link
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Enabled



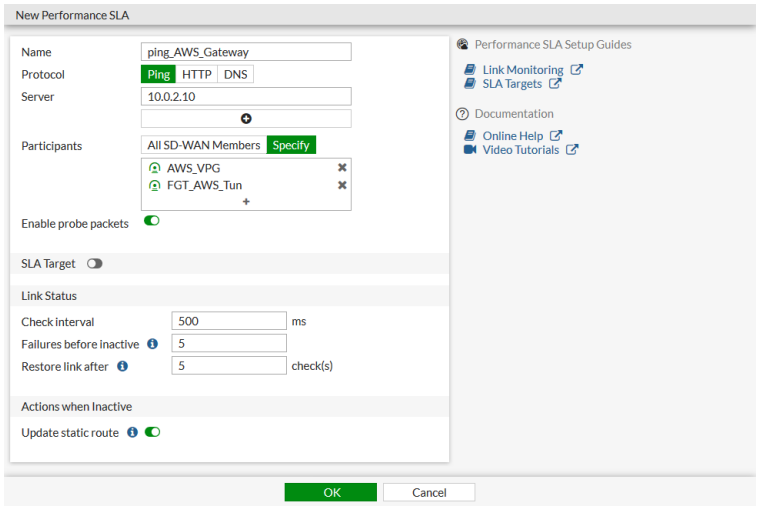
3. Configure the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.
   Once the firewall policies are configured, the VPN tunnels should come up when there is traffic.

To configure a health check to monitor the status of the tunnels:

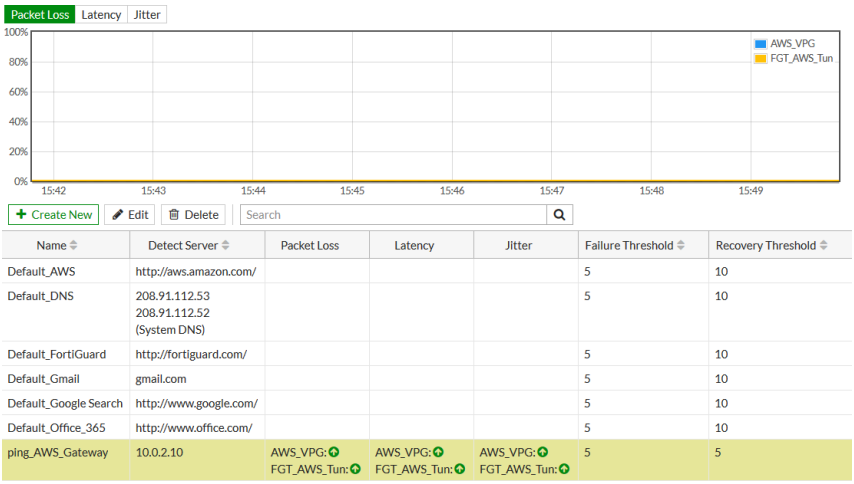
As you are accessing the servers on the 10.0.2.0/24 subnet, it is preferable to use the FortiGate port2 interface as the ping server for detection. This ensures that, if the gateway is not reachable in either tunnel, its routes are brought down and traffic continues on the other tunnel.

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	ping_AWS_Gateway
Protocol	Ping
Server	10.0.2.10
Participants	Specify Add AWS_VPG and FGT_AWS_Tun as participants.



3. Click *OK*.



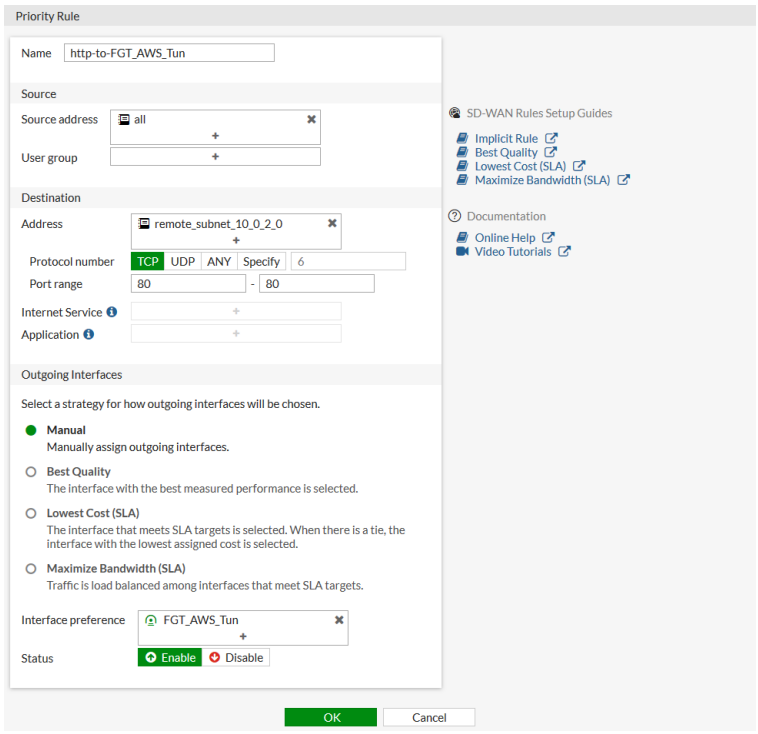
Health check probes originate from the VPN interface's IP address. This is why the phase2 selectors are configured with *Local Address* set to *all*.

To configure SD-WAN rules to steer traffic:

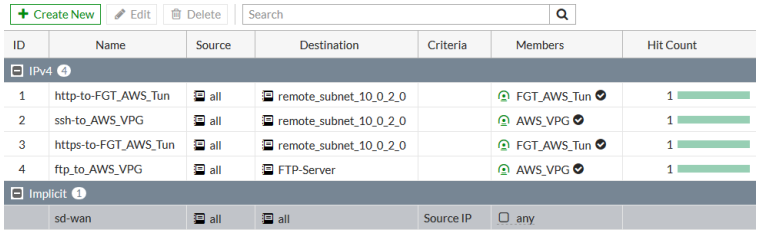
HTTPS and HTTP traffic is steered to the FGT_AWS_Tun tunnel, and SSH and FTP traffic is steered to the AWS_VPG tunnel. The Manual algorithm is used in this example.

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	http-to-FGT_AWS_Tun
Source Address	all
Address	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0
Protocol	TCP
Port range	80 - 80
Outgoing Interfaces	Manual
Interface preference	FGT_AWS_Tun



3. Click *OK*.
4. Create other SD-WAN rules as required:



Verifying the traffic

To verify that pings are sent across the IPsec VPN tunnels

- On the HQ FortiGate, run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'host 10.0.2.10' 4 0 1 interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 10.0.2.10]
2020-06-05 11:35:14.822600 AWS_VPG out 169.254.55.154 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:35:14.822789 FGT_AWS_Tun out 172.16.200.2 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:35:14.877862 FGT_AWS_Tun in 10.0.2.10 -> 172.16.200.2: icmp: echo reply
2020-06-05 11:35:14.878887 AWS_VPG in 10.0.2.10 -> 169.254.55.154: icmp: echo reply
```

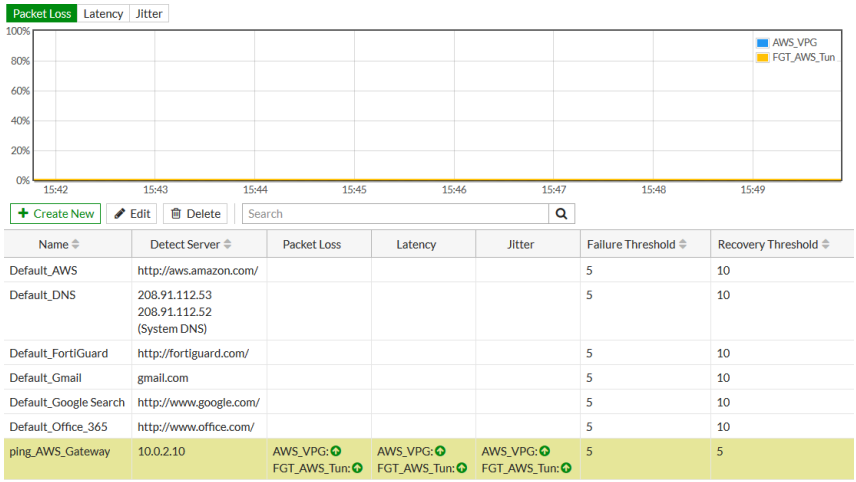
- On the cloud FortiGate-VM, run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'host 10.0.2.10' 4 0 1 interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 10.0.2.10]
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176329 port2 in 169.254.55.154 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176363 port2 out 10.0.2.10 -> 169.254.55.154: icmp: echo reply
```

```
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176505 Core_Dialup in 172.16.200.2 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176514 Core_Dialup out 10.0.2.10 -> 172.16.200.2: icmp: echo reply
```

To verify the SLA health checks on the HQ FortiGate:

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select *Packet Loss* and the *ping_AWS_Gateway* SLA:



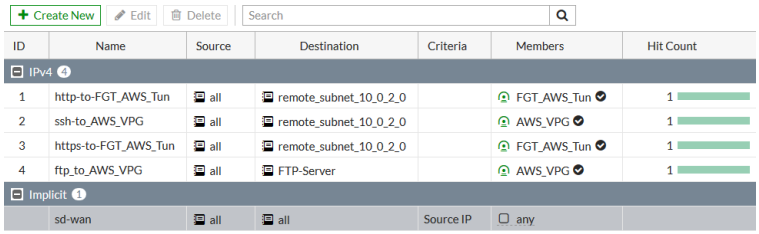
Name	Detect Server	Packet Loss	Latency	Jitter	Failure Threshold	Recovery Threshold
Default_AWS	http://aws.amazon.com/				5	10
Default_DNS	208.91.112.53 208.91.112.52 (System DNS)				5	10
Default_FortiGuard	http://fortiguard.com/				5	10
Default_Gmail	gmail.com				5	10
Default_Google Search	http://www.google.com/				5	10
Default_Office_365	http://www.office.com/				5	10
ping_AWS_Gateway	10.0.2.10	AWS_VPG: FGT_AWS_Tun:	AWS_VPG: FGT_AWS_Tun:	AWS_VPG: FGT_AWS_Tun:	5	5

2. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
…
Seq(1 AWS_VPG): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(56.221), jitter(0.290) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(2 FGT_AWS_Tun): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(55.039), jitter(0.223)
sla_map=0x0
```

To verify service rules:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*:



ID	Name	Source	Destination	Criteria	Members	Hit Count
IPv4 4						
1	http-to-FGT_AWS_Tun	all	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0		FGT_AWS_Tun	1
2	ssh-to_AWS_VPG	all	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0		AWS_VPG	1
3	https-to-FGT_AWS_Tun	all	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0		FGT_AWS_Tun	1
4	ftp_to_AWS_VPG	all	FTP-Server		AWS_VPG	1
Implicit 1						
	sd-wan	all	all	Source IP	any	

2. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 80->80), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255
```

```
Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 22->22), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 443->443), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(4): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.21-10.0.2.21
```

To verify that sessions are going to the correct tunnel:

1. Run the following CLI command to verify that HTTPS and HTTP traffic destined for the Web server at 10.0.2.20 uses FGT_AWS_Tun:

```
# diagnose sys session filter dst 10.0.2.20
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=2 expire=3597 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=FGT_AWS_Tun/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=593/4/1 reply=3689/5/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 264/2 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 1646/13
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=0->18/18->0 gwy=172.16.200.1/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55589->10.0.2.20:80(172.16.200.2:55589)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:80->172.16.200.2:55589(10.100.88.101:55589)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:80->10.100.88.101:55589(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b7442c tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=34050 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000001 rpdb_svc_id=2154552596 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
```

```
session info: proto=6 proto_state=66 duration=1 expire=3 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=FGT_AWS_Tun/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr f00 csf_syncd_log
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=48/1/0 reply=40/1/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 26/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 22/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->18/18->5
gwy=172.16.200.1/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55621->10.0.2.20:443(172.16.200.2:55621)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:443->172.16.200.2:55621(10.100.88.101:55621)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:443->10.100.88.101:55621(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b74b50 tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000003 rpdb_svc_id=2154552596 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
```

2. Run the following CLI command to verify that SSH and FTP traffic destined for the FTP server at 10.0.2.21 uses AWS_VPG:

```
# diagnose sys session filter dst 10.0.2.20
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=197 expire=3403 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=580/12/1 reply=863/13/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 2/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 4/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->17/17->5
gwy=169.254.55.153/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55528->10.0.2.21:21(169.254.55.154:55528)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.21:21->169.254.55.154:55528(10.100.88.101:55528)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.21:21->10.100.88.101:55528(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b72a5f tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=15896 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000004 rpdb_svc_id=2149689849 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008

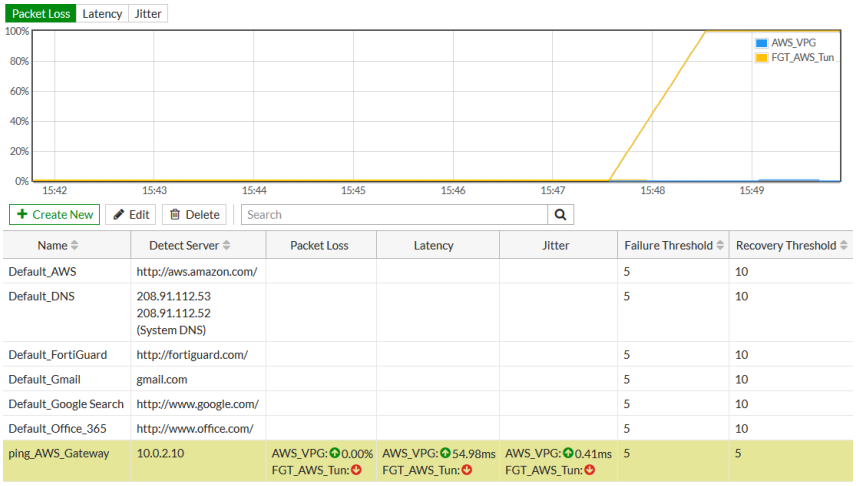
session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=3 expire=3596 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
```

```
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=1496/6/1 reply=1541/5/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 416/3 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 429/3
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->17/17->5
gwy=169.254.55.153/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55644->10.0.2.21:22(169.254.55.154:55644)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.21:22->169.254.55.154:55644(10.100.88.101:55644)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.21:22->10.100.88.101:55644(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b75287 tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=16060 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000002 rpdb_svc_id=2149689849 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
```

To simulate an issue on an overlay VPN tunnel:

On the cloud FortiGate-VM, disable the firewall policy allowing Core_Dialup to port2.

1. Health-checks through the FGT_AWS_Tun tunnel fail:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select *Packet Loss* and the *ping_AWS_Gateway* SLA:

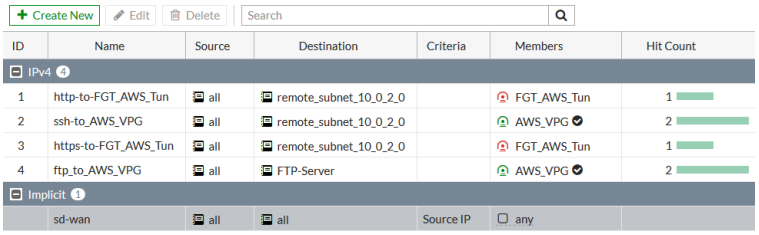


Name	Detect Server	Packet Loss	Latency	Jitter	Failure Threshold	Recovery Threshold
Default_AWS	http://aws.amazon.com/				5	10
Default_DNS	208.91.112.53 208.91.112.52 (System DNS)				5	10
Default_FortiGuard	http://fortiguard.com/				5	10
Default_Gmail	gmail.com				5	10
Default_Google Search	http://www.google.com/				5	10
Default_Office_365	http://www.office.com/				5	10
ping_AWS_Gateway	10.0.2.10	AWS_VPG: 0.00% FGT_AWS_Tun:	AWS_VPG: 54.98ms FGT_AWS_Tun:	AWS_VPG: 0.41ms FGT_AWS_Tun:	5	5

   b. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
...
Seq(1 AWS_VPG): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(52.746), jitter(0.713) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(2 FGT_AWS_Tun): state(dead), packet-loss(19.000%) sla_map=0x0
```

2. Service rules show that the member is down:
   a. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*:



ID	Name	Source	Destination	Criteria	Members	Hit Count
IPv4 4						
1	http-to-FGT_AWS_Tun	all	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0		FGT_AWS_Tun	1
2	ssh-to_AWS_VPG	all	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0		AWS_VPG	2
3	https-to-FGT_AWS_Tun	all	remote_subnet_10_0_2_0		FGT_AWS_Tun	1
4	ftp_to_AWS_VPG	all	FTP-Server		AWS_VPG	2
Implicit 1						
	sd-wan	all	all	Source IP	any	

b. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(2), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 80->80), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), dead
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 22->22), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(2), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 443->443), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), dead
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(4): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.21-10.0.2.21
```

3. Sessions are redirected to the working tunnel:

a. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=3 expire=3596 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=504/4/1 reply=620/3/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 150/1 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 184/1
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=0->17/17->0
gwy=169.254.55.153/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:56373->10.0.2.20:80(169.254.55.154:56373)
```

```
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:80->169.254.55.154:56373(10.100.88.101:56373)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:80->10.100.88.101:56373(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b87199 tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=34050 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= 80000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008

session info: proto=6 proto_state=66 duration=3 expire=1 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr f00 csf_syncd_log
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=48/1/0 reply=40/1/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 15/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 12/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->17/17->5
gwy=169.254.55.153/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:56383->10.0.2.20:443(169.254.55.154:56383)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:443->169.254.55.154:56383(10.100.88.101:56383)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:443->10.100.88.101:56383(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b876bb tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= 80000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
total session 2
```

4. Routes to the *FGT_AWS_Tun* tunnel are removed:
   a. If *Optimal* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the Routing widget to view the routing table.
   If *Comprehensive* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Routing Monitor* and select *Static & Dynamic* in the widget toolbar to view the routing table:

Network	Gateway IP	Interfaces	Distance	IP Version	Type
IPv4 40					
0.0.0.0/0	10.100.64.254	Internet_A (port1)	1	IPv4	Static
0.0.0.0/0	10.100.65.254	Internet_B (port5)	1	IPv4	Static
10.0.2.0/24	169.254.55.153	AWS_VPG	1	IPv4	Static
10.0.10.0/24	0.0.0.0	VPN_A_Tunnel (Branch-HQ-A)	0	IPv4	Connected
10.0.10.1/32	0.0.0.0	VPN_A_Tunnel (Branch-HQ-A)	0	IPv4	Connected

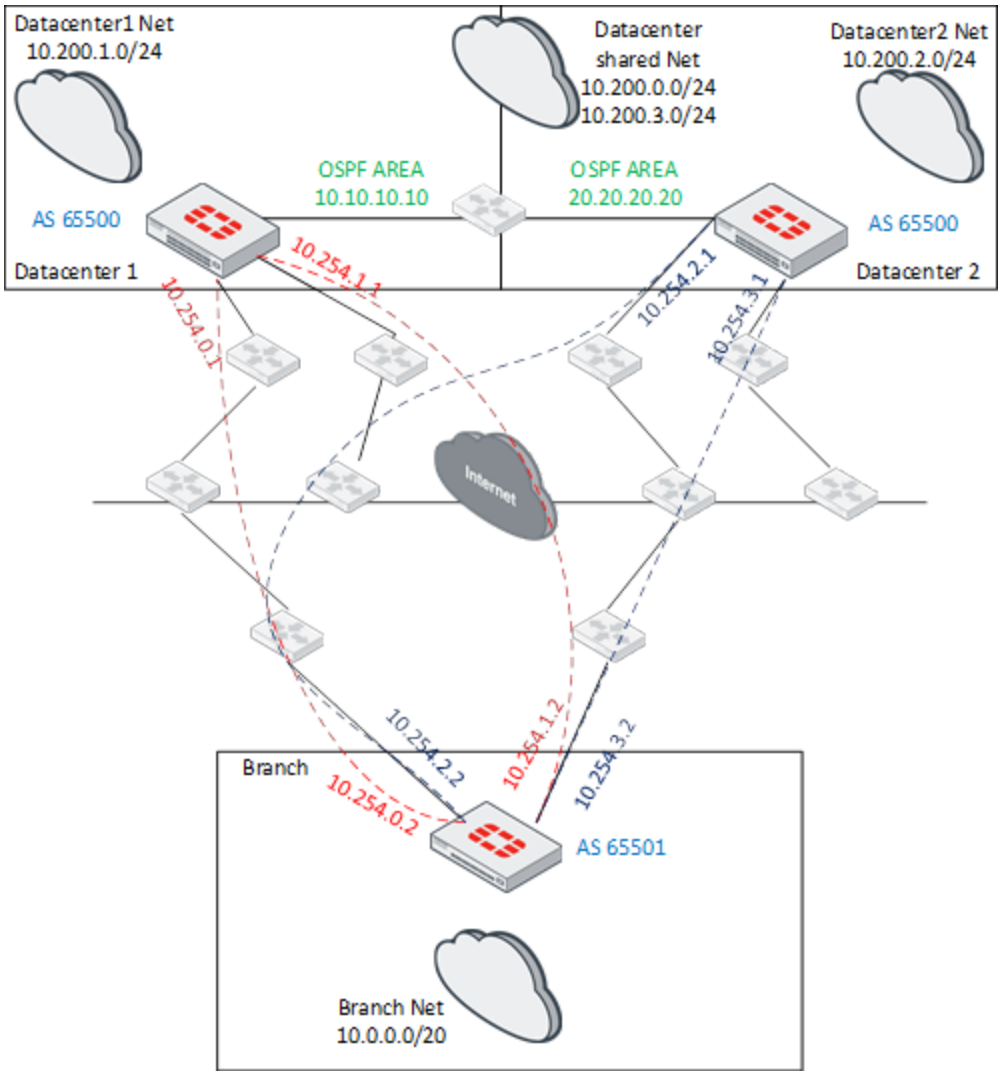
   b. Run the following CLI command:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default
```

```
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 10.100.64.254, port1
                  [1/0] via 10.100.65.254, port5
S       10.0.2.0/24 [1/0] via 169.254.55.153, AWS_VPG
C       10.0.10.0/24 is directly connected, Branch-HQ-A
C       10.0.10.1/32 is directly connected, Branch-HQ-A
…
```

Hub and spoke SD-WAN deployment example

This topology diagram shows an overview of the network that is configured in this example:



Datacenter configuration

The datacenter is configured to support:

- Zero touch provisioning of new spokes
- Point to multipoint VPN
- Central management of access with the datacenter firewall
- Dynamic peering, to share routing information between branches and the datacenter
- VDOM compatibility, with inter-VDOM links for isolation and segmentation

To configure the datacenter, complete the following steps:

1. Configure dial-up (dynamic) VPN
2. Configure VPN interfaces
3. Configure loopback interface
4. Configure BGP
5. Firewall policies
6. Configure a black hole route

Configure dial-up (dynamic) VPN

Dial-up, or dynamic, VPNs are used to facilitate zero touch provisioning of new spokes to establish VPN connections to the hub FortiGate.

The `exchange-interface-ip` option is enabled to allow the exchange of IPsec interface IP addresses. This allows a point to multipoint connection to the hub FortiGate.

The `add-route` option is disabled to allow multiple dial-up tunnels to be established to the same host that is advertising the same network. This dynamic network discovery is facilitated by the BGP configuration; see Configure BGP on page 841 for details.

Wildcard security associations are defined for the phase2 interface because routing is used to determine if traffic is subject to encryption and transmission through the IPsec VPN tunnel. The phase1 interface name must be 11 characters or less.

A dynamic VPN configuration must be defined for each interface that connects to the internet.

To configure the IPsec phase1 interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn-isp-a"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set add-route disable
        set dhgrp 5
        set net-device enable
        set psksecret ********
    next
    edit "vpn-isp-b"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port3"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
```

```
        set add-route disable
        set dhgrp 5
        set net-device enable
        set psksecret ********
    next
end
```

To configure the IPsec phase2 interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vpn-isp-a_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn-isp-a"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
    next
    edit "vpn-isp-b_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn-isp-b"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
    next
end
```

Configure VPN interfaces

To establish the BGP session, IP addresses must be assigned to the tunnel interfaces that BGP will use to peer.

The hub IP address is set to the address that the tunnels connect to. The remote IP address is set to highest unused IP address that is part of the tunnel network. This establishes two connected routes directly back to the branch FortiGate in the hub FortiGate's routing table.

Ping is allowed on the virtual interface to confirm that a point to point tunnel has been established between the hub and branch FortiGates.

To define IP addresses for VPN interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "vpn-isp-a"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.0.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.254.0.254 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port2"
    next
    edit "vpn-isp-b"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.1.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.254.1.254 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port3"
    next
end
```

Configure loopback interface

A loopback interface must be defined on the hub FortiGate to be used as a common probe point for the FortiGates that are using SD-WAN. The FortiGates send a probe packet from each of their SD-WAN member interfaces so that they can determine the best route according to their policies. Ping is allowed so that it can be used for measurements.

To configure the loopback interface on the hub FortiGate:

```
config system interface
    edit "loopback_0"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.255.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type loopback
    next
end
```

Configure BGP

Network route discovery is facilitated by BGP.

EBGP is used to prevent the redistribution of routes that are in the same Autonomous System (AS) number as the host. It is also required to influence route selection on the branches with AS-Path prepending. EBGP multipath is enabled so that the hub FortiGate can dynamically discover multiple paths for networks that are advertised at the branches.

The neighbor range and group settings are configured to allow peering relationships to be established without defining each individual peer. Connecting branches have their tunnel interfaces configured within the range of the BGP peer.

In order to facilitate the fastest route failovers, configure the following timers to their lowest levels: `scan-time`, `advertisement-interval`, `keep-alive-timer`, and `holdtime-timer`.

To configure BGP on the hub FortiGate:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65500
    set router-id 10.10.0.1
    set ebgp-multipath enable
    set graceful-restart enable
    config neighbor-group
        edit "branch-peers-1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65501
        next
        edit "branch-peers-2"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65501
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.254.0.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "branch-peers-1"
        next
        edit 2
```

```
            set prefix 10.254.1.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "branch-peers-2"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.200.1.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.200.0.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 3
            set prefix 10.200.3.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

Firewall policies

Centralized access is controlled from the hub FortiGate using Firewall policies. In addition to layer three and four inspection, security policies can be used in the policies for layer seven traffic inspection.

It is best practice to only allow the networks and services that are required for communication through the firewall. The following rules are the minimum that must be configured to allow SD-WAN to function:

Source Interface	Destination Interface	Source Address	Destination Address	Action	Schedule	Service	Comments
<vpn interfaces>	<internal Interface>	<branch tunnel IP addresses>	<hub FortiGate internal interface>	Accept	Always	ICMP	Allow health checks to the hub FortiGate
<vpn interfaces>	<internal Interface>	<branch networks>	<datacenter networks>	Accept	Always	<allowed services>	Allow traffic from branch networks

For this example, a simple policy that allows all traffic is configured.

To configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Allow All"
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

Configure a black hole route

If there is a temporary loss of connectivity to the branch routes, it is best practice to send the traffic that is destined for those networks into a black hole until connectivity is restored.

To configure a black hole route for branch networks:

```
config router static
    edit 6
        set dst 10.0.0.0/14
        set distance 254
        set blackhole enable
    next
end
```

Branch configuration

The branches are configured to support:

- Client side SD-WAN with intelligent load balancing based on link quality
- Easy to create configuration templates for quick spoke deployment
- Split tunnel deployment for local internet access
- VDOM compatibility, with inter-VDOM links for isolation and segmentation

To configure a branch, complete the following steps:

1. Configure VPN to the hub
2. Configure VPN interfaces
3. Configure BGP
4. Configure SD-WAN
5. Firewall configuration

Configure VPN to the hub

The branch uses a normal site-to-site VPN configuration.

Wildcard security associations are define in the phase2 configuration because dynamic routing with BGP determines what traffic must traverse the VPN tunnel for encryption/transmission.

To make sure that the VPN is established, `auto-negotiate` is enabled.

To configure the IPsec phase1 interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn_dc1-1"
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 5
        set remote-gw 172.16.0.78
```

```
        set psksecret ********
    next
    edit "vpn_dc1-2"
        set interface "port3"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 5
        set remote-gw 172.16.0.82
        set psksecret ********
    next
end
```

To configure the IPsec phase2 interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vpn_dc1-1_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn_dc1-1"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "vpn_dc1-2_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn_dc1-2"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

Configure VPN interfaces

The branch must define its local tunnel interface IP address, and the remote tunnel interface IP address of the datacenter FortiGate, to establish the point to multipoint VPN.

To define IP addressses for VPN interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "vpn_dc1-1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.0.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.255.0.1 255.255.255.255
        set interface "port2"
    next
    edit "vpn_dc1-2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.1.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.255.1.1 255.255.255.255
```

```
        set interface "port3"
    next
end
```

Configure BGP

BGP enables learning dynamic routes from the datacenter. The BGP configuration is normal, with the definition of the datacenter FortiGate tunnel IP addresses set as BGP peers.

Routes that have the same network mask, administrative distance, priority, and AS length are automatically considered for SD-WAN when the interfaces that those routes are on are added to the SD-WAN interface group.

In order to facilitate the fastest route failovers, configure the following timers to their lowest levels: `scan-time`, `advertisement-interval`, `keep-alive-timer`, and `holdtime-timer`.

The `distance-external` option might need to be configured if you need routes that are learned from BGP to take precedence over static routes.

To configure BGP on the branch FortiGate:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65501
    set router-id 10.254.0.2
    set ebgp-multipath enable
    config neighbor
        edit "10.254.0.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65500
        next
        edit "10.254.1.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65500
        next
    end
end
```

Configure SD-WAN

SD-WAN configuration is required to load balance based on the quality of the links. It can be configured to select the best link based on characteristics such as jitter, packet loss, and latency. A policy route is created by the FortiGate to select the best link based on the defined criteria.

For SD-WAN interfaces, or members, the peer is defined to reference the BGP neighbor that is tied to that specific interface.

The health check is the ping server that gathers the link characteristics used for link selection. It is recommended that the minimum `failtime` be set to `2`.

The service definition defines the criteria for the policy routes. It can match based on the following characteristics:

- Protocol
- Destination Address
- Source Address
- Identity Based Group

- Internet Service Definition
- Source Port
- Destination Port
- Destination Route Tag

To dynamically determine the networks of the policy routes, routes that are learned from a BGP neighbor are matched against a route map, and a tag is defined for the matching routes. The service rules learn the networks based on these tags, instead of defining objects based on the learned addresses' network prefixes . See Dynamic definition of SD-WAN routes on page 848 for details on configuring the FortiGate to use the destination tags for the SD-WAN service definition.

To define the SD-WAN member interfaces:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "vpn_dc1-1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "vpn_dc1-2"
        next
    end
end
```

To define the SD-WAN health checks:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "datacenter1"
            set server "10.200.1.1"
            set interval 1
            set failtime 2
            set recoverytime 10
        next
    end
end
```

To define the SD-WAN service rules:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode priority
            set dst n-corporate
            set health-check "datacenter1"
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

Firewall configuration

Centralized access is controlled from the hub FortiGate using Firewall policies. In addition to layer three and four inspection, security policies can be used in the policies for layer seven traffic inspection.

It is best practice to only allow the networks and services that are required for communication through the firewall. The following rules are the minimum that must be configured to allow SD-WAN to function:

Source Interface	Destination Interface	Source Address	Destination Address	Action	Schedule	Service	Comments
<internal interface>	<virtual wan link>	<branch networks>	<datacenter networks>	Accept	Always	<allowed services>	Allow traffic from branch to datacenter
<virtual wan link>	<internal Interface>	<datacenter networks>	<branch networks>	Accept	Always	<allowed services>	Allow traffic from datacenter to branch

For this example, a simple policy that allows all traffic is configured.

To configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Allow All"
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

Validation

The following commands can be used to validate the connections on the datacenter and branches.

Datacenter

Routing table:

```
get router info routing-table all
```

VPN establishment:

```
diagnose vpn ike gateway list
```

Branch

SD-WAN validation:

```
diagnose sys sdwan member
diagnose sys sdwan service
diagnose sys sdwan health-check
```

Routing table:

```
get router info routing-table all
get router info route-map-address
get router info bgp route-map <route-map-name>
```

VPN establishment:

```
diagnose vpn ike gateway list
```

Dynamic definition of SD-WAN routes

Dynamic definitions of SD-WAN routes alleviate administrators from needing to know the destination of the traffic that is being load balanced, which, in an environment where routes are constantly added and removed, required a significant amount of administrative overhead.

The FortiGate can be configured to apply a route map to a BGP neighbor, and tag the routes that are learned from that neighbor with the `set-route-tag` command. After those routes are assigned a tag ID in the route map, the ID can be referenced in the SD-WAN rule.

To define the route map to apply to the BGP neighbor:

```
config router route-map
    edit "map-comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-origin igp
                set set-route-tag 12
            next
            edit 2
                set match-ip-address "pf-all-in"
                set set-route-tag 11
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To apply the route map to the BGP neighbor:

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit "10.254.0.1"
```

```
            set route-map-in "map-comm1"
        next
    end
end
```

To reference tagged routes in an SD-WAN rule:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode priority
            set dst-tag 11
            set health-check "datacenter1"
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

Adding another datacenter

Datacenter FortiGates should be configured to establish an OSPF neighbor relationship with the internal core router. This allows the dynamic redistribution of routes to the branches that are receiving updates from the datacenter FortiGates.

To ensure the fastest failover with OSPF, the following timers are set to their minimum levels: `spf-timers`, `hello-interval`, `dead-interval`.

Bi-directional forwarding is enabled to allow the fastest convergence time if there is a failure with a peering neighbor.

To configure OSPF:

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 10.10.10.10
    set spf-timers 0 1
    set distribute-list-in "pf-datacenter2-tunnel"
    set restart-mode graceful-restart
    config area
        edit 10.10.10.10
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit "port5"
            set interface "port5"
            set dead-interval 3
            set hello-interval 1
            set bfd enable
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.100.0 255.255.255.252
            set area 10.10.10.10
        next
    end
```

```
    config redistribute "connected"
        set status enable
        set routemap "redistribute-branch-tunnel"
    end
    config redistribute "static"
    end
    config redistribute "rip"
    end
    config redistribute "bgp"
        set status enable
        set routemap "redistribute-branch-networks"
    end
    config redistribute "isis"
    end
end
```

Troubleshooting SD-WAN

The following topics provide instructions on SD-WAN troubleshooting:

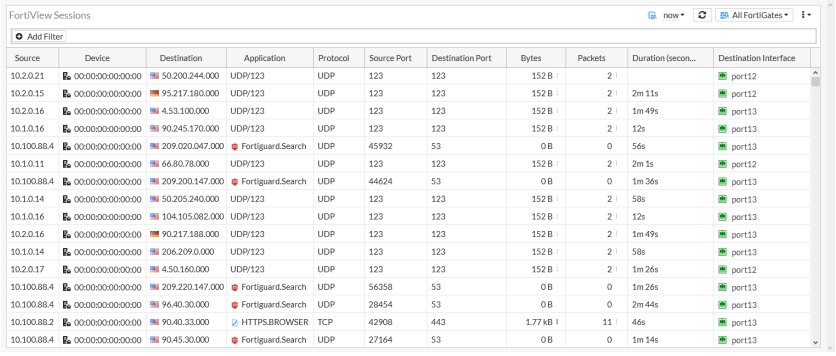
- Tracking SD-WAN sessions on page 850
- Understanding SD-WAN related logs on page 851
- SD-WAN related diagnose commands on page 854
- SD-WAN bandwidth monitoring service on page 858
- Using SNMP to monitor health check on page 860

Tracking SD-WAN sessions

You can check the destination interface in *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sessions* in order to see which port the traffic is being forwarded to.

The example below demonstrates a source-based load-balance between two SD-WAN members:

- If the source IP address is an *even* number, it will go to *port13*.
- If the source IP address is an *odd* number, it will go to *port12*.



Understanding SD-WAN related logs

This topic lists the SD-WAN related logs and explains when the logs will be triggered.

Health-check detects a failure:

- When health-check detects a failure, it will record a log:

```
34: date=2019-03-23 time=17:26:06 logid="0100022921" type="event" subtype="system"
level="critical" vd="root" eventtime=1553387165 logdesc="Routing information changed"
name="test" interface="R150" status="down" msg="Static route on interface R150 may be
removed by health-check test. Route:  (10.100.1.2->10.100.2.22 ping-down)"
```

- When health-check detects a recovery, it will record a log:

```
32: date=2019-03-23 time=17:26:54 logid="0100022921" type="event" subtype="system"
level="critical" vd="root" eventtime=1553387214 logdesc="Routing information changed"
name="test" interface="R150" status="up" msg="Static route on interface R150 may be
added by health-check test. Route:  (10.100.1.2->10.100.2.22 ping-up)"
```

Health-check has an SLA target and detects SLA qualification changes:

- When health-check has an SLA target and detects SLA changes, and changes to fail:

```
5: date=2019-04-11 time=11:48:39 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555008519816639290 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="SD-WAN Health Check(ping) SLA(1): number of pass members changes from 2 to 1."
```

- When health-check has an SLA target and detects SLA changes, and changes to pass:

```
2: date=2019-04-11 time=11:49:46 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555008586149038471 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="SD-WAN Health Check(ping) SLA(1): number of pass members changes from 1 to 2."
```

SD-WAN calculates a link's session/bandwidth over/under its ratio and stops/resumes traffic:

- When SD-WAN calculates a link's session/bandwidth over its configured ratio and stops forwarding traffic:

```
3: date=2019-04-10 time=17:15:40 logid="0100022924" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1554941740185866628 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link volume
status" interface="R160" msg="The member(3) enters into conservative status with limited
ablity to receive new sessions for too much traffic."
```

- When SD-WAN calculates a link's session/bandwidth according to its ratio and resumes forwarding traffic:

```
1: date=2019-04-10 time=17:20:39 logid="0100022924" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1554942040196041728 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link volume
status" interface="R160" msg="The member(3) resume normal status to receive new sessions
for internal adjustment."
```

The SLA mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes:

- When the SLA mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 fails the SLA check, but is still alive:

```
14: date=2019-03-23 time=17:44:12 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388252 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by SLA will be redirected in seq-num order 2(R160) 1(R150)."
```

```
15: date=2019-03-23 time=17:44:12 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388252 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) SLA order changed from 1 to 2. "
16: date=2019-03-23 time=17:44:12 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388252 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) SLA order changed from 2 to 1. "
```

- When the SLA mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 changes from fail to pass:

```
1: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388365 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by SLA will be redirected in seq-num order 1(R150) 2(R160)."
2: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388365 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) SLA order changed from 1 to 2. "
3: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388365 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) SLA order changed from 2 to 1. "
```

The priority mode service rule member's link status changes:

- When priority mode service rule member's link status changes. In this example R150 changes to better than R160, and both are still alive:

```
1: date=2019-03-23 time=17:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by packet-loss will be redirected in seq-num order 1(R150) 2
(R160)."
2: date=2019-03-23 time=17:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link quality packet-loss order changed from 1 to
2. "
3: date=2019-03-23 time=17:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) link quality packet-loss order changed from 2 to
1. "
```

- When priority mode service rule member's link status changes. In this example R160 changes to better than R150, and both are still alive:

```
6: date=2019-03-23 time=17:32:01 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387520 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by packet-loss will be redirected in seq-num order 2(R160) 1
(R150)."
7: date=2019-03-23 time=17:32:01 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387520 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) link quality packet-loss order changed from 1 to
2. "
8: date=2019-03-23 time=17:32:01 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387520 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link quality packet-loss order changed from 2 to
1. "
```

SD-WAN member is used in service and it fails the health-check:

- When SD-WAN member fails the health-check, it will stop forwarding traffic:

```
6: date=2019-04-11 time=13:33:21 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555014801844089814 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link is unreachable or miss threshold. Stop
forwarding traffic. "
```

- When SD-WAN member passes the health-check again, it will resume forwarding logs:

```
2: date=2019-04-11 time=13:33:36 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555014815914643626 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link is available. Start forwarding traffic. "
```

Load-balance mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes:

- When load-balance mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 changes to not meet SLA:

```
2: date=2019-04-11 time=14:11:16 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926510687 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service1(rule2) will be load balanced among members  2(R160) with available
routing."
3: date=2019-04-11 time=14:11:16 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926508676 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) SLA order changed from 1 to 2. "
4: date=2019-04-11 time=14:11:16 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926507182 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) SLA order changed from 2 to 1. "
```

- When load-balance mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 changes to meet SLA:

```
1: date=2019-04-11 time=14:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926510668 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service1(rule2) will be load balanced among members 1(R150) 2(R160) with available
routing."
2: date=2019-03-23 time=14:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603592651068 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link quality packet-loss order changed from 1 to
2. "
3: date=2019-03-23 time=14:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603592651068 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) link quality packet-loss order changed from 2 to
1. "
```

SLA link status logs, generated with interval sla-fail-log-period or sla-pass-log-period:

- When SLA fails, SLA link status logs will be generated with interval sla-fail-log-period:

```
7: date=2019-03-23 time=17:45:54 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388352 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="test" interface="R150" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.016, jitter: 0.002, packet
loss: 21.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth: 200Mbps, sla_map:
0x0"
```

- When SLA passes, SLA link status logs will be generated with interval sla-pass-log-period:

```
5: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1553388363 logdesc="Link monitor SLA
information" name="test" interface="R150" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.017, jitter:
0.003, packet loss: 0.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth:
200Mbps, sla_map: 0x1"
```

SD-WAN related diagnose commands

This topic lists the SD-WAN related diagnose commands and related output.

To check SD-WAN health-check status:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(server):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(15.247), jitter(5.231) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.621), jitter(6.905) sla_map=0x0

FGT  # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.683), jitter(0.082) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(dead), packet-loss(100.000%) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0
```

To check SD-WAN member status:

- When SD-WAN load-balance mode is *source-ip-based*/*source-dest-ip-based*.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0, weight:
0
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0, weight:
0
```

- When SD-WAN load-balance mode is *weight-based*.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0, weight:
33
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0, weight:
66
```

- When SD-WAN load-balance mode is *measured-volume-based*.
  - Both members are under volume and still have room:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0,
weight: 33
  Config volume ratio: 33, last reading: 8211734579B, volume room 33MB
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0,
```

```
weight: 66
  Config volume ratio: 66, last reading: 24548159B, volume room 66MB
```

- Some members are overloaded and some still have room:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
Member(1): interface: port1, gateway: 10.10.0.2, priority: 0, weight: 0
  Config volume ratio: 10, last reading: 10297221000B, overload volume 1433MB
Member(2): interface: port2, gateway: 10.11.0.2, priority: 0, weight: 38
  Config volume ratio: 50, last reading: 45944239916B, volume room 38MB
```

- When SD-WAN load balance mode is *usage-based*/*spillover*.
  - When no spillover occurs:

```
FGT # diagnose sys virtual-wan-link member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0,
weight: 255
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 400kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 300kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=0, ingress-overbps=0
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0,
weight: 254
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=0, ingress-overbps=0
```

  - When member has reached limit and spillover occurs:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0,
weight: 255
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 400kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 300kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=1, ingress-overbps=1
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0,
weight: 254
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=0, ingress-overbps=0
```

  - You can also use the `diagnose netlink dstmac list` command to check if you are over the limit.

```
FGT # diagnose netlink dstmac list port13
dev=port13 mac=08:5b:0e:ca:94:9d rx_tcp_mss=0 tx_tcp_mss=0 egress_overspill_
threshold=51200 egress_bytes=103710 egress_over_bps=1 ingress_overspill_
threshold=38400 ingress_bytes=76816 ingress_over_bps=1 sampler_rate=0
```

To check SD-WAN service rules status:

- *Manual mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *Auto mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(auto), link-cost-factor(latency), link-cost-
threshold(10), health-check(ping)
```

```
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, latency: 0.011
    2: Seq_num(1), alive, latency: 0.018, selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *Priority mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(priority), link-cost-factor(latency), link-
cost-threshold(10), health-check(ping)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, latency: 0.011, selected
    2: Seq_num(1), alive, latency: 0.017, selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *Load-balance* mode service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(load-balance)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *SLA mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

To check interface logs from the past 15 minutes:

```
FGT (root) # diagnose sys sdwan intf-sla-log R150
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:08:36 2019, used inbandwidth: 0bps, used outbandwidth: 0bps, used
bibandwidth: 0bps, tx bytes: 860bytes, rx bytes: 1794bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:08:46 2019, used inbandwidth: 1761bps, used outbandwidth: 1710bps,
used bibandwidth: 3471bps, tx bytes: 2998bytes, rx bytes: 3996bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:08:56 2019, used inbandwidth: 2452bps, used outbandwidth: 2566bps,
used bibandwidth: 5018bps, tx bytes: 7275bytes, rx bytes: 7926bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:06 2019, used inbandwidth: 2470bps, used outbandwidth: 3473bps,
used bibandwidth: 5943bps, tx bytes: 13886bytes, rx bytes: 11059bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:16 2019, used inbandwidth: 2433bps, used outbandwidth: 3417bps,
used bibandwidth: 5850bps, tx bytes: 17946bytes, rx bytes: 13960bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:26 2019, used inbandwidth: 2450bps, used outbandwidth: 3457bps,
used bibandwidth: 5907bps, tx bytes: 22468bytes, rx bytes: 17107bytes.
```

To check SLA logs in the past 10 minutes:

```
FGT (root) # diagnose sys sdwan sla-log ping 1
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:27 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.014, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 16.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:28 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
```

```
up, latency: 0.015, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 15.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:28 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.014, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 14.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:29 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.015, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 13.000%.
```

To check Application Control used in SD-WAN and the matching IP addresses:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan internet-service-app-ctrl-list
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Authentication 41475):Internet Service ID(4294836224)
        Protocol(6), Port(443)
        Address(2): 104.42.72.21 131.253.61.96
Ctrl application(Microsoft.CDN 41470):Internet Service ID(4294836225)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Lync 28554):Internet Service ID(4294836226)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Office.365 33182):Internet Service ID(4294836227)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Office.365.Portal 41468):Internet Service ID(4294836228)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Office.Online 16177):Internet Service ID(4294836229)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.OneNote 40175):Internet Service ID(4294836230)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Portal 41469):Internet Service ID(4294836231)
        Protocol(6), Port(443)
        Address(8): 23.58.134.172 131.253.33.200 23.58.135.29 204.79.197.200 64.4.54.254
23.59.156.241 13.77.170.218 13.107.22.200
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Sharepoint 16190):Internet Service ID(4294836232)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Sway 41516):Internet Service ID(4294836233)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Tenant.Namespace 41471):Internet Service ID(4294836234)
```

To check IPsec aggregate interface when SD-WAN uses the per-packet distribution feature:

```
# diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list
agg1 algo=L3 member=2 run_tally=2
members:
        vd1-p1
        vd1-p2
```

To check BGP learned routes and determine if they are used in SD-WAN service:

```
FGT # get router info bgp network
FGT # get router info bgp network 10.100.11.0
BGP routing table entry for 10.100.10.0/24
Paths: (2 available, best 1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
   172.10.22.2
  20
    10.100.20.2 from 10.100.20.2 (6.6.6.6)
      Origin EGP metric 200, localpref 100, weight 10000, valid, external, best
      Community: 30:5
      Last update: Wen Mar 20 18:45:17 2019
FGT # get router info route-map-address
Extend-tag: 15, interface(wan2:16)
        10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0

FGT # diagnose firewall proute list
list route policy info(vf=root):

id=4278779905 vwl_service=1(DataCenter) flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0
sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=16
```

```
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
destination wildcard(1): 10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0
```

SD-WAN bandwidth monitoring service

The bandwidth measuring tool is used to detect true upload and download speeds. Bandwidth tests can be run on demand or automated using a script, and can be useful when configuring SD-WAN SLA and rules to balance SD-WAN traffic.

The speed test tool requires a valid SD-WAN Bandwidth Monitoring Service license.

The speed test tool is compatible with iperf3.6 with SSL support. It can test the upload bandwidth to the FortiGate Cloud speed test service. It can initiate the server connection and send download requests to the server. The tool can be run up to 10 times a day .

FortiGate downloads the speed test server list. The list expires after 24 hours. One of the speed test servers is selected, based on user input. The speed test runs, testing upload and download speeds. The test results are shown in the command terminal.

To download the speed test server list:

```
# execute speed-test-server download
Download completed.
```

To check the speed test server list:

```
# execute speed-test-server list
AWS_West valid
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5204 fortinet
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5205 fortinet
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5206 fortinet
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5207 fortinet
Google_West valid
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5204 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5205 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5206 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5207 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5204 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5205 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5206 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5207 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5204 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5205 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5206 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5207 fortinet
```

To run the speed test:

You can run the speed test without specifying a server. The system will automatically choose one server from the list and run the speed test.

```
# execute speed-test auto
The license is valid to run speed test.
Speed test quota for 2/1 is 9
```

```
current vdom=root
Run in uploading mode.
Connecting to host 35.230.2.124, port 5206
[ 16] local 172.16.78.185 port 2475 connected to 35.230.2.124 port 5206
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr Cwnd
[ 16] 0.00-1.01 sec 11.0 MBytes 91.4 Mbits/sec 0 486 KBytes
[ 16] 1.01-2.00 sec 11.6 MBytes 98.4 Mbits/sec 0 790 KBytes
[ 16] 2.00-3.01 sec 11.0 MBytes 91.6 Mbits/sec 15 543 KBytes
[ 16] 3.01-4.01 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.2 Mbits/sec 1 421 KBytes
[ 16] 4.01-5.01 sec 11.2 MBytes 93.5 Mbits/sec 0 461 KBytes
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 16] 0.00-5.01 sec 56.1 MBytes 93.8 Mbits/sec 16 sender
[ 16] 0.00-5.06 sec 55.8 MBytes 92.6 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done.
Run in reverse downloading mode!
Connecting to host 35.230.2.124, port 5206
Reverse mode, remote host 35.230.2.124 is sending
[ 16] local 172.16.78.185 port 2477 connected to 35.230.2.124 port 5206
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate
[ 16] 0.00-1.00 sec 10.9 MBytes 91.4 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 1.00-2.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 93.9 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 2.00-3.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 3.00-4.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 93.9 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 4.00-5.00 sec 10.9 MBytes 91.1 Mbits/sec
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 16] 0.00-5.03 sec 57.5 MBytes 95.9 Mbits/sec 40 sender
[ 16] 0.00-5.00 sec 55.4 MBytes 92.9 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done
```

To run the speed test on a server farm or data center:

```
# execute speed-test auto AWS_West
The license is valid to run speed test.
Speed test quota for 2/1 is 8
current vdom=root
Run in uploading mode.
Connecting to host 34.210.67.183, port 5205
```

To run the speed test on a local interface when there are multiple valid routes:

```
# execute speed-test port1 Google_West
The license is valid to run speed test.
Speed test quota for 2/1 is 6
bind to local ip 172.16.78.202
current vdom=root
Specified interface port1 does not comply with default outgoing interface port2 in routing
table!
Force to use the specified interface!
Run in uploading mode.
Connecting to host 35.197.18.234, port 5205
[ 11] local 172.16.78.202 port 20852 connected to 35.197.18.234 port 5205
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr Cwnd
```

```
[ 11] 0.00-1.01 sec 10.7 MBytes 89.0 Mbits/sec 0 392 KBytes
[ 11] 1.01-2.01 sec 10.5 MBytes 88.5 Mbits/sec 1 379 KBytes
[ 11] 2.01-3.01 sec 11.3 MBytes 94.5 Mbits/sec 0 437 KBytes
[ 11] 3.01-4.01 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.3 Mbits/sec 0 478 KBytes
[ 11] 4.01-5.00 sec 11.3 MBytes 95.2 Mbits/sec 0 503 KBytes
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 11] 0.00-5.00 sec 55.1 MBytes 92.3 Mbits/sec 1 sender
[ 11] 0.00-5.04 sec 54.5 MBytes 90.7 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done.
Run in reverse downloading mode!
Connecting to host 35.197.18.234, port 5205
Reverse mode, remote host 35.197.18.234 is sending
[ 11] local 172.16.78.202 port 20853 connected to 35.197.18.234 port 5205
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate
[ 11] 0.00-1.00 sec 10.9 MBytes 91.1 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 1.00-2.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 2.00-3.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 3.00-4.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 4.00-5.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 11] 0.00-5.03 sec 57.4 MBytes 95.8 Mbits/sec 33 sender
[ 11] 0.00-5.00 sec 55.7 MBytes 93.4 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done.
```

To add a script to run a speed test automatically once every 24 hours:

```
config system auto-script
    edit "speedtest"
        set interval 86400
        set repeat 0
        set start auto
        set script "
execute speed-test-server download
execute speed-test"
    next
end
```

To view the results of the speed test script:

```
execute auto-script result speedtest
```

Using SNMP to monitor health check

You can monitor SD-WAN health check related statistics using SNMP. The MIB file can be downloaded by going to *System* > *SNMP* and clicking *Download FortiGate MIB File*.

The following OIDs can be monitored:

Name	OID	Description
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkNumber	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.1	The number of health check links in fgVWLHealthCheckLinkTable
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkTable	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2	SD-WAN health check statistics table. This table has a dependent expansion relationship with fgVdTable.Only health checks with a configured member link are present in this table.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkTableEntry	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1	SD-WAN health check statistics on a virtual domain.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkID	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.1	SD-WAN health check link ID. Only health checks with configured member link are present in this table. Virtual-wan-link health check link IDs are only unique within a virtual domain.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkName	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.2	Health check name.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkSeq	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.3	SD-WAN member link sequence.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkState	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.4	Health check state on a specific member link.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkLatency	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.5	The average latency of a health check on a specific member link within last 30 probes, in float number.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkJitter	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.6	The average jitter of a health check on a specific member link within last 30 probes, in float number.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkPacketSend	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.7	The total number of packets sent by a health check on a specific member link.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkPacketRecv	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.8	The total number of packets received by a health check on a specific member link.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkPacketLoss	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.9	The packet loss percentage of a health check on a specific member link within last 30 probes, in float number.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkVdom	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.10	The VDOM that the link monitor entry exists in.

Name	OID	Description
		This name corresponds to the fgVdEntName used in fgVdTable.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkBandwidthIn	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.11	The available bandwidth of incoming traffic detected by a health check on a specific member link, in Mbps,
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkBandwidthOut	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.12	The available bandwidth of outgoing traffic detected by a health check on a specific member link, in Mbps.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkBandwidthBi	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.13	The available bandwidth of bi-direction traffic detected by a health check on a specific member link, in Mbps.
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkIfName	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.14	SD-WAN member interface name.

Example

This example shows a SD-WAN health check configuration and its collected statistics.

To configure the SD-WAN health check:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config zone
        edit "virtual-wan-link"
        next
    end
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
            set gateway 192.168.2.1
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "MPLS"
            set zone "SD-Zone2"
            set cost 20
        next
        edit 3
            set interface "port2"
        next
    end
    config health-check
        edit "pingserver"
            set server "8.8.8.8"
            set sla-fail-log-period 10
            set sla-pass-log-period 20
            set members 2 1 3
```

```
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor jitter packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 2
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

The collected statistics:

fgVWLHealthCheckLinkID	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.1	1	2	3
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkName	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.2	pingserver	pingserver	pingserver
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkSeq	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.3	2	1	3
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkState	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.4	0	0	0
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkLatency	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.5	39.302	43.124	44.348
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkJitter	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.6	4.346	3.951	5.05
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkPacketSend	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.7	3657689	3657689	3657689
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkPacketRecv	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.8	3196258	3220258	3219466
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkPacketLoss	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.9	0	0	0
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkVdom	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.10	root	root	root
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkBandwidthIn	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.11	9999963	9999937	9999999
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkBandwidthOut	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.12	9999981	9999953	9999998
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkBandwidthBi	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.13	19999944	19999890	19999997
fgVWLHealthCheckLinkIfName	.1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.4.9.2.1.14	MPLS	port1	port2

System

This topic contains information about FortiGate administration and system configuration that you can do after installing the FortiGate in your network.

Basic system settings

Administrators

By default, FortiGate has an administrator account with the username *admin* and no password. See Administrators on page 867 for more information.

Administrator profiles

An administrator profile defines what the administrator can see and do on the FortiGate. See Administrator profiles on page 867 for more information.

Password policy

Set up a password policy to enforce password criteria and change frequency. See Password policy on page 873 for more information.

Interfaces

Physical and virtual interface allow traffic to flow between internal networks, and between the internet and internal networks. See Interfaces on page 402 for more information.

Advanced system settings

SNMP

The simple network management protocol (SNMP) allows you to monitor hardware on your network. See SNMP on page 1015 for more information.

DHCP server

You can configure one or more DHCP servers on any FortiGate interface. See DHCP servers and relays on page 524 for more information.

VDOM

You can use virtual domains (VDOMs) to divide a FortiGate into multiple virtual devices that function independently. See Virtual Domains on page 904 for more information.

High availability

You can configure multiple FortiGate devices, including private and public cloud VMs, in HA mode. See High Availability on page 929 for more information.

Certificates

You can manage certificates on the FortiGate. See Certificates on page 1050 for more information.

Operating modes

A FortiGate or VDOM (in multi-vdom mode) can operate in either NAT/route mode or transparent mode.

NAT/route mode

The FortiGate or VDOM is installed as a gateway or router between multiple networks, such as a private network and the internet. One function of NAT/route mode is to allow the FortiGate to hide the IP addresses on the private network using NAT. NAT/route mode can also be used to connect to multiple ISPs in an SD-WAN setup, and to route traffic between different networks. .

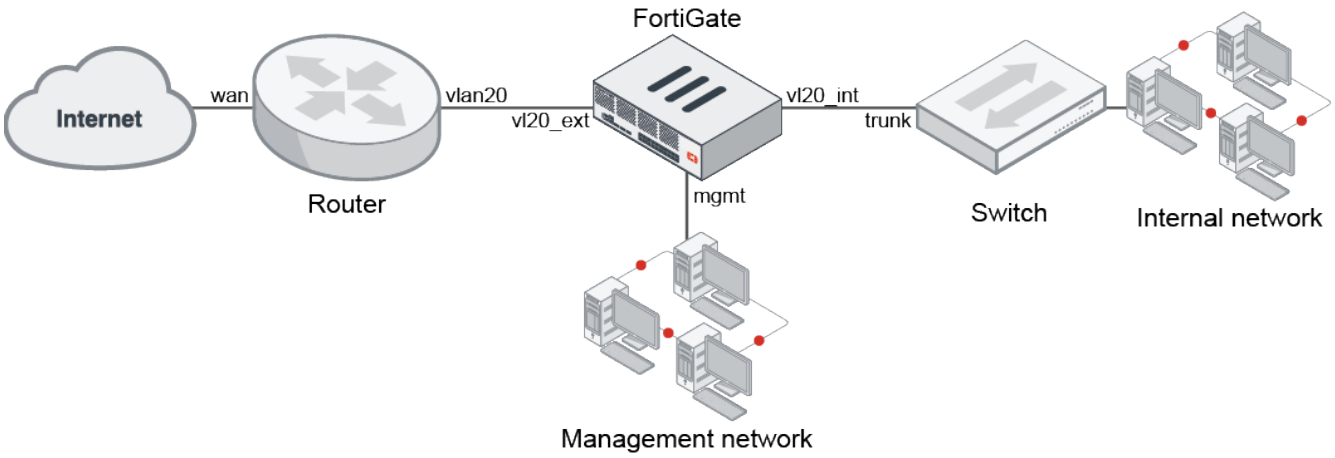
By default, new VDOMs are set to NAT/route operation mode.

See NAT mode on page 913 for more information.

Transparent mode

The FortiGate or VDOM operates in layer 2 to forward traffic between network devices such as routers, firewalls, and switches. For example. it can be installed inline between a router and a switch to perform security scanning without changing the network topology or modifying the IP addresses. When you add a FortiGate that is in transparent mode to a network, it only needs to be provided with a management IP address in order to access the device. It is recommended that a dedicated interface is used to connect to the management network in transparent mode.

The following topology is an example of a transparent mode FortiGate inserted inline between a router and a switch:



Using transparent mode VDOMs is recommended when multiple VLANs pass through the FortiGate. Otherwise, they must be separated into different forwarding domains within the same VDOM.

See NAT and transparent mode on page 922 for more information.

Changing modes

The following is a sample configuration for changing from NAT/route operation mode to transparent operation mode in the CLI:

```
config system settings
    set opmode transparent
    set manageip <IP_address>
    set gateway <gateway_address>
end
```

The gateway setting is optional. However, once the operation mode is changed from NAT/route to transparent, the gateway configuration is found under the static router settings:

```
config router static
    edit <seq-num>
        set gateway <IP_address>
    next
end
```

The following is a sample configuration for changing from transparent operation to NAT/route operation mode in the CLI:

```
config system settings
    set opmode nat
    set ip <IP_address>
    set device <interface>
    set gateway <gateway_address>
end
```



The IP and device settings are mandatory. Once the operation mode is changed from transparent to NAT/route, the IP address configuration is found under the corresponding interface settings:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        set ip <IP_address>
    next
end
```

The gateway setting is optional. However, once the operation mode is changed, the gateway configuration is found under the static router settings:

```
config router static
    edit <seq-num>
        set gateway <IP_address>
        device <interface>
    next
end
```

Administrators

By default, FortiGate has an administrator account with the username *admin* and no password. To prevent unauthorized access to the FortiGate, this account must be protected with a password. Additional administrators can be added for various functions, each with a unique username, password, and set of access privileges.

The following topics provide information about administrators:

- Administrator profiles on page 867
- Add a local administrator on page 870
- Remote authentication for administrators on page 871
- Password policy on page 873
- Admin profile option for diagnose access on page 874
- REST API administrator on page 876
- SSO administrators on page 877

Administrator profiles

Administrator profiles define what the administrator can do when logged into the FortiGate. When you set up an administrator account, you also assign an administrator profile which dictates what the administrator sees. Depending on the nature of the administrator's work, access level or seniority, you can allow them to view and configure as much or as little as is required.

By default, the FortiGate has an *admin* administrator account that uses the *super_admin* profile.

super_admin profile

This profile has access to all components of FortiOS, including the ability to add and remove other system administrators. For certain administrative functions, such as backing up and restoring the configuration, super_admin access is required. To ensure that there is always a method to administer the FortiGate, the super_admin profile cannot be deleted or modified.



Lower level administrator profiles cannot backup or restore the FortiOS configuration.

The super_admin profile is used by the default admin account. It is recommended that you add a password and rename this account once you have set up your FortiGate. In order to rename the default account, a second admin account is required.

Creating customized profiles

To create a profile in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Admin Profiles* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:
   - Name.
   - Access permissions.
   - Override idle timeout.
3. Click *OK*.

To create a profile in the CLI:

```
config system accprofile
    edit <name>
        set secfabgrp {none | read | read-write}
        set ftviewgrp {none | read | read-write}
        set authgrp {none | read | read-write}
        set sysgrp {none | read | read-write | custom}
        set netgrp {none | read | read-write | custom}
        set loggrp {none | read | read-write | custom}
        set fwgrp {none | read | read-write | custom}
        set vpngrp {none | read | read-write}
        set utmgrp {none | read | read-write | custom}
        set wanoptgrp {none | read | read-write}
        set wifi {none | read | read-write}
    next
end
```

Displaying execute commands for custom system permissions

A custom access profile can have customized system permissions. In this example, a profile is created for maintenance read access, and the profile is applied to a new system administrator account. Once the administrator logs in, they can view the available execute commands by entering `execute ?` in the CLI.

To create the profile:

1. Configure the access profile:

```
config system accprofile
    edit "mnt test"
        set sysgrp custom
        config sysgrp-permission
            set mnt read
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the system administrator account:

```
config system admin
    edit "mnt"
        set accprofile "mnt test"
        set vdom "root"
        set password ********
    next
end
```

To display the list of the execute commands:

```
$ execute ?
backup                backup
fctems                fctems
ping                  PING command.
ping-options          ping-options
ping6                 PINGv6 command. [Take 0-100 arg(s)]
ping6-options         ping6-options
telnet-options        telnet-options
traceroute            Traceroute {IP|hostname}.
traceroute-options    traceroute-options
tracert6              Traceroute for IPv6. [Take 0-32 arg(s)]
usb-device            usb-device
usb-disk              usb-disk
vm-license-options    VM license options.
```



The output will vary based on the FortiGate model. A FortiGate VM is used in this example. For more information about using the CLI, see CLI basics on page 28.

Editing profiles

To edit a profile in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Admin Profiles*.
2. Select the profile to be edited and click *Edit*.
3. Click *OK* to save any changes.

To edit a profile in the CLI:

```
config system accprofile
    edit "sample"
        set secfabgrp read
    next
end
```

Deleting profiles

To delete a profile in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Admin Profiles*.
2. Select the profile to be deleted and click *Delete*.
3. Click *OK*.

To delete a profile in the CLI:

```
config system accprofile
    delete "sample"
end
```

Add a local administrator

By default, FortiGate has one super admin named `admin`. You can create more administrator accounts with different privileges.

To create an administrator account in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Administrator*.
3. Specify the *Username*.



Do not use the characters `< > ( ) # " '` in the administrator username.

Using these characters in an administrator username might have a cross site scripting (XSS) vulnerability.

4. Set *Type* to *Local User*.
5. Set the password and other fields.
6. Click *OK*.

To create an administrator account in the CLI:

```
config system admin
    edit <admin_name>
        set accprofile <profile_name>
        set vdom <vdom_name>
        set password <password for this admin>
    next
end
```

Remote authentication for administrators

Administrators can use remote authentication, such as LDAP, to connect to the FortiGate.

Setting up remote authentication for administrators includes the following steps:

1. Configuring the LDAP server on page 871
2. Adding the LDAP server to a user group on page 871
3. Configuring the administrator account on page 872

Configuring the LDAP server

To configure the LDAP server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the server *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
3. Enter the *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
4. Set the *Bind Type* to *Regular* and enter the *Username* and *Password*.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure the LDAP server in the CLI:

```
config user ldap
    edit <name>
        set server <server_ip>
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=XYZ,dc=fortinet,dc=COM"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,dc=XYA, dc=COM"
        set password <password>
    next
end
```

Adding the LDAP server to a user group

After configuring the LDAP server, create a user group that includes that LDAP server.

To create a user group in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a *Name* for the group.
3. In the *Remote groups* section, select *Create New*.
4. Select the *Remote Server* from the dropdown list.
5. Click *OK*.

To create a user group in the CLI:

```
config user group
    edit <name>
        set member <ldap_server_name>
```

```
    next
end
```

Configuring the administrator account

After configuring the LDAP server and adding it to a user group, create a new administrator. For this administrator, instead of entering a password, use the new user group for authentication.

To create an administrator in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *Administrator*.
2. Specify the *Username*.
3. Set *Type* to *Match all users in a remote server group*.
4. In *Remote User Group*, select the user group you created.
5. Select an *Administrator Profile*.
6. Click *OK*.

To create an administrator in the CLI:

```
config system admin
    edit <name>
        set remote-auth enable
        set accprofile super_admin
        set wildcard enable
        set remote-group <ldap_group_name>
    next
end
```



The *Match all users in a remote server group* option acts as a wildcard for matching any users against the remote server group. The *Match a user on a remote server group* option only matches the username defined to match against the remote server group, which is the equivalent of using `set wildcard disable`.

Other methods of administrator authentication

Administrator accounts can use different methods for authentication, including RADIUS, TACACS+, and PKI.

RADIUS authentication for administrators

To use a RADIUS server to authenticate administrators, you must:

1. Configure the FortiGate to access the RADIUS server.
2. Create the RADIUS user group.
3. Configure an administrator to authenticate with a RADIUS server.

TACACS+ authentication for administrators

To use a TACACS+ server to authenticate administrators, you must:

1. Configure the FortiGate to access the TACACS+ server.
2. Create a TACACS+ user group.
3. Configure an administrator to authenticate with a TACACS+ server.

PKI certificate authentication for administrators

To use PKI authentication for an administrator, you must:

1. Configure a PKI user.
2. Create a PKI user group.
3. Configure an administrator to authenticate with a PKI certificate.

Restricting logins from local administrator accounts when remote servers are available

There is an optional setting that restricts logins from local administrator accounts when remote servers are available. This is disabled by default, but can be enabled globally. This option only works when all configured remote servers are down.

To restrict local administrator authentication when a remote authentication server is running:

```
config system global
    set admin-restrict-local enable
end
```

Password policy

Brute force password software can launch more than just dictionary attacks. It can discover common passwords where a letter is replaced by a number. For example, if `p4ssw0rd` is used as a password, it can be cracked.

Using secure passwords is vital for preventing unauthorized access to your FortiGate. When changing the password, consider the following to ensure better security:

- Do not use passwords that are obvious, such as the company name, administrator names, or other obvious words or phrases.
- Use numbers in place of letters, for example: `passw0rd`.
- Administrator passwords can be up to 64 characters.
- Include a mixture of numbers, symbols, and upper and lower case letters.
- Use multiple words together, or possibly even a sentence, for example: `correcthorsebatterystaple`.
- Use a password generator.
- Change the password regularly and always make the new password unique and not a variation of the existing password. for example, do not change from `password` to `password1`.
- Make note of the password and store it in a safe place away from the management computer, in case you forget it; or ensure at least two people know the password in the event one person becomes unavailable. Alternatively, have two different admin logins.

FortiGate allows you to create a password policy for administrators and IPsec pre-shared keys. With this policy, you can enforce regular changes and specific criteria for a password policy, including:

- Minimum length between 8 and 64 characters.
- If the password must contain uppercase (A, B, C) and/or lowercase (a, b, c) characters.

- If the password must contain numbers (1, 2, 3).
- If the password must contain special or non-alphanumeric characters (!, @, #, $, %, ^, &, *, (, and)).
- Where the password applies (admin or IPsec or both).
- The duration of the password before a new one must be specified.

If you add a password policy or change the requirements on an existing policy, the next time that administrator logs into the FortiGate, the administrator is prompted to update the password to meet the new requirements before proceeding to log in.

For information about setting passwords, see Default administrator password on page 887.

To create a system password policy the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Password Policy* section, change the *Password scope* to *Admin*, *IPsec*, or *Both*.
3. Configure the password policy options.
4. Click *Apply*.

To create a system password policy the CLI:

```
config system password-policy
    set status {enable | disable}
    set apply-to {admin-password | ipsec-preshared-key}
    set minimum-length <8-128>
    set min-lower-case-letter <0-128>
    set min-upper-case-letter <0-128>
    set min-non-alphanumeric <0-128>
    set min-number <0-128>
    set change-4-characters {enable | disable}
    set expire-status {enable | disable}
    set expire-day <1-999>
    set reuse-password {enable | disable}
end
```

Admin profile option for diagnose access

The `system-diagnostics` command in an administrator profile can be used to control access to diagnose commands for global and VDOM level administrators.

To block an administrator's access to diagnose commands:

1. Create an admin profile that cannot access diagnose commands:

```
config system accprofile
    edit "nodiagnose"
        ...
        set system-diagnostics disable
    next
end
```

2. Apply the profile to an administrator:

```
config system admin
    edit "nodiag"
        set accprofile "nodiagnose"
        set vdom "root"
        set password ********
    next
end
```

3. Log in as that administrator and confirm that they cannot access diagnose commands:

```
$ ?
config     Configure object.
get        Get dynamic and system information.
show       Show configuration.
execute    Execute static commands.
alias      Execute alias commands.
exit       Exit the CLI.
```

Associating a FortiToken to an administrator account

You can also associate FortiTokens with administrator accounts.

To associate a FortiToken to an administrator account using the GUI:

1. Ensure that you have successfully added your FortiToken serial number to FortiOS and that its status is *Available*.
2. Go to *System* > *Administrators*. Edit the admin account. This example assumes that the account is fully configured except for two-factor authentication.
3. Enable *Two-factor Authentication*.
4. From the *Token* dropdown list, select the desired FortiToken serial number.
5. In the *Email Address* field, enter the administrator's email address.
6. Click *OK*.



For a mobile token, click *Send Activation Code* to send the activation code to the configured email address. The admin uses this code to activate their mobile token. You must have configured an email service in *System* > *Settings* to send the activation code.

To associate a FortiToken to an administrator account using the CLI:

```
config system admin
   edit <username>
      set password "myPassword"
      set two-factor fortitoken
      set fortitoken <serial_number>
      set email-to "username@example.com"
   next
end
```

The `fortitoken` keyword is not visible until you select `fortitoken` for the `two-factor` option.



Before you can use a new FortiToken, you may need to synchronize it due to clock drift.

REST API administrator

REST API administrator accounts are used for automated configuration, backup creation, and monitoring of the FortiGate.

For more information about the REST API, see the Fortinet Development Network (FNDN). Note that an account is required to access the FNDN.

To create a REST API administrator in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Select *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
3. Configure the administrator:

Username	The username of the administrator. Do not use the characters `< > ( ) # " '` in the administrator username. Using these characters in an administrator username might have a cross site scripting (XSS) vulnerability.
Administrator Profile	Where permissions for the REST API administrator are defined. A REST API administrator should have the minimum permissions required to complete the request.
PKI Group	Certificate matching is supported as an extra layer of security. Both the client certificate and token must match to be granted access to the API.
CORS Allow Origin	Cross Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) allows third-party web apps to make API requests to the FortiGate using the token.
Trusted Hosts	The following can be used to restrict access to FortiGate API: • Multiple trusted hosts/subnets can be configured • IPv6 hosts are supported • Allow all (0.0.0.0/0) is not allowed You need your *Source Address* to create the trusted host.

4. Click *OK*.
   An API token is generated. Make note of the token, as it is only shown once.

To create a REST API administrator in the CLI:

1. Create the REST API administrator:

```
config system api-user
    edit "api-admin"
```

```
            set comments <string>
            set api-key ************
            set accprofile "API profile"
            set vdom "root"
            config trusthost
                edit 1
                    set ipv4-trusthost <class_ip&net_netmask>
                next
                ...
            end
        next
    end
```

2. Generate the API token:

   ```
   # execute api-user generate-key <API username>
   ```

   Make note of the token, as it is only shown once.

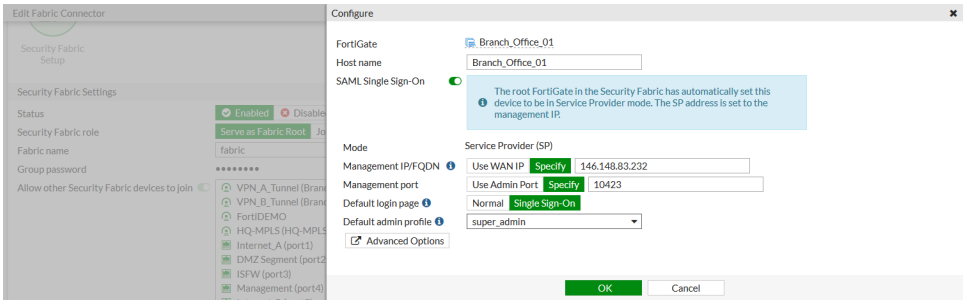


By default, The SSO administrator account can only be assigned the *admin_no_access* or *super_admin_readonly* profile. You can define a new administrator profile with the required permissions for the account. For example, you could use a specific API user to query the FortiGate for just their own status. In that case, the profile would be configured as read-only.

SSO administrators

SSO administrators are automatically created when the FortiGate acts as a SAML service provider (SP) with *SAML Single Sign-On* enabled in the Security Fabric settings.

On the system login page, an administrator can log in with their username and password against the root FortiGate acting as the identity provider (IdP) in the Security Fabric. After the first successful login, this user is added to the administrators table (*System* > *Administrators* under *Single Sign-On Administrator*). The default profile selected is based on the SP settings (*Default admin profile*). See Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP on page 222 for more information.



SSO administrators can be manually configured in FortiOS.

To manually configure an SSO administrator:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *SSO Admin*.
2. Enter the username.
3. Select an administrator profile.
4. Click *OK*.

Firmware

Fortinet periodically updates the FortiGate firmware to include new features and resolve important issues. After you have registered your FortiGate unit, firmware updates can be downloaded from the Fortinet Customer Service & Support website.



Always back up the current configuration before installing new firmware. See Configuration backups on page 56.

Before you install any new firmware, follow the below steps:

1. Understand the maturity level of the current and target firmware releases to help you determine whether to upgrade. See Firmware maturity levels on page 878.
2. Review the Release Notes for a new firmware release.
3. Review the Supported Upgrade Paths.
4. Download a copy of the currently installed firmware, in case you need to revert to it. See Downloading a firmware image on page 880 and Downgrading to a previous firmware version on page 883 for details.
5. Have a plan in place in case there is a critical failure, such as the FortiGate not coming back online after the update. This could include having console access to the device (Connecting to the CLI on page 26), ensuring that you TFTP server is working (Installing firmware from system reboot on page 884), and preparing a USB drive (Restoring from a USB drive on page 886).
6. Back up the current configuration, including local certificates. See Configuration backups on page 56 for details.
7. Test the new firmware until you are satisfied that it applies to your configuration. See Testing a firmware version on page 881 and Controlled upgrade on page 886 for details.

Installing new firmware without reviewing release notes or testing the firmware may result in changes to settings and unexpected issues.



Only FortiGate admin users and administrators whose access profiles contain system read and write privileges can change the FortiGate firmware.

Firmware maturity levels

Released FortiOS 6.4.10 and later firmware images use tags to indicate the following maturity levels:

- The *Feature* tag indicates that the firmware release includes new features.
- The *Mature* tag indicates that the firmware release includes no new, major features. Mature firmware contains bug fixes and vulnerability patches where applicable.

Administrators can use the `get system status` command to identify the maturity level of the current firmware.

To view maturity levels for firmware in the CLI:

```
# get system status
Version: FortiGate-VM64-KVM v6.4.10,build2000,220824 (GA.M)
...
```

In this example, the `Version` field includes `.M` to indicate that the maturity level is mature.

```
# get system status
Version: FortiGate-VM64-KVM v7.2.0,build1157,220331 (GA.F)
...
```

In this example, the `Version` field includes `.F` to indicate that the maturity level is feature.

Firmware upgrade notifications

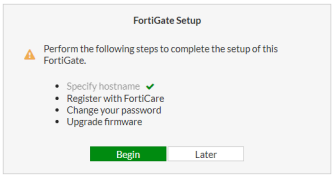
FortiGates with a firmware upgrade license that are connected to FortiGuard display upgrade notifications in the setup window, banner, and FortiGuard menu. The firmware notifications are enabled by default.

To configure firmware notifications in the CLI:

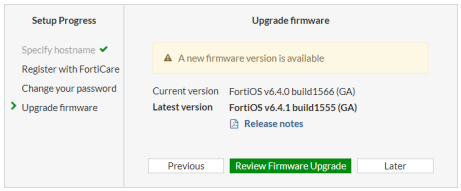
```
config system global
    set gui-firmware-upgrade-warning {enable | disable}
end
```

To use the firmware upgrade notifications in the GUI:

1. When you log in to FortiGate, the *FortiGate Setup* window includes an *Upgrade firmware* step. Click *Begin*.

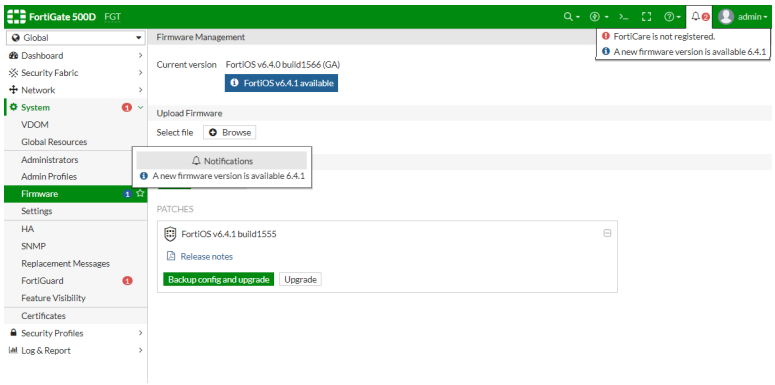


2. Follow the steps in the *Setup Progress*, then click *Review Firmware Upgrade*.



   The *System* > *Firmware* page opens.

3. Notifications appear below the *Notification* icon in the banner, and beside *Firmware* in the tree menu.



Downloading a firmware image

Firmware images for all FortiGate units are available on the Fortinet Customer Service & Support website.

To download firmware:

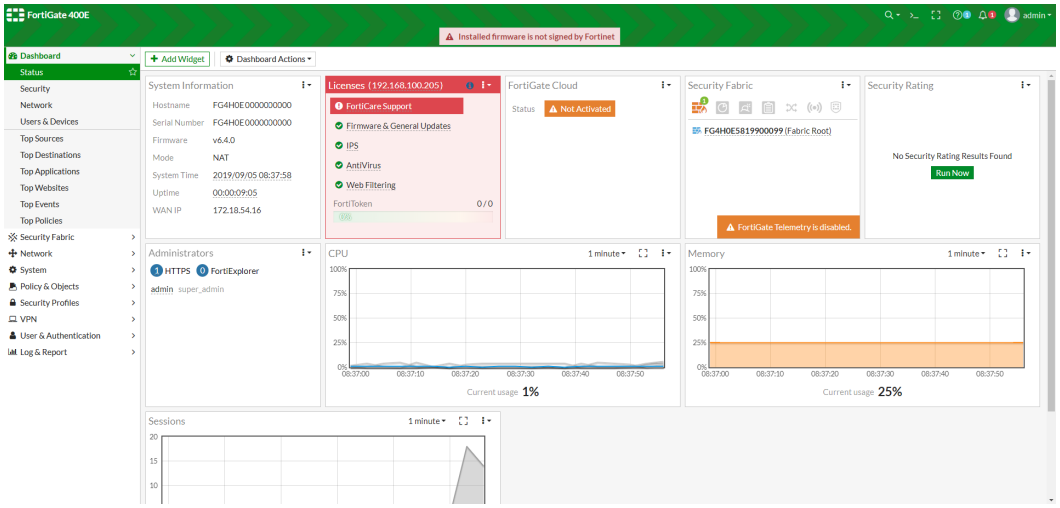
1. Log into the support site with your user name and password.
2. Go to *Download* > *Firmware Images*.
   A list of Release Notes is shown. If you have not already done so, download and review the Release Notes for the firmware version that you are upgrading your FortiGate unit to.
3. Select the *Download* tab.
4. Navigate to the folder for the firmware version that you are upgrading to.
5. Find your device model from the list. FortiWiFi devices have file names that start with *FWF*.
6. Click *HTTPS* in the far right column to download the firmware image to your computer.

Firmware can also be downloaded using FTP, but as FTP is not an encrypted file transferring protocol, HTTPS downloading is recommended.

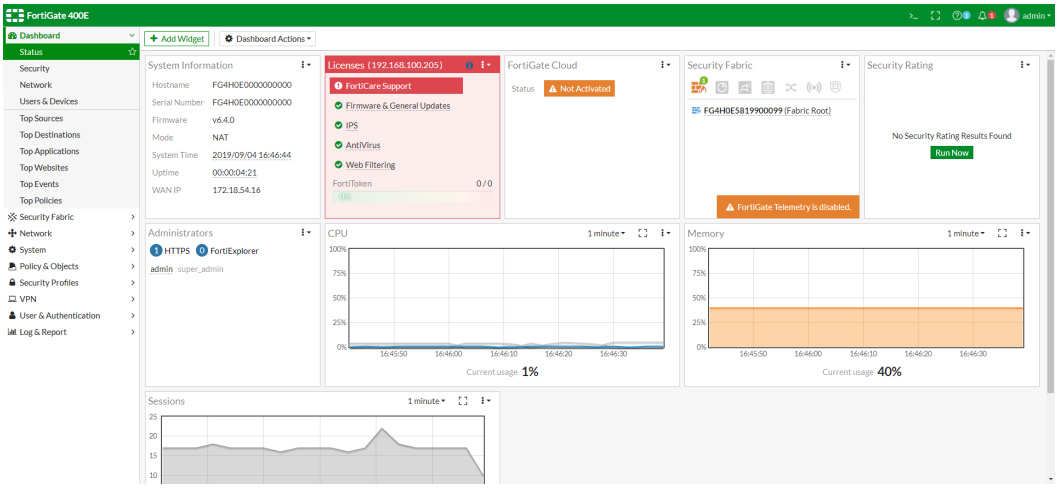
FortiOS image signing and verification

Official FortiOS firmware images are signed by the Fortinet CA. The BIOS checks the validity of an image when it is uploaded to the device. If the image is not signed by the Fortinet CA, a warning message is shown in the GUI.

Unsigned image:



Signed image:



This feature is implemented on all FortiGate F-series models and E-series models released in 2019 and later.

Testing a firmware version

The integrity of firmware images downloaded from Fortinet's support portal can be verified using a file checksum. A file checksum that does not match the expected value indicates a corrupt file. The corruption could be caused by errors in transfer or by file modification. A list of expected checksum values for each build of released code is available on Fortinet's support portal.

Image integrity is also verified when the FortiGate is booting up. This integrity check is done through a cyclic redundancy check (CRC). If the CRC fails, the FortiGate unit will encounter an error during the boot process.

Firmware images are signed and the signature is attached to the code as it is built. When upgrading an image, the running OS will generate a signature and compare it with the signature attached to the image. If the signatures do not match, the new OS will not load.

Testing before installation

FortiOS lets you test a new firmware image by installing the firmware image from a system reboot and saving it to system memory. After completing this procedure, the FortiGate unit operates using the new firmware image with the current configuration. The new firmware image is not permanently installed. The next time the FortiGate unit restarts, it operates with the originally installed firmware image using the current configuration. If the new firmware image operates successfully, you can install it permanently using the procedure explained in Upgrading the firmware.

For this procedure, you must install a TFTP server that you can connect to from the FortiGate internal interface. The TFTP server should be on the same subnet as the internal interface.

To test the new firmware version:

1. Connect to the CLI using an RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9) or null modem cable.
2. Ensure that the TFTP server is running.
3. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory on the TFTP server.
4. Ensure that the FortiGate unit can connect to the TFTP server using the `execute ping` command.

5. Restart the FortiGate unit: `execute reboot`. The following message is shown:
   ```
   This operation will reboot the system!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. As the FortiGate unit starts, a series of system startup messages appears.
7. When the following messages appears:
   ```
   Press any key to display configuration menu.........
   ```
   Immediately press any key to interrupt the system startup.

   You have only three seconds to press any key. If you do not press a key during this time, the FortiGate will reboot, and you will have to log in and repeat the `execute reboot` command.

   If you successfully interrupt the startup process, the following messages appears:
   ```
   [G]: Get firmware image from TFTP server.
   [F]: Format boot device.
   [B]: Boot with backup firmware and set as default
   [C]: Configuration and information
   [Q]: Quit menu and continue to boot with default firmware.
   [H]: Display this list of options.
   Enter G, F, Q, or H:
   ```
8. Type *G* to get the new firmware image from the TFTP server. The following message appears: `Enter TFTP server address [192.168.1.168]:`
9. Type the address of the TFTP server, then press *Enter*. The following message appears: `Enter Local Address [192.168.1.188]:`
10. Type the IP address of the FortiGate unit to connect to the TFTP server.



The IP address must be on the same network as the TFTP server.

Make sure that you do not enter the IP address of another device on this network.

The following message appears:
```
Enter File Name [image.out]:
```

11. Enter the firmware image file name then press *Enter*. The TFTP server uploads the firmware image file to the FortiGate unit and the following message appears:
    ```
    Save as Default firmware/Backup firmware/Run image without saving: [D/B/R]
    ```
12. Type *R*. The FortiGate image is installed to system memory and the FortiGate unit starts running the new firmware image, but with its current configuration.

Test the new firmware image as required. When done testing, reboot the FortiGate unit, and the it will resume using the firmware that was running before you installed the test firmware.

Upgrading the firmware

Installing a new firmware image replaces the current antivirus and attack definitions, along with the definitions included with the firmware release that is being installed. After you install new firmware, make sure that the antivirus and attack definitions are up to date.



Back up your configuration before making any firmware changes.

To upgrade the firmware in the GUI:

1. Log into the FortiGate GUI as the admin administrative user.
2. Go to *System* > *Firmware*.
3. Under *Latest* or *All available*, select a firmware version, and click *Backup config and upgrade*.
   Alternately, under *Upload Firmware*, click *Browse* and locate the previously downloaded firmware image file (see Downloading a firmware image on page 880).
4. Review the warning, and click *Continue* to initiate the upgrade.
   The FortiGate unit backs up the current configuration to the management computer, uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.

To upgrade the firmware in the CLI:

1. Make sure that the TFTP server is running.
2. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory of the TFTP server.
3. Log into the CLI.
4. Ping the TFTP server to ensure that the FortiGate can connect to it:
   ```
   execute ping <tftp_ipv4>
   ```
5. Enter the following command to copy the firmware image from the TFTP server to the FortiGate unit:
   ```
   execute restore image tftp <filename> <tftp_ipv4>
   ```
   The FortiGate unit responds with the message:
   ```
   This operation will replace the current firmware version!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
7. Reconnect to the CLI.
8. Update the antivirus and attack definitions:
   ```
   execute update-now
   ```

Downgrading to a previous firmware version



Downgrading the firmware is not recommended.

This procedure downgrades the FortiGate to a previous firmware version. The backup configuration might not be able to be restored after downgrading.

To downgrade to a previous firmware version in the GUI:

1. Log into the FortiGate GUI as the admin administrative user.
2. Go to *System* > *Firmware*.
3. Under *Upload Firmware*, click *Browse* and locate the previously downloaded firmware image file (see Downloading a firmware image on page 880).
4. Enable *Confirm version downgrade*.

5. Click *Backup config and downgrade*.
   The FortiGate unit backs up the current configuration to the management computer, uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.

To downgrade to a previous firmware version in the CLI:

1. Make sure that the TFTP server is running.
2. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory of the TFTP server.
3. Log into the CLI.
4. Ping the TFTP server to ensure that the FortiGate can connect to it:
   ```
   execute ping <tftp_ipv4>
   ```
5. Enter the following command to copy the firmware image from the TFTP server to the FortiGate unit:
   ```
   execute restore image tftp <filename> <tftp_ipv4>
   ```
   The FortiGate unit responds with the message:
   ```
   This operation will replace the current firmware version!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit uploads the firmware image file, then a message similar to the following is shown:
   ```
   Get image from tftp server OK.
   Check image OK.
   This operation will downgrade the current firmware version!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
7. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit downgrades to the old firmware version and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
8. Reconnect to the CLI.
9. Update the antivirus and attack definitions:
   ```
   execute update-now
   ```

Installing firmware from system reboot

In the event that the firmware upgrade does not load properly and the FortiGate unit will not boot, or continuously reboots, it is best to perform a fresh install of the firmware from a reboot using the CLI. If configured, the firmware can also be automatically installed from a USB drive; see Restoring from a USB drive on page 886 for details.

This procedure installs a firmware image and resets the FortiGate unit to factory default settings. You can use this procedure to upgrade to a new firmware version, revert to an older firmware version, or re-install the current firmware.

To use this procedure, you must connect to the CLI using the FortiGate console port and a RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9), or null modem cable. You must also install a TFTP server that you can connect to from the FortiGate internal interface. The TFTP server should be on the same subnet as the internal interface.

Before beginning this procedure, ensure that you backup the FortiGate unit configuration. See Configuration backups on page 56 for details. If you are reverting to a previous FortiOS version, you might not be able to restore the previous configuration from the backup configuration file.

Installing firmware replaces your current antivirus and attack definitions, along with the definitions included with the firmware release you are installing. After you install new firmware, make sure that antivirus and attack definitions are up to date.

To install firmware from a system reboot:

1. Connect to the CLI using the RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9) or null modem cable.
2. Ensure that the TFTP server is running.

3. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory of the TFTP server.
4. Ensure that the FortiGate unit can connect to the TFTP server using the `execute ping` command.
5. Restart the FortiGate unit: `execute reboot`. The following message is shown:
   ```
   This operation will reboot the system!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. As the FortiGate unit starts, a series of system startup messages appears.
7. When the following messages appears:
   ```
   Press any key to display configuration menu.....
   ```
   Immediately press any key to interrupt the system startup.

   You have only three seconds to press any key. If you do not press a key during this time, the FortiGate will reboot, and you will have to log in and repeat the `execute reboot` command.

   If you successfully interrupt the startup process, the following messages appears:

   ```
   [C]: Configure TFTP parameters.
   [R]: Review TFTP parameters.
   [T]: Initiate TFTP firmware transfer.
   [F]: Format boot device.
   [I]: System information.
   [B]: Boot with backup firmware and set as default.
   [Q]: Quit menu and continue to boot.
   [H]: Display this list of options.

   Enter C,R,T,F,I,B,Q,or H:
   ```
8. If necessary, type `C` to configure the TFTP parameters, then type `Q` to return to the previous menu:

   ```
   [P]: Set firmware download port.
   [D]: Set DHCP mode.
   [I]: Set local IP address.
   [S]: Set local subnet mask.
   [G]: Set local gateway.
   [V]: Set local VLAN ID.
   [T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address.
   [F]: Set firmware file name.
   [E]: Reset TFTP parameters to factory defaults.
   [R]: Review TFTP parameters.
   [N]: Diagnose networking(ping).
   [Q]: Quit this menu.
   [H]: Display this list of options.

   Enter P,D,I,S,G,V,T,F,E,R,N,Q,or H:
   ```



The IP address must be on the same network as the TFTP server.

Make sure that you do not enter the IP address of another device on this network.

9. Type `T` get the new firmware image from the TFTP server.
   The FortiGate unit loads the firmware.
10. Save the firmware as the default (`D`) or backup (`B`) firmware image, or run the image without saving it (`R`).
    The FortiGate unit installs the new firmware image and restarts. The installation might take a few minutes to complete.

Restoring from a USB drive

The FortiGate firmware can be manually restored from a USB drive, or installed automatically from a USB drive after a reboot.

To restore the firmware from a USB drive:

1. Copy the firmware file to the root directory on the USB drive.
2. Connect the USB drive to the USB port of the FortiGate device.
3. Connect to the FortiGate CLI using the RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9) or null modem cable.
4. Enter the following command:
   ```
   execute restore image usb <filename>
   ```
   The FortiGate unit responds with the following message:
   ```
   This operation will replace the current firmware version! Do you want to continue?
        (y/n)
   ```
5. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit restores the firmware and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
6. Update the antivirus and attack definitions:
   ```
   execute update-now
   ```

To install firmware automatically from a USB drive:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Start Up Settings* section, enable *Detect firmware* and enter the name of the firmware file.
3. Copy the firmware file to the root directory on the USB drive.
4. Connect the USB drive to the USB port of the FortiGate device.
5. Reboot the FortiGate device.

Controlled upgrade

Using a controlled upgrade, you can upload a new version of the FortiOS firmware to a separate partition in the FortiGate memory for later upgrade. The FortiGate unit can be configured so that when it is rebooted, it will automatically load the new firmware. Using this option, you can stage multiple FortiGate units to upgrade simultaneously using FortiManager or a script.

To load the firmware for later installation:

```
execute restore secondary-image {ftp | tftp | usb} <filename_str>
```

To set the FortiGate unit so that when it reboots, the new firmware is loaded:

```
execute set-next-reboot {primary | secondary}
```

where `{primary | secondary}` is the partition with the preloaded firmware.

Settings

The default administrator password should be configured immediately after the FortiGate is installed, see Default administrator password on page 887.

After that, there are several system settings that should also be configured in *System* > *Settings*:

- Changing the host name on page 888
- Setting the system time on page 888
- Configuring ports on page 892
- Setting the idle timeout time on page 892
- Setting the password policy on page 893
- Changing the view settings on page 893
- Setting the administrator password retries and lockout time on page 894
- TLS configuration on page 894
- Controlling return path with auxiliary session on page 895
- Email alerts on page 899
- Trusted platform module support on page 902

Default administrator password

By default, your FortiGate has an administrator account set up with the username `admin` and no password. In order to prevent unauthorized access to the FortiGate, it is highly recommended that you add a password to this account.



In FortiOS 6.2.1 and later, adding a password to the *admin* administrator is mandatory. You will be prompted to configured it the first time you log in to the FortiGate using that account, after a factory reset, and after a new image installation.

To change the default password in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Edit the *admin* account.
3. Click *Change Password*.
4. If applicable, enter the current password in the *Old Password* field.
5. Enter a password in the *New Password* field, then enter it again in the *Confirm Password* field.
6. Click *OK*.

To change the default password in the CLI:

```
config system admin
    edit admin
        set password <password>
    next
end
```



It is also recommended that you change the user name of this account; however, since you cannot change the user name of an account that is currently in use, a second administrator account must be created in order to do this.

Changing the host name

The FortiGate host name is shown in the *Hostname* field in the *System Information* widget on a dashboard, as the command prompt in the CLI, as the SNMP system name, as the device name on FortiGate Cloud, and other places. If the FortiGate is in an HA cluster, use a unique host name to distinguish it from the other devices in the cluster.

An administrator requires *System* > *Configuration* read/write access to edit the host name. See Administrator profiles on page 867 for details.

To change the host name in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Host name* field, enter a new name.
3. Click *Apply*.

To change the host name in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set hostname <hostname>
end
```

Setting the system time

You can either manually set the FortiOS system time, or configure the device to automatically keep its system time correct by synchronizing with a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

Daylight savings time is enabled by default, and can only be configured in the CLI.



For many features to work, including scheduling, logging, and SSL-dependent features, the FortiOS system time must be accurate.

To configure the date and time in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *System Time* section, configure the following settings to either manually set the time or use an NTP server:

Time Zone	Select a time zone from the list. This should be the time zone that the FortiGate is in.
Set Time	Select to either *Synchronize with an NTP Server*, or use *Manual settings*.

	Synchronize with an NTP Server	To use an NTP server other than FortiGuard, the CLI must be used. In the *Sync interval* field, enter how often, in minutes, that the device synchronizes its time with the NTP server.
	Manual settings	Manually enter the *Date*, *Hour* (in 24-hour format), *Minute*, and *Second* in their fields.
Setup device as local NTP server		Enable to configure the FortiGate as a local NTP server. In the *Listen on Interfaces* field, set the interface or interfaces that the FortiGate will listen for NTP requests on.

3. Click *Apply*.

To configure the date and time in the CLI:

1. Configure the timezone and daylight savings time:

```
config system global
    set timezone <integer>
    set dst {enable | disable}
end
```

2. Either manually configure the date and time, or configure an NTP server:

   Manual:

```
execute date <yyyy-mm-dd>
execute time <hh:mm:ss>
```

   NTP server:

```
config system ntp
    set ntpsync enable
    set type {fortiguard | custom}
    set syncinterval <integer>
    set source-ip <ip_address>
    set source-ip6 <ip6_address>
    set server-mode {enable | disable}
    set interface <interface>
    set authentication {enable | disable}
    set key-type {MD5 | SHA1}
    set key <password>
    set key-id <integer>
    config ntpserver
        edit <server_id>
            set server <ip_address or hostname>
            set ntpv3 {enable | disable}
            set authentication {enable | disable}
            set key <password>
            set key-id <integer>
        next
    end
end
```

SHA-1 authentication support (for NTPv4)

SHA-1 authentication support allows the NTP client to verify that severs are known and trusted and not intruders masquerading (accidentally or intentionally) as legitimate servers. In cryptography, SHA-1 is a cryptographic hash algorithmic function.



SHA-1 authentication support is only available for NTP clients, not NTP servers.

To configure authentication on a FortiGate NTP client:

```
config system ntp
    set ntpsync enable
    set type custom
    set syncinterval 1
    config ntpserver
        edit "883502"
            set server "10.1.100.11"
            set authentication enable
            set key
ENCi9NmcqsV3xBJvOkgIL3lFxA8mnNs2XKfB7spOQoUw4cm8FOOP0nrCbqx6rJ+om95+hVUHpaVZmepdd4KznPlAHNiu
liPgPOk
            set key-id 1
        next
    end
end
```

Command	Description
`authentication <enable | disable>`	Enable/disable MD5/SHA1 authentication (default = disable).
`key <passwd>`	Key for MD5/SHA1 authentication. Enter a password value.
`key-id <integer>`	Key ID for authentication. Enter an integer value from 0 to 4294967295.

To confirm that NTP authentication is set up correctly:

```
# diagnose sys ntp status
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: disabled
ipv4 server(10.1.100.11) 10.1.100.11 -- reachable(0xff) S:4 T:6 selected
server-version=4, stratum=3
```

If NTP authentication is set up correctly, the server version is equal to 4.

PTPv2

Precision time protocol (PTP) is used to synchronize network clocks. It is best suited to situations where time accuracy is of the utmost importance, as it supports accuracy in the sub-microsecond range. Conversely, NTP accuracy is in the range of milliseconds or tens of milliseconds.

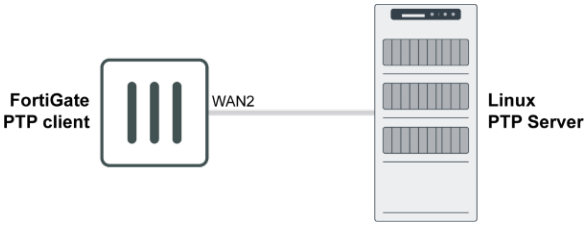
The following CLI commands are available:

```
config system ptp
  set status {enable | disable}
  set mode {multicast | hybrid}
  set delay-mechanism {E2E | P2P}
  set request-interval <integer>
  set interface <interface>
end
```

Command	Description
status {enable | disable}	Enable or disable the FortiGate system time by synchronizing with a PTP server (default = disable).
mode {multicast | hybrid}	Use multicast or hybrid transmission (default = multicast).
delay-mechanism {E2E | P2P}	Use end-to-end (E2E) or peer-to-peer (P2P) delay detection (default = E2E).
request-interval <integer>	The logarithmic mean interval between the delay request messages sent by the client to the server in seconds (default = 1).
interface <interface>	The interface that the PTP client will reply through.

Sample configuration

This example uses the following topology:



To configure a FortiGate to act as a PTP client that synchronizes itself with a Linux PTP server:

1. Enable debug messages:
   ```
   # diagnose debug application ptpd -1
   ```
   This command will provide details to debug the PTP communication with the server.
2. Check the system date:
   ```
   # execute date
      current date is: 2020-01-01
   ```
3. Configure PTP in global mode:
   ```
   config system ptp
      set status enable
      set interface wan2
   end
   ```
4. Check the system date again after synchronization with the PTP server:
   ```
   # execute date
      current date is: 2020-01-14
   ```

Configuring ports

To improve security, the default ports for administrative connections to the FortiGate can be changed. Port numbers must be unique. If a conflict exists with a particular port, a warning message is shown.

When connecting to the FortiGate after a port has been changed, the port number be included, for example: `https://192.168.1.99:100`.

To configure the ports in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, set the HTTP, HTTPS, SSH, and Telnet ports.
3. Enable *Redirect to HTTPS* to prevent HTTP from being used by administrators.
4. Click *Apply*.

To configure the ports in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set admin-port <port>
    set admin-sport <port>
    set admin-https-redirect {enable | disable}
    set admin-ssh-port <port>
    set admin-telnet-port <port>
end
```

Custom default service port range

The default service port range can be customized using the following CLI command:

```
config system global
   set default-service-source-port <port range>
end
```

Where `<port range>` is the new default service port range, that can have a minimum value of 0 and a maximum value up to 65535. The default value is 1 to 65535.



This change effects the TCP/UDP protocol.

Setting the idle timeout time

The idle timeout period is the amount of time that an administrator will stay logged in to the GUI without any activity. This is to prevent someone from accessing the FortiGate if the management PC is left unattended. By default, it is set to five minutes.



A setting of higher than 15 minutes will have a negative effect on a security rating score. See Security rating on page 237 for more information.

To change the idle timeout in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, set the *Idle timeout* to up to 480 minutes.
3. Click *Apply*.

To change the idle timeout in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set admintimeout <integer>
end
```

Setting the password policy

A password policy can be created for administrators and IPsec pre-shared keys. See Password policy on page 873 for information.

Changing the view settings

The view settings change the look and language of the FortiOS GUI.

To change the view settings in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *View Settings* section, configure the following settings:

Language	Set the GUI language: *English*, *French*, *Spanish*, *Portuguese*, *Japanese*, *Traditional Chinese*, *Simplifies Chinese*, *Korean*.
Lines per page	Set the number of lines per page, from 20 to 100.
Theme	Set the theme color: *Green*, *Red*, *Blue*, *Melongene*, or *Mariner*.
Date/Time Display	Set the date and time to display using the FortiGate's or the browser's timezone.
NGFW Mode	Set the NGFW mode to either *Profile-based* (default) or *Policy-based*. If *Policy-based* is selected, the *SSL/SSH Inspection* profile must be selected.

3. Click *Apply*.

To change the view settings in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set language {english | french | spanish | portuguese | japanese | trach | simch |
korean}
    set gui-lines-per-page <integer>
    set gui-theme {green | red | blue | melongene | mariner}
    set gui-date-time-source {system | browser}
end
config system settings
```

```
    set ngfw-mode {profile-based | policy-based}
    set ssl-ssh-profile {certificate-inspection | custom-deep-inspection | deep-inspection |
no-inspection}
end
```

Setting the administrator password retries and lockout time

By default, the number password retry attempts is set to three, allowing the administrator a maximum of three attempts at logging in to their account before they are locked out for a set amount of time (by default, 60 seconds).

The number of attempts and the default wait time before the administrator can try to enter a password again can be configured using the CLI.

A maximum of ten retry attempts can be configured, and the lockout period can be 1 to 2147483647 seconds (over 68 years). The higher the retry attempts, the higher the risk that someone might be able to guess the password.

To configure the lockout options:

```
config system global
    set admin-lockout-threshold <failed_attempts>
    set admin-lockout-duration <seconds>
end
```

For example, to set the number of retry attempts to 1, and the lockout time to 5 minutes:

```
config system global
    set admin-lockout-threshold 1
    set admin-lockout-duration 300
end
```



If the time span between the first failed log in attempt and the lockout threshold failed attempt is less than lockout time, the lockout will be triggered.

TLS configuration

The minimum TLS version that is used for local out connections from the FortiGate can be configured in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set ssl-min-proto-version {SSLv3 | TLSv1 | TLSv1-1 | TLSv1-2 | TLSv1-3}
end
```

By default, the minimum version is TLSv1.2. The FortiGate will try to negotiate a connection using the configured version or higher. If the server that FortiGate is connecting to does not support the version, then the connection will not be made. Some FortiCloud and FortiGuard services do not support TLSv1.3.

Minimum SSL/TLS versions can also be configured individually for the following settings, not all of which support TLSv1.3:

Setting	CLI
Email server	`config system email-server`
Certificate	`config vpn certificate setting`
FortiSandbox	`config system fortisandbox`
FortiGuard	`config log fortiguard setting`
FortiAnalyzer	`config log fortianalyzer setting`
Syslog	`config log syslogd setting`
User Authentication	`config user setting`
LDAP server	`config user ldap`
POP3 server	`config user pop3`
Exchange server	`config user exchange`

A minimum (`ssl-min-proto-ver`) and a maximum (`ssl-max-proto-ver`) version can be configured for SSL VPN. See TLS 1.3 support on page 1898

Controlling return path with auxiliary session

When multiple incoming or outgoing interfaces are used in ECMP or for load balancing, changes to routing, incoming, or return traffic interfaces impacts how an existing sessions handles the traffic. Auxiliary sessions can be used to handle these changes to traffic patterns.



- In FortiOS 6.0 and earlier, the auxiliary session feature is not supported.
- In FortiOS 6.2.0 to 6.2.2, the auxiliary session feature is permanently enabled.
- In FortiOS 6.2.3 and later, the auxiliary session feature is disabled by default, and can be enabled if required.

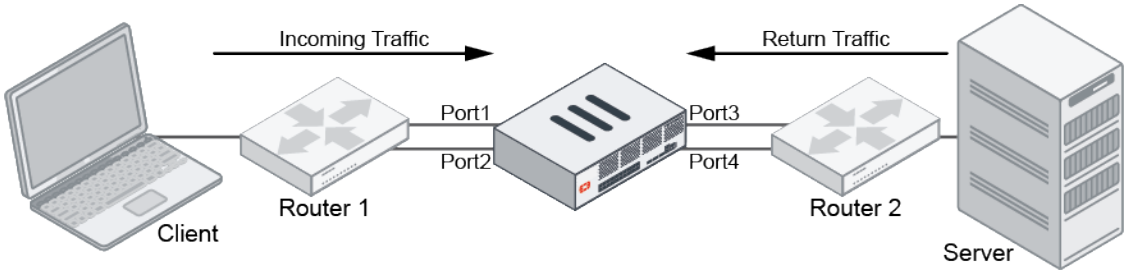
To enable or disable the auxiliary session feature:

```
config system settings
    set auxiliary-session {enable | disable*}
end
```



When enabling auxiliary sessions, consider the impact of routing in both traffic directions. In topologies such as SD-WAN hub and spoke or ADVPN deployments, the symmetry of the return traffic is important for maintaining the stability of the session. It is expected that the spoke selects the outbound interface and path, and the other nodes obey and reply symmetrically. It is recommended to disable auxiliary in these scenarios, and others where incoming and return traffic symmetry is expected.

Scenarios



Incoming traffic is from the client to the server. Return traffic is from the server to the client.

Scenario 1 - Return traffic returns on the original outgoing interface

In this scenario, a session is established between port1 and port3. When the return traffic hits port3:

Auxiliary sessions disabled:

The reply to the client egresses on the original incoming interface, port1. If policy routes or SD-WAN rules are configured, the next hop gateway is applied if the output device is the same as the original incoming interface.

Auxiliary sessions enabled:

The reply to the client egresses on the best route in the routing table:

- If the best route is port1, then it will egress on port1.
- If the best route is port2, then it will egress on port2.

If policy routes or SD-WAN rules are configured, they must be matched to determine the egress interface. If both are configured, policy routes have higher priority.

Scenario 2 - Return traffic returns on an interfaces other than the original outgoing interfaces

In this scenario, a session is established between port1 and port3. When the return traffic hits port4:

Auxiliary sessions disabled:

- The session is dirtied and then gets refreshed, and interfaces on the session are updated.
- If there is a high traffic volume or flapping between the interfaces, the CPU usage increases.

Auxiliary sessions enabled:

An auxiliary session is created for the existing session, and traffic returns to the client as normal on the auxiliary session.

Scenario 3 - Incoming traffic enters on an interfaces other than the original incoming interfaces

In this scenario, a session is established between port1 and port3. When the incoming traffic hits port2:

Auxiliary sessions disabled:

The session is dirtied and then gets refreshed, and interfaces on the session are updated.

Auxiliary sessions enabled:

An auxiliary session is created for the existing session, and traffic is forwarded to the server as normal on the auxiliary session.

Scenario 4 - the routing table is changed

In this scenario, a session has been established between port1 and port3, when a new route on port4 is updated as the route to the server.

Auxiliary sessions disabled:

As long as there is a route to the destination, the session will not be dirtied or refreshed. Even though there is a better route, traffic continues on the original path between port1 and port3.

Auxiliary sessions enabled:

The session is dirtied and then gets refreshed, and interfaces on the session are updated.

Effect on NPU offloading sessions

When the auxiliary session feature is disabled, there is always one session. If the incoming or return interface changes, the FortiGate marks the session as dirty and updates the session's interfaces. This cannot be done by the NPU, so the session is not offloaded to the NPU, and is processed by the CPU instead. If Equal-Cost Multi-Path (ECMP) causes the interface to keep changing, then it will use significant CPU resources.

When the auxiliary session feature is enabled and the incoming or return interface changes, it creates an auxiliary session, and all traffic can continue to be processed by the NPU.

Verification

When an auxiliary, or reflect, session is created, it will appear as a reflect session below the existing session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=17 proto_state=00 duration=111 expire=175 timeout=0 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty npu
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=131/4/1 reply=0/0/0 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=36->38/38->36 gwy=10.1.2.3/0.0.0.0
hook=pre dir=org act=noop 10.1.100.22:51926->172.16.204.44:5001(0.0.0.0:0)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 172.16.204.44:5001->10.1.100.22:51926(0.0.0.0:0)
src_mac=90:6c:ac:19:19:58
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
```

```
serial=00002b11 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x000400
npu info: flag=0x91/0x00, offload=8/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=129/0, ipid=142/0,
vlan=0x0016/0x0000
vlifid=142/0, vtag_in=0x0016/0x0000 in_npu=1/0, out_npu=1/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=4/0
no_ofld_reason:
reflect info 0:
dev=37->38/38->37
npu_state=0x000400
npu info: flag=0x91/0x00, offload=8/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=129/0, ipid=142/0,
vlan=0x0017/0x0000
vlifid=142/0, vtag_in=0x0017/0x0000 in_npu=1/0, out_npu=1/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=4/0
total reflect session num: 1
total session 1
```

When a session is dirtied, a dirty flag is added to it:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=17 proto_state=00 duration=28 expire=152 timeout=0 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=dirty may_dirty npu
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=68/2/1 reply=0/0/0 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 2/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=0->0/0->0 gwy=0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
hook=pre dir=org act=noop 10.1.100.22:51926->172.16.204.44:5001(0.0.0.0:0)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 172.16.204.44:5001->10.1.100.22:51926(0.0.0.0:0)
src_mac=90:6c:ac:19:19:58  dst_mac=02:6c:ac:5c:c6:f9
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=00002b2c tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x000400
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason:
total session 1
```

When an auxiliary session is created, NPU offloading will continue in the reflect session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=17 proto_state=01 duration=169 expire=129 timeout=0 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty npu
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=131/4/1 reply=66/2/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=36->38/38->36 gwy=10.1.2.3/172.17.2.1
hook=pre dir=org act=noop 10.1.100.22:51926->172.16.204.44:5001(0.0.0.0:0)
```

```
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 172.16.204.44:5001->10.1.100.22:51926(0.0.0.0:0)
src_mac=90:6c:ac:19:19:58
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=00002b11 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x000c00
npu info: flag=0x91/0x81, offload=8/8, ips_offload=0/0, epid=129/142, ipid=142/128,
vlan=0x0016/0x0016
vlifid=142/128, vtag_in=0x0016/0x0016 in_npu=1/1, out_npu=1/1, fwd_en=0/0, qid=4/4
reflect info 0:
dev=37->38/38->37
npu_state=0x000400
npu info: flag=0x91/0x00, offload=8/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=129/0, ipid=142/0,
vlan=0x0017/0x0000
vlifid=142/0, vtag_in=0x0017/0x0000 in_npu=1/0, out_npu=1/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=4/0
total reflect session num: 1
total session 1
```

Email alerts

Alert emails are used to notify administrators about events on the FortiGate device, allowing a quick response to any issues.

There are two methods that can be used to configure email alerts:

- Automation stitches on page 900
- Alert emails on page 902

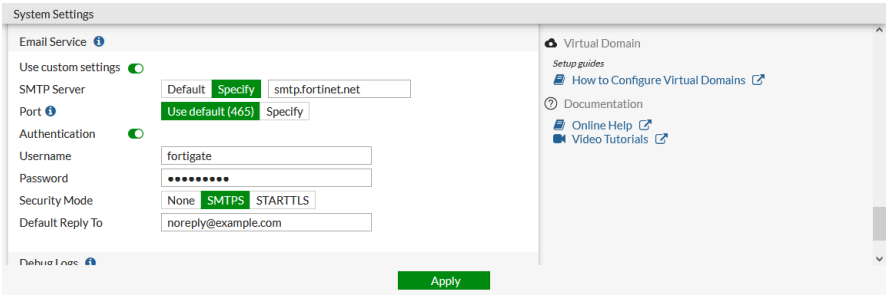
The FortiGate has a default SMTP server, notification.fortinet.net, that provides secure mail service with SMTPS. It is used for all emails that are sent by the FortiGate, including alert emails, automation stitch emails, and FortiToken Mobile activations. You can also configure a custom email service.

To configure a custom email service in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Email Service* section, enable *Use custom settings*.
3. Configure the following settings:

SMTP Server	If required, select *Specify* and enter the address or name of the SMTP server, such as *smtp.example.com*.
Port	If required, select *Specify* and enter a specific port number. The default is port 465.
Authentication	If required by the email server, enable authentication. If enabled, enter the *Username* and *Password*.
Security Mode	Set the security mode: *None*, *SMTPS*, or *STARTTLS*.
Default Reply To	Optionally, enter the reply to email address, such as *noreply@example.com*. This address will override the from address that is configured for an alert email.

If *SMTP Server* is set to *Default*, the *Default Reply To* field is hidden and cannot be configured, and the default address is set to *DoNotReply@notification.fortinet.net*. This ensures that default SMTP server can work correctly.



4. Click *Apply*.

To configure a custom email service in the CLI:

```
config system email-server
    set server "smtp.fortinet.net"
    set reply-to "noreply@example.com"
    set port 465
    set authenticate enable
    set username "fortigate"
    set password **********
    set security smtps
end
```

If `server` is set to `notification.fortinet.net`, the `reply-to` command is hidden and cannot be configured, and the default reply to address is set to `DoNotReply@notification.fortinet.net`. This ensures that default SMTP server can work correctly.

Automation stitches

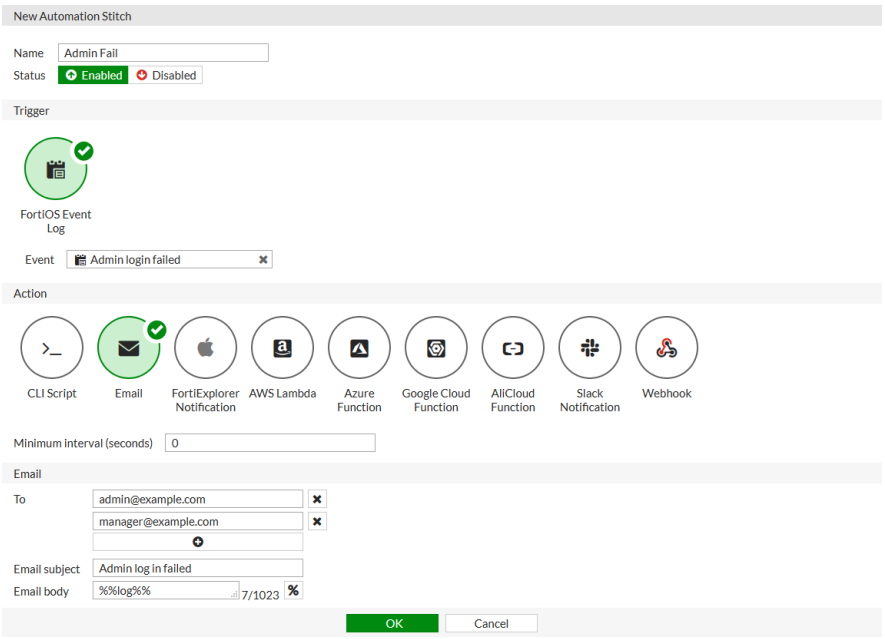
Automation stitches can be configured to send emails based on a variety of triggers, giving you control over the events that cause an alert, and who gets alerted. For more information, see Automation stitches on page 242.

In this example, the default mail service sends an email to two recipients when there is a configuration change or an Admin login failed event occurs.

To configure the automation stitch in the GUI:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the stitch, such as *Admin Fail*.
3. In the *Trigger* section, select *FortiOS Event Log*.
4. Click in the *Event* field, and in the slide out pane, search for and select *Admin login failed*.
5. In the *Action* section, select *Email*.
6. Configure the *Email* settings:

a. In the *To* field, click the plus icon, then enter the two email recipients' addresses, such as *admin@example.com* and *manager@example.com*.
b. Enter the *Email subject*, such as *Admin log in failed*.
c. Edit the *Email body* as required. By default, the email body will include all the fields from the log event that triggered the stitch.



7. Click *OK*.
8. Create a second stitch, selecting *Configuration Change* as the trigger.

To configure the automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create automation actions to send the email messages:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "Config Change_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "admin@example.com" "manager@example.com"
        set email-subject "Configuration Change Detected"
    next
    edit "Admin Fail_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "admin@example.com" "manager@example.com"
        set email-subject "Admin log in failed"
    next
end
```

2. Create the automation triggers:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "Config Change"
        set event-type config-change
    next
    edit "Admin Fail"
        set event-type event-log
        set logid 32002
```

```
        next
    end
```

3. Create the automation stitches:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "Config Change"
        set trigger "Config Change"
        set action "Config Change_email"
    next
    edit "Admin Fail"
        set trigger "Admin Fail"
        set action "Admin Fail_email"
    next
end
```

Alert emails

When configuring an alert email, you can define the threshold when an issue becomes critical and requires attention. When the threshold is reached, an email is sent to up to three recipients on the configured schedule to notify them of the issue.

Alert email messages can be configured in the CLI. For more information on the available CLI commands, see Configure alert email settings.

In this example, the FortiGate is configured to send email messages to two addresses, admin@example.com and manager@example.com, every two minutes when multiple intrusions, administrator log in or out events, or configuration changes occur.

To configure an alert email:

```
config alertemail setting
    set username fortigate@example.com
    set mailto1 admin@example.com
    set mailto2 manager@example.com
    set filter-mode category
    set email-interval 2
    set IPS-logs enable
    set configuration-changes-logs enable
    set admin-login-logs enable
end
```

Trusted platform module support

On supported FortiGate hardware devices, the Trusted Platform Module (TPM) can be used to protect your password and key against malicious software and phishing attacks. The dedicated module hardens the FortiGate by generating, storing, and authenticating cryptographic keys. To help prevent tampering, the chip is soldered on the motherboard to reduce the risk of data transaction interceptions from attackers.

By default, the TPM is disabled. To enable it, you must set the 32 hexadecimal digit master-encryption-password which encrypts sensitive data on the FortiGate using AES128-CBC. With the password, TPM generates a 2048-bit primary key to secure the master-encryption-password through RSA-2048 encryption. The master-encryption-password protects the data. The primary key protects the master-encryption-password.



The TPM module does not encrypt the disk drive of eligible FortiGates.

The primary key binds the encrypted configuration file to a specific FortiGate unit and never leaves the TPM. When backing up the configuration, the TPM uses the primary key to encrypt the master-encryption-password in the configuration file. When restoring a configuration that includes a TPM protected master-encryption-password:

- If TPM is disabled, then the configuration cannot be restored.
- If TPM is enabled but has a different master-encryption-password than the configuration file, then the configuration cannot be restored.
- If TPM is enabled and the master-encryption-password is the same in the configuration file, then the configuration can be restored.

For information on backing up and restoring the configuration, see Configuration backups on page 56.

Passwords and keys that can be encrypted by the master-encryption-key include:

- Alert email user's password
- BGP and other routing related configurations
- External resource
- FortiGuard proxy password
- FortiToken/FortiToken Mobile’s seed
- HA password
- IPsec pre-shared key
- Link Monitor, server side password
- Local certificate's private key
- Local, LDAP. RADIUS, FSSO, and other user category related passwords
- Modem/PPPoE
- NST password
- NTP Password
- SDN connector, server side password
- SNMP
- Wireless Security related password



In HA configurations, each cluster member must use the same master-encryption-key so that the HA cluster can form and its members can synchronize their configurations.

To check if your FortiGate device has a TPM:

Verify all the following commands exist. Otherwise, the platform does not support it.

```
# diagnose hardware test info
List of test cases:
    bios: sysid
    bios: checksum
```

```
    bios: license
    bios: detect

# diagnose hardware deviceinfo tpm
TPM capability information of fixed properties:
============================================================
TPM_PT_FAMILY_INDICATOR: 2.0
TPM_PT_LEVEL: 0
TPM_PT_REVISION: 138
TPM_PT_DAY_OF_YEAR: 8
TPM_PT_YEAR: 2018
TPM_PT_MANUFACTURER: NTC
# diagnose hardware test tpm
=========== Fortinet Hardware Test Report ==================
TPM
TPM Device Detection..................................... PASS
================ Fortinet Hardware Test PASSED ==============
# diagnose tpm
get-property Get TPM properties. [Take 0-1 arg(s)]
get-var-property Get TPM var properties.
read-clock Read TPM internal clock.
shutdown-prepare Prepare for TPM power cycle.
selftest Perform self tests.
generate-random-number Generate a 4-byte random number
SHA-1 HASH a sequence of num with SHA-1 algo
SHA-256 HASH a sequence of num with SHA-256 algo
```

To enable TPM and input the master-encryption-password:

```
config system global
    set private-data-encryption enable
end
Please type your private data encryption key (32 hexadecimal numbers):
********************************
Please re-enter your private data encryption key (32 hexadecimal numbers) again:
********************************
Your private data encryption key is accepted.
```

Virtual Domains

Virtual Domains (VDOMs) are used to divide a FortiGate into two or more virtual units that function independently. VDOMs can provide separate security policies and, in NAT mode, completely separate configurations for routing and VPN services for each connected network.

There are two VDOM modes:

- Split-task VDOM mode: One VDOM is used only for management, and the other is used to manage traffic. See Split-task VDOM mode on page 907.
- Multi VDOM mode: Multiple VDOMs can be created and managed as independent units. See Multi VDOM mode on page 910 and Backing up and restoring configurations in multi VDOM mode on page 926.

By default, most FortiGate units support 10 VDOMs, and many FortiGate models support purchasing a license key to increase the maximum number.

Global settings are configured outside of a VDOM. They effect the entire FortiGate, and include settings such as interfaces, firmware, DNS, some logging and sandboxing options, and others. Global settings should only be changed by top level administrators.



Enable the following to prevent accidentally creating VDOMs in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set edit-vdom-prompt enable
end
```

The FortiGate displays a prompt to confirm before the VDOM is created.

Switching VDOM modes

Current VDOM mode	New VDOM mode	Rule
No VDOM	Split-task VDOM	Allowed
Split-task VDOM	No VDOM	Allowed
No VDOM	Multi VDOM	Allowed only if the FortiGate is not a member of a Security Fabric. See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 143 for more information.
Multi VDOM	No VDOM	Allowed
Split-task VDOM	Multi VDOM	Allowed only if the FortiGate is not a member of a Security Fabric. See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 143 for more information.
Multi VDOM	Split-task VDOM	Not Allowed. User must first switch to *No VDOM*

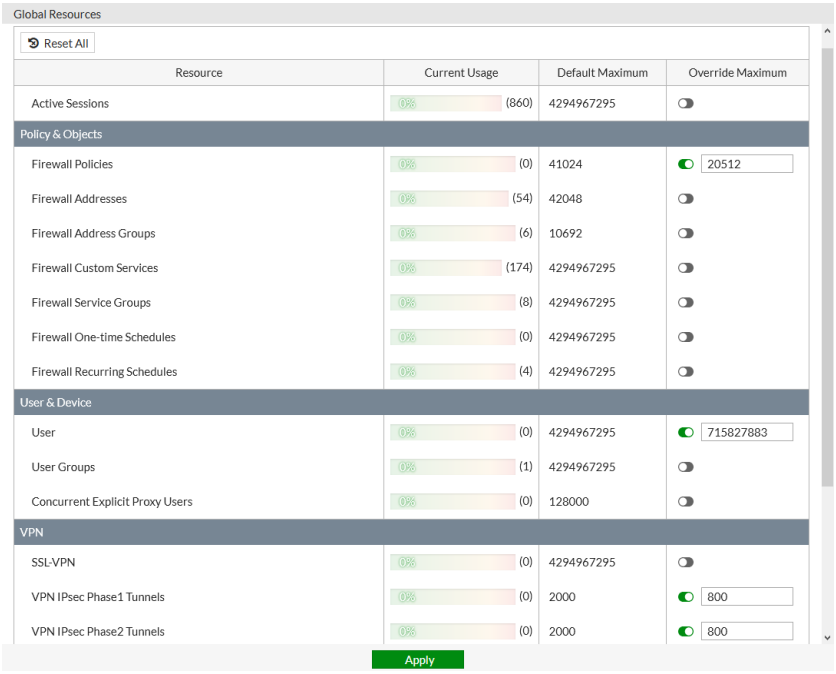
Global and per-VDOM resources

Global and per-VDOM resources can be configured when the FortiGate is in Split-Task or Multi VDOM mode. Global resources apply to resources that are shared by the whole FortiGate, while per-VDOM resources are specific to each VDOM.

By default, all per-VDOM resource settings are set to have no limits. This means that any single VDOM can use all of the FortiGate device's resources. This could deprive other VDOMs of the resources that they require, to the point that could be unable to function. We recommend settings maximum values on the resources that are vital to you.

To configure global resources:

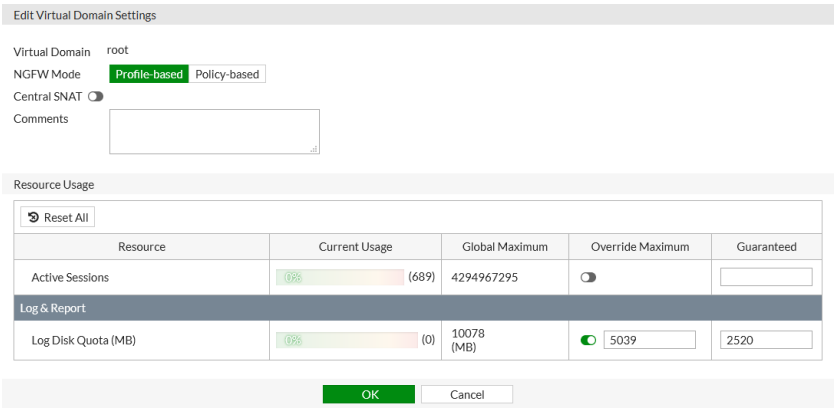
1. In the Global VDOM, go to *System* > *Global Resources*.
2. Enable the resource's override in the *Override Maximum* column, then enter the override value.



3. Click *Apply*.
   To reset the all of the override values, click *Reset All*.

To configure per-VDOM resources:

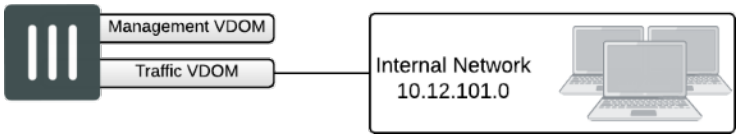
1. In the Global VDOM, go to *System* > *VDOM*.
2. Edit the VDOM whose resources need to be configured.
3. Enable the resource's override in the *Override Maximum* column, then enter the override value.
4. Optionally, enter a value in the *Guaranteed* column.



5. Click *OK*.
   To reset the all of the override values, click *Reset All*.

Split-task VDOM mode

In split-task VDOM mode, the FortiGate has two VDOMs: the management VDOM (*root*) and the traffic VDOM (*FG-traffic*).



The management VDOM is used to manage the FortiGate, and cannot be used to process traffic.

The following GUI sections are available when in the management VDOM:

- The Status dashboard
- Security Fabric topology and settings (read-only, except for *HTTP Service* settings)
- Interface and static route configuration
- FortiClient configuration
- Replacement messages
- Certificates
- System events
- Log and email alert settings
- Threat weight definitions

The traffic VDOM provides separate security policies, and is used to process all network traffic.

The following GUI sections are available when in the traffic VDOM:

- The Status, Top Usage LAN/DMZ, and Security dashboards
- Security Fabric topology, settings (read-only, except for *HTTP Service* settings), and External Connectors (*Endpoint/Identity* connectors only)
- FortiView
- Interface configuration
- Packet capture
- SD-WAN, SD-WAN Rules, and Performance SLA
- Static and policy routes
- RIP, OSPF, BGP, and Multicast
- Replacement messages
- Feature visibility
- Tags
- Certificates
- Policies and objects
- Security profiles
- VPNs
- User and device authentication
- Wifi and switch controller
- Logging
- Monitoring

Split-task VDOM mode is not available on all FortiGate models. The Fortinet Security Fabric supports split-task VDOM mode.

Enable split-task VDOM mode

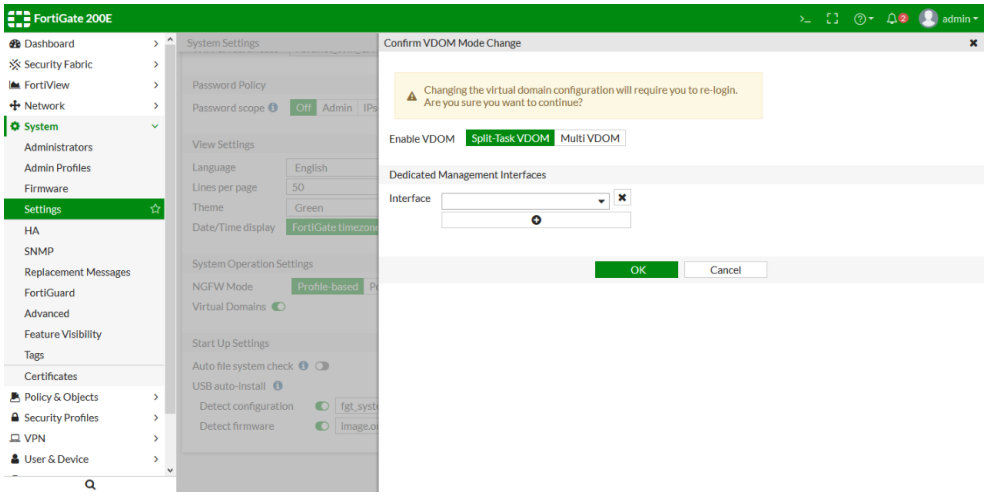
Split-task VDOM mode can be enabled in the GUI or CLI. Enabling it does not require a reboot, but does log you out of the FortiGate.

When split-task VDOM mode is enabled, all current management configuration is assigned to the *root* VDOM, and all non-management settings, such as firewall policies and security profiles, are deleted.

On VMs and FortiGate 60 series models and lower, VDOMs can only be enabled using the CLI.

To enable split-task VDOM mode in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *System Operation Settings* section, enable *Virtual Domains*.



3. Select *Split-Task VDOM* for the VDOM mode.
4. Select a *Dedicated Management Interface* from the *Interface* list. This interface is used to access the management VDOM, and cannot be used in firewall policies.
5. Click *OK*.

To enable split-task VDOM mode with the CLI:

```
config system global
   set vdom-mode split-vdom
end
```

Assign interfaces to a VDOM

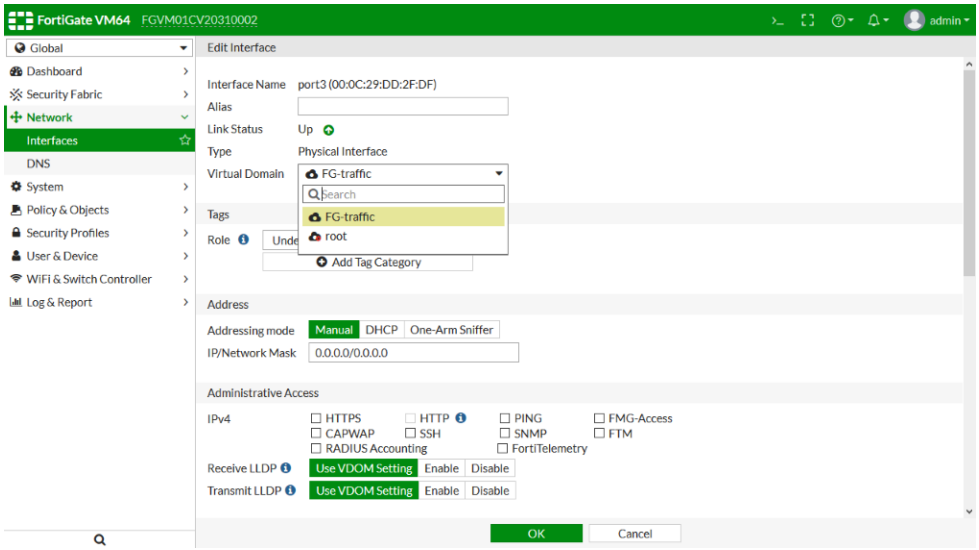
An interface can only be assigned to one of the VDOMs. When split-task VDOM mode is enabled, all interfaces are assigned to the *root* VDOM. To use an interface in a policy, it must first be assigned to the traffic VDOM.

An interface cannot be moved if it is referenced in an existing configuration.

In the GUI, the interface list *Ref.* column shows if the interface is referenced in an existing configuration, and allows you to quickly access and edit those references.

To assign an interface to a VDOM in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Global* > *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the interface that will be assigned to a VDOM.
3. Select the VDOM that the interface will be assigned to from the *Virtual Domain* list.



4. Click *OK*.

To assign an interface to a VDOM using the CLI:

```
config global
   config system interface
      edit <interface>
         set vdom <VDOM_name>
      next
   end
end
```

Create per-VDOM administrators

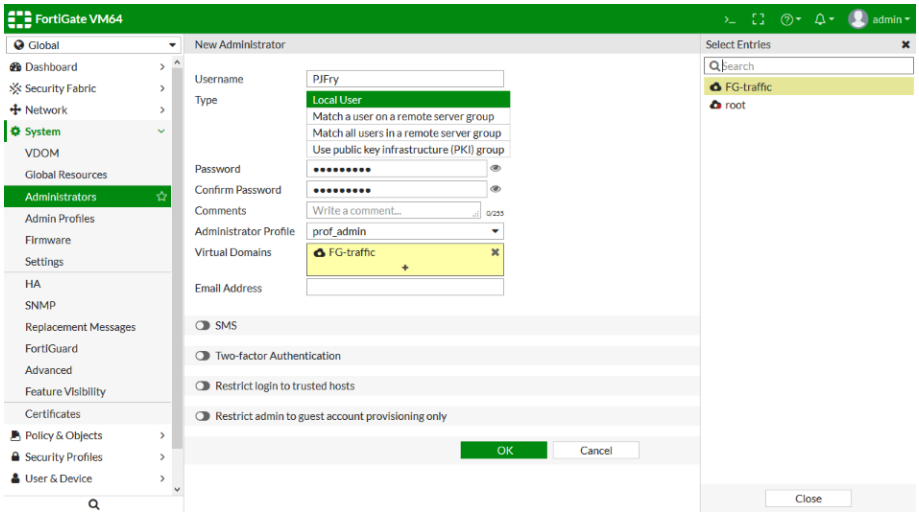
Per-VDOM administrators can be created that can access only the management or traffic VDOM. These administrators must use either the *prof_admin* administrator profile, or a custom profile.

A per-VDOM administrator can only access the FortiGate through a network interface that is assigned to the VDOM that they are assigned to. The interface must also be configured to allow management access. They can also connect to the FortiGate using the console port.

To assign an administrator to multiple VDOMs, they must be created at the global level. When creating an administrator at the VDOM level, the *super_admin* administrator profile cannot be used.

To create a per-VDOM administrator in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, connect to the management VDOM.
2. Go to *Global* > *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *Administrator*.
3. Fill in the required information, setting the *Type* as *Local User*.
4. In the *Virtual Domains* field, add the VDOM that the administrator will be assigned to, and if necessary, remove the other VDOM from the list.



5. Click *OK*.

To create a per-VDOM administrator using the CLI:

```
config global
   config system admin
      edit <name>
         set vdom <VDOM_name>
         set password <password>
         set accprofile <admin_profile>
         ...
      next
   end
end
```

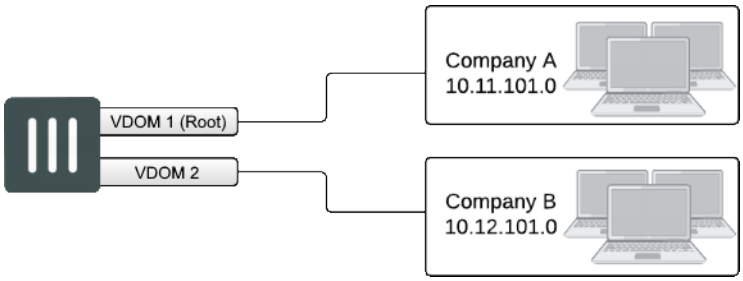
Multi VDOM mode

In multi VDOM mode, the FortiGate can have multiple VDOMs that function as independent units. One VDOM is used to manage global settings. The root VDOM cannot be deleted, and remains in the configuration even if it is not processing any traffic.

Multi VDOM mode isn't available on all FortiGate models. The Fortinet Security Fabric does not support multi VDOM mode.

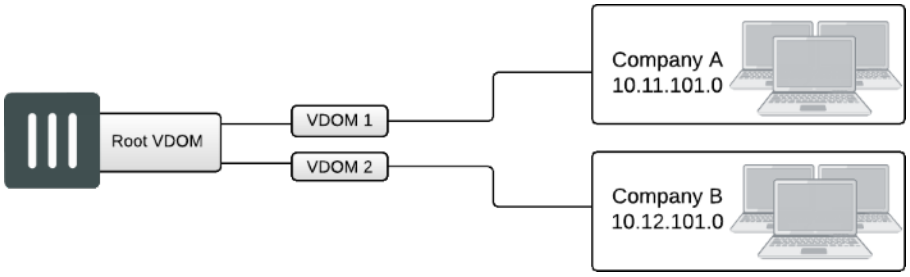
There are three main configuration types in multi VDOM mode:

Independent VDOMs:



Multiple, completely separate VDOMs are created. Any VDOM can be the management VDOM, as long as it has Internet access. There are no inter-VDOM links, and each VDOM is independently managed.

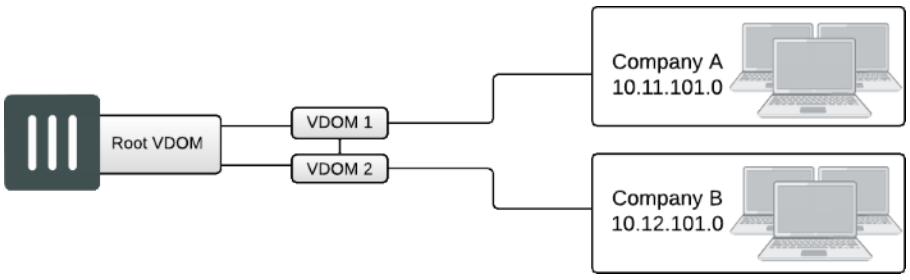
Management VDOM:



A management VDOM is located between the other VDOMs and the Internet, and the other VDOMs connect to the management VDOM with inter-VDOM links. The management VDOM has complete control over Internet access, including the types of traffic that are allowed in both directions. This can improve security, as there is only one point of ingress and egress.

There is no communication between the other VDOMs.

Meshed VDOMs:



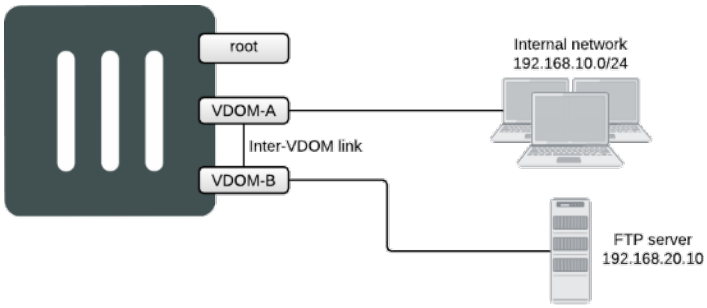
VDOMs can communicate with inter-VDOM links. In full-mesh configurations, all the VDOMs are interconnected. In partial-mesh configurations, only some of the VDOMs are interconnected.

In this configuration, proper security must be achieved by using firewall policies and ensuring secure account access for administrators and users.

Multi VDOM configuration examples

The following examples show how to configure per-VDOM settings, such as operation mode, routing, and security policies, in a network that includes the following VDOMs:

- VDOM-A: allows the internal network to access the Internet.
- VDOM-B: allows external connections to an FTP server.
- root: the management VDOM.



You can use VDOMs in either NAT or transparent mode on the same FortiGate. By default, VDOMs operate in NAT mode.

For both examples, multi VDOM mode must be enabled, and VDOM-A and VDOM-B must be created.

Enable multi VDOM mode

Multi VDOM mode can be enabled in the GUI or CLI. Enabling it does not require a reboot, but does log you out of the device. The current configuration is assigned to the *root* VDOM.



On VMs and FortiGate 60 series models and lower, VDOMs can only be enabled using the CLI.

To enable multi VDOM mode in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *System Operation Settings* section, enable *Virtual Domains*.
3. Select *Multi VDOM* for the VDOM mode.
4. Click *OK*.

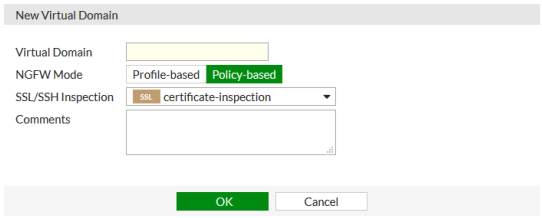
To enable multi VDOM mode with the CLI:

```
config system global
   set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
```

Create the VDOMs

To create the VDOMs in the GUI:

1. In the *Global* VDOM, go to *System* > *VDOM*, and click *Create New*. The *New Virtual Domain* page opens.



2. In the *Virtual Domain* field, enter *VDOM-A*.
3. If required, set the *NGFW Mode*. If the *NGFW Mode* is *Policy-based*, select an *SSL/SSH Inspection* from the list.
4. Optionally, enter a comment.
5. Click *OK* to create the VDOM.
6. Repeat the above steps for *VDOM-B*.

To create the VDOMs with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit <VDOM-A>
      next
   edit <VDOM-B>
      next
   end
end
```

NAT mode

In this example, both VDOM-A and VDOM-B use NAT mode. A VDOM link is created that allows users on the internal network to access the FTP server.

This configuration requires the following steps:

1. Configure VDOM-A on page 913
2. Configure VDOM-B on page 915
3. Configure the VDOM link on page 918

Configure VDOM-A

VDOM-A allows connections from devices on the internal network to the Internet. WAN 1 and port 1 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-A includes the following:

- A firewall address for the internal network
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing the internal network to access the Internet

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-A, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

Name	internal-network
Type	Subnet
Subnet / IP Range	192.168.10.0/255.255.255.0
Interface	port1
Show in Address List	enabled

To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM-A
    config firewall address
      edit internal-network
        set associated-interface port1
        set subnet 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
      next
    end
  next
end
```

To add a default route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

Destination	Subnet
IP address	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Gateway	172.20.201.7
Interface	wan1
Distance	10

To add a default route with the CLI:

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM-A
    config router static
      edit 0
        set gateway 172.20.201.7
        set device wan1
      next
    end
  next
end
```

To add the security policy in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

Name	VDOM-A-Internet
Incoming Interface	port1
Outgoing Interface	wan1
Source	internal-network
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	enabled

To add the security policy with the CLI:

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM-A
    config firewall policy
      edit 0
        set name VDOM-A-Internet
        set srcintf port1
        set dstintf wan1
        set srcaddr internal-network
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set nat enable
      next
    end
  next
end
```

Configure VDOM-B

VDOM-B allows external connections to reach an internal FTP server. WAN 2 and port 2 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-B includes the following:

- A firewall address for the FTP server
- A virtual IP address for the FTP server
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing external traffic to reach the FTP server

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-B, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

Address Name	FTP-server
Type	Subnet
Subnet / IP Range	192.168.20.10/32
Interface	port2
Show in Address List	enabled

To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit FTP-server
            set associated-interface port2
            set subnet 192.168.20.10 255.255.255.255
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the virtual IP address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and create a new virtual IP address.
2. Enter the following information:

Name	FTP-server-VIP
Interface	wan2
External IP Address/Range	172.25.177.42
Internal IP Address/Range	192.168.20.10

To add the virtual IP address with the CLI:

```
config firewall vip
   edit FTP-server-VIP
      set extip 172.25.177.42
      set extintf wan2
      set mappedip 192.168.20.10
   next
end
```

To add a default route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

Destination	Subnet
IP address	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Gateway	172.20.10.10
Interface	wan2
Distance	10

To add a default route with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config router static
         edit 0
            set device wan2
            set gateway 172.20.10.10
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the security policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
2. Enter the following information:

Name	Access-server
Incoming Interface	wan2
Outgoing Interface	port2
Source	all
Destination	FTP-server-VIP
Schedule	always
Service	FTP
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	enabled

To add the security policy with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name Access-server
```

```
            set srcintf wan2
            set dstintf port2
            set srcaddr all
            set dstaddr FTP-server-VIP
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
            set nat enable
         next
      end
   next
end
```

Configure the VDOM link

The VDOM link allows connections from VDOM-A to VDOM-B. This allows users on the internal network to access the FTP server through the FortiGate.

The configuration for the VDOM link includes the following:

- The VDOM link interface
- Firewall addresses for the FTP server on VDOM-A and for the internal network on VDOM-B
- Static routes for the FTP server on VDOM-A and for the internal network on VDOM-B
- Policies allowing traffic using the VDOM link

All procedures in this section require you to connect to the global VDOM using a global administrator account.

To add the VDOM link in the GUI:

1. Connect to root.
2. Go to *Global* > *Network* > *Interfaces* and select *Create New* > *VDOM link.*
3. Enter the following information:

Name	VDOM-link
Interface 0	
Virtual Domain	VDOM-A
IP/Netmask	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Interface 1	
Virtual Domain	VDOM-B
IP/Netmask	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0

To add the VDOM link with the CLI:

```
config global
   config system vdom-link
      edit vlink
   end
   config system interface
      edit VDOM-link0
         set vdom VDOM-A
         set ip 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
```

```
      next
      edit VDOM-link1
         set vdom VDOM-B
         set ip 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
      next
   end
end
```

To add the firewall address on VDOM-A in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
3. Enter the following information:

Address Name	FTP-server
Type	Subnet
Subnet / IP Range	192.168.20.10/32
Interface	VDOM-link0
Show in Address List	enabled
Static Route Configuration	enabled

To add the firewall addresses on VDOM-A with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit FTP-server
            set associated-interface VDOM-link0
            set allow-routing enable
            set subnet 192.168.20.10 255.255.255.255
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the static route on VDOM-A in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
3. Enter the following information:

Destination	Named Address
Named Address	FTP-server
Gateway	0.0.0.0
Interface	VDOM-link0

To add the static route on VDOM-A with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config router static
         edit 0
            set device VDOM-link0
            set dstaddr FTP-server
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the security policy on VDOM-A in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

Name	Access-FTP-server
Incoming Interface	port1
Outgoing Interface	VDOM-link0
Source	internal-network
Destination	FTP-server
Schedule	always
Service	FTP
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	disabled

To add the security policy on VDOM-A with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name Access-FTP-server
            set srcintf port1
            set dstintf VDOM-link0
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr FTP-server
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the firewall address on VDOM-B in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
3. Enter the following information:

Address Name	internal-network
Type	Subnet
Subnet / IP Range	192.168.10.0/24
Interface	VDOM-link1
Show in Address List	enabled
Static Route Configuration	enabled

To add the firewall addresses on VDOM-B with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit internal-network
            set associated-interface VDOM-link1
            set allow-routing enable
            set subnet 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the static route on VDOM-B in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
3. Enter the following information:

Destination	Named Address
Named Address	internal-network
Gateway	0.0.0.0
Interface	VDOM-link1

To add the static route on VDOM-B with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config router static
         edit 0
            set device VDOM-link1
            set dstaddr internal-network
         next
      end
   next
```

```
end
```

To add the security policy on VDOM-B in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

Name	Internal-server-access
Incoming Interface	VDOM-link1
Outgoing Interface	port2
Source	internal-network
Destination	FTP-server
Schedule	always
Service	FTP
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	disabled

To add the security policy on VDOM-B with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name Internal-server-access
            set srcintf VDOM-link1
            set dstintf port2
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr FTP-server
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
         next
      end
   next
end
```

NAT and transparent mode

In this example, VDOM-A uses NAT mode and VDOM-B uses transparent mode.

This configuration requires the following steps:

1. Configure VDOM-A on page 923
2. Configure VDOM-B on page 925

Configure VDOM-A

VDOM-A allows connections from devices on the internal network to the Internet. WAN 1 and port 1 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-A includes the following:

- A firewall address for the internal network
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing the internal network to access the Internet

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-A, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

Name	internal-network
Type	Subnet
Subnet / IP Range	192.168.10.0/24
Interface	port1
Show in Address List	enabled

To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall address
         edit internal-network
            set associated-interface port1
            set subnet 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add a default route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

Destination	Subnet
IP address	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Gateway	172.20.201.7
Interface	wan1
Distance	10

To add a default route with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config router static
         edit 0
            set gateway 172.20.201.7
            set device wan1
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add the security policy in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

Name	VDOM-A-Internet
Incoming Interface	port1
Outgoing Interface	wan1
Source	internal-network
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	enabled

To add the security policy with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name VDOM-A-Internet
            set srcintf port1
            set dstintf wan1
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr all
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service ALL
            set nat enable
         next
      end
   next
end
```

Configure VDOM-B

VDOM-B allows external connections to reach an internal FTP server. WAN 2 and port 2 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-B includes the following:

- A firewall address for the FTP server
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing external traffic to reach the FTP server

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-B, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

Address Name	FTP-server
Type	Subnet
Subnet / IP Range	172.25.177.42/32
Interface	port2
Show in Address List	enabled

To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit FTP-server
            set associated-interface port2
            set subnet 172.25.177.42 255.255.255.255
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To add a default route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Routing Table* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

Destination	Subnet
IP address	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Gateway	172.20.10.10

To add a default route with the CLI:

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
```

```
    config router static
      edit 0
        set gateway 172.20.10.10
      next
    end
    next
end
```

To add the security policy in the GUI:

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

Name	Access-server
Incoming Interface	wan2
Outgoing Interface	port2
Source	all
Destination	FTP-server
Schedule	always
Service	FTP
Action	ACCEPT

To add the security policy with the CLI:

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM-B
    config firewall policy
      edit 0
        set name Access-server
        set srcintf wan2
        set dstintf port2
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr FTP-server-VIP
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service FTP
      next
    end
  next
end
```

Backing up and restoring configurations in multi VDOM mode

When a FortiGate is in multi VDOM mode, the configuration can be backed up or restored using the GUI or the CLI. Back up and restoration permissions depend on the VDOM administrator when in multi VDOM mode:

- A global *super_admin* can back up and restore the global configuration or the configuration of a specific VDOM.
- A VDOM administrator of one VDOM can only back up and restore the configuration of the current VDOM.

- A VDOM administrator of multiple VDOMs can back up and restore the configuration of multiple VDOMs.

To back up the configuration using the GUI:

1. Click on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and select *Configuration* > *Backup*.
2. Select *VDOM* for the *Scope*. The *VDOM* dropdown menu is displayed.
3. Select the VDOM you want to back up.
4. Direct the backup to your *Local PC* or to a *USB Disk*.
5. Enable *Encryption*.



This is recommended to secure your backup configurations and prevent unauthorized parties from reloading your configuration.

6. Enter a password, and enter it again to confirm it. This password will be required to restore the configuration.
7. Click *OK*.
8. When prompted, select a location on the PC or USB disk to save the configuration file. The configuration file will have a .conf extension.

To restore the FortiGate configuration using the GUI:

1. Click on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and select *Configuration* > *Restore*.
2. Select *VDOM* for the *Scope*. The *VDOM* dropdown menu is displayed.
3. Select the VDOM that you want to restore the configuration for.
4. Identify the source of the configuration file to be restored: your *Local PC* or a *USB Disk*.
   The *USB Disk* option will not be available if no USB drive is inserted in the USB port. You can restore from the FortiManager using the CLI.
5. Click *Upload*, locate the configuration file, and click *Open*.



Confirm that the configuration file you are uploading is for the same VDOM selected from the dropdown menu.

6. Enter the password if required.
7. Click *OK*.

Backing up configurations in the CLI

Configuration backups can be performed in the CLI using the `execute backup` commands. If you are backing up a VDOM configuration instead of the global configuration, first enter the commands:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
```

Configurations can be backed up in FortiOS format.

Configuration files can be backed up to various locations depending on the command:

- `flash`: Backup the configuration file to the flash drive.
- `ftp`: Backup the configuration file to an FTP server.

- `sftp`: Backup the configuration file to a SFTP server.
- `tftp`: Backup the configuration file to a TFTP server.
- `usb`: Backup the configuration file to an external USB drive.

Command	Description
`# execute backup config`	Back up the configuration in FortiOS format. Backup your configuration file to: • `flash` • `ftp` • `sftp` • `tftp` • `usb`
`# execute backup full-config`	Backup the configuration, including backups of default configuration settings. Backup your configuration file to: • `ftp` • `sftp` • `tftp` • `usb`

To back up the configuration in FortiOS format using the CLI:

For FTP, note that port number and username are optional depending on the FTP site:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute backup config ftp <backup_filename> <ftp_server>[<:ftp_port>] [<password>]
[<backup_password>]
```

or for TFTP:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute backup config tftp <backup_filename> <tftp_servers> [<backup_password>]
```

or for SFTP:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute backup config sftp <backup_filename> <sftp_server>[<:sftp_port>] <password>
[<backup_password>]
```

or for an external USB:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute backup config usb <backup_filename> [<backup_password>]
```

Restoring configurations in the CLI

Restoring configurations can be performed in the CLI using the `execute restore` commands. If you are restoring a VDOM configuration instead of the global configuration, first enter the commands:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
```

When restoring a VDOM configuration, ensure that the configuration file is for the correct VDOM specified.

Command	Description
`# execute restore config`	Restore a configuration that is in FortiOS format. Configurations can be loaded from: • `dhcp`: Load the configuration though DHCP. • `flash`: Load the configuration file from flash to firewall. • `ftp`: Load the configuration file from an FTP server. • `tftp`: Load the configuration from a TFTP server. • `usb`: Load the configuration file from an external USB disk to firewall.

To restore the FortiGate configuration in FortiOS format using the CLI:

For FTP, note that port number and username are optional depending on the FTP site:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute restore config ftp <file_path> <ftp_server>[<:port>] [<FTP password>]
[<password>]
```

or for TFTP:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute restore config tftp <file_name> <tftp_server> [<password>]
```

or for DHCP:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute restore config dhcp <port> [<VLAN_ID>]
```

or for flash:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute restore config flash <revision_ID>
```

or for an external USB:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom_name>
        execute restore config usb <file_name> [<password>]
```

High Availability

Whether your FortiGate is used as a security gateway, an internal segmentation firewall, in the cloud, or in an MSSP environment, as long as there is critical traffic passing through it, there is risk of it being a single point of failure. Physical outages can occur due to power failures, physical link failures, transceiver failures, or power supply failures. Non-physical outages can be caused by routing, resource issues, or kernel panic.

Network outages cause disruptions to business operations, downtime, and frustration for users and in some situations may have financial setbacks. In designing your network and architecture, it is important to weigh the risks and consequences associated with unexpected outages.

There are many ways to build redundancy and resiliency. In a switching network, you can accomplish this by adding redundant links and switches in partial or full mesh topologies. Using redundant and aggregate links, you can avoid a single link failure causing a network to go down. Using SD-WAN, you can build redundant and intelligent WAN load balancing and failover architectures.

FortiGate HA offers several solutions for adding redundancy in the case where a failure occurs on the FortiGate, or is detected by the FortiGate through monitored links, routes, and other health checks. These solutions support fast failover to avoid lengthy network outages and disruptions to your traffic.

FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP)

FGCP provides a solution for two key requirements of critical enterprise networking components: enhanced reliability and increased performance. Enhanced reliability is achieved through device failover protection, link failover protection, and remote link failover protection. Session failover protection for most IPv4 and IPv6 sessions also contributes to enhanced reliability. Increased performance is achieved though active-active HA load balancing.

FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP)

In a network that already includes load balancing (either with load balancers or routers) for traffic redundancy, two entities (either standalone FortiGates or FGCP clusters) can be integrated into the load balancing configuration using the FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP). The external load balancers or routers can distribute sessions among the FortiGates and the FGSP performs session synchronization of IPv4 and IPv6 TCP, SCTP, UDP, ICMP, expectation, and NAT sessions to keep the session tables of both entities synchronized. In the event of a failure, the load balancer can detect the failed unit and failover the sessions to other active members to continue processing the traffic.

VRRP

FortiGates can function as primary or backup Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) routers. The FortiGates can quickly and easily integrate into a network that has already deployed VRRP. A FortiGate can be integrated into a VRRP group with any third-party VRRP devices, and VRRP can provide redundancy between multiple FortiGates. FortiOS supports VRRP version 2 and 3.

The following topics provide more information about each HA solution and other HA related topics:

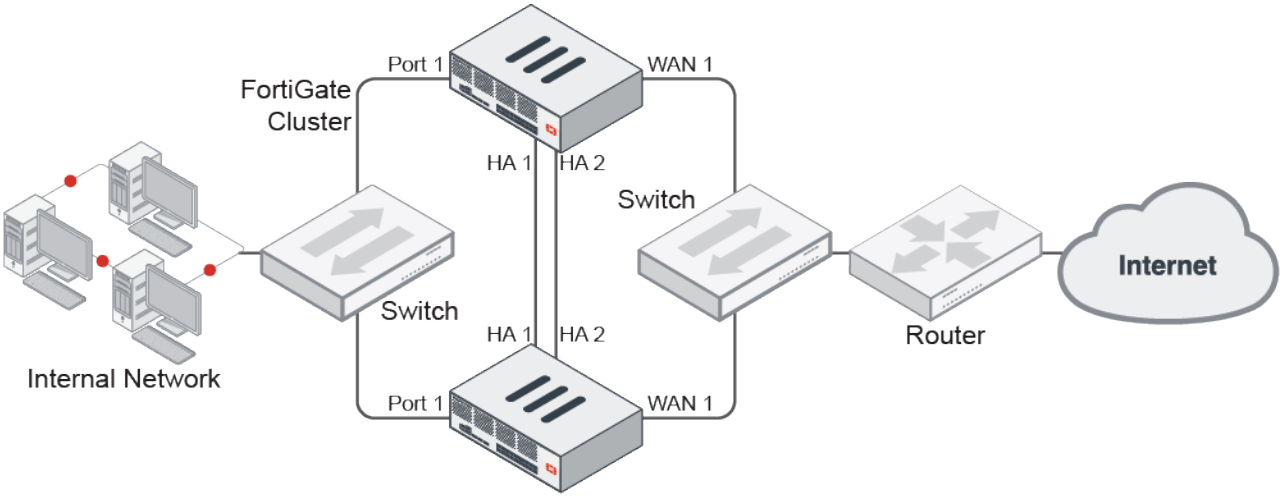
- FGCP on page 930
- FGSP on page 978
- Using standalone configuration synchronization on page 1002
- VRRP on page 1004

FGCP

High availability (HA) is usually required in a system where there is high demand for little downtime. There are usually hot-swaps, backup routes, or standby backup units and as soon as the active entity fails, backup entities will start

functioning. This results in minimal interruption for the users.

The FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) is a proprietary HA solution whereby FortiGates can find other member FortiGates to negotiate and create a cluster. A FortiGate HA cluster consists of at least two FortiGates (members) configured for HA operation. All FortiGates in the cluster must be the same model and have the same firmware installed. Cluster members must also have the same hardware configuration (such as the same number of hard disks). All cluster members share the same configurations except for their host name and priority in the HA settings. The cluster works like a device but always has a hot backup device.



Critical cluster components

The following are critical components in an HA cluster:

- Identical heartbeat connections and interfaces: members will use this to communicate with each other. In general, a two-member cluster is most common. We recommend double back-to-back heartbeat connections (as demonstrated in the topology).
- Identical connections for internal and external interfaces: we recommend similar connections from each member to the switches for the cluster to function properly (as demonstrated in the topology).

The HA heartbeat interface communicates with each unit in the cluster using the same heartbeat interface for each member.

For example, if port1 and port2 are the heartbeat interfaces for the HA cluster, then in a cluster consisting of two members:

- port1 of the primary FortiGate should be connected to port1 of the secondary FortiGate.
- port2 of the primary FortiGate should be connected to port2 of the secondary FortiGate.

General operation

The following are best practices for general cluster operation:

- Ensure that heartbeat communication is present (see HA heartbeat interface on page 933).
- Enable the session synchronization option in daily operation (see FGSP basic peer setup on page 981).
- Monitor traffic flowing in and out of the interfaces.

Failover

FGCP provides failover protection in the following scenarios:

- The active device loses power.
- A monitored interface loses a connection.

After failover occurs, the user will not notice any difference, except that the active device has changed. See Failover protection on page 933 for more information.

Synchronizing the configuration

FGCP uses a combination of incremental and periodic synchronization to make sure that the configuration of all cluster units is synchronized to that of the primary unit.

The following settings are not synchronized between cluster units:

- The FortiGate host name
- GUI Dashboard widgets
- HA override
- HA device priority
- The virtual cluster priority
- The HA priority setting for a ping server (or dead gateway detection) configuration
- The system interface settings of the HA reserved management interface
- The HA default route for the reserved management interface, set using the `ha-mgmt-interface-gateway` option of the `config system ha` command

Most subscriptions and licenses are not synchronized, as each FortiGate must be licensed individually. FortiToken Mobile is an exception; they are registered to the primary unit and synchronized to the secondary units.

The primary unit synchronizes all other configuration settings, including the other HA configuration settings.

All synchronization activity takes place over the HA heartbeat link using TCP/703 and UDP/703 packets.

The following topics provide more information about FGCP:

- Failover protection on page 933
- HA heartbeat interface on page 933
- HA active-passive cluster setup on page 942
- HA active-active cluster setup on page 943
- HA virtual cluster setup on page 945
- Check HA sync status on page 948
- Out-of-band management with reserved management interfaces on page 950
- In-band management on page 956
- Upgrading FortiGates in an HA cluster on page 956
- HA between remote sites over managed FortiSwitches on page 957
- HA using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch on page 962
- VDOM exceptions on page 965
- Override FortiAnalyzer and syslog server settings on page 967
- Routing NetFlow data over the HA management interface on page 971
- Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations on page 973
- Disabling stateful SCTP inspection on page 975

- Querying autoscale clusters for FortiGate VM on page 976
- Troubleshoot an HA formation on page 977

Failover protection

The FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) provides failover protection, meaning that a cluster can provide FortiGate services even when one of the devices in the cluster encounters a problem that would result in the complete loss of connectivity for a stand-alone FortiGate unit. Failover protection provides a backup mechanism that can be used to reduce the risk of unexpected downtime, especially in mission-critical environments.

FGCP supports failover protection in three ways:

1. Link failover maintains traffic flow if a link fails.
2. If a device loses power, it automatically fails over to a backup unit with minimal impact on the network.
3. Optionally, if an SSD fails, it can automatically fail over to a backup unit.

When session-pickup is enabled in the HA settings, existing TCP session are kept, and users on the network are not impacted by downtime as the traffic can be passed without reestablishing the sessions.

When and how the failover happens

1. Link fails

Before triggering a failover when a link fails, the administrator must ensure that monitor interfaces are configured. Normally, the internal interface that connects to the internal network, and an outgoing interface for traffic to the internet or outside the network, should be monitored. Any of those links going down will trigger a failover.

2. Loss of power for active unit.

When an active (primary) unit loses power, a backup (secondary) unit automatically becomes the active, and the impact on traffic is minimal. There are no settings for this kind of fail over.

3. SSD failure

HA failover can be triggered by an SSD failure.

To enable an SSD failure triggering HA fail over:

```
config system ha
    set ssd-failover enable
end
```

HA heartbeat interface

The HA heartbeat allows cluster units to communicate with each other. The heartbeat consists of hello packets that are sent at regular intervals by the heartbeat interface of all cluster units. The hello packets describe the state of the cluster unit (including communication sessions) and are used by other cluster units to keep the cluster synchronized. While the cluster is operating, the HA heartbeat confirms that all cluster units are functioning normally.

HA heartbeat packets are Layer 2 Ethernet frames that use EtherType values of 0x8890 and 0x8891 rather than 0x0800 for normal 802.3 IP packets. The default time interval between HA heartbeats is 200 ms.

As a best practice, it is recommended to isolate the heartbeat devices from the user networks by connecting the heartbeat devices to a dedicated switch that is not connected to any network. The heartbeat packets contain sensitive information about the cluster configuration and may use a considerable amount of network bandwidth. If the cluster consists of two FortiGates, connect the heartbeat device interfaces back-to back using a crossover cable. If there are more than two FortiGates, each heartbeat interface should be connected to a dedicated switch. For example, in a four-member HA cluster with two heartbeat interfaces, there would be two switches (one switch dedicated to each interface).

Upon starting up, a FortiGate configured for HA broadcasts HA heartbeat hello packets from its HA heartbeat interface to find other FortiGates configured to operate in HA mode. If two or more FortiGates operating in HA mode connect with each other, they compare HA configurations (mode, password, and group ID). If the HA configurations match, then the units negotiate to form a cluster.



The HA heartbeat interface communicates with each unit in the cluster using the same heartbeat interface for each member.

For example, if port1 and port2 are the heartbeat interfaces for the HA cluster, then in a cluster consisting of two members:

- port1 of the primary FortiGate should be connected to port1 of the secondary FortiGate.
- port2 of the primary FortiGate should be connected to port2 of the secondary FortiGate.

Configuring an HA heartbeat interface

A heartbeat interface is an Ethernet network interface in a cluster that is used by the FGCP for HA heartbeat communications between cluster units.

By default, two interfaces are configured to be heartbeat interfaces on most FortiGate models. The heartbeat interface configuration can be changed to select an additional or different heartbeat interface. It is possible to select only one heartbeat interface; however, this is not a recommended configuration (see Split brain scenario on page 935).

Another important setting in the HA configuration is the heartbeat interface priority. In all cases, the heartbeat interface with the highest priority is used for all HA heartbeat communication. If the interface fails or becomes disconnected, then the selected heartbeat interface with the next highest priority handles all HA heartbeat communication.

If more than one heartbeat interface has the same priority, the heartbeat interface with the highest priority that is also highest in the heartbeat interface list is used for all HA heartbeat communication. If this interface fails or becomes disconnected, then the selected heartbeat interface with the highest priority that is next highest in the list handles all heartbeat communication (see Selecting heartbeat packets and interfaces on page 935).

The default heartbeat interface configuration sets the priority of both heartbeat interfaces to 50, and the range is 0 to 512. When selecting a new heartbeat interface, the default priority is 0. The higher the number, the higher the priority.

In most cases, the default heartbeat interface configuration can be maintained as long the heartbeat interfaces are connected. Configuring HA heartbeat interfaces is the same for virtual clustering and for standard HA clustering. Up to eight heartbeat interface can be selected. This limit only applies to FortiGates with more than eight physical interfaces.



Heartbeat communications can be enabled on physical interfaces, but not on switch ports, VLAN subinterfaces, IPsec VPN interfaces, redundant interfaces, or 802.3ad aggregate interfaces.

To change the heartbeat interfaces in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *HA* and select a *Mode*.
2. Click the + in the *Heartbeat interfaces* field to select an interface.
3. Click *OK*.

To configure two interfaces as heartbeat interfaces with the same priority in the CLI:

```
config system ha
    set hbdev port4 150 port5 150
end
```

In this example, port4 and port5 are configured as the HA heartbeat interfaces and they both have a priority of 150.

To configure two interfaces as heartbeat interfaces with different priorities in the CLI:

```
config system ha
    set hbdev port4 100 port1 50
end
```

In this example, port4 and port1 are configured as the HA heartbeat interfaces. The priority for port4 is higher (100) than port1 (50), so port4 is the preferred HA heartbeat interface.

Split brain scenario

At least one heartbeat interface must be selected for the HA cluster to function correctly. This interface must be connected to all the units in the cluster. If heartbeat communication is interrupted and cannot fail over to a second heartbeat interface, then the cluster units will not be able to communicate with each other and more than one cluster unit may become a primary unit. As a result, the cluster stops functioning normally because multiple devices on the network may be operating as primary units with the same IP and MAC addresses creating a split brain scenario. See Split brain scenario: on page 978 for more information.

Sharing heartbeat interfaces with traffic ports

HA heartbeat and data traffic is supported on the same cluster interface. In NAT mode, if the heartbeat interfaces are used for processing network traffic, then the interface can be assigned any IP address. The IP address does not affect HA heartbeat traffic.

In transparent mode, the heartbeat interface can be connected to the network with management access enabled on the same interface. A management connection would then be established to the interface using the transparent mode management IP address. This configuration does not affect HA heartbeat traffic.

While these configurations are allowable, they are not recommended. When possible, use dedicated interfaces for heartbeat traffic.

Selecting heartbeat packets and interfaces

HA heartbeat hello packets are sent constantly by all of the enabled heartbeat interfaces. Using these hello packets, each cluster unit confirms that the other cluster units are still operating. The FGCP selects one of the heartbeat interfaces to be used for communication between the cluster units. This interface is used for heartbeat communication and is based on the linkfail states of the heartbeat interfaces, the heartbeat interface priority, and the interface index. The connected heartbeat interface with the highest priority is selected for heartbeat communication.

If more than one connected heartbeat interface has the highest priority, then the FGCP selects the heartbeat interface with the lowest interface index. The interface index order is visible in the CLI by running the `diagnose netlink interface list` command.

If the interface that is processing heartbeat traffic fails or becomes disconnected, the FGCP uses the same criteria to select another heartbeat interface for heartbeat communication. If the original heartbeat interface is fixed or reconnected, the FGCP selects this interface again for heartbeat communication.

The HA heartbeat interface communicates cluster session information, synchronizes the cluster configuration, synchronizes the cluster kernel routing table, and reports individual cluster member statuses. The HA heartbeat constantly communicates HA status information to make sure that the cluster is operating properly.

Modifying heartbeat timing

The heartbeat interval and heartbeat lost threshold are two variables that dictate the length of time one cluster unit will wait before determining a peer is dead.

```
config system ha
    set hb-interval <integer>
    set hb-interval-in-milliseconds {100 | 10}
    set hb-lost-threshold <integer>
end
```

`hb-interval <integer>`	Set the time between sending heartbeat packets; increase to reduce false positives (1 - 20, default = 2).
`hb-interval-in-milliseconds {100 | 10}`	Set the number of milliseconds for each heartbeat interval (100 or 10, default = 100).
`hb-lost-threshold <integer>`	Set the number of lost heartbeats to signal a failure; increase to reduce false positives (1 - 60, default = 20).

Heartbeats are sent out every 2 × 100 ms, and it takes 20 consecutive lost heartbeats for a cluster member to be detected as dead. Therefore, it takes by default 2 × 100 ms × 20 = 4000 ms, or 4 seconds, for a failure to be detected.

Sub-second heartbeat failure detection can be achieved by lowering the interval and threshold or lowering the heartbeat interval unit of measurement from 100 ms to 10 ms.

If the primary unit does not receive a heartbeat packet from a subordinate unit before the heartbeat threshold expires, the primary unit assumes that the subordinate unit has failed.

If a subordinate unit does not receive a heartbeat packet from the primary unit before the heartbeat threshold expires, the subordinate unit assumes that the primary unit has failed. The subordinate unit then begins negotiating to become the new primary unit.

The HA heartbeat packets consume more bandwidth if the heartbeat interval is short. But if the heartbeat interval is very long, the cluster is not as sensitive to topology and other network changes. Therefore, gauge your settings based on the amount of traffic and CPU usage sustainable by the cluster units versus the tolerance for an outage when the primary unit fails. Avoid using the heartbeat interfaces as traffic ports to prevent congesting the interfaces.

Changing the time to wait in the hello state

The hello state hold down time is the number of seconds that a cluster unit waits before changing from hello state to work state. After a failure or when starting up, cluster units operate in the hello state to send and receive heartbeat packets so

that all the cluster units can find each other and form a cluster. A cluster unit should change from the hello state to work state after it finds all the other FortiGates to form a cluster with.

If all cluster units cannot find each other during the hello state, then some cluster units may join the cluster after it has formed. This can cause disruptions to the cluster and affect how it operates. A delay could occur if the cluster units are located at different sites or if communication is delayed between the heartbeat interfaces. If delays occur, increase the cluster units wait time in the hello state.

```
config system ha
    set hello-holddown <integer>
end
```

`hello-holddown <integer>`	Set the time to wait before changing from hello to work state, in seconds (5 - 300, default = 20).

Configuring HA heartbeat encryption and authentication

HA heartbeat encryption and authentication to encrypt and authenticate HA heartbeat packets can be enabled. HA heartbeat packets should be encrypted and authenticated if the cluster interfaces that send HA heartbeat packets are also connected to the networks. HA heartbeat encryption and authentication are disabled by default. Note that enabling these settings could reduce cluster performance.

```
config system ha
    set authentication {enable | disable}
    set encryption {enable | disable}
end
```

If HA heartbeat packets are not encrypted, the cluster password and changes to the cluster configuration could be exposed. An attacker may be able to sniff HA packets to get cluster information. Enabling HA heartbeat message authentication prevents an attacker from creating false HA heartbeat messages. False HA heartbeat messages could affect the stability of the cluster.

HA authentication and encryption uses AES-128 for encryption and SHA1 for authentication. Heartbeat messages are encrypted and encapsulated in ESP packets for transfer in an IPsec tunnel between the cluster members.

Heartbeat bandwidth requirements

The majority of the traffic processed by the HA heartbeat interface is session synchronization traffic. Other heartbeat interface traffic required to synchronize IPsec states, IPsec keys, routing tables, configuration changes, and so on is usually negligible.

The amount of traffic required for session synchronization depends on the connections per second (CPS) that the cluster is processing, since only new sessions (and session table updates) need to be synchronized.

Another factor to consider is that if session pickup is enabled, the traffic on the heartbeat interface surges during a failover or when a unit joins or re-joins the cluster. When one of these events occurs, the entire session table needs to be synchronized. Lower throughput HA heartbeat interfaces may increase failover time if they cannot handle the higher demand during these events.

The amount of heartbeat traffic can also be reduced by:

- Turning off session pickup if it is not needed
- Enabling `session-pickup-delay` to reduce the number of sessions that are synchronized
- Using the `session-sync-dev` option to move session synchronization traffic off of the heartbeat link

Heartbeat packet EtherTypes

Normal 802.3 IP packets have an EtherType field value of 0x0800. EtherType values other than 0x0800 are understood as Layer 2 frames rather than IP packets.

HA heartbeat packets use the following EtherTypes:

Field value	Function	Description
0x8890	Heartbeat	Heartbeat packets are used by cluster units to find other cluster units, and to verify the status of other cluster units while the cluster is operating. Use the `ha-eth-type` option to change the EtherType.
0x8891	Traffic redistribution from primary to subordinate	These are used when the HA primary needs to redistribute traffic packets and the corresponding session information to the subordinate units in A-A mode. Use the `hc-eth-type` option to change the EtherType.
0x8892	Session synchronization	Session synchronization uses the heartbeat interfaces for communication, unless session synchronization devices are specified. See Session synchronization on page 938 for more information.
0x8893	HA Telnet sessions (configuration synchronization)	The Telnet sessions are used to synchronize the cluster configurations, and to connect from one cluster unit's CLI to another when an administrator uses the `execute ha manage` command. Use the `l2ep-eth-type` option to change the EtherType.

Session synchronization

Since large amounts of session synchronization traffic can increase network congestion, it is recommended to keep this traffic off of the network and separate from the HA heartbeat interfaces by using dedicated connections for it. The interfaces are configured in the `session-sync-dev` setting.

The session synchronization device interfaces must be connected together by directly using the appropriate cable or using switches. If one of the interfaces becomes disconnected, then the cluster uses the remaining interfaces for session synchronization. If all the session synchronization interfaces become disconnected, then session synchronization reverts to using the HA heartbeat link.

All session synchronization traffic is between the primary unit and each subordinate unit. Session synchronization always uses UDP/708, but this will be encapsulated differently depending on the `session-sync-dev` setting. If `session-sync-dev` is specified, the packets will use 0x8892 and will exit over the mentioned port. If `session-sync-dev` is not specified, the packets will use 0x8893 and will exit the heartbeat port.

Session synchronization packets are typically processed by a single CPU core because all source and destination MAC addresses of the L2 frames are the same. Hashing based on the L2 addresses maps the processing of the frames to the same core. When large amounts of session synchronization traffic must be processed, enable the `sync-packet-balance` setting to distribute the processing to more cores. This effectively uses a larger set of MAC addresses for the hashing to map to multiple cores.

Troubleshooting heartbeat packets

Understanding the different types of heartbeat packets will ease troubleshooting. Heartbeat packets are recognized as Layer 2 frames. The switches and routers on the heartbeat network that connect to heartbeat interfaces must be configured to allow them to pass through. If Layer 2 frames are dropped by these network devices, then the heartbeat traffic will not be allowed between the cluster units.

For example, some third-party network equipment may not allow EtherType 0x8893. The unit can still be found in the HA cluster, but you would be unable to run `execute ha manage` to manage the other unit. Use the following settings to change the EtherTypes of the HA heartbeat packets, if they require changing them for the traffic to be forwarded on the connected switch.

```
config system ha
    set ha-eth-type <hex_value>
    set hc-eth-type <hex_value>
    set l2ep-eth-type <hex_value>
end
```

To change the EtherType values of the heartbeat and HA Telnet session packets:

```
config system ha
    set ha-eth-type 8895
    set l2ep-eth-type 889f
end
```

For troubleshooting issues with packets sent or received on the HA heartbeat ports, use the following diagnostic command to sniff the traffic by EtherType.

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'ether proto <EtherType_in_hex>' 6 0 1
```

To sniff the traffic on EtherType 0x8890:

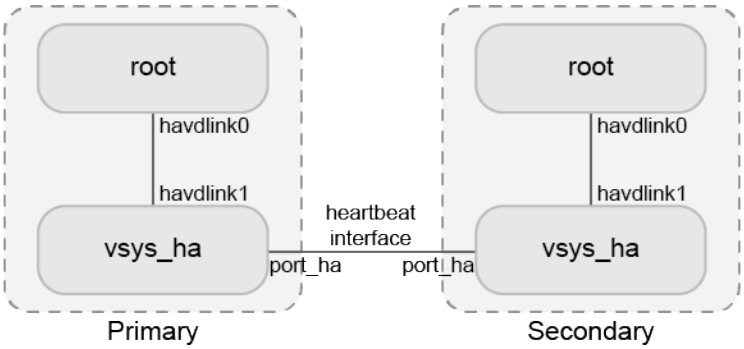
```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'ether proto 0x8890' 6 0 l
Using Original Sniffing Mode
interfaces=[any]
filters=[ether proto 0x8890]
2022-10-19 16:22:26.512813 port5 out Ether type 0x8890 printer hasn't been added to sniffer.
0x0000   0000 0000 0000 000c 293b e61c 8890 5201        ........);....R.
0x0010   020c 6e65 7700 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ..new...........
0x0020   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ................
0x0030   0000 0000 0700 0000 0000 0000 0000 8738        ...............8
0x0040   0100 706f 7274 3500 0000 0000 0000 0000        ..port5.........
0x0050   0000 0300 843d 4647 564d 3034 544d 3232        .....=FGVM04TM22
0x0060   3030 3236 3338 0b00 0100 000c 0001 00c8        002001..........
0x0070   0d00 0100 000e 0004 0009 0000 000f 0004        ................
0x0080   0000 0000 0010 0004 0000 0000 0011 0004        ................
0x0090   0000 0000 0012 0004 0001 0000 0028 0000        .............(..
0x00a0   002b 0002 000a 002c 0002 000a 0038 0008        .+.....,.....8..
0x00b0   00c0 0300 0000 0000 0037 0004 0000 0000        .........7......
0x00c0   003c 0030 0030 2704 175f 0858 9d4f 5611        .<.0.0'.._.X.OV.
0x00d0   2005 6310 b1b0 be14 e029 1f5b 61fd 5b49        ..c......).[a.[I
0x00e0   7cad bed4 ecaf 05bd 70c3 2adc 4fa0 6ab7        |.......p.*.O.j.
0x00f0   4d5d 1df7 4f3d 000c 0007 0000 0002 0000        M]..O=..........
0x0100   0085 0400 003e 0001 0000 4000 0400 0000        .....>....@.....
0x0110   0000 3f00 2400 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ..?.$...........
0x0120   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ................
```

```
0x0130   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 3300 0400 0000        ..........3.....
0x0140   0000 2a00 7200 0a00 789c edcc 290e c250        ..*.r...x...)..P
0x0150   1440 d19f d420 5068 3449 5dcb d009 8b66        .@.... Ph4I]....f
0x0160   2b34 8435 b302 3401 9e22 6f05 15e7 c82b        +4.5..4.."o....+
0x0170   ee7c bb3f daf2 675d 9f9f af6a fee6 7dce        .|.?..g]...j..}.
0x0180   efc8 879c 5791 8f39 6f22 9f72 de46 ee72        ....W..9o".r.F.r
0x0190   de45 ee73 6eca 2f0f 394f 91c7 9c2f 3169        .E.sn./.9O.../1i
0x01a0   9b94 af55 0100 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ...U............
0x01b0   0058 ac0f 0096 24af 0000 0000                  .X....$.....

2022-10-19 16:22:26.545236 port5 in Ether type 0x8890 printer hasn't been added to sniffer.
0x0000   ffff ffff ffff 000c 29ca ba5d 8890 5201        ........)..]..R.
0x0010   020c 6e65 7700 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ..new...........
0x0020   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ................
0x0030   0000 0000 0700 0000 0000 0000 0000 8738        ...............8
0x0040   0100 706f 7274 3500 0000 0000 0000 0000        ..port5.........
0x0050   0000 0300 d221 4647 564d 3034 544d 3232        .....!FGVM04TM22
0x0060   3030 3236 3339 0b00 0100 000c 0001 0080        002002..........
0x0070   0d00 0100 000e 0004 0000 0000 000f 0004        ................
0x0080   0000 0000 0010 0004 0000 0000 0011 0004        ................
0x0090   0000 0000 0012 0004 0000 0000 0028 0000        .............(..
0x00a0   002b 0002 000a 002c 0002 000a 0038 0008        .+.....,.....8..
0x00b0   00e6 0400 0000 0000 0037 0004 0000 0000        .........7......
0x00c0   003c 0030 0029 6d7e 3407 2d31 c00f 42b3        .<.0.)m~4.-1..B.
0x00d0   59b6 17cb 4be7 d043 a158 e74c 5841 c821        Y...K..C.X.LXA.!
0x00e0   7843 b598 c95d 3dcf 81a9 bc8b b304 53f3        xC...]=.......S.
0x00f0   17b6 3cd5 a83d 000c 0007 0000 0002 0000        ..<..=..........
0x0100   0085 0400 0040 0004 0000 0000 003f 0024        .....@.......?.$
0x0110   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ................
0x0120   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000        ................
0x0130   0000 0000 0033 0004 0000 0000 002a 0073        .....3.......*.s
0x0140   000a 0078 9ced cc21 1282 5014 40d1 3f43        ...x...!..P.@.?C
0x0150   7523 3651 414c 66b2 994c 1419 9bd9 ec7e        u#6QALf..L.....~
0x0160   5c82 ab52 5e72 de0a 0ce7 c41b ee74 996f        \..R^r.......t.o
0x0170   75f9 b15a bf5f 4d35 7df3 36e7 53e4 5dce        u..Z._M5}.6.S.].
0x0180   7de4 7dce e7c8 4dce 43e4 36e7 31f2 21e7        }.}...M.C.6.1.!.
0x0190   6b59 7297 f33d f231 e747 4cea 4dca cfaa        kYr..=.1.GL.M...
0x01a0   0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00fc ad0f        ................
0x01b0   c16c 2917 0000 0000                            .l).....
```

Interface IP addresses

An FGCP cluster communicates heartbeat packets using Layer 2 frames over the physical heartbeat interface, but it also communicates other synchronization traffic, logs, and locally generated traffic from subordinate devices over Layer 3 IP packets. Additional virtual interfaces are created in the hidden vsys_ha VDOM, which need to be addressed with IPv4 addresses.



The FGCP uses link-local IPv4 addresses (see RFC 3927) in the 169.254.0.x range for the virtual HA heartbeat interface (port_ha) and for the inter-VDOM link interfaces between the vsys_ha and management VDOM. When members join an HA cluster, each member's heartbeat interface (port_ha) is assigned an IP address from the range of 169.254.0.1 to 169.254.0.63/26. HA inter-VDOM link interfaces (havdlink0 and havdlink1) are assigned IP address from the range of 169.254.0.65 to 169.254.0.66/26.

The IP address that is assigned to a virtual heartbeat interface depends on the serial number priority of the member. Higher serial numbers have a higher priority, and therefore a lower `serialno_prio` number, for example:

```
# diagnose sys ha status
...
FGVM08TM20002002:    Secondary, serialno_prio=0, usr_priority=128, hostname=FGVM08TM20002002
FGVM08TM19003001:      Primary, serialno_prio=1, usr_priority=128, hostname=FGVM08TM19003001
```

The member with `serialno_prio=0` is assigned IP address 169.254.0.1, `serialno_prio=1` is assigned 169.254.0.2, and so forth.

To view the HA heartbeat interface IP address of the primary unit:

```
# get system ha status
...
vcluster 1: work 169.254.0.2
...
```

To view all the assigned IP addresses of a device:

```
# diagnose ip address list
IP=172.16.151.84->172.16.151.84/255.255.255.0 index=3 devname=port1
IP=192.168.2.204->192.168.2.204/255.255.255.0 index=6 devname=port2
IP=10.10.10.1->10.10.10.1/255.255.255.0 index=9 devname=port3
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=13 devname=root
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=16 devname=vsys_ha
IP=169.254.0.2->169.254.0.2/255.255.255.192 index=17 devname=port_ha
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=18 devname=vsys_fgfm
IP=169.254.0.65->169.254.0.65/255.255.255.192 index=19 devname=havdlink0
IP=169.254.0.66->169.254.0.66/255.255.255.192 index=20 devname=havdlink1
```

When generating traffic from a subordinate unit, traffic will be routed to the primary unit's port_ha virtual heartbeat interface. From there, if traffic is destined to another network, the traffic is routed from the vsys_ha VDOM to the management VDOM by the havdlink interfaces.

Use the `execute traceroute` command on the subordinate unit to display HA heartbeat IP addresses and the HA inter-VDOM link IP addresses.

To trace the route to an IP address on a subordinate unit:

```
# execute ha manage 1
# execute traceroute 172.20.20.10
traceroute to 172.20.20.10 (172.20.20.10), 32 hops max, 72 byte packets
1 169.254.0.1 0 ms 0 ms 0 ms
2 169.254.0.66 0 ms 0 ms 0 ms
3 172.20.20.10 0 ms 0 ms 0 ms
```

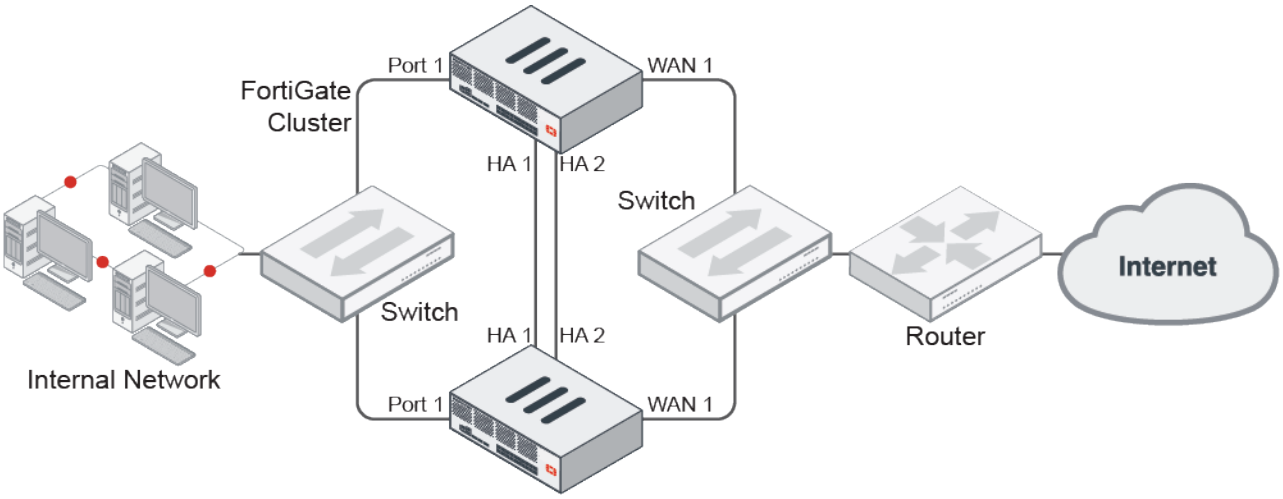
To run a sniffer trace on the primary unit to view the traffic flow:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'net 169.254.0.0/24' 4 0 1
```

HA active-passive cluster setup

An HA Active-Passive (A-P) cluster can be set up using the GUI or CLI.

This example uses the following network topology:

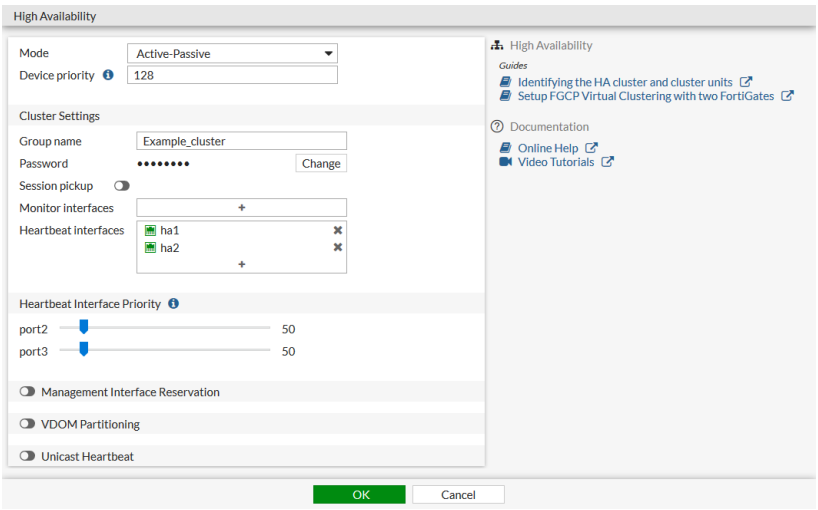


To set up an HA A-P cluster using the GUI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Go to *System* > *HA* and set the following options:

Mode	Active-Passive
Device priority	128 or higher
Group name	Example_cluster
Heartbeat interfaces	ha1 and ha2

Except for the device priority, these settings must be the same on all FortiGates in the cluster.



4. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. Connectivity with the FortiGate may be temporarily lost as the HA cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate's interfaces.
6. Factory reset the other FortiGate that will be in the cluster, configure GUI access, then repeat steps 1 to 5, omitting setting the device priority, to join the cluster.

To set up an HA A-P cluster using the CLI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Change the hostname of the FortiGate:

```
config system global
    set hostname Example1_host
end
```

   Changing the host name makes it easier to identify individual cluster units in the cluster operations.
4. Enable HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-p
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

5. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 on the other FortiGate devices to join the cluster.

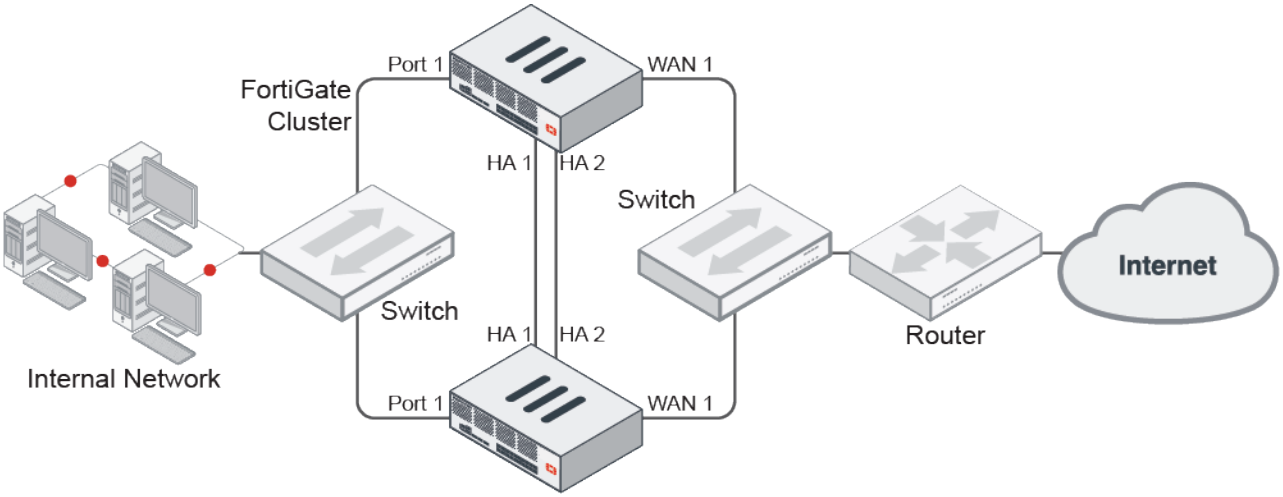
HA active-active cluster setup

An HA Active-Active (A-A) cluster can be set up using the GUI or CLI.



FGCP in Active-Active mode cannot load balance any sessions that traverse NPU VDOM links or regular VDOM links. If Active-Active session load balancing between VDOMs is required, use an external router to handle the inter-VDOM routing.

This example uses the following network topology:

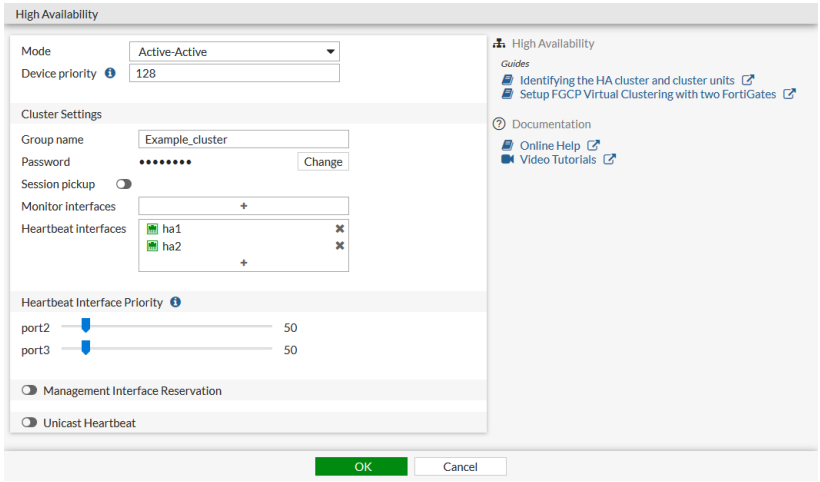


To set up an HA A-A cluster using the GUI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Go to *System* > *HA* and set the following options:

Mode	Active-Active
Device priority	128 or higher
Group name	Example_cluster
Heartbeat interfaces	ha1 and ha2

Except for the device priority, these settings must be the same on all FortiGates in the cluster.



4. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. Connectivity with the FortiGate may be temporarily lost as the HA cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate's interfaces.

6. Factory reset the other FortiGate that will be in the cluster, configure GUI access, then repeat steps 1 to 5, omitting setting the device priority, to join the cluster.

To set up an HA A-A cluster using the CLI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Change the hostname of the FortiGate:

```
config system global
    set hostname Example1_host
end
```

   Changing the host name makes it easier to identify individual cluster units in the cluster operations.
4. Enable HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-a
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

5. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 on the other FortiGate devices to join the cluster.

HA virtual cluster setup

Virtual clustering is an extension of FGCP HA that provides failover protection between two instances of one or more VDOMs operating on two FortiGates that are in a virtual cluster. A standard virtual cluster consists of FortiGates that are operating in active-passive HA mode with multiple VDOMs enabled.

Active-passive virtual clustering uses VDOM partitioning to send traffic for some VDOMs to the primary FortiGate and traffic for other VDOMs to the secondary FortiGates. Traffic distribution between FortiGates can potentially improve throughput. If a failure occurs and only one FortiGate continues to operate, all traffic fails over to that FortiGate, similar to normal HA. If the failed FortiGates rejoin the cluster, the configured traffic distribution is restored.

In an active-passive virtual cluster of two FortiGates, the primary and secondary FortiGates share traffic processing according to the VDOM partitioning configuration. If you add a third or fourth FortiGate, the primary and first secondary FortiGate process all traffic and the other one or two FortiGates operate in standby mode. If the primary or first secondary FortiGate fails, one of the other FortiGates becomes the new primary or secondary FortiGate and begins processing traffic.

Separation of VDOM traffic

Virtual clustering creates a cluster between instances of each VDOM on the two FortiGates in the virtual cluster. All traffic to and from a given VDOM is sent to one of the FortiGates where it stays within its VDOM and is only processed by that VDOM. One FortiGate is the primary FortiGate for each VDOM and one FortiGate is the secondary FortiGate for each VDOM. The primary FortiGate processes all traffic for its VDOMs; the secondary FortiGate processes all traffic for its VDOMs.

Virtual clustering and heartbeat interfaces

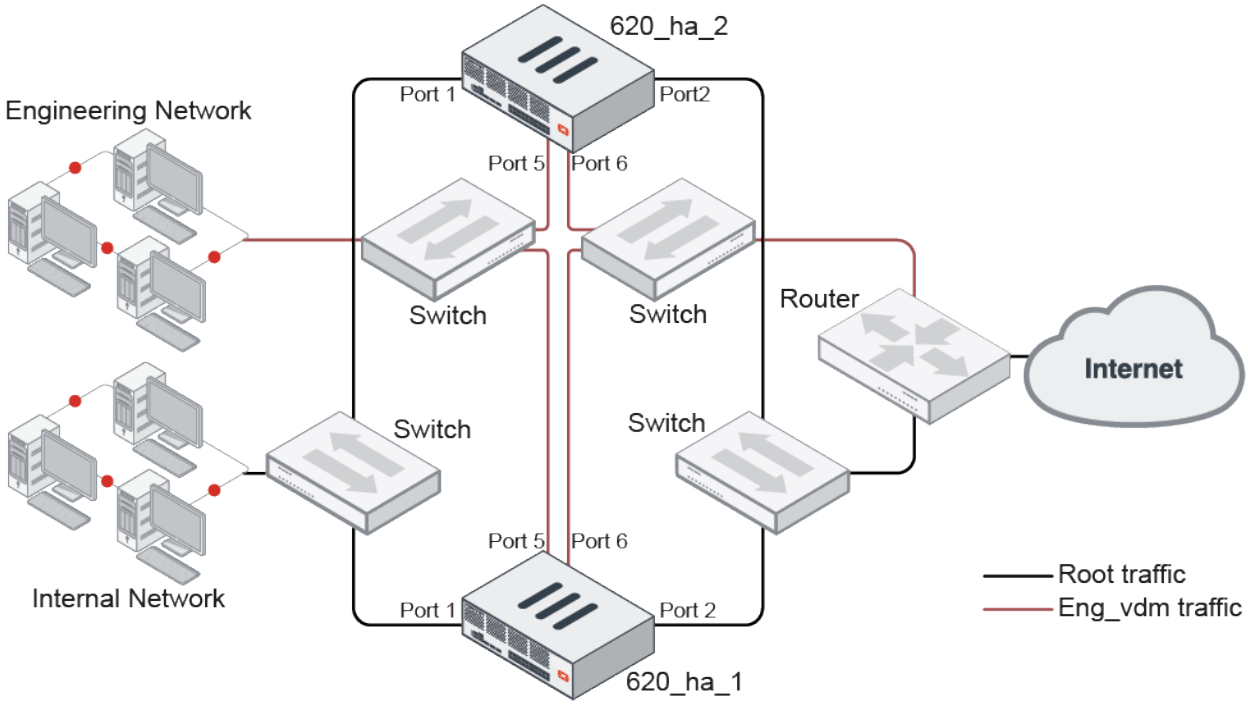
The HA heartbeat provides the same HA services in a virtual clustering configuration as in a standard HA configuration. One set of HA heartbeat interfaces provides HA heartbeat services for all of the VDOMs in the cluster. You do not have to add a heartbeat interface for each VDOM.

Special considerations for NPU-based VLANs in a Virtual Cluster

In an FGCP cluster, the primary FortiGate uses virtual MAC addresses when forwarding traffic, and the secondary uses the physical MAC addresses when forwarding traffic. In a virtual cluster, packets are sent with the cluster's virtual MAC addresses. However, in the case of NPU offloading on a non-root VDOM, traffic that leaves an NPU-based VLAN will use the physical MAC address of its parent interface rather than the virtual MAC address. If this behavior is not desired, disable *auto-asic-offload* in the firewall policy where the VLAN interface is used.

Example

This example shows a virtual cluster configuration consisting of two FortiGates. The virtual cluster has two VDOMs, Root and End_vdm.



The root VDOM can only be associated with virtual cluster 1.

The VDOM that is assigned as the management VDOM can also only be associated with virtual cluster 1.

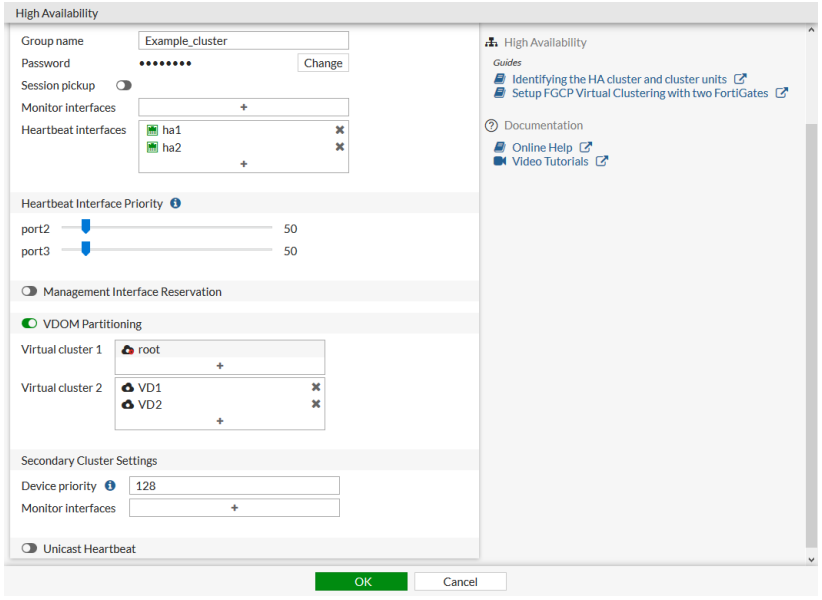
To set up an HA virtual cluster using the GUI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.

3. Go to *System* > *HA* and set the following options:

Mode	Active-Passive
Device priority	128 or higher
Group name	Example_cluster
Heartbeat interfaces	ha1 and ha2

   Except for the device priority, these settings must be the same on all FortiGates in the cluster.
4. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. Connectivity with the FortiGate may be temporarily lost as the HA cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate's interfaces.
6. Factory reset the other FortiGate that will be in the cluster, configure GUI access, then repeat steps 1 to 5, omitting setting the device priority, to join the cluster.
7. Go to *System* > *Settings* and enable *Virtual Domains*.
8. Click *Apply*. You will be logged out of the FortiGate.
9. Log back into the FortiGate, ensure that you are in the global VDOM, and go to *System* > *VDOM*.
10. Create two new VDOMs, such as VD1 and VD2:
    a. Click *Create New*. The *New Virtual Domain* page opens.
    b. Enter a name for the VDOM in the *Virtual Domain* field, then click *OK* to create the VDOM.
    c. Repeat these steps to create a second new VDOM.
11. Implement a virtual cluster by moving the new VDOMs to *Virtual cluster 2*:
    a. Go to *System* > *HA*.
    b. Enable *VDOM Partitioning*.
    c. Click on the *Virtual cluster 2* field and select the new VDOMs.



    d. Click *OK*.

To set up an HA virtual cluster using the CLI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Set up a regular A-P cluster. See HA active-passive cluster setup on page 942.
3. Enable VDOMs:

```
config system global
    set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
```

   You will be logged out of the FortiGate.
4. Create two VDOMs:

```
config vdom
    edit VD1
    next
    edit VD2
    next
end
```

5. Reconfigure the HA settings to be a virtual cluster:

```
config global
    config system ha
        set vcluster2 enable
        config secondary-vcluster
            set vdom "VD1" "VD2"
        end
    end
end
```

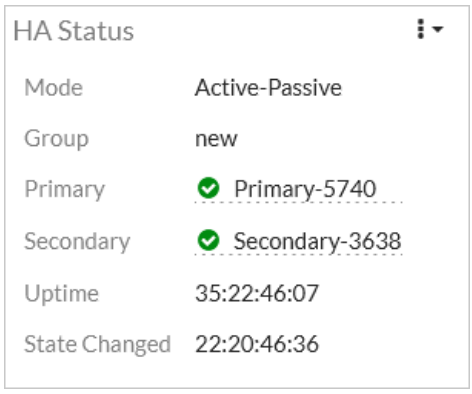
Check HA sync status

The HA sync status can be viewed in the GUI through either a widget on the *Dashboard* or on the *System* > *HA* page. It can also be confirmed through the CLI. When a cluster is out of sync, administrators should correct the issue as soon as possible as it affects the configuration integrity and can cause issues to occur.

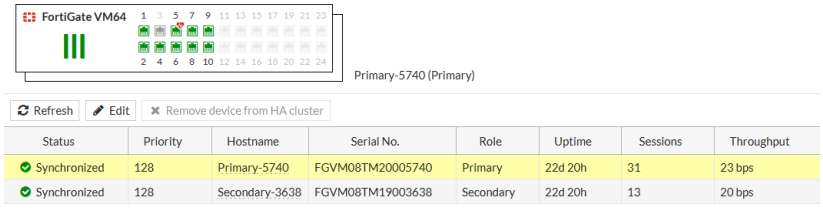
HA sync status in the GUI

- Dashboard widget:
  - Following HA setup, the *HA Status* widget can be added to the *Dashboard*. The widget shows the HA sync status by displaying a green checkmark next to each member in sync. A red mark indicates the member is out

of sync.



- *System* > *HA* page:
  - The same set of icons will be displayed on the *System* > *HA* page to indicate if the member is in sync.



HA sync status in the CLI

In the CLI, run the `get system ha status` command to see if the cluster is in sync. The sync status is reported under *Configuration Status*. In the following example, both members are in sync:

```
# get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-VM64
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 0
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 0:29:2
Cluster state change time: 2020-09-25 08:23:09
Primary selected using:
    <2020/09/25 08:23:09> FGVME000000JUG0E is selected as the primary because it has the
largest value of override priority.
    <2020/09/25 08:23:09> FGVMEV00000M6S87 is selected as the primary because it's the only
member in the cluster.
ses_pickup: disable
override: disable
Configuration Status:
    FGVME000000JUG0E(updated 2 seconds ago): in-sync
    FGVMEV00000M6S87(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
System Usage stats:
    FGVME000000JUG0E(updated 2 seconds ago):
        sessions=11, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=1%/0%/1%/98%, memory=69%
    FGVMEV00000M6S87(updated 4 seconds ago):
        sessions=1, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/1%/99%, memory=69%
HBDEV stats:
    FGVME000000JUG0E(updated 2 seconds ago):
```

```
        port1: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=60578029/155605/0/0,
tx=13360110/25218/0/0
    FGVMEV00000M6S87(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port1: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=7006310/19328/0/0,
tx=6220835/13974/0/0
MONDEV stats:
    FGVME000000JUG0E(updated 2 seconds ago):
        port1: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=60578029/155605/0/0,
tx=13360110/25218/0/0
        port2: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=70459776/175970/0/0,
tx=36854/226/0/0
    FGVMEV00000M6S87(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port1: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=7006310/19328/0/0,
tx=6220835/13974/0/0
        port2: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=7197677/20580/0/0,
tx=29200/83/0/0
Primary     : HA1             , FGVME000000JUG0E, HA cluster index = 0
Secondary   : HA2             , FGVMEV00000M6S87, HA cluster index = 1
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: work 169.254.0.1
Primary: FGVME000000JUG0E, HA operating index = 0
Secondary: FGVMEV00000M6S87, HA operating index = 1
```

Out-of-band management with reserved management interfaces

As part of an HA configuration, you can reserve up to four management interfaces to provide direct management access to all cluster units. For each reserved management interface, you can configure a different IP address, administrative access, and other interface settings, for each cluster unit. By connecting these interfaces to your network, you can separately manage each cluster unit from different IP addresses.

- Reserved management interfaces provide direct management access to each cluster unit, and give each cluster unit a different identity on your network. This simplifies using external services, such as SNMP, to monitor separate cluster units.
- Reserved management interfaces are not assigned HA virtual MAC addresses. They retain the permanent hardware address of the physical interface, unless you manually change it using the `config system interface` command.
- Reserved management interfaces and their IP addresses should not be used for managing a cluster using FortiManager. To manage a FortiGate HA cluster with FortiManager, use the IP address of one of the cluster unit interfaces.
- Configuration changes to a reserved management interface are not synchronized to other cluster units. Other configuration changes are automatically synchronized to all cluster units.



You can configure an in-band management interface for a cluster unit. See In-band management on page 956 for information. In-band management does not reserve the interface exclusively for HA management.

Management interface

Enable HTTPS or HTTP administrative access on the reserved management interfaces to connect to the GUI of each cluster unit. On secondary units, the GUI has the same features as the primary unit, except for unit specific information, for example:

- The System Information widget on the Status dashboard shows the secondary unit's serial number.
- In the cluster members list at *System* > *HA*, you can change the HA configuration of the unit that you are logged into. You can only change the host name and device priority of the primary and other secondary units.
- The system events logs show logs for the device that you are logged into. Use the HA device drop down to view the log messages for other cluster units, including the primary unit.

Enable SSH administrative access on the reserved management interfaces to connect to the CLI of each cluster unit. The CLI prompt includes the host of the cluster unit that you are connected to. Use the `execute ha manage` command to connect to other cluster unit CLIs.

Enable SNMP administrative access on a reserved management interface to use SNMP to monitor each cluster unit using the interface's IP address. Direct management of cluster members must also be enabled, see Configuration examples on page 952.

Reserved management interfaces are available in both NAT and transparent mode, and when the cluster is operating with multiple VDOMs.

FortiCloud, FortiSandbox, and other management services

By default, management services such as FortiCloud, FortiSandbox, SNMP, remote logging, and remote authentication, use a cluster interface. This means that communication from each cluster unit will come from a cluster interface of the primary unit, and not from the individual cluster unit's interface.

You can configure HA reserved management interfaces to be used for communication with management services by enabling the `ha-direct` option. This separates management traffic for each cluster unit, and allows each unit to be individually managed. This is especially useful when cluster units are in different physical locations.

The following management features will then use the HA reserved management interface:

- Remote logging, including syslog, FortiAnalyzer, and FortiCloud
- Remote authentication and certificate verification
- Communication with FortiSandbox
- Netflow and sflow, see Routing NetFlow data over the HA management interface on page 971 for information.
- SNMP queries and traps

Syntax for HA reserved management interfaces is as follows:

```
config system ha
    set ha-direct enable
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface <interface>
            set dst <destination IP>
            set gateway <IPv4 gateway>
            set gateway6 <IPv6 gateway>
        next
    end
end
```

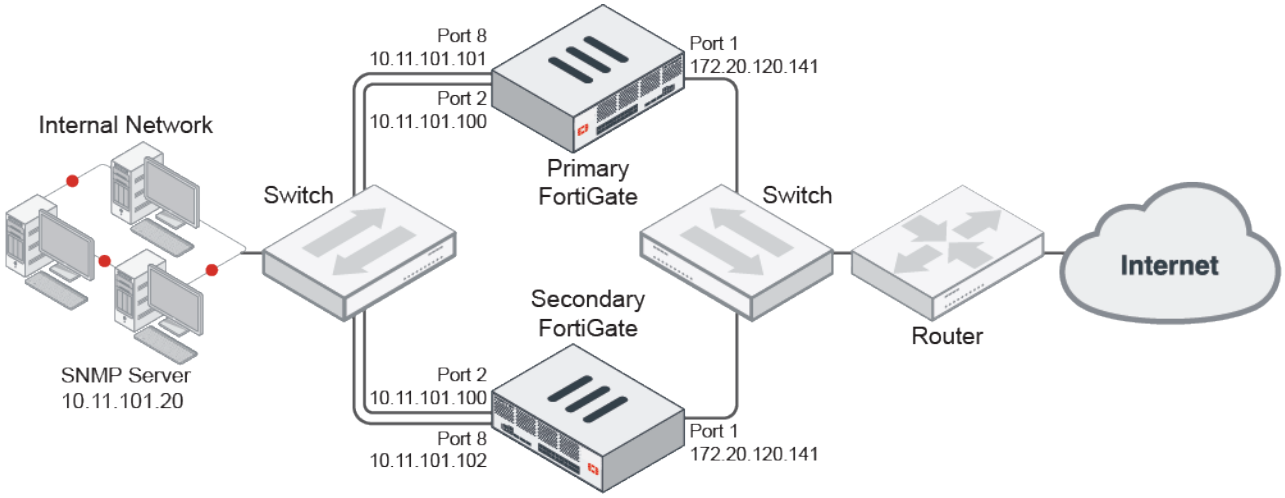


The `ha-direct` option is a pre-requisite for allowing communication on each HA reserved management interface for various management services listed above. Once enabled, all `source-ip` settings will be unset from log related, netflow and sflow management services.

SNMP requires `ha-direct` to be configured under SNMP settings only. See below for more configuration options.

Configuration examples

The configuration examples below will use the following topology:



Two FortiGate units are already operating in a cluster. On each unit, port8 is connected to the internal network through a switch and configured as an out-of-band reserved management interface.

Configuration changes to the reserved management interface are not synchronized to other cluster units.

Administrative access and default route for HA management interface

To configure the primary unit's reserved management interface, configure an IP address and management access on port8. Then, configure the necessary HA settings to enable the HA reserved management interface and its route. To configure the secondary unit's reserved management interface, access the unit's CLI through the primary unit, and configure an IP address, management access on port8, and the necessary HA settings. Configuration changes to the reserved management interface are not synchronized to other cluster units.

To configure the primary unit reserved management interface to allow HTTPS, SSH, and ICMP access:

1. From a computer on the internal network, connect to the CLI at 10.11.101.100 on port2.
2. Change the port8 IP address and management access:

```
config system interface
    edit port8
        set ip 10.11.101.101/24
        set allowaccess https ping ssh
    next
end
```

3. Configure the HA settings for the HA reserved management interface by defining a default route to route to the gateway 10.11.101.2:

```
config system ha
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
```

```
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface port8
            set gateway 10.11.101.2
        next
    end
end
```

You can now log into the primary unit's GUI by browsing to https://10.11.101.101. You can also log into the primary unit's CLI by using an SSH client to connect to 10.11.101.101.

To configure secondary unit reserved management interfaces to allow HTTPS, SSH, and ICMP access:

1. From a computer on the internal network, connect to the primary unit's CLI.
2. Connect to the secondary unit with the following command:

```
execute ha manage <unit id> <username> <password>
```

3. Change the port8 IP address and management access:

```
config system interface
    edit port8
        set ip 10.11.101.102/24
        set allowaccess https ping ssh
    next
end

exit
```

4. Configure the HA settings for the HA reserved management interface by defining a default route to route to the gateway 10.11.101.2:

```
config system ha
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface port8
            set gateway 10.11.101.2
        next
    end
end
```

You can now log into the secondary unit's GUI by browsing to https://10.11.101.102. You can also log into the secondary unit's CLI by using an SSH client to connect to 10.11.101.102.

SNMP monitoring

The SNMP server can get status information from the cluster members. To use the reserved management interfaces, you must add at least one HA direct management host to an SNMP community. If the SNMP configuration includes SNMP users with user names and passwords, HA direct management must be enabled for the users.

To configure the cluster for SNMP management using the reserved management interfaces in the CLI:

1. Allow SNMP on port8 on both primary and secondary units:

```
config system interface
    edit port8
```

```
        append allowaccess snmp
    next
end
```

2. Add an SNMP community with a host for the reserved management interface of each cluster member. The host includes the IP address of the SNMP server.

```
config system snmp community
    edit 1
        set name "Community"
        config hosts
            edit 1
                set ip 10.11.101.20 255.255.255.255
                set ha-direct enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```



Enabling `ha-direct` in a non-HA environment will make SNMP unusable.

3. Add an SNMP user for the reserved management interface:

```
config system snmp user
    edit "1"
        set notify-hosts 10.11.101.20
        set ha-direct enable
    next
end
```



The SNMP configuration is synchronized to all cluster units.

To get CPU, memory, and network usage information from the SNMP manager for each cluster unit using the reserved management IP addresses:

1. Connect to the SNMP manager CLI.
2. Get resource usage information for the primary unit using the MIB fields:

```
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.101 fgHaStatsCpuUsage
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.101 fgHaStatsMemUsage
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.101 fgHaStatsNetUsage
```

3. Get resource usage information for the primary unit using the OIDs:

```
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.101 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.13.2.1.1.3.1
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.101 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.13.2.1.1.4.1
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.101 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.13.2.1.1.5.1
```

4. Get resource usage information for the secondary unit using the MIB fields:

```
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.102 fgHaStatsCpuUsage
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.102 fgHaStatsMemUsage
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.102 fgHaStatsNetUsage
```

5. Get resource usage information for the primary unit using the OIDs:

```
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.102 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.13.2.1.1.3.1
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.102 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.13.2.1.1.4.1
snmpget -v2c -c Community 10.11.101.102 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.13.2.1.1.5.1
```

Firewall local-in policies for the reserved management interface

Enabling `ha-mgmt-intf-only` applies the local-in policy only to the VDOM that contains the reserved management interface. The incoming interface is set to match any interface in the VDOM.

To add local-in policies for the reserved management interface:

```
config firewall local-in-policy
    edit 0
        set ha-mgmt-intf-only enable
        set intf any
        set srcaddr internal-net
        set dstaddr mgmt-int
        set action accept
        set service HTTPS
        set schedule weekdays
    next
end
```

NTP over reserved management interfaces

When NTP is enabled in an HA cluster, the primary unit will always be the unit to contact the NTP server and synchronize system time to the secondary units over the HA heartbeat interface. However, in the event that the primary should contact the NTP server over the HA reserved management interface, then the `ha-direct` option should be enabled under the `config system ha` settings.

```
config system interface
    edit port5
        set ip 172.16.79.46 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config system ha
    set group-name FGT-HA
    set mode a-p
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface port5
            set gateway 172.16.79.1
        next
    end
    set ha-direct enable
end
```

```
config system ntp
    set ntpsync enable
    set syncinterval 5
end
```

In-band management

In-band management IP addresses are an alternative to reserved HA management interfaces, and do not require reserving an interface exclusively for management access. They can be added to multiple interfaces on each cluster unit.

The in-band management IP address is accessible from the network that the cluster interface is connected to. It should be in the same subnet as the interface that you are adding it to. It cannot be in the same subnet as other interface IP addresses.

In-band management interfaces support ping, HTTP, HTTPS, and SNMP administrative access options.

Primary and secondary units send packets differently from an interface with a management IP address configured:

- On the primary unit, packets are sent to destinations based on routing information.
- On secondary units, packets can only be sent to destinations with the same management IP address segment.



In-band management IP address configuration is not synchronized to other cluster units.

To add an in-band management IP address to port23 with HTTPS, SSH, and SNMP access:

```
config system interface
    edit port23
        set management-ip 172.25.12.5/24
        set allowaccess https ssh snmp
    next
end
```

Upgrading FortiGates in an HA cluster

You can upgrade the firmware on an HA cluster in the same way as on a standalone FortiGate. During a firmware upgrade, the cluster upgrades the primary unit and all of the subordinate units to the new firmware image.



Before upgrading a cluster, back up your configuration (Configuration backups on page 56), schedule a maintenance window, and make sure that you are using a supported upgrade path (https://docs.fortinet.com/upgrade-tool).

Uninterrupted upgrade

An uninterrupted upgrade occurs without interrupting communication in the cluster.

To upgrade the cluster firmware without interrupting communication, the following steps are followed. These steps are transparent to the user and the network, and might result in the cluster selecting a new primary unit.

1. The administrator uploads a new firmware image using the GUI or CLI. See Firmware on page 878 for details.
2. The firmware is upgraded on all of the subordinate units.
3. A new primary unit is selected from the upgraded subordinates.
4. The firmware is upgraded on the former primary unit.
5. Primary unit selection occurs, according to the standard primary unit selection process.

If all of the subordinate units crash or otherwise stop responding during the upgrade process, the primary unit will continue to operate normally, and will not be upgraded until at least one subordinate rejoins the cluster.

Interrupted upgrade

An interrupted upgrade upgrades all cluster members at the same time. This takes less time than an uninterrupted upgrade, but it interrupts communication in the cluster. Interrupted upgrade is disabled by default.

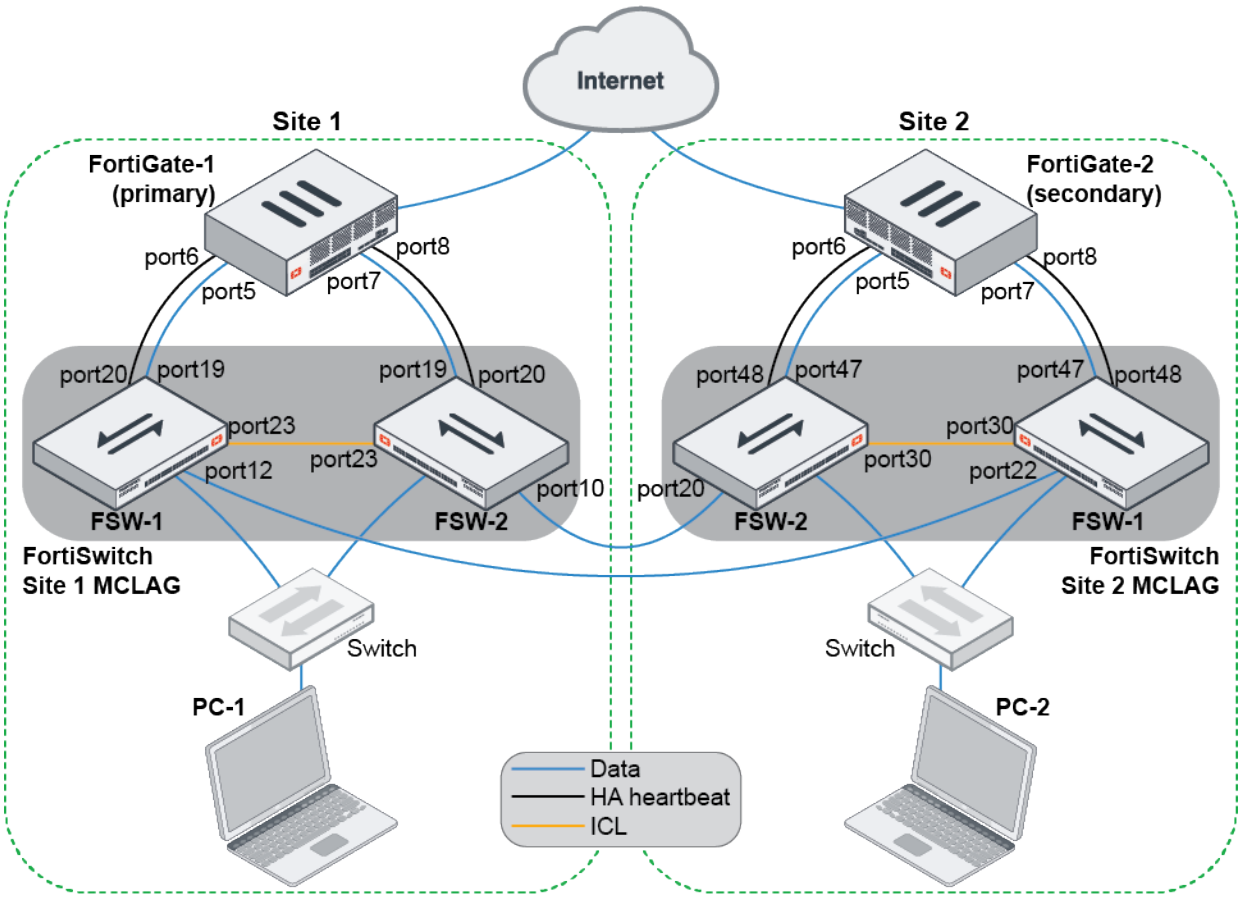
To enable interrupted upgrade:

```
config system ha
    set uninterruptible-upgrade disable
end
```

HA between remote sites over managed FortiSwitches

In a multi-site FortiGate HA topology that uses managed FortiSwitches in a multi-chassis link aggregation group (MCLAG) to connect between sites, HA heartbeat signals can be sent through the switch layer of the FortiSwitches, instead of through back-to-back links between the heartbeat interfaces. This means that two fiber connections can be used, instead of four (two back-to-back heartbeat fiber connections and two connections for the FortiSwitches). The FortiSwitches can be different models, but must all support MCLAG and be running version 6.4.2 or later.

This example shows how to configure heartbeat VLANs to assign to the access ports that the heartbeat interfaces connect to, passing over the trunk between the FortiSwitches on the two sites.

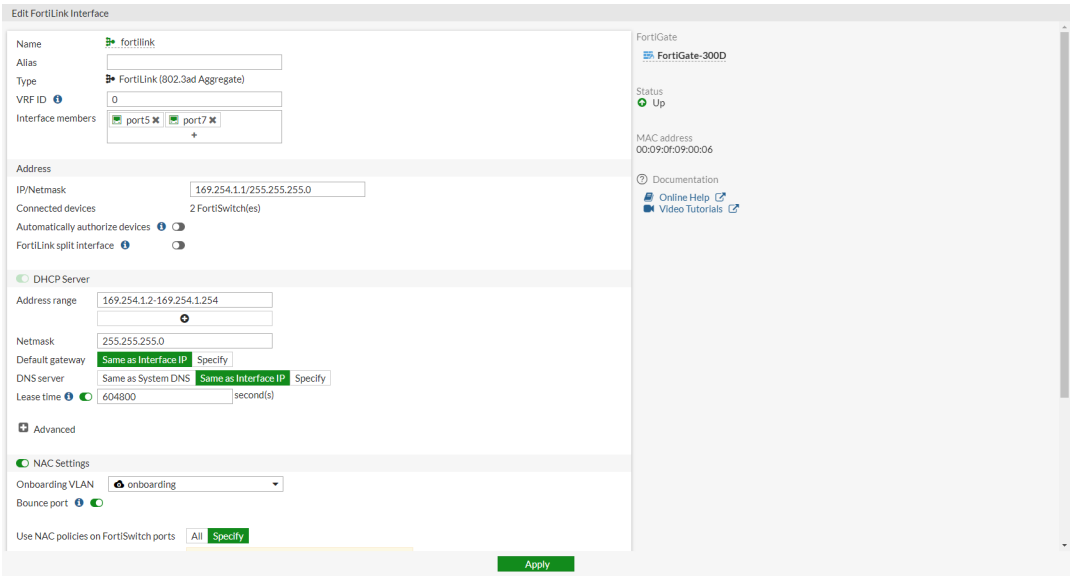


FortiGate HA is with two FortiGates in separate locations and the switch layer connection between the FortiSwitches is used for the heartbeat signal.

To configure the example:

1. Disconnect the physical connections between Site 1 and Site 2:
   - Disconnect the cable on Site 1 FSW-1 port 12.
   - Disconnect the cable on Site 1 FSW-2 port 10.
2. Configure Site 1:

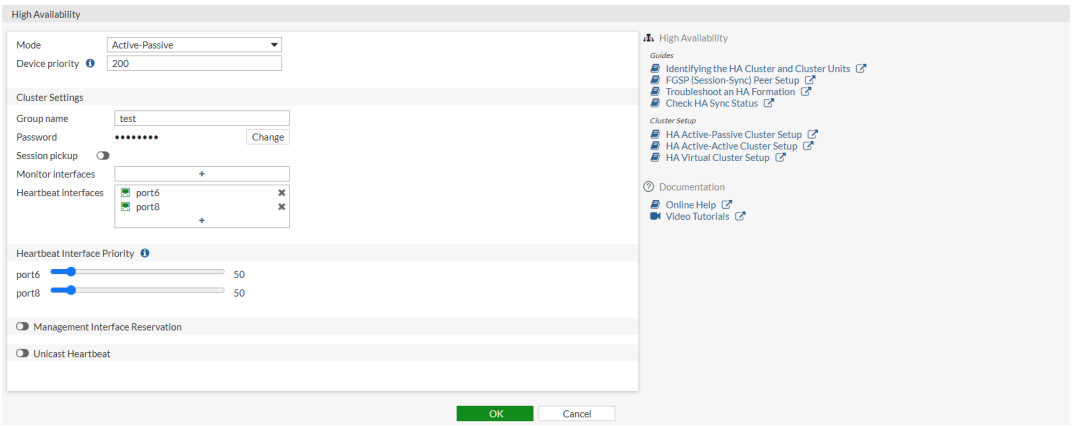
a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface* and configure FortiLink:



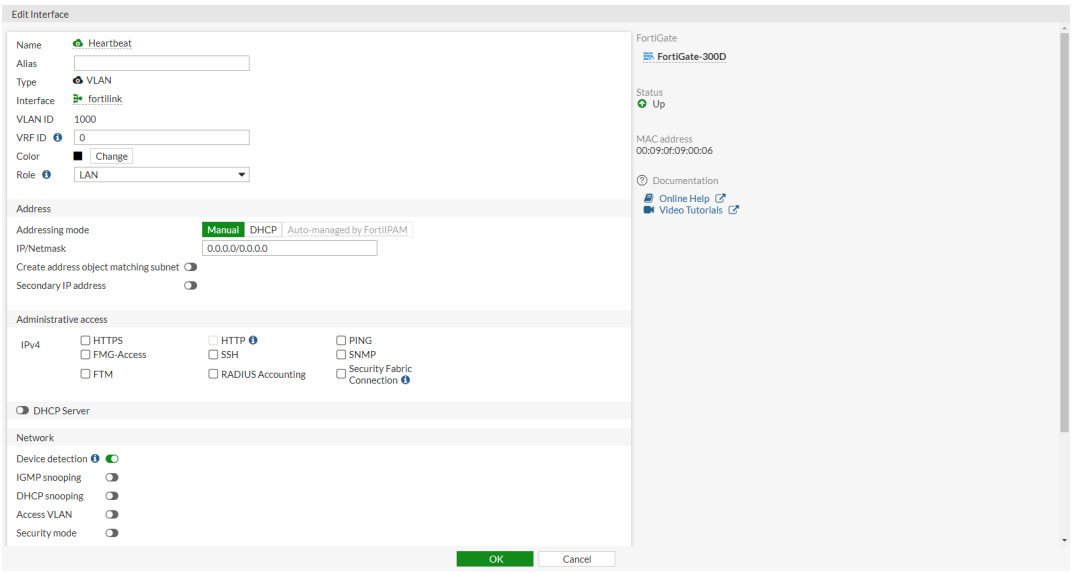
b. Go to *System* > *HA* and configure HA:

i. Set the heartbeat ports to the ports that are connected to FortiSwitch.

ii. Adjust the priority and enable override so that this FortiGate becomes the primary.



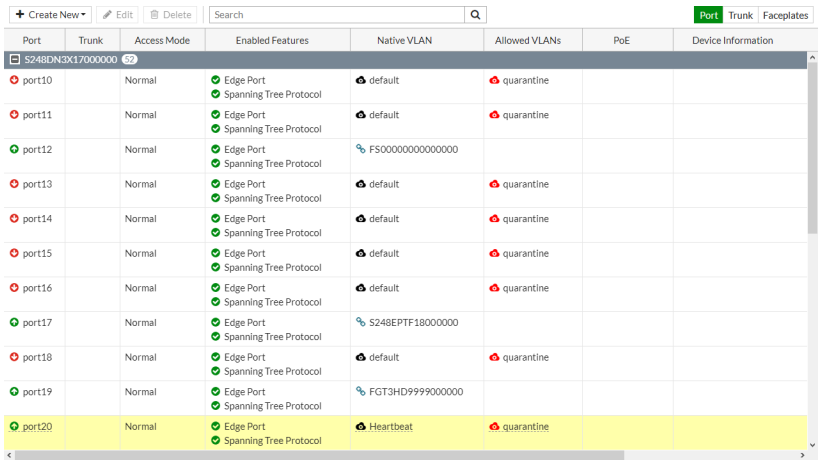
c. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs* and create switch VLANs that are dedicated to each FortiGate HA heartbeat interface between the two FortiGates: Heartbeat VLAN 1000 and Heartbeat VLAN 1100.



d. Assign the native VLAN of the switch ports that are connected to the heartbeat ports to the created VLAN. Each HA heartbeat should be in its own VLAN.

i. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.

ii. In the *Native VLAN* column for the heartbeat port that is connected to FSW-1, click the edit icon and select the *Heartbeat* VLAN.



iii. In the *Native VLAN* column for the heartbeat port that is connected to FSW-2, click the edit icon and select the *Heartbeat2* VLAN.

e. On each FortiSwitch, enable MCLAG-ICL on the trunk port:

```
config switch trunk
    edit D243Z17000032-0
        set mclag-icl enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure Site 2 the same as Site 1, except set the HA priority so that the FortiGate becomes the secondary.
4. Disconnect the physical connections for FortiGate HA and FortiLink interfaces on Site 2:
   - Disconnect the cable on Site 2 FSW-1 ports 47 and 48.
   - Disconnect the cable on Site 2 FSW-2 ports 47 and 48.

5. Connect cables between the FortiSwitch MCLAG in Site 1 and Site 2:
   - Connect a cable from Site 1 FSW-1 port 12 to Site 2 FSW-1 port 22.
   - Connect a cable from Site 1 FSW-2 port 10 to Site 2 FSW-2 port 20.
6. On all of the FortiSwitches, configure the `auto-isl-port-group`. The group must match on both sides.
   a. Site 1 FSW-1:

      Set `members` to the port that is connected to Site 2 FSW-1:

      ```
      config switch auto-isl-port-group
          edit 1
              set members port12
          next
      end
      ```

   b. Site 1 FSW-2:

      Set `members` to the port that is connected to Site 1 FSW-1:

      ```
      config switch auto-isl-port-group
          edit 1
              set members port22
          next
      end
      ```

   c. Site 2 FSW-1:

      Set `members` to the port that is connected to Site 2 FSW-2:

      ```
      config switch auto-isl-port-group
          edit 1
              set members port10
          next
      end
      ```

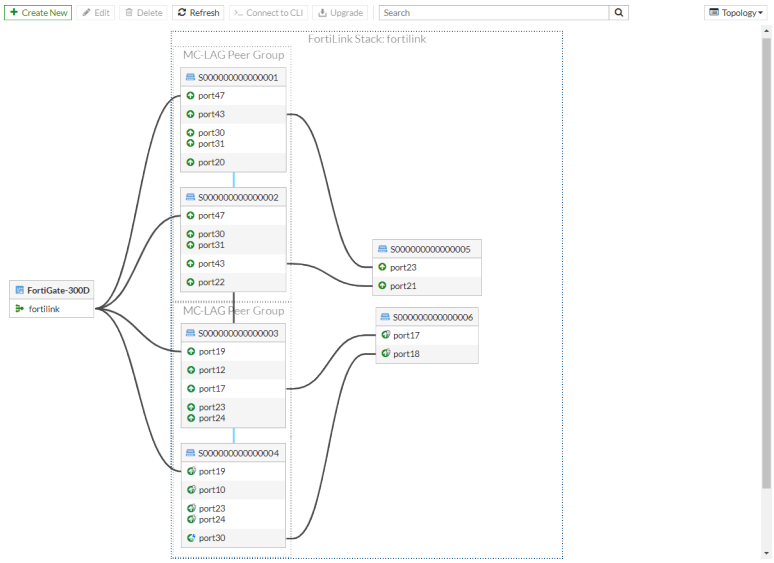
   d. Site 2 FSW-2:

      Set `members` to the port that is connected to Site 1 FSW-2:

      ```
      config switch auto-isl-port-group
          edit 1
              set members port20
          next
      end
      ```

7. Connect the FortiGate HA and FortiLink interface connections on Site 2.
8. Configure a firewall policy and route for traffic so that the client can reach the internet.
9. Wait for HA to finish synchronizing and for all of the FortiSwitches to come online, then on FortiGate-1, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitches* and select the Topology view from the drop-down on the right.

   The page should look similar to the following:



To test the configuration to confirm what happens when there is a failover:

1. On both PC-1 and PC-2, access the internet and monitor traffic. The traffic should be going through the primary FortiGate.
2. Perform a continuous ping to an outside IP address, then reboot any one of the FortiSwitches.
   Traffic from both Site 1 and Site 2 to the internet should be recovered in approximately five seconds.
3. Perform a continuous ping to an outside IP address, then force an HA failover (see Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations on page 973).
   Traffic from both Site 1 and Site 2 to the internet should be recovered in approximately five seconds.
4. After an HA failover, on the new primary FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
   The switch layer tiering will be changed so that the directly connected FortiSwitches are at the top of the topology.

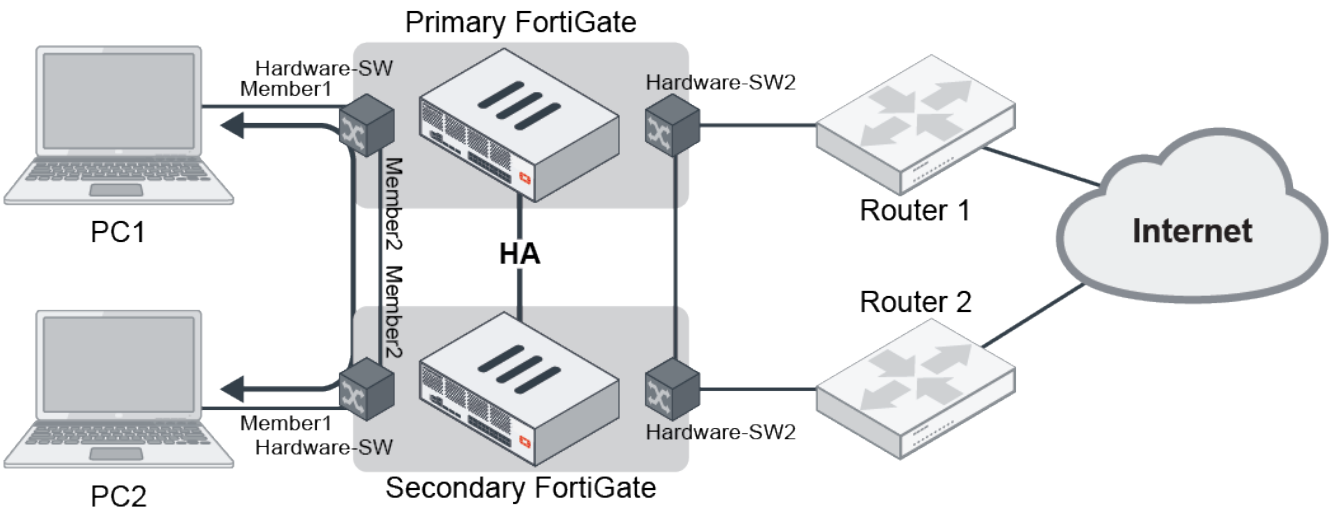
HA using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch

Using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch is not recommended, as it offers no redundancy or interface monitoring.

- If one FortiGate loses power, all of the clients connected to that FortiGate device cannot go to another device until that FortiGate recovers.
- A hardware switch cannot be used as a monitor interface in HA. Any incoming or outgoing link failures on hardware member interfaces will not trigger failover; this can affect traffic.

Examples

The examples use the following topology:



Traffic between hardware switches

When using Hardware switch in HA environment, a client device connected to the hardware switch on the primary FortiGate can communicate with client devices connected to the hardware switch on secondary FortiGates as long as there is a direct connection between the two switches.

No configuration is required after setting up the hardware switches. If a client connected to both of the hardware switches needs to reach destinations outside of the cluster, the firewall must be configured for it.

To configure the FortiGate devices:

1. Connect the devices as shown in the topology diagram.
2. On each FortiGate, configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-a
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

3. On the primary FortiGate, configure the hardware switch:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit Hardware-SW
        set physical-switch sw0
        config port
            edit port3
            next
            edit port5
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. On each FortiGate, configure the IP addresses on the hardware switches:

```
config system interface
    edit Hardware-SW
        set ip 6.6.6.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping ssh http https
    next
end
```

After configuring the hardware switches, PC1 and PC2 can now communicate with each other.

Traffic passes through FortiGate

If client device needs to send traffic through the FortiGate, additional firewall configuration on the FortiGate is required.

All traffic from the hardware switches on either the primary or secondary FortiGate reaches the primary FortiGate first. The traffic is then directed according to the HA mode and firewall configuration.

To configure the FortiGate devices:

1. Connect the devices as shown in the topology diagram.
2. On each FortiGate, configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-a
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

3. On the primary FortiGate, configure the hardware switch:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit Hardware-SW
        set physical-switch sw0
        config port
            edit port3
            next
            edit port5
            next
        end
    next
    edit Hardware-SW2
        set physical-switch sw0
        config port
            edit port1
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. On each FortiGate, configure the IP addresses on the hardware switch:

```
config system interface
    edit Hardware-SW
        set ip 6.6.6.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping ssh http https
    next
    edit Hardware-SW2
```

```
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping ssh http https
    next
end
```

5. On each FortiGate, configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf Hardware-SW
        set dstintf Hardware-SW2
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

6. On each FortiGate, configure a static route:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set device Hardware-SW2
        set gateway 172.16.200.254
    next
end
```

Traffic from PC1 and PC2 can now reach destinations outside of the FortiGate cluster.

VDOM exceptions

VDOM exceptions are settings that can be selected for specific VDOMs or all VDOMs that are not synchronized to other HA members. This can be required when cluster members are not in the same physical location, subnets, or availability zones in a cloud environment.

Some examples of possible use cases include:

- You use different source IP addresses for FortiAnalyzer logging from each cluster member. See Override FortiAnalyzer and syslog server settings on page 967 for more information.
- You need to keep management interfaces that have specific VIPs or local subnets that cannot transfer from being synchronized.
- In a unicast HA cluster in the cloud, you use NAT with different IP pools in different subnets, so IP pools must be exempt.

When a VDOM exception is configured, the object will not be synchronized between the primary and secondary devices when the HA forms. Different options can be configured for every object.

When VDOM mode is disabled, the configured object is excluded for the entire device. To define a scope, VDOM mode must be enabled and the object must be configurable in a VDOM.

VDOM exceptions are synchronized to other HA cluster members.

To configure VDOM exceptions:

```
config global
    config system vdom-exception
        edit 1
            set object <object name>
            set scope {all* | inclusive | exclusive}
            set vdom <vdom name>
        next
    end
end
```

`object`	The name of the configuration object that can be configured independently for some or all of the VDOMs. See Objects on page 966 for a list of available settings and resources.
`scope`	Determine if the specified object is configured independently for all VDOMs or a subset of VDOMs. • `all`: Configure the object independently on all VDOMs. • `inclusive`: Configure the object independently only on the specified VDOMs. • `exclusive`: Configure the object independently on all of the VDOMs that are not specified.
`vdom`	The names of the VDOMs that are included or excluded.

Objects

The following settings and resources can be exempt from synchronization in an HA cluster:

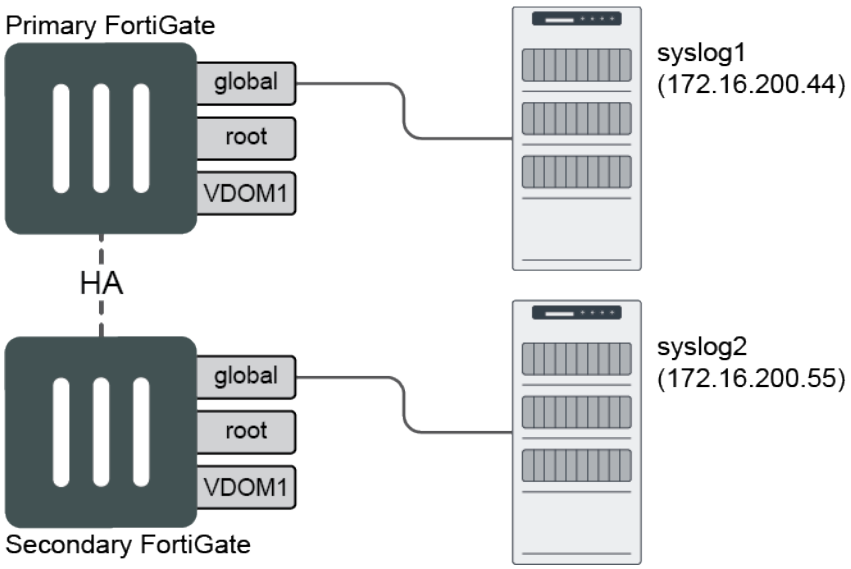
log.fortianalyzer.setting	user.radius
log.fortianalyzer.override-setting	system.interface*
log.fortianalyzer2.setting	vpn.ipsec.phase1-interface*
log.fortianalyzer2.override-setting	vpn.ipsec.phase2-interface*
log.fortianalyzer3.setting	router.bgp*
log.fortianalyzer3.override-setting	router.route-map*
log.fortianalyzer-cloud.setting	router.prefix-list*
log.fortianalyzer-cloud.override-setting	firewall.ippool*
log.syslogd.setting	firewall.ippool6*
log.syslogd.override-setting	router.static*
log.syslogd2.setting	router.static6*
log.syslogd2.override-setting	firewall.vip*
log.syslogd3.setting	firewall.vip6*
log.syslogd3.override-setting	system.sdwan*
log.syslogd4.setting	system.saml*
log.syslogd4.override-setting	router.policy*
system.central-management	router.policy6*
system.csf	

* This setting can only be configured on cloud VMs.

Override FortiAnalyzer and syslog server settings

In an HA cluster, secondary devices can be configured to use different FortiAnalyzer devices and syslog servers than the primary device. VDOMs can also override global syslog server settings.

Configure a different syslog server on a secondary HA device



To configure the primary HA device:

1. Configure a global syslog server:

```
config global
    config log syslog setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.44
        set facility local6
        set format default
    end
end
```

2. Set up a VDOM exception to enable setting the global syslog server on the secondary HA device:

```
config global
    config system vdom-exception
        edit 1
            set object log.syslogd.setting
        next
    end
end
```

To configure the secondary HA device:

1. Configure a global syslog server:

```
config global
    config log syslogd setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.55
        set facility local5
    end
end
```

2. After the primary and secondary device synchronize, generate logs on the secondary device.

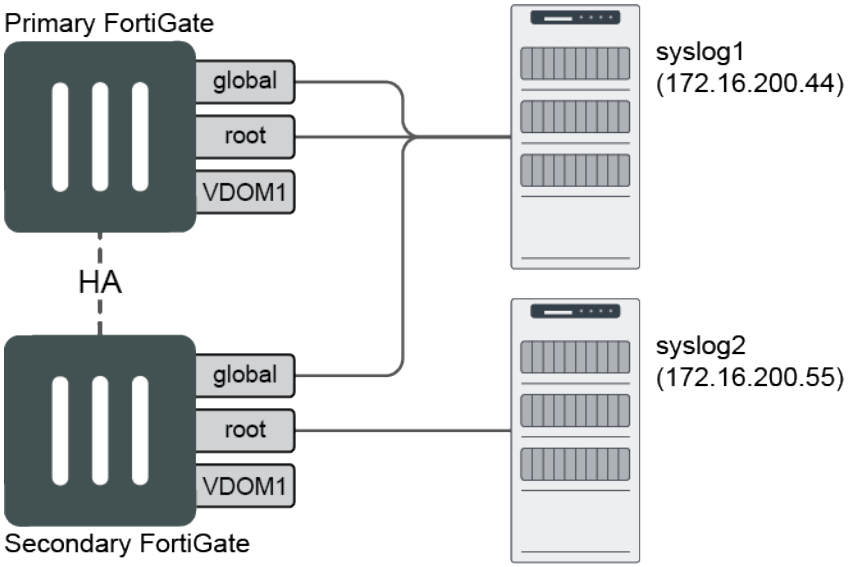
To confirm that logs are been sent to the syslog server configured on the secondary device:

1. On the primary device, retrieve the following packet capture from the secondary device's syslog server:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any "host 172.16.200.55" 6
interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 172.16.200.55]

266.859494 port2 out 172.16.200.2.7434 -> 172.16.200.55.514: udp 278
0x0000   0000 0000 0000 0009 0f09 0004 0800 4500        ..............E.
0x0010   0132 f3c7 0000 4011 9d98 ac10 c802 ac10        .2....@.........
0x0020   c837 1d0a 0202 011e 4b05 3c31 3734 3e64        .7......K.<174>d
0x0030   6174 653d 3230 3230 2d30 332d 3134 2074        ate=2020-03-14.t
0x0040   696d 653d 3132 3a30 303a 3035 2064 6576        ime=12:00:05.dev
0x0050   6e61 6d65 3d22 466f 7274 6947 6174 652d        name="FGT-81E-Sl
0x0060   3831 455f 4122 2064 6576 6964 3d22 4647        ave-A".devid="FG
0x0070   5438 3145 3451 3136 3030 3030 3438 2220        T81E4Q16000048".
0x0080   6c6f 6769 643d 2230 3130 3030 3230 3032        logid="010002002
0x0090   3722 2074 7970 653d 2265 7665 6e74 2220        7".type="event".
0x00a0   7375 6274 7970 653d 2273 7973 7465 6d22        subtype="system"
0x00b0   206c 6576 656c 3d22 696e 666f 726d 6174        .level="informat
0x00c0   696f 6e22 2076 643d 2276 646f 6d31 2220        ion".vd="vdom1".
0x00d0   6576 656e 7474 696d 653d 3135 3834 3231        eventtime=158421
0x00e0   3234 3035 3835 3938 3335 3639 3120 747a        2405859835691.tz
0x00f0   3d22 2d30 3730 3022 206c 6f67 6465 7363        ="-0700".logdesc
0x0100   3d22 4f75 7464 6174 6564 2072 6570 6f72        ="Outdated.repor
0x0110   7420 6669 6c65 7320 6465 6c65 7465 6422        t.files.deleted"
0x0120   206d 7367 3d22 4465 6c65 7465 2031 206f        .msg="Delete.1.o
0x0130   6c64 2072 6570 6f72 7420 6669 6c65 7322        ld.report.files"
```

Configure a different syslog server in the root VDOM on a secondary HA device



To configure the primary HA device:

1. Configure a global syslog server:

```
config global
    config log syslog setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.44
        set facility local6
        set format default
    end
end
```

2. Set up a VDOM exception to enable `syslog-override` in the secondary HA device root VDOM:

```
config global
    config system vdom-exception
        edit 1
            set object log.syslogd.override-setting
            set scope inclusive
            set vdom root
        next
    end
end
```

3. In the VDOM, enable `syslog-override` in the log settings, and set up the override syslog server:

```
config root
    config log setting
        set syslog-override enable
    end
    config log syslog override-setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.44
        set facility local6
        set format default
```

```
    end
end
```

After `syslog-override` is enabled, an override syslog server must be configured, as logs will not be sent to the global syslog server.

To configure the secondary HA device:

1. Configure an override syslog server in the root VDOM:

```
config root
    config log syslogd override-setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.55
        set facility local5
        set format default
    end
end
```

2. After the primary and secondary device synchronize, generate logs in the root VDOM on the secondary device.

To confirm that logs are been sent to the syslog server configured for the root VDOM on the secondary device:

1. On the primary device, retrieve the following packet capture from the syslog server configured in the root VDOM on the secondary device:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any "host 172.16.200.55" 6
interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 172.16.200.55]

156.759696 port2 out 172.16.200.2.1165 -> 172.16.200.55.514: udp 277
0x0000   0000 0000 0000 0009 0f09 0004 0800 4500        ..............E.
0x0010   0131 f398 0000 4011 9dc8 ac10 c802 ac10        .1....@.........
0x0020   c837 048d 0202 011d af5f 3c31 3734 3e64        .7......._<174>d
0x0030   6174 653d 3230 3230 2d30 332d 3134 2074        ate=2020-03-14.t
0x0040   696d 653d 3131 3a33 353a 3035 2064 6576        ime=11:35:05.dev
0x0050   6e61 6d65 3d22 466f 7274 6947 6174 652d        name="FGT-81E-Sl
0x0060   3831 455f 4122 2064 6576 6964 3d22 4647        ave-A".devid="FG
0x0070   5438 3145 3451 3136 3030 3030 3438 2220        T81E4Q16000048".
0x0080   6c6f 6769 643d 2230 3130 3030 3230 3032        logid="010002002
0x0090   3722 2074 7970 653d 2265 7665 6e74 2220        7".type="event".
0x00a0   7375 6274 7970 653d 2273 7973 7465 6d22        subtype="system"
0x00b0   206c 6576 656c 3d22 696e 666f 726d 6174        .level="informat
0x00c0   696f 6e22 2076 643d 2272 6f6f 7422 2065        ion".vd="root".e
0x00d0   7665 6e74 7469 6d65 3d31 3538 3432 3130        venttime=1584210
0x00e0   3930 3537 3539 3334 3132 3632 2074 7a3d        905759341262.tz=
0x00f0   222d 3037 3030 2220 6c6f 6764 6573 633d        "-0700".logdesc=
0x0100   224f 7574 6461 7465 6420 7265 706f 7274        "Outdated.report
0x0110   2066 696c 6573 2064 656c 6574 6564 2220        .files.deleted".
0x0120   6d73 673d 2244 656c 6574 6520 3220 6f6c        msg="Delete.2.ol
0x0130   6420 7265 706f 7274 2066 696c 6573 22          d.report.files"
```

Routing NetFlow data over the HA management interface

In an HA environment, the `ha-direct` option allows data from services such as syslog, FortiAnalyzer, SNMP, and NetFlow to be routed over the outgoing interface.

The following example shows how NetFlow data can be routed over the HA management interface mgmt1.

To route NetFlow data over the HA management interface:

1. On the primary unit (FortiGate A), configure the HA and mgmt1 interface settings:

```
(global) # config system ha
    set group-name "test-ha"
    set mode a-p
    set password *********
    set hbdev "port6" 50
    set hb-interval 4
    set hb-lost-threshold 10
    set session-pickup enable
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface "mgmt1"
        next
    end
    set override enable
    set priority 200
    set ha-direct enable
end
```

```
(global) # config system interface
    edit "mgmt1"
        set ip 10.6.30.111 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http telnet fgfm
        set type physical
        set dedicated-to management
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
```

2. On the secondary unit (FortiGate B), configure the HA and mgmt1 interface settings:

```
(global) # config system ha
    set group-name "test-ha"
    set mode a-p
    set password *********
    set hbdev "port6" 50
    set hb-interval 4
    set hb-lost-threshold 10
    set session-pickup enable
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface "mgmt1"
        next
    end
```

```
    set override enable
    set priority 100
    set ha-direct enable
end
```

```
(global) # config system interface
    edit "mgmt1"
        set ip 10.6.30.112 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http telnet fgfm
        set type physical
        set dedicated-to management
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
```

3. On the primary unit (FortiGate A), configure the NetFlow setting:

```
(global) # config system netflow
    set collector-ip 10.6.30.59
end
```

4. Verify that NetFlow uses the mgmt1 IP:

```
(global) # diagnose test application sflowd 3
```

5. Verify that the NetFlow packets are being sent by the mgmt1 IP:

```
(vdom1) # diagnose test application sflowd 3
interfaces=[any]
filters=[udp and port 2055]
8.397265 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.111.1992 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
23.392175 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.111.1992 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 188
23.392189 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.111.1992 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
...
3 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

6. On the secondary device (FortiGate B), change the priority so that it becomes the primary:

```
(global) # config system ha
    set priority 250
end
```

7. Verify the NetFlow status on FortiGate A, which is using the new primary's mgmt1 IP:

```
(global) # diagnose test application sflowd 3
```

8. Verify that the NetFlow packets use the new source IP on FortiGate B:

```
(vdom1) # diagnose sniffer packet any 'udp and port 2055' 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[udp and port 2055]
7.579574 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.112.3579 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
22.581830 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.112.3579 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
29.038336 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.112.3579 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 1140
^C
3 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations



This command should only be used for testing, troubleshooting, maintenance, and demonstrations.

Do not use it in a live production environment outside of an active maintenance window.

HA failover can be forced on an HA primary device. The device will stay in a failover state regardless of the conditions. The only way to remove the failover status is by manually turning it off.

Syntax

```
execute ha failover set <cluster_id>
execute ha failover unset <cluster_id>
```

Variable	Description
<cluster_id>	The cluster ID is 1 for any cluster that is not in virtual cluster mode, and can be 1 or 2 if virtual cluster mode is enabled.

Example

To manually force an HA failover:

```
# execute ha failover set 1
Caution: This command will trigger an HA failover.
It is intended for testing purposes.
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
```

To view the failover status:

```
# execute ha failover status
failover status: set
```

To view the system status of a device in forced HA failover:

```
# get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-300D
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 240
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 2:11:46
Cluster state change time: 2020-03-12 17:38:04
Primary selected using:
    <2020/03/12 17:38:04> FGT3HD3914800153 is selected as the primary because it has EXE_
FAIL_OVER flag set.
    <2020/03/12 15:27:26> FGT3HD3914800069 is selected as the primary because it has the
largest value of override priority.
ses_pickup: disable
override: enable
Configuration Status:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
```

```
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 3 seconds ago): in-sync
System Usage stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 4 seconds ago):
        sessions=5, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=30%
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 3 seconds ago):
        sessions=41, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/99%, memory=30%
HBDEV stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=15914162/42929/0/0,
tx=15681840/39505/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=17670346/52854/0/0,
tx=20198409/54692/0/0
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 3 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=16636700/45544/0/0,
tx=15529791/39512/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=20199928/54699/0/0,
tx=17672146/52862/0/0
Secondary: FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800069, HA cluster index = 1
Primary: FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800153, HA cluster index = 0
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: standby 169.254.0.1
Secondary: FGT3HD3914800069, HA operating index = 1
Primary: FGT3HD3914800153, HA operating index = 0
```

To stop the failover status:

```
# execute ha failover unset 1
Caution: This command may trigger an HA failover.
It is intended for testing purposes.
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
```

To view the system status of a device after forced HA failover is disabled:

```
# get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-300D
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 240
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 2:14:55
Cluster state change time: 2020-03-12 17:42:17
Primary selected using:
    <2020/03/12 17:42:17> FGT3HD3914800069 is selected as the primary because it has the
largest value of override priority.
    <2020/03/12 17:38:04> FGT3HD3914800153 is selected as the primary because it has EXE_
FAIL_OVER flag set.
    <2020/03/12 15:27:26> FGT3HD3914800069 is selected as the primary because it has the
largest value of override priority.
ses_pickup: disable
override: enable
Configuration Status:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 3 seconds ago): in-sync
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 2 seconds ago): in-sync
System Usage stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 3 seconds ago):
        sessions=0, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=30%
```

```
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 2 seconds ago):
        sessions=38, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=30%
HBDEV stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 3 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=16302442/43964/0/0,
tx=16053848/40454/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=18161941/54088/0/0,
tx=20615650/55877/0/0
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 2 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=17033009/46641/0/0,
tx=15907891/40462/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=20617180/55881/0/0,
tx=18163135/54091/0/0
Primary: FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800069, HA cluster index = 1
Secondary: FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800153, HA cluster index = 0
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: work 169.254.0.2
Primary: FGT3HD3914800069, HA operating index = 0
Secondary: FGT3HD3914800153, HA operating index = 1
```

Disabling stateful SCTP inspection

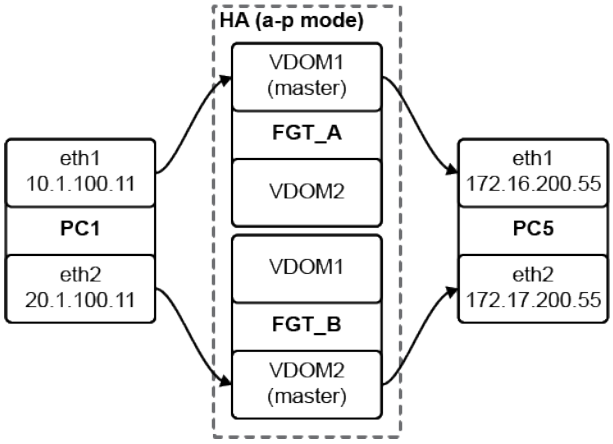
There is an option in FortiOS to disable stateful SCTP inspection. This option is useful when FortiGates are deployed in a high availability (HA) cluster that uses the FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) and virtual clustering in a multihoming topology. In this configuration, the primary stream control transmission protocol (SCTP) path traverses the primary FortiGate node by using its active VDOM (for example, VDOM1), and the backup SCTP path traverses the other passive FortiGate node by using its active VDOM (for example, VDOM2).

When stateful SCTP inspection is enabled, SCTP heartbeat traffic fails by means of the backup path because the primary path goes through a different platform and VDOM. Since there is no state sharing between VDOMs, the passive FortiGate is unaware of the original SCTP session and drops the heartbeats because of no associated sessions. When stateful SCTP inspection is disabled, the passive node permits the SCTP heartbeats to pass.

When set to `enable`, SCTP session creation without SCTP INIT is enabled. When set to `disable`, SCTP session creation without SCTP INIT is disabled (this is the default setting):

```
config system settings
  set sctp-session-without-init {enable | disable}
end
```

The following is an example topology and scenario:



In this example, FGT_A and FGT_B are in HA a-p mode with two virtual clusters. Two primaries exist on different FortiGate units. PC1 eth1 can access PC5 eth1 through VDOM1, and PC1 eth2 can access PC5 eth2 through VDOM2.

On PC5, to listen for an SCTP connection:

```
sctp_darn -H 172.16.200.55 -B 172.17.200.55 -P 2500 -l
```

On PC1, to start an SCTP connection:

```
sctp_darn -H 10.1.100.11 -B 20.1.100.11 -P 2600 -c 172.16.200.55 -c 172.17.200.55 -p 2500
    -s
```

An SCTP four-way handshake is on one VDOM, and a session is created on that VDOM. With the default configuration, there is no session on any other VDOM, and the heartbeat on another path (another VDOM) is dropped. After enabling `sctp-session-without-init`, the other VDOM creates the session when it receives the heartbeat, and the heartbeat is forwarded:

```
config system settings
  set sctp-session-without-init enable
end
```

Querying autoscale clusters for FortiGate VM

When a FortiGate VM secondary device is added to a cluster, the new secondary member can query the cluster about its autoscale environment. FortiManager can then run this query on the new secondary member to update its autoscale record.

To view cluster information from a secondary member:

```
# diagnose sys ha checksum autoscale-cluster
```

Cluster information sample

Sample cloud topology:

```
FGT_BYOL; primary; 10.0.0.6; FGVM04TM00000066
FGT_BYOL; secondary; 10.0.0.7; FGVM00000000056
FGT_PAYG; secondary; 10.0.0.4; FGTAZ000000000CD
FGT_PAYG; secondary; 10.0.0.5; FGTAZ0000000003D
```

From the secondary device, you can see cluster checksums and the primary device:

```
# diagnose sys ha checksum autoscale-cluster
================== FGTAZ000000000CD ==================
is_autoscale_master()=0
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
================== FGVM04TM00000066 ==================
is_autoscale_master()=1
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
```

```
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
================== FGVM00000000056 ==================
is_autoscale_master()=0
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
================== FGTAZ0000000003D ==================
is_autoscale_master()=0
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
```

To get ha sync information from the secondary device:

```
# get test hasync 50
autoscale_count=69. current_jiffies=41235125
    10.0.0.6, timeo=31430, serial_no=FGVM04TM19001766
    10.0.0.7, timeo=31430, serial_no=FGVM04TM19008156
    10.0.0.5, timeo=31430, serial_no=FGTAZR7UZRKKNR3D
```

Troubleshoot an HA formation

The following are requirements for setting up an HA cluster or FGSP peers.

Cluster members must have:

- The same model.
- The same hardware configuration.
- The same connections.
- The same generation.



The requirement to have the same generation is done as a best practice as it avoids issues that can occur later on. If you are unsure if the FortiGates are from the same generation, please contact customer service.

Troubleshooting common HA formation errors

One member keeps shutting down during HA setup (hard drive failure):

If one member has a hard drive failure but the other does not, the one with the hard drive failure will be shut down during HA setup. In this case, RMA the member to resolve the issue.

Split brain scenario:

A split brain scenario occurs when two or more members of a cluster cannot communicate with each other on the heartbeat interface, causing each member to think it is the primary. As a result, each member assumes the primary HA role and applies the same IP and virtual MAC addresses on its interfaces. This causes IP and MAC conflicts on the network, and causes flapping on L2 devices when they learn the same MAC address on ports connected to different FortiGates.

A split brain scenario is usually caused by a complete lost of the heartbeat link or links. This can be a physical connectivity issue, or less commonly, something blocking the heartbeat packets between the HA members. Another cause is congestion and latency in the heartbeat links that exceeds the heartbeat lost intervals and thresholds.

The following are common symptoms of a split brain scenario:

- The connections to the FortiGates in the cluster work intermittently when trying to connect with administrative access.
- Sessions cannot be established through the FortiGate, and the traffic drops.
- When logging in to the FortiGates using the console, `get system ha status` shows each FortiGate as the primary.

To resolve a split brain scenario:

- Be physically on-site with the FortiGates (recommended). If this is not possible, connect to the FortiGates using console access.
- Identify the heartbeat ports, and verify that they are physically connected and up.
- Verify that heartbeat packets are being sent and received on the heartbeat ports.
- Verify that the HA configurations match between the HA members. The HA `mode`, `group-name`, `group-id`, and `password` settings should be the same. Different `group-id` values will result in different virtual MAC addresses, which might not cause a MAC conflict. However, an IP conflict can still occur.
- If everything seems to be in working order, run `get system ha status` to verify that HA has formed successfully.

To avoid a split brain scenario:

- In a two-member HA configuration, use back-to-back links for heartbeat interface instead of connecting through a switch.
- Use redundant HA heartbeat interfaces.
- In a configuration where members are in different locations, ensure the heartbeat lost intervals and thresholds are longer than the possible latency in the links.

FGSP

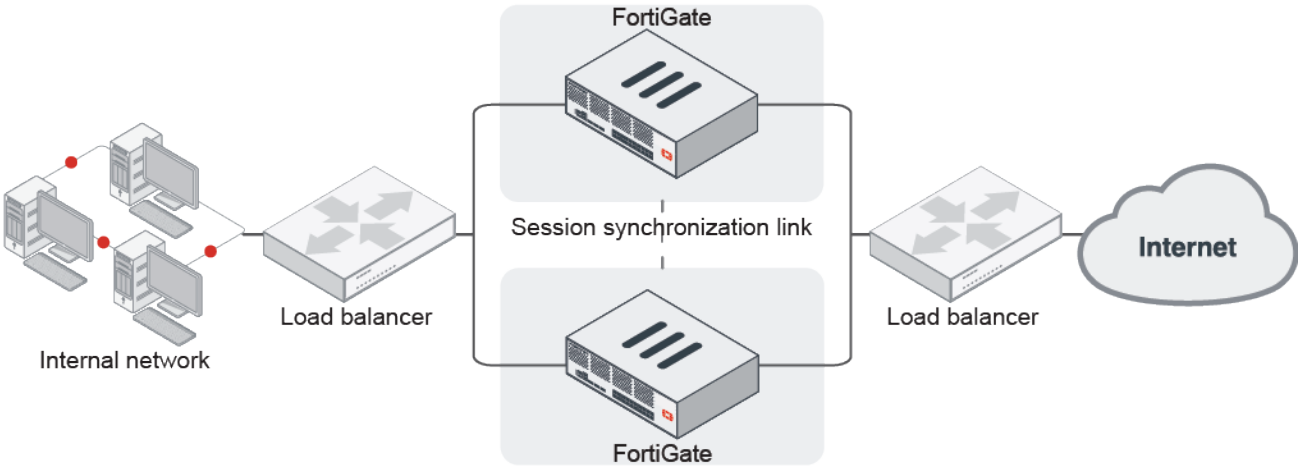
Standalone FortiGates or FGCP clusters can be integrated into the load balancing configuration using the FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) in a network where traffic is load balanced by an upstream load balancer and scanned by downstream FortiGates. FGSP can perform session synchronization of IPv4 and IPv6 TCP, SCTP, UDP,

ICMP, expectation, and NAT sessions to keep the session tables synchronized on all entities. If one of the FortiGates fails, the upstream load balancer should detect the failed member and stop distributing sessions to it. Session failover occurs and active sessions fail over to the peers that are still operating. Traffic continues to flow on the new peer without data loss because the sessions are synchronized.

The FortiGates in FGSP operate as peers that process traffic and synchronize sessions. An FGSP deployment can include two to 16 standalone FortiGates, or two to 16 FortiGate FGCP clusters of two members each. Adding more FortiGates increases the CPU and memory required to keep all of the FortiGates synchronized, and it increases network synchronization traffic. Exceeding the numbers of members is not recommended and may reduce overall performance. By default, FGSP synchronizes all IPv4 and IPv6 TCP sessions, and IPsec tunnels. You can optionally add filters to control which sessions are synchronized, such as synchronizing packets from specific source and destination addresses, source and destination interfaces, or services.

FGSP is also compatible with FortiGate VRRP.

FGSP is primarily used instead of FGCP when external load balancers are part of the topology, and they are responsible for distributing traffic amongst the downstream FortiGates. FGSP provides the means to synchronize sessions between the FortiGate peers without needing a primary member to distribute the sessions like in FGCP active-active mode. If the external load balancers direct all sessions to one peer, the effect is similar to active-passive FGCP HA. If external load balancers balance traffic to both peers, the effect is similar to active-active FGCP HA. The load balancers should be configured so that all packets for any given session are processed by the same peer, including return packets whenever possible.



Session pickup

Session pickup is an optional setting that can be enabled to synchronize connectionless (UDP and ICMP) sessions, expectation sessions, and NAT sessions. If session pickup is not enabled, the FGSP does not share session tables for the particular session type, and sessions do not resume after a failover. All sessions are interrupted by the failover and must be re-established at the application level. Many protocols can successfully restart sessions with little, or no, loss of data. Others may not recover as easily. Enable session pickup for sessions that may be difficult to reestablish. Since session pickup requires FortiGate memory and CPU resources, only enable this feature for sessions that need to synchronize.

Session synchronization link

The session synchronization link is an optional configuration that allows peers to synchronize sessions over a dedicated interface instead of the interface in which the peer IP is routed. In this configuration, communications occur over L2 instead of L3. Configuring session synchronization links is recommended when you want to minimize traffic over the peering interface when there are many sessions that need to be synchronized.

Expectation sessions

FortiOS session helpers keep track of the communication of layer 7 protocols, such as FTP and SIP, that have control sessions and expectation sessions. The control sessions establish the link between the server and client, and negotiate the ports and protocols that will be used for data communications. The session helpers then create expectation sessions through the FortiGate for the ports and protocols negotiated by the control session.

The expectation sessions are the sessions that actually communicate data. For FTP, the expectation sessions transmit files being uploaded or downloaded. For SIP, the expectation sessions transmit voice and video data. Expectation sessions usually have a timeout value of 30 seconds. If the communication from the server is not initiated within 30 seconds, the expectation session times out and traffic will be denied.

By default, FGSP does not synchronize expectation sessions; if a failover occurs, the sessions will have to be restarted.

To synchronize expectation sessions so they continue after a failover:

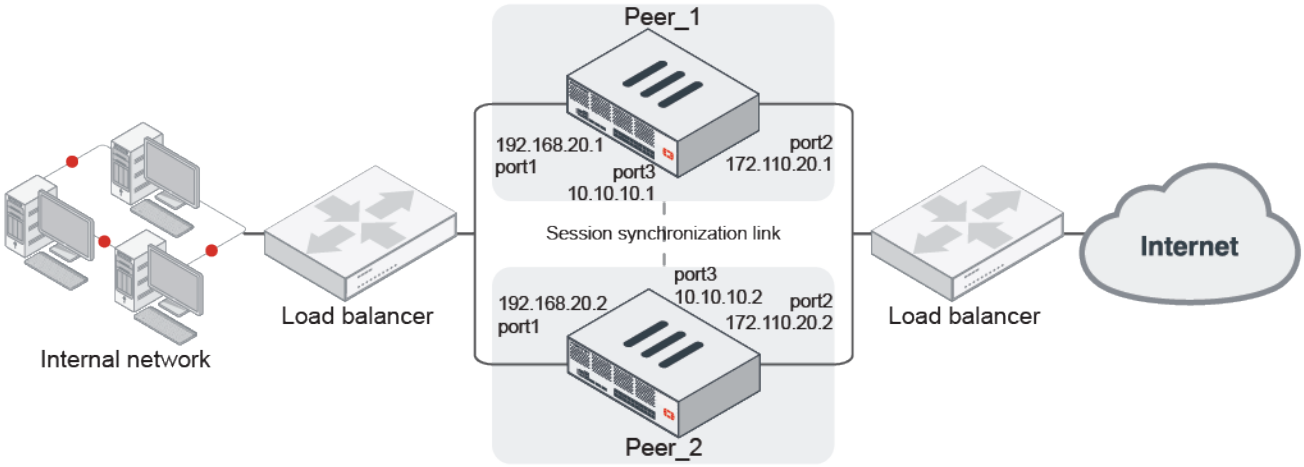
```
config system ha
    set session-pickup enable
    set session-pickup-expectation enable
end
```

The following topics provide more information about FGSP:

- FGSP basic peer setup on page 981
- Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters on page 983
- Session synchronization interfaces in FGSP on page 985
- UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic in FGSP on page 987
- UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic on L3 on page 989
- Encryption for L3 on asymmetric traffic in FGSP on page 991
- Firmware upgrades in FGSP on page 992
- FGSP session synchronization between different FortiGate models or firmware versions on page 992
- Applying the session synchronization filter only between FGSP peers in an FGCP over FGSP topology on page 994
- FGSP static site-to-site IPsec VPN setup on page 1001

FGSP basic peer setup

The FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) is a proprietary HA solution for only sharing sessions between entities based on peer-to-peer communications. The entities could be standalone FortiGates or an FGCP cluster. This example uses two peer FortiGates. The load balancer is configured to send all sessions to Peer_1, and if Peer_1 fails, all traffic is sent to Peer_2.



To configure a basic FGSP peer setup:

These instructions assume that all FortiGates have been factory reset.

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. On Peer_1, configure the peer IP in which this device will peer with:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.10.10.2
    next
end
```

   If there are multiple peer IPs from the same peer, enter them as separate entries. If there are multiple peers, enter the IP of each peer in separate entries.

   Sessions by default will be synchronized over layer 3 on the interface in which the current unit connects to the peer's IP.

3. On Peer_2, configure session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.10.10.1
    next
end
```

4. Configure identical firewall policies on each peer, such as for traffic going from the same incoming interface (port1) to the outgoing interface (port2).

To test the FGSP peer setup:

1. Initiate TCP traffic (like HTTP access) to go through Peer_1.
2. Check the session information:

```
# diagnose sys session filter src <IP_address>
# diagnose sys session list
```

3. Enter the same commands on Peer_2 to verify if the same session information appears.

Optional filters

Filters can be added to synchronize certain types of sessions that meet the filter criteria.

To add filters for session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit <id>
        config session-sync-filter
            set srcintf <interface>
            set dstintf <interface>
            set srcaddr <IPv4_address>
            set dstaddr <IPv4_address>
            set srcaddr6 <IPv6_address>
            set dstaddr6 <IPv6_address>
        end
    next
end
```

Filter examples

To synchronize only sessions with a particular source subnet:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        config session-sync-filter
            set srcaddr 192.168.20.0/24
        end
    next
end
```

To synchronize only sessions with a particular source address range:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        config session-sync-filter
            set srcaddr 192.168.20.10 192.168.20.20
        end
    next
end
```

To synchronize only sessions with a particular destination address range:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        config session-sync-filter
            set dstaddr6 2001:db8:0:2::/64
        end
    next
end
```

Session pickup

You can enable this setting to synchronize connectionless (UDP and ICMP) sessions, expectation sessions, and NAT sessions. If session pickup is not enabled, the FGSP does not share session tables for the particular session type, and sessions do not resume after a failover.

To enable UDP and ICMP session synchronization:

```
config system ha
    set session-pickup enable
    set session-pickup-connectionless enable
end
```

Session synchronization

You can specify interfaces used to synchronize sessions in L2 instead of L3 using the `session-sync-dev` setting. For more information about using session synchronization, see Session synchronization interfaces in FGSP on page 985.

To configure session synchronization over redundant L2 connections:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set session-sync-dev <interface 1> [<interface 2>] ... [<interface n>]
end
```

VDOM synchronization

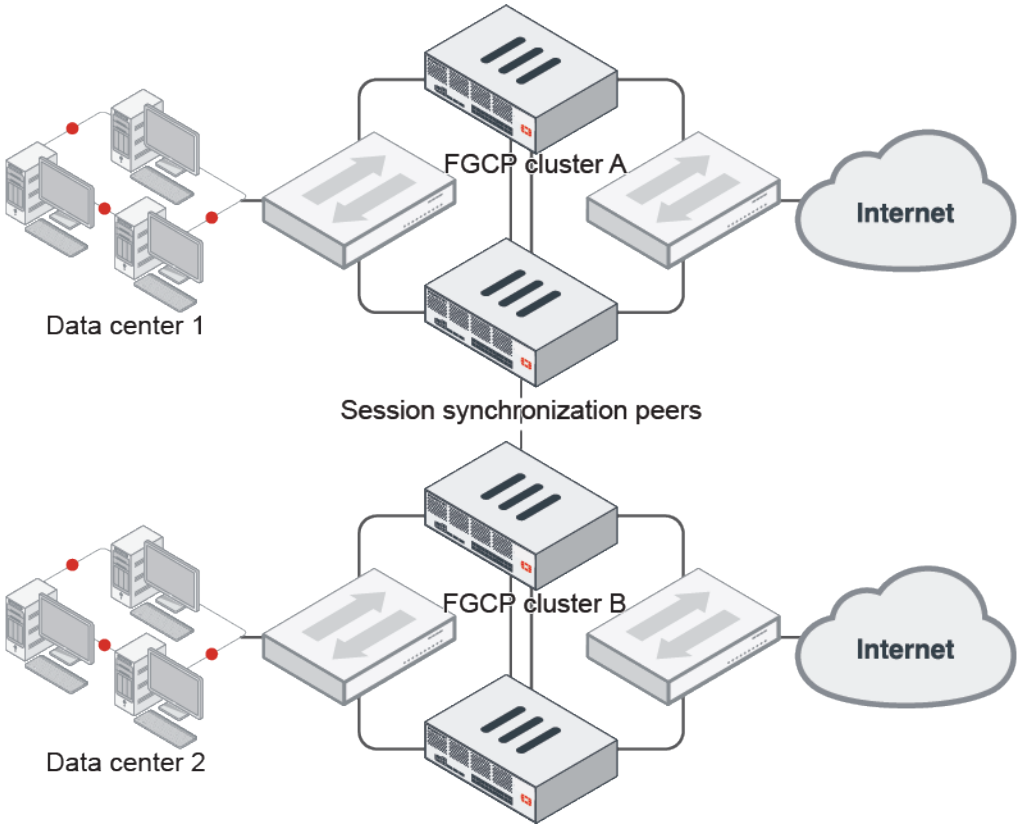
When multi-VDOM mode is enabled, you can specify the peer VDOM and the synchronized VDOMs. The peer VDOM contains the session synchronization link interface on the peer unit. The synchronized VDOMs' sessions are synchronized using this session synchronization configuration.

To synchronize between VDOMs:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip <IP address>
        set peervd <vdom>
        set syncvd <vdom 1> [<vdom 2>] ... [<vdom n>]
    next
end
```

Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters

Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters is useful when data centers in different locations are used for load-balancing, and traffic must be shared and flow freely based on demand.



There are some limitations when synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters:

- All FortiGates must have the same model and generation, hardware configuration, and FortiOS version.
- Currently, a total of 16 clusters can share sessions.

To configure session synchronization between two clusters:

1. Configure the two clusters (see HA active-passive cluster setup on page 942 or HA active-active cluster setup on page 943).
2. On cluster A, configure the peer IP for the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port5"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
    next
end
```

   In this example, cluster A uses port5 and its IP address, 10.10.10.1, is reachable from another cluster.
3. On cluster A, configure cluster and session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.10.10.2
```

```
    next
end
```

4. On cluster A, configure additional FGSP attributes as needed:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 0
    set session-sync-dev <interface>
end
```

   The `standalone-group-id` must match between FGSP members. The `group-member-id` is unique for each FGCP cluster. `session-sync-dev` is an optional command to specify the interfaces to sync sessions.

5. On cluster B, configure the peer IP for the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port5"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
    next
end
```

   In this example, cluster B uses port5 and its IP address, 10.10.10.2, is reachable from another cluster.

6. On cluster B, configure cluster and session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.10.10.1
    next
end
```

7. On cluster B, configure additional FGSP attributes as needed:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
    set session-sync-dev <interface>
end
```

Session synchronization interfaces in FGSP

When peering over FGSP, by default, the FortiGates or FGCP clusters share information over L3 between the interfaces that are configured with Peer IP addresses. When a session synchronization interface is configured and FGSP peers are directly connected on this interface, then session synchronization is done over L2, only falling back to L3 if the session synchronization interface becomes unavailable.

When using a session synchronization interface, the synchronization process is offloaded to the kernel. A fast, dedicated, and stable L2 connection should be used for the session synchronization interface between the FGSP peers. For redundancy, multiple synchronization interfaces can be configured.

To provide full redundancy, FGCP clusters can be used in FGSP peering. This is called FGCP over FGSP.

To configure session-sync interfaces:

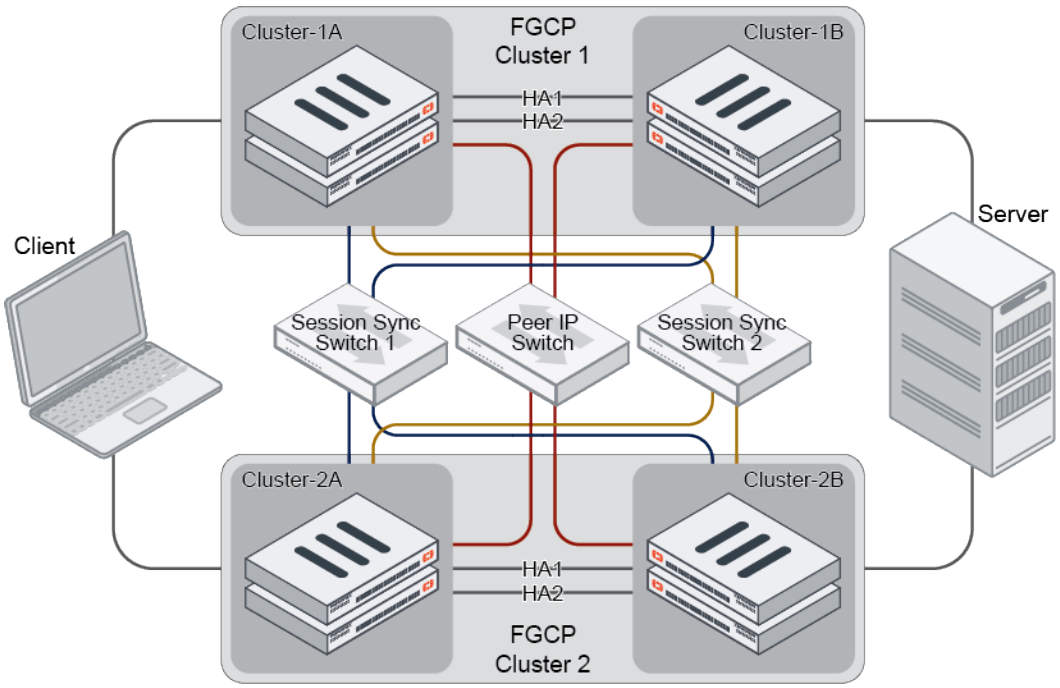
```
config system standalone-cluster
    set session-sync-dev <interface 1> [<interface 2>] ... [<interface n>]
```

```
    set layer2-connection {available | unavailable}
    set encryption {enable | disable}
end
```

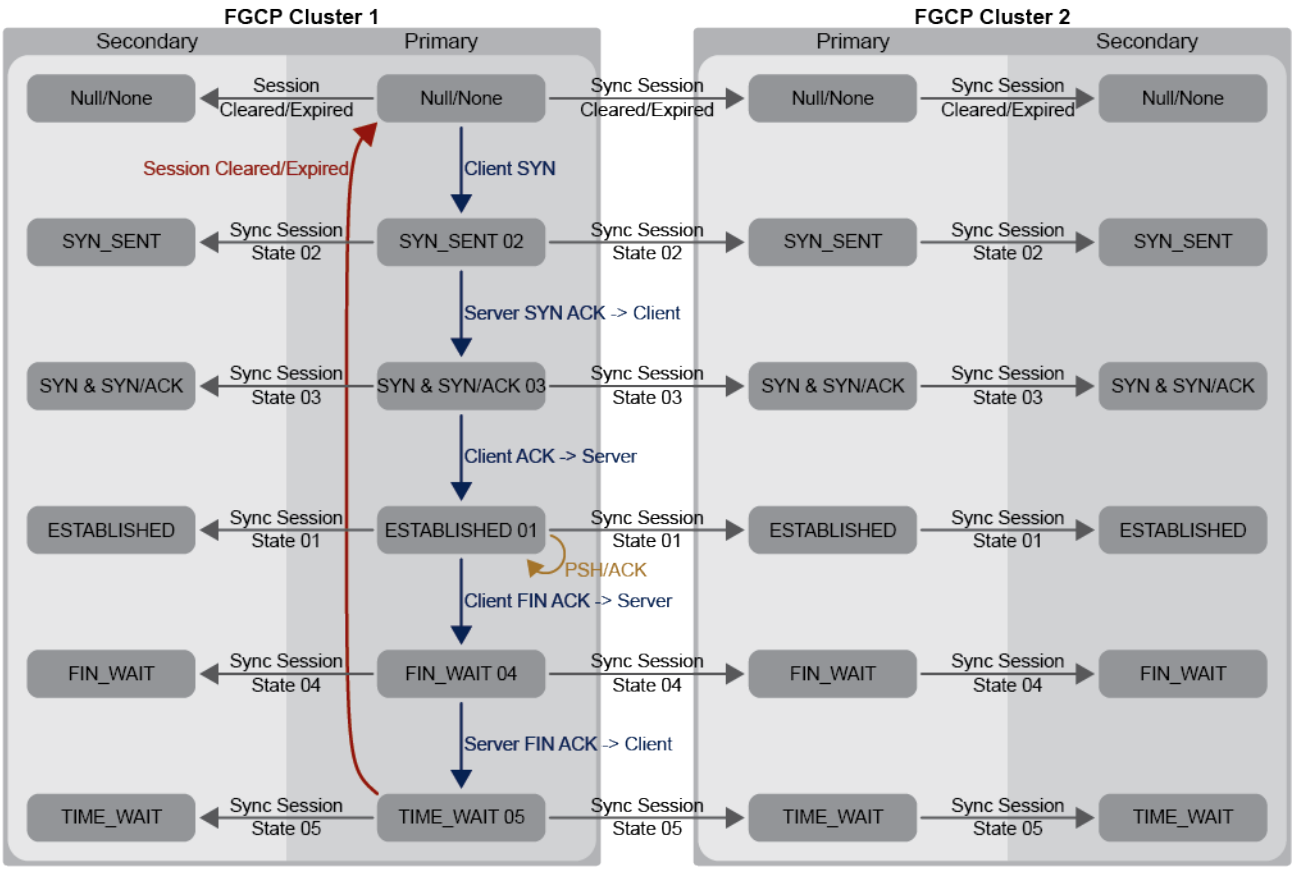
The `layer2-connection` setting is for forwarded traffic between FGSP peers. Set it to `available` if the peer interface user for traffic forwarding is directly connected and supports L2 forwarding. See UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic in FGSP on page 987 for more information.

Session synchronization in FGCP over FGSP

The following topology uses multiple session synchronization interfaces with a full mesh backbone to prevent any single point of failure.



The state diagram summarizes the session synchronization of a TCP session. It assumes that the session is connected over FGCP Cluster 1 and processed entirely by the primary unit, Cluster-1A.



1. The session starts with the Client SYN packet.
2. As the session is established, Cluster-1A synchronizes the session with Cluster-1B over the heartbeat interface, and with Cluster-2A over the session synchronization interface.
3. Cluster-2A then synchronizes the session with Cluster-2B over its heartbeat interface.
4. The process then repeats as it transitions to different states.

Session synchronization if links fail

In the previous topology, if any single session synchronization link fails on the primary member of each cluster, session synchronization will continue on the second link from the pair of session of session synchronization interfaces.

If the second link on the primary member of the same cluster then fails, L2 session synchronization over the session synchronization interface stops, and synchronization fails over to L3 between the peer IP links.

If the Peer IP link then fails, the FGSP peers are effectively disconnected, and no session synchronization will occur.

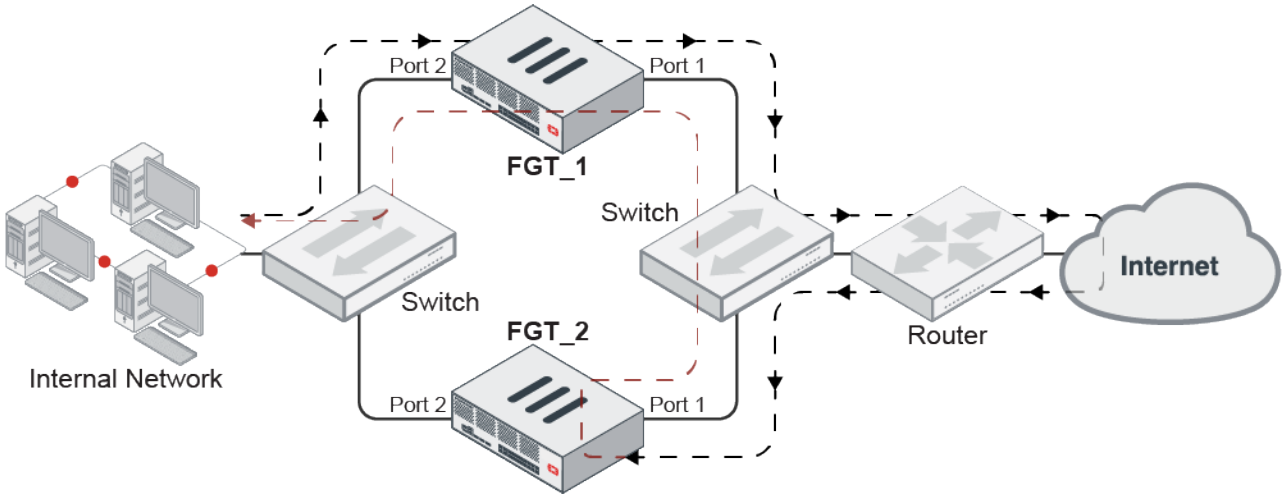
UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic in FGSP

When traffic passes asymmetrically through FGSP peers, UTM inspection can be supported by always forwarding traffic back to the session owner for processing. The session owner is the FortiGate that receives the first packet of the session.

In this example, traffic from the internal network first hits FGT_1, but the return traffic is routed to FGT_2. Consequently, traffic bounces from FGT_2 port1 to FGT_1 port1 using FGT_1's MAC address. Traffic is then inspected by FGT_1.

This example requires the following settings:

- The internal and outgoing interfaces of both FortiGates in the FGSP pair are in the same subnet.
- Both peers have layer 2 access with each other.



To configure FTG_1:

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_2:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.2
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 0
    set layer2-connection available
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
```

```
    next
end
```

To configure FTG_2:

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_1:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.1
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
    set layer2-connection available
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Results

Capture packets on FGT_2 to see that traffic bounced from FGT_2 to FGT_1 over the traffic interface.

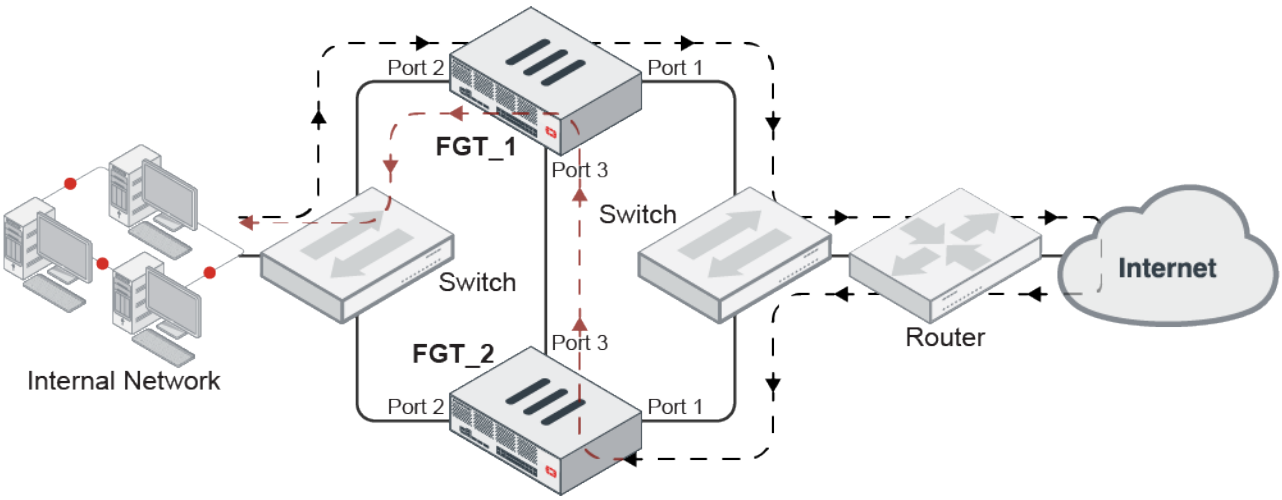
```
FGT_2 # diagnose sniffer packet any 'host 10.1.100.15 and host 172.6.200.55' 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 10.1.100.15 and host 172.16.200.55]
91.803816 port1 in 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800480 port1 in 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800486 port1 out 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800816 port1 in 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800818 port1 out 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
```

UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic on L3

When traffic passes asymmetrically through FGSP peers, UTM inspection can be supported by always forwarding traffic back to the session owner for processing. The session owner is the FortiGate that receives the first packet of the session.

For networks where L2 connectivity is not available, such as cloud environments, traffic bound for the session owner are forwarded through the peer interface using a UDP connection.

In this example, traffic from the internal network first hits FGT_1, but the return traffic is routed to FGT_2. Consequently, return traffic is packed and sent from FGT_2 to FGT_1 using UDP encapsulation between two peer interfaces (port 3). Traffic is then inspected by FGT_1.



To configure FTG_1:

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_2:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.2
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 0
    set layer2-connection unavailable
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
```

```
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure FTG_2:

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_1:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.1
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
    set layer2-connection unavailable
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Encryption for L3 on asymmetric traffic in FGSP

In scenarios where asymmetric routing between FGSP members occurs, the return traffic can be encrypted and routed back to the session owner on Layer 3 (L3).

To encrypt L3 traffic in FGSP:

1. Run the following on both FortiGates:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set encryption enable
```

```
    set psksecret xxxxxxxxx
end
```

Firmware upgrades in FGSP

The following steps are recommended to upgrade the firmware of FortiGates in an FGSP deployment. Follow these steps whether or not you have enabled standalone configuration synchronization.

This example FGSP deployment has two FortiGates, FGT-1 and FGT-2.

To upgrade the firmware in an FGSP deployment:

1. Switch all traffic to FGT-1:
   a. Configure the load balancer or router that distributes traffic between the FortiGates to send all traffic to FGT-1.
2. Disconnect FGT-2 from the network.
   Make sure to also disconnect the interfaces that allow heartbeat and synchronization communication with FGT-1. This is to prevent FGT-2 from communicating with FGT-1.
3. Upgrade the firmware on FGT-2.
4. Reconnect the traffic interfaces on FGT-2, but not the interfaces used for heartbeat and synchronization communication with FGT-1.
5. Switch all traffic to the newly upgraded FGT-2:
   a. Configure the load balancer or router that distributes traffic between the FortiGates to send all traffic to FGT-2.
6. Upgrade the firmware on FGT-1 (while heartbeat and synchronization communication with FGT-2 remains disconnected).
7. Reconnect the FGT-2 interfaces that allow heartbeat and synchronization communication between FGT-1 and FGT-2.
8. Restore the original traffic distribution between FGT-1 and FGT-2:
   a. Configure the load balancer or router to distribute traffic to both FortiGates in the FGSP deployment.

FGSP session synchronization between different FortiGate models or firmware versions

FGSP HA deployments are generally meant for interoperating between FortiGates with the same model and firmware version. However, situations may arise where individual members or FGCP clusters running over FGSP use different models or firmware versions. For example, to avoid downtime while upgrading the members, some FGSP members or clusters may be upgraded first and then re-join the FGSP peers after a successful upgrade. Or while performing maintenance, sessions may need to be offloaded to a temporary member or FGCP cluster of a different model.

Being able to perform FGSP session synchronization between members of different models or firmware versions is helpful to transition the traffic smoothly and causes minimal disruptions. This topic outlines requirements to be aware of before assessing whether FGSP session synchronization may work between members with different models or firmware versions.

Different FortiGate models

The general guideline is to only use FortiGate models in a similar tier and family. Vastly different models have different performance and capabilities, which may not be compatible. The goal is for two models to have similar capabilities so that data structures used in session synchronization will match, and are capable of delivering similar performance.

When considering FGSP session synchronization between two FortiGates, ensure that:

- The FortiGates use the same 32-bit kernel or 64-bit kernel.
- The FortiGates use the same type of CPU (such as ARM or x86).
- For network interfaces:
  - The same type of physical interface should be used on each member.
  - The physical interfaces should be capable of the same speeds.
- The device memory should be similar in size. If the FortiGates have vastly different memory sizes, their performance may be different if one device supports more sessions than the other.
- The configurations related to session tables should match. For example, the logical names used in firewall policies, IPsec interface names, VDOM names, firewall policy tables, and so on.



Virtual clusters and asymmetric routing are not supported.

Different firmware versions

When operating in FGSP, the firmware needs to have compatible data structures and session synchronization packet headers. The firmware is generally able to handle different data structures between old and new FortiOS sessions. Session synchronization packets are typically the same between versions.

Note the following exceptions and guidelines when assessing FGSP session synchronization compatibility between different firmware versions:

- FortiOS 7.0.2 added support for widening the HA virtual MAC address range. This change updated the session synchronization packet header structure.
  - FortiGates running 7.0.2 or later, and FortiGates running 7.0.1 or earlier will not accept session synchronization packets from each other.
- If the traffic uses a new feature only available in a newer FortiOS version, it may not work when synchronized to an older FortiOS version.
  - For example, PFCP (Packet Forwarding Control Protocol) support was added in 7.0.1, and a PFCP profile name was added to the sessions. When the sessions are synchronized to an older firmware version, the PFCP profile name will be lost and the sessions will not be able to handle the traffic as they would in 7.0.1.
- FortiOS 6.4.10 added `group-id` into the protocol header. This means that FortiGates running 6.4.10 and later cannot perform session synchronization with FortiGates running 6.4.9 or earlier.

To identify that session-sync is failing due to the receiver not being able to recognize a packet that it receives:

1. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys session sync
sync_ctx: sync_started=1, sync_tcp=1, sync_others=1,
sync_expectation=1, sync_nat=1, stdalone_sesync=1.
sync: create=323:0, update=84662, delete=0:0, query=960
recv: create=39544:0, update=133665, delete=0:0, query=38775
ses pkts: send=248714, alloc_fail=0, recv=751196, recv_err=1 sz_err=0
udp pkts: send=8, recv=85
nCfg_sess_sync_num=5, mtu=1500, ipsec_tun_sync=0
sync_filter:
```

2. Check if the `recv_err` counter continues to increase.

Session synchronization interfaces

Session synchronization between FGSP members uses an L3 connection over the peer IP by default.

Session synchronization between FGSP members uses an L2 connection when a session synchronization interface (`session-sync-dev`) is used. The synchronization process is also offloaded to the kernel.



FGSP is also compatible with FortiGate VRRP.

Applying the session synchronization filter only between FGSP peers in an FGCP over FGSP topology

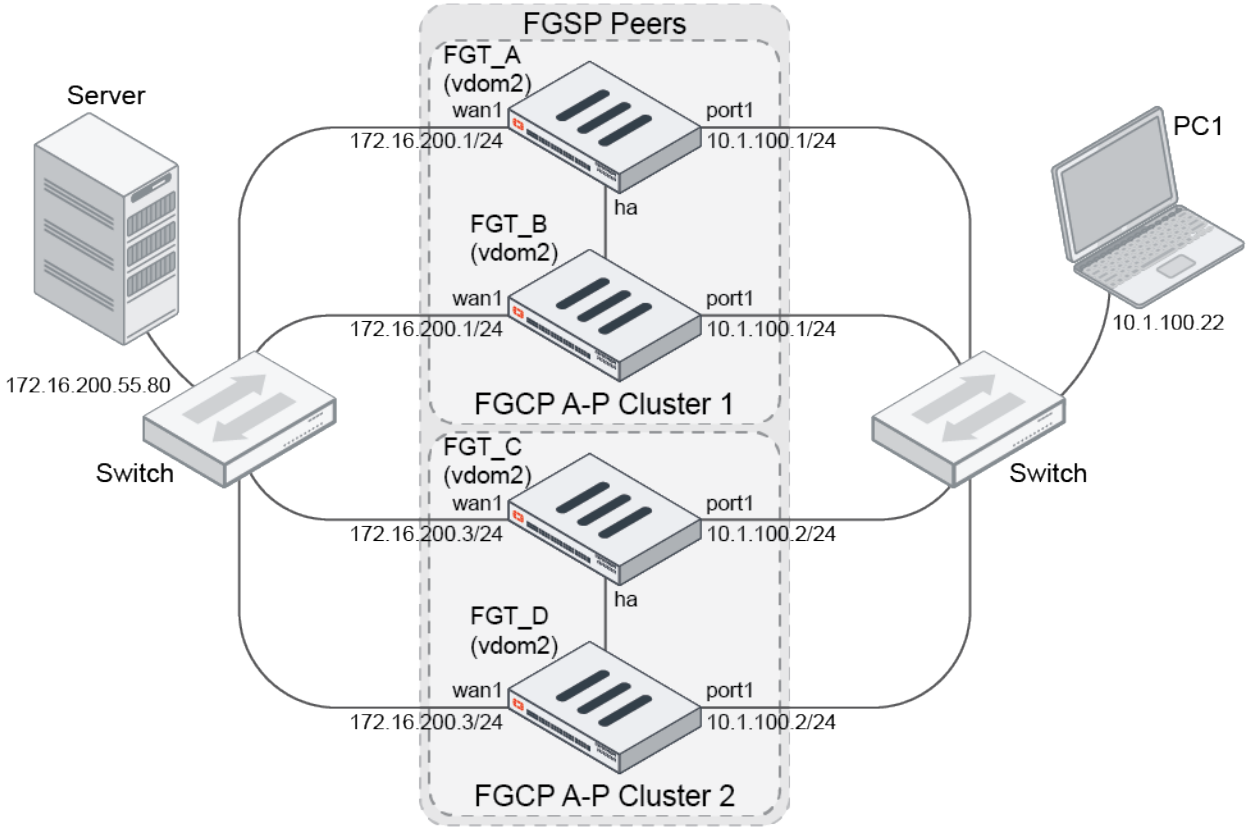
When the session synchronization filter is applied on FGSP, the filter will only affect sessions synchronized between the FGSP peers. When virtual clustering is used, sessions synchronized between each virtual cluster can also be synchronized to FGSP peers. All peers' `syncvd` must be in the same HA virtual cluster.

Example

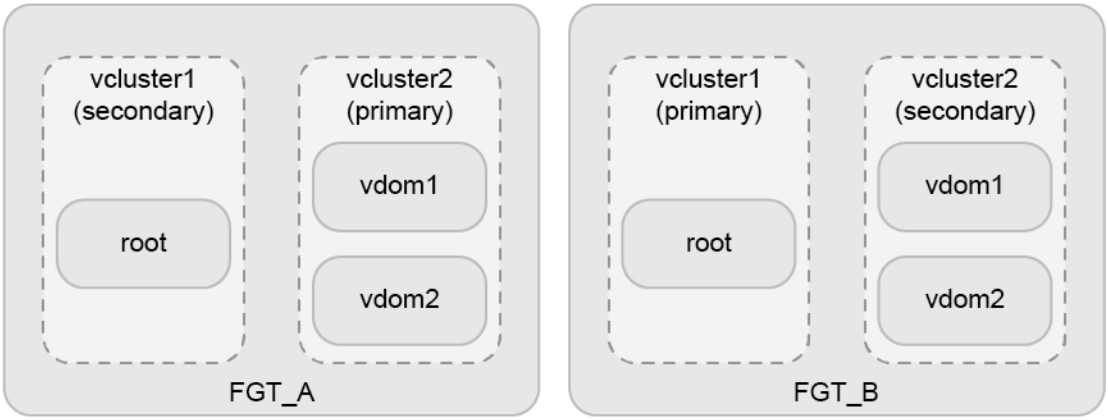
In this example, there is a simplified configuration where there is no router or load balancer performing balancing between the FGSP peers, but it demonstrates the following:

- When sessions pass through FGCP A-P Cluster 1, all sessions are synchronized between the FGT_A and FGT_B regardless of the session synchronization filter.
- Session synchronization between the FGSP peers (FGCP A-P Cluster 1 and 2) only occurs for the service specified in the filter, which is HTTP/80.
- The preceding behavior is applicable when virtual clustering is configured. This example focuses on vdom2, which belongs to vcluster2. FGT_A is the primary for vcluster2.

Each FGSP A-P cluster is connected on ha as the FGCP cluster heartbeat device. The FGSP peers are connected on mgmt over 10.1.1.1-2/24.



Virtual clustering between FGT_A and FGT_B:



Interface	FGT_A	FGT_B	FGT_C	FGT_D
wan1	172.16.200.1/24	172.16.200.1/24	172.16.200.3/24	172.16.200.3/24
port1	10.1.100.1/24	10.1.100.1/24	10.1.100.2/24	10.1.100.2/24
mgmt	10.1.1.1/24	10.1.1.1/24	10.1.1.2/24	10.1.1.2/24
ha	FGCP cluster heartbeat device		FGCP cluster heartbeat device	

To configure the HA clusters:

1. Configure FGCP A-P Cluster 1 (use the same configuration for FGT_A and FGT_B):

```
config system ha
    set group-id 146
    set group-name "FGT_HA1"
    set mode a-p
    set hbdev "wan2" 100 "ha" 50
    set session-pickup enable
    set vcluster-status enable
    config vcluster
        edit 1
            set override enable
            set priority 25
            set monitor "wan1" "port1"
            set vdom "root"
        next
        edit 2
            set override disable
            set priority 150
            set monitor "wan1"
            set vdom "vdom2" "vdom1"
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure FGCP A-P Cluster 2 (use the same configuration for FGT_C and FGT_D):

```
config system ha
    set group-id 200
    set group-name "FGT_HA2"
    set mode a-p
    set hbdev "wan2" 100 "ha" 50
    set session-pickup enable
    set vcluster-status enable
    config vcluster
        edit 1
            set override enable
            set priority 120
            set monitor "wan1" "port1"
            set vdom "root"
        next
        edit 2
            set override disable
            set priority 150
            set monitor "wan1"
            set vdom "vdom2" "vdom1"
        next
    end
end
```

To configure the FGSP peers:

1. Configure FGT_A.
   a. Configure the FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
end
```

   b. Configure the FGSP session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peervd "vdom2"
        set peerip 10.1.1.2
        set syncvd "vdom2"
        config session-sync-filter
            config custom-service
                edit 1
                    set dst-port-range 80-80
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

   The configuration is automatically synchronized to FGT_B.
2. Configure FGT_C.
   a. Configure the FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 2
end
```

   b. Configure the FGSP session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peervd "vdom2"
        set peerip 10.1.1.1
        set syncvd "vdom2"
        config session-sync-filter
            config custom-service
                edit 1
                    set dst-port-range 80-80
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

   The configuration is automatically synchronized to FGT_D.

To verify the configuration:

1. Verify the FGSP peer information on Cluster 1:

```
FGT_A (global) # diagnose sys ha fgsp-zone
Local standalone-member-id: 1
FGSP peer_num = 1
        peer[1]: standalone-member-id=2, IP=10.1.1.2, vd=vdom2, prio=1
```

2. Verify the FGSP peer information on Cluster 2:

```
FGT_C (global) # diagnose sys ha fgsp-zone
Local standalone-member-id: 1
FGSP peer_num = 1
        peer[1]: standalone-member-id=1, IP=10.1.1.1, vd=vdom2, prio=1
```

3. Initiate two sessions, HTTP and SSH.
4. Verify that the HTTP session is synchronized from Cluster 1 to Cluster 2.
   a. Verify the session list of vdom2 on FGT_A:

```
FGT_A (vdom2) # diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=693 expire=3593 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=1:0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty npu synced f00
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=87531/1678/1 reply=7413876/6043/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 134/1 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 11357/90
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=11->7/7->11
gwy=172.16.200.55/10.1.100.22
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.22:44260->172.16.200.55:80(172.16.200.1:44260)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:80->172.16.200.1:44260(10.1.100.22:44260)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=7 pol_uuid_idx=579 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=000a79df tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x4000c00 ofld-O ofld-R
npu info: flag=0x81/0x81, offload=8/8, ips_offload=0/0, epid=66/70, ipid=70/66,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=70/66, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=1/1, out_npu=1/1, fwd_en=0/0, qid=1/0

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=326 expire=3589 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=1:0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty npu synced f00
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=4721/41/1 reply=5681/36/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 14/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 17/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=11->7/7->11
gwy=172.16.200.55/10.1.100.22
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.22:50234->172.16.200.55:22(172.16.200.1:50234)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:22->172.16.200.1:50234(10.1.100.22:50234)
```

```
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=7 pol_uuid_idx=579 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=000a7d90 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x4000c00 ofld-O ofld-R
npu info: flag=0x81/0x81, offload=8/8, ips_offload=0/0, epid=66/70, ipid=70/66,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=70/66, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=1/1, out_npu=1/1, fwd_en=0/0, qid=6/6
total session 2
```

b. Verify the session list of vdom2 on FGT_B:

```
FGT_B (vdom2) # diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=736 expire=3100 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=1:0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log dirty may_dirty npu f00 syn_ses
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=0/0/0 reply=0/0/0 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=11->7/7->11 gwy=0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.22:44260->172.16.200.55:80(172.16.200.1:44260)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:80->172.16.200.1:44260(10.1.100.22:44260)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=7 pol_uuid_idx=0 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=000a79df tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x4000000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason:

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=369 expire=3230 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=1:0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log dirty may_dirty npu f00 syn_ses
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=0/0/0 reply=0/0/0 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=11->7/7->11 gwy=0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.22:50234->172.16.200.55:22(172.16.200.1:50234)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:22->172.16.200.1:50234(10.1.100.22:50234)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=7 pol_uuid_idx=0 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=000a7d90 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x4000000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
```

```
no_ofld_reason:
total session 2
```

c. Verify the session list of vdom2 on FGT_C:

```
FGT_C (vdom2) # diagnose sys session filter dst 172.16.200.55
FGT_C (vdom2) # diagnose sys session filter src 10.1.100.22
FGT_C (vdom2) # diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=837 expire=2762 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=1:0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log dirty may_dirty npu f00 syn_ses
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=0/0/0 reply=0/0/0 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=11->7/7->11 gwy=0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.22:44260->172.16.200.55:80(172.16.200.1:44260)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:80->172.16.200.1:44260(10.1.100.22:44260)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=7 pol_uuid_idx=0 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=000a79df tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x4000000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason:
total session 1
```

d. Verify the session list of vdom2 on FGT_D:

```
FGT-D (vdom2) # diagnose sys session filter dst 172.16.200.55
FGT-D (vdom2) # diagnose sys session filter src 10.1.100.22
FGT-D (vdom2) # diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=902 expire=2697 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=1:0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log dirty may_dirty npu f00 syn_ses
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=0/0/0 reply=0/0/0 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=11->7/7->11 gwy=0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.22:44260->172.16.200.55:80(172.16.200.1:44260)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:80->172.16.200.1:44260(10.1.100.22:44260)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=7 pol_uuid_idx=0 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=000a79df tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x4000000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
```

```
no_ofld_reason:
total session 1
```

Session synchronization filters are designed to be configured symmetrically on all of the FGSP peers. In cases where the filters are configured asymmetrically, note the following differences:

- In an FGCP over FGSP topology, session filtering will be applied on the FGSP peer that has the filtering configured and is receiving the session synchronization.
- In an FGSP topology between standalone peers, the filtering will be applied on the FGSP peer that has the filtering configured and is sending out the session synchronization.

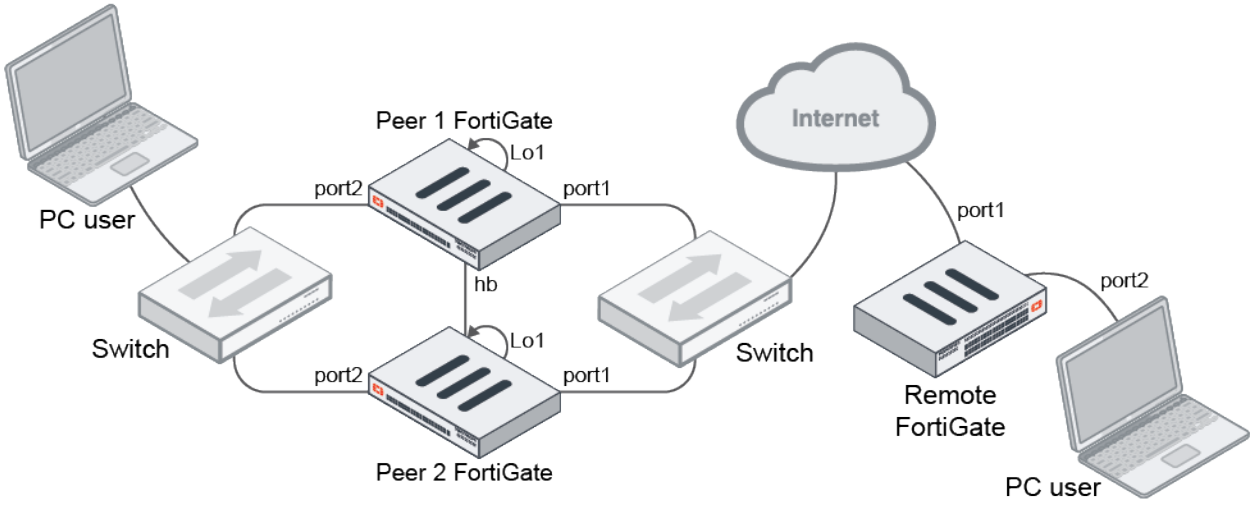
FGSP static site-to-site IPsec VPN setup

When configuring static site-to-site IPsec VPN between FGSP FortiGates and a remote gateway, the FGSP peers must have the `passive-mode` setting enabled in the `vpn ipsec phase1-interface` configuration to function as an IPsec responder. This is a required configuration in this setup. If the FGSP peers act as initiators for tunnel setup when `passive-mode` is disabled and both FGSP peers initiate the tunnel with the same gateway IP, the remote IPsec gateway will be unable to process this, and the tunnel negotiation will fail. Likewise, when a failover occurs in FGSP and a new peer begins to initiate tunnel traffic, the remote IPsec gateway will be unable to handle the traffic initiated from the new peer.

Enabling `passive-mode` ensures the FGSP peers only respond to tunnel initiations from the remote IPsec gateway and do not initiate tunnel negotiations. This way, the preceding situations will not occur.

Example

In this example, the FGSP peer has a loopback interface (Lo1) configured with the same IP address (192.168.202.31/32). All other interface IP addresses are different between the peers.



To configure IPsec on the FGSP peer FortiGates:

1. Configure the phase 1 settings:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "IPsec"
```

```
        set type static
        set set interface "port1"
        set ike-version 2
        set local-gw 192.168.202.31
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set passive-mode enable
        set remote-gw 10.10.100.100
    next
end
```

2. Configure the phase 2 settings:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "IPSec"
        set phase1name "IPsec"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
    next
end
```

To configure IPsec on the remote FortiGate:

1. Configure the phase 1 settings:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "IPsec"
        set type static
        set set interface "port1"
        set ike-version 2
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 192.168.202.31
    next
end
```

2. Configure the phase 2 settings:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "IPSec"
        set phase1name "IPsec"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
    next
end
```

Using standalone configuration synchronization

You can configure synchronization from one standalone FortiGate to another standalone FortiGate (`standalone-config-sync`). With the exception of some configurations that do not sync (settings that identify the FortiGate to the network), the rest of the configurations are synced, such as firewall policies, firewall addresses, and UTM profiles.

This option is useful in situations when you need to set up FGSP peers, or when you want to quickly deploy several FortiGates with the same configurations. You can set up `standalone-config-sync` for multiple members.

`standalone-config-sync` is an independent feature and should be used with caution as there are some limitations. We recommend disabling it once the configurations have been synced over.

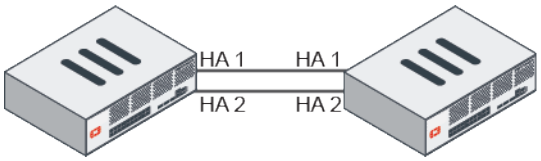
Limitations

When standalone configuration synchronization is enabled, there are some limitations, including but not limited to the following:

- Network interruptions occur during firmware upgrades: when upgrading the firmware, all members in the `standalone-config-sync` group are upgraded simultaneously. This creates downtime if the FortiGates are the only outgoing gateway in the network. We recommend disabling the option before upgrading firmware.
- Some unwanted configurations might be synced: the current design and implementation of `standalone-config-sync` is based on requirements from specific customers. Thus, some users may find that unwanted parts of the configurations are synced. Should this occur, we recommend disabling the option and modifying those configurations manually.
- The wrong primary device might be selected accidentally: `standalone-config-sync` is derived from the HA primary unit selection mechanism. All members in the group will join the selection process in the same way as a the HA cluster selection process. It is important to select the correct device as the primary, otherwise the wrong device could be selected and existing configurations could be overwritten.
- Layer 2 heartbeat connections must be present: similar to HA heartbeat requirements, one or more layer 2 heartbeat connections are needed to sync configurations between the primary and secondary devices.

Setting up standalone configuration synchronization

Two or more standalone FortiGates should be connected to each other with one or more heartbeat interfaces, either back-to-back or via a switch. In the following example, the device supplying the configurations is called "conf-prim," and the devices receiving the configurations are called "conf-secos."



To set up standalone configuration synchronization:

1. Configure the conf-prim device for the group:

```
config system ha
    set hbdev ha1 50 ha2 100
    set priority 255
    set override enable
    set standalone-config-sync enable
end
```

2. Configure the conf-prim device as needed to be functional.
3. Configure the other group members as conf-secos:

```
config system ha
    set standalone-config-sync enable
end
```

4. Wait 10–15 minutes for the configurations to sync over.

5. Verify the synchronization status:

```
# get system ha status
path=system, objname=ha, tablename=(null), size=5912
HA Health Status:
  WARNING: FG201E4Q17900771 has hbdev down;
  WARNING: FG201ETK19900991 has hbdev down;
Model: FortiGate-201E
Mode: ConfigSync
Group: 0
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 0:0:51
Cluster state change time: 2019-09-03 17:46:07
Primary selected using:
  <2019/09/03 17:46:07> FG201ETK19900991 is selected as the primary because it has the
largest value of override priority.
ses_pickup: disable
override: disable
Configuration Status:
  FG201E4Q17900771(updated 3 seconds ago): out-of-sync
  FG201ETK19900991(updated 1 seconds ago): in-sync
System Usage stats:
  FG201E4Q17900771(updated 3 seconds ago):
    sessions=1, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=16%
  FG201ETK19900991(updated 1 seconds ago):
    sessions=1, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=16%
HBDEV stats:
  FG201E4Q17900771(updated 3 seconds ago):
    wan2: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=114918/266/0/0,
tx=76752/178/0/0
    ha: physical/00, down, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=0/0/0/0, tx=0/0/0/0
  FG201ETK19900991(updated 1 seconds ago):
    wan2: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=83024/192/0/0,
tx=120216/278/0/0
    ha: physical/00, down, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=0/0/0/0, tx=0/0/0/0
Secondary: FortiGate-201E, FG201E4Q17900771, HA cluster index = 1
Primary: FortiGate-201E, FG201ETK19900991, HA cluster index = 0
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: work 169.254.0.1
Secondary: FG201E4Q17900771, HA operating index = 1
Primary: FG201ETK19900991, HA operating index = 0
```

If all members are `in-sync`, this means all members share the same configurations, except those that should not be synced. If any members are `out-of-sync`, this means the member failed to sync with the primary device.



Debugging is similar when a cluster is out of sync.

VRRP

A Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) configuration can be used as a high availability solution to ensure that a network maintains connectivity with the internet (or with other networks) even if the default router for the network fails. If

a router or a FortiGate fails, all traffic to this device transparently fails over to another router or FortiGate that takes over the role of the failed device. If the failed device is restored, it will take over processing the network traffic.

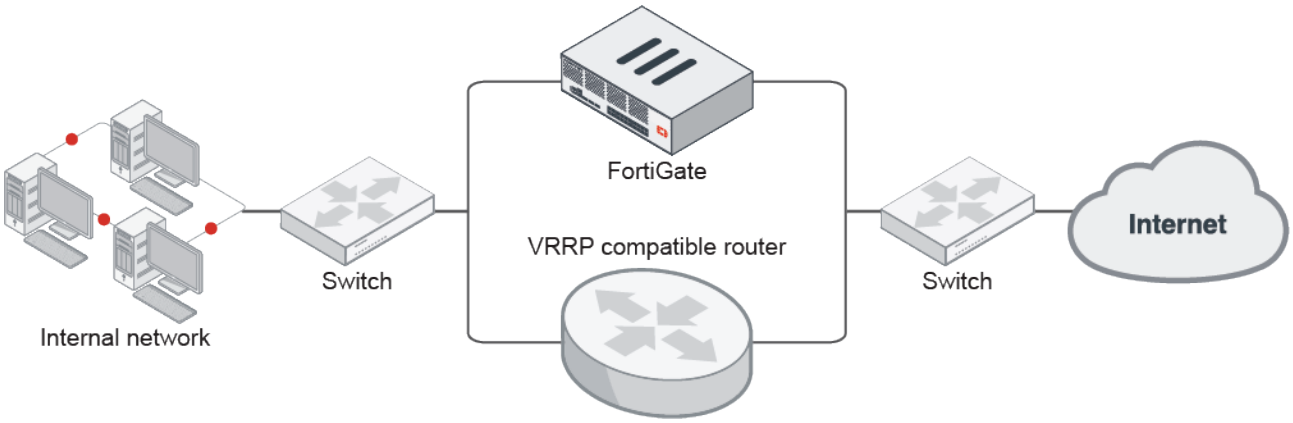
FortiOS supports VRRP versions 2 and 3. VRRP domains can be created, which can include multiple FortiGates and other VRRP-compatible routers. Different FortiGate models can be added to the same VRRP domain.

FortiOS supports IPv4 and IPv6 VRRP, so IPv4 and IPv6 VRRP virtual routers can be added to the same interface. FortiGates can quickly and easily integrate into a network that has already deployed VRRP.

Basic VRRP configuration

The most common VRRP application is to provide redundant default routers between an internal network and the internet. The default routers can be FortiGates or any routers that support VRRP.

Two or more FortiGate interfaces or routers must be configured with the same virtual router ID and IP address so they can automatically join the same VRRP domain. Priorities must be assigned to each FortiGate interface or router in the VRRP domain. All of the routers in the VRRP domain should have different priorities. One FortiGate interface or router must have the highest priority to become the primary router. The other FortiGates or routers in the domain are assigned lower priorities and become backups. If the primary router fails, VRRP automatically fails over to the router in the domain with the next highest priority.



To configure VRRP:

1. Add a virtual VRRP router to the internal interface of each FortiGate and/or router. This adds the FortiGates and routers to the same VRRP domain.
2. Set the VRRP IP address of the domain to the internal network default gateway IP address.
3. Set the priorities.

See Adding IPv4 and IPv6 virtual routers to an interface on page 1006 Single-domain VRRP example on page 1013, and Multi-domain VRRP example on page 1014 for configuration examples.

During normal operations, all traffic from the internal network to the internet passes through the primary VRRP router. The primary router also sends VRRP advertisement messages to the backup routers. A backup router will not attempt to become a primary router while receiving these messages. If the primary router fails, the backup router with the highest priority becomes the new primary router after a short delay. All packets sent to the default route are now sent to the new primary router. If the new primary router is a FortiGate, the network continues to benefit from FortiOS security features. If the new primary router is just a router, traffic continues to flow, but FortiOS security features are unavailable until the FortiGate is back online.

If the backup router is a FortiGate, during a VRRP failover as the FortiGate begins operating as the new primary router, it will not have session information for all of the failed over in-progress sessions. So, it would normally not be able to forward in-progress session traffic.

Adding IPv4 and IPv6 virtual routers to an interface

This topic describes to how to add IPv4 and IPv6 virtual routers to an interface. VRRP can only be configured on physical or VLAN interfaces. VRRP cannot be configured on hardware switch interfaces where multiple physical interfaces are combined into a hardware switch interface.

IPv4 virtual router

In this example, an IPv4 VRRP router is added to port10 on the FortiGate. The VRRP virtual router has a virtual router ID of 200, uses IP address 10.31.101.200, and has a priority of 255. Since this is the highest priority in the configuration, this interface is configured to be the primary router of the VRRP domain.

To configure the interface settings:

```
config system interface
    edit port10
        config vrrp
            edit 200
                set vrip 10.31.101.200
                set priority 255
            next
        end
    next
end
```

IPv6 virtual router

In this example, an IPv6 VRRP router is added to port20 on the FortiGate. The VRRP virtual router has a virtual router ID of 220, uses IP address 2001:db8:1::12, and has a priority of 255. Since this is the highest priority in the configuration, this interface is configured to be the primary router of the VRRP domain.

To configure the interface settings:

```
config system interface
    edit port20
        config ipv6
            set vrip6_link_local <IPv6_address>
            config vrrp6
                edit 220
                    set vrip 2001:db8:1::12
                    set priority 255
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

VRRP failover

VRRP routers in a VRRP domain periodically send VRRP advertisement messages to all routers in the domain to maintain one router as the primary router and the others as backup routers. The primary router has the highest priority. If the backup routers stop receiving these packets from the primary router, the backup router with the highest priority becomes the new primary router.

The primary router stops sending VRRP advertisement messages if it fails or becomes disconnected. Up to two VRRP destination addresses can be configured to be monitored by the primary router. As a best practice, the destination addresses should be remote addresses. If the primary router is unable to connect to these destination addresses, it stops sending VRRP advertisement messages, and the backup router with the highest priority becomes the primary router.

To configure IPv4 VRRP with two destination addresses for monitoring:

```
config system interface
    edit port14
        config vrrp
            edit 12
                set vrdst 10.10.10.20 10.20.20.10
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure IPv6 VRRP with one destination address for monitoring:

```
config system interface
    edit port23
        config ipv6
            config vrrp6
                edit 223
                    set vrdst 2001:db8:1::12
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

IPv4 VRRP active failover

The `vrdst-priority` option can be used to reduce IPv4 VRRP failover times. This option causes the primary router to actively signal to the backup routers when the primary router cannot reach its configured destination addresses. The primary router sends a lower priority for itself in the VRRP advertisement messages. The backup router with the highest priority becomes the new primary router and takes over traffic processing.

In this example, the primary router is configured to have a priority of 255, so it should always become the primary router. The `vrdst-priority` is set to 10. If the primary router cannot connect to the 10.10.10.1 destination address, then the primary router informs the VRRP group that its priority is now 10.

To set the priority of the virtual router when the destination address is unreachable:

```
config system interface
    edit port10
        config vrrp
            edit 12
                set vrip 10.31.101.200
                set priority 255
                set vrdst 10.10.10.1
                set vrdst-priority 10
            next
        end
    next
end
```

IPv4 VIP and IP pool failover

The `proxy-arp` option can be used to map VIPs and IP pool address ranges to each router's VMAC (virtual MAC). After failover, the IP or ranges configured in the VRRP settings are routed to the new primary router's VMAC. In this example, a single IP and an address range are added for proxy ARP.

To configure the IP addresses for proxy ARP:

```
config system interface
    edit port5
        set vrrp-virtual-mac enable
        config vrrp
            edit 1
                config proxy-arp
                    edit 1
                        set ip 192.168.62.100-192.168.62.200
                    next
                    edit 2
                        set ip 192.168.62.225
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Changing the advertisement message interval

By default, VRRP advertisement messages are sent once every second. The frequency can be changed with the `adv-interval` option to change the frequency of sending these messages (1 - 255 seconds).

The `adv-interval` also affects the period of time that a backup VRRP router waits before assuming the primary router has failed. The waiting period is three times the `adv-interval`. For example, if the `adv-interval` is set to 5, then the backup router waits for up to 15 seconds to receive a VRRP advertisement from the current primary router before taking over the role as the primary router.

To configure IPv4 VRRP to send advertisement messages every 10 seconds:

```
config system interface
    edit port14
        config vrrp
            edit 12
                set adv-interval 10
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure IPv6 VRRP to send advertisement messages every 20 seconds:

```
config system interface
    edit port23
        config ipv6
            config vrrp6
                edit 223
                set adv-interval 20
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Changing the VRRP startup time

The VRRP startup time is the time a backup or primary VRRP router waits before sending or receiving VRRP advertisements before potentially changing state (`start-time` in seconds, 1 - 255, default = 3). This timer is mainly visible when VRRP-monitored interfaces become up after previously been down. When this occurs, the device will wait for the time period before considering, and potentially changing its status.

There are some instances when the advertisement messages might be delayed. For example, some switches with spanning tree enabled may delay some of the advertisement message packets. If backup routers are attempting to become primary routers even though the primary router has not failed, extend the start time to ensure that the backup routers wait long enough for the advertisement messages.

To configure the IPv4 VRRP startup time to 10 seconds:

```
config system interface
    edit port14
        config vrrp
            edit 12
                set start-time 10
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure the IPv6 VRRP startup time to 15 seconds:

```
config system interface
    edit port23
        config ipv6
```

```
            config vrrp6
                edit 223
                set start-time 15
            next
        end
    next
end
```

VRRP groups

If VRRP routers are added to multiple interfaces of the same FortiGate, each router will be in a different VRRP domain. If one of the VRRP routers fails, it is useful if all of the VRRP routers added to the FortiGate also fail.

VRRP can only check the routers' status in a single VRRP domain and cannot track the status of routers in other domains. For multiple VRRP domains on a single FortiGate, only one can switch to being a backup, and the others remain operating normally. Using VRRP groups resolves this issue.

All the VRRP virtual routers on the FortiGate can be added to a VRRP group. If one of the virtual routers in a VRRP group switches to the backup, the VRRP group forces all members to switch to backups. All VRRP traffic being processed by the FortiGate fails over to other devices in the network.



The status of the virtual routers in a VRRP group only changes when one or more of the virtual routers in the group changes status. A VRRP group should not be used to manually change the status of the virtual routers in the group.

To configure two IPv4 VRRP routers in a VRRP group:

```
config system interface
    edit port10
        config vrrp
            edit 200
                set vrip 10.31.101.200
                set priority 255
                set vrgrp 10
            next
        end
    next
    edit port20
        config vrrp
            edit 100
                set vrip 10.23.1.223
                set priority 20
                set vrgrp 10
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure two IPv6 VRRP routers in a VRRP group:

```
config system interface
    edit port11
        config ipv6
```

```
            set vrip6_link_local <IPv6_address>
            config vrrp6
                edit 220
                    set vrip 2001:db8:1::12
                    set priority 255
                    set vrgrp 90
                next
            end
        end
    next
    edit port12
        config ipv6
            set vrip6_link_local <IPv6_address>
            config vrrp6
                edit 220
                    set vrip 2001:db8:1::14
                    set priority 100
                    set vrgrp 90
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

VRRP virtual MACs

The VRRP virtual MAC address (or virtual router MAC address) is a shared MAC address adopted by the primary router. If the primary router fails, the same virtual MAC address is picked up by the new primary router, allowing all devices on the network to transparently connect to the default route using the same virtual MAC address. This feature must be enabled on all members in a VRRP domain.

Each VRRP router has its own virtual MAC address. The last part octet is based on the VRRP router ID using the following format:

`00-00-5E-00-01-<VRID_hex>`

Where `<VRID_hex>` is the VRRP router ID in hexadecimal format in internet standard bit-order. For more information about virtual MAC formatting, see RFC 3768.

For example:

- If the VRRP router ID is 10, then the virtual MAC is `00-00-5E-00-01-0a`.
- If the VRRP router ID is 200, then the virtual MAC is `00-00-5E-00-01-c8`.

If the VRRP virtual MAC address feature is disabled (the default setting), the VRRP domain uses the MAC address of the primary router. On a FortiGate VRRP virtual router, this is the MAC address of the FortiGate interface that the VRRP router is added to. If the primary fails, when the new primary takes over, it sends gratuitous ARPs to associate the VRRP router IP address with the MAC address of the new primary (or the FortiGate interface that became the new primary).

When a VRRP virtual MAC address is enabled, the new primary uses the same MAC address as the old primary.

Since devices on the LAN do not have to learn a new MAC address for a new VRRP router in the event of a failover, this feature can improve network efficiency, especially in large and complex networks.

To enable virtual MAC addresses in IPv4 VRRP:

```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        set vrrp-virtual-mac enable
    next
end
```

To enable virtual MAC addresses in IPv6 VRRP:

```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        config ipv6
            set vrrp-virtual-mac6 enable
        end
    next
end
```

Preempt mode

When preempt mode is enabled (the default setting), a higher priority backup router can preempt a lower priority primary router. This can happen if the primary router fails, the backup router becomes the primary router, and the failed primary router restarts. Since the restarted router has a higher priority, if preempt mode is enabled, the restarted router replaces the current primary router becoming the new primary router. If preempt mode is disabled, a restarted router that has a higher priority would not take over as the primary router.

To configure preempt mode in IPv4 VRRP:

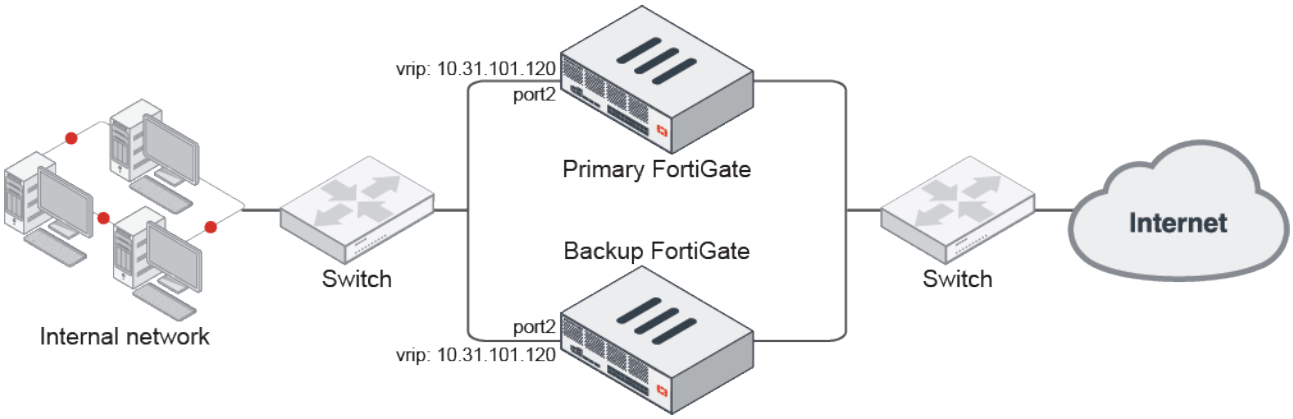
```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        config vrrp
            edit <vrid>
                set preempt {enable | disable}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure preempt mode in IPv6 VRRP:

```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        config ipv6
            config vrrp6
                edit <vrid>
                    set preempt {enable | disable}
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

Single-domain VRRP example

This example consists of a VRRP domain with two FortiGates that connect an internal network to the internet. The FortiGate port2 interfaces connect to the internal network, and a VRRP virtual router is added to each port2 interface with VRRP virtual MAC addresses enabled. The internal network default route is 10.31.101.120. Each FortiGate port2 interface has an IP address that is different from the virtual router IP address. Since `vrrp-virtual-mac` is enabled, upon failover, the new primary VRRP router will use the same VMAC as the previous router.



To configure the primary FortiGate:

```
config system interface
    edit port2
        set vrrp-virtual-mac enable
        config vrrp
            edit 5
                set vrip 10.31.101.120
                set priority 255
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure the backup FortiGate:

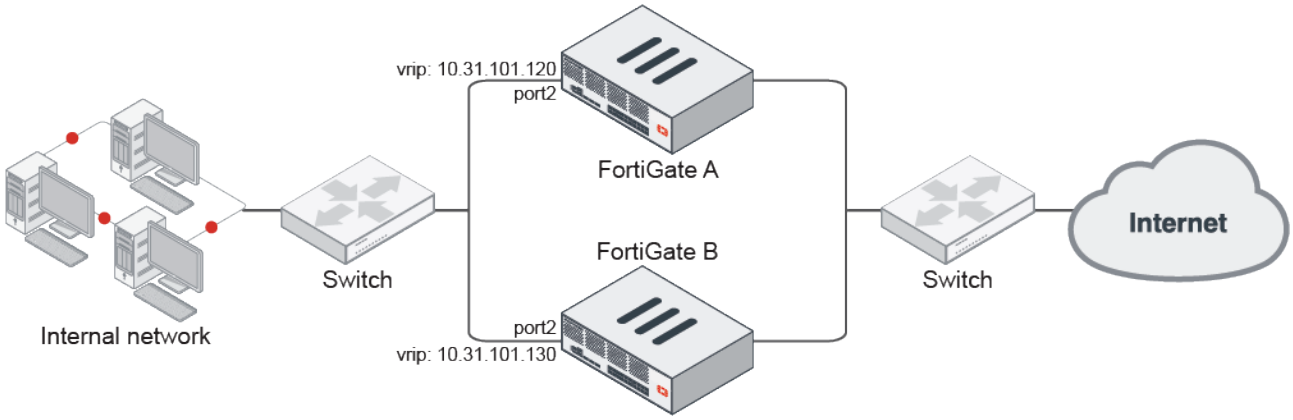
```
config system interface
    edit port2
        set vrrp-virtual-mac enable
        config vrrp
            edit 5
                set vrip 10.31.101.120
                set priority 50
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Multi-domain VRRP example

This example consists of two VRRP domains, and both FortiGates participate in the domains that connect an internal network to the internet. One FortiGate is the primary router of one domain and the other FortiGate is the primary router of the other domain. The network distributes traffic between two different default routes (10.31.101.120 and 10.31.101.130). One VRRP domain is configured with one of the default route IP addresses and the other VRRP domain gets the other default route IP address. During normal operation, both FortiGates process traffic, and the VRRP domains are used to load balance the traffic between the two FortiGates.

If one of the FortiGates fails, the remaining FortiGate becomes the primary router of both VRRP domains. The network sends all traffic for both default routes to this FortiGate. The result is a configuration that (under normal operational load) balances traffic between two FortiGates, but if one of the FortiGates fails, all traffic fails over to the FortiGate that is still operating.

VRRP virtual MAC address are enabled on both FortiGates' port2 interfaces so that the VRRP domains use their VRRP virtual MAC addresses.



Device	VRRP primary			VRRP backup		
	Virtual router IP	ID	Priority	Virtual router IP	ID	Priority
FortiGate A	10.31.101.120	50	255	10.31.101.130	100	50
FortiGate B	10.31.101.130	100	255	10.31.101.120	50	50

To configure FortiGate A:

```
config system interface
    edit port2
        set vrrp-virtual-mac enable
        config vrrp
            edit 50
                set vrip 10.31.101.120
                set priority 255
            next
            edit 100
                set vrip 10.31.101.130
                set priority 50
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

To configure FortiGate B:

```
config system interface
    edit port2
        set vrrp-virtual-mac enable
        config vrrp
            edit 50
                set vrip 10.31.101.120
                set priority 50
            next
            edit 100
                set vrip 10.31.101.130
                set priority 255
            next
        end
    next
end
```

SNMP

SNMP enables you to monitor hardware on your network. You can configure the hardware, such as the FortiGate SNMP agent, to report system information and send traps (alarms or event messages) to SNMP managers. SNMP traps alert you to events that happen, such as when a log disk is full or a virus is detected.

The FortiGate SNMP implementation is read-only. SNMP v1/v2c, and v3 compliant SNMP managers have read-only access to FortiGate system information through queries, and can receive trap messages from the FortiGate unit.

- Interface access on page 1015
- MIB files on page 1016
- SNMP agent on page 1017
- SNMP v1/v2c communities on page 1017
- SNMP v3 users on page 1019
- Important SNMP traps on page 1020
- SNMP traps and query for monitoring DHCP pool on page 1022

Interface access

Before a remote SNMP manager can connect to the FortiGate SNMP agent, you must configure one or more FortiGate interfaces to accept SNMP connections.

To configure a FortiGate interface to accept SNMP connections in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the interface.
3. In the *Administrative Access* options, enable *SNMP*.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure a FortiGate interface to accept SNMP connections in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        append allowaccess snmp
        set snmp-index <integer>
        config ipv6
            append ip6-allowaccess snmp
        end
    next
end
```

MIB files

The FortiGate SNMP agent supports Fortinet proprietary MIBs, as well as the parts of RFC 2665 and RFC 1213 that apply to FortiGate unit configuration.

Your SNMP manager may already include standard and private MIBs in a compiled database that is ready to use. You must add the Fortinet proprietary MIBs to this database to have access to Fortinet specific information.

MIB file or RFC	Description
FORTINET-CORE-MIB.mib	The Fortinet core MIB includes all system configuration and trap information that is common to all Fortinet products. Your SNMP manager requires this information to monitor Fortinet device settings and receive traps from the FortiGate SNMP agent.
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB.mib	The FortiGate MIB includes all system configuration information and trap information that is specific to FortiGate units. Your SNMP manager requires this information to monitor FortiGate settings and receive traps from the FortiGate SNMP agent.
RFC-1213 (MIB II)	The FortiGate SNMP agent supports MIB II groups with the following exceptions: • No support for the EGP group from MIB II (RFC 1213, section 3.11 and 6.10). • Protocol statistics returned for MIB II groups (IP/ICMP/TCP/UDP/etc.) do not accurately capture all Fortinet traffic activity. More accurate information can be obtained from the information reported by the Fortinet MIB.
RFC-2665 (Ethernet-like MIB)	The FortiGate SNMP agent supports Ethernet-like MIB information. FortiGate SNMP does not support for the dot3Tests and dot3Errors groups.

To download the MIB files:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Click *Download FortiGate MIB File* and save the file to the management computer.
3. Click *Download Fortinet Core MIB File* and save the file to the management computer.

SNMP agent

The SNMP agent sends SNMP traps originating on the FortiGate to an external monitoring SNMP manager defined in a SNMP community. The SNMP manager can monitor the FortiGate system to determine if it is operating properly, or if any critical events occurring.

The description, location, and contact information for this FortiGate system will be part of the information that the SNMP manager receives. This information is useful if the SNMP manager is monitoring many devices, and enables faster responses when the FortiGate system requires attention.

To configure the SNMP agent in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Enable *SNMP Agent*.
3. Enter a description of the agent.
4. Enter the location of the FortiGate unit.
5. Enter a contact or administrator for the SNMP Agent or FortiGate unit.
6. Click *Apply*.

To configure the SNMP agent in the CLI:

```
config system snmp sysinfo
    set status enable
    set description <string>
    set contact-info <string>
    set location <string>
end
```

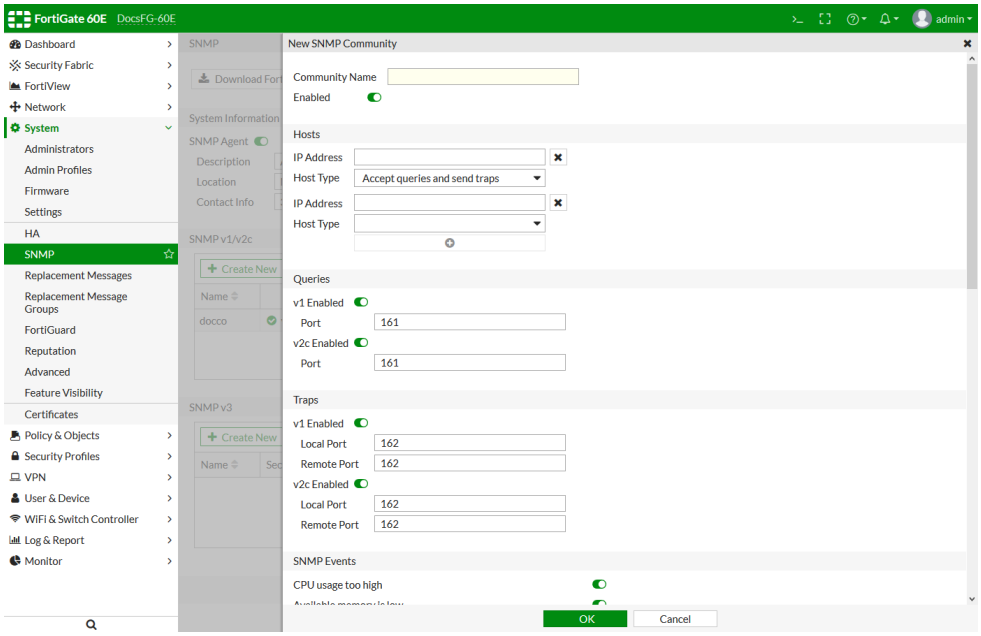
SNMP v1/v2c communities

An SNMP community is a grouping of equipment for network administration purposes. A single device can belong to multiple communities.

You must add an SNMP community to the FortiGate so that the SNMP manager can receive traps and system information. Up to three communities can be added.

To create a n SNMP v1/v2c community in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. In the *SNMP v1/v2c* table, click *Create New*.



3. Enter a *Community Name* and enable the community.
4. In the *Hosts* section, enter the *IP Address* and select the *Host Type* for each SNMP manager.
5. In the *Queries* section, enable or disable v1 and v2c queries, then enter the port numbers that the SNMP managers in this community use for them.
6. In the *Traps* section, enable or disable v1 and v2c traps, then enter the local and remote port numbers that the SNMP managers in this community use for them.
7. In the *SNMP Events* section, enable or disable the events that activate traps in this community.
8. Click *OK*.

To create a n SNMP v1/v2c community in the CLI:

```
config system snmp community
    edit 2
        set name <string>
        set status {enable | disable}
        config hosts
            edit <host_id>
                set ip <ip/mask>
                set source-ip <class_ip>
                set ha-direct {enable | disable}
                set host-type {any | query | trap}
            next
        end
        set query-v1-port <port_number>
        set query-v1-status {enable | disable}
        set query-v2c-port <port_number>
        set query-v2c-status {enable | disable}
        set trap-v1-lport <port_number>
        set trap-v1-rport <port_number>
```

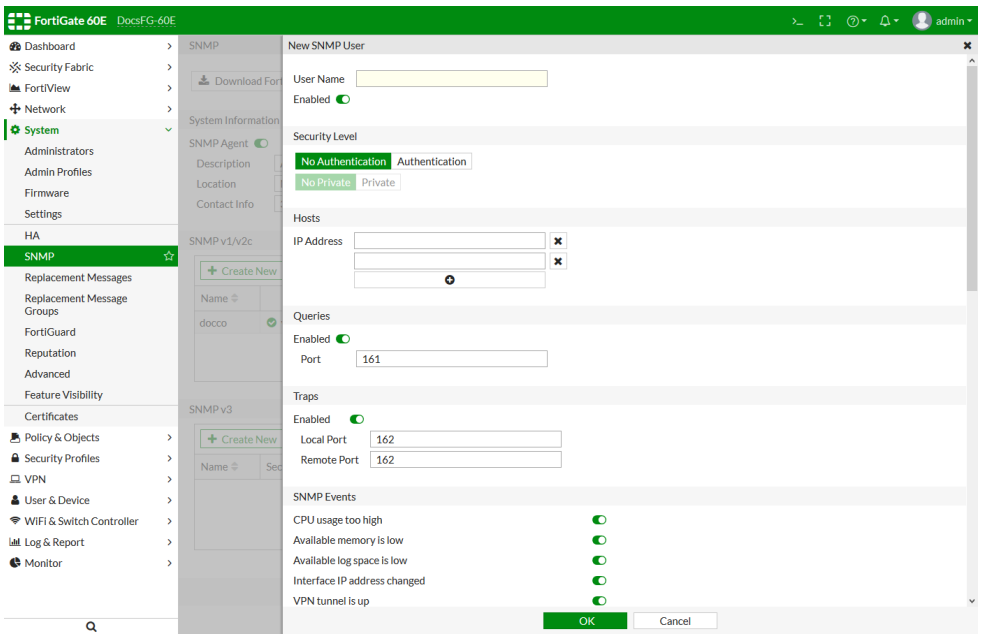
```
        set trap-v1-status {enable | disable}
        set trap-v2c-lport <port_number>
        set trap-v2c-rport <port_number>
        set trap-v2c-status {enable | disable}
        set events <events>
    next
end
```

SNMP v3 users

Authentication is used to ensure the identity of users. Privacy allows for encryption of SNMP v3 messages to ensure confidentiality of data. These protocols provide a higher level of security than is available in SNMP v1 and v2c, which use community strings for security. Both authentication and privacy are optional.

To create a n SNMP v3 user in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. In the *SNMP v3* table, click *Create New*.



3. Enter a *User Name* and enable the user.
4. In the *Security Level* section, configure the security level:
   - *No Authentication*: No authentication or encryption.
   - *Authentication*: Select the authentication algorithm and password.
   - *Authentication and Private*: Select both the authentication and encryption algorithms and password.
5. In the *Hosts* section, enter the *IP Address* for each SNMP manager.
6. In the *Queries* section, enable or disable queries, then enter the port number that the SNMP managers use for them.
7. In the *Traps* section, enable or disable traps, then enter the local and remote port numbers that the SNMP managers use for them.
8. In the *SNMP Events* section, enable or disable the events that activate traps.
9. Click *OK*.

To create an SNMP v3 user in the CLI:

```
config system snmp user
    edit <user>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set trap-status {enable | disable}
        set trap-lport <port_number>
        set trap-rport <port_number>
        set queries {enable | disable}
        set query-port <port_number>
        set notify-hosts <class_ip> ... <class_ip>
        set source-ip <class_ip>
        set ha-direct {enable | disable}
        set events <events>
        set security-level {no-auth-no-priv | auth-no-priv | auth-priv}
        set auth-proto {md5 | sha | sha224 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
        set auth-pwd <password>
        set priv-proto {aes | des | aes256 | aes256cisco}
        set priv-pwd <password>
    next
end
```

Important SNMP traps

Link Down and Link Up traps

This trap is sent when a FortiGate port either goes down or is brought up.

For example, the following traps are generated when the state of port34 is set to down using `set status down`, and then brought up using `set status up`:

```
NET-SNMP version 5.7.3 2019-01-31 14:11:48 10.1.100.1(via UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->
[10.1.100.11]:162) TRAP, SNMP v1, community REGR-SYS SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTraps Link Down Trap
(0) Uptime: 0:14:44.95 IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42 IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER:
down(2) IF-MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: down(2) FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 =
STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE

2019-01-31 14:11:48 <UNKNOWN> [UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162]: DISMAN-EVENT-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (88495) 0:14:44.95 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: IF-
MIB::linkDown IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42 IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER: down(2)
IF-MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: down(2) FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING:
FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE 2019-01-31 14:12:01
10.1.100.1(via UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162) TRAP, SNMP v1, community REGR-SYS
SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTraps Link Up Trap (0) Uptime: 0:14:57.98 IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42
IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) IF-MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) FORTINET-
CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING:
FortiGate-140D-POE

2019-01-31 14:12:01 <UNKNOWN> [UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162]: DISMAN-EVENT-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (89798) 0:14:57.98 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: IF-
MIB::linkUp IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42 IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) IF-
MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING:
FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE
```

fgFmTrapIfChange trap

This trap is sent when any changes are detected on the interface. The change can be very simple, such as giving an IPV4 address.

For example, the user has given the IP address of 1.2.3.4/24 to port 1 and the EMS Manager has detected the following trap:

```
DISMAN-EXPRESSION-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (7975058) 22:09:10.58 SNMPv2-
MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgFmTrapIfChange FORTINET-CORE-
MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 IF-MIB::ifName.45 = STRING: port1 FORTINET-
FORTIGATE-MIB::fgManIfIp.0 = IpAddress: 1.2.3.4 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgManIfMask.0 =
IpAddress: 255.255.255.0 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgManIfIp6.0 = STRING: 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
```

entConfigChange trap

The change to the interface in the previous example has also triggered the *ConfChange Trap* which is sent along with the *fgFmTrapIfChange* trap:

```
2018-11-15 09:30:23 FGT_A [UDP: [172.16.200.1]:162->[172.16.200.55]:162]: DISMAN-EXPRESSION-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (8035097) 22:19:10.97 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID:
ENTITY-MIB::entConfigChange
```

fgTrapDeviceNew trap

This trap is triggered when a new device, like a FortiSwitch, is connected to the FortiGate.

For example, the following scenario has given the device a new trap for adding FortiAP on a PoE interface a FortiGate 140D-POE. The trap has important information about the device name, device MAC address, and when it was last seen.

```
2018-11-15 11:17:43 UDP/IPv6: [2000:172:16:200::1]:162 [UDP/IPv6: [2000:172:16:200::1]:162]:
DISMAN-EXPRESSION-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (520817) 1:26:48.17 SNMPv2-
MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgTrapDeviceNew FORTINET-CORE-
MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FGT_A IF-
MIB::ifIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgVdEntIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0 FORTINET-
FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceCreated.0 = Gauge32: 5 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceLastSeen.0 =
Gauge32: 5 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceMacAddress.0 = STRING: 90:6c:ac:f9:97:a0

2018-11-15 11:17:43 FGT_A [UDP: [172.16.200.1]:162->[172.16.200.55]:162]: DISMAN-EXPRESSION-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (520817) 1:26:48.17 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID:
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgTrapDeviceNew FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING:
FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FGT_A IF-MIB::ifIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgVdEntIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-
MIB::fgDeviceCreated.0 = Gauge32: 5 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceLastSeen.0 = Gauge32: 5
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceMacAddress.0 = STRING: 90:6c:ac:f9:97:a0
```

fgTrapAvOversize trap

The `fgTrapAvOversize` trap is generated when the antivirus scanner detects an oversized file:

```
019-01-31 13:22:04 10.1.100.1(via UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162) TRAP, SNMP v1,
community REGR-SYS FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgt140P Enterprise Specific Trap (602) Uptime: 1
day, 3:41:10.31 FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-
MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE 2019-01-31 13:22:29 <UNKNOWN> [UDP:
```

```
[10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162]: DISMAN-EVENT-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks:
(9967031) 1 day, 3:41:10.31 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIGATE-
MIB::fgTrapAvOversize FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-
MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE
```

SNMP traps and query for monitoring DHCP pool

The SNMP DHCP event contains three traps and one query.

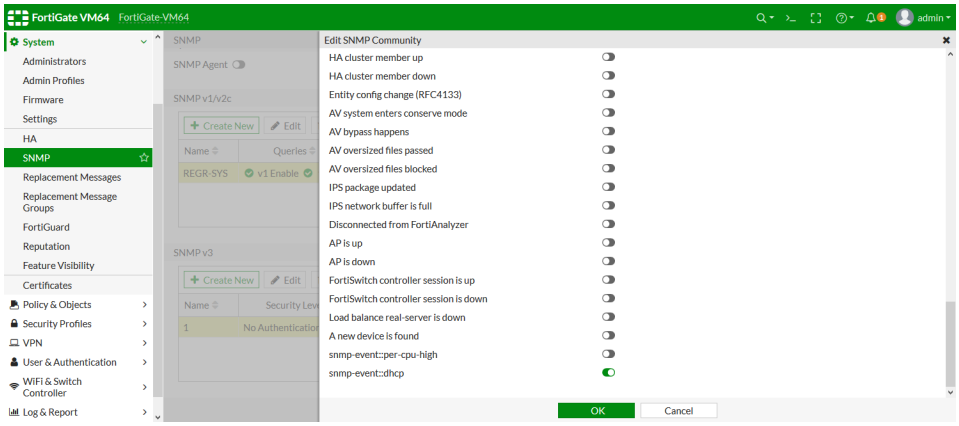
Traps are sent when:

- DHCP server IP pool usage reaches 90%
- DHCP server detect an IP address that is already in use
- DHCP client receives DHCP NAK

SNMP queries are accepted for DHCP lease usage information (OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.23). The query result is based on the leased out percentage.

To enable the SNMP DHCP event in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Click *Create New* in either the *SNMP v1/v2c* table or *SNMP v3* table, or edit an existing community or user.
3. Configure the settings as required.
4. In the *SNMP Events* list, enable *snmp-event::dhcp*.



5. Click *OK*.

To enable the SNMP DHCP event in the CLI:

```
config system snmp community
    edit 1
        set name "REGR-SYS"
        config hosts
            edit 1
                set ip 10.1.100.11 255.255.255.255
            next
            edit 2
                set ip 172.16.200.55 255.255.255.255
            next
        end
```

```
        set events dhcp
    next
end

config system snmp user
    edit "1"
        set notify-hosts 172.10.1.0 172.20.1.0
        set events dhcp
        set security-level auth-priv
        set auth-proto sha384
        set auth-pwd ********************
        set priv-proto aes256
        set priv-pwd ********************
    next
end
```

Replacement messages

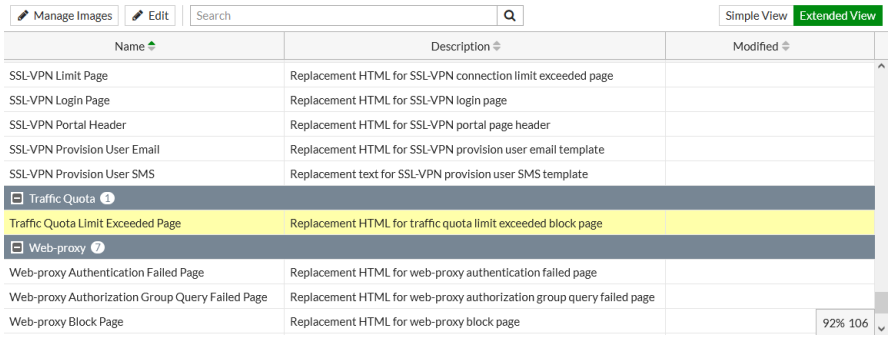
FortiOS has replacement messages that are HTML and text files. These messages can be customized to meet user requirements. The content can be modified, and images can be added.

Modifying replacement messages

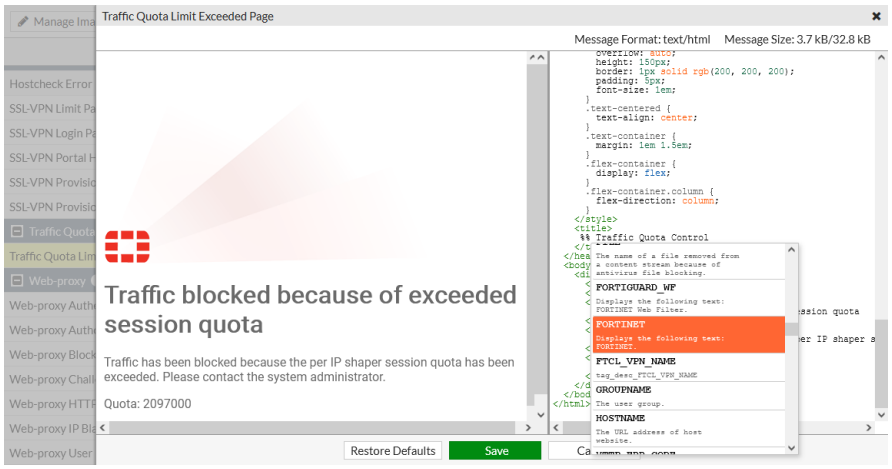
The *Replacement Messages* page has two views. *Simple View* (the default view) shows the most commonly used replacement messages. *Extended View* shows the entire list and all replacement message categories.

To modify a replacement message in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. Select a replacement message and click *Edit*.
   If the message you want to edit is not visible, click *Extended View* in the upper right-hand corner of the top menu.



3. Edit the HTML code.
   The message is visible on the left alongside the HTML code on the right. The message view updates in real-time as you edit the content.
   When adding a variable to the code, right-click and select *Insert Tag* or type %% to view a list of the available variables, or start typing the variable name then press *Enter* or *TAB* to auto-complete the variable name.



4. Click *Save*.

Click *Restore Defaults* to return to the original message and code base.

To modify a replacement message in the CLI:

For example, to modify the *Traffic Quota Limit Exceeded Page* message:

```
config system replacemsg traffic-quota "per-ip-shaper-block"
    set buffer "<html>
  <head>
    <title>
      Traffic Quota Control
    </title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <font size=2>
      <table width=\"100%\">
        <tr>
          <td bgcolor=#3300cc align=\"center\" colspan=2>
            <font color=#ffffff>
              <b>
                Traffic blocked because exceeded session quota
              </b>
            </font>
          </td>
        </tr>
      </table>
      <br>
      <br>
      Traffic blocked because it exceeded the per IP shaper session quota. Please contact
the system administrator.
      <br>
      %%QUOTA_INFO%%
      <br>
      <br>
      <hr>
```

```
    </font>
  </body>
</html>"
    set header http
    set format html
end
```

Replacement message images

Images can be added to replacement messages on:

- Disclaimer pages
- Login pages
- Declined disclaimer pages
- Login failed pages
- Login challenge pages
- Keepalive pages

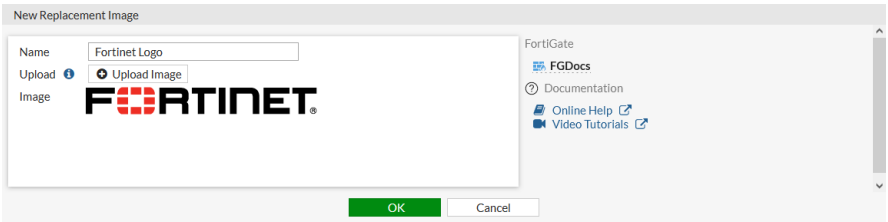


The supported image formats are GIF, JPEG, TIFF, and PNG. The maximum file size supported is 24 KB.

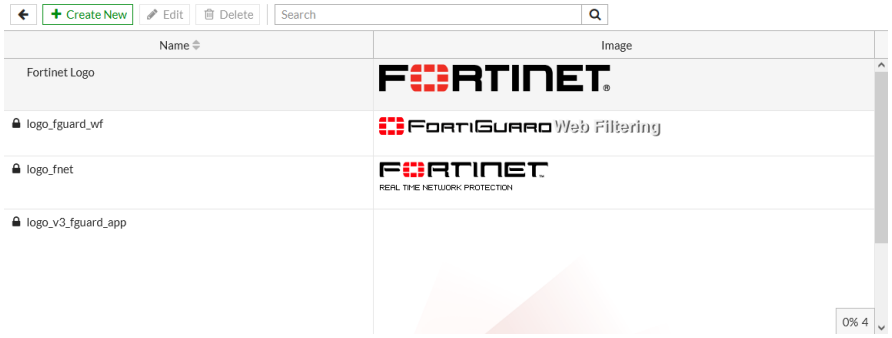
Adding images to replacement messages

To add images to replacement messages in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. In the top menu, click *Manage Images*.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name for the image.
5. Click *Upload Image* and locate the file.



6. Click *OK*.
   The file is now visible in the list.



7. Return to the replacement message list and edit a message.
8. Right-click in the message code where you want to add the image, and select *Insert Image*.
9. Select the image from the list then press *Enter*, or double-click on the image to add it to the message.
10. Click *Save*.

To add images to replacement messages in the CLI:

1. Add the image to the FortiGate:

```
config system replacemsg-image
    edit <image_name>
        set image-type {gif | jpg | tiff | png}
        set image-base64 <string>
    next
end
```

2. Edit the replacement message, and include `%%IMAGE:<image name>%%` in the code to add the image.

Replacement message groups

Replacement message groups allow users to customize replacement messages for individual policies and profiles.

There are two types of replacement message groups:

Type	Usage	Customizable categories
utm	Used with UTM settings in firewall policies.	• admin • alertmail • custom-message • fortiguard-wf • ftp • http • icap • mail • nac-quar • spam • sslvpn • traffic-quota

Type	Usage	Customizable categories
		• utm • webproxy
auth	Used with authentication pages in firewall policies.	• auth • webproxy

The messages added to a group do not need to be customized. The message body content, header type, and format will use the default values if not customized.

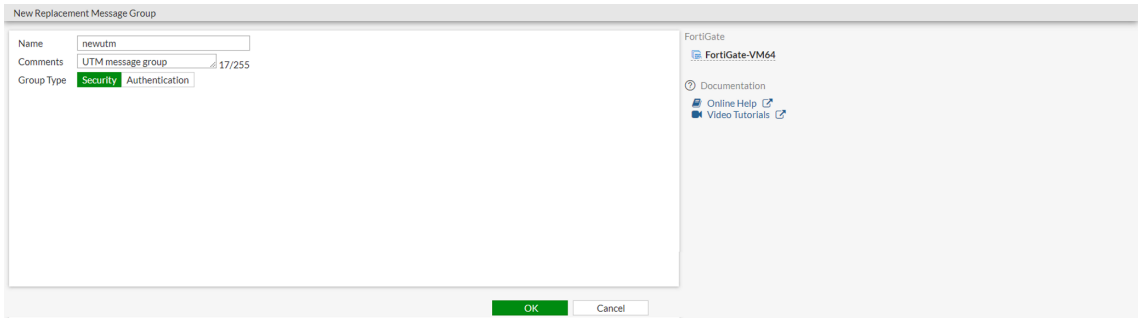
To make replacement message groups visible in the GUI:

```
config system settings
    set gui-replacement-message-groups enable
end
```

In the following example, two replacement message groups are created. The UTM message group includes custom mail-related messages and is assigned to an email filter profile. The authentication message group has a custom authentication success message that is applied to a proxy-based firewall policy that has an assigned email filter profile.

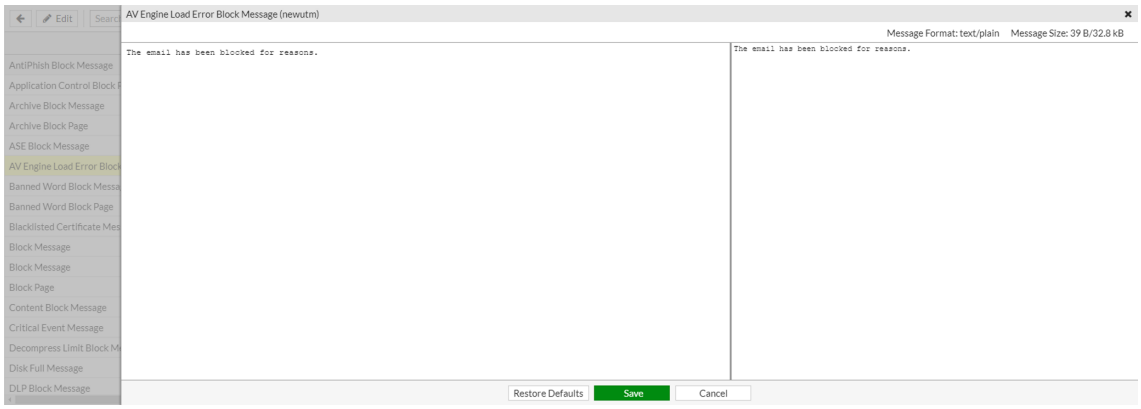
To create replacement message groups in the GUI:

1. Create the *Security* replacement message group:
   a. Go to *System* > *Replacement Message Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Name*, enter *newutm*.
   d. In the *Comments* field, enter *UTM message group*.
   e. For *Group Type*, select *Security*.



   f. Click *OK*.
2. Customize the replacement messages in the *newutm* group:
   a. Go to *System* > *Replacement Message Groups*.
   b. Edit the *newutm* group.
   c. Select the *AV Engine Load Error Email Block Message*.

d. Edit the message and click *Save*.



e. Select the *Partial Email Block Message*.

f. Edit the message and click *Save*.

3. Create the *Authentication* replacement message group:

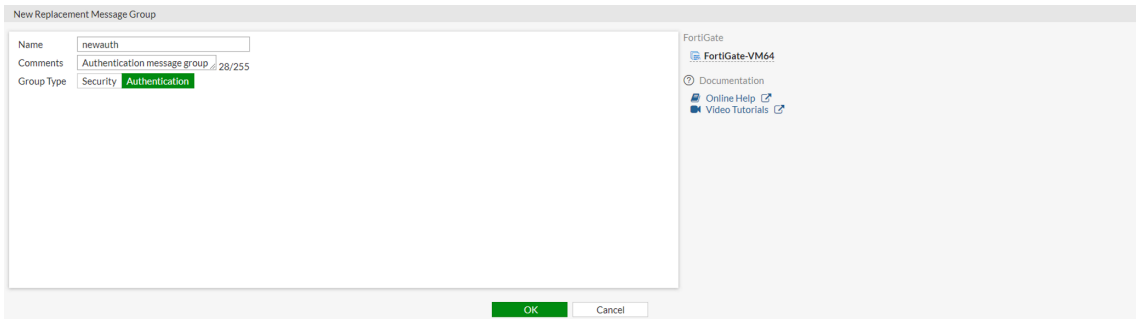
a. Go to *System* > *Replacement Message Groups*.

b. Click *Create New*.

c. For *Name*, enter *newauth*.

d. In the *Comments* field, enter *Authentication message group*.

e. For *Group Type*, select *Authentication*.



f. Click *OK*.

4. Apply the *newutm* replacement message group to an email filter profile in the CLI:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "newmsgs"
        set replacemsg-group "newutm"
    next
end
```

5. Apply the *newauth* replacement message group and the email filter profile to a firewall policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        ...
        set replacemsg-override-group "newauth"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set emailfilter-profile "newmsgs"
        ...
    next
end
```

To create replacement message groups in the CLI:

1. Create the replacement message groups:

```
config system replacemsg-group
    edit "newutm"
        set group-type utm
        config mail
            edit "partial"
                set buffer "Fragmented emails are blocked, sorry."
            next
            edit "email-av-fail"
                set buffer "The email has been blocked for reasons."
            next
        end
    next
    edit "newauth"
        set group-type auth
        config auth
            edit "auth-success-msg"
                set buffer "Welcome to the firewall. Your authentication has been
accepted, please reconnect."
                set header none
                set format text
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Apply the message group to the email filter:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "newmsgs"
        set replacemsg-group "newutm"
    next
end
```

3. Apply the email filter and message group to the policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        ...
        set replacemsg-override-group "newauth"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set emailfilter-profile "newmsgs"
        ...
    next
end
```

FortiGuard

FortiGuard services comprise of signature packages and querying services that provide content, web and device security. It is delivered via various types of FortiGuard servers that are part of the FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN).

FortiGuard service subscriptions can be purchased and registered to your FortiGate unit. The FortiGate must be connected to the Internet in order to automatically connect to the FDN to validate the license and download FDN updates or perform real-time queries.

To view FDN support contract information, go to *System* > *FortiGuard*. The *License Information* table shows the status of your FortiGate's entitlements and breaks down the status of each service.

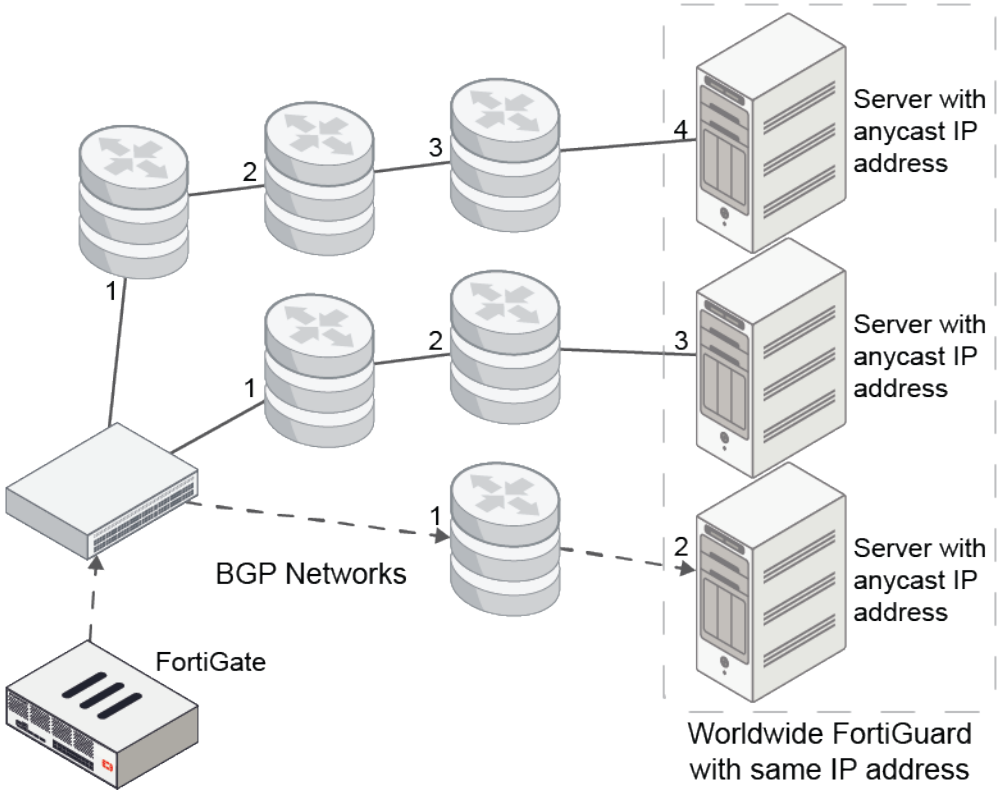
The following topics contain more information:

- Anycast on page 1030
- Connection and OCSP stapling on page 1031
- IPv6 FortiGuard connections on page 1033
- Configuring FortiGuard updates on page 1033
- Configuring a proxy server for FortiGuard updates on page 1034
- Manual updates on page 1035
- Automatic updates on page 1035
- Sending malware statistics to FortiGuard on page 1037
- Update server location on page 1038
- Filtering on page 1038
- Override FortiGuard servers on page 1040
- Online security tools on page 1040
- Anycast and unicast services on page 1041
- Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server on page 1041
- Cloud service communication statistics on page 1042
- IoT detection service on page 1043
- FortiAP query to FortiGuard IoT service to determine device details on page 1046
- FDS-only ISDB package in firmware images on page 1046
- License expiration on page 1047

Anycast

FortiGuard servers use Anycast addresses in order to optimize and distribute traffic across many servers. Anycast is the default access mode for FortiGates when connecting to FortiGuard which by default utilizes HTTPS and port 443.

Each type of FortiGuard servers and services have a FortiGuard domain name that resolves to a single Anycast IP address. Regardless of where the FortiGate is located, the resolution is still the same. Fortinet maintains the network in the background to ensure routes to the FortiGuard servers are optimized. In the below diagram, several servers have the same Anycast IP, but the FortiGate will connect to the one with the least hops.



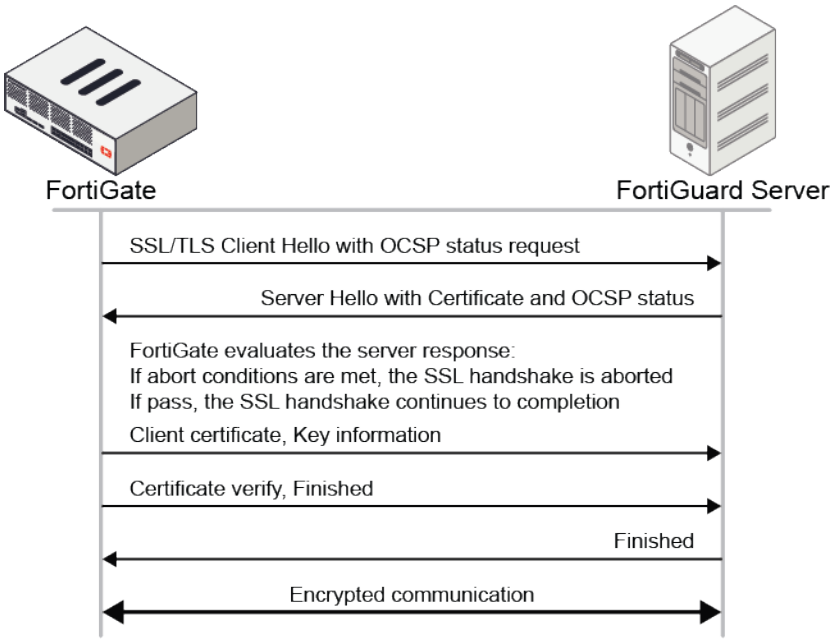
Connection and OCSP stapling

When the FortiGate connects to a FortiGuard server, it is important for it to validate the server is indeed a real FortiGuard server. Hence, FortiGuard servers provide the following security:

- The domain name of each FortiGuard service is the common name in that service's certificate, which is signed by a third-party intermediate CA.
- The FortiGuard server also applies Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) stapling check, in which it attaches a time-stamped OCSP status of the server certificate from the OCSP server to the TLS response.

This ensures FortiGate can validate the FortiGuard server certificate efficiently during the TLS handshake.

The following illustrates the connection process:



FortiGate will only complete the TLS handshake with an anycast server when abort conditions are not met. Abort conditions include:

- The CN in the server's certificate does not match the domain name resolved from the DNS.
- The OCSP status is revoked or unknown.
- The issuer-CA is revoked by the root-CA.

To configure the anycast FortiGuard access mode:

```
config system fortiguard
    set fortiguard-anycast enable
end
```

If FortiGuard is not reachable via Anycast, choose between the following options to work around this issue:

1. Switch to other Anycast servers:

   ```
   config system fortiguard
       set fortiguard-anycast enable
       set fortiguard-anycast-source aws
   end
   ```

2. Disable Anycast and use HTTPS:

   ```
   config system fortiguard
       set fortiguard-anycast disable
       set protocol https
       set port 8888
   end
   ```

3. Disable Anycast and use UDP:

   ```
   config system fortiguard
       set fortiguard-anycast disable
       set protocol udp
       set port 53
   end
   ```

IPv6 FortiGuard connections

The Fortinet DNS can resolve FortiGuard related servers to both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. FortiOS daemons (update, forticldd, url) connect using either IPv4 or IPv6 addresses. The first available connection will be used for updates or the rating service.

To configure an interface and route for IPv6:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        config ipv6
            set ip6-address 2000:172:16:200::1/64
        end
    next
end
```

```
config router static6
    edit 1
        set gateway 2000:172:16:200::254
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

To configure push updates:

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status enable
    set override enable
    set address "2620:101:9005:3860::94"
end
```

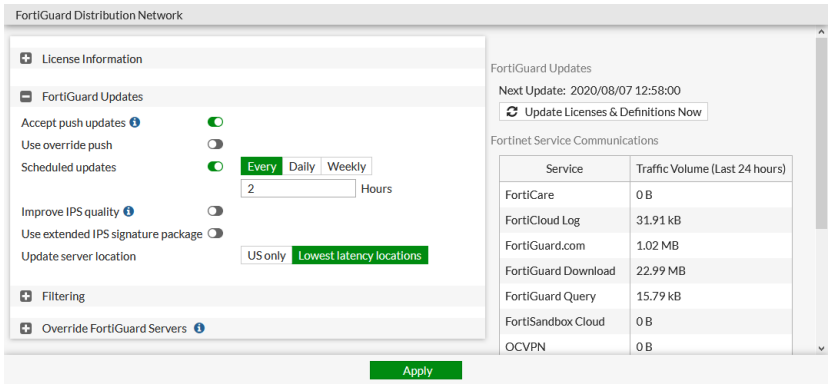
Configuring FortiGuard updates

To configure FortiGuard updates:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *FortiGuard Updates* section.
3. Configure the antivirus and IPS options for connecting and downloading definition files:

Accept push updates	Enable to allow updates to be sent automatically to your FortiGate. New definitions will be added as soon as they are released by FortiGuard. See Push updates on page 1036.
Use override push	Only available if *Accept push updates* is enabled. See Override push on page 1037.
Scheduled Updates	Enable to schedule updates to be sent to the FortiGate at the specified time. See Scheduled updates on page 1035.

Improve IPS quality	Enable to send information to the FortiGuard servers when an attack occurs. This can help keep the FortiGuard database current as attacks evolve, and improve IPS signatures.
Use extended IPS signature package	Enable to use the extended IPS database, that includes protection from legacy attacks, along with the regular IPS database that protects against the latest common and in-the-wild attacks.
Update server location	The FortiGuard update server location. See Update server location on page 1038 for details.



4. Click *Apply*.

Configuring a proxy server for FortiGuard updates

You can configure FortiOS to use a proxy server to connect to the FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN).

Proxy tunneling is supported only for registration, AV, and IPS updates. For FortiGate virtual machines, proxy tunneling can also be used for license validation. For web filtering or spam filtering, UDP protocol is used on ports 53 or 8888. UDP protocol traffic cannot be directed over a proxy server, even if you are using versions of FortiOS that support web filtering over port 443.

Consider the following before configuring FortiOS to use a proxy server to connect to FDN:

- FortiOS connects to the proxy server using the HTTP CONNECT method. For information about the HTTP CONNECT method, see RFC 2616.
- The proxy server must not inspect the HTTPS traffic used for FortiOS communication.
- FortiOS sends to the proxy server an HTTP CONNECT request that specifies the IP address and port required for the FDN connection. Authentication information is optional for the request.
- FortiOS must be configured to use DNS servers that resolve the addresses of FDN servers to support AV and IPS updates.
- The proxy server establishes the connection to FDN and passes information between FortiOS and FDN.

Use the following syntax to configure a proxy server in the CLI:

```
config system autoupdate tunneling
    set address <proxy_address>
    set port <proxy_port>
```

```
    set username <username>
    set password <password>
    set status {enable | disable}
end
```

In the following example, a proxy server with IP address 10.1.1.1 is configured to listen on port TCP/3128 without authentication.

To configure a proxy server:

```
config system autoupdate tunneling
    set address 10.1.1.1
    set port 3128
    set status enable
end
```

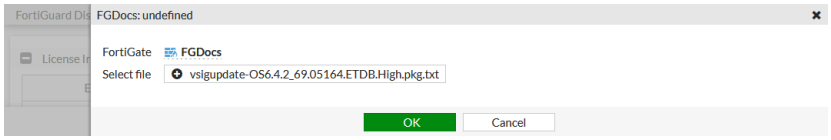
In a closed network without direct internet connection for web filtering or spam filtering, you can use FortiManager as a FortiGuard server. FortiManager supports proxy for both updates and rating, and FortiOS retrieves its updates and ratings through FortiManager. See Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server on page 1041.

Manual updates

When needed, FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN) updates can be manually uploaded.

To manually update the signature definitions files:

1. Log in to the Fortinet Support website.
2. Go to *Download* > *FortiGuard Service Updates*.
3. Select your *OS Version* from the dropdown list.
4. Locate your device in the table, and download the signature definitions files.
5. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
6. In the *License Information* table, locate and expand the definitions that you are updating, and click *Upgrade Database* in the rightmost column.
7. In the pane that opens, click *Upload*, locate the downloaded definitions file on your computer, then click *Open*. The download may take a few minutes to complete.



8. Click *OK*.

Automatic updates

The FortiGate can be configured to request updates from FDN on a schedule, or via push notification.

Scheduled updates

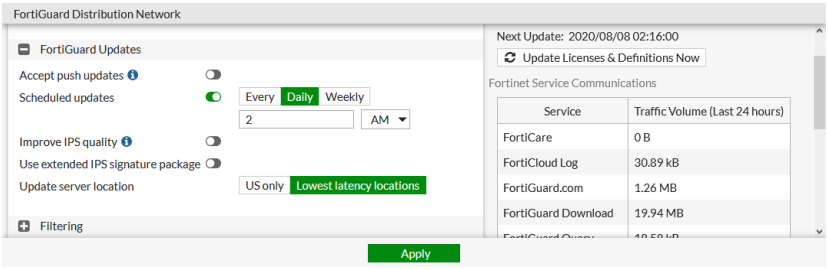
Scheduling updates ensures that the virus and IPS definitions are downloaded to your FortiGate on a regular basis.

Updating definitions can cause a brief disruption in traffic that is currently being scanned while the FortiGate unit applies the new signature database. Updates should be scheduled during off-peak hours when network usage is at a minimum to ensure that network activity will not be affected by downloading the definitions files.

A schedule of once a week means any urgent updates will not be pushed until the scheduled time. If an urgent update is required, click the *Update Licenses & Definitions Now* button to manually update the definitions.

To configure scheduled updates in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. In the *FortiGuard Updates* section, enable *Scheduled Updates*.
3. Configure the update schedule:



4. Click *Apply*.

To configure scheduled updates in the CLI:

```
config system autoupdate schedule
    set status enable
    set frequency {every | daily | weekly}
    set time <hh:mm>
    set day <day_of_week>
end
```

Push updates

Push updates enable you to get immediate updates when new viruses or intrusions are discovered and new signatures are created. This ensures that the latest signature are sent to the FortiGate as soon as possible.

When a push notification occurs, the FortiGuard server sends a notice to the FortiGate that a new signature definition file available. The FortiGate then initiates a download of the definition file. For maximum security, both scheduled and push updates should be enabled.

To enable push updates - GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. In the *FortiGuard Updates* section, enable *Accept push updates*.
3. Click *Apply*.

To enable push updates in the CLI:

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status enable
end
```

Override push

If the FortiGate is behind a NAT device (or another FortiGate), or if your organization provides updates using their own FortiGuard server, an override server must be used to ensure that the FortiGate receives push update notifications. The FDS will connect to the NAT device when attempting to reach the FortiGate, and the NAT device must be configured to forward FDS traffic to the FortiGate on UDP port 9443.

Push updates must be enabled to configure a push update override.

For example, if the NAT device is another FortiGate:

1. On the FortiGate NAT device, add a port forwarding virtual IP address in *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*. See for details.
2. On the FortiGate NAT device, add a security policy that connects to the internet and includes the port forwarding VIP.
3. On the internal FortiGate device, configure *Push update override*.

To configure push update override in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. In the *FortiGuard Updates* section, enable *Accept push updates*.
3. Enable *Use override push*, and enter the IP address and port number configured on the NAT device.
4. Click *Apply*.

To configure push update override in the CLI:

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status enable
    set override
    set address <vip_address>
    set port <port_number>
end
```

Sending malware statistics to FortiGuard

FortiGate devices periodically send encrypted antivirus, IPS, botnet IP list, and application control statistics to FortiGuard. Included with these data is the IP address and serial number of the FortiGate, and the country that it is in. This information is never shared with external parties, Fortinet Privacy Policy.

The malware statistics are used to improve various aspects of FortiGate malware protection. For example, antivirus data allow FortiGuard to determine what viruses are currently active. Signatures for those viruses are kept in the Active AV Signature Database that is used by multiple Fortinet products.Inactive virus signatures are moved to the Extended AV Signature Database (see Configuring FortiGuard updates on page 1033). When events for inactive viruses start appearing in the malware data, the signatures are moved back into the AV Signature Database.

The FortiGate and FortiGuard servers go through a 2-way SSL/TLS 1.2 authentication before any data is transmitted. The certificates used in this process must be trusted by each other and signed by the Fortinet CA server.

The FortiGate only accepts data from authorized FortiGuard severs. Fortinet products use DNS to find FortiGuard servers and periodically update their FortiGate server list. All other servers are provided by a list that is updated through the encrypted channel.

Malware statistics are accumulated and sent every 60 minutes by default.

To configure sharing this information, use the following CLI command:

```
config system global
    set fds-statistics {enable | disable}
    set fds-statistics-period <minutes>
end
```



The submission of malware data is in accordance with the Fortinet Privacy Policy.

There is no sensitive or personal information included in these submissions. Only malware statistics are sent.

Fortinet uses the malware statistics collected in this manner to improve the performance of the FortiGate services and to display statistics on the Fortinet Support website for customers registered FortiGate devices.

Fortinet may also publish or share statistics or results derived from this malware data with various audiences. The malware statistics shared in this way do not include any customer data.

Update server location

The location of the FortiGuard update server that the FortiGate connects to can be set to either only servers in the USA only, or to the servers with the lowest latency.

On hardware FortiGate devices, the default is *Lowest latency locations*. On VM devices, the default is *US only*.

To configure the update server location in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. In the *FortiGuard Updates* section, set *Update server location* to *US only* or *Lowest latency locations*.
3. Click *Apply*.

To configure the update server location in the CLI:

```
config system fortiguard
    set update-server-location {usa | any}
end
```

Filtering

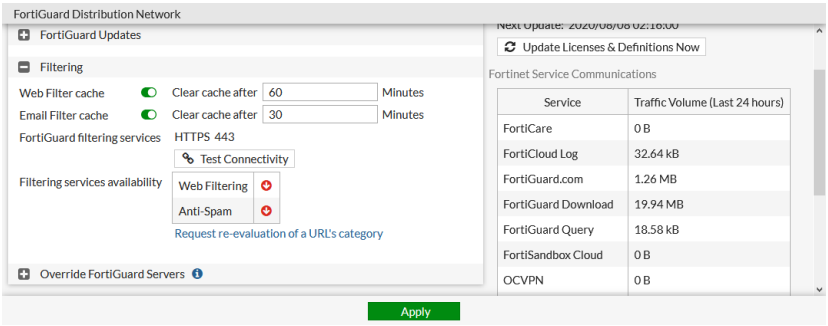
Web filtering is used to block access to harmful, inappropriate, and dangerous web sites (see FortiGuard filter on page 1324).

Email filtering is used to detect and block spam messages (see FortiGuard-based filters on page 1419).

To configure filtering in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *Filtering* section.
3. Configure the settings as needed:

Web Filter Cache	Enable/disable web filter cache, and set the amount of time that the FortiGate will store a blocked IP address or URL locally. After the time expires, the FortiGate contacts the FDN to verify the address.
Email Filter Cache	Enable/disable email filter cache, and set the amount of time that the FortiGate will store an email address locally.
FortiGuard filtering services	The protocol and port used to contact the FortiGuard servers. These options can be changed in the CLI.
Filtering Service Availability	The status of the filtering service. Click *Test Connectivity* if the filtering service is not available.
Request re-evaluation of a URL's category	Click to re-evaluate a URL category rating on the FortiGuard web filter service.



4. Click *Apply*.

To configure filtering in the CLI:

```
config system fortiguard
    set protocol {https | udp}
    set port {443 | 53 | 8888}
    set antispam-force-off {enable | disable}
    set antispam-cache {enable | disable}
    set antispam-cache-ttl <integer>
    set antispam-cache-mpercent <percent>
    set antispam-timeout <integer>
    set webfilter-force-off {enable | disable}
    set webfilter-cache {enable | disable}
    set webfilter-cache-ttl <integer>
    set webfilter-timeout <integer>
end
```

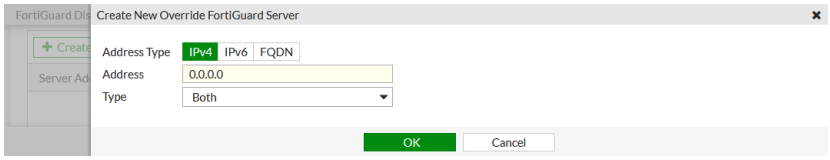
When anycast is enabled (by default) the protocol is HTTPS and the port is 443.

Override FortiGuard servers

By default, FortiOS will update signature packages and query rating servers using public FortiGuard servers. This list can be overridden by adding servers to the override server list. Communication with public FortiGuard servers can also be disabled.

To add an override FortiGuard server in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. In the *Override FortiGuard Servers* table, click *Create New*. The *Create New Override FortiGuard Server* pane opens.



3. Select the server address type: *IPv4*, *IPv6*, or *FQDN*.
4. Enter the server address of the selected type in the *Address* field.
5. Select the type of server: *AntiVirus & IPS Updates*, *Filtering*, or *Both*.
6. Click *OK*, then click *Apply*.

To add an override FortiGuard server in the CLI:

```
config system central-management
    set type fortiguard
    config server-list
        edit <integer>
            set server-type {update rating}
            set server-address <ip_address>
        next
    end
end
```

Online security tools

FortiGuard Labs provides a number of online security tools, including but not limited to:

- **URL lookup**
  Enter a website address to see if it has been rated and what category and classification it is filed as. If you find a site that has been wrongly categorized, use this page to request that the site be re-evaluated: https://www.fortiguard.com/webfilter
- **Threat Encyclopedia**
  Browse FortiGuard Labs extensive encyclopedia of threats. Search for viruses, botnet C&C, IPS, endpoint vulnerabilities, and mobile malware: https://www.fortiguard.com/encyclopedia
- **Application Control**
  Browse FortiGuard Labs extensive encyclopedia of applications: https://www.fortiguard.com/appcontrol

Anycast and unicast services

The following services are accessed by FortiGate:

Service	Non-Anycast FQDN addresses	Anycast Domain name
FortiGuard Object download	update.fortiguard.net	globalupdate.fortinet.net
Querying service (web-filtering, anti-spam ratings) over HTTPS	securewf.fortiguard.net	globalguardservice.fortinet.net
Querying service (web-filtering, anti-spam ratings) over UDP	service.fortiguard.net	Service only in Unicast
Device info Collection	Service only in Anycast	globaldevcollect.fortinet.net
Device info Query	Service only in Anycast	globaldevquery.fortinet.net
FortiGate Cloud logging	logctrl1.fortinet.com	globallogctrl.fortinet.net
FortiGate Cloud management	mgrctrl1.fortinet.com	globalmgrctrl.fortinet.net
FortiGate Cloud messaging	msgctrl1.fortinet.com	globalmsgctrl.fortinet.net
FortiGate Cloud sandbox	aptctrl1.fortinet.com	globalaptctrl.fortinet.net
Product API used by OCVPN registration and GUI icon download	productapi.fortinet.net	globalproductapi.fortinet.net
FortiCare registration	directregistration.fortinet.com	globalregistration.fortinet.net
Secure DNS	sdns.fortinet.net	globalsdns.fortinet.net
FortiCloud FortiClient	forticlient.fortinet.net	globalfctupdate.fortinet.net
FortiMobile Tokens	directregistration.fortinet.com	globalftm.fortinet.net
EMS cloud	forticlient-emsproxy.forticloud.com	Service only in Unicast
DDNS	ddns.fortinet.net	globalddns.fortinet.net
GeoIP	gip.fortinet.net	globalgip.fortinet.net
IP blocklist	ipbl.fortinet.net	N/A

Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server

FortiManager can provide a local FortiGuard server with port 443 access.

Anycast FortiGuard settings force the rating process to use port 443, even with an override server. Using a unique address in the same subnet as the FortiManager access IP address, the FortiManager can provide local FortiGuard updates and rating access with a dedicated IP address and port 443.

To use a FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server:

```
config system central-management
    set type fortimanager
```

```
    set fmg "172.18.37.148"
    config server-list
        edit 1
            set server-type update
            set server-address 172.18.37.150
        next
        edit 2
            set server-type rating
            set server-address 172.18.37.149
        next
    end
    set fmg-update-port 443
    set include-default-servers enable
end
```

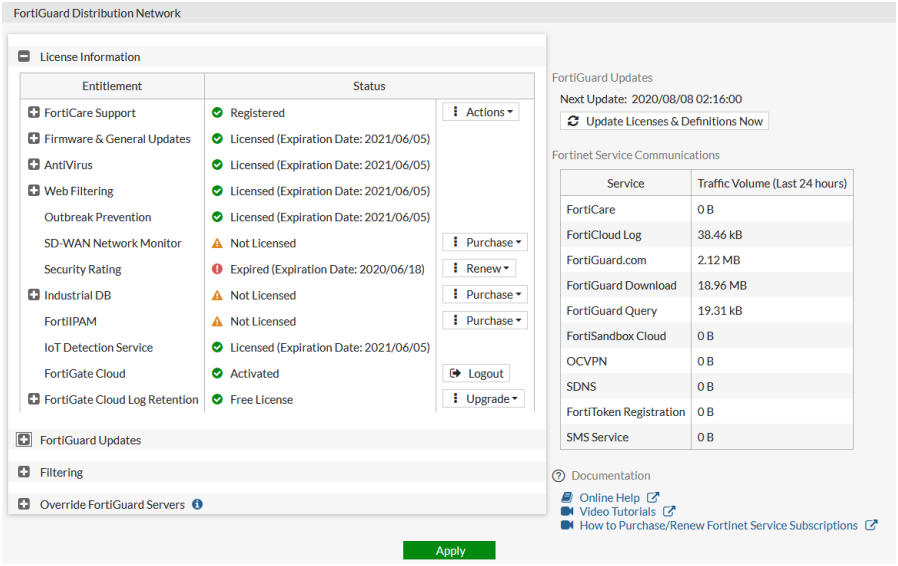
When `fmg-update-port` is set to `443`, the update process will use port 443 to connect to the override update server, which is the local FortiGuard server in the FortiManager. If this is not set, the update process will use port 8890, and the server address setting has to be the FortiManager access IP address. Override FortiGuard services come from the server list that is the local FortiGuard server in the FortiManager, and use the traditional, non-OCSP TLS handshake. If override servers in the FortiManager are not available, the default FortiGuard servers are connected, and the anycast OCSP TLS handshake is used.

Cloud service communication statistics

Fortinet service communications statistics are displayed on the *FortiGuard* page. The statistics correspond with the output from `diagnose sys service-communication`. The traffic volume values in the GUI are the sums of data from the last 24 hours.

To view Fortinet service communications statistics:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
   The *Fortinet Service Communications* statistics are displayed on the right side of the screen:



2. Enter the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys service-communication
FortiCare:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiGuard Download:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 336 1992 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 2328 6752 4450632 0 33696 0 5666528 0 49712 0 28840 0
29840 0 4185832 0 31488 0 76424 0 4226808 0 173880
The last 7 days(in bytes):  14454160 14985496 9532184 0 0 0 0
FortiGuard Query:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 372 1107 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 1479 4828 929 0 929 0 929 0 929 0 929 0 1858 0 929
0 1858 0 1858 0 929
The last 7 days(in bytes):  13739 15793 13624 0 0 0 0
FortiCloud Log:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 343 563 899 1014 405 0 0 0 570 405 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 4535 6004 2184 684 1906 1938 680 861 1933 685 1020 687
1772 693 978 1023 1574 1195 697 1035 1323 1020 678
The last 7 days(in bytes):  26560 26136 0 0 0 0 0
FortiSandbox Cloud:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiGuard.com:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 122162 123544 122162 244324 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 612192 532887 1939 1143 122162 44924 5039 0 125091 43096
1939 0 123305 43090 1939 0 123305 43096 1939 0 122162 42478 4930
The last 7 days(in bytes):  1658746 1347340 1421746 0 0 0 0
OCVPN Service:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  1044 9382 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  1044 9382 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  10426 0 0 0 0 0 0
SDNS Service:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiToken Registration:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
SMS Service:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

IoT detection service

Internet of Things (IoT) detection is a subscription service that allows FortiGate to detect unknown devices in FortiGuard that are not detected by the local Device Database (CIDB). When the service is activated, FortiGate can send device information to the FortiGuard collection server. When a new device is detected, FortiGate queries the results from the FortiGuard query for more information about the device.

This feature requires an IoT Detection Service license.

FortiGate device requirements:

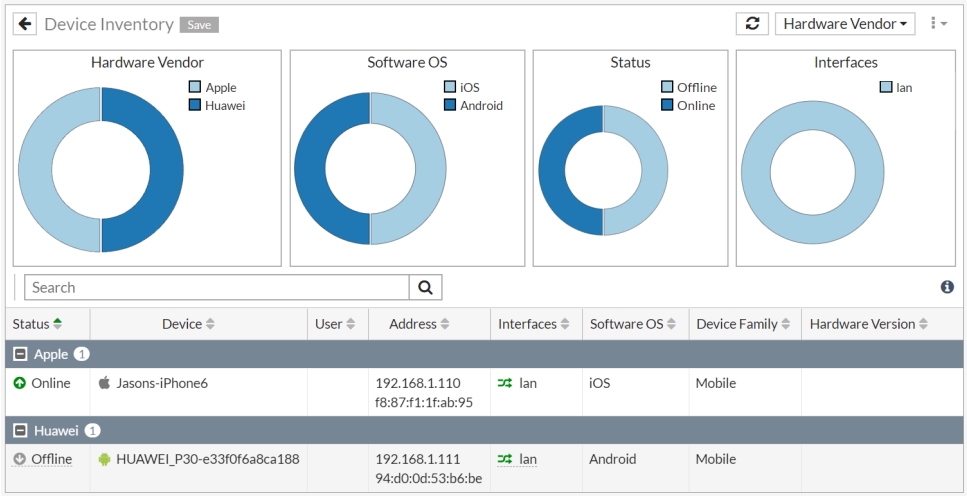
The FortiGate device must be:

- Registered with FortiCare
- Connected to an anycast FortiGuard server

How the service works:

1. Enable Device Detection on an interface..
2. FortiGate uses the interface to detect device traffic flow.
3. Upon detecting traffic from an unknown device, FortiGate sends the device data to the FortiGuard collection server.
4. The collection server returns data about the new device to the FortiGuard query server.
5. If the device signature does not appear in the local Device Database (CIDB) or some fields are not complete, FortiGate queries FortiGuard for more information about the device.

To view the latest device information in the GUI, go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* and expand the *Device Inventory* widget.



To debug the daemon in the CLI:

1. Disable the local device database in order to force all queries to go to FortiGuard.
   ```
   # diagnose src-vis local-sig disable
   ```
2. Enable iotd debugs.
   ```
   # diagnose debug application iotd -1
   # diagnose debug enable
   ```
   FortiGate sends the device data to the FortiGuard collection server.
   ```
   FortiWiFi-60E # [iotd] recv request from caller size:61
   [iotd] service:collect hostname: ip: fd:-1 request tlv_len:41
   [iotd] txt(.....y...w.....Jasons-iPhone6....579=23..)
   [iotd] hex
        (02010007017903060f77fc0203000e4a61736f6e732d6950686f6e65360204000835373 93d32330cf
        f)
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip: fd:-1 got server hostname
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:-1 got
        server ip
   ```

```
[iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13
     socket created
[iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13
     connecting
[iotd] fd:13 monitor event:pollout
[iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13 build
     req packet
[iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13
     collect resp:1(pending)
```

The FortiGuard collection server returns new device data to the FortiGuard query server.

```
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got query
     resp
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 id:0
     total_len:48 header_len:16 tlv_len:32 confidence:100 mac:f8:87:f1:1f:ab:95
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
     remaining_len:32 type:1 len:6
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
     category:'Mobile'
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
     remaining_len:24 type:2 len:6
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
     sub_category:'Mobile'
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
     remaining_len:16 type:3 len:5
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
     vendor:'Apple'
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
     remaining_len:9 type:4 len:0
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
     remaining_len:7 type:5 len:3
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
     os:'iOS'
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
     remaining_len:2 type:6 len:0
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 send
     query response to caller size:48
[iotd] txt(............d0 ...Mobile..Mobile..Apple....iOS..)
[iotd] hex
     (f887f11fab9500000000000064302000001064d6f62696c6502064d6f62696c6503054170706c650400
     0503694f530600)
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 read
     resp:0(good)
```

3. The query returns the device information including the information source (`src fortiguard`).

```
# diagnose user device list
  vd root/0  f8:87:f1:1f:ab:95  gen 26  req OUA/34
     created 503s  gen 23  seen 102s  lan  gen 7
     ip 192.168.1.110  src arp
     hardware vendor 'Apple'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
     type 'Mobile'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
     family 'Mobile'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
     os 'iOS'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
     host 'Jasons-iPhone6'  src dhcp
```

FortiAP query to FortiGuard IoT service to determine device details

A FortiAP collects packets from devices and queries FortiGuard with the help of the FortiGate. Device detection results are reported back to the FortiGate where this information is displayed. Querying the FortiGuard service requires an IoT Detection Service license.

The following attributes can be configured in `wireless-controller setting`:

Attribute	Description
device-weight <integer>	Set the device upper limit of confidence (0 - 255, default = 1, 0 = disable).
device-holdoff <integer>	Set the device lower limit of creation time, in minutes (0 - 60, default = 5).
device-idle <integer>	Set the device upper limit of idle time, in minutes (0 - 14400, default = 1440).

To query the FortiGuard IoT service:

```
config wireless-controller setting
    ...
    set device-weight 1
    set device-holdoff 5
    set device-idle 1440
    ...
end
```

```
# diagnose user device list
  vd root/0  54:27:1e:e6:26:3d  gen 89  req OUA/34
    created 70s  gen 86  seen 2s  port29  gen 28
    ip 10.29.1.214  src mac
    hardware vendor 'Asustek compute'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 21
    type 'Home & Office'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 21
    family 'Computer'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 21
    os 'Linux'  src dhcp  id 822  weight 128
    host 'test-wifi'  src dhcp
```

FDS-only ISDB package in firmware images

FortiOS firmware images include Fortinet objects in the built-in Internet Service Database (ISDB).

```
# diagnose firewall internet-service list
List internet service in kernel(global):
Internet Service Database Kernel Table: size 14974 bytes, Entry size 5844 bytes, number of
index entries 165 number of IP range entries 0

Group(0): Weight(15), number of entries(162)
......
```

This lightweight ISDB package allows firewall rules and policy routes that use ISDB to access FortiGuard servers to continue working after upgrading FortiOS. For example, the following policy will work after an upgrade:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 440
        set name "Fortinet Updates"
        set srcintf "port25"
```

```
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "FortiAnalyzer" "FortiAuthenticator" "Tesla Management Interface"
"BackupFortinet" "SipFW" "ConnectVPNMgmt"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 1245187 1245326 1245324 1245325 1245193 1245192 1245190
1245185
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

After the FortiGate reboots after a firmware update, an automatic update will run in five minutes so that the FortiGate can get the ISDB, whether or not scheduled update is enabled.

```
# diagnose autoupdate versions | grep Internet -A 6

Internet-service Full Database
---------
Version: 7.02217 signed
Contract Expiry Date: n/a
Last Updated using manual update on Wed Aug 24 12:06:58 2022
Last Update Attempt: Wed Aug 24 12:07:27 2022
```

License expiration

The FortiGate will still function as a firewall if any or all of the FortiGuard licenses are expired. Valid FortiGuard licenses are required to receive database and signature updates, and to perform real-time or near-real-time security lookups to detect and quickly adjust your security posture for newly discovered attacks.



FortiGuard services are designed to be continuous. Any lapses in the service will require coverage back to the contract expiration date. For more information, see FortiCare/FortiGuard Renewal Continuous Service Policy.

License type	Expiration impact
Firmware & General Update	Application Control, Device & OS Identification, and Internet Service Database Definitions continue to work, but the databases are not updated and no new signatures are added. For example, if application control is used in a firewall policy that has an internet service applied to the source or destination addresses, then the policy will continue to inspect matching traffic using the FortiGate's existing application control signatures and ISDB definitions. Application control, device and OS detection, and internet service database are included in the base services that are included with all FortiCare support contracts See FortiGuard Security Services for details.
Intrusion Prevention	IPS scanning continues to work, but the IPS databases are not updated and no new signatures are added.

License type	Expiration impact
	For example, if an IPS sensor with *Block malicious URLs* enabled is used in a firewall policy, then the policy will continue to inspect matching traffic using the FortiGate's existing IPS signatures and malicious URLs database. An active IPS license is critical for stopping sophisticated and zero-day attacks, as FortiGuard IPS provides near-real-time intelligence with thousands of intrusion prevention rules to detect and block known and zero-day threats. For more information, see Intrusion prevention on page 1385.
Botnet IPs/Domains	IPS sensors and DNS Filter profiles with Botnet C&C configured continue to work, but the Botnet IPs and Botnet Domain databases are not updated and no new signatures are added. While Botnet IPs and Domain are listed in the Intrusion Prevention category, they are actually part of the Firmware & General Updates contract. For more information, see Botnet C&C domain blocking on page 1356 and IPS with botnet C&C IP blocking on page 1399.
AntiVirus	Antivirus scanning continues to work, but the antivirus database is not updated and no new signatures are added. For more information, see Antivirus on page 1282.
Web and DNS Filtering	Category-based Web and DNS filtering stops working, as URLs and domains are sent to FortiGuard in real-time to determine the category. By default, all web and DNS traffic is dropped. If allowing website or DNS requests when a rating error occurs is enabled, then all web and DNS traffic passes through without filtering. If static URL or domain filtering is applied in a filter profile, those filters continue to work. Configurations where only specific URLs and domains are allowed and all others are blocked continue to work, but this is not a scalable solution blocking websites or performing category filtering. For more information, see FortiGuard filter on page 1324 and FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering on page 1353.
Email Filtering	Spam filtering stops working, as it queries the FortiGuard spam filtering server in real-time to check spammer IP addresses and emails (except those that are locally configured), phishing URLs, spam URLs, spam email checksums, and spam submissions. Anti-spam signatures are not updated. Profile options based on local spam filtering continue to work. For more information, see Email filter on page 1411.
Outbreak Prevention	Outbreak prevention stops working, as it uses real-time lookups to the FortiGuard Global Threat Intelligence database. For more information, see FortiGuard outbreak prevention on page 1293.
Security Rating	The security rating check stops working.

License type	Expiration impact
	Security Rating licenses are required to run security rating checks across all of the devices in the Security Fabric. They allow rating scores to be submitted to and received from FortiGuard for network ranking. Without security rating checks, critical vulnerabilities and configuration weaknesses in the Security Fabric cannot be identified, and best practice recommendations cannot be implemented. For more information, see Security rating on page 237.
Industrial DB	Industry Security Service (ISS) signatures continue to work, but the database attack definitions are not updated and no new signatures are added. ISS includes application control and IPS signatures for industrial applications and protocols. For example, if an IPS sensor enabled with ISS signatures is used in a firewall policy, then the policy will continue to inspect matching traffic using the FortiGate's existing industrial database IPS signatures. For more information, see Industrial signature database on page 1395.

Feature visibility

Feature visibility is used to control which features are visible in the GUI. This allows features that are not in use to be hidden. Some features are also invisible by default and must be made visible before they can be configure in the GUI.

The visibility of a feature does not affect its functionality or configuration. Invisible features can still be configured using the CLI.

To change the visibility of features:

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. Change the visibility of the features as required. To simplify setting security features, a feature set can be selected from the dropdown list.
   For information about what settings each option affects, click on the + icon to the right of the feature name.
   Changes are listed on the right of the screen.
3. Click *Apply*.

Security feature presets

Six system presets are available:

- *NGFW*: for networks that require application control and protection from external attacks.
- *ATP*: for networks that require protection from viruses and other external threats.
- *WF*: for networks that require web filtering.
- *NGFW + ATP*: for networks that require protection from external threats and attacks.
- *UTM*: for networks that require protection from external threats and wish to use security features that control network usage. This is the default setting.

- *Full UTM*: for networks that require the normal UTM features, as well as antivirus, application control, endpoint control, and web filtering.
- *Custom* should be chosen for networks that require customization of available features (including the ability to select all features).

Certificates

FortiOS leverages certificates in multiple areas, such as VPNs, administrative access, and deep packet inspection. This section contains topics about uploading certificates and provides examples of how certificates may be used to encrypt and decrypt communications, and represent the identity of the FortiGate. This sections assumes the reader has a high level understanding of the public key infrastructure (PKI) system, particularly how entities leverage trusted certificate authorities (CAs) to verify the authenticating party, and how public and private certificate keys work to secure communications.

The certificates feature is hidden by default in FortiOS. In the GUI, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *Certificates*.

The following topics provide an overview of how to add certificates to the FortiGate:

- Uploading a certificate using the GUI on page 1050
- Uploading a certificate using the CLI on page 1053
- Uploading a certificate using an API on page 1054

The following topics provide examples of how to use certificates:

- Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1519
- Procure and import a signed SSL certificate on page 1059
- Microsoft CA deep packet inspection on page 1062
- Provision a trusted certificate with Let's Encrypt on page 1067
- Creating certificates with XCA on page 1070
- Configuring FortiClient EMS on page 161
- SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1815
- SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication on page 1820
- Configuring certificates for SAML SSO on page 224
- Protecting an SSL server on page 1460

Uploading a certificate using the GUI

On the *System* > *Certificates* page, there are two options to add a certificate: *Generate* (use a certificate signing request) and *Import*.

Generate certificate signing request

Certificate signing requests (CSRs) are used to generate a certificate which is then signed by a CA to create a chain of trust. The CSR includes details of the FortiGate (see table below) and its public key. A CSR is not strictly necessary; some CAs allow you to provide the details of the FortiGate manually, but a CSR helps streamline the process. Selecting *Generate* takes you the *Generate Certificate Signing Request* page to enter the following information:

Certificate Name	Enter the certificate name; this is how it will appear in the *Local Certificates* list.
Subject Information	Specify an ID type: host IP address, domain name (FQDN), or email address.
Optional Information	Although listed as optional, we recommended entering the information for each field in this section. If you are generating a CSR for a third-party CA, you need to insure that these values reflect those listed for your company or organization at said certificate authority. If you are generating a certificate for a Microsoft CA, you need to check with the administrator regarding these values.
Organization Unit	Enter the name of the organizational unit under which the certificate will be issued.
Organization	Enter the overall name of the organization.
Locality(City)	Enter the city where the SSL certificate is located.
State / Province	Some issuers will reject a CSR that has an abbreviated state or province, so enter the full name of the state or province.
Country / Region	Enable the option and select the country from the dropdown.
E-Mail	Enter the email address of the technical contact for the SSL certificate that is being requested.
Subject Alternative Name	This field allows multiple domains to be used in an SSL certificate. Select from email addresses, IP addresses, URIs, DNS names, and so on.
Password for private key	If supplied, this is used as an encryption password for the private key file.
Key Type	Select *RSA* or *Elliptic Curve*.
Key Size	When *Key Type* is *RSA*, select 1024, 1536, 2048, or 4096 for bit-size/strength. We recommend using at least 2048 if your CA can issue certificates of that size.
Curve Name	When *Key Type* is *Elliptic Curve*, select the elliptic curve type: secp256r1, secp384r1, or secp521r1.

Enrollment Method	Select one of the following methods that determines how the CSR will be signed.
	• *File Based*: this will generate a certificate in the certificate menu under *Local Certificate*, which differs from the existing ones because it has no *Subject*, *Comments*, *Issuer*, or *Expires* values in the table. It will also show a *Pending* status because it is only a CSR at the moment and cannot function as a certificate just yet. You can download the CSR to provide to a CA for signing. If you open the CSR file, it should look similar to this:
	`-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----`
	`)HEKjDX+Hg==`
	`-----END CERT`

	Next. the CSR file is supplied to a CA for signing and the returned file from the CA should be in .CER format. This file is then uploaded to the FortiGate by going to *System* > *Certificates* > *Import* > *Local Certificate* and uploading the CER file. • *Online SCEP*: the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) allows devices to enroll for a certificate by using a URL and a password. The SCEP server works as a proxy to forward the FortiGate's request to the CA and returns the result to the FortiGate (setting up an SCEP server is beyond the scope of this topic). Once the request is approved by the SCEP server, the FortiGate will have a signed certificate containing the details provided in the CSR.

Import

Although *Import* is often used in conjunction with a CSR, you may upload a certificate to the FortiGate that was generated on its own. This is typical of wildcard certificates (*.domain.tld) where the same certificate is used across multiple devices (FGT.domain.tld, FAZ.domain.tld, and so on), but may be used for individual certificates so long as the information provided to the signing CA matches that of the FortiGate.

When selecting *Import*, there are four options: *Local Certificate*, *CA Certificate*, *Remote Certificate*, and *CRL*.

Local certificate

Local certificates are used by the FortiGate to identify itself, or a service it provides, such as HTTPS administrative access, SSL VPN user portal, or virtual server load balancing where the FortiGate masquerades as the destination server. When selecting *Local Certificate*, three certificate type options appear in the *Import Certificate* pane:

Local Certificate	There is no field to upload a key with this option. Use this option when you have created a CSR on the FortiGate, as the key is generated as part of the CSR process and remains on the FortiGate. You will need to upload a .CER file.
PKCS #12 Certificate	This option takes a specific certificate file type that contains the private key. The certificate will be encrypted and a password must be supplied with the certificate file.
Certificate	This option is intended for certificates that were generated without using the FortiGate's CSR. Since the certificate private key is being uploaded, a password is required. This can be done two ways: • Certificate file and key file (typically .CER and .PEM) • Certificate and key bundle file (typically .PFX)

CA certificate

FortiGates come with many CA certificates from well-known certificate authorities pre-installed, just as most modern operating systems like Windows and MacOS. Use this option to add private CA certificates to the FortiGate so that certificates signed by this private CA are trusted by the FortiGate.

For example, a private CA can be used when two FortiGates are establishing a site-to-site VPN tunnel using a certificate not signed by a public or trustworthy CA, or for your LDAPS connection to your corporate AD server that also uses a

certificate signed with a private CA in your domain. It is very common to upload a private CA when using PKI user authentication, since most PKI user certificates will be signed by an internal CA.

When selecting *CA Certificate*, two type options appear in the *Import CA Certificate* pane:

Online SCEP	The FortiGate contacts an SCEP server to request the CA certificate.
File	The CA certificate is uploaded directly to the FortiGate.

Remote certificate

Remote certificates are public certificates and contain only the public key. They are used to identify a remote device. For example, when configuring your FortiGate for SAML authentication with the FortiGate as an identity provider (IdP), you can optionally specify the service provider (SP) certificate. However, when configuring your FortiGate as a SP, you must specify the certificate used by the IdP. Both these certificates can be uploaded to the FortiGate as a remote certificate, since the private key is not necessary for its implementation.

CRL

Since it is not possible to recall a certificate, the CRL (certificate revocation list) list details certificates signed by valid CAs that should no longer be trusted. Certificates may be revoked for many reasons, such as if the certificate was issued erroneously, or if the private key of a valid certificate has been compromised. When selecting *CRL*, two import methods are available:

File Based	CAs publish a file containing the list of certificates that should no longer be trusted.
Online Updating	This is the preferred way to keep the list of revoked certificates up to date. Three protocols are offered: HTTP, LDAP, and SCEP.

Uploading a certificate using the CLI

Generate certificate signing request

The generated CSR must be signed by a CA then loaded to the FortiGate. See Generate certificate signing request on page 1050 for more details.

To generate a CSR:

```
# execute vpn certificate local generate cmp <certificate_name> <key_size> <server> <path>
<server_certificate> <auth_certificate> <user> <password> <subject> [SANs] [ip]

# execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-ca

# execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-key-certs

# execute vpn certificate local generate default-ssl-serv-key

# execute vpn certificate local generate ec <certificate_name> <curve_name> <subject>
<country> <state/province> <city> <organization> <OU> <email> [SANs] [options]

# execute vpn certificate local generate rsa <certificate_name> <key_size> <subject>
<country> <state/province> <city> <organization> <OU> <email> [SANs] [options]
```

cmp	Generate a certificate request over CMPv2.
default-ssl-ca	Generate the default CA certificate used by SSL Inspection.
default-ssl-ca-untrusted	Generate the default untrusted CA certificate used by SSL Inspection.
default-ssl-key-certs	Generate the default RSA, DSA and ECDSA key certs for ssl resign.
default-ssl-serv-key	Generate the default server key used by SSL Inspection.
ec	Generate an elliptic curve certificate request.
rsa	Generate a RSA certificate request.

Import

Any certificate uploaded to a VDOM is only accessible to that VDOM. Any certificate uploaded to the Global VDOM is globally accessible by all VDOMs.

A signed certificate that is created using a CSR that was generated by the FortiGate does not include a private key, and can be imported to the FortiGate from a TFTP file server.

To import a certificate that does not require a private key:

```
# execute vpn certificate local import tftp <file_name> <server_address> <cert_type>
[password]
```

To import a certificate that requires a private key to a VDOM, or when VDOMs are disabled:

```
config vpn certificate {local | ca | remote | ocsp-server | crl}
```

Refer to the FortiOS CLI Reference for detailed options for each certificate type (local, CA, remote, OSCP server, CRL).

To import a global certificate that requires a private key when VDOMs are enabled:

```
config certificate {local | ca | remote | crl}
```

This command is only available when VDOMs are enabled. For details, see the FortiOS CLI Reference.

Uploading a certificate using an API

There are several API methods to upload a certificate based on the type and purpose of the certificate. The parameters of each method are available options, and some methods do not require all parameters to upload the certificate.

When uploading a certificate to the FortiGate using API, the certificate must be provided to the FortiGate in Base64 encoding. You must create a REST API user to authenticate to the FortiGate and use the generated API token in the request.

api/v2/monitor/vpn-certificate/ca/import

```
{
  "import_method": "[file|scep]",
  "scep_url": "string",
```

```
  "scep_ca_id": "string",
  "scope": "[vdom*|global]",
  "file_content": "string"
}
```

api/v2/monitor/vpn-certificate/crl/import

```
{
  "scope": "[vdom*|global]",
  "file_content": "string"
}
```

api/v2/monitor/vpn-certificate/local/import

```
{
  "type": "[local|pkcs12|regular]",
  "certname": "string",
  "password": "string",
  "key_file_content": "string",
  "scope": "[vdom*|global]",
  "acme-domain": "string",
  "acme-email": "string",
  "acme-ca-url": "string",
  "acme-rsa-key-size": 0,
  "acme-renew-window": 0,
  "file_content": "string"
}
```

api/v2/monitor/vpn-certificate/remote/import

```
{
  "scope": "[vdom*|global]",
  "file_content": "string"
}
```

api/v2/monitor/vpn-certificate/csr/generate

```
{
  "certname": "string",
  "subject": "string",
  "keytype": "[rsa|ec]",
  "keysize": [1024|1536|2048|4096],
  "curvename": "[secp256r1|secp384r1|secp521r1]",
  "orgunits": [
    "string"
  ],
  "org": "string",
  "city": "string",
  "state": "string",
  "countrycode": "string",
  "email": "string",
  "sub_alt_name": "string",
  "password": "string",
  "scep_url": "string",
  "scep_password": "string",
```

```
  "scope": "[vdom*|global]"
}
```

Example

In this example, a PKCS 12 certificate is uploaded as a local certificate using Postman as the API client. PowerShell is used for the Base64 encoding.

To upload a PKCS 12 certificate using an API:

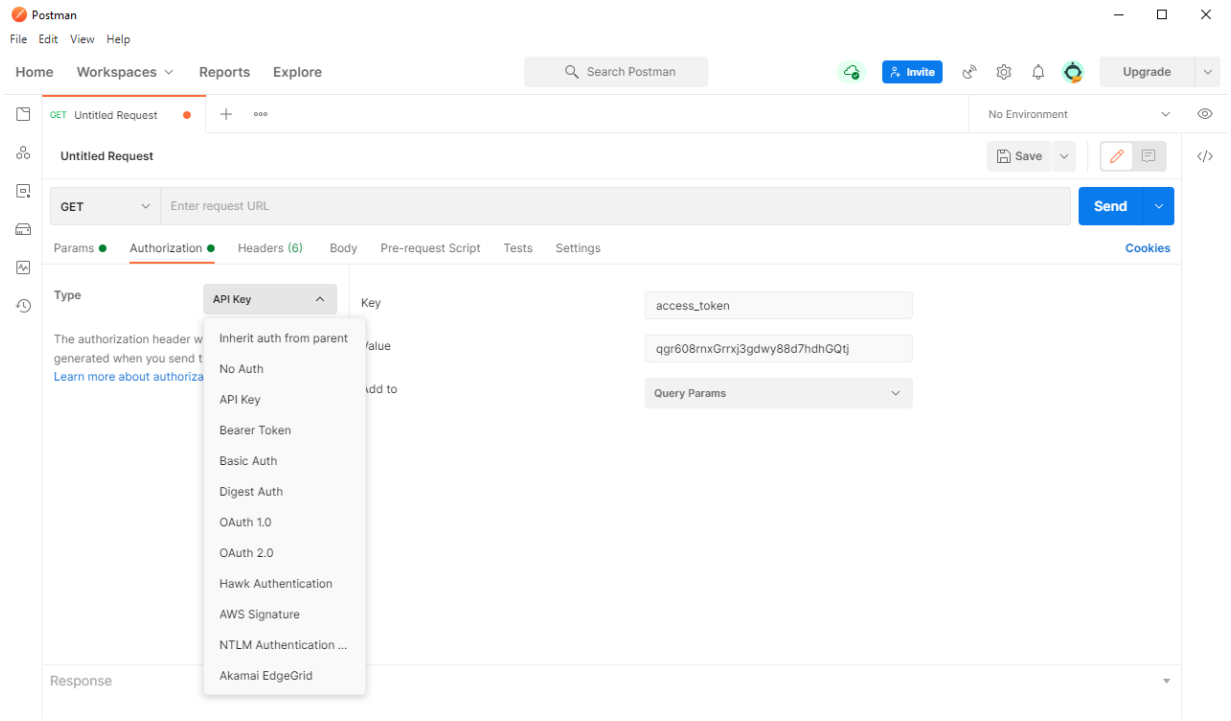
1. In PowerShell , encode the PKCS 12 certificate to Base64:

   ```
   cd C:\users\username\desktop
   $pkcs12cert = get-content 'C:\users\path\to\certificate\certificatename.p12' -Encoding
   Byte
   [System.Convert]::ToBase64String($pkcs12cert) | Out-File 'base12encodedcert.txt'
   ```

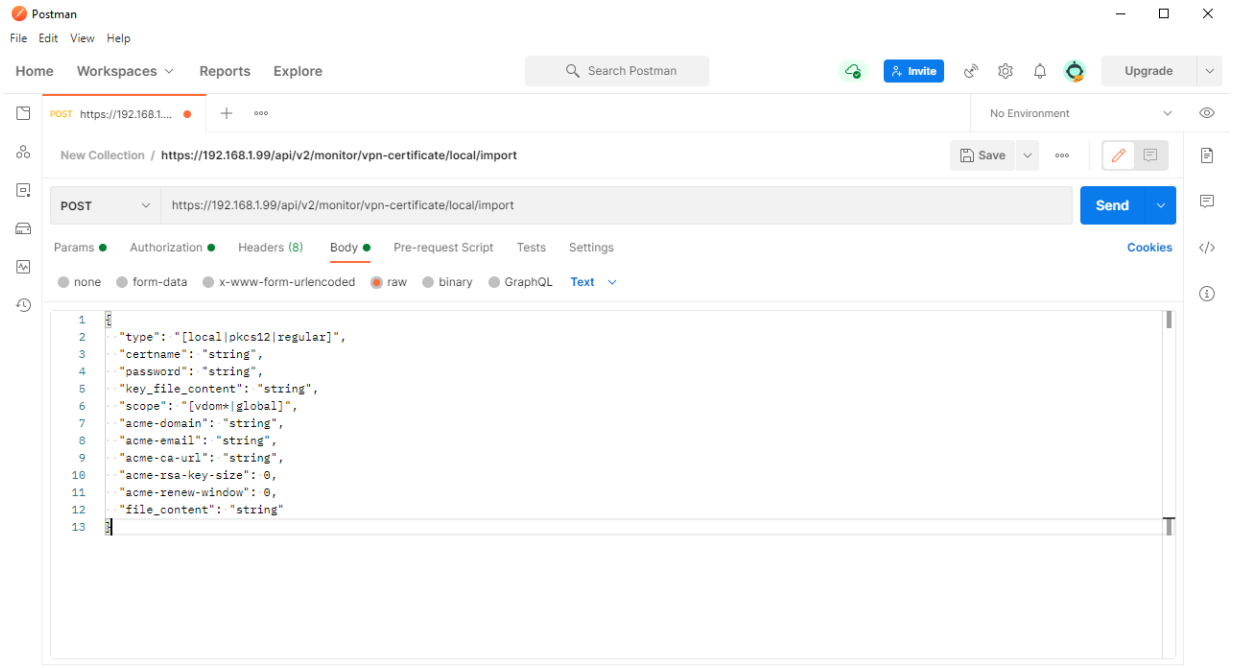
   These three lines of code do the following:

   a. Changes to working directory to the location where the encoded certificate will be created. In this example, it is the desktop.
   b. Creates a variable called `pkcs12cert` and defines it as the certificate file by specifying the full path to the certificate.
   c. Creates a text file called `base12encodedcert` at the location specified in the first step. You will copy and paste the contents of this as `file_content` later in Postman.
2. Generate an API token on the FortiGate by creating a REST API user. See Generate an API token on the Fortinet Developer Network. A subscription to the Fortinet Developer Network is required to view this topic.
3. Open Postman and create a new request:
   a. Click the +.
   b. Click the *Authorization* tab and in the *Type* dropdown, select *API Key*.
   c. For *Key*, enter *access_token* and enter the *Value* for the API user.

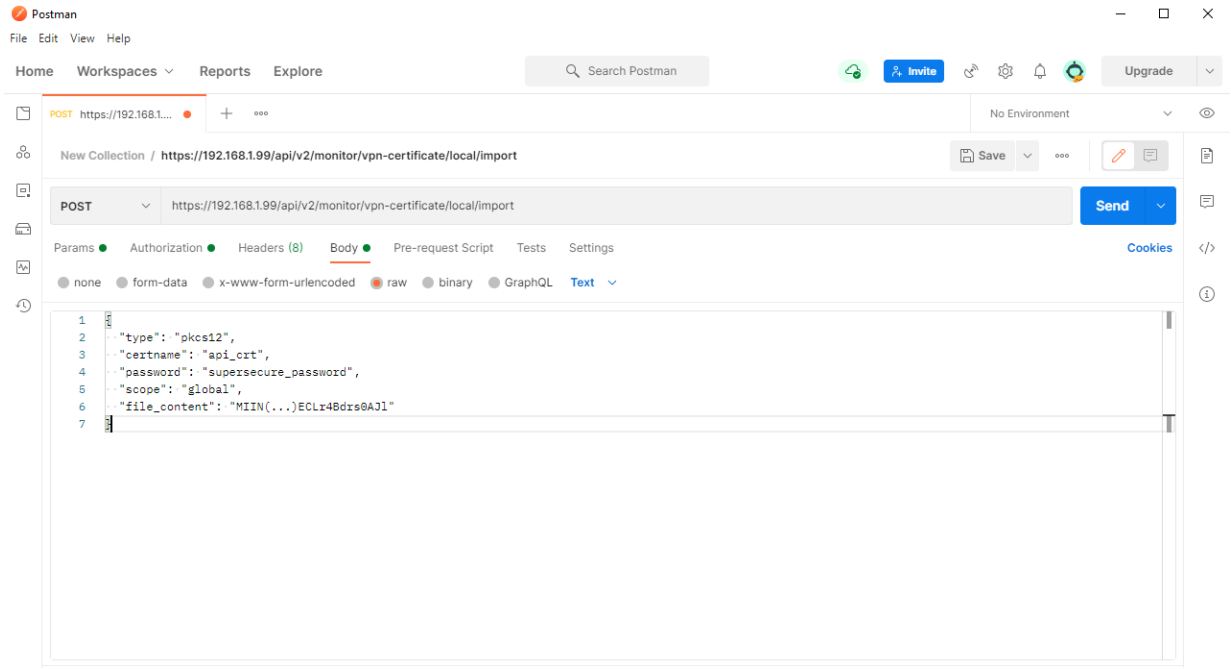
d. For *Add to*, select *Query Params*.



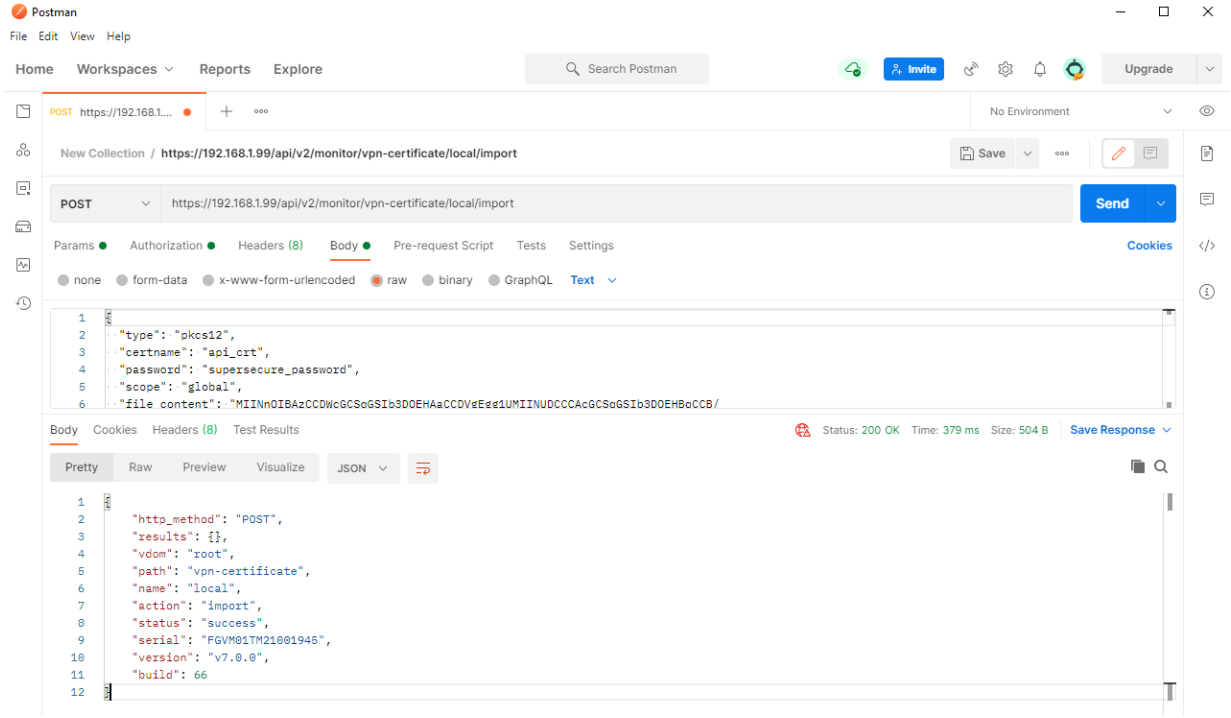
4. In the HTTP request dropdown, change the request from *GET* to *POST*, and enter the FortiGate's IP address and the URL of the API call.
5. Click the *Body* tab, and copy and paste the API parameters.



6. Remove unnecessary parameters (ACME related parameters and `key_file_content`) and enter the correct settings for your certificate. Copy and paste the contents of the file generated by PowerShell earlier into `file_content`.



7. Click *Send*. The lower window will return the results.



8. In FortiOS, go to *System* > *Certificates* and verify that the uploaded certificate is shown in the table (*api_crt*).

To debug using the HTTPS daemon:

```
# diagnose debug reset
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application httpsd -1
```

```
<output>
# diagnose debug disable
```

Procure and import a signed SSL certificate

A signed SSL certificate can be used when configuring SSL VPN, for administrator GUI access, and for other functions that require a certificate.



Before creating a certificate, you must have a registered domain. With a valid FortiGuard subscription, FortiDDNS can be used to register a domain; see DDNS on page 463 for more information.

Follow these instructions to purchase, import, and use a signed SSL certificate:

- Obtain, setup, and download an SSL certificate package from a certificate authority
- Generate a CSR
- Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate
- Configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate

Obtain, setup, and download an SSL certificate package from a certificate authority

SSL certificate packages can be purchased from any Certificate Authority (CA), such as DigiCert, GoDaddy, or GlobalSign.



Let's Encrypt can be used to generate a free, trusted SSL certificate. See Provision a trusted certificate with Let's Encrypt on page 1067 for details.



A third party CA might not sign a certificate with an intranet name or IP address. For details, see Can I request a certificate for an intranet name or IP address?

The process for purchasing, setting up, and downloading a certificate will vary depending on the CA that is used, and if a CSR must be generated on the FortiGate.

To purchase a certificate package:

1. Create an account with your chosen vendor, or use the account that you used to purchase your domain.
2. Locate the SSL Certificates page.
3. Purchase a basic SSL certificate for domain validation only. If required, a more secure SSL certificate can be purchased.
4. If required, load the CSR, either by uploaded the text file or copying and pasting the contents into the requisite text box. See Generate a CSR on page 1060 for information on generating the CSR on the FortiGate.
5. If required, set the server type to *Other*.
6. Verify the certificate per the requirements of the CA.

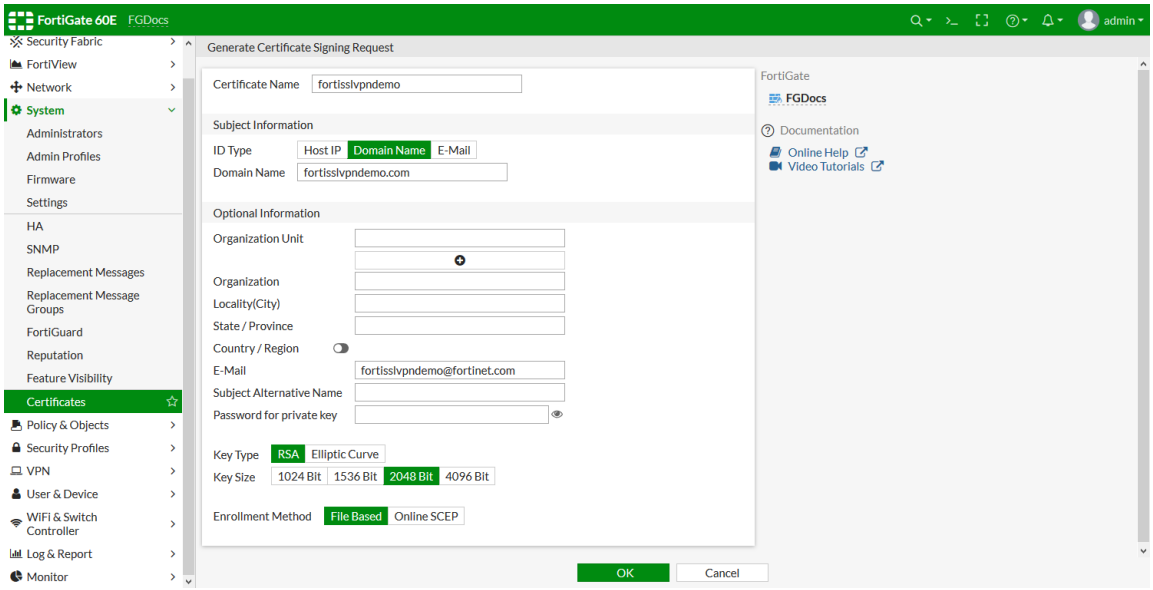
7. Download the signed certificate to your computer.
8. Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate; see Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate on page 1061.

Generate a CSR

Some CAs can auto-generate the CSR during the signing process, or provide tools for creating CSRs. If necessary, a CSR can be created in your FortiGate device's GUI.

To generate a CSR on your FortiGate:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*. By default, the *Certificates* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 1049 for information.
2. Click *Generate*. The *Generate Certificate Signing Request* page opens.



3. Configure the CSR request:
   - Ensure that the certificate has a unique name.
   - Set the *ID Type* to *Domain Name* and enter a *Domain Name*.
   - An email address is required.
   - Ensure that the *Key Size* is set to *2048 Bit*.
   - Set the *Enrollment Method* to *File Based*.
4. Click *OK*.
   The CSR will be added to the certificate list with a status of *PENDING*.
5. In the certificate list, select the new CSR then click *Download* to save the CSR to your computer.
   The CSR file can be opened in any text editor, and will resemble the following:

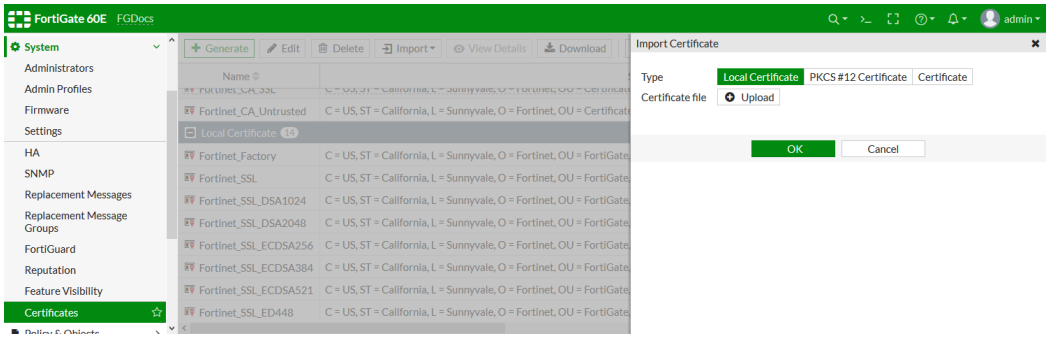
```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIICuTCCAaECAQAwSzEcMBoGA1UEAxMTZm9ydGlzc2x2cG5kZW1vLmNvbTErMCkG
CSqGSIb3DQEJARYcZm9ydGlzc2x2cG5kZW1vQGZvcnRpbmV0LmNvbTCCASIwDQYJ
KoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCAQoCggEBAMtnpNoR20NH2+UEX/NsyCmZhQqc4af3
Be1u9iOoNbo9Fk42gw47r71moAN+1jTL/Tcp3hRhXtpgoI7Zh3vjZnBbD2wwU8Ow
U7d1h5MULyMehR9r4T6OAJl4KbKPt5u90r5SpIb6mM1OIKvzMncuRS66rW1St0KP
mp/f6QjpjMrthnyJkCejgyTA1YwWNuT9BcO6PTkxBqVMLaRP6TUH6He9uhOx1Cj/
5tzvSdAozZIr2moMieQy0lNd6oQcgpdzaB9QN41+cZOlUXRCMPoH7E4KUe3/Gnis
```

```
+NMdQ8rIBijvWCXrKj20wb6sUEjAGJkcXlqVHWYCKWXl6Owejmc4ipkCAwEAAaAp
MCcGCSqGSIb3DQEJDjEaMBgwCQYDVR0TBAIwADALBgNVHQ8EBAMCBaAwDQYJKoZI
hvcNAQELBQADggEBAJKhtz2BPIKeHH9HcJKnfBKL+a6vu1l+1sW+YqnyD+3oR9ec
0eCmLnPxyyxsVel/tRsUg4DTfmooLNDhOjgfMsWxAGUQgrDH2k87cw6kiDAPCqv1
b+hFPNKZQSd09+HXAvOpXrMlrw5YdSaoRnau6Q02yUIYennKTIzFIscgh1mk4FSe
mb12DhPF+QydDCGDgtqnQbfxlDC0WmDcmxwa/0ZktoQhhhEbYgJ2O7l4TMqOxs/q
AZgwJlSNGBALLA2AxkIRUMKUteDdXz0QE8xNrvZpLTbWCNIpYJdRRqSd5C1w2VF4
CFgugTjFaJ13kYmBimeMRQsFtjLV5AxN+bUUsnQ=
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
```

Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate

To import the signed certificate into your FortiGate:

1. Unzip the file downloaded from the CA.
   There should be two CRT files: a CA certificate with *bundle* in the file name, and a local certificate.
2. Log in to your FortiGate unit and go to *System* > *Certificates*.
3. Click *Import* > *Local Certificate*.



4. Upload the local certificate file, then click *OK*.
5. The status of the certificate will change from *PENDING* to *OK*.
6. Click *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
7. Set the *Type* to *File*, upload the CA certificate file, then click *OK*.
   The CA certificate will be listed in the *CA Certificates* section of the certificates list.

Configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate

After the signed certificates have been imported, you can use it when configuring SSL VPN, for administrator GUI access, and for other functions that require a certificate.

To configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate for SSL VPN:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Set *Server Certificate* to the new certificate.
3. Configure other settings as needed.
4. Click *Apply*.

For more information on configuring SSL VPN, see SSL VPN on page 1775 and the Setup SSL VPN video in the Fortinet Video Library.

To configure using the certificate for administrator GUI access in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set admin-server-cert fortisslvpndemo
end
```

To change the certificate that is used for administrator GUI access in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, change *HTTPS server certificate* as needed.
3. Click *Apply*. You will be logged out of FortiOS.

Microsoft CA deep packet inspection

In most production environments, you want to use a certificate issued be your own PKI for deep packet inspection (DPI).

An existing Microsoft root CA can be used to issue a subordinate CA (sub CA) certificate that is installed as a DPI certificate on the FortiGate.

Complete the following steps to create your own sub CA certificate and use it for DPI:

1. Create a Microsoft sub CA certificate
2. Export the certificate and private key
3. Import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate
4. Configure a firewall policy for DPI
5. Verify that the sub CA certificate is being used for DPI

The FortiGate firewall uses information in the original web server certificate, then issues a new certificate signed by the Microsoft DPI certificate. The FortiGate then sends this certificate with the issuing DPI certificate to the client's web browser when the SSL session is being established.

The browser verifies that the certificate was issued by a valid CA, then looks for the issuing CA of the Microsoft DPI certificate in its loca trusted root CA store to complete the path to trusted root CA.

The Microsoft CA root certificate is normally deployed to all client PCs in the Windows domain, so the client can complete the certificate path up to a trusted root CA. The FortiGate now controlsand can inspect the two HTTPS sessions: one with the external web server, and one with the client PC.

Create a Microsoft sub CA certificate

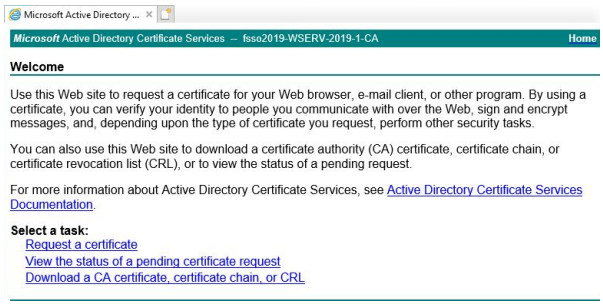
A Microsoft sub CA certificate can be created on a Microsoft CA server, or remotely using a web browser.

Creating a certificate remotely requires that the web enrollment option is configured on the Microsoft CA server. Remote certificate requests require HTTPS; requests are not allowed with HTTP.

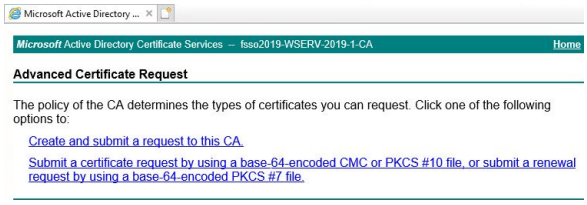
To create a Microsoft sub CA certificate remotely:

1. Open a web browser and go to one of the following URLs:
   - *https://<FQDN-CA-server>/CertSrv*
   - *https://<IP-CA-server>/CertSrv*.

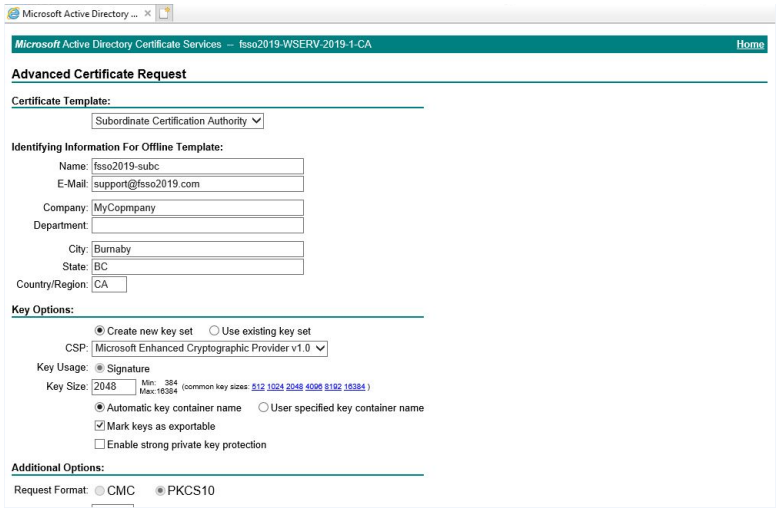
2. Log in to a domain administrator account that has web enrollment rights.



3. Click *Request a certificate*.
4. Click *advanced certificate request*.



5. Click *Create and submit a request to this CA*, then click *Yes* in the *Web Access Confirmation* warning.
6. For the *Certificate Template*, select *Subordinate Certification Authority*.
7. Enable *Mark keys as exportable*.
8. Fill out the remaining information according to your security policy.

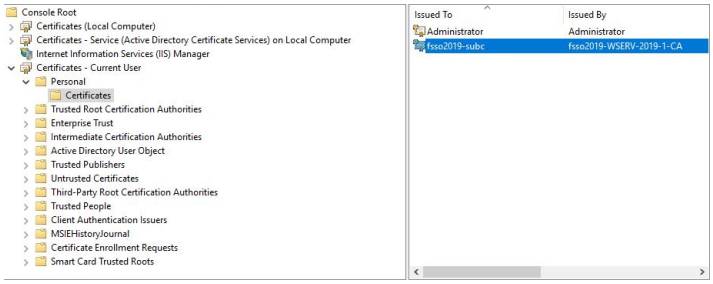


9. Submit the request.
10. Click *Yes* in the *Web Access Confirmation* warning.
11. Click *Install this certificate*.
    The certificate and private key are located in the current user's certificate store.

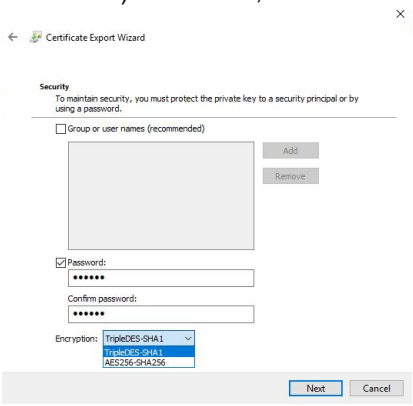
Export the certificate and private key

To export the certificate and private key:

1. Open the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and add the *Certificate Snap-in*.
2. Go to the user's certificate store to locate the sub CA certificate that you just installed.



3. Right-click the certificate and select *All Tasks* > *Export*.
4. Click *Next* to start the *Microsoft Certificate Export Wizard*.
5. Follow the steps in the wizard:
   - When asked, select *Yes, export the private key*.
   - Only the PKCS #12 (.PFX) format is available, and it requires a password.
   - When selecting the encryption type, select *TripleDES-SHA1* if you are using an older version of FortiOS (5.6.9 and earlier). Otherwise, select *AES256-SHA256*.



6. Complete the wizard, and save the DPI certificate to a local folder.

Import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate

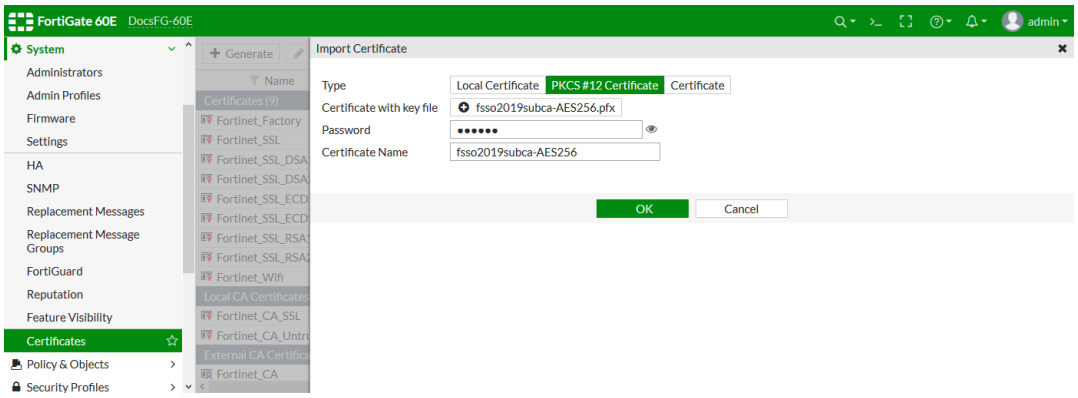
The certificate can be imported from the local computer using the GUI, or from a TFTP server using the CLI.

After importing the certificate, you can view it in the GUI to verify that it was successfully imported.

To import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
2. Select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
3. Set *Type* to *PKCS #12 Certificate*.
4. Click *Upload* and locate the certificate file.
5. Enter the *Password*.

6. Optionally, modify the *Certificate Name*.



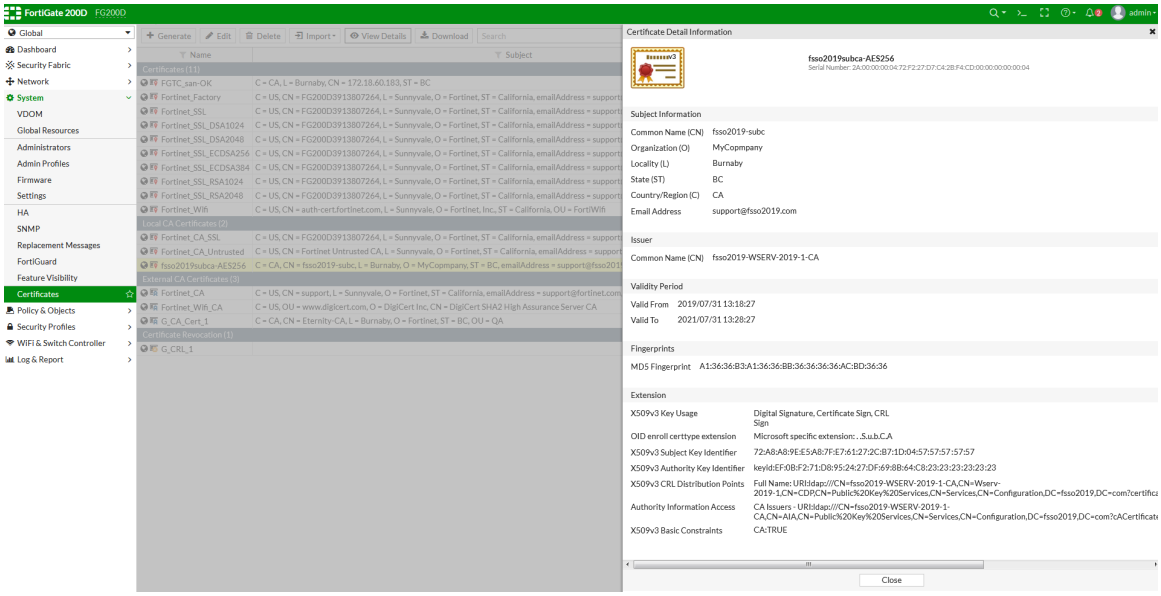
7. Click *OK*.

To import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate in the CLI:

```
execute vpn certificate local import <certificate file name> <tftp ip address> <password>
```

To verify that the certificate was imported:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*. By default, the *Certificate* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 1049 for information.
2. Locate the newly imported certificate in the table.
3. Select the certificate and click *View Details* to view the certificate details.

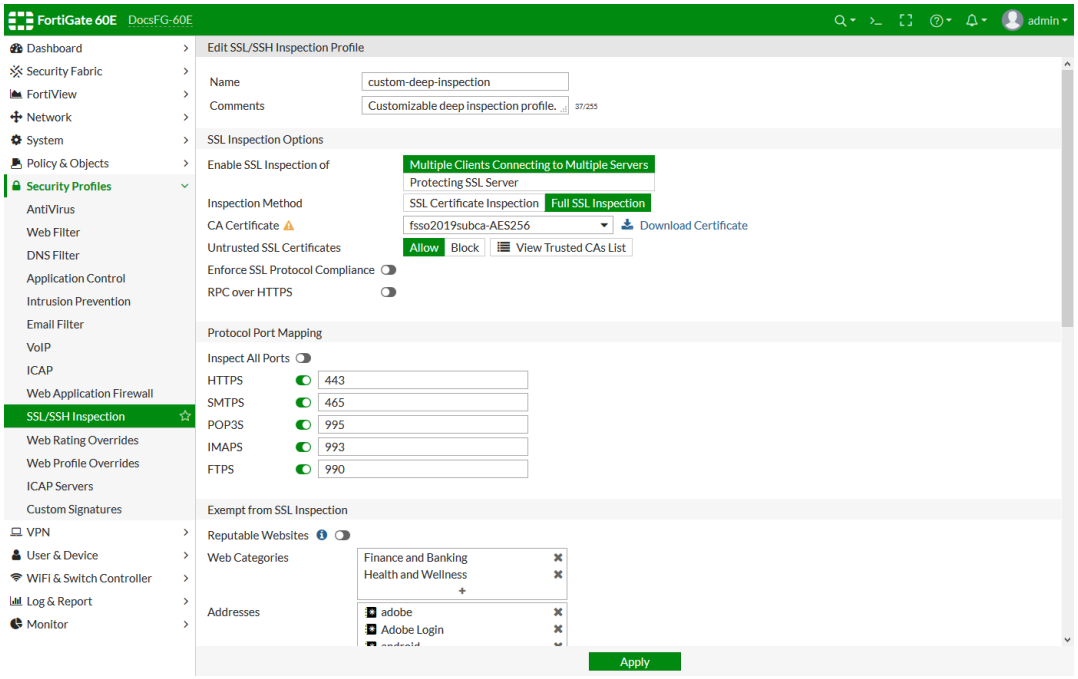


Configure a firewall policy for DPI

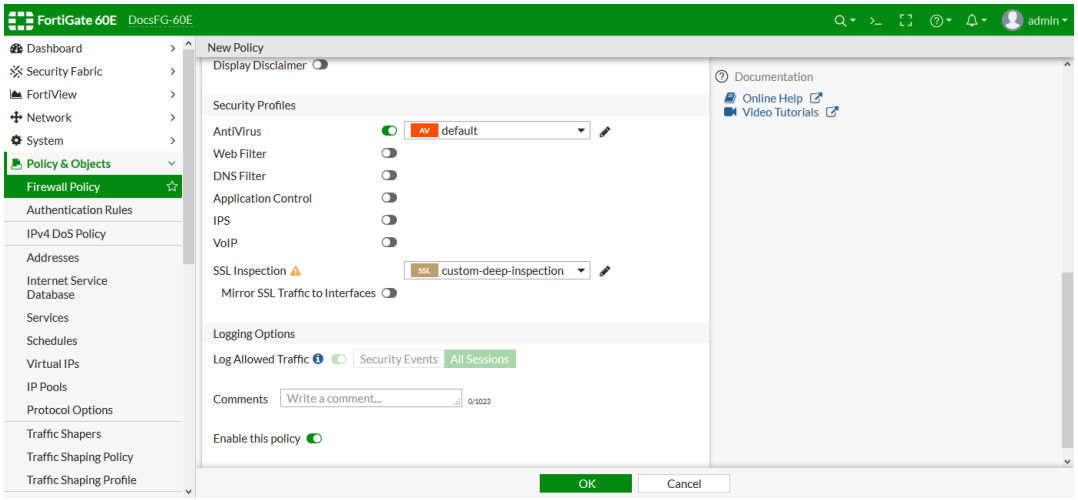
The certificate is used in an SSL/SSH inspection profile that is then used in a firewall policy.

To configure a firewall policy for DPI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the inspection profile, selecting the new certificate



4. Click *Apply*.
5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
6. Create a new policy, or edit an existing policy.
7. In the *SSL Inspection* field, select the new SSL inspection profile.



8. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
9. Click *OK*.

Verify that the sub CA certificate is being used for DPI

You can verify that the certificate is being used for resigning web server certificates when a user connects to an external HTTPS website.

To verify that the certificate is being used:

1. On a client PC that is behind the FortiGate, go to an external HTTPS website.
   When connecting to the website, no certificate warning should be shown.
2. In your web browser, view the certificate and certificate path.
   The methods for doing this vary depending on the browser. See your browsers documentation for information.

Provision a trusted certificate with Let's Encrypt

Let's Encrypt can be used to generate a free, trusted certificate that can be used by FortiGate to establish valid SSL connections that do not generate certificate warnings. See the Let's Encrypt documentation for more information and different methods of generating a trusted certificate.



Let's Encrypt certificates have 90 day lifespans. They recommend replacing the certificate every 60 days.

The main requirements for using Let's Encrypt are:

- An FQDN that is publicly resolvable to an IP address that you own.
- Proof of ownership of the domain.
- An application that uses Automatic Certificate Management Environment (ACME) to generate the certificate.



Fortinet has a dynamic DNS service that you can use if you do not have your own domain. See DDNS on page 463 for more information.

This example uses Certbot to satisfy proof of ownership and generation of the certificate. It is an ACME client with a built-in, temporary webserver used for proof of domain ownership. Follow the instructions on the Certbot website to install the correct version in your Linux environment; this example uses Debian.

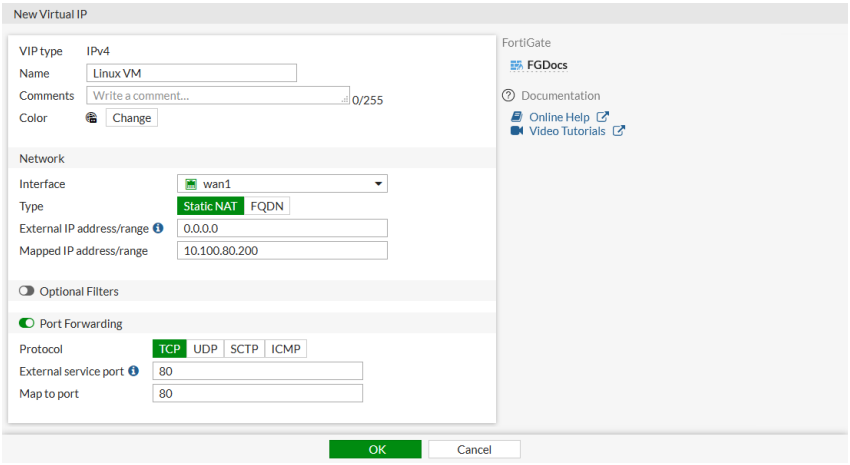
The Certbot application must be reachable by Let's Encrypt on TCP port 80 on the IP address that your FQDN resolves to.

Configure your FortiGate to reach the Linux environment

You can use a VIP to forward requests to your Linux environment on port 80. In this example, the Linux environment has the IP address 10.100.80.200.

To create a VIP to forward requests to your Linux environment on port 80 in the GUI:

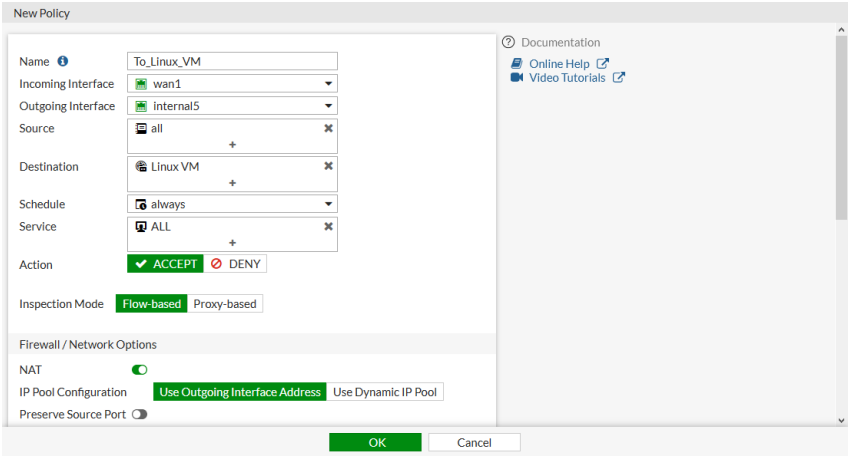
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the VIP and set the interface.
3. Set the *Mapped IP address/range* to the IP address of the Linux environment, in this case *10.100.80.20*.
4. Enable *Port Forwarding*, set *Protocol* to *TCP*, and set *External service port* and *Map to port* to *80*.



5. Click *OK*.

To add the VIP to a policy to allow traffic to reach your Linux environment in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Incoming Interface* to the interface used in the VIP.
3. Set *Destination* to the VIP, in this example: *Linux VM*.
4. Configure the remaining settings as required.



5. Click *OK*.

To create a VIP and add it to a policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "Linux VM"
        set mappedip "10.100.80.200"
        set extintf "wan1"
```

```
        set portforward enable
        set extport 80
        set mappedport 80
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set name "To_Linux_VM"
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "internal5"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Linux VM"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Create and upload the certificate

To manually request a certificate:

1. In the Linux command line enter:

   ```
   certbot certonly

   How would you like to authenticate with the ACME CA?
   - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
   1: Spin up a temporary webserver (standalone)
   2: Place files in webroot directory (webroot)
   ```

2. Press `1` to load a temporary webserver.

   ```
   Please enter in your domain name(s) (comma and/or space separated)  (Enter 'c' to
   cancel):
   ```

3. Enter your FQDN, such as `company.domain.com`.

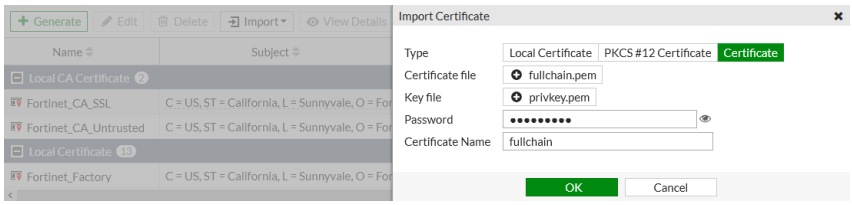
   Four files should be generated:

   - cert.pem
   - chain.pem
   - fullchain.pem
   - privkey.pem

To import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*. By default, the *Certificates* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 1049 for information.
2. Click *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
3. Set *Type* to *Certificate*.
4. For *Certificate File*, upload the *fullchain.pem* file.
5. For *Key File*, upload the *privkey.pem* file.

6. Enter a password.
7. Optionally, change the *Certificate Name*.



8. Click *OK*.

Configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate

After the signed certificates have been imported, you can use it when configuring SSL VPN and for administrator GUI access.

To configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate for SSL VPN:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Set *Server Certificate* to the new certificate.
3. Configure other settings as needed.
4. Click *Apply*.

For more information on configuring SSL VPN, see SSL VPN on page 1775 and the Setup SSL VPN video in the Fortinet Video Library.

To configure using the certificate for administrator GUI access in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set admin-server-cert fullchain
end
```

To change the certificate that is used for administrator GUI access in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, change *HTTPS server certificate* as needed.
3. Click *Apply*. You will be logged out of FortiOS.

Creating certificates with XCA

This topic explains how to generate various certificates to be used in conjunction with a FortiGate, including:

- CA certificate
  - Signing server and client certificates
  - Issuing subordinate CAs for deep inspection
- Server certificate
  - SSL/TLS web administration authentication
  - VPN authentication
  - Internal SSL server protection

- Client certificate
  - End user authentication for SSL or IPsec VPN

XCA is an x509 certificate generation tool that handles RSA, DSA, and EC keys, as well as certificate signing requests (PKCS #10) and CRLs.



There are several options for generating and managing certificates. This topic covers basic certificate generation for XCA. It is not a comprehensive guide to its application and does not explore all options available when generating a certificate.

Creating the XCA database

Before creating any certificates, you must create an XCA database to group the certificates in. You should use a different database for each PKI you create.

To create the database:

1. Go to *File* > *New Database*.
2. Select a directory to store the created certificates and keys.
3. Enter a name. The provided password encrypts the private keys and is used to access the XCA database in the future.

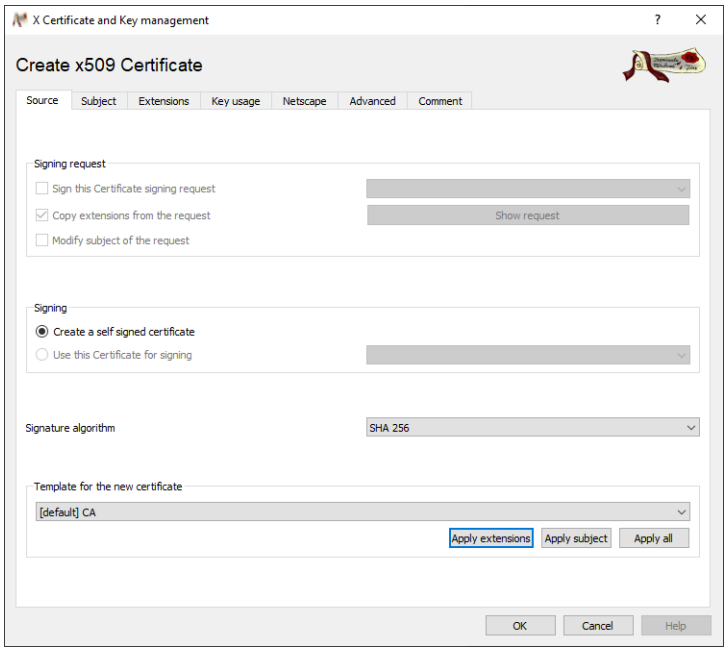
The remaining procedures in this topic assume you are using this XCA database.

Creating a CA certificate

A CA certificate marks the root of a certificate chain. If this CA certificate is trusted by an end entity, any certificates signed by the CA certificate are also trusted.

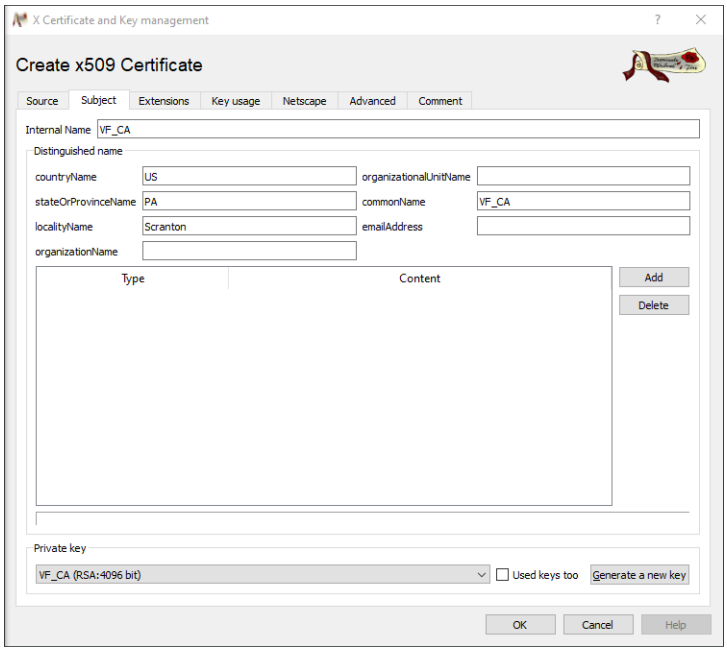
To create a CA certificate:

1. Click the *Certificates* tab, then click *New Certificate*.
2. Edit the *Source* tab:
   a. Set *Template for the new certificate* to *[default] CA*.
   b. Click *Apply extensions*.



3. Edit the *Subject* tab:
   a. Enter an *Internal Name* to reference this certificate within XCA.
   b. Enter a *commonName*.
   c. Optionally, click *Add* to add other distinguished name fields.
   d. Since this XCA database does not contain any keys yet, click *Generate a new key*. The *Private key* field is now

populated.



4. Optionally, edit the *Extensions* tab:
   a. Adjust the *Time range* if needed.
   b. Click *Apply*.
5. Click *OK*.

Issuing a subordinate CA certificate for deep inspection

Subordinate CA certificates are similar to CA certificates because they are used to sign other certificates to establish trust of the signed certificate's content. This trust of the signed certificate is only valid if the subordinate CA is also trusted by the client.

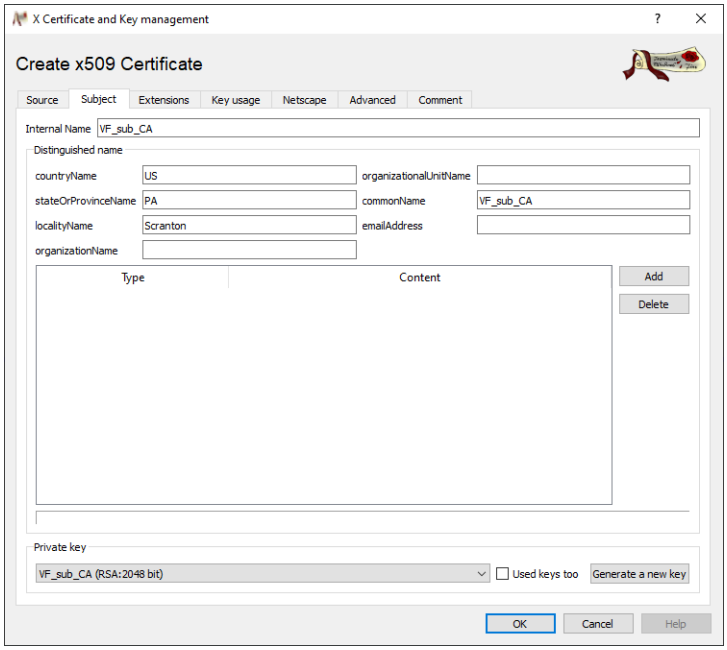
When performing deep inspection on a FortiGate, the FortiGate proxies the connection between the endpoint and the server. This is done transparently so that the end user believes they are communicating with the server, and the server with the client. To do this, when the webpage is requested by a client, the FortiGate must present a certificate that matches the requested website and is trusted by the client.

The certificate presented by the FortiGate is generated on-demand to match the requested website and is signed by this subordinate CA to establish trust with the requesting endpoint. The subordinate CA must be installed on the ForitGate (with the private key) and on the client device (without the private key).

A subordinate CA is used in place of a CA so that it may be revoked as necessary. This is critical since the subordinate CA's private key is exported and becomes susceptible of being compromised. If the CA private key becomes compromised, you would be forced to re-create your entire PKI with a new root CA because root CAs cannot be revoked. See Microsoft CA deep packet inspection on page 1062 for more information about using subordinate CA certificates.

To issue a subordinate CA certificate for deep inspection:

1. Click the *Certificates* tab, then click *New Certificate*.
2. Edit the *Source* tab:
   a. Set *Use this Certificate for signing* to the CA created previously.
   b. Set *Template for the new certificate* to *[default] CA*.
   c. Click *Apply extensions*.
3. Edit the *Subject* tab:
   a. Enter an *Internal Name* to reference this certificate within XCA.
   b. Enter a *commonName*.
   c. Optionally, click *Add* to add other distinguished name fields.
   d. Click *Generate a new key* to create a new private key for the subordinate CA.



4. Optionally, edit the *Extensions* tab:
   a. Adjust the *Time range* if needed.
   b. Click *Apply*.
5. Click *OK*.

Creating a server host certificate

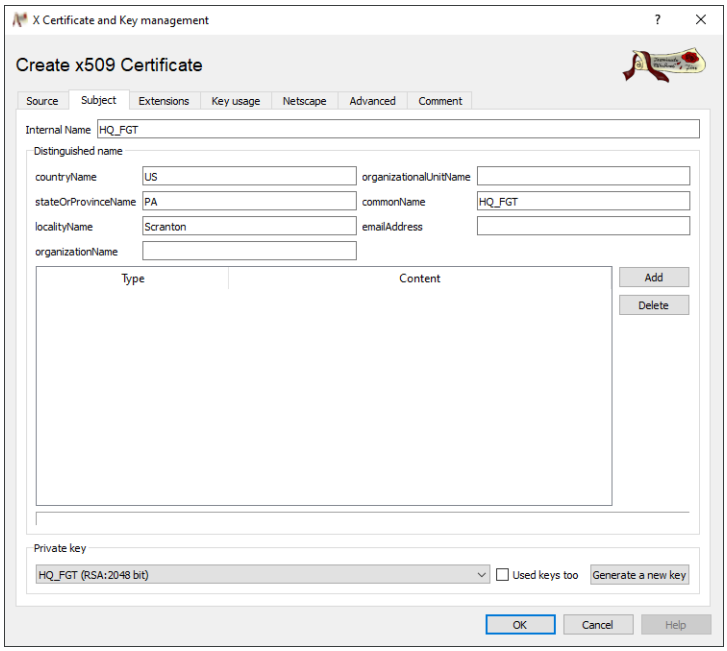
When a CA signs a host certificate, that CA is vouching for the credentials in the certificate. These credentials are what identifies the host.

Some endpoints can generate a certificate signing request (CSR). A CSR is a certificate outline that specifies the details of the endpoint, including its public key. This allows the CA to review the details and sign the request if they are true. This request is then returned or uploaded to the generating endpoint to be used.

Since some endpoints cannot generate their own CSR, you can create the certificate manually in XCA. If you already have a CSR, use the *Certificate signing requests* tab to import and then sign it.

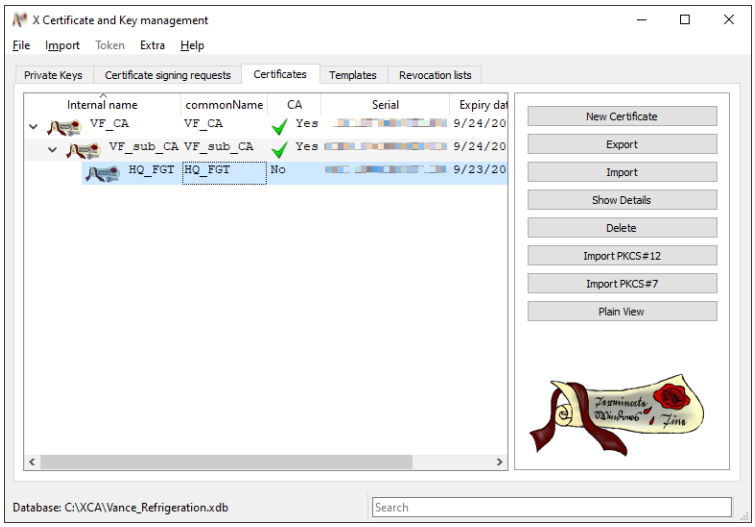
To create a server host certificate:

1. Click the *Certificates* tab, then click *New Certificate*.
2. Edit the *Source* tab:
   a. Set *Template for the new certificate* to *[default] TLS_server*.
   b. Click *Apply extensions*.
   c. In the *Signing* section, select *Use this Certificate for signing* and select the subordinate CA certificate.
3. Edit the *Subject* tab:
   a. Enter an *Internal Name* to reference this certificate within XCA.
   b. Enter the distinguished name fields as needed.
   c. Click *Generate a new key*.



4. Edit the *Extensions* tab:
   a. For *X509v3 Subject Alternative Name*, enter *email:user@domain.tld*.
5. Click *OK*.

6. Click the *Certificates* tab to view the certificate.



This certificate may be used to identify an SSL or TLS server by uploading the certificate and key pair to the server, such as when the FortiGate presents the administrative webpage or for SSL VPN authentication (see Configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate on page 1061). Another use case for a server host certificate is to enable SSL server protection so the FortiGate simulates the real server and brokers the connection (see Protecting an SSL server on page 1460).

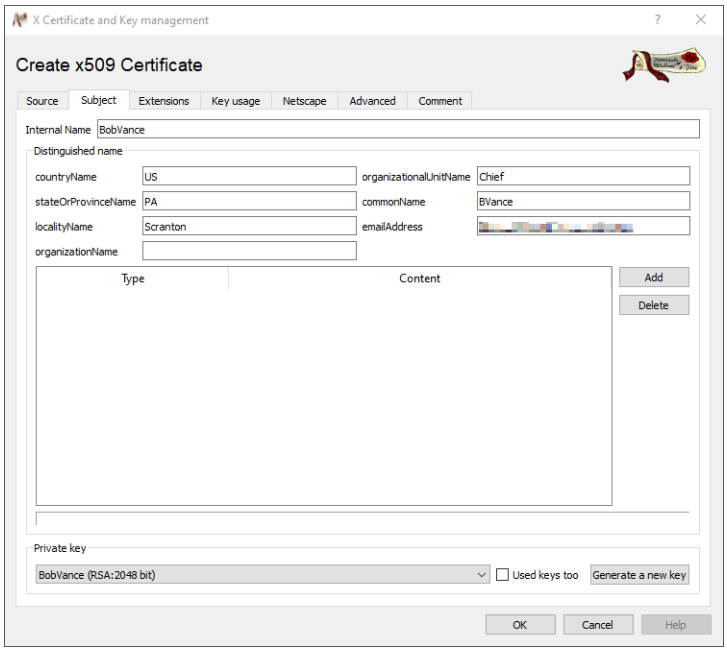
Creating a client host certificate

A client host certificate is used to identify an end entity in a more secure way than a username and password. Once the client host certificate is generated, see SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1815 for more information about using the certificate.

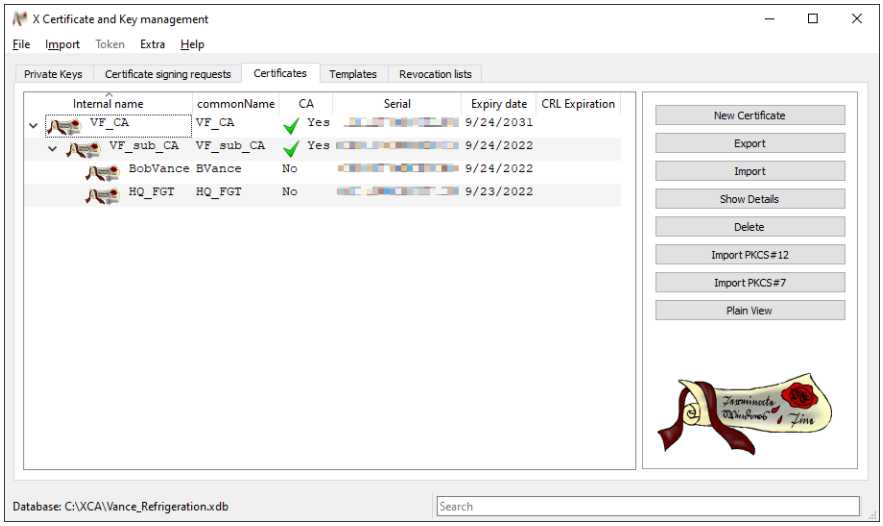
To create a client host certificate:

1. Click the *Certificates* tab, then click *New Certificate*.
2. Edit the *Source* tab:
   a. In the *Signing* section, select *Use this Certificate for signing* and select the CA or subordinate CA.
   b. Set *Template for the new certificate* to *[default] TLS_client*.
   c. Click *Apply extensions*.
3. Edit the *Subject* tab:
   a. Enter an *Internal Name* to reference this certificate within XCA.
   b. Enter the distinguished name fields as needed.

c. Click *Generate a new key*.



4. Click *OK*.
5. Click the *Certificates* tab. The FortiGate and client certificates are listed under the signing CA certificate and are ready to be exported.



6. Select a certificate and click *Export*.
7. Enter the file name and select an export format.
8. Click *OK*.

Certificate formats

Certificate file formats indicate what is contained in the file, how it is formatted, and how it is encoded. See Uploading a certificate using the GUI on page 1050 for more information about which formats the FortiGate expects for a given certificate type.

Configuration scripts

Configuration scripts are text files that contain CLI command sequences. They can be created using a text editor or copied from a CLI console, either manually or using the *Record CLI Script* function.

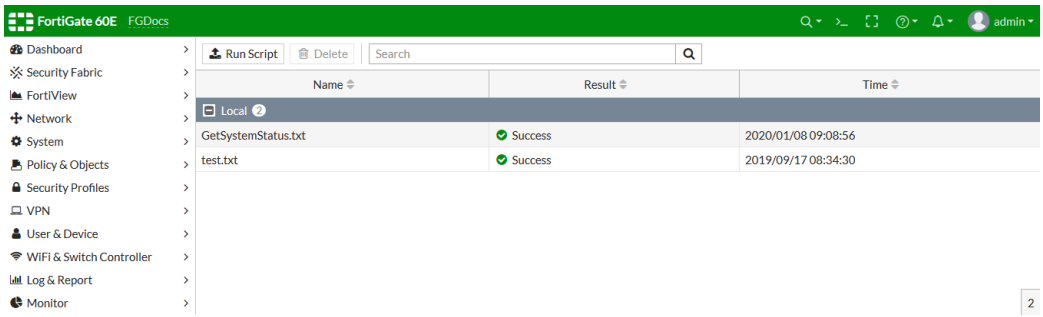
Scripts can be used to run the same task on multiple devices. For example, if your devices use the same security policies, you can enter or record the commands to create those policies in a script, and then run the script on each device. You could also create the policies in the GUI, and then copy and paste the CLI commands from the *CLI Console* using the *show* command.

If the FortiGate is managed by FortiManager, scripts can be uploaded to FortiManager and then run on any other FortiGates that are managed by that FortiManager. See Scripts in the FortiManager Administration Guide.

A comment line in a script starts with the number sign (#). Comments are not executed.

To run a script using the GUI:

1. Click on your username and select *Configuration* > *Scripts*.
2. Click *Run Script*.
3. Select the text file containing the script on your management computer, then click *OK*.
   The script runs immediately, and the *Script Execution History* table is updated, showing if the script ran successfully.



Workspace mode

Workspace mode allows administrators to make a batch of changes that are not implemented until the transaction is committed. Prior to committing, the changes can be reverted or edited as needed without impacting current operations.

When an object is edited in workspace mode it is locked, preventing other administrators from editing that object. A warning message will be shown to let the administrator know that the object is currently being configured in another transaction.

All administrators can use workspace mode; their permissions in workspace mode are the same as defined in their account profile.

A workspace mode transaction times out after five minutes if there is no activity. When a transaction times out, all changes are discarded. A warning message will be shown to let the administrator know that a timeout is imminent, or has already happened:

```
config transaction id=1 will expire in 30 seconds
config transaction id=1 will expire in 20 seconds
config transaction id=1 will expire in 10 seconds
config transaction id=1 has expired
```

The following commands are not changeable in a workspace transaction:

```
config system console
config system resource-limits
config system elbc
config system global
   set split-port
   set vdom-admin
   set management-vdom
   set wireless-mode
   set internal-switch-mode
end
config system settings
   set opmode
end
config system npu
config system np6
config system wireless
   set mode
end
config system vdom-property
config system storage
```

The `execute batch` command cannot be used in or to start workspace mode.

To use workspace mode:

1. Start workspace mode:
   ```
   execute config-transaction
   ```
   Once in workspace mode, the administrator can make configuration changes, all of which are made in a local CLI process that is not viewable by other processes.
2. Commit configuration changes:
   ```
   execute config-transaction commit
   ```
   After performing the commit, the changes are available for all other processes, and are also made in the kernel.
3. Abort configuration changes:
   ```
   execute config-transaction abort
   ```
   If changes are aborted, no changes are made to the current configuration or the kernel.

Diagnose commands

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-meta
```

Show config transaction meta information. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-meta
txn_next_id=8, txn_nr=2
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-info
```

Show config transaction information. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-info
current_jiffies=680372

txn_id=6, expire_jiffies=706104, clicmd_fpath='/dev/cmdb/txn/6_EiLl9G.conf'
txn_id=7, expire_jiffies=707427, clicmd_fpath='/dev/cmdb/txn/7_UXK6wY.conf'
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-entity
```

Show config transaction entity. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-entity
vd='global', cli-node-oid=37(system.vdom), txn_id=7. location: fileid=0, storeid=0,
     pgnr=0, pgidx=0
vd='global', cli-node-oid=46(system.interface), txn_id=7. location: fileid=3,
     storeid=0, pgnr=0, pgidx=0
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-lock
```

Show transaction lock status. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-lock
type=-1, refcnt=0, value=256, pid=128
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction status
```

Show the transaction status in the current CLI.

Custom languages

Custom languages can be uploaded and used for SSL VPN web portals. Custom languages must be enabled before they can be added in the GUI.

To enable custom languages:

```
config system global
    set gui-custom-language enable
end
```

To configure a custom language in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Custom Languages* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the name of the language.
3. Optionally, enter a comment.
4. Click *Upload* and upload the language JSON file from your management computer.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure a language in an SSL VPN web portal in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals*.
2. Edit an existing portal, or click *Create New* to create a new one.

3. Enable *Web Mode*, then select the language from the *Language* field.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure a custom language in the CLI:

```
config system custom-language
    edit <language>
        set filename <file>
    next
end
```

To configure a language in an SSL VPN web portal in the GUI:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit <portal>
        set web-mode enable
        set custom-lang <language>
    next
end
```

RAID

Most FortiGate devices with multiple disk drives (SSD or HHD) can be configured to use RAID.



Enabling or disabling RAID, and changing the RAID level, erases all data on the log disk and reboots the device.

To verify that the FortiGate has multiple disks:

- List disk devices and partitions:

```
# execute disk list

Disk SSD1 ref: 255 223.6GiB type: SSD [ATA INTEL SSDSC2KB24] dev: /dev/sda
  partition ref: 1 220.1GiB, 219.0GiB free mounted: Y label: LOGUSEDXA707476A dev:
/dev/sda1 start: 2048

Disk SSD2 ref: 16 223.6GiB type: SSD [ATA INTEL SSDSC2KB24] dev: /dev/sdb
  partition ref: 17 62.7GiB, 62.4GiB free mounted: Y label: WANOPTXX1FEBBFA1 dev:
/dev/sdb1 start: 2048
  partition ref: 18 63.7GiB, 63.7GiB free mounted: N label: dev: /dev/sdb2 start:
133625856
  partition ref: 19 85.0GiB, 85.0GiB free mounted: N label: dev: /dev/sdb3 start:
267249664
```

- Display information about all of the disks:

```
# diagnose hardware deviceinfo disk

Disk SSD1 ref: 255 223.6GiB type: SSD [ATA INTEL SSDSC2KB24] dev: /dev/sda
```

```
  partition ref: 1 220.1GiB, 219.0GiB free mounted: Y label: LOGUSEDXA707476A dev:
/dev/sda1 start: 2048

Disk SSD2 ref: 16 223.6GiB type: SSD [ATA INTEL SSDSC2KB24] dev: /dev/sdb
  partition ref: 17 62.7GiB, 62.4GiB free mounted: Y label: WANOPTXX1FEBBFA1 dev:
/dev/sdb1 start: 2048
  partition ref: 18 63.7GiB, 63.7GiB free mounted: N label: dev: /dev/sdb2 start:
133625856
  partition ref: 19 85.0GiB, 85.0GiB free mounted: N label: dev: /dev/sdb3 start:
267249664

Disk SYSTEM(boot) 14.9GiB type: SSD [ATA 16GB SATA Flash] dev: /dev/sdc
  partition 247.0MiB, 155.0MiB free mounted: N label: dev: /dev/sdc1(boot) start: 1
  partition 247.0MiB, 154.0MiB free mounted: Y label: dev: /dev/sdc2(boot) start: 524289
  partition ref: 35 14.2GiB, 14.0GiB free mounted: Y label: dev: /dev/sdc3 start:
1048577

Disk USB-6(user-usb) ref: 48 28.6GiB type: USB [SanDisk Ultra] dev: /dev/sdd
<<<<<<===this info for usb disk because i have usb disk on FGT301E
  partition ref: 49 28.6GiB, 28.6GiB free mounted: Y label: dev: /dev/sdd1 start: 0

Total available disks: 4
Max SSD disks: 2 Available storage disks: 2
```

To check the RAID status:

- RAID enabled:

```
# execute disk raid status
RAID Level: Raid-1
RAID Status: OK (Background-Synchronizing) (9%)
RAID Size: 239GB

Disk 1: OK Used 228GB
Disk 2: OK Used 228GB
```

- RAID disabled:

```
# execute disk raid status
RAID Level: Unavailable
RAID Status: Unavailable
RAID Size: 0GB

Disk 1: OK Not-Used 228GB
Disk 2: OK Not-Used 228GB
```

To enable RAID:

```
# execute disk raid enable
This will erase all data on the log disk, and system will reboot!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y

Dependent storage SSD2 removed.
Dependent storage SSD1 removed.
Raid-0 created with 2 disks.

Performing raid on the requested disk(s) and rebooting, please wait.. .
```

```
Configuring raid...
- unmounting /data2 : ok
- unmounting /var/log : ok
- unmounting /usb : ok
- unmounting /var/storage/SSD2-WANOPTXX0EA0EF17 : ok

Formatting the disk...
- unmounting /usb : ok
Formatting /dev/md0 ... done

The system is going down NOW !!

Please stand by while rebooting the system.
Restarting system.
```

To rebuild the RAID:

```
# execute disk raid rebuild
```

To rebuild the RAID to another level:

1. Check the supported RAID levels:

   ```
   # execute disk raid rebuild-level
   <RAID level> supported: Raid-0, Raid-1
   ```

2. Rebuild the RAID to the required level:

   ```
   # execute disk raid rebuild-level Raid-1
   This will erase all data on the log disk, and system will reboot!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)y

   Dependent storage RAID removed.
   Raid-1 created with 2 disks.

   Performing raid on the requested disk(s) and rebooting, please wait...

   Configuring raid...
   - unmounting /data2 : ok
   - unmounting /var/log : ok
   - unmounting /usb : ok

   Formatting the disk...
   - unmounting /usb : ok
   Formatting /dev/md0 ... done


   The system is going down NOW !!

   Please stand by while rebooting the system.
   Restarting system.
   ```

To disable RAID:

```
# execute disk raid disable
This will erase all data on the log disk, and system will reboot!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y

Dependent storage RAID removed.

Performing format on the requested disk(s) and rebooting, please wait...

Configuring raid...
- unmounting /data2 : ok
- unmounting /var/log : ok
- unmounting /usb : ok

Formatting the disk...
Partitioning and formatting /dev/sda label LOGUSEDX3D36836D ... done
Partitioning and formatting /dev/sdb label WANOPTXX1FEBBFA1 ...
Sending request for partno=0 start=2048 stop=133624230
Sending request for partno=1 start=133625856 stop=267248460
Sending request for partno=2 start=267249664 stop=445414150
done

The system is going down NOW !!

Please stand by while rebooting the system.
Restarting system.
FortiGate-301E (11:11-04.30.2018)
.
Reading boot image 3017355 bytes.
Initializing firewall...
System is starting...
```

Conserve mode

Each FortiGate model has a specific amount of memory that is shared by all operations. If most or all of that memory is in use, system operations can be affected in unexpected ways. To control how FortiOS functions when the available memory is very low, FortiOS enters conserve mode. This causes functions, such as antivirus scanning, to change how they operate to reduce the functionality and conserve memory without compromising security.

Three memory thresholds can be configured:

```
config system global
    set memory-use-threshold-extreme <integer>
    set memory-use-threshold-green <integer>
    set memory-use-threshold-red <integer>
end
```

`memory-use-threshold-extreme <integer>`	The threshold at which memory usage is considered extreme and new sessions are dropped, in percent of total RAM (70 - 97, default = 95).

`memory-use-threshold-green <integer>`	The threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to leave conserve mode, in percent of total RAM (70 - 97, default = 82).
`memory-use-threshold-red <integer>`	The threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to enter conserve mode, in percent of total RAM (70 - 97, default = 88).

Proxy inspection in conserve mode

The FortiGate's proxy-based inspection behavior while in conserve mode is configured with the antivirus failopen command.

```
config system global
    set av-failopen {pass | off | one-shot}
end
```

`pass`	This is the default settings. Bypass the antivirus proxy and allow traffic to continue to its destination. Because traffic bypasses the proxy, security profiles that require the antivirus proxy are also bypassed. Security profiles that do not use the antivirus proxy continue to function normally. Use this setting when access is more important than security while the issue is resolved.
`off`	Force the FortiGate to stop all traffic that uses the antivirus proxy. New sessions are blocked, but active sessions continue to be processed normally unless they request more memory and are then terminated. If a security policy is configured to use antivirus scanning, then the traffic that it permits is blocked while in conserve mode. So, a policy with only IPS scanning enabled will continue normally, but a policy with both IPS and antivirus scanning is blocked because antivirus scanning requires the antivirus proxy. Use this setting when security is more important than access while the issue is resolved.
`one-shot`	Continue to bypass the antivirus proxy after the FortiGate is out of conserve mode, until the failopen setting is changed or the FortiGate is restarted.

Flow inspection in conserve mode

The FortiGate's flow-based inspection behavior while in conserve mode is configured with the IPS failopen command.

```
config ips global
    set fail-open {enable | disable}
end
```

- When disabled (default), the IPS engine drops all new sessions that require flow-based inspection.
- When enabled, the IPS engine does not perform any scans and allows new packets.

Diagnostics

When in conserve mode, FortiOS generates conserve mode log messages and SNMP traps, and a conserve mode banner is shown in the GUI.



To view current information about memory conservation status:

```
# diagnose hardware sysinfo conserve
memory conserve mode:                          on
total RAM:                                        997 MB
memory used:                                      735 MB   73% of total RAM
memory freeable:                                  173 MB   17% of total RAM
memory used + freeable threshold extreme:         947 MB   95% of total RAM
memory used threshold red:                        877 MB   88% of total RAM
memory used threshold green:                      817 MB   82% of total RAM
```

To view logs:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *System Events* in the GUI.
2. If historical FortiView is enabled, select the *Logs* tab.
3. If the GUI is unresponsive due to high memory usage, making the logs inaccessible, they can be viewed in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category 1
# execute log display

1: date=2022-11-02 time=16:58:37 eventtime=1667433517502192693 tz="-0700"
logid="0100022011" type="event" subtype="system" level="critical" vd="root"
logdesc="Memory conserve mode entered" service="kernel" conserve="on" total=997 MB
used=707 MB red="877 MB" green="698 MB" msg="Kernel enters memory conserve mode
```

To view the crash log in the CLI:

```
# diagnose debug crashlog read

1: 2022-10-27 14:22:36 service=kernel conserve=on total="997 MB" used="720 MB" red="877 MB"
2: 2022-10-27 14:22:36 green="817 MB" msg="Kernel enters memory conserve mode"
```

Using APIs

Administrators can use API calls to a FortiGate to:

- Retrieve, create, update, and delete configuration settings
- Retrieve system logs and statistics
- Perform basic administrative actions, such as a reboot or shut down through programming scripts.

Token-based authentication

There are two types of authentication used to make API calls on the FortiGate: session-based and token-based.

Token-based authentication requires the administrator to generate a token, which is then included in each API request for authentication. A token is automatically generated when a new API administrator is created in FortiOS.



Once the API administrator is created and the token displays, there is no way for the FortiGate to provide this token again. Ensure you record the token, and store it in a safe location; otherwise, you will have to generate a new token.

Creating the API administrator and generating the API token

When creating an API administrator, it is best practice to provide this account (and the associated token) with the minimum permissions required to complete the function. For example, if you only plan to use API calls to retrieve statistics or information from the FortiGate, the account should have read permissions.



The API administrator account used in this topic's examples has full permissions strictly to illustrate various call types and does not adhere to the preceding recommendation.

See REST API administrator on page 876 for detailed steps to create a REST API administrator.

Making an API call to retrieve information from the FortiGate

The newly created API token is used to query the FortiGate for all firewall addresses. Many applications can be used for this query, and this example uses a web browser to demonstrate the functionality.

General API call

One of the simplest API calls is `api/v2/cmdb/firewall/address`, which returns all information about all firewall addresses.

To make a general API call:

1. Open the web browser.
2. In the address bar, enter `https://<FortiGate_address>/api/v2/cmdb/firewall/address/?access_token=<API_token>`.
3. The browser displays the output similar to the following (output shortened for brevity):

```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "revision":"124.0.206.9538334086041268915.1559577065",
  "results":[
    {
      "q_origin_key":"AD-Server",
      "name":"AD-Server",
      "uuid":"********-****-****-****-************",
      "subnet":"10.100.77.240 255.255.255.255",
      "type":"ipmask",
      "start-mac":"00:00:00:00:00:00",
      "end-mac":"00:00:00:00:00:00",
      "start-ip":"10.100.77.240",
      "end-ip":"255.255.255.255",
```

```
      "fqdn":"",
      "country":"",
      "wildcard-fqdn":"",
      "cache-ttl":0,
      "wildcard":"10.100.99.240 255.255.255.255",
      "sdn":"",
      "interface":"",
      "tenant":"",
      "organization":"",
      "epg-name":"",
      "subnet-name":"",
      "sdn-tag":"",
      "policy-group":"",
      "comment":"",
      "visibility":"enable",
      "associated-interface":"",
      "color":0,
      "filter":"",
      "sdn-addr-type":"private",
      "obj-id":"",
      "list":[
      ],
      "tagging":[
      ],
      "allow-routing":"disable"
    },
    {
      "q_origin_key":"AWS-us-east-1a",
      "name":"AWS-us-east-1a",
      "uuid":"********-****-****-****-************",
```


Formatting an API call

Since a general API call for address objects returns a large amount of information, it may be beneficial to format the API call to display certain information using the `format` parameter. In this example, the `format` parameter is used to display the name and comment for each firewall address.

To use the format parameter in an API call:

1. Open the web browser.
2. In the address bar, enter `https://<FortiGate_address>/api/v2/cmdb/firewall/address/?access_token=<API_token>&format=name|comment`.
3. The browser displays the output similar to the following:


```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "revision":"160.0.206.9538334086041268915.1559577065",
  "results":[
    {
      "q_origin_key":"AD-Server",
      "name":"AD-Server",
      "comment":""
    },
```

```
    {
      "q_origin_key":"AWS-us-east-1a",
      "name":"AWS-us-east-1a",
      "comment":""
    },
    {
      "q_origin_key":"AWS-us-east-1b",
      "name":"AWS-us-east-1b",
      "comment":""
    },
```


Filtering an API call

The filter parameter can be used to specify a field and a keyword to limit what results match and are returned by a call. In this example, the preceding call is used with a filter to return only names and comments for address objects with the word `Sales` in the name.

To use the filter parameter in an API call:

1. Open the web browser.
2. In the address bar, enter `https://<FortiGate_address>/api/v2/cmdb/firewall/address/?access_token=<API_token>&format=name|comment`**`&filter=name=@Sales`**.
3. The browser displays the output similar to the following:


```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "revision":"196.0.206.9538334086041268915.1559577065",
  "results":[
    {
      "q_origin_key":"Sales Network",
      "name":"Sales Network",
      "comment":""
    },
    {
      "q_origin_key":"Sales-Portal",
      "name":"Sales-Portal",
      "comment":""
    }
  ],
  "vdom":"root",
  "path":"firewall",
  "name":"address",
  "status":"success",
  "http_status":200,
  "serial":"****************",
  "version":"v6.2.0",
  "build":866
}
```


For a complete list of API calls, see the Fortinet Development Network (FNDN). A subscription is required to access the FNDN.

Policy and Objects

This section contains topics on configuring policies and traffic shaping:

- Policies on page 1090
- Address objects on page 1173
- Protocol options on page 1206
- Traffic shaping on page 1208
- Internet Service on page 1257

Policies

The firewall policy is the axis around which most features of the FortiGate revolve. Many firewall settings end up relating to or being associated with the firewall policies and the traffic they govern. Any traffic going through a FortiGate has to be associated with a policy. These policies are essentially discrete compartmentalized sets of instructions that control the traffic flow going through the firewall. These instructions control where the traffic goes, how it is processed, if it is processed, and whether or not it is allowed to pass through the FortiGate.

When the firewall receives a connection packet, it analyzes the source address, destination address, and service (by port number). It also registers the incoming interface, the outgoing interface it needs to use, and the time of day. Using this information, the FortiGate firewall attempts to locate a security policy that matches the packet. If a policy matches the parameters, then the FortiGate takes the required action for that policy. If it is *Accept*, the traffic is allowed to proceed to the next step. If the action is *Deny* or a match cannot be found, the traffic is not allowed to proceed.

The two basic actions at the initial connection are either *Accept* or *Deny*:

- If the action is *Accept*, the policy permits communication sessions. There may be other packet processing instructions, such as requiring authentication to use the policy or restrictions on the source and destination of the traffic.
- If the action is *Deny*, the policy blocks communication sessions, and you can optionally log the denied traffic. If no security policy matches the traffic, the packets are dropped. A *Deny* security policy is needed when it is required to log the denied traffic, also called *violation traffic*.

One other action can be associated with the policy:

- *IPsec*: this is an *Accept* action that is specifically for IPsec VPNs.



Each field in a firewall policy that accepts multiple inputs, such as srcaddr and dstaddr, can accept as many inputs as there are unique objects created. The maximum number of objects depends on the model. See the Maximum Value Table for more details.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies:

- Firewall policy parameters on page 1091
- Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW on page 1092
- NGFW policy mode application default service on page 1096
- Application logging in NGFW policy mode on page 1098

- Policy views and policy lookup on page 1099
- Policy with source NAT on page 1101
- Policy with destination NAT on page 1117
- Internet Service on page 1257
- NAT64 policy and DNS64 (DNS proxy) on page 1133
- NAT46 policy on page 1137
- Local-in policies on page 1140
- DoS protection on page 1141
- Access control lists on page 1149
- Mirroring SSL traffic in policies on page 1150
- Inspection mode per policy on page 1152
- OSPFv3 neighbor authentication on page 1155
- Firewall anti-replay option per policy on page 1157
- Enabling advanced policy options in the GUI on page 1157
- Recognize anycast addresses in geo-IP blocking on page 1158
- Matching GeoIP by registered and physical location on page 1159
- Authentication policy extensions on page 1161
- HTTP to HTTPS redirect for load balancing on page 1162
- Use active directory objects directly in policies on page 1163
- FortiGate Cloud / FDN communication through an explicit proxy on page 1167
- No session timeout on page 1168
- MAP-E support on page 1170

Firewall policy parameters

For traffic to flow through the FortiGate firewall, there must be a policy that matches its parameters:

- Incoming interface(s)
- Outgoing interface(s)
- Source address(es)
- User(s) identity
- Destination address(es)
- Internet service(s)
- Schedule
- Service

Without all six (possibly eight) of these things matching, the traffic is declined.

Traffic flow initiated from each direction requires a policy, that is, if sessions can be initiated from both directions, each direction requires a policy.

Just because packets can go from point A to point B on port X does not mean that the traffic can flow from point B to point A on port X. A policy must be configured for each direction.

When designing a policy, there is often reference to the traffic flow, but most communication is two-way so trying to determine the direction of the flow might be confusing. If traffic is HTTP web traffic, the user sends a request to the website, but most of the traffic flow will be coming from the website to the user or in both directions? For the purposes of determining the direction for a policy, the important factor is the direction of the initiating communication. The user is

sending a request to the website, so this is the initial communication; the website is responding so the traffic is from the user's network to the Internet.



FortiOS does not perform a reverse-path check on reply traffic that matches an allowed session based on the IP tuple. The request traffic can be sent on one interface and the reply traffic could return on another interface.

Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW

Profile-based next-generation firewall (NGFW) mode is the traditional mode where you create a profile (antivirus, web filter, and so on) and then apply the profile to a policy.

In policy-based NGFW mode, you allow applications and URL categories to be used directly in security policies, without requiring web filter or application control profiles.

In policy-based mode:

- Central NAT is always enabled. If no Central SNAT policy exists, you must create one. See Central SNAT on page 1108 for more information.
- Pre-match rules are defined separately from security policies, and define broader rules, such as SSL inspection and user authentication.
- The IPsec wizard is not supported.

If your FortiGate operates in NAT mode, rather than enabling source NAT in individual NGFW policies, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Central SNAT* and add source NAT policies that apply to all matching traffic. In many cases, you may only need one SNAT policy for each interface pair.

The NGFW mode is set per VDOM, and it is only available when the VDOM inspection mode is flow-based. You can operate your entire FortiGate or individual VDOMs in NGFW policy mode.

Enabling policy-based NGFW mode

To enable policy-based NGFW mode without VDOMs in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In *NGFW Mode*, select *Policy-based*.
3. Click *Apply*.

To enable policy-based NGFW mode with VDOMs in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *VDOM* .
2. Double-click a VDOM to edit the settings.
3. In *NGFW Mode*, select *Policy-based*.
4. Click *OK*.

To enable policy-based NGFW mode without VDOMs in the CLI:

```
config system settings
    set ngfw-mode policy-based
end
```

To enable policy-based NGFW mode with VDOMs in the CLI:

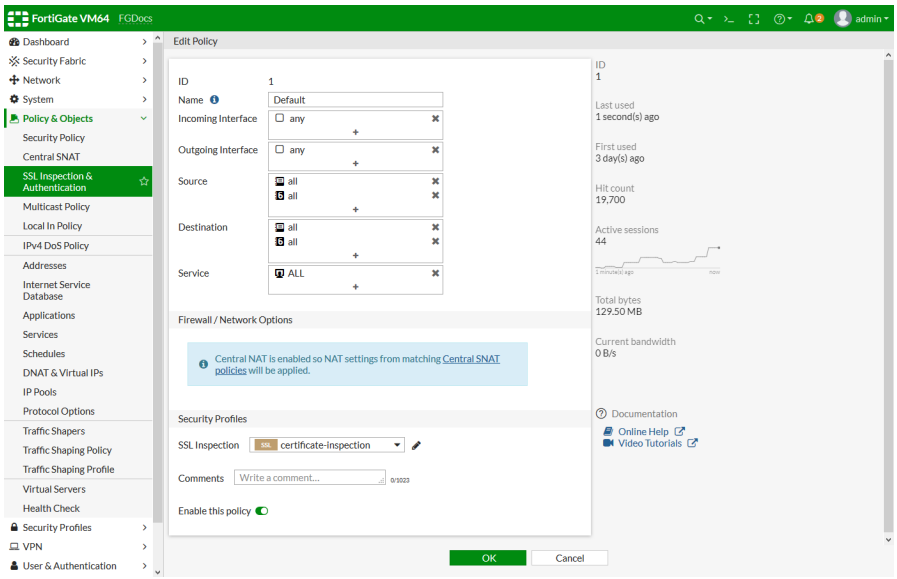
```
config vdom
    edit <vdom>
        config system settings
            set ngfw-mode policy-based
        end
    next
end
```

Security and SSL Inspection & Authentication policies

Security policies work with SSL Inspection & Authentication policies to inspect traffic. To allow traffic from a specific user or user group, both Security and SSL Inspection & Authentication policies must be configured. A default SSL Inspection & Authentication policy with the certificate-inspection SSL Inspection profile is preconfigured. Traffic will match the SSL Inspection & Authentication policy first. If the traffic is allowed, packets are sent to the IPS engine for application, URL category, user, and user group match, and then, if enabled, UTM inspection (antivirus, IPS, DLP, and email filter) is performed.

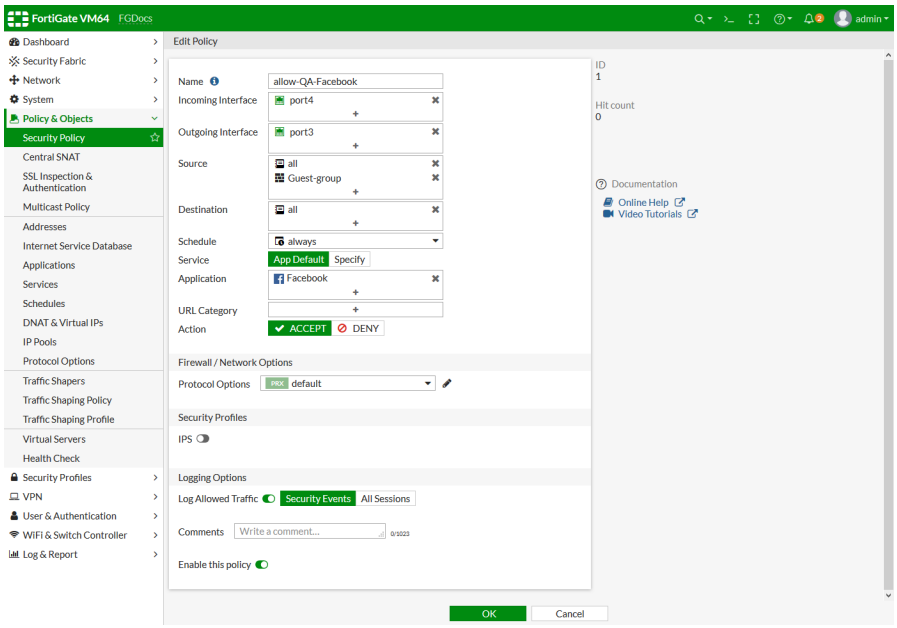
SSL Inspection & Authentication policies are used to pre-match traffic before sending the packets to the IPS engine:

- There are no schedule or action options; traffic matching the policy is always redirected to the IPS engine.
- SSL inspection, formerly configured in the VDOM settings, is configured in an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy.
- Users and user groups that require authentication must be configured in an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy.



Security policies work with SSL Inspection & Authentication policies to inspect traffic:

- Applications and URL categories can be configured directly in the policy.
- Users and user groups that require authentication must also be configured in a security policy.
- The available actions are *Accept* or *Deny*.
- The *Service* option can be used to enforce the standard port for the selected applications. See NGFW policy mode application default service on page 1096 for details.
- UTM inspection is configured in a security policy.



To configure policies for Facebook and Gmail access in the CLI:

1. Configure an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Policy-1"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "port17"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "new-deep-inspection"
        set groups "Dev" "HR" "QA" "SYS"
    next
end
```

2. Configure security policies:

```
config firewall security-policy
    edit 2
        set name "allow-QA-Facebook"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "port17"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set application 15832
        set groups "Dev" "QA"
    next
    edit 4
        set name "allow-QA-Email"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "port17"
```

```
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set url-category 23
            set groups "QA"
        next
    end
```

Logs

In the application control and web filter logs, `securityid` maps to the security policy ID.

Application control log:

```
date=2019-06-17 time=16:35:47 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560814547702405829 tz="-0700"
appid=15832 user="Jack" group="QA" srcip=10.1.100.102 dstip=157.240.3.29 srcport=56572
dstport=443 srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port17"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="P2P" direction="incoming" policyid=1
sessionid=42445 appcat="Social.Media" app="Facebook" action="pass" hostname="external-sea1-
1.xx.fbcdn.net" incidentserialno=1419629662 url="/" securityid=2 msg="Social.Media:
Facebook," apprisk="medium" scertcname="*.facebook.com" scertissuer="DigiCert SHA2 High
Assurance Server CA"
```

Web filter log:

```
date=2019-06-17 time=16:42:41 logid="0317013312" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_allow" level="notice" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560814961418114836 tz="-0700"
policyid=4 sessionid=43201 user="Jack" group="QA" srcip=10.1.100.102 srcport=56668
srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.3.165 dstport=443 dstintf="port17"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="HTTPS" hostname="mail.google.com"
action="passthrough" reqtype="direct" url="/" sentbyte=709 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing"
msg="URL belongs to an allowed category in policy" method="domain" cat=23 catdesc="Web-based
Email" securityid=4
```

Traffic logs:

```
date=2019-06-17 time=16:35:53 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560814553778525154 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.102
srcport=56572 srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=157.240.3.29 dstport=443
dstintf="port17" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="b740d418-8ed3-51e9-5a7b-114e99ab6370"
sessionid=42445 proto=6 action="server-rst" user="Jack" group="QA" policyid=1
policytype="consolidated" centralnatid=1 service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United States"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=56572 duration=6
sentbyte=276 rcvdbyte=745 sentpkt=5 rcvdpkt=11 appid=15832 app="Facebook"
appcat="Social.Media" apprisk="medium" utmaction="allow" countapp=1 utmref=65531-294

2: date=2019-06-17 time=16:47:45 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560815265058557636 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.102
srcport=56668 srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.3.165 dstport=443
dstintf="port17" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="b740d418-8ed3-51e9-5a7b-114e99ab6370"
sessionid=43201 proto=6 action="timeout" user="Jack" group="QA" policyid=1
policytype="consolidated" centralnatid=1 service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United States"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=56668 duration=303
sentbyte=406 rcvdbyte=384 sentpkt=4 rcvdpkt=4 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="allow"
countweb=1 utmref=65531-3486
```

Other NGFW policy-based mode options

You can combine *Application Control* and *Web Filter* in the same NGFW mode policy.

The following security profiles can be used in NGFW policy-based mode:

- AntiVirus
- Web Filter
- Intrusion Prevention
- File Filter
- Email Filter

Logging can also be enabled in security policies.

NGFW policy mode application default service

In NGFW policy-based mode, the application default service enforces applications running only on their default service port. The applications specified in the policy are monitored, and if traffic is detected from a nonstandard port, it is blocked, and a log entry is recorded with a *port-violation* event type.

If you are not using the default ports, and need to pick specific services, select *Specify* to select the required services.

Example

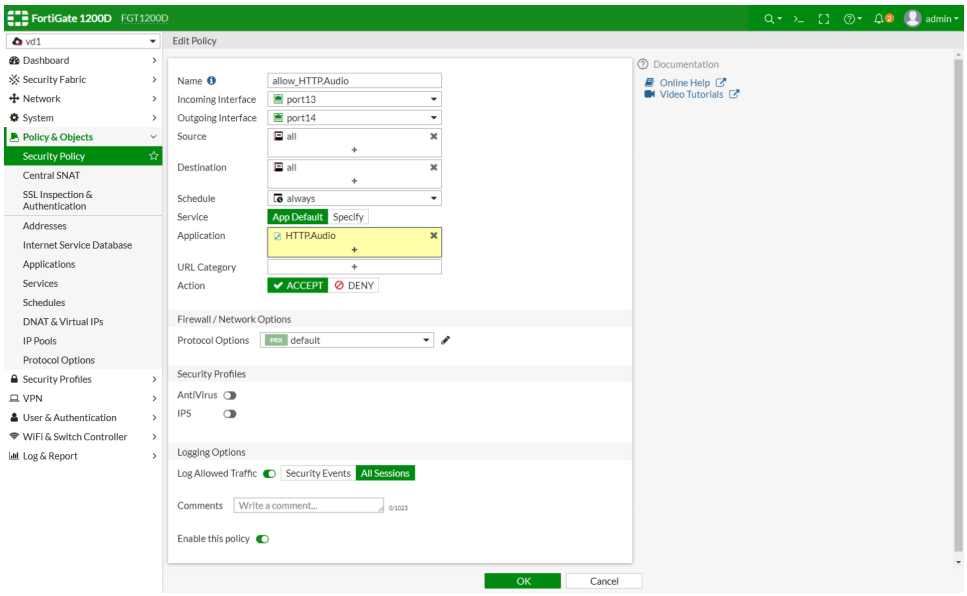
In this example, the standard port is enforced for HTTPS traffic using the HTTP.Audio application.

First, an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy is created do to traffic pre-match, and then a security policy is created to allow the HTTP.Audio application when using the default port. Fetching an MP3 file from an HTTP server using port 443 is allowed, but is blocked when using a nonstandard port, such as 8443.

To enforce the HTTP.Audio application using the default port in the GUI:

1. Create a new SSL Inspection & Authentication policy, or use the default policy.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Security Policy*, and click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the policy, such as *allow_HTTP.Audio*.
4. Configure the ports as needed.
5. Set *Service* to *App Default*.
6. In the *Application* field, select *HTTP.Audio*.

7. Set the *Action* to *Accept*.



8. Click *OK*.

To enforce the HTTP.Audio application using the default port in the CLI:

1. Create a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "consolidated_all"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "port14"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "new-deep-inspection"
    next
end
```

2. Create a security policy:

```
config firewall security-policy
    edit 1
        set name "allow_HTTP.Audio"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "port14"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set enforce-default-app-port enable
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set application 15879
    next
end
```

Logs

The application logs show logs with an event type of `port-violation` for traffic on port 8443 that is blocked, and an event type of `signature` for traffic on port 443 that is allowed.

Blocked:

```
2: date=2019-06-18 time=16:15:40 logid="1060028736" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="port-violation" level="warning" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560899740218875746 tz="-0700"
appid=15879 srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=172.16.200.216 srcport=52680 dstport=8443
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTPS" direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=5041 appcat="Video/Audio"
app="HTTP.Audio" action="block" hostname="172.16.200.216" incidentserialno=1906780850
url="/app_data/story.mp3" securityid=2 msg="Video/Audio: HTTP.Audio," apprisk="elevated"
```

Allowed:

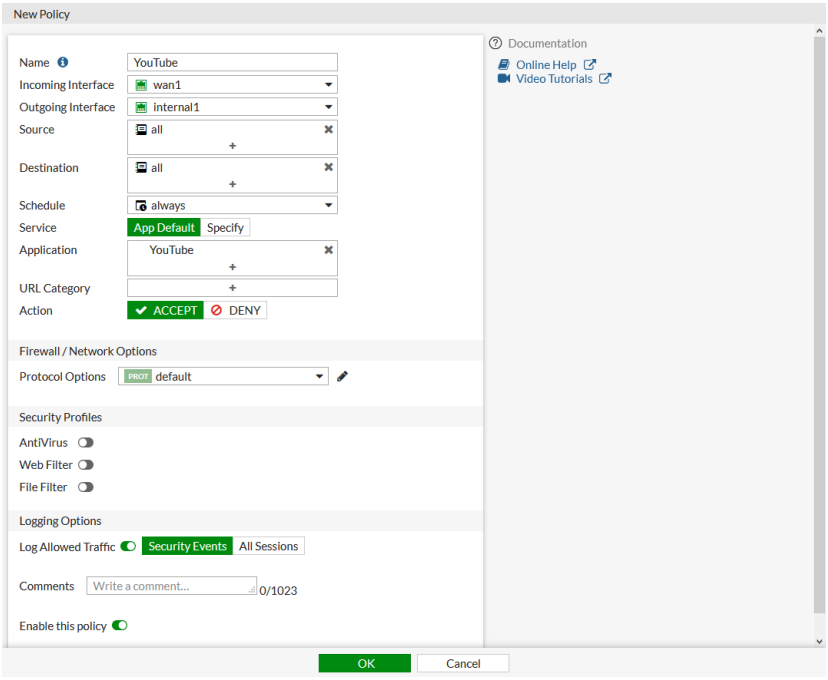
```
1: date=2019-06-18 time=16:15:49 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560899749258579372 tz="-0700"
appid=15879 srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=172.16.200.216 srcport=54527 dstport=443
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTPS" direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=5064 appcat="Video/Audio"
app="HTTP.Audio" action="pass" hostname="172.16.200.216" incidentserialno=1139663486
url="/app_data/story.mp3" securityid=2 msg="Video/Audio: HTTP.Audio," apprisk="elevated"
```

Application logging in NGFW policy mode

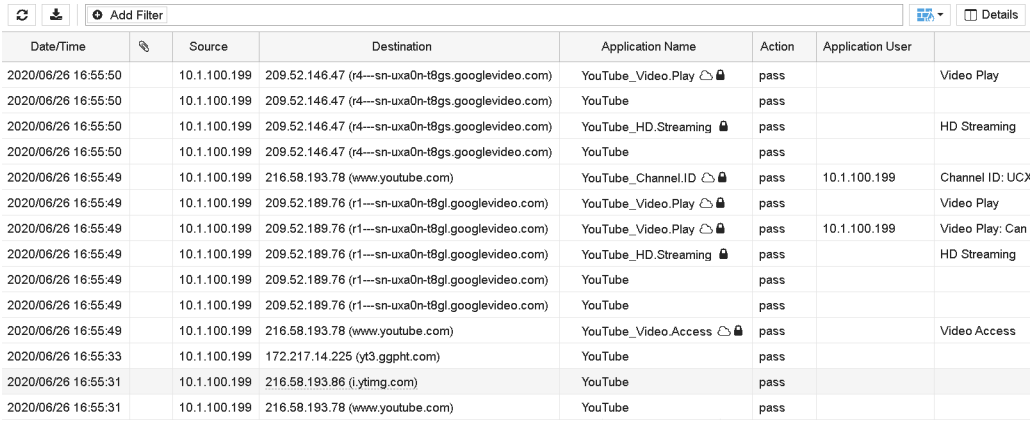
In NGFW policy mode, if an application, application category, or application group is selected on a security policy, and traffic logging is set to *UTM* or *All*, then application control logs will be generated. In addition, when a signature is set to the *ACCEPT* action under a security policy, all corresponding child signatures will be assessed and logged as well.

To verify application logging:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Security Policy* and configure a new policy for YouTube.
2. Set *Action* to *ACCEPT* and *Log Allowed Traffic* to *Security Events*.



3. Configure the remaining settings as required, then click *OK*.
4. On a client system, play some YouTube videos.
5. On FortiOS, go to *Log & Report* > *Application Control* and view the logs.
   There are logs not only for *YouTube*, but also for *YouTube_Video.Play*, *YouTube_Video.Access*, and so on, as verified from the *Application Name* column.



Date/Time		Source	Destination	Application Name	Action	Application User	
2020/06/26 16:55:50		10.1.100.199	209.52.146.47 (r4---sn-uxa0n-t8gs.googlevideo.com)	YouTube_Video.Play	pass		Video Play
2020/06/26 16:55:50		10.1.100.199	209.52.146.47 (r4---sn-uxa0n-t8gs.googlevideo.com)	YouTube	pass		
2020/06/26 16:55:50		10.1.100.199	209.52.146.47 (r4---sn-uxa0n-t8gs.googlevideo.com)	YouTube_HD.Streaming	pass		HD Streaming
2020/06/26 16:55:50		10.1.100.199	209.52.146.47 (r4---sn-uxa0n-t8gs.googlevideo.com)	YouTube	pass		
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	216.58.193.78 (www.youtube.com)	YouTube_Channel.ID	pass	10.1.100.199	Channel ID: UCX
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	209.52.189.76 (r1---sn-uxa0n-t8gl.googlevideo.com)	YouTube_Video.Play	pass		Video Play
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	209.52.189.76 (r1---sn-uxa0n-t8gl.googlevideo.com)	YouTube_Video.Play	pass	10.1.100.199	Video Play: Can
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	209.52.189.76 (r1---sn-uxa0n-t8gl.googlevideo.com)	YouTube_HD.Streaming	pass		HD Streaming
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	209.52.189.76 (r1---sn-uxa0n-t8gl.googlevideo.com)	YouTube	pass		
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	209.52.189.76 (r1---sn-uxa0n-t8gl.googlevideo.com)	YouTube	pass		
2020/06/26 16:55:49		10.1.100.199	216.58.193.78 (www.youtube.com)	YouTube_Video.Access	pass		Video Access
2020/06/26 16:55:33		10.1.100.199	172.217.14.225 (yt3.ggpht.com)	YouTube	pass		
2020/06/26 16:55:31		10.1.100.199	216.58.193.86 (i.ytimg.com)	YouTube	pass		
2020/06/26 16:55:31		10.1.100.199	216.58.193.78 (www.youtube.com)	YouTube	pass		

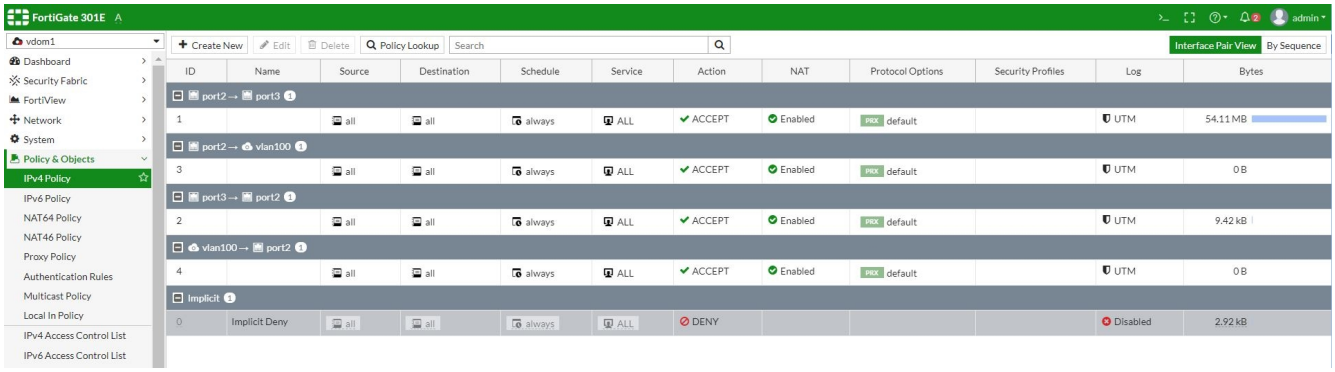
Policy views and policy lookup

This topic provides a sample of firewall policy views and firewall policy lookup.

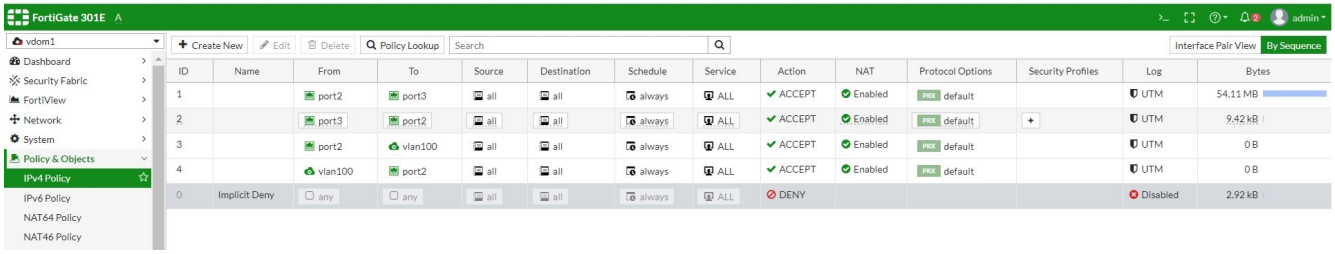
Policy views

In *Policy & Objects* policy list page, there are two policy views: *Interface Pair View* and *By Sequence* view.

Interface Pair View displays the policies in the order that they are checked for matching traffic, grouped by the pairs of Incoming and Outgoing interfaces. For example, all policies referencing traffic from WAN1 to DMZ are in one section. The policies referencing traffic from DMZ to WAN1 are in another section. The sections are collapsible so that you only need to look at the sections you want.



By Sequence displays policies in the order that they are checked for matching traffic without any grouping.



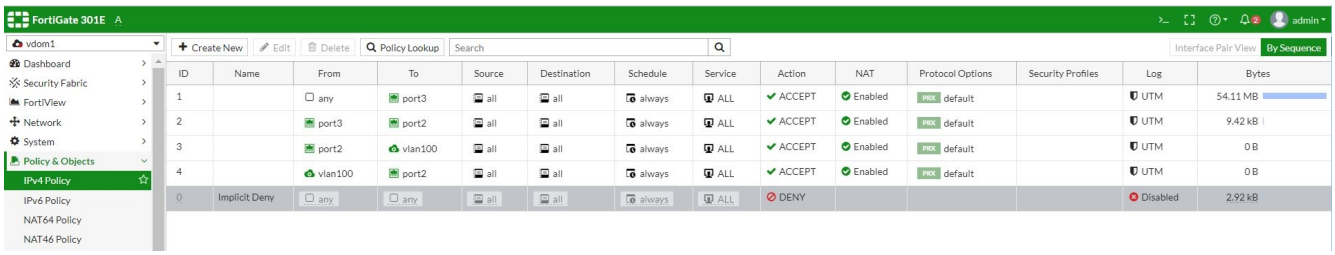
The default display is *Interface Pair View*. You can switch between the two views except if *any* or multiple-interfaces are applied in the policy.

How *Any* or multiple-interfaces policy can change the *Interface Pair View*

The FortiGate unit automatically changes the view on the policy list page to *By Sequence* whenever there is a policy containing *any* or multiple-interfaces as the *Source* or *Destination* interface. If the *Interface Pair View* is grayed out, it is likely that one or more policies have used the *any* or multiple-interfaces.

When you use the *any* or multiple-interfaces, the policy goes into multiple sections because it might be any one of a number of interface pairings. Policies are divided into sectioned using the interface pairings, for example, port1 to port2.

Each section has its own policy order. The order in which a policy is checked for matching criteria to a packet's information is based solely on the position of the policy within its section or within the entire list of policies. If the policy is in multiple sections, FortiGate cannot place the policy in order in multiple sections. Therefore the view can only be *By Sequence*.



Policy lookup

Firewall policy lookup is based on the `Source_interfaces/Protocol/Source_Address/Destination_Address` that matches the `source-port` and `dst-port` of the protocol. Use this tool to find out which policy matches specific traffic from a number of policies. After completing the lookup, the matching firewall policy is highlighted on the policy list page.

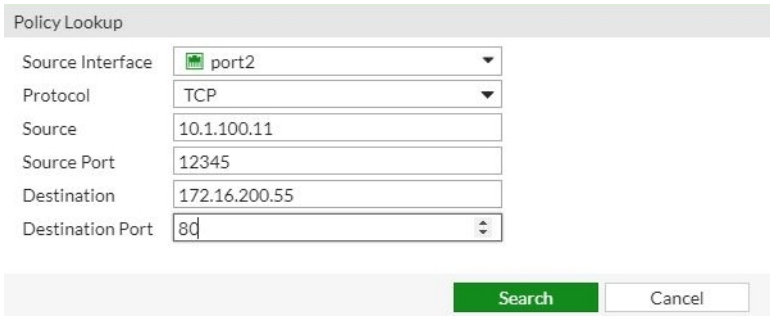
The Policy Lookup tool has the following requirements:

- Transparent mode does not support Policy lookup function.
- When executing the policy lookup, you need to confirm whether the relevant route required for the policy work already exists.

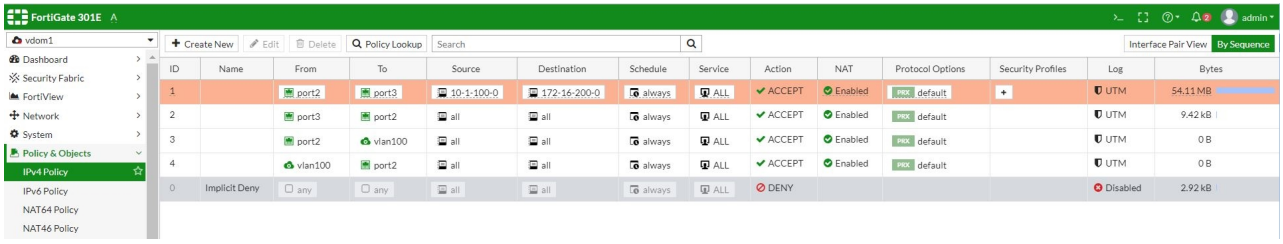
Sample configuration

This example uses the TCP protocol to show how policy lookup works:

1. In *Policy & Objects* policy list page, click *Policy Lookup* and enter the traffic parameters.



2. Click *Search* to display the policy lookup results.



Policy with source NAT

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies with source NAT:

- Static SNAT on page 1102
- Dynamic SNAT on page 1103
- Central SNAT on page 1108
- Configuring an IPv6 SNAT policy on page 1113
- SNAT policies with virtual wire pairs on page 1115

Static SNAT

Network Address Translation (NAT) is the process that enables a single device such as a router or firewall to act as an agent between the Internet or Public Network and a local or private network. This agent acts in real time to translate the source or destination IP address of a client or server on the network interface. For the source IP translation, this enables a single public address to represent a significantly larger number of private addresses. For the destination IP translation, the firewall can translate a public destination address to a private address. So we don't have to configure a real public IP address for the server deployed in a private network.

We can subdivide NAT into two types: source NAT (SNAT) and destination NAT (DNAT). This topic is about SNAT, We support three NAT working modes: static SNAT, dynamic SNAT, and central SNAT.

In static SNAT all internal IP addresses are always mapped to the same public IP address. This is a port address translation. Since we have 60416 available port numbers, this one public IP address can handle the conversion of 60,416 internal IP addresses to the same service, where a service is defined by a specified protocol, destination IP address, and destination port.

Internal Source IP	Source Port	Translated Source IP	Translated Source Port
10.1.100.1	11110	172.16.200.1	5117
10.1.100.1	11111	172.16.200.1	5118
10.1.100.2	11112	172.16.200.1	5119
.....	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
.....	.....	172.16.200.1	65533

FortiGate firewall configurations commonly use the Outgoing Interface address.

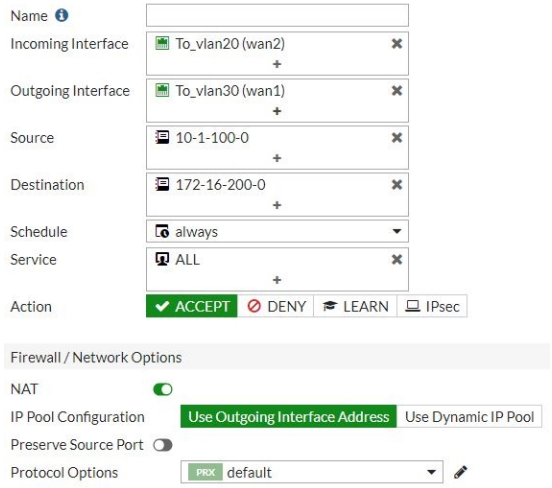
Sample configuration

The following example of static SNAT uses an internal network with subnet 10.1.100.0/24 (vlan20) and an external/ISP network with subnet 172.16.200.0/24 (vlan30).

When the clients in internal network need to access the servers in external network, We need to translate IP addresses from 10.1.100.0/24 to an IP address 172.16.200.0/24, In this example, we implement static SNAT by creating a firewall policy.

To configure static NAT:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, click *Create New*.
2. Enter the required policy parameters.
3. Enable *NAT* and select *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.
4. If needed, enable *Preserve Source Port*.
   Enable *Preserve Source Port* to keep the same source port for services that expect traffic to come from a specific source port.
   Disable *Preserve Source Port* to allow more than one connection through the firewall for that service.



For packets that match this policy, its source IP address is translated to the IP address of the outgoing interface.

Dynamic SNAT

Dynamic SNAT maps the private IP addresses to the first available public address from a pool of addresses. In the FortiGate firewall, this can be done by using IP pools. IP pools is a mechanism that allows sessions leaving the FortiGate firewall to use NAT. An IP pool defines a single IP address or a range of IP addresses to be used as the source address for the duration of the session. These assigned addresses are used instead of the IP address assigned to that FortiGate interface.

IP pool types

FortiGate uses four types of IPv4 IP pools. This topic focuses on some of the differences between them.

Overload

This type of IP pool is similar to static SNAT mode. We need to define an external IP range that contains one or more IP addresses. When there is only one IP address it is almost the same as static SNAT, the outgoing interface address is used. When it contains multiple IP addresses, it is equivalent to an extended mode of static SNAT.

For instance, if we define an overload type IP pool with two external IP addresses (172.16.200.1—172.16.200.2), since there are 60,416 available port numbers per IP, this IP pool can handle 60,416*2 internal IP addresses to the same service, where a service is defined by a specific protocol, destination IP address, and destination port.

Original Source IP	Original Source Port	Translated Source IP	Translated Source Port
10.1.100.1	11110	172.16.200.1	5117
10.1.100.2	11111	172.16.200.1	5118
.....	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
.....	.....	172.16.200.1	65533
.....	.....	172.16.200.2	5117
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	172.16.200.2	65533

The mapped IP address can be calculated from the source IP address. The index number of the address in the pool is the remainder of the source IP address, in decimal, divided by the number addresses in the pool.



To calculate the decimal value of the source IP address, either use an online calculator, or use the following equation:

$$a.b.c.d = a * (256)^3 + b * (256)^2 + c * (256) + d$$

For example:

$$192.168.0.1 = 192 * (256)^3 + 168 * (256)^2 + 0 * (256) + 1 = 3232235521$$

If there is one IP pool, where:

- P_1 = the first address in the IP pool
- R_1 = the number of IP addresses in the IP pool
- X = the source IP address as a decimal number
- Y = the mapped IP address

Then the equation to determine the mapped address is:

$$Y = P_1 + X \bmod R_1$$

For example:

IP pool	Source IP address
172.26.73.20 to 172.26.73.90	192.168.1.200

1. Convert the source IP address to a decimal number:
$$192 * (256)^3 + 168 * (256)^2 + 1 * (256) + 200 = 3232235976$$
2. Determine the number of IP addresses in the pool:
$$172.26.73.90 - 172.26.73.20 = 71$$
3. Find the remainder of the source IP address divided by the number of addresses in the pool:
$$3232235976 \bmod 71 = 26$$
4. Add the remainder to the first IP address in the pool:
$$172.26.73.20 + 26 = 172.26.73.46$$
So, the mapped IP address is **172.26.73.46**.

If there are multiple IP pools, the calculation is similar to when there is only one pool.

If there are two IP pools, where:

- P_1 = the first address in the first IP pool
- P_2 = the first address in the second IP pool
- R_1 = the number of IP addresses in the first IP pool
- R_2 = the number of IP addresses in the second IP pool
- X = the source IP address as a decimal number
- Y = the mapped IP address

Then the equations to determine the mapped address are:

$$\text{If } X \bmod (R_1 + R_2) >= R_1, \text{ then } Y = P_2 + X \bmod R_2$$

$$\text{If } X \bmod (R_1 + R_2) < R_1, \text{ then } Y = P_1 + X \bmod R_1$$

For example:

IP pools	Source IP address
pool01: 172.26.73.20 to 172.26.73.90	192.168.1.200
pool02: 172.26.75.50 to 172.26.75.150	

1. Convert the source IP address to a decimal number:
$$192 * (256)^3 + 168 * (256)^2 + 1 * (256) + 200 = 3232235976$$
2. Determine the total number of IP addresses in the pools:
$$(172.26.73.90 - 172.26.73.20) + (172.26.75.50 - 172.26.75.150) = 71 + 101 = 172$$
3. Find the remainder of the source IP address divided by the number of addresses in the pools:
$$3232235976 \bmod 172 = 108$$
4. The remainder is greater than the number of addresses in pool01, so the address is selected from pool02 and the remainder is recalculated based only on pool02:
$$3232235976 \bmod 101 = 40$$
5. Add the new remainder to the first IP address in pool02:
$$172.26.75.50 + 40 = 172.26.75.90$$
So, the mapped IP address is **172.26.75.90**.

One-to-one

This type of IP pool means that the internal IP address and the external (translated) IP address match one-to-one. The port address translation (PAT) is disabled when using this type of IP pool. For example, if we define a one-to-one type IP pool with two external IP addresses (172.16.200.1 - 172.16.200.2), this IP pool only can handle two internal IP addresses.

Fixed port range

For the overload and one-to-one IP pool types, we do not need to define the internal IP range. For the fixed port range type of IP pool, we can define both internal IP range and external IP range. Since each external IP address and the number of available port numbers is a specific number, if the number of internal IP addresses is also determined, we can calculate the port range for each address translation combination. So we call this type fixed port range. This type of IP pool is a type of port address translation (PAT).

For instance, if we define one external IP address (172.16.200.1) and ten internal IP addresses (10.1.100.1-10.1.100.10), we have translation IP+Port combination like following table:

Original Source IP	Original Source Port	Translated Source IP	Translated Source Port Range
10.1.100.1	.....	172.16.200.1	5117~11157
10.1.100.2	.....	172.16.200.1	11158~17198
10.1.100.3	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
10.1.100.4	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
10.1.100.5	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
10.1.100.6	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
10.1.100.7	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
10.1.100.8	.....	172.16.200.1	.....
10.1.100.9	.....	172.16.200.1	53445~59485
10.1.100.10	.....	172.16.200.1	59486~65526

Port block allocation

This type of IP pool is also a type of port address translation (PAT). It gives users a more flexible way to control the way external IPs and ports are allocated. Users need to define *Block Size/Block Per User* and external IP range. *Block Size* means how many ports each Block contains. *Block per User* means how many blocks each user (internal IP) can use.

The following is a simple example:

- **External IP Range**: 172.16.200.1—172.16.200.1
- **Block Size**: 128
- **Block Per User**: 8

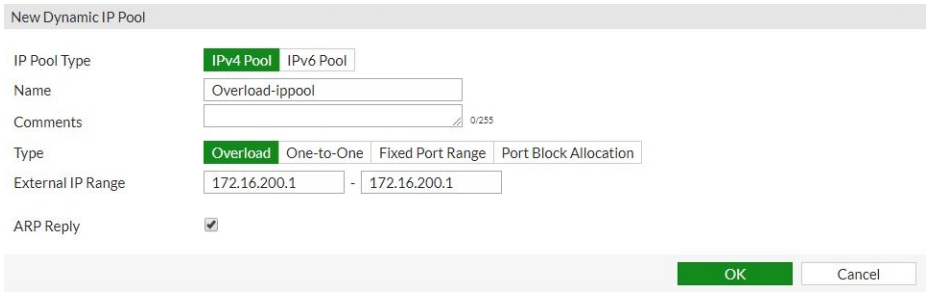
Result:

- **Total-PBAs**: 472 (60416/128)
- **Maximum ports can be used per User (Internal IP Address)**: 1024 (128*8)
- **How many Internal IP can be handled**: 59 (60416/1024 or 472/8)

Sample configuration

To configure overload IP pool in the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *Overload*.

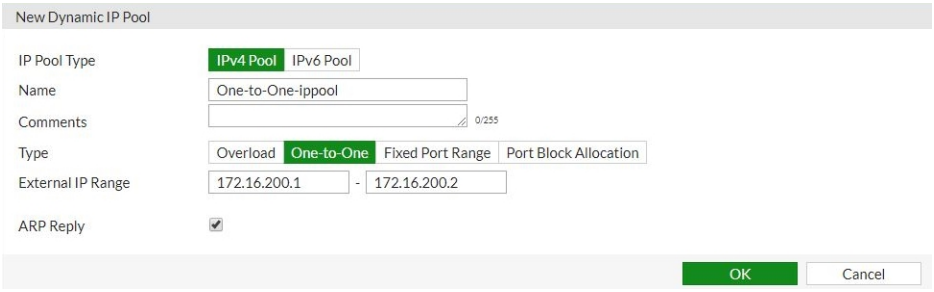


To configure overload IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "Overload-ippool"
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.1
    next
end
```

To configure one-to-one IP pool using the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *One-to-One*.

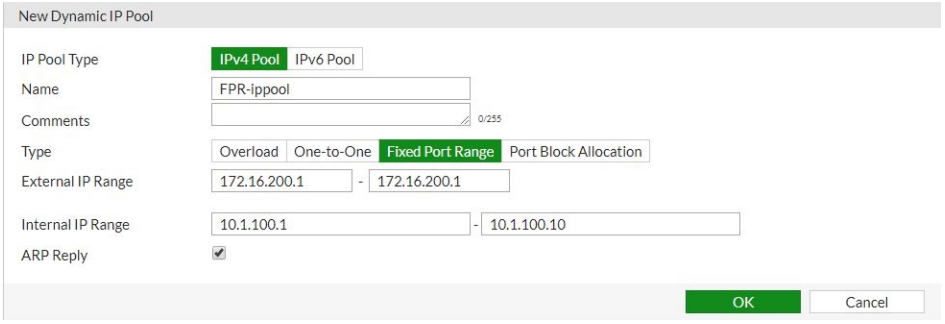


To configure one-to-one IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "One-to-One-ippool"
        set type one-to-one
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.2
    next
end
```

To configure fixed port range IP pool in the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *Fixed Port Range*.

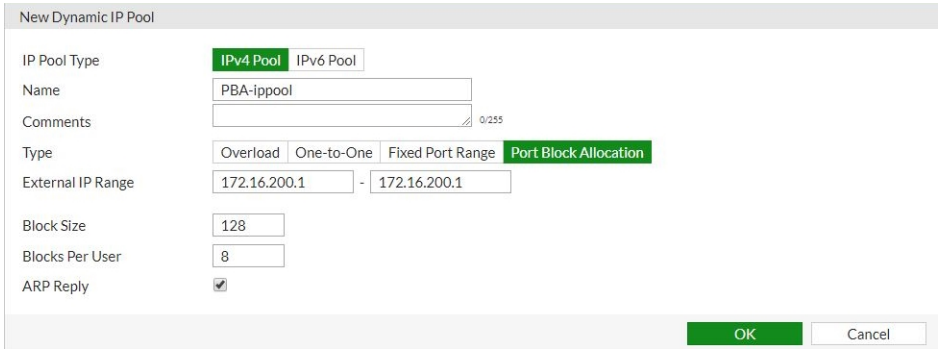


To configure fixed port range IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "FPR-ippool"
        set type fixed-port-range
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.1
        set source-startip 10.1.100.1
        set source-endip 10.1.100.10
   next
end
```

To configure port block allocation IP pool in the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *Port Block Allocation*.



To configure port block allocation IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit PBA-ippool
        set type port-block-allocation
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.1
        set block-size 128
        set num-blocks-per-user 8
    next
end
```

Central SNAT

The central SNAT table enables you to define and control (with more granularity) the address translation performed by FortiGate. With the NAT table, you can define the rules for the source address or address group, and which IP pool the destination address uses.

FortiGate reads the NAT rules from the top down until it hits a matching rule for the incoming address. This enables you to create multiple NAT policies that dictate which IP pool is used based on source address, destination address, and source port. NAT policies can be rearranged within the policy list. NAT policies are applied to network traffic after a security policy.

The central SNAT table allows you to create, edit, delete, and clone central SNAT entries.

Central SNAT notes

- The central NAT feature is not enabled by default.
- If central NAT is enabled, the NAT option under IPv4 policies is skipped and SNAT must be done via `central-snat-map`. The firewall policy list and dialog boxes have messages and redirection links to show this information.
- If NGFW mode is policy-based, then it is assumed that central NAT (specifically SNAT) is enabled implicitly.

Sample configuration

To enable central SNAT from the GUI:

1. In *System* > *Settings*, under *System Operations Settings*, enable *Central SNAT*.
2. Click *Apply*.

To enable or disable central SNAT using the CLI:

```
config system settings
   set central-nat {enable | disable}
end
```

When central NAT is enabled, *Policy & Objects* displays the Central SNAT section.

The Central SNAT policy has many options:

Field	Description
Type	Specify whether you are performing SNAT on IPv4 or IPv6. This option only appears when IPv6 is enabled under Feature Visibility.
Incoming Interface	Specify one or more interfaces for the ingress traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Specify one or more interfaces for the egress traffic.
Source Address	Specify the address or address group of the source.
Destination Address	Specify the address or address group of the destination.
NAT	Enable or disable to perform NAT. When disabled, no source address translation will occur.
IP Pool Configuration	Use outgoing interface address: • Use the address of the outgoing interfaces as source address. Use Dynamic IP Pool: • Choose an IP Pool to perform source NAT.
Protocol	Choose from any, TCP, UDP, SCTP, or specify the protocol number to match. For example, for ICMP, click *specify* with the protocol number 1.
Explicit port mapping	Enable in order to match this NAT policy only when the following ports are a match: • Choose an original source port from one to 65535. NAT'd port will be chosen by the FortiGate based on the IP Pool configuration. Explicit port mapping cannot apply to some protocols which do not use ports, such as ICMP. When enabling a NAT policy which uses Explicit port mapping, always consider that ICMP traffic will not match this policy. When using IP Pools, only the Overload type IP Pool allows Explicit port mapping. When Explicit port mapping is applied, you must define an original source port range and a translated sort port range. The source port will map one to one with the translated port. Refer to Dynamic SNAT to understand how each IP Pool type works.

Field	Description
Comments	Enter comments for this NAT policy.
Enable this policy	Enable or disable this policy.

To configure central SNAT using the CLI:

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit <policyID number>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set orig-addr <valid address object preconfigured on the FortiGate>
        set srcintf <name of interface on the FortiGate>
        set dst-addr <valid address object preconfigured on the FortiGate>
        set dstintf <name of interface on the FortiGate>
        set protocol <integer for protocol number>
        set orig-port <integer for original port number>
        set nat-port <integer for translated port number>
        set comments <string>
    next
end
```

Example one

Apply SNAT to all traffic from port2 to port3.

To configure from the CLI:

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set orig-addr "all"
        set dst-addr "all"
    next
end
```

Example two

Apply an IP Pool to all traffic from port3 to port2 that are TCP. NAT all other traffic using the outgoing interface IP.

To configure from the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "Overload-IPPOOL"
        set startip 192.168.2.201
        set endip 192.168.2.202
    next
end
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set orig-addr "all"
```

```
        set dst-addr "all"
        set protocol 6
        set nat-ippool "Overload-IPPOOL"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set orig-addr "all"
        set dst-addr "all"
    next
end
```

To collect session table output from the CLI:

```
diagnose sys session list
```

The TCP session (protocol 6) is NAT'd with Overload-IPPOOL to 192.168.2.201:

```
session info: proto=6 proto_state=05 duration=14 expire=0 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=860/7/1 reply=555/8/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 60/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 38/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=9->6/6->9 gwy=192.168.2.1/192.168.0.10
hook=post dir=org act=snat 192.168.0.10:49531->23.57.57.114:443(192.168.2.201:61776)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 23.57.57.114:443->192.168.2.201:61776(192.168.0.10:49531)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
dst_mac=04:d5:90:5f:a2:2a
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00011065 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x040000
```

A UDP session (protocol 17) is NAT'd to the outgoing interface IP address 192.168.2.86:

```
session info: proto=17 proto_state=01 duration=16 expire=163 timeout=0 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=dns-udp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=59/1/1 reply=187/1/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 3/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 11/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=9->6/6->9 gwy=192.168.2.1/192.168.0.10
hook=post dir=org act=snat 192.168.0.10:52177->4.2.2.1:53(192.168.2.86:61770)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 4.2.2.1:53->192.168.2.86:61770(192.168.0.10:52177)
dst_mac=04:d5:90:5f:a2:2a
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00011061 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x040000
```

Example three

Apply an IP Pool to all traffic from port3 to port2 that have a specific original port range, mapping the ports to the same NAT'd port range. Nat all other traffic using the outgoing interface IP.

To configure from the CLI:

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set orig-addr "all"
        set dst-addr "all"
        set orig-port 50000-65535
        set nat-ippool "Overload-IPPOOL"
        set nat-port 50000-65535
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set orig-addr "all"
        set dst-addr "all"
    next
end
```

To collect session table output from the CLI:

```
diagnose sys session list
```

Traffic with original port in the range between 50000-65535 will be NAT'd with the Overload type IP Pool. The mapped port is in the same port range:

```
session info: proto=17 proto_state=01 duration=3 expire=176 timeout=0 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=dns-udp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=71/1/1 reply=123/1/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 23/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 40/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=9->6/6->9 gwy=192.168.2.1/192.168.0.10
hook=post dir=org act=snat 192.168.0.10:52540->4.2.2.1:53(192.168.2.201:52540)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 4.2.2.1:53->192.168.2.201:52540(192.168.0.10:52540)
dst_mac=04:d5:90:5f:a2:2a
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00011399 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x040000
```

Traffic with original port outside the range of 50000-65535 will be NAT'd to the outgoing interface IP:

```
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=3 expire=3597 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
```

```
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=2262/10/1 reply=2526/11/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 741/5 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 828/6
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=9->6/6->9 gwy=192.168.2.1/192.168.0.10
hook=post dir=org act=snat 192.168.0.10:49805->142.250.68.66:443(192.168.2.86:62214)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 142.250.68.66:443->192.168.2.86:62214(192.168.0.10:49805)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
dst_mac=04:d5:90:5f:a2:2a
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=0001139a tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x040000
```

Protocols which do not use ports, such as ICMP, will be NAT'd to the outgoing interface IP:

```
session info: proto=1 proto_state=00 duration=7 expire=59 timeout=0 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=480/8/1 reply=480/8/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 66/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 66/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=9->6/6->9 gwy=192.168.2.1/192.168.0.10
hook=post dir=org act=snat 192.168.0.10:1->4.2.2.1:8(192.168.2.86:62209)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 4.2.2.1:62209->192.168.2.86:0(192.168.0.10:1)
dst_mac=04:d5:90:5f:a2:2a
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=0001138b tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x040000
```

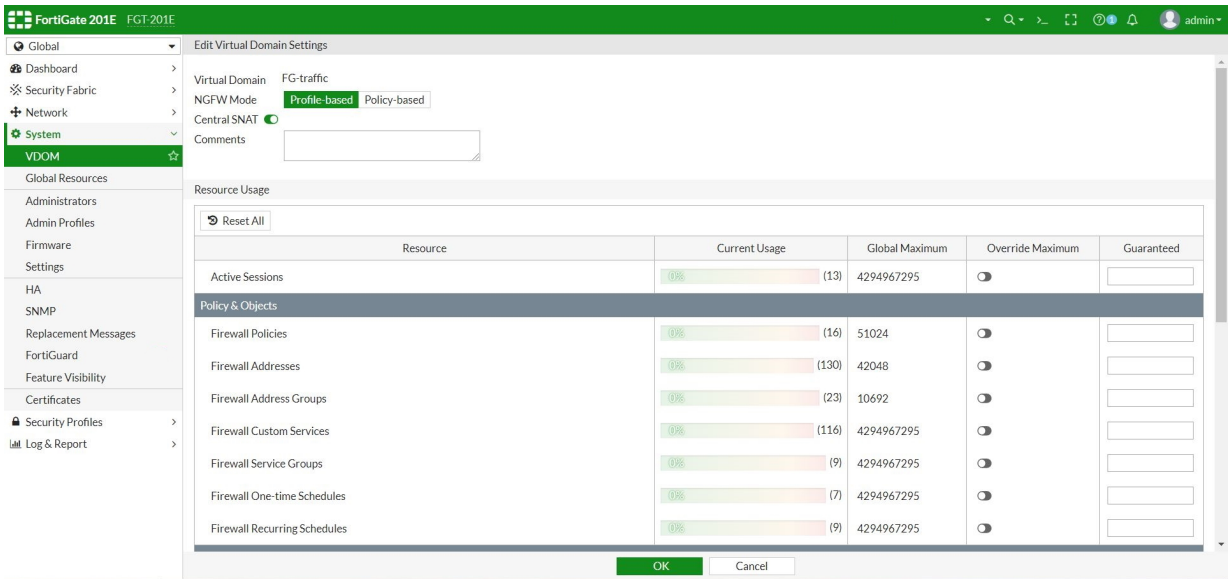
Configuring an IPv6 SNAT policy

IPv4 and IPv6 central SNAT maps are displayed in the same table.

To configure an IPv6 policy with central SNAT in the GUI:

1. Enable central SNAT:
   a. In the Global VDOM, go to *System* > *VDOM*.
   b. Select a VDOM and click *Edit*. The *Edit Virtual Domain Settings* pane opens.
   c. Enable *Central SNAT*.

d. Click *OK*.



2. Go in to the VDOM with central SNAT enabled (FG-traffic in this example).

3. Go *Policy & Objects* > *Central SNAT* and click *Create New*.

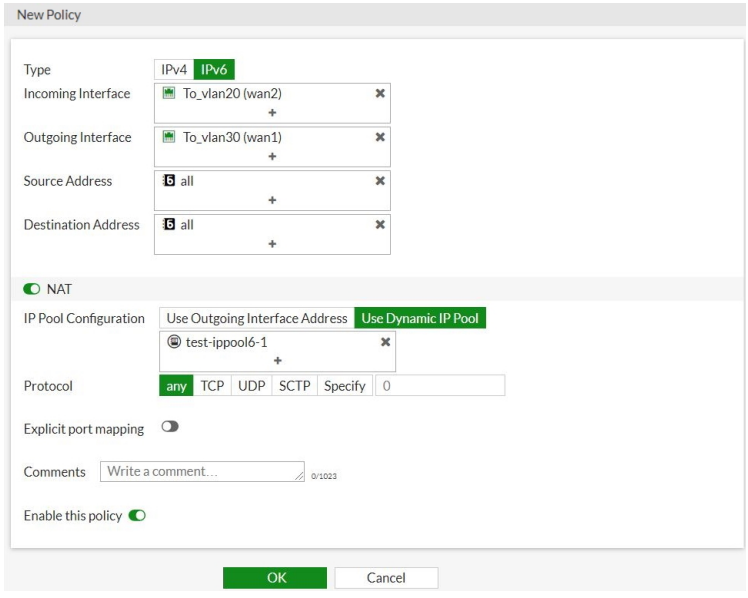
4. Configure the policy settings:

a. For *Type*, select *IPv6*.

b. Enter the interface, address, and IP pool information.

c. Configure the other settings as needed.

d. Click *OK*.



The matching SNAT traffic will be handled by the IPv6 central SNAT map.

To configure an IPv6 policy with central SNAT in the CLI:

1. Enable central SNAT:

```
config vdom
    edit FG-traffic
        config system settings
            set central-nat enable
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create an IPv6 central SNAT policy:

```
config vdom
    edit FG-traffic
        config firewall central-snat-map
            edit 2
                set type ipv6
                set srcintf "wan2"
                set dstintf "wan1"
                set orig-addr6 "all"
                set dst-addr6 "all"
                set nat-ippool6 "test-ippool6-1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Verify the SNAT traffic:

```
(FG-traffic) # diagnose sniffer packet any icmp6 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp6]
3.602891 wan2 in 2000:10:1:100::41 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 0
3.602942 wan1 out 2000:172:16:200::199 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 0
3.603236 wan1 in 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:172:16:200::199: icmp6: echo reply seq 0
3.603249 wan2 out 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:10:1:100::41: icmp6: echo reply seq 0
4.602559 wan2 in 2000:10:1:100::41 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 1
4.602575 wan1 out 2000:172:16:200::199 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 1
4.602956 wan1 in 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:172:16:200::199: icmp6: echo reply seq 1
4.602964 wan2 out 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:10:1:100::41: icmp6: echo reply seq 1
^C
8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

SNAT policies with virtual wire pairs

Source NAT (SNAT) can be configured in IPv4 and IPv6 policies with virtual wire pair (VWP) interfaces, and between VWP interfaces when central NAT is enabled.

To configure a policy using SNAT and a VWP interface when central NAT is disabled:

1. Create the VWP interface:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "test-vw-1"
```

```
        set member "port1" "port4"
    next
end
```

2. Create the IP pool. The IP pool must have a different subnet than the VWP peers.

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "vwp-pool-1"
        set startip 172.16.222.99
        set endip 172.16.222.100
    next
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 88
        set srcintf "port4"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
        set ippool enable
        set poolname "vwp-pool-1"
    next
end
```

4. Verify the IP pool functions as expected and traffic passes through:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp]
23.438095 port4 in 172.16.200.11 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
23.438126 port1 out 172.16.222.100 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
23.438492 port1 in 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.222.100: icmp: echo reply
23.438501 port4 out 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.200.11: icmp: echo reply
24.439305 port4 in 172.16.200.11 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
24.439319 port1 out 172.16.222.100 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
24.439684 port1 in 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.222.100: icmp: echo reply
24.439692 port4 out 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.200.11: icmp: echo reply

8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

To configure a SNAT between VWP interfaces when central NAT is enabled:

1. Enable central NAT:

```
config system settings
    set central-nat enable
end
```

2. Create the VWP interface:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "test-vw-1"
        set member "port1" "port4"
    next
end
```

3. Create the IP pool. The IP pool must have a different subnet than the VWP peers.

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "vwp-pool-1"
        set startip 172.16.222.99
        set endip 172.16.222.100
    next
end
```

4. Configure the SNAT policy:

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port4"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set orig-addr "all"
        set dst-addr "all"
        set nat-ippool "vwp-pool-1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 90
        set srcintf "port4"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
    next
end
```

Policy with destination NAT

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies with destination NAT:

- Static virtual IPs on page 1118
- Virtual IP with services on page 1120
- Virtual IPs with port forwarding on page 1122
- Virtual server on page 1123
- Configure FQDN-based VIPs on page 1131
- VIP groups on page 1132

Static virtual IPs

Static Virtual IPs (VIP) are used to map external IP addresses to internal IP addresses. This is also called destination NAT, where a packet's destination is being NAT'd, or mapped, to a different address.

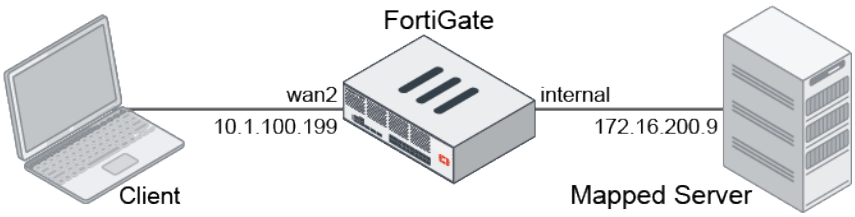
Static VIPs are commonly used to map public IP addresses to resources behind the FortiGate that use private IP addresses. A static one-to-one VIP is when the entire port range is mapped. A port forwarding VIP is when the mapping is configured on a specific port or port range.

Some of the VIP configuration options are:

Setting	Description
VIP Type	• IPv4 (`config firewall vip`) - The source and destination are both IPv4. • IPv6 (`config firewall vip6`) - The source and destination are both IPv6. • NAT46 (`config firewall vip46`) - The source if IPv4 and the destination is IPv6. • NAT64 (`config firewall vip64`) - The source if IPv6 and the destination is IPv4. **Note:** *IPv6* is only available when *IPv6* is enabled in the *Feature Visibility*. *NAT46* and *NAT64* are only available when *IPv6* and *NAT46 & NAT64* are enabled in the *Feature Visibility*. *IPv6* must be enabled so that the *NAT46 & NAT64* option is available.
Interface (`extintf`)	The external interface that the firewall policy source interface must match. For example, if the external interface is port1, then the VIP can be used in a policy from port1 to port3, but not in a policy from port2 to port3. If the external interface is *any*, then the VIP can be used in any firewall policy.
Type (`type`)	• Static NAT - Use an external IP address or address range. • FQDN - Use an external IP or FQDN address. • load-balance (CLI only) - Load balance traffic. • server-load-balance - Load balance traffic across multiple servers. SSL processing can be offloaded to the FortiGate. This type of VIP is configure from *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual Servers*. • dns-translation (CLI only) - DNS translation.
External IP address/range (`extip`)	In a static NAT VIP, the external IP address is the IP address that the FortiGate listens for traffic on. When the external interface in not *any*, 0.0.0.0 can be used to make the external IP address equivalent to the external interface's IP address. The external IP address is also used to perform SNAT from the mapped server when the server outbound traffic with a destination interface that matches the external interface. The firewall policy must also have NAT enabled.
Mapped IP address/range (`mappedip`)	The address or range that the internal resource is being mapped to.
`srcintf-filter` (CLI only)	Listen for traffic to the external IP address only on the specified interface.

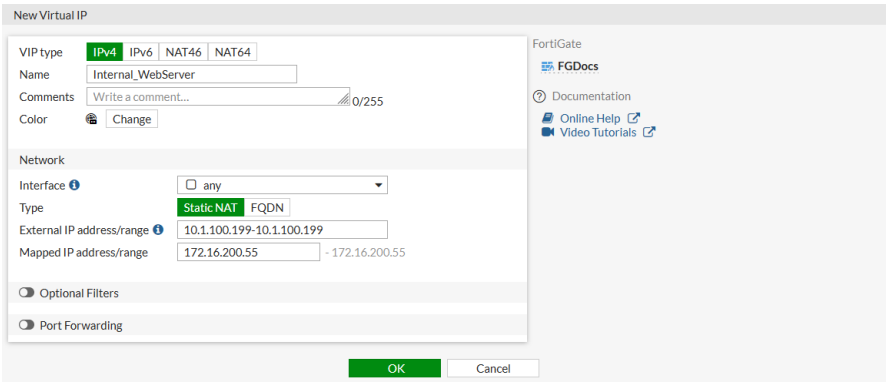
Setting	Description
	While the external interface restricts the policies where the VIP can be used, it does not restrict listening to only the external interface. To restrict listening to only a specific interface, `srcint-filter` must be configured.
`nat-source-vip` (CLI only)	Force all of the traffic from the mapped server to perform SNAT with the external IP address, regardless of the destination interface. If `srcint-filter` is defined, then `nat-source-vip` only forces SNAT to be performed when the destination matches the `srcintf-filter` interface. In both cases, the firewall policy must have NAT enabled.
`arp-reply` (CLI only)	Enable/disable responding to ARP requests on the external IP address (default = enable).
Source address (`src-filter`)	Restrict the source IP address, address range, or subnet that is allowed to access the VIP.
Services (`service`)	Set the services that are allowed to be mapped.
Port Forwarding (`portforward`)	Enable port forwarding to specify the port (`mappedport`) to map to If no services are configured, you can configure the protocol (`protocol`) to use when forwarding packets, the external service port range (`extport`) to be mapped to a port range on the destination network, and the mapped port range (`mappedport`) on the destination network.

Sample configuration



To create a virtual IP in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP*.
2. Select a *VIP Type* based on the IP versions used.
3. Enter a unique name for the virtual IP and fill in the other fields:



4. Click *OK*.

To create a virtual IP in the CLI:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "Internal_WebServer"
        set extip 10.1.100.199
        set extintf "any"
        set mappedip "172.16.200.55"
    next
end
```

To apply a virtual IP to policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 8
        set name "Example_Virtual_IP_in_Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Internal_WebServer"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Virtual IP with services

Virtual IP with services is a more flexible virtual IP mode. This mode allows users to define services to a single port number mapping.

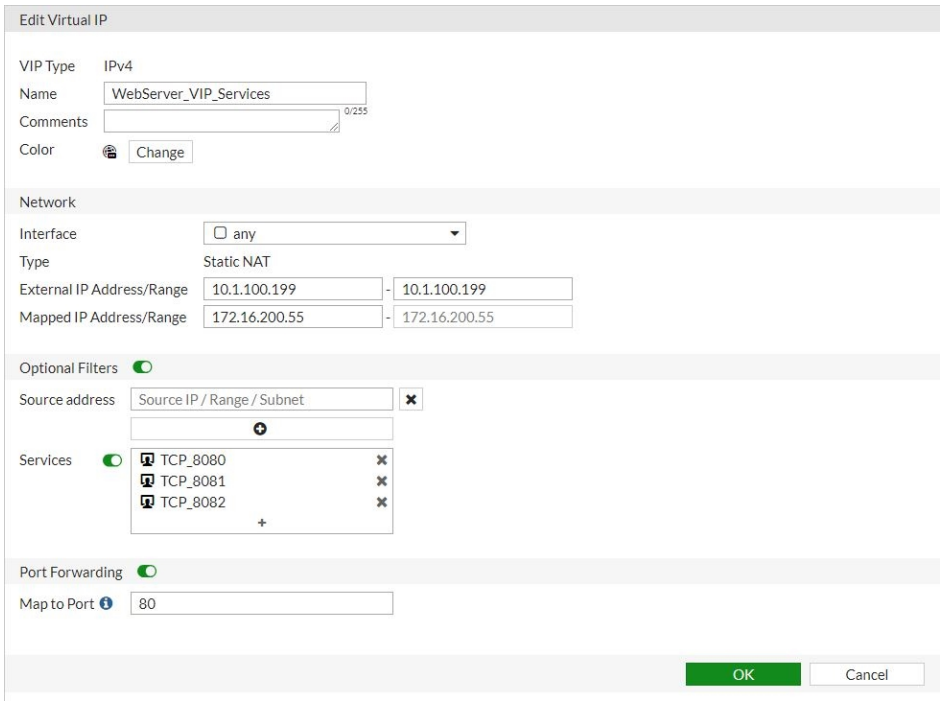
This topic shows how to use virtual IP with services enabled. This example has one public external IP address. We map TCP ports 8080, 8081, and 8082 to an internal WebServer TCP port 80. This allows remote connections to communicate with a server behind the firewall.

Sample configuration

To create a virtual IP with services using the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Virtual IP*.
3. For *VIP Type*, select *IPv4*.
4. Enter a unique name for the virtual IP and fill in the other fields.
5. Configure the fields in the *Network* section. For example:
   - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   - Set *External IP Address/Range* to *10.1.100.199*.
   - Set *Mapped IP Address/Range* to *172.16.200.55*.
6. Enable *Optional Filters* and then enable *Services*.
7. In the *Services* field, click + to display the Services pane.

8. In the *Services* pane, select *TCP_8080*, *TCP_8081*, and *TCP_8082*.
9. Enable *Port Forwarding*.
10. Set *Map to Port* to *80*.



11. Click *OK*.

To see the results:

1. Apply the above virtual IP to the Firewall policy.
2. The results are:
   - Access 10.1.100.199:8080 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.
   - Access 10.1.100.199:8081 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.
   - Access 10.1.100.199:8082 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.

To create a virtual IP with services using the CLI:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "WebServer_VIP_Services"
        set service "TCP_8080" "TCP_8081" "TCP_8082"
        set extip 10.1.100.199
        set extintf "any"
        set portforward enable
        set mappedip "172.16.200.55"
        set mappedport 80
    next
end
```

Virtual IPs with port forwarding

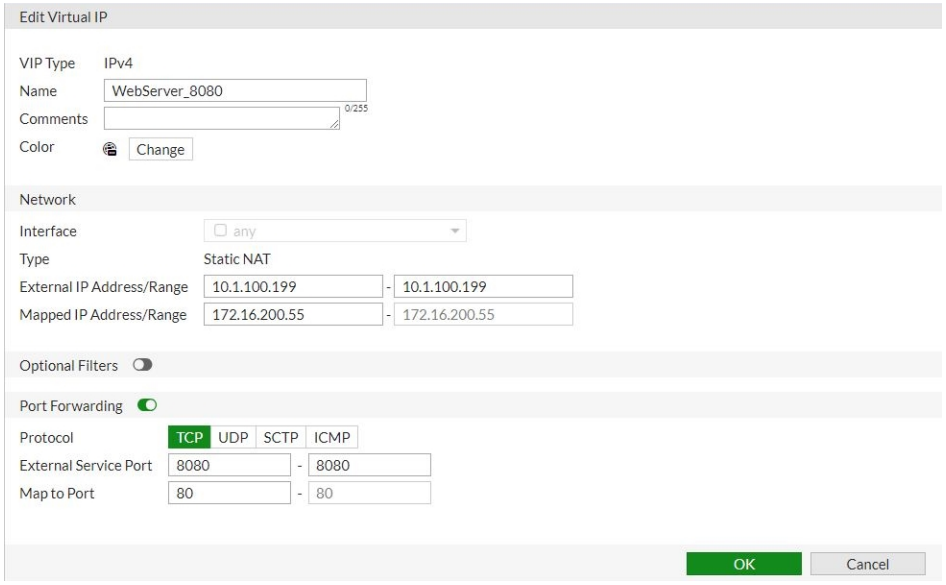
If you need to hide the internal server port number or need to map several internal servers to the same public IP address, enable port-forwarding for Virtual IP.

This topic shows how to use virtual IPs to configure port forwarding on a FortiGate unit. This example has one public external IP address. We map TCP ports 8080, 8081, and 8082 to different internal WebServers' TCP port 80. This allows remote connections to communicate with a server behind the firewall.

Sample configuration

To create a virtual IP with port forwarding using the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Virtual IP*.
3. For *VIP Type*, select *IPv4*.
4. Enter a unique name for the virtual IP and fill in the other fields.
5. Configure the fields in the *Network* section. For example:
   - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   - Set *External IP Address/Range* to *10.1.100.199*.
   - Set *Mapped IP Address/Range* to *172.16.200.55*.
6. Leave *Optional Filters* disabled.
7. Enable *Port Forwarding*.
8. Configure the fields in the *Port Forwarding* section. For example:
   - Set *Protocol* to *TCP*.
   - Set *External Service Port* to *8080 - 8080*.
   - Set *Map to Port* to *80 - 80*.



9. Click *OK*.

10. Follow the above steps to create two additional virtual IPs.
    a. For one virtual IP:
        - Use a different *Mapped IP Address/Range*, for example, *172.16.200.56*.
        - Set *External Service Port* to *8081 - 8081*.
        - Use the same *Map to Port* numbers: *80 - 80*.
    b. For the other virtual IP:
        - Use a different *Mapped IP Address/Range*, for example, *172.16.200.57*.
        - Set *External Service Port* to *8082 - 8082*.
        - Use the same *Map to Port* numbers: *80 - 80*.
11. Create a *Virtual IP Group* and put the above three virtual IPs into that group.



To see the results:

1. Apply the above virtual IP to the Firewall policy.
2. The results are:
    - Access 10.1.100.199:8080 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.
    - Access 10.1.100.199:8081 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.56:80 in internal network.
    - Access 10.1.100.199:8082 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.57:80 in internal network

Virtual server

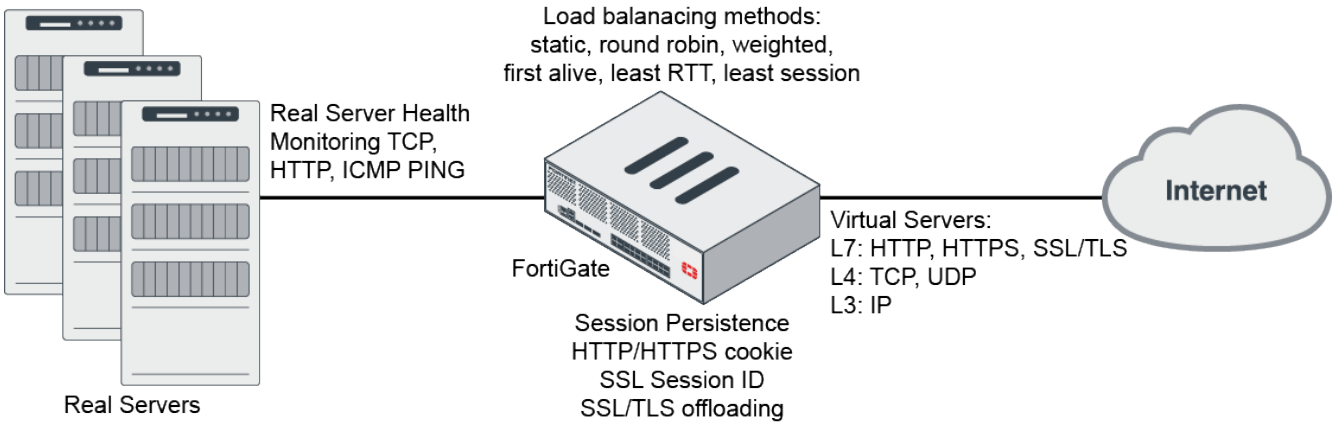
This topic shows a special virtual IP type: virtual server. Use this type of VIP to implement server load balancing.

The FortiOS server load balancing contains all the features of a server load balancing solution. You can balance traffic across multiple backend servers based on multiple load balancing schedules including:

- Static (failover)
- Round robin
- Weighted (to account for different sized servers or based on the health and performance of the server including round trip time and number of connections)

The load balancer supports HTTP, HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S, SMTPS, SSL/TLS, and generic TCP/UDP and IP protocols. Session persistence is supported based on the SSL session ID based on an injected HTTP cookie, or based on the HTTP or HTTPS host. SSL/TLS load balancing includes protection from protocol downgrade attacks. Server load balancing is supported on most FortiGate devices and includes up to 10,000 virtual servers on high end systems.

Sample topology



SSL/TLS offloading

FortiGate SSL/TLS offloading is designed for the proliferation of SSL/TLS applications. The key exchange and encryption/decryption tasks are offloaded to the FortiGate unit where they are accelerated using FortiASIC technology which provides significantly more performance than a standard server or load balancer. This frees up valuable resources on the server farm to give better response to business operations. Server load balancing offloads most SSL/TLS versions including SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, and TLS 1.2, and supports full mode or half mode SSL offloading with DH key sizes up to 4096 bits.

FortiGate SSL offloading allows the application payload to be inspected before it reaches your servers. This prevents intrusion attempts, blocks viruses, stops unwanted applications, and prevents data leakage. SSL/TLS content inspection supports TLS versions 1.0, 1.1, and 1.2 and SSL versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, and 3.0.

Virtual server requirements

When creating a new virtual server, you must configure the following options:

- Virtual Server Type.
- Load Balancing Methods.
- Health check monitoring (optional).
- Session persistence (optional).
- Virtual Server IP (External IP Address).
- Virtual Server Port (External Port).
- Real Servers (Mapped IP Address & Port).

Virtual server types

Select the protocol to be load balanced by the virtual server. If you select a general protocol such as IP, TCP, or UDP, the virtual server load balances all IP, TCP, or UDP sessions. If you select specific protocols such as HTTP, HTTPS, or SSL, you can apply additional server load balancing features such as *Persistence* and *HTTP Multiplexing*.

HTTP	Select *HTTP* to load balance only HTTP sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 80 for HTTP sessions). You can enable *HTTP Multiplexing*. You can also set *Persistence* to *HTTP Cookie* to enable cookie-based persistence.
HTTPS	Select *HTTPS* to load balance only HTTPS sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 443 for HTTPS sessions). You can enable *HTTP Multiplexing*. You can also set *Persistence* to *HTTP Cookie* to enable cookie-based persistence, or you can set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*.
IMAPS	Select *IMAPS* to load balance only IMAPS sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 993 for IMAPS sessions). You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*.
POP3S	Select *POP3S* to load balance only POP3S sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 995 for POP3S sessions). You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*.
SMTPS	Select *SMTPS* to load balance only SMTPS sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 465 for SMTPS sessions). You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*.
SSL	Select *SSL* to load balance only SSL sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced. You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*.
TCP	Select *TCP* to load balance only TCP sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced.
UDP	Select *UDP* to load balance only UDP sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced.
IP	Select *IP* to load balance all sessions accepted by the security policy that contains this virtual server.

Load balancing methods

The load balancing method defines how sessions are load balanced to real servers.

All load balancing methods do not send traffic to real servers that are down or not responding. FortiGate can only determine if a real server is not responding by using a health check monitor. You should always add at least one health check monitor to a virtual server or to real servers; otherwise load balancing might try to distribute sessions to real servers that are not functioning.

Static	The traffic load is statically spread evenly across all real servers. Sessions are not assigned according to how busy individual real servers are. This load balancing method provides some persistence because all sessions from the same source address always go to the same real server. Because the distribution is stateless, so if a real server is added, removed, or goes up or down, the distribution is changed and persistence might be lost.
Round Robin	Directs new requests to the next real server. This method treats all real servers as equals regardless of response time or the number of connections. This method does not direct requests to real servers that down or non responsive.
Weighted	Real servers with a higher weight value receive a larger percentage of connections. Set the real server weight when adding a real server.
Least Session	Directs requests to the real server that has the least number of current connections. This method works best in environments where the real servers or other equipment you are load balancing all have similar capabilities. This load balancing method uses the FortiGate session table to track the number of sessions being processed by each real server. The FortiGate unit cannot detect the number of sessions actually being processed by a real server.
Least RTT	Directs sessions to the real server with the lowest round trip time. The round trip time is determined by a ping health check monitor. The default is 0 if no ping health check monitors are added to the virtual server.
First Alive	Directs sessions to the first live real server. This load balancing schedule provides real server failover protection by sending all sessions to the first live real server. If a real server fails, all sessions are sent to the next live real server. Sessions are not distributed to all real servers so all sessions are processed by the first real server only.
HTTP Host	Load balances HTTP host connections across multiple real servers using the host's HTTP header to guide the connection to the correct real server.

Health check monitoring

In the FortiGate GUI, you can configure health check monitoring so that the FortiGate unit can verify that real servers are able respond to network connection attempts. If a real server responds to connection attempts, the load balancer continues to send sessions to it. If a real server stops responding to connection attempts, the load balancer assumes that the server is down and does not send sessions to it. The health check monitor configuration determines how the load balancer tests real servers. You can use a single health check monitor for multiple load balancing configurations. You can configure TCP, HTTP, and Ping health check monitors. You usually set the health check monitor to use the same protocol as the traffic being load balanced to it. For example, for an HTTP load balancing configuration, you would normally use an HTTP health check monitor.

Session persistence

Use persistence to ensure a user is connected to the same real server every time the user makes an HTTP, HTTPS, or SSL request that is part of the same user session. For example, if you are load balancing HTTP and HTTPS sessions to a collection of eCommerce web servers, when users make a purchase, they will be starting multiple sessions as they navigate the eCommerce site. In most cases, all the sessions started by this user during one eCommerce session should be processed by the same real server. Typically, the HTTP protocol keeps track of these related sessions using cookies. HTTP cookie persistence ensure all sessions that are part of the same user session are processed by the same real server.

When you configure persistence, the FortiGate unit load balances a new session to a real server according to the load balance method. If the session has an HTTP cookie or an SSL session ID, the FortiGate unit sends all subsequent sessions with the same HTTP cookie or SSL session ID to the same real server.

Real servers

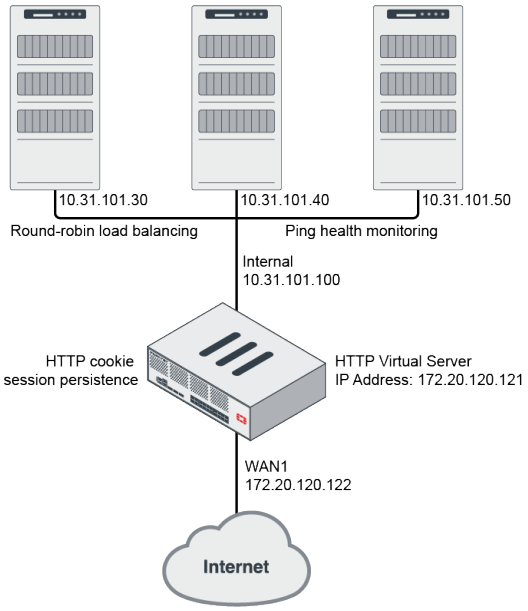
Add real servers to a load balancing virtual server to provide information the virtual server requires to send sessions to the server. A real server configuration includes the IP address of the real server and port number the real server receives sessions on. The FortiGate unit sends sessions to the real server's IP address using the destination port number in the real server configuration.

When configuring a real server, you can also specify the weight (if the load balance method is set to *Weighted*) and you can limit the maximum number of open connections between the FortiGate unit and the real server. If the maximum number of connections is reached for the real server, the FortiGate unit automatically switches all further connection requests to other real servers until the connection number drops below the limit. Setting *Maximum Connections* to 0 means that the FortiGate unit does not limit the number of connections to the real server.

Sample of HTTP load balancing to three real web servers

This example describes the steps to configure the load balancing configuration below. In this configuration, a FortiGate unit is load balancing HTTP traffic from the Internet to three HTTP servers on the internal network. HTTP sessions are accepted at the wan1 interface with destination IP address 172.20.120.121 on TCP port 8080, and forwarded from the internal interface to the web servers. When forwarded, the destination address of the session is translated to the IP address of one of the web servers.

This load balancing configuration also includes session persistence using HTTP cookies, round-robin load balancing, and TCP health monitoring for the real servers. Ping health monitoring consists of the FortiGate unit using ICMP ping to ensure the web servers can respond to network traffic.



General steps:

1. Create a health check monitor.
   A ping health check monitor causes the FortiGate to ping the real servers every 10 seconds. If one of the servers does not respond within 2 seconds, the FortiGate unit will retry the ping 3 times before assuming that the HTTP server is not responding.
2. Create a load balance virtual server with three real servers.
3. Add the load balancing virtual server to a policy as the destination address.

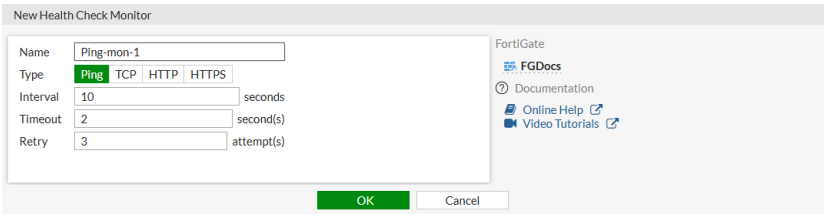


To see the virtual servers and health check monitors options in the GUI, *Load Balance* must be selected in *Feature Visibility* > *Additional Features*. See Feature visibility on page 1049 on page 1 for details.

Configure a load balancing virtual server in the GUI

To create a health check monitor:

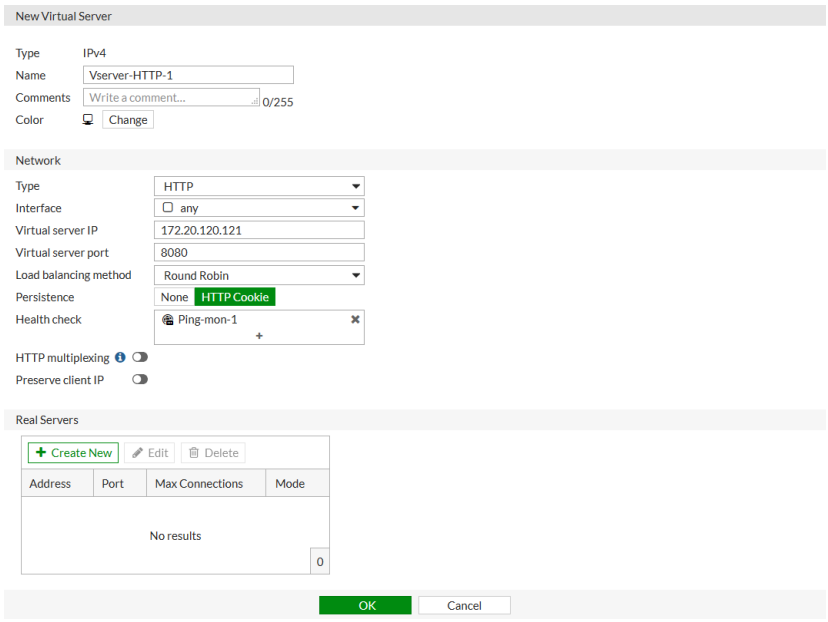
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Health Check*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name* to *Ping-mon-1*
   - *Type* to *Ping*
   - *Interval* to *10* seconds
   - *Timeout* to *2* seconds
   - *Retry* to *3* attempt(s)



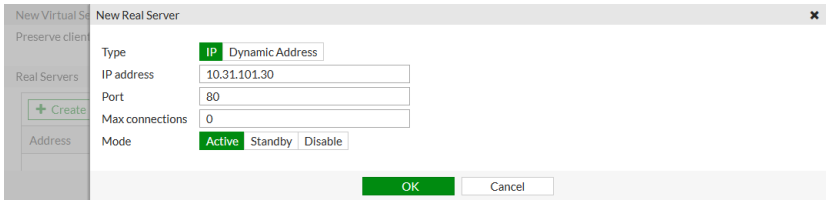
4. Click *OK*.

To create a virtual server:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name* to *Vserver-HTTP-1*
   - *Type* to *HTTP*
   - *Interface* to *wan1*
   - *Virtual Server IP* to *172.20.120.121*
   - *Virtual Server Port* to *8080*
   - *Load Balance Method* to *Round Robin*
   - *Persistence* to *HTTP Cookie*
   - *Health Check* to *Ping-mon-1*



4. In the *Real Servers* table, click *Create New*.
5. Set the following for the first real server:
   - *Type* to *IP*
   - *IP Address* to *10.31.101.30*
   - *Port* to *80*
   - *Max Connections* to *0*
   - *Mode* to *Active*



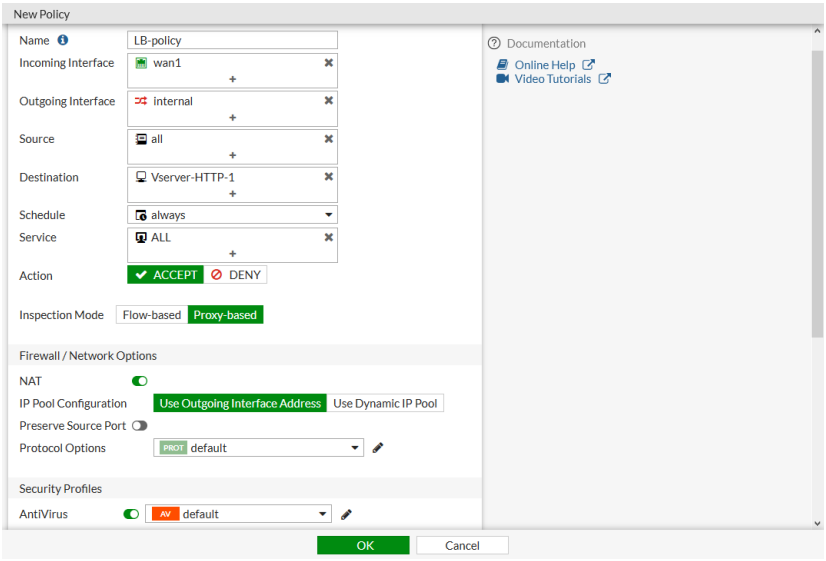
6. Configure two more real servers with IP addresses 10.31.101.40 and 10.31.101.50, and the remaining settings the same as the first real server.
7. Click *OK*.

To create a security policy that includes the load balance virtual server as the destination address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*. The new virtual server will not be available if the inspection mode is *Flow-based*.
4. Set the following:
   - *Name* to *LB-policy*
   - *Incoming Interface* to *wan1*
   - *Outgoing Interface* to *internal*
   - *Source* to *all*
   - *Destination* to *Vserver-HTTP-1*
   - *Schedule* to *always*

- *Service* to *ALL*
- *Action* to *ACCEPT*

5. Enable *NAT* and set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.
6. Enable *AntiVirus* and select an antivirus profile.



7. Click *OK*.

Configure a load balancing virtual server in the CLI

To configure HTTP load balancing to three real web servers in the CLI:

1. Create a health check monitor:

```
config firewall ldb-monitor
    edit "Ping-mon-1"
        set type ping
        set interval 10
        set timeout 2
        set retry 3
    next
end
```

2. Create a virtual server:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "Vserver-HTTP-1"
        set type server-load-balance
        set extip 172.20.120.121
        set extintf "any"
        set server-type http
        set monitor "Ping-mon-1"
        set ldb-method round-robin
        set persistence http-cookie
        set extport 8080
        config realservers
            edit 1
                set type ip
```

```
                set ip 10.31.101.30
                set port 80
            next
            edit 2
                set type ip
                set ip 10.31.101.40
                set port 80
            next
            edit 3
                set type ip
                set ip 10.31.101.50
                set port 80
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Add the load balancing virtual server to a policy as the destination address:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set name "LB-policy"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Vserver-HTTP-1"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Results

Traffic accessing 172.20.120.121:8080 is forwarded in turn to the three real servers.

If the access request has an http-cookie, FortiGate forwards the access to the corresponding real server according to the cookie.

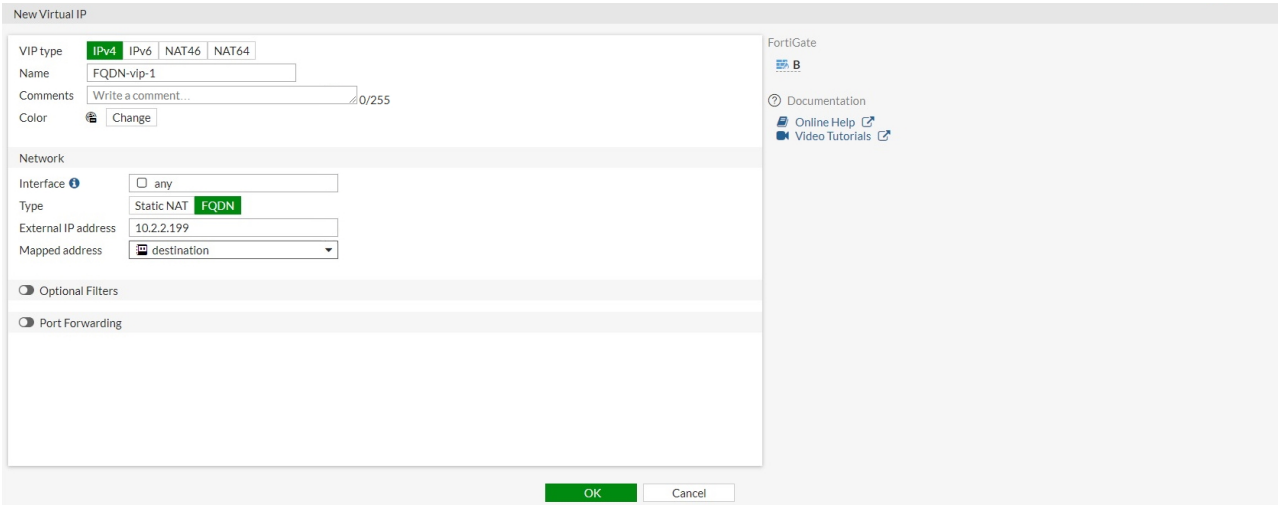
Configure FQDN-based VIPs

In public cloud environments, sometimes it is necessary to map a VIP to an FQDN address.

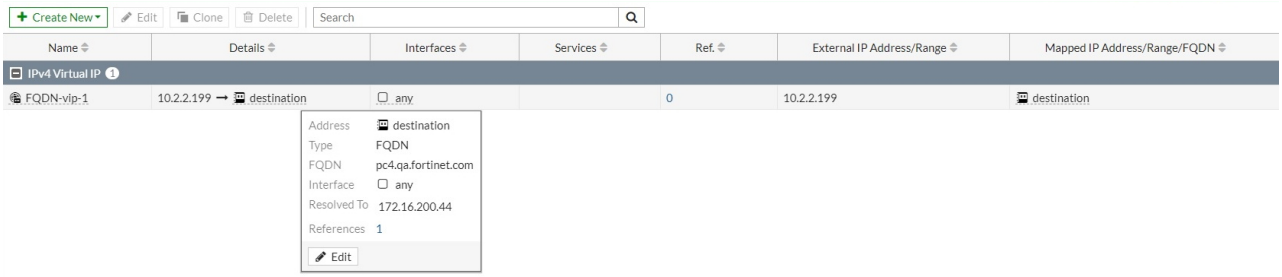
To configure an FQDN-based VIP in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP*.
2. Enter a name for the VIP.
3. Select an interface.
4. For *Type*, select *FQDN*.

5. Enter the external IP address.
6. For *Mapped address*, select an FQDN address.



7. Click *OK*.
   In the virtual IP list, hover over the address to view more information.



To configure an FQDN-based VIP in the CLI:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "FQDN-vip-1"
        set type fqdn
        set extip 10.2.2.199
        set extintf "any"
        set mapped-addr "destination"
    next
end
```

VIP groups

Virtual IP addresses (VIPs) can be organized into groups. This is useful in scenarios where there are multiple VIPs that are used together in firewall policies. If the VIP group members change, or a group member's settings change (such as the IP address, port, or port mapping type), then those changes are automatically updated in the corresponding firewall policies.

The following table summarizes which VIP types are allowed and not allowed to be members of a VIP group:

Group type	VIP types allowed as members	VIP types not allowed as members
IPv4	• Static NAT • Load balance • DNS translation • FQDN	• Server load balance
IPv6	• Static NAT	• Server load balance

Different VIP types can be added to the same group.

To configure a VIP group in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP Group*.
2. Set the *Type* to *IPv4*, *IPv6*, *NAT46*, or *NAT64*.
3. Enter a name.
4. Optionally, enter additional information in the *Comments* field.
5. For IPv4 groups, select the *Interface*. Select a specific interface if all of the VIPs are on the same interface; otherwise, select *any*.
6. Click the + in the *Members* field and select the members to add to the group.
7. Click *OK*.

To configure an IPv4 VIP group in the CLI:

```
config firewall vipgrp
    edit <name>
        set interface <name>
        set member <vip1> <vip2> ...
    next
end
```

To configure an IPv6 VIP group in the CLI:

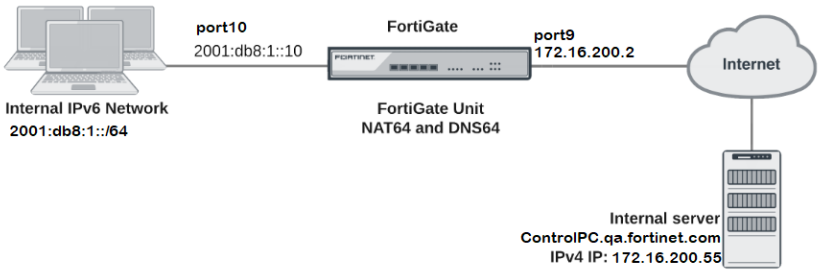
```
config firewall vipgrp6
    edit <name>
        set member <vip1> <vip2> ...
    next
end
```

NAT64 policy and DNS64 (DNS proxy)

NAT64 policy translates IPv6 addresses to IPv4 addresses so that a client on an IPv6 network can communicate transparently with a server on an IPv4 network.

NAT64 policy is usually implemented in combination with the DNS proxy called DNS64. DNS64 synthesizes AAAA records from A records and is used to synthesize IPv6 addresses for hosts that only have IPv4 addresses. DNS proxy and DNS64 are interchangeable terms.

Sample topology



In this example, a host on the internal IPv6 network communicates with `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com` that only has IPv4 address on the Internet.

1. The host on the internal network does a DNS lookup for `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com` by sending a DNS query for an AAAA record for `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com`.
2. The DNS query is intercepted by the FortiGate DNS proxy. The DNS proxy performs an A-record query for `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com` and gets back an RRSet containing a single A record with the IPv4 address `172.16.200.55`.
3. The DNS proxy then synthesizes an AAAA record. The IPv6 address in the AAAA record begins with the configured NAT64 prefix in the upper 96 bits and the received IPv4 address in the lower 32 bits. By default, the resulting IPv6 address is `64:ff9b::172.16.200.55`.
4. The host on the internal network receives the synthetic AAAA record and sends a packet to the destination address `64:ff9b::172.16.200.55`.
5. The packet is routed to the FortiGate internal interface (port10) where it is accepted by the NAT64 security policy.
6. The FortiGate unit translates the destination address of the packets from IPv6 address `64:ff9b::172.16.200.55` to IPv4 address `172.16.200.55` and translates the source address of the packets to `172.16.200.200` (or another address in the IP pool range) and forwards the packets out the port9 interface to the Internet.

Sample configuration

To enable display for IPv6, NAT46/NAT64, and DNS Database using the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. In the *Basic Features* section, enable *IPv6*.
3. In the *Additional Features* section, enable the following features:
   - *NAT46 & NAT64*
   - *DNS Database*
4. Click *Apply*.

To enable display for IPv6, NAT46/NAT64, and DNS Database using the CLI:

```
config system global
   set gui-ipv6 enable
end
config system settings
   set gui-nat46-64 enable
   set gui-dns-database enable
end
```

To enable DNS proxy on the IPv6 interface using the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
2. In *DNS Service on Interface*, click *Create New*.
3. For *Interface*, select *port10*.
4. Click *OK*.

To enable DNS proxy on the IPv6 interface using the CLI:

```
config system dns-server
   edit "port10"
       set mode forward-only
   next
end
```

To configure IPv6 DHCP server using the CLI:

```
config system dhcp6 server
   edit 1
       set subnet 2001:db8:1::/64
       set interface "port10"
       config ip-range
           edit 1
               set start-ip 2001:db8:1::11
               set end-ip 2001:db8:1::20
           next
       end
       set dns-server1 2001:db8:1::10
   next
end
```

To enable NAT64 and related settings using the CLI:

Enabling NAT64 with the `config system nat64` command means that all IPv6 traffic received by the current VDOM can be subject to NAT64 if the source and destination address matches an NAT64 security policy.

By default, the setting `always-synthesize-aaaa-record` is enabled. If you disable this setting, the DNS proxy (DNS64) will attempt to find an AAAA records for queries to domain names and therefore resolve the host names to IPv6 addresses. If the DNS proxy cannot find an AAAA record, it synthesizes one by adding the NAT64 prefix to the A record.

`nat64-prefix` setting is the `nat64` prefix. By default, it is `64:ff9b::/96`.

```
config system nat64
   set status enable
end
```

To create NAT64 policy using the GUI:

1. Add an IPv4 firewall address for the external network.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Name*, enter *external-net4*.
   d. For *IP/Network*, enter *17216.200.0/24*.

e. For *Interface*, select *port9*.
f. Click *OK*.

2. Add an IPv6 firewall address for the internal network.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Change *Category* to *IPv6 Address*.
   d. For *Name*, enter *internal-net6*.
   e. For *IPv6 Address*, enter *2001:db8:1::/48*.
   f. Click *OK*.
3. Add an IP pool containing the IPv4 address that is used as the source address of the packets exiting port9.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Name*, enter *exit-pool4*.
   d. For *External IP Range*, enter *172.16.200.200-172.16.200.210*.
   e. Click *OK*.
4. Add a NAT64 policy that allows connections from the internal IPv6 network to the external IPv4 network.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *NAT64 Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port10*.
   d. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port9*.
   e. For *Source Address*, select *internal-net6*.
   f. For *Destination Address*, select *external-net4*.
   g. Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Dynamic IP Pool* and select the IP pool *exit-pool4*.
   h. Click *OK*.

To create NAT64 policy using the CLI:

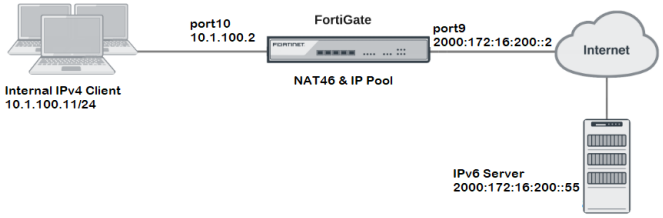
```
config firewall address
    edit "external-net4"
        set associated-interface "port9"
        set subnet 172.16.200.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address6
    edit "internal-net6"
        set ip6 2001:db8:1::/48
    next
end
config firewall ippool
    edit "exit-pool4"
        set startip 172.16.200.200
        set endip 172.16.200.210
    next
end
config firewall policy64
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "internal-net6"
        set dstaddr "external-net4"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set ippool enable
        set poolname "exit-pool4"
    next
end
```

NAT46 policy

NAT46 refers to the mechanism that allows IPv4 addressed hosts to communicate with IPv6 hosts. Without such a mechanism, IPv4 environments cannot connect to IPv6 networks.

Sample topology



In this example, an IPv4 client tries to connect to an IPv6 server. A VIP is configured on FortiGate to map the server IPv6 IP address `2000:172:16:200:55` to an IPv4 address `10.1.100.55`. On the other side, an IPv6 IP pool is configured and the source address of packets from client are changed to the defined IPv6 address. In this setup, the client PC can access the server by using IP address `10.1.100.55`.

Sample configuration

To enable display for IPv6 and NAT46/NAT64 using the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. In the *Basic Features* section, enable *IPv6*.
3. In the *Additional Features* section, enable *NAT46 & NAT64*.
4. Click *Apply*.

To enable display for IPv6 and NAT46/NAT64 using the CLI:

```
config system global
    set gui-ipv6 enable
end
config system settings
    set gui-nat46-64 enable
end
```

To configure VIP46 using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. For *Name*, enter *vip46_server*.
4. For *External IP Address/Range*, enter *10.1.100.55- 10.1.100.55*.
5. For *Mapped IP Address/Range*, enter *2000:172:16:200::55*.
6. Click *OK*.

To configure VIP46 using the CLI:

```
config firewall vip46
    edit "vip46_server"
        set extip 10.1.100.55
        set mappedip 2000:172:16:200::55
    next
end
```

To configure IPv6 IP pool using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Name*, enter *client_expternal*.
4. For *External IP Range*, enter *2000:172:16:201::11- 2000:172:16:201::20*.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure IPv6 IP pool using the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool6
    edit "client_external"
        set startip 2000:172:16:201::11
        set endip 2000:172:16:201::20
    next
end
```

To enable NAT64 and configure address prefix using the CLI:

```
config system nat64
    set status enable
    set secondary-prefix-status enable
    config secondary-prefix
        edit "1"
            set nat64-prefix 2000:172:16:201::/96
        next
    end
end
```

To create NAT46 policy using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *NAT46 Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port10*.
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port9*.
5. For *Source Address*, select *all*.
6. For *Destination Address*, select *vip46_server*.

7. Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Dynamic IP Pool* and select the IP pool *client_expernal*.
8. Click *OK*.

To create NAT46 policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy46
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "vip46_server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set ippool enable
        set poolname "client_external"
    next
end
```

Sample troubleshooting

Example to trace flow to see the whole process.

```
# diagnose debug flow filter saddr 10.1.100.11
# diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
show function name
# diagnose debug flow show iprope enable
show trace messages about iprope
# diagnose debug flow trace start 5

id=20085 trace_id=1 func=print_pkt_detail line=5401 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet
(proto=1, 10.1.100.11:27592->10.1.100.55:2048) from port10. type=8, code=0, id=27592,
seq=1."
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=init_ip_session_common line=5561 msg="allocate a new session-
000003b9"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_dnat_check line=4948 msg="in-[port10], out-[]"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_dnat_tree_check line=822 msg="len=1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_dnat_policy line=4822 msg="checking gnum-100000
policy-1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=get_vip46_addr line=998 msg="find DNAT46: IP-2000:172:16:200::55,
port-27592"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_dnat_policy line=4904 msg="matched policy-1,
act=accept, vip=1, flag=100, sflag=2000000"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_dnat_check line=4961 msg="result: skb_flags-02000000, vid-1,
ret-matched, act-accept, flag-00000100"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=fw_pre_route_handler line=183 msg="VIP-10.1.100.55:27592, outdev-
unkown"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__ip_session_run_tuple line=3220 msg="DNAT 10.1.100.55:8-
>10.1.100.55:27592"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2594 msg="find a route: flag=80000000
gw-10.1.100.55 via root"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=ip4_nat_af_input line=601 msg="nat64 ipv4 received a packet
proto=1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check line=2112 msg="gnum-100012, check-ffffffffa0024ebe"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_policy line=1873 msg="checked gnum-100012
```

```
policy-1, ret-matched, act-accept"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_user_identity_check line=1677 msg="ret-matched"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=get_new_addr46 line=1047 msg="find SNAT46: IP-2000:172:16:201::13
(from IPPOOL), port-27592"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_policy line=2083 msg="policy-1 is matched, act-
accept"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check line=2131 msg="gnum-100012 check result: ret-
matched, act-accept, flag-08050500, flag2-00200000"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_policy_group_check line=4358 msg="after check: ret-matched,
act-accept, flag-08050500, flag2-00200000"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=resolve_ip6_tuple line=4389 msg="allocate a new session-00000081"
```

Local-in policies

While security profiles control traffic flowing through the FortiGate, local-in policies control inbound traffic that is going to a FortiGate interface.

Administrative access traffic (HTTPS, PING, SSH, and others) can be controlled by allowing or denying the service in the interface settings. Trusted hosts can be configured under an administrator to restrict the hosts that can access the administrative service.

Local-in policies allow administrators to granularly define the source and destination addresses, interface, and services. Traffic destined for the FortiGate interface specified in the policy that meets the other criteria is subject to the policies action.

Local-in policies can be used to restrict administrative access or other services, such as VPN, that can be specified as services. You can define source addresses or address groups to restrict access from. For example, by using a geographic type address you can restrict a certain geographic set of IP addresses from accessing the FortiGate.

By default, no local-in policies are defined, so there are no restrictions on local-in traffic.



Local-in policies can only be created or edited in the CLI. You can view the existing local-in policies in the GUI by enabling it in *System* > *Feature Visibility* under the *Additional Features* section. This page does not list the custom local-in policies.

To configure a local-in policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall {local-in-policy | local-in-policy6}
    edit <policy_number>
        set intf <interface>
        set srcaddr <source_address> [source_address] ...
        set dstaddr <destination_address> [destination_address] ...
        set action {accept | deny}
        set service <service_name> [service_name] ...
        set schedule <schedule_name>
        set comments <string>
    next
end
```

For example, to prevent the source subnet 10.10.10.0/24 from pinging port1, but allow administrative access for PING on port1:

```
config firewall address
    edit "10.10.10.0"
```

```
        set subnet 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall local-in-policy
    edit 1
        set intf "port1"
        set srcaddr "10.10.10.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "PING"
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```

To test the configuration:

1. From the PC at 10.10.10.12, start a continuous ping to port1:

   ```
   ping 192.168.2.5 -t
   ```

2. On the FortiGate, enable debug flow:

   ```
   # diagnose debug flow filter addr 10.10.10.12
   # diagnose debug flow filter proto 1
   # diagnose debug enable
   # diagnose debug flow trace start 10
   ```

3. The output of the debug flow shows that traffic is dropped by local-in policy 1:

   ```
   # id=20085 trace_id=1 func=print_pkt_detail line=5746 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet
   (proto=1, 10.10.10.12:1->192.168.2.5:2048) from port1. type=8, code=0, id=1, seq=128."
   id=20085 trace_id=1 func=init_ip_session_common line=5918 msg="allocate a new session-
   0017c5ad"
   id=20085 trace_id=1 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2615 msg="find a route:
   flag=80000000 gw-192.168.2.5 via root"
   id=20085 trace_id=1 func=fw_local_in_handler line=474 msg="iprope_in_check() check
   failed on policy 1, drop"
   ```

Additional options

To disable or re-enable the local-in policy, use the `set status {enable | disable}` command.

To dedicate the interface as an HA management interface, use the `set ha-mgmt-intf-only enable` command.

DoS protection

A Denial of Service (DoS) policy examines network traffic arriving at a FortiGate interface for anomalous patterns, which usually indicates an attack.

A denial of service occurs when an attacking system starts an abnormally large number of sessions with a target system. The large number of sessions slows down or disables the target system, preventing legitimate users from using it.

DoS policies are checked before security policies, preventing attacks from triggering more resource intensive security protection and slowing down the FortiGate.

DoS anomalies

Predefined sensors are setup for specific anomalous traffic patterns. New DoS anomalies cannot be added by the user.

The predefined anomalies that can be used in DoS policies are:

Anomaly	Description	Recommended Threshold
tcp_syn_flood	If the SYN packet rate of new TCP connections, including retransmission, to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	2000 packets per second.
tcp_port_scan	If the SYN packet rate of new TCP connections, including retransmission, from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	1000 packets per second.
tcp_src_session	If the number of concurrent TCP connections from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions.
tcp_dst_session	If the number of concurrent TCP connections to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions.
udp_flood	If the UDP traffic to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	2000 packets per second.
udp_scan	If the UDP sessions setup rate originating from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	2000 sessions per second.
udp_src_session	If the number of concurrent UDP connections from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions.
udp_dst_session	If the number of concurrent UDP connections to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions.
icmp_flood	If the number of ICMP packets sent to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	250 packets per second.
icmp_sweep	If the ICMP sessions setup rate originating from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	100 sessions per second.
icmp_src_session	If the number of concurrent ICMP connections from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	300 concurrent sessions
icmp_dst_session	If the number of concurrent ICMP connections to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	1000 concurrent sessions

Anomaly	Description	Recommended Threshold
ip_src_session	If the number of concurrent IP connections from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions.
ip_dst_session	If the number of concurrent IP connections to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions.
sctp_flood	If the number of SCTP packets sent to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	2000 packets per second
sctp_scan	If the number of SCTP sessions originating from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	1000 packets per second
sctp_src_session	If the number of concurrent SCTP connections from one source IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions
sctp_dst_session	If the number of concurrent SCTP connections to one destination IP address exceeds the configured threshold value, the action is executed.	5000 concurrent sessions

For thresholds based on the number of concurrent sessions, blocking the anomaly will not allow more than the number of concurrent sessions to be set as the threshold.

For example, if the period for a particular anomaly is 60 seconds, such as those where the threshold is measured in concurrent sessions, after the 60 second timer has expired the number of allowed sessions that match the anomaly criteria is reset to zero. This means that, if you allow 10 sessions through before blocking, after the 60 seconds has elapsed, another 10 sessions will be allowed. The attrition of sessions from expiration should keep the allowed sessions from reaching the maximum.

For rate based thresholds, where the threshold is measured in packets per second, the *Block* action prevents anomalous traffic from overwhelming the firewall in two ways:

- continuous: Block packets once an anomaly is detected, and continue to block packets while the rate is above the threshold. This is the default setting.
- periodical: After an anomaly is detected, allow the configured number of packets per second.

For example, if a DoS policy is configured to block icmp_flood with a threshold of 10pps, and a continuous ping is started at a rate of 20pps for 1000 packets:

- In continuous mode, the first 10 packets are passed before the DoS sensor if triggered, and then the remaining 990 packets are blocked.
- In periodical mode, 10 packets are allowed to pass per second, so 500 packets are blocked in the 50 seconds during which the ping is occuring.



The actual numbers of passed and blocked packets may not be exact, as fluctuations in the rates can occur, but the numbers should be close to the defined threshold.

To configure the block action for rate based anomaly sensors:

```
config ips global
    set anomaly-mode {continuous | periodical}
end
```

DoS policies

A DoS policy can be configured to use one or more anomalies.

To configure a DoS policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IPv4 DoS Policy* or *Policy & Objects* > *IPv6 DoS Policy* and click *Create New*.
   If the option is not visible, enable *DoS Policy* in *Feature Visibility*. See Feature visibility on page 1049 for details.
2. Configure the following:

Name	Enter a name for the policy.
Incoming Interface	Enter the interface that the policy applies to.
Source Address	Enter the source address.
Destination Address	Enter the destination address. This is the address that the traffic is addressed to. In this case, it must be an address that is associated with the firewall interface. For example, it could be an interface address, a secondary IP address, or the address assigned to a VIP address.
Service	Select the services or service groups. The ALL service can used or, to optimize the firewall resources, only the services that will be answered on an interface can be used.
L3 Anomalies **L4 Anomalies**	Configure the anomalies: • *Logging*: Enable/disable logging for specific anomalies or all of them. Anomalous traffic will be logged when the action is *Block* or *Monitor*. • *Action*: Select the action to take when the threshold is reached: • *Disable*: Do not scan for the anomaly. • *Block*: Block the anomalous traffic. • *Monitor*: Allow the anomalous traffic, but record a log message if logging is enabled. • *Threshold*: The number of detected instances that triggers the anomaly action.
Comments	Optionally, enter a comment.

3. Enable the policy, then click *OK*.



The quarantine option is only available in the CLI. See Quarantine on page 1146 for information.

To configure a DoS policy in the GUI:

```
config firewall DoS-policy
    edit 1
        set name "Flood"
        set interface "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        config anomaly
            edit "icmp_flood"
                set status enable
                set log enable
                set action block
                set quarantine attacker
                set quarantine-expiry 1d1h1m
                set quarantine-log enable
                set threshold 100
            next
        end
    next
end
```

`name <string>`	Enter a name for the policy.
`interface <string>`	Enter the interface that the policy applies to.
`srcaddr <string>`	Enter the source address.
`dstaddr <string>`	Enter the destination address. This is the address that the traffic is addressed to. In this case, it must be an address that is associated with the firewall interface. For example, it could be an interface address, a secondary IP address, or the address assigned to a VIP address.
`service <string>`	Enter the services or service groups. The `ALL` service can used or, to optimize the firewall resources, only the services that will be answered on an interface can be used.
`status {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable this anomaly.
`log {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable anomaly logging. When enabled, a log is generated whenever the anomaly action is triggered, regardless of which action is configured.
`action {pass | block}`	Set the action to take when the threshold is reached: • `pass`: Allow traffic, but record a log message if logging is enabled. • `block`: Block traffic if this anomaly is found.
`quarantine {none | attacker}`	Set the quarantine method (see Quarantine on page 1146): • `none`: Disable quarantine. • `attacker`: Block all traffic from the attacker's IP address, and add the attacker's IP address to the banned user list.

`quarantine-expiry <###d##h##m>`	Set the duration of the quarantine, in days, hours, and minutes (###d##h##m) (1m - 364d23h59m, default = 5m). This option is available if `quarantine` is set `attacker`.
`quarantine-log {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable quarantine logging (default = disable). This option is available if `quarantine` is set `attacker`.
`threshold <integer>`	The number of detected instances - packets per second or concurrent session number - that triggers the anomaly action.

Quarantine

Quarantine is used to block any further traffic from a source IP address that is considered a malicious actor or a source of traffic that is dangerous to the network. Traffic from the source IP address is blocked for the duration of the quarantine, and the source IP address is added to the banned user list.

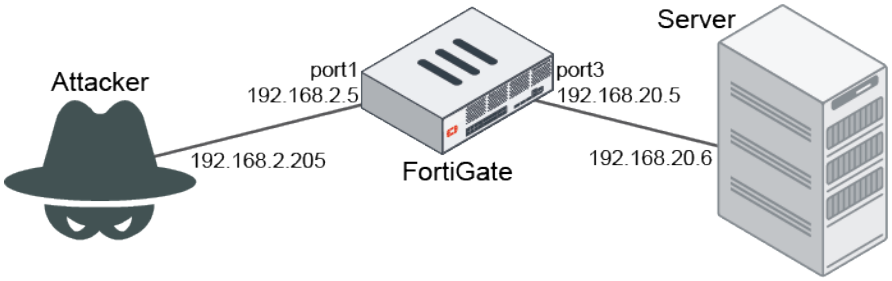
The banned user list is kept in the kernel, and used by Antivirus, Data Leak Prevention (DLP), DoS, and Intrusion Prevention System (IPS). Any policies that use any of these features will block traffic from the attacker's IP address.

To view the quarantined user list:

```
# diagnose user quarantine list
src-ip-addr       created                  expires                  cause
192.168.2.205     Wed Nov 25 12:47:54 2020 Wed Nov 25 12:57:54 2020 DOS
```

Troubleshooting DoS attacks

The best way to troubleshoot DoS attacks is with Anomaly logs and IPS anomaly debug messages.



To test an icmp_flood attack:

1. From the Attacker, launch an icmp_flood with 50pps lasting for 3000 packets.
2. On the FortiGate, configure continuous mode and create a DoS policy with an icmp_flood threshold of 30pps:

```
config firewall DoS-policy
    edit 1
        set name icmpFlood
        set interface "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        config anomaly
            edit "icmp_flood"
```

```
                set status enable
                set log enable
                set action block
                set threshold 30
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure the debugging filter:

```
# diagnose ips anomaly config
DoS sensors in kernel vd 0:
DoS id 1 proxy 0
  0 tcp_syn_flood status 0 log 0 nac 0 action 0 threshold 2000
  ...
  7 udp_dst_session status 0 log 0 nac 0 action 0 threshold 5000
  8 icmp_flood status 1 log 1 nac 0 action 7 threshold 30
  9 icmp_sweep status 0 log 0 nac 0 action 0 threshold 100
  ...
total # DoS sensors: 1.

# diagnose ips anomaly filter id 8
```

4. Launch the icmp_flood from a Linux machine. This example uses Nmap:

```
$ sudo nping --icmp --rate 50 -c 3000 192.168.2.50
SENT (0.0522s) ICMP [192.168.2.205 > 192.168.2.50 Echo request (type=8/code=0) id=8597
seq=1] IP [ttl=64 id=47459 iplen=28 ]
...
Max rtt: 11.096ms | Min rtt: 0.028ms | Avg rtt: 1.665ms
Raw packets sent: 3000 (84.000KB) | Rcvd: 30 (840B) | Lost: 2970 (99.00%)
Nping done: 1 IP address pinged in 60.35 seconds
```

5. During the attack, check the anomaly list on the FortiGate:

```
# diagnose ips anomaly list
list nids meter:
id=icmp_flood         ip=192.168.2.50 dos_id=1 exp=998 pps=46 freq=50

total # of nids meters: 1.
```

id=icmp_flood	The anomaly name.
ip=192.168.2.50	The IP address of the host that triggered the anomaly. It can be either the client or the server. For icmp_flood, the IP address is the destination IP address. For icmp_sweep, it would be the source IP address.
dos_id=1	The DoS policy ID.
exp=998	The time to be expired, in jiffies (one jiffy = 0.01 seconds).
pps=46	The number of packets that had been received when the diagnose command was executed.
freq=50	For session based anomalies, freq is the number of sessions. For packet rate based anomalies (flood, scan):

	• In continuous mode: freq is the greater of pps, or the number of packets received in the last second. • In periodic mode: freq is the pps.

6. Go to *Log & Report* > *Anomaly* and download the logs:

```
date=2020-11-20 time=14:38:39 eventtime=1605911919824184594 tz="-0800"
logid="0720018433" type="utm" subtype="anomaly" eventtype="anomaly" level="alert"
vd="root" severity="critical" srcip=192.168.2.205 srccountry="Reserved"
dstip=192.168.2.50 srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined" sessionid=0 action="clear_
session" proto=1 service="PING" count=1307 attack="icmp_flood" icmpid="0x2195"
icmptype="0x08" icmpcode="0x00" attackid=16777316 policyid=1 policytype="DoS-policy"
ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID16777316" msg="anomaly: icmp_flood, 31 > threshold
30, repeats 28 times" crscore=50 craction=4096 crlevel="critical"
```

```
date=2020-11-20 time=14:39:09 eventtime=1605911949826224056 tz="-0800"
logid="0720018433" type="utm" subtype="anomaly" eventtype="anomaly" level="alert"
vd="root" severity="critical" srcip=192.168.2.205 srccountry="Reserved"
dstip=192.168.2.50 srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined" sessionid=0 action="clear_
session" proto=1 service="PING" count=1497 attack="icmp_flood" icmpid="0x2195"
icmptype="0x08" icmpcode="0x00" attackid=16777316 policyid=1 policytype="DoS-policy"
ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID16777316" msg="anomaly: icmp_flood, 50 > threshold
30, repeats 1497 times" crscore=50 craction=4096 crlevel="critical"
```

Analysis

In the first log message:

msg="anomaly: icmp_flood, 31 > threshold 30	At the beginning of the attack, a log is recorded when the threshold of 30pps is broken.
repeats 28 times	The number of packets that has exceeded the threshold since the last time a log was recorded.
srcip=192.168.2.205 **dstip=192.168.2.50**	The source and destination IP addresses of the attack.
action="clear_session"	Equivalent to block. If `action` was set to `monitor` and logging was enabled, this would be `action="detected"`.

In the second log message:

- Because it is an ongoing attack, the FortiGate generates one log message for multiple packets every 30 seconds..
- It will not generate a log message if:
  - The same attack ID happened more than once in a five second period, or
  - The same attack ID happened more than once in a 30 second period and the actions are the same and have the same source and destination IP addresses.

msg="anomaly: icmp_flood, 50 > threshold 30	In the second before the log was recorded, 50 packets were detected, exceeding the configured threshold.
repeats 1497 times	The number of packets that has exceeded the threshold since the last time a log was recorded

Access control lists

An access control list (ACL) is a granular, targeted blocklist that is used to block IPv4 and IPv6 packets on a specified interface based on the criteria configured in the ACL policy.

On FortiGate models with ports that are connected through an internal switch fabric with TCAM capabilities, ACL processing is offloaded to the switch fabric and does not use CPU resources. VLAN interfaces that are based on physical switch fabric interfaces are also supported. Interfaces that are connected through an internal switch fabric usually have names prefixed with *port* or *lan*, such as *port1* or *lan2*; other interfaces are not supported.

The packets will be processed by the CPU when offloading is disabled or not possible, such as when a port on a supported model does not connect to the internal fabric switch.

ACL is supported on the following FortiGate models:

- 100D, 100E, 100EF, 101E
- 140D, 140D-POE, 140E, 140E-POE
- 1200D, 1500D, 1500DT
- 3000D, 3100D, 3200D, 3700D, 3800D, 3810D, 3815D
- All 300E and larger E-series models
- All 100F and larger F-series models

Example

To block all IPv4 and IPv6 telnet traffic from port2 to Company_Servers:

```
config firewall acl
    edit 1
       set interface "port2"
       set srcaddr "all"
       set dstaddr "Company_Servers"
       set service "TELNET"
    next
end
config firewall acl6
    edit 1
        set interface "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Company_Servers_v6"
        set service "TELNET"
    next
end
```

Diagnose commands

To check the number of packets dropped by an ACL:

```
# diagnose firewall acl counter
ACL id 1 dropped 0 packets
```

```
# diagnose firewall acl counter6
ACL id 2 dropped 0 packets
```

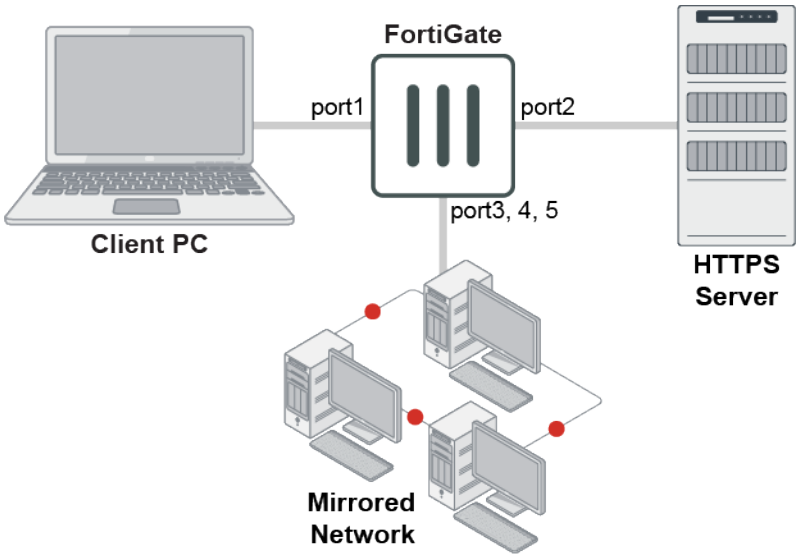
To clear the packet drop counters:

```
# diagnose firewall acl clearcounter
# diagnose firewall acl clearcounter6
```

Mirroring SSL traffic in policies

SSL mirroring allows the FortiGate to decrypt and mirror traffic to a designated port. A new decrypted traffic mirror profile can be applied to IPv4, IPv6, and explicit proxy firewall policies in both flow and proxy mode. Full SSL inspection must be used in the policy for the traffic mirroring to occur.

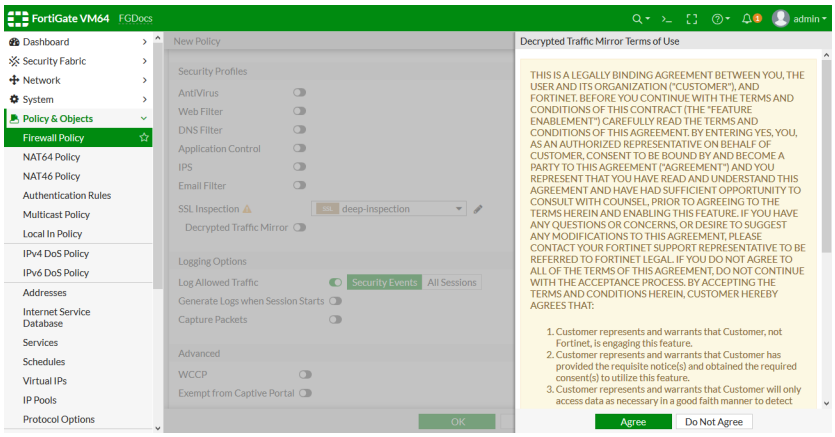
SSL inspection is automatically enabled when you enable a security profile on the policy configuration page.



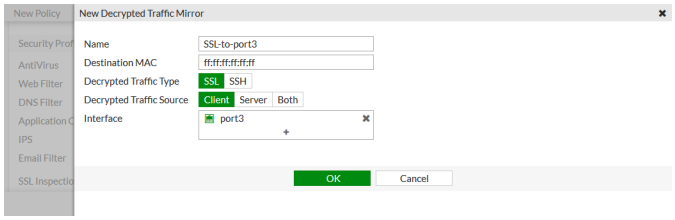
To configure SSL mirroring in a policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy, or edit an existing one.
3. Configure the interfaces, sources, and other required information.
4. In the *Security Profiles* section, for *SSL Inspection*, select *deep-inspection*, or another profile that uses *Full SSL Inspection*.

5. Enable *Decrypted Traffic Mirror* . The terms of use agreement opens.



6. Click *Agree* to accept the terms.
7. In the drop-down list, select a decrypted traffic mirror, or click *Create* to create a new one.
   In this example, a new decrypted traffic mirror is created using the port3 interface.



8. Click *OK* to save the policy.

To configure SSL mirroring in proxy mode in the CLI:

1. Create the decrypted traffic mirror profile:

```
config firewall decrypted-traffic-mirror
    edit SSL-to-port3
        set dstmac ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        set traffic-type ssl
        set traffic-source client
        set interface port3
    next
end
```

2. Configure the policy to enable SSL traffic mirroring:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "mirror-policy"
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set decrypted-traffic-mirror "SSL-to-port3"
```

```
THIS IS A LEGALLY BINDING AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU, THE USER AND ITS ORGANIZATION
("CUSTOMER"), AND FORTINET. BEFORE YOU CONTINUE WITH THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS
CONTRACT (THE "FEATURE ENABLEMENT") CAREFULLY READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS
AGREEMENT. BY ENTERING YES, YOU, AS AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE ON BEHALF OF CUSTOMER,
CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY AND BECOME A PARTY TO THIS AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") AND YOU
REPRESENT THAT YOU HAVE READ AND UNDERSTAND THIS AGREEMENT AND HAVE HAD SUFFICIENT
OPPORTUNITY TO CONSULT WITH COUNSEL, PRIOR TO AGREEING TO THE TERMS HEREIN AND ENABLING
THIS FEATURE. IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS OR CONCERNS, OR DESIRE TO SUGGEST ANY
MODIFICATIONS TO THIS AGREEMENT, PLEASE CONTACT YOUR FORTINET SUPPORT REPRESENTATIVE TO
BE REFERRED TO FORTINET LEGAL. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ALL OF THE TERMS OF THIS
AGREEMENT, DO NOT CONTINUE WITH THE ACCEPTANCE PROCESS. BY ACCEPTING THE TERMS AND
CONDITIONS HEREIN, CUSTOMER HEREBY AGREES THAT:

1. Customer represents and warrants that Customer, not Fortinet, is engaging this
feature.

2. Customer represents and warrants that Customer has provided the requisite notice(s)
and obtained the required consent(s) to utilize this feature.

3. Customer represents and warrants that Customer will only access data as necessary in
a good faith manner to detect malicious traffic and will put in place processes and
controls to ensure this occurs.

4. Customer represents and warrants that Customer has the right to enable and utilize
this feature, and Customer is fully in compliance with all applicable laws in so doing.

5. Customer shall indemnify Fortinet in full for any of the above certifications being
untrue.

6. Customer shall promptly notify Fortinet Legal in writing of any breach of these Terms
and Conditions and shall indemnify Fortinet in full for any failure by Customer or any
of its employees or representatives to abide in full by the Terms and Conditions above.

7. Customer agrees that these Terms and Conditions shall be governed by the laws of the
State of California, without regards to the choice of laws provisions thereof and
Customer hereby agrees that any dispute related to these Terms and Conditions shall be
resolved in Santa Clara County, California, USA, and Customer hereby consents to
personal jurisdiction in Santa Clara County, California, USA.

Do you want to continue? (y/n) y
    next
end
```

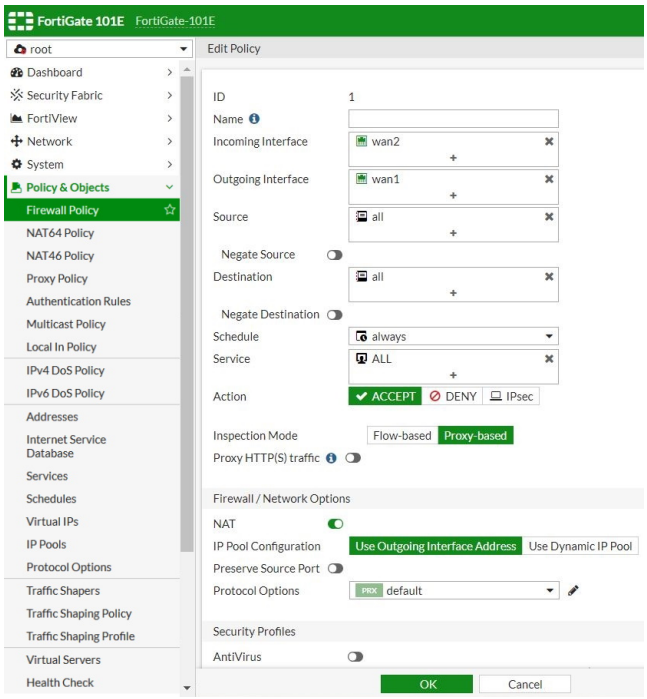
Inspection mode per policy

Inspection mode is configured on a per-policy basis in NGFW mode. This gives you more flexibility when setting up different policies.

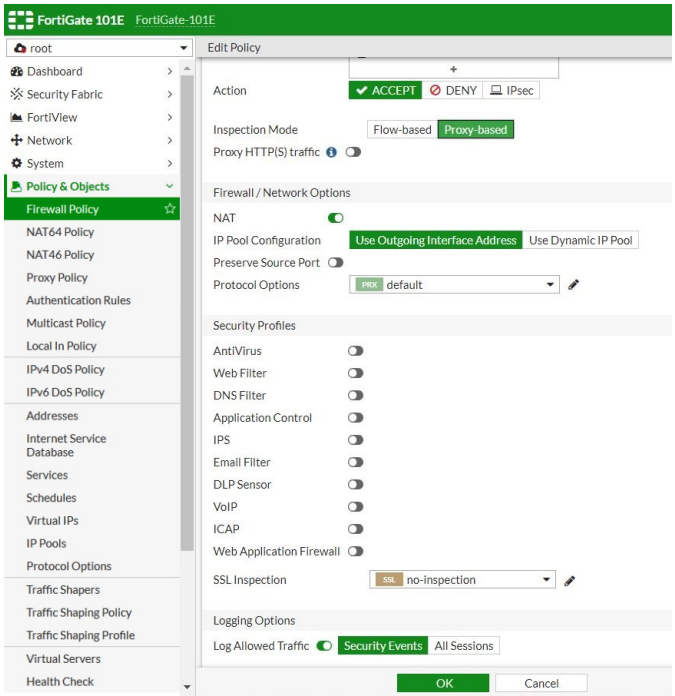
When configuring a firewall policy, you can select a *Flow-based* or *Proxy-basedInspection Mode*. The default setting is *Flow-based*.

To configure inspection mode in a policy:

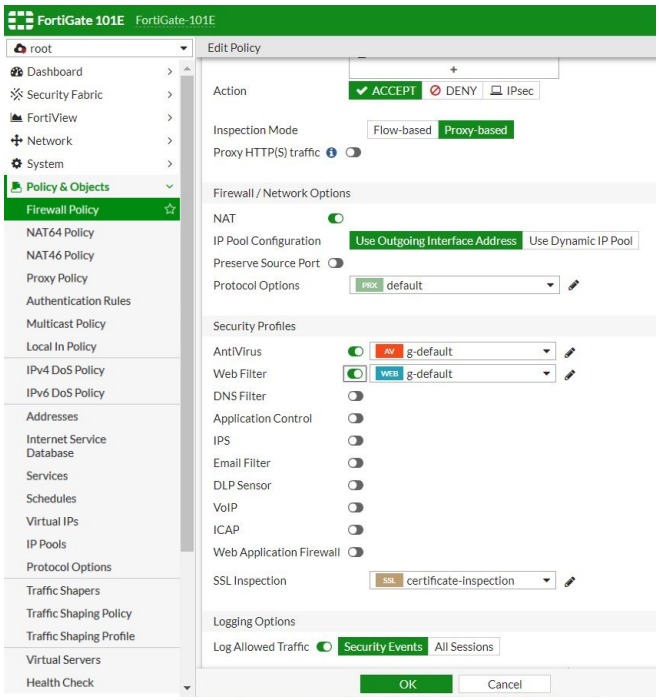
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy, or edit an existing policy.
3. Configure the policy as needed.
   a. If you change the *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*, the *Proxy HTTP(S) traffic* option displays.



   b. In the *Security Profiles* section, if no security profiles are enabled, the default *SSL Inspection* is *no-inspection*.



c. In the *Security Profiles* section, if you enable any security profile, the *SSL Inspection* changes to *certificate-inspection*.



To see the inspection mode changes using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the HTTP and SSH policy redirect settings when inspection mode is set to proxy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy
```

```
        set http-policy-redirect enable
        set ssh-policy-redirect enable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the default SSL-SSH policy set to no inspection using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
       show fu | grep ssl-ssh-profile
        set ssl-ssh-profile "no-inspection"
    next
end
```

OSPFv3 neighbor authentication

OSPFv3 neighbor authentication is available for enhanced IPv6 security.

To configure an OSPF6 interface:

```
config router ospf6
    config ospf6-interface
        edit <name>
            set authentication {none | ah | esp | area}
            set key-rollover-interval <integer>
            set ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
            set ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}
            config ipsec-keys
                edit <spi>
                    set auth-key <string>
                    set enc-key <string>
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

To configure an OSPF6 virtual link:

```
config router ospf6
    config area
        edit <id>
            config virtual-link
                edit <name>
                    set authentication {none | ah | esp | area}
                    set key-rollover-interval <integer>
                    set ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
                    set ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}
                    config ipsec-keys
                        edit <spi>
                            set auth-key <string>
                            set enc-key <string>
                        next
```

```
                end
            next
        end
    next
  end
end
```

To configure an OSPF6 area:

```
config router ospf6
    config area
        edit <id>
            set authentication {none | ah | esp}
            set key-rollover-interval <integer>
            set ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
            set ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}
            config ipsec-keys
                edit <spi>
                    set auth-key <string>
                    set enc-key <string>
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

CLI command descriptions

Command	Description
<id>	Area entry IP address.
authentication {none | ah | esp | area}	Authentication mode: • `none`: Disable authentication • `ah`: Authentication Header • `esp`: Encapsulating Security Payload • `area`: Use the routing area authentication configuration
key-rollover-interval <integer>	Enter an integer value (300 - 216000, default = 300).
ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}	Authentication algorithm.
ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}	Encryption algorithm.
<spi>	Security Parameters Index.
auth-key <string>	Authentication key should be hexadecimal numbers. Key length for each algorithm: • MD5: 16 bytes • SHA1: 20 bytes • SHA256: 32 bytes • SHA384:48 bytes

Command	Description
	• SHA512:84 bytes If the key is shorter than the required length, it will be padded with zeroes.
enc-key <string>	Encryption key should be hexadecimal numbers. Key length for each algorithm: • DES: 8 bytes • 3DES: 24 bytes • AES128: 16 bytes • AES192: 24 bytes • AES256: 32 bytes If the key is shorter than the required length, it will be padded with zeroes.

Firewall anti-replay option per policy

When the global anti-replay option is disabled, the FortiGate does not check TCP flags in packets. The per policy anti-replay option overrides the global setting. This allows you to control whether or not TCP flags are checked per policy.

To enable the anti-replay option so TCP flags are checked using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "policyid-1"
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set anti-replay enable
      set logtraffic all
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

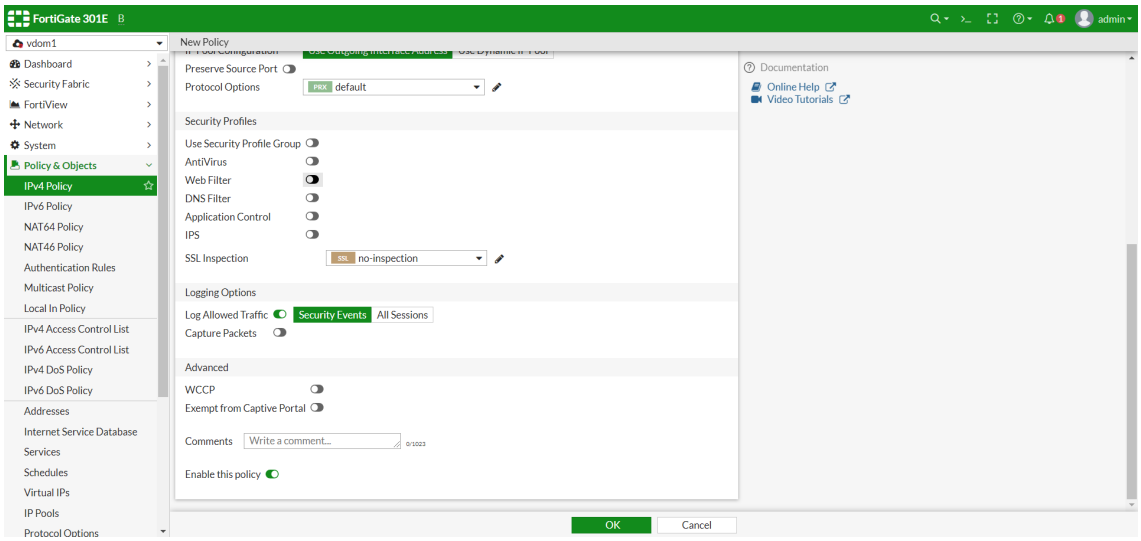
Enabling advanced policy options in the GUI

Advanced policy options can be enabled so you can configure the options in the GUI.

To enable advanced policy options:

```
config system settings
    set gui-advanced-policy enable
end
```

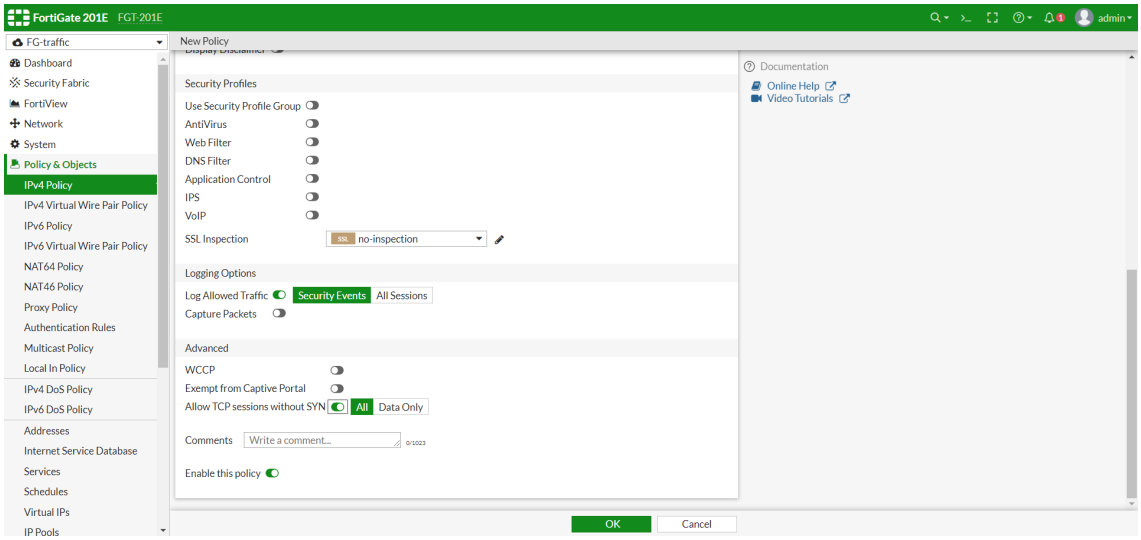
Advanced policy options are now available when creating or editing a policy in the GUI:



To enable configuring TCP sessions without SYN:

```
config system settings
    set tcp-session-without-syn enable
end
```

TCP sessions without SYN can now be configured when creating or editing a policy in the GUI:



Recognize anycast addresses in geo-IP blocking

An anycast IP can be advertised from multiple locations and the router selects a path based on latency, distance, cost, number of hops, and so on. This technique is widely used by providers to route users to the closest server. Since the IP is hosted in multiple geographic locations, there is no way to specify one single location to that IP.

Anycast IP address ranges can be bypassed in geo-IP blocking. The ISDB contains a list of confirmed anycast IP ranges that can be used for this purpose.

When the source or destination is set to `geoip`, you can enable the `geoip-anycast` option. Once enabled, IPs where the anycast option is set to `1` in `geoip_db` are bypassed in country matching and blocking.



You can only use the CLI to configure this feature.

To enable the geoip-anycast option using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "policyid-1"
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "test-geoip-CA_1"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set geoip-anycast enable
      set logtraffic all
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

To check the geoip-anycast option for an IP address using the CLI:

```
diagnose geoip ip2country 1.0.0.1
   1.0.0.1 - Australia, is anycast ip
```

The anycast IP is `1.0.0.1`.

Matching GeoIP by registered and physical location

IP addresses have both a physical and registered location in the geography IP database. Sometimes these two locations are different. The `geoip-match` command allows users to match an IPv4 address in an firewall policy to its physical or registered location when a GeoIP is used as a source or destination address. IPv6 policies currently support geography address objects but do not support `geoip-match`.

In the following example, the physical location of 220.243.219.10 is CA (Canada), the registered location is CN (China), and it is not an anycast IP.

To configure GeoIP matching based on registered location:

1. Create a firewall policy to match the IP:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "policy_id_1"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
```

```
        set dstaddr "test-geoip-CA"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set geoip-match registered-location
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Since CA is applied as a destination address and registered location IP matching is enabled, if the destination IP of the traffic is 220.243.219.10, then the traffic will be blocked because the registered location is CN.

2. Verify that the policy is blocking traffic from the IP address:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp]
5.383798 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
6.381982 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
7.382608 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
^C
3 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

To configure GeoIP matching based on physical location:

1. Create a firewall policy to match the IP:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "policy_id_1"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "test-geoip-CA"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set geoip-match physical-location
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Since CA is applied as a destination address and physical location IP matching is enabled, if the destination IP of the traffic is 220.243.219.10, then the traffic will pass through.

2. Verify that the policy is allowing traffic from the IP address:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp]
5.273985 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
5.274176 wan1 out 172.16.200.10 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
6.274426 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
6.274438 wan1 out 172.16.200.10 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
```

```
    7.273978 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
    7.273987 wan1 out 172.16.200.10 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
    ^C
    6 packets received by filter
    0 packets dropped by kernel
```

Authentication policy extensions

By default, unauthenticated traffic is permitted to fall to the next policy. This means that unauthenticated users are only forced to authenticate against a policy when there are no other matching policies. To avoid this, you can force authentication to always take place.

To set that authentication requirement:

```
config user setting
    set auth-on-demand {always | implicitly}
end
```

Where:

`always`	Always trigger firewall authentication on demand.
`implicitly` (default)	Implicitly trigger firewall authentication on demand. This is the default setting (and the behavior in FortiOS 6.0 and earlier).

In the following example, authentication is required; traffic that would otherwise be allowed by the second policy is instead blocked by the first policy.

To use forced authentication:

```
config user setting
    set auth-on-demand always
end
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "QA to Database"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "QA_subnet"
        set dstaddr "Database"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set groups "qa_group"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 2
        set name "QA to Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "QA_subnet"
        set dstaddr "all"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

HTTP to HTTPS redirect for load balancing

You can configure a virtual server with HTTP to HTTPS redirect enabled. When enabled, a virtual server can convert a client's HTTP requests to HTTPS requests. Through this mandatory conversion, HTTP traffic is converted to HTTPS traffic. This conversion improves the security of the user network.

You can only enable this feature by using the CLI. After you enable this feature, traffic flows as follows:

- When FortiGate receives an HTTP request for an external IP, such as 10.1.100.201 in the following example, FortiGate sends an HTTP 303 response back to the original client and redirects HTTP to HTTPS, instead of forwarding the HTTP request to the real backend servers.
- The client browser restarts the TCP session to HTTPS.
- The HTTPS session comes to the FortiGate where a matching firewall policy allows the HTTPS traffic and establishes a secure SSL connection, and then forwards the request to the real backend servers.

To configure virtual server with HTTPS redirect enabled:

1. Create a virtual server with `server-type` set to `http`:
```
config firewall vip
   edit "virtual-server-http"
      set type server-load-balance
      set extip 10.1.100.201
      set extintf "wan2"
      set server-type http
      set ldb-method round-robin
      set extport 80
      config realservers
         edit 1
            set ip 172.16.200.44
            set port 80
         next
         edit 2
            set ip 172.16.200.55
            set port 80
         next
      end
   next
end
```
2. Create a virtual server with `server-type` set to `https` and with the same external IP address:
```
config firewall vip
   edit "virtual-server-https"
      set type server-load-balance
      set extip 10.1.100.201
      set extintf "wan2"
      set server-type https
      set ldb-method round-robin
```

```
      set extport 443
         config realservers
            edit 1 set ip 172.16.200.44
            set port 443
         next
         edit 2
            set ip 172.16.200.55
            set port 443
         next
      end
      set ssl-certificate "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
   next
end
```

3. Enable the `http-redirect` option for the virtual server with `server-type` set to `http`:

```
config firewall vip
   edit "virtual-server-http"
      set http-redirect enable
   next
end
```

4. Add the two virtual servers to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
   edit 9
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "virtual-server-http" "virtual-server-https"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set inspection-mode proxy set logtraffic all
      set auto-asic-offload disable
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

Use active directory objects directly in policies

Active Directory (AD) groups can be used directly in identity-based firewall policies. You do not need to add remote AD groups to local FSSO groups before using them in policies.

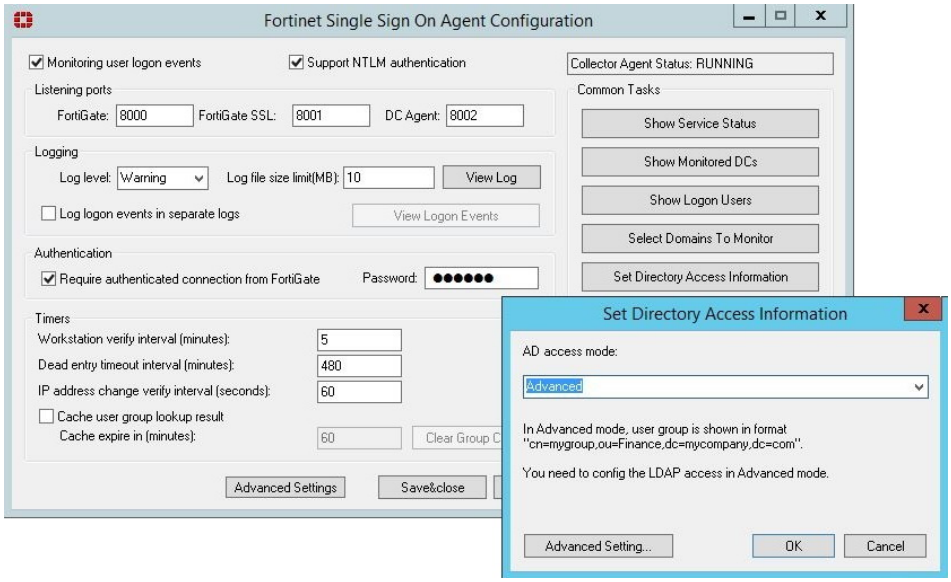
FortiGate administrators can define how often group information is updated from AD LDAP servers.

To retrieve and use AD user groups in policies:

1. Set the FSSO Collector Agent AD access mode on page 1164
2. Add an LDAP server on page 1164
3. Create the FSSO collector that updates the AD user groups list on page 1165
4. Use the AD user groups in a policy on page 1166

Set the FSSO Collector Agent AD access mode

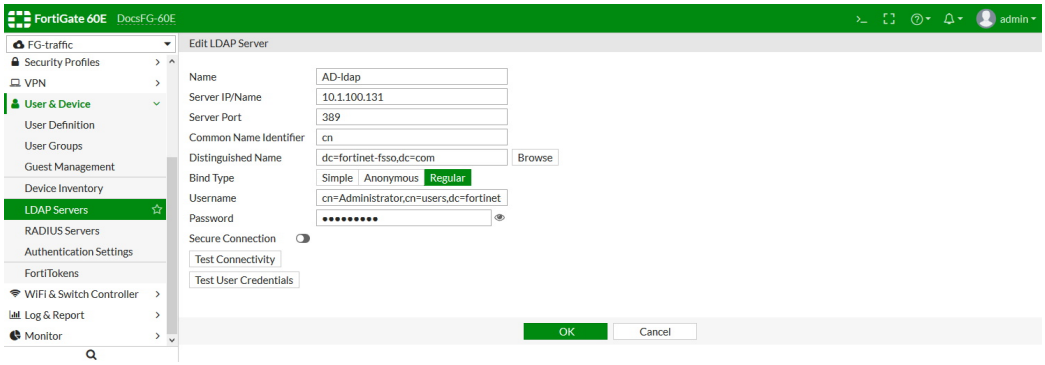
To use this feature, you must set FSSO Collector Agent to *Advanced* AD access mode. If the FSSO Collector Agent is running in the default mode, FortiGate cannot correctly match user group memberships.



Add an LDAP server

To add an LDAP server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the settings as needed.



4. If secure communication over TLS is supported by the remote AD LDAP server:
   a. Enable *Secure Connection* .
   b. Select the protocol.
   c. Select the certificate from the CA that issued the AD LDAP server certificate.
   If the protocol is LDAPS, the port will automatically change to 636.
5. Click *OK*.

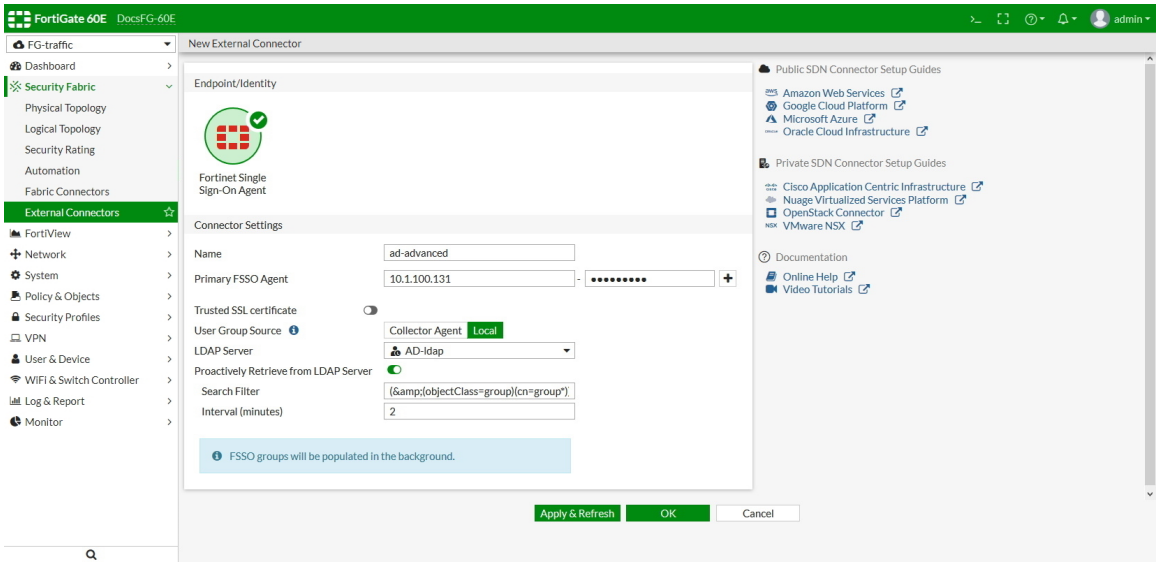
To add an LDAP server in the CLI:

```
config user ldap
    edit "AD-ldap"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
    next
end
```

Create the FSSO collector that updates the AD user groups list

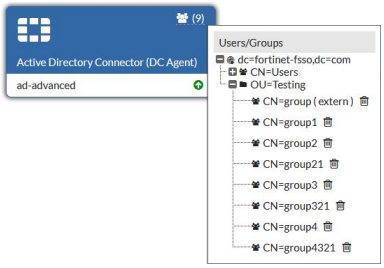
To create an FSSO agent connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.
4. Fill in the *Name*
5. Set the *Primary FSSO Agent* to the IP address of the FSSO Collector Agent, and enter its password.
6. Set the *User Group Source* to *Local*.
7. Set the *LDAP Server* to the just created *AD-ldap* server.
8. Enable *Proactively Retrieve from LDAP Server*.
9. Set the *Search Filter* to *(&(objectClass=group)(cn=group*))*.
   The default search filter retrieves all groups, including Microsoft system groups. In this example, the filter is configured to retrieve *group1*, *group2*, etc, and not groups like *grp199*.
   The filter syntax is not automatically checked; if it is incorrect, the FortiGate might not retrieve any groups.
10. Set the *Interval (minutes)* to configure how often the FortiGate contacts the remote AD LDAP server to update the group information.



11. Click *OK*.

12. To view the AD user groups that are retrieved by the FSSO agent, hover the cursor over the group icon on the fabric connector listing.



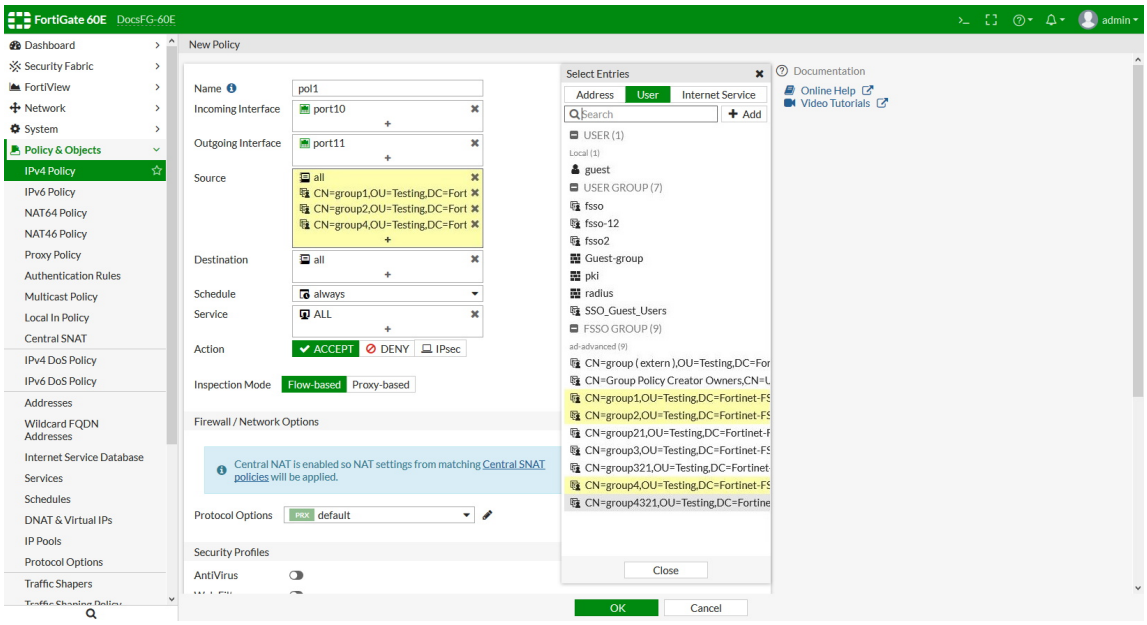
To create an FSSO agent connector in the CLI:

```
config user fsso
    edit "ad-advanced"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
        set ldap-server "AD-ldap"
        set ldap-poll enable
        set ldap-poll-interval 2
        set ldap-poll-filter "(&amp;(objectClass=group)(cn=group*))"
    next
end
```

You view the retrieved AD user groups with the `show user adgrp` command.

Use the AD user groups in a policy

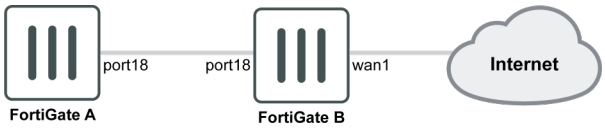
The AD user groups retrieved by the FortiGate can be used directly in firewall policies.



FortiGate Cloud / FDN communication through an explicit proxy

Explicit proxy communication to FortiGate Cloud and FortiGuard servers from FortiGate is enabled. A proxy server can be configured in the FortiGuard settings so that all FortiGuard connections under the `forticldd` process can be established through the proxy server.

Not all FortiGuard services are supported by these proxy settings. For example, web filter service traffic to FortiGuard will not be directed to the configured proxy.



To configure a proxy server and communicate with FortiGate Cloud though it:

1. Configure FortiGate B as a proxy server:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set users "guest1"
    next
end
config user local
    edit "guest1"
        set type password
        set passwd 123456
    next
end
config authentication scheme
    edit "local-basic"
        set method basic
        set user-database "local-user-db"
    next
end
config authentication rule
    edit "local-basic-rule"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set ip-based disable
        set active-auth-method "local-basic"
    next
end
```

2. Configure a firewall policy on FortiGate B to allow FortiGate A to get DNS resolution:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "dns"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "DNS"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure the FortiGuard proxy settings on FortiGate A:

```
config system fortiguard
    set proxy-server-ip 10.2.2.2
    set proxy-server-port 8080
    set proxy-username "guest1"
    set proxy-password 123456
end
```

4. On FortiGate A, log in to FortiGate Cloud to activate the logging service:

```
execute fortiguard-log login <username> <password>
```

5. On FortiGate A, view the `forticldd` debug message to see the connection to the log controller through the proxy server:

```
# diagnose test application forticldd 1
```

No session timeout

To allow clients to permanently connect with legacy medical applications and systems that do not have keepalive or auto-reconnect features, the session timeout can be set to never for firewall services, policies, and VDOMs.

The options to disable session timeout are hidden in the CLI.

To set the session TTL value of a custom service to never:

```
config firewall service custom
    edit "tcp_23"
        set tcp-portrange 23
        set session-ttl never
    next
end
```

To set the session TTL value of a policy to never:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 201
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "wan2"
```

```
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "TCP_8080"
        set logtraffic disable
        set session-ttl never
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To set the session TTL value of a VDOM to never:

```
config system session-ttl
    set default never
    config port
        edit 1
            set protocol 6
            set timeout never
            set start-port 8080
            set end-port 8080
        next
    end
end
```

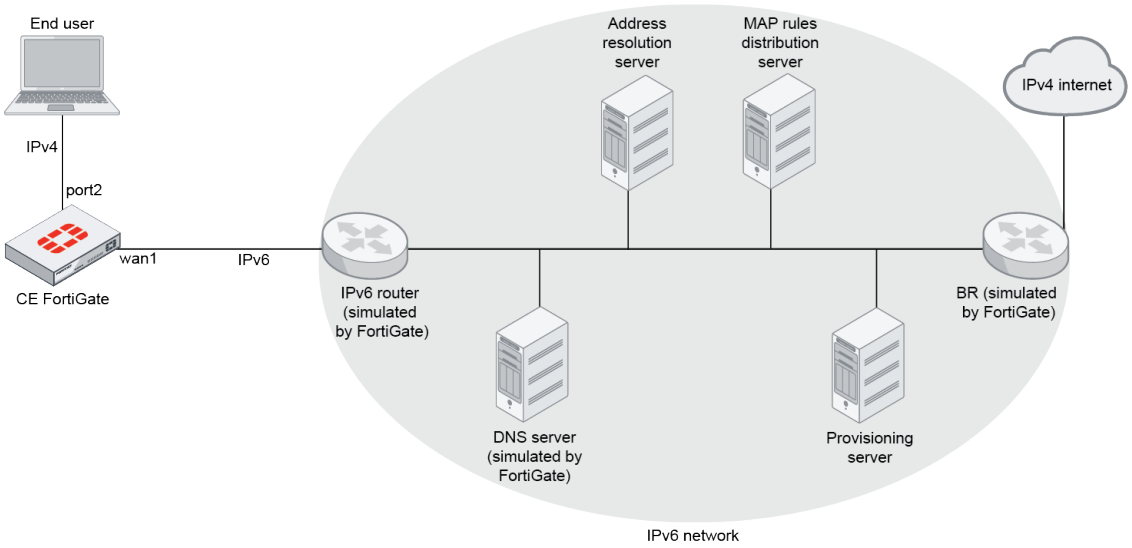
To view a session list with the timeout set to never:

```
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=9 expire=never timeout=never flags=00000000
sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty f00
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=2290/42/1 reply=2895/34/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 238/1 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 301/2
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=18->17/17->18 gwy=172.16.200.55/10.1.100.41
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.41:34256->172.16.200.55:23(172.16.200.10:34256)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:23->172.16.200.10:34256(10.1.100.41:34256)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=9 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=1
serial=00000b27 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000 ngfwid=n/a
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x000001 no_offload
no_ofld_reason:  disabled-by-policy
total session 1
```

MAP-E support

On a customer edge (CE) FortiGate, an IPv4-over-IPv6 (MAP-E) tunnel can be created between the FortiGate and the border relay (BR) operating in an IPv6 network. A tunnel interface is created between the FortiGate and BR, which can be applied to firewall policies and IPsec VPN.



To configure a MAP-E tunnel between the FortiGate and the BR:

1. Configure fixed IP mode.
   a. Configure IPv6 on the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        config ipv6
            set autoconf enable
            set unique-autoconf-addr enable
            set interface-identifier ::6f:6c1f:3400:0
        end
    next
end
```

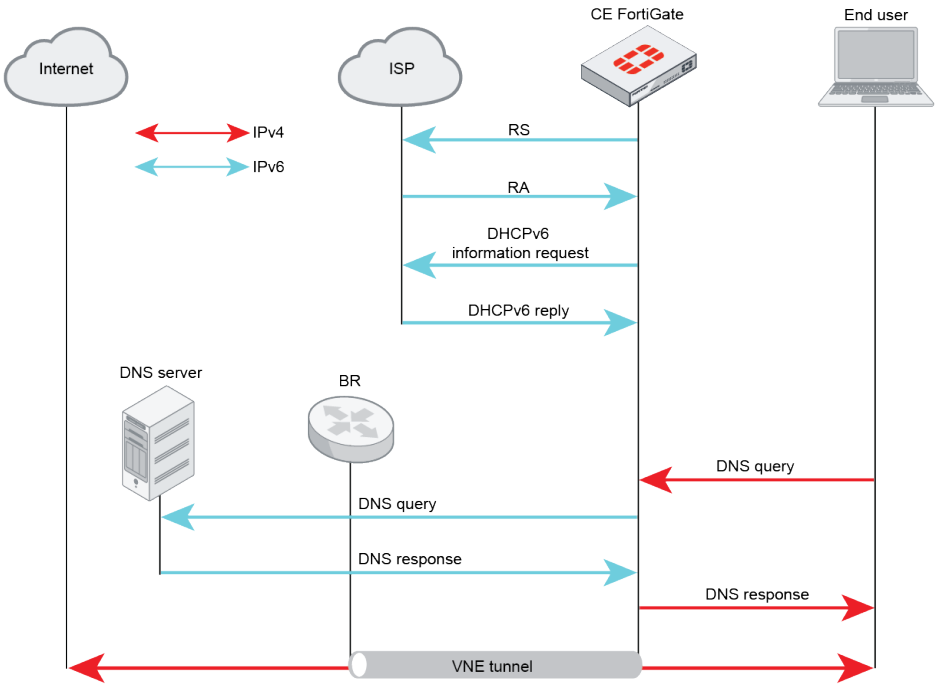
   The `interface-identifier` is an IPv6 address. Its last 64-bit will be kept and the rest will be cleared automatically. It will combine with the IPv6 prefix it gets from the IPv6 router to generate the IPv6 address of the interface.

   By default, `unique-autoconf-addr` is disabled. It must be enabled so it can handle IPv6 prefix changing.

   b. Configure the VNE tunnel:

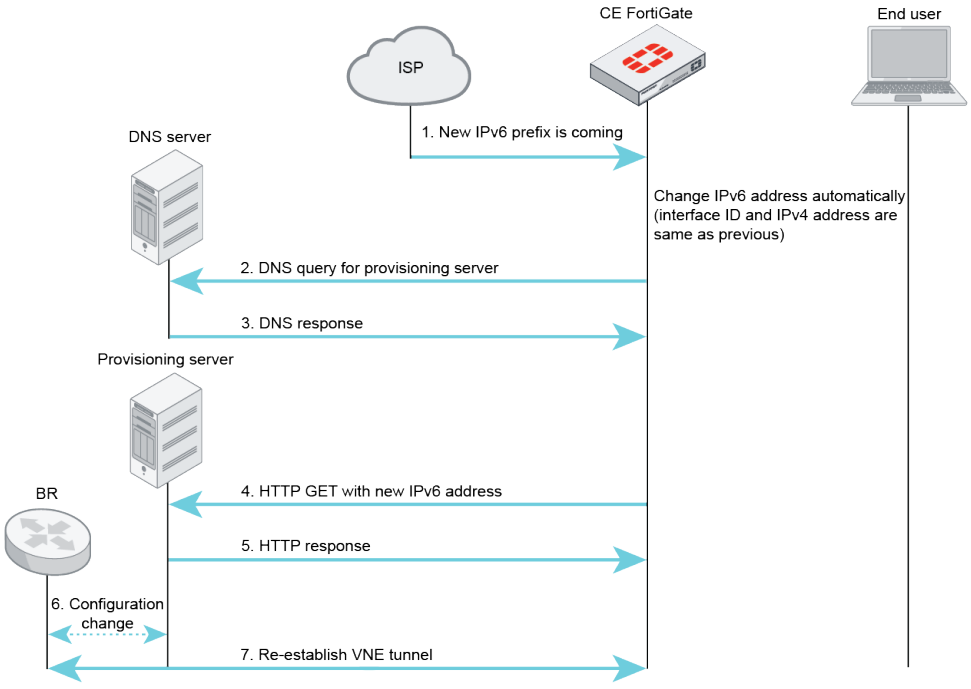
```
config system vne-tunnel
    set status enable
    set interface "wan1"
    set mode fixed-ip
    set ipv4-address 10.10.81.81 255.255.255.0
    set br 2001:160::82
    set update-url "http://qa.forosqa.com/update?user=xxxx&pass=yyyy"
end
```

   Initial sequence overview of VNE tunnel under fixed IP mode:



Once the IPv6 address of the FortiGate changes, the tunnel will be down because the BR does not know the FortiGate's new IPv6 address. The FortiGate uses `update-url` to update the new IPv6 address to the provisioning server. The provisioning server updates the FortiGate's IPv6 address to the BR so the VNE tunnel can be re-established.

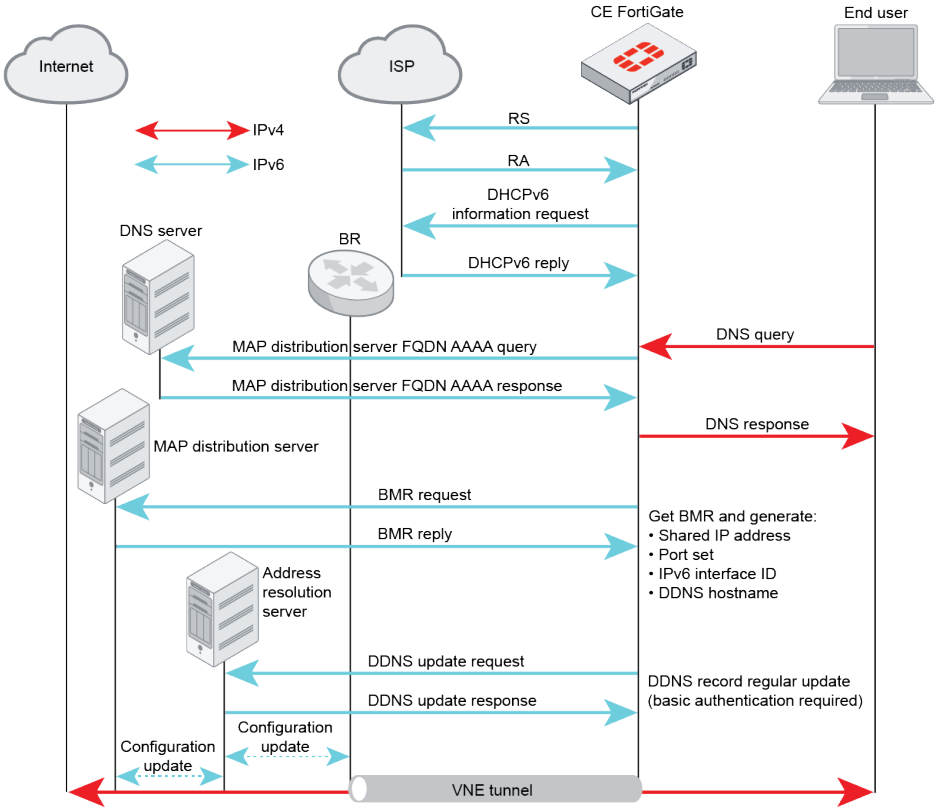
Communication sequence overview of re-establishing VNE tunnel:



2. Configure the VNE tunnel to use MAP-E mode:

```
config system vne-tunnel
    set status enable
    set interface 'wan1'
    set ssl-certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
    set bmr-hostname ********
    set auto-asic-offload enable
    set mode map-e
end
```

Initial sequence overview of VNE tunnel under MAP-E mode:



The FortiGate sends a MAP rule request to the MAP distribution server once the IPv6 address is configured on the FortiGate by RS/RA. Next, the FortiGate will send an AAAA query to get the IPv6 address of the MAP distribution server. After sending the BMR request to the MAP distribution server, the FortiGate will get the IPv4 address, port set, BR IPv6 address, and hostname of the address resolution server from the BMR reply. The VNE tunnel between the FortiGate and BR is now established.

The address resolution server is actually a dynamic DNS. The hostname is used for the FortiGate to maintain an IPv6 address when it changes.

The FortiGate updates the DDNS server with its IPv6 address whenever it updates, which in turn provides the update to the MAP distribution server and BR so they know how to resolve the FortiGate by hostname.

Once the VNE tunnel is established, a tunnel interface is created (`vne.root`), and an IPv4-over-IPv6 tunnel is set up between the FortiGate and BR. The route, firewall policy, and DNS server can now be configured to let the traffic go through the VNE tunnel and the and protect the end-user. The VNE tunnel can also be used in IPsec phase 1.

3. Configure the route:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set device "vne.root"
    next
end
```

4. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 111
        set name "ff"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "vne.root"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure the DNS server:

```
config system dns-server
    edit "port2"
    next
end
```

Address objects

Addresses define sources and destinations of network traffic and can be used in many functions such as firewall policies, ZTNA, etc.

To view the possible uses list of address object usage:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click the number under *Ref*. The *Usage of Address:<Predefined address>* pane opens, where *<Predefined address>* is one of the predefined addresses, such as SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1.
3. In the *Usage of Address:<Predefined address>* pane, click *Possible Uses* to view the list.

When properly set up, these address objects can be used with great flexibility to make the configuration of different functions simpler and more intuitive. When used in a firewall policy, the FortiGate compares the IP addresses contained in packet headers with a policy's source and destination addresses to determine if the policy matches the traffic. The matching of IP addresses in packet headers is also performed for other FortiGate functions configured with address objects.

Address Types

When creating an IPv4 address, there are several different types of addresses that can be specified. Which one is chosen will depend on which method most easily yet accurately describes the addresses that you are trying to include with as few entries as possible based on the information that you have. For instance, if you are trying to describe the addresses of a specific company's web server but do not know how extensive their web server farm is, you would be more likely to use a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) rather than a specific IP address. On the other hand, some computers do not have FQDNs and a specific IP address must be used.

The following table provides a short description of the different types of addresses:

Address type	Description
Subnet	The subnet type of address is expressed using a host address and a subnet mask. This is the most flexible of the address types because the address can refer to as little as one individual address (x.x.x.x/32) or as many as all of the available addresses (0.0.0.0/0). See Subnet on page 1175 and Dynamic policy — fabric devices on page 1176 for more information.
IP range	The IP range type can be used to define a continuous set of IP addresses between one specific IP address and another (inclusive). It is a flexible way to describe a continuous set of addresses while being specific and granular, without needing to fall within the boundaries of standard subnets. See IP range on page 1178 for more information.
FQDN	The Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) address type accepts an address string and resolves it to one or more IP addresses. It relies on DNS to keep up with address changes without having to manually change the IP addresses on the FortiGate. See FQDN addresses on page 1179 for more information. FQDN can also be specified as wildcard addresses such as *.example.com. See Using wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies on page 1180 for more information.
Geography	Geography addresses are those determined by the country/region of origin. The IPs for the country/region is automatically determined from the Geography IP database. See Geography based addresses on page 1182 and IPv6 geography-based addresses on page 1184 for more information.
Dynamic	Dynamic address object can be used in the policies that support dynamic address type and comes in different subtypes such as FSSO and SDN connector dynamic addresses. See FSSO dynamic address subtype on page 1192, ClearPass integration for dynamic address objects on page 1195, Getting started with public and private SDN connectors on page 299 and for more information.
Device (Mac address)	A MAC address is a link layer-based address type and it cannot be forwarded across different IP segments. In FortiOS, you can configure a firewall address object with a singular MAC, wildcard MAC, multiple MACs, or a MAC range.

Address type	Description
	See MAC addressed-based policies on page 1200, Adding MAC-based addresses to devices on page 99, ISDB well-known MAC address list on page 1202, and IPv6 MAC addresses and usage in firewall policies on page 1203 for more information.
Wildcard (CLI only)	Wildcard addresses are addresses that identify ranges of IP addresses, reducing the amount of firewall addresses and security policies required to match some of the traffic on your network. See Wildcard addressing on page 1186 for more information.
Interface subnet (CLI only)	For all interfaces set to a LAN or DMZ role, an option is available to automatically create an address object for the connected network. If the interface's subnet changes the address object subnet changes too. See Interface subnet on page 1186 for more information.

Address Group

Address groups are designed for ease of use in the administration of the device. If you have several addresses or address ranges that will commonly be treated the same or require the same security policies, you can put them into address groups, rather than entering multiple individual addresses in each policy that refers to them.

There are two different types of address groups and the following table provides a short description of each type:

Address group type	Description
Group	Members of an address group type group can belong to multiple address groups. See Address group on page 1188 and Address group exclusions on page 1190 for more information.
Folder	Members or an address group type folder can only belong to a single address folder. See Address folder on page 1189 for more information.

Subnet

A subnet address object is usually used to refer internal networks or addresses which are defined by the network administrator.

A subnet address usually consists of a network address and a netmask, for example, 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0. In this example, the network address is 192.168.1.0 and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The network address defines the network to match and the netmask specify the IP address to match on the network.

In the above example, the subnet address 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 would match the following IP addresses:

```
192.168.1.1
192.168.1.2
192.168.1.3
...
192.168.1.255
```

For defining a subnet address object the valid format of IP address and netmask could be either:

`x.x.x.x/x.x.x.x`, such as 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0

or

`x.x.x.x/x`, such as 192.168.1.0/24



To define a single address using subnet, use the netmask 255.255.255.255 or /32. A warning message will be shown if any other netmask is used and will not let the user save the address object.

To create a subnet address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Address*.
3. In the *Category* field, select *Address*.
4. Enter a *Name* for the address object.
5. In the *Type* field, select *Subnet* from the dropdown menu.
6. In the *IP/Netmask* field, enter the address and subnet mask according to the format x.x.x.x/x.x.x.x or the short hand format of x.x.x.x/x
7. In the *Interface* field, leave as the default *any* or select a specific interface from the dropdown menu.
8. Enable/disable *Static route configuration*.
9. Enter any additional information in the *Comments* field.
10. Click *OK*.

Dynamic policy — fabric devices

The dynamic address group represents the configured IP addresses of all Fortinet devices connected to the Security Fabric. It currently includes FortiManager, FortiAnalyzer, FortiClient EMS, FortiMail, FortiAP(s), and FortiSwitch(es). Like other dynamic address groups for fabric connectors, it can be used as an IPv4 address in firewall policies and objects.

The list of firewall addresses includes a default address object called `FABRIC_DEVICE`. You can apply the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object to the following types of policies:

- Firewall policy (including virtual wire pairs)
- IPv4 shaping policy
- IPv4 ACL policy
- `policy64` and `policy46` (IPv4 only)

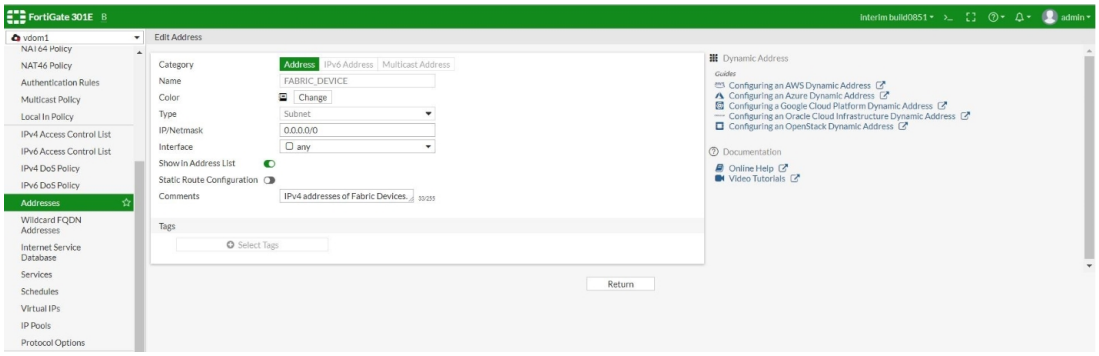
You cannot apply the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object to the following types of policies:

- IPv4 explicit proxy policy

You also cannot use the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object with the following settings:

- Custom extension on `internet-service`
- Exclusion of `addrgrp`

Initially the FABRIC_DEVICE object does not have an address value. The address value is populated dynamically as things change. As a result, you cannot edit the FABRIC_DEVICE object, add any addresses to the object, or remove any addresses from the object. The *Edit Address* pane in the GUI only has a *Return* button because the object is read-only:

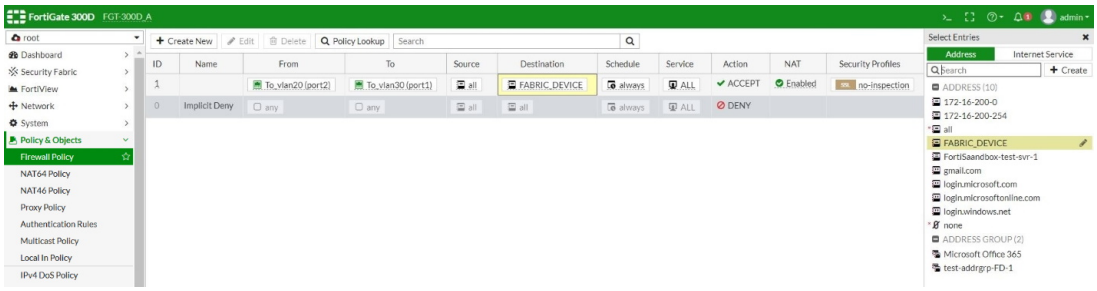


The FABRIC_DEVICE object address values are populated based on:

- FortiAnalyzer IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiManager IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiMail IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiClient EMS IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiAP IPs (from the *FortiAP Setup* pane or DHCP)
- FortiSwitch IPs (from the *FortiSwitch Setup* page or DHCP)

To apply the FABRIC_DEVICE object to a firewall policy using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.
3. For the *Destination* field, select *FABRIC_DEVICE* from the list of address entries.



4. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

To apply the FABRIC_DEVICE object to a firewall policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall address
    edit "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set type ipmask
        set comment "IPv4 addresses of Fabric Devices."
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
        set allow-routing disable
```

```
        set subnet 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Diagnose command

You can use the diagnose command to list IP addresses of Fortinet devices that are configured in the Security Fabric.

To run the diagnose command using the CLI:

```
(root) # diagnose firewall sf-addresses list

FabricDevices: 172.18.64.48
FortiAnalyzer: 172.18.60.25
FortiSandbox: 172.18.52.154
FortiManager: 172.18.28.31
FortiClientEMS: 172.18.62.6
FortiAP:
FortiSwitch:
FortiAP/SW-DHCP:
```

IP range

The IP range type of address can describe a group of addresses while being specific and granular. It does this by specifying a continuous set of IP addresses between one specific IP address and another.

The format would be:

`x.x.x.x-x.x.x.x`, such as 192.168.110.100-192.168.110.120

To create an IP range address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Address*.
3. In the *Category* field, select *Address*.
4. Enter a *Name* for the address object.
5. In the *Type* field, select *IP Range* from the dropdown menu.
6. In the *IP Range* field, enter the range of addresses in the following format: x.x.x.x-x.x.x.x (no spaces)

7. In the *Interface* field, leave as the default any or select a specific interface from the drop down menu.
8. Enable/disable *Static route configuration*.
9. Enter any additional information in the *Comments* field.
10. Click *OK*.

FQDN addresses

By using Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) addressing you can take advantage of the dynamic ability of DNS to keep up with address changes without having to manually change the addresses on the FortiGate. FQDN addresses are most often used with external web sites but they can be used for internal web sites as well if there is a trusted DNS server that can be accessed. FQDN addressing also comes in handy for large web sites that may use multiple addresses and load balancers for their web sites. The FortiGate firewall automatically maintains a cached record of all the addresses resolved by the DNS for the FQDN addresses used.

For example, if you were doing this manually and you wanted to have a security policy that involved Google, you could track down all of the IP addresses that they use across multiple countries. Using the FQDN address is simpler and more convenient.

When representing hosts by an FQDN, the domain name can also be a subdomain, such as mail.example.com.

Valid FQDN formats include:

- <host_name>.<top_level_domain_name>, such as example.com
- <host_name>.<second_level_domain_name>.<top_level_domain_name>, such as mail.example.com.

The FortiGate firewall keeps track of the DNS TTLs so as the entries change on the DNS servers the IP address will effectively be updated for the FortiGate. As long as the FQDN address is used in a security policy, it stores the address in the DNS cache.



There is a possible security downside to using FQDN addresses. Using a fully qualified domain name in a security policy means that your policies are relying on the DNS server to be accurate and correct. Should the DNS server be compromised, security policies requiring domain name resolution may no longer function properly.

To create a Fully Qualified Domain Name address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Address*.
3. In the *Category* field, choose *Address*.
4. Enter a *Name* for the address object.
5. In the *Type* field, select *FQDN* from the dropdown menu.
6. Enter the domain name in the *FQDN* field.
7. In the *Interface* field, leave as the default *any* or select a specific interface from the dropdown menu.
8. Enable/disable *Static route configuration*.
9. Enter any additional information in the *Comments* field.
10. Click *OK*.

Using wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies

You can use wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies. IPv4, IPv6, ACL, local, shaping, NAT64, NAT46, and NGFW policy types support wildcard FQDN addresses.

For wildcard FQDN addresses to work, the FortiGate should allow DNS traffic to pass through.

Initially, the wildcard FQDN object is empty and contains no addresses. When the client tries to resolve a FQDN address, the FortiGate will analyze the DNS response. The IP address(es) contained in the answer section of the DNS response will be added to the corresponding wildcard FQDN object. It is therefore necessary to have the DNS session-helpers defined in the `config system session-helper` setting.

Since FortiGate must analyze the DNS response, it does not work with DNS over HTTPS.

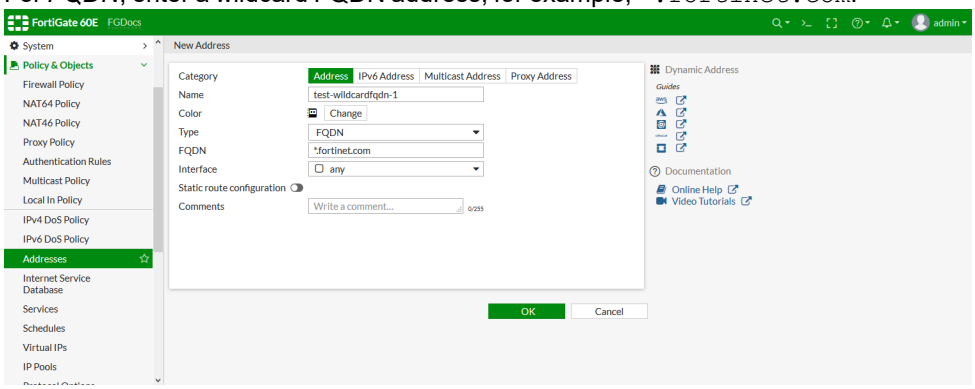
When the wildcard FQDN gets the resolved IP addresses, FortiOS loads the addresses into the firewall policy for traffic matching.

The FortiGate will keep the IP addresses in the FQDN object table as long as the DNS entry itself has not expired. Once it expires, the IP address is removed from the wildcard FQDN object until another query is made. At any given time, a single wildcard FQDN object may have up to 1000 IP addresses.

The DNS expiry TTL value is set by the authoritative name server for that DNS record. If the TTL for a specific DNS record is very short and you would like to cache the IP address longer, then you can extend it with the CLI. See To extend the TTL for a DNS record in the CLI: on page 1182.

To create a wildcard FQDN using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Specify a *Name*.
3. For *Type*, select *FQDN*.
4. For *FQDN*, enter a wildcard FQDN address, for example, `*.fortinet.com`.

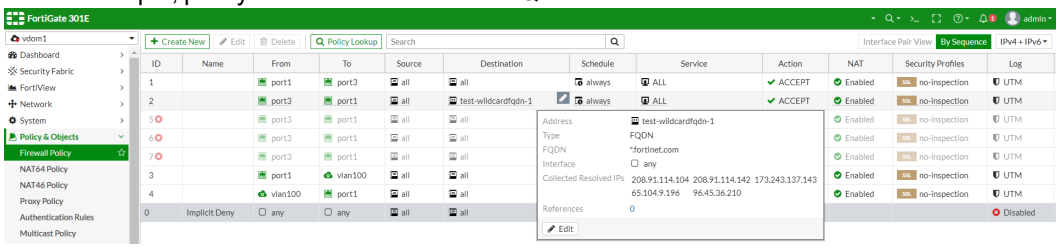


5. Click *OK*.

To use a wildcard FQDN in a firewall policy using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. For *Destination*, select the wildcard FQDN.
3. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.
4. Click *OK*.

In this example, policy ID 2 uses the wildcard FQDN:



To create a wildcard FQDN using the CLI:

```
config firewall address
    edit "test-wildcardfqdn-1"
        set type fqdn
        set fqdn "*.fortinet.com"
    next
end
```

To use wildcard FQDN in a firewall policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "test-wildcardfqdn-1"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To use the diagnose command to list resolved IP addresses of wildcard FQDN objects:

```
# diagnose firewall fqdn list
List all FQDN:
*.fortinet.com: ID(48) ADDR(96.45.36.159) ADDR(192.168.100.161) ADDR(65.39.139.161)
```

Alternatively:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 6
worker idx: 0
vfid=0 name=*.fortinet.com ver=IPv4  min_ttl=3266:0, cache_ttl=0 , slot=-1, num=3,
wildcard=1
```

```
      96.45.36.159 (ttl=68862:68311:68311) 192.168.100.161 (ttl=3600:3146:3146)
65.39.139.161

(ttl=3600:3481:3481)
```

To use the diagnose command for firewall policies which use wildcard FQDN:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100004
...
destination fqdn or dynamic address (1):*.fortinet.com ID(48) uuid_idx=57 ADDR
(208.91.114.104) ADDR(208.91.114.142) ADDR(173.243.137.143) ADDR(65.104.9.196) ADDR
(96.45.36.210)
...
```

To extend the TTL for a DNS record in the CLI:

In this the example the `set cache-ttl` value has been extended to 3600 seconds.

```
config firewall address
   edit "fortinet.com"
      set type fqdn
      set fqdn "www.fortinet.com”
      set cache-ttl 3600
   next
end
```

Geography based addresses

Geography addresses are those determined by country of origin. The IP for the country or region is automatically determined from the Geography IP database.

To view IP Geography database:

```
#diagnose autoupdate versions | grep -A 6 "IP Geography DB"
IP Geography DB
---------
Version: 3.00152
Contract Expiry Date: n/a
Last Updated using manual update on Thu Nov 17 17:52:00 2022
Last Update Attempt: Wed Nov 23 10:56:46 2022
Result: No Updates
```



Without a valid license, local IP geography database will continue to work. However the FortiGate will stop receiving geography IP updates from the FortiGuard servers and the geography IP database will no longer be updated. IP geolocation service is part of base services included with all FortiCare support contracts. See FortiGuard Security Services for more information.

To create a geography address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Address*.

3. In the *Category* field, choose *Address*.
4. Enter a *Name* for the address object.
5. In the *Type* field, select *Geography* from the dropdown menu.
6. In the *Country/Region* field, select a single country from the dropdown menu.
7. In the *Interface* field, leave as the default *any* or select a specific interface from the dropdown menu.
8. Enter any additional information in the *Comments* field.
9. Click *OK*.

Overrides

It is possible to assign a specific IP address range to a customized country ID. Generally, geographic addressing is done at the VDOM level; it could be considered global if you are using the root VDOM, but the `geoip-override setting` is a global setting.

```
config system geoip-override
    edit "test"
        set country-id "A0"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 7.7.7.7
                set end-ip 7.7.7.8
            next
            edit 2
                set start-ip 7.7.10.1
                set end-ip 7.7.10.255
            next
        end
    next
end
```



- While the setting exists in the configuration file, the system assigns the `country-id` option automatically and cannot be set or unset manually.
- While you can use "edit 1" and "edit 2", it is simpler to use "edit 0" and let the system automatically assign an ID number.

After creating a customized Country by using the `geoip-override` command, the new country name has been added automatically to the country list and will be available on the *Firewall Address Country* field.

Diagnose commands

There are a few diagnosis commands used with geographic addresses. The basic syntax is:

```
diagnose firewall ipgeo [country-list | ip-list | ip2country | override | copyright-notice]
```

Diagnose command	Description
country-list	List of all countries.
ip-list	List of the IP addresses associated with the country.

Diagnose command	Description
ip2country	Used to determine which country a specific IP address is assigned to.
override	List of user defined geography data; items configured with the `config system geoip-override` command.
copyright-notice	Shows the copyright notice.

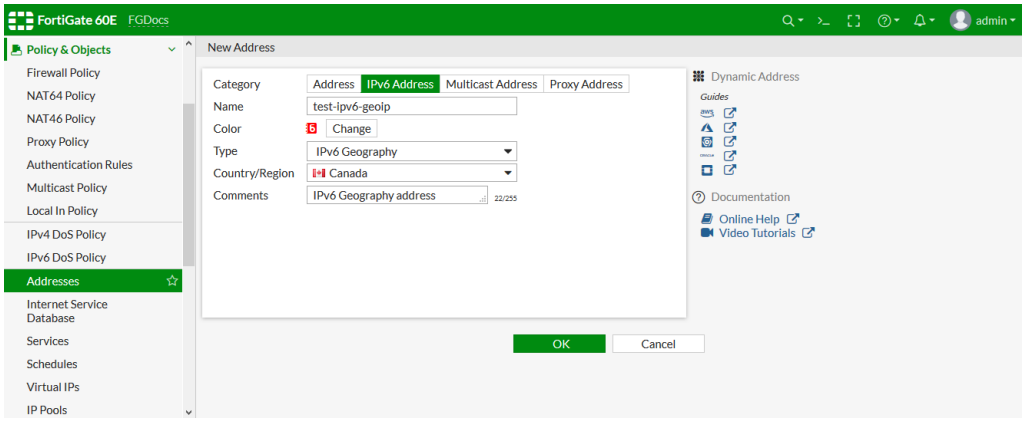
IPv6 geography-based addresses

Geography-based IPv6 addresses can be created and applied to IPv6 firewall policies.

IPv6 geography-based addresses do not support `geoip-override` or `geoip-anycast`.

To create an IPv6 geography-based address in the GUI:

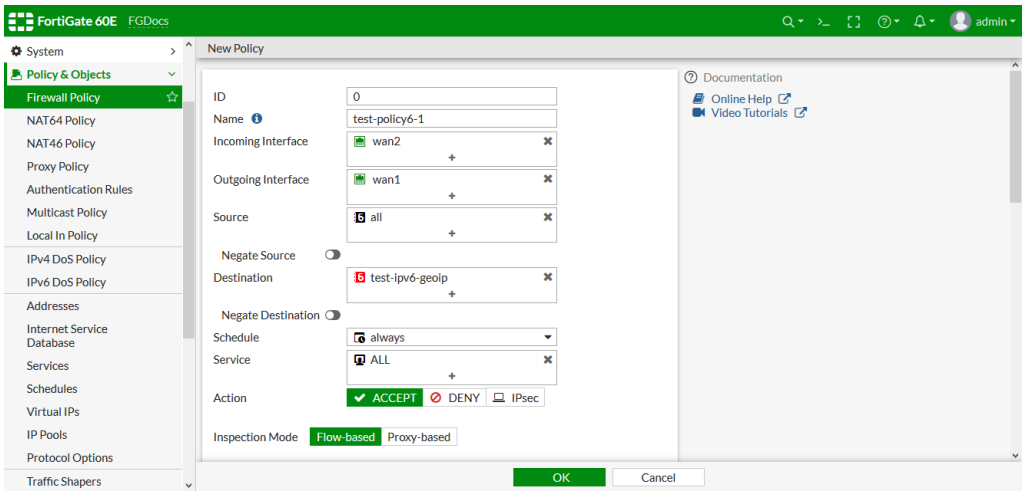
1. Go to *Policy and Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set *Category* to *IPv6 Address*.
4. Enter a name for the address.
5. Set *Type* to *IPv6 Geography*.
6. Select the *Country/Region* from the list.
7. Optionally, enter comments.



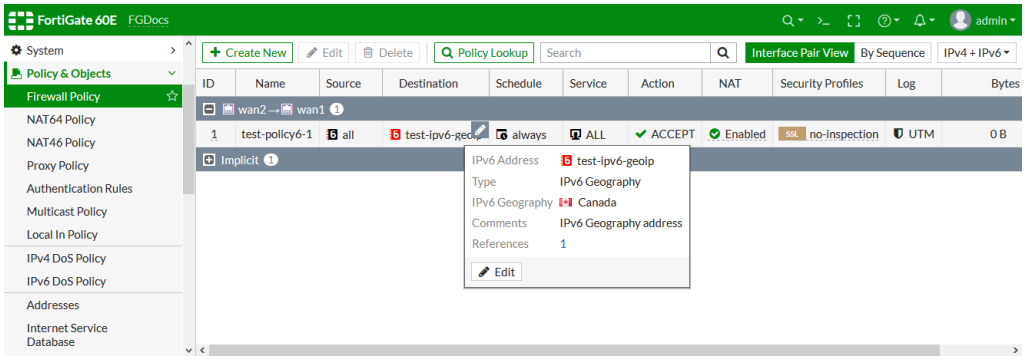
8. Click *OK*.

To use the IPv6 geography address in a policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Edit an existing policy, or create a new one, using the IPv6 geography address as the *Source* or *Destination Address*.



3. In the policy list, hover over the address to view details.



To configure an IPv6 geography-based address in the CLI:

1. Create an IPv6 geography-based address:

```
config firewall address6
    edit "test-ipv6-geoip"
        set type geography
        set color 6
        set comment "IPv6 Geography address"
        set country "CA"
    next
end
```

2. Use the IPv6 geography-based address in a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "test-policy6-1"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr6 "all"
        set dstaddr6 "test-ipv6-geoip"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
```

```
        next
    end
```

Wildcard addressing

Wildcard addresses are addresses that identify ranges of IP addresses, reducing the amount of firewall addresses and security policies required to match some of the traffic on your network. Wildcard addresses are an advanced feature, usually required only for complex networks with complex firewall filtering requirements. By using these wildcard addresses in the firewall configuration, administrators can eliminate creating multiple, separate IP based address objects and then grouping them to then apply to multiple security policies.

A wildcard address consists of an IP address and a wildcard netmask, for example, 192.168.0.56 255.255.0.255. In this example, the IP address is 192.168.0.56 and the wildcard netmask is 255.255.0.255. The IP address defines the networks to match and the wildcard netmask defines the specific addresses to match on these networks.

In a wildcard netmask, zero denotes ignoring the value of the octet in the IP address. This means the wildcard firewall address matches any number in this address octet. This also means that the number included in this octet of IP address is ignored and can be any number. Usually, if the octet in the wildcard netmask is zero, the corresponding octet in the IP address is also zero.

In a wildcard netmask, a number denotes matching addresses according to how the numbers translate into binary addresses. For example, the wildcard netmask is 255; the wildcard address will only match addresses with the value for this octet that is in the IP address part of the wildcard address. So, if the first octet of the IP address is 192 and the first octet of the wildcard netmask is 255, the wildcard address will only match addresses with 192 in the first octet.

In the above example, the wildcard address 192.168.0.56 255.255.0.255 would match the following IP addresses:

```
192.168.0.56
192.168.1.56
192.168.2.56
...
192.168.255.56
```

The wildcard addresses 192.168.0.56 255.255.0.255 and 192.168.1.56 255.255.0.255 define the same thing since the 0 in the wildcard mask means to match any address in the third octet.

The following is an example of how to configure a wildcard firewall address.

```
config firewall address
    edit example_wildcard_address
        set type wildcard
        set wildcard 192.168.0.56 255.255.0.255
    next
end
```



Wildcard firewall addresses are initially configured in the CLI. You cannot choose wildcard in the GUI when creating the address, but after the address is created in the CLI, it will show up in the GUI. The *Type* field shows a grayed-out value of *Wildcard* and the settings, other than the *Type*, can be edited.

Interface subnet

Interface subnet address type enables automatic address creation for attached networks.

The *Create address object matching subnet* option is displayed in the GUI when *Role* is set to *LAN* or *DMZ*.

To create an interface subnet:

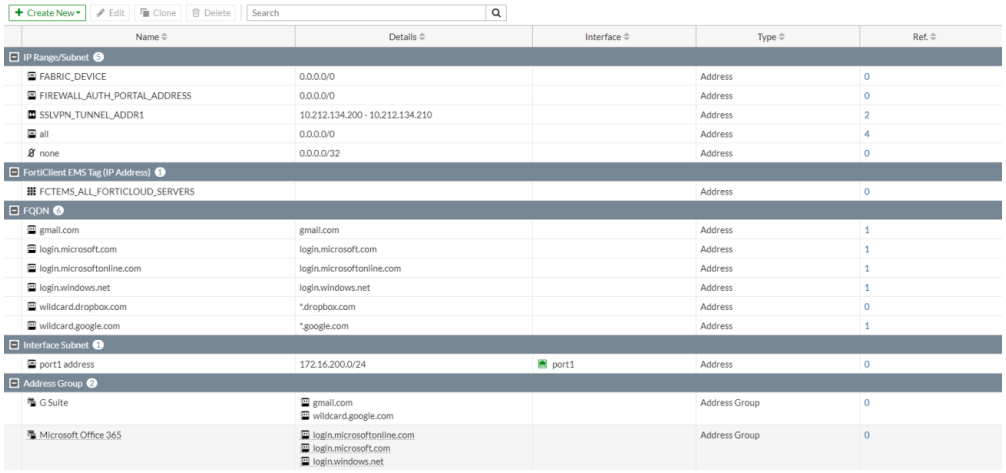
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Interface* or select existing interface and *Edit*.
3. Enable *Create address object matching subnet* and configure the settings.
4. Click *OK*.

The following is an example of how to configure an interface subnet firewall address on the CLI:

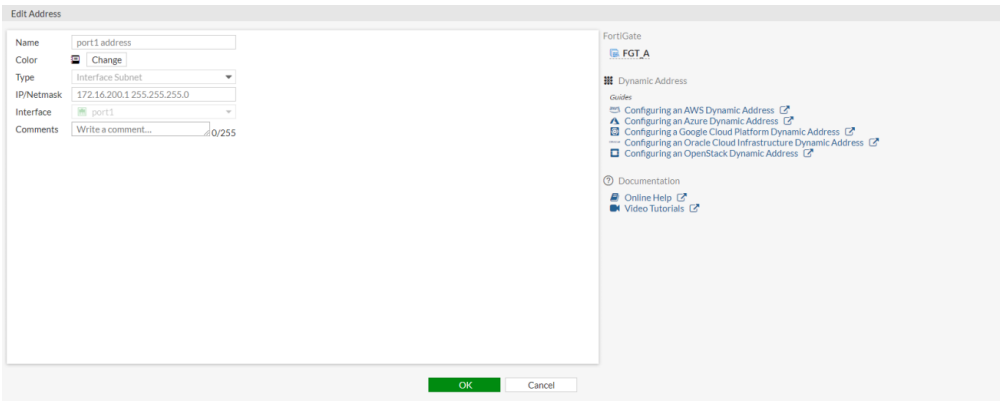
```
config firewall address
    edit "port1 address"
        set type interface-subnet
        set interface "port1"
    next
end
```

Interface subnet addresses are automatically created after enabling the *Create address object matching subnet* option in the interface page or they can be manually configured in the CLI. You cannot choose *Interface Subnet* in the GUI when creating the address, but after the address is created, it will show up in the GUI. However, all the settings are grayed other than the comments, which can be edited.

When the *Create address object matching subnet* option is enabled, the new address object displays on the *Policy & Objects* > *Address* > *Interface Subnet*.



After the address is created, the subnet is dynamically assigned to the address object which can be seen on both GUI and CLI:




```
config firewall address
    edit "port1 address"
        set type interface-subnet
        set subnet 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port1"
    next
end
```

Address group

The use of groups is not mandatory. However, adding individual addresses to a policy sometimes become tedious. If you use several different addresses with a given policy, these address objects can be grouped into an address group as it is much easier to add or subtract addresses from the group.

Security policies require addresses with homogenous network interfaces. Therefore, address groups should contain only addresses bound to the same network interface or Any.

For example, if address 1.1.1.1 is associated with port1, and address 2.2.2.2 is associated with port2, they cannot be in the same group. However, if 1.1.1.1 and 2.2.2.2 are configured with an interface of Any, they can be grouped, even if the addresses involve different networks.

To create an address group:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Go to *Create New* > *Address Group*.
3. In the *Category* field, select *IPv4 Group*.
4. Enter a *Group name* for the address object.
5. In the *Type* field, select *Group*.
6. Select the + in the *Members* field. The *Select Entries* pane opens.
7. Select members of the group. It is possible to select more than one entry. Select the *x* icon in the field to remove an entry.
8. Enable/disable *Static route configuration*.
9. Enter any additional information in the *Comments* field.
10. Click *OK*.

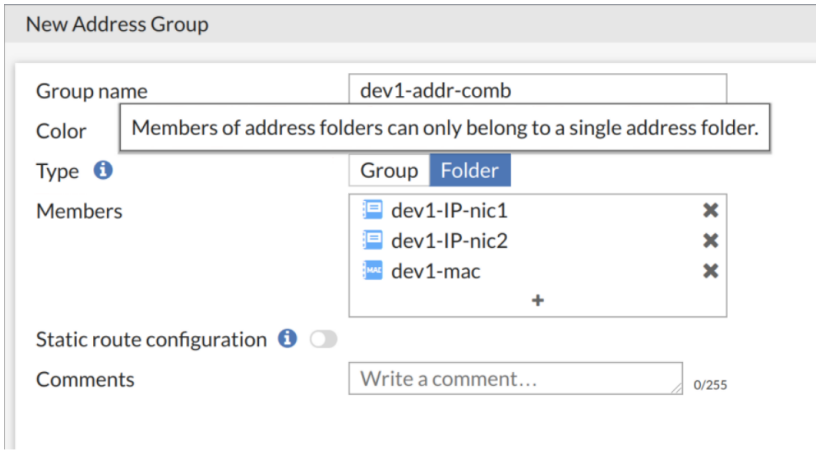
Address folder

Some address objects logically belong to the same device, such as two IPs from the same computer. These address objects can be grouped into an address folder, which is an exclusive list of address objects that do not appear in other address groups or folders.

In the CLI, the folder type can be set after the member list is already populated. If the member list contains an incompatible entry, then the setting will be discarded when the `next`/`end` command is issued. If the folder type is set before the member list is populated, then the possible member entry list will be filtered according to the selected type.

To create an address folder in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address Group* and enter a name.
3. For *Type*, select *Folder*.
4. For *Members*, click the + to add the addresses. Address folders and groups are exclusive, so the *Select Entries* window filters out address objects that are a member of an existing group or folder.



5. Click *OK*.
6. In the address table, expand the *Address Group* section to view the folder (*dev1-addr-comb*). The expandable folder view shows the address folder's child objects:

	safe-network1-devices	Address Group (Folder)	2 entries		0
	dev1-addr-comb	Address Group (Folder)	3 entries		1
	dev1-IP-nic1	Subnet	192.168.1.25/32		1
	dev1-IP-nic2	Subnet	192.168.1.22/32		1
	dev1-mac	Device (MAC Address)	00:0a:95:9d:68:16		1
	dev2-addr-comb	Address Group (Folder)	4 entries		1
	dev2-IP-nic1	Subnet	192.168.1.101/32		1
	dev2-IP-nic2	Subnet	192.168.1.102/32		1
	dev2-IP-nic3	Subnet	192.168.1.103/32		1
	dev2-mac	Device (MAC Address)	11:5b:12:2c:87:02		1

To configure an address folder in the CLI:

notes

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "safe-network1-devices"
        set type folder
        set member "dev1-addr-comb" "dev2-addr-comb"
        set comment ''
        set exclude disable
        set color 13
    next
end
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "dev1-addr-comb"
        set type folder
        set member "dev1-IP-nic1" "dev1-IP-nic2" "dev1-mac"
        set comment ''
        set exclude disable
        set color 18
    next
end
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "dev2-addr-comb"
        set type folder
        set member "dev2-IP-nic1" "dev2-IP-nic2" "dev2-IP-nic3" "dev2-mac"
        set comment ''
        set exclude disable
        set color 5
    next
end
```

Address group exclusions

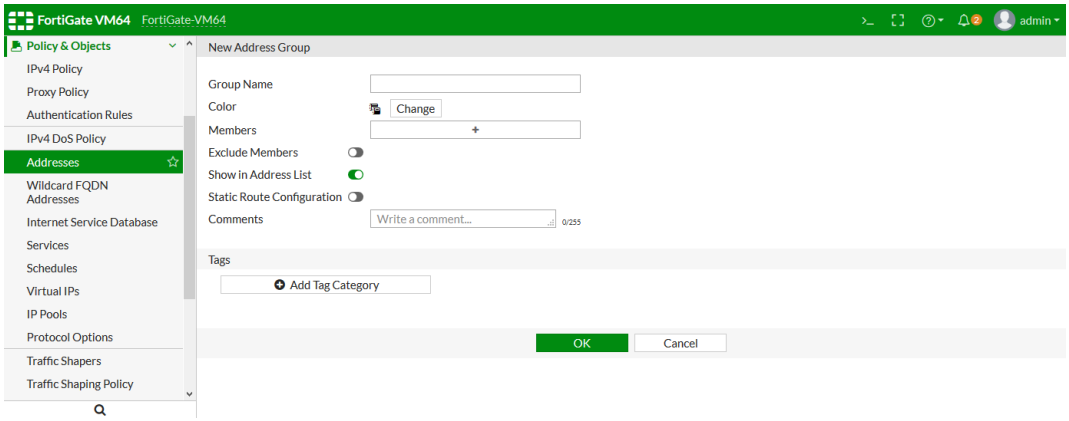
Specific IP addresses or ranges can be subtracted from the address group with the *Exclude Members* setting in IPv4 address groups.



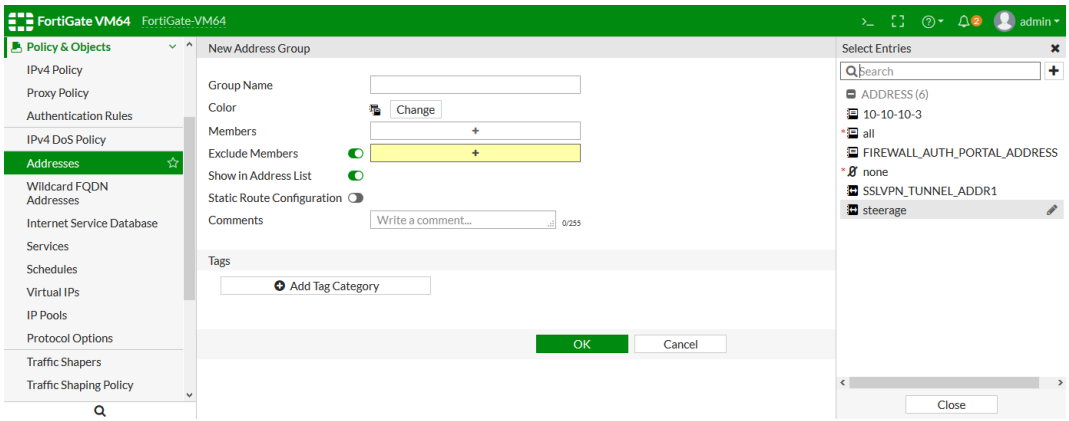
This feature is only supported for IPv4 address groups, and only for addresses with a *Type* of *IP Range* or *Subnet*.

To exclude addresses from an address group using the GUI:

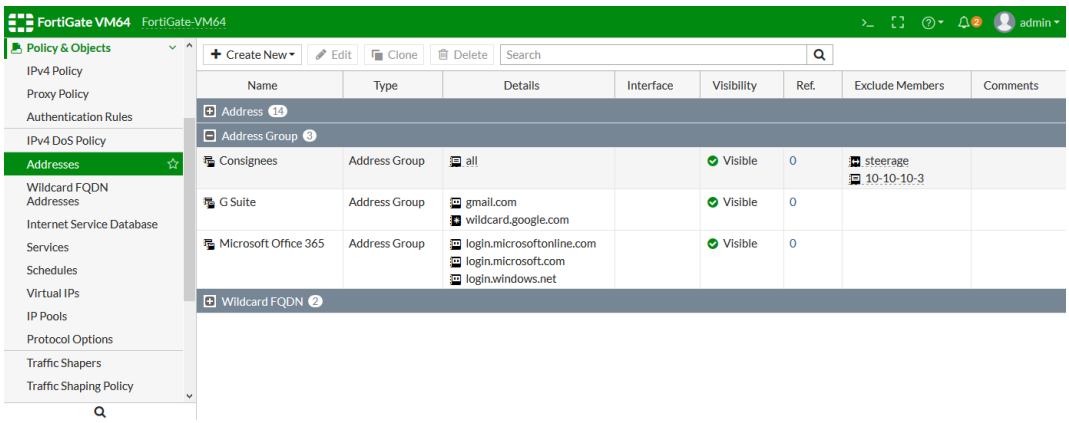
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Create a new address group, or edit an existing address group.



3. Enable *Exclude Members*. The *Select Entries* pane opens.
4. Select the addresses you want to exclude from the group.
5. Click *OK*.



The excluded members are listed in the *Exclude Members* column.



To exclude addresses from an address group using the CLI:

```
config firewall addrgrp
```

```
    edit <address group>
       set exclude enable
       set exclude-member <address> <address> ... <address>
    next
end
```

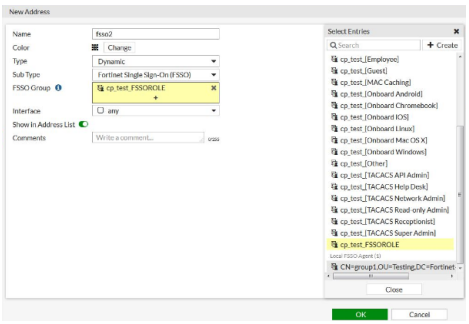
FSSO dynamic address subtype

The Fortinet Single Sign-ON (FSSO) dynamic firewall address subtype can be used in policies that support dynamic address types. The FortiGate will update the dynamic address used in firewall policies based on the source IP information for the authenticated FSSO users.

It can also be used with FSSO group information that is forwarded by ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) via FortiManager, and other FSSO groups provided by the FSSO collector agent or FortiNAC.

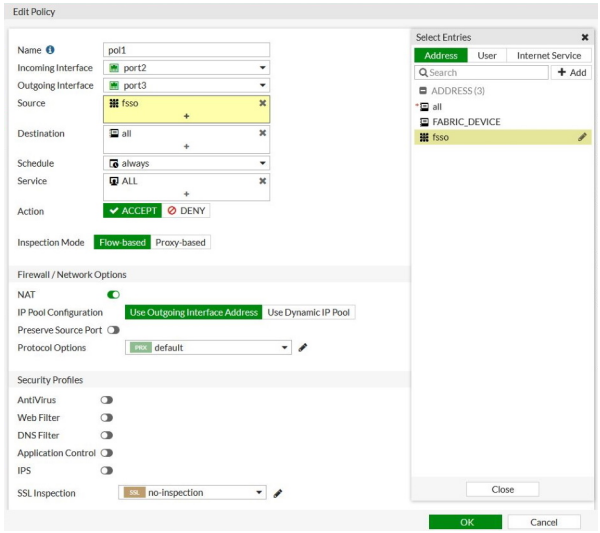
To configure FSSO dynamic addresses with CPPM and FortiManager in the GUI:

1. Create the dynamic address object:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*, and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
   c. For *Sub Type*, select *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*. The *Select Entries* pane opens and displays all available FSSO groups.
   d. Select one or more groups.
   e. Click *OK* to save the configuration.



   In the address table, there will be an error message for the address you just created (*Unresolved dynamic address: fsso*). This is expected because there are currently no authenticated FSSO users (based on source IP) in the local FSSO user list.
2. Add the dynamic address object to a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.
   c. For *Source*, add the dynamic FSSO address object you just created.
   d. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.

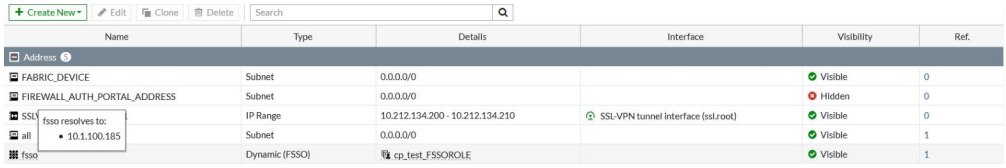
e. Click *OK* to save your changes.



3. Test the authentication to add a source IP address to the FSSO user list:
   a. Log in as user and use CPPM for user authentication to connect to an external web server. After successful authentication, CPPM forwards the user name, source IP address, and group membership to the FortiGate via FortiManager.
   b. Go to *Monitor* > *Firewall User Monitor* to view the user name (*fsso1*) and IP address.

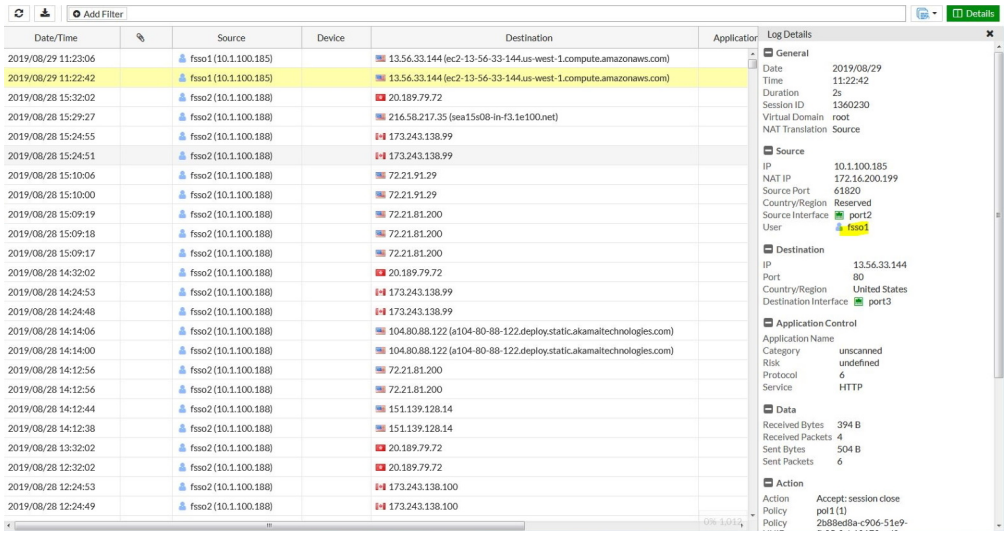


   c. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* to view the updated address table. The error message no longer appears.
   d. Hover over the dynamic FSSO address to view the IP address (*fsso resolves to: 10.1.100.185*).

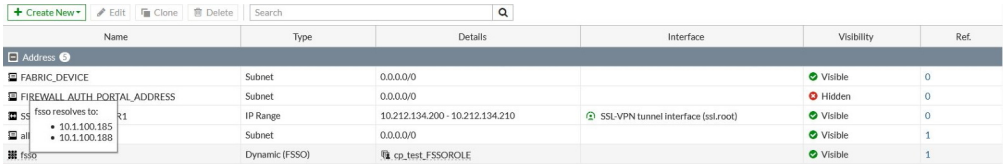


To verify user traffic in the GUI:

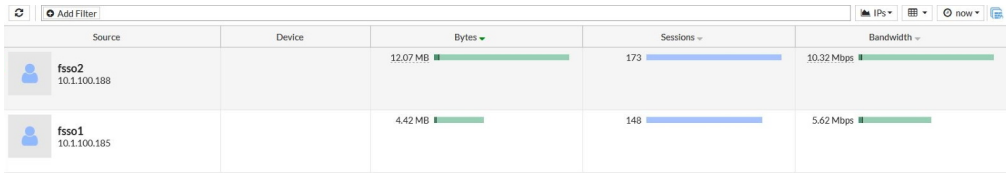
1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
   Details for the user *fsso1* are visible in the traffic log:



- If another user is authenticated by CPPM, then the dynamic address *fsso* entry in the address table will be updated. The IP address for user *fsso2* (*10.1.100.188*) is now visible:



2. Go to *FortiView* > *Sources* to verify that the users were able to successfully pass the firewall policy.



If a user logs off and CPPM receives log off confirmation, then CPPS updates the FortiGate FSSO user list via FortiManager. The user IP address is deleted from the dynamic FSSO address, and the user is no longer be able to pass the firewall policy.

To configure FSSO dynamic addresses with CPPM and FortiManager in the CLI:

1. Create the dynamic address object:

```
config firewall address
    edit "fsso"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type fsso
        set fsso-group "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
    next
end
```

2. Add the dynamic address object to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "pol1"
```

```
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "fsso"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To verify user traffic in the CLI:

1. Check the FSSO user list:

```
diagnose debug authd fsso list
----FSSO logons----
IP: 10.1.100.185  User: fsso1  Groups: cp_test_FSSOROLE  Workstation:  MemberOf: FSSO-
CPPM cp_test_FSSOROLE
Total number of logons listed: 1, filtered: 0
----end of FSSO logons----
```

2. Check the authenticated firewall users list:

```
diagnose firewall auth list
10.1.100.185, fsso1
type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 2928, idled: 2928
server: FortiManager
packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
group_id: 2 33554433
group_name: FSSO-CPPM cp_test_FSSOROLE
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

After user traffic passes through the firewall, the nu

```
diagnose firewall auth list
10.1.100.185, fsso1
type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 3802, idled: 143
server: FortiManager
packets: in 1629 out 1817, bytes: in 2203319 out 133312
group_id: 2 33554433
group_name: FSSO-CPPM cp_test_FSSOROLE
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

ClearPass integration for dynamic address objects

ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) can gather information about the statuses of network hosts, for example, the latest patches or virus infections. Based on this information, CPPM send the IP addresses and current states, such as Healthy or Infected, to the FortiGate.

On the FortiGate, the IP addresses received from CPPM are added to a dynamic firewall address with the *clearpass-spt* subtype. This address can be used in any policy that supports dynamic addresses, such as Firewall or SSL-VPN policies.

In this example, you create two dynamic IP addresses that are used in two firewall policies (deny and allow). One policy allows traffic (host state = Healthy), and the other denies traffic (host state = Infected). When CPPM sends the information, the IP addresses are assigned according to their host state: Healthy or Infected.

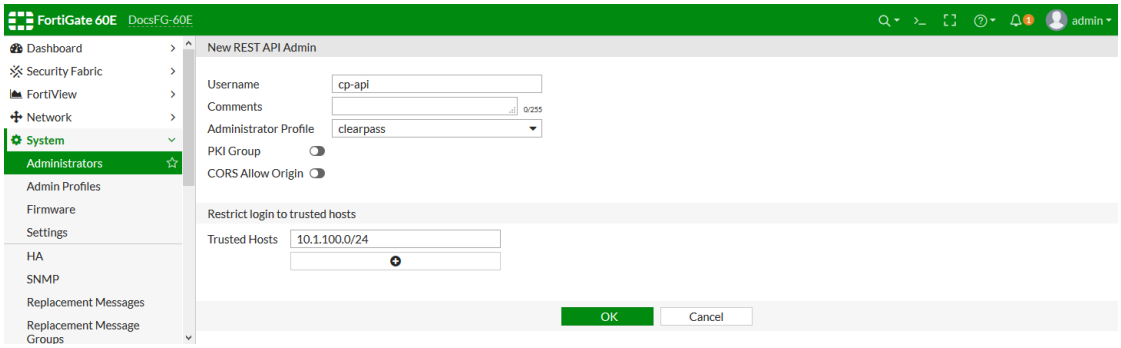
You can then verify that traffic from the Infected host is denied access by the deny policy, and traffic from the Healthy host is allowed access by the allow policy.

Create a REST API administrator

A RESET API administrator is required to generate an authorization token for REST API messages, and to limit hosts that can send REST API messages to the FortiGate.

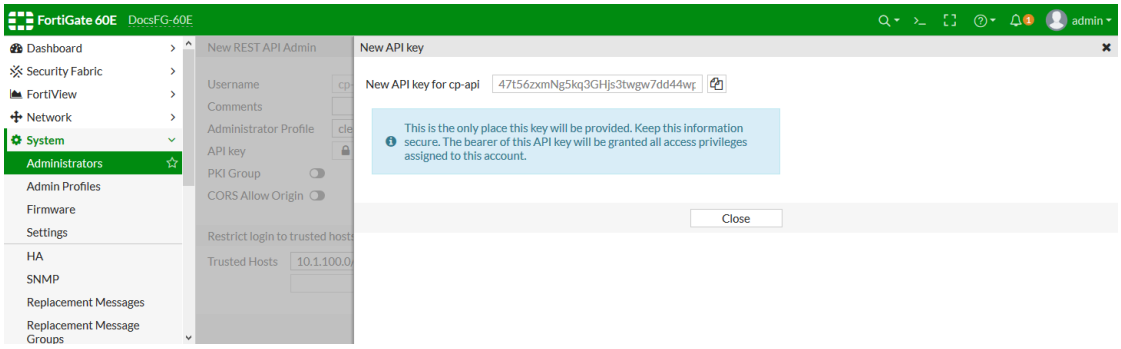
To create a REST API administrator in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
3. Configure the *Username* and other information as needed.
4. Disable *PKI Group*.
5. In the *Trusted Hosts* field, enter *10.1.100.0/24*.



For this example, an administrator profile called *clearpass* was created with full read/write access. See Administrator profiles on page 867 for details.

6. Click *OK*.
The *New API key* pane opens.



The API key is the REST API authorization token that is used in REST API messages sent by CPPM to the FortiGate.

7. Copy the API key to a secure location. A new key can be generated if this one is lost or compromised.
8. Click *Close*.

To create a REST API administrator in the CLI:

```
config system api-user
    edit "cpi-back"
        set accprofile "clearpass"
        config trusthost
            edit 1
                set ipv4-trusthost 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

```
execute api-user generate-key cp-api
    New API key: 0f1HxGHh9r9p74k7qgfHNH40p51bjs
    NOTE: The bearer of this API key will be granted all access privileges assigned to the
api-user cp-api.
```

Create dynamic IP addresses with the clearpass subtype

Two dynamic IP addresses are required, one for the allow policy, and the other for the deny policy.

To create the dynamic IP addresses:

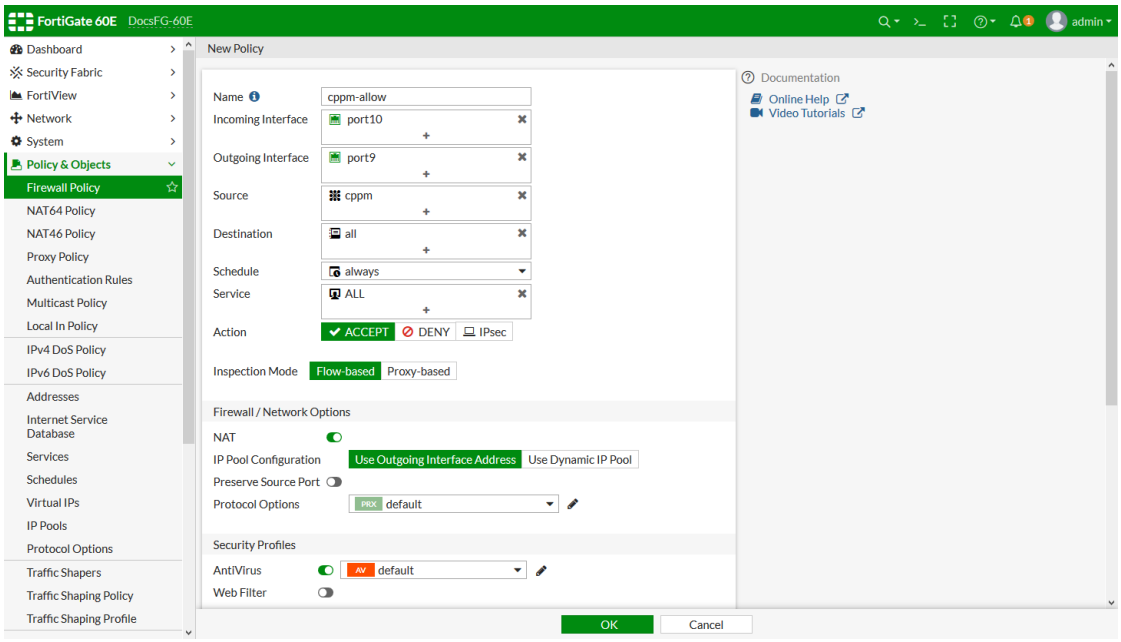
```
config firewall address
    edit "cppm"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt healthy
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
    edit "cppm-deny"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt infected
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
end
```

Create firewall policies

Two firewall policies are required, one to accept traffic (*cppm-allow*), and the other to deny traffic (*cppm-deny*).

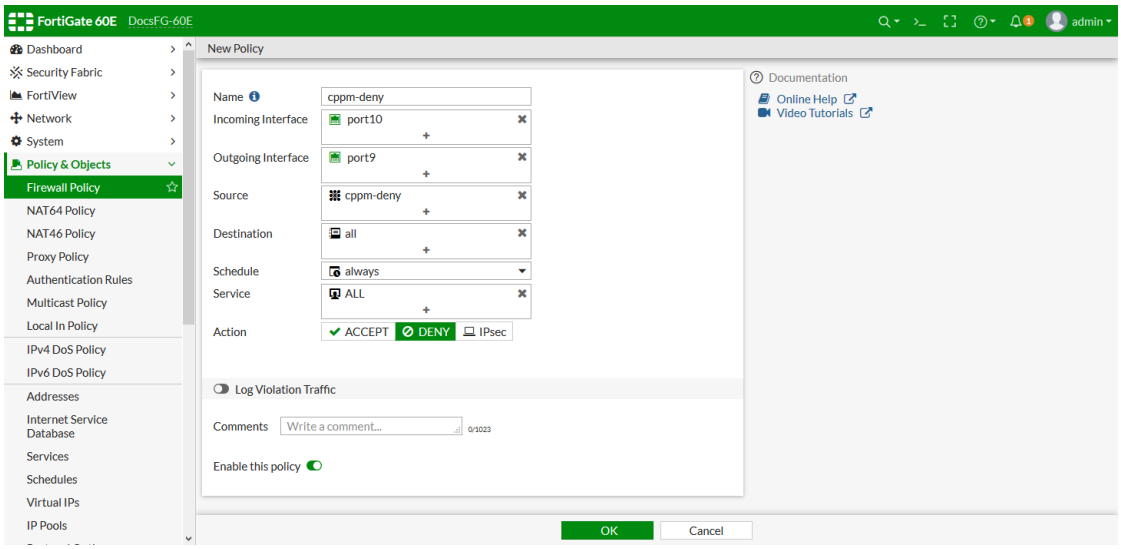
To create the firewall policies in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Configure the allow policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name for the policy.
   c. Set *Source* set to *cppm*.
   d. Set *Action* to *ACCEPT*.
   e. Configure the remaining settings as needed.



   f. Click *OK*.
3. Configure the deny policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name for the policy.
   c. Set *Source* set to *cppm-deny*.
   d. Set *Action* to *DENY*.

e. Configure the remaining settings as needed.



f. Click *OK*.

To create the firewall policies in the CLI:

```
config firewall address
    edit "cppm"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt healthy
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
    edit "cppm-deny"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt infected
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
end
```

Verification

Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to review traffic logs and ensure that traffic is allowed or denied as expected.

To verify that FortiGate addresses are assigned correctly, enter the following CLI command:

```
diagnose firewall dynamic list
List all dynamic addresses:
cppm-deny: ID(141)
        ADDR(10.1.100.188)
```

```
cppm: ID(176)
        ADDR(10.1.100.185)
        ADDR(10.1.100.186)
```

MAC addressed-based policies

MAC address ranges can be added to the following IPv4 policies:

- Firewall
- Virtual wire pair
- ACL
- Central SNAT
- DoS

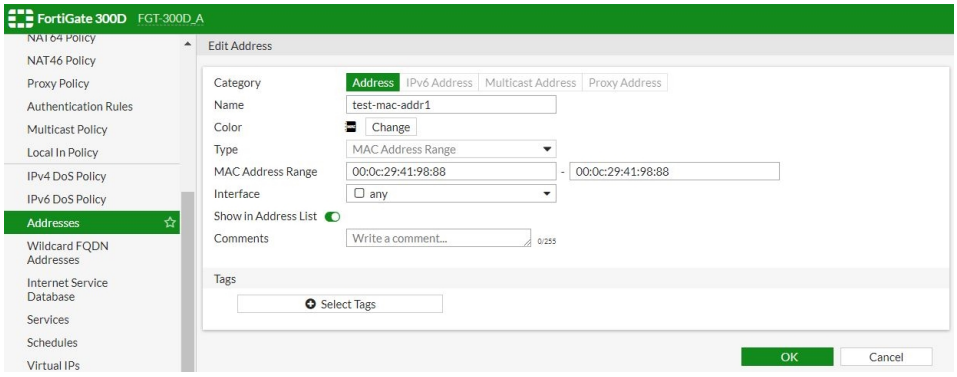
A MAC address is a link layer-based address type and it cannot be forwarded across different IP segments.

FortiOS only supports the MAC address type as source address for policies in NAT mode VDOM. When you use the MAC address type in a policy as source address in NAT mode VDOM, IP address translation (NAT) is still performed according to the rules defined in the policy. The MAC address type only works for source address matching. It does not have any association with NAT actions.

For policies in transparent mode or the virtual wire pair interface, you can use the MAC address type as source or destination address.

To configure a MAC address range using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* to create or edit an address:
   a. For *Category*, select *Address*.
   b. For *Type*, select *MAC Address Range*.
   c. Enter the address range in the empty fields.
   d. Configure the other fields as needed.
   e. Click *OK*.

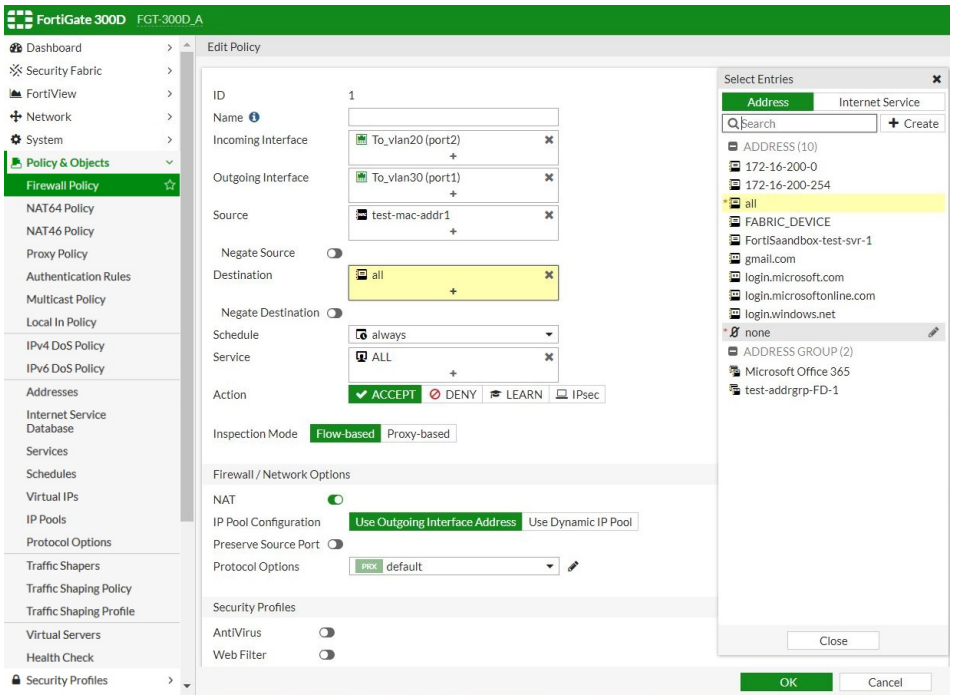


2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to apply the address type to a policy in NAT mode VDOM:
   a. For *Source*, select the MAC address you just configured.
   b. For *Destination*, select an address.



In NAT mode VDOM, this address type cannot be used as destination address.

c. Click *OK*.



To configure a MAC address range using the CLI:

1. Create a new MAC address range type:

```
config firewall address
    edit <object_name>
        set type mac
        set start-mac <mac_address_start #>
        set end-mac <mac_address_end #>
    next
end
```

2. Apply the address type to a policy. In transparent mode or the virtual wire pair interface, this address type can be mixed with other address types in the policy:

```
config firewall address
    edit "test-mac-addr1"
        set type mac
        set start-mac 00:0c:29:41:98:88
        set end-mac 00:0c:29:41:98:88
    next
end
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "test-mac-addr1" "10-1-100-42"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
            set logtraffic all
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

ISDB well-known MAC address list

The Internet Service Database (ISDB) includes well-known vendor MAC address range lists. The lists can only be used for source MAC addresses in IPv4 policies, and include the vendor name and the MAC address ranges that the vendor belongs to.

To view the vendor list:

```
# diagnose vendor-mac id
Please input Vendor MAC ID.
ID: 1 name: "Asus"
ID: 2 name: "Acer"
ID: 3 name: "Amazon"
ID: 4 name: "Apple"
ID: 5 name: "Xiaomi"
ID: 6 name: "BlackBerry"
ID: 7 name: "Canon"
ID: 8 name: "Cisco"
ID: 9 name: "Linksys"
ID: 10 name: "D-Link"
ID: 11 name: "Dell"
ID: 12 name: "Ericsson"
ID: 13 name: "LG"
ID: 14 name: "Fujitsu"
ID: 15 name: "Fitbit"
ID: 16 name: "Fortinet"
ID: 17 name: "OPPO"
ID: 18 name: "Hitachi"
ID: 19 name: "HTC"
ID: 20 name: "Huawei"
ID: 21 name: "HP"
ID: 22 name: "IBM"
ID: 23 name: "Juniper"
ID: 24 name: "Lenovo"
ID: 25 name: "Microsoft"
ID: 26 name: "Motorola"
ID: 27 name: "Netgear"
ID: 28 name: "Nokia"
ID: 29 name: "Nintendo"
ID: 30 name: "PaloAltoNetworks"
ID: 31 name: "Polycom"
ID: 32 name: "Samsung"
ID: 33 name: "Sharp"
ID: 34 name: "Sony"
ID: 35 name: "Toshiba"
ID: 36 name: "VMware"
ID: 37 name: "Vivo"
ID: 38 name: "Zyxel"
ID: 39 name: "ZTE"
```

To view the MAC address ranges for a vendor:

```
# diagnose vendor-mac id 16
Vendor MAC: 16(Fortinet)
Version: 0000700021
Timestamp: 201908081432
Number of MAC ranges: 6
00:09:0f:00:00:00 - 00:09:0f:ff:ff:ff
04:d5:90:00:00:00 - 04:d5:90:ff:ff:ff
08:5b:0e:00:00:00 - 08:5b:0e:ff:ff:ff
70:4c:a5:00:00:00 - 70:4c:a5:ff:ff:ff
90:6c:ac:00:00:00 - 90:6c:ac:ff:ff:ff
e8:1c:ba:00:00:00 - e8:1c:ba:ff:ff:ff
```

To query the vendor of a specific MAC address or range:

```
# diagnose vendor-mac match 00:09:0f:ff:ff:ff 48
Vendor MAC: 16(Fortinet), matched num: 1
```

To use the vendor ID in a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 9
        set name "policy_id_9"
        set uuid 6150cf30-308d-51e9-a7a3-bcbd05d61f93
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set vendor-mac 36 16
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Only packets whose source MAC address belong to Fortinet or VMware are passed by the policy.

IPv6 MAC addresses and usage in firewall policies

Users can define IPv6 MAC addresses that can be applied to the following policies:

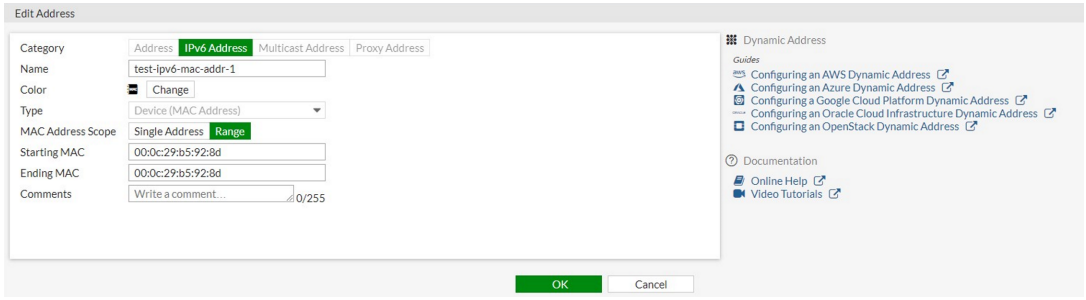
- Firewall
- Virtual wire pair
- ACL/DoS
- Central NAT
- NAT64
- Local-in

In this example, a firewall policy is configured in a NAT mode VDOM with the IPv6 MAC address range as a source address.

IPv6 MAC addresses cannot be used as destination addresses in VDOMs when in NAT operation mode.

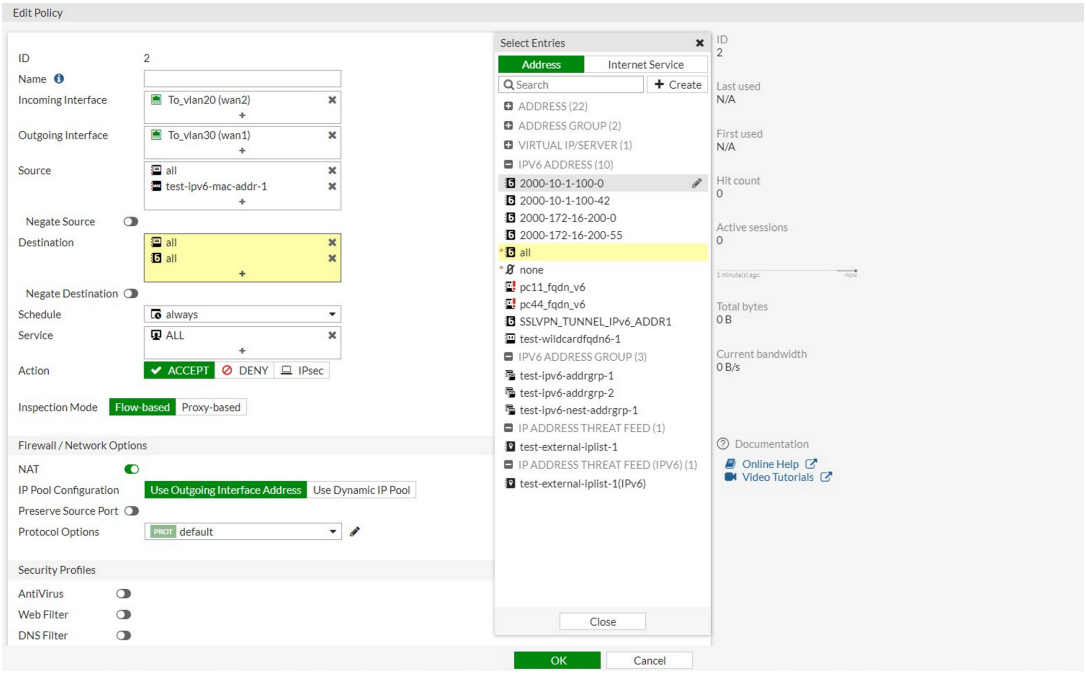
To configure IPv6 MAC addresses in a policy in the GUI:

1. Create the MAC address range:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. For *Category*, click *IPv6 Address*.
   c. Enter an address name.
   d. For *Type*, select *Device (MAC Address)*.
   e. For *MAC Address Scope*, click *Range*.
   f. Enter the *Starting* and *Ending MAC* addresses.
   g. Click *OK*.



2. Configure the policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. For *Source*, select the IPv6 MAC address object.
   c. Configure the other settings as needed.

d. Click *OK*.



To configure IPv6 MAC addresses in a policy in the CLI:

1. Create the MAC address range:

```
config firewall address6
    edit "test-ipv6-mac-addr-1"
        set type mac
        set start-mac 00:0c:29:b5:92:8d
        set end-mac 00:0c:29:b5:92:8d
    next
end
```

2. Configure the policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set srcaddr6 "test-ipv6-mac-addr-1" "2000-10-1-100-0"
        set dstaddr6 "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Protocol options

Firewall policies contain a *Protocol Options* field that defines the parameters for handling protocol-specific traffic. Multiple protocol options profiles can be configured in FortiOS since the requirements may differ between policies. A single protocol options profile is applied per policy, but the profile can be used in multiple policies.

To create a protocol options profile, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Protocol Options*. The following settings can be configured.

Log oversized files

Enable this option to log the occurrence of oversized files being processed. This does not change how they are processed. It only allows the FortiGate to log that they were either blocked or allowed through.

It is common practice to allow larger files through without antivirus processing. Monitor the logs for the frequency of oversized file processing to determine whether or not to alter the settings for treating oversized files. The threshold setting for oversized files and emails is located in the *Common Options* section.

RPC over HTTP

This protocol is used by Microsoft Exchange Servers to perform virus scanning on emails that use RPC over HTTP.

Protocol port mapping

To optimize the FortiGate's resources, the mapping and inspection of the following protocols can be enabled or disabled:

- HTTP
- SMTP
- POP3
- IMAP
- FTP
- NNTP
- MAPI
- DNS
- CIFS

Each protocol has a default TCP port. The ports can be modified to inspect any port with flowing traffic. The packet headers indicate which protocol generated the packet.



Protocol port mapping only works with proxy-based inspection. Flow-based inspection inspects all ports regardless of the protocol port mapping configuration.

Common options

The *Comfort Clients* and *Block Oversized File/Email* options apply to multiple protocols.

Comfort clients

When proxy-based antivirus scanning is enabled, the FortiGate buffers files as they are downloaded. Once the entire file is captured, the FortiGate begins scanning the file. The user must wait during the buffering and scanning procedure.

After the scan is completed and if no infection is found, the file is sent to the next step in the process flow. If the file is large, this part of the process can take some time. In some cases, enough time that some users may get impatient and cancel the download.

The *Comfort Clients* option mitigates this potential issue by feeding a trickle of data while waiting for the scan to complete. The user is aware that processing is taking place, and that there has not been a failure in the transmission. The slow transfer rate continues until the antivirus scan is complete. The transfer will proceed at full speed once the file is scanned successfully and does not contain any viruses.

If there is evidence of an infection, the FortiGate caches the URL and drops the connection. The client does not receive any notification of what happened because the download to the client has already started. Instead, the download stops and the user is left with a partially downloaded file. If the user tries to download the same file again within a short period of time, the cached URL is matched and the download is blocked. A notification is displayed that the download was blocked. The number of URLs in the cache is limited by the size of the cache.

Client comforting is available for HTTP and FTP traffic. If the FortiGate supports SSL content scanning and inspection, client comforting can be configured for HTTPS and FTPS traffic.



Buffering the entire file allows the FortiGate to eliminate the danger of missing an infection due to fragmentation because the file is reassembled before examination. This buffering is performed whenever the *Comfort Clients* option is disabled.

Client comforting can send unscanned and potentially infected content to the client, so only enable this option if you are prepared to accept this risk. Keeping the client comforting interval high and the amount low will reduce the amount of potentially infected data that is downloaded.

Block oversized files and emails

This option is related to antivirus scanning. The FortiGate has a finite amount of resources to buffer and scan a file. If a large file (such as an ISO image or video file) is downloaded, this could overwhelm or exceed the FortiGate's memory, especially if other large files are being downloaded at the same time.

A threshold is assigned to identify an oversize file or email. The default is 10 MB. The range varies per model, and the minimum is 1 MB. Any file or email over this threshold will not be processed by policies applying the antivirus security profile.



If the FortiGate enters conserve mode on a regular basis, lowering the threshold can lessen the impact of processing the files on memory. This can increase risk, even though malware is more likely to be in smaller files.

Web options

The *Chunked Bypass* option applies to traffic containing web protocols.

Chunked bypass

Chunked bypass is a mechanism in HTTP 1.1 that allows a web server to start sending chunks of dynamically generated output in response to a request before actually knowing the actual size of the content. For dynamically generated

content, enabling chunked bypass speeds up the initial response to HTTP requests, but the content is not held in the proxy as an entire file before proceeding.

Email options

The *Allow Fragmented Messages* and *Append Signature (SMTP)* options apply to email protocols.

Allow fragmented messages

The specifications of RFC 2046 allow for the breaking up of emails and sending the fragments in parallel to be rebuilt and read at the other end by the mail server. It was originally designed to increase the performance over slower connections where larger email messages were involved. Feasibility of using this function depends on the mail configuration. Outside of Microsoft Outlook, not many email clients are set up to break up messages like this. The drawback of this feature is that if malware is broken up between multiple fragments of the message, there is a risk that it will not be detected by some antivirus configurations because all the code may not be present at the same time to identify the malware.

Append signature

This option adds a plain text email signature to SMTP email messages as they pass through the FortiGate. The message maximum is 1023 characters.

This feature works best in an environment where there is some standardization of what goes into the senders' personal signatures so that there is no duplication or contradiction of information. For example:

- *This email should not be forwarded without prior approval.*
- *Please consider the environment before printing this email.*
- *For questions regarding purchasing our products, please call ...*

Traffic shaping

A FortiGate provides quality of service (QoS) by applying bandwidth limits and prioritization to network traffic. Traffic shaping is one technique used by the FortiGate to provide QoS. A basic approach to traffic shaping is to prioritize higher priority traffic over lower priority traffic during periods of traffic congestion. This provides a stabilizing effect for important traffic while throttling less important traffic.

The FortiGate can be configured to deliver traffic shaping with policing or traffic shaping with queuing. The general difference between the two is as follows:

Technique	Description
Traffic shaping with policing	When traffic exceeds the configured bandwidth limits, traffic is dropped.
Traffic shaping with queuing	When traffic exceeds the configured bandwidth limits, traffic is delayed for transport until bandwidth frees up. Traffic may be dropped if the queues are full.

Policing and queuing can both prioritize traffic and deliver guaranteed bandwidth and maximum bandwidth by setting bandwidth limits. The implementation differs though, since queuing uses queues, and policing does not. In queuing,

before a packet egresses an interface, it is first enqueued to a queue using an algorithm such as RED or FIFO. The kernel dequeues the packet based on the HTB algorithm before sending it out. In policing, traffic simply drops if it is over the allocated bandwidth.

Configuration methods

There are different methods to configure traffic shaping on the FortiGate. The following table lists the methods and their capabilities in order of preference. If all three methods are configured, the first will be preferred over the second, which is preferred over the third.

Method	Policing		Queuing
	Traffic prioritization	Guaranteed and maximum bandwidth limits	Traffic queuing
Traffic shaping profile*	Yes	Yes, based on percentage of outbandwidth	Yes
Traffic shaper	Yes	Yes, based on rate	No
Global traffic prioritization	Yes	No	No

* Traffic shaping profiles are configured as either policing or queuing types. Queuing allows for additional options when configuring a shaping class entry.

The features of each method's implementation are slightly different. The following is a brief summary of the traffic policing features and the approach each method takes.

Traffic prioritization

The FortiGate can place packets into different priority levels in order to prioritize certain traffic over others.

Method	Description
Traffic shaping profile	Traffic is placed into classes. A total of 30 classes are available. For each class, traffic can be configured into five priority levels.
Traffic shaper	Traffic can be prioritized into the high (2), medium (3), or low (4) levels. When traffic is below the guaranteed bandwidth of the shaper, the traffic is automatically applied the critical level (1).
Global traffic prioritization	Traffic is prioritized into high (2), medium (3), or low (4) based on ToS (type of service) or DSCP.

Guaranteed and maximum bandwidth limits

The general purpose for configuring guaranteed bandwidth is to allocate a certain proportion of the total outbandwidth to guarantee transport for a certain type of traffic. This is configured and handled differently in each method.

A traffic shaping profile, when applied to an interface's egress shaping profile, can be configured to use up to 100% of the interface's configured bandwidth between all the classes. It does not matter what priority is configured in each class. The guaranteed bandwidth is always honored.

Traffic shapers, however, do not have a hard limit on the guaranteed bandwidth. Administrators need to be aware how much guaranteed bandwidth has been allocated to all their traffic shapers, so that they do not exceed the total outbandwidth of an interface. Traffic under the guaranteed bandwidth of a traffic shaper is given a priority of one. If the total traffic with priority one exceeds the total outbandwidth, traffic can be dropped.

The maximum bandwidth limit caps the maximum bandwidth that can be used. This is configured as a percentage of the outbandwidth in a traffic shaping profile. It is configured as a rate for traffic shapers.

Configuring outbandwidth

Traffic shaping is generally configured for egress traffic leaving the FortiGate. Therefore, it is necessary for the interface outbandwidth to be defined for traffic prioritization to take place in all of the traffic shaping configuration methods. Interface outbandwidth is also needed when defining the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth in a traffic shaping profile.

For traffic shapers, configuring outbandwidth is not necessary to apply maximum bandwidth limits; however, outbandwidth is necessary for guaranteed bandwidth. Traffic under the guaranteed bandwidth limit on a traffic shaper is given priority 1. If outbandwidth is not configured, traffic prioritization does not take place and the priority is meaningless.

Traffic shaping policy

Traffic shaping profiles and traffic shapers are methods of policing traffic. Traffic shaping policies are used to map traffic to a traffic shaper or assign them to a class.

A traffic shaping policy is a rule that matches traffic based on certain IP header fields and/or upper layer criteria. For example, it can match traffic based on source and destination IP, service, application, and URL category. One common use case is to match traffic based on the ToS or DS (differentiated services) field in the IP header. This allows Type of Service or Differentiated Services (DiffServ) tags to be read from traffic from a downstream device and prioritized accordingly on the FortiGate.

DSCP matching and DSCP marking

DSCP matching and DSCP marking can be performed on a firewall shaping policy and a regular firewall policy. DSCP matching is used to match DSCP tags from ingress traffic, and DSCP marking is used to change the DSCP tag on egress traffic.

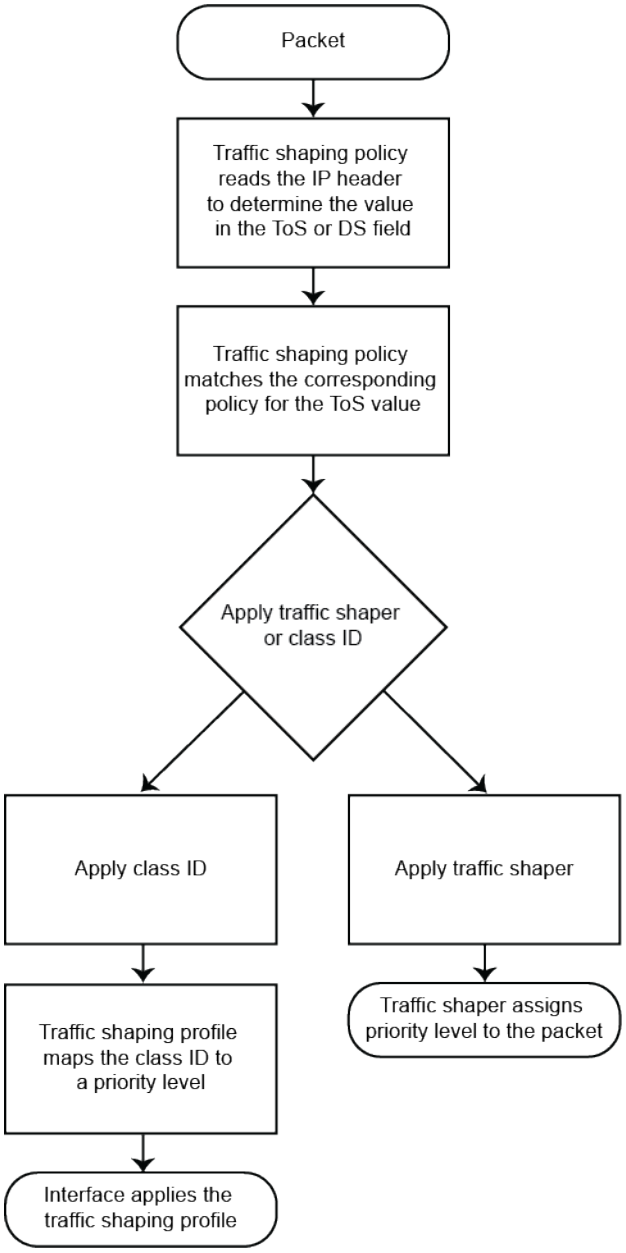
In a firewall shaping policy and regular firewall policy, use the `tos` and `tos-mask` fields to perform DSCP matching. Use the `diffserv-forward` and `diffserv-reverse` fields to perform DSCP marking.

The following topics provide information about configuring traffic shaping:

- Traffic shaping policies on page 1211
- Traffic shaping profiles on page 1214
- Traffic shapers on page 1224
- Global traffic prioritization on page 1234
- DSCP matching and DSCP marking on page 1237
- Examples on page 1241

Traffic shaping policies

As mentioned in Traffic shaping on page 1208, traffic shaping starts with the traffic shaping policy. Traffic shaping policies are used to map traffic to a traffic shaper or assign them to a class. Traffic is then shaped by the shaper or the shaping profile that is applied on an interface.



Traffic can also be shaped by applying traffic shapers directly on a firewall policy. However, this legacy approach can only be configured from the CLI, and is not a preferred method for applying traffic shaping. As the number of firewall policies increases, managing shaping on each individual policy becomes increasingly difficult. For the same reason, it is also not recommended to mix the legacy approach with traffic shaping policies to avoid the added complexity.

Overview

A traffic shaping policy is a rule that matches traffic based on certain IP header fields and/or upper layer criteria. When traffic hits the firewall, the FortiGate will first look up a firewall policy, and then match a shaping policy. The matching traffic will apply a traffic shaper, class ID, or assign a DSCP DiffServ tag to the outgoing traffic.

The traffic shaping policies must be placed in the correct order in the traffic shaping policy list page to obtain the desired results. Policies are matched from top-down, so the traffic shaping policies should be arranged in a sequence that places the more granular policies above general policies.

The policy can be configured by going to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*. If the menu does not display the traffic shaping settings, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *Traffic Shaping*.

Configuring traffic shaping policies

A traffic shaping policy can be split into two parts:

- Options used to match the traffic
- Options used to apply actions to the matched traffic

In the GUI, the options are configured in the *If Traffic Matches* and *Then* sections. In the CLI, all options are configured under `config firewall shaping-policy`. Some options can only be configured from the CLI.

The following options can be configured for traffic matching criteria:

GUI option	CLI option	Description
Source		
Address	`set srcaddr <address_object>`	Select the address object to match the source IP.
User	`set users <user_object>`	Select the user object to match the user authenticated for the session.

Internet Service	`set internet-service-src enable`
	`set internet-service-src-name <name>`
	`set internet-service-src-group <group>`
	`set internet-service-src-custom <custom>`
	`set internet-service-src-custom-group <custom_group>`
		Select the internet service to match the source of the incoming traffic. Internet service currently cannot be used with source address.

Destination		
Address	`set dstaddr <address_object>`	Select the address object to match the destination IP.
Internet Service	`set internet-service enable` `set internet-service-name <name>`	Select the internet service to match the destination of the incoming traffic. Internet service currently cannot be used with destination address and service.

GUI option	CLI option	Description

	`set internet-service-group <group>`
	`set internet-service-custom <custom>`
	`set internet-service-custom-group <custom_group>`	

Schedule	`set schedule <schedule>`	Enable to select a schedule (one-time, recurring, or group).
Service	`set service <service>`	Select the service or service group for the traffic.
Application		Application control must be enabled in the related firewall policy to learn the application of the traffic.
Application	`set application <application>`	Select the application to match the application of the traffic.
Category	`set app-category <category>`	Select the application category to match the application of the traffic.
Group	`set app-group <groups>`	Select the application group to match the application of the traffic.
URL Category	`set url-category <category>`	Select the URL category to match the URL of the traffic. A web filter profile must be enabled in the related firewall policy to know the URL of the traffic (see Web filter on page 1317).

n/a	`set tos-mask <hexadecimal_mask>`
	`set tos <value>`
	`set tos-negate {enable | disable}`
		Specify the type of service (ToS) and mask to match.
		These options can only be configured in the CLI.

The following options can be configured for actions to apply to the matched traffic:

GUI option	CLI option	Description
Outgoing interface	`set dstintf <interface>`	Select the destination interface that the traffic shaping applies to (required).
Action		
Apply shaper		

GUI option	CLI option	Description
Shared shaper	`set traffic-shaper <shaper>`	Select the shared shaper to be applied to traffic in the ingress-to-egress direction. For example, on traffic that egresses on the wan interface, the shaper is applied to upload or outbound traffic.
Reverse shaper	`set traffic-shaper-reverse <shaper>`	Select the reverse shaper to be applied to traffic in the egress-to-ingress direction. For example, on traffic that egresses on the wan interface, the shaper is applied to download or inbound traffic.
Per-IP shaper	`set per-ip-shaper <shaper>`	Select the per-IP shaper. Per-IP shapers affect downloads and uploads. The allotted bandwidth applies to each individual IP. In a shared shaper, the allotted bandwidth applies to all IPs.
Action		
Assign shaping class ID		
Traffic shaping class ID	`set class-id <class>`	Set the class ID to apply the matching traffic. Class IDs are further prioritized within a traffic shaping profile and applied to an interface.

n/a	`set diffserv-forward {enable | disable}`
	`set diffservcode-forward <code>`
	`set diffserv-reverse {enable | disable}`
	`set diffservcode-reverse <code>`
		Specify the settings to apply a DSCP tag to the forward or reverse traffic. The DiffServ code is in 6-bit binary format.
		These options can only be configured in the CLI.

Traffic shapers and class IDs can be applied at the same time when configuring traffic shaping policies. However, to reduce the complexity, it is recommended to use one method over the other.

The following topics include examples with traffic shaping policies:

- Interface-based traffic shaping profile on page 1241
- Shared traffic shaper on page 1224
- Per-IP traffic shaper on page 1228

Traffic shaping profiles

As mentioned in Traffic shaping on page 1208, the three main methods of configuring traffic shaping are:

- Traffic shaping profiles
- Traffic shapers
- Global traffic prioritization

A traffic shaping profile allows traffic shaping to be configured with policing or queuing. Up to 30 classes can be defined, with prioritization and bandwidth limits configured for each class. When queuing is enabled, metrics can be configured for traffic queuing in each class.

Traffic shaping with policing

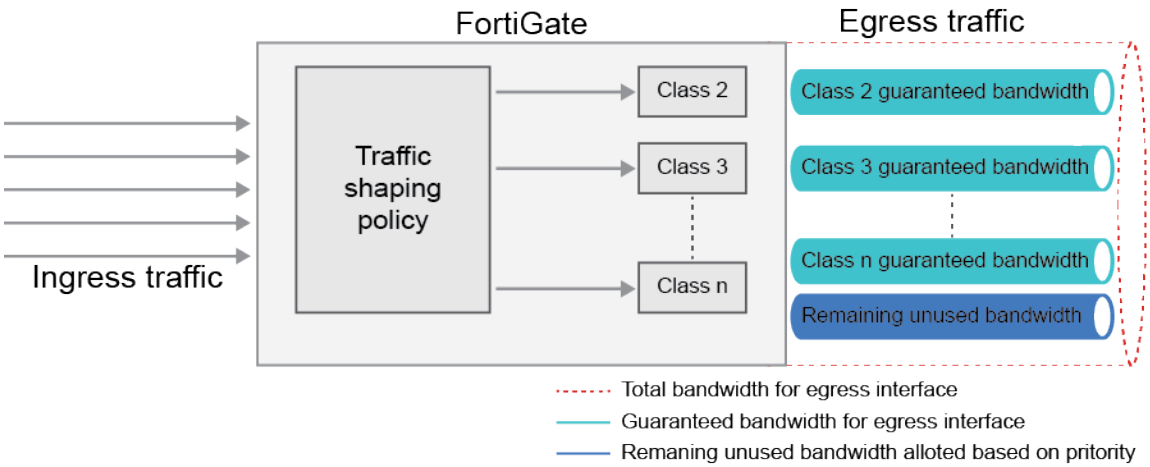
At the most basic level, policing involves traffic prioritization and bandwidth limits. Traffic prioritization helps categorize traffic into different priority levels: low, medium, high, critical, and top. When bandwidth is limited, traffic with higher priority levels will take precedence over lower priority traffic. Traffic with lower priority levels that exceeds available bandwidth will be dropped. These levels are only applicable in the context of traffic shaping profiles and should not be confused with global traffic prioritization levels.

Bandwidth limits define the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth allotted to each traffic class. These limits are configured as a percentage of the outbandwidth, which is the outbound bandwidth configured on an interface.

Guaranteed bandwidth limits guarantee the minimum bandwidth that is allotted to a given class of traffic. The sum of all guaranteed bandwidth of all classes within a traffic shaping profile cannot exceed 100%. However, the sum of all guaranteed bandwidth does not need to add up to 100%. The guaranteed bandwidth is always respected, even if one class has lower priority than another.

Maximum bandwidth limits define the maximum percentage of the outbandwidth that a traffic class can use up. This value often will be 100%, given that when there is no other traffic going through other classes, you would want to fully utilize the bandwidth of the outbound link. Traffic throughput exceeding the maximum bandwidth will be dropped.

The following diagram illustrates ingress traffic and how the FortiGate assigns classes and bandwidth to each class.



When comparing traffic shaping profiles and traffic shapers, it is important to remember that guaranteed and maximum bandwidth in a traffic shaping profile is a percentage of the outbandwidth, while guaranteed and maximum bandwidth in a traffic shaper is a rate (Kbps, Mbps, and so on). As long as the outbandwidth is true to its measurement, the bandwidth usage should not exceed the available bandwidth of a link when using a traffic shaping profile.

Congestion occurs when actual traffic surpasses the outbandwidth limit. At this point, traffic prioritization helps determine which traffic will be prioritized over others. First, the guaranteed bandwidth limit is allocated for each class. The left over bandwidth is allocated to traffic classes based on priority. The traffic classes with the highest priority can use as much of the remaining bandwidth as needed. Then, the remaining bandwidth can be allocated to classes at the next priority level, and so forth.

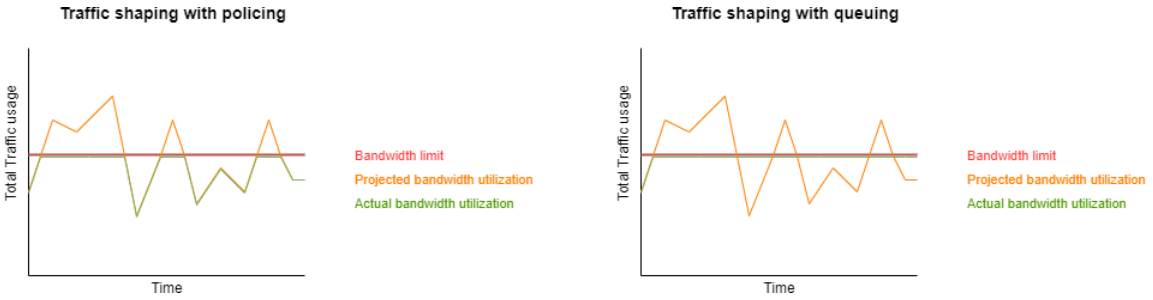
To see examples of applied traffic prioritization and bandwidth limits, see the debugs in Verifying that the traffic is being shaped on page 1218.

Traffic shaping with queuing

When traffic congestion occurs and if there is no queuing, then the excess packets are dropped. With queuing, when traffic exceeds the configured bandwidth limits, the traffic is delayed for transport until bandwidth frees up. Traffic may still be dropped if the queues are full.

In queuing, before a packet egresses an interface, it is first enqueued using an algorithm, such as random early detection (RED) or first in, first out (FIFO). The kernel then dequeues the packet based on the HTB algorithm before sending it out. Queuing can be configured per shaping profile, and it can be customized per class.

The following diagram shows how traffic policing differs from traffic queuing by comparing the bandwidth limit, projected bandwidth utilization, and actual bandwidth utilization.



For more information about traffic shaping with queuing, see Traffic shaping with queuing using a traffic shaping profile on page 1220.

Configuring traffic shaping profiles

The main steps to configure traffic shaping are:

1. Configure the traffic shaping policy, and assign matched traffic to a class (see Traffic shaping policies on page 1211).
2. Configure the traffic shaping profile and apply traffic bandwidth, prioritization and/or queuing per class.
3. Configure the interface outbandwidth and apply an egress shaping profile to the interface.

Configuring the traffic shaping profile

A traffic shaping profile consists of the class ID and the settings per class ID. It also defines the type of traffic shaping to apply (policing or queuing) and the default class ID for traffic that does not match any traffic shaping policies.

A class can be configured in the GUI as part of a traffic shaping profile or policy. In the CLI, a traffic class must be defined before it can be assigned within a traffic shaping profile. Class IDs range from 2 - 31, and they can be reused between different traffic shaping profiles.

When configuring a traffic shaping profile, the settings can be defined per class.

The following options can be configured for traffic shaping classes:

GUI option	CLI option	Description
Default	`set default-class-id <class-id>`	Set the default class ID. Each profile must have one default class ID. The default class ID can be changed at any time.
Traffic shaping class ID	`set class-id <integer>`	Set the class ID (2 - 31).
Guaranteed bandwidth	`set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage <integer>`	Set the percentage of the outbandwidth that will be guaranteed for the class ID.
Maximum bandwidth	`set maximum-bandwidth-percentage <integer>`	Set the percentage of the outbandwidth that will be the maximum bandwidth for the class ID.
Priority	`set priority {top | critical | high | medium | low}`	Select the priority level for the class ID.

To configure a traffic shaping profile in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Profile* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the profile name, and optionally enter a comment.
3. In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* section, click *Create New*.
4. Configure the traffic shaping class ID settings (*Traffic shaping class ID*, *Guaranteed bandwidth*, *Maximum bandwidth*, and *Priority*).
5. Click *OK*.
6. Create more shaping classes as needed (the total guaranteed bandwidth of all classes cannot exceed 100%).
7. Click *OK*.

To configure a traffic shaping profile in the CLI:

1. Configure the shaping class:

```
config firewall traffic-class
    edit <integer>
        set class-name <string>
    next
end
```

2. Configure the shaping profile:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit <name>
        set type {policing | queuing}
        set default-class-id <class-id>
        config shaping-entries
            edit <id>
                set class-id <integer>
                set priority {top | critical | high | medium | low}
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage <integer>
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage <integer>
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

Configuring the interface outbandwidth

There are two settings that must be configured on an interface that has traffic shaping applied to egressing traffic: a traffic shaping profile must be assigned, and the outbound bandwidth must be configured.

Since traffic shaping is often configured on the WAN interface for egressing traffic, the outbound bandwidth is effectively the upstream bandwidth allowed by your ISP. On the FortiGate, it is possible to perform a speed test on interfaces are assigned a WAN role assigned (see Interface speedtest on page 691). The speed test performs measurements against public cloud servers, and provides an accurate measurement of the upstream bandwidth. After the test is complete, the results can be used to populate the *Outbound bandwidth* field.

To configure traffic shaping on an interface:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and double-click an interface to edit it.
2. For interfaces assigned a *WAN* role, in the right-side of the screen, click *Execute speed test*.
3. When the test completes, click *Apply results to estimated bandwidth*. The speed test results are populated in the *Estimated bandwidth* fields for *kbps Upstream* and *kbps Downstream*.
4. In the *Traffic Shaping* section, enable *Outbound shaping profile* and select a profile.
5. Enable *Outbound bandwidth* and copy the *kbps Upstream* value from the speed test, or enter a custom value.
6. Click *OK*.

Verifying that the traffic is being shaped

In this example, three traffic classes are defined in the traffic shaping profile assigned to port1. The outbandwidth configured on port1 is 1000 Kbps. Each class has an `allocated-bandwidth`, `guaranteed-bandwidth`, `max-bandwidth`, and `current-bandwidth` value.

- The `guaranteed-bandwidth` and `max-bandwidth` are rates that are converted from the percentage of outbandwidth configured for each class. For example, `class-id` 2 has 10% `guaranteed-bandwidth`, equivalent to 100 Kbps, and 100% `max-bandwidth` equivalent to 1000 Kbps.
- The `allocated-bandwidth` displays the real-time bandwidth allocation for the traffic class based on all available factors. This value changes as traffic demand changes.
- The `current-bandwidth` displays the real-time bandwidth usage detected for the traffic class.

To verify that traffic is being shaped by the traffic shaping profile:

1. Enable debug flow to view the live traffic as it matches a traffic shaping policy:

```
# diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
# diagnose debug flow show iprope enable
# diagnose debug flow filter <filters>
# diagnose debug flow trace start <repeat_number>
# diagnose debug enable
```

The `iprope_shaping_check` function outputs the shaping policy matched for any given traffic:

```
...
id=20085 trace_id=21 func=iprope_shaping_check line=934 msg="in-[port3], out-[port1],
skb_flags-02000000, vid-0"
id=20085 trace_id=21 func=__iprope_check line=2277 msg="gnum-100015, check-
ffffffffa002a8fe"
```

```
id=20085 trace_id=21 func=__iprope_check_one_policy line=2029 msg="checked gnum-100015
policy-3, ret-matched, act-accept"
id=20085 trace_id=21 func=__iprope_check_one_policy line=2247 msg="policy-3 is matched,
act-accept"
id=20085 trace_id=21 func=__iprope_check line=2294 msg="gnum-100015 check result: ret-
matched, act-accept, flag-00000000, flag2-00000000"
```

2. Display the session list:

```
# diagnose sys session filter <filters>
# diagnose sys session list
```

Sessions that match a shaping policy will display `class_id` and `shaping_policy_id` fields:

```
...
session info: proto=6 proto_state=05 duration=32 expire=0 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=4 shaping_policy_id=3 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
```

3. Display the interface statistics:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port1
if=port1 family=00 type=1 index=3 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
ref=95 state=start present fw_flags=2001b800 flags=up broadcast run allmulti multicast
Qdisc=pfifo_fast hw_addr=52:54:00:7e:af:a6 broadcast_addr=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
inbandwidth=10000(kbps)         total_bytes=2098887K    drop_bytes=7854K
egress traffic control:
        bandwidth=1000(kbps) lock_hit=241 default_class=3 n_active_class=3
        class-id=2      allocated-bandwidth=140(kbps)   guaranteed-bandwidth=100(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=1000(kbps)        current-bandwidth=147(kbps)
                        priority=low    forwarded_bytes=8161K
                        dropped_packets=2032    dropped_bytes=3074K
        class-id=3      allocated-bandwidth=30(kbps)    guaranteed-bandwidth=300(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=1000(kbps)        current-bandwidth=10(kbps)
                        priority=medium         forwarded_bytes=501K
                        dropped_packets=1       dropped_bytes=1195
        class-id=4      allocated-bandwidth=830(kbps)   guaranteed-bandwidth=500(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=1000(kbps)        current-bandwidth=810(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=1393K
                        dropped_packets=379     dropped_bytes=572K
stat: rxp=8349728 txp=11101735 rxb=2216101183 txb=1394077978 rxe=0 txe=0 rxd=0 txd=0
mc=0 collision=0 @ time=1654202868
re: rxl=0 rxo=0 rxc=0 rxf=0 rxfi=0 rxm=0
te: txa=0 txc=0 txfi=0 txh=0 txw=0
misc rxc=0 txc=0
input_type=0 state=3 arp_entry=0 refcnt=95
```



If the debug output does not display egress traffic control by class and displays them by priority, it is likely that global traffic prioritization is configured. The global traffic prioritization settings must be disabled to view the preceding debug output (see Global traffic prioritization on page 1234).

Traffic shaping with queuing using a traffic shaping profile

You can use the weighted random early detection (WRED) queuing function within traffic shaping.

This topic includes two parts:

- Traffic shaping with queuing on page 1220
- Burst control in queuing mode on page 1221

You cannot configure or view WRED in the GUI; you must use the CLI.



WRED is not supported when traffic is offloaded to an NPU.

Traffic shaping with queuing

Traffic shaping has a queuing option. Use this option to fine-tune the queue by setting the profile queue size or performing random early drop (RED) according to queue usage.

This example shows setting the profile queue size limit to 5 so that the queue can contain a maximum of five packets and more packets are dropped.

To set the profile queue size limit:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "profile"
        set type queuing
        set default-class-id 31
        config shaping-entries
            edit 31
                set class-id 31
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 5
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set limit 5  <range from 5 to 10000; default: 1000>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

This example shows performing RED according to queue usage by setting `red-probability`, `min`, and `max`. Setting `red-probability` to `10` means start to drop packets when queue usage reaches the `min` setting. When queue usage reaches the `max` setting, drop 10% of the packets.

- Level 1: when queue is less than `min` packets, drop 0% of packets.
- Level 2: when queue reaches `min` packets, start to drop packets.
- Level 3: when queue usage is between `min` and `max` packets, drop 0–10% of packets by proportion.
- Level 4: when queue (average queue size) is more than `max` packets, drop 100% of packets.

To set RED according to queue usage:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "profile"
        set type queuing
```

```
        set default-class-id 31
        config shaping-entries
            edit 31
                set class-id 31
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 5
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set red-probability 10 <range from 0 to 20; default: 0 no drop>
                set min 100 <range from 3 to 3000>
                set max 300 <range from 3 to 3000>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To troubleshoot this function, use the following diagnose commands:

```
diagnose netlink intf-class list <intf>
diagnose netlink intf-qdisc list <intf>
```

Burst control in queuing mode

In a hierarchical token bucket (HTB) algorithm, each traffic class has buckets to allow a burst of traffic. The maximum burst is determined by the bucket size `burst` (for guaranteed bandwidth) and `cburst` (for maximum bandwidth). The shaping profile has `burst-in-msec` and `cburst-in-msec` parameters for each shaping entry (`class id`) to control the bucket size.

This example uses the outbandwidth of the interface as 1 Mbps and the maximum bandwidth of class is 50%.

burst = burst-in-msec * guaranteed bandwidth = 100 ms × 1 Mbps x 50% = 50000 b = 6250 B

cburst = cburst-in-msec * maximum bandwidth = 200 ms × 1 Mbps x 50% = 100000 b = 12500 B

The following example sets `burst-in-msec` to 100 and `cburst-in-msec` to 200.

To set burst control in queuing mode:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "profile"
        set type queuing
        set default-class-id 31
        config shaping-entries
            edit 31
                set class-id 31
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 5
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 50
                set burst-in-msec 100 <range from 0 to 2000>
                set cburst-in-msec 200 <range from 0 to 2000>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Example

Enabling RED for FTP traffic from QA

This example shows how to enable RED for FTP traffic from QA. This example sets a maximum of 10% of the packets to be dropped when queue usage reaches the maximum value.

To configure the firewall address:

```
config firewall address
    edit QA_team
        set subnet 10.1.100.0/24
    next
end
```

To set the shaping policy to classify traffic into different class IDs:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set service HTTPS HTTP
        set dstintf port1
        set srcaddr QA_team
        set dstaddr all
        set class-id 10
    next
    edit 2
        set service FTP
        set dstintf port1
        set srcaddr QA_team
        set dstaddr all
        set class-id 20
    next
end
```

To set the shaping policy to define the speed of each class ID:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit QA_team_profile
       set type queuing
       set default-class-id 30
            config shaping-entries
                edit 1
                    set class-id 10
                    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 50
                    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
                next
                edit 2
                    set class-id 20
                    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 30
                    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 60
                    set red-probability 10
                next
                edit 3
                    set class-id 30
                    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 20
```

```
                    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 50
                next
            end
    next
end
```

To apply the shaping policy to the interface:

```
config sys interface
    edit port1
        set outbandwidth 10000
        set egress-shaping-profile QA_team_profile
    next
end
```

To use diagnose commands to troubleshoot:

```
# diagnose netlink intf-class list port1
class htb 1:1 root rate 1250000Bps ceil 1250000Bps burst 1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst
1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 7 buffer [00004e20] cbuffer [00004e20]
 Sent 11709 bytes 69 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 226Bps 2pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 3 borrowed: 0 giants: 0
 tokens: 18500 ctokens: 18500
class htb 1:10 parent 1:1 leaf 10: prio 1 quantum 62500 rate 625000Bps ceil 1250000Bps burst
1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst 1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 0 buffer [00009c40]
cbuffer [00004e20]
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 0Bps 0pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 0 borrowed: 0 giants: 0
 tokens: 40000 ctokens: 20000
class htb 1:20 parent 1:1 leaf 20: prio 1 quantum 37500 rate 375000Bps ceil 750000Bps burst
1599B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst 1599B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 0 buffer [0001046a]
cbuffer [00008235]
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 0Bps 0pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 0 borrowed: 0 giants: 0
 tokens: 66666 ctokens: 33333
class htb 1:30 parent 1:1 leaf 30: prio 1 quantum 25000 rate 250000Bps ceil 625000Bps burst
1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst 1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 0 buffer [000186a0]
cbuffer [00009c40]
 Sent 11709 bytes 69 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 226Bps 2pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 66 borrowed: 3 giants: 0
 tokens: 92500 ctokens: 37000
class red 20:1 parent 20:0
```

```
 # diagnose netlink intf-qdisc list port1
qdisc htb 1: root refcnt 5 r2q 10 default 30 direct_packets_stat 0 ver 3.17
 Sent 18874 bytes 109 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 5 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
qdisc pfifo 10: parent 1:10 refcnt 1 limit 1000p
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
qdisc red 20: parent 1:20 refcnt 1 limit 4000000B min 300000B max 1000000B ewma 9 Plog 23
Scell_log 20 flags 0
```

```
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
  marked 0 early 0 pdrop 0 other 0
qdisc pfifo 30: parent 1:30 refcnt 1 limit 1000p
 Sent 18874 bytes 109 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
```

Traffic shapers

The following topics provide more information about traffic shapers:

- Shared traffic shaper on page 1224
- Per-IP traffic shaper on page 1228
- Changing traffic shaper bandwidth unit of measurement on page 1231
- Multi-stage DSCP marking and class ID in traffic shapers on page 1232

Shared traffic shaper

Shared traffic shaper is used in a firewall shaping policy to indicate the priority and guaranteed and maximum bandwidth for a specified type of traffic use.

The maximum bandwidth indicates the largest amount of traffic allowed when using the policy. You can set the maximum bandwidth to a value between 1 and 16776000 Kbps. The GUI displays an error if any value outside this range is used. If you want to allow unlimited bandwidth, use the CLI to enter a value of 0.

The guaranteed bandwidth ensures that there is a consistent reserved bandwidth available. When setting the guaranteed bandwidth, ensure that the value is significantly less than the interface's bandwidth capacity. Otherwise, the interface will allow very little or no other traffic to pass through, potentially causing unwanted latency.

In a shared traffic shaper, the administrator can prioritize certain traffic as high, medium, or low. FortiOS provides bandwidth to low priority connections only when high priority connections do not need the bandwidth. For example, you should assign a high traffic priority to a policy for connecting a secure web server that needs to support e-commerce traffic. You should assign less important services a low priority.

When you configure a shared traffic shaper, you can apply bandwidth shaping per policy or for all policies. By default, a shared traffic shaper applies traffic shaping evenly to all policies that use the shared traffic shaper.

When configuring a per-policy traffic shaper, FortiOS applies the traffic shaping rules defined for each security policy individually. For example, if a per-policy traffic shaper is configured with a maximum bandwidth of 1000 Kbps, any security policies that have that traffic shaper enabled get 1000 Kbps of bandwidth each.

If a traffic shaper for all policies is configured with a maximum bandwidth of 1000 Kbps, all policies share the 1000 Kbps on a first-come, first-served basis.

The configuration is as follows:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
   edit "traffic_shaper_name"
      set per-policy enable
   next
end
```

The shared traffic shaper selected in the traffic shaping policy affects traffic in the direction defined in the policy. For example, if the source port is LAN and the destination is WAN1, the traffic shaping affects the flow in this direction only,

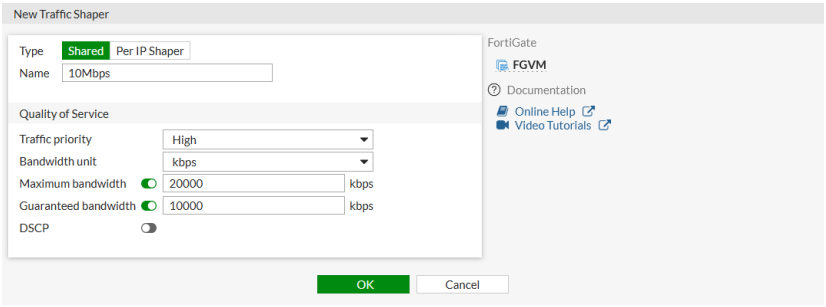
affecting the outbound traffic's upload speed. You can define the traffic shaper for the policy in the opposite direction (reverse shaper) to affect the inbound traffic's download speed. In this example, that would be from WAN1 to LAN.

Only traffic through forward traffic shapers will be included in FortiView; reverse and per-IP shapers are not included.

The following example shows how to apply different speeds to different types of service. The example configures two shared traffic shapers to use in two firewall shaping policies. One policy guarantees a speed of 10 Mbps for VoIP traffic. The other policy guarantees a speed of 1 Mbps for other traffic. In the example, FortiOS communicates with a PC using port10 and the Internet using port9.

To configure shared traffic shapers in the GUI:

1. Create a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Name* to *Internet Access*.
   c. Set the *Incoming Interface* to *port10*.
   d. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port9*.
   e. Set the *Source* and *Destination* to *all*.
   f. Set the *Schedule* to *always*.
   g. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.
   h. Click *OK*.
2. Create the shared traffic shapers:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Name* to *10Mbps*. This shaper is for VoIP traffic.
   c. Set the *Traffic Priority* to *High*.
   d. Enable *Max Bandwidth* and enter *20000*.
   e. Enable *Guaranteed Bandwidth* and enter *10000*.



   f. Click *OK*.
   g. Repeat the above steps to create another traffic shaper named *1Mbps* with the *Traffic Priority* set to *Low*, the *Max Bandwidth* set to *10000*, and the *Guaranteed Bandwidth* set to *1000*.
3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Name* to *VoIP_10Mbps_High*. This policy is for VoIP traffic.
   c. Set the *Source* and *Destination* to *all*.
   d. Set the *Service* to all VoIP services.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port9*.
   f. Enable *Shared shaper* and select *10Mbps*.
   g. Enable *Reverse shaper* and select *10Mbps*.
   h. Click *OK*.

i. Repeat the above steps to create anpther firewall shaping policy named *Other_1Mbps_Low* for other traffic, with the *Source* and *Destination* set to *all*, *Service* set to *ALL*, *Outgoing Interface* set to *port9*, and *Shared shaper* and *Reverse shaper* set to *1Mbps*.

To configure shared traffic shapers in the CLI:

1. Create a firewall policy:
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "Internet Access"
      set srcintf "port10"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set fsso disable
      set nat enable
   next
end
```
2. Create the shared traffic shapers:
```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
   edit "10Mbps"
      set guaranteed-bandwidth 10000
      set maximum-bandwidth 20000
   next
   edit "1Mbps"
      set guaranteed-bandwidth 1000
      set maximum-bandwidth 10000
      set priority low
   next
end
```
3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
```
config firewall shaping-policy
   edit 1
      set name "VOIP_10Mbps_High"
      set service "H323" "IRC" "MS-SQL" "MYSQL" "RTSP" "SCCP" "SIP" "SIP-MSNmessenger"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set traffic-shaper "10Mbps"
      set traffic-shaper-reverse "10Mbps"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "Other_1Mbps_Low"
      set service "ALL"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set traffic-shaper "1Mbps"
      set traffic-shaper-reverse "1Mbps"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
   next
end
```

To troubleshoot shared traffic shapers:

1. To check if specific traffic is attached to the correct traffic shaper, run the `diagnose firewall iprope list 100015` command. The example output shows the traffic attached to the 10Mbps and 1Mbps shapers:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=1 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=10Mbps(2/1280000/2560000)
cos_fwd=0 cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=4 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
service(15):
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1720,1720)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1503,1503)] helper:auto
   [17:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1719,1719)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(6660,6669)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1433,1433)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1434,1434)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(3306,3306)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(554,554)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(7070,7070)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(8554,8554)] helper:auto
   [17:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(554,554)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(2000,2000)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(5060,5060)] helper:auto
   [17:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(5060,5060)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1863,1863)] helper:auto

policy index=2 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=1Mbps(4/128000/1280000)
cos_fwd=0 cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=4 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
service(1):
   [0:0x0:0/(0,0)->(0,0)] helper:auto
```

2. To check if the correct traffic shaper is applied to the session, run the `diagnose sys session list` command. The example output shows that the 1Mbps shaper is applied to the session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=11 expire=3599 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
     sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=5
origin-shaper=1Mbps prio=4 guarantee 128000Bps max 1280000Bps traffic 1050Bps drops 0B
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 shaping_policy_id=2 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty npu npd os mif route_preserve
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=868/15/1 reply=752/10/1 tuples=2
```

```
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 76/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 66/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=39->38/38->39 gwy=172.16.200.55/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:58241->172.16.200.55:21(172.16.200.1:58241)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:21->172.16.200.1:58241(10.1.100.11:58241)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=4
serial=0003255f tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x100000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
     vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason: offload-denied helper
total session 1
```

3. To check statuses of shared traffic shapers, run the `diagnose firewall shaper traffic-shaper list` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper traffic-shaper list

name 10Mbps
maximum-bandwidth 2500 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 1250 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 2
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name 1Mbps
maximum-bandwidth 1250 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 4
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0
```

Per-IP traffic shaper

With per-IP traffic shaping, you can limit each IP address's behavior to avoid a situation where one user uses all of the available bandwidth. In addition to controlling the maximum bandwidth used per IP address, you can also define the maximum number of concurrent sessions for an IP address. For example, if you apply a per-IP shaper of 1 Mbps to your entire network, FortiOS allocates each user/IP address 1 Mbps of bandwidth. Even if the network consists of a single user, FortiOS allocates them 1 Mbps. If there are ten users, each user gets 1 Mbps of bandwidth, totaling 10 Mbps of outgoing traffic.

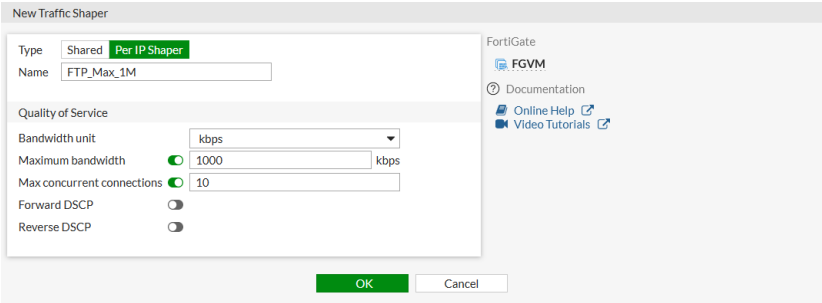
For shared shapers, all users share the set guaranteed and maximum bandwidths. For example, if you set a shared shaper for all PCs using an FTP service to 10 Mbps, all users uploading to the FTP server share the 10 Mbps.

Shared shapers affect upload speed. If you want to limit the download speed from the FTP server in the example, you must configure the shared shaper as a reverse shaper. Per-IP shapers apply the speed limit on both upload and download operations. Only traffic through forward traffic shapers will be included in FortiView; reverse and per-IP shapers are not included.

The following example shows how to apply a per-IP shaper to a traffic shaping policy. This shaper assigns each user a maximum bandwidth of 1 Mbps and allows each user to have a maximum of ten concurrent connections to the FTP server. In the example, FortiOS communicates with users using port10 and the FTP server using port9.

To configure a per-IP traffic shaper in the GUI:

1. Create a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IPv4 Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Name* to *FTP Access*.
   c. Set the *Incoming Interface* to *port10*.
   d. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port9*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all*.
   f. Set the *Destination* to *FTP_Server*.
   g. Set the *Schedule* to *always*.
   h. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.
   i. Click *OK*.
2. Create the per-IP traffic shaper:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Type* to *Per IP Shaper*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *FTP_Max_1M*. This shaper is for VoIP traffic.
   d. Enable *Max Bandwidth* and enter *1000*.
   e. Enable *Max Concurrent Connections* and enter *10*. This means that each user can have up to ten concurrent connections to the FTP server.



   f. Click *OK*.
3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Name* to *FTP speed 1M*.
   c. Set the *Source* to the addresses and users that require access to the FTP server.
   d. Set the *Destination* to *FTP_Server*.
   e. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.
   f. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port9*.
   g. Enable *Per-IP shaper* and select *FTP_Max_1M*.
   h. Click *OK*.

To configure a per-IP traffic shaper in the CLI:

1. Create a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
```

```
    edit 1
      set name "FTP Access"
      set srcintf "port10"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "FTP_Server"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set fsso disable
      set nat enable
    next
end
```

2. Create the per-IP traffic shaper:

```
config firewall shaper per-ip-shaper
    edit "FTP_Max_1M"
      set max-bandwidth 1000
      set max-concurrent-session 10
    next
end
```

3. Create a firewall shaping policy:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
      set name "FTP speed 1M"
      set service "ALL"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set per-ip-shaper "FTP_Max_1M"
      set srcaddr "PC1" "WinPC" "PC2"
      set dstaddr "FTP_Server"
    next
end
```

To troubleshoot per-IP traffic shapers:

1. To check if specific traffic is attached to the correct traffic shaper, run the `diagnose firewall iprope list 100015` command. The example output shows the traffic attached to the FTP_Max_1M shaper:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=3 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: per-ip=FTP_Max_1M
cos_fwd=0 cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=2 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 38
source(3): 10.1.100.11-10.1.100.11, uuid_idx=30, 10.1.100.143-10.1.100.143, uuid_idx=32,
     10.1.100.22-10.1.100.22, uuid_idx=31,
dest(1): 172.16.200.55-172.16.200.55, uuid_idx=89,
service(1):
   [0:0x0:0/(0,65535)->(0,65535)] helper:auto
```

2. To check if the correct traffic shaper is applied to the session, run the `diagnose sys session list` command. The example output shows that the FTP_Max_1M shaper is applied to the session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=36 expire=3567 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
     sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
```

```
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=FTP_Max_1M
class_id=0 shaping_policy_id=3 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty per_ip npu npd mif route_preserve
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=506/9/1 reply=416/6/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=39->38/38->39 gwy=172.16.200.55/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:58275->172.16.200.55:21(172.16.200.1:58275)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:21->172.16.200.1:58275(10.1.100.11:58275)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=0000211a tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x100000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
     vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason: offload-denied helper
```

3. To check statuses of per-IP traffic shapers, run the `diagnose firewall shaper per-ip-shaper list` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper per-ip-shaper list

name FTP_Max_1M
maximum-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
maximum-concurrent-session 10
tos ff/ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0
addr=10.1.100.11 status: bps=0 ses=3
```

Changing traffic shaper bandwidth unit of measurement

Bandwidth speeds are measured in kilobits per second (Kbps), and bytes that are sent and received are measured in megabytes (MB). In some cases, this can cause confusion depending on whether your ISP uses kilobits per second (Kbps), kilobytes per second (KBps), megabits per second (Mbps), or gigabits per second (Gbps).

You can change the unit of measurement for traffic shapers in the CLI.

To change the bandwidth unit of measurement for a shared traffic shaper:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit <traffic_shaper_name>
        set bandwidth-unit {kbps | mbps | gbps}
    next
end
```

To change the bandwidth unit of measurement for a per-IP traffic shaper:

```
config firewall shaper per-ip-shaper
    edit <traffic_shaper_name>
        set bandwidth-unit {kbps | mbps | gbps}
```

```
    next
end
```

Multi-stage DSCP marking and class ID in traffic shapers

Traffic shapers have a multi-stage method so that packets are marked with a different differentiated services code point (DSCP) and `class id` at different traffic speeds. Marking packets with a different DSCP code is for the next hop to classify the packets. The FortiGate benefits by marking packets with a different `class id`. Combined with the egress interface shaping profile, the FortiGate can handle the traffic differently according to its `class id`.

Rule	DSCP code	Class ID
speed < guarantee bandwidth	`diffservcode`	`class id` in shaping policy
guarantee bandwidth < speed < exceed bandwidth	`exceed-dscp`	`exceed-class-id`
exceed bandwidth < speed	`maximum-dscp`	`exceed-class-id`

This example sets the following parameters:

- When the current bandwidth is less than 50 Kbps, mark packets with `diffservcode` 100000 and set `class id` to 10.
- When the current bandwidth is between 50 Kbps and 100 Kbps, mark packets with `exceed-dscp` 111000 and set `exceed-class-id` to 20.
- When the current bandwidth is more than 100 Kbps, mark packets with `maximum-dscp` 111111 and set `exceed-class-id` to 20.

To set multi-stage DSCP marking and class ID in a traffic shaper:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "50k-100k-150k"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 50
        set maximum-bandwidth 150
        set diffserv enable
        set dscp-marking-method multi-stage
        set exceed-bandwidth 100
        set exceed-dscp 111000
        set exceed-class-id 20
        set maximum-dscp 111111
        set diffservcode 100000
    next
end
config firewall shaping-policy
     edit 1
         set service "ALL"
         set dstintf PORT2
         set srcaddr "all"
         set dstaddr "all"
         set class-id 10
     next
end
```

Traffic shapers also have an `overhead` option that defines the per-packet size overhead used in rate computation.

To set the traffic shaper overhead option:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "testing"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 50
        set maximum-bandwidth 150
        set overhead 14 <range from 0 to 100>
    next
end
```

Example

This example shows how to mark QA traffic with a different DSCP according to real-time traffic speed.

To configure the firewall address:

```
config firewall address
    edit QA_team
        set subnet 10.1.100.0/24
    next
end
```

To configure the firewall shaper traffic shaper:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "500k-1000k-1500k"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 500
        set maximum-bandwidth 1500
        set diffserv enable
        set dscp-marking-method multi-stage
        set exceed-bandwidth 1000
        set exceed-dscp 111000
        set maximum-dscp 111111
        set diffservcode 100000
    next
end
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit QA_team
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf port1
        set traffic-shaper "500k-1000k-1500k"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "500k-1000k-1500k"
        set srcaddr "QA_team"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

Global traffic prioritization

Global traffic prioritization allows your traffic to be prioritized as high (2), medium (3), or low (4) based on ToS (type of service) or DSCP. When using ToS-based priority, integers 0 to 15 can be used, which correspond to the definitions of the ToS field values in RFC 1349. When using DSCP, values 0 to 63 can be used, which correspond to the six bits in the DSCP value.

The outbandwidth must be defined in order for global prioritization to take effect. When the outbandwidth is defined on an interface without an applied `egress-shaping-profile`, the interface has a total of five priority levels:

Priority level	Description
0	Top
1	Critical
2	High
3	Medium
4	Low

Priority level 0 is reserved for administrative and local out traffic. Priority level 1 is used for traffic that is below guaranteed bandwidth when using a traffic shaper.



Traffic shaper and traffic shaping profile configurations take precedence over global traffic prioritization.

CLI commands

The following commands are used to configure the prioritization either by ToS or DSCP.

To configure the traffic prioritization type and level:

```
config system global
    set traffic-priority {tos | dscp}
    set traffic-priority-level {high | medium | low}
end
```

To configure the ToS-based priority table:

```
config system tos-based-priority
    edit <id>
        set tos <0-15>
        set priority (high | medium | low)
    next
end
```

To configure the DSCP-based priority table:

```
config system dscp-based-priority
    edit <id>
        set ds <0-63>
        set priority (high | medium | low)
    next
end
```

To configure the interface outbandwidth:

```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        set outbandwidth <bandwidth in kbps>
    next
end
```

Example

In the following configuration, packets with DSCP markings of 1 are prioritized as high, and packets with DSCP markings of 2 are prioritized as medium. All the other traffic is prioritized as low. The outbandwidth on interface port3 is set to 1000 kbps.

To configure DSCP-based traffic prioritization:

1. Configure DSCP-based prioritization in the global settings:

```
config system global
    set traffic-priority dscp
    set traffic-priority-level low
end
```

2. Configure the DSCP-based priority table:

```
config system dscp-based-priority
    edit 1
        set ds 1
        set priority high
    next
    edit 2
        set ds 2
        set priority medium
    next
end
```

3. Configure the outbandwidth on port3:

```
config system interface
    edit "port3"
        set outbandwidth 1000
    next
end
```

Verifying the traffic prioritization

When traffic exceeds the outbandwidth of 1000 kbps, traffic prioritization will take effect. Since the form of traffic shaping applied here is policing, excess packets above the outbandwidth are dropped.

In scenario 1, approximately 300 kbps of high priority traffic and 300 kbps of medium priority traffic passes through the FortiGate on port3.

To debug the bandwidth allocation:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port3
if=port3 family=00 type=1 index=5 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
ref=35 state=start present fw_flags=3800 flags=up broadcast run allmulti multicast
Qdisc=pfifo_fast hw_addr=52:54:00:fb:81:0c broadcast_addr=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
outbandwidth=1000(kbps)
        priority=0      allocated-bandwidth=0(kbps)     total_bytes=9311K       drop_
bytes=197K
        priority=1      allocated-bandwidth=0(kbps)     total_bytes=0   drop_bytes=0
        priority=2      allocated-bandwidth=354(kbps)   total_bytes=20407K      drop_
bytes=48K
        priority=3      allocated-bandwidth=354(kbps)   total_bytes=7093K       drop_
bytes=1262K
        priority=4      allocated-bandwidth=290(kbps)   total_bytes=266018K     drop_
bytes=7743K
stat: rxp=15450901 txp=25933756 rxb=5456860515 txb=17257309292 rxe=0 txe=0 rxd=0 txd=0 mc=0
collision=0 @ time=1629439926
re: rxl=0 rxo=0 rxc=0 rxf=0 rxfi=0 rxm=0
te: txa=0 txc=0 txfi=0 txh=0 txw=0
misc rxc=0 txc=0
input_type=0 state=3 arp_entry=0 refcnt=35
```

High priority (2) traffic is allocated 354 kbps of bandwidth. Medium priority (3) traffic is also allocated 354 kbps of bandwidth. The remaining bandwidth is allocated to low priority (4) traffic.

In scenario 2, approximately 400 kbps of high priority traffic and 800 kbps of medium priority traffic passes through the FortiGate on port3.

To debug the bandwidth allocation:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port3
if=port3 family=00 type=1 index=5 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
ref=36 state=start present fw_flags=3800 flags=up broadcast run allmulti multicast
Qdisc=pfifo_fast hw_addr=52:54:00:fb:81:0c broadcast_addr=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
outbandwidth=1000(kbps)
        priority=0      allocated-bandwidth=7(kbps)     total_bytes=9981K       drop_
bytes=240K
        priority=1      allocated-bandwidth=0(kbps)     total_bytes=0   drop_bytes=0
        priority=2      allocated-bandwidth=425(kbps)   total_bytes=31478K      drop_
bytes=101K
        priority=3      allocated-bandwidth=567(kbps)   total_bytes=12056K      drop_
bytes=1984K
        priority=4      allocated-bandwidth=0(kbps)     total_bytes=266795K     drop_
bytes=7771K
stat: rxp=15461740 txp=25950805 rxb=5459688950 txb=17273940560 rxe=0 txe=0 rxd=0 txd=0 mc=0
collision=0 @ time=1629440553
re: rxl=0 rxo=0 rxc=0 rxf=0 rxfi=0 rxm=0
```

```
te: txa=0 txc=0 txfi=0 txh=0 txw=0
misc rxc=0 txc=0
input_type=0 state=3 arp_entry=0 refcnt=36
```

High priority (2) traffic is allocated 425 kbps of bandwidth. Medium priority (3) traffic is allocated 567 kbps of bandwidth. Since the total bandwidth required exceeds 1000 kbps, the remaining medium priority (3) traffic is dropped. In comparing the successive debug outputs, the `drop_bytes` counter for medium priority (3) traffic gets bigger.

DSCP matching and DSCP marking

This feature has three parts:

- DSCP matching in firewall policies
- DSCP matching in firewall shaping policies
- DSCP marking in firewall shaping policies

DSCP matching in firewall policies

Traffic is allowed or blocked according to the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) values in the incoming packets.

The following CLI variables are available in the `config firewall policy` command:

`tos-mask <mask_value>`	Non-zero bit positions are used for comparison. Zero bit positions are ignored (default = 0x00). This variable replaces the `dscp-match` variable.
`tos <tos_value>`	Type of Service (ToC) value that is used for comparison (default = 0x00). This variable is only available when `tos-mask` is not zero. This variable replaces the `dscp-value` variable.
`tos-negate {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable negated ToS match (default = disable). This variable is only available when `tos-mask` is not zero. This variable replaces the `dscp-negate` variable.

DSCP matching in firewall shaping policies

Shaping is applied to the session or not according to the DSCP values in the incoming packets. The same logic and commands as in firewall policies are used.

DSCP marking in firewall shaping policies

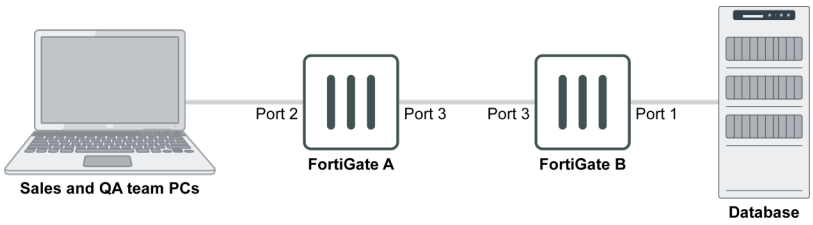
Traffic is allowed or blocked according to the DSCP values in the incoming packets. DSCP marking in firewall shaping policies uses the same logic and commands as in firewall policy and traffic-shaper.

When DSCP marking on `firewall shaper traffic-shaper`, `firewall shaping-policy`, and `firewall policy` all apply to the same session, `shaping-policy` overrides `policy`, and `shaper traffic-shaper` overrides both `shaping-policy` and `policy`.

The following CLI variables in `config firewall policy` are used to mark the packets:

`diffserv-forward {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable changing a packet's DiffServ values to the value specified in `diffservcode-forward` (default = disable).
`diffservcode-forward <dscp_value>`	The value that packet's DiffServ is set to (default = 000000). This variable is only available when `diffserv-forward` is enabled.
`diffserv-reverse {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable changing a packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ values to the value specified in `diffservcode-rev` (default = disable).
`diffservcode-rev <dscp_value>`	The value that packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ is set to (default = 000000). This variable is only available when `diffserv-rev` is enabled.

Examples



Example 1

FortiGate A marks traffic from the sales and QA teams with different DSCP values. FortiGate B does DSCP matching, allowing only the sales team to access the database.

1. Configure FortiGate A:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "QA"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 110000
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 5
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "Sales"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 111011
        set nat enable
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Configure FortiGate B:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Database"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set tos-mask 0xf0
        set tos 0xe0
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Example 2

FortiGate A marks traffic from the sales and QA teams with different DSCP values. FortiGate B uses a firewall shaping policy to do the DSCP matching, limiting the connection speed of the sales team to the database to 10MB/s.

1. Configure FortiGate A:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "QA"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 110000
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 5
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "Sales"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 111011
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

2. Configure FortiGate B:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "10MB/s"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 60000
        set maximum-bandwidth 80000
    next
end
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set tos-mask 0xf0
        set tos 0xe0
        set traffic-shaper "10MB/s"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

Example 3

FortiGate A has a traffic shaping policy to mark traffic from the QA team with a DSCP value of 100000, while reverse traffic is marked with 000011.

1. Configure FortiGate A:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "QA Team 50MB"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set traffic-shaper "50MB/s"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "50MB/s"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffserv-reverse enable
        set srcaddr "QA"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set diffservcode-forward 100000
        set diffservcode-rev 000011
    next
end
```

Examples

This section includes the following traffic shaping configuration examples:

- Interface-based traffic shaping profile on page 1241
- Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration on page 1248
- QoS assignment and rate limiting for FortiSwitch quarantined VLANs on page 1250
- Ingress traffic shaping profile on page 1251

Interface-based traffic shaping profile

A traffic shaping policy can be used for interface-based traffic shaping by organizing traffic into 30 class IDs. The shaping profile defines the percentage of the interface bandwidth that is allocated to each class. Each traffic class ID is shaped to the assigned speed according to the outgoing bandwidth limit configured to the interface.

Traffic classification

A shaping policy classifies traffic and organizes it into different class IDs, based on matching criteria. For traffic matching a criteria, you can choose to put it into 30 different shaping classes, identified by class ID 2 to 31.

You must select an outgoing interface for the traffic. The shaping policy is only applied when the traffic goes to one of the selected outgoing interfaces.

Criterion	Description
Source	• Address: match the source address of the traffic to the selected address or address group. • User: use the user credentials of the traffic to match the selected user or user group. At least one address, address group, or internet service must also be selected. • Internet service: match the traffic to the selected internet service. Internet services cannot be used if addresses or address or groups are used.
Destination	• Address: match the destination address of the traffic to the selected address or address group. • Internet service: match the traffic to the selected internet service. Internet services cannot be used if addresses or address or groups are used.
Schedule	Match the current date and time to the selected schedule. You can select a one-time schedule, recurring schedule, or schedule group. This setting is optional.
Service	Match the service of the traffic to the selected service or service group.
Application	Match the application of the traffic to the selected application, application category, or application group. Application control must be enabled in the related firewall policy to know the application of the traffic. See Application control on page 1372 for more information.
URL category	Match the URL of the traffic to the selected URL category. Web filter must be enabled in the related firewall policy to know the URL of the traffic. See Web filter on page 1317 for more information.

When multiple items are selected in one criterion, it is considered a match when traffic matches any one of them.

Traffic prioritization

Shaping profiles define how different shaping classes of traffic are prioritized. For each class, you can define three prioritization strategies: guaranteed bandwidth, maximum bandwidth, and priority.

For each shaping profile, a default shaping class must be defined. Traffic is prioritized based on the default shaping group in the following two circumstances:

- All traffic to the outgoing interface that does not match to any shaping policy
- Traffic with a shaping group that is not defined in a shaping profile

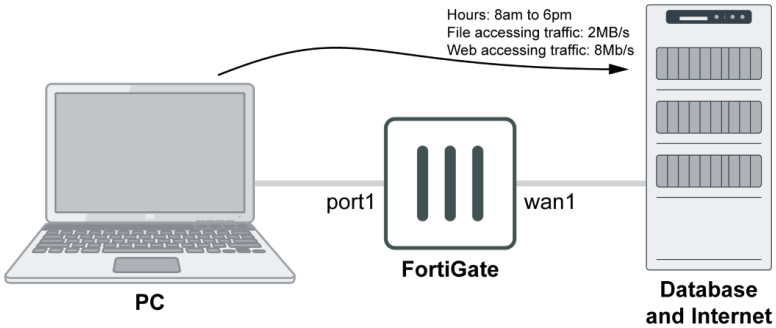
Prioritization strategy	Description
Guaranteed bandwidth	The percentage of the link speed that is reserved for the shaping group. The total guaranteed bandwidth for all shaping groups cannot exceed 100%.
Maximum bandwidth	The maximum percentage of the link speed that the shaping group can use.
Priority	The shaping class priority: top, critical, high, medium, or low. When groups are competing for bandwidth on the interface, the group with the higher priority wins.

Applying a shaping profile to an interface

Traffic shaping is accomplished by configuring the outgoing bandwidth and outgoing shaping profile on an interface. The shaping profile uses the outgoing bandwidth of the interface as the maximum link speed, and it only works when the outgoing bandwidth is configured.

This example shows how to apply interface-based traffic shaping to web and file accessing traffic according to a schedule:

- The link speed of the wan1 interface is 10 Mb/s.
- File access can use up to 2 Mb/s from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.
- Web access can use 8 Mb/s from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.



Putting the traffic into shaping classes

To create a recurring schedule in the GUI:

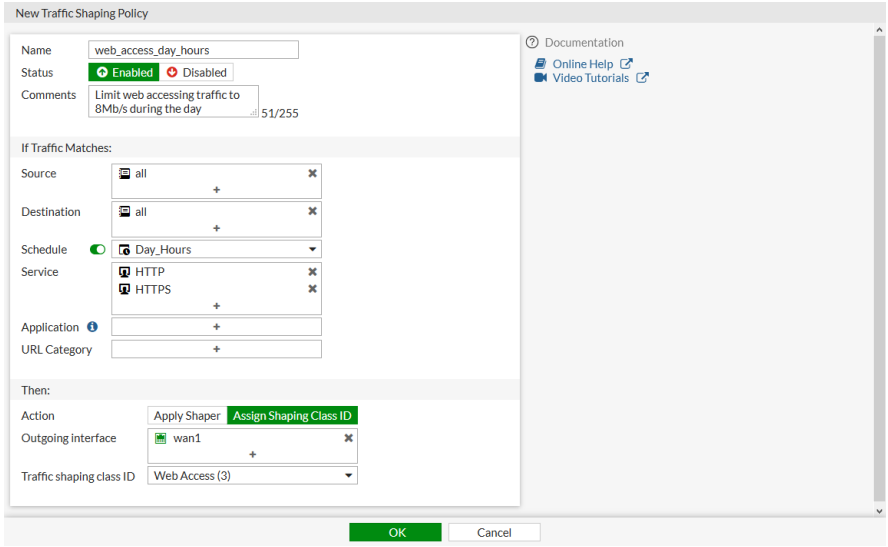
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Schedules*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Schedule*.
3. Configure a recurring schedule called *Day_Hours* for everyday from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.
4. Click *OK*.

To create a traffic shaping policy and class ID for the web accessing traffic in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the policy, such as *web_access_day_hours*.
3. Enable *Schedule* and select the schedule you just created.
4. Set *Service* to web accessing services, such as *HTTP* and *HTTPS*.
5. Set *Action* to *Assign Shaping Class ID*, and *Outgoing interface* to *wan1*
6. Click the *Traffic shapping class ID* drop down then click *Create*.
7. Enter a value for the *ID* (integer) and a description for the *Name*, such as *Web Access*.



8. Click *OK*.
9. Set *Traffic shaping class ID* to the just created class ID.

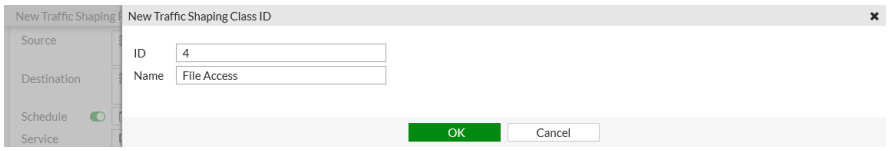


10. Configure the remaining settings as required.
11. Click *OK*.

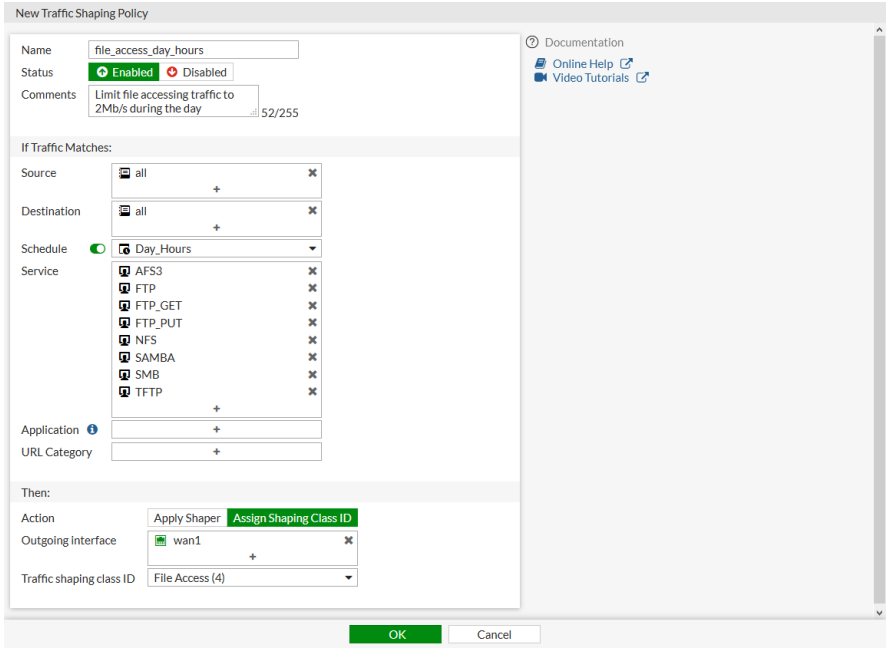
To create a traffic shaping policy and class ID for the file accessing traffic in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the policy, such as *file_access_day_hours*.
3. Enable *Schedule* and select the schedule you just created.

4. Set *Service* to file accessing services, such as *ASF3*, *FTP* and *SMB*.
5. Set *Action* to *Assign Shaping Class ID*, and *Outgoing interface* to *wan1*
6. Click the *Traffic shapping class ID* drop down then click *Create*.
7. Enter a value for the *ID* (integer) and a description for the *Name*, such as *File Access*.



8. Click *OK*.
9. Set *Traffic shaping class ID* to the just created class ID.



10. Configure the remaining settings as required.
11. Click *OK*.

To put the traffic into shaping classes in the CLI:

1. Create a recurring schedule:

```
config firewall schedule recurring
    edit "Day_Hours"
        set start 08:00
        set end 18:00
        set day sunday monday tuesday wednesday thursday friday saturday
    next
end
```

2. Create the traffic class IDs:

```
config firewall traffic-class
    edit 3
        set class-name "Web Access"
    next
    edit 4
```

```
        set class-name "File Access"
    next
end
```

3. Create the web and file accessing traffic shaping policies:

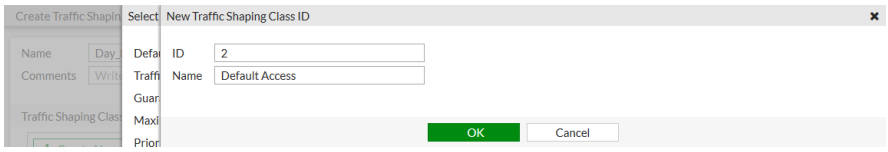
```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 2
        set name "web_access_day_hours"
        set comment "Limit web accessing traffic to 8Mb/s in day time"
        set service "HTTP" "HTTPS"
        set schedule "Day_Hours"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set class-id 3
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
    edit 3
        set name "file_access_day_hours"
        set comment "Limit file accessing traffic to 2Mb/s during the day"
        set service "AFS3" "FTP" "FTP_GET" "FTP_PUT" "NFS" "SAMBA" "SMB" "TFTP"
        set schedule "Day_Hours"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set class-id 4
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

Allocating bandwidth to the shaping classes

A traffic shaping profile defines the guaranteed and maximum bandwidths each class receives. In this example, file access can use up to 2 Mb/s and web access can use 8 Mb/s from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.

To create a traffic shaping profile using the GUI:

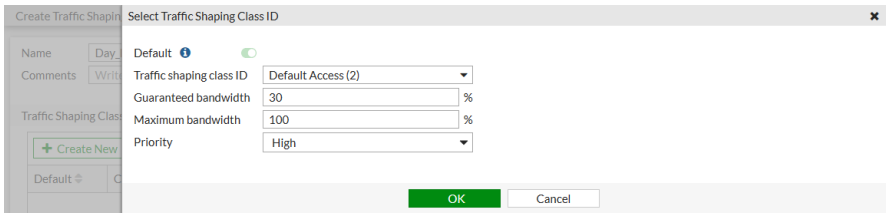
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Profile* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the profile, such as *Day_Hours_Profile*.
3. Configure a default traffic shaping class:
   This class has a high priority, meaning that when the other classes have reached their guaranteed bandwidths, this default class will use the rest of the available bandwidth.
   a. In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* table click *Create New*.
   b. Click the *Traffic shapping class ID* drop down then click *Create*.
   c. Enter a name for the class, such as *Default Access*.



   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Set *Traffic shaping class ID* to the just created class ID.

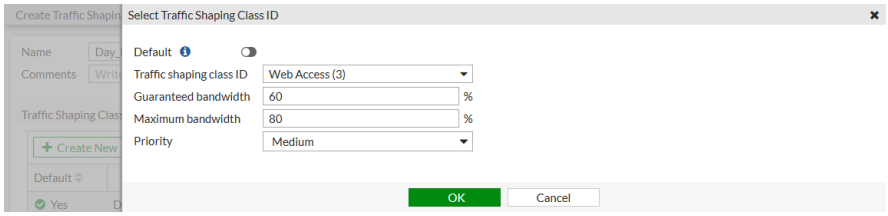
f. Configure the following settings, then click *OK*:

Guaranteed bandwidth	30
Maximum bandwidth	100
Priority	High



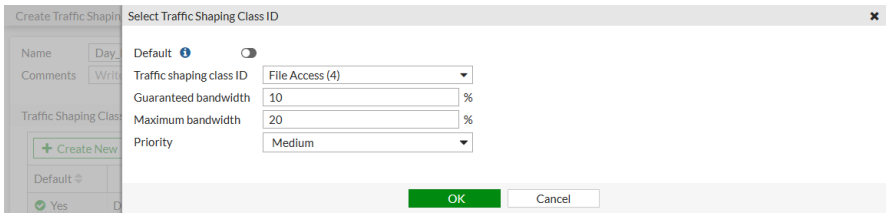
4. Configure a web accessing traffic shaping class:
When other types of traffic are competing for bandwidth, this class is guaranteed to 6 Mb/s, or 60% of the bandwidth.
   a. In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* table click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following settings, then click *OK*:

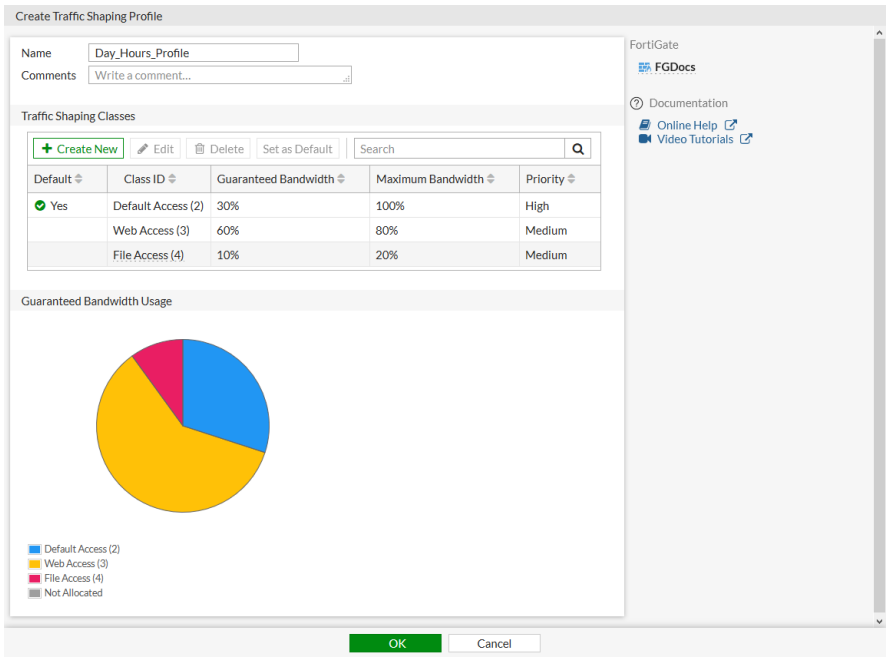
Traffic shaping class ID	Web Access
Guaranteed bandwidth	60
Maximum bandwidth	80
Priority	High



5. Configure a file accessing traffic shaping class:
When other types of traffic are competing for bandwidth, this group is guaranteed to 1 Mb/s, or 10% of the bandwidth.
   a. In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* table click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following settings, then click *OK*:

Traffic shaping class ID	File Access
Guaranteed bandwidth	10
Maximum bandwidth	20
Priority	High





6. Click *OK*.

To create a traffic shaping profile using the CLI:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "Day_Hours_Profile"
        set default-class-id 2
        config shaping-entries
            edit 1
                set class-id 2
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 30
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
            next
            edit 2
                set class-id 3
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 60
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 80
            next
            edit 3
                set class-id 4
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 20
            next
        end
```

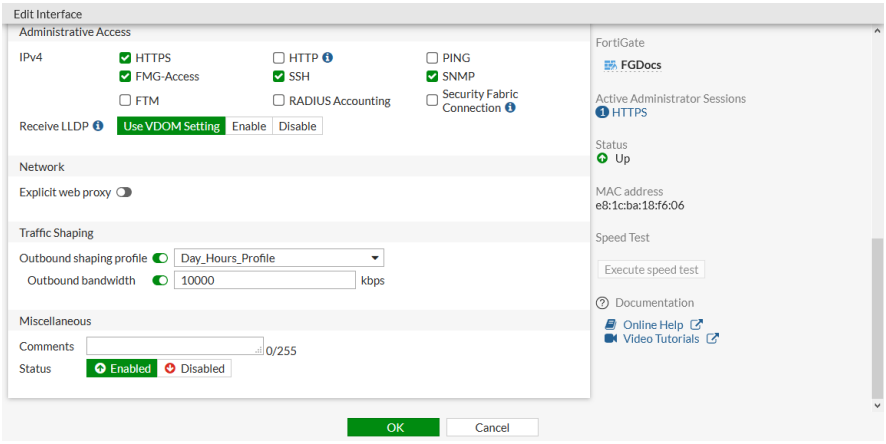
```
    next
end
```

Defining the available bandwidth on an interface

In this example, the link speed of the wan1 interface is 10 Mb/s.

To set the bandwidth of the wan1 interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the wan1 interface.
3. Under Traffic Shaping, enable *Outbound shaping profile* and select the profile that you just created, *Day_Hours_Profile*.
4. Enable *Outbound Bandwidth* and set it to *10000* Kbps.



5. Click *OK*.

To set the bandwidth of the wan1 interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        ....
        set egress-shaping-profile "Day_Hours_Profile"
        set outbandwidth 10000
        ....
    next
end
```

Diagnose commands

To check that the specific traffic is put into the correct shaping group or class ID:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015
```

To check the speed limit for each class ID on an interface:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list wan1
```

Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration

Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration is supported on some devices.

An administrator configures the WAN interface's maximum outbound bandwidth and, based on that, creates a traffic shaping profile with a percentage based shaper. This allows for proper QoS and traffic shaping. VLAN interfaces are not supported.



This feature is supported on FortiGate 600E, 500E, and 300E models.

To configure interface-based traffic shaping:

1. Enable NPU offloading when doing interface-based traffic shaping according to the egress-shaping-profile:

```
config system npu
    set intf-shaping-offload enable
end
```

2. Configure shaping profiles:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "sdwan"
        set default-class-id 4
        config shaping-entries
            edit 1
                set class-id 4
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 3
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 5
            next
            edit 2
                set class-id 3
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 50
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
            next
            edit 3
                set class-id 2
                set priority low
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 1
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 5
            next
        end
    next
end
```

   The class number is limited to 16.

3. Configure a traffic shaper and shaping policy:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "Transactional"
        set priority medium
    next
end

config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
```

```
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "any"
        set traffic-shaper "Transactional"
        set class-id 3
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

4. Apply the egress shaping profile on the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.23 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set type physical
        set outbandwidth 500
        set egress-shaping-profile "sdwan"
        set snmp-index 4
    next
end
```

5. Configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 3
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

QoS assignment and rate limiting for FortiSwitch quarantined VLANs

When devices are quarantined, they are isolated from the rest of the network. However, they can still impact the network if not controlled beyond isolation. A quarantined host, which offers heavy traffic, could congest the network and create a DOS-style reduction in service to authorized hosts.

Within the quarantined VLAN, two restrictions are available within the network:

- Traffic policing (also known as rate limiting)
- QoS (Quality of Service) assignment (also known as priority assignment)

Each quarantined host's traffic can be subject to rate limiting and priority adjustment. This reduces the impact that any quarantined host can have on authorized traffic on the network.

To configure QoS assignment and rate limiting for quarantined VLANs:

1. Configure a traffic policy, or use the default "quarantine" policy:

```
config switch-controller traffic-policy
    edit "quarantine"
        set description "Rate control for quarantined traffic"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 163840
        set guaranteed-burst 8192
        set maximum-burst 163840
        set cos-queue 0
    next
end
```

2. Configure an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "qtn.aggr1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.254.254 255.255.255.0
        set description "Quarantine VLAN"
        set security-mode captive-portal
        set replacemsg-override-group "auth-intf-qtn.aggr1"
        set device-identification enable
        set snmp-index 30
        set switch-controller-access-vlan enable
        set switch-controller-traffic-policy "quarantine"
        set color 6
        set interface "aggr1"
        set vlanid 4093
    next
end
```

By default, `switch-controller-traffic-policy` is empty. You need to apply the necessary traffic policy (not only limited to "quarantine").

Ingress traffic shaping profile

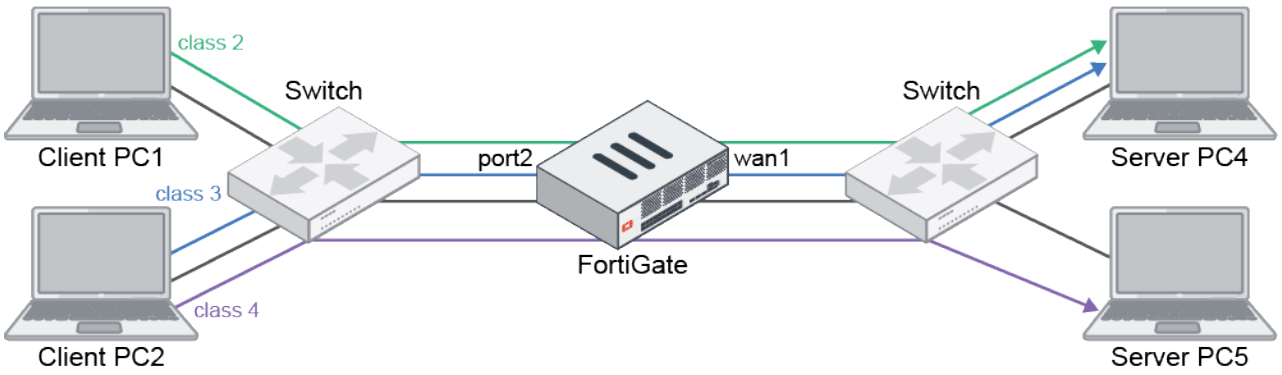
A traffic shaping profile can be applied to an interface for traffic in the ingress direction. Similar to an egress traffic shaping profile, the guaranteed bandwidth and priority of the profile will be respected when an interface receives inbound traffic. When congestion occurs, any remaining bandwidth will be allotted to classes based on priority.



Ingress traffic shaping does not support NPU offloading.

Example

In this example, the port2 interface has a total inbound bandwidth of 100 Mbps. Traffic from certain clients to certain servers are assigned different classes.



IPv6 traffic from any client PCs to server PCs is assigned class 5.

For each class, the priority, guaranteed bandwidth, and maximum bandwidth are as follows:

Class	Priority	Guaranteed bandwidth	Maximum bandwidth
2	Low	10%	60%
3	High	20%	100%
4	High	30%	100%
5	Medium	10%	50%

Bandwidth will first be allotted to each class according to its guaranteed bandwidth. Then remaining available bandwidth will be allotted to class 3 and 4 first based on their priority. The allocation will be proportional to their guaranteed bandwidth ratio.

To configure ingress traffic shaping:

1. Configure the client and server addresses:

```
config firewall address
    edit "pc1"
        set subnet 10.1.100.11 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc2"
        set subnet 10.1.100.22 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc4"
        set subnet 172.16.200.44 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc5"
        set subnet 172.16.200.55 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

2. Configure the class IDs:

```
config firewall traffic-class
    edit 2
        set class-name "class2"
    next
    edit 3
```

```
        set class-name "class3"
    next
    edit 4
        set class-name "class4"
    next
    edit 4
        set class-name "class5"
    next
end
```

3. Configure traffic shaping policies to assign classes to each group of traffic.
   a. Configure a policy to assign traffic from PC1 to PC4 in class 2:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "shaping policy 1"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set class-id 2
        set srcaddr "pc1"
        set dstaddr "pc4"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure a policy to assign traffic from PC2 to PC4 in class 3:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 2
        set name "shaping policy 2"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set class-id 3
        set srcaddr "pc2"
        set dstaddr "pc4"
    next
end
```

   c. Configure a policy to assign traffic from PC2 to PC5 in class 4:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 3
        set name "shaping policy 3"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set class-id 4
        set srcaddr "pc2"
        set dstaddr "pc5"
    next
end
```

   d. Configure a policy to assign all IPv6 traffic to class 5:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 4
        set name "shaping policy 4"
        set ip-version 6
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set class-id 5
```

```
            set srcaddr6 "all"
            set dstaddr6 "all"
        next
    end
```

4. Configure a shaping profile to set the priority, and the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth percentages for each class:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "ingShapeProfile"
        set default-class-id 2
        config shaping-entries
            edit 2
                set class-id 2
                set priority low
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 60
            next
            edit 3
                set class-id 3
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 20
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
            next
            edit 4
                set class-id 4
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 30
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
            next
            edit 5
                set class-id 5
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 50
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure the inbandwidth and apply the ingress shaping profile on port2:

```
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set inbandwidth 100000
        set ingress-shaping-profile "ingShapeProfile"
        config ipv6
            set ip6-address 2000:10:1:100::1/64
        end
    next
end
```

Inbandwidth must be configured for traffic shaping to take effect.

6. Configure a firewall policy to allow traffic to go through. Since traffic shaping is for inbound traffic on port2, the policy is defined from port2 to wan1:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
```

```
            set srcintf "port2"
            set dstintf "wan1"
            set action accept
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set srcaddr6 "all"
            set dstaddr6 "all"
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set logtraffic all
            set auto-asic-offload disable
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

NPU must be disabled by configuring `set auto-asic-offload disable`.

Verifying that the traffic is being shaped

In each of the following cases, the server PCs (PC4 and PC5) are configured as iPerf servers. The client PCs (PC1 and PC2) are configured as iPerf clients. The client sends traffic to the server from the client to server direction, triggering inbound traffic shaping on the port2 interface. The inbound bandwidth on port2 is 100 Mbps.

Case 1: single stream, PC1 to PC4

Traffic is sent from PC1 to PC4. There is no other traffic. Traffic is marked with class ID 2 and allocated the maximum bandwidth 60 Mbps (60%).

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port2
if=port2 family=00 type=1 index=20 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
ref=25 state=start present fw_flags=3800 flags=up broadcast run multicast
Qdisc=mq hw_addr=70:4c:a5:7d:d4:95 broadcast_addr=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
ingress traffic control:
        bandwidth=100000(kbps) lock_hit=50 default_class=2 n_active_class=4
        class-id=2      allocated-bandwidth=60000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=10000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=60000(kbps)       current-bandwidth=60002(kbps)
                        priority=low    forwarded_bytes=58157K
                        dropped_packets=94K     dropped_bytes=125385K
        class-id=5      allocated-bandwidth=1000(kbps)  guaranteed-bandwidth=10000(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=50000(kbps)       current-bandwidth=0(kbps)
                        priority=medium         forwarded_bytes=0
                        dropped_packets=0       dropped_bytes=0
        class-id=3      allocated-bandwidth=15000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=20000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=100000(kbps)      current-bandwidth=0(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=0
                        dropped_packets=0       dropped_bytes=0
        class-id=4      allocated-bandwidth=24000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=30000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=100000(kbps)      current-bandwidth=0(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=0
                        dropped_packets=0       dropped_bytes=0
stat: rxp=173465879 txp=2430534 rxb=194665548609 txb=2767375732 rxe=0 txe=0 rxd=0 txd=0 mc=0
collision=0 @ time=1628814469
re: rxl=0 rxo=0 rxc=0 rxf=0 rxfi=0 rxm=0
```

```
te: txa=0 txc=0 txfi=0 txh=0 txw=0
misc rxc=0 txc=0
input_type=0 state=3 arp_entry=0 refcnt=25
```

Case 2: dual stream, PC1 to PC4, PC2 to PC4

Traffic is sent from both PC1 and PC2 to PC4. PC1 to PC4 traffic is marked with class ID 2 and low priority, and PC2 to PC4 traffic is marked with class ID 3 and high priority. Both class 2 and 3 will be allocated their guaranteed bandwidth first, using up 10% and 20% respectively. The remaining available bandwidth is used by class 3 since it has a higher priority. Class 2 uses around 10 Mbps, and class 3 uses around 90 Mbps.

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port2
if=port2 family=00 type=1 index=20 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
ref=36 state=start present fw_flags=3800 flags=up broadcast run multicast
Qdisc=mq hw_addr=70:4c:a5:7d:d4:95 broadcast_addr=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
ingress traffic control:
        bandwidth=100000(kbps) lock_hit=181 default_class=2 n_active_class=4
        class-id=2      allocated-bandwidth=10000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=10000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=60000(kbps)       current-bandwidth=10001(kbps)
                        priority=low    forwarded_bytes=1799482K
                        dropped_packets=5998K   dropped_bytes=7965553K
        class-id=5      allocated-bandwidth=1000(kbps)  guaranteed-bandwidth=10000(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=50000(kbps)       current-bandwidth=0(kbps)
                        priority=medium         forwarded_bytes=0
                        dropped_packets=0       dropped_bytes=0
        class-id=3      allocated-bandwidth=88000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=20000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=100000(kbps)      current-bandwidth=88000(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=345039K
                        dropped_packets=324K    dropped_bytes=430862K
        class-id=4      allocated-bandwidth=1000(kbps)  guaranteed-bandwidth=30000(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=100000(kbps)      current-bandwidth=0(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=0
                        dropped_packets=0       dropped_bytes=0
stat: rxp=181269891 txp=2433428 rxb=205136511596 txb=2771214402 rxe=0 txe=0 rxd=0 txd=0 mc=0
collision=0 @ time=1628815849
re: rxl=0 rxo=0 rxc=0 rxf=0 rxfi=0 rxm=0
te: txa=0 txc=0 txfi=0 txh=0 txw=0
misc rxc=0 txc=0
input_type=0 state=3 arp_entry=0 refcnt=36
```

Case 3: multiple streams

Multiple streams of traffic are sent at the same time:

- PC1 to PC4 traffic is assigned class 2 with low priority, and a guaranteed bandwidth of 10 Mbps.
- PC2 to PC4 traffic is assigned class 3 with high priority, and a guaranteed bandwidth of 20 Mbps.
- PC2 to PC5 traffic is assigned class 4 with high priority, and a guaranteed bandwidth of 30 Mbps.

All classes will be allocated their guaranteed bandwidth first, using up 10 Mbps, 20 Mbps, and 30 Mbps respectively. The remaining available bandwidth (40 Mbps) is shared by class 3 and class 4 based on their guaranteed bandwidth ratio of 20:30.

- Class 3's share of the remaining 40 Mbps traffic = 40 × 20/(20 + 30) =16 Mpbs
- Class 4's share of the remaining 40 Mbps traffic = 40 × 30/(20 + 30) =24 Mpbs

Each class is allocated roughly the following bandwidth:

- Class 2: 10 Mbps
- Class 3: 20 Mbps + 16 Mbps = 36 Mbps
- Class 4: 30 Mbps + 24 Mbps = 54 Mbps

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port2
if=port2 family=00 type=1 index=20 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
ref=27 state=start present fw_flags=3800 flags=up broadcast run multicast
Qdisc=mq hw_addr=70:4c:a5:7d:d4:95 broadcast_addr=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
ingress traffic control:
        bandwidth=100000(kbps) lock_hit=148731 default_class=2 n_active_class=4
        class-id=2      allocated-bandwidth=10000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=10000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=60000(kbps)       current-bandwidth=10004(kbps)
                        priority=low    forwarded_bytes=2267956K
                        dropped_packets=10389K  dropped_bytes=13796469K
        class-id=5      allocated-bandwidth=1000(kbps)  guaranteed-bandwidth=10000(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=50000(kbps)       current-bandwidth=0(kbps)
                        priority=medium         forwarded_bytes=0
                        dropped_packets=0       dropped_bytes=0
        class-id=3      allocated-bandwidth=35000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=20000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=100000(kbps)      current-bandwidth=35729(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=2119502K
                        dropped_packets=6020K   dropped_bytes=7994926K
        class-id=4      allocated-bandwidth=54000(kbps)         guaranteed-bandwidth=30000
(kbps)
                        max-bandwidth=100000(kbps)      current-bandwidth=53907(kbps)
                        priority=high   forwarded_bytes=902415K
                        dropped_packets=4141K   dropped_bytes=5499248K
stat: rxp=197827723 txp=2433885 rxb=227356779526 txb=2771602657 rxe=0 txe=0 rxd=0 txd=0 mc=0
collision=0 @ time=1628816440
re: rxl=0 rxo=0 rxc=0 rxf=0 rxfi=0 rxm=0
te: txa=0 txc=0 txfi=0 txh=0 txw=0
misc rxc=0 txc=0
input_type=0 state=3 arp_entry=0 refcnt=27
```

Internet Service

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies with Internet Service:

- Using Internet Service in policy on page 1258
- Using custom Internet Service in policy on page 1260
- Using extension Internet Service in policy on page 1262
- Global IP address information database on page 1265
- IP reputation filtering on page 1267
- Internet service groups in policies on page 1269
- Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information on page 1273
- Internet service customization on page 1275

Using Internet Service in policy

This topic shows how to apply a predefined Internet Service entry into a policy.

The Internet Service Database is a comprehensive public IP address database that combines IP address range, IP owner, service port number, and IP security credibility. The data comes from the FortiGuard service system. Information is regularly added to this database, for example, geographic location, IP reputation, popularity & DNS, and so on. All this information helps users define Internet security more effectively. You can use the contents of the database as criteria for inclusion or exclusion in a policy.

From FortiOS version 5.6, Internet Service is included in the firewall policy. It can be applied to a policy only as a destination object. From version 6.0, Internet Service can be applied both as source and destination objects in a policy. You can also apply Internet Services to shaping policy.

There are three types of Internet Services you can apply to a firewall policy:

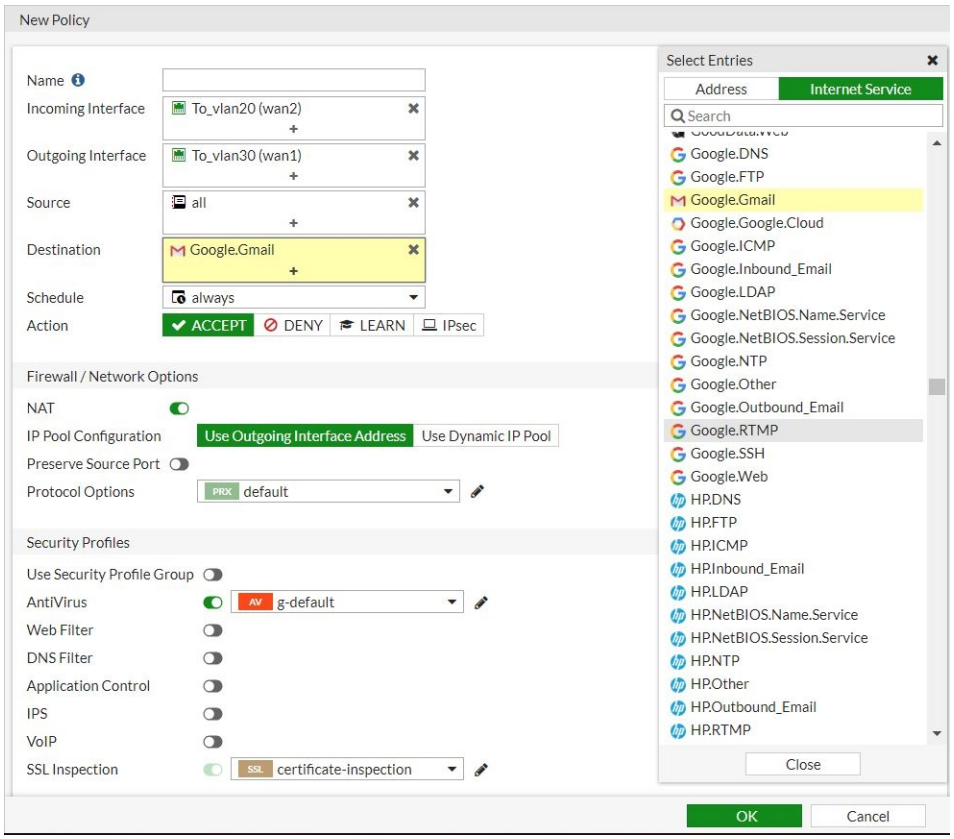
- Predefined Internet Services
- Custom Internet Services
- Extension Internet Services

Sample configuration

To apply a predefined Internet Service entry to a policy using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* and create a new policy.
2. In the *Source* or *Destination* field, click +.
3. In the *Select Entries* pane, click *Internet Service*.

4. Locate and click *Google.Gmail*.



5. Configure the other fields and then click *OK*.

To apply a predefined Internet Service entry to a policy using the CLI:

In the CLI, enable the `internet-service` first and then use its ID to apply the policy.

This example uses Google Gmail and its ID is 65646. Each Internet Service has a unique ID.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 9
        set name "Internet Service in Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 65646
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To diagnose an Internet Service entry using the CLI:

```
# diagnose internet-service id-summary 65646
Version: 0000600096
Timestamp: 201902111802
Total number of IP ranges: 444727
Number of Groups: 7
Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
Internet Service: 65646(Google.Gmail)
Number of IP range: 60
Number of IP numbers: 322845
Singularity: 15
Reputation: 5(Known and verified safe sites such as Gmail, Amazon, eBay, etc.)
Icon Id: 510
Second Level Domain: 53(gmail.com)
Direction: dst
Data source: isdb
```

Result

Because the IP and services related to Google Gmail on the Internet are included in this Internet Service (65646), all traffic to Google Gmail is forwarded by this policy.

Using custom Internet Service in policy

Custom Internet Services can be created and used in firewall policies.

When creating a custom Internet Service, you must set following elements:

- IP or IP ranges
- Protocol number
- Port or port ranges
- Reputation

You must use CLI to create a custom Internet Service, except for geographic based services (see Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information on page 1273).

CLI syntax

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
    edit <name>
       set comment <comment>
       set reputation {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5}
       config entry
           edit <ID>
               set protocol <protocol #>
               set dst <object_name>
```

```
                config port-range
                    edit <ID>
                        set start-port <port #>
                        set end-port <port #>
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
end
```

Sample configuration

To configure a custom Internet Service:

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
   edit "test-isdb-1"
       set comment "Test Custom Internet Service"
       set reputation 4
       config entry
          edit 1
              set protocol 6
              config port-range
                  edit 1
                      set start-port 80
                      set end-port 443
                  next
              end
              set dst "10-1-100-0"
          next
          edit 2
              set protocol 6
              config port-range
                  edit 1
                      set start-port 80
                      set end-port 80
                  next
              end
              set dst "172-16-200-0"
          next
       end
   next
end
```

To apply a custom Internet Service into a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Internet Service in Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 65646
        set internet-service-custom "test-isdb-1"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Result

In addition to the IP address, IP address ranges, and services allowed by Google.Gmail, this policy also allows the traffic which access to 10.1.100.0/24 and TCP/80-443 and 172.16.200.0/24 and TCP/80.

Using extension Internet Service in policy

Extension Internet Service lets you add custom or remove existing IP address and port ranges to an existing predefined Internet Service entries. Using an extension type Internet Service is actually editing a predefined type Internet Service entry and adding IP address and port ranges to it.

When creating an extension Internet Service and adding custom ranges, you must set following elements:

- IP or IP ranges
- Protocol number
- Port or port ranges

You must use CLI to add custom IP address and port entries into a predefined Internet Service.

You must use GUI to remove entries from a predefined Internet Service.

Custom extension Internet Service CLI syntax

```
config firewall internet-service-extension
    edit <ID #>
        set comment <comment>
        config entry
            edit <ID #>
                set protocol <number #>
                set dst <object_name>
                config port-range
                    edit <ID #>
                         set start-port <number #>
                         set end-port <number #>
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
end
```

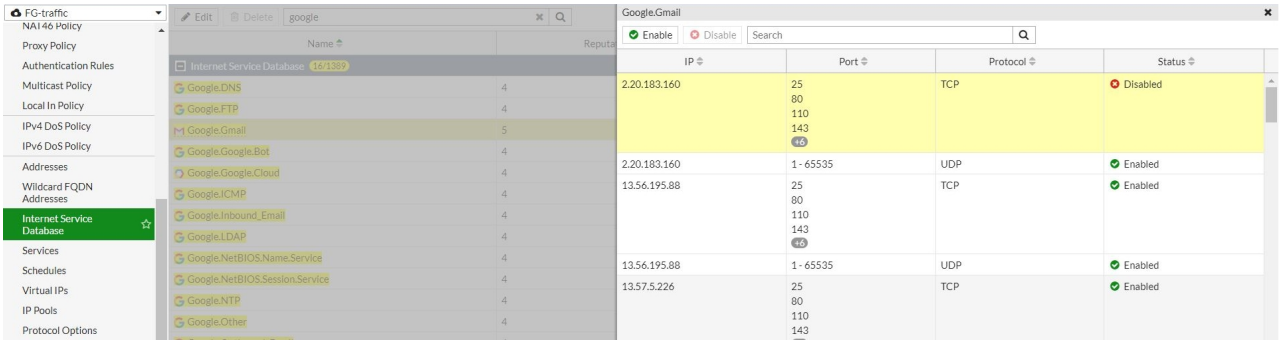
Sample configuration

To configure an extension Internet Service using the CLI:

```
config firewall internet-service-extension
    edit 65646
        set comment "Test Extension Internet Service 65646"
        config entry
            edit 1
                set protocol 6
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 80
                        set end-port 443
                    next
                end
                set dst "172-16-200-0"
            next
            edit 2
                set protocol 17
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 53
                        set end-port 53
                    next
                end
                set dst "10-1-100-0"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To remove IP address and port entries from an existing Internet Service:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Internet Service Database*.
2. Search for *Google.Gmail*.
3. Select *Google.Gmail* and click *Edit*.
4. Locate the *IP* entry you want to remove and click *Disable* beside that entry.



5. Click *Return*.
6. When you complete the actions in the GUI, the CLI automatically generates the configuration from your GUI actions:

```
config firewall internet-service-extension
    edit 65646
```

```
set comment "Test Extension Internet Service 65646"
config entry
    edit 1
        set protocol 6
        config port-range
            edit 1
                set start-port 80
                set end-port 443
            next
        end
        set dst "172-16-200-0"
    next
    edit 2
        set protocol 17
        config port-range
            edit 1
                set start-port 53
                set end-port 53
            next
        end
        set dst "10-1-100-0"
    next
end
config disable-entry
    edit 1
        set protocol 6
        config port-range
            edit 1
                set start-port 25
                set end-port 25
            next
            edit 2
                set start-port 80
                set end-port 80
            next
            edit 3
                set start-port 110
                set end-port 110
            next
            edit 4
                set start-port 143
                set end-port 143
            next
            edit 5
                set start-port 443
                set end-port 443
            next
            edit 6
                set start-port 465
                set end-port 465
            next
            edit 7
                set start-port 587
                set end-port 587
            next
            edit 8
```

```
                        set start-port 993
                        set end-port 993
                    next
                    edit 9
                        set start-port 995
                        set end-port 995
                    next
                    edit 10
                        set start-port 2525
                        set end-port 2525
                    next
                end
                config ip-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-ip 2.20.183.160
                        set end-ip 2.20.183.160
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To apply an extension Internet Service into policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 9
        set name "Internet Service in Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 65646
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Result

In addition to the IP addresses, IP address ranges, and services allowed by Google.Gmail, this policy also allows the traffic which accesses 10.1.100.0/24 and UDP/53 and 172.16.200.0/24 and TCP/80-443. At the same time, the traffic that accesses 2.20.183.160 is dropped because this IP address and port is disabled from Google.Gmail.

Global IP address information database

The Internet Service and IP Reputation databases download details about public IP address, including: ownership, known services, geographic location, blocklisting information, and more. The details are available in drilldown information, tooltips, and other mechanisms in the FortiView and other pages.

The global IP address database is an integrated database containing all public IP addresses, and is implemented in the Internet Service Database.

To view the owner of the IP address:

```
(global) # get firewall internet-service-owner ?
    id    Internet Service owner ID.
    1  Google
    2  Facebook
    3  Apple
    4  Yahoo
    5  Microsoft
    ......
    115  Cybozu
    116  VNC
```

To check for any known service running on an IP address:

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service info FG-traffic 6 80 8.8.8.8
    Internet Service: 65537(Google.Web)
```

To check GeoIP location and blocklist information:

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service id 65537 | grep 8.8.8.8
```

To check a known malicious server:

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service id-summary 3080383
    Version: 0000600096
    Timestamp: 201902111802
    Total number of IP ranges: 444727
    Number of Groups: 7
    Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
    Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
    Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
    Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
    Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
    Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
    Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
    Internet Service: 3080383(Botnet.C&C.Server)
    Number of IP range: 111486
    Number of IP numbers: 111486
    Singularity: 20
    Reputation: 1(Known malicious sites related to botnet servers, phishing sites, etc.)
    Icon Id: 591
    Second Level Domain: 1(other)
    Direction: dst
    Data source: irdb
```

To check questionable usage:

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service id-summary 2818238
    Version: 0000600096
    Timestamp: 201902111802
    Total number of IP ranges: 444727
```

```
    Number of Groups: 7
    Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
    Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
    Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
    Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
    Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
    Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
    Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
    Internet Service: 2818238(Tor.Relay.Node)
    Number of IP range: 13718
    Number of IP numbers: 13718
    Singularity: 20
    Reputation: 2(Sites providing high risk services such as TOR, proxy, P2P, etc.)
    Icon Id: 43
    Second Level Domain: 1(other)
    Direction: dst
    Data source: irdb

(global) # diagnose internet-service id-summary 2818243
    Version: 0000600096
    Timestamp: 201902111802
    Total number of IP ranges: 444727
    Number of Groups: 7
    Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
    Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
    Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
    Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
    Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
    Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
    Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
    Internet Service: 2818243(Tor.Exit.Node)
    Number of IP range: 1210
    Number of IP numbers: 1210
    Singularity: 19
    Reputation: 2(Sites providing high risk services such as TOR, proxy, P2P, etc.)
    Icon Id: 43
    Second Level Domain: 1(other)
    Direction: src
    Data source: irdb
```

IP reputation filtering

There are currently five reputation levels in the Internet Service Database (ISDB), and custom reputation levels can be defined in a custom internet service. You can configure firewall policies to filter traffic according to the desired reputation level. If the reputation level of either the source or destination IP address is equal to or greater than the level set in the policy, then the packet is forwarded, otherwise, the packet is dropped.

The five default reputation levels are:

1	Known malicious sites, such as phishing sites or sites related to botnet servers
2	High risk services sites, such as TOR, proxy, and P2P
3	Unverified sites

4	Reputable social media sites, such as Facebook and Twitter
5	Known and verified safe sites, such as Gmail, Amazon, and eBay

The default minimum reputation level in a policy is zero, meaning that the reputation filter is disabled.

For IP addresses that are not included in the ISDB, the default reputation level is three.

The default reputation direction is `destination`.

Example 1

Packets from the source IP address with reputation levels three, four, or five will be forwarded by this policy.

To set the reputation level and direction in a policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set reputation-minimum 3
        set reputation-direction source
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Packets from the source IP address with reputation levels three, four, or five will be forwarded by this policy.

Example 2

This policy allows only outbound FTP traffic, if the destination server has a minimum reputation of 4.

To set the reputation level and direction in a policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "wan2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set reputation-minimum 4
        set reputation-direction destination
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
```

```
        set service "FTP"
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Internet service groups in policies

This feature provides support for Internet Service Groups in traffic shaping and firewall policies. Service groups can be used as the source and destination of the policy. Internet Service Groups are used as criteria to match traffic; the shaper will be applied when the traffic matches.

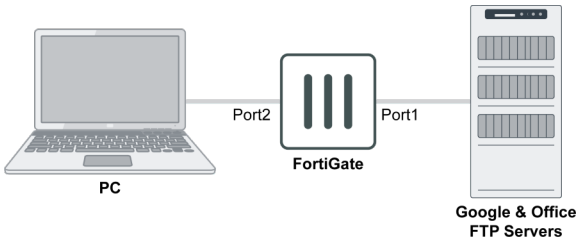
To use a group as a destination, `internet-service` must be enabled. To use a group as a source, `internet-service-src` must be enabled.

The following CLI variables are available in the `firewall policy` and `firewall shaping-policy` commands:

Variable	Description
internet-service-group <string>	Internet Service group name.
internet-service-custom-group <string>	Custom Internet Service group name.
internet-service-src-group <string>	Internet Service source group name.
internet-service-src-custom-group <string>	Custom Internet Service source group name.

Examples

The following examples use the below topology.



Example 1

In this example, the PC is allowed to access Google, so all Google services are put into an Internet Service Group.

To configure access to Google services using an Internet Service Group using the CLI:

1. Create a Service Group:

```
config firewall internet-service-group
    edit "Google_Group"
        set direction destination
        set member 65537 65538 65539 65540 65542 65543 65544 65545 65550 65536 65646
```

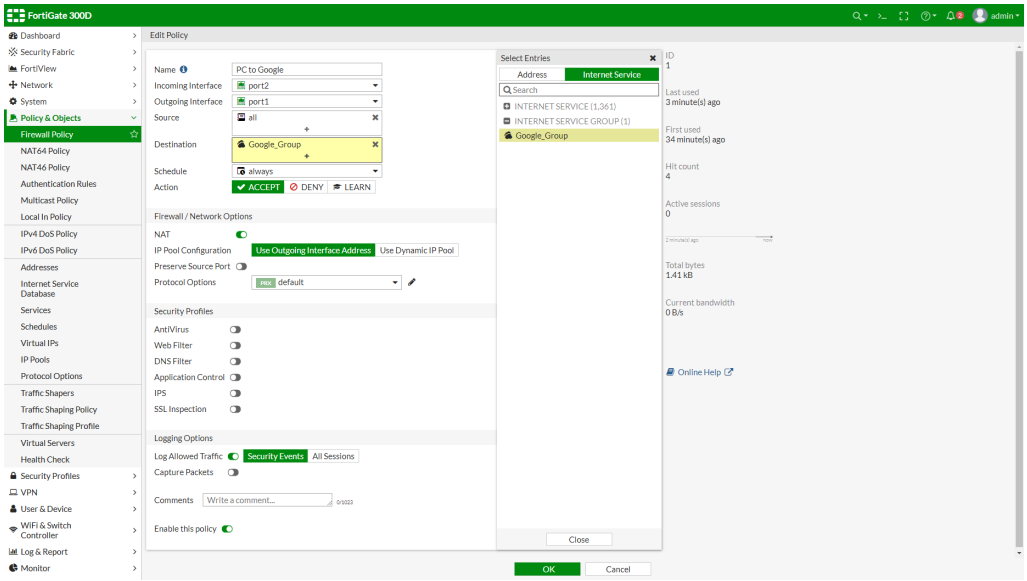
```
    next
end
```

2. Create a firewall policy to allow access to all Google Services from the PC:

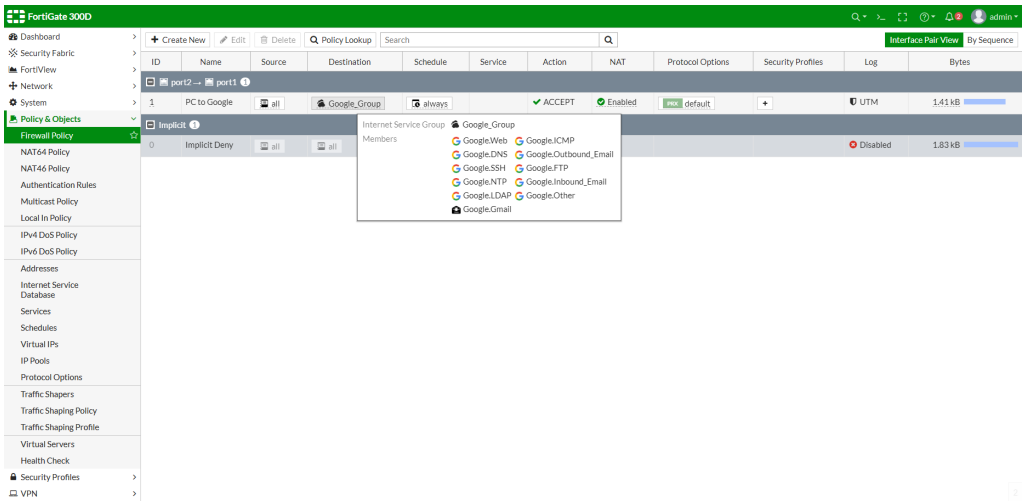
```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "PC to Google"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "PC"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-group "Google_Group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure access to Google services using an Internet Service Group in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, create a Service Group using the CLI.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, and create a new policy.
3. Set the *Destination* as the just created Internet Service Group.



4. Configure the remaining options as shown, then click *OK*.
   On the policy page, hover over the group to view a list of its members.



Example 2

In this example, two office FTP servers are put into an Internet Custom Service Group, and the PC connection to the FTP servers is limited to 1Mbps.

To put two FTP servers into a custom service group and limit the PC connection speed to them using the CLI:

1. Create custom internet services for the internal FTP servers:

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
    edit "FTP_PM"
        config entry
            edit 1
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 21
                        set end-port 21
                    next
                end
                set dst "PM_Server"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "FTP_QA"
        config entry
            edit 1
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 21
                        set end-port 21
                    next
                end
                set dst "QA_Server"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create a custom internet server group and add the just created custom internet services to it:

```
config firewall internet-service-custom-group
    edit "Internal_FTP"
        set member "FTP_QA" "FTP_PM"
    next
end
```

3. Create a traffic shaper to limit the maximum bandwidth:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 500
        set maximum-bandwidth 1000
        set priority medium
    next
end
```

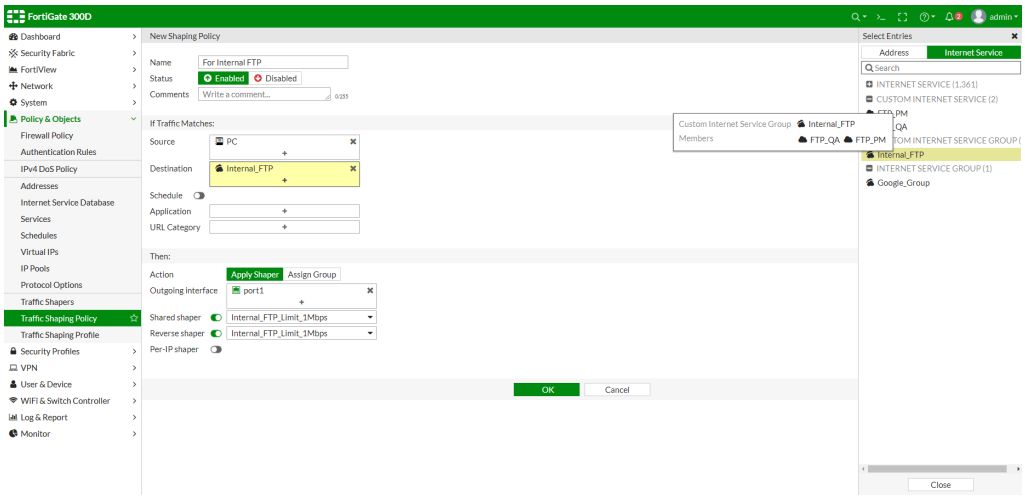
4. Create a firewall shaping policy to limit the speed from the PC to the internal FTP servers:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "For Internal FTP"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-custom-group "Internal_FTP"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps"
        set srcaddr "PC"
    next
end
```

To put two FTP servers into a custom service group and limit the PC connection speed to the using the GUI:

1. Create custom internet services for the internal FTP servers using the CLI.
2. Create a custom internet server group and add the just created custom internet services to it using the CLI.
3. Create a traffic shaper to limit the maximum bandwidth:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers*, and click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* for the shaper, such as *Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps*.
   c. Set the *Traffic Priority* to *Medium*.
   d. Enable *Max Bandwidth* and set it to *1000*.
   e. Enable *Guaranteed Bandwidth* and set it to *500*.
   f. Click *OK*.

4. Create a firewall shaping policy to limit the speed from the PC to the internal FTP servers:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*, and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Destination* as the just created Custom Internet Service Group, and apply the just create traffic shaper.



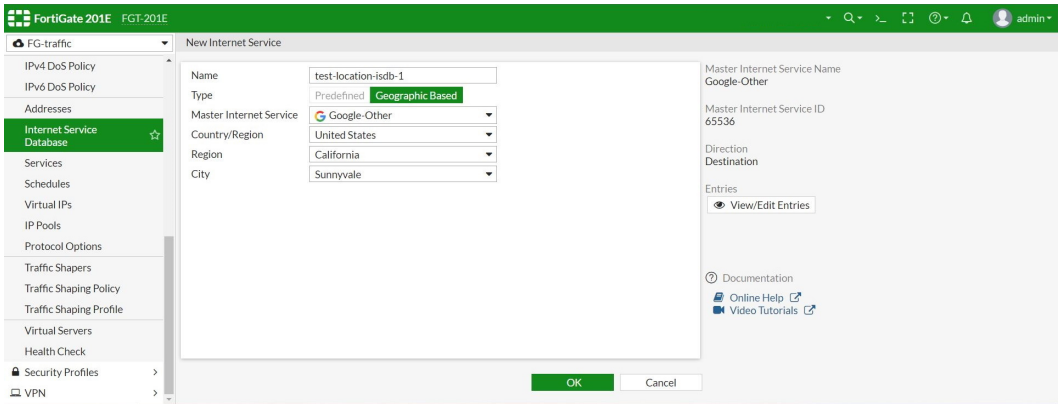
   c. Configure the remaining options as shown, then click *OK*.

Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information

Geographic-based Internet Service Database (ISDB) objects allow users to define a country, region, and city. These objects can be used in firewall policies for more granular control over the location of the parent ISDB object. ISDB objects are now referenced in policies by name instead of ID.

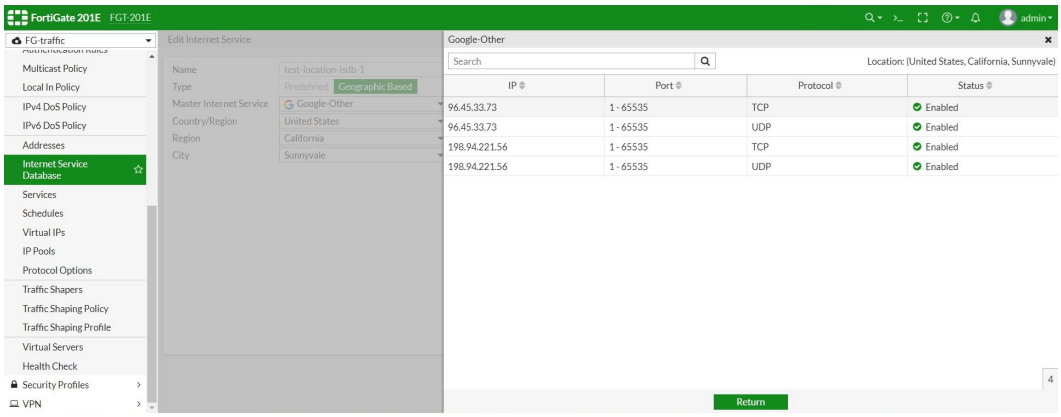
To apply a location-based ISDB object to a policy in the GUI:

1. Create the ISDB object:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Internet Service Database* and click *Create New* > *Geographic Based Internet Service*.
   b. Configure the settings as required.

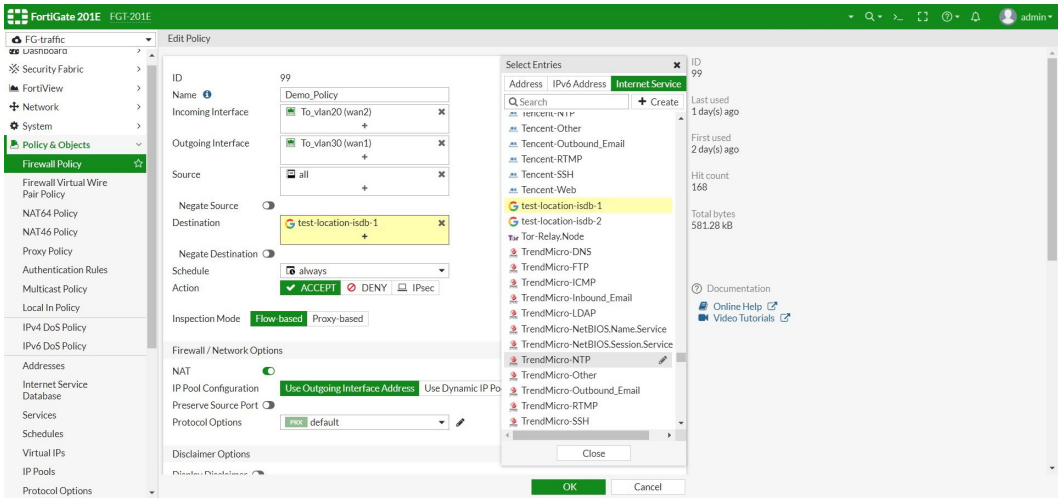


   c. Click *OK*.

2. View the IP ranges in the location-based internet service:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Internet Service Database* .
   b. In the table, hover over the object created in step 1 and click *View/Edit Entries*. The list of IPs is displayed:



   c. Click *Return*.
3. Add the ISDB object to a policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.
   b. For *Destination*, click *Internet Service* and select the ISDB object created in step 1.
   c. Configure the other settings as needed.



   d. Click *OK*.

To apply a location-based ISDB object to a policy in the CLI:

1. Create the ISDB object:

```
config firewall internet-service-name
    edit "test-location-isdb-1"
        set type location
        set internet-service-id 65536
        set country-id 840
        set region-id 283
        set city-id 23352
    next
end
```

2. View the IP ranges in the location-based internet service:

```
# diagnose internet-service id 65536 | grep "country(840) region(283) city(23352)"
```

3. Add the ISDB object to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 99
        set name "Demo_Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-name "test-location-isdb-1"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set logtraffic-start enable
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set comments "1"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Internet service customization

Internet Service Database (ISDB) entries can be tuned for their environments by adding custom ports and port ranges, as well as port mapping.

To add a custom port range:

```
config firewall internet-service-addition
    edit 65646
        set comment "Add custom port-range:tcp/8080-8090 into 65646"
        config entry
            edit 1
                set protocol 6
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 8080
                        set end-port 8090
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
Warning: Configuration will only be applied after rebooting or using the 'execute internet-service refresh' command.
```

To verify that the change was applied:

```
 # diagnose internet-service info FG-traffic 6 8080 2.20.183.160
 Internet Service: 65646(Google.Gmail)
```

To configure additional port mapping:

```
config firewall internet-service-append
    set match-port 10
    set append-port 20
end
Warning: Configuration will only be applied after rebooting or using the 'execute internet-
service refresh' command.
```

Security Profiles

This section contains information about configuring FortiGate security features, including:

- Inspection modes on page 1277
- Antivirus on page 1282
- Web filter on page 1317
- DNS filter on page 1348
- Application control on page 1372
- Intrusion prevention on page 1385
- File filter on page 1405
- Email filter on page 1411
- Data leak prevention on page 1426
- VoIP solutions on page 1433
- ICAP on page 1445
- Web application firewall on page 1451
- SSL & SSH Inspection on page 1455
- Custom signatures on page 1465
- Overrides on page 1472
- Profile groups on page 1485



If you are unable to view a security profile feature, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* to enable it.

Inspection modes

FortiOS supports flow-based and proxy-based inspection in firewall policies. You can select the inspection mode when configuring a policy.

Flow-based inspection takes a snapshot of content packets and uses pattern matching to identify security threats in the content.

Proxy-based inspection reconstructs content that passes through the FortiGate and inspects the content for security threats.

Certain security profiles allows users to display flow-based or proxy-based feature sets.

This following topics provide information about inspection modes for various security profile features:

- Flow mode inspection (default mode) on page 1278
- Proxy mode inspection on page 1278
- Inspection mode feature comparison on page 1280

Flow mode inspection (default mode)

When a firewall policy's inspection mode is set to flow, traffic flowing through the policy will not be buffered by the FortiGate. Unlike proxy mode, the content payload passing through the policy will be inspected on a packet by packet basis with the very last packet held by the FortiGate until the scan returns a verdict. If a violation is detected in the traffic, a reset packet is issued to the receiver, which terminates the connection, and prevents the payload from being sent successfully.

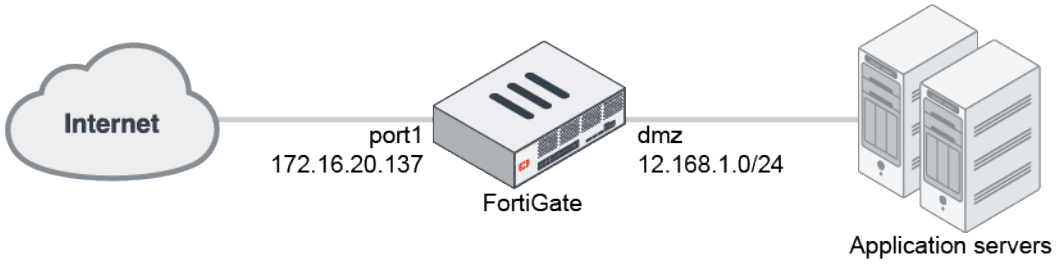
Flow-based inspection identifies and blocks security threats in real time as they are identified. All applicable flow-based security modules are applied simultaneously in one single pass, using Direct Filter Approach (DFA) pattern matching to identify possible attacks or threats. Pattern matching is offloaded and accelerated by CP8 or CP9 processors.

Flow-based inspection typically requires lower processing resources than proxy-based inspection and does not change packets, unless a threat is found and packets are blocked.

Use case

It is recommended to apply flow inspection to policies that prioritize traffic throughput, such as allowing connections to a streaming or file server.

For example, you have an application server that accepts connections from users for a daily quiz show app, HQ. Each HQ session sees 500,000+ participants, and speed is very important because participants have less than 10 seconds to answer the quiz show questions.



In this scenario, a flow inspection policy is recommended to prioritize throughput. The success of the application depends on providing reliable service for large numbers of concurrent users. The policy would include an IPS sensor to protect the server from external DOS attacks.

Proxy mode inspection

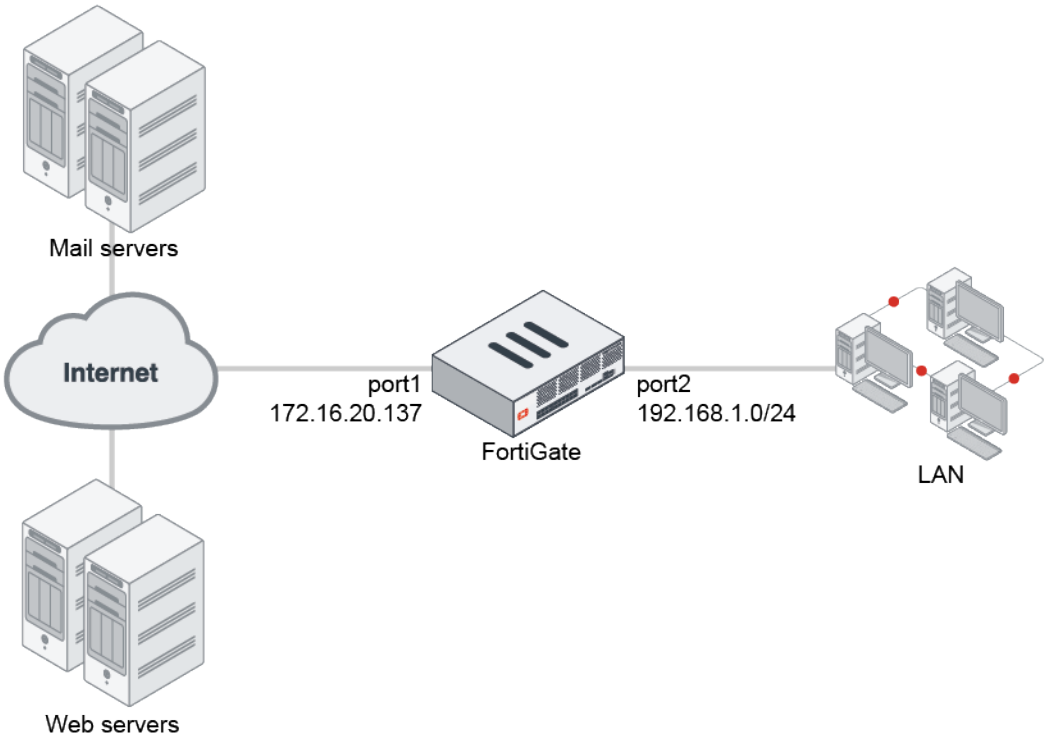
When a firewall policy's inspection mode is set to proxy, traffic flowing through the policy will be buffered by the FortiGate for inspection. This means that the packets for a file, email message, or web page will be held by the FortiGate until the entire payload is inspected for violations (virus, spam, or malicious web links). After FortiOS finishes the inspection, the payload is either released to the destination (if the traffic is clean) or dropped and replaced with a replacement message (if the traffic contains violations).

To optimize inspection, the policy can be configured to block or ignore files or messages that exceed a certain size. To prevent the receiving end user from timing out, you can apply client comforting. This allows small portions of the payload to be sent while it is undergoing inspection.

Proxy mode provides the most thorough inspection of the traffic; however, its thoroughness sacrifices performance, making its throughput slower than that of a flow mode policy. Under normal traffic circumstances, the throughput difference between a proxy-based and flow-based policy is not significant.

Use case 1

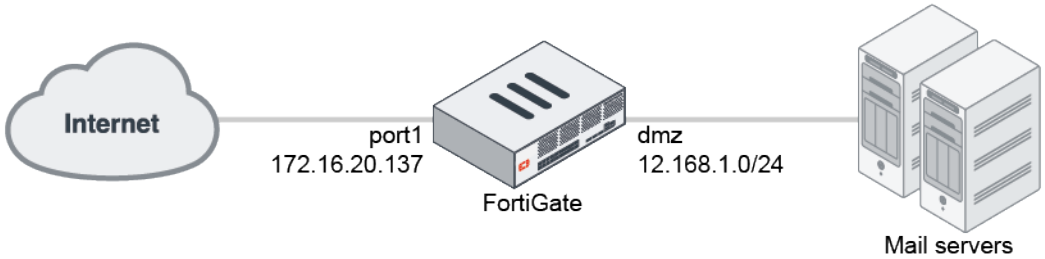
Your organization deals with sensitive data on a regular basis and a data leak would significantly harm your business. At the same time, you wish to protect your employees from malicious content, such as viruses and phishing emails, which could be used to gain access to your network and the sensitive data on your systems.



In this scenario, a proxy inspection policy is recommended to prioritize network security. You want traffic inspection to be as thorough as possible to avoid any data leaks from exiting the LAN and any malicious content from entering it. The policy would include antivirus, DLP, web, and email filters all operating in proxy mode.

Use case 2

You have a corporate mail server in your domain that is used by your employees for everyday business activities. You want to protect your employees from phishing emails and viruses. At the same time, you want to also protect your web servers from external attacks.



In this scenario, a proxy inspection policy is recommended to prioritize the safety of employee emails. Applying the antivirus and email filter in this mode allows you to filter out any malware and spam emails received by the mail servers via SMTP or MAPI. An IPS sensor would be used to prevent DOS attacks on the mail servers.

Inspection mode feature comparison

The following table shows which UTM profile can be configured on a flow mode or proxy mode inspection policy.

Some UTM profiles are hidden in the GUI and can only be configured using the CLI. To configure profiles in a firewall policy in CLI, enable the `utm-status` setting.

Some profiles might have feature differences between flow-based and proxy-based Inspection. From the GUI and CLI, you can set the *Feature set* option to be *Flow-based* or *Proxy-based* to display only the settings for that mode.

	Flow Mode Inspection Policy		Proxy Mode Inspection Policy		
UTM Profile	GUI	CLI	GUI	CLI	Feature set option
AntiVirus	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	GUI/CLI
Web Filter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	GUI/CLI
DNS Filter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A
Application Control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A
Intrusion Prevention System	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A
File Filter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	GUI/CLI
Email Filter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	GUI/CLI
Data Leak Prevention	No	Yes	No	Yes	CLI
VoIP	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A
ICAP	No	No	Yes	Yes	N/A
Web Application Firewall	No	No	Yes	Yes	N/A
SSL/SSH Inspection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A

The following sections outline differences between flow-based and proxy-based inspection for a security profile.

Feature comparison between Antivirus inspection modes

The following table indicates which Antivirus features are supported by their designated scan modes.

Part1	Replacement Message	Content Disarm	Mobile Malware	Virus Outbreak	Sandbox Inspection	NAC Quarantine
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Flow	Yes*	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

*IPS Engine caches the URL and a replacement message is presented after the second attempt.

Part 2	Archive Blocking	Emulator	Client Comforting	Infection Quarantine	Heuristics	Treat EXE as Virus
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (1)	Yes	Yes (2)
Flow	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes (2)

1. Only available on FortiGate models with HDD or when FortiAnalyzer or FortiGate Cloud is connected and enabled.
2. Only applies to inspection on IMAP, POP3, SMTP, and MAPI protocols.

Feature comparison between Web Filter inspection modes

The following table indicates which Web Filter features are supported by their designated inspection modes.

	FortiGuard Category-Based Filter	Category Usage Quota	Override Blocked Categories	Search Engines	Static URL Filter	Rating Option	Proxy Option	Web Profile Override
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Flow	Yes (1)	No	Yes (2)	No	Yes	Yes	Limited (3)	No

1. Local Category and Remote Category filters do not support the warning and authenticate actions.
2. Local Category and Remote Category filters cannot be overridden.
3. Only HTTP POST Action is supported.

Feature comparison between Email Filter inspection modes

The following tables indicate which Email Filters are supported by the specified inspection modes for local filtering and FortiGuard-assisted filtering.

Local Filtering	Banned Word Check	Block/Allow List	HELO/ EHLO DNS Check	Return Address DNS Check	DNSBL/ ORBL Check	MIME Header Check
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Flow	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes

FortiGuard-Assisted Filtering	Phishing URL Check	Anti-Spam Block List Check	Submit Spam to FortiGuard	Spam Email Checksum Check	Spam URL Check
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Flow	No	No	No	No	No

Feature comparison between DLP inspection modes

The following table indicates which DLP filters are supported by their designated inspection modes.

	Credit Card Filter	SSN Filter	Regex Filter	File-Type Filter	File-Pattern Filter	Fingerprint Filter	Watermark Filter	Encrypted Filter	File-Size Filter
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Flow	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes*

*File-size filtering only works if file size is present in the protocol exchange.

Antivirus

FortiOS offers the unique ability to implement both flow-based and proxy-based antivirus concurrently, depending on the traffic type, users, and locations. Flow-based antivirus offers higher throughput performance.

FortiOS includes two preloaded antivirus profiles:

- *default*
- *wifi-default*

You can customize these profiles, or you can create your own to inspect certain protocols, remove viruses, analyze suspicious files with FortiSandbox, and apply botnet protection to network traffic. Once configured, you can add the antivirus profile to a firewall policy.



This functionality requires a subscription to FortiGuard Antivirus.

Starting from 6.2, for oversized files, the UTM scan strategy used in proxy mode for the HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, FTPS, and SSH protocols is best effort in both default and legacy scan modes. In the FortiGate memory allocation based on the oversize limit and uncompressed oversize limit defined in the protocol options, the FortiGate scans buffered files as much as it can. This strategy improves the effectiveness of the malware detection, and provides better security by scanning whole or partial files that would be bypassed if oversized files were bypassed.

The following topics provide information about antivirus profiles:

- Configuring an antivirus profile on page 1283
- Proxy mode stream-based scanning on page 1288
- Databases on page 1291
- Content disarm and reconstruction on page 1292
- FortiGuard outbreak prevention on page 1293
- External malware block list on page 1295
- Checking flow antivirus statistics on page 1297
- CIFS support on page 1299

The following topics provide information about sandbox inspection with antivirus:

- Using FortiSandbox with antivirus on page 1304
- Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus on page 1311

Protocol comparison between antivirus inspection modes

The following table indicates which protocols can be inspected by the designated antivirus scan modes.

	HTTP	FTP	IMAP	POP3	SMTP	NNTP	MAPI	CIFS	SSH
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes
Flow	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No

* Proxy mode antivirus inspection on CIFS protocol has the following limitations:

- Cannot detect infections within some archive files.
- Cannot detect oversized files.

Other antivirus differences between inspection modes

Starting from 6.4.0, the scan mode option is no longer available for flow-based AV.

This means that AV no longer exclusively uses the default or legacy scan modes when handling traffic on flow-based firewall policies. Instead, AV in flow-based policies uses a hybrid of the two scan modes. Flow AV may use a pre-filtering database for malware detection in some circumstances as opposed to the full AV signature database in others. The scan method is determined by the IPS engine algorithm that is based on the type of file being scanned. When handling oversized files in flow-based AV, the action can either be pass (default) or block. When theaction is pass, IPS appends to-be-scan data into the AV scan buffer. If the appended file size exceeds the oversize-limit that is defined in the protocol option profile, then the AV session is cleared and the file is bypassed from AV scanning.

In contrast, proxy mode maintains the scan mode option, which can be toggled between default or legacy mode. In default mode, the WAD daemon receives the file and then decides if it can do an in-process scan of the file in simple AV configuration scenarios. If the file is in an oversized archive that is supported by the stream-based decompressor, then it is sent to stream-based scan for best effort inspection. Stream-based scan decompresses and scans the entire archive without archiving the file. If the file is not supported by stream-based scan, then it is buffered and then sent to the scanunit daemon for inspection on content that is under the oversize limit.

In legacy mode, stream-based scanning is disabled, so oversized archive files and files that cannot be handled by WAD in-process scan are buffered and sent to the scanunit daemon for processing.

Configuring an antivirus profile

In an antivirus profile, the FortiGate can be configured to apply antivirus protection to HTTP, FTP, IMAP, POP3, SMTP, CIFS, and NNTP sessions. Proxy-based profiles also support MAPI and SSH. Antivirus inspection prevents potentially unwanted and malicious files from entering the network. Antivirus profiles include multiple different functions, such as scanning files for virus signatures, scanning for advanced persistent threats, checking external malware hash lists and threat feeds, and others. Malicious files can be blocked or monitored, and can be quarantined. Some antivirus profile options require a license and/or other Fortinet products. Some antivirus profile options can only be configured in the CLI (refer to the FortiOS CLI Reference).



The feature set setting (proxy or flow) in the antivirus profile must match the inspection mode setting (proxy or flow) in the associated firewall policy. For example, a flow-based antivirus profile must be used with a flow-based firewall policy.

To configure an antivirus profile:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Name	Enter a unique name for the profile.
Comments	Enter a comment (optional).
Detect Viruses	Specify the action to take when a virus is found for the selected protocols. • *Block*: block the malicious traffic. • *Monitor*: log malicious traffic and allow it to pass inspection.
Feature set	Select the feature set for the profile. The feature set mode must match the inspection mode used in the associated firewall policy. • *Flow-based* • *Proxy-based* Additional options are available in proxy-based mode and are identified in the GUI with a *P* icon. See Inspection mode feature comparison on page 1280 for more details.
Inspected Protocols	Enable to inspect the protocol for session inspection: HTTP, SMTP, POP3, IMAP, FTP, and CIFS. Disabled protocols are not inspected. MAPI and SSH can be inspected in proxy-based mode.

APT Protection Options	This section includes options available with FortiGuard to mitigate advanced persistent threats (APT) in file-based attacks.
Content Disarm and Reconstruction	This option is available in proxy-based mode when at least one protocol is enabled for inspection and *AntiVirus scan* is enabled. Enable to allow the FortiGate to sanitize Microsoft Office documents and PDF files (including files in ZIP archives) by removing active content (disarm) without affecting the integrity of the textual content (reconstruction). See Content disarm and reconstruction on page 1292 for more details.
Allow transmission when an error occurs	Enable to allow traffic to pass when an inspection error occurs. Disable to block traffic when an inspection error occurs.
Original File Destination	Specify how to quarantine files processed by content disarm and reconstruction. • *FortiSandbox*: quarantine files on FortiSandbox. The FortiSandbox must be enabled. See Using FortiSandbox with antivirus on page 1304 and Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus on page 1311 for more details. • *File Quarantine*: quarantine files on FortiGate models with a hard disk. • *Discard*: discard suspicious files.

Treat Windows executables in email attachments as viruses	Enable to deem all Windows executable files located in email traffic as viruses.
Send Files to FortiSandbox for Inspection (6.4 only setting)	Specify whether to send files to FortiSandbox for inspection. The FortiSandbox must be enabled. • *None*: disable this feature. • *Suspicious Files Only*: only send suspicious files to FortiSandbox for inspection. • *All Supported Files*: send all supported files to FortiSandbox for inspection.
Do not submit files matching types	Click the + to exclude certain file types from being sent to FortiSandbox.
Do not submit files matching file name patterns	Click the + to enter a wildcard pattern to exclude files from being sent to FortiSandbox.
Use FortiSandbox database	Enable to use the signature database from FortiSandbox. The FortiSandbox must be enabled.
Include mobile malware protection	Enable to use the mobile malware protection database from FortiGuard for content scanning.
Virus Outbreak Prevention	This section includes options available with the FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Protection Service. A license is required to use these options. See FortiGuard outbreak prevention on page 1293 for more details.

Use FortiGuard outbreak prevention database	Enable to use the outbreak prevention database that is available with Advanced Malware Protection on FortiGuard. A license is required. • *Block*: block the malicious traffic. • *Monitor*: log malicious traffic and allow it to pass inspection.
Use external malware block list	Enable to use one or more external blocklist file hashes. See External blocklist - File hashes on page 377 for more details. • *Block*: block the malicious traffic. • *Monitor*: log malicious traffic and allow it to pass inspection. • *All*: use all malware block lists. • *Specify*: select specific malware block lists.

3. Click *OK*.

Protocol options

When applying an antivirus profile to a firewall policy, the protocol options profile defines parameters for handling protocol-specific traffic. These parameters affect functions such as the port mapping for inspecting each protocol, whether to log or block oversized files when performing AV scanning, enabling comfort client, and more. Protocol options profiles are configured by going to *Policy & Objects* > *Protocol Options*, or in the CLI under `config firewall profile-protocol-options`. See Protocol options on page 1206 for more information.

Scan mode

In proxy-based antivirus profiles, the scan mode can be set to either default or legacy. This setting can only be configured in the CLI. See Proxy mode stream-based scanning on page 1288 for more information.

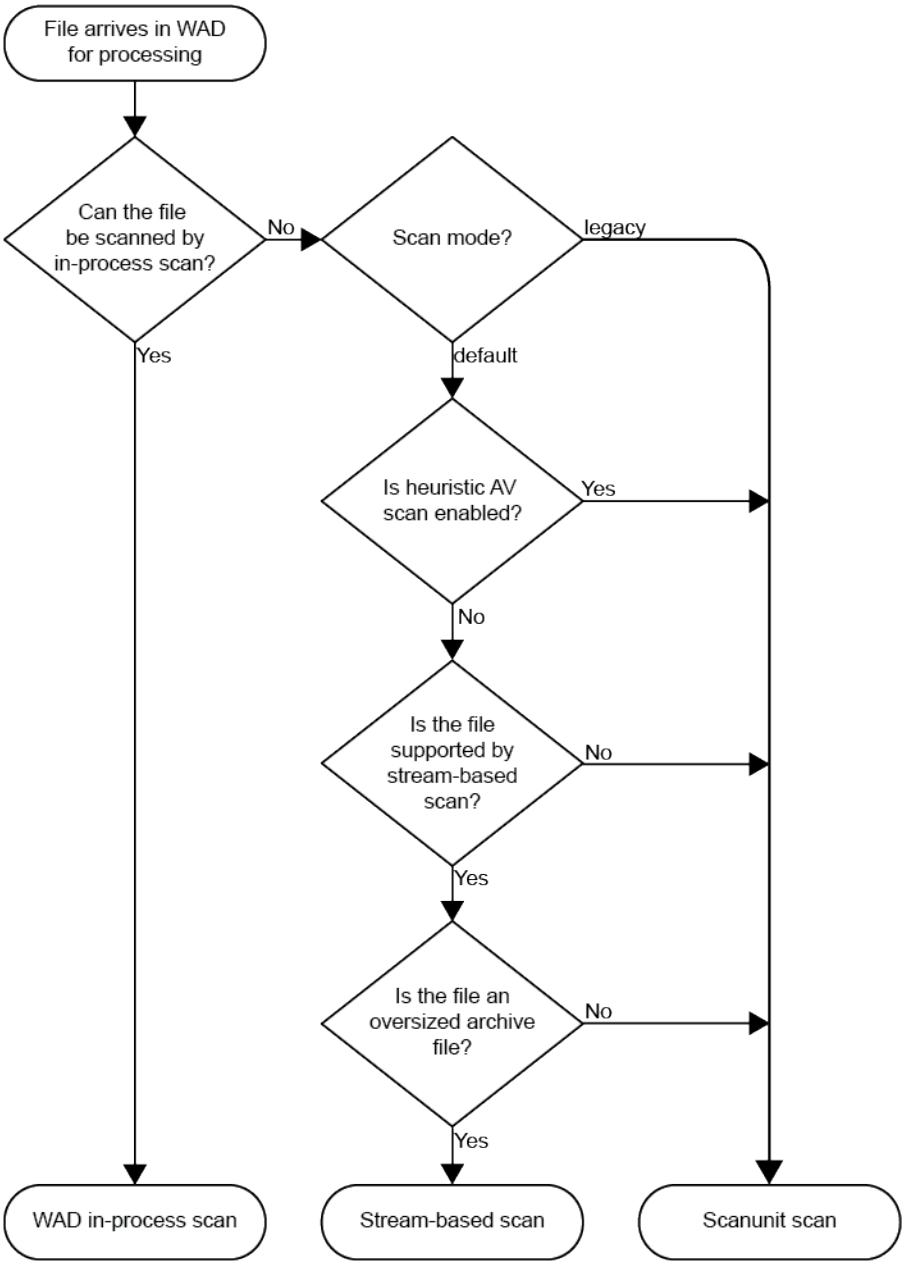
To configure the scan mode:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit <name>
        set feature-set proxy
        set scan-mode {default | legacy}
```

```
    next
end
```

Proxy mode stream-based scanning

In proxy mode, AV scanning is processed as follows:



Can the file be scanned by in-process scan?

- This is determined by the WAD daemon.
- In-process scan can be used for simple AV configurations to quickly scan a file without handing it off to another process.
- The following, more complex feature sets cannot be processed by in-process scan:
  - Heuristic AV scan
  - DLP
  - Quarantine
  - FortiGuard outbreak prevention and external block list
  - Content disarm

Scan mode?

- To configure the scan mode:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit <name>
        set feature-set proxy
        set scan-mode {default | legacy}
    next
end
```

`default`	Enable stream-based scanning (default).
`legacy`	Disable stream-based scanning.

Is heuristic AV scan enabled?

- When enabled, all files are forwarded to the scanunit scan.
- Heuristic AV engine scan is disabled by default. To configure it:

```
config antivirus heuristic
    set mode {pass | block | disable}
end
```

Is the file supported by stream-based scan?

- Stream-based scan supports the following archive file types: ZIP, GZIP, BZIP2, TAR, and ISO (ISO 9660).
- In FortiOS 6.4 and 6.2, stream-based scan is only supported in HTTP(S).
- Stream-based scan does not support HTTP POST.
- Stream-based scan is not supported when the following features are enabled:
  - DLP
  - Quarantine
  - FortiGuard outbreak prevention and external block list
  - Content Disarm
- If a file is not supported, it is buffered and sent to scanunit for scanning.

Is the file an oversized archive file?

- An oversized archive file is a compressed file that is oversized according to the following setting:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit <profile>
        config <protocol>
            set oversize-limit <size>
        end
    next
end
```

- If the file is not oversized, it is buffered and sent to scanunit for scanning.

Notes

Stream-based scans:

- Are performed with no oversize limits on a best effort basis.
- Can inspect the contents of large archive files without buffering the entire file.
- Decompress and scan the entire archive.

Legacy scan mode:

- Used to disable stream-based scanning for troubleshooting purposes.
- Limited by the oversize and uncompressed-oversize limits:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit <profile>
        config <protocol>
            set oversize-limit <size>
            set uncompressed-oversize-limit <size>
        end
    next
end
```

TCP windows

Some file transfer applications can negotiate large TCP windows. For example, WinSCP can negotiate an initial TCP window size of about 2 GB.

The TCP window options can be used to prevent overly large initial TCP window sizes, helping avoid channel flow control issues. It allows stream-based scan's flow control to limit peers from sending data that exceeds a policy's configured oversize limit.

To configure TCP window size options:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit <string>
        config {ftp | ssh}
            set stream-based-uncompressed-limit <integer>
            set tcp-window-type {system | static | dynamic}
            set tcp-window-size <integer>
            set tcp-window-minimum <integer>
            set tcp-window-maximum <integer>
```

```
        end
    next
end
```

`{ftp | ssh}`	• `ftp`: Configure FTP protocol options. • `ssh`: Configure SFTP and SCP protocol options.
`stream-based-uncompressed-limit <integer>`	The maximum stream-based uncompressed data size that will be scanned, in MB (default = 0 (unlimited)). Stream-based uncompression used only under certain conditions.).
`tcp-window-type {system | static | dynamic}`	The TCP window type to use for this protocol. • `system`: Use the system default TCP window size for this protocol (default). • `static`: Manually specify the TCP window size. • `dynamic`: Vary the TCP window size based on available memory within the limits configured in `tcp-window-minimum` and `tcp-window-maximum`.
`tcp-window-size <integer>`	The TCP static window size (65536 - 33554432, default = 262144). This option is only available when `tcp-window-type` is `static`.
`tcp-window-minimum <integer>`	The minimum TCP dynamic window size (65536 - 1048576, default = 131072). This option is only available when `tcp-window-type` is `dynamic`.
`tcp-window-maximum <integer>`	The maximum TCP dynamic window size (1048576 - 33554432, default = 8388608). This option is only available when `tcp-window-type` is `dynamic`.

Databases

The antivirus scanning engine uses a virus signatures database to record the unique attributes of each infection. The antivirus scan searches for these signatures and when one is discovered, the FortiGate determines if the file is infected and takes action.

All FortiGates have the normal antivirus signature database. Some models have additional databases that you can use. The database you use depends on your network and security needs, and on your FortiGate model.

The extended virus definitions database is the default setting and provides comprehensive antivirus protection. Low-end FortiGate models cannot support the extreme database. The FortiGate 300D is the lowest model that supports the extreme database. All VMs support the extreme database. The `use-extreme-db` setting is only available on models that support the extreme database.

Extended	This is the default setting. This database includes currently spreading viruses, as determined by the FortiGuard Global Security Research Team, plus recent viruses that are no longer active. These viruses may have been spreading within the last year but have since nearly or completely disappeared.
Extreme	This includes the extended database, plus a large collection of zoo viruses. These are viruses that have not spread in a long time and are largely dormant. Some zoo viruses might rely on operating systems and hardware that are no longer widely used.

To change the antivirus database:

```
config antivirus settings
    set use-extreme-db {enable | disable}
end
```

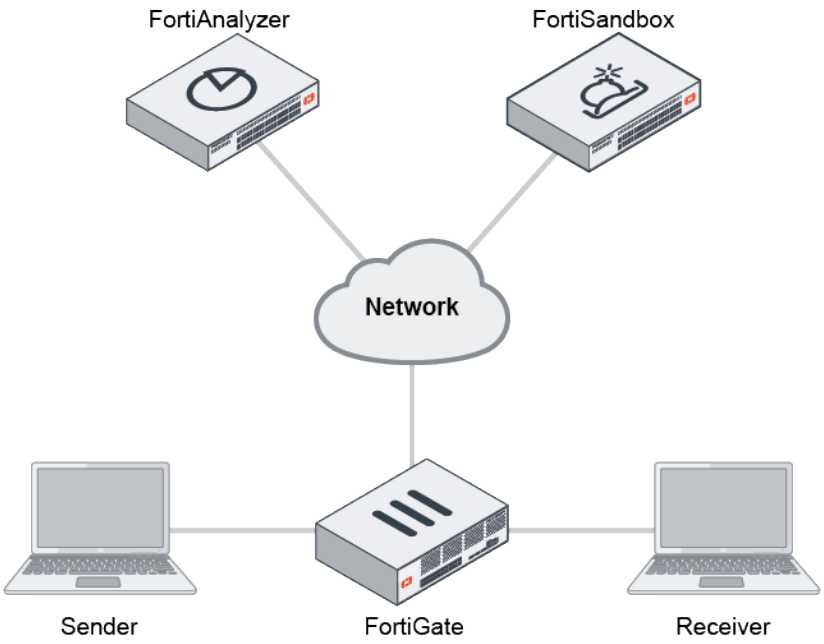
Content disarm and reconstruction

Content disarm and reconstruction (CDR) allows the FortiGate to sanitize Microsoft Office documents and PDF files (including those that are in ZIP archives) by removing active content, such as hyperlinks, embedded media, JavaScript, macros, and so on from the files (disarm) without affecting the integrity of its textual content (reconstruction). It allows network administrators to protect their users from malicious document files.

Files processed by CDR can be stored locally for quarantine on FortiAnalyzer, FortiSandbox, or FortiGate models with a hard disk. The original copies can also be obtained in the event of a false positive.

CDR is supported on HTTP, SMTP, POP3, and IMAP. Note that SMTP splice and client-comfort mode are not supported. CDR does not support flow-based inspection modes.

Sample topology

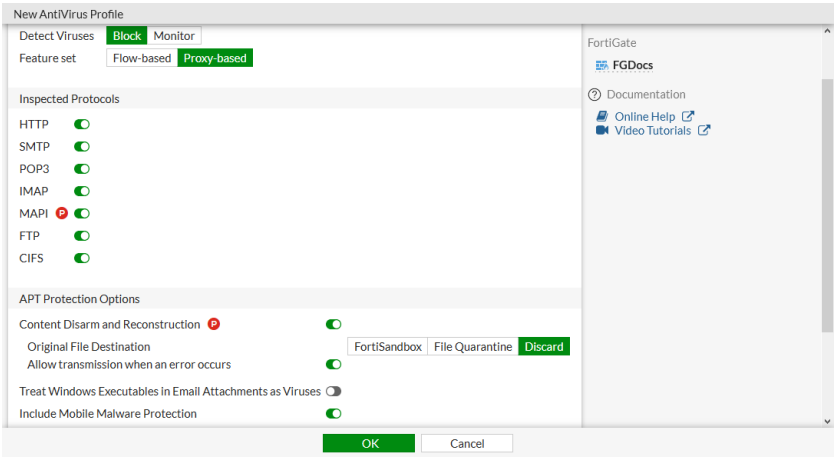


In this example, the a Microsoft Office document with an embedded hyperlink (that redirects to an external website) is sent to the receiver. When the user receives the file, the hyperlink in the document is deactivated.

To configure CDR:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.

3. Under *APT Protection Options*, enable *Content Disarm and Reconstruction*.



4. Select a quarantine location from the available options:

FortiSandbox	Saves the original document file to a connected FortiSandbox.
File Quarantine	Saves the original document file to disk (if possible) or a connected FortiAnalyzer based on the FortiGate log settings (`config log fortianalyzer setting`).
Discard	The default setting, which discards the original document file.

5. Click *OK*.

To edit the CDR detection parameters:

By default, stripping of all active Microsoft Office and PDF content types are enabled. In this example, stripping macros in Microsoft Office documents will be disabled.

```
config antivirus profile
    edit av
        config content-disarm
            set office-macro disable
            set detect-only {enable | disable}
            set cover-page {enable | disable}
        end
    next
end
```

Where:

detect-only	Only detect disarmable files, do not alter content. Disabled by default.
cover-page	Attach a cover page to the file's content when the file has been processed by CDR. Enabled by default.

FortiGuard outbreak prevention

FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Protection Service (VOS) allows the FortiGate antivirus database to be subsidized with third-party malware hash signatures curated by FortiGuard. The hash signatures are obtained from FortiGuard's Global

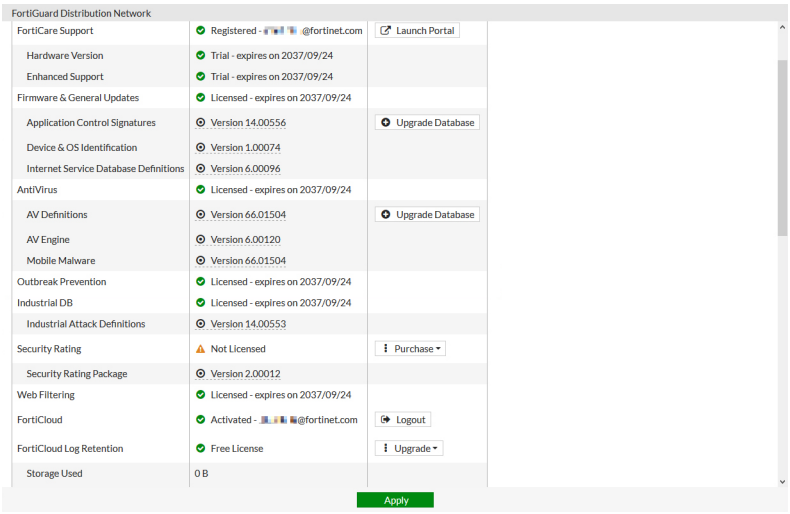
Threat Intelligence database. The antivirus database queries FortiGuard with the hash of a scanned file. If FortiGuard returns a match, the scanned file is deemed to be malicious.

FortiGuard VOS can be used in both proxy-based and flow-based policy inspections across all supported protocols.

The FortiGate must be registered with a valid FortiGuard outbreak prevention license.

To verify FortiGuard antivirus license information:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* and locate the *Outbreak Prevention* section in the table.



2. See the instructions in the video, How to Purchase or Renew FortiGuard Services, if required.

To enable FortiGuard outbreak prevention:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.
3. Under *Virus Outbreak Protection*, enable *Use FortiGuard Outbreak Prevention Database*.
4. Click *OK*.

To verify FortiGuard antivirus license information:

```
# diagnose debug rating
Locale       : english

Service      : Web-filter
Status       : Enable
License      : Contract

Service      : Antispam
Status       : Disable

Service      : Virus Outbreak Prevention
Status       : Enable
```

```
License      : Contract

-=- Server List (Tue Feb 19 16:36:15 2019) -=-

IP                    Weight    RTT Flags  TZ    Packets  Curr Lost Total Lost
   Updated Time
192.168.100.185          -218      2 DI     -8        113          0          0 Tue Feb
19 16:35:55 2019
```

To enable all scanunit debug categories:

```
# diagnose sys scanunit debug all
Set meta-category: all(0xffffffff)
Enabled categories(0xffffffff): daemon job quarantine analytics outbreak-prevention dlp
antispam file-filter
```

```
# diagnose debug enable
# su 4739 open
su 4739 req vfid 1 id 1 ep 0 new request, size 313, policy id 1, policy type 0
su 4739 req vfid 1 id 1 ep 0 received; ack 1, data type: 0
su 4739 job 1 request info:
su 4739 job 1   client 10.1.100.11:39412 server 172.16.200.44:80
su 4739 job 1   object_name 'zhvo_test.com'
su 4739 file-typing NOT WANTED options 0x0 file_filter no
su 4739 enable databases 0b (core mmdb extended)
su 4739 job 1 begin http scan
su 4739 scan file 'zhvo_test.com' bytes 68
su 4739 job 1 outbreak-prevention scan, level 0, filename 'zhvo_test.com'
su 4739 scan result 0
su 4739 job 1 end http scan
su 4739 job 1 inc pending tasks (1)
su 4739 not wanted for analytics: analytics submission is disabled (m 0 r 0)
su 4739 job 1 suspend
su 4739 outbreak-prevention recv error
su 4739 ftgd avquery id 0 status 1
su 4739 job 1 outbreak-prevention infected entryid=0
su 4739 report AVQUERY infection priority 1
su 4739 insert infection AVQUERY SUCCEEDED loc (nil) off 0 sz 0 at index 0 total infections
1 error 0
su 4739 job 1 dec pending tasks 0
su 4739 job 1 send result
su 4739 job 1 close
su 4739 outbreak-prevention recv error
```

External malware block list

The external malware block list allows users to add their own malware signatures in the form of MD5, SHA1, and SHA256 hashes. The FortiGate's antivirus database retrieves an external malware hash list from a remote server and polls the hash list every *n* minutes for updates.

The external malware block list can be used in both proxy-based and flow-based policy inspections, but it is not supported in AV quick scan mode.

Note that using different types of hashes simultaneously may slow down the performance of malware scanning. It is recommended to use one type of hash.

To configure antivirus to use an external block list:

1. Create the malware hash list.
   The malware hash list follows a strict format in order for its contents to be valid. Malware hash signature entries must be separated into each line. A valid signature needs to follow this format:

```
# MD5 Entry with hash description
aa67243f746e5d76f68ec809355ec234  md5_sample1

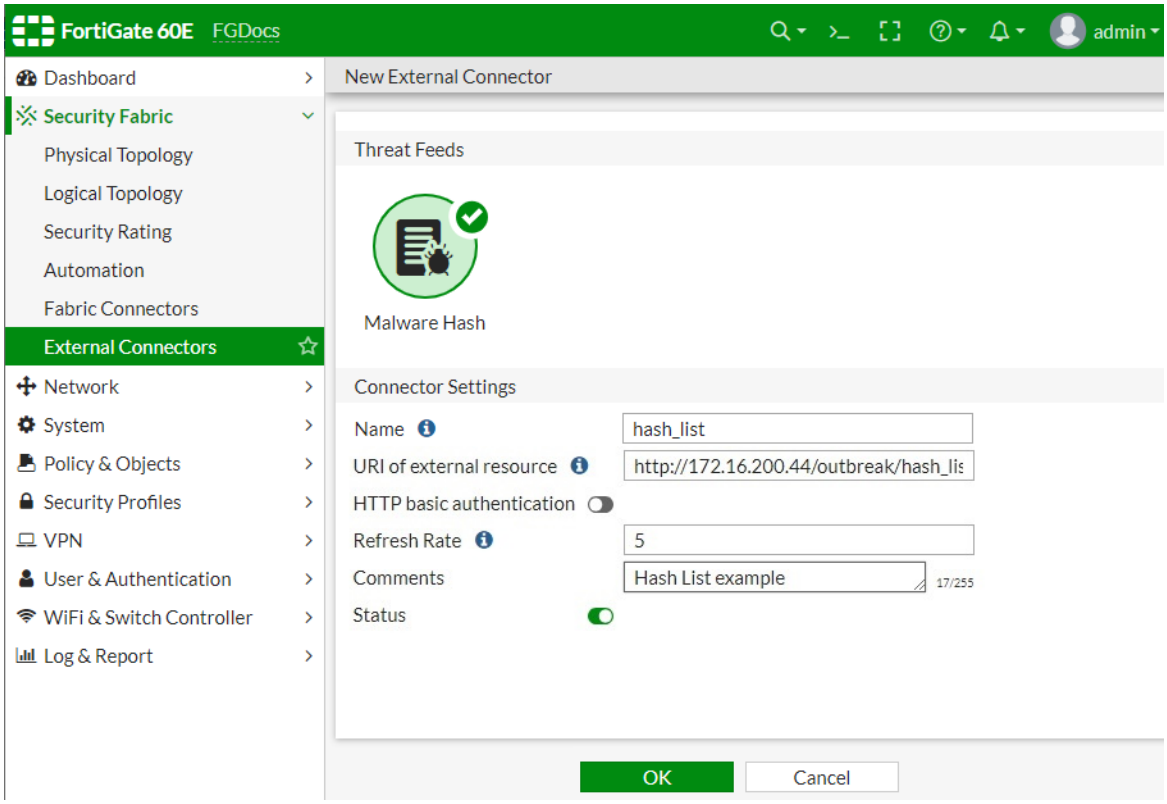
# SHA1 Entry with hash description
a57983cb39e25ab80d7d3dc05695dd0ee0e49766  sha1_sample2

# SHA256 Entry with hash description
ae9bc0b4c5639d977d720e4271da06b50f7c60d1e2070e9c75cc59ab30e49379  sha256_sample1

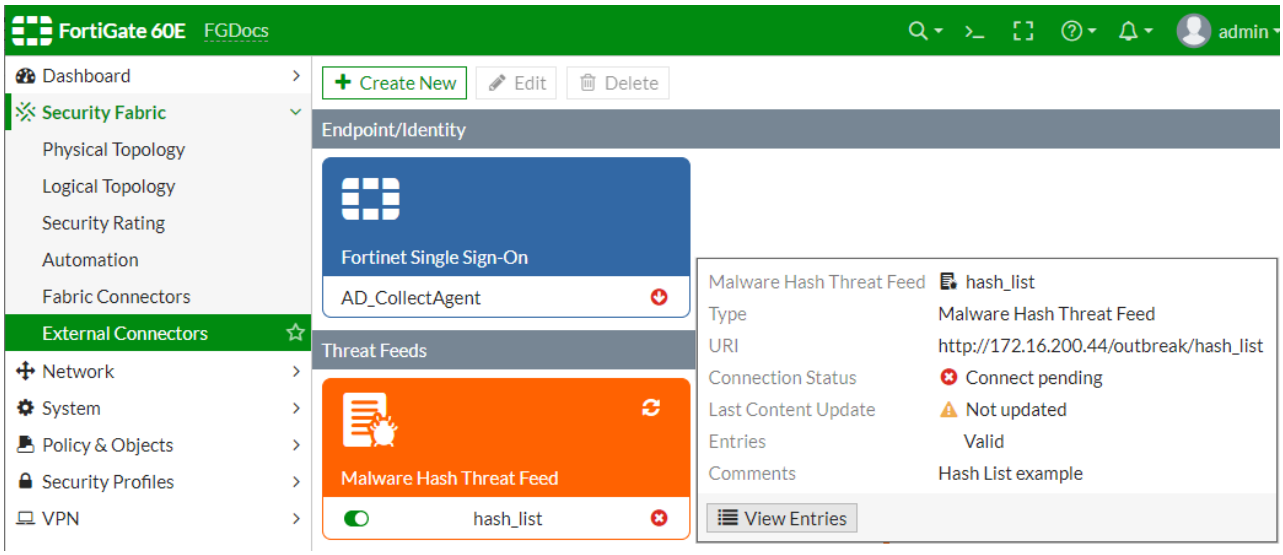
# Entry without hash description
0289b0d967cb7b1fb1451339c7b9818a621903090e0020366ab415c549212521

# Invalid entries
7688499dc71b932feb126347289c0b8a_md5_sample2
7614e98badca10b5e2d08f8664c519b7a906fbd5180ea5d04a82fce9796a4b87sha256_sample3
```

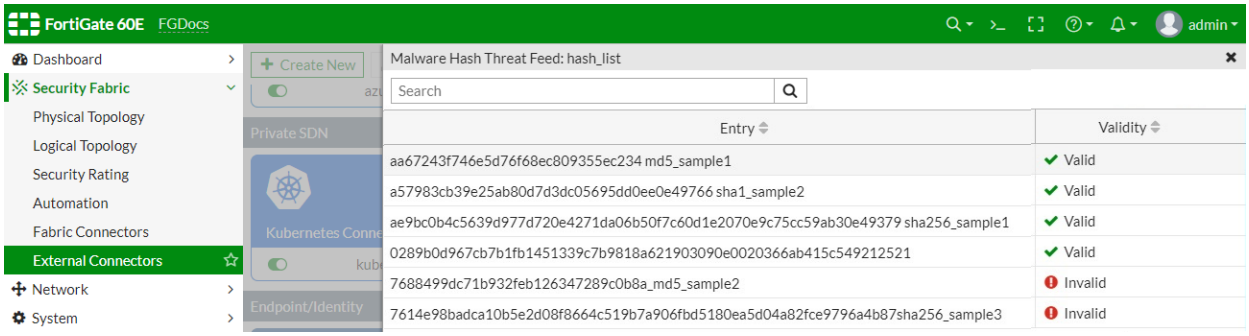
2. Configure the external malware block list source:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. Click *Malware Hash*.
   c. Configure the settings as needed. The URI must point to the malware hash list on the remote server.



   d. Click *OK*.
3. To view entries inside the malware block list on the *External Connectors* page, hover over the malware hash card and click *View Entries*.



The malware hash threat feed displays:



4. Enable the external malware block list in the antivirus profile:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus* and edit the antivirus profile.
   b. In the *Virus Outbreak Prevention* section, enable *Use External Malware Block List*.
   c. Click *OK*.

To verify the scanunit daemon updated itself with the external hashes:

```
# diagnose sys scanunit malware-list list
md5 'aa67243f746e5d76f68ec809355ec234' profile 'hash_list' description 'md5_sample1'
sha1 'a57983cb39e25ab80d7d3dc05695dd0ee0e49766' profile 'hash_list' description 'sha1_
sample2'
sha256 '0289b0d967cb7b1fb1451339c7b9818a621903090e0020366ab415c549212521' profile 'hash_
list' description ''
sha256 'ae9bc0b4c5639d977d720e4271da06b50f7c60d1e2070e9c75cc59ab30e49379' profile 'hash_
list' description 'sha256_sample1'
```

Checking flow antivirus statistics

Two CLI commands are used for the antivirus statistics:

- `diagnose ips av stats show`
- `diagnose ips av stats clear`

SNMP uses an API to get the antivirus statistics.

To check flow antivirus statistics:

1. Create an antivirus profile:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av-test"
        config http
            set options scan avmonitor
        end
        config ftp
            set options scan quarantine
        end
    next
end
```

2. Enable the profile in a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "policy1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
        set av-profile "av-test"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "custom-deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

3. On the client PC, download the EICAR Standard Anti-Virus Test File via HTTP.
4. Check the antivirus statistics on the FortiGate. Since the action is set to monitor for HTTP, `HTTP virus detected` increases by 1:

```
# diagnose ips av stats show
AV stats:
HTTP virus detected: 1
HTTP virus blocked: 0
SMTP virus detected: 0
SMTP virus blocked: 0
POP3 virus detected: 0
POP3 virus blocked: 0
IMAP virus detected: 0
IMAP virus blocked: 0
NNTP virus detected: 0
NNTP virus blocked: 0
FTP virus detected: 0
FTP virus blocked: 0
SMB virus detected: 0
SMB virus blocked: 0
```

5. On the client PC, download the EICAR file via FTP.
6. Check the antivirus statistics on the FortiGate. Since the action is set to quarantine for FTP, `FTP virus detected` and `FTP virus blocked` increase by 1:

```
# diagnose ips av stats show
AV stats:
HTTP virus detected: 1
HTTP virus blocked: 0
SMTP virus detected: 0
SMTP virus blocked: 0
POP3 virus detected: 0
POP3 virus blocked: 0
IMAP virus detected: 0
IMAP virus blocked: 0
NNTP virus detected: 0
NNTP virus blocked: 0
FTP virus detected: 1
FTP virus blocked: 1
SMB virus detected: 0
SMB virus blocked: 0
```

7. Check the antivirus statistics using an SNMP walk:

```
root:~# snmpwalk -c public -v 1 10.1.100.6 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.1.1 = Counter32: 2  (fgAvVirusDetected)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.2.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvVirusBlocked)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.3.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvHTTPVirusDetected)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.4.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.5.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.6.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.7.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.8.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.9.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.10.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.11.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvFTPVirusDetected)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.12.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvFTPVirusBlocked)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.13.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.14.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.15.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.16.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.17.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.18.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.19.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.20.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.21.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.22.1 = Counter32: 0
```

8. Optionally, reset the antivirus statistics to zero:

```
# diagnose ips av stats clear
```

CIFS support

Antivirus scanning on Common Internet File System (CIFS) traffic is supported in flow-based and proxy-based inspection. The file filter profile handles the configuration of file filtering on CIFS. The antivirus profile handles the antivirus configuration for CIFS scanning.

File filtering for CIFS is performed by inspecting the first 4 KB of the file to identify the file's magic number. If a match occurs, CIFS file filtering prevents the CIFS command that contains that file from running. The file filter functions differently for un-encrypted and encrypted CIFS traffic:

- For un-encrypted CIFS traffic, the standalone file filter works in flow and proxy mode.
- For encrypted CIFS traffic, the CIFS profile must be enabled in the firewall policy because the SMB server's credential settings are still be configured in CIFS profile. Using the standalone file filter only works in proxy mode.

For a CIFS profile to be available for assignment in a policy, the policy must use proxy inspection mode. See Proxy mode inspection on page 1278 for details. Note that in proxy inspection mode, special condition archive files (encrypted, corrupted, mailbomb, and so on) marked by the antivirus engine are blocked automatically.

Messages that are compressed with LZNT1, LZ77, and LZ77+Huffman algorithms can be scanned in proxy mode.

Configure file-type filtering and antivirus scanning on CIFS traffic

To configure file-type filtering and antivirus scanning on CIFS traffic:

1. Configure a CIFS domain controller on page 1300
2. Configure a CIFS profile on page 1300
3. Configure an antivirus profile on page 1302

Configure a CIFS domain controller

The domain controller must be configured when CIFS traffic is encrypted. The configuration tells the FortiGate the network location of the domain controller and the superuser credentials.

To configure the CIFS domain controller:

```
config credential-store domain-controller
    edit "SERVER_NAME"
        set hostname "host"
        set domain-name "EXAMPLE.COM"
        set username "admin-super"
        set password *********
        set ip 172.16.201.40
    next
end
```

Configure a CIFS profile

To create a CIFS profile, configure the server credential type and create a file filter profile.

Set the CIFS server credential type

The CIFS server credential type can be `none`, `credential-replication`, or `credential-keytab`.

none

The CIFS profile assumes the CIFS traffic is unencrypted. This is the default value.

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "cifs"
```

```
        config cifs
            set server-credential-type none
        end
    next
end
```

credential-replication

To decrypt CIFS traffic, FortiOS obtains the session key from the domain controller by logging in to the superuser account. The domain controller must be configured.

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "cifs"
        config cifs
            set server-credential-type credential-replication
            set domain-controller "SERVER_NAME"
        end
    next
end
```

Variable	Description
domain-controller <string>	The previously configured domain to decrypt CIFS traffic for.

credential-keytab

To decrypt CIFS traffic, FortiOS uses a series of keytab values. This method is used when the SMB connection is authenticated by Kerberos. Keytab entries must be configured, and are stored in FortiOS in plaintext.

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "cifs"
        config cifs
            set server-credential-type credential-keytab
            config server-keytab
                edit "keytab1"
                    set keytab
"BQIAAABFAAEAC0VYQU1QTEUuQ09NAAdleGFtcGxlAAAAAVUmAlwBABIAILdV5P6NXT8RrTvapcMJQxDYCjRQiD0Bzxh
wS9h0VgyM"
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

Variable	Description
keytab <keytab>	Base64 encoded keytab file containing the credentials of the server.

Configure CIFS file filtering

Multiple rules can be added to a file filter profile. See File filter on page 1405.

To configure a file filter for CIFS traffic:

```
config file-filter profile
    edit "cifs"
        set comment "block zip files on unencrypted cifs traffic"
        set feature-set flow
        set replacemsg-group ''
        set log enable
        config rules
            edit "rule1"
                set protocol cifs
                set action block
                set direction any
                set password-protected any
                set file-type zip
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Variable	Description
comment <string>	A brief comment describing the entry.
feature-set {flow | proxy}	Flow or proxy mode feature set (default = `flow`).
replacemsg-group <string>	Replacement message group.
log {enable | disable}	Enable/disable file filter logging (default = `enable`).
scan-archive-contents [enable | disable]	Enable/disable scanning of archive contents (default = `enable`).
protocol {http ftp smtp imap pop3 mapi cifs ssh}	Filter based on the specified protocol(s).
action {log-only | block}	The action to take for matched files: • `log-only`: Allow the content and write a log message (default). • `block`: Block the content and write a log message.
direction {incoming | outgoing | any}	Match files transmitted in the session's originating (`incoming`) and/or reply (`outgoing`) direction (default = `any`).
password-protected [yes | any]	Match only password-protected files (`yes`) or any file (default = `any`).
file-type <file_type>	The file types to be matched. See Supported file types on page 1409 for details.

Configure an antivirus profile

The antivirus profile handles the antivirus configuration for CIFS scanning.

To configure an antivirus profile:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av"
        ...
        config cifs
```

```
            set options {scan avmonitor quarantine}
            set archive-block {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested
mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled}
            set archive-log {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested
mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled}
            set emulator {enable | disable}
            set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}
        end
    next
end
```

Variable	Description
options {scan avmonitor quarantine}	Enable/disable CIFS antivirus scanning, monitoring, and quarantine.
archive-block {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled}	Select the archive types to block: • `encrypted`: Block encrypted archives. • `corrupted`: Block corrupted archives. • `partiallycorrupted`: Block partially corrupted archives. • `multipart`: Block multipart archives. • `nested`: Block nested archives. • `mailbomb`: Block mail bomb archives. • `fileslimit`: Block exceeded archive files limit. • `timeout`: Block scan timeout. • `unhandled`: Block archives that FortiOS cannot open.
archive-log {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled}	Select the archive types to log: • `encrypted`: Log encrypted archives. • `corrupted`: Log corrupted archives. • `partiallycorrupted`: Log partially corrupted archives. • `multipart`: Log multipart archives. • `nested`: Log nested archives. • `mailbomb`: Log mail bomb archives. • `fileslimit`: Log exceeded archive files limit. • `timeout`: Log scan timeout. • `unhandled`: Log archives that FortiOS cannot open.
emulator {enable | disable}	Enable/disable the virus emulator (default = `enable`).
outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}	Enable the virus outbreak prevention service: • `disabled`: Disabled (default). • `files`: Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives. • `full-archive`: Analyze files, including the content of archives.

Log samples

File-type detection events generated by CIFS profiles are logged in the `utm-cifs` log category. Antivirus detection over the CIFS protocol generates logs in the `utm-virus` category. See the FortiOS Log Message Reference for more information.

Logs generated by CIFS profile file filter:

```
date=2019-03-28 time=10:39:19 logid="1800063001" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794757 msg="File was detected by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="passthrough" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33372 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="1154"
filename="virus\\test.png" filtername="2" filetype="png"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:39:12 logid="1800063001" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794751 msg="File was detected by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="passthrough" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33370 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="81975"
filename="virus\\screen.png" filtername="2" filetype="png"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:33:55 logid="1800063000" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794434 msg="File was blocked by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="blocked" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33352 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="28432"
filename="filetypes\\mpnotify.exe" filtername="3" filetype="exe"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:33:45 logid="1800063000" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794424 msg="File was blocked by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="blocked" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33348 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="96528"
filename="filetypes\\winmine.exe" filtername="3" filetype="exe"
```

Logs generated by AV profile for infections detected over CIFS:

```
date=2019-04-09 time=15:19:02 logid="0204008202" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="outbreak-prevention" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554848342519005401
msg="Blocked by Virus Outbreak Prevention service." action="blocked" service="SMB"
sessionid=177 srcip=10.1.100.11 dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=37444 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2"
srcintfrole="wan" dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="outbreak\\zhvo_test.com" quarskip="File-was-not-quarantined."
virus="503e99fe40ee120c45bc9a30835e7256fff3e46a" dtype="File Hash"
filehash="503e99fe40ee120c45bc9a30835e7256fff3e46a" filehashsrc="fortiguard" profile="av"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=50 craction=2 crlevel="critical"

date=2019-04-09 time=15:18:59 logid="0211008192" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="infected" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554848339909808987 msg="File is
infected." action="blocked" service="SMB" sessionid=174 srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=37442 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="sample\\eicar.com" quarskip="File-was-not-quarantined." virus="EICAR_TEST_FILE"
dtype="Virus" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ve?vn=EICAR_TEST_FILE" virusid=2172 profile="av"
analyticscksum="275a021bbfb6489e54d471899f7db9d1663fc695ec2fe2a2c4538aabf651fd0f"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=50 craction=2 crlevel="critical"
```

Using FortiSandbox with antivirus

Antivirus profiles can submit potential zero-day viruses to FortiSandbox for inspection. Based on FortiSandbox's analysis, the FortiGate can supplement its own antivirus database with FortiSandbox's database to detect files

determined as malicious or risky by FortiSandbox. This helps the FortiGate antivirus detect zero-day viruses and malware whose signatures are not found in the antivirus database.

FortiSandbox can be used with antivirus in both proxy-based and flow-based inspection modes. When FortiSandbox is enabled, full scan mode antivirus can submit the following for inspection: only suspicious files, all supported file, or no files. Quick scan mode antivirus cannot submit suspicious files to FortiSandbox, so either all files or no files are submitted for inspection.

For more information, see Configuring FortiSandbox on page 159.

Configuring FortiSandbox

There are three steps to configure FortiSandbox inspection in an antivirus profile:

1. Enable FortiSandbox on the FortiGate.
2. Authorize the FortiGate in FortiSandbox.
3. Enable FortiSandbox inspection options in the antivirus profile.

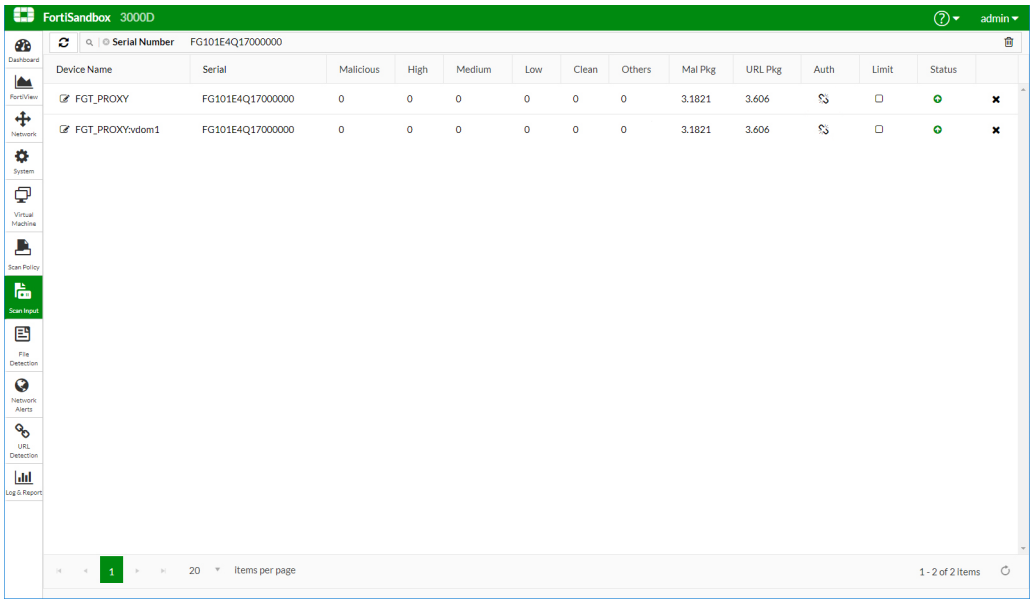
To enable FortiSandbox on the FortiGate:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. For status, click *Enable*.
3. For *Type*, click *On-Premise*.
4. Enter the IP address of the FortiSandbox, and enter an optional *Notifier email*.
   At this point, clicking *Test connectivity* returns an unreachable status. This is expected, because the FortiGate is not yet authorized by FortiSandbox.
5. Click *OK*.

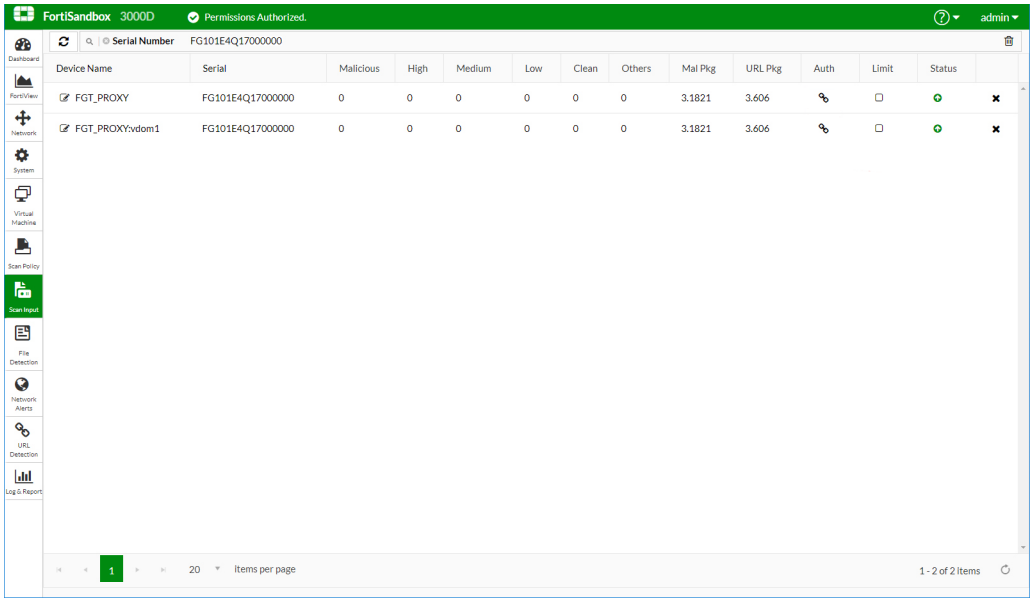
To authorize the FortiGate in FortiSandbox:

1. In the FortiSandbox GUI, go to *Scan Input* > *Device*.
2. Search using the FortiGate serial number to locate the FortiGate. In the *Auth* column, click the link icon to authorize the FortiGate.

3. Repeat this step to authorize the VDOMs if required.



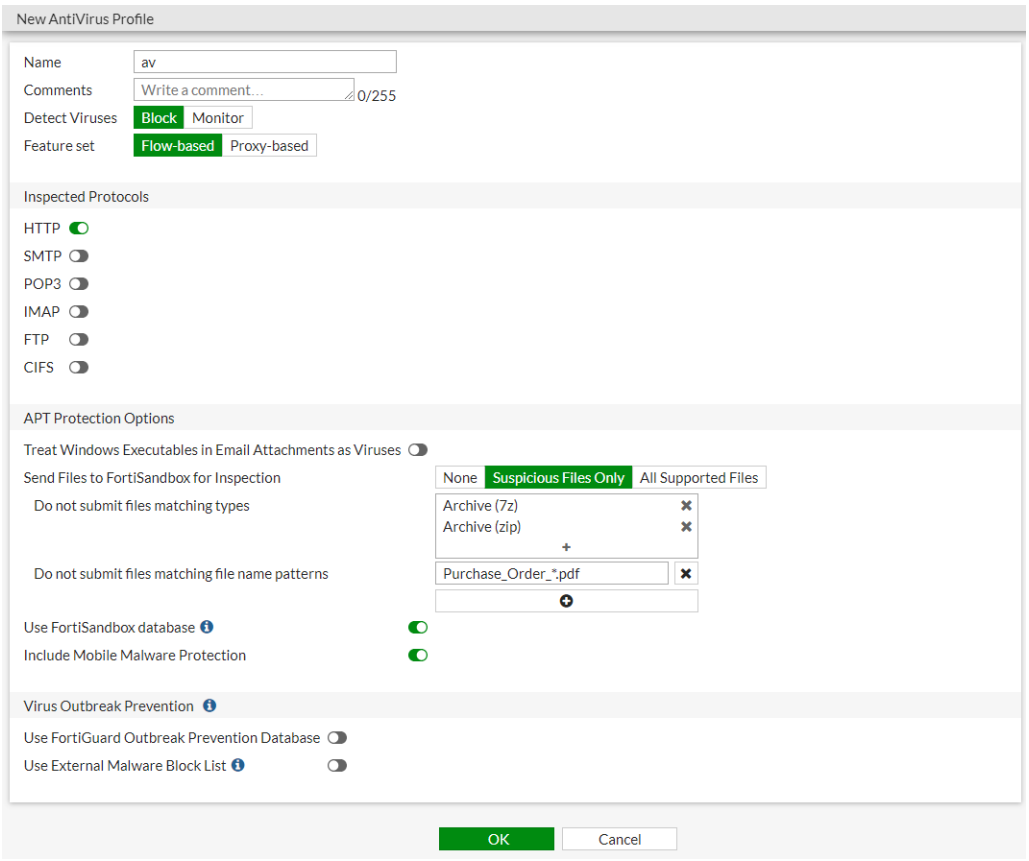
The link icon changes from an open to a closed link, which indicates that the FortiGate is authorized.



4. In the FortiGate GUI, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
5. Click *Test connectivity*. The FortiGate is now authorized and the status displays as *Connected*.

To enable FortiSandbox inspection options in the antivirus profile:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.
3. Under *APT Protection Options*, select either *Suspicious Files Only* or *All Supported Files*.
4. For *Do not submit files matching types*, click the + to exclude certain file types from being sent to FortiSandbox.
5. For *Do not submit files matching file name patterns*, click the + to enter a wildcard pattern to exclude files from being sent to FortiSandbox.



6. Enable *Use FortiSandbox Database*.
7. Click *OK*.

FortiGate diagnostics

To run the quarantine daemon:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose debug application quarantined -1
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose debug enable

quar_req_fsa_file()-890: fsa ext list new_version (1547781904)
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb5, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb5-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root ca
Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
```

```
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=337, type=4) for vdom-vdom1, len=99, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=99
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=337, type=4) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb2, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb2, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb3 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=338, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=338, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb3, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb3, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb5 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=340, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=340, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb5, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb5, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb2) received a packet: len=69, type=1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[337] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb2).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 337 deleted
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb4 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=339, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=339, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb4, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb4, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=336, type=4) for vdom-root, len=98, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=98
...
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
```

```
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb1, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb1-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root ca
Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=2, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=2, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb1, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb1, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb1) received a packet: len=767, type=1
quar_store_analytics_report()-590: Analytics-report return
file=/tmp/fsb/83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18.json.gz, buf_
sz=735
quar_store_analytics_report()-597: The request
'83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18' score is 1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[2] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb1).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 2 deleted
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_stop_connection()-1006: close connection to server(fortisandbox-fsb1)
[193] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[805] ssl_free: Done
[185] __ssl_cert_ctx_free: Done
[815] ssl_ctx_free: Done
[796] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
```

To run the FortiSandbox diagnostics:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application quarantined 1
Total remote&local devices: 8, any task full? 0
System have disk, vdom is enabled, mgmt=1, ha=2
xfer-fas is enabled: ips-archive dlp-archive, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=0.0.0.0/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=0, hmac_alg=0
    License=0, content_archive=0, arch_pause=0.

global-fas is disabled.
forticloud-fsb is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb1 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb2 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
```

```
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb3 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb4 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb5 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb6 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
global-faz is disabled.
global-faz2 is disabled.
global-faz3 is disabled.
```

To run the FortiSandbox analysis statistics:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application quarantined 7
Total: 0

Statistics:
        vfid: 0, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 3, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 4, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
```

FortiSandbox diagnostics

To run the OFTP debug:

```
# diagnose-debug device FG101E4Q17000000

[2019/01/31 00:48:21] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17000000), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 suspicious stats START_TIME: 1548290749
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 suspicious stats END_TIME: 1548895549
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 opd_data_len=37 clean=2 detected=2 risk_low=0 risk_
med=0 risk_high=0 sus_limit=0
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 ENTERING->HANDLE_SEND_FILE.
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 ENTERING->HANDLE_SEND_FILE.
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->FGT->VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->FGT->VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->IMG_VERSION: 6.2.0.0818
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->IMG_VERSION: 6.2.0.0818
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] INCOMING->FGT: FG101E4Q17000000, VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] INCOMING->FGT: FG101E4Q17000000, VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->TYPE: 0
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->TYPE: 1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->VERSION: 3 . 1795
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->VERSION: 3 . 595
```

```
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 VDOM: root
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 ENTERING->HANDLE_SEND_FILE.
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 suspicious stats START_TIME: 1548290749
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->FGT->VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 suspicious stats END_TIME: 1548895549
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->IMG_VERSION: 6.2.0.0818
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] INCOMING->FGT: FG101E4Q17000000, VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 INCOMING->TYPE: 4
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17000000 opd_data_len=37 clean=0 detected=0 risk_low=0 risk_
med=0 risk_high=0 sus_limit=0
[2019/01/31 00:48:22] FG101E4Q17000000 RETRIEVE->PKG: TYPE: av, ENTRY_VERSION: 1795,
PACKAGE_PATH: /Storage/malpkg/pkg/avsig/avsigrel_1795.pkg
[2019/01/31 00:48:22] FG101E4Q17000000 RETRIEVE->PKG: TYPE: url, ENTRY_VERSION: 595,
PACKAGE_PATH: /Storage/malpkg/pkg/url/urlrel_595.pkg.gz
[2019/01/31 00:48:29] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17000000), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:48:32] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17000000), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:48:59] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17000000), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:49:03] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17000000), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
```

Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus

FortiSandbox Cloud allows users to take advantage of FortiSandbox features without having to purchase, operate, and maintain a physical appliance. It works the same way as the physical FortiSandbox appliance.

FortiSandbox Cloud allows you to control the region where your traffic is sent to for analysis. This allows you to meet your country's compliance needs regarding data storage locations.

FortiSandbox can be used with antivirus in both proxy-based and flow-based inspection modes. When FortiSandbox is enabled, full scan mode antivirus can submit the following for inspection: only suspicious files, all supported file, or no files. Quick scan mode antivirus cannot submit suspicious files to FortiSandbox, so either all files or no files are submitted for inspection.

In FortiOS 6.2 and later, users do not require a FortiGate Cloud account to use FortiSandbox Cloud. Without a valid FortiGuard antivirus (AVDB) license, FortiGate devices are limited to 100 FortiGate Cloud submissions per day. Unlimited FortiGate Cloud submissions are allowed if the FortiGate has a valid AVDB license; however, there is a per-minute submission rate is based on the FortiGate model.

For more information, see Configuring FortiSandbox on page 159.

Configuring FortiSandbox Cloud

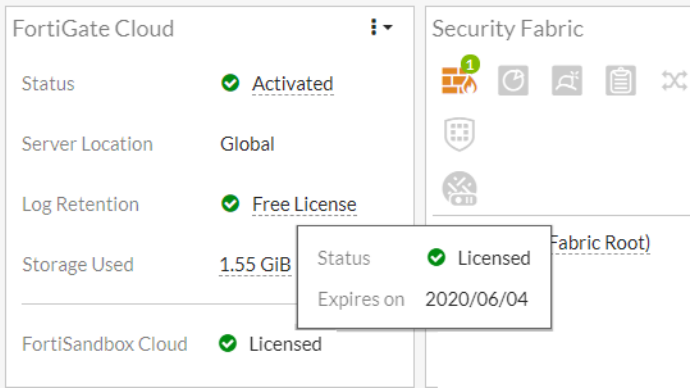
There are three steps to configure FortiSandbox Cloud inspection in an antivirus profile:

1. Through FortiCare, register the FortiGate device and purchase a FortiGuard antivirus license.
2. Enable FortiSandbox Cloud on the FortiGate.
3. Enable FortiSandbox inspection options in the antivirus profile.

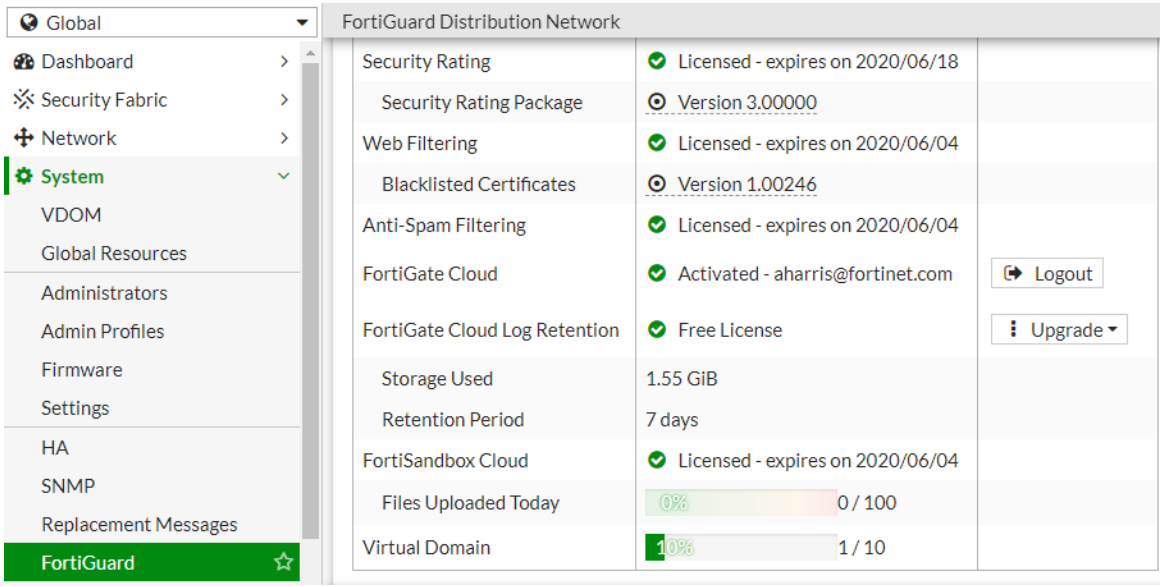
To obtain or renew a FortiGuard antivirus license:

1. See the How to Purchase or Renew FortiGuard Services video for FortiGuard antivirus license purchase instructions.

2. Once a FortiGuard license is purchased and activated, users are provided with a paid FortiSandbox Cloud license.
   a. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status* to view the FortiSandbox Cloud license indicator.



   b. Alternatively, go to *System* > *FortiGuard* to view the FortiSandbox Cloud license indicator.



To enable FortiSandbox Cloud on the FortiGate:

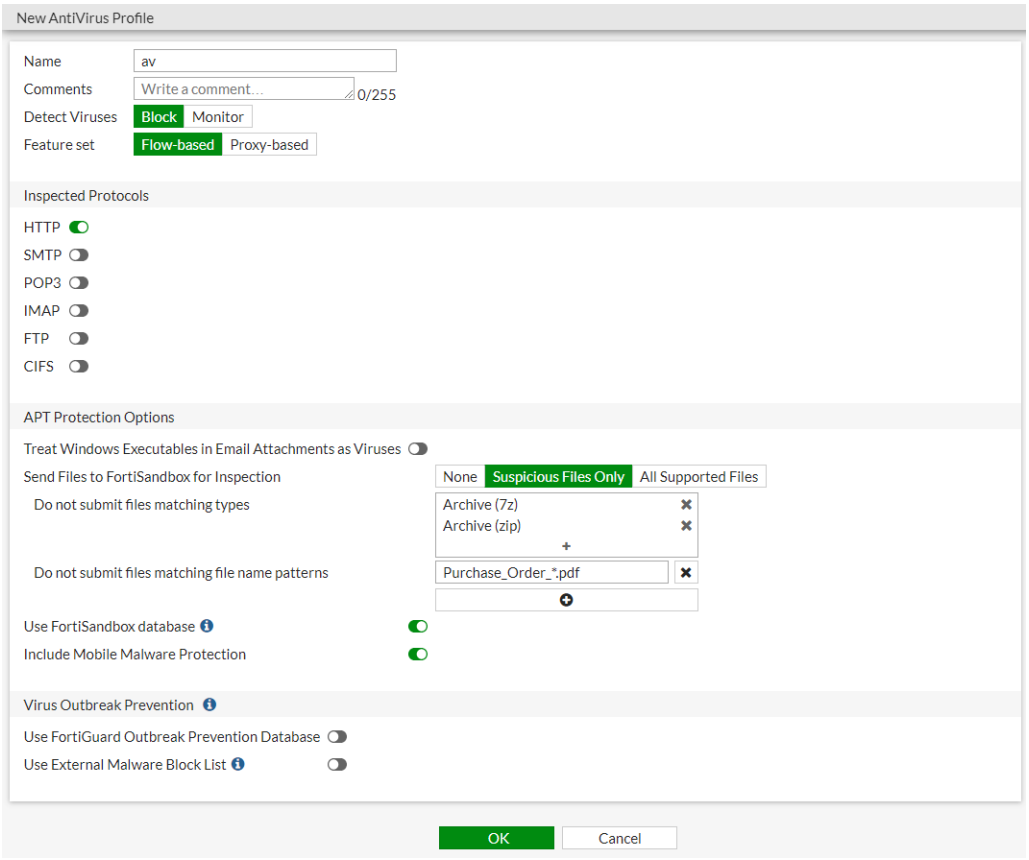
1. Make the FortiSandbox Cloud feature visible:

```
config system global
    set gui-fortisandbox-cloud enable
end
```

2. Log out of FortiOS and log in again.
3. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
4. For status, click *Enable*.
5. For *Type*, click *FortiSandbox Cloud* and choose a region from the dropdown list.
6. Click *OK*.
   When the FortiGate is connected to the FortiSandbox Cloud, the current FortiSandbox database version is displayed.

To enable FortiSandbox inspection options in the antivirus profile:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.
3. Under *APT Protection Options*, select either *Suspicious Files Only* or *All Supported Files*.
4. For *Do not submit files matching types*, click the + to exclude certain file types from being sent to FortiSandbox.
5. For *Do not submit files matching file name patterns*, click the + to enter a wildcard pattern to exclude files from being sent to FortiSandbox.



6. Enable *Use FortiSandbox Database*.
7. Click *OK*.

FortiGate diagnostics

To check the FortiGate Cloud controller status:

```
# diagnose test application forticldd 2
Server: log-controller, task=0/10, watchdog is off
Domain name: logctrl1.fortinet.com
Address of log-controller: 1
        172.16.95.168:443
        Statistics: total=3, discarded=1, sent=2, last_updated=12163 secs ago
http connection: is not in progress
        Current address: 172.16.95.168:443
        Calls: connect=9, rxtx=12
Current tasks number: 0
```

```
Account: name=empty, status=0, type=basic
Current volume: 0B
Current tasks number: 0
Update timer fires in 74240 secs
```

To check the Cloud APT server status:

```
# diagnose test application forticldd 3
Debug zone info:
    Domain:
    Home log server: 0.0.0.0:0
    Alt log server: 0.0.0.0:0
    Active Server IP:      0.0.0.0
    Active Server status:  down
    Log quota:      0MB
    Log used:       0MB
    Daily volume:   0MB
    fams archive pause: 0
    APTContract : 1                          <====
    APT server: 172.16.102.51:514            <====
    APT Altserver: 172.16.102.52:514         <====
    Active APTServer IP:      172.16.102.51  <====
    Active APTServer status:  up             <====
```

To view FortiSandbox Cloud diagnostics:

```
# diagnose test application quarantined 1
Total remote&local devices: 4, any task full? 0
System have disk, vdom is enabled, mgmt=3, ha=1
xfer-fas is enabled: ips-archive dlp-archive, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=0.0.0.0/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=1, hmac_alg=0
    License=0, content_archive=0, arch_pause=0.

global-fas is disabled.
forticloud-fsb is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.16.102.51/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=1, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb1 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb2 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb3 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb4 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb5 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb6 is disabled.
global-faz is disabled.
global-faz2 is disabled.
global-faz3 is disabled.
```

To view FortiSandbox Cloud submission statistics:

```
# diagnose test application quarantined 2
Quarantine daemon state:
QUAR mem: mem_used=0, mem_limit=97269, threshold=72951
dropped(0 by quard, 0 by callers)
pending-jobs=0, tot-mem=0, last_ipc_run=12353, check_new_req=1
alloc_job_failed=0, job_wrong_type=0, job_wrong_req_len=0, job_invalid_qfd=0
```

```
tgz_create_failed=0, tgz_attach_failed=0, qfd_mmap_failed=0, buf_attached=0
xfer-fas:
    ips: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    quar: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    archive: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    analytics: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0, local_dups=0
    analytics stats: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    last_rx=0, last_tx=0, error_rx=0, error_tx=0
    max_num_tasks=10000, num_tasks=0, mem_used=0, ttl_drops=0, xfer_status=0
forticloud-fsb:
    ips: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    quar: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    archive: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    analytics: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0, local_dups=0
num_buffer=0(per-minute:10) last_min_count=0 last_vol_count=0 next_vol_reset_tm='Sun Feb 17
00:00:00 2019
'
    analytics stats: total=24, handled=24, accepted=24
    last_rx=1224329, last_tx=1224329, error_rx=2, error_tx=0
    max_num_tasks=200, num_tasks=0, mem_used=0, ttl_drops=0, xfer_status=0
```

To view FortiSandbox analysis statistics:

```
# diagnose test application quarantined 7
Total: 0

Statistics:
        vfid: 0, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 3, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 4, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0

FGT_FL_FULL (global) #
```

To run the quarantine daemon:

```
# diagnose debug application quarantined -1
# diagnose debug enable

quar_req_fsa_file()-890: fsa ext list new_version (1547781904)
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb5, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb5-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root ca
Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
```

```
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=337, type=4) for vdom-vdom1, len=99, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=99
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=337, type=4) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb2, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb2, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb3 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=338, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=338, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb3, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb3, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb5 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=340, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=340, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb5, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb5, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb2) received a packet: len=69, type=1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[337] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb2).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 337 deleted
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb4 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=339, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=339, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb4, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb4, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=336, type=4) for vdom-root, len=98, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=98
...
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
```

```
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb1, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb1-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root ca
Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=2, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=2, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb1, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb1, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb1) received a packet: len=767, type=1
quar_store_analytics_report()-590: Analytics-report return
file=/tmp/fsb/83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18.json.gz, buf_
sz=735
quar_store_analytics_report()-597: The request
'83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18' score is 1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[2] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb1).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 2 deleted
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_stop_connection()-1006: close connection to server(fortisandbox-fsb1)
[193] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[805] ssl_free: Done
[185] __ssl_cert_ctx_free: Done
[815] ssl_ctx_free: Done
[796] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
```

Web filter

Web filtering restricts or controls user access to web resources and can be applied to firewall policies using either policy-based or profile-based NGFW mode.

In FortiOS, there are three main components of web filtering:

- Web content filter: blocks web pages containing words or patterns that you specify.
- URL filter: uses URLs and URL patterns to block or exempt web pages from specific sources, or block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox.
- FortiGuard Web Filtering service: provides many additional categories you can use to filter web traffic.

These components interact with each other to provide maximum control over what users on your network can view and protect your network from many internet content threats.

Web filters are applied in the following order:

1. URL filter
2. FortiGuard Web Filtering
3. Web content filter
4. Web script filter
5. Antivirus scanning

FortiOS includes three preloaded web filter profiles:

- *default*
- *monitor-all* (monitors and logs all URLs visited, flow-based)
- *wifi-default* (default configuration for offloading WiFi traffic)

You can customize these profiles, or you can create your own to manage network user access.



Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Web Filtering.

The following topics provide information about web filters:

- URL filter on page 1318
- FortiGuard filter on page 1324
- Credential phishing prevention on page 1330
- Usage quota on page 1333
- Web content filter on page 1335
- Advanced filters 1 on page 1338
- Advanced filters 2 on page 1341
- Web filter statistics on page 1346
- URL certificate blocklist on page 1347

URL filter

The URL filter uses specific URLs with patterns containing text and regular expressions so the FortiGate can process the traffic based on the filter action (exempt, block, allow, monitor) and web pages that match the criteria. Once a URL filter is configured, it can be applied to a firewall policy.

The following filter types are available:

URL filter type	Description
Simple	The FortiGate tries to strictly match the full context. For example, if you enter *www.facebook.com* in the *URL* field, it only matches traffic with *www.facebook.com*. It won't match *facebook.com* or *message.facebook.com*. When the FortiGate finds a match, it performs the selected URL action.

URL filter type	Description
Regular expression/ wildcard	The FortiGate tries to match the pattern based on the rules of regular expressions or wildcards. For example, if you enter **fa** in the *URL* field, it matches all the content that has *fa* such as *www.facebook.com*, *message.facebook.com*, *fast.com*, and so on. When the FortiGate finds a match, it performs the selected URL action.

For more information, see the URL Filter expressions technical tip in the Knowledge Base.

The following actions are available:

URL filter action	Description
Exempt	The traffic is allowed to bypass the remaining FortiGuard web filters, web content filters, web script filters, antivirus scanning, and DLP proxy operations.
Block	The FortiGate denies or blocks attempts to access any URL that matches the URL pattern. A replacement message is displayed.
Allow	The traffic is passed to the remaining FortiGuard web filters, web content filters, web script filters, antivirus proxy operations, and DLP proxy operations. If the URL does not appear in the URL list, the traffic is permitted.
Monitor	The traffic is processed the same way as the *Allow* action. For the *Monitor* action, a log message is generated each time a matching traffic pattern is established.

The exempt URL filter action can be configured to bypass all or certain security profile operations. This setting can only be configured in the CLI.

If the `action` is set to `exempt`, use `set exempt` to select the security profile operations that exempt URLs skip.

```
config webfilter urlfilter
    edit <id>
        config entries
            edit <id>
                set action exempt
                set exempt {av web-content activex-java-cookie dlp fortiguard range-block
pass antiphish all}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Option	Description
`av`	Antivirus scanning
`web-content`	Web filter content matching
`activex-java-cookie`	ActiveX, Java, and cookie filtering
`dlp`	DLP scanning
`fortiguard`	FortiGuard web filtering
`range-block`	Range block feature

Option	Description
pass	Pass single connection from all
antiphish	Antiphish credential checking
all	Exempt from all security profiles

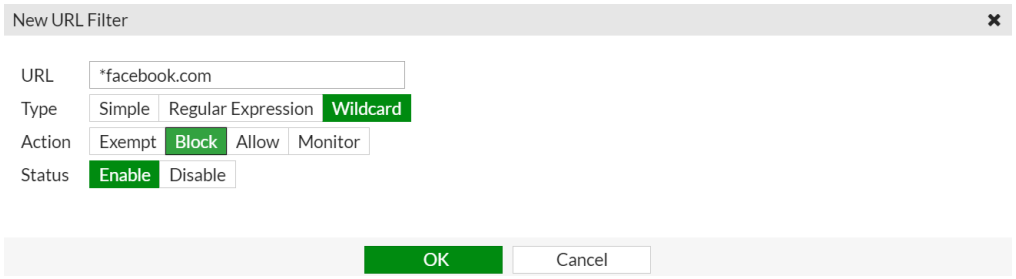
These exempt options are not visible in the GUI. Setting the URL filter *Action* to *Exempt* will exempt URLs from all security profiles.

In the following example, a URL filter will be created to block the facebook.com URL using a wildcard.

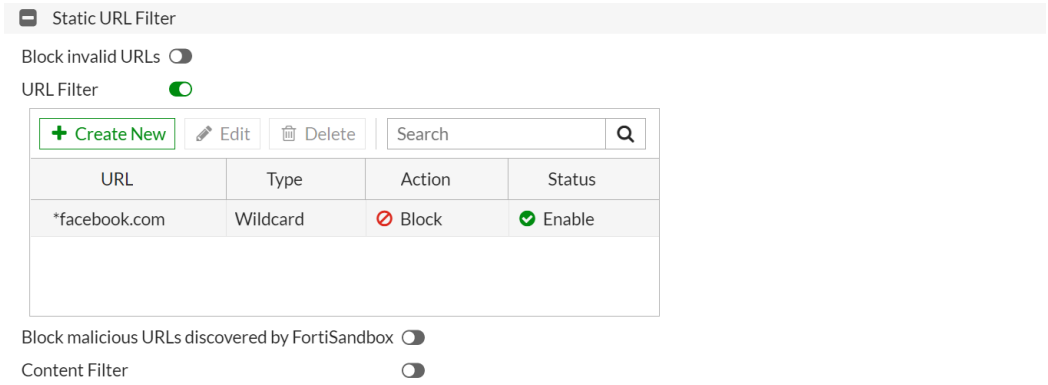
Configuring a URL filter in the GUI

To create a URL filter for Facebook:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Static URL Filter* section, enable *URL Filter*.
3. Click *Create New*. The *New URL Filter* pane opens.
4. For URL, enter **facebook.com*, for *Type*, select *Wildcard*, and for *Action*, select *Block*.



5. Click *OK*. The entry appears in the table.

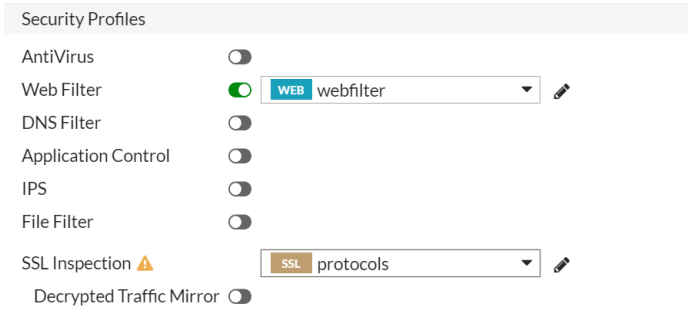


6. Configure the other settings as needed.
7. Click *OK*.

To apply the web filter profile to a firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Edit a policy, or create a new one.

3. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *Web Filter* and select the profile you created.



4. Configure the other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

Configuring a URL filter in the CLI

To create a URL filter for Facebook:

```
config webfilter urlfilter
    edit 1
        set name "webfilter"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set url "*facebook.com"
                set type wildcard
                set action block
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To apply the URL filter to a web filter profile:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set urlfilter-table 1
        end
        config ftgd-wf
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

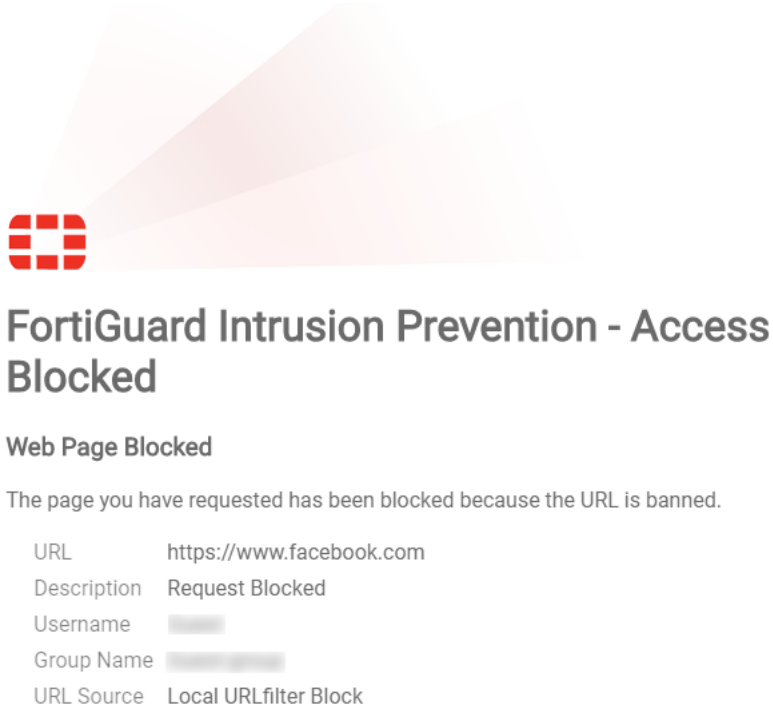
To apply the web filter profile to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "WF"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
```

```
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic all
        set webfilter-profile "webfilter"
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Verifying the URL filter results

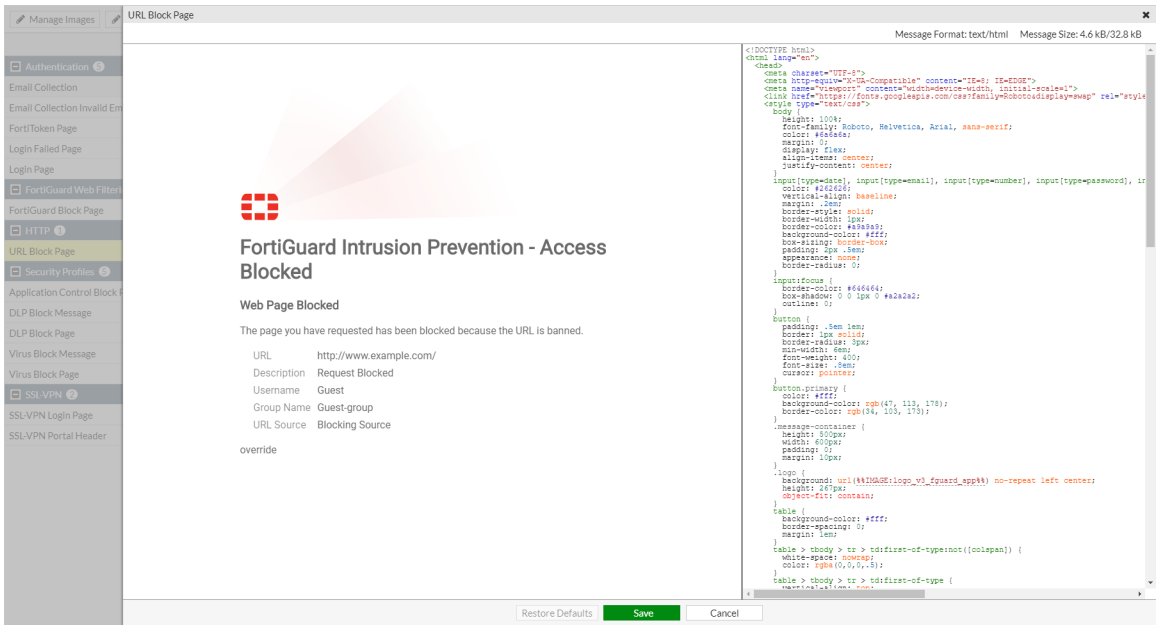
Verify the URL filter results by going to a blocked website. For example, when you go to the Facebook website, the replacement message appears:



To customize the URL web page blocked message:

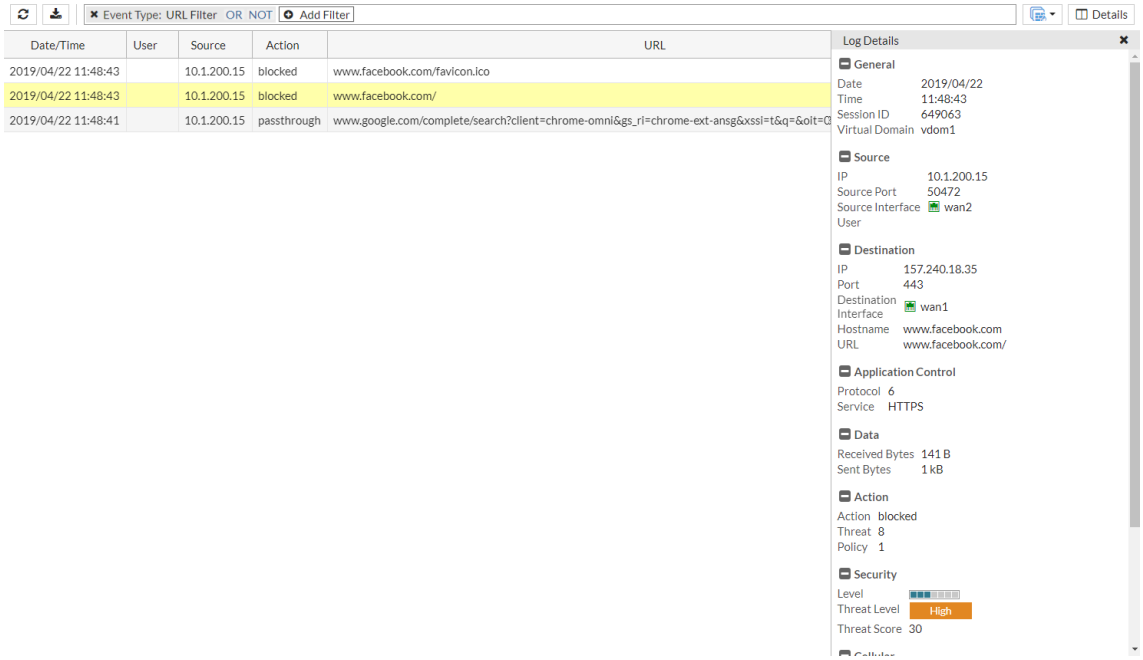
1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. In the *HTTP* section, select *URL Block Page* and click *Edit*.

3. Edit the HTML to customize the message.



To check web filter logs in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Web Filter*.
2. If there are a lot of log entries, click *Add Filter* and select *Event Type* > *urlfilter* to display logs generated by the URL filter.



To check web filter logs in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category utm-webfilter
# execute log display
```

```
1: date=2019-04-22 time=11:48:43 logid="0315012544" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="urlfilter" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1555958923322174610
urlfilteridx=0 urlsource="Local URLfilter Block" policyid=1 sessionid=649063
srcip=10.1.200.15 srcport=50472 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan" dstip=157.240.18.35
dstport=443 dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
hostname="www.facebook.com" profile="webfilter" action="blocked" reqtype="direct" url="/"
sentbyte=1171 rcvdbyte=141 direction="outgoing" msg="URL was blocked because it is in the
URL filter list" crscore=30 craction=8 crlevel="high"
```

FortiGuard filter

The FortiGuard filter enhances the web filter features by sorting billions of web pages into a wide range of categories that users can allow or block.

The FortiGuard Web Filtering service includes over 45 million individual website ratings that apply to more than two billion pages. When the FortiGuard filter is enabled in a web filter profile and applied to firewall policies, if a request for a web page appears in traffic controlled by one of the firewall policies, the URL is sent to the nearest FortiGuard server. The URL category or rating is returned. If the category is blocked, the FortiGate shows a replacement message in place of the requested page. If the category is not blocked, the page request is sent to the requested URL as normal.

To use this service, you must have a valid FortiGuard license.

The following actions are available:

FortiGuard web filter action	Description
Allow	Permit access to the sites in the category.
Monitor	Permit and log access to sites in the category. User quotas can be enabled for this option (see Usage quota on page 1333).
Block	Prevent access to the sites in the category. Users trying to access a blocked site see a replacement message indicating the site is blocked.
Warning	Display a message to the user allowing them to continue if they choose.
Authenticate	Require the user to authenticate with the FortiGate before allowing access to the category or category group.
Disable	Remove the category from the from the web filter profile. This option is only available for local or remote categories from the right-click menu.

FortiGuard web filter categories

FortiGuard has many web filter categories, including two local categories and a special remote category. Refer to the following table for more information:

FortiGuard web filter category	Where to find more information
All URL categories	See Web Filter Categories.

FortiGuard web filter category	Where to find more information
Local categories	See Web rating override on page 1472.
Remote category	See Threat feeds on page 372.

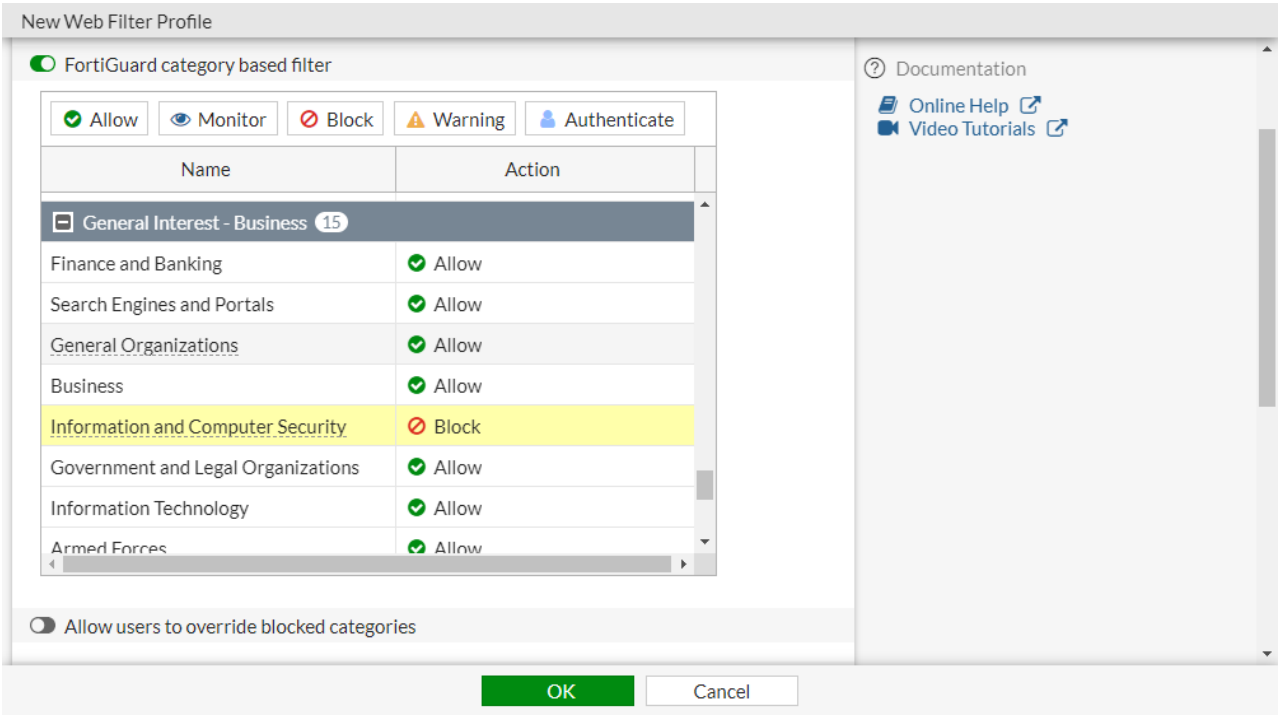
The priority of categories is local category > external category > FortiGuard built-in category. If a URL is configured as a local category, it only follows the behavior of the local category and not the external or FortiGuard built-in category.

Blocking a web category

The following example shows how to block a website based on its category. The information and computer security category (category 52) will be blocked.

To block a category in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *FortiGuard category based filter* section, select *Information and Computer Security*, then click *Block*.



3. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
4. Click *OK*.

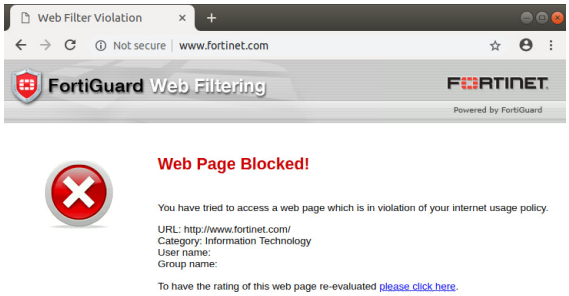
To block a category in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
            config filters
                edit 1
```

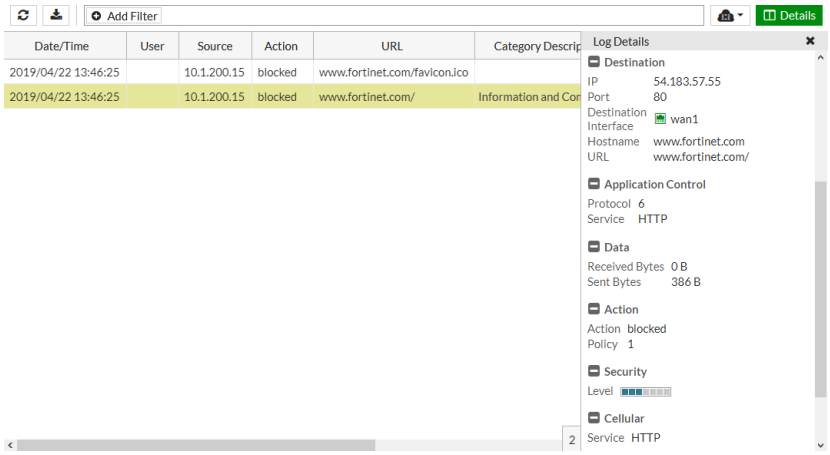
```
                set category 52
                set action block
            next
        end
    end
next
end
```

To verify that the category is blocked:

1. Go to a website that belongs to the blocked category, such as www.fortinet.com. The page should be blocked and display a replacement message.



To view the log of a blocked website in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Web Filter*.
2. Select an entry with *blocked* in the *Action* column and click *Details*.
3. 

To view the log of a blocked website in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category utm-webfilter
# execute log display

1: date=2019-04-22 time=13:46:25 logid="0316013056" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_blk" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1555965984972459609 policyid=1
sessionid=659263 srcip=10.1.200.15 srcport=49234 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstip=54.183.57.55 dstport=80 dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTP"
hostname="www.fortinet.com" profile="webfilter" action="blocked" reqtype="direct" url="/"
```

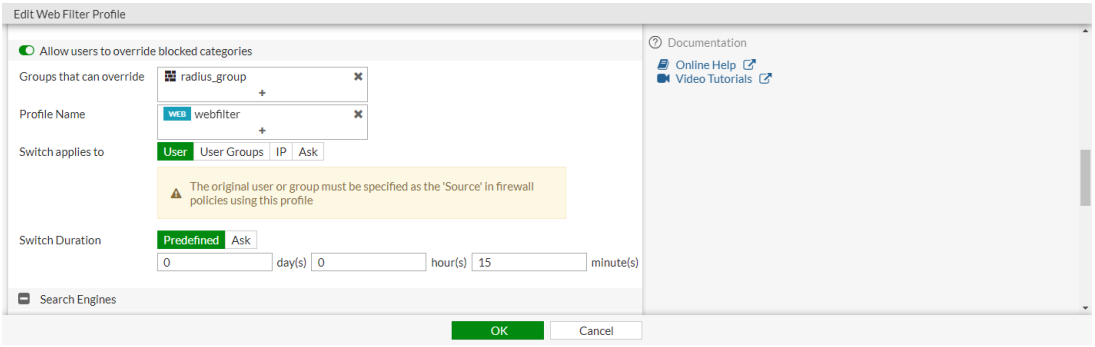
```
sentbyte=386 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs to a denied category in
policy" method="domain" cat=52 catdesc="Information Technology"
```

Allowing users to override blocked categories

There is an option to allow users with valid credentials to override blocked categories.

To allow users to override blocked categories in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Enable *Allow users to override blocked categories*.
3. Enter information in the following fields:
   - *Groups that can override*
   - *Profile name*
   - *Switch applies to*
   - *Switch Duration*
4. Configure the other settings as needed.



5. Click *OK*.

To allow users to override blocked categories in the CLI:

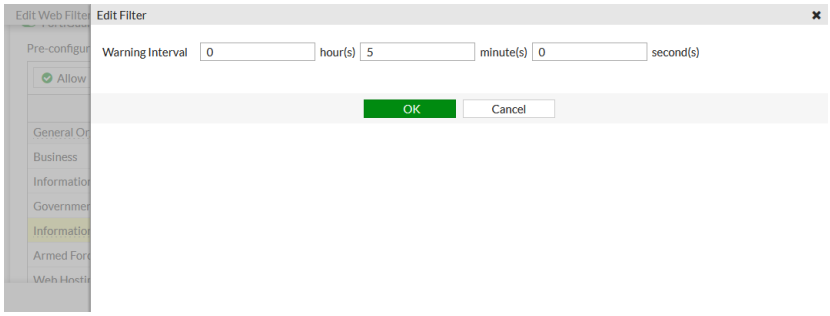
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        set ovrd-perm bannedword-override urlfilter-override fortiguard-wf-override
contenttype-check-override
        config override
            set ovrd-user-group "radius_group"
            set profile "webfilter"
        end
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
        end
    next
end
```

Issuing a warning on a web category

The following example shows how to issue a warning when a user visits a website in a specific category (information and computer security, category 52).

To configure a warning for a category in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *FortiGuard category based filter* section, select *Information and Computer Security*, then click *Warning*.
3. Set the *Warning Interval*, then click *OK*.
   The warning interval is the amount of time until the warning appears again after the user proceeds past it.



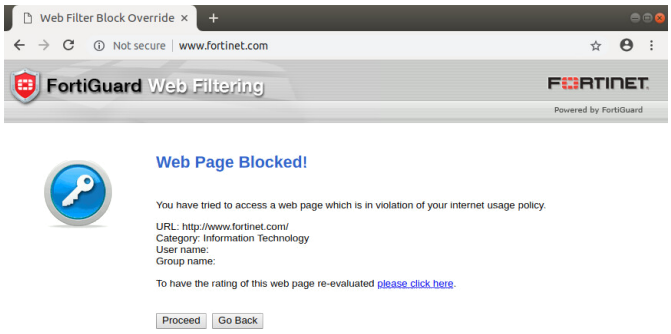
4. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure a warning for a category in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
            config filters
                edit 1
                    set category 52
                    set action warning
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

To verify that the warning works:

1. Go to a website that belongs to the category, such as www.fortinet.com.
2. On the warning page, click *Proceed* or *Go Back*.



Authenticating a web category

The following example shows how to authenticate a website based on its category (information and computer security, category 52).

To authenticate a category in the GUI:

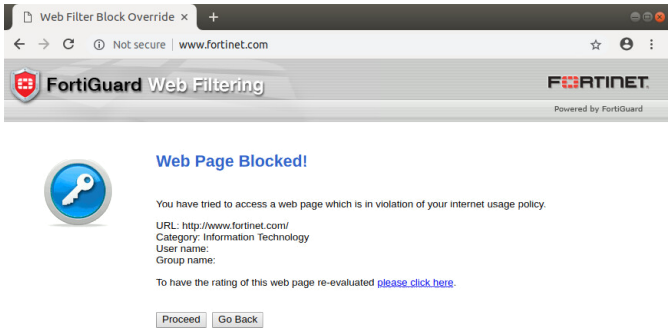
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and edit or create a new web filter profile.
2. In the *FortiGuard category based filter* section, select *Information and Computer Security*, then click *Authenticate*.
3. Set the *Warning Interval* and select one or more user groups, then click *OK*.
4. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

To authenticate a category in the CLI:

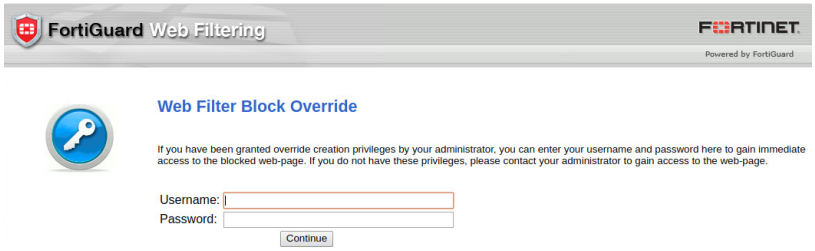
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
            config filters
                edit 1
                    set category 52
                    set action authenticate
                    set auth-usr-grp "local_group"
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

To verify that you have configured authentication:

1. Go to a website that belongs to the category, such as www.fortinet.com.
2. On the warning page, click *Proceed*.



3. Enter the username and password for the configured user group, then click *Continue*.



Customizing the replacement message page

When the category action is *Block*, *Warning*, or *Authenticate*, you can customize the replacement message page that a user sees.

To customize the replacement message page:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and edit or create a new web filter profile.
2. In the *FortiGuard category based filter* section, right-click on a category and select *Customize*.
3. Select a *Replacement Message Group*. See Replacement message groups on page 1026 for details.
4. Optionally, click *Edit FortiGuard Block Page* or *Edit FortiGuard Warning Page* to make modifications.
5. Click *Save*.
6. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
7. Click *OK*.

Credential phishing prevention

When credential phishing prevention is enabled, the FortiGate scans for corporate credentials submitted to external websites and compares them to sensitive credentials stored in the corporate domain controller. Based on the configured antiphishing rules in proxy mode web filter profiles, the FortiGate will block the URL or alert the user if the credentials match ones that are stored on the corporate domain controller.

- The corporate domain controller must be configured in the `credential-store`.
- Credentials can be matched based on sAMAccountName, user principal name (UPN), or down-level logon name.

- The antiphishing profile defines the corporate domain controller, antiphishing check option, default action if no rules match, antiphishing status, and so on.
- Inspection entries in the profile define what action occurs when the submission request matches the specified FortiGuard categories.
- The profile scans for pre-defined and custom username and password fields in the HTTP request, such as `username`, `auth`, and `password`. You can evaluate custom fields by configuring custom patterns.
- The URL filter defines individual URLs that the antiphish action (block or log) is applied to when the URL submission request matches.
- DC Authentication through Active Directory Device Registration Service (AD DRS) is supported. Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services (AD LDS) support is available in FortiOS 7.0.



Web-based URL filter actions and FortiGuard category-based filtering have higher priority than antiphishing URL filter actions and FortiGuard filtering:

- If a request is blocked by the web-based URL filter or FortiGuard filter, there is no further antiphishing scanning. Antiphishing scanning only happens after the web-based URL filtes and FortiGuard filters allow the traffic.
- If a submission matches an entry in the URL filter table that has an antiphishing action, the defined action is taken. No further FortiGuard category-based rules are applied.
- Like firewall rules, the URL filter table and Fortiguard category-based antiphishing rules use a top-down priority. The rule that matches first is the one that is used.

In this example, URLs that match FortiGuard category 37 (social networking) will be blocked and other categories will be logged.

To configure credential phishing prevention:

1. Configure the corporate domain controller:

```
config credential-store domain-controller
    edit "win2016"
        set hostname "win2016"
        set domain-name "corpserver.local"
        set username "Administrator"
        set password **********
        set ip <server_ip>
    next
end
```



The `hostname` and the `domain-name` are case sensitive.

2. Configure the antiphishing profile, which includes the FortiGuard category rule:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit <profile-name>
        set feature-set proxy
        ...
        config web
            ...
        end
        config antiphish
```

```
            set status enable
            set domain-controller "win2016"
            set default-action block
            set check-uri enable
            set check-basic-auth enable
            set max-body-len 65536
            config inspection-entries
                edit "inspect-37"
                    set fortiguard-category 37
                    set action block
                next
                edit "inspect-others"
                    set fortiguard-category all
                    set action log
                next
            end
            config custom-patterns
                edit "customer-name"
                    set category username
                next
                edit "customer-passwd"
                   set category password
                next
            end
        end
        ...
        set web-antiphishing-log enable
    next
end
```

- `check-uri` enables support for scanning HTTP GET URI parameters.
- `check-basic-auth` enables support for scanning the HTTP basic authentication field.

3. Configure the URL filter to scan specific URLs.
   The antiphish action is added to the URL filter table entry, and the URL filter is applied to the web filter profile:

```
config webfilter urlfilter
    edit 1
        set name "antiphish-table"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set url "www.example.com"
                set type simple
                set antiphish-action block
                set status enable
                set referrer-host ''
            next
        end
    next
end
config webfilter profile
    edit "<profile-name>"
        config web
            set urlfilter-table 1
        end
        ...
```

```
    next
end
```

4. Optionally, define custom patterns to scan fields other than the built-in username and password keywords:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "<profile-name>"
        config custom-patterns
                edit "customer-name"
                    set category username
                next
                edit "customer-passwd"
                   set category password
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

Usage quota

In addition to using category and classification blocks and overrides to limit user access to URLs, you can set a daily quota by category, category group, or classification. Quotas allow access for a specified length of time or a specific bandwidth, and are calculated separately for each user. Quotas are reset daily at midnight.

Quotas can be set for the *Monitor*, *Warning*, or *Authenticate* actions. Once the quota is reached, the traffic is blocked and the replacement message page displays.



Quotas are only available in proxy-based inspection mode.

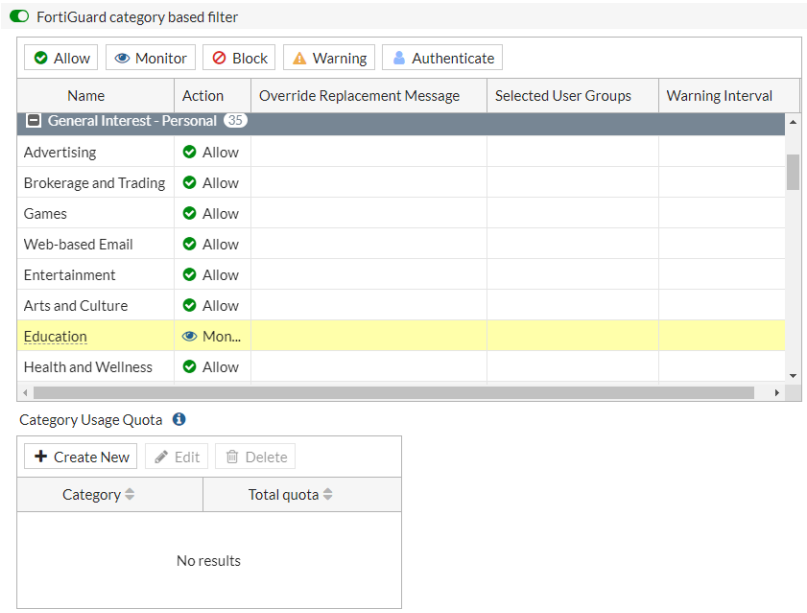
Configuring a quota

The following example shows how to set a time quota for the education category (category 30).

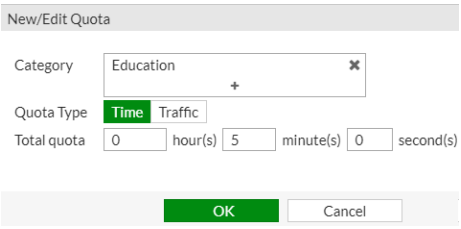
To configure a quota in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. For *Feature set*, select *Proxy-based*.
3. In the *FortiGuard category based filter* section, scroll to the *General Interest - Personal* and click the + to expand the section.

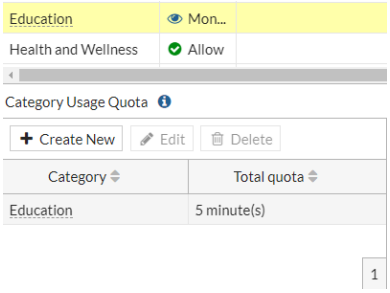
4. Select *Education*, then click *Monitor*.



5. In the *Category Usage Quota* section, click *Create New*.
   The *New/Edit Quota* pane opens.
6. In the *Category* field, select *Education*.
7. For the *Quota Type*, select *Time* and set the *Total quota* to 5 minutes.



8. Click *OK*. The entry appears in the table.



9. Configure the other settings as needed.
10. Click *OK*.

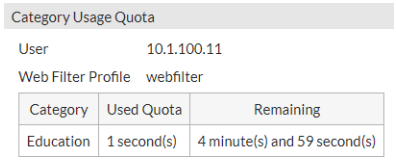
To configure a quota in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
           unset options
           config filters
```

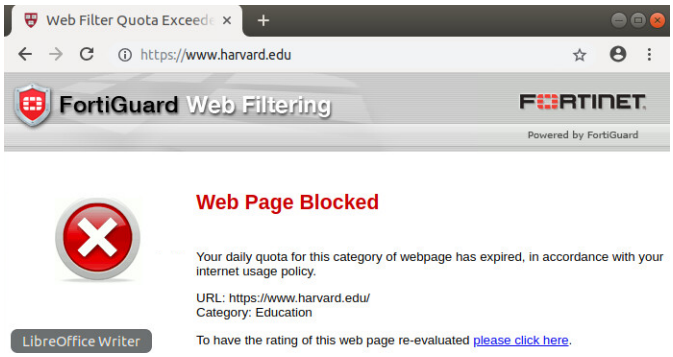
```
            edit 1
               set category 30
            next
         end
         config quota
            edit 1
               set category 30
               set type time
               set duration 5m
            next
         end
      end
   next
end
```

To verify the quota usage:

1. Go to a website that belongs to the education category, such https://www.harvard.edu/. You can view websites in that category at the moment.
2. In FortiOS, go to *Dashboard* > *FortiGuard Quota Monitor* to check the used and remaining time .



3. When the quota reaches its limit, traffic is blocked and the replacement page displays.



Web content filter

You can control access to web content by blocking webpages containing specific words or patterns. This helps to prevent access to pages with questionable material. You can specify words, phrases, patterns, wildcards, and regular expressions to match content on webpages. You can use multiple web content filter lists and select the best one for each web filter profile. The maximum number of web content patterns in a list is 5000.

When configuring a web content filter list, the following patterns are available:

Web content pattern type	Description
Wildcard	Use this setting to block or exempt one word or text strings of up to 80 characters. You can also use wildcard symbols such as *?* or * to represent one or more characters. For example, a wildcard expression *forti*.com* matches *fortinet.com* and *fortiguard.com*. The * represents any character appearing any number of times.
Regular expression	Use this setting to block or exempt patterns of regular expressions that use some of the same symbols as wildcard expressions, but for different purposes. In regular expressions, * represents the character before the symbol. For example, *forti*.com* matches *fortiii.com* but not *fortinet.com* or *fortiice.com*. In this case, the symbol * represents *i* appearing any number of times.

Content evaluation

The web content filter scans the content of every webpage that is accepted by a firewall policy. The system administrator can specify banned words and phrases and attach a numerical value (or score) to the importance of those words and phrases. When the web content filter scan detects banned content, it adds the scores of banned words and phrases found on that page. If the sum is higher than a threshold set in the web filter profile, the FortiGate blocks the page.

The default score for web content filter is 10 and the default threshold is 10. This means that by default, a webpage is blocked by a single match. These settings can only be configured in the CLI.

Banned words or phrases are evaluated according to the following rules:

- The score for each word or phrase is counted only once, even if that word or phrase appears many times in the webpage.
- The score for any word in a phrase without quotation marks is counted.
- The score for a phrase in quotation marks is counted only if it appears exactly as written.

The following table is an example of how rules are applied to the webpage contents . For example, a webpage contains only this sentence:

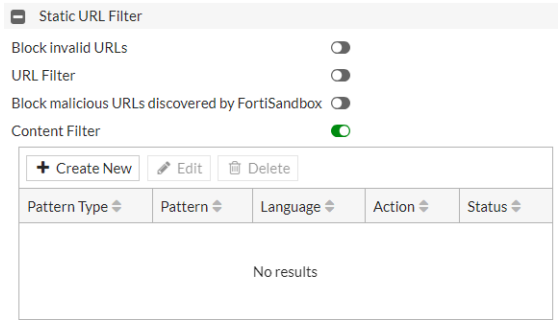
The score for each word or phrase is counted only once, even if that word or phrase appears many times in the webpage.

Banned pattern	Assigned score	Score added to the sum for the entire page	Threshold score	Comment
word	20	20	20	Appears twice but is only counted once. The webpage is blocked.
word phrase	20	40	20	Each word appears twice but is only counted once, giving a total score of 40. The webpage is blocked.
word sentence	20	20	20	*word* appears twice and *sentence* does not appear, but since any word in a phrase without quotation marks is counted, the score for this pattern is 20. The webpage is blocked.

Banned pattern	Assigned score	Score added to the sum for the entire page	Threshold score	Comment
"word sentence"	20	0	20	This phrase does not appear exactly as written. The webpage is allowed.
"word or phrase"	20	20	20	This phrase appears twice but is only counted once. The webpage is blocked.

To configure a web content filter in the GUI:

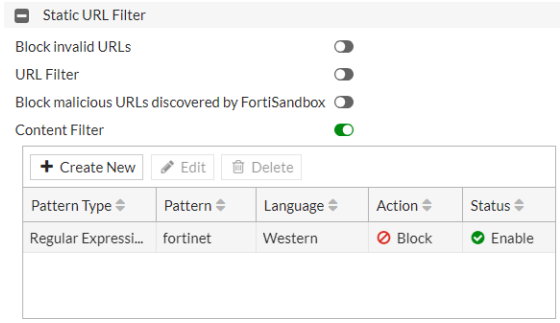
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Static URL Filter* section, enable *Content Filter*.



3. Click *Create New*. The *New Web Content Filter* pane opens.
4. Configure the following settings:

Pattern Type	Regular Expression
Pattern	fortinet
Language	Western
Action	Block
Status	Enable

5. Click *OK*. The entry appears in the table.



6. Configure the other settings as needed.
7. Click *OK*.

To configure a web content filter in the CLI:

1. Create the content (banned word) table:

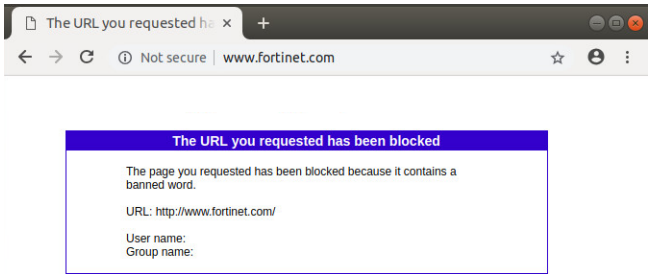
```
config webfilter content
   edit 1
      set name "webfilter"
      config entries
         edit "fortinet"
           set pattern-type regexp
           set status enable
           set lang western
           set score 10
           set action block
         next
      end
   next
end
```

2. Apply the content table to the web filter profile:

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
      config web
         set bword-threshold 10
         set bword-table 1
      end
      config ftgd-wf
         unset options
      end
   next
end
```

To verify the content filter:

1. Go to a website with the word *fortinet*, such as www.fortinet.com. The website is blocked and a replacement page displays:



Advanced filters 1

This topic gives examples of the following advanced filter features:

- Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox on page 1339
- Allow websites when a rating error occurs on page 1339
- Rate URLs by domain and IP address on page 1340
- Block invalid URLs on page 1340

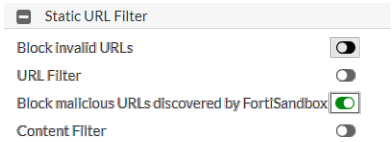
Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox

This setting blocks malicious URLs that FortiSandbox finds. Your FortiGate must be connected to a registered FortiSandbox.

For information on configuring FortiSandbox, see Using FortiSandbox with antivirus on page 1304 and Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus on page 1311.

To block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Static URL Filter* section, enable *Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox*.



3. Click *OK*.

To block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set blacklist enable
        end
    next
end
```

Allow websites when a rating error occurs

If you do not have a FortiGuard license, but you have enabled services that need a FortiGuard license (such as FortiGuard filter), then you will get a rating error message.

Use this setting to allow access to websites that return a rating error from the FortiGuard Web Filter service.

To allow websites with rating errors in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Rating Options* section, enable *Allow websites when a rating error occurs*.
3. Click *OK*.

To allow websites with rating errors in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            set options error-allow
        end
    next
end
```

Rate URLs by domain and IP address

If you enable this setting, in addition to only sending domain information to FortiGuard for rating, the FortiGate always sends both the URL domain name and the TCP/IP packet's IP address (except for private IP addresses) to FortiGuard for the rating.

The FortiGuard server might return a different category of IP address and URL domain. If they are different, the FortiGate uses the rating weight of the IP address or domain name to determine the rating result and decision. This rating weight is hard-coded in FortiOS.

For example, if we use a spoof IP of Google as www.irs.gov, the FortiGate will send both the IP address and domain name to FortiGuard to get the rating. We get two different ratings: one is the search engine and portals that belong to the Google IP, the second is the government and legal organizations that belongs to www.irs.gov. Because the search engine and portals rating has a higher weight than government and legal organizations, the traffic is rated as search engine and portals.

To rate URLs by domain and IP address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Rating Options* section, enable *Rate URLs by domain and IP address*.
3. Click *OK*.

To rate URLs by domain and IP address in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            set options rate-server-ip
        end
    next
end
```

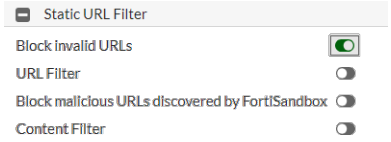
Block invalid URLs

Use this setting to block websites when their SSL certificate CN field does not contain a valid domain name.

This option also blocks URLs that contains spaces. If there is a space in the URL, it must be written as *%20* in the URL path.

To block invalid URLs in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Static URL Filter* section, enable *Block invalid URLs* .



3. Click *OK*.

To block invalid URLs in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        set options block-invalid-url
    next
end
```

Advanced filters 2

This topic gives examples of the following advanced filter features:

- Safe search on page 1341
- YouTube education filters on page 1342
  - Restrict YouTube access on page 1342
  - YouTube channel filtering on page 1343
- Log all search keywords on page 1344
- Restrict Google account usage to specific domains on page 1344
- HTTP POST action on page 1345
- Remove Java applets, ActiveX, and cookies on page 1345



These advanced filters are only available in proxy-based inspection mode.

Safe search

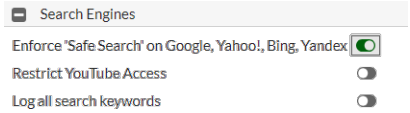
This setting applies to popular search sites and prevents explicit websites and images from appearing in search results.

The supported search sites are:

- Google
- Yahoo
- Bing
- Yandex

To enable safe search in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Search Engines* section, enable *Enforce 'Safe Search' on Google, Yahoo!, Bing, Yandex*.



3. Click *OK*.

To enable safe search in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set safe-search url header
        end
    next
end
```

YouTube education filters

Use these features to limit users' access to YouTube channels. For example, in an education environment where you want students and users to be able to access YouTube education videos but not other YouTube videos.

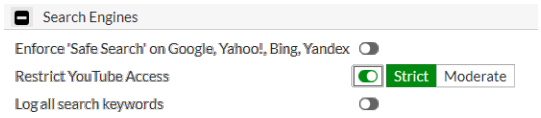
Restrict YouTube access

The *Restrict YouTube Access* setting adds the HTTP header `YouTube-Restrict: Strict` or `YouTube-Restrict: Moderate` into the HTTP request when enabled. When YouTube reads this header, it applies the appropriate content restriction based on the selected mode. YouTube Restricted Mode is an optional setting that filters out potentially mature videos while leaving a large number of videos still available (see Restrict YouTube content available to users and Manage your organization's YouTube settings for more information). Google defines the restricted YouTube access modes as follows:

- Strict Restricted YouTube access: this setting is the most restrictive. Strict Restricted Mode does not block all videos, but works as a filter to screen out many videos based on an automated system, while leaving some videos still available for viewing.
- Moderate Restricted YouTube access: this setting is similar to Strict Restricted Mode but makes a much larger collection of videos available.

To enable restrict YouTube access in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Search Engines* section, enable *Restrict YouTube Access* and select *Strict* or *Moderate*.



3. Click *OK*.

To restrict YouTube access in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set youtube-restrict {none | strict | moderate}
        end
    next
end
```

YouTube channel filtering

Use this setting to block or only allow matching YouTube channels.

The following identifiers are used:

```
given <channel-id>, affect on:
   www.youtube.com/channel/<channel-id>
   www.youtube.com/user/<user-id>
```

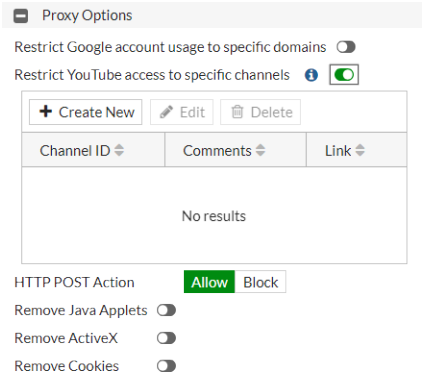
matches channel-id from <meta itemprop="channelId" content="<channel-id>">

```
   www.youtube.com/watch?v=<string>
```

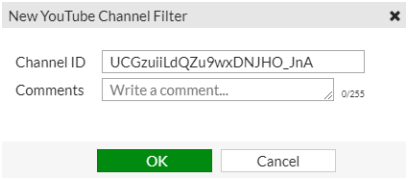
matches channel-id from <meta itemprop="channelId" content="<channel-id>">

To enable channel filtering in the GUI:

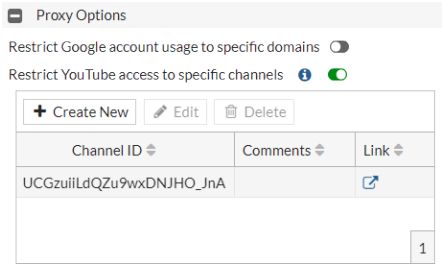
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Proxy Options* section, enable *Restrict YouTube access to specific channels*.



3. Click *Create New*. The *New YouTube Channel Filter* pane opens.
4. Enter the *Channel ID*, for example, `UCGzuiiLdQZu9wxDNJHO_JnA`.



5. Click *OK*. The entry appears in the table with its link.



To enable channel filtering in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
```

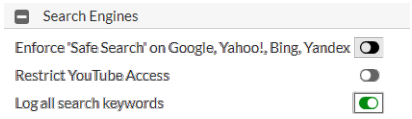
```
      set youtube-channel-status whitelist
      config youtube-channel-filter
         edit 1
            set channel-id "UCGzuiiLdQZu9wxDNJHO_JnA"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

Log all search keywords

Use this setting to log all search phrases.

To enable logging search keywords in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Search Engines* section, enable *Log all search keywords*.



3. Click *OK*.

To enable logging search keywords in the CLI:

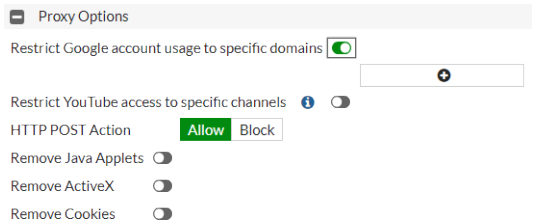
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set log-search enable
        end
    next
end
```

Restrict Google account usage to specific domains

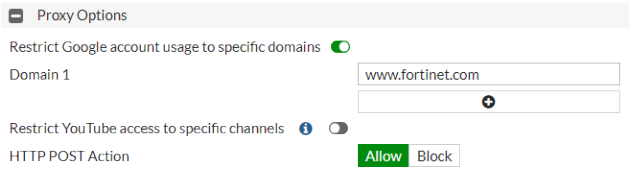
Use this setting to block access to certain Google accounts and services, while allowing access to accounts with domains in the exception list.

To enable Google account restriction:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Proxy Options* section, enable *Restrict Google account usage to specific domains*.



3. Click the + and enter the domains that Google can access, such as www.fortinet.com.



4. Click *OK*.

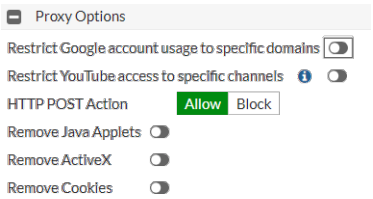
When you try to use Google services like Gmail, only traffic from the domain of www.fortinet.com can go through. Traffic from other domains is blocked.

HTTP POST action

Use this setting to select the action to take with HTTP POST traffic. HTTP POST is the command used by the browser when you send information, such as a completed form or a file you are uploading to a web server. The action options are allow or block. The default is allow.

To configure HTTP POST in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Proxy Options* section, for *HTTP POST Action*, select *Allow* or *Block*.



3. Click *OK*.

To configure HTTP POST in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        set post-action {normal | block}
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
        end
    next
end
```

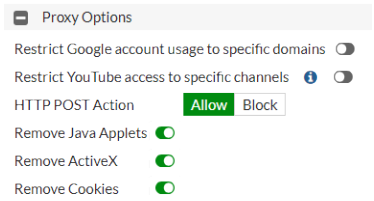
Remove Java applets, ActiveX, and cookies

Web filter profiles have settings to filter Java applets, ActiveX, and cookies from web traffic. Note that if these filters are enabled, websites using Java applets, ActiveX, and cookies might not function properly.

To enable these filters in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile. and go to the *Proxy Options* section.

2. In the *Proxy Options* section, enabled the filters you want to use: *Remove Java Applets*, *Remove ActiveX*, or *Remove Cookies*.



To enable these filters in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
      set options {activexfilter cookiefilter javafilter}
      config ftgd-wf
         unset options
      end
   next
end
```

Web filter statistics

FortiOS provides diagnostics commands to view web filter statistics reports, which are either proxy-based or flow-based. The commands are available in both VDOM and global command lines.

Proxy-based web filter statistics report

Use the `diagnose wad filter vd {<VDOM> | global}` command to filter for per-VDOM or global statistics reports.

In the following example, there are two VDOMs (root and vdom1) using proxy-based policies that have web filter profiles enabled.

To view per-VDOM statistics reports:

```
(global) # diagnose wad filter vd root
Drop_unknown_session is enabled.

(global) # diagnose wad stats filter list
filtering of vdom root
  dlp          = 0
  content-type = 0
  urls:
    examined = 6
    allowed = 3
    blocked = 0
    logged = 0
    overridden = 0

(global) # diagnose wad filter vd vdom1
(global) # diagnose wad stats filter list
filtering of vdom vdom1
  dlp          = 0
```

```
    content-type = 0
    urls:
      examined = 13
      allowed = 2
      blocked = 9
      logged = 8
      overridden = 0
  (global) # diagnose wad filter vd ALL
  (global) # diagnose wad stats filter list
  filtering of all accessible vdoms
    dlp          = 0
    content-type = 0
    urls:
      examined = 19
      allowed = 5
      blocked = 9
      logged = 8
      overridden = 0
```

Flow-based web filter statistics report

Use the `diagnose webfilter stats list {<VDOM> | global}` command to check the flow-based web filter statistics.

In the following example, the VDOM is using flow-based policies that have web filter profiles enabled.

To view web filter statistics:

```
# diagnose webfilter stats list root
Proxy/flow URL filter stats:
request:   9474
blocked:   8606
allowed:   868
overridden:0
logged:    8606
pending:   0
```

URL certificate blocklist

As increasing numbers of malware have started to use SSL to attempt to bypass IPS, maintaining a fingerprint-based certificate blocklist is useful to block botnet communication that relies on SSL.

This feature adds a dynamic package that is distributed by FortiGuard and is part of the Web Filtering service. It is enabled by default for SSL/SSH profiles, and can be configured using the following CLI commands:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom>
        config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
            edit "certificate-inspection"
                set block-blacklisted-certificates enable
            next
            edit "deep-inspection"
                set block-blacklisted-certificates enable
```

```
            next
        end
    next
end
```

DNS filter

You can apply DNS category filtering to control user access to web resources. You can customize the default profile, or create your own to manage network user access and apply it to a firewall policy, or you can add it to a DNS server on a FortiGate interface. For more information about configuring DNS, see DNS on page 457. In FortiOS 6.4, the DNS proxy daemon handles the DNS filter in flow and proxy mode policies.

DNS filtering has the following features:

- FortiGuard Filtering: filters the DNS request based on the FortiGuard domain rating.
- Botnet C&C domain blocking: blocks the DNS request for the known botnet C&C domains.
- External dynamic category domain filtering: allows you to define your own domain category.
- DNS safe search: enforces Google, Bing, and YouTube safe addresses for parental controls.
- Local domain filter: allows you to define your own domain list to block or allow.
- External IP block list: allows you to define an IP block list to block resolved IPs that match this list.
- DNS translation: maps the resolved result to another IP that you define.



Some DNS filter features require a subscription to FortiGuard Web Filtering.

DNS filtering connects to the FortiGuard secure DNS server over anycast by default. For more information about this configuration, see DNS over TLS on page 468.



DNS filter profiles cannot be used in firewall policies when the FortiGate is in NGFW policy-based mode; see Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW on page 1092 for more information. They can be used in the DNS server; see FortiGate DNS server on page 460 for more information.



A DNS filter profile can be applied in a policy to scan DNS traffic traversing the FortiGate (see Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349), or applied on the DNS server interface (see Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368).

DNS filter behavior in proxy mode

In cases where the DNS proxy daemon handles the DNS filter and if DNS caching is enabled (this is the default setting), then the FortiGate will respond to subsequent DNS queries using the result in the DNS cache and will not forward these queries to a real DNS server.

There are two options to disable this behavior:

- Disable DNS caching globally.
- Remove the DNS filter profile from the proxy mode firewall policy or from the DNS server configured on a FortiGate interface.

To disable DNS caching globally:

```
config system dns
    set dns-cache-limit 0
end
```



There will be a performance impact to DNS queries since each query will not be cached, and will be forwarded to a real DNS server.

The following topics provide information about DNS filters:

- Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349
- FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering on page 1353
- Botnet C&C domain blocking on page 1356
- DNS safe search on page 1360
- Local domain filter on page 1362
- DNS translation on page 1365
- Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368
- Troubleshooting for DNS filter on page 1369

Configuring a DNS filter profile

A DNS filter profile contains settings that enable or disable various forms of DNS filtering, including:

- FortiGuard filtering
- Botnet C&C domain blocking
- DNS safe search
- External dynamic category domain filtering
- Local domain filter
- External IP block list
- DNS translation

Once a DNS filter is configured, it can be applied to a firewall policy, or on a FortiGate DNS server if one is configured. In the following basic example, a DNS filter is created and applied to a firewall policy to scan DNS queries that pass through the FortiGate.

To configure a DNS filter profile in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Configure the settings as needed.

Name	Enter a unique name for the profile.

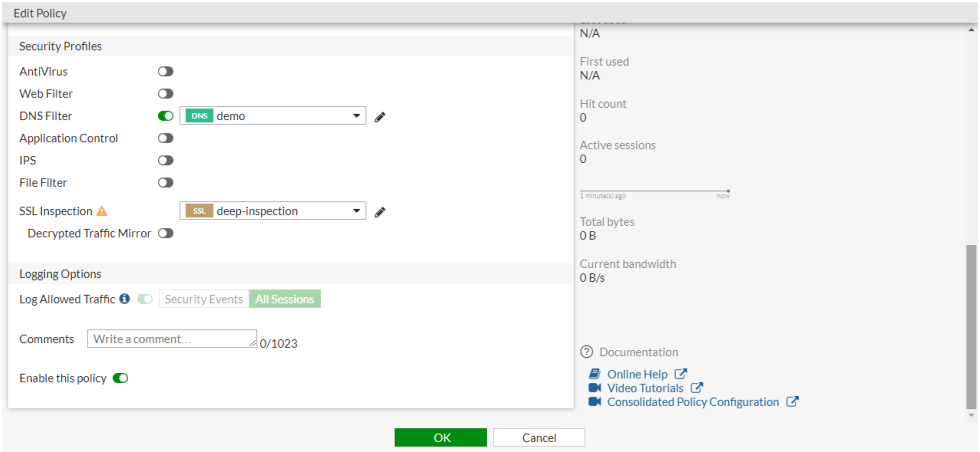
Comments	Enter a comment (optional).
Redirect botnet C&C requests to Block Portal	Enable to block botnet website access at the DNS name resolution stage. See Botnet C&C domain blocking on page 1356 for more details.
Enforce 'Safe Search' on Google, Bing, YouTube	Enable to avoid explicit and inappropriate results in the Google, Bing, and YouTube search engines. See DNS safe search on page 1360 for more details.
Restrict YouTube Access	When *Enforce 'Safe Search' on Google, Bing, YouTube* is enabled, select either *Strict* or *Moderate* to restrict YouTube access by responding to DNS resolutions with CNAME restrict.youtube.com and restrictmoderate.youtube.com respectively.
FortiGuard Category Based Filter	Enable to use the FortiGuard domain rating database to inspect DNS traffic. A FortiGuard Web Filter license is required to use this option. Expand the category groups in the table to view and edit the FortiGuard category settings to *Allow*, *Monitor*, or *Redirect to Block Portal*. See FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering on page 1353 for more details.
Static Domain Filter	This section includes options related to the static domain filter.
Domain Filter	Enable to define local static domain filters to allow or block specific domains. The local domain filter has a higher priority than the FortiGuard category-based domain filter. Click *Create New* in the table to add a domain filter and configure the following settings. • *Domain*: enter a domain. • *Type*: select *Simple*, *Reg. Expression*, or *Wildcard*. • *Action*: select *Redirect to Block Portal*, *Allow*, or *Monitor*. • *Status*: select *Enable* or *Disable*. See Local domain filter on page 1362 for more details.
External IP Block Lists	Enable to add one or more external IP block lists. See External blocklist – Policy on page 375 for more details.
DNS Translation	Enable to translate a DNS resolved IP address to another IP address specified on a per-policy basis. Click *Create New* in the table to add a DNS translation and configure the following settings. • *Type*: select *IPv4* or *IPv6*. • *Original Destination*: enter the address of a host or subnet that you want translated. When a resolved address in a DNS response matches this destination, the FortiGate will replace the address with the address in *Translated Destination*. • *Translated Destination*: enter the address of a host or subnet that you want the resolved address to be translated to. • *Network Mask*: enter the netmask for the original and translated destination. If a single host is used for the original and translated destination, set the netmask to *255.255.255.255*.

		• *Status*: select *Enable* or *Disable*. Enabling DNS translation will override matching DNS responses with translated IPs. See DNS translation on page 1365 for more details.
Options		This section includes other options related to the DNS filter.
	Redirect Portal IP	Set the IP address of the SDNS redirect portal. Select *Use FortiGuard Default*, or *Specify* and enter the IP address. When *FortiGuard Category Based Filter* categories are set to *Redirect to Block Portal*, the DNS response will use this IP address in its response to the client. If the client is accessing the domain on a web browser, they will be redirected to the block portal page on this address.
	Allow DNS requests when a rating error occurs	Enable to allow all domains when FortiGuard DNS servers fail, or they are unreachable from the FortiGate. When this happens, a log message is recorded in the DNS logs by default.
	Log all DNS queries and responses	Enable to log all domains visited (detailed DNS logging).

3. Click *OK*.

To apply a DNS filter profile to a policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing policy.
2. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *DNS Filter* and select the DNS filter.



3. Configure the other settings as needed.
4. Click *OK*.

CLI-only settings

The following DNS filter profile settings can only be configured in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit <name>
        set block-action {block | redirect}
        set sdns-ftgd-err-log {enable | disable}
```

```
    next
end
```

`block-action {block | redirect}`	Set the action to take for blocked domains: • `block`: return NXDOMAIN for blocked domains. • `redirect`: redirect blocked domains to SDNS portal (default). When a FortiGuard or local domain filter category is set to *Redirect to Block Portal* in the GUI, the action is set to `block` in the CLI. By default, the `block-action` applied to a DNS profile is set to `redirect`.
`sdns-ftgd-err-log {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable FortiGuard SDNS rating error logging (default = enable).

To configure a DNS filter profile in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "demo"
        set comment ''
        config domain-filter
            unset domain-filter-table
        end
        config ftgd-dns
            set options error-allow
            config filters
                edit 2
                    set category 2
                    set action monitor
                next
                edit 7
                    set category 7
                    set action block
                next
                ...
                edit 22
                    set category 0
                    set action monitor
                next
            end
        end
        set log-all-domain enable
        set sdns-ftgd-err-log enable
        set sdns-domain-log enable
        set block-action redirect
        set block-botnet enable
        set safe-search enable
        set redirect-portal 93.184.216.34
        set youtube-restrict strict
    next
end
```

To apply a DNS filter profile to a policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Demo"
```

```
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set dnsfilter-profile "demo"
        set profile-protocol-options "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering

You can use the FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filter to inspect DNS traffic. This makes use of FortiGuard's continuously updated domain rating database for more reliable protection.

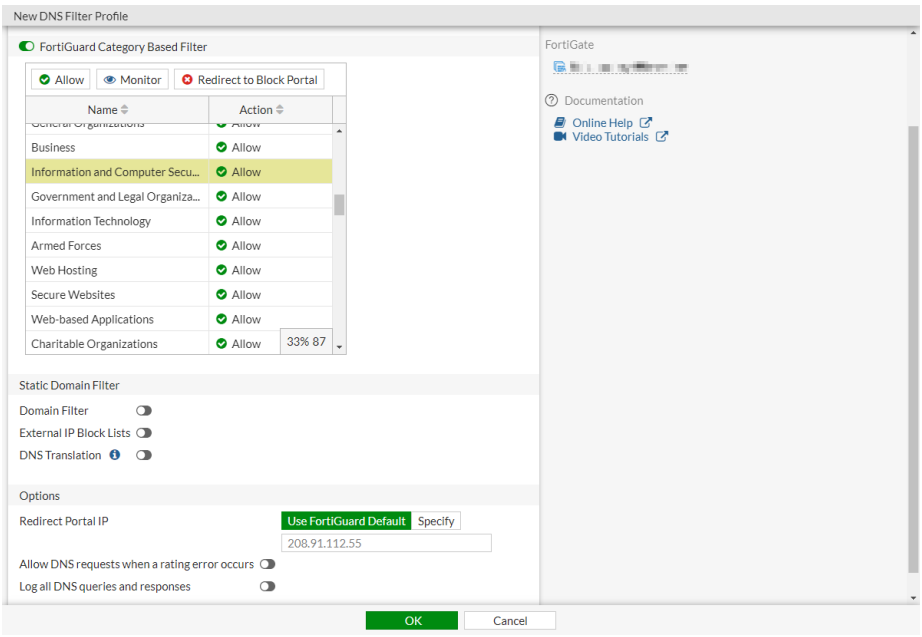
A DNS filter profile can be applied in a policy to scan DNS traffic traversing the FortiGate (see Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349), or applied on the DNS server interface (see Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368).



The FortiGate must have a FortiGuard Web Filter license to use the FortiGuard category-based filter.

To configure FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Enable *FortiGuard Category Based Filter*.
3. Select the category and then select *Allow*, *Monitor*, or *Redirect to Block Portal* for that category.
4. In the *Options* section, select a setting for *Redirect Portal IP*. Select either *Use FortiGuard Default* (208.91.112.55) or click *Specify* and enter another portal IP. The FortiGate will use the portal IP to replace the resolved IP in the DNS response packet.



5. Click *OK*.

To configure FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
   edit "demo"
      set comment ''
      config domain-filter
         unset domain-filter-table
      end
      config ftgd-dns
         set options error-allow
         config filters
             edit 2
                 set category 2
                 set action monitor
             next
             edit 7
                 set category 7
                 set action monitor
             next
            ...
             edit 22
                 set category 0
                 set action monitor
             next
         end
      end
      set log-all-domain enable
      set sdns-ftgd-err-log enable
      set sdns-domain-log enable
      set block-action {redirect | block}
      set block-botnet enable
      set safe-search enable
      set redirect-portal 93.184.216.34
```

```
      set youtube-restrict strict
   next
end
```

Verifying the logs

From your internal network PC, use a command line tool, such as dig or nslookup, to do a DNS query for some domains. For example:

```
#dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 61252
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 13; ADDITIONAL: 11

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        17164   IN      A       93.184.216.34

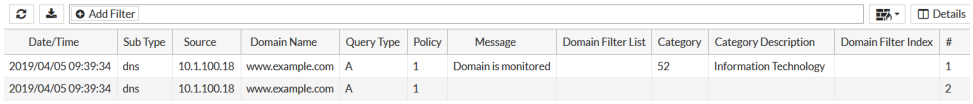
;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
com.                    20027   IN      NS      h.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      i.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      f.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      d.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      j.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      l.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      e.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      a.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      k.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      g.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      m.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      c.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      b.gtld-servers.net.

;; ADDITIONAL SECTION:
a.gtld-servers.net.     21999   IN      A       192.5.6.30
a.gtld-servers.net.     21999   IN      AAAA    2001:503:a83e::2:30
b.gtld-servers.net.     21997   IN      A       192.33.14.30
b.gtld-servers.net.     21997   IN      AAAA    2001:503:231d::2:30
c.gtld-servers.net.     21987   IN      A       192.26.92.30
c.gtld-servers.net.     20929   IN      AAAA    2001:503:83eb::30
d.gtld-servers.net.     3340    IN      A       192.31.80.30
d.gtld-servers.net.     3340    IN      AAAA    2001:500:856e::30
e.gtld-servers.net.     19334   IN      A       192.12.94.30
e.gtld-servers.net.     19334   IN      AAAA    2001:502:1ca1::30
f.gtld-servers.net.     3340    IN      A       192.35.51.30

;; Received 509 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 09:39:33 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 3.8 ms
```

To check the DNS filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*. There are logs for the DNS traffic that just passed through the FortiGate with the FortiGuard rating for the domain name.



Date/Time	Sub Type	Source	Domain Name	Query Type	Policy	Message	Domain Filter List	Category	Category Description	Domain Filter Index	#
2019/04/05 09:39:34	dns	10.1.100.18	www.example.com	A	1	Domain is monitored		52	Information Technology		1
2019/04/05 09:39:34	dns	10.1.100.18	www.example.com	A	1						2

To check the DNS filter log in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category utm-dns

# execute log display
2 logs found.
2 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-05 time=09:39:34 logid="1501054802" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554482373 policyid=1 sessionid=50868
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=34308 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=17647
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="93.184.216.34" msg="Domain
is monitored" action="pass" cat=52 catdesc="Information Technology"

2: date=2019-04-05 time=09:39:34 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554482373 policyid=1 sessionid=50868
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=34308 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=17647
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

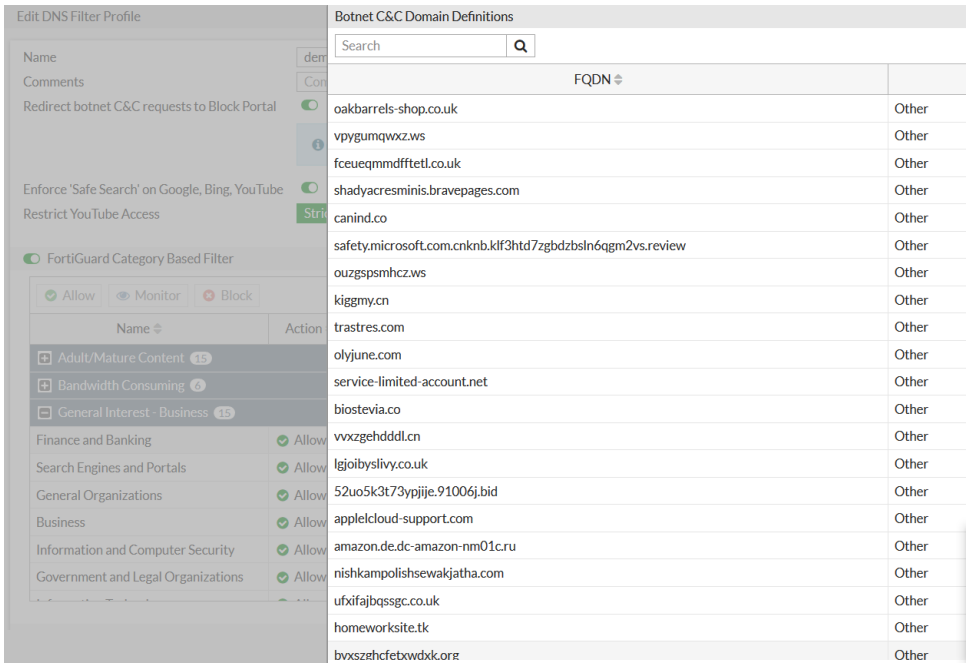
Botnet C&C domain blocking

FortiGuard Service continually updates the botnet C&C domain list. The botnet C&C domain blocking feature can block the botnet website access at the DNS name resolving stage. This provides additional protection for your network.

A DNS filter profile can be applied in a policy to scan DNS traffic traversing the FortiGate (see Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349), or applied on the DNS server interface (see Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368).

To configure botnet C&C domain blocking in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Enable *Redirect botnet C&C requests to Block Portal*.
3. Optionally, click the *botnet package* link. The *Botnet C&C Domain Definitions* pane opens, which displays the latest list.



4. Configure the other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure botnet C&C domain blocking in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
   edit "demo"
      set comment ''
      config domain-filter
         unset domain-filter-table
      end
      config ftgd-dns
         set options error-allow
         config filters
            ...
         end
      end
      set log-all-domain enable
      set sdns-ftgd-err-log enable
      set sdns-domain-log enable
      set block-action block
      set block-botnet enable
      set safe-search enable
      set redirect-portal 208.91.112.55
      set youtube-restrict strict
   next
end
```

Verifying the logs

Select a botnet domain from that list. From your internal network PC, use a command line tool, such as dig or nslookup, to send a DNS query to traverse the FortiGate. For example:

```
#dig canind.co
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 997
;; Flags: qr rd; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; canind.co.                   IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
canind.co.              60      IN      A       208.91.112.55

;; Received 43 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 09:55:21 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.3 ms
```

The botnet domain query was blocked and redirected to the portal IP (208.91.112.55) .

To check the DNS filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query* to view the DNS query blocked as a botnet domain.

Date/Time	Sub Type	Source	Domain Name	Query Type	Policy	Message	Domain Filter List	Category	Category Description
2019/04/04 16:43:59	dns	10.1.100.18	canind.co	A	1	Domain was blocked by dns botnet C&C			
2019/04/04 16:43:59	dns	10.1.100.18	canind.co	A	1				

To check the DNS filter log in the CLI:

```
(vdom1) # execute log filter category utm-dns

(vdom1) # execute log display
2 logs found.
2 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-04 time=16:43:59 logid="1501054601" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554421439 policyid=1 sessionid=14135
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=57447 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=24339
qname="canind.co" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" msg="Domain was blocked by dns botnet
C&C" action="redirect" botnetdomain="canind.co"

2: date=2019-04-04 time=16:43:59 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554421439 policyid=1 sessionid=14135
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=57447 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=24339
qname="canind.co" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

Botnet C&C IPDB blocking

FortiOS also maintains a botnet C&C IP address database (IPDB). If a DNS query response IP address (resolved IP address) matches an entry inside the botnet IPDB, this DNS query is blocked by the DNS filter botnet C&C.

To view the botnet IPDB list in the CLI:

```
(global) # diagnose sys botnet list 9000 10
9000. proto=TCP ip=103.228.28.166, port=80, rule_id=7630075, name_id=3, hits=0
9001. proto=TCP ip=5.9.32.166, port=481, rule_id=4146631, name_id=7, hits=0
```

```
9002. proto=TCP ip=91.89.44.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9003. proto=TCP ip=46.211.46.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9004. proto=TCP ip=77.52.52.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9005. proto=TCP ip=98.25.53.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9006. proto=TCP ip=70.120.67.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9007. proto=TCP ip=85.253.77.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9008. proto=TCP ip=193.106.81.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9009. proto=TCP ip=58.13.84.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
```

Select an IP address from the IPDB list and use a reverse lookup service to find its corresponding domain name. From your internal network PC, use a command line tool, such as dig or nslookup, to query this domain and verify that it is blocked by the DNS filter botnet C&C. For example:

```
# dig cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 35135
;; Flags: qr rd; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com.              IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com. 60      IN      A       208.91.112.55

;; Received 64 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 11:06:47 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.6 ms
```

Since the resolved IP address matches the botnet IPDB, the query was blocked and redirected to the portal IP (208.91.112.55) .

To check the DNS filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query* to view the DNS query blocked by botnet C&C IPDB.

Date/Time	Sub Type	Source	Domain Name	Query Type	Policy	Message	Domain Filter List	Category	Category Description
2019/04/05 11:06:48	dns	10.1.100.18	cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com	A	1	Domain was blocked by dns botnet C&C			
2019/04/05 11:06:48	dns	10.1.100.18	cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com	A	1				

To check the DNS filter log in the CLI:

```
(global) # execute log filter category utm-dns

(global) # execute log display
2 logs found.
2 logs returned.

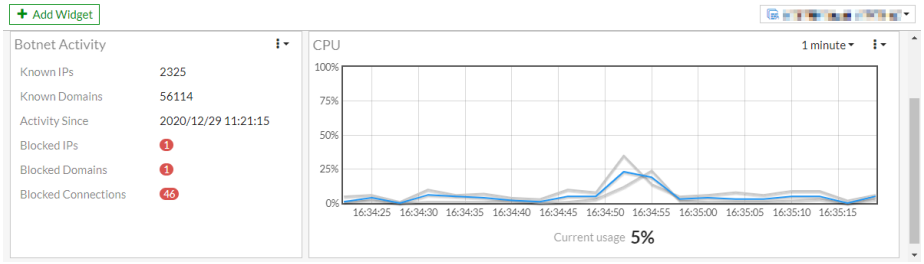
1: date=2019-04-05 time=11:06:48 logid="1501054600" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554487606 policyid=1 sessionid=55232
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=60510 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=16265
qname="cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
ipaddr="93.184.216.34" msg="Domain was blocked by dns botnet C&C" action="redirect"
botnetip=98.25.53.166

2: date=2019-04-05 time=11:06:48 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554487606 policyid=1 sessionid=55232
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=60510 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
```

```
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=16265
qname="cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

To check botnet activity:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status* and locate the *Botnet Activity* widget.



2. If you do not see the widget, click *Add Widget*, and add the *Botnet Activity* widget.

DNS safe search

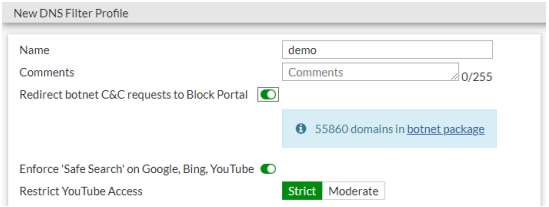
The DNS safe search option helps avoid explicit and inappropriate results in the Google, Bing, DuckDuckGo, Qwant, and YouTube search engines. The FortiGate responds with content filtered by the search engine.

For individual search engine safe search specifications, refer to the documentation for Google, Bing, DuckDuckGo, Qwant, and YouTube.

A DNS filter profile can be applied in a policy to scan DNS traffic traversing the FortiGate (see Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349), or applied on the DNS server interface (see Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368).

To configure safe search in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Enable *Enforce 'Safe search' on Google, Bing, YouTube* (this setting also applies safe search on DuckDuckGo and Qwant).
3. For *Restrict YouTube Access*, click *Strict* or *Moderate*.



4. Configure the other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure safe search in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "demo"
```

```
        config ftgd-dns
            set options error-allow
            config filters
                edit 2
                    set category 2
                next
               ...
            end
        end
        set log-all-domain enable
        set block-botnet enable
        set safe-search enable
        set youtube-restrict strict
    next
end
```

Verifying the logs

From your internal network PC, use a command line tool, such as dig or nslookup, and perform a DNS query on www.bing.com. For example:

```
# dig www.bing.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 46568
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 2; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.bing.com.                IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.bing.com.           103     IN      CNAME   strict.bing.com
strict.bing.com.        103     IN      A       204.79.197.220

;; Received 67 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 14:34:52 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 196.0 ms
```

The DNS query for www.bing.com returns with a CNAME strict.bing.com, and an A record for the CNAME. The user's web browser then connects to this address with the same search engine UI, but any explicit content search is filtered out.

To check the DNS filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*.

Date/Time	Sub Type	Source	Domain Name	Query Type	Policy	Message	Domain Filter List	Category	Category Description
2019/04/05 14:34:53	dns	10.1.100.18	www.bing.com	A	1	DNS Safe Search enforced		41	Search Engines and Portals
2019/04/05 14:34:53	dns	10.1.100.18	www.bing.com	A	1				

   The DNS filter log in FortiOS shows a message of *DNS Safe Search enforced*.

To check the DNS filter log in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category utm-dns
# execute log display
2 logs found.
2 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-05 time=14:34:53 logid="1501054804" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
```

```
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554500093 policyid=1 sessionid=65955
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=36575 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=59573
qname="www.bing.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="204.79.197.220" msg="DNS Safe
Search enforced" action="pass" sscname="strict.bing.com" cat=41 catdesc="Search Engines and
Portals"

2: date=2019-04-05 time=14:34:53 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554500092 policyid=1 sessionid=65955
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=36575 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=59573
qname="www.bing.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

Local domain filter

In addition to the FortiGuard category-based domain filter, you can define a local static domain filter to allow or block specific domains.

In a DNS filter profile, the local domain filter has a higher priority than FortiGuard category-based domain filter. DNS queries are scanned and matched first with the local domain filter. If an entry matches and the local filter action is set to block, then that DNS query is blocked and redirected.

If the local domain filter list has no match, then the FortiGuard category-based domain filter is used. If a DNS query domain name rating belongs to the block category, the query is blocked and redirected. If the FortiGuard category-based filter has no match, then the original resolved IP address is returned to the client DNS resolver.

If the local domain filter action is set to allow and an entry matches, it will skip the FortiGuard category-based domain filter and directly return to the client DNS resolver. If the local domain filter action is set to monitor and an entry matches, it will go to the FortiGuard category-based domain filter for scanning and matching.

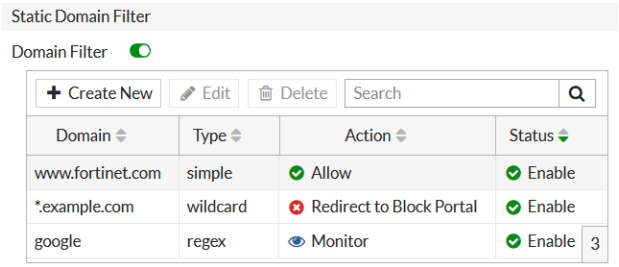
A DNS filter profile can be applied in a policy to scan DNS traffic traversing the FortiGate (see Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349), or applied on the DNS server interface (see Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368).

To configure the local domain filter in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Static Domain Filter* section, enable *Domain Filter*.
3. Click *Create New*. The *Create Domain Filter* pane opens.
4. Enter a domain, and select a *Type* and *Action*. This example has three filters:

Domain	Type	Action
www.fortinet.com	Simple	Allow
*.example.com	Wildcard	Redirect to Block Portal
google	Reg. Expression	Monitor

5. Click *OK*. The entry appears in the table.



6. Configure the other settings as needed.
7. Click *OK*.

To configure the local domain filter in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter domain-filter
    edit 1
        set name "demo"
        set comment ''
        config entries
            edit 1
                set domain "www.fortinet.com"
                set type simple
                set action allow
                set status enable
            next
            edit 2
                set domain "*.example.com"
                set type wildcard
                set action block
                set status enable
            next
            edit 3
                set domain "google"
                set type regex
                set action monitor
                set status enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Wildcard entries are converted to regular expressions by FortiOS. As a result, wildcards will match any suffix, as long as there is a word boundary following the search term.

For example:

```
config entries
    edit 1
        set domain "*.host"
        set type wildcard
    next
end
```

will match `wp36.host` and `wp36.host.pressdns.com`, but not `wp36.host123.pressdnds.com`.

To avoid this, use an explicit regular expression search string:

```
config entries
    edit 1
        set domain "^.*\\.host$"
        set type regexp
    next
end
```

To check the DNS filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*.

Date/Time	Sub Type	Source	Domain Name	Query Type	Policy	Message	Domain Filter List	Category	Category Description
2019/04/05 15:37:06	dns	10.1.100.18	www.google.com	A	1	Domain belongs to a denied category in policy		41	Search Engines and Port
2019/04/05 15:37:06	dns	10.1.100.18	www.google.com	A	1				
2019/04/05 15:36:59	dns	10.1.100.18	www.example.com	A	1	Domain was blocked because it is in the domain-filter list	demo		
2019/04/05 15:36:59	dns	10.1.100.18	www.example.com	A	1				
2019/04/05 15:36:51	dns	10.1.100.18	www.fortinet.com	A	1	Domain was allowed because it is in the domain-filter list	demo		
2019/04/05 15:36:51	dns	10.1.100.18	www.fortinet.com	A	1				

Since the local domain filter for *google* is set to monitor, it is blocked by the FortiGuard category-based domain filter because the policy action is deny.

To check the DNS filter log in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category utm-dns
# execute log display
...
7: date=2019-04-05 time=15:37:06 logid="1501054803" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503826 policyid=1 sessionid=69132
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=49832 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=4612
qname="www.google.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="208.91.112.55" msg="Domain
belongs to a denied category in policy" action="redirect" cat=41 catdesc="Search Engines and
Portals"

8: date=2019-04-05 time=15:37:06 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503826 policyid=1 sessionid=69132
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=49832 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=4612
qname="www.google.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

```
9: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:59 logid="1501054400" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503818 policyid=1 sessionid=69121
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=40659 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=24730
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" msg="Domain was blocked because it
is in the domain-filter list" action="redirect" domainfilteridx=1 domainfilterlist="demo"

10: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:59 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns"
eventtype="dns-query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503818 policyid=1
sessionid=69121 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=40659 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="demo" xid=24730 qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"

11: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:51 logid="1501054401" type="utm" subtype="dns"
eventtype="dns-response" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503810 policyid=1
sessionid=69118 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=33461 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="demo" xid=53801 qname="www.fortinet.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
ipaddr="13.56.55.78, 54.183.57.55" msg="Domain was allowed because it is in the domain-
filter list" action="pass" domainfilteridx=1 domainfilterlist="demo"

12: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:51 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns"
eventtype="dns-query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503810 policyid=1
sessionid=69118 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=33461 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="demo" xid=53801 qname="www.fortinet.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

DNS translation

This setting allows you to translate a DNS resolved IP address to another IP address you specify on a per-policy basis.

For example, website A has a public address of 1.2.3.4. However, when your internal network users visit this website, you want them to connect to the internal host 192.168.3.4. You can use DNS translation to translate the DNS resolved address 1.2.3.4 to 192.168.3.4. Reverse use of DNS translation is also applicable. For example, if you want a public DNS query of your internal server to get a public IP address, then you can translate a DNS resolved private IP to a public IP address.

A DNS filter profile can be applied in a policy to scan DNS traffic traversing the FortiGate (see Configuring a DNS filter profile on page 1349), or applied on the DNS server interface (see Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server on page 1368).

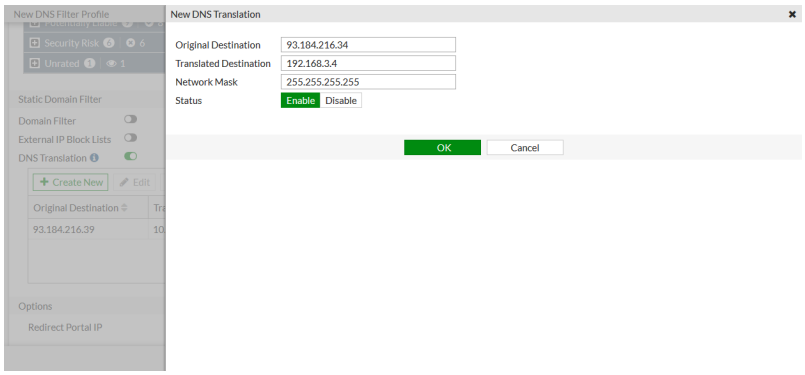
Sample configuration

This configuration forces the DNS filter profile to translate 93.184.216.34 (www.example.com) to 192.168.3.4. When internal network users perform a DNS query for www.example.com, they do not get the original www.example.com IP address of 93.184.216.34. Instead, it is replaced with 192.168.3.4.

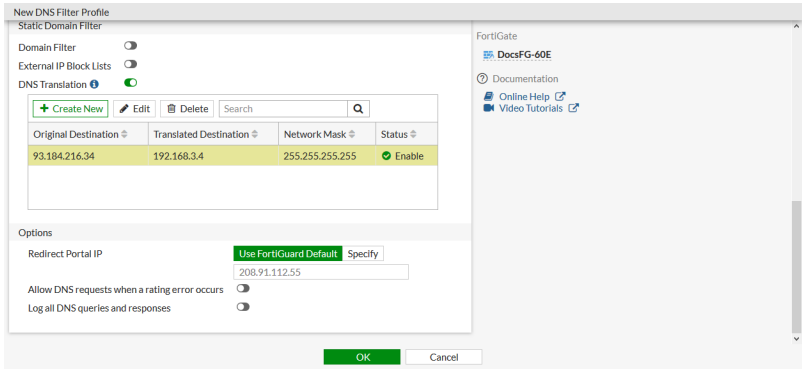
To configure DNS translation in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. In the *Static Domain Filter* section, enable *DNS Translation*.
3. Click *Create New*. The *New DNS Translation* pane opens.

4. Enter the *Original Destination* (the domain's original IP address), the *Translated Destination* IP address, and the *Network Mask*.



5. Click *OK*. The entry appears in the table.



6. Configure the other settings as needed.
7. Click *OK*.

To configure DNS translation in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "demo"
        set comment ''
        ...
        config dns-translation
            edit 1
                set src 93.184.216.34
                set dst 192.168.3.4
                set netmask 255.255.255.255
            next
        end
        set redirect-portal 0.0.0.0
        set redirect-portal6 ::
        set youtube-restrict strict
    next
end
```

To check DNS translation using a command line tool before DNS translation:

```
# dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 27030
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 2; ADDITIONAL: 0
```

```
;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        33946   IN      A       93.184.216.34

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
example.com.            18578   IN      NS      b.iana-servers.net.
example.com.            18578   IN      NS      a.iana-servers.net.

;; Received 97 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 10:47:26 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.5 ms
```

To check DNS translation using a command line tool after DNS translation:

```
# dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 62060
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 2; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        32491   IN      A       192.168.3.4

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
example.com.            17123   IN      NS      b.iana-servers.net.
example.com.            17123   IN      NS      a.iana-servers.net.

;; Received 97 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 11:11:41 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.5 ms
```

DNS translation network mask

The following is an example of DNS translation that uses a network mask:

To configure DNS translation in the CLI:

```
config dns-translation
        edit 1
           set src 93.184.216.34
           set dst 1.2.3.4
           set netmask 255.255.224.0
        next
    end
```

To check DNS translation using a command line tool after DNS translation:

```
# dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 6736
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 2; ADDITIONAL: 0
```

```
;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        29322   IN      A       1.2.24.34

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
example.com.            13954   IN      NS      a.iana-servers.net.
example.com.            13954   IN      NS      b.iana-servers.net.

;; Received 97 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 12:04:30 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 2.0 ms
```

The binary arithmetic to convert 93.184.216.34 to 1.2.3.4 with the subnet mask is as follows:

1. AND src(Original IP) with negative netmask (93.184.216.34 & ~255.255.224.0):

```
01011101.10111000.11011000.00100010 93.184.216.34
00000000.00000000.00011111.11111111 ~255.255.224.0
-------------------------------------------------------- &
00000000.00000000.00011000.00100010 0.0.24.34
```

2. AND dst(Translated IP) with netmask:

```
00000001.00000010.00000011.00000100 1.2.3.4
11111111.11111111.11100000.00000000 255.255.224.0
-------------------------------------------------------- &
00000001.00000010.00000000.00000000 1.2.0.0
```

3. Final step 2 bitwise-OR 3:

```
00000000.00000000.00011000.00100010 0.0.24.34
00000001.00000010.00000000.00000000 1.2.0.0
-------------------------------------------------------- |
00000001.00000010.00011000.00100010 1.2.24.34
```

Applying DNS filter to FortiGate DNS server

You can configure a FortiGate as a DNS server in your network. When you enable DNS service on a specific interface, the FortiGate will listen for DNS service on that interface.

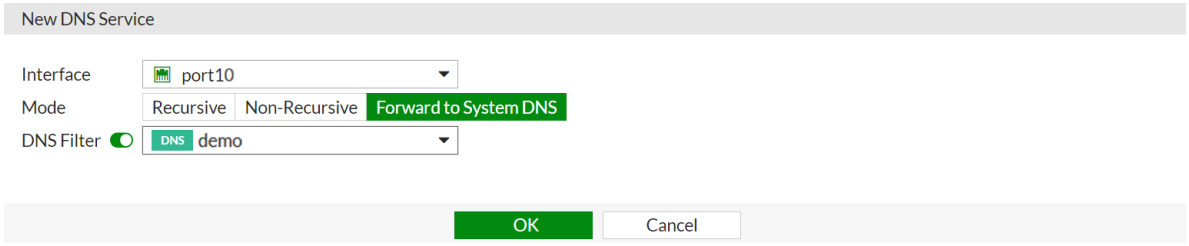
Depending on the configuration, DNS service works in three modes: *Recursive*, *Non-Recursive*, or *Forward to System DNS* (server). For details on how to configure the FortiGate as a DNS server and configure the DNS database, see FortiGate DNS server on page 460.

You can apply a DNS filter profile to *Recursive* and *Forward to System DNS* mode. This is the same as the FortiGate working as a transparent DNS proxy for DNS relay traffic.

To configure DNS service in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers* (if this option is not available, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *DNS Database*).
2. In the *DNS Service on Interface* section, click *Create New* and select an *Interface* from the dropdown.
3. For *Mode*, select *Forward to System DNS*.

4. Enable *DNS Filter* and select a profile from the dropdown.



5. Click *OK*.

To configure DNS service in the CLI:

```
config system dns-server
    edit "port10"
        set mode forward-only
        set dnsfilter-profile "demo"
    next
end
```

To check DNS service with a DNS filter profile using a command line tool:

In this example, port10 is enabled as a DNS service with the DNS filter profile demo. The IP address of port10 is 10.1.100.5 , and the DNS filter profile is configured to block category 52 (information technology). From your internal network PC, use a command line tool, such as dig or nslookup, to perform a DNS query. For example:

```
# dig @10.1.100.5 www.fortinet.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 52809
;; Flags: qr rd; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.fortinet.com.            IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.fortinet.com.       60      IN      A       208.91.112.55

;; Received 50 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 14:36:34 PDT
;; From 10.1.100.5@53(UDP) in 13.6 ms
```

The relay DNS traffic was filtered based on the DNS filter profile configuration. It was blocked and redirected to the portal IP (208.91.112.55).

Troubleshooting for DNS filter

If you have trouble with the DNS filter profile in your policy, start with the following troubleshooting steps:

- Check the connection between the FortiGate and FortiGuard DNS rating server (SDNS server).
- Check that the FortiGate has a valid FortiGuard web filter license.
- Check the FortiGate DNS filter configuration.

Checking the connection between the FortiGate and FortiGuard SDNS server

You need to ensure the FortiGate can connect to the FortiGuard SDNS server. By default, the FortiGate uses DNS over TLS (DoT, TCP port 853) to connect to the SDNS server. See DNS over TLS on page 468 for more information.

To check the connection between the FortiGate and SDNS server:

1. Verify the FortiGuard SDNS server information:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 3
...
SDNS servers:
173.243.140.53:853 vrf=0 tz=-480 encrypt=dot req=0 to=0 res=0 rt=34 ready=1 timer=0
probe=0 failure=0 last_failed=0
```

   The SDNS server IP address might be different depending on location (in this example, it is 173.243.140.53:853).

2. In the management VDOM, check the communication between the FortiGate and the SDNS server:

```
# execute ping 173.243.140.53
```

3. If FortiGuard is not reachable using anycast, configure the default FortiGuard SDNS (unicast) server (208.91.112.220):

```
config system fortiguard
    set fortiguard-anycast disable
    set sdns-server-ip "208.91.112.220"
end
```

4. Verify the list of SDNS servers again:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 3
FGD_DNS_SERVICE_LICENSE:
server=208.91.112.220:53, expiry=2023-10-28, expired=0, type=2
server=83.231.212.53:53, expiry=2023-10-28, expired=0, type=2
```

   The default FortiGuard SDNS server should work in most cases; however, you can switch to another server to see if it improves latency.



By default, DNS filtering connects to the FortiGuard secure DNS server over anycast and uses DoT (TCP port 853) when the default settings of `fortiguard-anycast enable` and `fortiguard-anycast-source fortinet` are configured. Disabling `fortiguard-anycast` will force the FortiGate to use cleartext (UDP port 53) instead of DoT (TCP port 853) in addition to disabling FortiGuard secure DNS over anycast.

Checking the FortiGuard DNS rating service license

The FortiGuard DNS rating service shares the license with the FortiGuard web filter, so you must have a valid web filter license for the DNS rating service to work. While the license is shared, the DNS rating service uses a separate connection mechanism from the web filter rating.

To check the DNS rating service license in the CLI:

1. View the DNS settings:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 3
```

2. Find the `FGD_DNS_SERVICE_LICENSE` line and check that the license has not expired:

```
FGD_DNS_SERVICE_LICENSE:
server=173.243.140.53:853, expiry=2023-10-28, expired=0, type=2
```

3. Find the `SDNS servers` line to view the functioning servers:

```
SDNS servers:
173.243.140.53:853 vrf=0 tz=-480 encrypt=dot req=0 to=0 res=0 rt=34 ready=1 timer=0
probe=0 failure=0 last_failed=0
```

Checking the FortiGate DNS filter profile configuration

To check the DNS filter profile configuration:

1. In FortiOS, create a local domain filter and set the *Action* to *Redirect to Block Portal* (see Local domain filter on page 1362).
2. Apply this DNS filter profile to the policy.
3. From the client PC, perform a DNS query on this domain. If you get the profile's redirected portal address, this means that the DNS filter profile works as expected.

Additional troubleshooting

Use `diagnose test application dnsproxy <test level>` to troubleshoot further DNS proxy information, where:

Test level	Action
1	Clear DNS cache
2	Show statistics
3	Dump DNS setting
4	Reload FQDN
5	Requery FQDN
6	Dump FQDN
7	Dump DNS cache
8	Dump DNS database
9	Reload DNS database
10	Dump secure DNS policy/profile
11	Dump botnet domain

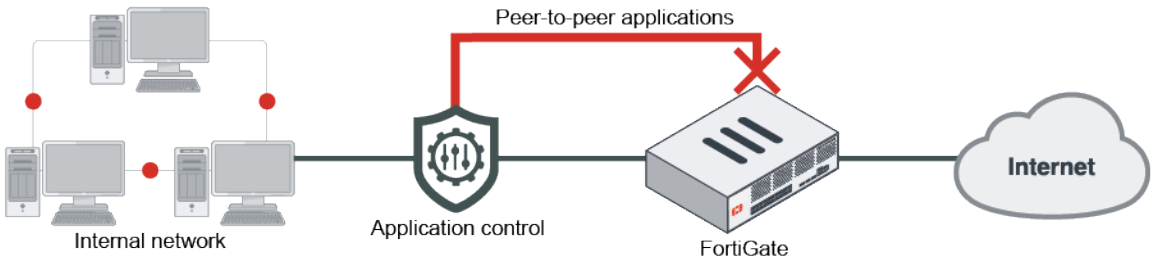
Test level	Action
12	Reload secure DNS setting
13	Show hostname cache
14	Clear hostname cache
15	Show SDNS rating cache
16	Clear SDNS rating cache
17	Show DNS debug bit mask
18	Show DNS debug object members
99	Restart the dnsproxy worker

To debug DNS proxy details:

```
# diagnose debug application dnsproxy -1
# diagnose debug {enable | disable}
```

Application control

FortiGates can recognize network traffic generated by a large number of applications. Application control sensors specify what action to take with the application traffic. Application control uses IPS protocol decoders that can analyze network traffic to detect application traffic, even if the traffic uses non-standard ports or protocols. Application control supports traffic detection using the HTTP protocol (versions 1.0, 1.1, and 2.0).



FortiOS includes three preloaded application sensors:

- *default* (monitors all applications)
- *wifi-default* (default configuration for offloading WiFi traffic)
- *block-high-risk*

You can customize these sensors, or you can create your own to log and manage the applications on your network.

Once configured, you can add the application sensor to a firewall policy.

This functionality requires a subscription to FortiGuard Application Control.

The following topics provide information about application control:

- Configuring an application sensor on page 1373
- Basic category filters and overrides on page 1374
- Excluding signatures in application control profiles on page 1377
- Port enforcement check on page 1379
- Protocol enforcement on page 1379
- SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic in a sandwich topology on page 1381
- Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures on page 1382

Configuring an application sensor

FortiGates can recognize network traffic generated by a large number of applications using application control, which relies on IPS protocol decoders. Application sensors control what action is taken with application traffic.

To configure an application sensor:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Name	Enter a unique name for the sensor.
Comments	Enter a comment (optional).
Categories	Configure the action to take on groups of signatures based on their category type. Applications belonging to the category trigger the configured action: monitor, allow, block, or quarantine. See Configuring category filters on page 1374 for more information.
Network Protocol Enforcement	Enable/disable the enforcement of protocols over selected ports. See Protocol enforcement on page 1379 for more information.
Application and Filter Overrides	Configure multiple applications signatures with a dedicated action for a single sensor. Filters can be added based on the application category, behavior, popularity, protocol, risk, technology, or vendor subtype. For more information, see • Configuring application and filter overrides on page 1375 • Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures on page 1382 • Blocking applications with custom signatures on page 1467
Block applications detected on non-default ports	When enabled: • For monitor and allow actions, applications will be blocked if detected on non-default ports (as defined in FortiGuard application signatures). • Block actions still block traffic for the application regardless of the port. See Port enforcement check on page 1379 for more information.
Allow and Log DNS Traffic	Allow and log DNS application protocol signatures.

QUIC	Allowing QUIC instructs the FortiGate to inspect Google Chrome packets for a QUIC header and logs as a QUIC message. Blocking QUIC forces Google Chrome to use HTTP2/TLS1.2 and the FortiGate logs QUIC as blocked.
Replacement Messages for HTTP-based Applications	Enable/disable replacement messages for blocked applications. See Replacement messages on page 1023 for information about replacement messages.

3. Click *OK*.

Basic category filters and overrides

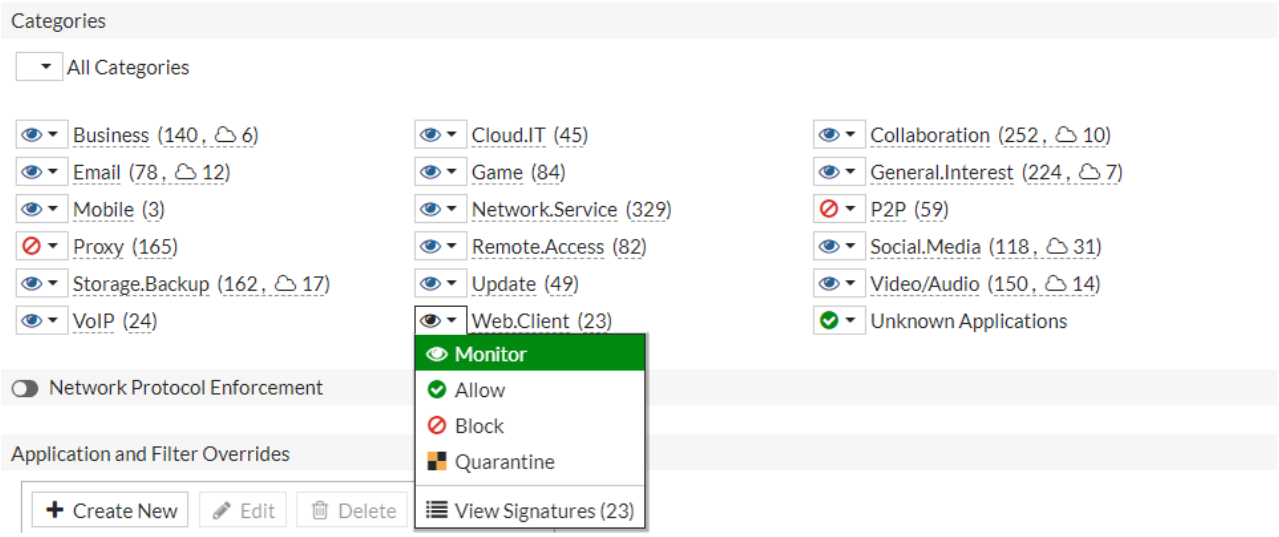
Once you have created an application sensor, you can define the applications that you want to control. You can add applications and filters using categories, application overrides, and/or filter overrides with designated actions (monitor, allow, block, or quarantine).

Configuring category filters

Categories allow you to choose groups of signatures based on a category type. Applications belonging to the category trigger the action that is set for the category. For a list of application control categories, refer to the FortiGuard Labs website.

To configure category filters in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. Under *Categories*, click the icon next to the category name to set the action or view the application signatures.



3. Click *OK*.

To configure category filters in the CLI:

```
config application list
    edit <name>
```

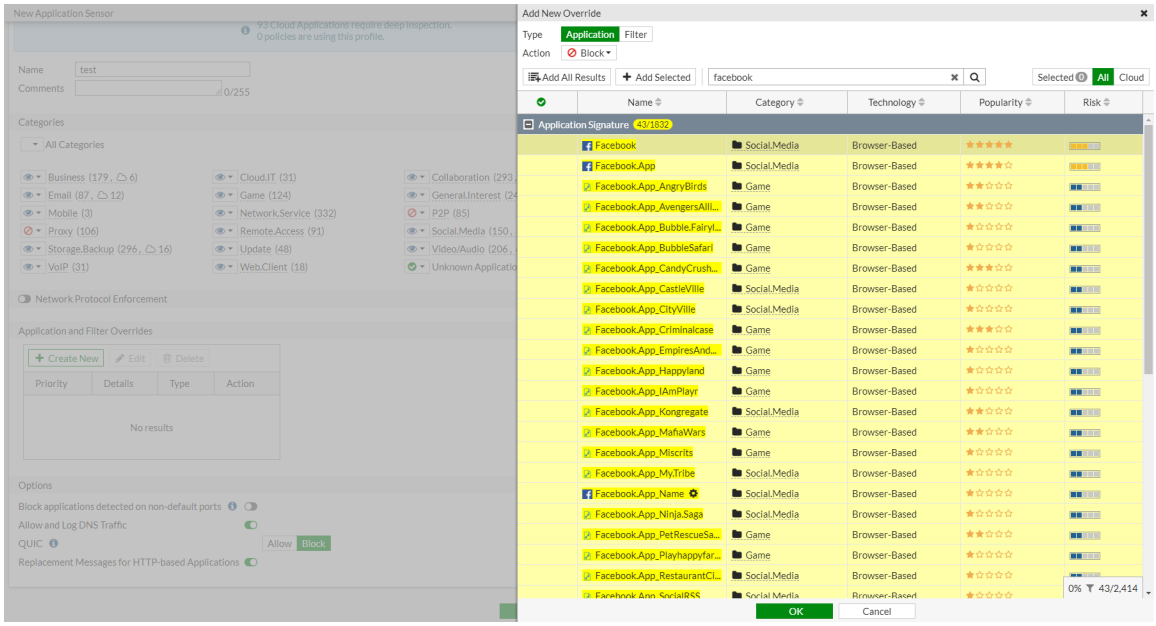
```
        config entries
            edit <id>
                set category <id>
                set action {pass | block | reset}
                set log {enable | disable}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Configuring application and filter overrides

Multiple application signatures can be added for one sensor with a designated action. Filters can be added based on behavior, application category, popularity, protocol, risk, technology, or vendor subtypes.

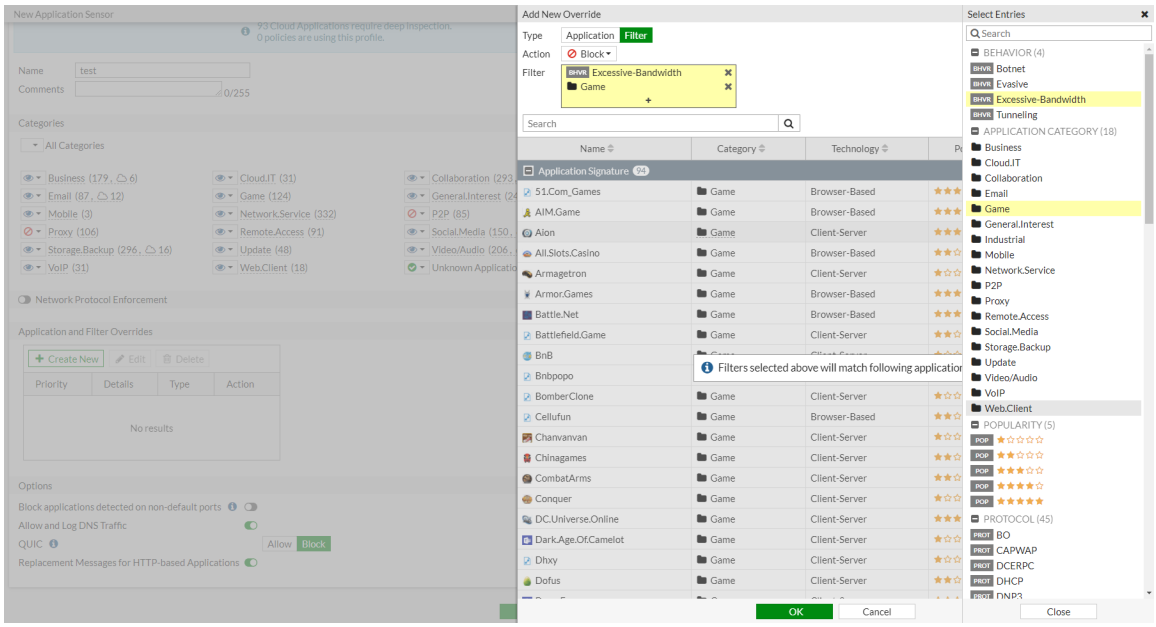
To configure overrides in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. In the *Application and Filter Overrides* table, click *Create New*.
3. Add an application:
   a. For *Type*, select *Application*.
   b. Select an *Action* from the dropdown.
   c. In the *Search* box, enter an application name and press `Enter`.
   d. In the search results, select desired the applications (you can select multiple applications) and click *Add Selected*.



   e. Click *OK*.
4. Add a filter:
   a. In the *Application and Filter Overrides* table, click *Create New*.
   b. For *Type*, select *Filter*.
   c. Select an *Action* from the dropdown.

d. In the *Filter* field, click the + . The *Select Entries* pane opens, and you can search based on filter subtypes. This example has excessive bandwidth (under behavior) and game (under application category).



e. Click *OK*.

5. Click *OK*.

To configure overrides in the CLI:

```
config application list
    edit <name>
        config entries
            edit <id>
                set protocols <integer>
                set risk <integer>
                set vendor <id>
                set technology <id>
                set behavior <id>
                set popularity <integer>
                set action {pass | block | reset}
                set log {enable | disable}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

`protocols <integer>`	Application protocol filter (0 - 47, or all).
`risk <integer>`	Risk or impact of allowing traffic from this application to occur (1 - 5; low (1), elevated (2), medium (3), high (4), and critical (5)).
`vendor <id>`	Application vendor filter (0 - 25, or all).
`technology <id>`	Application technology filter: • all • 0 (network-protocol)

	• 1 (browser-based) • 2 (client-server) • 4 (peer-to-peer)
`behavior <id>`	Application behavior filter: • all • 2 (botnet) • 3 (evasive) • 5 (excessive bandwidth) • 6 (tunneling) • 9 (cloud)
`popularity <integer>`	Application popularity filter (1 - 5, from least to most popular).
`action {pass | block | reset}`	Pass/block traffic or reset the connection for traffic from this application (default = block).
`log {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable logging for this application list (default = enable).

Excluding signatures in application control profiles

In an application control list, the exclusion option allows users to specify a list of applications they wish to exclude from an entry filtered by category, technology, or others. By excluding the signature, the application is no longer processed on the entry in which it is excluded, but may match subsequent entries that exist.

To configure signature exclusion:

```
config application list
    edit <name>
        config entries
            edit <id>
                set category <id>
                set exclusion <application id>
                set action {pass | block | reset}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Sample configurations

In the following example, category 23 (social media) is blocked in the entries, and signature 34527 (Instagram) is excluded from this entry. Traffic to Instagram will pass because the signature is removed from entry 1 and the action of `other-application-action` is set to `pass`.

To configure signature exclusion:

```
config application list
    edit "test"
        set other-application-action pass
```

```
        set unknown-application-action pass
        set other-application-log enable
        set unknown-application-log enable
            config entries
                edit 1
                    set category 23
                    set exclusion 34527
                    set action block
                next
            end
    next
end
```

In the following example, entry 1 is configured so that category 23 (social media) is set to pass and signature 34527 (Instagram) is excluded. In entry 2, application 34527 (Instagram) is blocked, so the traffic to Instagram will be blocked, even though it is excluded in entry 1. Traffic to other signatures in category 23, such as Facebook, will still pass.

To configure signature exclusion:

```
config application list
    edit "test"
        set other-application-action pass
        set unknown-application-action pass
        set other-application-log enable
        set unknown-application-log enable
            config entries
                edit 1
                    set category 23
                    set exclusion 34527
                    set action pass
                next
                edit 2
                    set application 34527
                    set action block
                next
            end
    next
end
```

In the following example, an explicit proxy is behind the FortiGate with an excluded signature for 107347980 (Proxy.HTTP) and category 6 (proxy) is set to block. The client will allow normal proxy traffic to pass, but it will discard all proxy application traffic (such as KProxy, Tor, and so on).

To configure signature exclusion:

```
config application list
    edit "test"
        set other-application-action pass
        set unknown-application-action pass
        set other-application-log enable
        set unknown-application-log enable
            config entries
                edit 1
                    set category 6
                    set exclusion 107347980
                    set action block
```

```
                next
            end
    next
end
```

Port enforcement check

Most networking applications run on specific ports. For example, SSH runs on port 22, and Facebook runs on ports 80 and 443.

If the default network service is enabled in the application control profile, a port enforcement check is done at the application profile level, and any detected application signatures running on the non-standard TCP/IP port are blocked. This means that each allowed application runs on its default port.

To configure port enforcement check:

```
config application list
    edit <name>
        set enforce-default-app-port enable
        config entries
            edit 1
                set application 15896
                set action pass
            next
        end
    next
end
```

For example, when applying this application control sensor, FTP traffic (application 15896) with the standard port (port 21) is allowed, while the non-standard port (port 2121) is blocked.

Protocol enforcement

Protocol enforcement allows you to configure networking services (e.g. FTP, HTTP, HTTPS) on known ports (e.g. 21, 80, 443). For protocols that are not allowlisted under select ports, the IPS engine performs the violation action to block, allow, or monitor that traffic.

This feature can be used in the following scenarios:

- When one protocol dissector confirms the service of network traffic, protocol enforcement can check whether the confirmed service is allowlisted under the server port. If it is not allowlisted, the traffic is considered a violation and IPS can take the action specified in the configuration (block or monitor it).
- When there is no confirmed service for the network traffic, the traffic is considered a service violation if IPS dissectors rule out all of the services enforced under its server port.

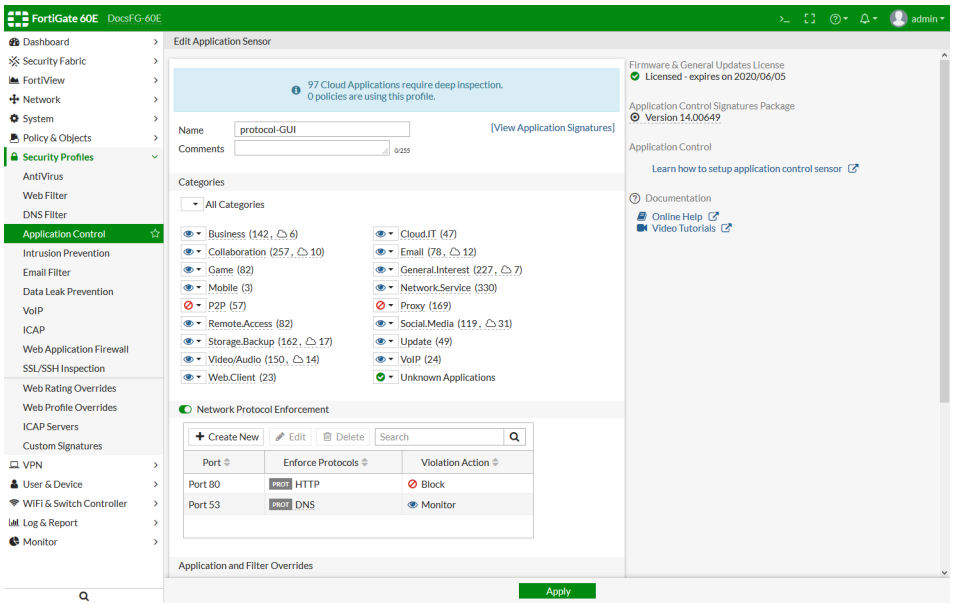
In an applicable profile, a default-network-service list can be created to associate well known ports with accepted services.

In the following example, an application sensor is configured to enforce HTTP on port 80 (block), and DNS on port 53 (monitor).

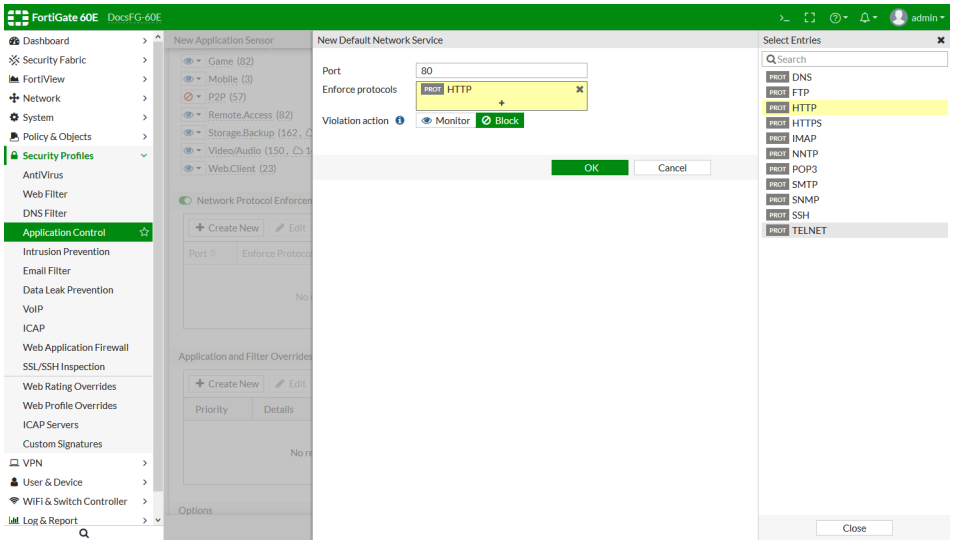
To setup protocol enforcement in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Create a new application sensor or edit an existing one.
3. Enable *Network Protocol Enforcement*.

   Enforcement entries can be created, edited, or deleted to configure network services on certain ports and determine the violation action.



4. In the *Network Protocol Enforcement* table click *Create New*.
5. Configure the entry for HTTP:
   a. Set *Port* to *80*.
   b. Set *Enforced protocols* to *HTTP*.
   c. Set *Violation action* to *Block*.
   d. Click *OK*.



6. Configure the entry for DNS:

a. In the *Network Protocol Enforcement* table click *Create New*.
b. Set *Port* to *53*.
c. Set *Enforced protocols* to *DNS*.
d. Set *Violation action* to *Monitor*.
e. Click *OK*.

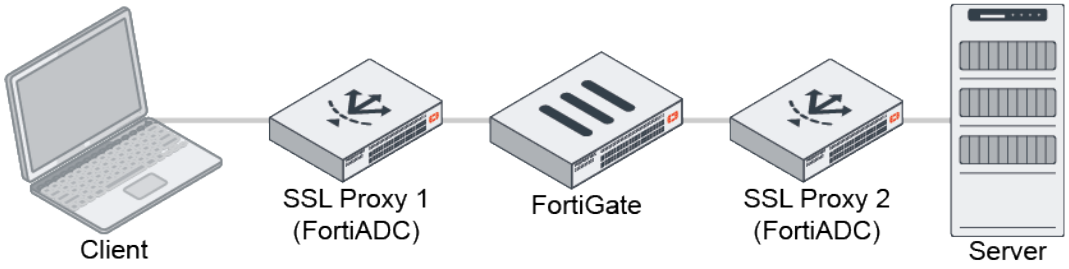
7. Click *OK*.

To setup protocol enforcement in the CLI:

```
config application list
    edit "protocol-GUI"
        set other-application-log enable
        set control-default-network-services enable
        config default-network-services
            edit 1
                set port 80
                set services http
                set violation-action block
            next
            edit 2
                set port 53
                set services dns
                set violation-action monitor
            next
        end
    next
end
```

SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic in a sandwich topology

When a FortiGate is sandwiched between SSL encryption and decryption devices, the FortiGate can process the decrypted traffic that passes between those devices. This feature adds support for decrypted traffic in application control. In some pre-defined signatures, the signature is pre-marked with the *require_ssl_di* tag. The `force-inclusion-ssl-di-sigs` option under `application list` allows users to control the inspection of dissected traffic. When this option is enabled, the IPS engine forces the pre-marked SSL-based signatures to be applied to the decrypted traffic of the respective applications. In the following topology, SSL Proxy 1 handles the client connection and SSL Proxy 2 handles the server connection, leaving the content unencrypted as traffic passes through the FortiGate.



To configure SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic:

```
config application list
    edit "test"
```

```
        set force-inclusion-ssl-di-sigs {enable | disable}
    next
end
```

Example pre-marked SSL-based signature:

F-SBID(--vuln_id 15722; --attack_id 42985; --name "Facebook_Chat"; --group im; --protocol tcp; --default_action pass; --revision 4446; --app_cat 23; --vendor 3; --technology 1; --behavior 9; --pop 4; --risk 2; --language "Multiple"; --weight 20; --depend-on 15832; --depend-on 38468; ***--require_ssl_di "Yes"****; --casi 1; --casi 8; --parent 15832; --app_port "TCP/443"; --severity info; --status hidden; --service http; --flow from_client; --pattern "/pull?"; --context uri; --no_case; --pattern ".facebook.com"; --context host; --no_case; --tag set,Tag.Facebook.Pull; --tag quiet; --scan-range 10m,all; --date 20190301;)*



All signatures that include the *require_ssl_di* tag are pre-defined and cannot be customized.

Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures

Application control signatures that support parameters (such as SCADA protocols) can have multiple parameters grouped together and matched at the same time. Multiple application parameter groups can be added to an override. Traffic will be flagged if it matches at least one parameter group.

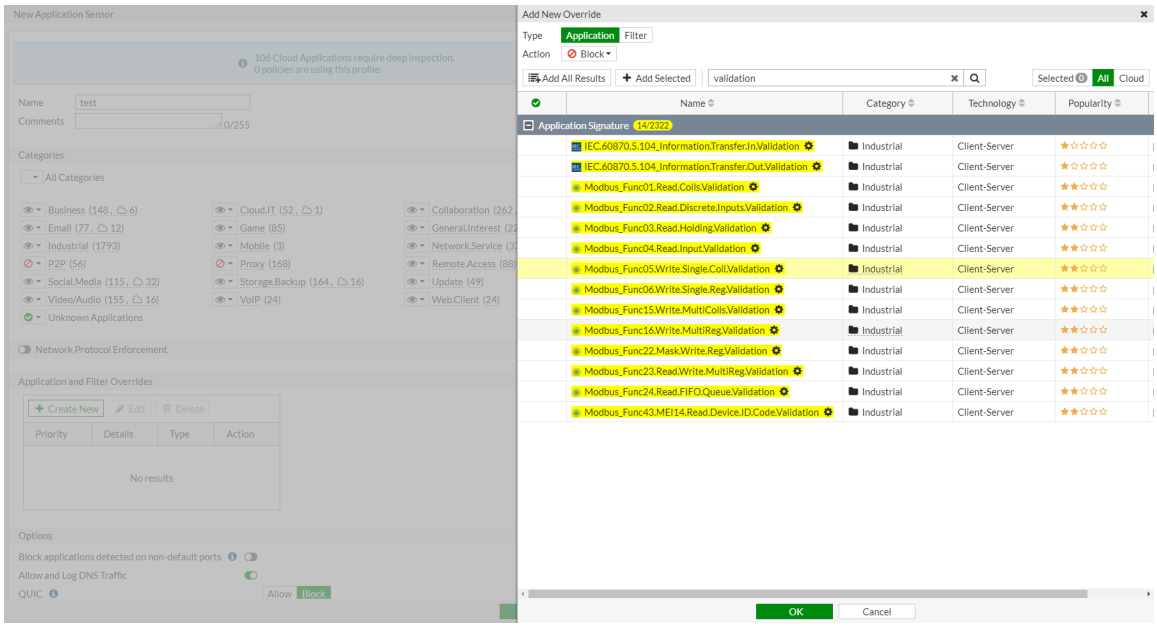
This example uses the Modbus_Func05.Write.Single.Coil.Validation signature. This is an industrial signature, so ensure that no signatures are excluded:

```
config ips global
    set exclude-signatures none
end
```

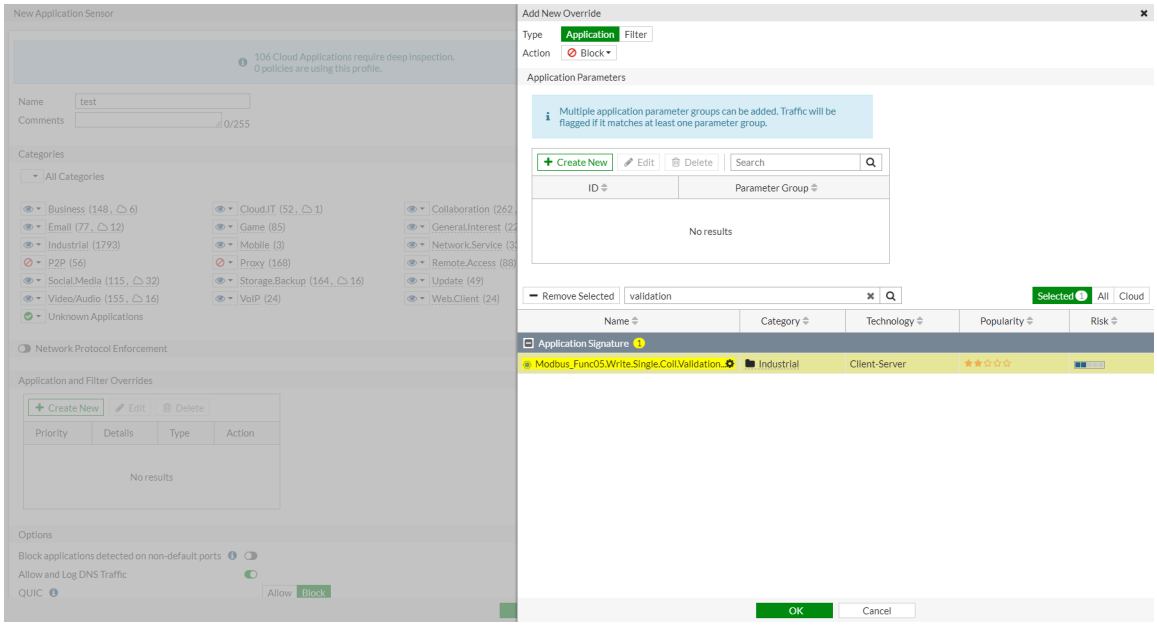
To configure an application sensor with multiple parameters in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. In the *Application and Filter Overrides* table, click *Create New*.
3. Search for *Modbus_Func05.Write.Single.Coil.Validation* and press `Enter`. A gear icon beside the signature name indicates it has configurable application parameters.

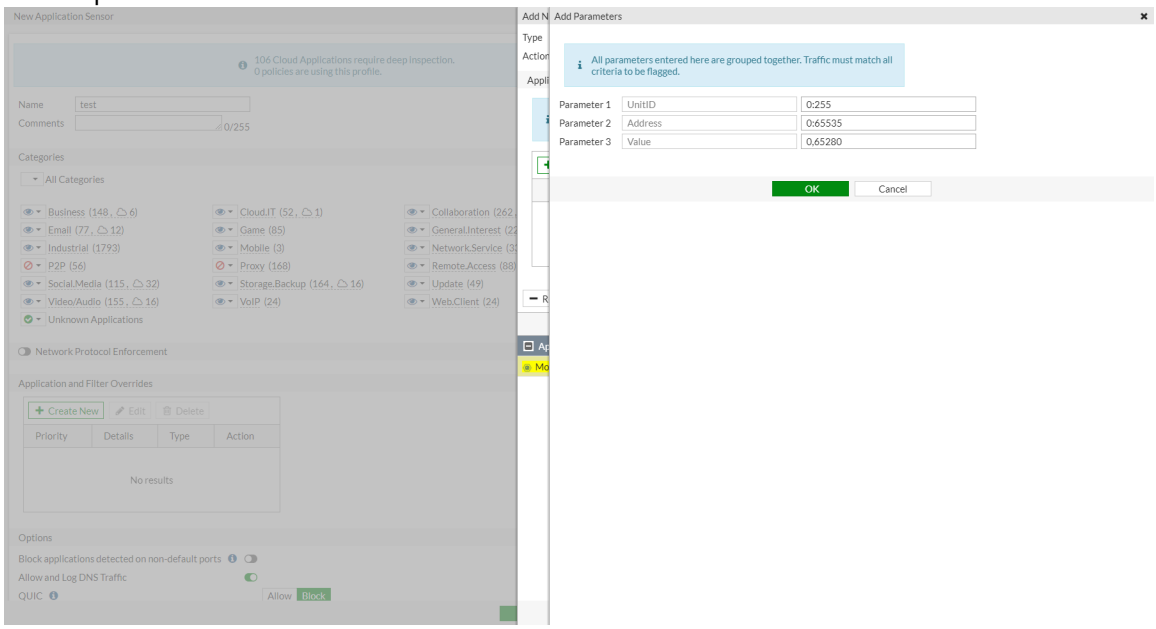
4. In the search results, select *Modbus_Func05.Write.Single.Coil.Validation* and click *Add Selected*.



5. Click the *Selected* tab. In the *Application Parameters* section, click *Create New*.



6. Edit the parameter values as needed.



7. Click *OK*.
8. Add more signatures if needed.
9. Click *OK*.

To configure an application sensor with multiple parameters in the CLI:

```
config application list
    edit "test"
        set other-application-log enable
        config entries
            edit 1

                set application 48885
                config parameters
                    edit 1
                        config members
                            edit 1
                                set name "UnitID"
                                set value "0:255"
                            next
                            edit 2
                                set name "Address"
                                set value "0:65535"
                            next
                            edit 3
                                set name "Value"
                                set value "0,65280"
                            next
                        end
                    next
                end
            next
            edit 2
```

```
                set category 2 6
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Intrusion prevention

Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) detects network attacks and prevents threats from compromising the network, including protected devices. IPS can be in the form of a standalone appliance, or part of the feature set of a Next Generation Firewall (NGFW), such as FortiGate. IPS utilizes signatures, protocol decoders, heuristics (or behavioral monitoring), threat intelligence (such as FortiGuard Labs), and advanced threat detection in order to prevent exploitation of known and unknown zero-day threats. FortiGate IPS is even capable of performing deep packet inspection to scan encrypted payloads in order to detect and prevent threats from attackers.

Networks and devices are often exploited through vulnerabilities. Software vulnerabilities are one such example where a bug or inherent weakness in the code provides attackers an opportunity to gain access to the software. More severe vulnerabilities allow unauthorized access, data leakage, and execution of malicious code. Exploitation of these vulnerabilities can cause damage to the machine and infect others. While the best solution is to patch vulnerabilities as soon as patches are available, IPS signatures offer a solution to detect and block exploitation of many vulnerabilities before they enter the network.

IPS signatures

Fortinet's solution combines industry-leading threat intelligence from FortiGuard Labs with the FortiGate NGFW to identify the latest threats and prevent them from entering your network. IPS signatures are one such method for delivering the latest protection. FortiGuard Labs uses AI and Machine Learning (ML) to analyze billions of events every day. The FortiGuard Labs research team also proactively performs threat research to discover new vulnerabilities and exploitation, and produces signatures to identify such threats. These IPS signatures are delivered to each FortiGate daily, so that the IPS engine is armed with the latest databases to match the latest threats.

IPS sensors

A FortiGate IPS sensor is a collection of IPS signatures and filters that define the scope of what the IPS engine will scan when the IPS sensor is applied. An IPS sensor can have multiple sets of signatures and/or filters. A set of IPS signatures consists of manually selected signatures, while a set of IPS filters consists of filters based on signature attributes like target, severity, protocol, OS, and application. Each signature has predefined attributes and an action, such as block, allow, monitor (pass), quarantine, and reset. It is also possible to create custom IPS signatures to apply to an IPS sensor.

From the *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention* pane, you can create new IPS sensors and view a list of predefined sensors.

FortiOS includes the following predefined IPS sensors with associated predefined signatures:

Predefined IPS sensors	Description
all_default	Filters all predefined signatures, and sets action to the signature's default action.

Predefined IPS sensors	Description
all_default_pass	Filters all predefined signatures, and sets action to pass/monitor.
default	Filters all predefined signatures with severity of Critical/High/Medium. Sets action to signature's default action.
high_security	Filters all predefined signatures with severity of Critical/High/Medium, and sets action to Block. For Low severity signatures, sets action to signature's default action.
protect_client	Protects against client-side vulnerabilities by filtering on `Target=Client`. Sets action to signature's default action.
protect_email_server	Protects against email server-side vulnerabilities by filtering on `Target=Server` and `Protocol=IMAP`, `POP3` or `SMTP`. Sets action to signature's default action.
protect_http_server	Protects against HTTP server-side vulnerabilities by filtering on `Target=Server` and `Protocol=HTTP`. Sets action to signature's default action.
wifi-default	Filters all predefined signatures with severity of Critical/High/Medium. Sets action to signature's default action. Used in profile for offloading WiFi traffic.

DDoS attacks

Besides protecting against threats and exploitation of vulnerabilities, the IPS engine is also responsible for mitigating Denial of Service (DoS) attacks where attackers attempt to bring a service down by flooding the target with traffic from distributed systems. Using anomaly-based defense, FortiGate can detect a variety of L3 and L4 anomalies and take action against these attacks. This can be configured under IPv4 and IPv6 DoS Policies, which is discussed in detail under DoS protection on page 1141.

This section contains the following topics:

- Signature-based defense on page 1386
- Configuring an IPS sensor on page 1390
- IPS configuration options on page 1392
- IPS signature filter options on page 1397

This section also provides the following examples about IPS sensors:

- IPS with botnet C&C IP blocking on page 1399
- IPS sensor for IEC 61850 MMS protocol on page 1403

Signature-based defense

Signature-based defense is used against known attacks or vulnerability exploits. These often involve an attacker attempting to gain access to your network. The attacker must communicate with the host in an attempt to gain access, and this communication includes commands or sequences of commands and variables. The IPS signatures include these command sequences, allowing the FortiGate unit to detect and stop the attack.

This section describes the following components used in signature-based defense:

- IPS signatures on page 1387
- Protocol decoders on page 1387

- IPS engine on page 1387
- IPS sensors on page 1387
- IPS filters on page 1388
- Custom and predefined signature entries on page 1389
- Policies on page 1390

IPS signatures

IPS signatures are the basis of signature-based intrusion prevention. Every attack can be reduced to a particular string of commands or a sequence of commands and variables. Signatures include this information, and FortiGate uses the information to detect and stop attacks.

Signatures also include characteristics about the attack they describe. These characteristics include the network protocol associated with the attack, the vulnerable operating system, and the vulnerable application.

To view the complete list of signatures, go to *Security Profiles* > *IPS Signatures*. The list of signatures includes predefined and custom signatures. You can hover over the name of the IPS signature to display a pop-up window that includes an ID number. You can click the ID number to display the FortiGuard page.

Protocol decoders

Before examining network traffic for attacks, the IPS engine uses protocol decoders to identify each protocol appearing in the traffic. Attacks are protocol-specific, so your FortiGate unit conserves resources by looking for attacks only in the protocols used to transmit them. For example, the FortiGate unit will only examine HTTP traffic for the presence of a signature describing an HTTP attack.

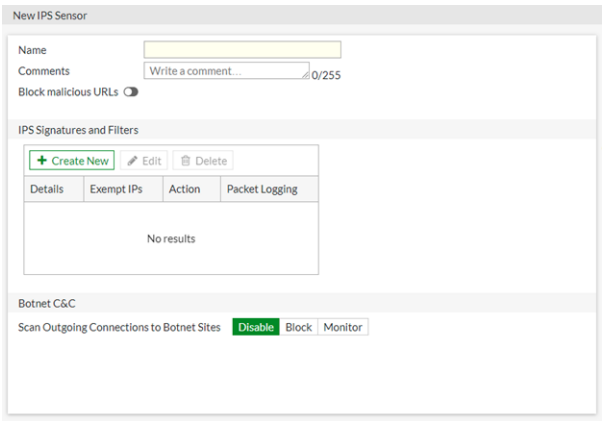
IPS engine

Once the protocol decoders separate the network traffic by protocol, the IPS engine examines the network traffic for the attack signatures by using IPS sensors.

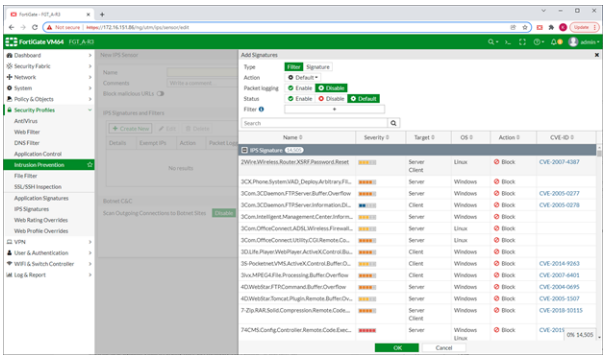
IPS sensors

The IPS engine does not examine network traffic for all signatures. The IPS engine examines network traffic for signatures specified in IPS sensors. You must first create an IPS sensor, and then you can specify what signatures the IPS sensor will use. You can add individual signatures to IPS sensors, or you can add filters to IPS sensors, and the filters automatically include the applicable signatures.

To view IPS sensors, go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*. To create a new sensor, click *Create New*.



An IPS sensor is composed of IPS signatures and filters. Under *IPS Signatures and Filters*, click *Create New* to create a set of IPS signatures or a set of IPS filters.



You can create IPS sensors for specific types of traffic, and then select the IPS sensors in firewall policies designed to handle the same type of traffic. For example, you can specify all of the web-server related signatures in an IPS sensor, and select the IPS sensor in a firewall policy that controls all traffic to and from a web server that is protected by the FortiGate unit.

The FortiGuard Service periodically adds new predefined signatures to counter new threats. New predefined signatures are automatically included in IPS sensors that are configured to use filters when the new signatures match existing filter specifications. For example, if you have an IPS sensor with a filter that includes all signatures for the Windows operating system, your filter will automatically incorporate new Windows signatures that the FortiGuard Service adds to the database.

IPS signature and filter entries are checked from top down. When a signature is found in a set of signatures or filters, the action defined for the signature is taken.

IPS filters

IPS sensors can contain one or more IPS filters. A filter is a collection of signature attributes that you specify. The signatures that have all of the attributes specified in a filter are included in the IPS filter.

Following are the attribute groups:

- Target
- Severity
- Protocol

- OS
- Application

Starting in FortiOS 6.4.2, you can also filter by CVE ID or CVE pattern by using the CLI. See FortiOS 6.4 New Features > IPS signature filter options.

When selecting multiple attributes within the same group, the selections are combined by using a logical `OR`. When selecting multiple attributes between attribute groups, each attribute group is combined by using a logical `AND`.

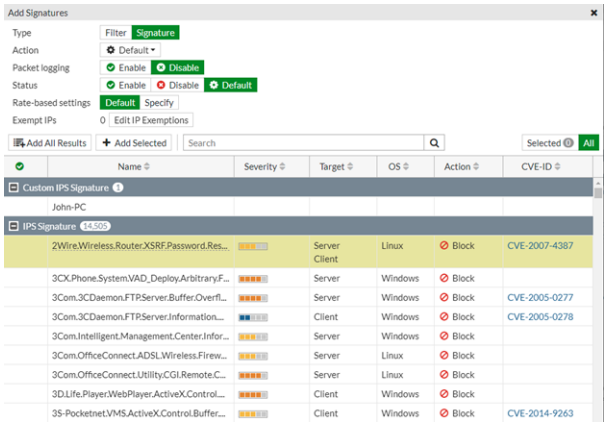
Once you select filters in the GUI, the filtered list of IPS signatures are displayed. Adjust your filters accordingly to construct a suitable list for your needs.

For example, if your FortiGate unit protects a Linux server running the Apache web server software, you could create a new filter to protect it. By setting *OS* filter attribute to *Linux*, and the filter attribute *Application* to *Apache*, the filter will include only the signatures that apply to both Linux and Apache. If you wanted to scan for all the Linux signatures and all the Apache signatures, you would create two filters, one for each.

To view the filters in an IPS sensor, go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*, select the IPS sensor, and click *Edit*.

Custom and predefined signature entries

Signature entries allow you to add individual, custom or predefined IPS signatures to an IPS sensor. If you need only one signature, or you want to manually select multiple signatures that don't fall into the criteria for an IPS filter, adding a signature entry to an IPS sensor is the easiest way. Signature entries are also the only way to include custom signatures in an IPS sensor.



To select an individual signature, click a signature, and select *Add Selected*. The signature moves to the *Selected* list.

To select multiple signatures, use the *Search* bar to perform a keyword search, and then click *Add All Results* to move all entries to the *Selected* list.

Overriding the default action

Each IPS signature comes with a default action such as *Block* and *Pass*. In some scenarios, you may want to override this action. You can override a set of IPS filter or signatures. By default, a set of IPS filter or signatures has an action of *Default*, which applies a signature's default action when the signature is matched. By changing the action, you can override the setting for all signatures within the filter or signature set.

Policies

You must select an IPS sensor in a security policy or an interface policy to apply the IPS sensor to traffic. An IPS sensor that it not selected in a policy is not applied to network traffic.

Configuring an IPS sensor

You can configure IPS sensors to be used in policies in the GUI.

To configure an IPS sensor:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the following settings:

Name	Enter a unique name for the sensor.
Comments	Enter a comment (optional).
Block malicious URLS	Enable to block malicious URLs based on a local malicious URL database on the FortiGate to assist in the detection of drive-by exploits. See Malicious URL database for drive-by exploits detection on page 1393.
IPS Signature and Filters	Select a signature or filter to assign to the sensor. See Configuring signatures and filters on page 1390.
Botnet C&C	
Scan Outgoing Connections to Botnet Sites	Define the botnet scanning across traffic that matches the policy: • *Disable*: Do not scan connections to botnet servers. • *Block*: Block connections to botnet servers. • *Monitor*: Log connections to botnet servers. See IPS with botnet C&C IP blocking on page 1399.

4. Click *OK*.



For information on configuring IPS sensors in the CLI, see IPS configuration options on page 1392.

Configuring signatures and filters

Signatures and filters can be configured and added to IPS sensors. A filter is a collection of signature attributes. Any signatures that meet all of the attributes specified in a filter are automatically included in the IPS sensor.

To configure a Signature entry of type Filter:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. Configure the IPS sensor settings.
4. In *IPS Signatures and Filters*, click *Create New*. The *Add Signatures* pane is displayed.
5. Configure the settings as follows:

Type	Select *Filter*.
Action	Click the dropdown menu and select the action when a signature is triggered: • *Allow*: Allow traffic to continue to its destination. • *Monitor*: Allow traffic to continue to its destination and log the activity. • *Block*: Drop traffic that matches the signature. • *Reset*: Reset the session whenever the signature is triggered. • *Default*: Use the default action of the signature. Search for the signature in the *IPS Signature* pane to view the default *Action*. • *Quarantine*: Block the matching traffic. Enable packet logging. Quarantine the attacker.
Packet logging	Enable packet logging to save a copy of the packets when they match the signature. Packet copies can be analyzed later.
Status	Define the signature status: • *Enable*: Enable the signature. • *Disable*: Disable the signature. • *Default*: Use the default status of the signature. Search for the signature in the *IPS Signature* pane to view the default *Status*.
Filter	Select the + to open the *Select Entries* field and select filter entries. There are different entry categories: • *Target*: Refers to the type of device targeted by the attack. • *Severity*: Refers to the level of the threat posed by the attack. • *Protocol*: Refers to the protocol that is the vector for the attack. • *OS*: Refers to the Operating System affected by the attack. • *Application*: Refers to the application affected by the attack.

6. Select one or more signatures from the *IPS Signatures* pane.
7. Click *OK*. The signature is added to the IPS sensor.
8. Click *OK*.

Individual signatures, custom or predefined IPS signatures can be selected for an IPS sensor. If you need only one signature, or you want to manually select multiple signatures that don't fall into the criteria for an IPS filter, adding a signature entry to an IPS sensor is the easiest way.

To configure a Signature entry of type Signature:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the IPS sensor settings.
4. In *IPS Signatures and Filters*, click *Create New*. The *Add Signatures* pane is displayed.
5. Configure the settings as follows:

Type	Select *Signature*.
Action	Click the dropdown menu and select the action when a signature is triggered: • *Allow*: Allow traffic to continue to its destination. • *Monitor*: Allow traffic to continue to its destination and log the activity. • *Block*: Drop traffic that matches the signature. • *Reset*: Reset the session whenever the signature is triggered. • *Default*: Use the default action of the signature. Search for the signature in the *IPS Signature* pane to view the default *Action*. • *Quarantine*: Block the matching traffic. Enable packet logging. Quarantine the attacker.
Packet Logging	Enable packet logging to save a copy of the packets when they match the signature. Packet copies can be analyzed later.
Status	Define the signature status: • *Enable*: Enable the signature. • *Disable*: Disable the signature. • *Default*: Use the default status of the signature. Search for the signature in the *IPS Signature* pane to view the default *Status*.
Rate-based settings	
Default	Use the default rate-based settings.
Specify	Specify the rate-based settings: • *Threshold*: Enter the threshold. See IPS signature rate count threshold on page 1393. • *Duration (seconds)*: Enter the duration in seconds. • *Track By*: Select the tracking method as *Any*, *Source IP*, or *Destination IP*.
Exempt IPs	Add IP addresses that are exempt from the signature rules. Click *Edit IP Exemptions* and click *Create New*. Edit the *Source IP/Netmask* and the *Destination IP/Netmask* to define the IP address for exemption. Click *OK* to add it to *Exempt IPs*.

6. Select one or more signatures from the *IPS Signatures* pane.
7. Click *OK*. The signature is added to the IPS sensor.
8. Click *OK*.

IPS configuration options

Besides configuring an IPS filter or selecting IPS signatures for an IPS sensor, you can configure additional IPS options for each sensor or globally for all sensors. This topic introduces the following available configuration options:

- Malicious URL database for drive-by exploits detection on page 1393
- IPS signature rate count threshold on page 1393
- Botnet C&C on page 1394
- Hardware acceleration for flow-based security profiles (NTurbo and IPSA) on page 1394

- Extended IPS database on page 1395
- IPS engine-count on page 1395
- Industrial signature database on page 1395
- Fail-open on page 1396
- IPS buffer size on page 1396
- Session count accuracy on page 1396
- Protocol decoders on page 1397



To configure IPS sensors, signatures, and filters in the GUI, see Configuring an IPS sensor on page 1390.

Malicious URL database for drive-by exploits detection

This feature uses a local malicious URL database on the FortiGate to assist in detection of drive-by exploits, such as adware that allows automatic downloading of a malicious file when a page loads without the user's detection. The database contains all malicious URLs active in the last one month, and all drive-by exploit URLs active in the last three months. The number of URLs controlled are in the one million range.

This feature can be enabled from a IPS Sensor in the GUI by going to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention* and editing or creating an IPS Sensor, then enabling *Block malicious URLs*. See Configuring an IPS sensor on page 1390.

To enable the blocking of malicious URLs in the CLI:

```
config ips sensor
    edit <profile>
        set block-malicious-url {enable | disable}
    next
end
```



Blocking malicious URLs is not supported on some FortiGate models, such as FortiGate 51E, 50E, or 30E.

IPS signature rate count threshold

You can use the IPS signature rate-based settings to specify a rate count threshold that must be met before the signature is triggered. A rate count threshold provides a more controlled recording of attack activity. For example, if multiple login attempts produce a failed result over a short period of time, then an alert would be sent and traffic might be blocked, which is a more manageable response than sending an alert every time a login fails.

This can be configured from the GUI by going to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*. Create or edit an IPS sensor. Within the sensor, edit the IPS signatures and filters. Only IPS signatures have the rate-based settings option. IPS filters do not. See Configuring an IPS sensor on page 1390.

Some settings are only available from CLI.

To configure the IPS signature rate-based settings in the CLI:

```
config ips sensor
    edit <sensor>
        config entries
            edit <filter ID number>
                set rule <ids>
                set rate-count <integer>
                set rate-duration <integer>
                set rate-mode {continuous | periodical}
                set rate-track {none | src-ip | dest-ip | dhcp-client-mac  | dns-domain}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

`rule <ids>`	The predefined or custom IPS signatures to add to the sensor.
`rate-count <integer>`	The count of the rate (0 - 65535). The rate-count must be configured before the other rate settings can be set.
`rate-duration <integer>`	Duration of the rate, in seconds (0 - 65535, default = 60)
`rate-mode {continuous | periodical}`	How the count threshold is met. • `continuous`: If the action is set to block, the action is engaged as soon as the rate-count is reached. For example, if the count is 10, the traffic would be blocked as soon as the signature is triggered 10 times. This is the default. • `periodical`: The FortiGate allows up to the value of the rate-count incidents where the signature is triggered during the rate-duration. For example, if the rate count is 100 and the duration is 60, the signature would need to be triggered 100 times in 60 seconds for the action to be engaged.
`rate-track {none | src-ip | dest-ip | dhcp-client-mac | dns-domain}`	Track one of the protocol fields within the packet (default = none).

Botnet C&C

See IPS with botnet C&C IP blocking on page 1399 for information on configuring settings in the CLI.

Hardware acceleration for flow-based security profiles (NTurbo and IPSA)

Some FortiGate models support a feature call NTurbo that can offload flow-based firewall sessions to network processors.

Some FortiGate models also support offloading enhanced pattern matching for flow-based security profiles to CP8 or CP9 content processors.

To configure NTurbo and IPSA:

```
config ips global
    set np-accel-mode {none | basic}
```

```
    set cp-accel-mode {none | basic | advanced}
end
```

If the `np-accel-mode` option is available, your FortiGate supports NTurbo. The `none` option disables NTurbo, and `basic` (the default) enables NTurbo.

If the `cp-accel-mode` option is available, your FortiGate supports IPSA. The `none` option disables IPSA, and `basic` enables basic IPSA, and `advanced` enables enhanced IPSA, which can offload more types of pattern matching than basic IPSA. The `advanced` option is only available on FortiGate models with two or more CP8 processors, or one or more CP9 processors.

Extended IPS database

Some models have access to an extended IPS Database. Because the extended database may affect FortiGate performance, the extended database package may be disabled by default on some models, such as desktop models.

You can only enable the extended IPS database by using the CLI.

To enable the extended IPS database:

```
config ips global
    set database extended
end
```

IPS engine-count

FortiGate units with multiple processors can run one or more IPS engine concurrently. The `engine-count` CLI command allows you to specify how many IPS engines to use at the same time.

To specify the number of concurrent IPS engines running:

```
config ips global
    set engine-count <int>
end
```



The recommended and default setting is `0`, which allows the FortiGate unit to determine the optimum number of IPS engines.

Industrial signature database

Industrial signatures are defined to protect Industrial Control Systems (ICS), Operational Technology (OT) and SCADA systems, which are critical infrastructure used by manufacturing industries. These signatures are enabled by default, but can be configured in the CLI.

To configure industrial signatures:

```
config ips global
    set exclude-signatures {none* | industrial}
end
```

Fail-open

A fail-open scenario is triggered when IPS raw socket buffer is full. Therefore IPS engine has no space in memory to create more sessions and needs to decide whether to drop the sessions or bypass the sessions without inspection.

To enable fail-open mode:

```
config ips global
    set fail-open {enable | disable}
end
```

The default setting is `disable`, so sessions are dropped by IPS engine when the system enters fail-open mode.

When enabled, the IPS engine fails open, and it affects all protocols inspected by FortiOS IPS protocol decoders, including but not limited to HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, SMTP, POP3, IMAP, and so on. When the IPS engine fails open, traffic continues to flow without IPS scanning.



Sessions offloaded to Nturbo do not support fail-open. When Nturbo data path is overloaded, traffic is dropped regardless of fail-open setting.

IPS buffer size

If system enters fail-open mode frequently, it is possible to increase the IPS socket buffer size to allow more data buffering, which reduces the chances of overloading the IPS engine. You can set the size of the IPS buffer.

To set the socket buffer size:

```
config ips global
    set socket-size <int>
end
```

The default socket size and maximum configurable value varies by model. In short, socket-size determines how much data the kernel passes to the IPS engine each time the engine samples packets.



Take caution when modifying the default value. If the socket-size is too large, the higher memory used by the IPS engine may cause the system to enter conserve mode more frequently. If set too low, the system may enter IPS fail-open mode too frequently.

Session count accuracy

The IPS engine can track the number of open session in two ways. An accurate count uses more resources than a less accurate heuristic count.

To configure the IPS open session count mode:

```
config ips global
    set session-limit-mode {accurate | heuristic}
end
```

The default is `heuristic`.

Protocol decoders

The FortiGate Intrusion Prevention system uses protocol decoders to identify the abnormal traffic patterns that do not meet the protocol requirements and standards. For example, the HTTP decoder monitors traffic to identify any HTTP packets that do not meet the HTTP protocol standards.

To change the ports a decoder examines, you must use the CLI.

To configure protocol decoder ports:

```
config ips decoder dns_decoder
    config parameter "port_list"
        set value "100,200,300"
    end
end
```

In this example, the ports examined by the DNS decoder are changed from the default 53 to 100, 200, and 300.

You cannot assign specific ports to decoders that are set to *auto* by default. These decoders can detect their traffic on any port. Specifying individual ports is not necessary.

IPS signature filter options

IPS signature filter options include hold-time and CVE pattern.

hold-time

The hold-time option allows you to set the amount of time that signatures are held after a FortiGuard IPS signature update per VDOM. During the holding period, the signature's mode is monitor. The new signatures are enabled after the hold-time, to avoid false positives.

The hold-time can be from 0 days and 0 hours (default) up to 7 days, in the format `##d##h`.

To configure the amount of time to hold and monitor IPS signatures:

```
config system ips
    set signature-hold-time 3d12h
    set override-signature-hold-by-id enable
end
```

When a signature that is on hold is matched, the log will include the message `signature is on hold`:

```
date=2010-07-06 time=00:00:57 logid="0419016384" type="utm" subtype="ips"
eventtype="signature" level="alert" vd="vd1" eventtime=1278399657778481842 tz="-0700"
severity="info" srcip=10.1.100.22 srccountry="Reserved" dstip=172.16.200.55 srcintf="port13"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=3620
action="detected" proto=6 service="HTTP" policyid=1 attack="Eicar.Virus.Test.File"
srcport=52170 dstport=80 hostname="172.16.200.55" url="/virus/eicar" direction="incoming"
attackid=29844 profile="test" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID29844"
incidentserialno=25165825 msg="file_transfer: Eicar.Virus.Test.File, (signature is on hold)"
```

To view signatures being held by rule ID 29844 on the VDOM:

```
# diagnose ips signature on-hold vd1 29844
Rule: 29844, attack_id: 58886, last updated: 20170411
Rule: 29844, attack_id: 59517, last updated: 20170411
Rule: 29844, attack_id: 60105, last updated: 20170411
...
```

To view all help signatures on the VDOM:

```
# diagnose ips signature on-hold vd1
Rule: 17541, attack_id: 20899, last updated: 20140423
Rule: 17557, attack_id: 20934, last updated: 20140423
Rule: 17559, attack_id: 20932, last updated: 20140423
Rule: 17560, attack_id: 20933, last updated: 20140423
Rule: 17562, attack_id: 20928, last updated: 20170908
Rule: 17677, attack_id: 21187, last updated: 20171106
Rule: 17713, attack_id: 43756, last updated: 20140424
Rule: 17759, attack_id: 21298, last updated: 20140423
...
```

CVE pattern

The CVE pattern option allows you to filter IPS signatures based on CVE IDs or with a CVE wildcard, ensuring that any signatures tagged with that CVE are automatically included.

To configure CVE patterns for CVE-2010-0177 and all CVE-2017 CVEs:

```
config ips sensor
    edit "cve"
        set comment "cve"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set cve "cve-2010-0177"
                set status enable
                set log-packet enable
                set action block
            next
            edit 2
                set cve "cve-2017"
                set action reset
            next
        end
    next
end
```

For example, the CVE of the IPS signature *Mozilla.Firefox.PluginArray.NsMimeType.Code.Execution* is CVE-2010-0177. This matches the CVE filter in the IPS sensor, so traffic is blocked and logged:

```
date=2020-07-13 time=15:44:56 logid="0419016384" type="utm" subtype="ips"
eventtype="signature" level="alert" vd="vd1" eventtime=1594593896666145871 tz="-0700"
severity="critical" srcip=10.1.100.22 srccountry="Reserved" dstip=172.16.200.55
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port1" dstintfrole="undefined"
sessionid=1638 action="dropped" proto=6 service="HTTPS" policyid=1
attack="Mozilla.Firefox.PluginArray.NsMimeType.Code.Execution" srcport=58298 dstport=443
```

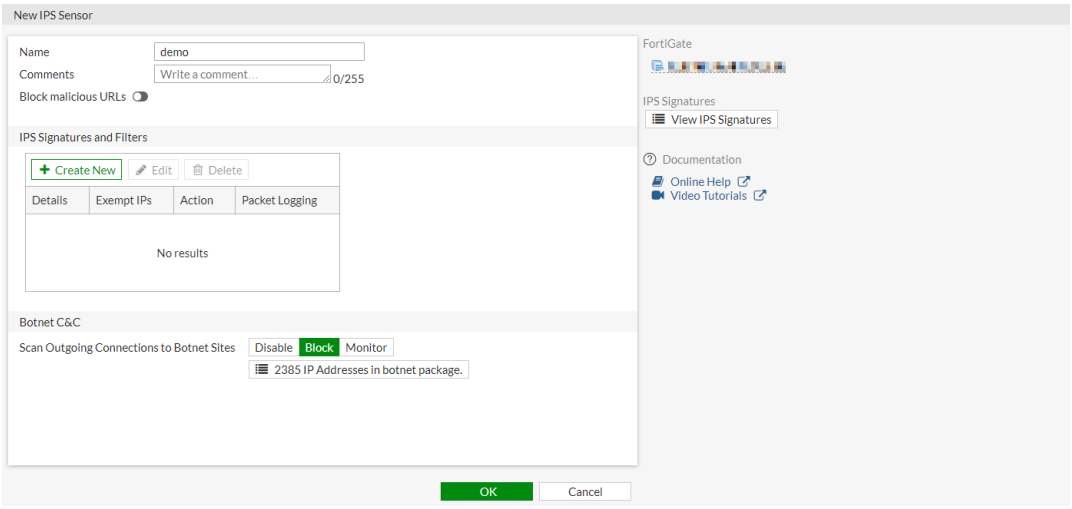
```
hostname="172.16.200.55" url="/Mozilla" direction="incoming" attackid=20853 profile="sensor-
1" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID20853" incidentserialno=124780667 msg="web_client:
Mozilla.Firefox.PluginArray.NsMimeType.Code.Execution," crscore=50 craction=4096
crlevel="critical"
```

IPS with botnet C&C IP blocking

The *Botnet C&C* section consolidates multiple botnet options in the IPS profile. This allows you to enable botnet blocking across all traffic that matches the policy by configuring one setting in the GUI, or by the `scan-botnet-connections` option in the CLI.

To configure botnet C&C IP blocking in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. Navigate to the *Botnet C&C* section.
3. For *Scan Outgoing Connections to Botnet Sites*, select *Block* or *Monitor*.



4. Configure the other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Add the sensor to a firewall policy.
   The IPS engine will scan outgoing connections to botnet sites. If you access a botnet IP, an IPS log is generated for this attack.
7. Go to *Log & Report* > *Intrusion Prevention* to view the log.

To configure botnet C&C IP blocking in the CLI:

```
config ips sensor
   edit "Demo"
      set scan-botnet-connections {disable | block | monitor}
   next
end
```

The `scan-botnet-connections` option is no longer available in the following CLI commands:

- `config firewall policy`
- `config firewall interface-policy`
- `config firewall proxy-policy`
- `config firewall sniffer`

Sample log

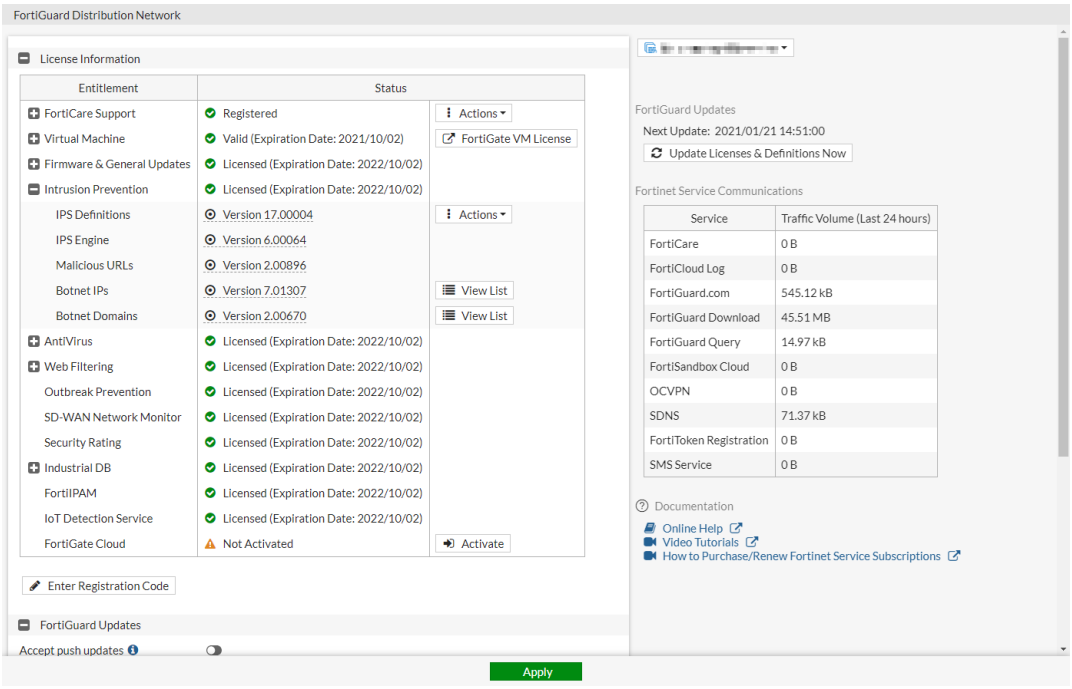
```
# execute log filter category 4
# execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

1: date=2022-04-28 time=16:18:34 eventtime=1651187914585406621 tz="-0700" logid="0422016400"
type="utm" subtype="ips" eventtype="botnet" level="warning" vd="vd1" msg="Botnet C&C
Communication." severity="critical" srcip=10.1.100.11 srccountry="Reserved"
dstip=2.58.149.169 srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=894198 action="dropped" srcport=41798 dstport=80 proto=6
service="HTTP" policyid=1 profile="sensor-1" direction="outgoing" attack="Loki"
attackid=7630239 ref="http://www.fortinet.com/be?bid=7630239" crscore=50 craction=4
crlevel="critical"
```

Botnet IPs and domains lists

To view botnet IPs and domains lists:

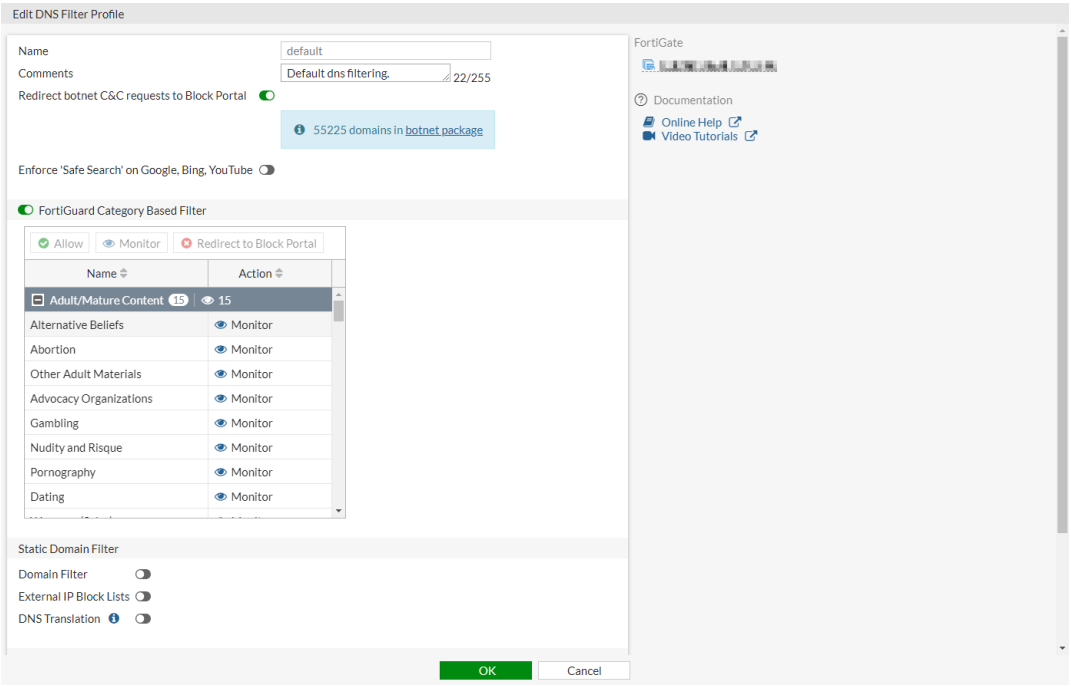
1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*. *Botnet IPs* and *Botnet Domains* are visible in the *Intrusion Prevention* section.
2. Click *View List* for more details.



Botnet C&C domain blocking

To block connections to botnet domains:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing filter.
2. Enable *Redirect botnet C&C requests to Block Portal*.

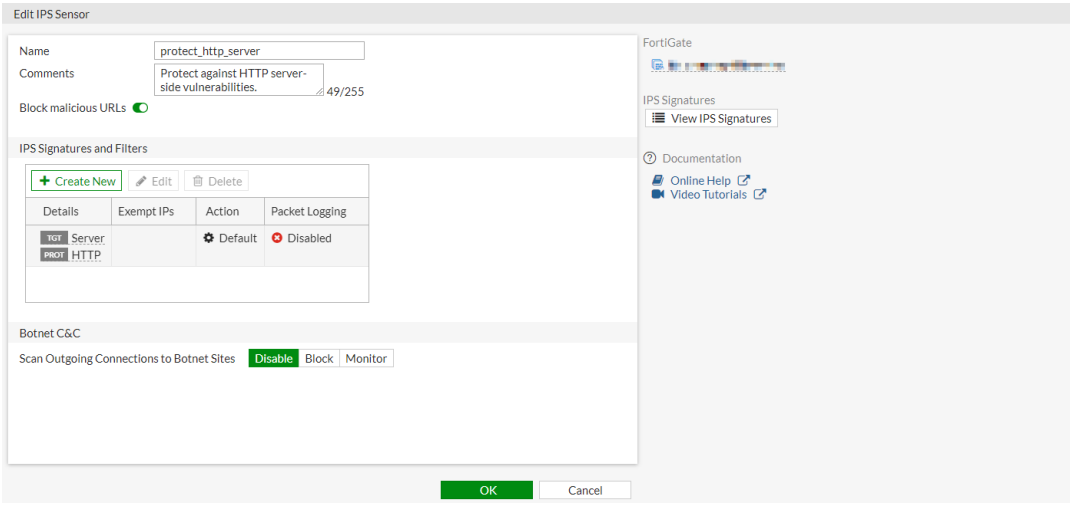


3. Configure the other settings as needed.
4. Click *OK*.
5. Add the filter profile to a firewall policy.

Botnet C&C URL blocking

To block malicious URLs:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. Enable *Block malicious URLs*.



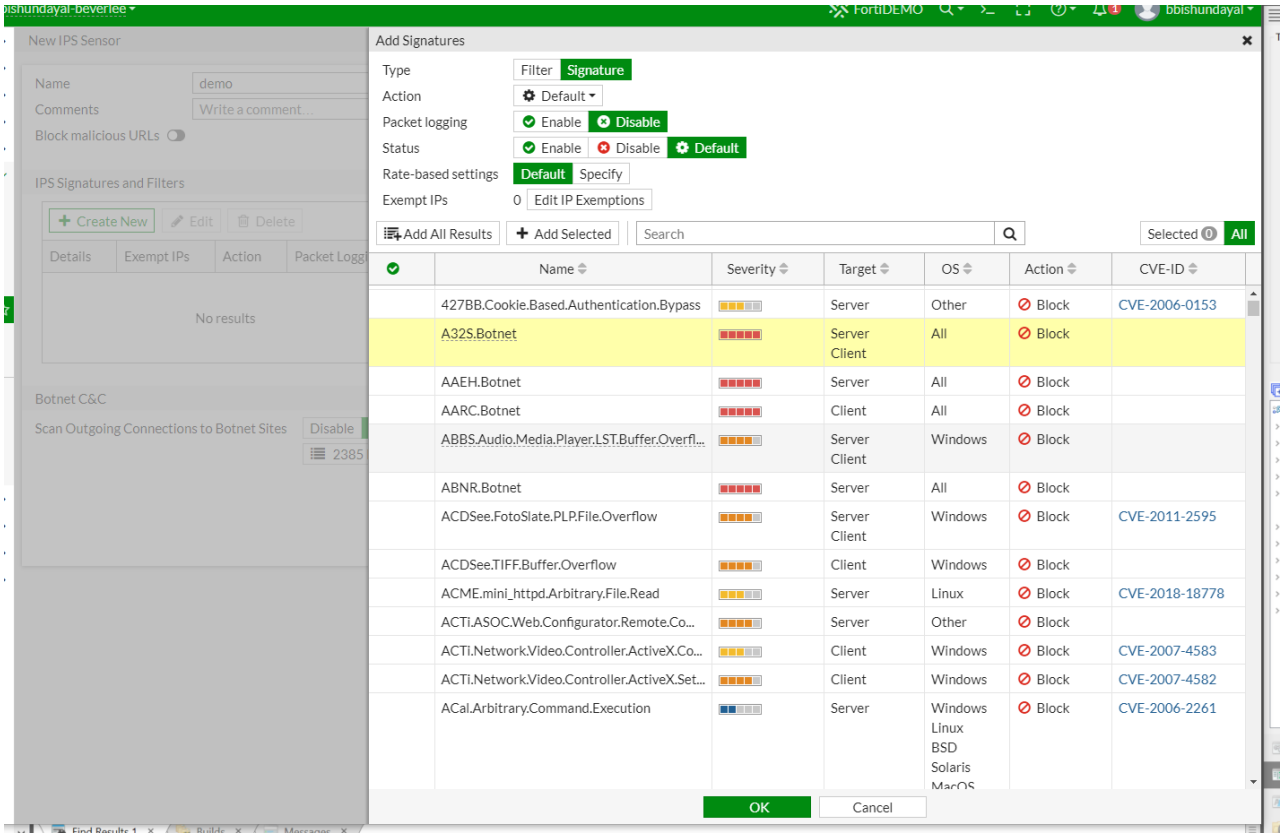
3. Configure the other settings as needed.
4. Click *OK*.
5. Add the sensor to a firewall policy.

Botnet C&C signature blocking

To add IPS signatures to a sensor:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. In the *IPS Signatures and Filters* section, click *Create New*. A list of available signatures appears.
3. For *Type*, select *Signature*. Select the signatures you want to include from the list.
4. Configure the other settings as needed.

5. Click *Add Selected*.



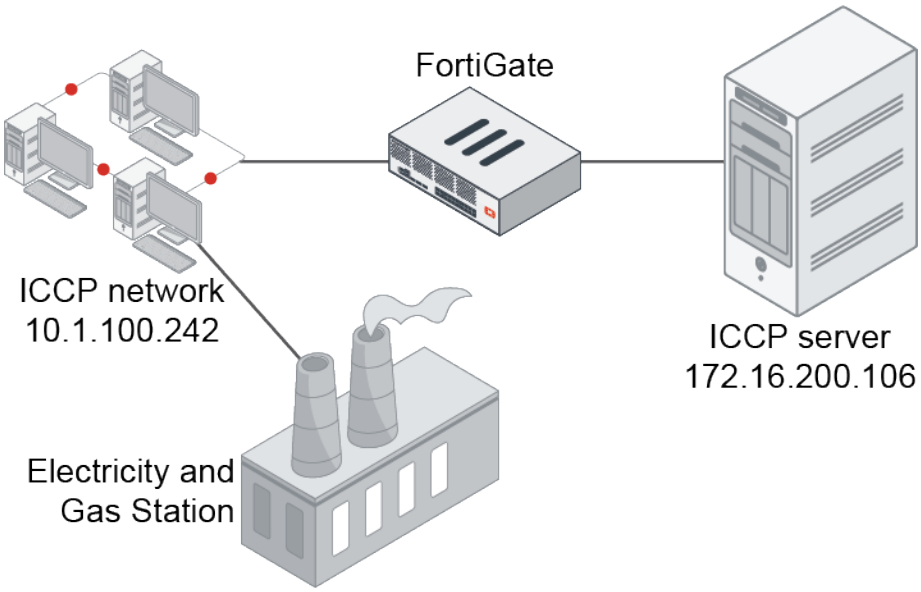
6. Click *OK*.
7. Add the sensor to a firewall policy to detect or block attacks that match the IPS signatures.

IPS sensor for IEC 61850 MMS protocol

IEC 61850 is a SCADA protocol whose services are mapped to a number of protocols, including MMS services. MMS/ICCP detection is supported in IPS. The purpose of the MMS dissectors is to identify every IEC 61850 service to distinguish different MMS/ICCP messages. IPS engine 6.0.12 and later support MMS dissectors.

The following scenarios are also supported:

- Multiple MMS PDUs are transferred in one TCP payload, and the IPS engine identifies individuals.
- An MMS message is split over multiple TCP segments, where MMS runs over COTP segments.
- ICCP/TASE.2 that also uses MMS transport (ISO transport over TCP for ICCP) is detected.



Industrial signatures must be enabled in the global IPS settings to receive MMS/ICCP signatures. By default, industrial signatures are excluded.

```
config ips global
    set exclude-signatures none
end
```

Below are some industrial signatures for MMS/ICCP messages that can be detected by the IPS engine. This is not an exhaustive list.

- MMS_GetNameList.Request
- MMS_GetNamedVariableListAttributes.Request
- MMS_GetVariableAccessAttributes.Request
- MMS_Identify.Request
- MMS_Initiate.Request
- MMS_Read.Request
- MMS_Reset.Request
- ICCP_Transfer.Reporting
- ICCP_Create.Dataset
- ICCP_Abort
- ICCP_Start.Transfer.DSTransferSet
- ICCP_Get.Dataset.Element.Values
- ICCP_Get.Next.DSTransfer.Set.Value
- ICCP_Delete.Dataset
- ICCP_Start.Transfer.IMTransferSet

Diagnose command

The COTP dissector adds support for identifying every MMS PDU, and let the IPS engine separate them, like the Modbus and IEC-104 services for example.

```
# diagnose ips debug enable all
# diagnose debug enable
```

```
[284@78]ips_l7_dsct_processor: serial=8142 create: cotp
[284@78]ips_l7_dsct_processor: serial=8142 create: iec104
[284@78]ips_l7_dsct_processor: serial=8142 create: modbus
```

Log samples

MMS dissectors can be triggered, and MMS/ICCP signatures can be monitored and logged.

Log samples:

```
date=2020-03-26 time=15:51:10 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1585263070836106492 tz="-0700"
appid=43699 srcip=10.1.100.242 dstip=172.16.200.106 srcport=50963 dstport=102
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="tcp/26112" direction="outgoing" policyid=1 sessionid=2711 applist="test"
action="pass" appcat="Industrial" app="MMS_Read.Request" incidentserialno=376610508
msg="Industrial: MMS_Read.Request," apprisk="elevated"
```

```
date=2020-03-26 time=16:15:45 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1585091746264983273 tz="-0700"
appid=44684 srcip=10.1.100.242 dstip=172.16.200.106 srcport=41665 dstport=102
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="tcp/26112" direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=194463 applist="test"
action="pass" appcat="Industrial" app="ICCP_Transfer.Reporting" incidentserialno=762763993
msg="Industrial: ICCP_Transfer.Reporting," apprisk="elevated"
```

File filter

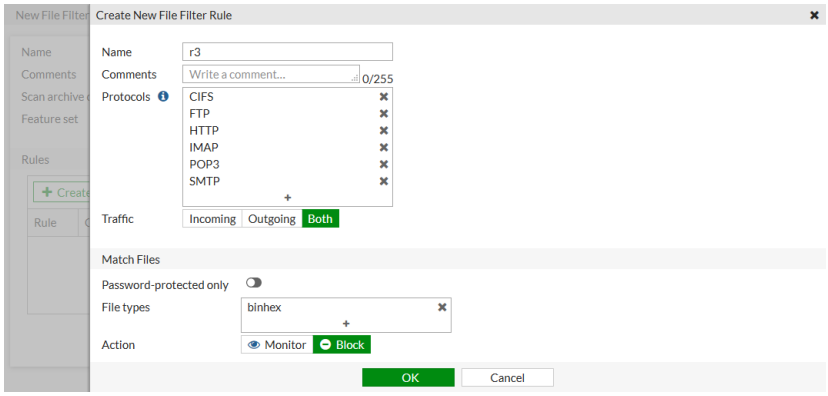
The file filter can be applied directly to firewall policies and supports various traffic protocols in proxy or flow mode.

Protocol	Proxy mode	Flow mode
CIFS	Yes	Yes
FTP	Yes	Yes
HTTP	Yes	Yes
IMAP	Yes	Yes
MAPI	Yes	No
POP3	Yes	Yes
SMTP	Yes	Yes
SSH	Yes	No

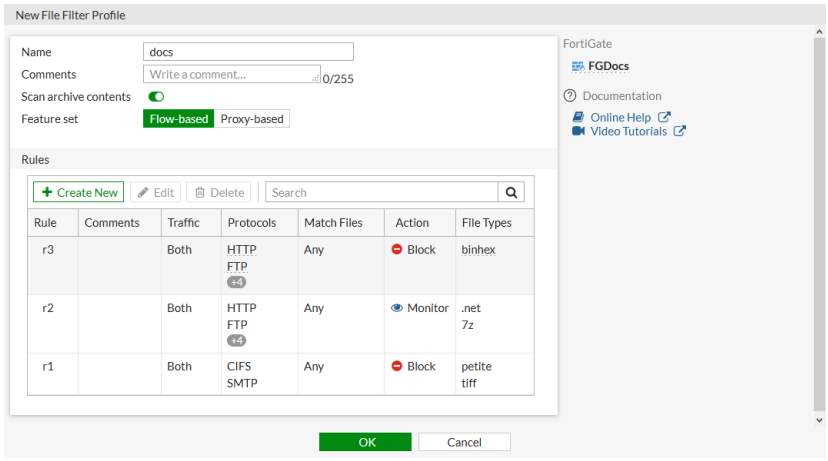
Prior to FortiOS 6.4.1, file filter was embedded in the web filter, email filter, SSH inspection, and CIFS profiles.

To configure a file filter in the GUI:

1. Configure the filter profile:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *File Filter* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select a *Feature set*.
   c. In the *Rules* table, click *Create New*.
   d. Configure the settings as required.

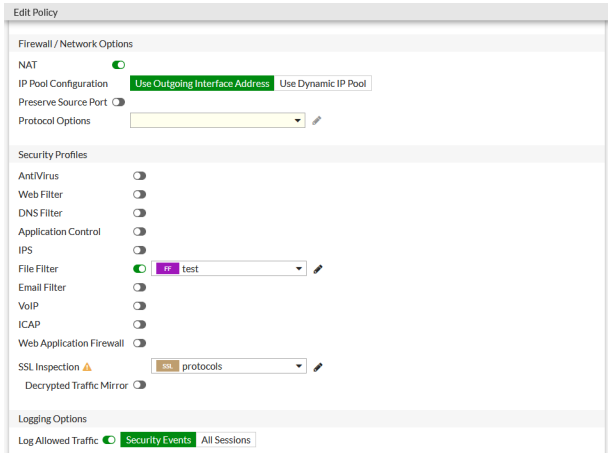


   e. Click *OK* to save the rule.
   f. Optionally, create more rules.



   g. Click *OK* to save the filter profile.
2. Apply the filter to a policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and edit an existing policy or create a new one.
   b. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *File Filter*.

c. Select the filter from the dropdown box.



d. Configure the other settings as needed.

e. Click *OK*.

To configure a file filter in the CLI:

1. Configure the file filter profile:

```
config file-filter profile
    edit "test"
        set comment ''
        set feature-set flow
        set replacemsg-group ''
        set log enable
        set scan-archive-contents enable
        config rules
            edit "r2"
                set comment ''
                set protocol http ftp smtp imap pop3 cifs
                set action block
                set direction outgoing
                set password-protected any
                set file-type "sis" "tar" "tiff" "torrent" "upx" "uue" "wav" "wma" "xar"
"xz" "zip"
            next
            edit "r1"
                set comment ''
                set protocol http ftp smtp imap pop3 cifs
                set action log-only
                set direction any
                set password-protected any
                set file-type ".net" "7z" "activemime" "arj" "aspack" "avi" "base64"
"bat" "binhex" "bmp" "bzip" "bzip2"
            next
            edit "r3"
                set comment ''
                set protocol http ftp smtp imap pop3
                set action block
                set direction any
                set password-protected any
```

```
                set file-type "binhex"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Apply the filter to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "filefilter-policy"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set srcaddr6 "all"
        set dstaddr6 "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
        set file-filter-profile "test"
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set np-acceleration disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Logs

Go to *Log & Report* > *File Filter* to view the file filter logs.

Log samples

```
date=2020-04-21 time=17:04:02 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513843211612684 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1751 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=57382 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=445 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="CIFS" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" filtername="1" filename="sample\\putty.exe" filesize=454656 filetype="exe"
msg="File was blocked by file filter."
```

```
date=2020-04-21 time=17:03:54 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513834376811325 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1742 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=36754 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=22 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="SSH" subservice="SCP" profile="filefilter"
direction="incoming" action="blocked" filtername="1" filename="test.pdf" filesize=571051
filetype="pdf" msg="File was blocked by file filter."
```

```
date=2020-04-21 time=17:00:30 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513630482716465 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1684 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=58524 srcintf="port21"
```

```
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=143 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="IMAP" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" from="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" to="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com"
recipient="pc4user2" subject="QA Test" filtername="1" filename="test.JPG" filesize=48079
filetype="jpeg" msg="File was blocked by file filter."

date=2020-04-21 time=16:59:58 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513598866551739 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1674 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=39854 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=110 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="POP3" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" from="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" to="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com"
recipient="pc4user2" subject="QA Test" filtername="1" filename="test.JPG" filesize=48079
filetype="jpeg" msg="File was blocked by file filter."

date=2020-04-21 time=16:58:31 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513511516745955 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1619 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=53144 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=25 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="SMTP" profile="filefilter" direction="outgoing"
action="blocked" from="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" to="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com"
sender="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" recipient="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com" subject="QA Test"
filtername="1" filename="test.PNG" filesize=65173 filetype="png" msg="File was blocked by
file filter."

date=2020-04-21 time=16:58:14 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513494608988795 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1605 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=43186 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=21 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="FTP" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" filtername="1" filename="index.html" filesize=21 filetype="html" msg="File
was blocked by file filter."
```

Supported file types

File filter allows the FortiGate to block files passing through based on file type based on the file's meta data only, and not on file size or file content. A DLP sensor must be configured to block files based on size or content, such as SSN numbers, credit card numbers, or regexp.

The following file types are supported in file filter and DLP profiles:

Type	Description
.net	Match .NET files
7z	Match 7-Zip files
activemime	Match ActiveMime files
arj	Match ARJ compressed files
aspack	Match ASPack files
avi	Match AVI files
base64	Match Base64 files

Type	Description
bat	Match Windows batch files
binhex	Match BinHex files
bmp	Match BMP files
bzip	Match Bzip files
bzip2	Match Bzip2 files
cab	Match Windows CAB files
chm	Match Windows compiled HTML help files
class	Match CLASS files
cod	Match COD files
crx	Match Chrome extension files
dmg	Match Apple disk image files
elf	Match ELF files
exe	Match Windows executable files
flac	Match FLAC files
fsg	Match FSG files
gif	Match GIF files
gzip	Match Gzip files
hlp	Match Windows help files
hta	Match HTA files
html	Match HTML files
iso	Match ISO archive files
jad	Match JAD files
javascript	Match JavaScript files
jpeg	Match JPEG files
lzh	Match LZH compressed files
mach-o	Match Mach object files
mime	Match MIME files
mov	Match MOV files
mp3	Match MP3 files
mpeg	Match MPEG files

Type	Description
msi	Match Windows Installer MSI Bzip files
msoffice	Match MS-Office files. For example, DOC, XLS, PPT, and so on.
msofficex	Match MS-Office XML files. For example, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, and so on.
pdf	Match PDF files
petite	Match Petite files
png	Match PNG files
rar	Match RAR archives
rm	Match RM files
sis	Match SIS files
tar	Match TAR files
tiff	Match TIFF files
torrent	Match torrent files
unknown*	Match unknown files
upx	Match UPX files
uue	Match UUE files
wav	Match WAV files
wma	Match WMA files
xar	Match XAR archive files
xz	Match XZ files
zip	Match ZIP files

* This file type is only available in DLP profiles.

Email filter

Email filters can be configured to perform spam detection and filtering. You can customize the default profile, or create your own and apply it to a firewall policy.



Two kinds of filtering can be defined in a single profile, and they will act independent of one another.

Filter options can be organized according to the source of the decision:

- Local options: the FortiGate qualifies the email based on local conditions, such as block/allowlists, banned words, or DNS checks using FortiGuard Antispam.

- FortiGuard-based options: the FortiGate qualifies the email based on the score or verdict returned from FortiGuard Antispam.
- Third-party options: the FortiGate qualifies the email based on information from a third-party source (like an ORB list).

Local and FortiGuard block/allowlists can be enabled and combined in a single profile. When combined, the local block/allowlist has a higher priority than the FortiGuard block list during a decision making process. For example, if a client IP address is blocklisted in the FortiGuard server, but you want to override this decision and allow the IP to pass through the filter, you can define the IP address or subnet in a local block/allowlist with the clear action. Because the information coming from the local list has a higher priority than the FortiGuard service, the email will be considered clean.



Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Antispam.

Protocol comparison between email filter inspection modes

The following table indicates which email filters are supported by their designated inspection modes.

	SMTP	POP3	IMAP	MAPI
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Flow	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

The following topics provide information about email filter profiles:

- Local-based filters on page 1412
- FortiGuard-based filters on page 1419
- Third-party-based filters on page 1421
- Filtering order on page 1422
- Protocols and actions on page 1424
- Configuring webmail filtering on page 1425

Local-based filters

There are six types of local spam filters:

- HELO DNS lookup
- Return email DNS check
- Block/allow list
- Banned words*
- Trusted IP addresses*
- MIME header*

* These filters can only be configured in the CLI.



By default, HELO DNS and return email DNS checks are done before the block/allow list check. In some situations, such as when configuring a block/allow list to clear an email from performing further filtering, configure the following to give precedence to the block/allow list:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit <name>
        config smtp
            set local-override enable
        next
    end
end
```

HELO DNS lookup

Whenever a client opens an SMTP session with a server, the client sends a HELO command with the client domain name. The FortiGate takes the domain name specified by the client in the HELO and performs a DNS lookup to determine if the domain exists. If the lookup fails, the FortiGate determines that any emails delivered during the SMTP session are spam. The HELO DNS lookup is only available for SMTP traffic.

Return email DNS check

The FortiGate performs a DNS lookup on the return field. If no such record exists, the email is treated as spam. When return email DNS checking is enabled, the FortiGate takes the domain in the reply-to email address and reply-to domain, and checks the DNS servers to see if there is an A or MX record for the domain. If the domain does not exist, the FortiGate treats the email as spam.

Block/allow list

Block/allow lists can be made from emails or IP subnets to forbid or allow them to send or receive emails. The following table summarizes the configurable options in a block/allow list.

Type	Description	Pattern	Action
IP/Netmask and *IPv6/Netmask*	The FortiGate compares the IP address of the client delivering the email to the addresses in the IP address block/allow list specified in the email filter profile. If a match is found, the FortiGate takes the action configured for the matching block/allow list entry against all delivered email. By default the `hdrip` setting under `config smtp` is disabled. If enabled, the FortiGate checks all the IP addresses in the header of SMTP email against the specified IP address block/allow list.	The filter is an IP address with a subnet mask.	• *Mark as Reject*: the email is dropped before reaching its destination. • *Mark as Spam*: the email is allowed through, but it will be tagged with an

Type	Description	Pattern	Action
			indicator marking the email as spam. • *Mark as Clear*: the email is allowed to go through to its destination on the assumption that it is not spam.
Email Regular Expression	The FortiGate compares the sender email address, as shown in the email envelope MAIL FROM, to the pattern in the patterned field. If a match is found, the FortiGate takes the action configured for the matching block/allow list entry.	The filter is a regular expression. For example, *^[_a-z0-9-]+(\.[_a-z0-9-]+)*@(example|xmple|examp).(com|org|net)* can be used to filter based on a number of email domain name combinations.	• *Mark as Spam*: the email is allowed through, but it will be tagged with an indicator marking the email as spam. • *Mark as Clear*: the email is allowed to go through to its destination on the assumption that it is not spam.
Email Wildcard	The FortiGate compares the sender email address, as shown in the email header and envelope MAIL FROM, to the pattern in the patterned field. If a match is found, the FortiGate takes the action configured for the matching block/allow list entry.	The filter is an email address with a wildcard symbol in place of the variable characters (such as **.example.com* or *fred@*.com*).	

Banned words

When banned word checking is enabled, the FortiGate examines emails for words that appear in the banned word list specified in the email filter profile.

The banned word pattern can be either wildcard or Perl regular expression, which could include part of a word, a whole word, a phrase, multiple words, or multiple phrases.

Each time the banned word filter detects a pattern in an email, it adds the pattern score to the sum of scores for the message. The score is set when creating a new pattern to block content (`set score`). Higher scores indicate more offensive content. If the total score of the discovered banned words in the email exceeds the threshold value set in the

email filter profile, then the FortiGate treats the email as spam. The score for each pattern is counted only once, even if that pattern appears many times in the email. The default score for banned word patterns is 10, and the default threshold in the email filter is 10. This means that by default, an email message is blocked by a single match.

For example, if the FortiGate scans an email containing only this sentence: “The score for each word or phrase is counted only once, even if that word or phrase appears many times in the email message.” and the banned word list contains the following patterns:

Banned word pattern	Pattern type	Assigned score	Score added to sum for entire page	Comments
word	Wildcard	20	20	The pattern appears twice, but it is counted once.
word phrase	Wildcard	20	0	Both words appear in the email, but they do not appear together as specified in the pattern. There are no matches.
word*phrase	Wildcard	20	20	A match occurs as long as “word” appears before “phrase” regardless of what is in between them. The pattern appears twice, but it is counted once.
mail*age	Wildcard	20	20	This pattern is a match because “email message” appears in the email.

The email would be treated as spam if the banned word threshold is set to 60 or less.

To apply a banned word filter to an email filter profile:

1. Configure the banned words list:

```
config emailfilter bword
    edit 1
        set name "banned"
        config entries
            edit 23
                set pattern-type {wildcard | regexp}
                set pattern <string>
                set score <1 - 99999>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the email filter profile:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myBannedWordsProfile"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options bannedword
        set spam-bword-threshold <0 - 2147483647>
        set spam-bword-table 23
    next
end
```



Once a banned word list is configured in the CLI and applied to an email filter profile, some settings can be edited in the GUI for that particular email filter profile. A banned word profile can be selected, and its *Threshold* (`spam-bword-threshold`) can be edited.

Trusted IP addresses

When the FortiGate creates a list of trusted IP addresses, any incoming email traffic from these IP address is exempt from having IP-based checks, such as DNSBL, RBL, FortiGuard Antispam service, or locally-defined IP block lists.

If the FortiGate sits behind a company's mail transfer units, it may be unnecessary to check email IP addresses because they are internal and trusted. In this case, only external IP addresses would be checked. In some cases, external IP addresses may be added to the list if they are known to not be spam sources.

To configure a trusted IP address list:

1. Define the IP address list:

```
config emailfilter iptrust
    edit 1
        set name "trustedIP"
        config entries
            edit 33
                set addr-type {ipv4 | ipv6}
                set ipv4-subnet <IPv4_classnet>
                set ipv6-subnet <IPv6_network>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Add the list to the email filter profile:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "email_filter_profile"
        set spam-iptrust-table 1
    next
end
```

MIME header

This feature filters by the MIME header.

To configure a MIME header check:

1. Define the header content:

```
config emailfilter mheader
    edit 100
        set name "mheader"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set fieldname <string>
```

```
                set fieldbody <string>
                set pattern-type {wildcard | regexp}
                set action {spam | clear}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

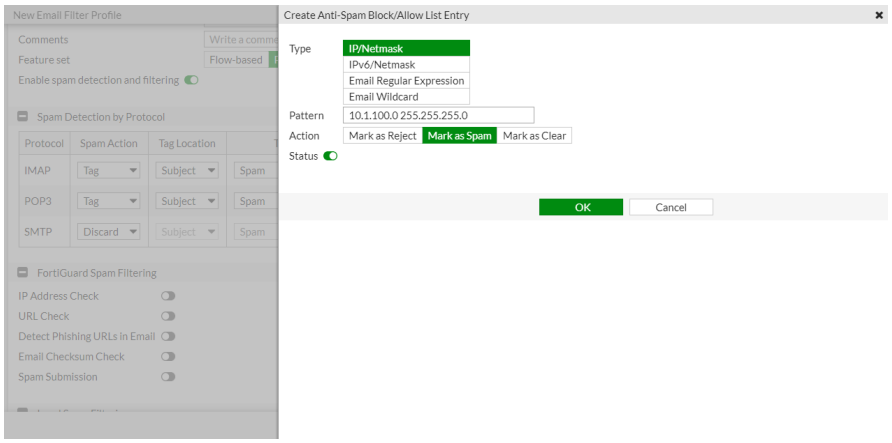
2. Add the header to the email filter profile:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "email_filter_profile"
        set options spamhdrcheck
        set spam-mheader-table 100
    next
end
```

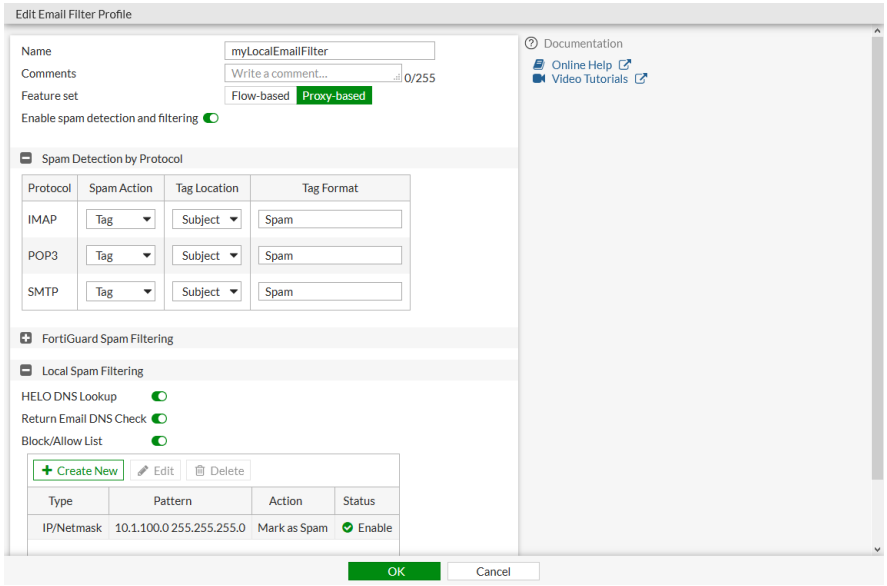
Configuring a local-based email filter

To configure a local-based email filter in the GUI:

1. Configure the email filter profile:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Email Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
   b. Select a *Feature set* (*Proxy-based* is used in this example) and enable *Enable spam detection and filtering*.
   c. In the *Local Spam Filtering* section, enable the desired filters (*HELO DNS Lookup*, *Return Email DNS Check*, *Block/Allow List*).
   d. If *Block/Allow List* is enabled, click *Create New*. The *Create Anti-Spam Block/Allow List Entry* pane opens.
   e. Select a *Type*, enter a *Pattern*, and select an *Action*.

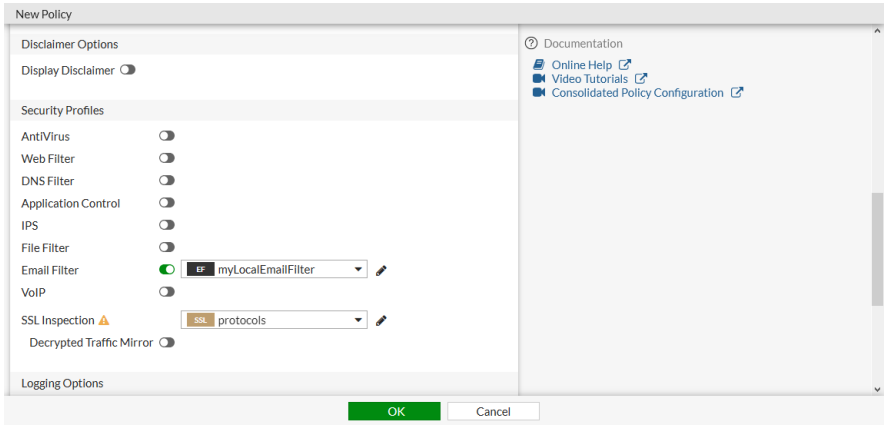


f. Click *OK* to save the block/allow list.



g. Click *OK* save the email filter profile.

2. Configure the firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing policy.
   b. Set the inspection-mode to *Proxy-based*.
   c. Enable the *Email Filter* option and select the previously created profile.



   d. Set *SSL Inspection* to a profile that has deep SSL inspection enabled.
   Deep inspection is required to filter SMTP, POP3, IMAP, or any SSL/TLS encapsulated protocol.
   e. Configure the other settings as needed.
   f. Click *OK*.

To configure a local-based email filter in the CLI:

1. Configure a block/allow list:

```
config emailfilter bwl
    edit 1
        set name "myBAL"
        config entries
```

```
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set type ip
                set action spam
                set addr-type ipv4
                set ip4-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure an email filter profile:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myLocalEmailFilter"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options spambwl spamhelodns spamraddrdns
        config smtp
            set action tag
        end
        set spam-bwl-table 1
    next
end
```

3. Use the profile in a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set emailfilter-profile "myLocalEmailFilter"
    next
end
```

FortiGuard-based filters

The FortiGate consults FortiGuard servers to help identify spammer IP address or emails, known phishing URLs, known spam URLs, known spam email checksums, and others. For more information, refer to the FortiGuard website.

There are five FortiGuard spam filtering options:

- IP address check
- URL check
- Detect phishing URLs in email (requires URL check to be enabled)
- Email checksum check
- Spam submission

IP address check

The FortiGate queries the FortiGuard Antispam service to determine if the IP address of the client delivering the email is in the block list. If there is a match, the FortiGate treats delivered emails as spam.

URL check

The FortiGate submits all URLs that appear in the email body to the FortiGuard service for checking. If a URL exists in the FortiGuard URL block list, the FortiGate treats the email as spam.

Detect phishing URLs in email

The FortiGate submits all URL hyperlinks that appear in the email body to the FortiGuard service for checking. If a URL exists in the FortiGuard URL phishing list, the FortiGate removes the hyperlink from the message. The URL remains in place, but it is no longer a clickable hyperlink.

Email checksum check

The FortiGate submits a checksum of each email to the FortiGuard service for checking. If a checksum exists in the FortiGuard checksum block list, the FortiGate treats the email as spam.

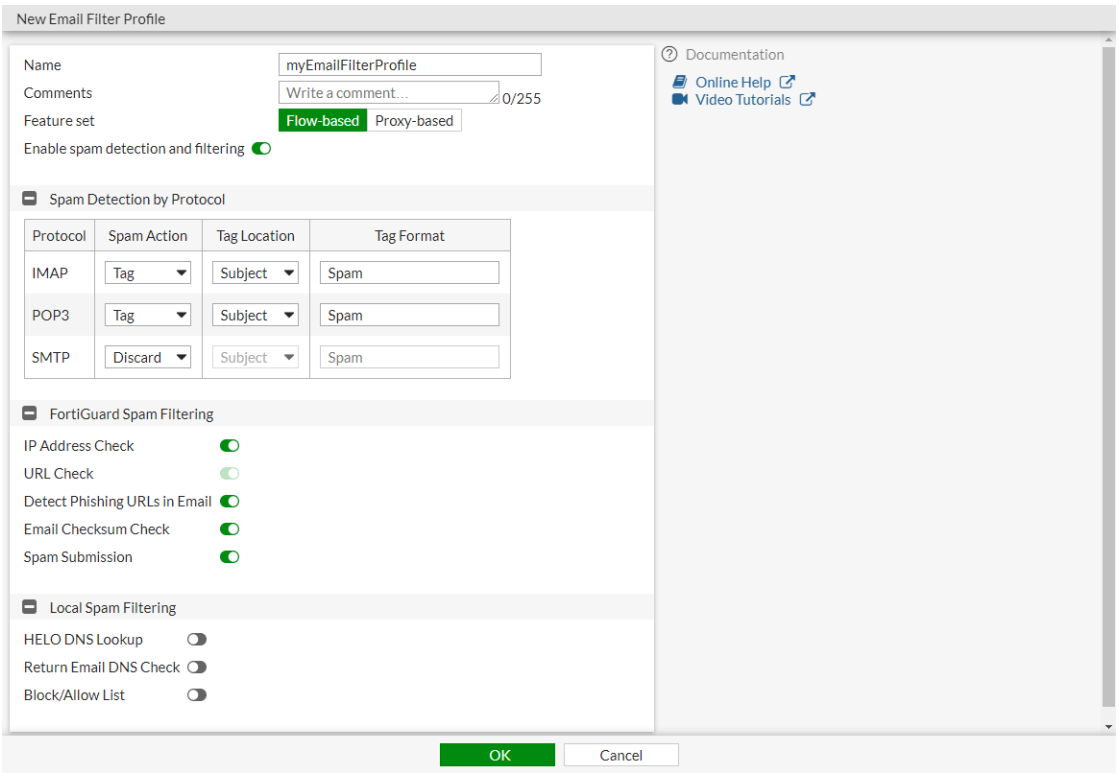
Spam submission

Spam submission is a way to inform the FortiGuard Antispam service of non-spam messages incorrectly marked as spam. When enabled, the FortiGate adds a link to the end of every email marked as spam. Click the link to notify the FortiGuard Antispam service if an email is marked incorrectly.

Configuring FortiGuard filters

To configure FortiGuard filters in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Email Filter* and click *Create New*.
2. Enable *Enable spam detection and filtering*.
3. In the *FortiGuard Spam Filtering Spam Filtering* section, enable the following as needed:
   - *IP Address Check*
   - *URL Check*
   - *Detect Phishing URLs in Email*
   - *Email Checksum Check*
   - *Spam Submission*



4. Click *OK*.

To configure FortiGuard filters in the CLI:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit <name>
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options spamfsip spamfsurl spamfsphish spamfschksum spamfssubmit
    next
end
```

Option	Description
`spamfsip`	Check email IP addresses
`spamfsurl`	Check email content URLs
`spamfsphish`	Check email content phishing URLs
`spamfschksum`	Check email checksums
`spamfssubmit`	Add FortiGuard Antispam spam submission text

Third-party-based filters

In addition to local and FortiGuard filters, FortiOS can leverage third-party sources, which are known as DNS-based blackhole lists (DNSBL) or Open Relay Behavior-modification Systems (ORBS). These are maintained lists of IP addresses that have been identified as associated with spamming.

The following example demonstrates how to configure a DNSBL. The `config emailfilter dnsbl` command is used to configure either DNSBL or ORBS.

To configure a DNSBL:

1. Define the server to get the DNSBL list from:

```
config emailfilter dnsbl
    edit 100
        set name "dnsbl"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server <IP address or server name>
                set action {reject | spam}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Add the DNSBL list to an email filter profile:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "email_filter_profile"
        set options spamrbl
        set spam-rbl-table 100
    next
end
```

Filtering order

The FortiGate checks for spam using various filtering techniques. The filtering order used by the FortiGate depends on which mail protocol is used.

Filters requiring a query to a server and a reply (FortiGuard Antispam service and DNSBL/ORDBL) are run simultaneously. To avoid delays, queries are sent while other filters are running. The first reply to trigger a spam action takes effect as soon as the reply is received.

Each spam filter passes the email to the next if no matches or problems are found. If the action in the filter is *Mark as Spam*, the FortiGate tags the email as spam according to the settings in the email filter profile. If the action in the filter is *Mark as Reject*, the email session is dropped. If the action in the filter is *Mark as Clear*, the email is exempt from any remaining filters. For SMTP and SMTPS, if the action is *Discard*, the email is discarded or dropped.

SMTP and SMTPS spam filtering order

The FortiGate scans SMTP and SMTPS email for spam in a specific order, which depends on whether or not the local override feature is enabled. This feature is disabled by default, but enabling it gives priority to local spam filters.

You can enable local override (`set local-override`) in an email filter profile to override SMTP or SMTPS remote checks, which includes checks for IP RBL, IP FortiGuard AntiSpam, and HELO DNS with the locally defined antispam block and/or allow lists.



SMTPS spam filtering is available on FortiGates that support SSL content scanning and inspection.

To configure local override of an antispam filter:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit <name>
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options spambwl spamfsip spamfsurl spamhelodns spamfsphish
        config smtp
            set local-override {enable | disable}
        end
        set spam-bwl-table 1
    next
end
```

Local override disabled	Local override enabled
1. HELO DNS lookup, last hop IP check against ORDBL 2. Return email DNS check, FortiGuard email checksum check, FortiGuard URL check, FortiGuard IP address check, phishing URLs detection 3. Last hop IP checks local block/allow list 4. Envelope address checks local block/allow list 5. Headers IPs local block/allow list 6. Headers email address local block/allow list, MIME header checks based on local list of patterns (`mheader`) 7. Banned words (subject first, then body) based on local block/allow list (`bword`)	1. Last hop IP checks local block/allow list 2. Envelope address checks local block/allow list 3. Headers IPs local block/allow list, MIME header checks based on local list of patterns (`mheader`) 4. Headers email address local block/allow list 5. Banned words (subject first, then body) based on local list of patterns (`bword`) 6. HELO DNS lookup, last hop IP check against ORDBL 7. Return email DNS check, FortiGuard email checksum check, FortiGuard URL check, FortiGuard IP address check, phishing URLs detection

IMAP, IMAPS, POP3, and POP3S spam filtering order

The FortiGate scans IMAP, IMAPS, POP3, and POP3S email for spam in the following order:

1. MIME headers check, email address block/allow list check
2. Banned word check on email subject
3. IP block/allow list check
4. Banned word check on email body
5. Return email DNS check, FortiGuard email checksum check, FortiGuard URL check, DNSBL and ORDBL checks



IMAPS and POP3S spam filtering are available on FortiGates that support SSL content scanning and inspection.

Protocols and actions

In an email filter profile, there are options to configure settings for SMTP, POP3, IMAP, and MAPI protocols. For each protocol, you can set an action to either discard (block), tag, or pass the log for that protocol. The action options vary per protocol. For the tag action, the spam email can be tagged with configured text in the subject or header.



MAPI is only configurable in the CLI and with the proxy feature set.

To configure protocols in an email filer:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit <name>
        set feature-set {flow | proxy}
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options {spambwl spamfsip spamfssubmit spamfschksum spamfsurl spamhelodns
spamraddrdns spamrbl spamhdrcheck spamfsphish}
        config smtp
            set log-all {enable | disable}
            set action {pass | tag | discard}
            set tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo}
            set tag-msg <string>
            set hdrip {enable | disable}
            set local-override {enable | disable}
        end
        config imap
            set log-all {enable | disable}
            set action {pass | tag}
            set tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo}
            set tag-msg <string>
        end
        config pop3
            set log-all {enable | disable}
            set action {pass | tag}
            set tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo}
            set tag-msg <string>
        end
        config mapi
            set log-all {enable | disable}
            set action {pass | discard}
        end
    next
end
```

`options ...`	The following options are available: • bannedword: content block. • spambwl: block/allow list. • spamfsip: email IP address FortiGuard antispam block list check. • spamfssubmit: add FortiGuard antispam spam submission text. • spamfschksum: email checksum FortiGuard antispam check. • spamfsurl: email content URL FortiGuard antispam check.

	• spamhelodns: email HELO/EHLO domain DNS check. • spamraddrdns: email return address DNS check. • spamrbl: email DNSBL and ORBL check. • spamhdrcheck: email MIME header check. • spamfsphish: email content phishing URL FortiGuard antispam check.
`tag-type {subject | header | spaminfo}`	Set the tag type: • subject: prepend text to the spam email subject. • header: append a user-defined MIME header to the spam email. • spaminfo: append spam information to the spam email header.
`tag-msg <string>`	Subject text or header added to the spam email.
`hdrip {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable SMTP email header IP checks for spamfsip, spamrbl, and spambwl filters.
`local-override {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable local filter to override SMTP remote check result.

For more information, see config emailfilter profile in the FortiOS CLI Reference.

Configuring webmail filtering

You can configure an email filter to detect and log emails sent by Gmail and Hotmail. These interfaces do not use standard email protocols (SMTP, POP3, or IMAP) and use HTTPS instead. However, you can still configure the email filter to detect emails that pass through the FortiGate.



The FortiGate only detects and logs the emails, it does not discard or tag them.

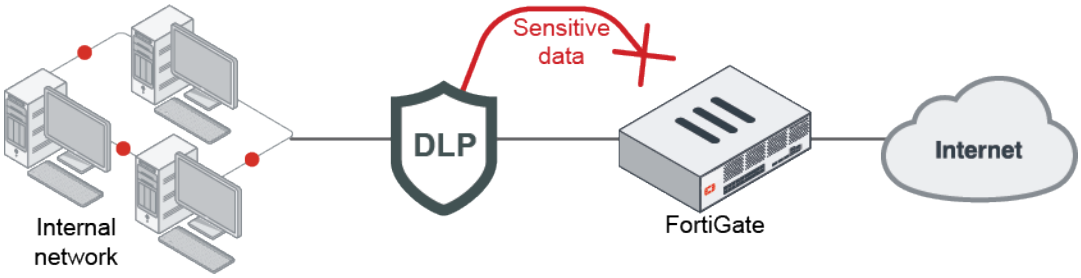
To configure webmail filtering:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit <name>
        set spam-filtering enable
        config msn-hotmail
            set log-all enable
        end
        config gmail
            set log-all enable
        end
    next
end
```

Data leak prevention

The FortiGate data leak prevention (DLP) system prevents sensitive data from leaving or entering your network. You can customize the default sensor or create your own by adding individual filters based on file type, file size, a regular expression, an advanced rule, or a compound rule. Once configured, you can apply the DLP sensor to a firewall policy. Data matching defined sensitive data patterns is blocked, logged, or allowed when it passes through the FortiGate.

DLP can only be configured in the CLI.



The filters in a DLP sensor can examine traffic for the following:

- Known files using DLP fingerprinting
- Known files using DLP watermarking
- Particular file types
- Particular file names
- Files larger than a specified size
- Data matching a specified regular expression
- Credit card and social security numbers

Filters are ordered, but there is no precedence between the possible actions.

DLP is primarily used to stop sensitive data from leaving your network. DLP can also be used to prevent unwanted data from entering your network and to archive some or all of the content that passes through the FortiGate. DLP archiving is configured per filter, which allows a single sensor to archive only the required data. You can configure the DLP archiving protocol in the CLI (see Configure DLP sensors).

There are two forms of DLP archiving:

- Summary only: a summary of all the activity detected by the sensor is recorded. For example, when an email message is detected, the sender, recipient, message subject, and total size are recorded. When a user accesses the web, every URL that they visit is recorded.
- Full: detailed records of all the activity detected by the sensor is recorded. For example, when an email message is detected, the message itself, including any attachments, is recorded. When a user accesses the web, every page that they visit is archived.

The following topics provide information about DLP:

- Basic DLP filter types on page 1427
- DLP fingerprinting on page 1429

Protocol comparison between DLP inspection modes

The following table indicates which protocols can be inspected by DLP based on the specified inspection modes.

	HTTP	FTP	IMAP	POP3	SMTP	NNTP	MAPI	CIFS	SFTP/SCP
Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Flow	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No

Logging and blocking files by file name

Sometimes, file names are not accurately recorded in DLP logs, even though the files are blocked correctly based on the DLP sensor. This is particularly apparent on cloud-based services, such as Google Drive or SharePoint.

For HTTP file uploads, some cloud services use proprietary encodings and APIs to transfer files and exchange metadata, instead of standard HTTP mechanisms, requiring custom handling of the proprietary API. If a cloud service changes the API without notice, the custom handling becomes outdated and file names might not be logged properly. Due to this, special consideration must be taken when using DLP to block files by file pattern. To block a specific file type, it is better to block by file type, and not by file name pattern.

Basic DLP filter types

The following basic filter types can be configured in the CLI:

- File type and name
- File size
- Regular expression
- Credit card and SSN

File type and name

A file type filter allows you to block, allow, log, or quarantine based on the file type specified in the file filter list.

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit <id>
        set name <string>
        config entries
            edit <pattern>
                set filter-type {type | pattern}
                set file-type <file type>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure file type and name filtering:

1. Create a file pattern to filter files based on the file name patter or file type.
   For example, to filter for GIFs and PDFs:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit 11
        set name "sample_config"
        config entries
            edit "*.gif"
                set filter-type pattern
            next
            edit "pdf"
                set filter-type type
                set file-type pdf
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create the DLP sensor:

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <name>
      config filter
         edit <id>
            set name <string>
            set proto {smtp pop3 imap http-get http-post ftp nntp mapi ssh cifs}
            set filter-by file-type
            set file-type 11
            set action {allow | log-only | block | quarantine-ip}
         next
      end
   next
end
```

File size

A file size filter checks for files that exceed the specific size, and performs the DLP sensor's configured action on them.

To configure file size filtering:

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <name>
      config filter
         edit <id>
            set name <string>
            set proto {smtp pop3 imap http-get http-post ftp nntp mapi ssh cifs}
            set filter-by file-size
            set file-type 11
            set action {allow | log-only | block | quarantine-ip}
         next
      end
   next
end
```

Regular expression

A regular expression filter is used to filter files or messages based on the configured regular expression pattern.

To configure regular expression filtering:

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <name>
      config filter
         edit <id>
            set name <string>
            set type {file | message}
            set proto {smtp pop3 imap http-get http-post ftp nntp mapi ssh cifs}
            set filter-by regexp
            set regexp <string>
            set action {allow | log-only | block | quarantine-ip}
         next
      end
   next
end
```

Credit card and SSN

The credit card sensor can match the credit card number formats used by American Express, Mastercard, and Visa. It can be used to filter files or messages.

The SSN sensor can be used to filter files or messages for Social Security Numbers.

To configure credit card or SSN filtering:

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <name>
      config filter
         edit <id>
            set name <string>
            set type {file | message}
            set proto {smtp pop3 imap http-get http-post ftp nntp mapi ssh cifs}
            set filter-by {credit-card | ssn}
            set action {allow | log-only | block | quarantine-ip}
         next
      end
   next
end
```

DLP fingerprinting

DLP fingerprinting can be used to detect sensitive data. The file that the DLP sensor will filter for is uploaded and the FortiGate generates and stores a checksum fingerprint. The FortiGate unit generates a fingerprint for all of the files that are detected in network traffic, and compares all of the checksums stored in its database. If a match is found, the configured action is taken.

Any type of file can be detected by DLP fingerprinting, and fingerprints can be saved for each revision of a file as it is updated.

To use fingerprinting:

- Select the files to be fingerprinted by targeting a document source.
- Add fingerprinting filters to DLP sensors.

- Add the sensors to firewall policies that accept traffic that the fingerprinting will be applied on.



The document fingerprint feature requires a FortiGate device that has internal storage.

To configure a DLP fingerprint document:

```
config dlp fp-doc-source
    edit <name_str>
        set server-type smb
        set server <string>
        set period {none | daily | weekly | monthly}
        set vdom {mgmt | current}
        set scan-subdirectories {enable | disable}
        set remove-deleted {enable | disable}
        set keep-modified {enable | disable}
        set username <string>
        set password <password>
        set file-path <string>
        set file-pattern <string>
        set sensitivity <Critical | Private | Warning>
        set tod-hour <integer>
        set tod-min <integer>
        set weekday {sunday | monday | tuesday | wednesday | thursday | friday |
saturday}
        set date <integer>
    next
end
```

Command	Description
server-type smb	The protocol used to communicate with document server. Only Samba (SMB) servers are supported.
server <string>	IPv4 or IPv6 address of the server.
period {none | daily | weekly | monthly}	The frequency that the FortiGate checks the server for new or changed files.
vdom {mgmt | current}	The VDOM that can communicate with the file server.
scan-subdirectories {enable | disable}	Enable/disable scanning subdirectories to find files.
remove-deleted {enable | disable}	Enable/disable keeping the fingerprint database up to date when a file is deleted from the server.
keep-modified {enable | disable}	Enable/disable keeping the old fingerprint and adding a new one when a file is changed on the server.
username <string>	The user name required to log into the file server.
password <password>	The password required to log into the file server.
file-path <string>	The path on the server to the fingerprint files.

Command	Description
file-pattern <string>	Files matching this pattern on the server are fingerprinted.
sensitivity <Critical | Private | Warning>	The sensitivity or threat level for matches with this fingerprint database.
tod-hour <integer>	Set the hour of the day. This option is only available when `period` is not `none`.
tod-min <integer>	Set the minute of the hour. This option is only available when `period` is not `none`.
weekday {sunday | monday | tuesday | wednesday | thursday | friday | saturday}	Set the day of the week. This option is only available when `period` is `weekly`.
date <integer>	Set the day of the month. This option is only available when `period` is `monthly`.

To configure a DLP fingerprint sensor:

```
config dlp sensor
    edit <sensor name>
        config filter
            edit <id number of filter>
                set proto {smtp | pop3 | imap http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi}
                set filter-by fingerprint
                set sensitivity {Critical | Private | Warning}
                set match-percentage <integer>
                set action {allow | log-only | block | ban | quarantine-ip}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Command	Description
proto {smtp | pop3 | imap http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi}	The protocol to inspect.
filter-by fingerprint	Match against a fingerprint sensitivity.
sensitivity {Critical | Private | Warning}	Select a DLP file pattern sensitivity to match.
match-percentage <integer>	The percentage of the checksum required to match before the sensor is triggered.
action {allow | log-only | block | ban | quarantine-ip}	The action to take with content that this DLP sensor matches.

View the DLP fingerprint database on the FortiGate

The CLI debug command `diagnose test application dlpfingerprint` can be used to display the fingerprint information that is on the FortiGate.

```
Fingerprint Daemon Test Usage;
-------------------------------------------
  1 : This menu
  2 : Dump database
  3 : Dump all files
  5 : Dump all chunk
  6 : Refresh all doc sources in all VDOMs
  7 : Show the db file size and the limit
  9 : Display stats
 10 : Clear stats
 99 : Restart this daemon
```

For example, option 3 will dump all fingerprinted files:

```
DLP_WANOPT-CLT (global) # diagnose test application dlpfingerprint 3
DLPFP diag_test_handler called
File DB:
--------------------------------------
id, filename,                              vdom, archive, deleted, scanTime,   docSourceSrvr,
sensitivity, chunkCnt, reviseCnt,
1,  /fingerprint/upload/1.txt,             vdom1,  0,      0,      1494868196,   1,      2,
1,    0,
2,  /fingerprint/upload/30percentage.xls,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
13,      0,
3,  /fingerprint/upload/50.pdf,            vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
122,  0,
4,  /fingerprint/upload/50.pdf.tar.gz,     vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
114,     0,
5,  /fingerprint/upload/check-list_AL-SIP_HA.xls,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,     1,
2,       32,     0,
6,  /fingerprint/upload/clean.zip,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
1,    0,
7,  /fingerprint/upload/compare.doc,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1522097410,   1,      2,
18,      0,
8,  /fingerprint/upload/dlpsensor-watermark.pdf,   vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,     1,
2,       11,     0,
9,  /fingerprint/upload/eicar.com,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
1,    0,
10, /fingerprint/upload/eicar.zip,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
1,    0,
11, /fingerprint/upload/EMAIL-CONTENT-ARCHIVE.ppt,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,     1,
2,       11,     0,
12, /fingerprint/upload/encrypt.zip,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
77,      0,
13, /fingerprint/upload/extension_7_8_1.crx,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1528751781,     1,
2,       2720,   0,
14, /fingerprint/upload/fingerprint.txt,   vdom1,  0,      0,      1498582679,   1,      2,
37,      0,
15, /fingerprint/upload/fingerprint90.txt,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1498582679,   1,      2,
37,      0,
16, /fingerprint/upload/fo2.pdf,           vdom1,  0,      0,      1450488049,   1,      2,
1,    0,
17, /fingerprint/upload/foo.doc,           vdom1,  0,      0,      1388538131,   1,      2,
9,    0,
18, /fingerprint/upload/fortiauto.pdf,     vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
146,     0,
19, /fingerprint/upload/image.out,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1531802940,   1,      2,
5410, 0,
20, /fingerprint/upload/jon_file.txt,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1536596091,   1,      2,    1,
      0,
```

```
21, /fingerprint/upload/machotest,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1528751955,   1,      2,
19,   0,
22, /fingerprint/upload/nntp-server.doc,    vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
17,      0,
23, /fingerprint/upload/notepad++.exe,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1456090734,   1,      2,
1061,    0,
24, /fingerprint/upload/nppIExplorerShell.exe,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1438559930,     1,
2,       5,      0,
25, /fingerprint/upload/NppShell_06.dll,    vdom1,  0,      0,      1456090736,   1,      2,
111,     0,
26, /fingerprint/upload/PowerCollections.chm,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1533336889,     1,
2,       728,    0,
27, /fingerprint/upload/reflector.dmg,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1533336857,   1,      2,
21117,   0,
28, /fingerprint/upload/roxio.iso,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1517531765,   1,      2,
49251,0,
29, /fingerprint/upload/SciLexer.dll,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1456090736,   1,      2,
541,     0,
30, /fingerprint/upload/screen.jpg,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
55,   0,
31, /fingerprint/upload/Spec to integrate FASE into FortiOS.doc,    vdom1,  0,    0,
1356118251,    1,      2,      31,     0,
32, /fingerprint/upload/subdirectory1/subdirectory2/subdirectory3/hibun.aea,        vdom1,  0,
0,       1529019743,     1,      2,      1,      0,
33, /fingerprint/upload/test.pdf,           vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
5,    0,
34, /fingerprint/upload/test.tar,           vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
3,    0,
35, /fingerprint/upload/test.tar.gz,        vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,    1,
      0,
36, /fingerprint/upload/test1.txt,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1540317547,   1,      2,
1,    0,
37, /fingerprint/upload/thousand-files.zip, vdom1,  0,      0,      1536611774,   1,      2,
241,     0,
38, /fingerprint/upload/Thumbs.db,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1445878135,   1,      2,
3,    0,
39, /fingerprint/upload/widget.pdf,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
18,   0,
40, /fingerprint/upload/xx00-xx01.tar,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,    5,
      0,
41, /fingerprint/upload/xx02-xx03.tar.gz,   vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,    1,
      0,
```

VoIP solutions

You can configure VoIP profiles to allow SIP and SCCP traffic and to protect your network from SIP- and SCCP-based attacks.

FortiOS includes two preloaded VoIP profiles:

- *default*
- *strict*

You can customize these profiles, or you can create your own and add them to firewall policies that allow VoIP.

VoIP profiles cannot be used NGFW policy-based mode. See Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW on page 1092 for more information.

The following topics provide information about VoIP profiles:

- General use cases on page 1434
- SIP message inspection and filtering on page 1438
- SIP pinholes on page 1440
- SIP over TLS on page 1441
- Custom SIP RTP port range support on page 1442
- Voice VLAN auto-assignment on page 1444

General use cases

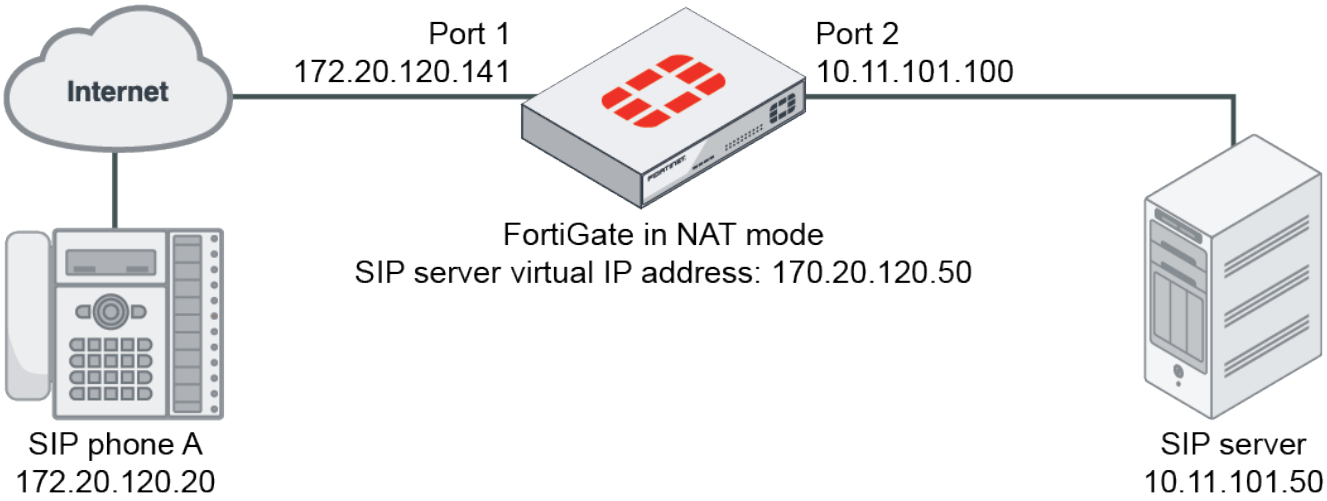
There are three scenarios in which the FortiOS session initiation protocol (SIP) solution is usually deployed:

1. The SIP server is in a private network, protected from the internet by a FortiOS device.
2. The SIP clients are in a private network, protected from the internet by a FortiOS device.
3. The SIP server is in a private network, such as a corporation's internal network or an ISP's network, protected from the Internet by a FortiOS device. The SIP clients are in a remote private network, such as a SOHO network, and behind a NAT device that is not aware of SIP applications.

The following VIP, NAT, and HNT examples show configurations for each of the three common scenarios.

VIP

A FortiGate with SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) or SIP Session Helper protects the SIP server from the internet, while SIP phones from the internet need to register to the SIP server and establish calls through it.



A VIP needs to be configured for the SIP server, and the VIP must be applied in a firewall policy for the phones to send REGISTER messages through the FortiGate from port1 to port2.

Only one firewall policy needs to be configured for all SIP phones on both the internet and private network to register to the SIP server through Port1 and set up SIP calls.

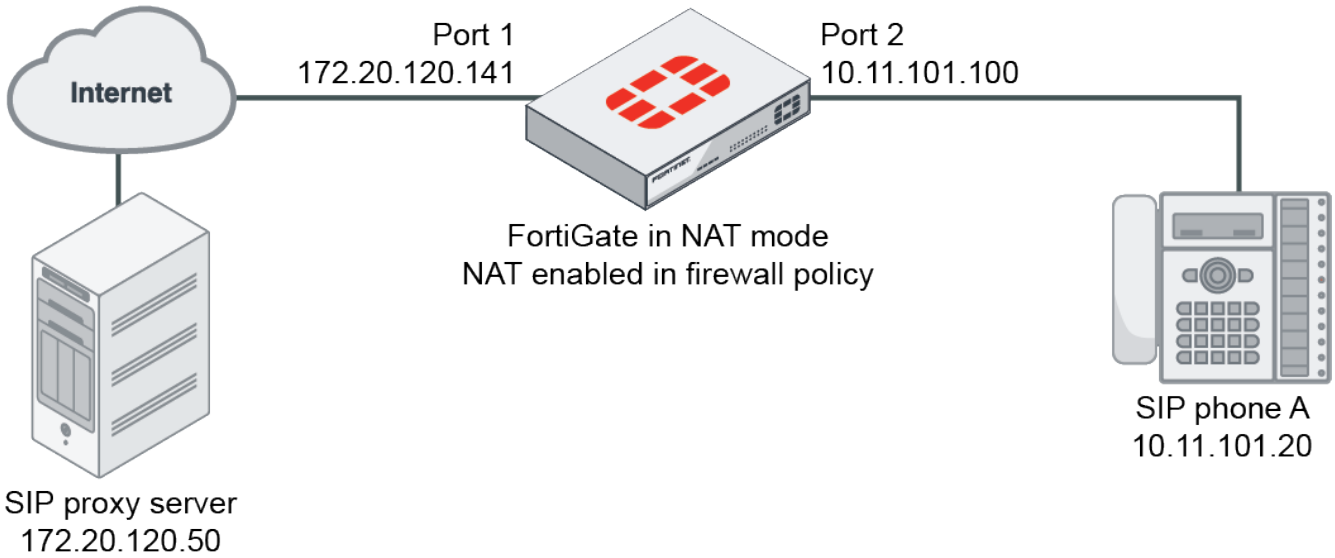
Assuming either SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper is enabled, configure the FortiGate with the following CLI commands:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set extip 172.20.120.50
        set extintf "port1"
        set mappedip "10.11.101.50"
    next
end
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
    next
end
```

Setting `service` to `SIP` and not `All` in the firewall policy can improve protection by restricting the data traffic passing through the FortiGate to the SIP call traffic only.

NAT

A FortiGate with SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper protects the SIP phones and the internal network from the internet, while SIP phones in the internal network need to register to the SIP server installed on the internet and establish calls through it.



One firewall policy needs to be configured with NAT enabled for SIP phones to send REGISTER messages through the FortiGate from port2 to port1.

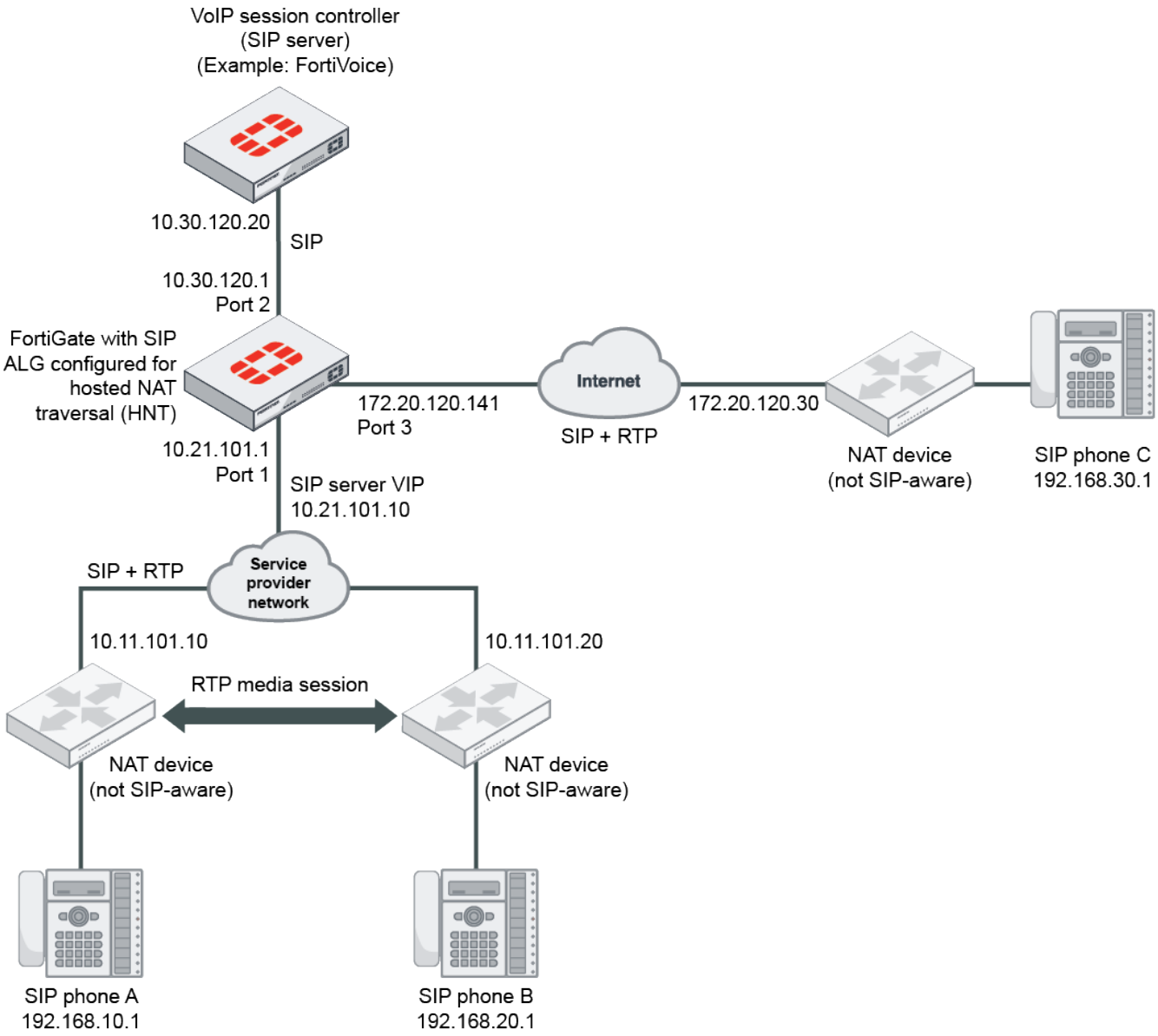
Assuming either SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper is enabled, configure the FortiGate with the following CLI commands:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

HNT

A FortiGate with SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper protects the SIP server from the internet, while SIP phones are in remote private networks behind NAT devices that are not aware of the SIP application.

For example, the SIP server is located in an ISP's service cloud that is protected by the FortiGate SIP ALG, and the SIP phones are installed in the home networks of the ISP's customers.



The SIP messages traversing the remote NAT devices might have their IP addresses translated by the NAT device at the network layer, but untranslated at the SIP application layer because those NAT devices are not aware of the SIP applications. This causes problems in a SIP session initiated process. Special configurations for the Hosted NAT Traversal (HNT) are required to resolve this issue.

To configure the FortiGate with HNT support for SIP phones A and B to set up calls with each other:

1. Identify port1 as the external interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set external enable
    next
end
```

2. Configure VIP for the SIP server:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set extip 10.21.101.10
        set extintf "port1"
        set mappedip "10.30.120.20"
    next
end
```

3. Configure a VoIP profile with HNT enabled:

```
config voip profile
    edit "hnt"
        config sip
            set hosted-nat-traversal enable
            set hnt-restrict-source-ip enable
        end
    next
end
```



`hosted-nat-traversal` must be enabled.

`hnt-restrict-source-ip` does not have to be enabled, but can be enabled to restrict the RTP packets' source IP to be the same as the SIP packets' source IP.

4. Apply the VoIP profile and VIP in a firewall policy for phone A and B to register and set up SIP calls through the FortiGate and SIP server:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
        set utm-status enable
        set voip-profile "hnt"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```



`nat` must be enabled in the firewall policy.

SIP message inspection and filtering

SIP ALG provides users with security features to inspect and control SIP messages that are transported through FortiOS devices, including:

- Verifying the SIP message syntax.
- Blocking particular types of SIP requests.

- Restricting the rate of particular SIP requests.

These features are configured in the VoIP profile:

```
config voip profile
    edit <voip_profile_name>
        config sip set ...
```

The VoIP profile can then be applied to a firewall policy to process the SIP call traffic.

SIP message syntax inspection

For syntax verification, the following attributes are available for configuration in the VoIP profile to determine what action is taken when a specific syntax error or attack based on invalid syntax is detected. For example, the action can be set to pass or discard it.

```
malformed-request-line
malformed-header-via
malformed-header-from
malformed-header-to
malformed-header-call-id
malformed-header-cseq
malformed-header-rack
malformed-header-rseq
malformed-header-contact
malformed-header-record-route
malformed-header-route
malformed-header-expires
malformed-header-content-type
malformed-header-content-length
malformed-header-max-forwards
malformed-header-allow
malformed-header-p-asserted-identity
malformed-header-sdp-v
malformed-header-sdp-o
malformed-header-sdp-s
malformed-header-sdp-i
malformed-header-sdp-c
malformed-header-sdp-b
malformed-header-sdp-z
malformed-header-sdp-k
malformed-header-sdp-a
malformed-header-sdp-t
malformed-header-sdp-r
malformed-header-sdp-m
```

SIP message blocking

The following options are available in the VoIP profile to block SIP messages:

```
block-long-lines
block-unknown
block-ack
block-bye
block-cancel
```

```
block-info
block-invite
block-message
block-notify
block-options
block-prack
block-publish
block-refer
block-register
block-subscribe
block-update
block-geo-red-options
```

SIP message rate limiting

The rate of certain types of SIP requests that are passing through the SIP ALG can be restricted :

```
register-rate
invite-rate
subscribe-rate
message-rate
notify-rate
refer-rate
update-rate
options-rate
ack-rate
prack-rate
info-rate
publish-rate
bye-rate
cancel-rate
```

SIP pinholes

When SIP ALG processes a SIP call, it usually opens pinholes for SIP signaling and RTP/RTCP packets. NAT usually takes place during the process at both the network and SIP application layers. SIP ALG ensures that, with NAT happening, corresponding SIP and RTP/RTCP pinholes are created during the process when it is necessary for call sessions to be established through FortiOS devices.

By default, SIP ALG manages pinholes automatically, but some special configurations can be used to restrict the pinholes if required.

SIP pinhole restriction

By default, the *strict-register* attribute is enabled. When enabled, after a SIP endpoint registers to the SIP server through a firewall policy on the FortiOS device, only the SIP messages sent from the same IP address as the SIP server are allowed to pass through the SIP pinhole that is created in the FortiOS device to reach the SIP endpoints. If the attribute is disabled, SIP messages from any IP addresses can pass through the pinhole created after the registration.

```
config voip profile
    edit "voip-profile-name"
        config sip
```

```
            set strict-register [enable|disable]
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

RTP/RTCP pinhole restriction

In a SIP call through SIP ALG, the NATed RTP/RTCP port range is 5117 to 65533 by default. If required, the port range can be restricted.

```
config voip profile
    edit "voip-profile-name"
        config sip
            set nat-port-range <start_port_number>-<end_port_number>
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

In a SIP call session, the RTP port number is usually an even number and the RTCP port number is an odd number that is one more than the RTP port number. It is best practice to configure `start_port_number` to an even number, and `end_port_number` to an odd number, for example:

```
config voip profile
    edit "voip-profile-name"
        conf sip
            set nat-port-range 30000-39999
        end
    next
end
```

SIP over TLS

Some SIP phones and servers can communicate using TLS to encrypt the SIP signaling traffic. To allow SIP over TLS calls to pass through the FortiGate, the encrypted signaling traffic must be unencrypted and inspected. The FortiGate SIP ALG intercepts, unencrypts , and inspects the SIP packets, which are then re-encrypted and forwarded to their destination.

The SIP ALG only supports full mode TLS. This means that the SIP traffic between SIP phones and the FortiGate, and between the FortiGate and the SIP server, is always encrypted. The highest TLS version supported by SIP ALG is TLS 1.2.

To enable SIP over TLS support, the SSL mode in the VoIP profile must be set to `full`. The SSL server and client certificates can be provisioned so that the FortiGate can use them to establish connections to SIP phones and servers, respectively.

To configure SIP over TLS:

1. Configure a VoIP profile with SSL enabled:

```
config voip profile
    edit "tls"
```

```
            config sip
                set ssl-mode full
                set ssl-client-certificate "ssl_client_cert"
                set ssl-server-certificate "ssl_server_cert"
            end
        next
    end
```

The `ssl_server_cert`, `ssl_client_cert`, and key files can be generated using a certification tool, such as OpenSLL, and imported to the local certificate store of the FortiGate from *System* > *Certificates* in the GUI. Existing local certificates in the certificate store can also be used. As always for TLS connections, the certificates used must be verified and trusted at the other end of the connection when required.

For example, the CA certificate of the SIP server's certificate should be imported to the FortiGate as an external CA certification, such that the FortiGate can use it to verify the SIP server's certificate when setting up the TLS connection. The CA certificate configured as the `ssl_server_cert` should be installed as the trusted certificate on the SIP phones. The deployment of the certificates across the network depends on the SIP client and server devices that are used in the system.

2. Apply the profile to the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "vip_sip_server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
        set utm-status enable
        set voip-profile "tls"
    next
end
```

Custom SIP RTP port range support

The `nat-port-range` variable is used to specify a port range in the VoIP profile to restrict the NAT port range for real-time transport protocol/real-time transport control protocol (RTP/RTCP) packets in a session initiation protocol (SIP) call session that is handled by the SIP application layer gateway (ALG) in a FortiGate device.

When NAT is enabled, or VIP is used in a firewall policy for SIP ALG to handle a SIP call session established through a FortiGate device, the SIP ALG can perform NAT to translate the ports used for the RTP/RTCP packets when they are flowing through the device between the external and internal networks.

You can control the translated port range for RTP/RTCP packets using the CLI:

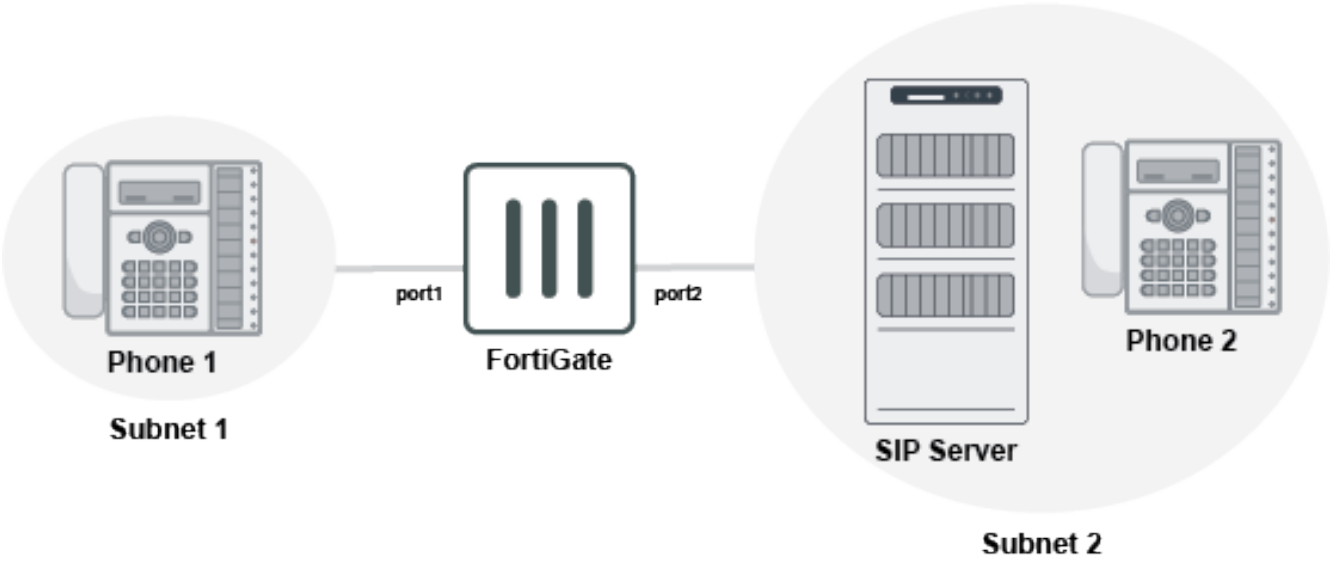
```
config voip profile
   edit <profile-name>
      config sip
         set nat-port-range <port range>
      end
   next
end
```

Command	Description
nat-port-range <port range>	The NAT port range (minimum port number = 5117, default = 5117-65535).

Example

In this example, Phone1 is in subnet_1, and the SIP server and phone are in subnet_2. All SIP signaling messages and RTP/RTCP packets go through the SIP Server. The RTP/RTCP ports on Phone1 are configured as 17078/17079.

The FortiGate administrator wants to use NAT for the port 17078/17079 to 30000/30001. As a result, all RTP/RTCP packets going out of port2 have source ports of 30000/30001, and all RTP/RTCP packets going into port2 also have destination ports of 30000/30001, which is specified in `nat-port-range`.



To configure the custom port range:

```
config voip profile
   edit "natPortRange"
        config sip
           set nat-port-range 30000-30001
        end
   next
end
configure firewall policy
   edit 1
        set srcintf port1
        set  dstintf port2
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set service SIP
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set voip-profile natPortRange
        set nat enable
end
```

If phone1 and phone2 are registered to the SIP server, and they establish a call session between them through the FortiGate and the SIP server, then the RTP/RTCP ports 17078/17079 of phone1 will be translated to ports 30000/30001 at the FortiGate unit based on the NAT port range setting. That is, the RTP/RTCP packets egressing port2 of the Fortigate will have source ports of 30000/30001, and the RTP/RTCP packets ingressing port2 will have destination ports of 30000/30001.

Voice VLAN auto-assignment

You can leverage LLDP-MED to assign voice traffic to the desired voice VLAN. After detection and setup, the IP phone on the network is segmented to its own VLAN for policy, prioritization, and reporting. The LLDP reception capabilities in FortiOS have been extended to support LLDP-MED assignment for voice, voice signaling, guest, guest voice signaling, softphone, video conferencing, streaming video, and video signaling.

You can configure this feature using the following steps:

1. Setting up the VLAN for the voice device
2. Setting up the DHCP server for the voice VLAN
3. Setting up the LLDP network policy
4. Enabling LLDP on the physical interface that the VLAN belongs to
5. Applying the LLDP network policy on the physical interface
6. Confirming that the VLAN was assigned

To set up the VLAN for the voice device:

```
config system interface
    edit "vlan_100"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
        set alias "voice_vlan"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 25
        set interface "port10"
        set vlanid 100
    next
end
```

To set up the DHCP server for the voice VLAN:

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 192.168.1.99
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "vlan_100"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 192.168.1.110
                set end-ip 192.168.1.210
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

To set up the LLDP network policy:

```
config system lldp network-policy
    edit "1"
        config voice
            set status enable
            set tag dot1q
            set vlan 100
        end
    next
end
```

To enable LLDP on the physical interface that the VLAN belongs to:

```
config system interface
    edit "port10"
        set vdom "root"
        set type physical
        set lldp-reception enable
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set snmp-index 14
    next
end
```

To apply the LLDP network policy on the physical interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port10"
        set lldp-network-policy "1"
    next
end
```

To confirm that the VLAN was assigned as expected:

1. Connect an IP phone to the network.
2. Check the IP address on the phone.
   The IP address should belong to the voice VLAN.
3. Sniff on the FortiGate incoming interface to see if traffic from the IP phone has the desired VLAN tag.
   In the example commands above, the voice VLAN was configured as VLAN 100. Therefore, voice traffic from the IP phone should be in VLAN 100.

ICAP

Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) is an application layer protocol that is used to offload tasks from the firewall to separate, specialized servers. For more information see RFC 3507.

ICAP profiles can only be applied to policies that use proxy-based inspection. If you enable ICAP in a policy, HTTP and HTTPS (if HTTPS inspection is supported) traffic that is intercepted by the policy is transferred to the ICAP server

specified by the selected ICAP profile. Responses from the ICAP server are returned to the FortiGate, and then forwarded to their destination.

By default, *ICAP* is not visible in the GUI. See Feature visibility on page 1049 for instructions on making it visible.

ICAP filter profiles cannot be used in NGFW policy-based mode. See Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW on page 1092 for more information.

To configure ICAP:

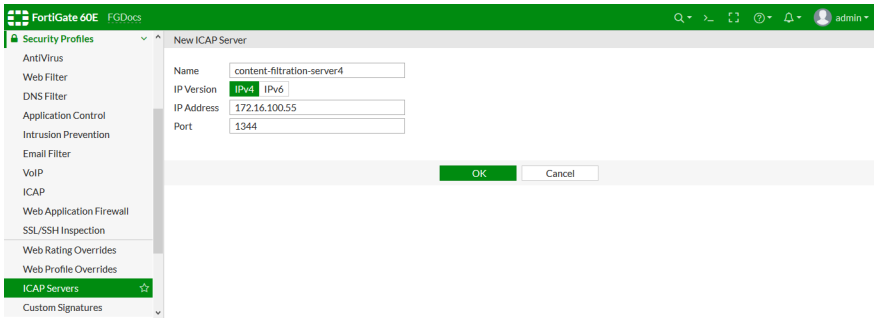
1. Set up your ICAP server.
2. On the FortiGate, add an ICAP server.
3. Create an ICAP profile.
4. Use the ICAP profile in a firewall policy that covers the traffic that needs to be offloaded to the ICAP server.

ICAP configuration example

In this example, the ICAP server performs proprietary content filtering on HTTP and HTTPS requests. If the content filter is unable to process a request, then the request is blocked. Streaming media is not considered by the filter, so it is allowed through and is not processed.

To add the ICAP server to the FortiGate in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *ICAP Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Name* field, enter a name for the ICAP server, such as *content-filtration-server4*.
4. Select the *IP Version*.
5. In the *IP Address* field, enter the IP address of the ICAP server.
6. In the *Port* field, enter a new port number if required. The default value is *1344*.

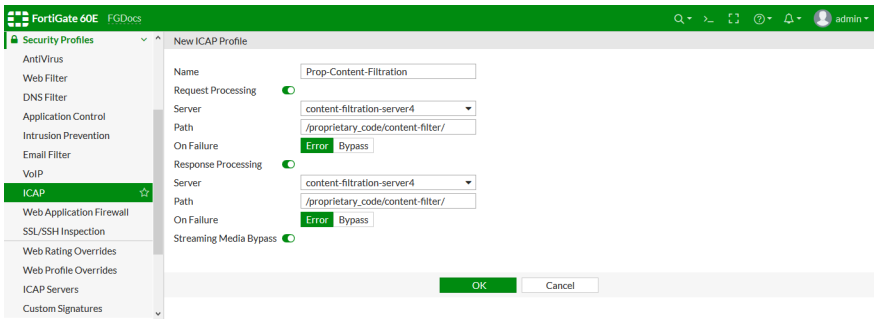


7. Click *OK*.

The maximum number of concurrent connections to ICAP server can be configured in the CLI. The default setting is 100 connections.

To create an ICAP profile in the GUI:

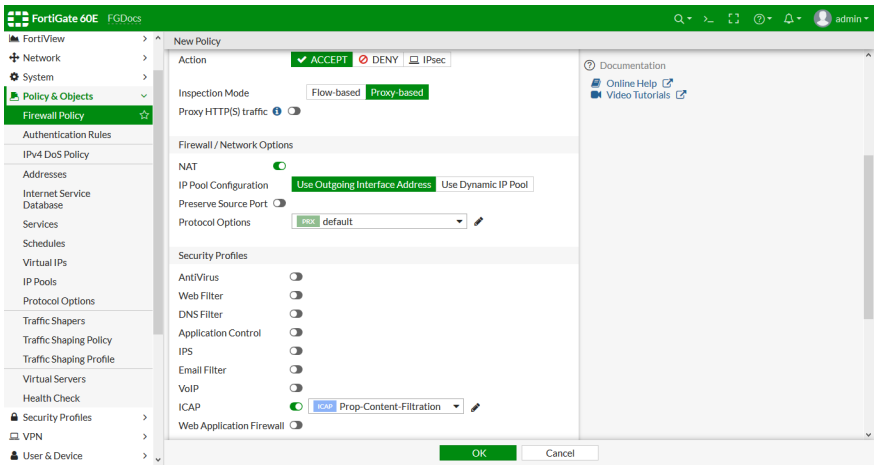
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *ICAP*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Name* field, enter a name for the ICAP profile, such as *Prop-Content-Filtration*.
4. Enable *Request Processing* then set the following:
   - *Server* - Select the ICAP server. In this example, select *content-filtration-server4*
   - *Path* - The path to the processing component on the server, such as */proprietary_code/content-filter/*.
   - *On Failure* - Select *Error* to block the request. If the message cannot be processed, it will not be blocked.
5. Enable *Response Processing* then set the following:
   - *Server* - Select the ICAP server: *content-filtration-server4*
   - *Path* - The path to the processing component on the server, such as */proprietary_code/content-filter/*.
   - *On Failure* - Select *Error* to block the request. If the message cannot be processed, it will not be blocked.
6. Enable *Streaming Media Bypass* to not offload streaming media to the ICAP server.



7. Click *OK*.

To add the ICAP profile to a policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the policy as needed to apply to the required traffic.
4. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.
5. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *ICAP* and select the ICAP server.



6. Click *OK*.

To configure the ICAP setup in the CLI:

1. Add the ICAP server:

```
config icap server
    edit "content-filtration-server4"
        set ip-version 4
        set ip-address 172.16.100.55
        set port 1344
        set max-connections 200
    next
end
```

2. Create the ICAP profile:

```
config icap profile
    edit "Prop-Content-Filtration"
        set request enable
        set response enable
        set streaming-content-bypass enable
        set request-server "content-filtration-server4"
        set response-server "content-filtration-server4"
        set request-failure error
        set response-failure error
        set request-path "/proprietary_code/content-filter/"
        set response-path "/proprietary_code/content-filter/"
        set methods delete get head options post put trace other
    next
end
```

3. Add the ICAP profile to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "icap_filter3"
        set srcintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set dstaddr "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set dstaddr-negate enable
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set icap-profile "Prop-Content-Filtration"
        set logtraffic disable
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

ICAP response filtering

ICAP HTTP responses can be forwarded or bypassed based on the HTTP header value and status code.

When configuring the ICAP profile, if `response` is enabled, the `respmod-default-action` option can be configured:

- If `respmod-default-action` is set to forward, FortiGate will treat every HTTP response, and send ICAP requests to the ICAP server.
- If `respmod-default-action` is set to bypass, FortiGate will only send ICAP requests if the HTTP response matches the defined rules, and the rule's action is set to forward.

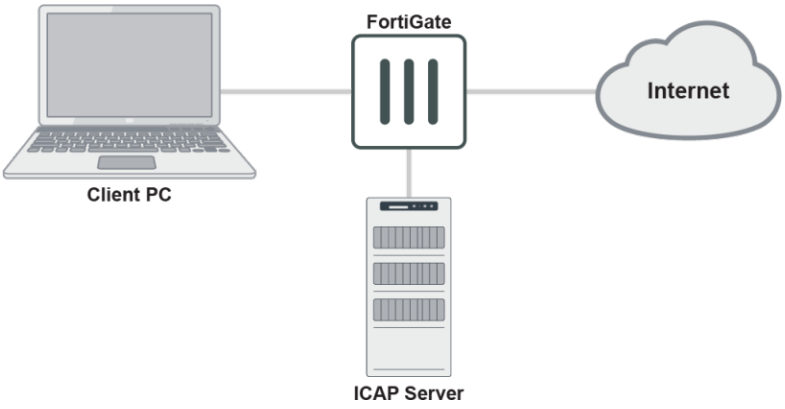
When configuring a response rule:

- The `http-resp-status-code` option is configured to specific HTTP response codes. If the HTTP response has any one of the configured values, then the rule takes effect.
- Multiple header value matching groups can be configured. If the header value matches one of the groups, then the rule takes effect.
- If both status codes and header values are specified in a rule, the response must match at least one of each.

The UTM ICAP log category is used for logging actions when FortiGate encounters errors with the ICAP server, such as no service, unreachable, error response code, or timeout. If an error occurs, a traffic log and an associated UTM ICAP log will be created.

Example

The FortiGate acts as a gateway for the client PC and connects to a reachable ICAP server. The ICAP server can be in NAT, transparent, or proxy mode.



In this example, client request HTTP responses will be forwarded to the ICAP server from all hosts if they have an HTTP status code of 200, 301, or 302, and have `content-type: image/jpeg` in the their header.

To configure an ICAP profile with HTTP response rules:

```
config icap profile
    edit "icap_profile2"
        set request disable
        set response enable
        set streaming-content-bypass disable
        set preview disable
        set response-server "icap_server1"
        set response-failure error
        set response-path ''
        set methods delete get head options post put trace other
        set response-req-hdr disable
        set respmod-default-action bypass
        config respmod-forward-rules
```

```
            edit "rule2"
                set host "all"
                set action forward
                set http-resp-status-code 200 301 302
                config header-group
                    edit 2
                        set header-name "content-type"
                        set header "image/jpeg"
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To view the logs if an error occurs:

1. View the traffic log:

```
# execute log filter category 0
# execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

 1: date=2019-10-25 time=17:43:47 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1572050627037314464 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.145
srcport=47968 srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.46 dstport=80
dstintf="port2" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="a4d5324e-f6c3-51e9-ce2d-f360994fb547"
sessionid=43549 proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP"
dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.1
transport=47968 duration=1 sentbyte=485 rcvdbyte=398 sentpkt=6 rcvdpkt=5
appcat="unscanned" wanin=478 wanout=165 lanin=165 lanout=165 utmaction="block"
counticap=1 crscore=5 craction=262144 crlevel="low" utmref=65532-0
```

2. View the UTM ICAP log:

```
# execute log filter category 20
# execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

 1: date=2019-10-25 time=17:43:46 logid="2000060000" type="utm" subtype="icap"
eventtype="icap" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1572050626010097145 tz="-0700"
msg="Request blocked due to ICAP server error" service="HTTP" srcip=10.1.100.145
dstip=172.16.200.46 srcport=47968 dstport=80 srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstintf="port2" dstintfrole="undefined" policyid=1 sessionid=43549 proto=6
action="blocked" profile="icap_profile1" url="/icap_test/"
```

The logs show that, in this case, the ICAP services stopped before the access. When the client tried to access HTTP and ICAP took effect, the FortiGate sent the ICAP request to the ICAP server and received an error. The client sees a *502 Bad Gateway* message, and FortiGate writes the two logs. In the GUI, the logged traffic is displayed as *Result: Deny: UTM Blocked*.

Web application firewall

Web application firewall (WAF) profiles can detect and block known web application attacks. You can configure WAF profiles to use signatures and constraints to examine web traffic. You can also enforce an HTTP method policy, which controls the HTTP method that matches the specified pattern.

You can customize the default profile, or you can create your own profile to apply access rules and HTTP protocol constraints to traffic. You can apply WAF profiles to firewall policies when the inspection mode is set to proxy-based.

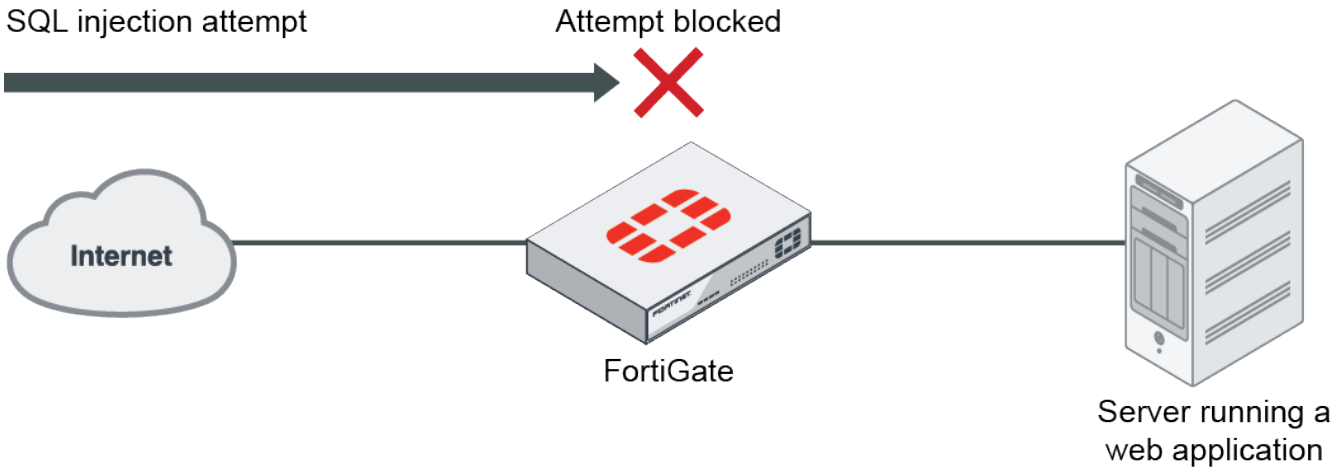
Web application firewall profiles cannot be used NGFW policy-based mode. See Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW on page 1092 for more information.

The following topic provides information about WAF profiles:

- Protecting a server running web applications on page 1451

Protecting a server running web applications

You can use a web application firewall profile to protect a server that is running a web application, such as webmail.



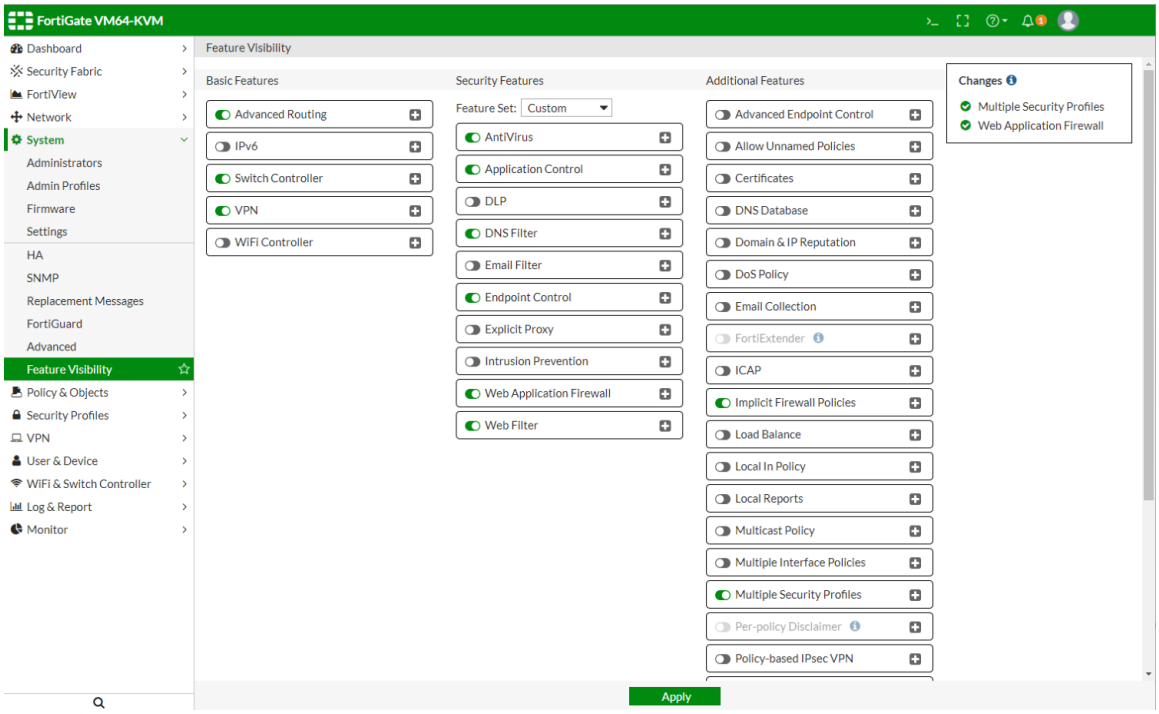
Web application firewall profiles are created with a variety of options called signatures and constraints. Once these options are enabled, the action can be set to allow, monitor, or block. The severity can be set to high, medium, or low.

In the following example, the default profile will be targeted to block SQL injection attempts and generic attacks.

The web application firewall feature is only available when the policy inspection mode is proxy-based.

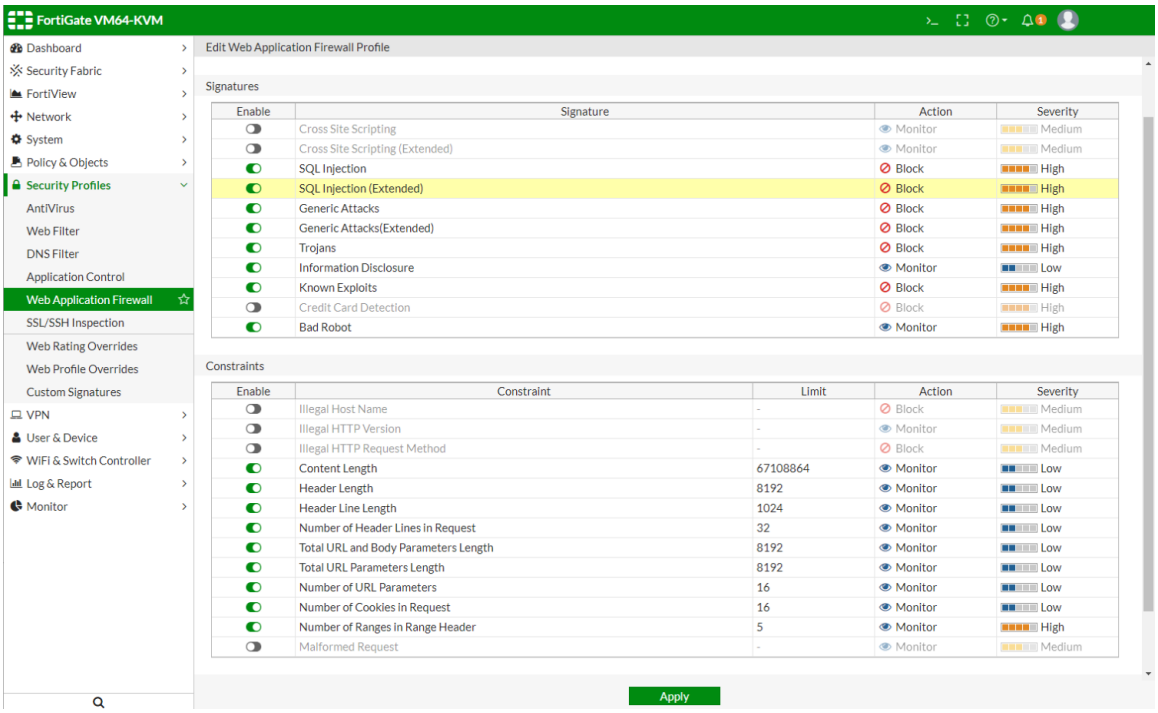
To protect a server running web applications:

1. Enable the web application firewall:
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
   b. Under *Security Features*, enable *Web Application Firewall*.
   c. Under *Additional Features*, click *Show More* and enable *Multiple Security Profiles*.



   d. Click *Apply*.
2. Edit the default web application firewall profile:
   Trojans and *Known Exploits* are blocked by default.

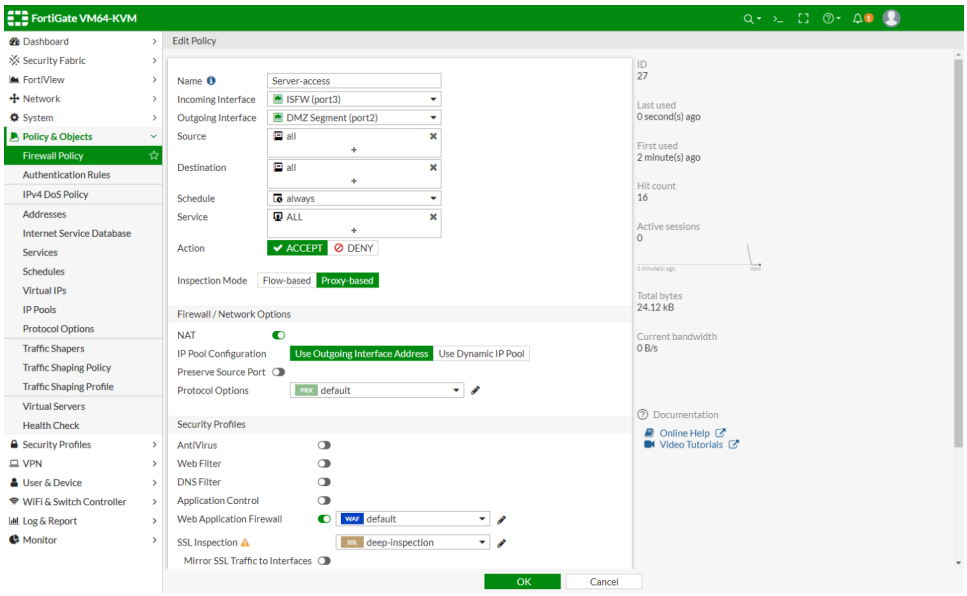
a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Application Firewall*.
b. Edit the *default* profile signature:
   i. Enable *SQL Injection (Extended)* and *Generic Attacks (Extended)*.
   ii. For both signatures, set the *Action* to *Block* and the *Severity* to *High*.



   iii. Click *Apply*.

3. Apply the profile to a security policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Edit the policy that allows access to the web server:
      i. Under *Firewall / Network Options*, select the appropriate *Protocol Option*.
      ii. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *Web Application Firewall* and set it to use the *default* profile.

iii. Set the *SSL Inspection* to use the *deep-inspection* profile.



iv. Click *OK*.

4. Verify that the web application firewall blocks traffic:
   a. Use the following URL to simulate an attack on your web server and substitute the IP address of your server:
   `http://<server IP>/index.php?username=1'%20or%20'1'%20=%20'1&password=1'%20or%20'1'%20=%20'1`
   An error message appears, stating that the web application firewall has blocked the traffic:



Offloading to a FortiWeb

If you have a FortiWeb, you may be able to offload the functions of the web application control to your FortiWeb. To find out if this option is available, refer to the FortiOS or FortiWeb Release Notes for information about device compatibility.

To offload to a FortiWeb:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*, and click *Fabric Device*.
3. Enter the following for the device:
   a. Name (`FortiWeb`)
   b. FortiWeb IP address
   c. HTTPS service port
4. Click *Generate*.
5. Enter your credentials to generate the access token.
6. Click *OK*.

SSL & SSH Inspection

Secure sockets layer (SSL) content scanning and inspection allows you to apply antivirus scanning, web filtering, and email filtering to encrypted traffic. You can apply SSL inspection profiles to firewall policies.

FortiOS includes four preloaded SSL/SSH inspection profiles, three of which are read-only and can be cloned:

- *certificate-inspection*
- *deep-inspection*
- *no-inspection*

The *custom-deep-inspection* profile can be edited, or you can create your own SSL/SSH inspection profiles.

Deep inspection (also known as SSL/SSH inspection) is typically applied to outbound policies where destinations are unknown. Depending on your policy requirements, you can configure the following:

- Which CA certificate will be used to decrypt the SSL encrypted traffic
- Which SSL protocols will be inspected
- Which ports will be associated with which SSL protocols for inspection
- Whether or not to allow invalid SSL certificates
- Whether or not SSH traffic will be inspected
- Which addresses or web category allowlists can bypass SSL inspection

The following topics provide information about SSL & SSH Inspection:

- Certificate inspection on page 1455
- Deep inspection on page 1457
- Protecting an SSL server on page 1460
- Handling SSL offloaded traffic from an external decryption device on page 1461
- SSH traffic file scanning on page 1463
- Redirect to WAD after handshake completion on page 1464

Certificate inspection

FortiGate supports certificate inspection. The default configuration has a built-in *certificate-inspection* profile which you can use directly. When you use certificate inspection, the FortiGate only inspects the headers up to the SSL/TLS layer.

If you do not want to deep scan for privacy reasons but you want to control web site access, you can use *certificate-inspection*.

SSL inspection options

The following options are available when configuring an SSL inspection profile:

Enable SSL inspection of	Select *Multiple Clients Connecting to Multiple Servers*. This is normally used when inspecting outbound internet traffic
Inspection method	Select *SSL Certificate Inspection*.
CA certificate	Use the default *Fortinet_CA_SSL* certificate.

Blocked certificates	The FortiGate receives Botnet C&C SSL connections from FortiGuard that contain SHA1 fingerprints of malicious certificates. By default, these certificates are blocked. Click *View Blocked Certificates* to see a detailed list.
Untrusted SSL certificates	Configure the action to take when a server certificate is not issued by a trusted CA. • *Allow*: Allow the untrusted server certificate. This is the default value. • *Block*: Block the session • *Ignore*: This option is for Full SSL inspection only. It re-signs the server certificate as trusted. When configured in the GUI for certificate inspection it has no effect and the setting is not saved. Click *View Trusted CAs List* to see a list of the factory bundled and user imported CAs that are trusted by the FortiGate.
Server certificate SNI check	Check the SNI in the hello message with the CN or SAN field in the returned server certificate. • *Enable*: If mismatched, use the CN in the server certificate to do URL filtering. • *Strict*: If mismatched, close the connection. • *Disable*: Server certificate SNI check is disabled.

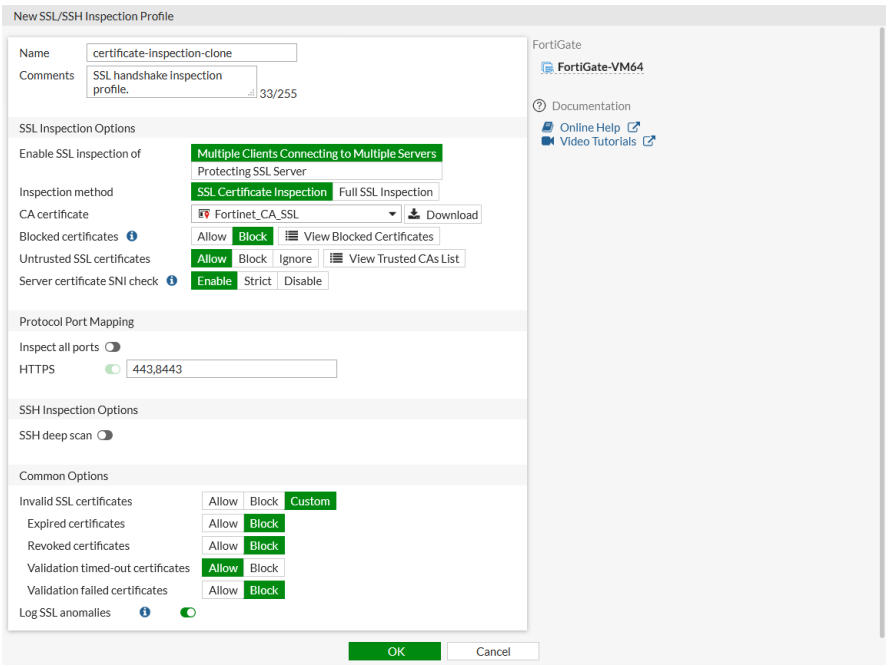
Inspect non-standard HTTPS ports

The built-in *certificate-inspection* profile is read-only and only listens on port 443. If you want to make changes, you must create a new certificate inspection profile.

If you know the non-standard port that the web server uses, such as port 8443, you can add this port to the *HTTPS* field.

To add a port to the inspection profile in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection*.
2. Create a new profile, or clone the default profile.
3. If you do no know what port is used in the HTTPS web server, under *Protocol Port Mapping*enable *Inspect All Ports*.
   If you know the port, such as port 8443, then set *HTTPS* to *443,8443*.



4. Configure the remaining setting as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

Common options

Invalid SSL certificates can be blocked, allowed, or a different actions can be configured for the different invalid certificates types:

Expired certificates	Action to take when the server certificate is expired. The default action is block.
Revoked certificates	Action to take when the server certificate is revoked. The default action is block.
Validation timed-out certificates	Action to take when the server certificate validation times out. The default action is allow.
Validation failed certificates	Action to take when the server certificate validation fails. The default action is block.

By default, SSL anomalies logging is enabled. Logs are generated in the UTM log type under the SSL subtype when invalid certificates are detected.

Deep inspection

You can configure address and web category allowlists to bypass SSL deep inspection.

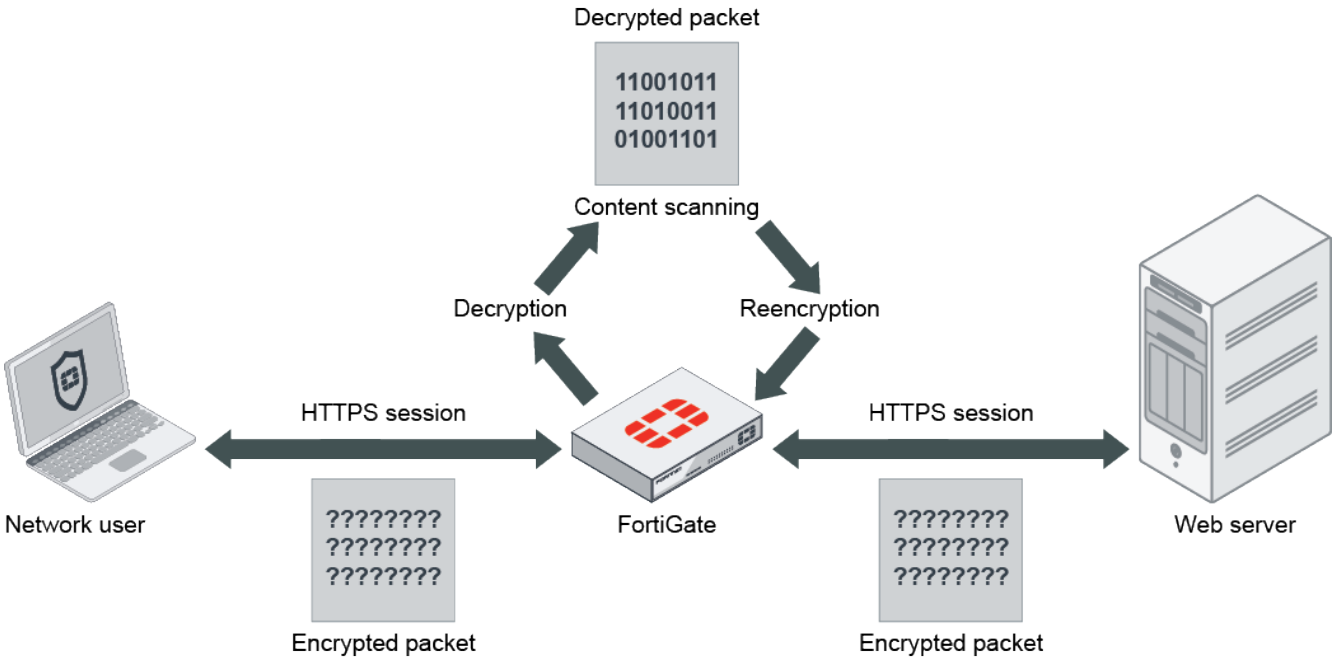
Reasons for using deep inspection

While Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) offers protection on the Internet by applying Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) encryption to web traffic, encrypted traffic can be used to get around your network's normal defenses.

For example, you might download a file containing a virus during an e-commerce session, or you might receive a phishing email containing a seemingly harmless download that, when launched, creates an encrypted session to a command and control (C&C) server and downloads malware onto your computer. Because the sessions in these attacks are encrypted, they might get past your network's security measures.

When you use deep inspection, the FortiGate impersonates the recipient of the originating SSL session, then decrypts and inspects the content to find threats and block them. It then re-encrypts the content and sends it to the real recipient.

Deep inspection not only protects you from attacks that use HTTPS, it also protects you from other commonly-used SSL-encrypted protocols such as SMTPS, POP3S, IMAPS, and FTPS.



Protocol port mapping

To optimize the FortiGate's resources, the mapping and inspection of the following protocols can be enabled or disabled:

- HTTPS
- SMTPS
- POP3S
- IMAPS
- FTPS
- DNS over TLS

Each protocol has a default TCP port. The ports can be modified to inspect any port with flowing traffic. The packet headers indicate which protocol generated the packet.

Protocol port mapping only works with proxy-based inspection. Flow-based inspection inspects all ports regardless of the protocol port mapping configuration.

Browser messages when using deep inspection

When FortiGate re-encrypts the content, it uses a certificate stored on the FortiGate such as *Fortinet_CA_SSL*, *Fortinet_CA_Untrusted*, or your own CA certificate that you uploaded.

Because there is no *Fortinet_CA_SSL* in the browser trusted CA list, the browser displays an untrusted certificate warning when it receives a FortiGate re-signed server certificate. To stop the warning messages, trust the FortiGate-trusted CA *Fortinet_CA_SSL* and import it into your browser.

After importing *Fortinet_CA_SSL* into your browser, if you still get messages about untrusted certificate, it must be due to *Fortinet_CA_Untrusted*. Never import the *Fortinet_CA_Untrusted* certificate into your browser.

To import *Fortinet_CA_SSL* into your browser:

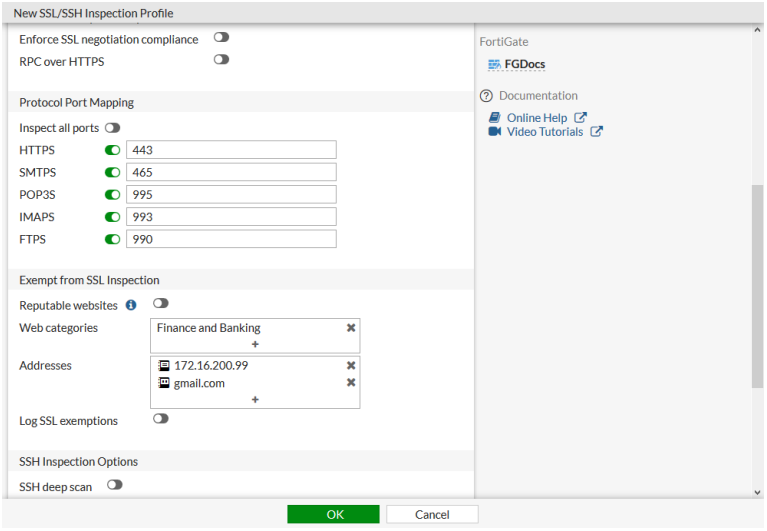
1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection* and edit the *deep-inspection* profile.
   The default *CA Certificate* is *Fortinet_CA_SSL*.
2. Click *Download* and save the certificate to the management computer.
3. On the client PC, use the *Certificate Import Wizard* to install the certificate into the *Trusted Root Certificate Authorities* store.
   If a security warning appears, select *Yes* to install the certificate.

Exempt web sites from deep inspection

If you do not want to apply deep inspection for privacy or other reasons, you can exempt the session by address, category, or allowlist.

If you know the address of the server you want to exempt, you can exempt that address. You can exempt specific address type including IP address, IP address range, IP subnet, FQDN, wildcard-FQDN, and geography.

If you want to exempt all bank web sites, an easy way is to exempt the *Finance and Banking* category which includes all finance and bank web sites identified in FortiGuard. For information about creating and using custom local and remote categories, see Web rating override on page 1472 and Threat feeds on page 372.



If you want to exempt commonly trusted web sites, you can bypass the SSL allowlist in the SSL/SSH profile by enabling *Reputable Websites*. The allowlist includes common web sites trusted by FortiGuard.

Strong crypto

When strong crypto is enabled under `config system global`, SSL deep Inspection defaults to TLS 1.1 as the lowest supported version for inspection. By default, the inspection action for unsupported versions, such as TLS 1.0 and lower, is to bypass inspection. If this is undesired, it is possible to set the default unsupported SSL/TLS version inspection behavior to block.

To block unsupported SSL/TLS version inspection:

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit <deep inspection profile>
        config <protocol>
            set unsupported-ssl-version block
        next
    next
end
```

Protecting an SSL server

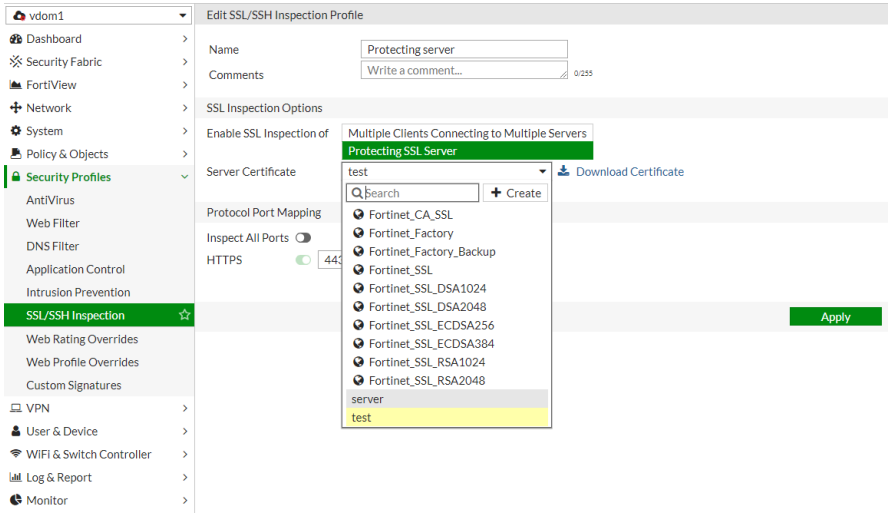
You typically use the FortiGate *Protecting SSL Server* profile as an inbound policy for clients on the internet that access the server through the internal side of the FortiGate.

Protecting SSL Server uses a server certificate to protect a single server.

You can use *Protecting SSL Server* if you do not want a client on the internet to directly access your internal server, and you want the FortiGate to simulate your real server.

To upload a server certificate into FortiGate and use that certificate in the SSL/SSH inspection profile:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
2. Select *Import* > *Local Certificate* and upload the certificate.
3. Go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection* and edit or create a new profile.
4. For *Enable SSL Inspection of*, select *Protecting SSL Server*.
5. For *Server Certificate*, select the local certificate you imported.
6. Click *Apply*.



When you apply the *Protecting SSL Server* profile in a policy, the FortiGate will send the server certificate to the client as your server does.

Handling SSL offloaded traffic from an external decryption device

In scenarios where the FortiGate is sandwiched between load-balancers and SSL processing is offloaded on the external load-balancers, the FortiGate can perform scanning on the unencrypted traffic by specifying the `ssl-offloaded` option in firewall `profile-protocol-options`. This option is supported in proxy and flow mode (previous versions only supported proxy mode).

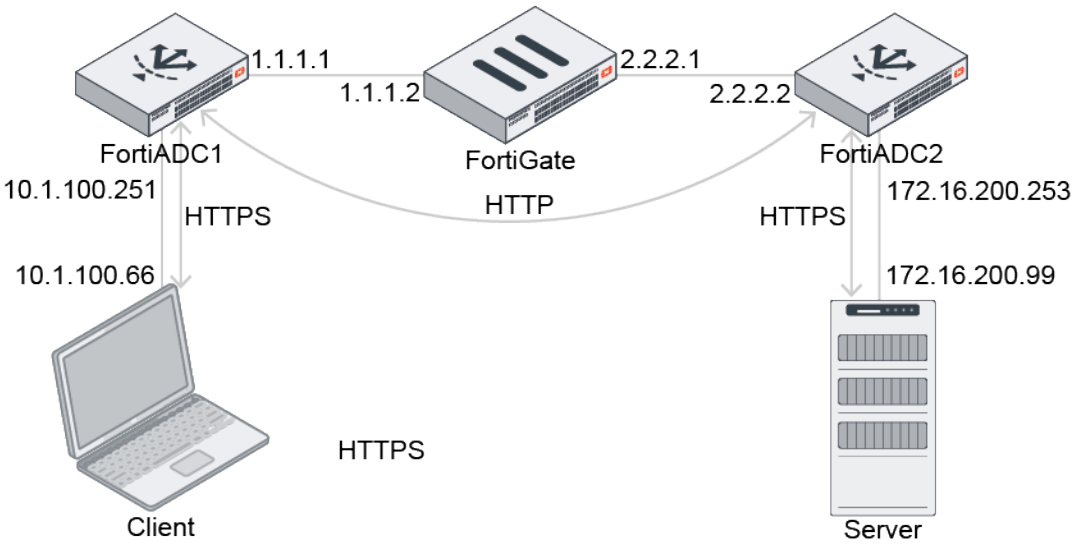
If the FortiGate receives an AUTH TLS, PBSZ, or PROT command before receiving plain text traffic from a decrypted device, by default, it will expect encrypted traffic, determine that the traffic belongs to an abnormal protocol, and bypass the traffic.

When the `ssl-offloaded` command is enabled, the AUTH TLS command is ignored, and the traffic is treated as plain text rather than encrypted data. SSL decryption and encryption are performed by the external device.

Sample topology

In this example, the FortiGate is between two FortiADCs and in SSL offload sandwich mode. The FortiGate receives plain text from ADC1 and forwards plain text to ADC2. There is no encrypted traffic passing through the FortiGate.

The client sends HTTPS traffic to ADC1, which then decrypts the traffic and sends HTTP to the FortiGate. The FortiGate forwards HTTP to ADC2, and the ADC2 re-encrypts the traffic to HTTPS.



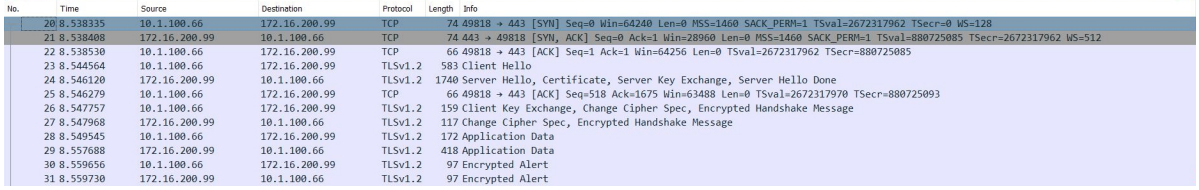
To configure SSL offloading:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "default-clone"
        config http
            set ports 80
            unset options
            unset post-lang
            set ssl-offloaded yes
```

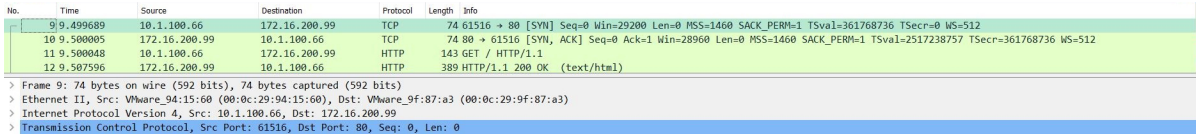
```
        end
        config ftp
            set ports 21
            set options splice
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
        config imap
            set ports 143
            set options fragmail
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
        config pop3
            set ports 110
            set options fragmail
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
        config smtp
            set ports 25
            set options fragmail splice
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
    next
end
```

Verifying the packet captures

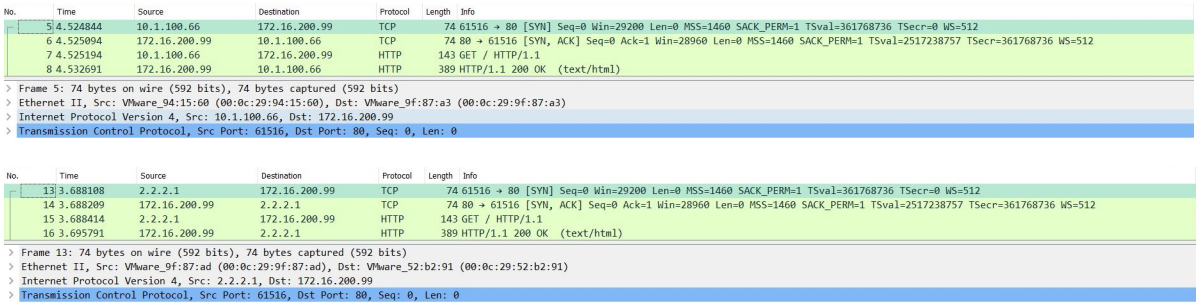
The ADC1 incoming port capture shows that ADC1 receives HTTPS traffic:



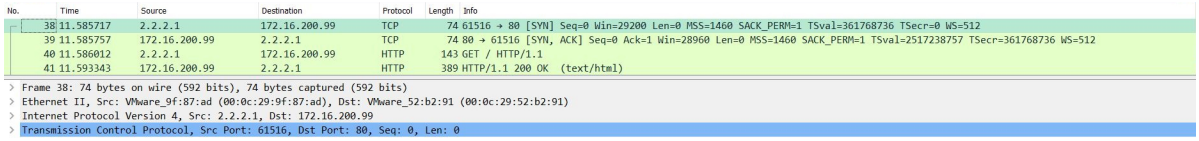
The ADC1 outgoing port capture shows that ADC1 decrypts traffic and forwards HTTP traffic to the FortiGate:



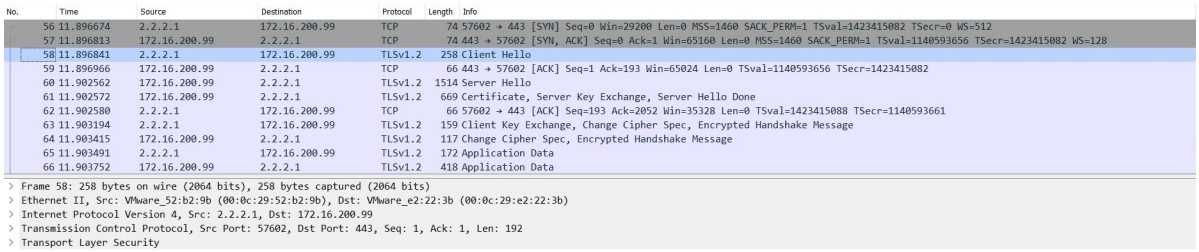
The FortiGate's incoming and outgoing port captures show that HTTP traffic passes through the FortiGate:



The ADC2 incoming port capture shows that the ADC2 receives HTTP traffic:



The ADC2 outgoing port capture shows that ADC2 forwards HTTPS traffic to the server:



SSH traffic file scanning

FortiGates can buffer, scan, log, or block files sent over SSH traffic (SCP and SFTP) depending on the file size, type, or contents (such as viruses or sensitive content).



This feature is supported in proxy-based inspection mode. It is currently not supported in flow-based inspection mode.

You can configure the following SSH traffic settings in the CLI:

- Protocol options
- DLP sensor
- Antivirus (profile and quarantine options)

To configure SSH protocol options:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "protocol"
        config ssh
           set options [oversize | clientcomfort | servercomfort]
           set comfort-interval [1 - 900]
           set comfort-amount [1 - 65535]
           set oversize-limit [1 - 798]
           set uncompressed-oversize-limit [0 - 798]
           set uncompressed-nest-limit [2 - 100]
           set scan-bzip2 [enable | disable]
        end
    next
end
```

To configure SCP block and log options:

```
config ssh-filter profile
    edit "ssh-test"
        set block scp
```

```
        set log scp
    next
end
```

To configure the DLP sensor:

```
config dlp sensor
    edit "test"
        set full-archive-proto ssh
        set summary-proto ssh
        config filter
            edit 1
                set proto ssh
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To configure the antivirus profile options:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av"
        config ssh
            set options [scan | avmonitor | quarantine]
            set archive-block [encrypted | corrupted | partiallycorrupted | multipart |
nested | mailbomb | fileslimit | timeout | unhandled]
            set archive-log [encrypted | corrupted | partiallycorrupted | multipart | nested
| mailbomb | fileslimit | timeout | unhandled]
            set emulator [enable | disable]
            set outbreak-prevention [disabled | files | full-archive]
        end
    next
end
```

To configure the antivirus quarantine options:

```
config antivirus quarantine
    set drop-infected ssh
    set store-infected ssh
    set drop-blocked ssh
    set store-blocked ssh
    set drop-heuristic ssh
    set store-heuristic ssh
end
```

Redirect to WAD after handshake completion

In a proxy-based policy, the TCP connection is proxied by the FortiGate. A TCP 3-way handshake can be established with the client even though the server did not complete the handshake.

This option uses IPS to handle the initial TCP 3-way handshake. It rebuilds the sockets and redirects the session back to proxy only when the handshake with the server is established.

To enable proxy after a TCP handshake in an SSL/SSH profile:

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "test"
        config https
            set ports 443
            set status certificate-inspection
            set proxy-after-tcp-handshake enable
        end
        .....
   next
end
```

To enable proxy after a TCP handshake in protocol options:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "test"
        config http
            set ports 80
            set proxy-after-tcp-handshake enable
            unset options
            unset post-lang
        end
        ....
   next
end
```

Custom signatures

You can create the following custom signatures and apply them to firewall policies:

- IPS signature
- Application signature
- Application group

The following topic provides information about custom signatures:

- Configuring custom signatures on page 1465
- Blocking applications with custom signatures on page 1467
- Application groups in policies on page 1469

Configuring custom signatures

IPS signatures are the basis of signature-based intrusion prevention. Every attack can be reduced to a particular string of commands or a sequence of commands and variables. See Intrusion prevention on page 1385 for more information.

An IPS signature identifies characteristics of a packet that are unique to an attack, such as the protocol type, an option/value pair within the payload, other special aspects of the payload, or specific application options. Custom IPS signatures can be created to block, monitor, or quarantine specific traffic that is not covered by the IPS definitions list. To view the IPS definitions list:

- Go to *Security Profiles* > *IPS Signatures*.
- Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*, edit an existing IPS sensor, and click *View IPS Signatures* in the right-hand pane.
- Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*, in the *License Information* table expand *Intrusion Prevention*, and in the *IPS Definitions* row click *Actions* > *View List*.

An application signature identifies characteristics of a packet that is unique to an application. Custom application signatures can be used in application control profiles to block traffic from specific applications that are not covered by the application control signatures list. To view the application control signatures list:

- Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Signatures* and select the *Signature* view.
- Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*, edit an existing application sensor, and click *View Application Signatures* in the right-hand pane.
- Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*, in the *License Information* table expand *Firmware & General Updates* , and in the *Application Control Signatures* row click *Actions* > *View List*.

Application groups can be created by selecting individual application, or by filtering by application category. The groups can then be used in firewall policies.

For information about the syntax for building IPS and application control signatures, see the Custom IPS and Application Control Signature Syntax Guide

To make the application signatures settings visible in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*
2. In the *Security Features* section, enable *Application Control*.
3. Click *Apply*.

To configure custom signatures:

1. Custom application and IPS signatures can be configured:
   - To configure custom application signatures, go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Signatures* and click *Create New* > *Custom Application Signature*. See Blocking applications with custom signatures on page 1467 for an example.
   - To configure custom IPS signatures, go to *Security Profiles* > *IPS Signatures* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Name	Enter a unique name for the signature.
Comments	Enter a comment (optional).
Signature	Enter the signature.

3. Click *OK*.

To configure application groups:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Signatures* and click *Create New* > *Application Group*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Group Name	Enter a unique name for the signature group.

Type	Set the application group type, either *Application* or *Category*.
Members	Select the applications or filter to include in the group.
Comments	Enter a comment (optional).

3. Click *OK*.
   See Application groups in policies on page 1469 for more information.

Blocking applications with custom signatures

Custom signatures can be used in application control profiles to block web traffic from specific applications, such as out of support operating systems.

In this example, you create a custom signature to detect PCs running Windows NT 6.1 operating systems, including Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2. The signature is added to an application control profile and the action is set to block. The profile is then used in a firewall policy so that web traffic matching the signature is blocked. The logs generated by this example can be used to help identify other computers that you need to block.

To make the settings visible in the GUI:

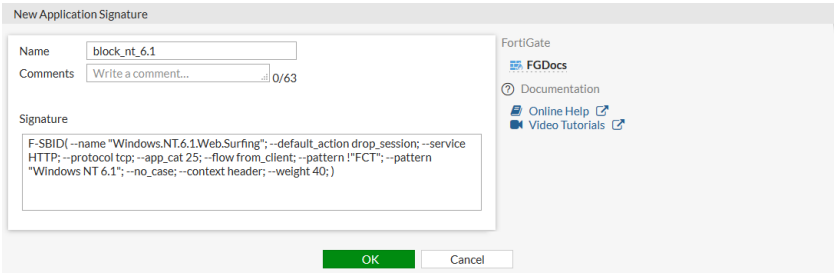
1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*
2. In the *Security Features* section, enable *Application Control*.
3. Click *Apply*.

To create the custom application signature:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Signatures* and click *Create New* > *Custom Application Signature*.
2. Enter a name for the custom signature, such as *block_nt_6.1*.
3. Enter the *Signature*. In this example:

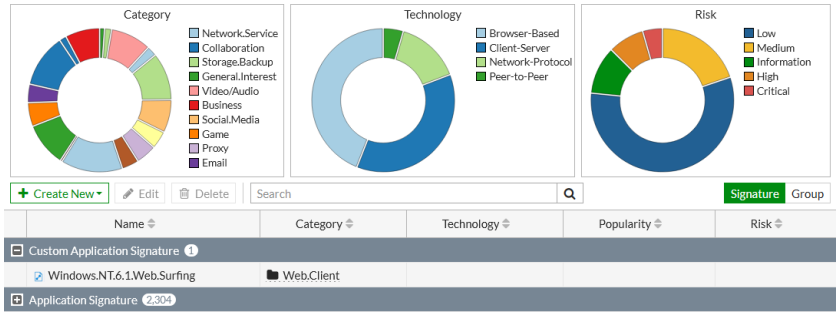
```
F-SBID( --attack_id 6483; --name "Windows.NT.6.1.Web.Surfing"; --default_action drop_
session; --service HTTP; --protocol tcp; --app_cat 25; --flow from_client; --pattern
!"FCT"; --pattern "Windows NT 6.1"; --no_case; --context header; --weight 40; )
```

   This signature scans HTTP and HTTPS traffic that matches the pattern *Windows NT 6.1* in its header. For blocking older versions of Windows, such as Windows XP, you would use the pattern *Windows NT 5.1*. An attack ID is automatically generated when the signature is created.



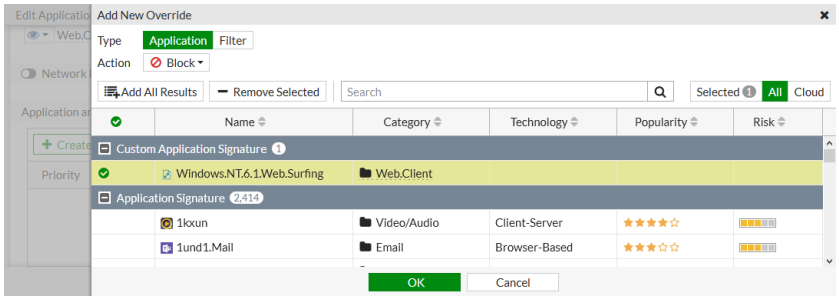
4. Click *OK*.

The signature is included in the *Custom Application Signature* section of the signature list.



To use the signature in an application control profile:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Create a new profile, or edit an existing one.
3. In the *Application and Filter Overrides* table, click *Create New*.
4. Set *Type* to *Application* and *Action* to *Block*.
5. Select the custom signature from the list, using the search feature if required, then click *Add Selected*.



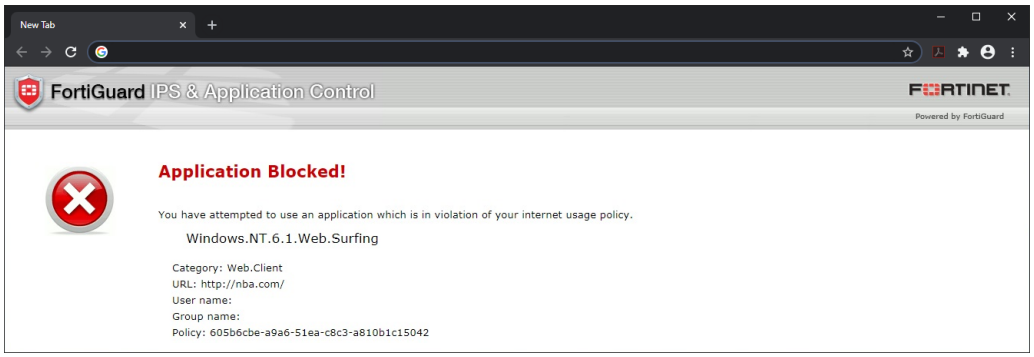
6. Click *OK*.
   The signature is added to the table.
7. Click *OK*.

To add the application control profile to a firewall policy:

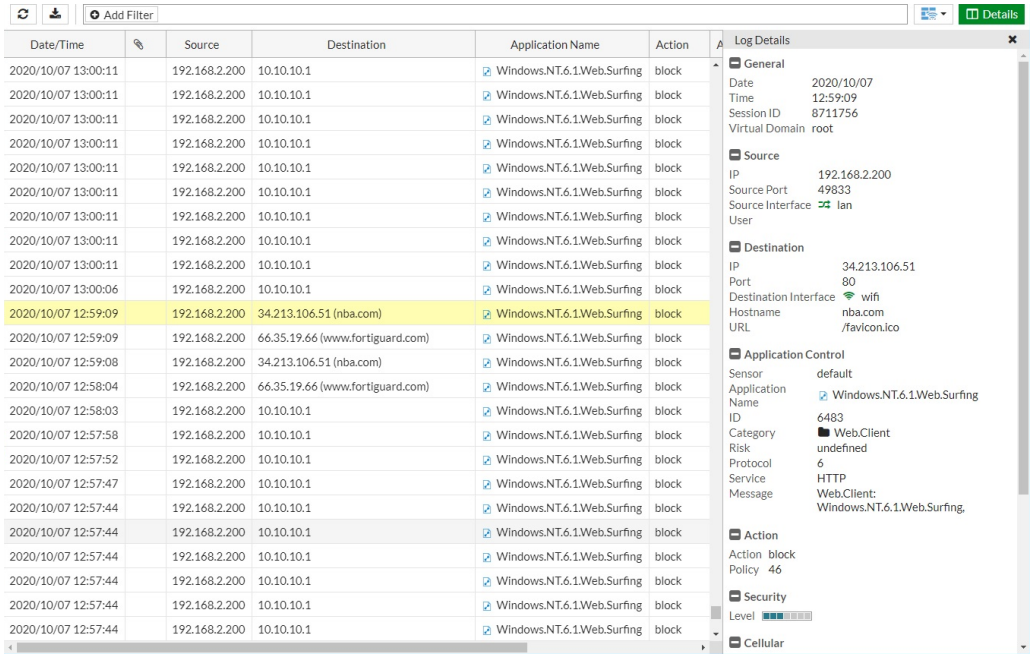
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Edit the policy that is currently allows a connection from the internal network to the internet.
3. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *Application Control* and select the profile.
   If deep inspection is not enabled, then only HTTP traffic will be scanned. To scan HTTPS traffic, set SSL Inspection to a profile that includes deep inspection. See SSL & SSH Inspection on page 1455 for more information.
4. Click *OK*.

Results

When a PC that is running one of the affected operating systems tries to connect to the internet using a web browser, a replacement message is shown. For information on customizing replacement messages, see Replacement messages on page 1023.



Go to *Log & Report* > *Application Control* to view the web traffic that is logged for the PC that is blocked by the application signature.



Application groups in policies

This feature provides an application group command for firewall shaping policies.

The following CLI command is used:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
   edit 1
      set app-group <application group>...
      ......
   next
end
```

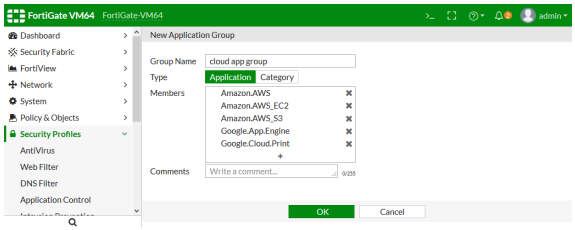
Example

In this example, there are two traffic shaping policies:

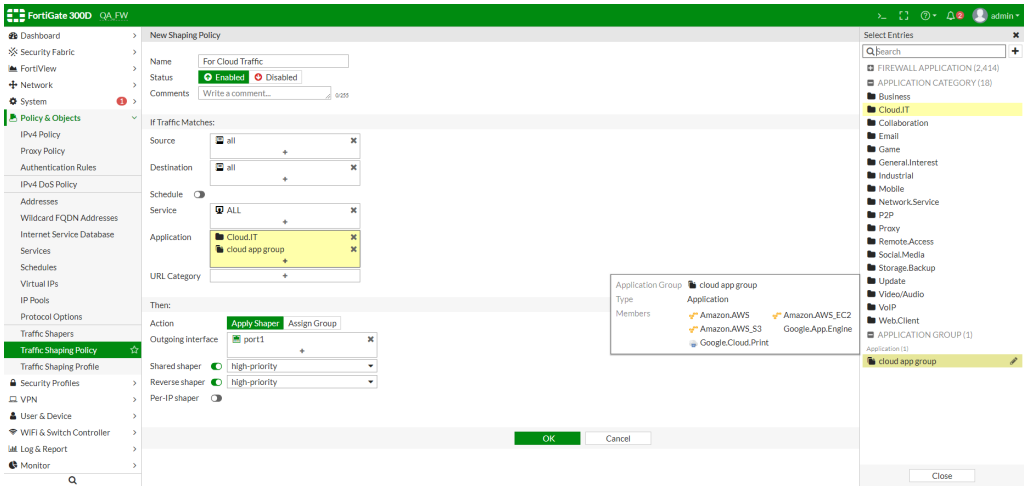
- Policy 1 is for traffic related to cloud applications that has high priority.
- Policy 2 is for other traffic and has low priority.

To create the shaping policies using the GUI:

1. Configure an application group for cloud applications:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Signatures*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Application Group*. The *New Application Group* page opens.



   c. Enter a name for the group, select the type, and then add the group the members.
   d. Click *OK*.
2. Create the shaping policy for the high priority cloud application traffic:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*. The *New Shaping Policy* page opens.

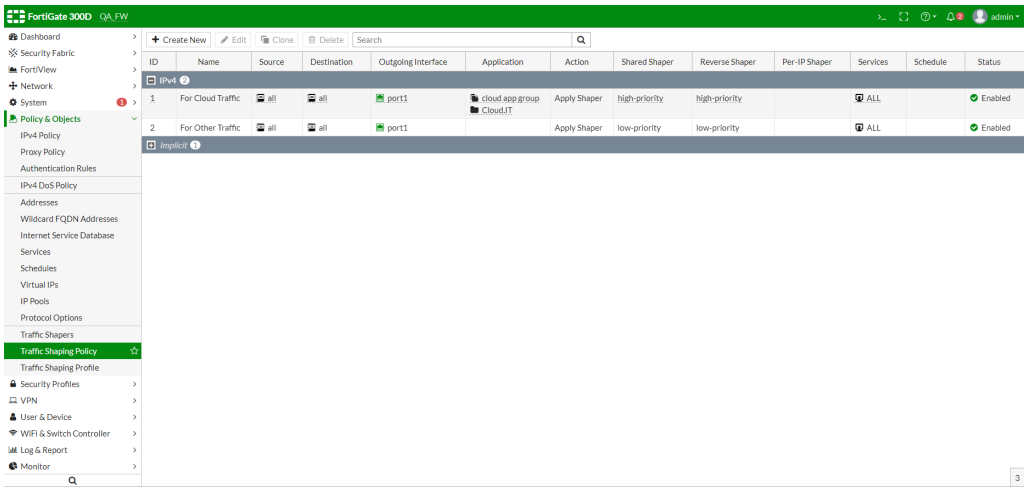


   c. Configure the shaping policy, selecting the previously created cloud application group, and setting both the *Shared shaper* and *Reverse shaper* to *high-priority*.
   d. Click *OK*.



At least one firewall policy must have application control enabled for the applications to match any policy traffic.

3. Create the shaping policy for all other traffic, setting both the *Shared shaper* and *Reverse shaper* to *low-priority*.



To create the shaping policies using the CLI:

1. Configure an application group for cloud applications:

```
config application group
    edit "cloud app group"
        set application 27210 36740 35944 24467 33048
    next
end
```

2. Create the shaping policies for the high priority cloud application traffic and the other, low priority traffic:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "For Cloud Traffic"
        set service "ALL"
        set app-category 30
        set app-group "cloud app group"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "high-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "high-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "For Other Traffic"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "low-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "low-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

Overrides

Web filter configuration can be separated into profile configuration and profile overrides.

You can also override web filter behavior based on the FortiGuard website categorization:

- Use alternate categories (web rating overrides): this method manually assigns a specific website to a different Fortinet category or a locally-created category.
- Use alternate profiles: configured users or IP addresses can use an alternative web filter profile when attempting to access blocked websites.



Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Web Filtering.

The following topics provide information about web overrides:

- Web rating override on page 1472
- Using local and remote categories on page 1479
- Web profile override on page 1481

Web rating override

Web rating overrides allow you to apply a category override to a URL. This overrides the original FortiGuard category for the URL with either a different FortiGuard category, a custom local category, or a threat feed remote category.

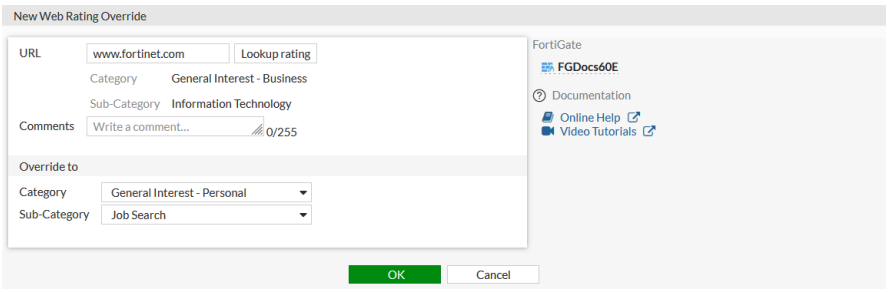
If a URL is in multiple active categories, the order of precedence is local categories, then remote categories, and then FortiGuard categories.



Web rating override requires a FortiGuard license.

To create a FortiGuard category override:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the URL to override.
3. Optionally, click *Lookup rating* to see what its current rating is, if it has one.
4. Set the *Category* and *Sub-Category* to an existing category that is different from the original category.



5. Click *OK*.

To create a custom local category override:

1. Create a custom category :
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides*.
   b. Click *Custom Categories*, then click *Create New*.
   c. Enter a name for the category, and ensure that the *Status* is set to *Enable*.
   d. Click *OK*.
2. Create a web rating override:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides* and click *Create New*.
   b. Enter the URL to override.
   c. Set *Category* to *Custom Categories* and set *Sub-Category* to the custom category that was just created.
   d. Click *OK*.

To create a thread feed remote category override:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Threat Feeds* section, click *FortiGuard Category*.
3. Enter a name for the threat feed. This will also be the name of the remote category.
4. Enter the *URI of external resource* that contains the list of URLs that will be overridden in this remote category.
5. Configure the remaining settings as needed, then click *OK*.

Sub-category actions

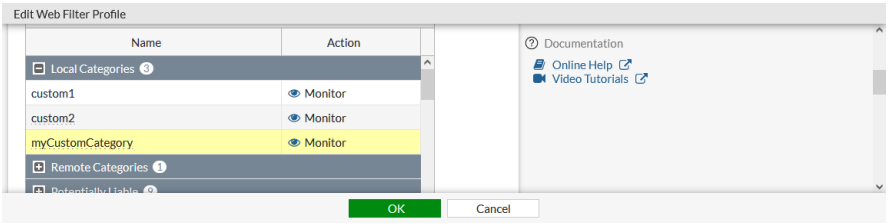
After configuring category override rules, an override category must be active in a web filter profile for it to take effect. Whether a category is active or not depends on the override method and action:

Override method	Active category actions	Inactive category actions
FortiGuard categories	Monitor, Block, Warning, or Authenticate	Allow
Local categories	Allow, Monitor, Block, Warning, or Authenticate	Disable*
Remote categories	Allow, Monitor, Block, Warning, or Authenticate	Disable*

*The *Disable* action is only available for local and remote categories by right clicking on the sub-category.

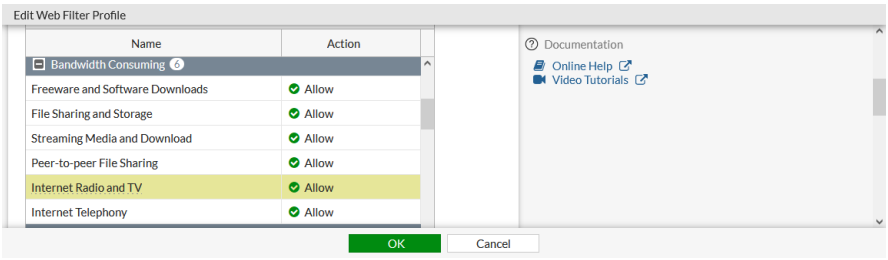
The *Allow* action in the GUI is different for FortiGuard categories compared to local and remote categories.

For local and remote categories, the *Allow* action in the GUI corresponds to the monitor action with logging disabled in the CLI:




```
config webfilter profile
    edit <profile>
        config ftgd-wf
            config filters
                edit 142
                    set category 142
                    set action monitor
                    set log disable
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

For FortiGuard categories, the *Allow* action in the GUI corresponds to no entry in the CLI:



The *Internet Radio and TV* sub-category has ID number 75.

```
config webfilter profile
    edit <profile>
        config ftgd-wf
            config filters
            end
        end
    next
end
```

This means that a FortiGuard category with the *Allow* action applied is effectively inactive, as there is no actual action specified in the CLI.

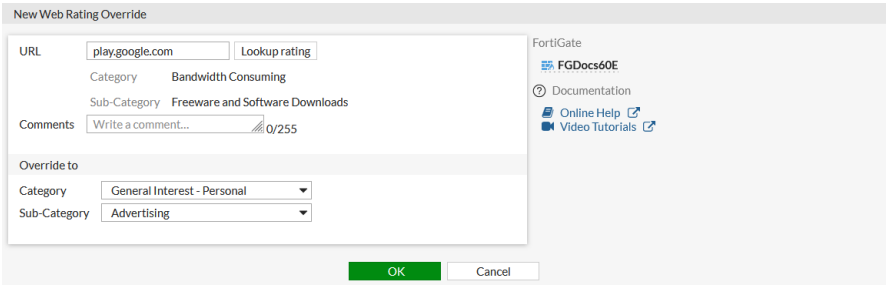
Example 1: Override a FortiGuard category with another FortiGuard category

In this example, play.google.com is overridden from its original category, Freeware and Software Download (19), to the Advertising category (17). In the web filter profile, the Advertising category is set to *Block* and the Freeware and Software

Download category is set to *Allow*.

To configure a FortiGuard web rating override:

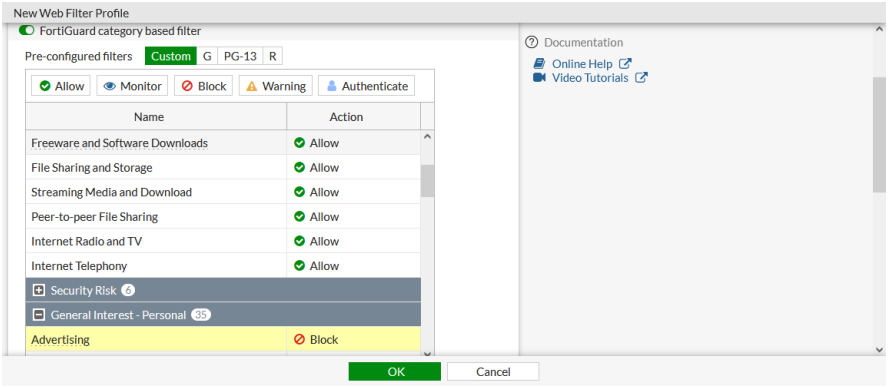
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the URL: play.google.com.
3. Optionally, click *Lookup rating* to see what its current rating is.
4. Set the *Category* and *Sub-Category* to an existing category that is different from the original category.



5. Click *OK*.

To apply the category in a web filter profile:

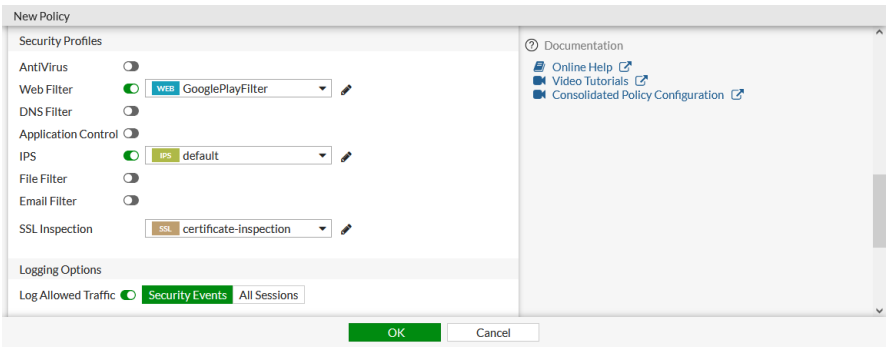
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and create or edit a web filter profile. See FortiGuard filter on page 1324 for more information.
2. Enable *FortiGuard category based filter*
3. Set the action for the *Advertising* category in the *General Interest - Personal* group to *Block*.
4. Set the action for the *Freeware and Software Download* category in the *Bandwidth Consuming* group to *Allow*.



5. Configure the remaining settings are required, then click *OK*.

To apply the category in firewall policy:

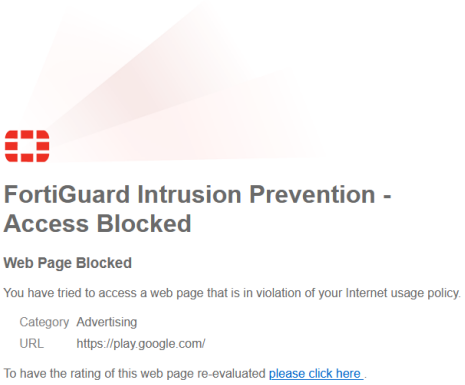
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create or edit a policy.
2. Configure the policy fields as required.
3. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *Web Filter* and select the profile that you just created.
4. Set *SSL Inspection* to *certificate-inspection* or *deep-inspection*.



5. Enable *Log Allowed Traffic*.
6. Click *OK*.

To test the filter:

1. From a Workstation behind the firewall, open a browser and browse to play.google.com. The page will be blocked by the category override.



2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Security Events* and select *Web Filter*.
3. View the log details in the GUI, or download the log file:

```
date=2022-09-21 time=16:43:31 eventtime=1663803811966781540 tz="-0700"
logid="0316013056" type="utm" subtype="webfilter" eventtype="ftgd_blk" level="warning"
vd="root" policyid=2 sessionid=891040 srcip=192.168.2.8 srcport=50318 srcintf="port2"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=142.251.211.238 dstport=443 dstintf="port1"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="HTTPS" hostname="play.google.com" profile="FGD-
Override-FGD-Flow" action="blocked" reqtype="direct" url="https://play.google.com/"
sentbyte=517 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs to a denied category in
policy" method="domain" cat=17 catdesc="Advertising"
```

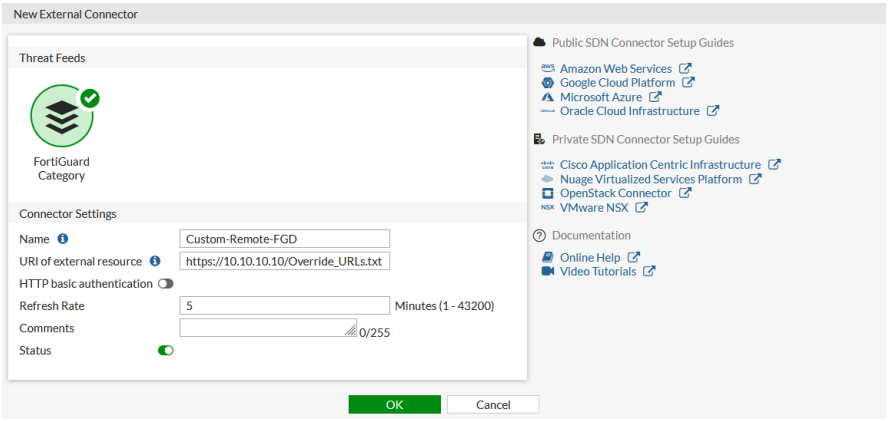
Example 2: Override a FortiGuard category with a remote category

In this example, play.google.com is added to an external URL category list and applied to a threat feed. In the web filter profile, the remote category is set to *Allow*, and the original FortiGuard category (Freeware and Software Download) is set to *Block*. Remote categories take precedence over FortiGuard categories, so the override action for the remote category will apply.

Delete the web rating override entry from example 1 for play.google.com before configuring this example.

To configure a FortiGuard threat feed for remote category override:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Threat Feeds* section, click *FortiGuard Category*.
3. Enter a name for the threat feed, such as *Custom-Remote-FGD*. This will be the name of the remote category.
4. Enter the *URI of external resource* that contains the list of URLs that will be overridden to this remote category. This list will contain one entry for play.google.com.



5. Configure the remaining settings as needed, then click *OK*.

To apply the category in a web filter profile:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and create or edit a web filter profile. See FortiGuard filter on page 1324 for more information.
2. Enable *FortiGuard category based filter*
3. Set the action for the *Custom-Remote-FGD* category in the *Remote Categories* group to *Allow*.
4. Set the action for the *Freeware and Software Download* category in the *Bandwidth Consuming* group to *Block*.
5. Configure the remaining settings are required, then click *OK*.

To apply the category in firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create or edit a policy.
2. Configure the policy fields as required.
3. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *Web Filter* and select the profile that you just created.
4. Set *SSL Inspection* to *certificate-inspection* or *deep-inspection*.
5. Enable *Log Allowed Traffic*.
6. Click *OK*.

To test the filter:

1. From a Workstation behind the firewall, open a browser and browse to play.google.com. The page will be allowed by the remote category override.
2. No logs are recorded because the *Allow* action is selected.

Example 3 - Override a FortiGuard category with a custom local category

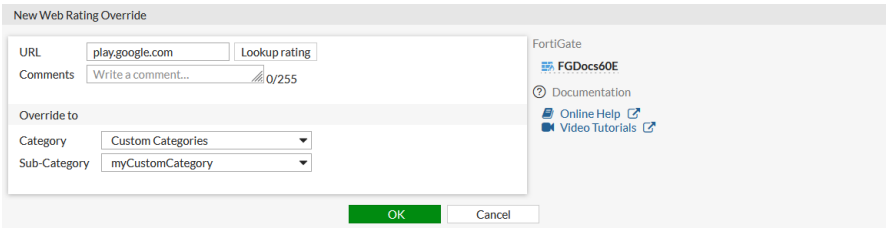
In this example, play.google.com is added to a custom local category. that is set to Monitor in the web filter profile. Local custom categories take precedence over both remote and FortiGuard categories, so the override action for the local category will apply.

To create a custom local category override:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides*.
2. Click *Custom Categories*, then click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the category, such as *myCustomCategory*, and ensure the *Status* is set to *Enable*.
4. Click *OK*.

To create a web rating override for the custom local category:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the URL to override.
3. For *Category*, select *Custom Categories* and for *Sub-Category* select *myCustomCategory*.



4. Click *OK*.

To apply the category in a web filter profile:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and create or edit a web filter profile. See FortiGuard filter on page 1324 for more information.
2. Enable *FortiGuard category based filter*
3. Set the action for the *myCustomCategory* category in the *LocalCategories* group to *Monitor*.
4. The other actions can be left as they were at the end of example 2, *Custom-Remote-FGD* set to *Allow* and *Freeware and Software Download* set to *Block*.
5. Configure the remaining settings are required, then click *OK*.

To apply the category in firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create or edit a policy.
2. Configure the policy fields as required.
3. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *Web Filter* and select the profile that you just created.
4. Set *SSL Inspection* to *certificate-inspection* or *deep-inspection*.
5. Enable *Log Allowed Traffic*.
6. Click *OK*.

To test the filter:

1. From a Workstation behind the firewall, open a browser and browse to play.google.com. The page will be allowed by the local category override.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Security Events* and select *Web Filter*.
3. View the log details in the GUI, or download the log file:

```
date=2022-09-21 time=17:17:00 eventtime=1663805820486294353 tz="-0700"
logid="0317013312" type="utm" subtype="webfilter" eventtype="ftgd_allow" level="notice"
vd="root" policyid=2 sessionid=893147 srcip=192.168.2.8 srcport=50417 srcintf="port2"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=142.251.211.238 dstport=443 dstintf="port1"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="HTTPS" hostname="play.google.com" profile="FGD-
Override-FGD-Flow" action="passthrough" reqtype="direct" url="https://play.google.com/"
sentbyte=517 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs to an allowed category in
policy" method="domain" cat=142 catdesc="myCustomCategory"
```

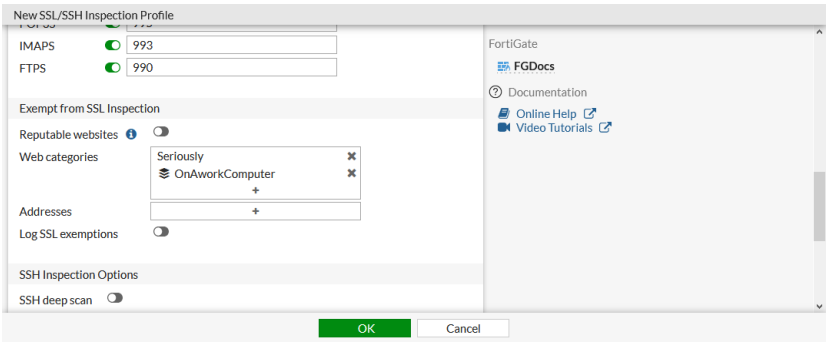
Using local and remote categories

For some functions, local and remote FortiGuard categories must be explicitly selected to apply. In SSL/SSH inspection profiles, custom categories must be explicitly selected to be exempt from SSL inspection. In Proxy addresses, custom categories must be explicitly selected as URL categories for them to apply. In both settings, if a URL is in multiple selected categories, the order of precedence is local categories, then remote categories, and then FortiGuard categories.

SSL/SSH inspection profiles

To use local and remote categories in an SSL/SSH inspection profile to exempt them from SSL inspection in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection*.
2. Create a new profile or edit an existing one.
3. Ensure that *Inspection method* is *Full SSL Inspection*.
4. In the *Exempt from SSL Inspection* section, add the local and remote categories to the *Web categories* list .



5. Configure the remaining settings as required, then click *OK*.

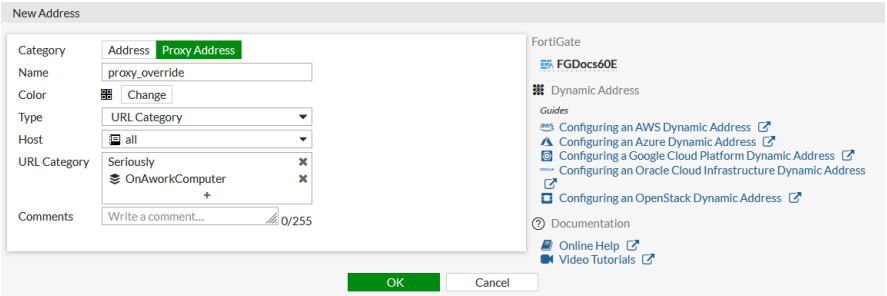
To use local and remote categories in an SSL/SSH inspection profile to exempt them from SSL inspection in the CLI:

```
config vdom
    edit root
        config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
            edit "SSL_Inspection"
                config https
                    set ports 443
                    set status deep-inspection
                end
                ...
                config ssl-exempt
                    edit 1
                        set fortiguard-category 140
                    next
                    edit 2
                        set fortiguard-category 192
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Proxy addresses

To use local and remote categories in a proxy address in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*, or edit an existing proxy address.
2. Set *Category* to *Proxy Address*.
3. Set *Type* to *URL Category*.
4. In the *URL Category*, add the local and remote categories.



5. Configure the remaining settings as required, then click *OK*.

To use local and remote categories in a proxy address in the CLI:

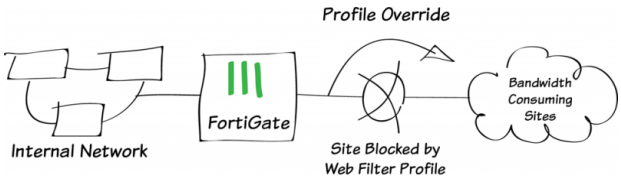
```
config vdom
    edit root
        config firewall proxy-address
            edit "proxy_override"
                set type category
                set host "all"
```

```
                set category 140 192
                set color 23
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Web profile override

You can use the following profile override methods:

- Administrative override
- Allow users to override blocked categories



Administrative override

Administrators can grant temporary access to sites that are otherwise blocked by a web filter profile. You can grant temporary access to a user, user group, or source IP address. You can set the time limit by selecting a date and time. The default is 15 minutes.

When the administrative web profile override is enabled, a blocked access page or replacement message does not appear, and authentication is not required.

Scope range

You can choose one of the following scope ranges:

- User: authentication for permission to override is based on whether or not the user is using a specific user account.
- User group: authentication for permission to override is based on whether or not the user account supplied as a credential is a member of the specified user group.
- Source IP: authentication for permission to override is based on the IP address of the computer that was used to authenticate. This would be used for computers that have multiple users. For example, if a user logs on to the computer, engages the override by using their credentials, and then logs off, anyone who logs on with an account on that computer would be using the alternate override web filter profile.



When you enter an IP address in the administrative override method, only individual IP addresses are allowed.

Differences between IP and identity-based scope

Using the IP scope does not require using an identity-based policy.

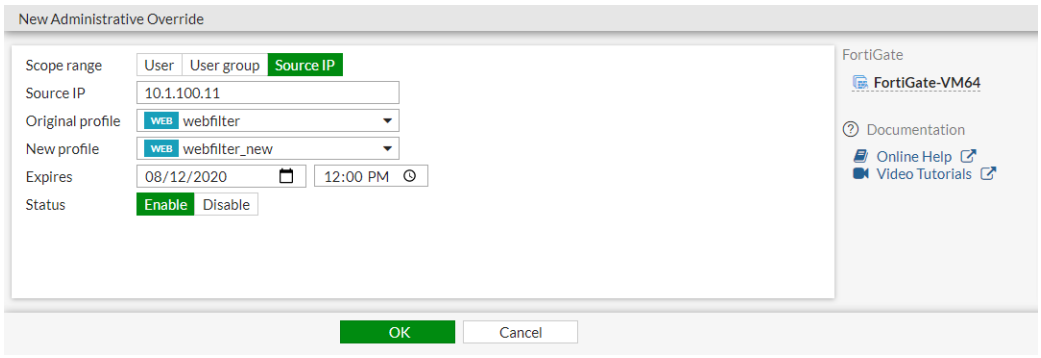
When using the administrative override method and IP scope, you might not see a warning message when you change from using the original web filter profile to using the alternate profile. There is no requirement for credentials from the user so, if allowed, the page will just appear in the browser.

Configuring a web profile administrative override

This example describes how to override the *webfilter* profile with the *webfilter_new* profile.

To configure web profile administrative override using the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Profile Overrides* and click *Create New*.
   The *New Administrative Override* pane opens.
2. Configure the administrative override:
   a. For *Scope Range*, click *Source IP*.
   b. In the *Source IP* field, enter the IP address for the client computer (`10.1.100.11` in this example).
   c. In the *Original profile* dropdown, select *webfilter*.
   d. In the *New profile* dropdown, select *webfilter_new*.
   In the *Expires* field, the default 15 minutes appears, which is the desired duration for this example.



3. Click *OK*.

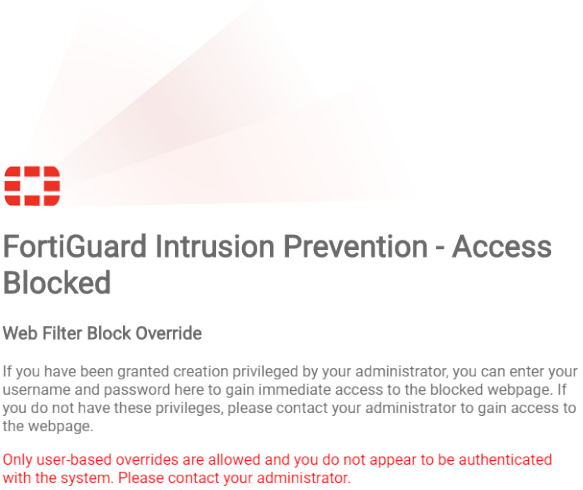
To configure web profile administrative override using the CLI:

```
config webfilter override
   edit 1
      set status enable
      set scope ip
      set old-profile "webfilter"
      set new-profile "webfilter_new"
      set expires 2020/08/12 12:00:00
      set initiator "admin"
      set ip 10.1.100.11
   next
end
```

Allow users to override blocked categories

For both override methods, the scope ranges (for specified users, user groups, or IP addresses) allow sites blocked by web filtering profiles to be overridden for a specified length of time.

But there is a difference between the override methods when the users or user group scope ranges are selected. In both cases, you would need to apply the user or user group as source in the firewall policy. With administrative override, if you do not apply the source in the firewall policy, the traffic will not match the override and will be blocked by the original profile. With *Allow users to override blocked categories*, the traffic will also be blocked, but instead of displaying a blocking page, the following message appears:



When you choose the user group scope, once one user overrides, it will affect the other users in the group when they attempt to override. For example, user1 and user2 both belong to the local_user group. Once user1 successfully overrides, this will generate an override entry for the local_user group instead of one specific user. This means that if user2 logs in from another PC, they can override transparently.

Other features

Besides the scope, there are some other features in *Allow users to override blocked categories*.

Apply to group(s)

Individual users can not be selected. You can select one or more of the user groups recognized by the FortiGate. They can be local to the system or from a third party authentication device, such as an AD server through FSSO.

Switch duration

Administrative override sets a specified time frame that is always used for that override. The available options in *Allow users to override blocked categories* are:

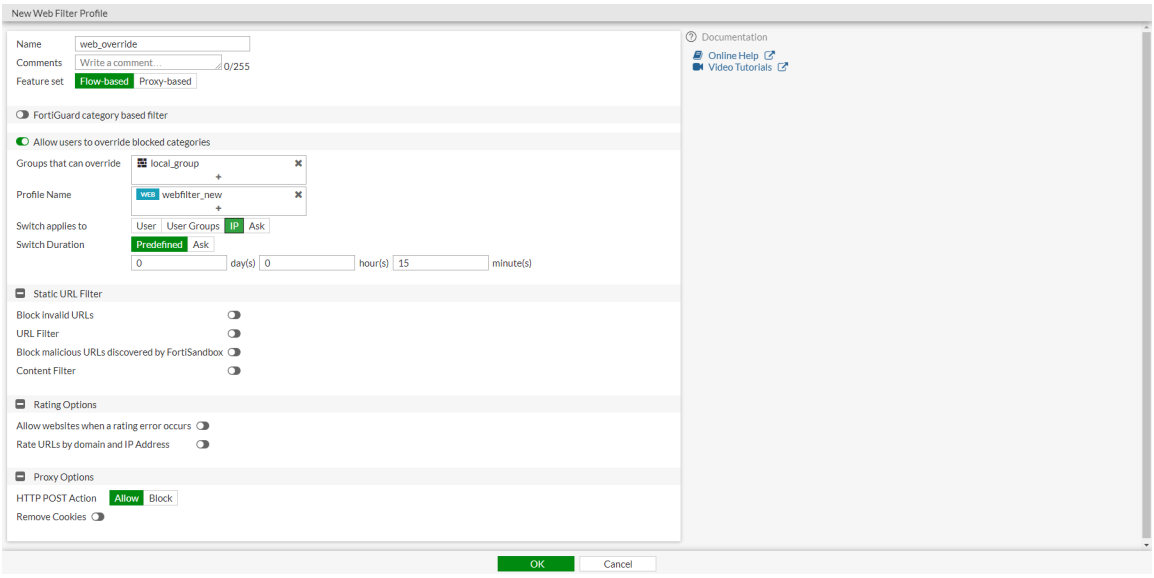
- *Predefined*: the value entered is the set duration (length of time in days, hours, or minutes) that the override will be in effect. If the duration variable is set to 15 minutes, the length of the override will always be 15 minutes. The option will be visible in the override message page, but the setting will be grayed out.
- *Ask*: the user has the option to set the override duration once it is engaged. The user can set the duration in terms of days, hours, or minutes.

Creating a web profile users override

This example describes how to allow users in the *local_group* to override the *webfilter_new* profile.

To allow users to override blocked categories using the GUI:

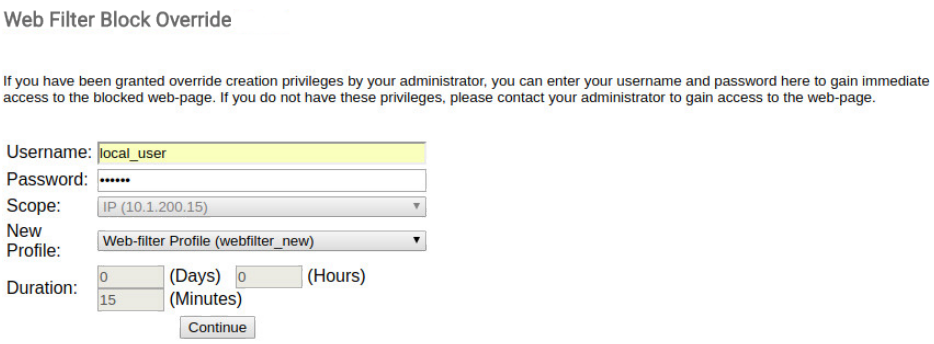
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the profile.
3. Enable *Allow users to override blocked categories*.
4. Configure the web filter profile:
   a. Click the *Groups that can override* field, and select a group (*local_group* in this example).
   b. Click the *Profile Name* field, and select the *webfilter_new* profile.
   c. For the *Switch applies to* field, click *IP*.
   d. For the *Switch Duration* field, click *Predefined*. The default *15* minutes appears, which is the desired duration for this example.
   e. Configure the rest of the profile as needed.



5. Click *OK*.

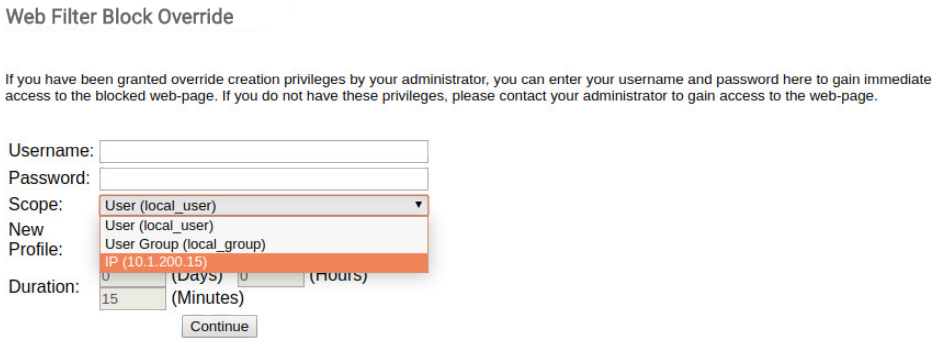
Using the ask feature

This option is only available in the *Allow users to override blocked categories* method. It configures the message page to have the user choose which scope they want to use. Normally on the message page, the scope options are grayed out and not editable. In the following example, the *Scope* is predefined with *IP*.



When the ask option is enabled (through the *Switch applies to* field in the GUI), the *Scope* dropdown is editable. Users can choose one of the following:

- User
- User group
- IP



User and *User Group* are only available when there is a user group in the firewall policy. You must specify a user group as a source in the firewall policy so the scope includes *User* and *User Group*; otherwise, only the IP option will be available.

Profile groups

Security profiles can be organized into groups. They are useful when there are multiple policies that use the same security profiles, helping save time and preventing missing profiles when configuring policies. When changes need to be made, only the group has to be changed and not the individual policies.

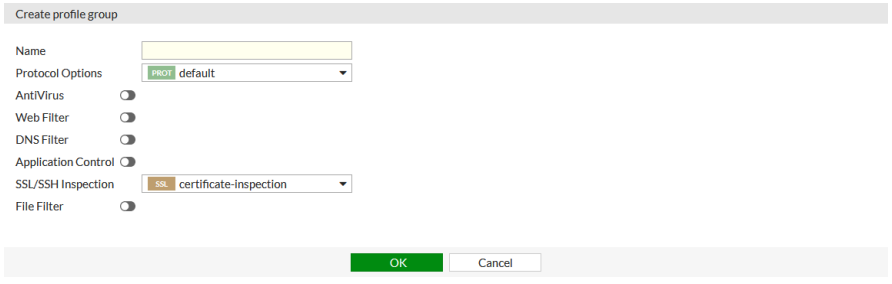
By default, *Security Profiles* > *Profile Groups* is not visible in the GUI. It can only be enabled using the CLI.

To show profile groups in the GUI:

```
config system settings
    set gui-security-profile-group enable
end
```

To configure a profile group in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Profile Groups* and click *Create New*.



2. Enter a name for the group.
3. Enable the required profile types and select the profile that will be included in the group.

A *Protocol Option* must be selected.

4. Click *OK*.

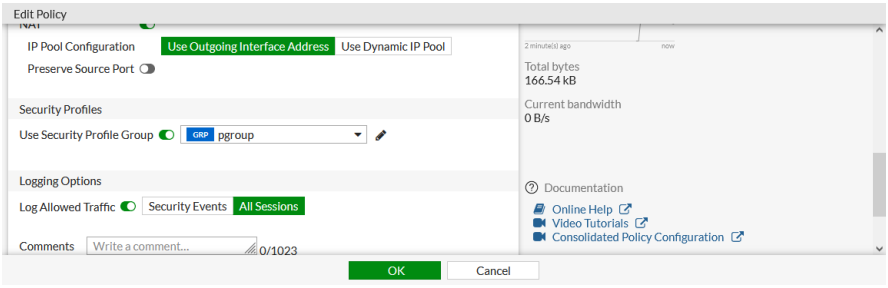
To configure a profile group in the CLI:

```
config firewall profile-group
    edit <name>
        set application-list <string>
        set av-profile <string>
        set cifs-profile <string>
        set dlp-profile <string>
        set dnsfilter-profile <string>
        set emailfilter-profile <string>
        set file-filter-profile <string>
        set icap-profile <string>
        set ips-sensor <string>
        set profile-protocol-options <string>
        set ssh-filter-profile <string>
        set ssl-ssh-profile <string>
        set voip-profile <string>
        set waf-profile <string>
        set webfilter-profile <string>
    next
end
```

`application-list <string>`	Name of an existing application list.
`av-profile <string>`	Name of an existing antivirus profile.
`cifs-profile <string>`	Name of an existing CIFS profile.
`dlp-profile <string>`	Name of an existing DLP profile.
`dnsfilter-profile <string>`	Name of an existing DNS filter profile.
`emailfilter-profile <string>`	Name of an existing email filter profile.
`file-filter-profile <string>`	Name of an existing file-filter profile.
`icap-profile <string>`	Name of an existing ICAP profile.
`ips-sensor <string>`	Name of an existing IPS sensor profile.
`profile-protocol-options <string>`	Name of an existing protocol options profile (default = `default`).
`ssh-filter-profile <string>`	Name of an existing SSH filter profile.
`ssl-ssh-profile <string>`	Name of an existing SSL SSH profile (default = `certificate-inspection`).
`voip-profile <string>`	Name of an existing VOIP profile.
`waf-profile <string>`	Name of an existing WAF profile.
`webfilter-profile <string>`	Name of an existing web filter profile.

To use the profile group in a policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and edit an existing policy or create a new one.
2. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *Use Security Profile Group* and select a group.
   No individual profiles can be selected if using a profile group.



3. Click *OK*.

To use the profile group in a policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policyid>
        set name <string>
        set srcintf <interface(s)>
        set dstintf <interface(s)>
        set action {accept | deny | ipsec}
        set srcaddr <address(es)>
        set dstaddr <address(es)>
        set schedule <schedule>
        set service <service(s)>
        set utm-status enable
        set profile-type group
        set profile-group <group>
    next
end
```

VPN

Virtual Private Network (VPN) technology lets remote users connect to private computer networks to gain access to their resources in a secure way. For example, an employee traveling or working at home can use a VPN to securely access the office network through the Internet.

Instead of remotely logging into a private network using an unencrypted and unsecured Internet connection, using a VPN ensures that unauthorized parties cannot access the office network and cannot intercept information going between the employee and the office. Another common use of a VPN is to connect the private networks of multiple offices.

Fortinet offers VPN capabilities in the FortiGate Unified Threat Management (UTM) appliance and in the FortiClient Endpoint Security suite of applications. You can install a FortiGate unit on a private network and install FortiClient software on the user's computer. You can also use a FortiGate unit to connect to the private network instead of using FortiClient software.

The following sections provide information about VPN:

- IPsec VPNs on page 1488
- SSL VPN on page 1775

IPsec VPNs

The following sections provide instructions on configuring IPsec VPN connections in FortiOS 6.4.11.

- General IPsec VPN configuration on page 1488
- Site-to-site VPN on page 1513
- Remote access on page 1572
- Aggregate and redundant VPN on page 1618
- Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) on page 1658
- ADVPN on page 1689
- Other VPN topics on page 1723
- VPN IPsec troubleshooting on page 1767

General IPsec VPN configuration

The following sections provide instructions on general IPsec VPN configurations:

- Network topologies on page 1489
- Phase 1 configuration on page 1489
- Phase 2 configuration on page 1505
- VPN security policies on page 1509
- Blocking unwanted IKE negotiations and ESP packets with a local-in policy on page 1512

Network topologies

The topology of your network will determine how remote peers and clients connect to the VPN and how VPN traffic is routed.

Topology	Description
Site-to-Site	Standard one-to-one VPN between two FortiGates. See Site-to-site VPN on page 1513.
Hub and spoke/ADVPN	One central FortiGate (hub) has multiple VPNs to other remote FortiGates (spokes). In ADVPN, shortcuts can be created between spokes for direct communication. See ADVPN on page 1689.
OCVPN	Fortinet's cloud based solution for automating VPN setup between devices registered to the same account. See Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) on page 1658.
FortiClient dialup	Typically remote FortiClient dialup clients use dynamic IP addresses through NAT devices. The FortiGate acts as a dialup server allowing dialup VPN connections from multiple sources. See FortiClient as dialup client on page 1579.
FortiGate dialup	Similar to site-to-site except one end is a dialup server and the other end is a dialup client. This facilitates scenarios in which the remote dialup end has a dynamic address, or does not have a public IP, possibly because it is behind NAT. See FortiGate as dialup client on page 1573.
Aggregate VPN	Natively support aggregating multiple VPN tunnels to increase performance and provide redundancy over multiple links. See IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1635.
Redundant VPN	Options for supporting redundant and partially redundant IPsec VPNs, using route-based approaches. See Redundant hub and spoke VPN on page 1650.
L2TP over IPsec	Configure VPN for Microsoft Windows dialup clients using the built in L2TP software. Users do not have to install any Fortinet software. See L2TP over IPsec on page 1600.
GRE over IPsec	Legacy support for routers requiring point-to-point GRE over IPsec for tunneling. See GRE over IPsec on page 1534.

Phase 1 configuration

Phase 1 configuration primarily defines the parameters used in IKE (Internet Key Exchange) negotiation between the ends of the IPsec tunnel. The local end is the FortiGate interface that initiates the IKE negotiations. The remote end is the remote gateway that responds and exchanges messages with the initiator. Hence, they are sometimes referred to as the initiator and responder. The purpose of phase 1 is to secure a tunnel with one bi-directional IKE SA (security association) for negotiating IKE phase 2 parameters.

The `auto-negotiate` and `negotiation-timeout` commands control how the IKE negotiation is processed when there is no traffic, and the length of time that the FortiGate waits for negotiations to occur.

IPsec tunnels can be configured in the GUI using the *VPN Creation Wizard*. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*. The wizard includes several templates (site-to-site, hub and spoke, remote access), but a custom tunnel can be configured with the following settings:

Name		Phase 1 definition name. The maximum length is 15 characters for an interface mode VPN and 35 characters for a policy-based VPN. For a policy-based VPN, the name normally reflects where the remote connection originates. For a route-based tunnel, the FortiGate also uses the name for the virtual IPsec interface that it creates automatically.
Network		
	IP Version	Protocol, either IPv4 or IPv6.
	Remote Gateway	Category of the remote connection: • *Static IP Address*: the remote peer has a static IP address. • *Dialup User*: one or more FortiClient or FortiGate dialup clients with dynamic IP addresses will connect to the FortiGate. • *Dynamic DNS*: a remote peer that has a domain name and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service will connect to the FortiGate.
	IP Address	The IP address of the remote peer. This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Static IP Address*.
	Dynamic DNS	The domain name of the remote peer. This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Dynamic DNS*.
	Interface	The interface through which remote peers or dialup clients connect to the FortiGate. This option is only available in NAT mode. By default, the local VPN gateway IP address is the IP address of the interface that was selected (*Primary IP* in the *Local Gateway* field).
	Local Gateway	IP address for the local end of the VPN tunnel (*Primary IP* is used by default): • *Secondary IP*: secondary address of the interface selected in the *Interface* field. • *Specify*: manually enter an address. Interface mode cannot be configured in a transparent mode VDOM.
	Mode Config	This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Dialup User*. Configure the client IP address range, subnet mask/prefix length, DNS server, and split tunnel capability to automate remote client addressing.
	NAT Traversal	This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Static IP Address* or *Dynamic DNS*. ESP (encapsulating security payload), the protocol for encrypting data in the VPN session, uses IP protocol 50 by default. However, it does not use any port numbers so when traversing a NAT device, the packets cannot be demultiplexed. Enabling NAT traversal encapsulates the ESP packet inside a UDP packet, thereby adding a unique source port to the packet. This allows the NAT device to map the packets to the correct session. • *Enable*: a NAT device exists between the local FortiGate and the VPN

		peer or client. Outbound encrypted packets are wrapped inside a UDP IP header that contains a port number. The local FortiGate and the VPN peer or client must have the same NAT traversal setting (both selected or both cleared) to connect reliably. When in doubt, enable NAT traversal. • *Disable*: disable the NAT traversal setting. • *Forced*: the FortiGate will use a port value of zero when constructing the NAT discovery hash for the peer. This causes the peer to think it is behind a NAT device, and it will use UDP encapsulation for IPsec, even if no NAT is present. This approach maintains interoperability with any IPsec implementation that supports the NAT-T RFC.
	Keepalive Frequency	Keepalive frequency setting. This option is only available when *NAT Traversal* is set to *Enable* or *Forced*. The NAT device between the VPN peers may remove the session when the VPN connection remains idle for too long. The value represents an interval in seconds where the connection will be maintained with periodic keepalive packets. The keepalive interval must be smaller than the session lifetime value used by the NAT device. The keepalive packet is a 138-byte ISAKMP exchange.
	Dead Peer Detection	Reestablishes VPN tunnels on idle connections and cleans up dead IKE peers if required. This feature minimizes the traffic required to check if a VPN peer is available or unavailable (dead). The available options are: • *Disable*: disable dead peer detection (DPD). • *On Idle*: triggers DPD when IPsec is idle. • *On Demand*: Passively sends DPD to reduce load on the firewall. Only triggers DPD when IPsec outbound packets are sent, but no reply is received from the peer. When there is no traffic and the last DPD-ACK has been received, IKE will not send DPDs periodically. Notifications are received whenever a tunnel goes up or down, or to keep the tunnel connection open when no traffic is being generated inside the tunnel. For example, in scenarios where a dialup client or dynamic DNS peer connects from an IP address that changes periodically, traffic may be suspended while the IP address changes. When *Dead Peer Detection* is selected, optionally specify a retry count and a retry interval using `dpd-retrycount` and `dpd-retryinterval`. See Dead peer detection on page 1496.
	Forward Error Correction	Enable on both ends of the tunnel to correct errors in data transmission by sending redundant data across the VPN.
	Device creation	Advanced option. When enabled, a dynamic interface (network device) is created for each dialup tunnel. See Dynamic tunnel interface creation on page 1502.
	Aggregate member	Advanced option. When enabled, the tunnel can be used as an aggregate member candidate.
Authentication		

Method	Either *Pre-shared Key* or *Signature*.
Pre-shared Key	The pre-shared key that the FortiGate will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. The same key must be defined at the remote peer or client. See Pre-shared key.
Certificate Name	The server certificate that the FortiGate will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. See Digital certificates.
IKE Version	Either *1* or *2*. See Choosing IKE version 1 and 2 on page 1497.
Mode	This option is only available when IKEv1 is selected. The two available options are: • *Aggressive*: the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in a single message with unencrypted authentication information. • *Main (ID protection)*: the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in multiple rounds with encrypted authentication information. When the remote VPN peer has a dynamic IP address and is authenticated by a pre-shared key, you must select *Aggressive* mode if there is more than one dialup phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address. When the remote VPN peer has a dynamic IP address and is authenticated by a certificate, you must select *Aggressive* mode if there is more than one phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address and these phase 1 configurations use different proposals.
Peer Options	Options to authenticate VPN peers or clients depending on the *Remote Gateway* and *Authentication Method* settings.
Any peer ID	Accepts the local ID of any remote VPN peer or client. The FortiGate does not check identifiers (local IDs). *Mode* can be set to *Aggressive* or *Main*. This option can be used with digital certificate authentication, but for higher security, use *Peer certificate*.
Specific peer ID	This option is only available when *Aggressive Mode* is enabled. Enter the identifier that is used to authenticate the remote peer. The identifier must match the local ID configured by the remote peer's administrator. If the remote peer is a FortiGate, the identifier is specified in the *Local ID* field of the *Phase 1 Proposal* settings. If the remote peer is a FortiClient user, the identifier is specified in the *Local ID* field. In circumstances where multiple remote dialup VPN tunnels exist, each tunnel must have a peer ID set.
Peer certificate	Define the CA certificate used to authenticate the remote peer when the authentication mode is *Signature*. If the FortiGate will act as a VPN client, and you are using security certificates for authentication, set the *Local ID* to the distinguished name (DN) of the local server certificate that the FortiGate unit will use for authentication purposes.

	Peer ID from dialup group	Authenticate multiple FortiGate or FortiClient dialup clients that use unique identifiers and unique pre-shared keys (or unique pre-shared keys only) through the same VPN tunnel. You must create a dialup user group for authentication purposes. Select the group from the list next to the *Peer ID from dialup group* option. You must set *Mode* to *Aggressive* when the dialup clients use unique identifiers and unique pre-shared keys. If the dialup clients use unique pre-shared keys only, you can set *Mode* to *Main* if there is only one dialup Phase 1 configuration for this interface IP address.
Phase 1 Proposal		The encryption and authentication algorithms used to generate keys for the IKE SA. There must be a minimum of one combination. The remote peer or client must be configured to use at least one of the proposals that you define.
	Encryption	The following symmetric-key encryption algorithms are available: • *DES*: Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key. • *3DES*: triple-DES; plain text is encrypted three times by three keys. • *AES128*: Advanced Encryption Standard, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key. • *AES128GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key. Only available for IKEv2. • *AES192*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key. • *AES256*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key. • *AES256GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key. Only available for IKEv2. • *CHACHA20POLY1305*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key and a symmetric cipher. Only available for IKEv2. See also HMAC settings.
	Authentication	The following message digests that check the message authenticity during an encrypted session are available: • *MD5*: message digest 5. • *SHA1*: secure hash algorithm 1; a 160-bit message digest. • *SHA256*: a 256-bit message digest. • *SHA384*: a 384-bit message digest. • *SHA512*: a 512-bit message digest. In IKEv2, encryption algorithms include authentication, but a PRF (pseudo random function) is still required (*PRFSHA1*, *PRFSHA256*, *PRFSHA384*, *PRFSHA512*). See also HMAC settings.
	Diffie-Hellman Groups	Asymmetric key algorithms used for public key cryptography. Select one or more from groups 1, 2, 5, and 14 through 32. At least one of the *Diffie-Hellman Groups* (DH) settings on the remote peer or client must match one the selections on the FortiGate. Failure to match one or more DH groups will result in failed negotiations.

	Key Lifetime	The time (in seconds) that must pass before the IKE encryption key expires. When the key expires, a new key is generated without interrupting service. The keylife can be from 120 to 172 800 seconds.
	Local ID	Optional setting. This value must match the peer ID value given for the remote VPN peer's *Peer Options*. • If the FortiGate will act as a VPN client and you are using peer IDs for authentication purposes, enter the identifier that the FortiGate will supply to the VPN server during the phase 1 exchange. • If the FortiGate will act as a VPN client and you are using security certificates for authentication, select the distinguished name (DN) of the local server certificate that the FortiGate will use for authentication purposes.
XAUTH		This option supports the authentication of dialup clients. It is only available for IKE version 1. • *Disable*: do not use XAuth. • *Client*: available only if the *Remote Gateway* is set to *Static IP Address* or *Dynamic DNS*. If the FortiGate is a dialup client, enter the user name and password for the FortiGate to authenticate itself to the remote XAuth server. • *PAP Server*, *CHAP Server*, *Auto Server*: available only if *Remote Gateway* is set to *Dialup User*. Dialup clients authenticate as members of a dialup user group. A user group must be created first for the dialup clients that need access to the network behind the FortiGate. The FortiGate must be configured to forward authentication requests to an external RADIUS or LDAP authentication server. Select the server type based on the encryption method used between the FortiGate, the XAuth client, and the external authentication server. Then select the user group (*Inherit from policy* or *Choose*). See Using XAuth authentication on page 1500.
	Username	User name used for authentication.
	Password	Password used for authentication.

Additional CLI configurations

The following phase 1 settings can be configured in the CLI:

VXLAN over IPsec	Packets with a VXLAN header are encapsulated within IPsec tunnel mode.
	
	To configure VXLAN over IPsec:
	
	`config vpn ipsec phase1-interface/phase1`
	`  edit ipsec`
	`  set interface <name>`
	`  set encapsulation vxlan/gre`
	`  set encapsulation-address ike/ipv4/ipv6`
	`  set encap-local-gw4 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx`

	``` set encap-remote-gw xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx next end ```
IPsec tunnel idle timer	Define an idle timer for IPsec tunnels. When no traffic has passed through the tunnel for the configured `idle-timeout` value, the IPsec tunnel will be flushed. **To configure IPsec tunnel idle timeout:** ``` config vpn ipsec phase1-interface edit p1 set idle-timeout [enable | disable] set idle-timeoutinterval <integer> IPsec tunnel idle timeout in minutes (10 - 43200). next end ```
Monitor tunnel for failover	Monitor a site-to-site tunnel to guarantee operational continuity if the primary tunnel fails. Configure the secondary phase 1 interface to monitor the primary interface. **To configure the monitor:** ``` config vpn ipsec phase1-interface edit <secondary phase1-interface> set monitor <primary phase1-interface> next end ```
Passive mode	Passive mode turns one side of the tunnel to be a responder only. It does not initiate VPN tunnels either by auto-negotiation, rekey, or traffic initiated behind the FortiGate. **To configure passive mode:** ``` config vpn ipsec phase1-interface edit <example> set rekey {enable | disable} set passive-mode {enable | disable} set passive-tunnel-interface {enable | disable} next end ```
Network ID	The network ID is a Fortinet-proprietary attribute that is used to select the correct phase 1 between IPsec peers, so that multiple IKEv2 tunnels can be established between the same local/remote gateway pairs.

In a dial-up VPN, `network-id` is in the first initiator message of an IKEv2 phase 1 negotiation. The responder (Hub) uses the `network-id` to match a phase 1 configuration with a matching `network-id`. The Hub can then differentiate multiple dial-up phase 1s that are bound to the same underlay interface and IP address. Without a `network-id`, the Hub cannot have multiple phase 1 dialup tunnels on the same interface.

In static phase 1 configurations, `network-id` is used with the pair of gateway IPs to negotiate the correct tunnel with a matching `network-id`. This allows IPsec peers to use the same pair of underlay IPs to establish multiple IPsec tunnels. Without it, only a single tunnel can be established over the same pair of underlay IPs.

To configure the network ID:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <example>
        set ike-version 2
        set network-overlay enable
        set network-id <integer>
    next
end
```

Dead peer detection

By default, dead peer detection (DPD) sends probe messages every five seconds. If you are experiencing high network traffic, you can experiment with increasing the ping interval. However, longer intervals will require more traffic to detect dead peers, which will result in more traffic.



In a dynamic (dialup) connection, the *On Idle* option encourages dialup server configurations to more proactively delete tunnels if the peer is unavailable.

In the GUI, the dead peer detection option can be configured when defining phase 1 options. The following CLI commands support additional options for specifying a retry count and a retry interval.

For example, enter the following to configure DPD on the existing IPsec phase 1 configuration to use 15-second intervals and to wait for three missed attempts before declaring the peer dead and taking action.

To configure DPD:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <value>
        set dpd [disable | on-idle | on-demand]
        set dpd-retryinveral 15
        set dpd-retrycount 3
    next
end
```

DPD scalability

On a dialup server, if many VPN connections are idle, the increased DPD exchange could negatively impact the performance/load of the daemon. The `on-demand` option in the CLI triggers DPD when IPsec traffic is sent, but no reply is received from the peer.

When there is no traffic and the last DPD-ACK had been received, IKE will not send DPDs periodically. IKE will only send out DPDs if there are outgoing packets to send, but no inbound packets have since been received.

HMAC settings

The FortiGate uses the HMAC based on the authentication proposal that is chosen in phase 1 or phase 2 of the IPsec configuration. Each proposal consists of the encryption-hash pair (such as `3des-sha256`). The FortiGate matches the most secure proposal to negotiate with the peer.

To view the chosen proposal and the HMAC hash used:

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list

vd: root/0
name: MPLS
version: 1
interface: port1 3
addr: 192.168.2.5:500 -> 10.10.10.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 172.31.0.2 -> 172.31.0.1
created: 1015820s ago
IKE SA: created 1/13 established 1/13 time 10/1626/21010 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/24 established 1/24 time 0/11/30 ms

  id/spi: 124 43b087dae99f7733/6a8473e58cd8990a
  direction: responder
  status: established 68693-68693s ago = 10ms
  proposal: 3des-sha256
  key: e0fa6ab8dc509b33-aa2cc549999b1823-c3cb9c337432646e
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/17436
  DPD sent/recv: 000001e1/00000000
```

Choosing IKE version 1 and 2

If you create a route-based VPN, you have the option of selecting IKE version 2. Otherwise, IKE version 1 is used.

IKEv2, defined in RFC 4306, simplifies the negotiation process that creates the security association (SA).

If you select IKEv2:

- There is no choice in phase 1 of aggressive or main mode.
- Extended authentication (XAUTH) is not available.
- You can utilize EAP and MOBIKE.

Repeated authentication in IKEv2

This feature provides the option to control whether a device requires its peer to re-authenticate or whether re-key is sufficient. It does not influence the re-authentication or re-key behavior of the device itself, which is controlled by the peer

(the default being to re-key). This solution is in response to RFC 4478. As described by the IETF, "the purpose of this is to limit the time that security associations (SAs) can be used by a third party who has gained control of the IPsec peer".

To configure IKE SA re-authentication:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit p1
        set reauth [enable | disable]
    next
end
```

IKEv2 quick crash detection

There is support for IKEv2 quick crash detection (QCD) as described in RFC 6290.

RFC 6290 describes a method in which an IKE peer can quickly detect that the gateway peer it has and established an IKE session with has rebooted, crashed, or otherwise lost IKE state. When the gateway receives IKE messages or ESP packets with unknown IKE or IPsec SPIs, the IKEv2 protocol allows the gateway to send the peer an unprotected IKE message containing INVALID_IKE_SPI or INVALID_SPI notification payloads.

RFC 6290 introduces the concept of a QCD token, which is generated from the IKE SPIs and a private QCD secret, and exchanged between peers during the protected IKE AUTH exchange.

To configure QCD:

```
config system settings
    set ike-quick-crash-detect [enable | disable]
end
```

IKEv1 quick crash detection

Based on the IKEv2 QCD feature previously described, IKEv1 QCD is implemented using a new IKE vendor ID (Fortinet Quick Crash Detection) so both endpoints must be FortiGates. The QCD token is sent in the phase 1 exchange and must be encrypted, so this is only implemented for IKEv1 in main mode (aggressive mode is not supported as there is no available AUTH message to include the token). Otherwise, the feature works the same as in IKEv2 (RFC 6290).

IKEv1 fragmentation

UDP fragmentation can cause issues in IPsec when either the ISP or perimeter firewall(s) cannot pass or fragment the oversized UDP packets that occur when using a very large public security key (PSK). The result is that IPsec tunnels do not come up. The solution is IKE fragmentation.

For most configurations, enabling IKE fragmentation allows connections to automatically establish when they otherwise might have failed due to intermediate nodes dropping IKE messages containing large certificates, which typically push the packet size over 1500 bytes.

FortiOS will fragment a packet on sending if only all the following are true:

- Phase 1 contains `set fragmentation enable`.
- The packet is larger than the minimum MTU (576 for IPv4, 1280 for IPv6).
- The packet is being re-transmitted.

By default, IKE fragmentation is enabled.

To configure IKEv1 fragmentation:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit 1
        set fragmentation [enable | disable]
    next
end
```

IKEv2 fragmentation

RFC 7383 requires each fragment to be individually encrypted and authenticated. With IKEv2, a copy of the unencrypted payloads around for each outgoing packet would need to be kept in case the original single packet was never answered and would retry with fragments. With the following implementation, if the IKE payloads are greater than a configured threshold, the IKE packets are preemptively fragmented and encrypted.

To configure IKEv2 fragmentation:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit ike
        set ike-version 2
        set fragmentation [enable|disable]
        set fragmentation-mtu [500-16000]
    next
end
```

Pre-shared key vs digital certificates

A FortiGate can authenticate itself to remote peers or dialup clients using either a pre-shared key or a digital certificate.

Pre-shared key

Using a pre-shared key is less secure than using certificates, especially if it is used alone, without requiring peer IDs or extended authentication (XAuth). There also needs to be a secure way to distribute the pre-shared key to the peers.

If you use pre-shared key authentication alone, all remote peers and dialup clients must be configured with the same pre-shared key. Optionally, you can configure remote peers and dialup clients with unique pre-shared keys. On the FortiGate, these are configured in user accounts, not in the phase 1 settings.

The pre-shared key must contain at least six printable characters and should be known by network administrators. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key must consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters. The limit is 128 characters.

If you authenticate the FortiGate using a pre-shared key, you can require remote peers or dialup clients to authenticate using peer IDs, but not client certificates.

To authenticate the FortiGate using a pre-shared key:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network* section as needed.
3. Configure or edit the *Authentication* settings as follows:

Method	*Pre-shared Key*

Pre-shared Key	<string>
IKE Version	*1* or *2*
Mode	*Aggressive* or *Main*
Peer Options	Select an *Accept Type* and the corresponding peer. Options vary based on the *Remote Gateway* and *Authentication Method* settings in the *Network* section. *Peer Options* are only available in *Aggressive* mode.

4. For the *Phase 1 Proposal* section, keep the default settings unless changes are needed to meet your requirements.
5. Optionally, for authentication parameters for a dialup user group, define *XAUTH* parameters.
6. Click *OK*.

Digital certificates

To authenticate the FortiGate using digital certificates, you must have the required certificates installed on the remote peer and on the FortiGate. The signed server certificate on one peer is validated by the presence of the root certificate installed on the other peer. If you use certificates to authenticate the FortiGate, you can also require the remote peers or dialup clients to authenticate using certificates. See Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1519 for a detailed example.

To authenticate the FortiGate using a digital certificate:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network* section as needed.
3. Configure or edit the *Authentication* settings as follows:

Method	*Signature*
Certificate Name	Select the certificate used to identify this FortiGate. If there are no imported certificates, use *Fortinet_Factory*.
IKE Version	*1* or *2*
Mode	*Aggressive* is recommended.
Peer Options	For *Accept Type*, select *Peer certificate* and select the peer and the CA certificate used to authenticate the peer. If the other end is using the Fortinet_Factory certificate, then use the *Fortinet_CA* certificate here.

4. For the *Phase 1 Proposal* section, keep the default settings unless changes are needed to meet your requirements.
5. Optionally, for authentication parameters for a dialup user group, define *XAUTH* parameters.
6. Click *OK*.

Using XAuth authentication

Extended authentication (XAuth) increases security by requiring remote dialup client users to authenticate in a separate exchange at the end of phase 1. XAuth draws on existing FortiGate user group definitions and uses established authentication mechanisms such as PAP, CHAP, RADIUS, and LDAP to authenticate dialup clients. You can configure a FortiGate to function either as an XAuth server or client. If the server or client is attempting a connection using XAuth and the other end is not using XAuth, the failed connection attempts that are logged will not specify XAuth as the reason.

XAuth server

A FortiGate can act as an XAuth server for dialup clients. When the phase 1 negotiation completes, the FortiGate challenges the user for a user name and password. It then forwards the user's credentials to an external RADIUS or LDAP server for verification.

If the user records on the RADIUS server have suitably configured Framed-IP-Address fields, you can assign client virtual IP addresses by XAuth instead of from a DHCP address range.

The authentication protocol you use for XAuth depends on the capabilities of the authentication server and the XAuth client:

- Select *PAP Server* whenever possible.
- You must select *PAP Server* for all implementations of LDAP and some implementations of Microsoft RADIUS.
- Select *Auto Server* when the authentication server supports *CHAP Server* but the XAuth client does not. The FortiGate will use PAP to communicate with the XAuth client and CHAP to communicate with the authentication server. You can also use *Auto Server* to allow multiple source interfaces to be defined in an IPsec/IKE policy.

Before you begin, create user accounts and user groups to identify the dialup clients that need to access the network behind the FortiGate dialup server. If password protection will be provided through an external RADIUS or LDAP server, you must configure the FortiGate dialup server to forward authentication requests to the authentication server.

To configure XAuth to authenticate a dialup user group:

1. On the FortiGate dialup server, go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network*, *Authentication*, and *Phase 1 Proposal* sections as needed.
3. In the *XAUTH* section, select the encryption method *Type* to use between the XAuth client, the FortiGate, and the authentication server.
4. For *User Group*:
   a. Click *Inherit from policy* for multiple user groups defined in the IPsec/IKE policy, or
   b. Click *Choose* and in the dropdown, select the user group that needs to access the private network behind the FortiGate.

   Only one user group may be defined for *Auto Server*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Create as many policies as needed, specifying the source user(s) and destination address.

XAuth client

If the FortiGate acts as a dialup client, the remote peer, acting as an XAuth server, might require a username and password. You can configure the FortiGate as an XAuth client with its own username and password, which it provides when challenged.

To configure the FortiGate dialup client as an XAuth client:

1. On the FortiGate dialup client, go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network*, *Authentication*, and *Phase 1 Proposal* sections as needed.
3. In the *XAUTH* section, for *Type*, select *Client*.

4. For *Username*, enter the FortiGate PAP, CHAP, RADIUS, or LDAP user name that the FortiGate XAuth server will compare to its records when the FortiGate XAuth client attempts to connect.
5. Enter the *Password* for the user name.
6. Click *OK*.

Dynamic IPsec route control

You can add a route to a peer destination selector by using the `add-route` option, which is available for all dynamic IPsec phases 1 and 2, for both policy-based and route-based IPsec VPNs.

The `add-route` option adds a route to the FortiGate routing information base when the dynamic tunnel is negotiated. You can use the distance and priority options to set the distance and priority of this route. If this results in a route with the lowest distance, it is added to the FortiGate forwarding information base.

You can also enable `add-route` in any policy-based or route-based phase 2 configuration that is associated with a dynamic (dialup) phase 1. In phase 2, `add-route` can be enabled, disabled, or set to use the same route as phase 1.

The `add-route` option is enabled by default.

To configure add-route in phase 1:

```
config vpn ipsec
    edit <name>
        set type dynamic
        set add-route {enable | disable}
    next
end
```

To configure add-route in phase 2:

```
config vpn ipsec {phase2 | phase2-interface}
    edit <name>
        set add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}
    next
end
```

Blocking IPsec SA negotiation

For interface-based IPsec, IPsec SA negotiation blocking can only be removed if the peer offers a wildcard selector. If a wildcard selector is offered, then the wildcard route will be added to the routing table with the distance/priority value configured in phase 1. If that is the route with the lowest distance, it will be installed into the forwarding information base.

In this scenario, it is important to ensure that the distance value configured for phase 1 is set appropriately.

Dynamic tunnel interface creation

When configuring route-based IPsec dialup tunnels, the `net-device` setting controls how traffic is routed on the hub:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "Spoke"
        set type dynamic
        set net-device {disable | enable}
        set tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}
    next
end
```

The key settings are `net-device` and `tunnel-search`. When `net-device` is disabled, all dialup tunnels share an interface on the hub. The tunnel selection process is based on the tunnel search method. Using a shared interface eliminates the time needed for dynamic interface creation and tear-down. When `net-device` is enabled, dynamic interfaces are created on the hub for each dialup tunnel. This means that potentially many dynamic interfaces could be created at start-up in a large scale deployment.

Behavior with net-device disabled

After a successful dial-in negotiation, the following occurs on the hub:

1. A dialup tunnel is created for each successful dial-in.
2. The tunnel name takes the form of `<phase1Name_index>`.
   a. For example, the first dialup tunnel to connect is Spoke_1, the second is Spoke_2, and so on.
   To view the tunnel name and the phase 1 parent:

```
Hub # diagnose vpn tunnel list name Spoke_3
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=Spoke_3 ver=1 serial=8 198.51.100.1:0->198.51.100.4:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/320 options
[0140]=search-nexthop rgwy_chg parent=Spoke index=3
```

3. No dynamic interface is created.
4. The networks accessible over dialup tunnels are all bound to the same shared phase 1 interface.
   a. To view the routing table:

```
Hub # get router info routing-table bgp
Routing table for VRF=0
B       192.168.2.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.2, Spoke, 01:04:49
B       192.168.3.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.3, Spoke, 01:04:47
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.4, Spoke, 00:35:01
B       192.168.5.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.5, Spoke, 01:04:51
```

When forwarding a packet to the spoke shared interface:

1. The cleartext packet is first sent to the IPsec engine.
2. The IPsec engine finds which tunnel's IPsec security association (SA) is used for protecting this packet.
3. The search logic is based on `set tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}`.

Tunnel search selectors

This is the default setting, which dictates that IPsec routes are learned from the traffic selectors of the IPsec SA negotiation. These routes are also called IKE routes, and can be displayed using `diagnose vpn ike routes list`.

Tunnel search next hop

This setting is used when you want IPsec routes to be learned from a dynamic routing protocol. The IPsec engine checks the search method associated with the shared interface spoke, and searches the tunnel index associated with the next hop. In this example, while searching for the index associated with next hop 10.10.10.4, index 3 is found corresponding to the Spoke_3 tunnel.

```
Hub # diagnose vpn tunnel list name Spoke
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=Spoke ver=1 serial=1 198.51.100.1:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/64 options[0040]=search-nexthop
proxyid_num=0 child_num=4 refcnt=26 ilast=4159 olast=4159 ad=/0 itn-status=7b
```

```
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=4
ipv4 route tree:
10.10.10.2 2
10.10.10.3 0
10.10.10.4 3
10.10.10.5 1
198.51.100.2 2
198.51.100.3 0
198.51.100.4 3
198.51.100.5 1
```

Behavior with net-device enabled

After a successful dial-in negotiation, the following occurs on the hub:

1. A dialup tunnel is created for each successful dial-in.
2. The tunnel name takes the form of <phase1Name_index>.
   a. For example, the first dialup tunnel to connect is Spoke_1, the second is Spoke_2, and so on.
   To view the tunnel name and the phase 1 parent:

```
Hub # diagnose vpn tunnel list name Spoke_3
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=Spoke_3 ver=1 serial=6 198.51.100.1:0->198.51.100.4:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/0 parent=Spoke
index=3
```

3. A dynamic interface is created for each dialup tunnel.
   a. To view the interface list:

```
Hub # diagnose netlink interface list | grep "Spoke_"
if=Spoke_0 family=00 type=768 index=22 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
if=Spoke_1 family=00 type=768 index=23 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
if=Spoke_2 family=00 type=768 index=24 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
if=Spoke_3 family=00 type=768 index=26 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
```

4. The networks accessible over dialup tunnels are bound to the corresponding tunnel interface.
   a. To view the routing table:

```
Hub # get router info routing-table bgp
Routing table for VRF=0
B       192.168.2.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.2, Spoke_0, 01:04:49
B       192.168.3.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.3, Spoke_1, 01:04:47
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.4, Spoke_3, 00:35:01
B       192.168.5.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.5, Spoke_2, 01:04:51
```

When forwarding a packet to the dialup IPsec interface:

1. The cleartext packet sent to the dynamic interface is sent to the IPsec engine.
2. The IPsec engine protects the cleartext packets with the IPsec security association (SA) of the corresponding tunnel.
3. The ESP packet is then sent on the wire.

Phase 2 configuration

After phase 1 negotiations end successfully, phase 2 begins. In Phase 2, the VPN peer or client and the FortiGate exchange keys again to establish a secure communication channel. The phase 2 proposal parameters select the encryption and authentication algorithms needed to generate keys for protecting the implementation details of security associations (SAs). The keys are generated automatically using a Diffie-Hellman algorithm.

The basic phase 2 settings associate IPsec phase 2 parameters with the phase 1 configuration that specifies the remote end point of the VPN tunnel. In most cases, you need to configure only basic Phase 2 settings.

Some settings can be configured in the CLI. The following options are available in the *VPN Creation Wizard* after the tunnel is created:

New Phase 2		
	Name	Phase 2 definition name.
	Local Address	A value of `0.0.0.0/0` means all IP addresses behind the local VPN peer. Add a specific address or range to allow traffic from and to only this local address. See Quick mode selectors on page 1507.
	Remote Address	Enter the destination IP address that corresponds to the recipients or network behind the remote VPN peer. A value of `0.0.0.0/0` means all IP addresses behind the remote VPN peer. See Quick mode selectors on page 1507.
Advanced		Select the encryption and authentication algorithms that will be proposed to the remote VPN peer. To establish a VPN connection, at least one of the proposals specified must match the configuration on the remote peer.
	Encryption	The following symmetric-key encryption algorithms are available: • *NULL*: do not use an encryption algorithm. • *DES*: Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key. • *3DES*: triple-DES; plain text is encrypted three times by three keys. • *AES128*: Advanced Encryption Standard, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key. • *AES128GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key. Only available for IKEv2. • *AES192*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key. • *AES256*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key. • *AES256GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key. Only available for IKEv2. • *CHACHA20POLY1305*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key and a symmetric cipher. Only available for IKEv2. See ChaCha20 and Poly1305 AEAD cipher on page 1508, AES-GCM for IKEv2 phase 1 on page 1509, and HMAC settings.
	Authentication	The following message digests that check the message authenticity during an encrypted session are available: • NULL: do not use a message digest.

		• *MD5*: message digest 5. • *SHA1*: secure hash algorithm 1; a 160-bit message digest. • *SHA256*: a 256-bit message digest. • *SHA384*: a 384-bit message digest. • *SHA512*: a 512-bit message digest. See also HMAC settings.
	Enable Replay Detection	Replay attacks occur when an unauthorized party intercepts a series of IPsec packets and replays them back into the tunnel. Replay detection allows the FortiGate to check all IPsec packets to see if they have been received before. If any encrypted packets arrive out of order, the FortiGate discards them. Note that 64-bit extended sequence numbers (as described in RFC 4303, RFC 4304 as an addition to IKEv1, and RFC 5996 for IKEv2) are supported for IPsec when replay detection is enabled.
	Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)	Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) improves security by forcing a new Diffie-Hellman exchange whenever keylife expires.
	Diffie-Hellman Group	Asymmetric key algorithms used for public key cryptography. Select one or more from groups 1, 2, 5, and 14 through 32. At least one of the *Diffie-Hellman Groups* (DH) settings on the remote peer or client must match one the selections on the FortiGate. Failure to match one or more DH groups will result in failed negotiations.
	Local Port	Enter the port number that the local VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). The range is from 0 to 65535. To specify all ports, select *All*, or enter `0`.
	Remote Port	Enter the port number that the remote VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). To specify all ports, select *All*, or enter `0`.
	Protocol	Enter the IP protocol number of the service. To specify all services, select *All*, or enter `0`.
	Auto-negotiate	Select this option for the tunnel to be automatically renegotiated when the it expires. See Auto-negotiate on page 1507.
	Autokey Keep Alive	Select this option for the tunnel to remain active when no data is being processed.
	Key Lifetime	Select the method for determining when the phase 2 key expires: • *Seconds* • *Kilobytes* • *Both* Enter a corresponding value for *Seconds* and/or *Kilobytes* in the text boxes. If *Both* is selected, the key expires when either the time has passed or the number of kilobytes have been processed.

Quick mode selectors

Quick mode selectors determine which IP addresses can perform IKE negotiations to establish a tunnel. By only allowing authorized IP addresses access to the VPN tunnel, the network is more secure.

The default settings are as broad as possible: any IP address or configured address object using any protocol on any port.



While the dropdown menus for specifying an address also show address groups, the use of address groups may not be supported on a remote endpoint device that is not a FortiGate.

When configuring a quick mode selector for *Local Address* and *Remote Address*, valid options include IPv4 and IPv6 single addresses, subnets, or ranges.

There are some configurations that require specific selectors:

- The VPN peer is a third-party device that uses specific phase2 selectors.
- The FortiGate connects as a dialup client to another FortiGate, in which case (usually) you must specify a local IP address, IP address range, or subnet. However, this is not required if you are using dynamic routing and `mode-cfg`.

With FortiOS VPNs, your network has multiple layers of security, with quick mode selectors being an important line of defense:

- Routes guide traffic from one IP address to another.
- Phase 1 and phase 2 connection settings ensure there is a valid remote end point for the VPN tunnel that agrees on the encryption and parameters.
- Quick mode selectors allow IKE negotiations only for allowed peers.
- Security policies control which IP addresses can connect to the VPN.
- Security policies also control what protocols are allowed over the VPN along with any bandwidth limiting.

If you are editing an existing phase 2 configuration, the local address and remote address fields are unavailable if the tunnel has been configured to use firewall addresses as selectors. This option exists only in the CLI.

Using the add-route option

Consider using the `add-route` option to add a route to a peer destination selector in phase 2 to automatically match the settings in phase 1.

To configure add-route:

```
config vpn ipsec {phase2 | phase2-interface}
    edit <name>
        set add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}
    next
end
```

Auto-negotiate

By default, the phase 2 security association (SA) is not negotiated until a peer attempts to send data. The triggering packet and some subsequent packets are dropped until the SA is established. Applications normally resend this data, so there is no loss, but there might be a noticeable delay in response to the user.

If the tunnel goes down, the auto-negotiate feature (when enabled) attempts to re-establish the tunnel. Auto-negotiate initiates the phase 2 SA negotiation automatically, repeating every five seconds until the SA is established.

Automatically establishing the SA can be important for a dialup peer. It ensures that the VPN tunnel is available for peers at the server end to initiate traffic to the dialup peer. Otherwise, the VPN tunnel does not exist until the dialup peer initiates traffic.

To configure auto-negotiate:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit <phase2_name>
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

Installing dynamic selectors via auto-negotiate

The IPsec SA connect message generated is used to install dynamic selectors. These selectors can be installed via the auto-negotiate mechanism. When phase 2 has `auto-negotiate` enabled, and phase 1 has `mesh-selector-type` set to `subnet`, a new dynamic selector will be installed for each combination of source and destination subnets. Each dynamic selector will inherit the auto-negotiate option from the template selector and begin SA negotiation. Phase 2 selector sources from dialup clients will all establish SAs without traffic being initiated from the client subnets to the hub.

DHCP

The `dhcp-ipsec` option lets the FortiGate assign VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients through a DHCP server or relay. This option is only available if the remote gateway in the phase 1 configuration is set to dialup user, and it only works in policy-based VPNs.

With `dhcp-ipsec`, the FortiGate dialup server acts as a proxy for FortiClient dialup clients that have VIP addresses on the subnet of the private network behind the FortiGate. In this case, the FortiGate dialup server acts as a proxy on the local private network for the FortiClient dialup client. A host on the network behind the dialup server issues an ARP request, corresponding to the device MAC address of the FortiClient host (when a remote server sends an ARP to the local FortiClient dialup client). The FortiGate then answers the ARP request on behalf of the FortiClient host, and then forwards the associated traffic to the FortiClient host through the tunnel.

Acting as a proxy prevents the VIP address assigned to the FortiClient dialup client from causing possible ARP broadcast problems—the normal and VIP addresses can confuse some network switches when two addresses have the same MAC address.

ChaCha20 and Poly1305 AEAD cipher

In IKEv2 to support RFC 7634, the ChaCha20 and Poly1305 crypto algorithms can be used together as a combined mode AEAD cipher (like AES-GCM) in the `crypto_ftnt` cipher in `cipher_chacha20poly1305.c`:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit <name>
        set phase1name <name>
        set proposal chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

AES-GCM for IKEv2 phase 1

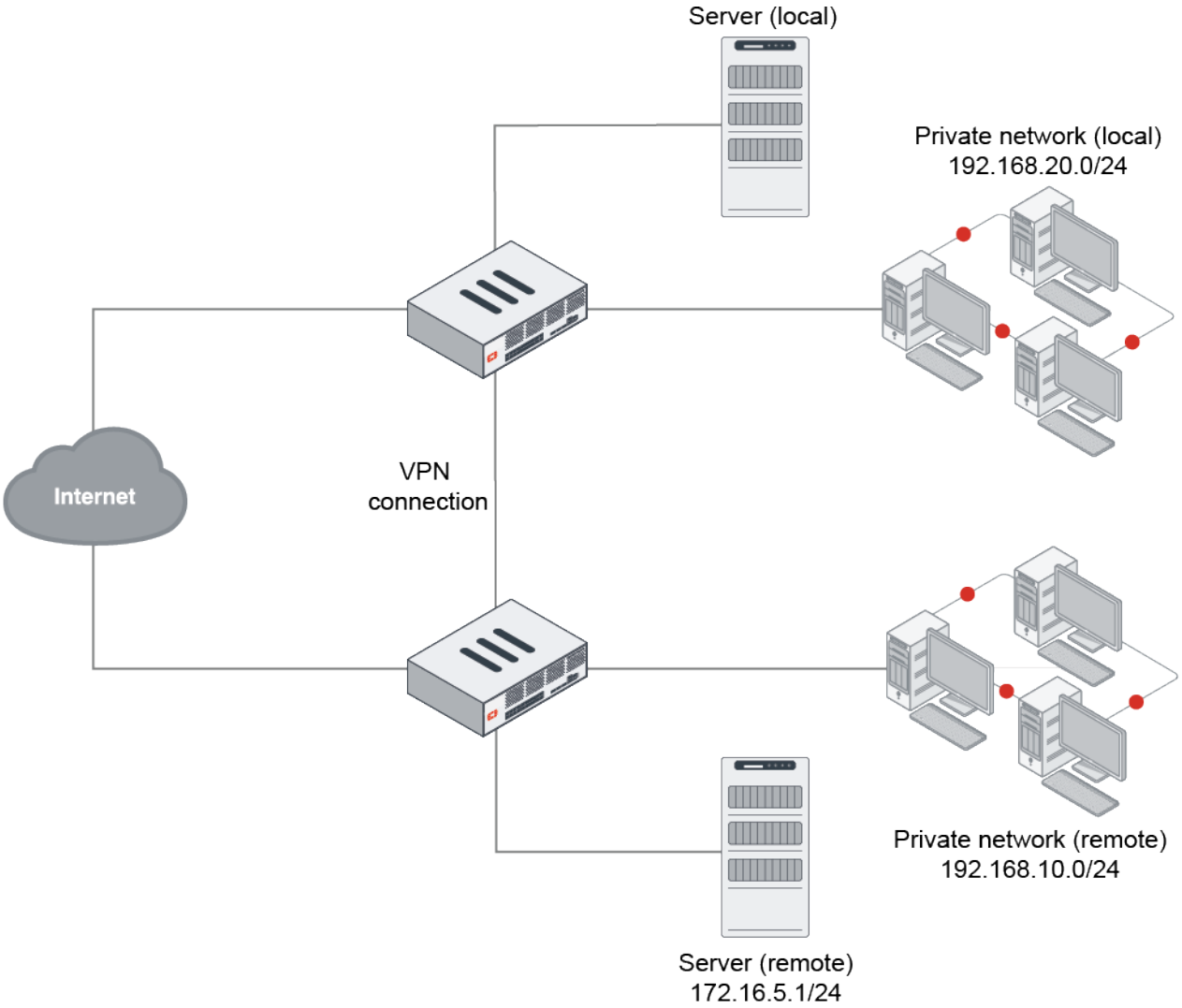
In IKEv2 to support RFC 5282, the AEAD algorithm AES-GCM supports 128- and 256-bit variants:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit <name>
        set phase1name <name>
        set proposal [aes128gcm | aes256gcm]
    next
end
```

VPN security policies

This section explains how to specify the source and destination IP addresses of traffic transmitted through an IPsec VPN, and how to define appropriate security policies.

Topology



Defining policy addresses

In a gateway-to-gateway, hub-and-spoke, dynamic DNS, redundant tunnel, or transparent configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of the network behind the remote VPN peer (for example, `192.168.10.0/255.255.255.0` or `192.168.10.0/24`).

In a peer-to-peer configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of a server or host behind the remote VPN peer (for example, `172.16.5.1/255.255.255.255`, `172.16.5.1/32`, or `172.16.5.1`).

For a FortiGate dialup server in a dialup-client or internet-browsing configuration, the source IP should reflect the IP addresses of the dialup clients:

Defining security policies

Policy-based and route-based VPNs require different security policies.

- A policy-based VPN requires an IPsec policy. You specify the interface to the private network, the interface to the remote peer and the VPN tunnel. A single policy can enable traffic inbound, outbound, or in both directions.
- A route-based VPN requires an accept policy for each direction. For the source and destination interfaces, you specify the interface to the private network and the virtual IPsec interface (phase 1 configuration) of the VPN. The IPsec interface is the destination interface for the outbound policy and the source interface for the inbound policy. One security policy must be configured for each direction of each VPN interface.



If the policy that grants the VPN connection is limited to certain services, DHCP must be included, otherwise the client will not be able to retrieve a lease from the FortiGate's (IPsec) DHCP server because the DHCP request (coming out of the tunnel) will be blocked.

Policy-based VPN

An IPsec policy enables the transmission and reception of encrypted packets, specifies the permitted direction of VPN traffic, and selects the VPN tunnel. In most cases, a single policy is needed to control both inbound and outbound IP traffic through a VPN tunnel. For a detailed example, see Policy-based IPsec tunnel on page 1538. Be aware of the following before creating an IPsec policy.

Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site

Policies specify which IP addresses can initiate a tunnel. By default, traffic from the local private network initiates the tunnel. When the *Allow traffic to be initiated form the remote site* option is selected, traffic from a dialup client, or a computer on a remote network, initiates the tunnel. Both can be enabled at the same time for bi-directional initiation of the tunnel.

Outbound and inbound NAT

When a FortiGate operates in NAT mode, you can enable inbound or outbound NAT. Outbound NAT may be performed on outbound encrypted packets or IP packets in order to change their source address before they are sent through the tunnel. Inbound NAT is performed to intercept and decrypt emerging IP packets from the tunnel.

By default, these options are not selected in security policies and can only be set through the CLI.

Defining multiple IPsec policies for the same tunnel

You must define at least one IPsec policy for each VPN tunnel. If the same remote server or client requires access to more than one network behind a local FortiGate, the FortiGate must be configured with an IPsec policy for each network. Multiple policies may be required to configure redundant connections to a remote destination or control access to different services at different times.

To ensure a secure connection, the FortiGate must evaluate policies with *Action* set to *IPsec* before *ACCEPT* and *DENY*. Because the FortiGate unit reads policies starting at the top of the list, you must move all IPsec policies to the top of the list, and be sure to reorder your multiple IPsec policies that apply to the tunnel so that specific constraints can be evaluated before general constraints. If you create two equivalent IPsec policies for two different tunnels, the system will select the correct policy based on the specified source and destination addresses.



Adding multiple IPsec policies for the same VPN tunnel can cause conflicts if the policies specify similar source and destination addresses, but have different settings for the same service. When policies overlap in this manner, the system may apply the wrong IPsec policy or the tunnel may fail.

Route-based VPN

When you define a route-based VPN, you create a virtual IPsec interface on the physical interface that connects to the remote peer. You create ordinary accept policies to enable traffic between the IPsec interface and the interface that connects to the private network. This makes configuration simpler than for policy-based VPNs.

To configure policies for a route-based VPN:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* and define an *ACCEPT* policy to permit communication between the local private network and the private network behind the remote peer and enter these settings in particular:

Name	Enter a name for the security policy.
Incoming Interface	Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate.
Outgoing Interface	Select the IPsec interface you configured.
Source	Select the address name you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate.
Destination	Select the address name you defined for the private network behind the remote peer.
Action	Select *ACCEPT*.
NAT	Disable *NAT*.

3. Click *OK*.
   To permit the remote client to initiate communication, you need to define a security policy for communication in that direction.

4. Click *Create New* and enter these settings in particular:

Name	Enter a name for the security policy.
Incoming Interface	Select the IPsec interface you configured.
Outgoing Interface	Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate.
Source	Select the address name you defined for the private network behind the remote peer.
Destination	Select the address name you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate.
Action	Select *ACCEPT*.
NAT	Disable *NAT*.

5. Click *OK*.

Blocking unwanted IKE negotiations and ESP packets with a local-in policy

It is not unusual to receive IPsec connection attempts or malicious IKE packets from all over the internet. Malicious parties use these probes to try to establish an IPsec tunnel in order to gain access to your private network. A good way to prevent this is to use local-in policies to deny such traffic.

Sometimes there are malicious attempts using crafted invalid ESP packets. These invalid attempts are automatically blocked by the FOS IPsec local-in handler when it checks the SPI value against the SAs of existing tunnels. The IPsec local-in handler processes the packet instead of the firewall's local-in handler. So when these attempts are blocked, you will notice an `unknown SPI` message in your VPN logs instead of being silently blocked by your local-in policy. These log messages are rate limited.

Sample log and alert email

```
Message meets Alert condition

date=2020-08-11 time=09:28:40 devname=toSite1 devid=FGT60Fxxxxxxxxxx logid="0101037131"
type="event" subtype="vpn" level="error" vd="root" eventtime=1597163320747963100 tz="-0700"
logdesc="IPsec ESP" msg="IPsec ESP" action="error" remip=131.62.25.102 locip=192.157.116.88
remport=40601 locport=500 outintf="wan1" cookies="N/A" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="N/A" status="esp_error" error_
num="Received ESP packet with unknown SPI." spi="f6c9e2x1" seq="02000400"
```

Note that invalid SPIs may not always indicate malicious activity. For example, the SPI may not match during rekey, or when one unit flushes its tunnel SAs. Administrators should collect as much information as possible before making a conclusion.

To block undesirable IPsec connection attempts and IKE packets using a local-in policy:

1. Configure an address group that excludes legitimate IPs:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "All_exceptions"
        set member "all"
        set exclude enable
        set exclude-member "remote-vpn"
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Create a local-in policy that blocks IKE traffic from the address group:

```
config firewall local-in-policy
    edit 1
        set intf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "All_exceptions"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "IKE"
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```



The default action is deny.

3. Verify the traffic blocked by the local-in policy:

```
# diagnose debug flow filter dport 500
# diagnose debug flow trace start 10
# diagnose debug enable

id=20085 trace_id=290 func=print_pkt_detail line=5588 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet
(proto=17, 10.10.10.13:500->10.10.10.1:500) from wan1. "
id=20085 trace_id=290 func=init_ip_session_common line=5760 msg="allocate a new session-
003442e7"
id=20085 trace_id=290 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2598 msg="find a route:
flag=84000000 gw-10.10.10.1 via root"
id=20085 trace_id=290 func=fw_local_in_handler line=430 msg="iprope_in_check() check
failed on policy 1, drop"
```

Site-to-site VPN

A site-to-site VPN connection lets branch offices use the Internet to access the main office's intranet. A site-to-site VPN allows offices in multiple, fixed locations to establish secure connections with each other over a public network such as the Internet.

The following sections provide instructions for configuring site-to-site VPNs:

- FortiGate-to-FortiGate on page 1513
- FortiGate-to-third-party on page 1545

FortiGate-to-FortiGate

This section contains the following topics about FortiGate-to-FortiGate VPN configurations:

- Basic site-to-site VPN with pre-shared key on page 1514
- Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1519
- Site-to-site VPN with overlapping subnets on page 1525

- GRE over IPsec on page 1534
- Policy-based IPsec tunnel on page 1538

Basic site-to-site VPN with pre-shared key

This is a sample configuration of IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a pre-shared key.



To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a pre-shared key in the GUI:

1. Configure the HQ1 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.202.1*.
      iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port1*.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
      vi. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
      iv. Click *Create*.
2. Configure the HQ2 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.2001*.
      iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port25*.

iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
vi. Click *Next*.

c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
ii. Configure *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
iv. Click *Create*.

To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a pre-shared key using the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface. The internal interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "dmz"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface.

a. Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set interface "port1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set psksecret sample
    next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
        set interface "port25"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret  sample
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

a. Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure the static routes. Two static routes are added to reach the remote protected subnet. The blackhole route is important to ensure that IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ2"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ1"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
     next
end
```

6. Configure two firewall policies to allow bidirectional IPsec traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ2"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "to_HQ2"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ1"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ1"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

7. Run `diagnose` commands. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish. If the PSK failed to match, the following error shows up in the debug output:

```
ike 0:to_HQ2:15037: parse error
ike 0:to_HQ2:15037: probable pre-shared secret mismatch'
```

The following commands are useful to check IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status.

a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 5s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 2/2 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 12 6e8d0532e7fe8d84/3694ac323138a024
direction: responder
status: established 5-5s ago = 0ms
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: b3efb46d0d385aff-7bb9ee241362ee8d
lifetime/rekey: 86400/86124
DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000
```

b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
dev frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=7 olast=87 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
```

```
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42927/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200
dec: spi=ef9ca700 esp=aes key=16 a2c6584bf654d4f956497b3436f1cfc7
ah=sha1 key=20 82c5e734bce81e6f18418328e2a11aeb7baa021b
enc: spi=791e898e esp=aes key=16 0dbb4588ba2665c6962491e85a4a8d5a
ah=sha1 key=20 2054b318d2568a8b12119120f20ecac97ab730b3
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate

This is a sample configuration of IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a certificate. The certificate on one peer is validated by the presence of the CA certificate installed on the other peer.



To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a digital certificate in the GUI:

1. Import the certificate.
2. Configure user peers.
3. Configure the HQ1 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.202.1*.
      iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port1*.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Signature*.
      v. In the *Certificate name* field, select the imported certificate.
      vi. From the *Peer Certificate CA* dropdown list, select the desired peer CA certificate.
      vii. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.

iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
iv. Click *Create*.

4. Configure the HQ2 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.2001*.
      iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port25*.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Signature*.
      v. In the *Certificate name* field, select the imported certificate.
      vi. From the *Peer Certificate CA* dropdown list, select the peer CA certificate.
      vii. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
      iv. Click *Create*.

To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a digital certificate using the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
```

```
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface. The internal interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "dmz"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the import certificate and its CA certificate information. The certificate and its CA certificate must be imported on the remote peer FortiGate and on the primary FortiGate before configuring IPsec VPN tunnels. If the built-in Fortinet_Factory certificate and the Fortinet_CA CA certificate are used for authentication, you can skip this step.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn certificate local
    edit "test1"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
config vpn certificate ca
    edit "CA_Cert_1"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn certificate local
    edit "test2"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
config vpn certificate ca
    edit "CA_Cert_1"
        ...
        set range global
```

```
    next
end
```

4. Configure the peer user. The peer user is used in the IPsec VPN tunnel peer setting to authenticate the remote peer FortiGate.
   a. If not using the built-in Fortinet_Factory certificate and Fortinet_CA CA certificate, do the following:
      i. Configure HQ1.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer1"
        set ca "CA_Cert_1"
    next
end
```

      ii. Configure HQ2.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer2"
        set ca "CA_Cert_1"
    next
end
```

   b. If the built-in Fortinet_Factory certificate and Fortinet_CA CA certificate are used for authentication, the peer user must be configured based on Fortinet_CA.
      i. Configure HQ1.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer1"
        set ca "Fortinet_CA"
    next
end
```

      ii. Configure HQ2.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer2"
        set ca "Fortinet_CA"
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set interface "port1"
        set authmethod signature
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set certificate "test1"
        set peer "peer1"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
```

```
        set interface "port25"
        set authmethod signature
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set certificate "test2"
        set peer "peer2"
    next
end
```

6. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

7. Configure the static routes. Two static routes are added to reach the remote protected subnet. The blackhole route is important to ensure that IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ2"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ1"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
     next
end
```

8. Configure two firewall policies to allow bidirectional IPsec traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ2"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "to_HQ2"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ1"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ1"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

9. Run `diagnose` commands. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish. If the remote FortiGate certificate cannot be validated, the following error

shows up in the debug output:

```
ike 0: to_HQ2:15314: certificate validation failed
```

The following commands are useful to check IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status.

a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 7s ago
peer-id: C = CA, ST = BC, L = Burnaby, O = Fortinet, OU = QA, CN = test2
peer-id-auth: yes
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 70/70/70 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 80/80/80 ms
id/spi: 15326 295be407fbddfc13/7a5a52afa56adf14 direction: initiator status:
established 7-7s ago = 70ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: 4aa06dbee359a4c7-
43570710864bcf7b lifetime/rekey: 86400/86092 DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000 peer-
id: C = CA, ST = BC, L = Burnaby, O = Fortinet, OU = QA, CN = test2
```

b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

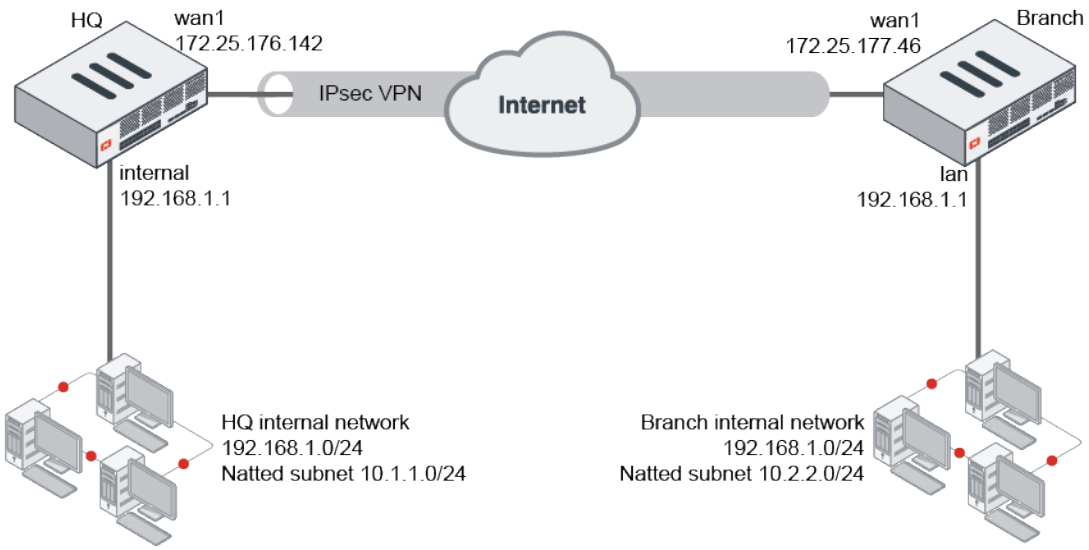
```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
dev frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=19 olast=179 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vpn-f proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42717/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42897/43200
dec: spi=72e87de7 esp=aes key=16 8b2b93e0c149d6f22b1c0b96ea450e6c
ah=sha1 key=20 facc655e5f33beb7c2b12e718a6d55413ce3efa2
enc: spi=5c52c865 esp=aes key=16 8d0c4e4adbf2338beed569b2b3205ece
ah=sha1 key=20 553331628612480ab6d7d563a00e2a967ebabcdd
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

Site-to-site VPN with overlapping subnets

This is a sample configuration of IPsec VPN to allow transparent communication between two overlapping networks that are located behind different FortiGates using a route-based tunnel with source and destination NAT.

In the following topology, both FortiGates (HQ and Branch) use 192.168.1.0/24 as their internal network, but both networks need to be able to communicate to each other through the IPsec tunnel.

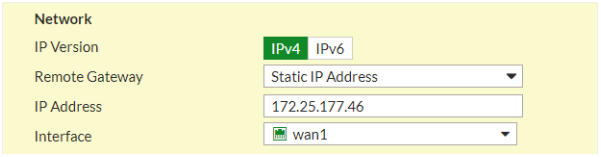
New virtual subnets of equal size must be configured and used for all communication between the two overlapping subnets. The devices on both local networks do not need to change their IP addresses. However, the devices and users must use the new subnet range of the remote network to communicate across the tunnel.



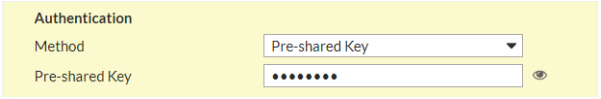
Configuring the HQ FortiGate

To configure IPsec VPN:

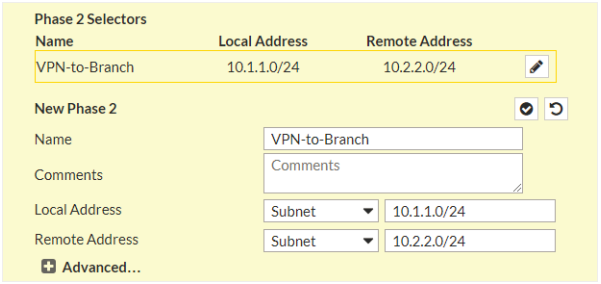
1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and select the *Custom* template.
2. Enter the name *VPN-to-Branch* and click *Next*.
3. For the *IP Address*, enter the Branch public IP address (*172.25.177.46*), and for *Interface*, select the HQ WAN interface (*wan1*).



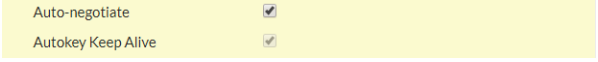
4. For *Pre-shared Key*, enter a secure key. You will use the same key when configuring IPsec VPN on the Branch FortiGate.



5. In the *Phase 2 Selectors* section, enter the subnets for the *Local Address* (*10.1.1.0/24*) and *Remote Address* (*10.2.2.0/24*).



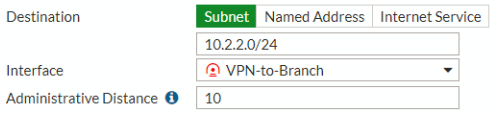
6. Optionally, expand *Advanced* and enable *Auto-negotiate*.



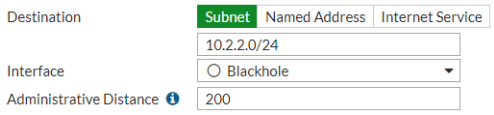
7. Click *OK*.

To configure the static routes:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Destination* field, enter the remote address subnet (*10.2.2.0/24*).
3. For *Interface*, select the VPN tunnel you just created, *VPN-to-Branch*.

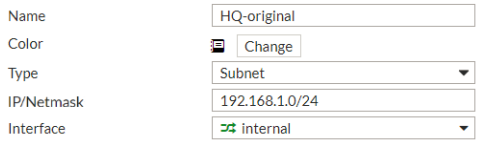


4. Click *OK*.
5. Create another route with the same *Destination*, but change the *Administrative Distance* to *200* and for *Interface*, select *Blackhole*. This is a best practice for route-based IPsec VPN tunnels because it ensures traffic for the remote FortiGate's subnet is not sent using the default route in the event that the IPsec tunnel goes down.

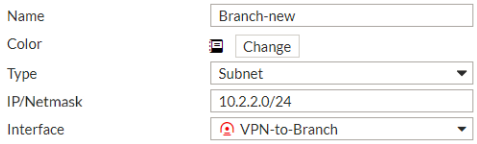


To configure the address objects:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. For *Name*, enter *HQ-original*.
3. For *IP/Netmask*, enter the original LAN subnet of HQ (*192.168.1.0/24*).
4. For *Interface*, select the LAN-side interface (*internal*).

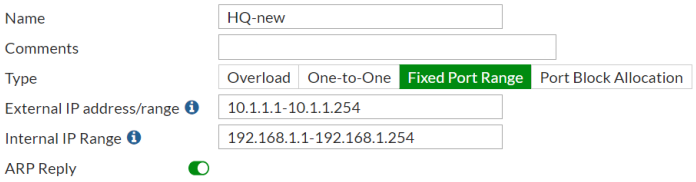


5. Click *OK*
6. Create another address object named *Branch-new*, but for *IP/Netmask*, enter the new LAN subnet of Branch (*10.2.2.0/24*), and select the VPN interface (*VPN-to-Branch*).



To configure the IP pool:

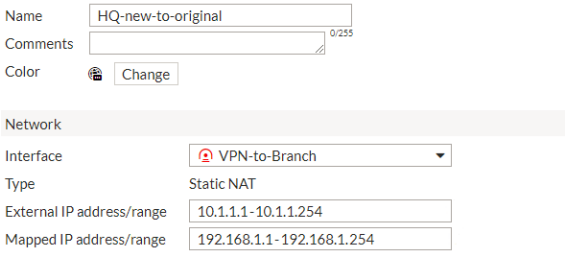
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools* and click *Create New*.
2. For *Name*, enter *HQ-new*.
3. For *Type*, select *Fixed Port Range*.
4. Enter the *External IP address/range* (*10.1.1.1 – 10.1.1.254*, the new HQ subnet) and *Internal IP Range* (*192.168.1.1 – 192.168.1.254*, the original HQ subnet).



5. Click *OK*.

To configure the VIP:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP*.
2. For *Name*, enter *HQ-new-to-original*.
3. For *Interface*, select the VPN interface (*VPN-to-Branch*).
4. Enter the *External IP address/range* (*10.1.1.1 – 10.1.1.254*, the new HQ subnet) and *Mapped IP address/range* (*192.168.1.1 – 192.168.1.254*, the original HQ subnet).

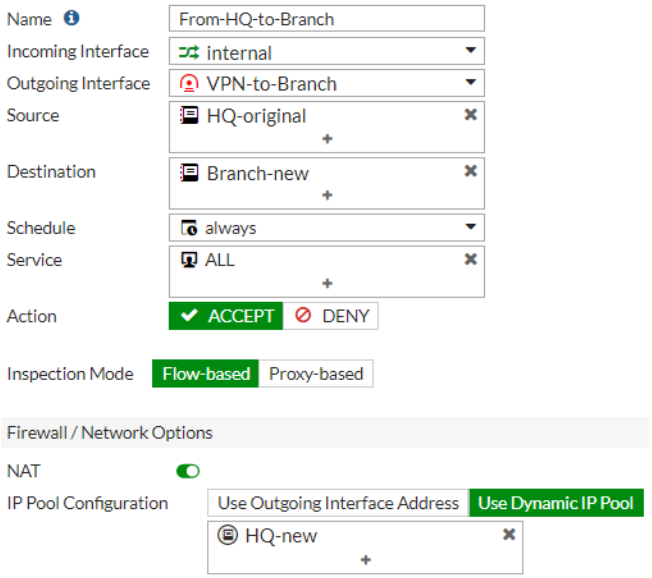


5. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy for traffic from HQ to Branch:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. For *Name*, enter *From-HQ-to-Branch*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select the LAN-side interface (*internal*).
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select the VPN tunnel interface (*VPN-to-Branch*).
5. For *Source*, select *HQ-original*.
6. For *Destination*, select *Branch-new*.
7. For *Service*, select *ALL*.
8. Enable *NAT*.

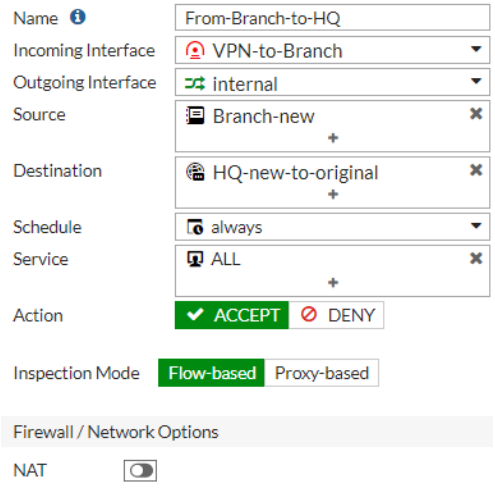
9. Select *Use Dynamic IP Pool* and select the *HQ-new* IP pool.



10. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy for traffic from Branch to HQ:

1. Click *Create New* and for *Name*, enter *From-Branch-to HQ*.
2. For *Incoming Interface*, select the VPN tunnel interface (*VPN-to-Branch*).
3. For *Outgoing Interface*, select the LAN-side interface (*internal*).
4. For *Source*, select *Branch-new*.
5. For *Destination*, select the *HQ-new-to-original* VIP.
6. For *Service*, select *ALL*.
7. Disable *NAT*.

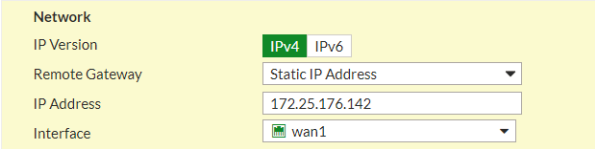


8. Click *OK*.

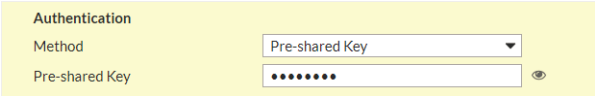
Configuring the Branch FortiGate

To configure IPsec VPN:

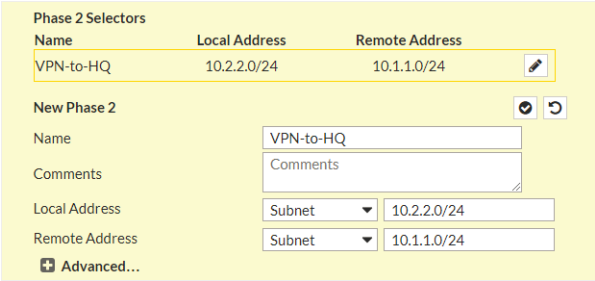
1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and select the *Custom* template.
2. Enter the name *VPN-to-HQ* and click *Next*.
3. For the *IP Address*, enter the HQ public IP address (*172.25.176.142*), and for *Interface*, select the Branch WAN interface (*wan1*).



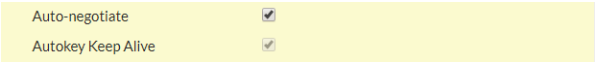
4. For *Pre-shared Key*, enter the matching secure key used in the *VPN-to-Branch* tunnel.



5. In the *Phase 2 Selectors* section, enter the subnets for the *Local Address* (*10.2.2.0/24*) and *Remote Address* (*10.1.1.0/24*).



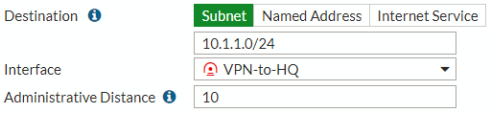
6. Optionally, expand *Advanced* and enable *Auto-negotiate*.



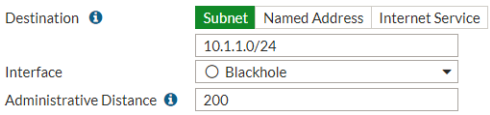
7. Click *OK*.

To configure the static routes:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Destination* field, enter the remote address subnet (*10.1.1.0/24*).
3. For *Interface*, select the VPN tunnel you just created, *VPN-to-HQ*.

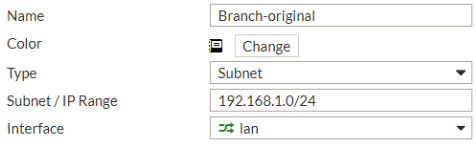


4. Click *OK*.
5. Create another route with the same *Destination*, but change the *Administrative Distance* to *200* and for *Interface*, select *Blackhole*.

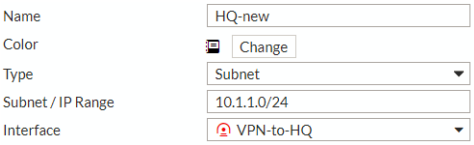


To configure the address objects:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. For *Name*, enter *Branch-original*.
3. For *IP/Netmask*, enter the original LAN subnet of Branch (*192.168.1.0/24*).
4. For *Interface*, select the LAN-side interface (*lan*).

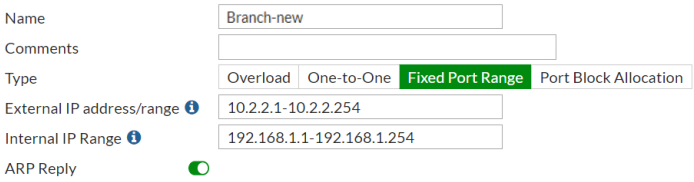


5. Click *OK*
6. Create another address object named *HQ-new*, but for *IP/Netmask*, enter the new LAN subnet of HQ (*10.1.1.0/24*), and select the VPN interface (*VPN-to-HQ*).



To configure the IP pool:

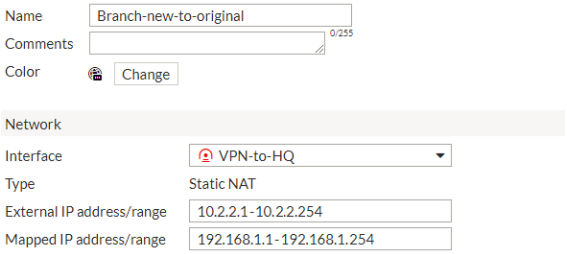
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools* and click *Create New*.
2. For *Name*, enter *Branch-new*.
3. For *Type*, select *Fixed Port Range*.
4. Enter the *External IP address/range* (*10.2.2.1 – 10.2.2.254*, the new Branch subnet) and *Internal IP Range* (*192.168.1.1 – 192.168.1.254*, the original Branch subnet).



5. Click *OK*.

To configure the VIP:

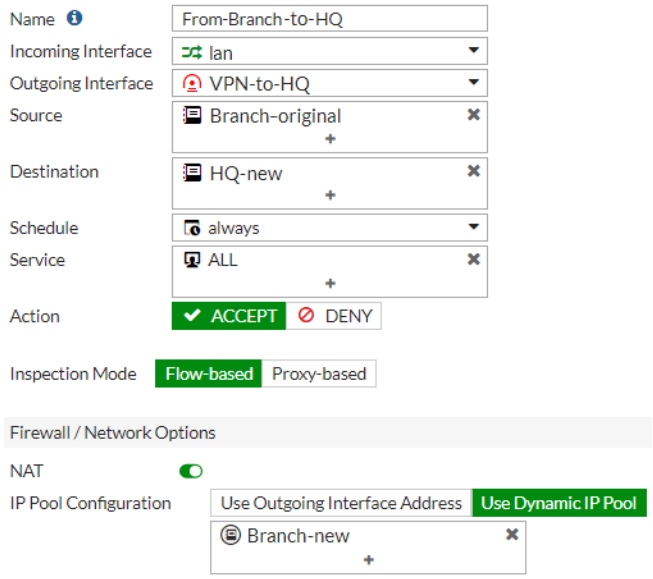
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP*.
2. For *Name*, enter *Branch-new-to-original*.
3. For *Interface*, select the VPN interface (*VPN-to-HQ*).
4. Enter the *External IP address/range* (*10.2.2.1 – 10.2.2.254*, the new Branch subnet) and *Mapped IP address/range* (*192.168.1.1 – 192.168.1.254*, the original Branch subnet).



5. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy for traffic from Branch to HQ:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. For *Name*, enter *From-Branch-to-HQ*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select the LAN-side interface (*lan*).
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select the VPN tunnel interface (*VPN-to-HQ*).
5. For *Source*, select *Branch-original*.
6. For *Destination*, select *HQ-new*.
7. For *Service*, select *ALL*.
8. Enable *NAT*.
9. Select *Use Dynamic IP Pool* and select the *Branch-new* IP pool.

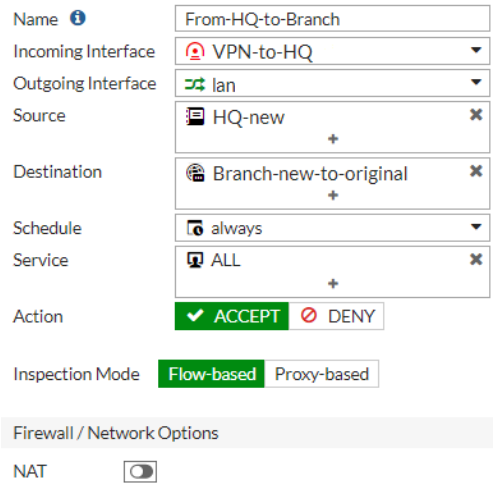


10. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy for traffic from HQ to Branch:

1. Click *Create New* and for *Name*, enter *From-HQ-to-Branch*.
2. For *Incoming Interface*, select the VPN tunnel interface (*VPN-to-HQ*).
3. For *Outgoing Interface*, select the LAN-side interface (*lan*).
4. For *Source*, select *HQ-new*.
5. For *Destination*, select the *Branch-new-to-original* VIP.
6. For *Service*, select *ALL*.

7. Disable *NAT*.



8. Click *OK*.

To verify the communication across the tunnel:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and click the *IPsec* widget to expand to full screen view. The tunnels should be up on both FortiGates. If you did not enable *Auto-negotiate* in the IPsec VPN settings, you may have to select the tunnel and click *Bring Up*.
2. From a PC on the HQ network, ping a PC on the Branch network using the new IP for the Branch PC. The ping should be successful.

```
C:\Users\jheadley>ping 10.2.2.98

Pinging 10.2.2.98 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 10.2.2.98: bytes=32 time=7ms TTL=62
Reply from 10.2.2.98: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=62
Reply from 10.2.2.98: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=62
Reply from 10.2.2.98: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=62

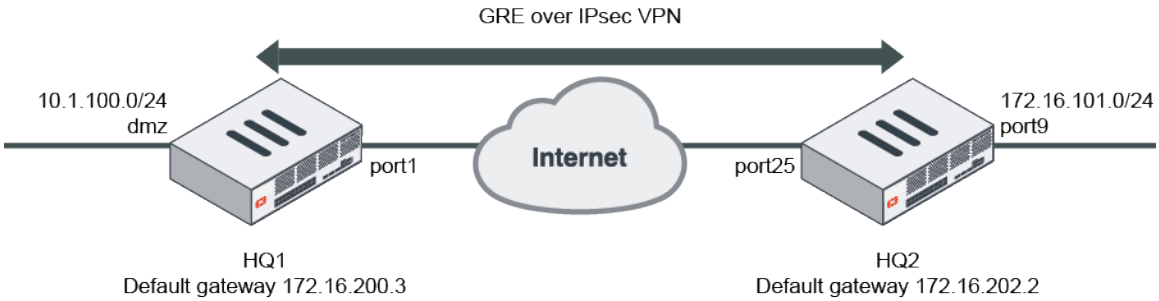
Ping statistics for 10.2.2.98:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
    Minimum = 1ms, Maximum = 7ms, Average = 2ms
```

3. From a PC on the Branch network, ping a PC on the HQ network using the new IP for the HQ PC. The ping should be successful.

```
Johns-MacBook-Air:~ John$ ping 10.1.1.12
PING 10.1.1.12 (10.1.1.12): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.1.1.12: icmp_seq=0 ttl=126 time=1.912 ms
64 bytes from 10.1.1.12: icmp_seq=1 ttl=126 time=1.743 ms
64 bytes from 10.1.1.12: icmp_seq=2 ttl=126 time=1.403 ms
64 bytes from 10.1.1.12: icmp_seq=3 ttl=126 time=1.425 ms
^C
--- 10.1.1.12 ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0.0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max/stddev = 1.403/1.621/1.912/0.215 ms
```

GRE over IPsec

This is an example of GRE over an IPsec tunnel using a static route over GRE tunnel and `tunnel-mode` in the `phase2-interface` settings.



To configure GRE over an IPsec tunnel:

1. Enable subnet overlapping at both HQ1 and HQ2.

```
config system settings
    set allow-subnet-overlap enable
end
```

2. Configure the WAN interface and static route.
   a. HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "dmz"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port9"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
```

```
    next
end
```

3. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.
   a. HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set interface "port1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set phase1name "greipsec"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set protocol 47
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set interface "port25"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set phase1name "greipsec"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set protocol 47
    next
end
```

4. Configure IPsec tunnel interface IP address.
   a. HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "greipsec"
```

```
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

5. Configure the GRE tunnel.
   a. HQ1.

```
config system gre-tunnel
    edit "gre_to_HQ2"
        set interface "greipsec"
        set remote-gw 10.10.10.2
        set local-gw 10.10.10.1
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config system gre-tunnel
    edit "gre_to_HQ1"
        set interface "greipsec"
        set remote-gw 10.10.10.1
        set local-gw 10.10.10.2
    next
end
```

6. Configure the firewall policy.
   a. HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "gre_to_HQ2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "gre_to_HQ2"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 3
        set srcintf "greipsec"
        set dstintf "greipsec"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

b. HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "gre_to_HQ1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "gre_to_HQ1"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 3
        set srcintf "greipsec"
        set dstintf "greipsec"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

7. Configure the static route.

a. HQ1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "gre_to_HQ2"
    next
end
```

b. HQ2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "gre_to_HQ1"
    next
end
```

To view the VPN tunnel list on HQ1:

```
diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=greipsec ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/16 options[0010]=create_dev
```

```
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=19 olast=861 ad=/0
stat: rxp=347 txp=476 rxb=58296 txb=51408
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=8
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=greipsec proto=47 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2
  src: 47:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 47:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41689/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=15c esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=0000015c itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=9897bd09 esp=aes key=16 5a60e67bf68379309715bd83931680bf
       ah=sha1 key=20 ff35a329056d0d506c0bfc17ef269978a4a57dd3
  enc: spi=e362f336 esp=aes key=16 5574acd8587c5751a88950e1bf8fbf57
       ah=sha1 key=20 d57ec76ac3c543ac89b2e4d0545518aa2d06669b
  dec:pkts/bytes=347/37476, enc:pkts/bytes=347/58296
```

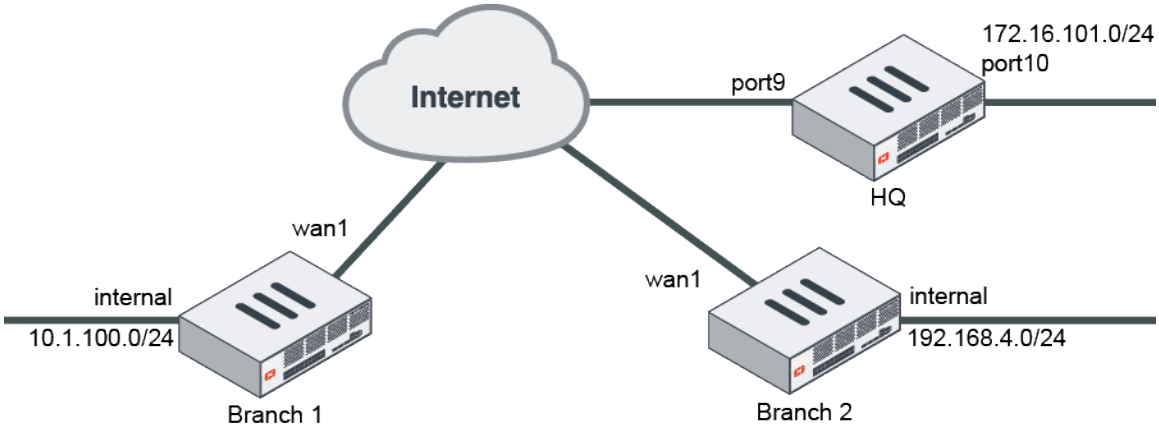
To view the static routing table on HQ1:

```
get router info routing-table static
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.3, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [10/0] is directly connected, gre_to_HQ2
```

Policy-based IPsec tunnel

This is an example of policy-based IPsec tunnel using site-to-site VPN between branch and HQ. HQ is the IPsec concentrator.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

To configure a policy-based IPsec tunnel using the GUI:

- Configure the IPsec VPN at HQ.
- Configure the IPsec concentrator at HQ.
- Configure the firewall policy at HQ.
- Configure IPsec VPN at branch 1.
- Configure the firewall policy at branch 1.

- Configure IPsec VPN at branch 2.
- Configure the firewall policy at branch 2.

To configure the IPsec VPN at HQ:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 1.
   a. Enter a VPN *Name*. In this example, *to_branch1*.
   b. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
   c. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
   d. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
   e. Enter IP address, in this example, *15.1.1.2*.
   f. For *Interface*, select *port9*.
   g. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   h. Click *OK*.
2. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 2.
   a. Enter a VPN *Name*. In this example, *to_branch2*.
   b. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
   c. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
   d. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
   e. Enter IP address, in this example, *13.1.1.2*.
   f. For *Interface*, select *port9*.
   g. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   h. Click *OK*.

To configure the IPsec concentrator at HQ:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Concentrator* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name. In this example, *branch*.
3. Add the *Members to_branch1* and *to_branch2*.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy at HQ:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a policy *Name*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port10*.
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port9*.
5. Select the *Source*, *Destination*, *Schedule*, *Service*, and set *Action* to *IPsec*.
6. Select the *VPN Tunnel*, in this example, *Branch1/Branch2*.
7. In this example, enable *Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site*.
8. Click *OK*.

To configure IPsec VPN at branch 1:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 1.
2. Enter a VPN name. In this example, *to_HQ*.
3. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.

4. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
5. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
6. Enter IP address, in this example, *22.1.1.1*.
7. For *Interface*, select *wan1*.
8. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
9. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy at branch 1:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a policy *Name*.
3. Choose the *Incoming Interface*, in this example, *internal*.
4. Choose the *Outgoing Interface*, in this example, *wan1*.
5. Select the *Source*, *Destination*, *Schedule*, *Service*, and set *Action* to *IPsec*.
6. Select the *VPN Tunnel*, in this example, *Branch1/Branch2*.
7. In this example, enable *Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site*.
8. Click *OK*.

To configure IPsec VPN at branch 2:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 1.
2. Enter a VPN name. In this example, *to_HQ*.
3. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
4. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
5. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
6. Enter IP address, in this example, *22.1.1.1*.
7. For *Interface*, select *wan1*.
8. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
9. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy at branch 2:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a policy *Name*.
3. Choose the *Incoming Interface*, in this example, *internal*.
4. Choose the *Outgoing Interface*, in this example, *wan1*.
5. Select the *Source*, *Destination*, *Schedule*, *Service*, and set *Action* to *IPsec*.
6. Select the *VPN Tunnel*, in this example, *to_HQ*.
7. In this example, enable *Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site*.
8. Click *OK*.

To configure a policy-based IPsec tunnel using the CLI:

1. Configure the HQ WAN interface and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
```

```
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the HQ IPsec phase1 and phase2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit "to_branch1"
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 15.1.1.2
        set psksecret sample
        next
    edit "to_branch2"
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 13.1.1.2
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "to_branch1"
        set phase1name "to_branch1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
    edit "to_branch2"
        set phase1name "to_branch2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy at HQ.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
```

```
        set vpntunnel "to_branch1"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.4.0"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_branch2"
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec concentrator at HQ.

```
config vpn ipsec concentrator
    edit "branch"
        set member "to_branch1" "to_branch2"
    next
end
```

5. Configure the branch WAN interface and static route.
   a. For branch 1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

   b. For branch 2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
```

```
    next
end
```

6. Configure the branch IPsec phase1 and phase2.
   a. For branch 1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit "to_HQ"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "to_HQ"
        set phase1name "to_HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

   b. For branch 2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit "to_HQ"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "to_HQ"
        set phase1name "to_HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

7. Configure the branch firewall policy.
   a. For branch 1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_HQ"
    next
end
```

b. For branch 2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "192.168.4.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_HQ"
    next
end
```

To view the IPsec VPN tunnel list at HQ:

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=to_branch1 ver=1 serial=4 22.1.1.1:0->15.1.1.2:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=tunnel/1 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=8 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=305409 txp=41985 rxb=47218630 txb=2130108
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_branch1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42604/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42932/43200
  dec: spi=ca646442 esp=aes key=16 58c91d4463968dddccc4fd97de90a4b8
       ah=sha1 key=20 c9176fe2fbc82ef7e726be9ad4af83eb1b55580a
  enc: spi=747c10c4 esp=aes key=16 7cf0f75b784f697bc7f6d8b4bb8a83c1
       ah=sha1 key=20 cdddc376a86f5ca0149346604a59af07a33b11c5
  dec:pkts/bytes=1664/16310, enc:pkts/bytes=0/16354
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=3 dec_npuid=2 enc_npuid=2
----
name=to_branch2 ver=1 serial=5 22.1.1.1:0->13.1.1.2:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=tunnel/1 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=7 ilast=2 olast=43228 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_branch2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1280 expire=40489/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=ca646441 esp=aes key=16 57ab680d29d4aad4e373579fb50e9909
       ah=sha1 key=20 12a2bc703d2615d917ff544eaff75a6d2c17f1fe
  enc: spi=f9cffb61 esp=aes key=16 3d64da9feb893874e007babce0229259
       ah=sha1 key=20 f92a3ad5e56cb8e89c47af4dac10bf4b4bebff16
```

```
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=4 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

To view the IPsec VPN concentrator at HQ:

```
# diagnose vpn concentrator list

list all ipsec concentrator in vd 0
name=branch              ref=3          tuns=2 flags=0
```

FortiGate-to-third-party

This section contains the following topics about FortiGate-to-third-party VPN configurations:

- IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway on page 1545
- IPsec VPN to Azure with virtual network gateway on page 1551
- IPsec VPN to an Azure with virtual WAN on page 1562
- IPSec VPN between a FortiGate and a Cisco ASA with multiple subnets on page 1566
- Cisco GRE-over-IPsec VPN on page 1567

IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway

This is a sample configuration of an IPsec site-to-site VPN connection between an on-premise FortiGate and an AWS virtual private cloud (VPC).

AWS uses unique identifiers to manipulate a VPN connection's configuration. Each VPN connection is assigned an identifier and is associated with two other identifiers: the customer gateway ID for the FortiGate and virtual private gateway ID.

This example includes the following IDs:

- VPN connection ID: vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749
- Customer gateway ID: cgw-0440c1aebed2f418a
- Virtual private gateway ID

This example assumes that you have configured VPC-related settings in the AWS management portal as described in Create a Secure Connection using AWS VPC.

This example includes creating and configuring two tunnels. You must configure both tunnels on your FortiGate.

To configure IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway:

1. Configure the first VPN tunnel:
   a. Configure Internet Key Exchange (IKE).
   b. Configure IPsec.
   c. Configure the tunnel interface.
   d. Configure border gateway protocol (BGP).
   e. Configure firewall policies.
2. Configure the second VPN tunnel:
   a. Configure Internet Key Exchange (IKE).
   b. Configure IPsec.
   c. Configure the tunnel interface.

d. Configure BGP.
e. Configure firewall policies.

To configure IKE for the first VPN tunnel:

A policy is established for the supported ISAKMP encryption, authentication, Diffie-Hellman (DH), lifetime, and key parameters. These sample configurations fulfill the minimum requirements for AES128, SHA1, and DH Group 2. Category VPN connections in the GovCloud AWS region have a minimum requirement of AES128, SHA2, and DH Group 14. To take advantage of AES256, SHA256, or other DH groups such as 14-18, 22, 23, and 24, you must modify these sample configuration files. Higher parameters are only available for VPNs of category "VPN", not for "VPN-Classic".

Your FortiGate's external interface's address must be static. Your FortiGate may reside behind a device performing NAT. To ensure NAT traversal can function, you must adjust your firewall rules to unblock UDP port 4500. If not behind NAT, it is recommended to disable NAT traversal.

Begin configuration in the root VDOM. The interface name must be shorter than 15 characters. It is best if the name is shorter than 12 characters. IPsec dead peer detection (DPD) causes periodic messages to be sent to ensure a security association remains operational.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0
      set interface "wan1"
      set dpd enable
      set local-gw 35.170.66.108
      set dhgrp 2
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set keylife 28800
      set remote-gw 3.214.239.164
      set psksecret iCelks0UOob8z4SYMRM6zlx.rU2C3jth
      set dpd-retryinterval 10
   next
end
```

To configure IPsec for the first VPN tunnel:

The IPsec transform set defines the encryption, authentication, and IPsec mode parameters.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set phase1name "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set pfs enable
      set keylifeseconds 3600
   next
end
```

To configure the tunnel interface for the first VPN tunnel:

You must configure a tunnel interface as the logical interface associated with the tunnel. All traffic routed to the tunnel interface must be encrypted and transmitted to the VPC. Similarly, traffic from the VPC will be logically received on this interface.

You must configure the interface's address with your FortiGate's address. If the address changes, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with Amazon VPC.

The `tcp-mss` option causes the router to reduce the TCP packets' maximum segment size to prevent packet fragmentation.

```
config system interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.45.90 255.255.255.255
      set allowaccess ping
      set type tunnel
      set tcp-mss 1379
      set remote-ip 169.254.45.89
      set mtu 1427
      set interface "wan1"
   next
end
```

To configure BGP for the first VPN tunnel:

BGP is used within the tunnel to exchange prefixes between the virtual private gateway and your FortiGate. The virtual private gateway announces the prefix according to your VPC.

The local BGP autonomous system number (ASN) (65000) is configured as part of your FortiGate. If you must change the ASN, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with AWS.

Your FortiGate may announce a default route (0.0.0.0/0) to AWS. This is done using a prefix list and route map in FortiOS.

```
config router bgp
   set as 65000
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.45.89
         set remote-as 64512
      end
   end
end
config router bgp
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.45.89
         set capability-default-originate enable
      end
   end
end
config router prefix-list
   edit "default_route"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set prefix 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
         next
      end
   end
end
config router route-map
   edit "routemap1"
      config rule
         edit 1
```

```
            set match-ip-address "default_route"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To advertise additional prefixes to the Amazon VPC, add these prefixes to the network statement and identify the prefix you want to advertise. Ensure that the prefix is present in the routing table of the device with a valid next-hop. If you want to advertise 192.168.0.0/16 to Amazon, you would do the following:

```
config router bgp
config network
   edit 1
      set prefix 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0
   next
end
```

To configure firewall policies for the first VPN tunnel:

Create a firewall policy permitting traffic from your local subnet to the VPC subnet, and vice-versa.

This example policy permits all traffic from the local subnet to the VPC. First, view all existing policies using the `show firewall policy` command. Then, create a new firewall policy starting with the next available policy ID. In this example, running `show firewall policy` displayed policies 1, 2, 3, and 4, so you would proceed to create policy 5.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 5
      set srcintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set dstintf internal
      set srcaddr all
      set dstaddr all
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set service ANY
   next
end
config firewall policy
   edit 5
      set srcintf internal
      set dstintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set srcaddr all
      set dstaddr all
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set service ANY
   next
end
```

To configure IKE for the second VPN tunnel:

A policy is established for the supported ISAKMP encryption, authentication, DH, lifetime, and key parameters. These sample configurations fulfill the minimum requirements for AES128, SHA1, and DH Group 2. Category VPN connections in the GovCloud AWS region have a minimum requirement of AES128, SHA2, and DH Group 14. To take advantage of AES256, SHA256, or other DH groups such as 14-18, 22, 23, and 24, you must modify these sample configuration files. Higher parameters are only available for VPNs of category "VPN", not for "VPN-Classic".

Your FortiGate's external interface's address must be static. Your FortiGate may reside behind a device performing NAT. To ensure NAT traversal can function, you must adjust your firewall rules to unblock UDP port 4500. If not behind NAT, it is recommended to disable NAT traversal.

Begin configuration in the root VDOM. The interface name must be shorter than 15 characters. It is best if the name is shorter than 12 characters. IPsec DPD causes periodic messages to be sent to ensure a security association remains operational.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1
      set interface "wan1"
      set dpd enable
      set local-gw 35.170.66.108
      set dhgrp 2
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set keylife 28800
      set remote-gw 100.25.187.58
      set psksecret IjFzyDneUtDdAT4RNmQ85apUG3y4Akre
      set dpd-retryinterval 10
   next
end
```

To configure IPsec for the second VPN tunnel:

The IPsec transform set defines the encryption, authentication, and IPsec mode parameters.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set phase1name "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set pfs enable
      set keylifeseconds 3600
   next
end
```

To configure the tunnel interface for the second VPN tunnel:

You must configure a tunnel interface as the logical interface associated with the tunnel. All traffic routed to the tunnel interface must be encrypted and transmitted to the VPC. Similarly, traffic from the VPC will be logically received on this interface.

You must configure the interface's address with your FortiGate's address. If the address changes, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with Amazon VPC.

The `tcp-mss` option causes the router to reduce the TCP packets' maximum segment size to prevent packet fragmentation.

```
config system interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.44.162 255.255.255.255
      set allowaccess ping
      set type tunnel
      set tcp-mss 1379
      set remote-ip 169.254.44.161
      set mtu 1427
      set interface "wan1"
```

```
   next
end
```

To configure BGP for the second VPN tunnel:

BGP is used within the tunnel to exchange prefixes between the virtual private gateway and your FortiGate. The virtual private gateway announces the prefix according to your VPC.

The local BGP ASN (65000) is configured as part of your FortiGate. If you must change the ASN, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with AWS.

Your FortiGate may announce a default route (0.0.0.0/0) to AWS. This is done using a prefix list and route map in FortiOS.

```
config router bgp
   set as 65000
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.44.161
         set remote-as 64512
      end
config router bgp
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.44.161
         set capability-default-originate enable
      end
   end
config router prefix-list
   edit "default_route"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set prefix 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
         next
      end
   end
end
config router route-map
   edit "routemap1"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set match-ip-address "default_route"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To advertise additional prefixes to the Amazon VPC, add these prefixes to the network statement and identify the prefix you want to advertise. Ensure that the prefix is present in the routing table of the device with a valid next-hop. If you want to advertise 192.168.0.0/16 to Amazon, you would do the following:

```
config router bgp
config network
   edit 1
      set prefix 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0
   next
end
```

To configure firewall policies for the second VPN tunnel:

Create a firewall policy permitting traffic from your local subnet to the VPC subnet, and vice-versa.

This example policy permits all traffic from the local subnet to the VPC. First, view all existing policies using the `show firewall policy` command. Then, create a new firewall policy starting with the next available policy ID. In this example, running `show firewall policy` displayed policies 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, so you would proceed to create policy 6.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 6
      set srcintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set dstintf internal
      set srcaddr all
      set dstaddr all
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set service ANY
   next
end
config firewall policy
   edit 6
        set srcintf internal
        set dstintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ANY
   next
end
```

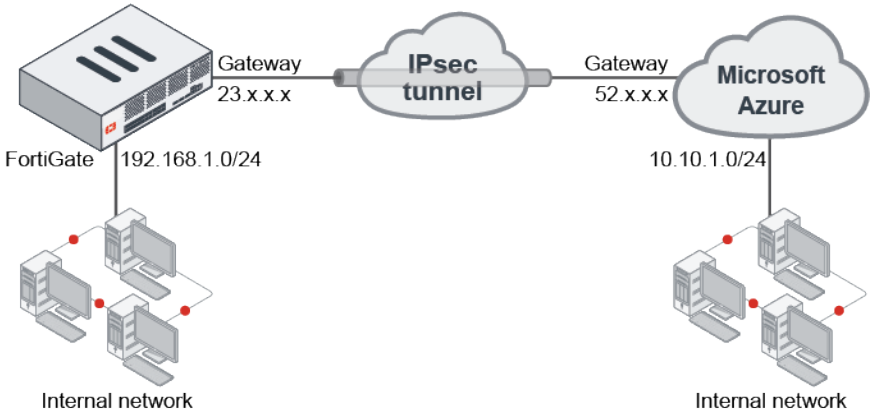
IPsec VPN to Azure with virtual network gateway

This example shows how to configure a site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel to Microsoft Azure. It shows how to configure a tunnel between each site, avoiding overlapping subnets, so that a secure tunnel can be established.

Prerequisites

- A FortiGate with an Internet-facing IP address
- A valid Microsoft Azure account

Sample topology



Sample configuration

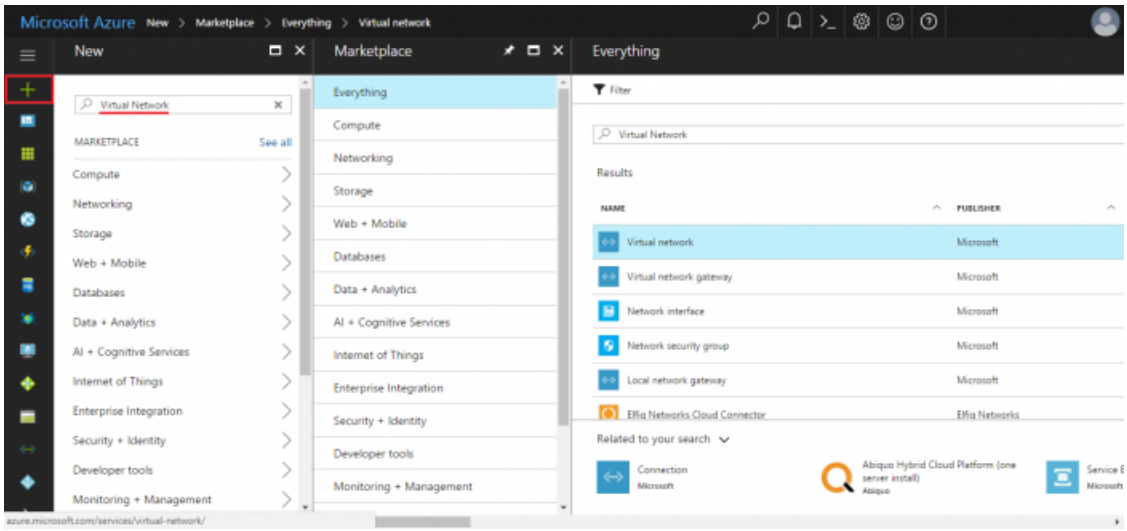
This sample configuration shows how to:

1. Configure an Azure virtual network
2. Specify the Azure DNS server
3. Configure the Azure virtual network gateway
4. Configure the Azure local network gateway
5. Configure the FortiGate tunnel
6. Create the Azure firewall object
7. Create the FortiGate firewall policies
8. Create the FortiGate static route
9. Create the Azure site-to-site VPN connection
10. Check the results

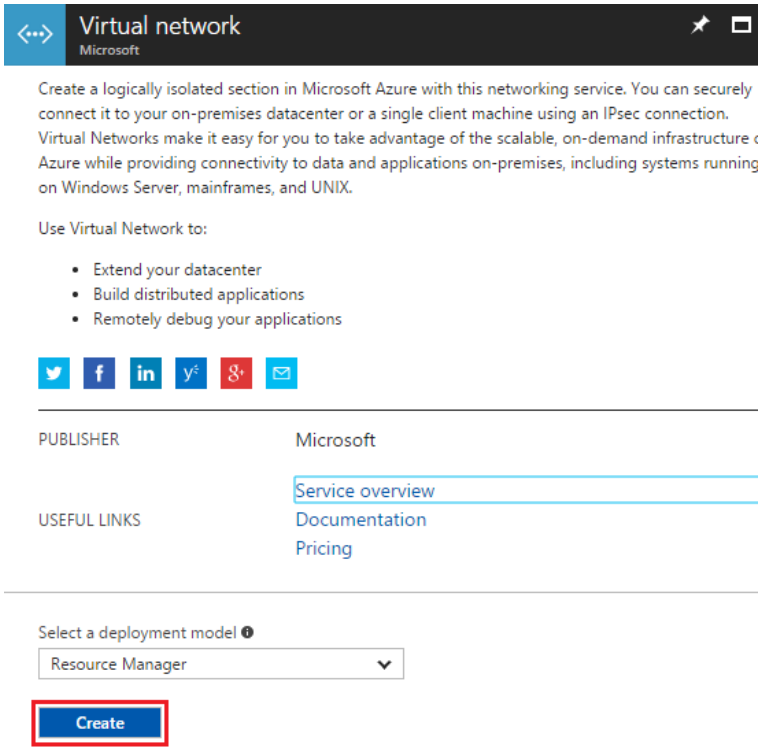
To configure an Azure virtual network:

1. Log in to Azure and click *New*.
2. In *Search the Marketplace*, type *Virtual network*.

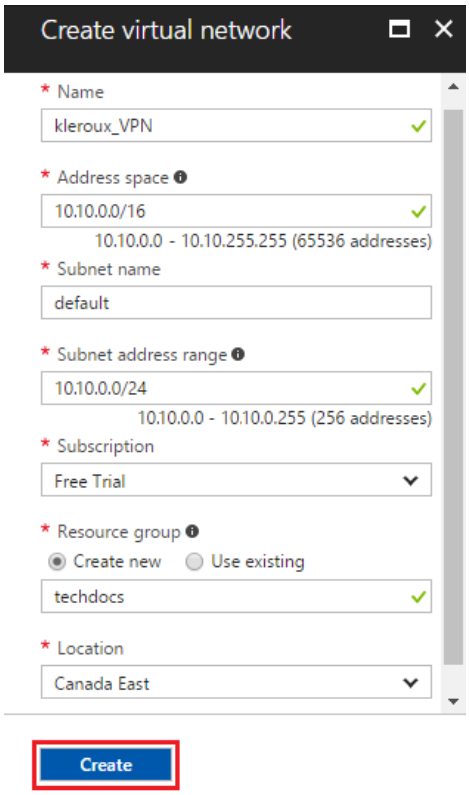
3. Click *Virtual network* to open the *Virtual network* pane.



4. At the bottom of the *Virtual network* pane, click the *Select a deployment model* dropdown list and select *Resource Manager*.
5. Click *Create*.

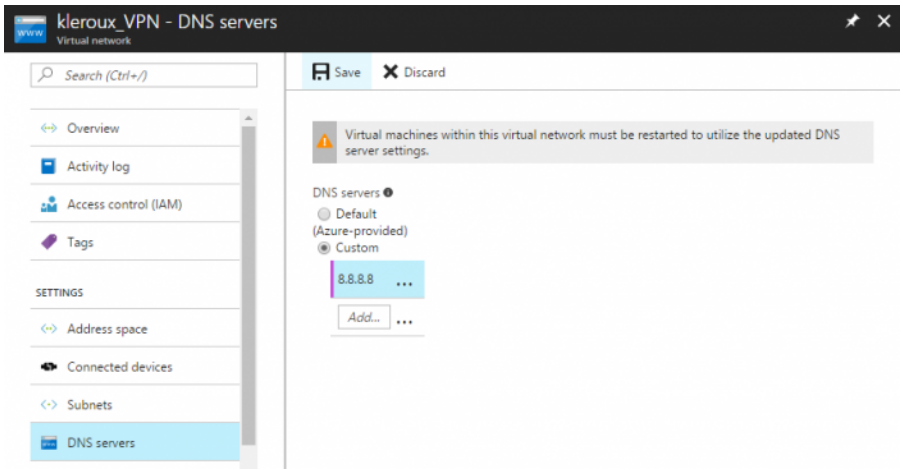


6. On the *Create virtual network* pane, enter you virtual network settings, and click *Create*.



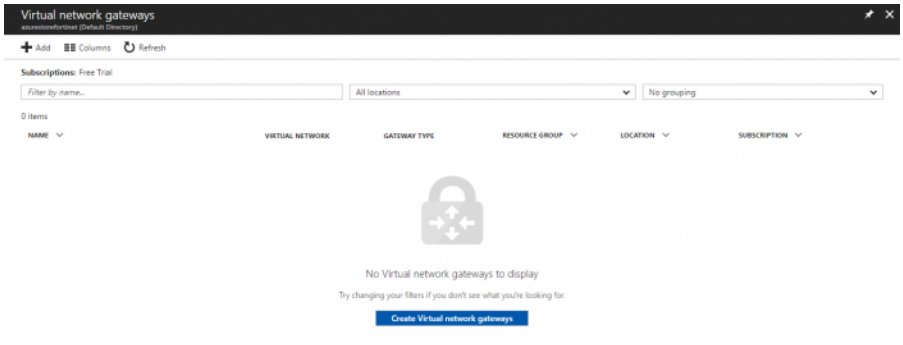
To specify the Azure DNS server:

1. Open the virtual network you just created.
2. Click *DNS servers* to open the *DNS servers* pane.
3. Enter the IP address of the DNS server and click *Save*.

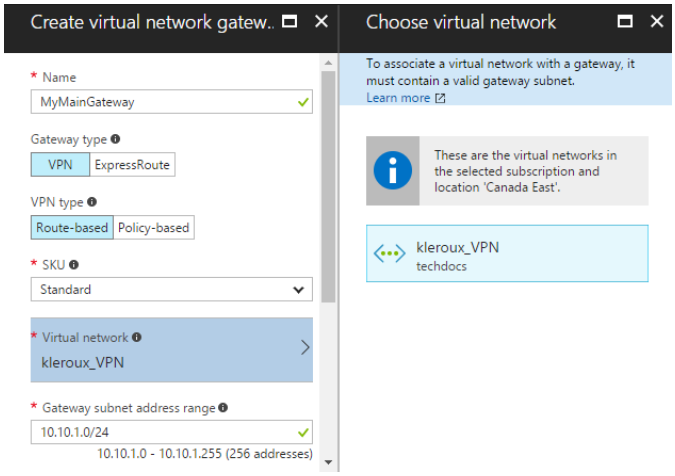


To configure the Azure virtual network gateway:

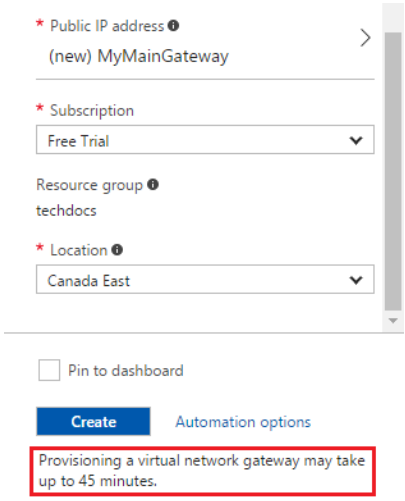
1. In the portal dashboard, go to *New*.
2. Search for *Virtual Network Gateway* and click it to open the *Virtual network gateway* pane.



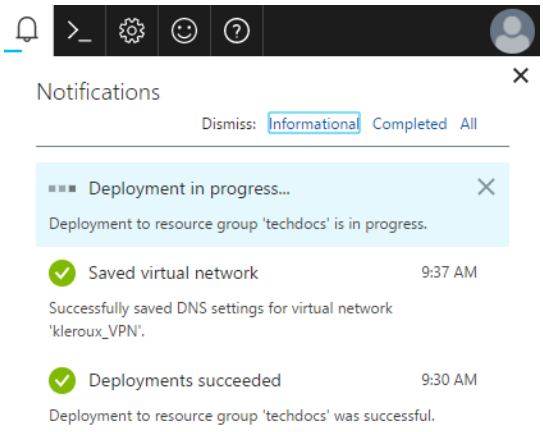
3. Click *Create Virtual network gateways* and enter the settings for your virtual network gateway.



4. If needed, create a Public IP address.

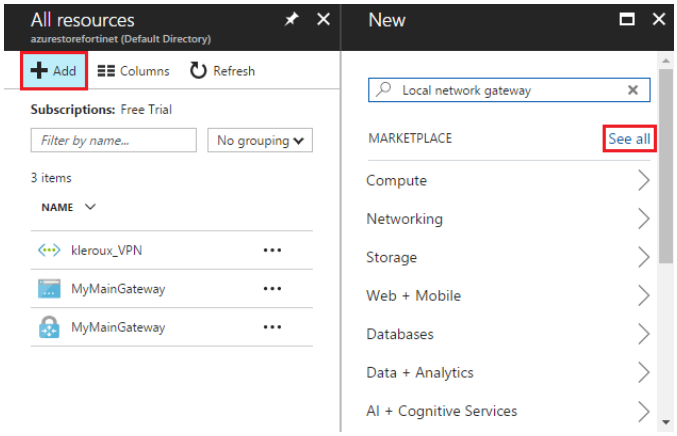


5. Click *Create*.
   Creating the virtual network gateway might take some time. When the provisioning is done, you'll receive a notification.

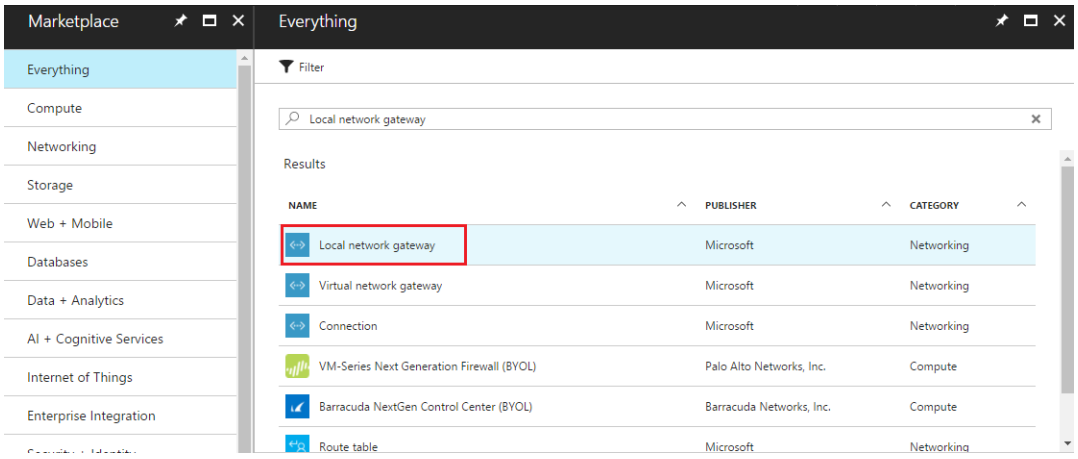


To configure the Azure local network gateway:

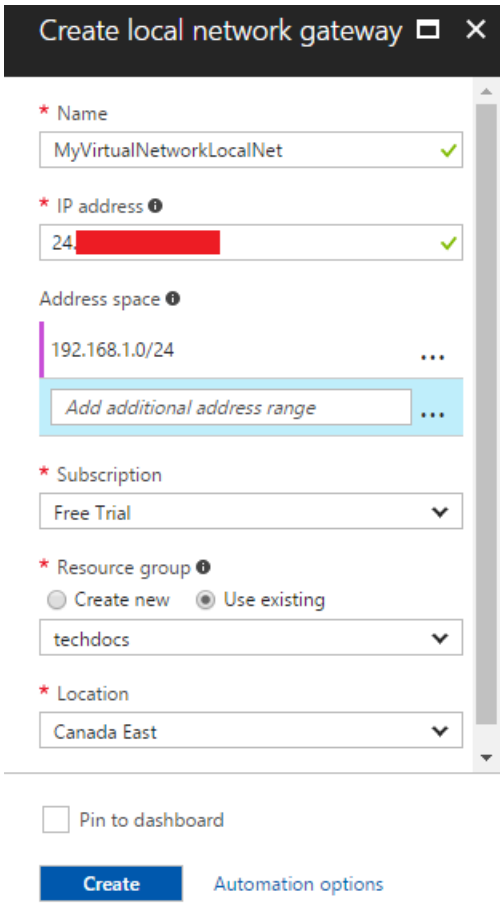
1. In the portal dashboard, click *All resources*.
2. Click *Add* and then click *See all*.



3. In the *Everything* pane, search for *Local network gateway* and then click *Create local network gateway*.



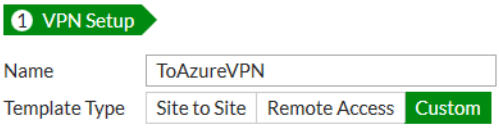
4. For the *IP address*, enter the local network gateway IP address, that is, the FortiGate's external IP address.



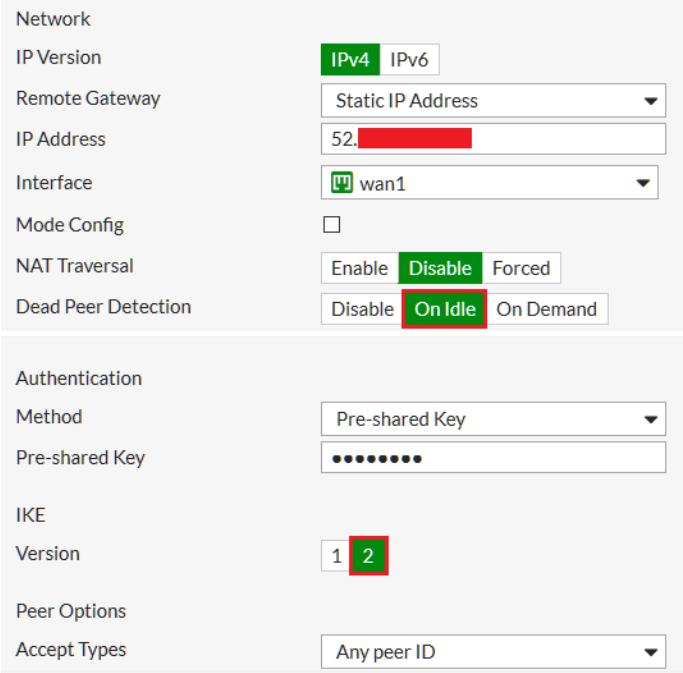
5. Set the remaining values for your local network gateway and click *Create*.

To configure the FortiGate tunnel:

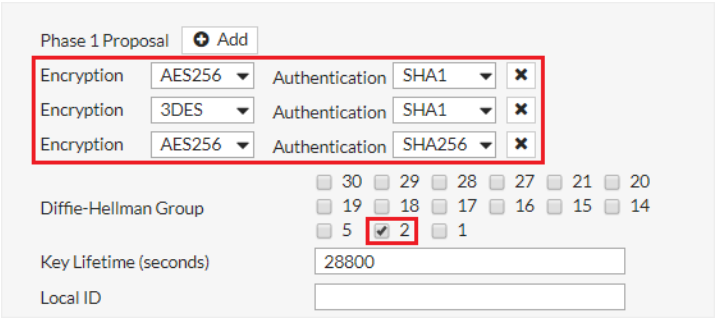
1. In the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *IP Wizard*.
2. Enter a *Name* for the tunnel, click *Custom*, and then click *Next*.



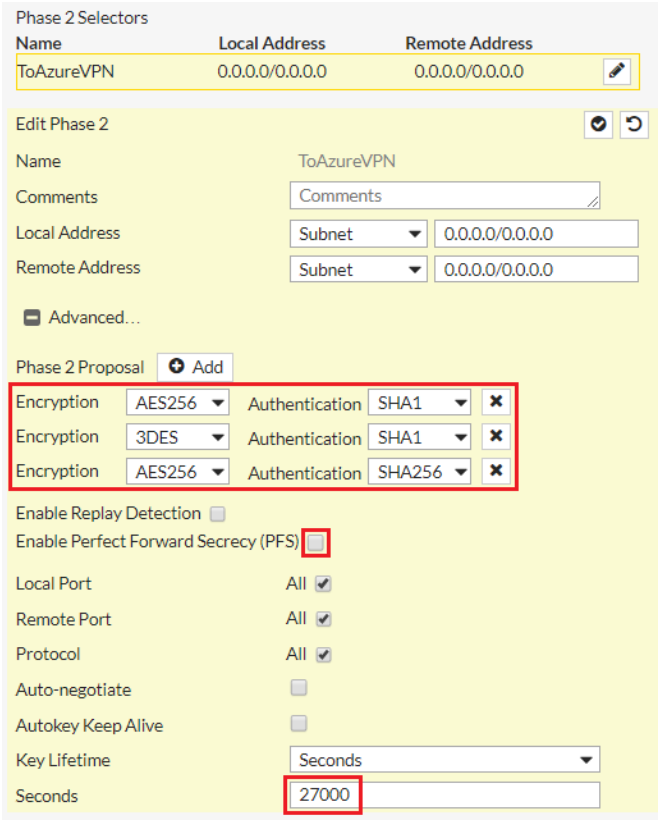
3. Configure the *Network* settings.
   - For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address* and enter the IP address provided by Azure.
   - For *Interface*, select *wan1*.
   - For *NAT Traversal*, select *Disable*,
   - For *Dead Peer Detection*, select *On Idle*.
   - In the Authentication section, select
4. Configure the *Authentication* settings.
   - For *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   - For *IKE*, select *2*.



5. Configure the *Phase 1 Proposal* settings.
   - Set the Encryption and Authentication combination to the three supported encryption algorithm combinations accepted by Azure.
     - AES256 and SHA1
     - 3DES and SHA1
     - AES256 and SHA256
   - For *Diffie-Hellman Groups*, select *2*.
   - Set *Key Lifetime (seconds)* to *28800*.



6. In *Phase 2 Selectors*, expand the *Advanced* section to configure the *Phase 2 Proposal* settings.
   - Set the Encryption and Authentication combinations.
     - AES256 and SHA1
     - 3DES and SHA1
     - AES256 and SHA256
   - Uncheck *Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)*.
   - Set *Key Lifetime (seconds)* to *27000*.



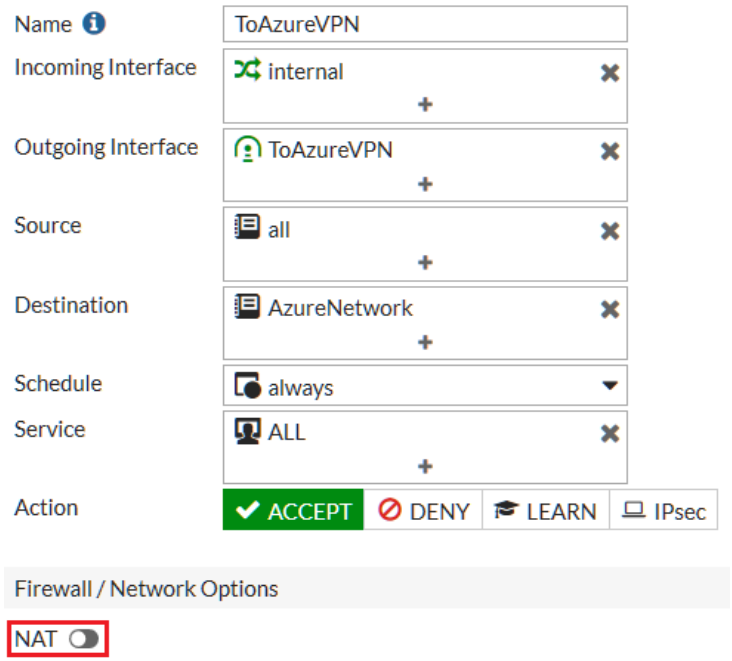
7. Click *OK*.

To create the Azure firewall object:

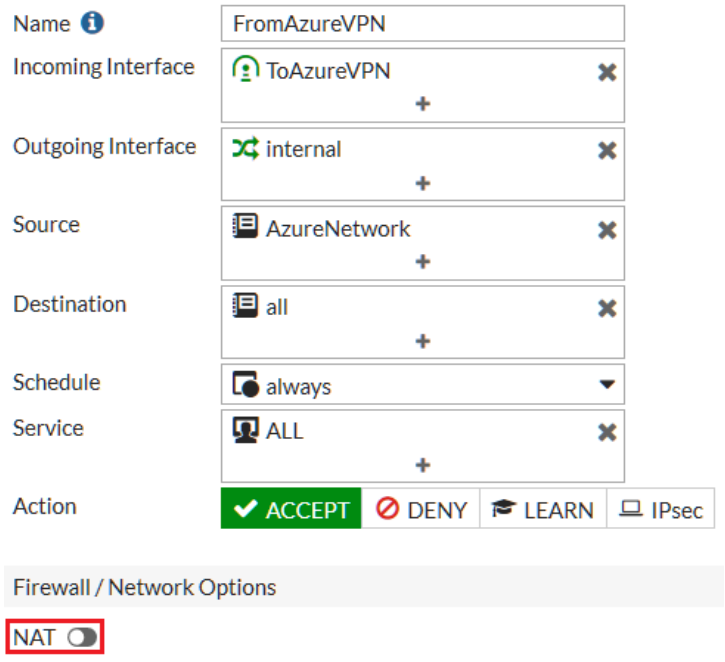
1. In the FortiGate, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Create a firewall object for the Azure VPN tunnel.

To create the FortiGate firewall policies:

1. In the FortiGate, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a policy for the site-to-site connection that allows outgoing traffic.
   - Set the *Source* address and *Destination* address using the firewall objects you just created.
   - Disable *NAT*.



3. Create another policy that allows incoming traffic.
   - For this policy, reverse the *Source* address and *Destination* address.



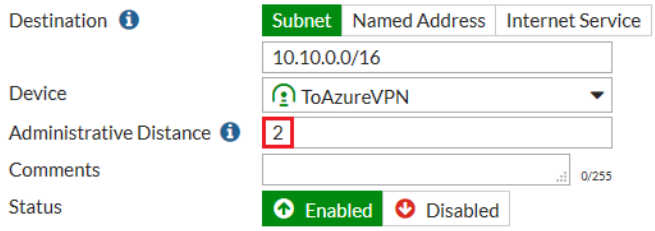
4. We recommend limiting the TCP maximum segment size (MSS) being sent and received so as to avoid packet drops and fragmentation.

To do this, use the following CLI commands on both policies.

```
config firewall policy
   edit <policy-id>
      set tcp-mss-sender 1350
      set tcp-mss-receiver 1350
   next
end
```

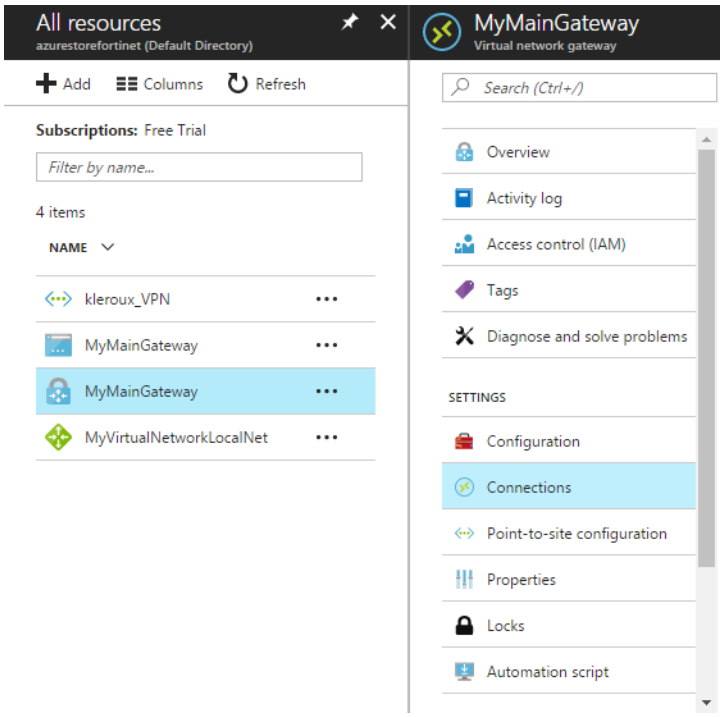
To create the FortiGate static route:

1. In the FortiGate, go to *Network* > *Static Routes*.
2. Create an IPv4 Static Route that forces outgoing traffic going to Azure to go through the route-based tunnel.
3. Set the *Administrative Distance* to a value lower than the existing default route value.



To create the Azure site-to-site VPN connection:

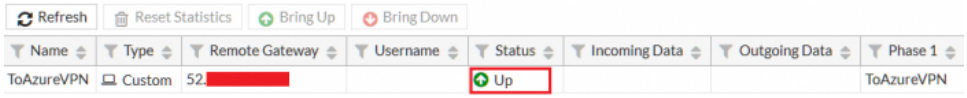
1. In the Azure portal, locate and select your virtual network gateway.
2. In the *Settings* pane, click *Connections* and then click *Add*.



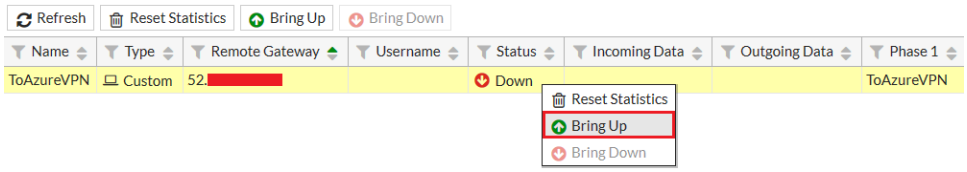
3. Enter the settings for your connection. Ensure the *Shared Key (PSK)* matches the *Pre-shared Key* for the FortiGate tunnel.

To check the results:

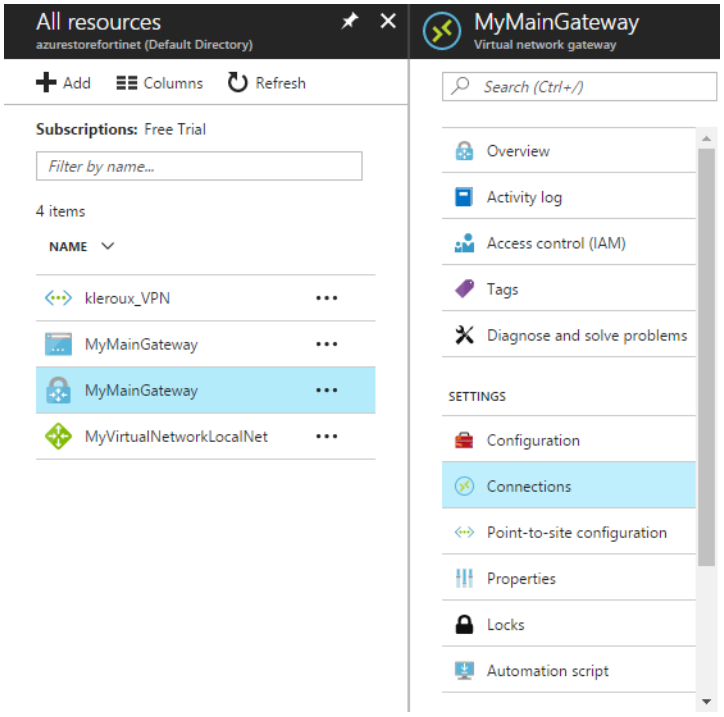
1. In the FortiGate, go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor*.
   - Check that the tunnel is up.



   - If the tunnel is down, right-click the tunnel and select *Bring Up*.



2. In the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Events*.
   - Select an event to view more information and verify the connection.
3. In the Azure portal dashboard, click *All resources* and locate your virtual network gateway.
   a. In your virtual network gateway pane, click *Connections* to see the status of each connection.



   b. Click a connection to open the *Essentials* pane to view more information about that connection.
      - If the connection is successful, the *Status* shows *Connected*.
      - See the *ingress* and *egress* bytes to confirm traffic flowing through the tunnel.

IPsec VPN to an Azure with virtual WAN

This is a sample configuration of an IPsec site-to-site VPN connection between an on-premise FortiGate and an Azure virtual network (VNet). This example uses Azure virtual WAN (vWAN) to establish the VPN connection.



- Azure must use IPsec v2 for this configuration.
- Azure uses overlapped subnet IP addresses for the IPsec interfaces.

To configure IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an Azure VPN gateway:

1. In the Azure management portal, configure vWAN-related settings as described in Tutorial: Create a Site-to-Site connection using Azure Virtual WAN.
   If a custom BGP IP address is configured on Azure's vWAN, such as 169.254.21.6 and 169.254.21.7, you must configure the FortiGate `remote-IP` to the corresponding *Custom BGP IP Address* value. If a custom BGP IP address is not configured, FortiGate `remote-IPs` should point to the *Default BGP IP Address* value.
2. Download the VPN configuration. The following shows an example VPN configuration:
```
[ {"configurationVersion":{"LastUpdatedTime":"2019-07-
    16T22:16:28.0409002Z","Version":"be5c5787-b903-43b1-a237-
    49eae1b373e4"},"vpnSiteConfiguration":
    {"Name":"toaws","IPAddress":"3.220.252.93","BgpSetting":
    {"Asn":7225,"BgpPeeringAddress":"169.254.24.25","PeerWeight":32768},"LinkName":"toa
    ws"},"vpnSiteConnections":[{"hubConfiguration":
    {"AddressSpace":"10.1.0.0/16","Region":"West US","ConnectedSubnets":
    ["10.2.0.0/16"]},"gatewayConfiguration":{"IpAddresses":
    {"Instance0":"52.180.90.47","Instance1":"52.180.89.94"},"BgpSetting":
    {"Asn":65515,"BgpPeeringAddresses":
    {"Instance0":"10.1.0.7","Instance1":"10.1.0.6"},"PeerWeight":0}},"connectionConfigu
    ration":{"IsBgpEnabled":true,"PSK":"Fortinet123#","IPsecParameters":
    {"SADataSizeInKilobytes":102400000,"SALifeTimeInSeconds":3600}}}]} ]
```
3. Configure the following on the FortiGate. Note for `set proposal`, you can select from several proposals.
```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "toazure1"
      set interface "port1"
      set ike-version 2
      set keylife 28800
      set peertype any
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set remote-gw 52.180.90.47
      set psksecret **********
   next
   edit "toazure2"
      set interface "port1"
      set ike-version 2
      set keylife 28800
      set peertype any
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set remote-gw 52.180.89.94
      set psksecret **********
   next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "toazure1"
      set phase1name "toazure1"
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set keylifeseconds 3600
```

```
    next
    edit "toazure2"
      set phase1name "toazure2"
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set keylifeseconds 3600
    next
  end
  config system settings
    set allow-subnet-overlap enable
  end
  config system interface
    edit "toazure1"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.24.25 255.255.255.255
      set type tunnel
      set remote-ip 10.1.0.7 255.255.255.255
      set snmp-index 4
      set interface "port1"
    next
    edit "toazure2"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.24.25 255.255.255.255
      set type tunnel
      set remote-ip 10.1.0.6 255.255.255.255
      set snmp-index 5
      set interface "port1"
    next
  end
  config router bgp
    set as 7225
    set router-id 169.254.24.25
    config neighbor
      edit "10.1.0.7"
        set remote-as 65515
      next
      edit "10.1.0.6"
        set remote-as 65515
      next
    end
    config network
      edit 1
        set prefix 172.30.101.0 255.255.255.0
      next
    end
    config redistribute "connected"
      set status enable
    end
    config redistribute "rip"
    end
    config redistribute "ospf"
    end
    config redistribute "static"
    end
    config redistribute "isis"
    end
    config redistribute6 "connected"
```

```
    end
    config redistribute6 "rip"
    end
    config redistribute6 "ospf"
    end
    config redistribute6 "static"
    end
    config redistribute6 "isis"
    end
end
```

4. Run `diagnose vpn tunnel list`. If the configuration was successful, the output should resemble the following:

```
name=toazure1 ver=2 serial=3 172.30.1.83:4500->52.180.90.47:4500
bound_if=3 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=15 ilast=16 olast=36 ad=/0
stat: rxp=41 txp=41 rxb=5104 txb=2209
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=keepalive draft=0 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=toazure1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=4
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=8926 expire=2463/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000029 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3300/3600
  dec: spi=c13f7928 esp=aes key=32
009a86bb0d6f5fee66af7b8232c8c0f22e6ec5c61ba19c93569bd0cd115910a9
       ah=sha1 key=20 f05bfeb0060afa89d4afdfac35960a8a7a4d4856
  enc: spi=b40a6c70 esp=aes key=32
a1e361075267ba72b39924c5e6c766fd0b08e0548476de2792ee72057fe60d1d
       ah=sha1 key=20 b1d24bedb0eb8fbd26de3e7c0b0a3a799548f52f
  dec:pkts/bytes=41/2186, enc:pkts/bytes=41/5120
------------------------------------------------------
name=toazure2 ver=2 serial=4 172.30.1.83:4500->52.180.89.94:4500
bound_if=3 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=16 ilast=16 olast=16 ad=/0
stat: rxp=40 txp=40 rxb=4928 txb=2135
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=keepalive draft=0 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=toazure2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=4
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10626 type=00 soft=0 mtu=8926 expire=2427/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=29 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000028 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3299/3600
  dec: spi=c13f791d esp=aes key=32
759898cbb7fafe448116b1fb0fb6d2f0eb99621ea6ed8dd4417ffdb901eb82be
       ah=sha1 key=20 533ec5dc8a1910221e7742b12f9de1b41205622c
  enc: spi=67934bfe esp=aes key=32
9b5710bfb4ba784722241ec371ba8066629febcd75da6f8471915bdeb874ca80
       ah=sha1 key=20 5099fed7edac2b960294094f1a8188ab42f34d7b
  dec:pkts/bytes=40/2087, enc:pkts/bytes=40/4976



Routing table for VRF=0
```

```
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 172.30.1.1, port1
B       10.1.0.0/16 [20/0] via 10.1.0.6, toazure2, 00:15:01
C       10.1.0.6/32 is directly connected, toazure2
C       10.1.0.7/32 is directly connected, toazure1
B       10.2.0.0/16 [20/0] via 10.1.0.6, toazure2, 00:15:01
C       169.254.24.25/32 is directly connected, toazure1
                         is directly connected, toazure2
C       172.30.1.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       172.30.101.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

IPSec VPN between a FortiGate and a Cisco ASA with multiple subnets

When a Cisco ASA unit has multiple subnets configured, multiple phase 2 tunnels must be created on the FortiGate to allocate to each subnet (rather than having multiple subnets on one phase 2 tunnel).

The FortiGate uses the same SPI value to bring up the phase 2 negotiation for all of the subnets, while the Cisco ASA expects different SPI values for each of its configured subnets. Using multiple phase 2 tunnels on the FortiGate creates different SPI values for each subnet.

To configure multiple phase 2 interfaces in route-based mode:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "First subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.142.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
    edit "Second subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.143.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
end
```

To configure multiple phase 2 interfaces in policy-based mode:

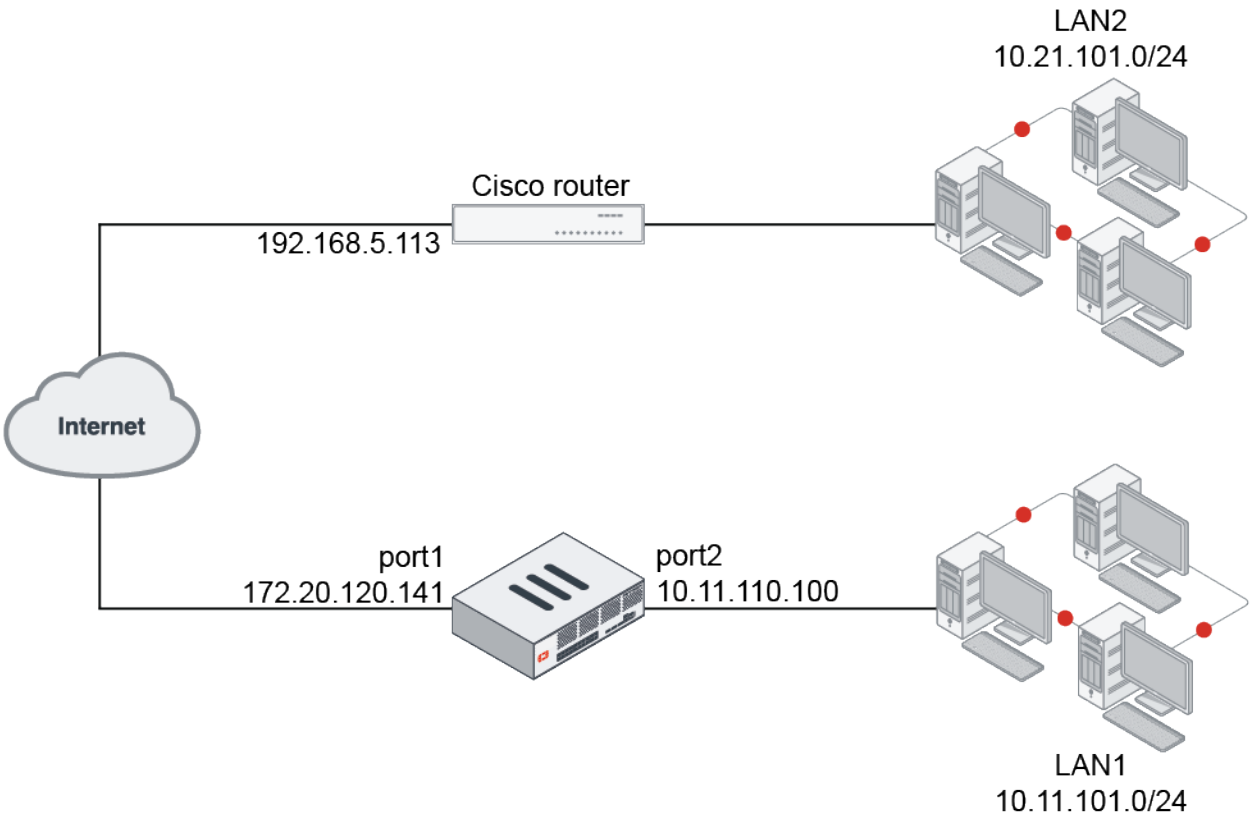
```
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "First subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.142.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
    edit "Second subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.143.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
end
```

Cisco GRE-over-IPsec VPN

This is a sample configuration of a FortiGate VPN that is compatible with Cisco-style VPNs that use GRE in an IPsec tunnel. Cisco products with VPN support often use the GRE protocol tunnel over IPsec encryption. Cisco VPNs can use either transport mode or tunnel mode IPsec.

Topology

In this example, LAN1 users are provided with access to LAN2.



Configuring the FortiGate

There are five steps to configure GRE-over-IPsec with a FortiGate and Cisco router:

1. Enable overlapping subnets.
2. Configure a route-based IPsec VPN on the external interface.
3. Configure a GRE tunnel on the virtual IPsec interface.
4. Configure security policies.
5. Configure the static route.

Enabling overlapping subnets

Overlapping subnets are required because the IPsec and GRE tunnels will use the same addresses. By default, each FortiGate network interface must be on a separate network. This configuration assigns an IPsec tunnel endpoint and the external interface to the same network.

To enable overlapping subnets:

```
config system settings
    set allow-subnet-overlap enable
    next
end
```

Configuring a route-based IPsec VPN

A route-based VPN that use encryption and authentication algorithms compatible with the Cisco router is required. Pre-shared key authentication is used in this configuration.

To configure route-based IPsec in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and select the *Custom* template.
2. Enter the tunnel name (*tocisco*) and click *Next*.
3. Enter the following:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	Cisco router public interface (192.168.5.113)
Interface	FortiGate public interface (172.20.120.141)
Authentication Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Entry must match the pre-shared key on the Cisco router
Mode	Main (ID Protection)
Phase 1 Proposal	3DES-SHA1, AES128-SHA1 (at least one proposal must match the settings on the Cisco router)
Local Address	GRE local tunnel endpoint IP address (172.20.120.141)
Remote Address	GRE remote tunnel endpoint IP address (192.168.5.113)
Phase 2 Proposal	3DES-MD5 (at least one proposal must match the settings on the Cisco router)
Local Port	0
Remote Port	0
Protocol	47

4. Click *OK*.
5. If the Cisco router is configured to use transport mode IPsec, configure transport mode on the FortiGate:

```
config vpn phase2-interface
    edit tocisco_p2
        set encapsulation transport-mode
    next
end
```

To configure route-based IPsec in the CLI:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit tocisco
```

```
        set interface port1
        set proposal 3des-sha1 aes128-sha1
        set remote-gw 192.168.5.113
        set psksecret xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit tocisco_p2
        set phase1name tocisco
        set proposal 3des-md5
        set encapsulation [tunnel-mode | transport-mode]
        set protocol 47
        set src-addr-type ip
        set dst-start-ip 192.168.5.113
        set src-start-ip 172.20.120.141
    next
end
```

To add the IPsec tunnel end addresses:

```
config system interface
    edit tocisco
        set ip 172.20.120.141 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 192.168.5.113
    next
end
```

Configuring the GRE tunnel

The local gateway and remote gateway addresses must match the local and remote gateways of the IPsec tunnel. The GRE tunnel runs between the virtual IPsec public interface on the FortiGate unit and the Cisco router.

To configure the GRE tunnel:

```
config system gre-tunnel
    edit gre1
        set interface tocisco
        set local-gw 172.20.120.141
        set remote-gw 192.168.5.113
        set keepalive-interval <integer>
        set keepalive-failtimes <integer>
    next
end
```

The Cisco router configuration requires an address for its end of the GRE tunnel, so you need to add the tunnel end addresses.

To add the tunnel end addresses:

```
config system interface
    edit gre1
        set ip 10.0.1.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.0.1.2
```

```
    next
end
```

Configuring the security policies

Two sets of security policies are required:

- Policies to allow traffic to pass in both directions between the GRE virtual interface and the IPsec virtual interface.
- Policies to allow traffic to pass in both directions between the protected network interface and the GRE virtual interface.

To configure security policies in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the following to allow traffic between the protected network and the GRE tunnel:

Name	LANtoGRE
Incoming Interface	Interface that connects to the private network behind the FortiGate (port2)
Outgoing Interface	GRE tunnel virtual interface (gre1)
Source	All
Destination	All
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Disable

3. Click *OK*.
4. Create a new policy and enter the following to allow traffic between the GRE tunnel and the protected network:

Name	GREtoLAN
Incoming Interface	GRE tunnel virtual interface (gre1)
Outgoing Interface	Interface that connects to the private network behind the FortiGate (port2)
Source	All
Destination	All
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Disable

5. Click *OK*.
6. Create a new policy and enter the following to allow traffic between the GRE virtual interface and the IPsec virtual interface:

Name	GREtoIPsec
Incoming Interface	GRE tunnel virtual interface (gre1)
Outgoing Interface	Virtual IPsec interface (tocisco)
Source	All

Destination	All
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Disable

7. Click *OK*.
8. Create a new policy and enter the following to allow traffic between the IPsec virtual interface and the GRE virtual interface:

Name	IPsectoGRE
Incoming Interface	Virtual IPsec interface (tocisco)
Outgoing Interface	GRE tunnel virtual interface (gre1)
Source	All
Destination	All
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Disable

9. Click *OK*.

To configure security policies in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name LANtoGRE
        set srcintf port2
        set dstintf gre1
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 2
        set name GREtoLAN
        set srcintf gre1
        set dstintf port2
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 3
        set name GREtoIPsec
        set srcintf gre1
        set dstintf tocisco
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
```

```
    next
    edit 4
        set name IPsectoGRE
        set srcintf tocisco
        set dstintf gre1
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

Configuring routing

to direct traffic destined for the network behind the Cisco router into the GRE-over-IPsec tunnelTraffic destined for the network behind the Cisco router must be routed to the GRE tunnel. To do this, create a static route

To create the static route in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the following:

Destination	IP and netmask for the network behind the Cisco router (10.21.101.0 255.255.255.0)
Interface	GRE tunnel virtual interface (gre1)
Administrative Distance	Leave the default setting

3. Click *OK*.

To create the static route in the CLI:

```
config router static
    edit 0
        set device gre1
        set dst 10.21.101.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

Configuring the Cisco router

For more information, refer to Configuring and verifying a GRE over IPsec tunnel in the Fortinet Knowledge Base.

Remote access

Remote access lets users connect to the Internet using a dialup connection over traditional POTS or ISDN telephone lines. Virtual private network (VPN) protocols are used to secure these private connections.

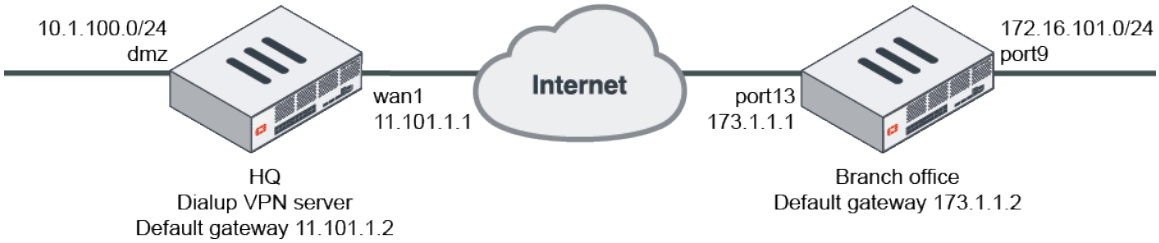
The following topics provide instructions on configuring remote access:

- FortiGate as dialup client on page 1573
- FortiClient as dialup client on page 1579

- Add FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1584
- Add LDAP user authentication on page 1585
- iOS device as dialup client on page 1586
- IKE Mode Config clients on page 1590
- IPsec VPN with external DHCP service on page 1595
- L2TP over IPsec on page 1600
- Tunneled Internet browsing on page 1604
- Dialup IPsec VPN with certificate authentication on page 1610
- Restricting VPN access to rogue/non-compliant devices with Security Fabric

FortiGate as dialup client

This is a sample configuration of dialup IPsec VPN and the dialup client. In this example, a branch office FortiGate connects via dialup IPsec VPN to the HQ FortiGate.



You can configure dialup IPsec VPN with FortiGate as the dialup client using the GUI or CLI.

To configure IPsec VPN with FortiGate as the dialup client in the GUI:

1. Configure the dialup VPN server FortiGate:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *The remote site is behind NAT*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Incoming Interface*, select the incoming interface.
      ii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      iii. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
      iv. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0/24*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0/24*.
      iv. Click *Create*.

2. Configure the dialup VPN client FortiGate:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *This site is behind NAT*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *IP Address*, enter *11.101.1.1*.
      ii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port13*.
      iii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      iv. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
      v. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface. In this example, it is *port9*.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
      iv. Click *Create*.

To configure IPsec VPN with FortiGate as the dialup client in the CLI:

1. In the CLI, configure the user, user group, and firewall address. Only the HQ dialup server FortiGate needs this configuration. The address is an IP pool to assign an IP address for the dialup client FortiGate.

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "client_range"
        set type iprange
        set start-ip 10.10.10.1
        set end-ip 10.10.10.200
    next
end
```

2. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 11.101.1 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 11.101.1.2
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "port13"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 173.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 173.1.1.2
        set device "port13"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the internal interface and protected subnet. The internal interface connects to the internal network. Traffic from this interface will route out the IPsec VPN tunnel.

a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "dmz"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "10.1.100.0"
        set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "172.16.101.0"
        set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. In this example, PSK is used as the authentication method. Signature authentication is also an option.

a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "for_Branch"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "vpngroup"
        set net-device enable
        set assign-ip-from name
        set dns-mode auto
        set ipv4-split-include "10.1.100.0"
        set ipv4-name "client_range"
        set save-password enable
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ"
        set interface "port13"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set xauthtype client
        set authusr "vpnuser1"
        set authpasswd vpnuser1-password
        set remote-gw 11.101.1.1
        set psksecret sample
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

a. Configure the HQ FortiGate:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "for_Branch_p2"
        set phase1 name "for_Branch"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ_p2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ"
```

```
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
   aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
       next
   end
```

6. Configure the static routes on the branch office FortiGate. The blackhole route is important to ensure that IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
    next
end
```

7. Configure the firewall policy to allow the branch office to HQ network flow over the IPsec tunnel. This configuration only supports traffic from the branch office FortiGate to the HQ FortiGate. Traffic is dropped from the HQ FortiGate to the branch office FortiGate.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "for_Branch"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

8. Run `diagnose` commands to check the IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on the HQ FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: for_Branch_0
version: 1
interface: wan1 5
addr: 11.101.1.1:500 -> 173.1.1.1:500
created: 1972s ago
xauth-user: vpnuser1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.10.1/255.255.255.252
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 184 5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2
direction: responder
status: established 1972-1972s ago = 10ms
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: 8046488e92499247-fbbb4f6dfa4952d0
lifetime/rekey: 86400/84157
DPD sent/recv: 00000020/00000000
```

b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on the HQ FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=for_Branch_0 ver=1 serial=9 11.101.1.1:0->173.1.1.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/208 options
[00d0]=create_dev no-sysctlrgwy-chg
parent=for_Branch index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=8 txp=8 rxb=1216 txb=672
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=31
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=for_Branch_p2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
src: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
SA: ref=3 options=226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41297/0B replaywin=2048 seqno=9
esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000009 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43190/43200
dec: spi=747c10c6 esp=aes key=16 278c2430e09e74f1e229108f906603b0
ah=sha1 key=20 21dad76b008d1e8b8e53148a2fcbd013a277974a
enc: spi=ca646448 esp=aes key=16 b7801d125804e3610a556da7caefd765
ah=sha1 key=20 a70164c3094327058bd84c1a0c954ca439709206
dec:pkts/bytes=8/672, enc:pkts/bytes=8/1216

name=for_Branchver=1 serial=6 11.101.1.1:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/16 options[0010]=create_
dev
proxyid_num=0 child_num=1 refcnt=14 ilast=8523 olast=8523 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=0
```

c. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on the branch office FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ
version: 1
interface: port13 42
```

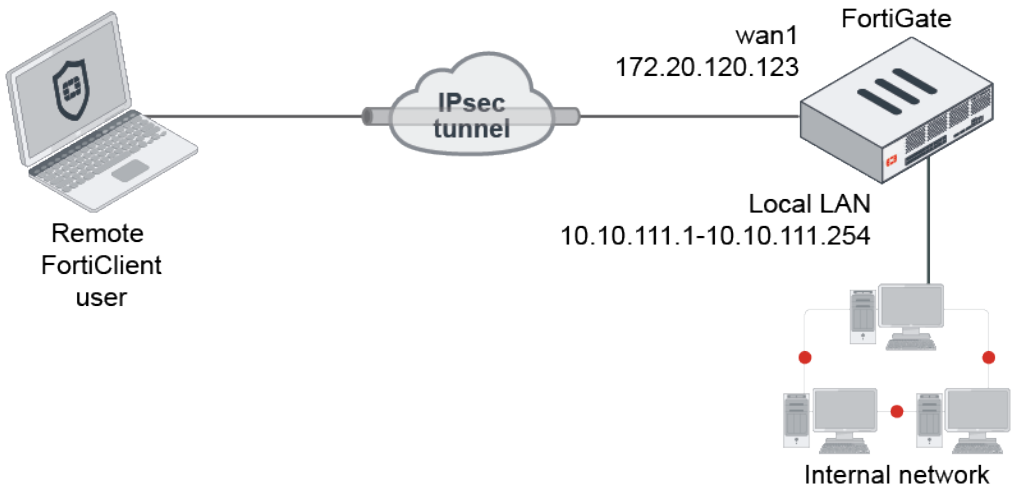
```
addr: 173.1.1.1:500 -> 11.101.1.1:500
created: 2016s ago
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.10.1/255.255.255.252
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 93 5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2
direction: initiator
status: established 2016-2016s ago = 0ms
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: 8046488e92499247-fbbb4f6dfa4952d0
lifetime/rekey: 86400/84083
DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000020
```

d. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on the branch office FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=to_HQver=1 serial=7 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=18 olast=58 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=2 rxb=152 txb=168
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=6 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41015/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=3 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
dec: spi=ca646448 esp=aes key=16 b7801d125804e3610a556da7caefd765
ah=sha1 key=20 a70164c3094327058bd84c1a0c954ca439709206
enc: spi=747c10c6 esp=aes key=16 278c2430e09e74f1e229108f906603b0
ah=sha1 key=20 21dad76b008d1e8b8e53148a2fcbd013a277974a
dec:pkts/bytes=1/84, enc:pkts/bytes=2/304
npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=5 dec_npuid=2 enc_
npuid=2
```

FortiClient as dialup client

This is a sample configuration of dialup IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client.



You can configure dialup IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client using the GUI or CLI.

If multiple dialup IPsec VPNs are defined for the same dialup server interface, each phase1 configuration must define a unique peer ID to distinguish the tunnel that the remote client is connecting to. When a client connects, the first IKE message that is in aggressive mode contains the client's local ID. FortiGate matches the local ID to the dialup tunnel referencing the same Peer ID, and the connection continues with that tunnel.

To configure IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client on the GUI:

1. Configure a user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *vpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *vpngroup* with the member *vpnuser1*.
2. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   a. Enter a VPN name.
   b. For *Template Type*, select *Remote Access*.
   c. For *Remote Device Type*, select *Client-based* > *FortiClient*.
   d. Click *Next*.
3. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   a. For *Incoming Interface*, select *wan1*.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
   d. From the *User Group* dropdown list, select *vpngroup*.
   e. Click *Next*.
4. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   a. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *lan*.
   b. Configure the *Local Address* as *local_network*.
   c. Configure the *Client Address Range* as *10.10.2.1-10.10.2.200*.
   d. Keep the default values for the *Subnet Mask*, *DNS Server*, *Enable IPv4 Split tunnel*, and *Allow Endpoint Registration*.
   e. Click *Next*.
5. Adjust the *Client Options* as needed, then click *Create*.

6. Optionally, define a unique Peer ID in the phase1 configuration:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and edit the just created tunnel.
   b. Click *Convert To Custom Tunnel*.
   c. In the *Authentication* section, click *Edit*.
   d. Under *Peer Options*, set *Accept Types* to *Specific peer ID*.
   e. In the *Peer ID* field, enter a unique ID, such as *dialup1*.
   f. Click *OK*.

To configure IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client using the CLI:

1. In the CLI, configure the user and group.

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface. The LAN interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel. Creating an address group for the protected network behind this FortiGate causes traffic to this network group to go through the IPsec tunnel.

```
config system interface
    edit "lan"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.111.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "local_subnet_1"
        set subnet 10.10.111.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "local_subnet_2"
        set subnet 10.10.112.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "local_network"
        set member "local_subnet_1" "local_subnet_2"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the WAN interface. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

4. Configure the client address pool. You must create a firewall address to assign an IP address to a client from the address pool.

```
config firewall address
    edit "client_range"
        set type iprange
        set comment "VPN client range"
        set start-ip 10.10.2.1
        set end-ip 10.10.2.200
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. In this example, PSK is used as the authentication method. Signature authentication is also an option.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "for_client"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype one
        set peerid "dialup1"
        set net-device enable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "vpngroup"
        set assign-ip-from name
        set ipv4-name "client_range"
        set dns-mode auto
        set ipv4-split-include "local_network"
        set save-password enable
        set psksecret your-psk
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

6. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "for_client"
        set phase1name "for_client"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

7. Configure the firewall policy to allow client traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "for_client"
        set dstintf "lan"
        set srcaddr "client_range"
```

```
        set dstaddr "local_network"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To configure FortiClient:

1. In FortiClient, go to *Remote Access* and click *Add a new connection*.
2. Set the *VPN* to *IPsec VPN* and the *Remote Gateway* to the FortiGate IP address.
3. Set the *Authentication Method* to *Pre-Shared Key* and enter the key.
4. Expand *Advanced Settings* > *Phase 1* and in the *Local ID* field, enter *dialup1*.
5. Configure remaining settings as needed, then click *Save*.
6. Select the VPN, enter the username and password, then select *Connect*.

Diagnose the connection

Run `diagnose` commands to check the IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.

1. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: for_client_0
version: 1
interface: port1 15
addr: 172.20.120.123:4500 ->172.20.120.254:64916
created: 37s ago
xauth-user: vpnuser1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.1.1/255.255.255.255
nat: me peer
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 1 b40a32d878d5e262/8bba553563a498f4
direction: responder
status: established 37-37s ago = 10ms
proposal: aes256-sha256
key: f4ad7ec3a4fcfd09-787e2e9b7bceb9a7-0dfa183240d838ba-41539863e5378381
lifetime/rekey: 86400/86092
DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000a0e
```

2. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
=
=
name=for_client_0 ver=1 serial=3 172.20.120.123:4500->172.20.120.254:64916
bound_if=15 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/984 options
[03d8]=npucreate_dev no-sysctlrgwy-chgrport-chg frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
parent=for_client index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=3 olast=3 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=0 rxb=16402 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=64916
```

```
proxyid=for_client proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 add-route
src: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
dst: 0:10.10.1.1-10.10.1.1:0
SA: ref=4 options=2a6 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=42867/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000001 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43189/43200
dec: spi=36274d14 esp=aes key=16 e518b84b3c3b667b79f2e61c64a225a6
ah=sha1 key=20 9cceaa544ed042fda800c4fe5d3fd9d8b811984a
enc: spi=8b154deb esp=aes key=16 9d50f004b45c122e4e9fb7af085c457c
ah=sha1 key=20 f1d90b2a311049e23be34967008239637b50a328
dec:pkts/bytes=1/16330, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
npu_flag=02 npu_rgwy=172.20.120.254 npu_lgwy=172.20.120.123npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=2 enc_
npuid=0
name=for_clientver=1 serial=2 172.20.120.123:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=15 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/536 options
[0218]=npucreate_dev frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=0 child_num=1 refcnt=11 ilast=350 olast=350 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
```

Add FortiToken multi-factor authentication

This configuration adds multi-factor authentication (MFA) to the FortiClient dialup VPN configuration (FortiClient as dialup client on page 1579). It uses one of the two free mobile FortiTokens that is already installed on the FortiGate.

To configure MFA using the GUI:

1. Edit the user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and edit local user *vpnuser1*.
   b. Enable *Two-factor Authentication* and select one mobile *Token* from the list,
   c. Enter the user's *Email Address*.
   d. Enable *Send Activation Code* and select *Email*.
   e. Click *Next* and click *Submit*.
2. Activate the mobile token.
   a. When a FortiToken is added to user *vpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

To configure MFA using the CLI:

1. Edit the user and user group:

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken <select mobile token for the option list>
        set email-to <user's email address>
        set passwd <user's password>
    next
end
```

2. Activate the mobile token.
   a. When a FortiToken is added to user *vpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

Add LDAP user authentication

This configuration adds LDAP user authentication to the FortiClient dialup VPN configuration (FortiClient as dialup client on page 1579). You must have already generated and exported a CA certificate from your AD server.

To configure LDAP user authentication using the GUI:

1. Import the CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
   If the *Certificates* option is not visible, enable it in *Feature Visibility*. See Feature visibility on page 1049 for details.
   b. Click *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Set *Type* to *File*.
   d. Click *Upload* then find and select the certificate file.
   e. Click *OK*.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   f. Optionally, rename the system generated *CA_Cert_1* to something more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

2. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Name* to *ldaps-server* and specify *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Specify *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Specify *Username* and *Password*.
   f. Enable *Secure Connection* and set *Protocol* to *LDAPS*.
   g. For *Certificate*, select *LDAP server CA LDAPS-CA* from the list.
   h. Click *OK*.
3. Add the LDAP user to the user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and edit the *vpngroup* group.
   b. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add the *ldaps-server* remote server.
   c. Click *OK*.

To configure LDAP user authentication using the CLI:

1. Import the CA certificate using the GUI.
2. Configure the LDAP user:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set cnid "cn"
```

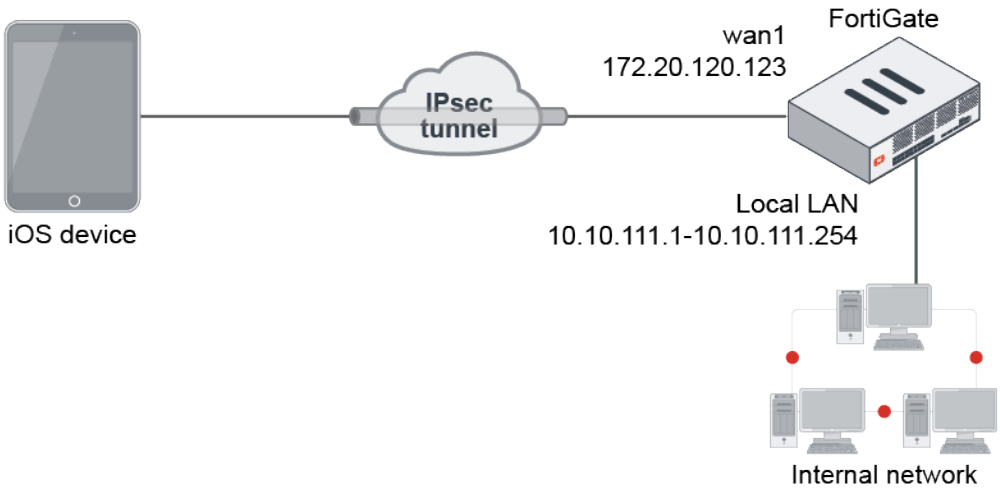
```
            set dn "cn=Users,dc=qa,dc=fortinet,dc=com"
            set type regular
            set username "CN=Administrator,cn=users,DC=qa,DC=fortinet,DC=com"
            set password **********
            set group-member-check group-object
            set secure ldaps
            set ca-cert "LDAPS-CA"
            set port 636
        next
    end
```

3. Add the LDAP user to the user group:

```
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        append member "ldaps-server"
    next
end
```

iOS device as dialup client

This is a sample configuration of dialup IPsec VPN with an iPhone or iPad as the dialup client.



You can configure dialup IPsec VPN with an iOS device as the dialup client using the GUI or CLI.

To configure IPsec VPN with an iOS device as the dialup client on the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   a. Enter a VPN name.
   b. For *Template Type*, select *Remote Access*.
   c. For *Remote Device Type*, select *Native* > *iOS Native*.
   d. For *NAT Configuration*, set *No NAT Between Sites*.
   e. Click *Next*.
2. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   a. For *Incoming Interface*, select *wan1*.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.

c. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
d. From the *User Group* dropdown list, select *vpngroup*.
e. Deselect *Require 'Group Name' on VPN client*.
f. Click *Next*.

3. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
a. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *lan*.
b. Configure the *Local Address* as *local_network*.
c. Configure the *Client Address Range* as *10.10.2.1-10.10.2.200*.
d. Keep the default values for the *Subnet Mask*, *DNS Server*, and *Enable IPv4 Split tunnel*.
e. Click *Create*.

To configure IPsec VPN with an iOS device as the dialup client using the CLI:

1. In the CLI, configure the user and group.

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface. The LAN interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel. Creating an address group for the protected network behind this FortiGate causes traffic to this network group to go through the IPsec tunnel.

```
config system interface
    edit "lan"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.111.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "local_subnet_1"
        set ip 10.10.111.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "local_subnet_2"
        set ip 10.10.112.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall addrgrp
    edit "local_network"
        set member "local_subnet_1" "local_subnet_2"
```

```
    next
end
```

3. Configure the WAN interface. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

4. Configure the client address pool. You must create a firewall address to assign an IP address to a client from the address pool.

```
config firewall address
    edit "client_range"
        set type iprange
        set comment "VPN client range"
        set start-ip 10.10.2.1
        set end-ip 10.10.2.200
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. In this example, PSK is used as the authentication method. Signature authentication is also an option.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "for_ios_p1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256 aes256-md5 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 14 5 2
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "vpngroup"
        set assign-ip-from name
        set ipv4-name "client_range"
        set dns-mode auto
        set ipv4-split-include "local_network"
        set psksecret your-psk
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

6. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "for_ios_p2"
        set phase1name "for_ios_p1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set pfs disable
        set keepalive enable
```

```
    next
end
```

7. Configure the firewall policy to allow client traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "ios_vpn"
        set srcintf "for_ios_p1"
        set dstintf "lan"
        set srcaddr "ios_range"
        set dstaddr "local_network"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

8. Configure the iOS device.
   a. In the iOS device, go to *Settings* > *General* > *VPN* and select *Add VPN Configuration*.
   b. Set the *Type* to *IPsec* and enter a *Description*. Set the *Server* to the FortiGate's Internet-facing interface, and enter the username in *Account*. Enter the user password, the preshared IPsec VPN secret, then select *Done*.
   c. Ensure that the IPsec VPN configuration is highlighted (indicated by a checkmark), and select the *Not Connected* button. The IPsec VPN connects with the user's credentials and secret. The status changes to *Connected*, and a VPN icon appears at the top of the screen.
9. Run `diagnose` commands to check the IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: for_ios_p1_0
version: 1
interface: port1 15
addr: 172.20.120.123:4500 -> 172.20.120.254:64916
created: 17s ago
xauth-user: u1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.2.1/255.255.255.255
nat: me peer
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 150/150/150 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
id/spi: 2 3c844e13c75591bf/80c2db92c8d3f602 direction: responder status: established
17-17s ago = 150ms proposal: aes256-sha256 key: 0032ea5ee160d775-51f3bf1f9909101b-
b89c7b5a77a07784-2c92cf9c921801ac lifetime/rekey: 3600/3312 DPD sent/recv:
00000000/00000000
```

   b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
=
=
name=for_ios_p1_0 ver=1 serial=172.20.120.123:4500->172.20.120.254:64916
bound_if=15 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/984 options
[03d8]=npu create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg rport-chg frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
parent=for_ios_p1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=23 olast=23 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
```

```
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=64916
proxyid=for_ios_p1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 add-route
src: 0:10.10.111.0-10.10.111.255:0 dst: 0:10.10.2.1-10.10.2.1:0 SA: ref=3 options=a7
type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=3564/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3587/3600 dec: spi=36274d15 esp=aes key=32
5a599d796f8114c83d6589284f036fc33bdf4456541e2154b4ac2217b6aec869
ah=sha1 key=20 f1efdeb77d6f856a8dd3a30cbc23cb0f8a3e0340
enc: spi=00b0d9ab esp=aes key=32
e9232d7a1c4f390fd09f8409c2d85f80362d940c08c73f245908ab1ac3af322f
ah=sha1 key=20 a3890d6c5320756291cad85026d3a78fd42a1b42
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0 npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=172.20.120.254 npu_
lgwy=172.20.120.123 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

IKE Mode Config clients

IKE Mode Config is an alternative to DHCP over IPsec. It allows dialup VPN clients to obtain virtual IP address, network, and DNS configurations amongst others from the VPN server. A FortiGate can be configured as either an IKE Mode Config server or client.

IKE Mode Config can configure the host IP address, domain, DNS addresses ,and WINS addresses. IPsec parameters such as gateway address, encryption, and authentication algorithms must be configured. Several network equipment vendors support IKE Mode Config.

An IKE Mode Config server or client is configured using `config vpn ipsec phase1-interface` and involves the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
ike-version {1 | 2}	IKE v1 is the default for FortiGate IPsec VPNs. IKE Mode Config is also compatible with IKE v2.
mode-cfg {enable | disable}	Enable/disable IKE Mode Config.
type {static | dynamic | ddns}	If you set `type` to `dynamic`, an IKE Mode Config server is created. The other settings create an IKE Mode Config client.
assign-ip {enable | disable}	Enable to request an IP address from the server. This configuration is for IKE Mode Config clients only.
interface <interface_name>	Specify the physical, aggregate, or VLAN interface to which the IPsec tunnel will be bound.
proposal <encryption_ combination>	The encryption and authentication settings that the client will accept.
ip-version {4 | 6}	By default, IPsec VPNs use IPv4 addressing.
ipv4-split-include <string> ipv6-split-include <string>	Mode Config server configuration. Applicable to IKEv1 and IKEv2. Specify the firewall address or address group that represents the subnets that the clients will have access to. This information is sent to the clients so that default traffic should not flow over the IPsec tunnel except for the specified subnets.
split-include-service <string>	Mode Config server configuration. Applicable to IKEv1 and IKEv2.

Parameter	Description
	Specify the service or service group that represents the services that the clients will have access to. This information is sent to the clients so that default traffic should not flow over the IPsec tunnel except for the specified services.
ipv4-split-exclude <string> ipv6-split-exclude <string>	Specify the subnets that should not be accessed over the IPsec tunnel. This information is sent to the clients so that all default traffic should flow over the IPsec tunnel except for the specified subnets. See Split-exclude in IKEv1.

Creating an IKE Mode Config client

In this example, the FortiGate connects to a VPN gateway with a static IP address that can be reached through port 1. Only the port, gateway, and proposal information needs to be configured. All other configuration information will come from the IKE Mode Config server.

To configure an IKE Mode Config client:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit vpn1
        set ip-version 4
        set type static
        set remote-gw <gw_address>
        set interface port1
        set proposal 3des-sha1 aes128-sha1
        set mode-cfg enable
        set assign-ip enable
    next
end
```

Split-exclude in IKEv1

The `split-exclude` option specifies that default traffic flows over the IPsec tunnel except for specified subnets. This is the opposite of `split-include`, which specifies that default traffic should not flow over the IPsec tunnel except for specified subnets. The `split-include` and `split-exclude` options can be specified at the same time.

To configure split-exclude:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <name>
        set ike-version 1
        set type dynamic
        set mode-cfg enable
        set ipv4-split-exclude <string>
        set ipv6-split-exclude <string>
    next
end
```

Creating an IKE Mode Config server

To configure IKE Mode config settings, the following must be configured first :

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn-p1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface <interface_name>
        set ike-version < 1 | 2 >
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal <encryption_combination>
        set ip-version < 4 | 6 >
    next
end
```

In this example, the FortiGate assigns IKE Mode Config clients addresses in the range of 10.11.101.160 - 10.11.101.180. DNS and WINS server addresses are also provided. The public interface of the FortiGate unit is port1.

When IKE Mode-Configuration is enabled, multiple server IPs can be defined in IPsec phase 1.

The `ipv4-split-include` parameter specifies a firewall address (`OfficeLAN`), which represents the networks that the clients will have access to. This destination IP address information is sent to the clients.

To configure an IKE Mode Config server:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn-p1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set xauthtype auto
        set mode aggressive
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal 3des-sha1 aes128-sha1
        set dpd disable
        set dhgrp 2
        set authusrgrp "FG-Group1"
        set ipv4-start-ip 10.10.10.10
        set ipv4-end-ip 10.10.10.20
        set ipv4-dns-server1 1.1.1.1
        set ipv4-dns-server2 2.2.2.2
        set ipv4-dns-server3 3.3.3.3
        set ipv4-wins-server1 4.4.4.4
        set ipv4-wins-server2 5.5.5.5
        set domain "fgt1c-domain"
        set banner "fgt111C-banner"
        set backup-gateway "100.100.100.1" "host1.com" "host2"
        set ipv4-split-include OfficeLAN
    next
end
```

Assigning IP addresses

Once the basic configuration is enabled, you can configure IP address assignment for clients, as well as DNS and WINS server assignments. Usually you will want to assign IP addresses to clients. The easiest way is to assign addresses from a specific range, similar to a DHCP server.

To assign an IP from an address range:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit vpn1
        set ip-version 4
        set assign-ip enable
        set assign-ip-from range
        set ipv4-start-ip <range_start>
        set ipv4-end-ip <range_end>
        set ipv4-netmask <netmask>
    next
end
```

To assign an IP from a named firewall address or group:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit vpn1
        set type dynamic
        set assign-ip-from name
        set ipv4-name <name>
        set ipv6-name <name>
    next
end
```

RADIUS server

If the client is authenticated by a RADIUS server, you can obtain the user's IP address assignment from the Framed-IP-Address attribute. The user must be authenticated using XAuth.

The users must be authenticated by a RADIUS server and assigned to the FortiGate user group `<grp_name>`. Since the IP address is not static, type is set to dynamic and `mode-cfg` is enabled. With IKE Mode Config, compatible clients can configure themselves with settings provided by the FortiGate.

To assign an IP from a RADIUS server:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit vpn1
        set type dynamic
        set mode-cfg enable
        set assign-ip enable
        set assign-ip-from usrgrp
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp <grp_name>
    next
end
```

DHCP server

IKE Mode Config can use a remote DHCP server to assign the client IP addresses. Up to eight server addresses can be selected for either IPv4 or IPv6. The DHCP proxy must be enabled first.

To assign an IP from a DHCP server:

```
config system settings
    set dhcp-proxy enable
    set dhcp-server-ip <address>
    set dhcp6-server-ip <address>
end
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit vpn1
        set mode-cfg enable
        set assign-ip-from dhcp
    next
end
```

Certificate groups

IKE certificate groups consisting of up to four RSA certificates can be used in IKE phase 1. Since CA and local certificates are global, the IKE daemon loads them once for all VDOMs and indexes them into trees based on subject and public key hash (for CA certificates), or certificate name (for local certificates). Certificates are linked together based on the issuer, and certificate chains are built by traversing these links. This reduces the need to keep multiple copies of certificates that could exist in multiple chains.

To configure the IKE local ID:

```
config vpn certificate local
    edit <name>
        set ike-localid <string>
        set ike-localid-type {asnldn | fqdn}
    next
end
```

Split-exclude in IKEv1

The `split-exclude` setting specifies that default traffic flows over the IPsec tunnel except for specified subnets. This is the opposite of `split-include`, which specifies that default traffic should not flow over the IPsec tunnel except for specified subnets. The `split-include` and `split-exclude` settings can be specified at the same time.

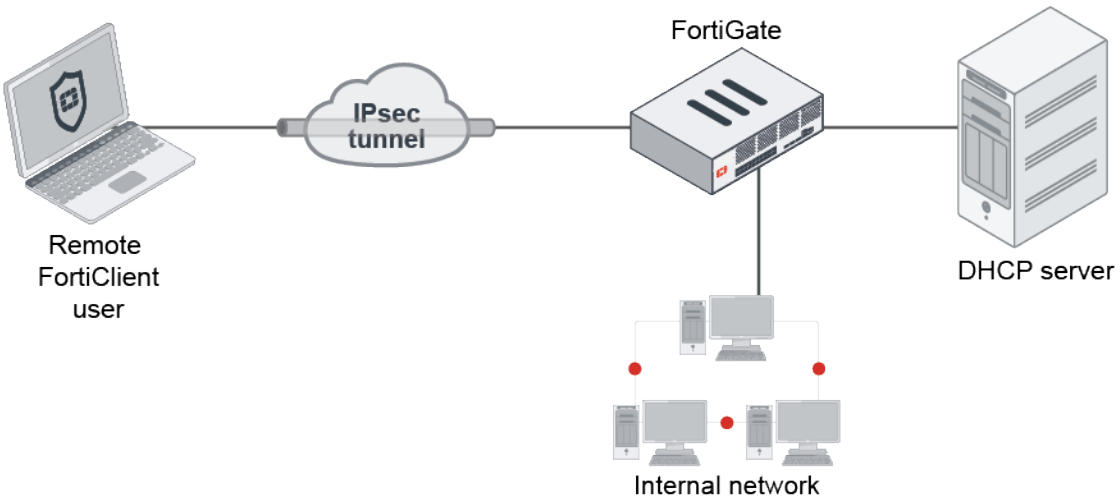
To configure split-exclude:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <name>
        set ike-version 1
        set type dynamic
        set mode-cfg enable
        set ipv4-split-exclude <string>
        set ipv6-split-exclude <string>
    next
end
```

IPsec VPN with external DHCP service

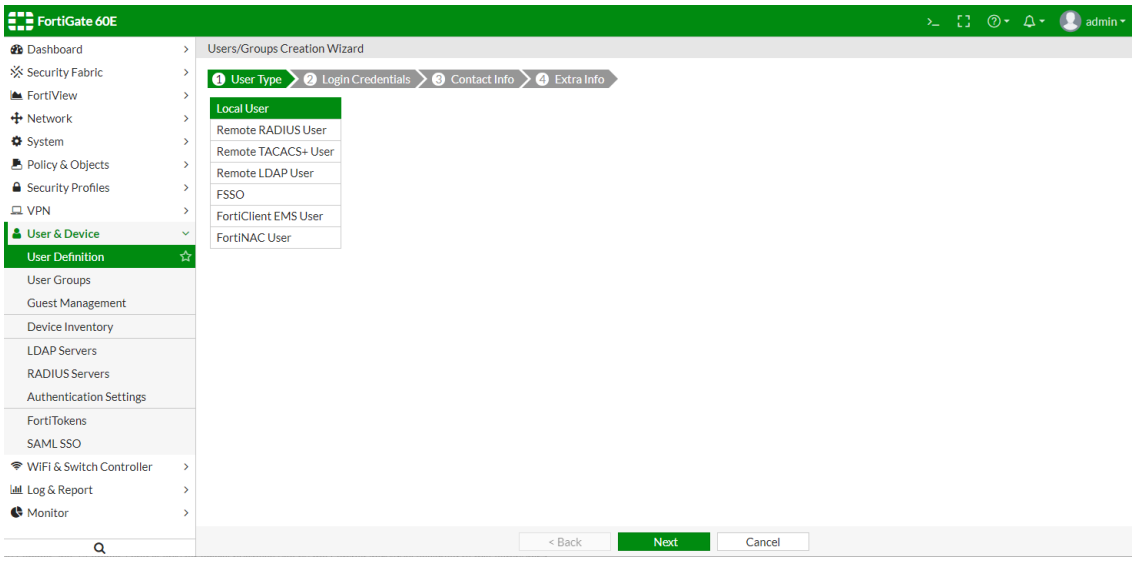
You can use an external DHCP server to assign IP addresses to your IPsec VPN clients. This is a common scenario found in enterprises where all DHCP leases need to be managed centrally.

In this example, the DHCP server assigns IP addresses in the range of 172.16.6.100 to 172.16.6.120. The server is attached to internal2 on the FortiGate and has an IP address of 192.168.3.70.



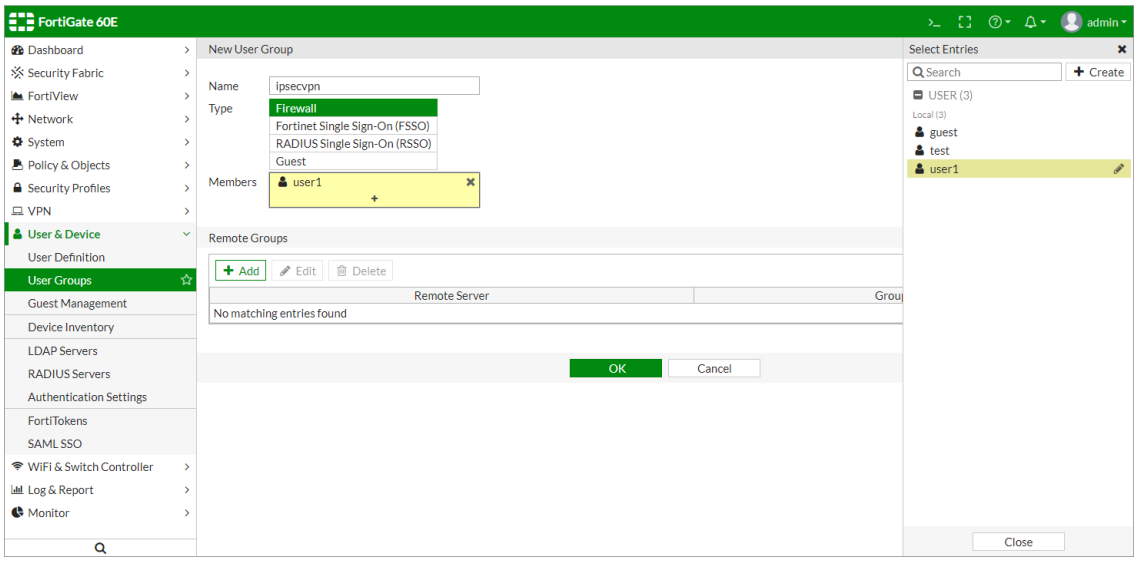
To configure a DHCP server to assign IP addresses to IPsec VPN clients:

1. Create a user group for remote users:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and click *Create New*.
   b. For *User Type*, select *Local User*.

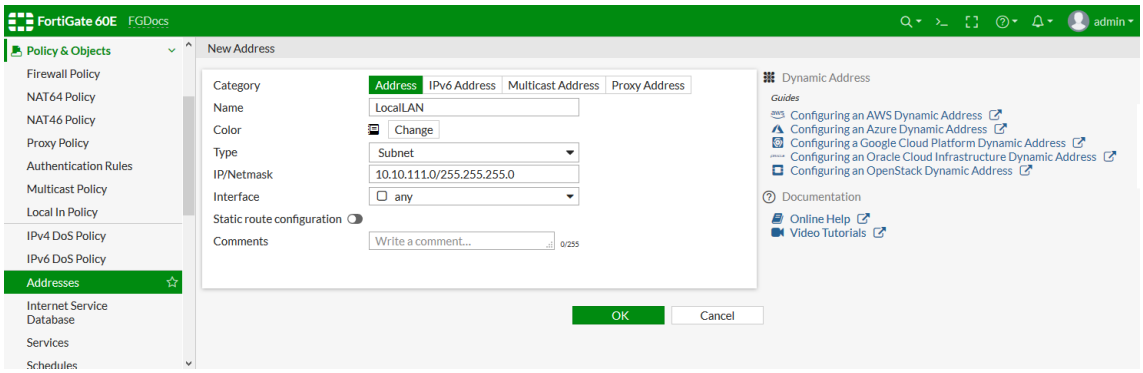


   c. Complete the wizard, and click *Submit*.
   d. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*..
   e. Create a *Firewall* user group for your remote users.
   f. For *Members*, add the user you just created.

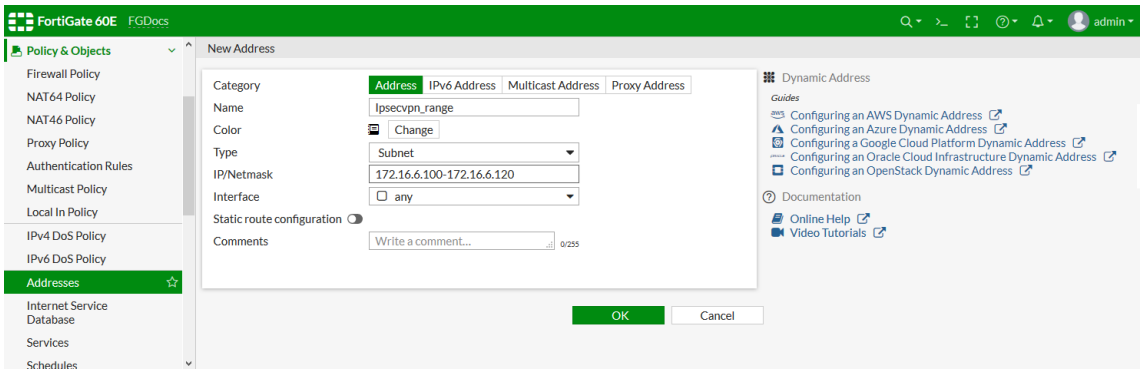
g. Click *OK*.



2. Add a firewall address for the local network and IPsec VPN client range:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Create a new *Subnet* address for the LAN, including the IP mask and local interface (*internal2*).
   c. Click *OK*.



   d. Create a new *IP Range* address for the IPsec VPN client range (`172.16.6.100–172.16.6.120`).
   e. Click *OK*.



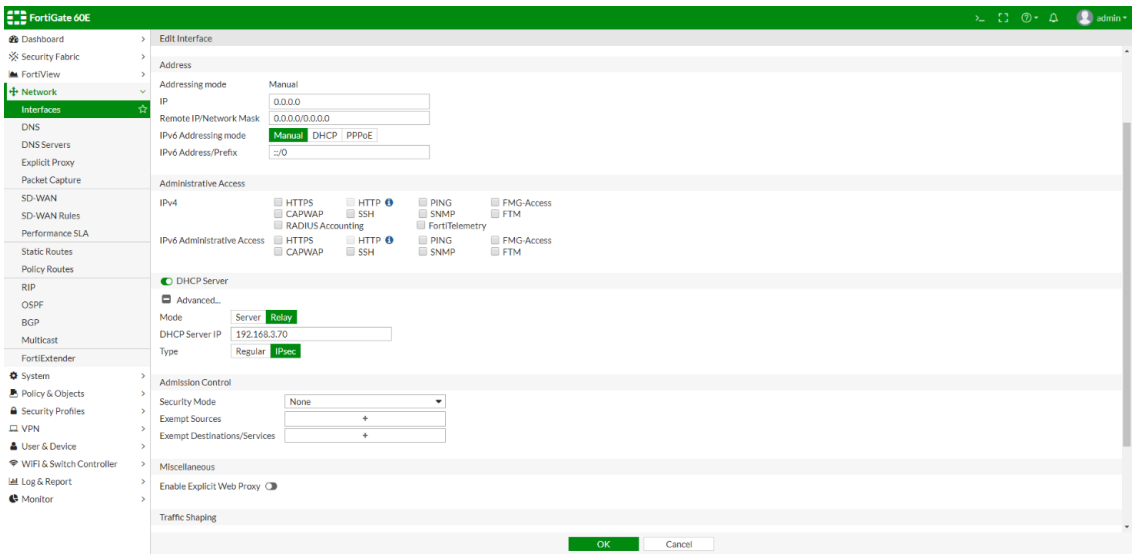
3. Configure the IPsec VPN using a VPN tunnel in the CLI:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "dhcp_vpn"
```

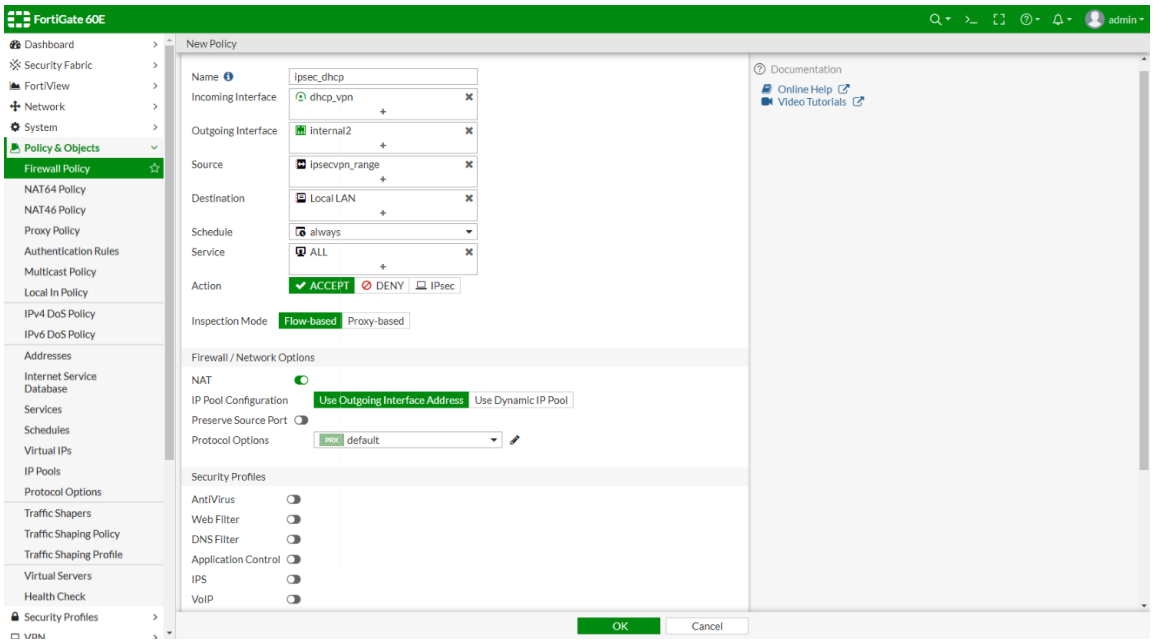
```
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 5
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "ipsecvpn"
        set psksecret **********
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "toclient"
        set phase1name "dhcp_vpn"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set dhgrp 5
        set dhcp-ipsec enable
    next
end
```

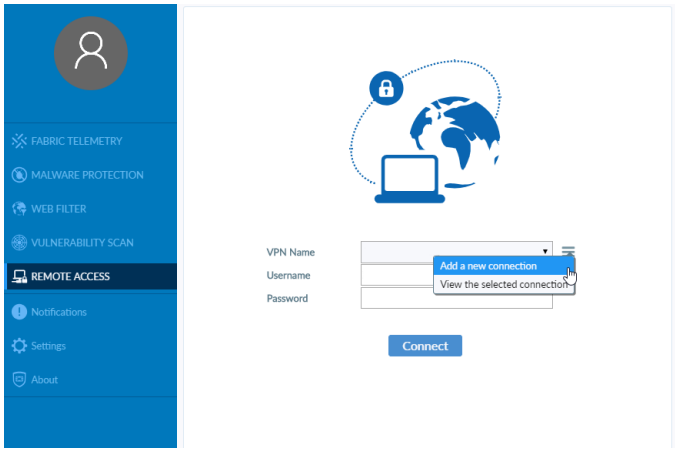
4. Configure the IPsec VPN interface:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the newly created IPsec VPN interface.
   b. Enable the *DHCP Server*.
   c. Expand *Advanced* and change the *Mode* to *Relay*.
   d. Enter the external DHCP server IP address (`192.168.3.70`).
   e. Change the *Type* to *IPsec*.
   f. Click *OK*.



5. Create a security policy for access to the local network:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following parameters:
      i. Set the *Incoming Interface* to the tunnel interface created in step 3 (*dhcp_vpn*).
      ii. Set the *Outgoing Interface* (*internal2*).
      iii. Set the *Source* to the IPsec VPN client range defined in step 2 (*ipsecvpn_range*).
      iv. Set the *Destination* to the subnet address defined in step 2 (*Local LAN*).
      v. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.
   c. Click *OK*.



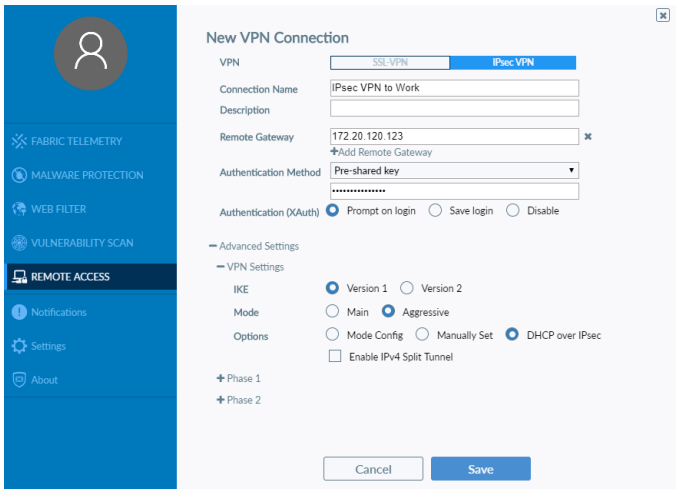
6. Configure FortiClient:
   a. In FortiClient, go to *REMOTE ACCESS* > *Add a new connection*.



   b. Configure the following parameters:
      i. Set the *VPN* type to *IPsec VPN*.
      ii. Enter a connection name.
      iii. Set the *Remote Gateway* to the FortiGate external IP address.
      iv. Set the *Authentication Method* to *Pre-shared key* and enter the key below.

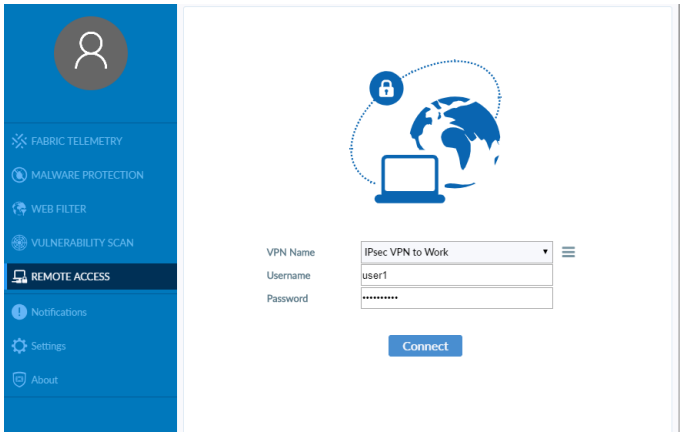
v. Expand the *Advanced Settings* > *VPN Settings* and for *Options*, select *DHCP over IPsec*.

vi. Click *Save*.



c. Select the new connection, and enter the user name and password.

d. Click *Connect*.



Once the connection is established, the external DHCP server assigns the user an IP address and FortiClient displays the connection status, including the IP address, connection duration, and bytes sent and received.

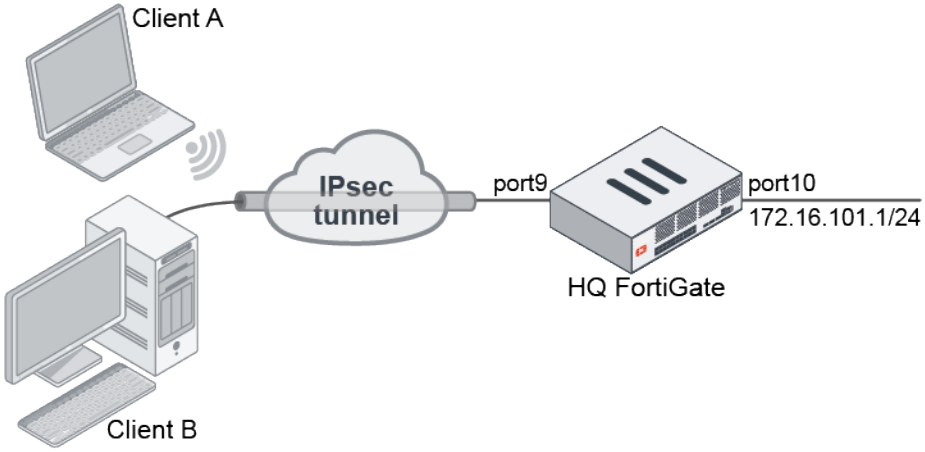
Verification

1. In FortiOS, go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor* and verify that the tunnel *Status* is *Up*.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and verify the *Sent / Received* column displays the traffic flow through the tunnel.

L2TP over IPsec

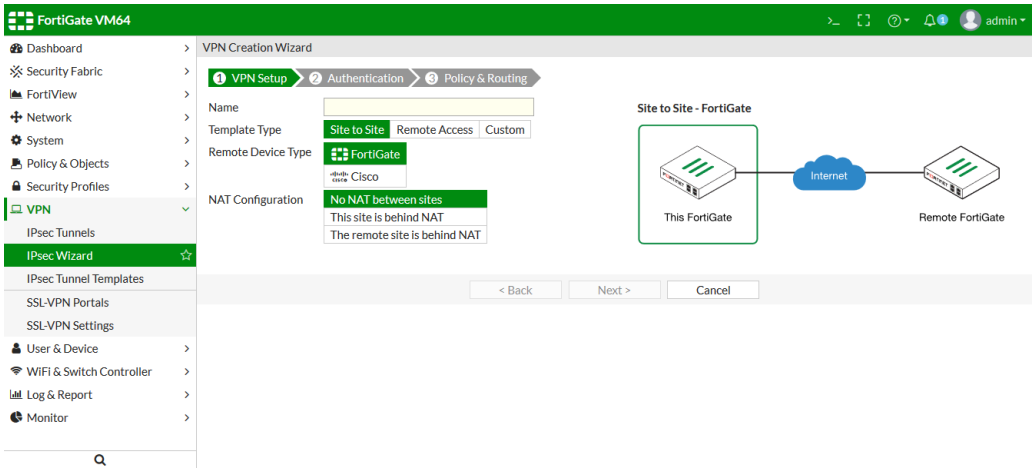
This is an example of L2TP over IPsec.

This example uses a locally defined user for authentication, a Windows PC or Android tablet as the client, and `net-device` is set to `enable` in the `phase1-interface` settings. If `net-device` is set to `disable`, only one device can establish an L2TP over IPsec tunnel behind the same NAT device.



To configure L2TP over an IPsec tunnel using the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.



2. Enter a VPN *Name*. In this example, *L2tpoIPsec*.
3. Configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   a. For *Template Type*, select *Remote Access*.
   b. For *Remote Device Type*, select *Native* and *Windows Native*.
   c. Click *Next*.
4. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   a. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port9*.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.

   d. For *User Group*, select *L2tpusergroup*
   e. Click *Next*.
5. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   a. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *port10*.
   b. Configure the *Local Address* as *172.16.101.0*.
   c. Configure the *Client Address Range* as *10.10.10.1-10.10.10.100*.
   d. Leave the *Subnet Mask* at its default value.
   e. Click *Create*.

To configure L2TP over an IPsec tunnel using the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route on HQ.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface on HQ.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "L2tpoIPsec"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes256-md5 3des-sha1 aes192-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 2
        set net-device enable
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "L2tpoIPsec"
        set phase1name "L2tpoIPsec"
        set proposal aes256-md5 3des-sha1 aes192-sha1
        set pfs disable
        set encapsulation transport-mode
        set l2tp enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure a user and user group on HQ.

```
config user local
    edit "usera"
        set type password
        set passwd usera
        next
end
config user group
    edit "L2tpusergroup"
        set member "usera"
    next
end
```

4. Configure L2TP on HQ.

```
config vpn l2tp
    set status enable
    set eip 10.10.10.100
    set sip 10.10.10.1
    set usrgrp "L2tpusergroup"
end
```

5. Configure a firewall address that is applied in L2TP settings to assign IP addresses to clients once the L2TP tunnel is established.

```
config firewall address
    edit "L2TPclients"
        set type iprange
        set start-ip 10.10.10.1
        set end-ip 10.10.10.100
    next
end
```

6. Configure a firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Bridge_IPsec_port9_for_l2tp negotiation"
        set srcintf "L2tpoIPsec"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "L2TP"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "L2tpoIPsec"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "L2TPclients"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To view the VPN tunnel list on HQ:

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list

list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=L2tpoIPsec_0 ver=1 serial=8 22.1.1.1:0->10.1.100.15:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/216 options[00d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg
 parent=L2tpoIPsec index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=470 txp=267 rxb=57192 txb=12679
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=L2tpoIPsec proto=17 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 transport-mode add-route
  src: 17:22.1.1.1-22.1.1.1:1701
  dst: 17:10.1.100.15-10.1.100.15:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a6 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1470 expire=2339/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=10c esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=000001d6 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3585/3600
  dec: spi=ca646443 esp=3des key=24 af62a0fffe85d3d534b5bfba29307aafc8bfda5c3f4650dc
       ah=sha1 key=20 89b4b67688bed9be49fb86449bb83f8c8d8d7432
  enc: spi=700d28a0 esp=3des key=24 5f68906eca8d37d853814188b9e29ac4913420a9c87362c9
       ah=sha1 key=20 d37f901ffd0e6ee1e4fdccebc7fdcc7ad44f0a0a
  dec:pkts/bytes=470/31698, enc:pkts/bytes=267/21744
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=10.1.100.15 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
----
name=L2tpoIPsec_1 ver=1 serial=a 22.1.1.1:4500->22.1.1.2:64916
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/472 options[01d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg rport-chg
 parent=L2tpoIPsec index=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=/0
stat: rxp=5 txp=4 rxb=592 txb=249
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=64916
proxyid=L2tpoIPsec proto=17 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 transport-mode add-route
  src: 17:22.1.1.1-22.1.1.1:1701
  dst: 17:22.1.1.2-22.1.1.2:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a6 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1454 expire=28786/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000005 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=28790/28800
  dec: spi=ca646446 esp=aes key=32
ea60dfbad709b3c63917c3b7299520ff7606756ca15d2eb7cbff349b6562172e
       ah=md5 key=16 2f2acfff0b556935d0aab8fc5725c8ec
  enc: spi=0b514df2 esp=aes key=32
a8a92c2ed0e1fd7b6e405d8a6b9eb3be5eff573d80be3f830ce694917d634196
       ah=md5 key=16 e426c33a7fe9041bdc5ce802760e8a3d
  dec:pkts/bytes=5/245, enc:pkts/bytes=4/464
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=8 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

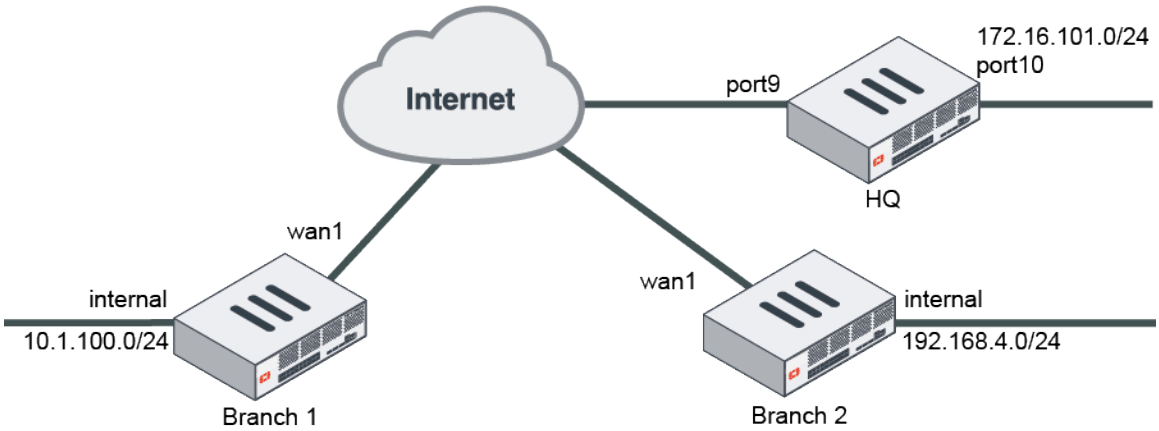
To view the L2TP VPN status:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose vpn l2tp status
----
----
```

```
HQ # Num of tunnels: 2
----
Tunnel ID = 1 (local id), 42 (remote id)  to 10.1.100.15:1701
   control_seq_num = 2, control_rec_seq_num = 4,
   last recv pkt = 2
Call ID = 1 (local id), 1 (remote id), serno = 0, dev=ppp1,
      assigned ip = 10.10.10.2
      data_seq_num = 0,
      tx = 152 bytes (2), rx= 21179 bytes (205)
Tunnel ID = 3 (local id), 34183 (remote id)  to 22.1.1.2:58825
   control_seq_num = 2, control_rec_seq_num = 4,
   last recv pkt = 2
Call ID = 3 (local id), 18820 (remote id), serno = 2032472593, dev=ppp2,
      assigned ip = 10.10.10.3
      data_seq_num = 0,
      tx = 152 bytes (2), rx= 0 bytes (0)
----
--VD 0: Startip = 10.10.10.1, Endip = 10.10.10.100
        enforece-ipsec = false
----
```

Tunneled Internet browsing

This is a sample configuration of tunneled internet browsing using a dialup VPN. To centralize network management and control, all branch office traffic is tunneled to HQ, including Internet browsing.



To configure a dialup VPN to tunnel Internet browsing using the GUI:

1. Configure the dialup VPN server FortiGate at HQ:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name, in this example, *HQ*.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *The remote site is behind NAT*.
      v. Click *Next*.

b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   i. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port9*.
   ii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   iii. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
   iv. Click *Next*.
c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *port10*.
   ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
   iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *0.0.0.0/0*.
   iv. For *Internet Access*, select *Share Local*.
   v. For *Shared WAN*, select *port9*.
   vi. Click *Create*.

2. Configure the dialup VPN client FortiGate at a branch:
a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   i. Enter a VPN name, in this example, *Branch1* or *Branch2*.
   ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
   iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
   iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *The remote site is behind NAT*.
   v. Click *Next*.
b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   i. For *IP Address*, select *Remote Device* and enter *22.1.1.1*.
   ii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *wan1*.
   iii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   iv. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
   v. Click *Next*.
c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *internal*.
   ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0/192.1684.0*.
   iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *0.0.0.0/0*.
   iv. For *Internet Access*, select *Use Remote*.
   v. Configure the *Local Gateway* to *15.1.1.1/13.1.1.1*.
   vi. Click *Create*.

To configure a dialup VPN to tunnel Internet browsing using the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route on the FortiGate at HQ.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
```

```
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface configuration at HQ.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "HQ"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "HQ"
        set phase1name "HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy at HQ.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "HQ"
        set dstintf "port9" "port10"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0" "192.168.4.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the WAN interface and static route on the FortiGate at the branches.
   a. Branch1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
```

```
    next
end
```

b. Branch2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface configuration at the branches.

a. Branch1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "branch1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "branch1"
        set phase1name "branch1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
        set src-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

b. Branch2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "branch2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
```

```
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "branch2"
        set phase1name "branch2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
        set src-subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

6. Configure the firewall policy at the branches.
   a. Branch1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "branch1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "branch1"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

   b. Branch2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "branch2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "branch2"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
```

```
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

7. Configure the static routes at the branches.
   a. Branch1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 22.1.1.1/32
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
        set distance 1
    next
    edit 3
        set device "branch1"
        set distance 5
    next
end
```

   b. Branch2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 22.1.1.1/32
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
        set distance 1
    next
    edit 3
        set device "branch2"
        set distance 5
    next
end
```

8. Optionally, view the VPN tunnel list on a branch with the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=branch1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=1661 rxb=65470 txb=167314
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2986
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=branch1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=697/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=13a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2368/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f7e esp=aes key=16 ecee0cd48664d903d3d6822b1f902fd2
       ah=sha1 key=20 2440a189126c222093ca9acd8b37127285f1f8a7
  enc: spi=6e3636fe esp=aes key=16 fdaa20bcc96f74ae9885e824d3efa29d
       ah=sha1 key=20 70c0891c769ad8007ea1f31a39978ffbc73242d0
```

```
    dec:pkts/bytes=0/16348, enc:pkts/bytes=313/55962
    npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

9. Optionally, view static routing table on a branch with the `get router info routing-table static` command:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] is directly connected, branch1
S*      22.1.1.1/32 [1/0] via 15.1.1.1, wan1
```

Dialup IPsec VPN with certificate authentication

In a dialup IPsec VPN setup, a company may choose to use X.509 certificates as their authentication solution for remote users. This method includes the option to verify the remote user using a user certificate, instead of a username and password. This method can be simpler for end users.

Administrators need to issue unique user certificates to each user for remote access management. The user certificate can be verified by the subject field, common name, or the principal name in the Subject Alternative Name (SAN) field.

Subject field verification

This is the basic method that verifies the subject string defined in the PKI user setting matches a substring in the subject field of the user certificate. For example:

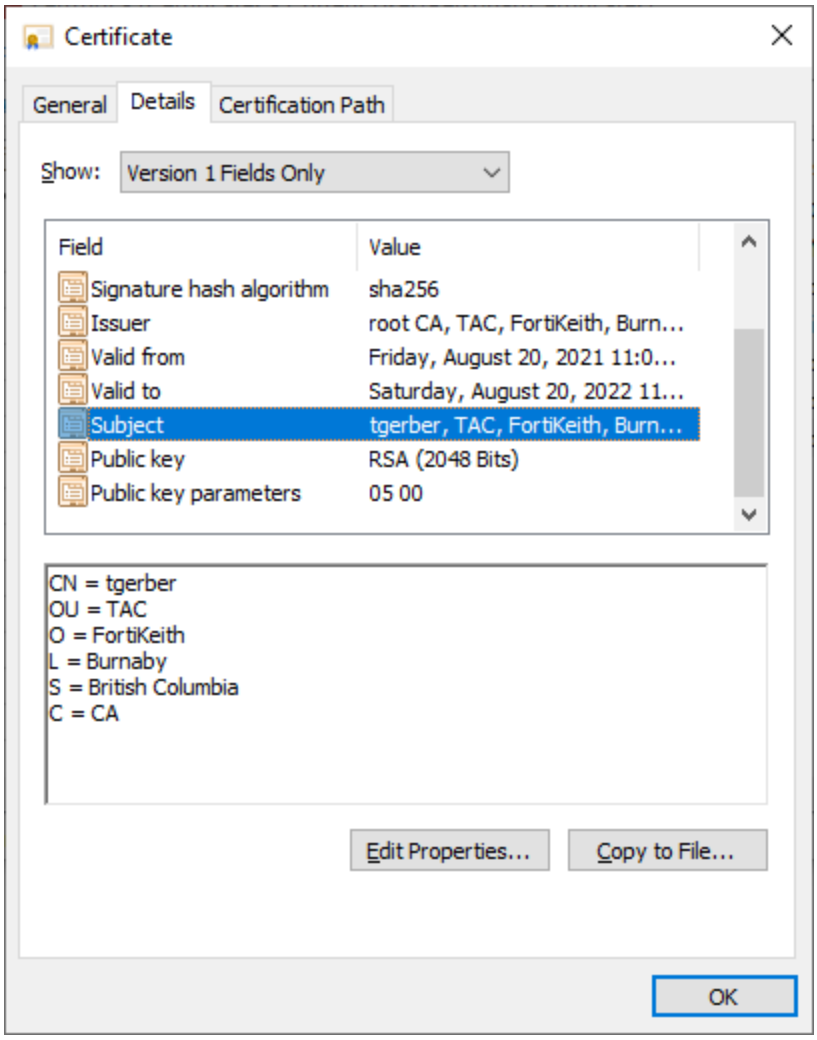
```
config user peer
    edit "tgerber"
        set ca "CA_Cert_2"
        set subject "CN=tgerber"
    next
end
```

Common name verification

In this method, administrators can define the CN string to match the common name (CN) in the subject field of the certificate. For example:

```
config user peer
    edit "tgerber"
        set ca "CA_Cert_2"
        set cn "tgerber"
    next
end
```

The matching certificate looks like the following:



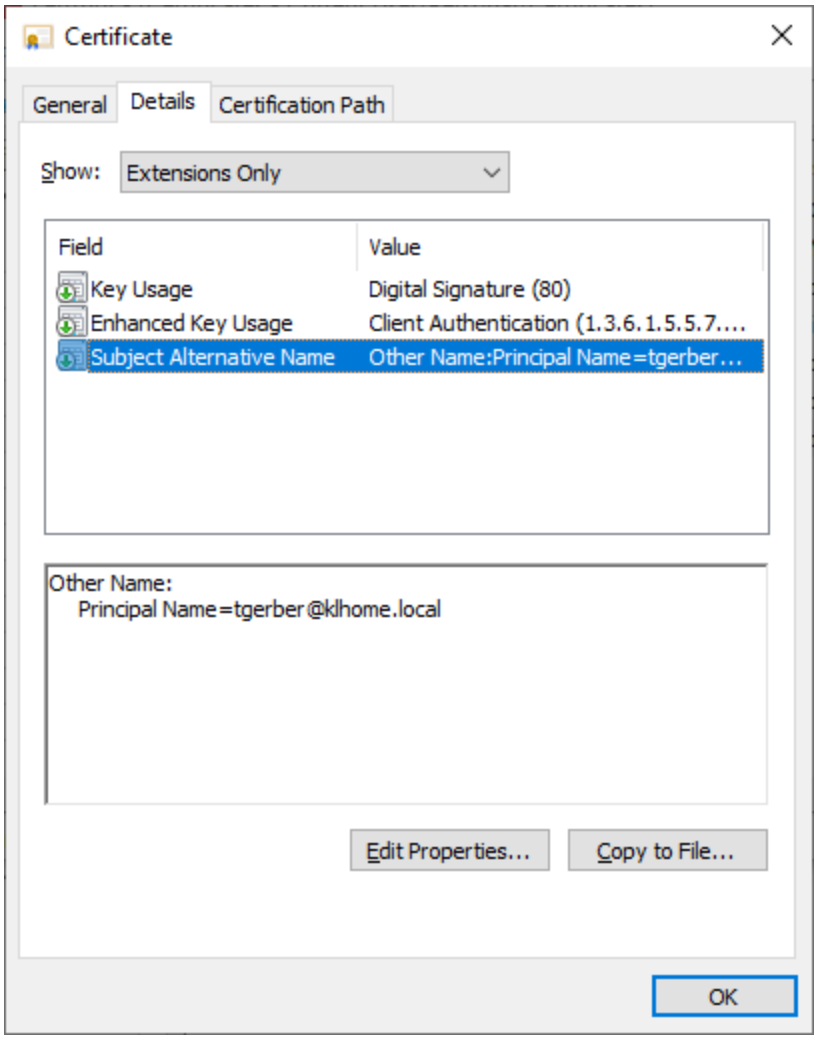
A PKI user must be created on the FortiGate for each remote user that connects to the VPN with a unique user certificate.

Principal name with LDAP integration

In this method, the PKI user setting references an LDAP server. When `ldap-mode` is set to `principal-name`, the UPN in the user certificate's SAN field is used to look up the user in the LDAP directory. If a match is found, then authentication succeeds. For example:

```
config user peer
    edit "ldap-peer"
        set ca "CA_Cert_2"
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME-LDAPS"
        set ldap-mode principal-name
    next
end
```

The matching certificate looks like the following:



This method is more scalable because only one PKI user needs to be created on the FortiGate. Remote users connect with their unique user certificate that are matched against users in the LDAP server.

Certificate management

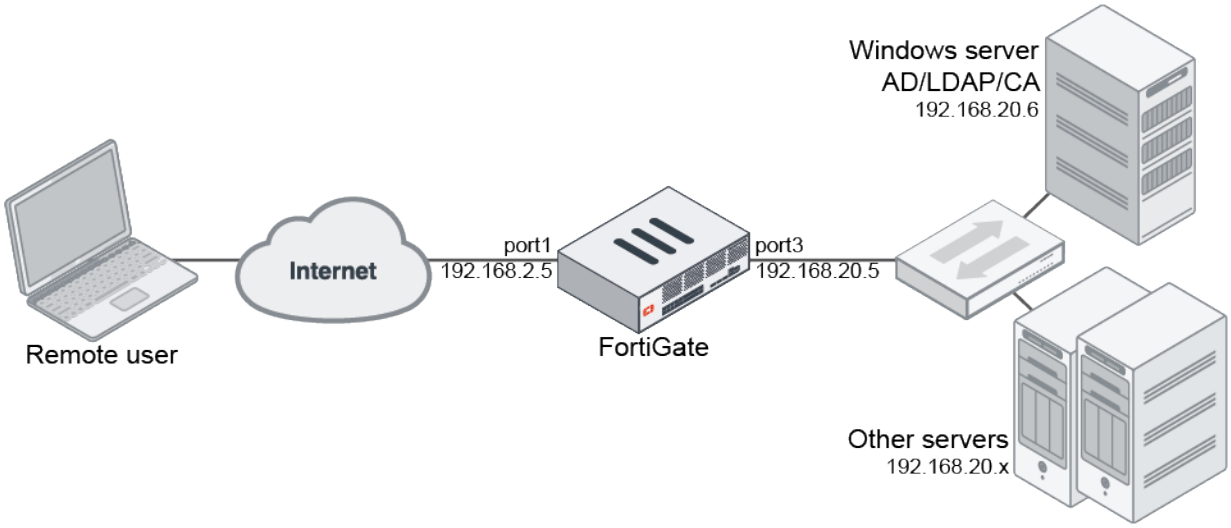
Dialup IPsec VPN with certificate authentication requires careful certificate management planning. Assuming that a company's private certificate authority (CA) is used to generate and sign all the certificates, the following certificates are needed:

Certificate type	Description
Server certificate	The server certificate is used to identify the FortiGate IPsec dialup gateway. A CSR can be generated on the FortiGate and signed by the CA, or the CA can generate the private and public keys and export the certificate package to the FortiGate.

Certificate type	Description
User certificate	The user certificate is generated and signed by the CA with unique CNs in the subject field and/or unique Principal Names in the SAN field. They are used to identify the user that is connecting to the VPN. User certificates must be installed on client machines.
CA certificate	The root CA certificate, and any subordinate CA that signed the actual user and server certificates, must be imported into the FortiGate and client machines. The CA certificate is used to verify the certificate chain of the server and user certificates.

Example

In this example, a dialup IPsec VPN tunnel is configured with certificate authentication using the subject field verification method and the LDAP integration method.



The company CA, named root CA, signs all the server and user certificates. The user, tgerber@klhome.local, has a user certificate signed by root CA installed on their endpoint. The corresponding user account is also present under the company's Active Directory.

There are five major steps to configure this example:

1. Importing the certificates
2. Configuring user authentication
3. Configuring the VPN
4. Configuring FortiClient and the endpoints
5. Testing and verifying the certificate authentication

Importing the certificates

The server certificate and CA certificate need to be imported into the FortiGate.

To import the server certificate:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
2. For *Type*, select *PKCS #12 Certificate*.
3. Upload the key file exported from the CA and enter the password.
4. Click *OK*. The certificate now appears in the *Local Certificate* section.

To import the CA certificate:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
2. For *Type*, select *File*.
3. Upload the CA certificate (usually a .CRT file). This certificate only contains the public key.
4. Click *OK*. The certificate now appears in the *Remote CA Certificate* section.



If any subordinate CA is involved in signing the certificates, you need to import its certificate.

Configuring user authentication

FortiGate PKI users do not appear in the GUI until at least one PKI user has been created in the CLI. The following instructions create the PKI users in the CLI.

To configure PKI users for subject field verification:

1. Create the PKI user and choose the CA certificate that was imported (if the certificate was signed by a subordinate CA, choose the subordinate CA's certificate):

```
config user peer
    edit "tgerber"
        set ca "CA_Cert_2"
        set subject "CN=tgerber"
    next
end
```

   For an example of CN field matching, see Common name verification.
2. Create additional users as needed.
3. Place the users into a peer group:

```
config user peergrp
    edit "pki-users"
        set member "tgerber" <user> ... <user>
    next
end
```

To configure PKI users for LDAP integration:

1. Configure the LDAP server that users connect to for authentication:

```
config user ldap
    edit "WIN2K16-KLHOME-LDAPS"
        set server "192.168.20.6"
```

```
        set cnid "sAMAccountName"
        set dn "dc=KLHOME,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "KLHOME\\Administrator"
        set password ************
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "CA_Cert_1"
        set port 636
    next
end
```

2. Configure the PKI user to reference the LDAP server using the CA certificate that was imported:

```
config user peer
    edit "ldap-peer"
        set ca "CA_Cert_2"
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME-LDAPS"
        set ldap-mode principal-name
    next
end
```

3. Place the user into a peer group:

```
config user peergrp
    edit "pki-ldap"
        set member "ldap-peer"
    next
end
```

Configuring the VPN

To configure the VPN, the address objects must be defined first so they can be used in the VPN and policy configurations. In this example, the VPN is configured in custom mode to define the authentication settings.

To configure the address objects:

1. Create the address range for the dialup clients:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. For *Name*, enter *remote-user-range*.
   c. For *Type*, select *IP Range* and enter *172.18.200.10-172.18.200.99* in the *IP Range* field.
   d. Click *OK*.
2. Create the address subnet for the destination 192.168.20.0/24:
   a. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. For *Name*, enter *192.168.20.0*.
   c. For *Type*, select *Subnet* and enter *192.168.20.0/24* in the *IP/Netmask* field.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure the IPsec dialup tunnel:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and click *Create New* > *IPsec Tunnel*.
2. Enter a name for the tunnel, *Dialup-cert_0*.
3. For *Template type*, select *Custom* then click *Next*.

4. In the *Network* section, enter the following:

Remote Gateway	*Dialup User*
Interface	*port1*
Mode Config	Enable
Assign IP From	*Range*
IPv4 mode config > Client Address Range	*172.18.200.10-172.18.200.99*
Enable IPv4 Split Tunnel	Enable
Accessible Networks	*192.168.20.0*

5. In the *Authentication* section, enter the following:

Method	*Signature*
Certificate Name	Select the server certificate that was imported.
Mode	*Aggressive*
Peer Options > Accept Types	*Peer certificate group*
Peer Options > Peer certificate group	Select the group based on the preferred method: • For subject verification, select *pki-users*. • For LDAP integration, select *pki-ldap*.

When IKEv1 is used, aggressive mode should be selected so that the connecting endpoint will provide its peer ID in the first message of the IKE exchange. The peer identifier allows the FortiGate to match the correct tunnel when multiple dialup tunnels are defined.

6. For *Phase 2 Selectors*, leave the local and remote selectors as *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
7. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	Enter a policy name.
Incoming interface	*Dialup-cert_0*
Outgoing Interface	*port3*
Source	*remote-user-range*
Destination	*192.168.20.0*
Schedule	*always*
Service	*ALL*
Action	*ACCEPT*

3. Configure the other settings as needed.
4. Click *OK*.

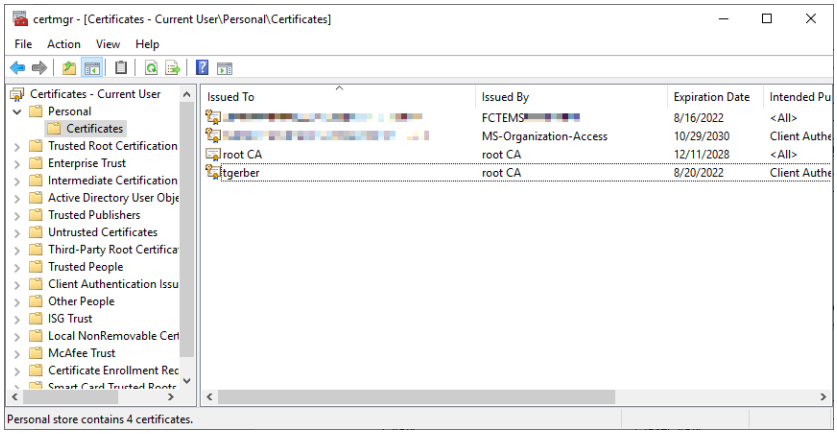
Configuring FortiClient and the endpoints

The following example is configured on a Windows PC with FortiClient 7.0.0. Other configurations may differ slightly.

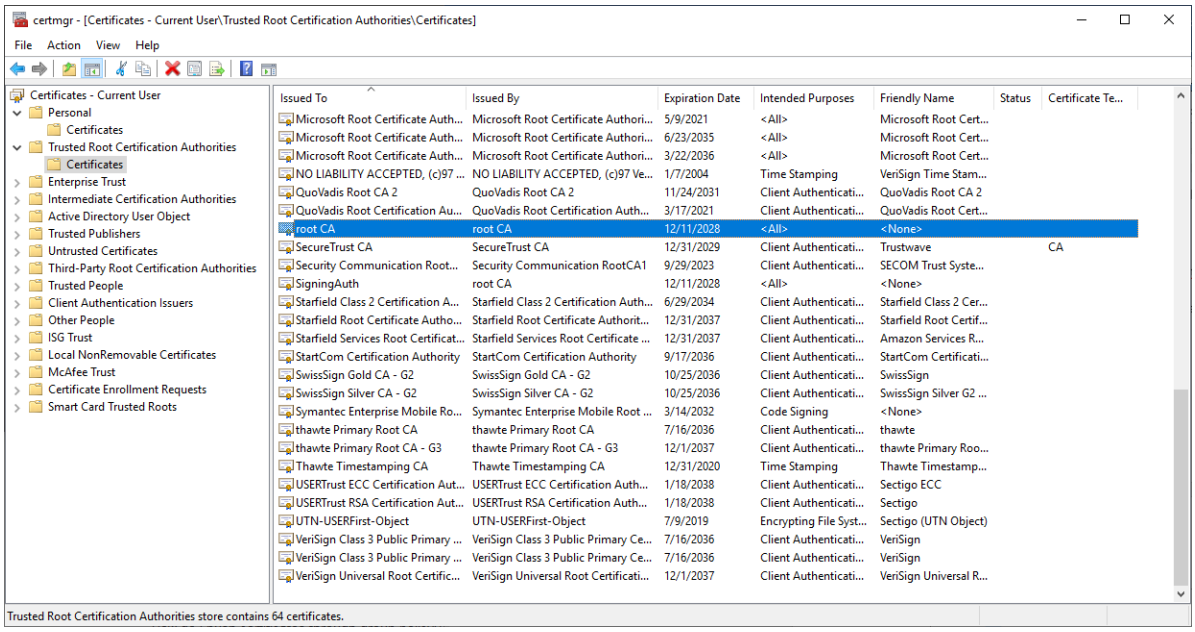
The user certificate and CA certificate must be installed on the endpoint device. They may be pushed by the administrator through group policies or another method. This example assumes that the user certificate and CA certificate are already installed on the endpoint.

To verify the user and CA certificates:

1. Open the Windows certificate manager (certmgr):
   a. In the Control Panel, type *Manage user certificate* in the search box.
   b. Click the result, *Manage user certificates*.
2. Go to *Personal* > *Certificate*. The user certificate should be listed.



3. Go to *Trusted Root Certification Authorities* > *Certificates*. The company CA certificate should be listed.



To configure the FortiClient endpoint settings:

1. In FortiClient, click the *Remote Access* tab and add a new connection:
   a. If there are no existing connections, click *Configure VPN*.
   b. If there are existing connections, click the menu icon and select *Add a new connection*.
2. Configure the following:

VPN	*IPsec VPN*
Connection Name	*Dialup-cert_0*
Remote Gateway	*192.168.2.5*
Authentication Method	*X.509 Certificate* Select the user certificate, *tgerber/root CA*, from the dropdown.
Authentication (XAuth)	*Disable*

3. Click *Save*.

Testing and verifying the certificate authentication

1. On the client PC, open FortiClient and click the *Remote Access* tab.
2. Select the VPN tunnel, *Dialup-cert_0*, and click *Connect*.
   If the connection is successful, a FortiClient pop-up will appear briefly indicating that the IKE negotiation succeeded. The *Remote Access* window now displays *VPN Connected* and the associated VPN tunnel details.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and locate the *IPsec* widget to view the VPN tunnel monitor. Click the widget to expand to full view.
   The widget displays tunnel information, including the *Peer ID* containing the subject field of the user certificate.
4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* > *VPN Events*. Several tunnel related logs are recorded.
5. The same logs can be viewed in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category 1
# execute log filter field subtype vpn
# execute log display
7: date=2021-08-23 time=15:53:08 eventtime=1629759188862005740 tz="-0700"
logid="0101037138" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" logdesc="IPsec
connection status changed" msg="IPsec connection status change" action="tunnel-up"
remip=192.168.2.1 locip=192.168.2.5 remport=64916 locport=4500 outintf="port1"
cookies="19f05ebc8c2f7a0d/7716190005538db5" user="C = CA, ST = British Columbia, L =
Burnaby, O = FortiKeith, OU = TAC, CN = tgerber" group="pki-ldap" useralt="C = CA, ST =
British Columbia, L = Burnaby, O = FortiKeith, OU = TAC, CN = tgerber" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=172.18.200.10 vpntunnel="Dialup-cert_0" tunnelip=172.18.200.10
tunnelid=3418215253 tunneltype="ipsec" duration=0 sentbyte=0 rcvdbyte=0 nextstat=0
```

6. If any issues arise during the connection, run the following debug commands to troubleshoot the issue:

```
# diagnose debug application ike -1
# diagnose debug application fnbamd -1
# diagnose debug enable
```

Aggregate and redundant VPN

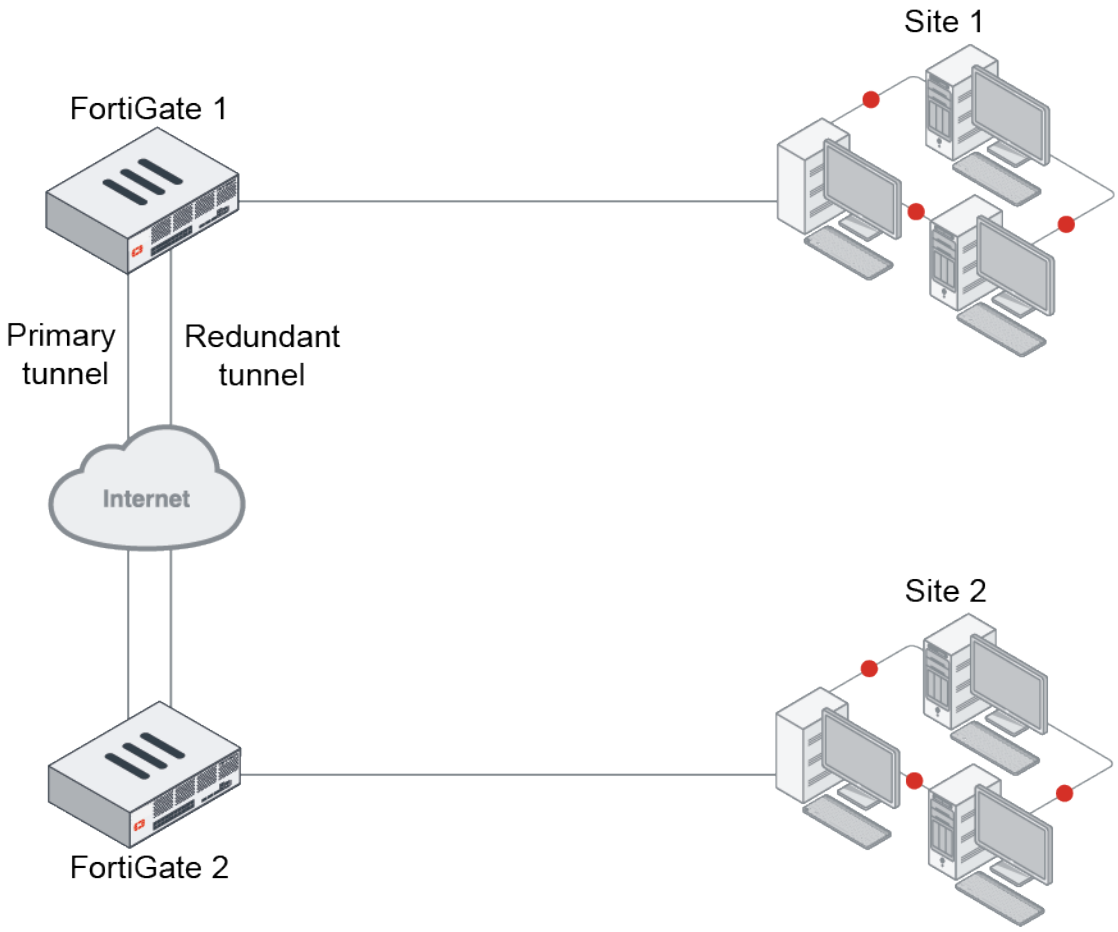
The following topics provide instructions on configuring aggregate and redundant VPNs:

- Manual redundant VPN configuration on page 1619
- OSPF with IPsec VPN for network redundancy on page 1622
- IPsec VPN in an HA environment on page 1629
- IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1635
- Per packet distribution and tunnel aggregation on page 1646
- Redundant hub and spoke VPN on page 1650
- Weighted round robin for IPsec aggregate tunnels on page 1656

Manual redundant VPN configuration

A FortiGate with two interfaces connected to the internet can be configured to support redundant VPNs to the same remote peer. Four distinct paths are possible for VPN traffic from end to end. If the primary connection fails, the FortiGate can establish a VPN using the other connection.

Topology



The redundant configuration in this example uses route-based VPNs. The FortiGates must operate in NAT mode and use auto-keying.

This example assumes the redundant VPNs are essentially equal in cost and capability. When the original VPN returns to service, traffic continues to use the replacement VPN until the replacement VPN fails. If the redundant VPN uses more expensive facilities, only use it as a backup while the main VPN is down.

A redundant configuration for each VPN peer includes:

- One phase 1 configuration for each path between the two peers with dead peer detection enabled
- One phase 2 definition for each phase 1 configuration
- One static route for each IPsec interface with different distance values to prioritize the routes
- Two firewall policies per IPsec interface, one for each direction of traffic

To configure the phase 1 and phase 2 VPN settings:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and select the *Custom* template.
2. Enter the tunnel name and click *Next*.
3. Enter the following phase 1 settings for path 1:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the primary interface of the remote peer.
Interface	Select the primary public interface of this peer.
Dead Peer Detection	On-Demand

4. Configure the remaining phase 1 and phase 2 settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Repeat these steps for the remaining paths.
   a. Path 2:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the secondary interface of the remote peer.
Interface	Select the primary public interface of this peer.
Dead Peer Detection	On-Demand

   b. Path 3:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the primary interface of the remote peer.
Interface	Select the secondary public interface of this peer.
Dead Peer Detection	On-Demand

   c. Path 4:

Remote Gateway	Static IP Address
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the secondary interface of the remote peer.
Interface	Select the secondary public interface of this peer.
Dead Peer Detection	On-Demand

To configure the static routes:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Destination* field, enter the subnet of the private network.
3. For *Interface*, select one of the IPsec interfaces on the local peer.
4. Enter a value for *Administrative Distance*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Repeat these steps for the three remaining paths, and enter different values for *Administrative Distance* to prioritize the paths.

To configure the firewall policies:

1. Create the policies for the local primary interface:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Enter the following:

Name	Enter a name for the policy.
Incoming Interface	Select the local interface to the internal (private) network.
Outgoing Interface	Select one of the virtual IPsec interfaces.
Source	All
Destination	All
Schedule	Always
Service	All
Action	ACCEPT

   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New* and configure the policy for the other direction of traffic:

Name	Enter a name for the policy.
Incoming Interface	Select one of the virtual IPsec interfaces.
Outgoing Interface	Select the local interface to the internal (private) network.
Source	All
Destination	All
Schedule	Always
Service	All
Action	ACCEPT

   e. In the policy list, drag the VPN policies above any other policies with similar source and destination addresses.
2. Repeat these steps to create the policies for the three remaining paths.

Creating a backup IPsec interface

A route-based VPN can be configured to act as a backup IPsec interface when the main VPN is out of service. This can only be configured in the CLI.

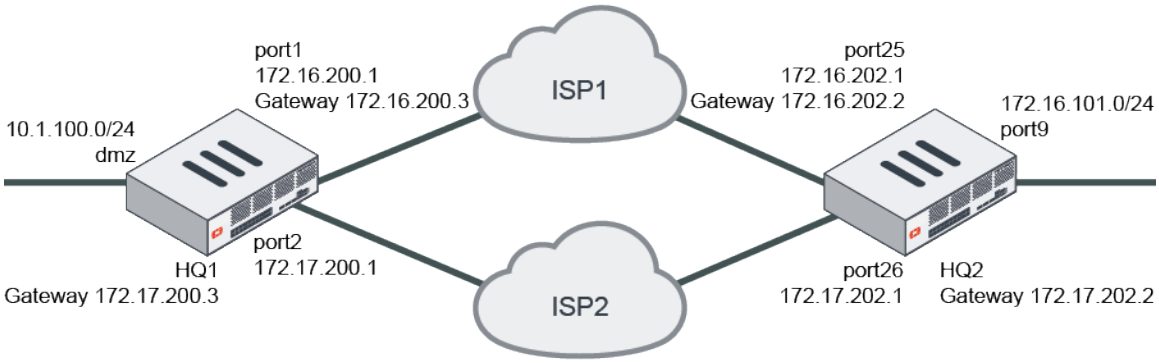
The backup feature works on interfaces with static addresses that have dead peer detection enabled. The `monitor` option creates a backup VPN for the specified phase 1 configuration.

To create a backup IPsec interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit main_vpn
        set dpd on-demand
        set interface port1
        set nattraversal enable
        set psksecret ********
        set remote-gw 192.168.10.8
        set type static
    next
    edit backup_vpn
        set dpd on-demand
        set interface port2
        set monitor main_vpn
        set nattraversal enable
        set psksecret ********
        set remote-gw 192.168.10.8
        set type static
    next
end
```

OSPF with IPsec VPN for network redundancy

This is a sample configuration of using OSPF with IPsec VPN to set up network redundancy. Route selection is based on OSPF cost calculation. You can configure ECMP or primary/secondary routes by adjusting OSPF path cost.



Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

To configure OSPF with IPsec VPN to achieve network redundancy using the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route.
   Each FortiGate has two WAN interfaces connected to different ISPs. The ISP1 link is for the primary FortiGate and the IPS2 link is for the secondary FortiGate.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "port1"
         set alias to_ISP1
         set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit "port2"
         set alias to_ISP2
         set ip 172.17.200.1 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
   config router static
      edit 1
         set gateway 172.16.200.3
         set device "port1"
      next
      edit 2
         set gateway 172.17.200.3
         set device "port2"
         set priority 100
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "port25"
         set alias to_ISP1
         set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit "port26"
         set alias to_ISP2
         set ip 172.17.202.1 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
   config router static
      edit 1
         set gateway 172.16.202.2
         set device "port25"
      next
      edit 2
         set gateway 172.17.202.2
         set device "port26"
         set priority 100
      next
   end
   ```
2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "dmz"
         set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
      next
   ```

```
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
   edit "port9"
      set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```

3. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase-2 interface. On each FortiGate, configure two IPsec tunnels: a primary and a secondary.

a. Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "pri_HQ2"
      set interface "port1"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set psksecret sample1
   next
   edit "sec_HQ2"
      set interface "port2"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.202.1
      set psksecret sample2
   next
   end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "pri_HQ2"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
   edit "sec_HQ2"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "pri_HQ1"
      set interface "port25"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
      set psksecret sample1
   next
   edit "sec_HQ1"
      set interface "port26"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
```

```
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.200.1
      set psksecret sample2
    next
  end
  config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "pri_HQ1"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "sec_HQ1"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
  end
```

4. Configure an inbound and outbound firewall policy for each IPsec tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set name "pri_inbound"
    set srcintf "pri_HQ2"
    set dstintf "dmz"
    set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
  edit 2
    set name "pri_outbound"
    set srcintf "dmz"
    set dstintf "pri_HQ2"
    set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
    set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
  edit 3
    set name "sec_inbound"
    set srcintf "sec_HQ2"
    set dstintf "dmz"
    set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
  edit 4
    set name "sec_outbound"
    set srcintf "dmz"
    set dstintf "sec_HQ2"
```

```
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "pri_inbound"
      set srcintf "pri_HQ1"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "pri_outbound"
      set srcintf "port9"
      set dstintf "pri_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 3
      set name "sec_inbound"
      set srcintf "sec_HQ1"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 4
      set name "sec_outbound"
      set srcintf "port9"
      set dstintf "sec_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

5. Assign an IP address to the IPsec tunnel interface.

a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
   edit "pri_HQ2"
      set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
      set remote-ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
```

```
    next
    edit "sec_HQ2"
      set ip 10.10.11.1 255.255.255.255
      set remote-ip 10.10.11.2 255.255.255.255
    next
  end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
  config system interface
    edit "pri_HQ1"
      set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
      set remote-ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "sec_HQ1"
      set ip 10.10.11.2 255.255.255.255
      set remote-ip 10.10.11.1 255.255.255.255
    next
  end
```

6. Configure OSPF.

a. Configure HQ1.

```
  config router ospf
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    config area
      edit 0.0.0.0
      next
    end
    config ospf-interface
      edit "pri_HQ2"
        set interface "pri_HQ2"
        set cost 10
        set network-type point-to-point
      next
      edit "sec_HQ2"
        set interface "sec_HQ2"
        set cost 20
        set network-type point-to-point
      next
    end
    config network
      edit 1
        set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit 2
        set prefix 10.10.11.0 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit 3
        set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
      next
    end
  end
```

b. Configure HQ2.

```
  config router ospf
    set router-id 2.2.2.2
    config area
      edit 0.0.0.0
      next
    end
```

```
      config ospf-interface
         edit "pri_HQ1"
            set interface "pri_HQ1"
            set cost 10
            set network-type point-to-point
         next
         edit "sec_HQ1"
            set interface "sec_HQ1"
            set cost 20
            set network-type point-to-point
         next
      end
      config network
         edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 2
            set prefix 10.10.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 3
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   end
```

To check VPN and OSPF states using diagnose and get commands:

1. Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: pri_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 10.10.10.1 -> 10.10.10.2
created: 1024s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/3 established 1/2 time 0/5/10 ms
   id/spi: 45 d184777257b4e692/e2432f834aaf5658 direction: responder status: established
        1024-1024s ago = 0ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: 9ed41fb06c983344-
        189538046f5ad204 lifetime/rekey: 86400/85105 DPD sent/recv: 00000003/00000000
        vd: root/0
name: sec_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port2 12
addr: 172.17.200.1:500 -> 172.17.202.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 10.10.11.1 -> 10.10.11.2
created: 346s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/10/15 ms
   id/spi: 48 d909ed68636b1ea5/163015e73ea050b8 direction: initiator status: established
        0-0s ago = 0ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: b9e93c156bdf4562-29db9fbafa256152
        lifetime/rekey: 86400/86099 DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000
```

2. Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=pri_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
```

```
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
     frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=/0
stat: rxp=102 txp=105 rxb=14064 txb=7816
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=3
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=pri_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42254/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=6a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000067 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42932/43200 dec: spi=1071b4ee esp=aes key=16
        032036b24a4ec88da63896b86f3a01db
      ah=sha1 key=20 3962933e24c8da21c65c13bc2c6345d643199cdf
   enc: spi=ec89b7e3 esp=aes key=16 92b1d85ef91faf695fca05843dd91626
      ah=sha1 key=20 2de99d1376506313d9f32df6873902cf6c08e454
   dec:pkts/bytes=102/7164, enc:pkts/bytes=105/14936
name=sec_HQ2 ver=1 serial=2 172.17.200.1:0->172.17.202.1:0
bound_if=12 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
     frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=3 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=110 txp=114 rxb=15152 txb=8428
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=3
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=sec_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42927/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=2 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200 dec: spi=1071b4ef esp=aes key=16
        bcdcabdb7d1c7c695d1f2e0f5441700a
      ah=sha1 key=20 e7a0034589f82eb1af41efd59d0b2565fef8d5da
   enc: spi=ec89b7e4 esp=aes key=16 234240b69e61f6bdee2b4cdec0f33bea
      ah=sha1 key=20 f9d4744a84d91e5ce05f5984737c2a691a3627e8
   dec:pkts/bytes=1/68, enc:pkts/bytes=1/136
```

3. Run the `HQ1 # get router info ospf neighbor` command. The system should return the following:
   ```
   OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
   Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Address Interface
   2.2.2.2 1. Full/ - 00:00:37 10.10.10.2 pri_HQ2
   2.2.2.2 1. Full/ - 00:00:32 10.10.11.2 sec_HQ2
   ```
4. Run the `HQ1 # get router info routing-table ospf` command. The system should return the following:
   ```
   Routing table for VRF=0
   O 172.16.101.0/24 [110/20] via 10.10.10.2, pri_HQ2 , 00:03:21
   ```
   In case the primary tunnel is down after route convergence.
5. Run the `HQ1 # get router info routing-table ospf` command. The system should return the following:
   ```
   Routing table for VRF=0
   O 172.16.101.0/24 [110/110] via 10.10.11.2, sec_HQ2 , 00:00:01
   ```

IPsec VPN in an HA environment

This is a sample configuration of site-to-site IPsec VPN in an HA environment.

For this example, set up HA as described in the HA topics. When setting up HA, enable the following options to ensure IPsec VPN traffic is not interrupted during an HA failover:

- `session-pickup` under HA settings.
- `ha-sync-esp-seqno` under IPsec phase1-interface settings.



You can configure IPsec VPN in an HA environment using the GUI or CLI.

In this example, the VPN name for HQ1 is "to_HQ2", and the VPN name for HQ2 is "to_HQ1".

To configure IPsec VPN in an HA environment in the GUI:

1. Set up IPsec VPN on HQ1 (the HA cluster):
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, set *No NAT between sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. In the *IP address* field, enter *172.16.202.1*.
      iii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select port1.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter an example key.
      vi. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0/24*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0/24*.
      iv. Click *Create*.
2. Set up IPsec VPN on HQ2:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, set *No NAT between sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. In the *IP address* field, enter 172.16.200.1.
      iii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select port13.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter an example key.
      vi. Click *Next*.

c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the desired local interface. In this example, it is port9.
   ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as 172.16.101.0.
   iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as 10.1.100.0
   iv. Click *Create*.

To configure IPsec VPN in an HA environment using the CLI:

1. Configure HA. In this example, two FortiGates work in active-passive mode. The HA heartbeat interfaces are WAN1 and WAN2:
```
config system ha
   set group-name "FGT-HA"
   set mode a-p
   set password sample
   set hbdev "wan1" 50 "wan2" 50
   set session-pickup enable
   set priority 200
   set override-wait-time 10
end
```
2. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure HQ1:
```
config system interface
   edit "port1"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.3
      set device "port1"
   next
end
```
   b. Configure HQ2:
```
config system interface
   edit "port25"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.202.2
      set device "port25"
   next
end
```
3. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface. The internal interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1:
```
config system interface
   edit "dmz"
      set vdom "root"
```

```
      set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2:

```
config system interface
   edit "port9"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. This example uses PSK as the authentication method. You can also use signature authentication.

a. Configure HQ1:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "to_HQ2"
      set interface "port1"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set ha-sync-esp-seqno enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set psksecret sample
   next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "to_HQ1"
      set interface "port25"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set ha-sync-esp-seqno enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
      set psksecret sample
   next
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface:

a. Configure HQ1:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "to_HQ2"
      set phase1name "to_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

b. Configure HQ2:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "to_HQ1"
      set phase1name "to_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

6. Configure static routes. Two static routes are added to reach the remote protected subnet. The blackhole route is important to ensure IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.
   a. Configure HQ1:
   ```
   config router static
      edit 2
         set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
         set device "to_HQ2"
      next
      edit 3
         set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
         set blackhole enable
         set distance 254
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2:
   ```
   config router static
      edit 2
         set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
         set device "to_HQ1"
      next
      edit 3
         set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
         set blackhole enable
         set distance 254
      next
   end
   ```
7. Configure two firewall policies to allow bi-directional IPsec traffic flow over the IPsec tunnel:
   a. Configure HQ1:
   ```
   config firewall policy
      edit 1
         set name "inbound"
         set srcintf "to_HQ2"
         set dstintf "dmz"
         set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
         set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
         set action accept
         set schedule "always"
         set service "ALL"
      next
      edit 2
         set name "outbound"
         set srcintf "dmz"
         set dstintf "to_HQ2"
         set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
         set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
         set action accept
         set schedule "always"
         set service "ALL"
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2:
   ```
   config firewall policy
      edit 1
         set name "inbound"
         set srcintf "to_HQ1"
   ```

```
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "outbound"
      set srcintf "port9"
      set dstintf "to_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

8. Use the following `diagnose` commands to check IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status including the sequence number on the secondary FortiGate. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.
   a. Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 5s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 2/2 time 0/0/0 ms
   id/spi: 12 6e8d0532e7fe8d84/3694ac323138a024 direction: responder status:
        established 5-5s ago = 0ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: b3efb46d0d385aff-
        7bb9ee241362ee8d lifetime/rekey: 86400/86124 DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000
```

   b. Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0

name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=7 olast=87 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42927/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200 dec: spi=ef9ca700 esp=aes key=16
        a2c6584bf654d4f956497b3436f1cfc7
      ah=sha1 key=20 82c5e734bce81e6f18418328e2a11aeb7baa021b
   enc: spi=791e898e esp=aes key=16 0dbb4588ba2665c6962491e85a4a8d5a
      ah=sha1 key=20 2054b318d2568a8b12119120f20ecac97ab730b3
   dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

   ESP seqno synced to primary FortiGate every five minutes, and big gap between primary and secondary to ensure that no packet is dropped after HA failover caused by tcp-replay. Check ESP sequence number synced on secondary FortiGate.

c. Run the `HQ1 # execute ha manage 0 admin` command.

d. Run the `HQ1-Sec # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0

name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=13 olast=274 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=27 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1280 expire=42740/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=47868c01 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200 dec: spi=ef9ca700 esp=aes key=16
        a2c6584bf654d4f956497b3436f1cfc7
      ah=sha1 key=20 82c5e734bce81e6f18418328e2a11aeb7baa021b
   enc: spi=791e898e esp=aes key=16 0dbb4588ba2665c6962491e85a4a8d5a
      ah=sha1 key=20 2054b318d2568a8b12119120f20ecac97ab730b3
   dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

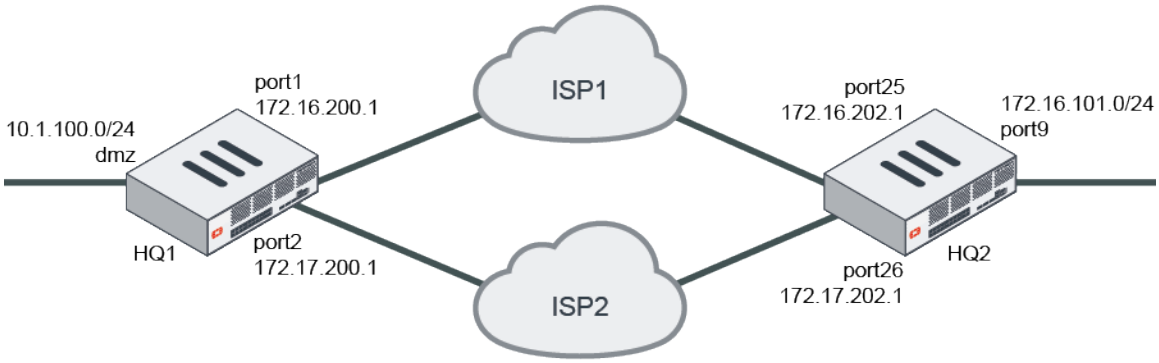
IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing

This is a sample configuration of a multiple site-to-site IPsec VPN that uses an IPsec aggregate interface to set up redundancy and traffic load-balancing. The VPN tunnel interfaces must have `net-device` disabled in order to be members of the IPsec aggregate.

Each FortiGate has two WAN interfaces connected to different ISPs. OSPF runs over the IPsec aggregate in this configuration.

The supported load balancing algorithms are: L3, L4, round-robin (default), weighted round-robin, and redundant. The first four options allow traffic to be load-balanced, while the last option (redundant) uses the first tunnel that is up for all traffic.

Dynamic routing can run on the aggregate interface, and it can be a member interface in SD-WAN (not shown in this configuration).



Configuring the HQ1 FortiGate in the GUI

There are five steps to configure the FortiGate:

1. Create the IPsec tunnels.
2. Create the IPsec aggregate.
3. Configure the firewall policies.
4. Configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs.
5. Configure OSPF.

To create the IPsec tunnels:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and select the *Custom* template.
2. For *Name*, enter pri_HQ2 and click *Next*.
3. Enter the following:

Phase 1	
IP Address	172.16.202.1
Interface	port1
Device creation	Disabled
Aggregate member	Enabled
Authentication Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the secure key
IKE Mode	Aggressive
Peer Options Accept Types	Any peer ID
Phase 2	
Auto-negotiate	Enable

4. Configure the other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Create another tunnel named sec_HQ2 with the following settings:

Phase 1	
IP Address	172.17.202.1
Interface	port2
Device creation	Disabled
Aggregate member	Enabled
Authentication Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the secure key
IKE Mode	Aggressive
Peer Options Accept Types	Any peer ID
Phase 2	
Auto-negotiate	Enable

To create the IPsec aggregate:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and click *Create New* > *IPsec Aggregate*.
2. For *Name*, enter agg_HQ2.
3. Select a load balancing algorithm.
4. From the *Tunnel* dropdown, select the tunnels that you created previously (*pri_HQ2* and *sec_HQ2*). If required, enter weights for each tunnel.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policies:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create an inbound traffic policy with the following settings:

Name	inbound
Incoming Interface	agg_HQ2
Outgoing Interface	dmz
Source	172.16.101.0
Destination	10.1.100.0
Schedule	always
Action	ACCEPT
Service	ALL

3. Click *OK*.
4. Create an outbound traffic policy with the following settings:

Name	outbound
Incoming Interface	dmz
Outgoing Interface	agg_HQ2
Source	10.1.100.0
Destination	172.16.101.0
Schedule	always
Action	ACCEPT
Service	ALL

To configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit agg_HQ2.
2. For *IP*, enter 10.10.10.1.
3. For *Remote IP/Netmask*, enter 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure OSPF:

1. Go to *Network* > *OSPF*.
2. For *Router ID*, enter 1.1.1.1.
3. In the *Areas* table, click *Create New*.
   a. For *Area ID*, enter 0.0.0.0.
   b. Click *OK*.
4. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New*.
   a. Set the *Area* to *0.0.0.0*.
   b. For *IP/Netmask*, enter 10.1.100.0/24.
   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*.
   e. For *IP/Netmask*, enter 10.10.10.0/24.
   f. Click *OK*.
5. Click *Apply*.

Configuring the HQ2 FortiGate in the GUI

There are five steps to configure the FortiGate:

1. Create the IPsec tunnels.
2. Create the IPsec aggregate.
3. Configure the firewall policies.
4. Configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs.
5. Configure OSPF.

To create the IPsec tunnels:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and select the *Custom* template.
2. For *Name*, enter pri_HQ1 and click *Next*.
3. Enter the following:

Phase 1	
IP Address	172.16.200.1
Interface	port25
Device creation	Disabled
Aggregate member	Enabled
Authentication Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the secure key
IKE Mode	Aggressive
Peer Options Accept Types	Any peer ID
Phase 2	
Auto-negotiate	Enable

4. Configure the other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Create another tunnel named sec_HQ1 with the following settings:

Phase 1	
IP Address	172.17.200.1
Interface	port26
Device creation	Disabled
Aggregate member	Enabled
Authentication Method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared Key	Enter the secure key
IKE Mode	Aggressive
Peer Options Accept Types	Any peer ID
Phase 2	
Auto-negotiate	Enable

To create the IPsec aggregate:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and click *Create New* > *IPsec Aggregate*.
2. For *Name*, enter agg_HQ1.
3. Select a load balancing algorithm.
4. From the *Tunnel* dropdown, select the tunnels that you created previously (*pri_HQ1* and *sec_HQ1*). If required, enter weights for each tunnel.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure the firewall policies:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create an inbound traffic policy with the following settings:

Name	inbound
Incoming Interface	agg_HQ1
Outgoing Interface	port9
Source	10.1.100.0
Destination	172.16.101.0
Schedule	always
Action	ACCEPT
Service	ALL

3. Click *OK*.
4. Create an outbound traffic policy with the following settings:

Name	outbound
Incoming Interface	port9
Outgoing Interface	agg_HQ1
Source	172.16.101.0
Destination	10.1.100.0
Schedule	always
Action	ACCEPT
Service	ALL

To configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit agg_HQ1.
2. For *IP*, enter 10.10.10.2.
3. For *Remote IP/Netmask*, enter 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure OSPF:

1. Go to *Network* > *OSPF*.
2. For *Router ID*, enter 2.2.2.2.
3. In the *Areas* table, click *Create New*.
   a. For *Area ID*, enter 0.0.0.0.
   b. Click *OK*.
4. In the *Networks* table, click *Create New*.
   a. Set the *Area* to *0.0.0.0*.
   b. For *IP/Netmask*, enter 172.16.101.0/24.
   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*.
   e. For *IP/Netmask*, enter 10.10.10.0/24.
   f. Click *OK*.
5. Click *Apply*.

Monitoring the traffic in the GUI

To monitor the traffic:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* , hover over the *IPsec* widget, then click *Expand to Full Screen*.
2. Expand the aggregate tunnel in the table to view statistics for each aggregate member.

Configuring the HQ1 FortiGate in the CLI

There are six steps to configure the FortiGate:

1. Configure the interfaces.
2. Configure two IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 interfaces.
3. Configure the IPsec aggregate.
4. Configure the firewall policies.
5. Configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs.
6. Configure OSPF.

To configure the interfaces:

1. Configure port1, port2, and dmz as shown in the topology diagram.

To configure two IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "pri_HQ2"
      set interface "port1"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set psksecret sample1
   next
   edit "sec_HQ2"
      set interface "port2"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.202.1
      set psksecret sample2
   next
   end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "pri_HQ2"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
           chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
   edit "sec_HQ2"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
           chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

To configure the IPsec aggregate:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
   edit "agg_HQ2"
      set member "pri_HQ2" "sec_HQ2"
   next
end
```

To configure the firewall policies:

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "inbound"
      set srcintf "agg_HQ2"
      set dstintf "dmz"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "outbound"
      set srcintf "dmz"
      set dstintf "agg_HQ2"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

To configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs:

```
config system interface
   edit "agg_HQ2"
      set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
      set remote-ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
   next
end
```

To configure OSPF:

```
config router ospf
   set router-id 1.1.1.1
   config area
      edit 0.0.0.0
      next
   end
   config network
      edit 1
         set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit 2
         set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
end
```

Configuring the HQ2 FortiGate in the CLI

There are six steps to configure the FortiGate:

1. Configure the interfaces.
2. Configure two IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 interfaces.
3. Configure the IPsec aggregate.
4. Configure the firewall policies.
5. Configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs.
6. Configure OSPF.

To configure the interfaces:

1. Configure port25, port26, and port9 as shown in the topology diagram.

To configure two IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "pri_HQ1"
      set interface "port25"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
      set psksecret sample1
   next
   edit "sec_HQ1"
      set interface "port26"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.200.1
      set psksecret sample2
   next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "pri_HQ1"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
           chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
   edit "sec_HQ1"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
           chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

To configure the IPsec aggregate:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
   edit "agg_HQ1"
      set member "pri_HQ1" "sec_HQ1"
   next
end
```

To configure the firewall policies:

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "inbound"
      set srcintf "agg_HQ1"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "outbound"
      set srcintf "port9"
      set dstintf "agg_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

To configure the aggregate VPN interface IPs:

```
config system interface
   edit "agg_HQ1"
      set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
      set remote-ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
   next
end
```

To configure OSPF:

```
config router ospf
   set router-id 2.2.2.2
   config area
      edit 0.0.0.0
      next
   end
   config network
      edit 1
         set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit 2
         set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
end
```

Monitoring the traffic in the CLI

To view debugging information:

1. Verify the status of the phase 1 IKE SAs:

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list
vd: root/0
name: pri_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 1520s ago
IKE SA: created 1/2 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
   id/spi: 173 dcdede154681579b/e32f4c48c4349fc0 direction: responder status: established
        1498-1498s ago = 10ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: d7230a68d7b83def-
        588b94495cfa9d38 lifetime/rekey: 86400/84631 DPD sent/recv: 0000000d/00000006
vd: root/0
name: sec_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port2 12
addr: 172.17.200.1:500 -> 172.17.202.1:500
created: 1520s ago
IKE SA: created 1/2 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
   id/spi: 174 a567bd7bf02a04b5/4251b6254660aee2 direction: responder status: established
        1498-1498s ago = 10ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: 9f44f500c28d8de6-
        febaae9d1e6a164c lifetime/rekey: 86400/84631 DPD sent/recv: 00000008/0000000c
```

2. Verify the phase 2 IPsec tunnel SAs:

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=sec_HQ2 ver=1 serial=2 172.17.200.1:0->172.17.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-rfc
     run_state=1 accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=7 ilast=5 olast=5 ad=/0
stat: rxp=39 txp=40 rxb=5448 txb=2732
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=15
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=sec_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41230/0B replaywin=2048
     seqno=29 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000028 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200 dec: spi=1071b4f9 esp=aes key=16
        1f4dbb78bea8e97650b52d8170b5ece7
     ah=sha1 key=20 cd9bf2de0f49296cf489dd915d7baf6d78bc8f12
   enc: spi=ec89b7ee esp=aes key=16 0546efecd0d1b9ba5944f635896e4404
     ah=sha1 key=20 34599bc7dc25e1ce63ac9615bd50928ce0667dc8
   dec:pkts/bytes=39/2796, enc:pkts/bytes=40/5456
name=pri_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-rfc
     run_state=1 accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=5 ilast=15 olast=15 ad=/0
stat: rxp=38 txp=39 rxb=5152 txb=2768
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=20
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=pri_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
```

```
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
     soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41231/0B replaywin=2048
   seqno=28 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000027 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200 dec: spi=1071b4f8 esp=aes key=16
     142cce377b3432ba41e64128ade6848c
   ah=sha1 key=20 20e64947e2397123f561584321adc0e7aa0c342d
enc: spi=ec89b7ed esp=aes key=16 2ec13622fd60dacce3d28ebe5fe7ab14
   ah=sha1 key=20 c1787497508a87f40c73c0db0e835c70b3c3f42d
dec:pkts/bytes=38/2568, enc:pkts/bytes=39/5432
```

3. Debug the IPsec aggregation list:

```
# diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list
agg_HQ2 algo=RR member=2 run_tally=2
members:
   pri_HQ2
   sec_HQ2
```

4. Verify the OSPF neighbor information:

```
# get router info ospf neighbor
OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Address Interface
2.2.2.2 1. Full/ - 00:00:34 10.10.10.2 agg1_HQ2
```

5. Verify the OSPF routing table:

```
# get router info routing-table ospf
Routing table for VRF=0
O 172.16.101.0/24 [110/20] via 10.10.10.2, agg1_HQ2 , 00:18:43
```

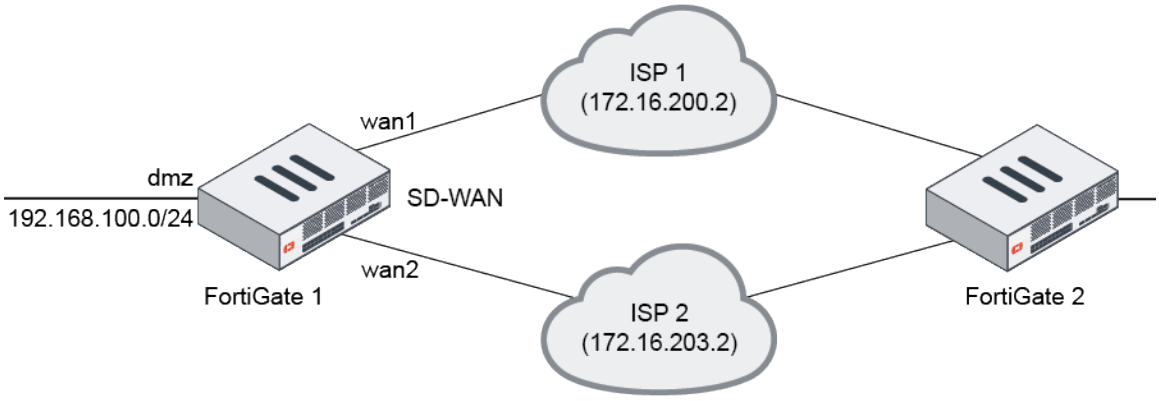
Per packet distribution and tunnel aggregation

This is a sample configuration of aggregating IPsec tunnels by using per-packet load-balancing.

This feature only allows static and DDNS tunnels to be members.

Dynamic (dialup) tunnels are not allowed because dialup instances tend to have different locations and hence different routing. This conflicts with the rule that all the members of an aggregate must have the same routing.

For example, a customer has two ISP connections, wan1 and wan2. On each FortiGate, two IPsec VPN interfaces are created. Next, an `ipsec-aggregate` interface is created and added as an SD-WAN member.



Configuring FortiGate 1

To create two IPsec VPN interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set aggregate-member enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.201.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set aggregate-member enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set phase1name "vd1-p1"
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set phase1name "vd1-p2"
    next
end
```

To create an IPsec aggregate interface:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit "agg1"
        set member "vd1-p1" "vd1-p2"
        set algorithm L3
    next
end

config system interface
    edit "agg1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.11.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set remote-ip 172.16.11.2 255.255.255.255
end
```

To configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf ""virtual-wan-link""
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure SD-WAN:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "agg1"
            set gateway 172.16.11.2
        next
    end
end
```

Configuring FortiGate 2

To create two IPsec VPN interfaces:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vd2-p1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
    edit "vd2-p2"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.203.1
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
end
```

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vd2-p1"
        set phase1name "vd2-p1"
```

```
    next
    edit "vd2-p2"
        set phase1name "vd2-p2"
    next
end
```

To create an IPsec aggregate interface:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit "agg2"
        set member "vd2-p1" "vd2-p2"
        set algorithm L3
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "agg2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.11.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set remote-ip 172.16.11.1 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

To configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf ""virtual-wan-link""
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To configure SD-WAN:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "agg2"
            set gateway 172.16.11.1
        next
    end
end
```

Related diagnose commands

To display aggregate IPsec members:

```
# diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list
agg1 algo=L3 member=2 run_tally=2
members:
        vd1-p1
        vd1-p2
```

To check the VPN status:

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=vd1-p1 ver=1 serial=2 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.201.2:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=10 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/520 options[0208]=npu frag-rfc
run_state=1 accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=5 ilast=15 olast=676 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd1-p1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=1 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=vd1-p2 ver=1 serial=3 172.16.203.1:0->172.16.202.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=28 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/520 options[0208]=npu frag-rfc
run_state=1 accept_traffic=1

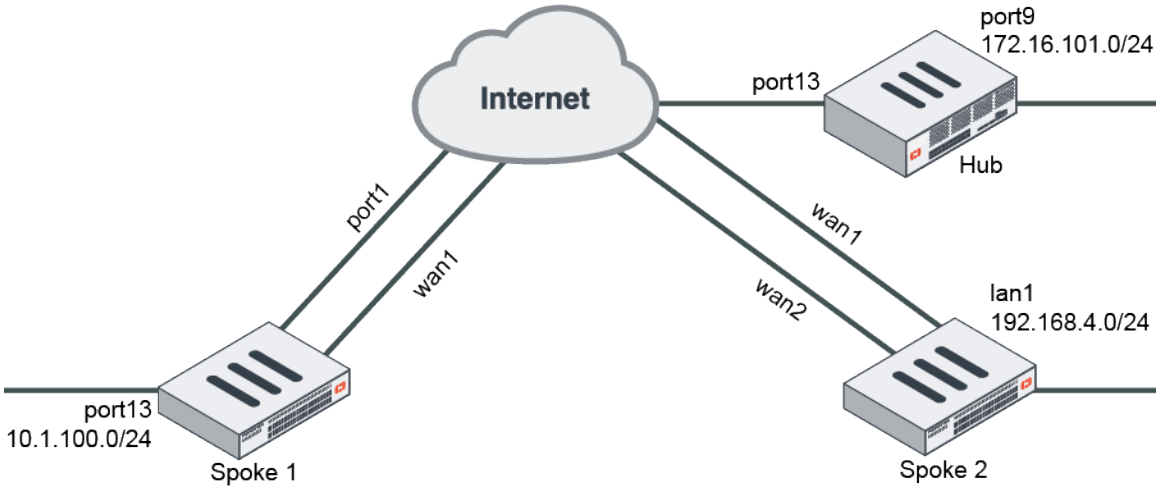
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=1 olast=1 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=1686 rxb=16602 txb=111717
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd1-p2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=9 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=4 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42164/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=697 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42902/43200
  dec: spi=f6ae9f83 esp=aes key=16 f6855c72295e3c5c49646530e6b96002
       ah=sha1 key=20 f983430d6c161d0a4cd9007c7ae057f1ff011334
  enc: spi=8c72ba1a esp=aes key=16 6330f8c532a6ca5c5765f6a9a6034427
       ah=sha1 key=20 e5fe385ed5f0f6a33f1d507601b15743a8c70187
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16536, enc:pkts/bytes=1686/223872
  npu_flag=02 npu_rgwy=172.16.202.2 npu_lgwy=172.16.203.1 npu_selid=2 dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=0
```

Redundant hub and spoke VPN

A redundant hub and spoke configuration allows VPN connections to radiate from a central FortiGate unit (the hub) to multiple remote peers (the spokes). Traffic can pass between private networks behind the hub and private networks behind the remote peers. Traffic can also pass between remote peer private networks through the hub.

This is a sample configuration of hub and spoke IPsec VPN. The following applies for this scenario:

- The spokes have two WAN interfaces and two IPsec VPN tunnels for redundancy.
- The secondary VPN tunnel is up only when the primary tunnel is down by dead peer detection.



Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

To configure redundant hub and spoke VPN using the FortiOS CLI:

1. Configure the hub.
   a. Configure the WAN, internal interface, and static route.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "port13"
         set alias "WAN"
         set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit "port9"
         set alias "Internal"
         set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
   config router static
      edit 1
         set gateway 172.16.202.2
         set device "port13"
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.
   ```
   config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
      edit "hub"
         set type dynamic
         set interface "port13"
         set peertype any
         set net-device enable
         set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
         set dpd on-idle
         set psksecret sample
         set dpd-retryinterval 60
      next
   ```

```
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "hub"
      set phase1name "hub"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
   next
end
```

c. Configure the firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "spoke-hub"
      set srcintf "hub"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "spoke-spoke"
      set srcintf "hub"
      set dstintf "hub"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

2. Configure the spokes.

a. Configure the WAN, internal interface, and static route.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
   edit "port1"
      set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
   next
   edit "wan1"
      set mode dhcp
      set distance 10
      set priority 100
   next
   edit "dmz"
      set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.2
      set device "port1"
   next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config system interface
   edit "wan1"
```

```
      set ip 172.16.200.3 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
      set mode dhcp
      set distance 10
      set priority 100
    next
    edit "lan1"
      set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
  config router static
    edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.2
      set device "wan1"
    next
  end
```

b. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit "primary"
    set interface "port1"
    set peertype any
    set net-device enable
    set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
    set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
    set psksecret sample
    next
  edit "secondary"
    set interface "wan1"
    set peertype any
    set net-device enable
    set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
    set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
    set monitor "primary"
    set psksecret sample
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
  edit "primary"
    set phase1name "primary"
    set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
         aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    set auto-negotiate enable
    set src-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
  next
  edit "secondary"
    set phase1name "secondary"
    set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
         aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    set auto-negotiate enable
    set src-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
  next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
```

```
    edit "primary"
      set interface "wan1"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set psksecret sample
      next
    edit "secondary"
      set interface "wan2"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set monitor "primary"
      set psksecret sample
      next
  end
  config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "primary"
      set phase1name "primary"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
      set src-subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "secondary"
      set phase1name "secondary"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
      set src-subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
```

c. Configure the firewall policy.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set srcintf "dmz"
    set dstintf "primary" "secondary"
    set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
    set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set srcintf "lan1"
    set dstintf "primary" "secondary"
    set srcaddr "192.168.4.0"
    set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
```

```
        set service "ALL"
      next
    end
```

d. Configure the static route.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config router static
  edit 3
    set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
    set distance 1
    set device "primary"
  next
  edit 4
    set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
    set distance 3
    set device "secondary"
  next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config router static
  edit 3
    set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
    set distance 1
    set device "primary"
  next
  edit 4
    set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
    set distance 3
    set device "secondary"
  next
end
```

3. Run `diagnose` and `get` commands.

a. Run the `Spoke1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
name=primary ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=15 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1879 txp=1881 rxb=225480 txb=112860
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=primary proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227
       type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41002/0B replaywin=2048
    seqno=758 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000758 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200 dec: spi=0908732f esp=aes key=16
       20770dfe67ea22dd8ec32c44d84ef4d5
    ah=sha1 key=20 edc89fc2ec06309ba13de95e7e486f9b795b8707
  enc: spi=a1d9eed1 esp=aes key=16 8eeea2526fba062e680d941083c8b5d1
    ah=sha1 key=20 f0f5deaf88b2a69046c3154e9f751739b3f411f5
  dec:pkts/bytes=1879/112740, enc:pkts/bytes=1879/225480
name=secondary ver=1 serial=2 172.17.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=1892 olast=1892 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
```

```
proxyid=secondary proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

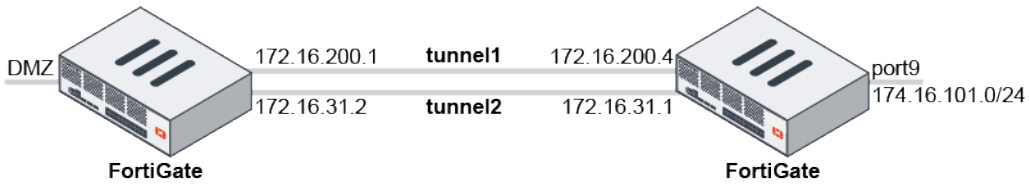
b. Run the `Spoke1 # get router info routing-table static` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
.................
S 172.16.101.0/24 [1/0] is directly connected, primary
```

Weighted round robin for IPsec aggregate tunnels

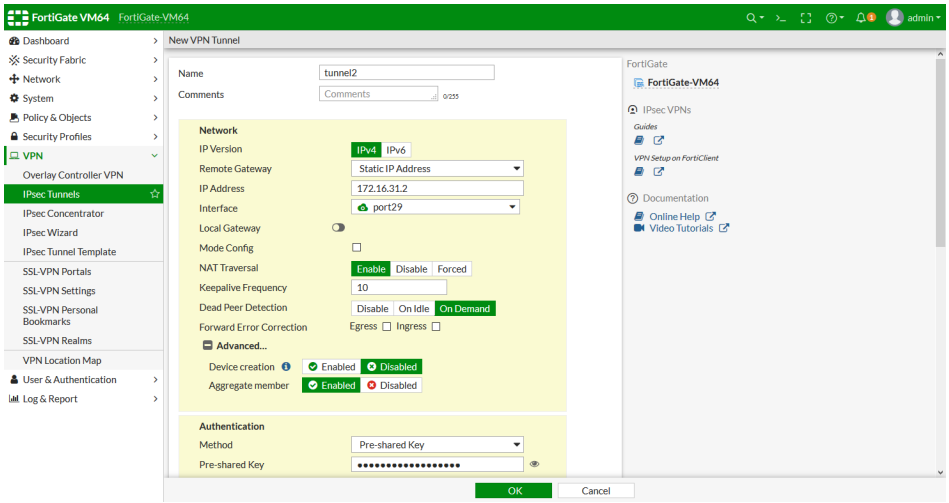
A weighted round robin algorithm can be used for IPsec aggregate tunnels to distribute traffic by the weight of each member tunnel.

In this example, the FortiGate has two IPsec tunnels put into IPsec aggregate. Traffic is distributed among the members, with one third over *tunnel1*, and two thirds over *tunnel2*. To achieve this, the weighted round robin algorithm is selected, *tunnel1* is assigned a weight of 10, and *tunnel2* is assigned a weight of 20.



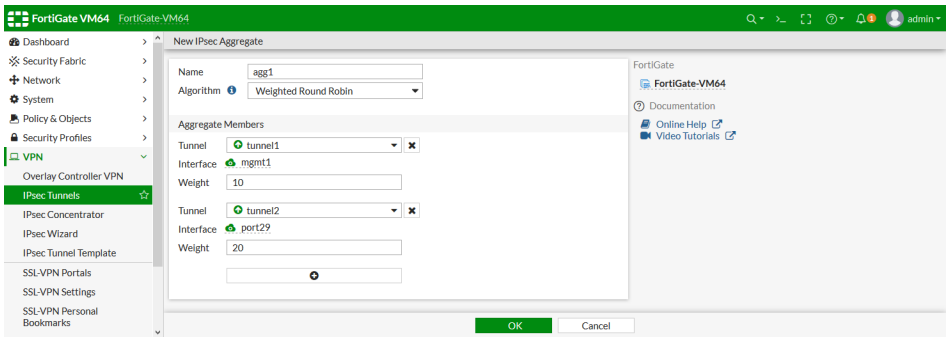
To create the IPsec aggregate in the GUI:

1. Create the *tunnel1* and *tunnel2* custom IPsec tunnels. Ensure that *Aggregate member* is *Enabled* for each tunnel.

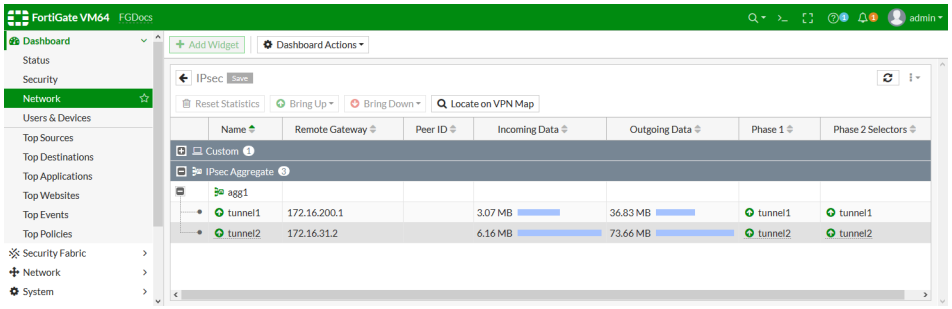


2. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and click *Create New* > *IPsec Aggregate*.
3. Enter a name for the aggregate, such as *agg1*, and ensure that *Algorithm* is *Weighted Round Robin*.
4. Add *tunnel1* as an aggregate members, and set *Weight* to *10*.

5. Add *tunnel2* as a second aggregate members, and set its *Weight* to *20*.



6. Click *OK*.
7. To view and monitor the aggregate tunnel statistics, go to the *IPsec* widget on the *Network* dashboard.



To create the IPsec aggregate in the CLI:

1. Create the *tunnel1* and *tunnel2* custom IPsec tunnels with aggregate-member enabled and aggregate-weight set for both tunnels:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "tunnel1"
        ...
        set aggregate-member enable
        set aggregate-weight 10
        ...
    next
    edit "tunnel2"
        ...
        set aggregate-member enable
        set aggregate-weight 20
        ...
    next
end
```

2. Create the IPsec aggregate:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit "agg1"
        set member "tunnel1" "tunnel2"
        set algorithm weighted-round-robin
    next
end
```

Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN)

Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) is a cloud based solution to simplify IPsec VPN setup. When OCVPN is enabled, IPsec phase1-interfaces, phase2-interfaces, static routes, and firewall policies are generated automatically on all FortiGates that belong to the same community network. A community network is defined as all FortiGates registered to FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

If the network topology changes on any FortiGates in the community (such as changing a public IP address in DHCP mode, adding or removing protected subnets, failing over in dual WAN), the IPsec-related configuration for all devices is updated with Cloud assistance in self-learning mode. No intervention is required.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring OCVPN:

- Full mesh OCVPN on page 1658
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with ADVPN shortcut on page 1663
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT on page 1667
- OCVPN portal on page 1671
- SD-WAN integration with OCVPN on page 783
- Allow FortiClient to join OCVPN on page 1672
- Troubleshooting OCVPN on page 1676

Full mesh OCVPN

This example shows how to configure a full mesh Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN), establishing full mesh IPsec tunnels between all of the FortiGates.

License

- Free license: Three devices full mesh, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.
- Full License: Maximum of 16 devices, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.

Prerequisites

- All FortiGates must be running FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.
- All FortiGates must have Internet access.
- All FortiGates must be registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

Restrictions

- Non-root VDOMs do not support OCVPN.
- FortiOS 6.2.x is not compatible with FortiOS 6.0.x.

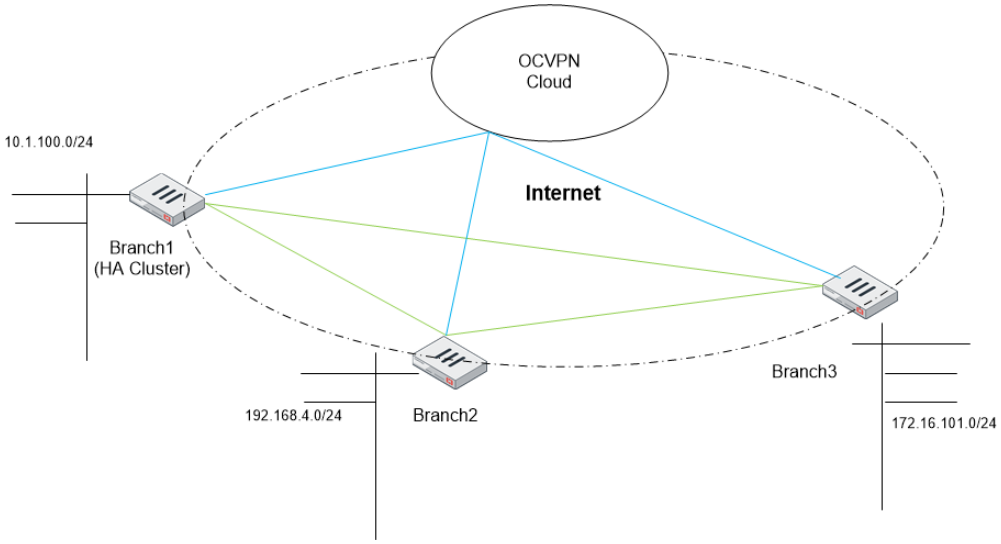
Terminology

Poll-interval	How often FortiGate tries to fetch OCVPN-related data from OCVPN Cloud.
Role	The device OCVPN role of spoke, primary-hub, or secondary-hub.
Overlay	Defines network overlays and bind to subnets.

Subnet	Internal network subnet (IPsec protected subnet). Traffic to or from this subnet enters the IPsec tunnel encrypted by IPsec SA.

Sample topology

The following example shows three FortiGate units registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account. Each FortiGate unit has one internal subnet, and no NAT exists between the units.



Sample configuration

The following overlays and subnets are used:

- Branch1:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 10.1.100.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 10.2.100.0/24
- Branch2:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local interfaces: lan1
  - Overlay name: PM. Local interfaces: lan2
- Branch3:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 172.16.101.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 172.16.102.0/24



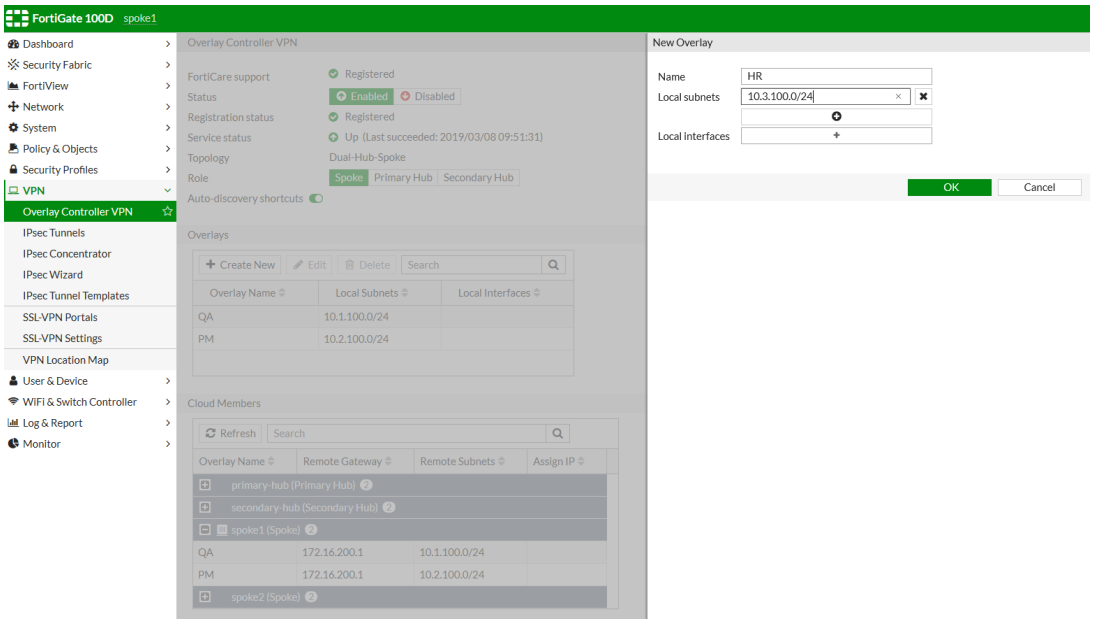
The overlay names on each device must be the same for local and remote selector pairs to be negotiated.

To register FortiGates on FortiCare:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* > *License Information* > *FortiCare Support*.
2. To register, click *Register* or *Launch Portal*.
3. Complete the options to register FortiGate on FortiCare.

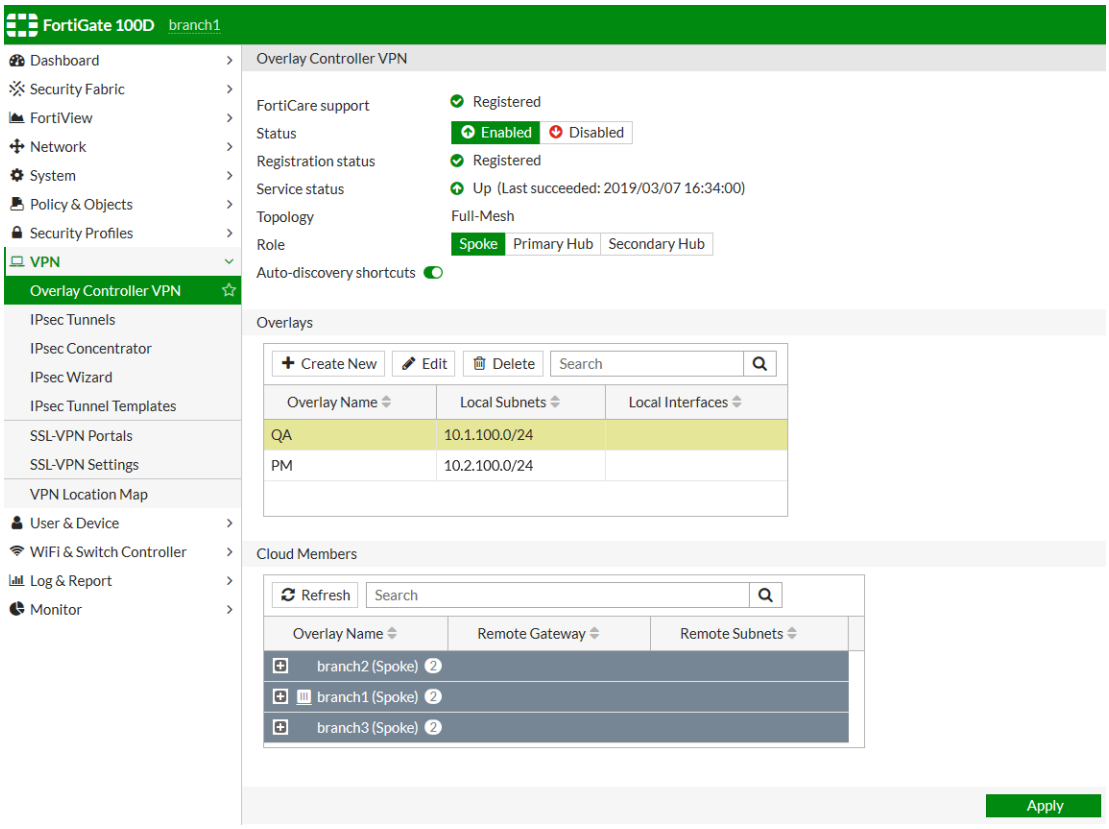
To enable OCVPN in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN*.
2. Create the first overlay by setting the following options:
   a. For *Status*, click *Enabled*.
   b. For *Role*, click *Spoke*.
   c. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New* to create a network overlay.



3. Specify the *Name*, *Local subnets*, and/or *Local interfaces*.
   The local subnet must be routable and interfaces must have IP addresses.

4. Click *OK*.



5. Click *Apply* to commit the configuration.
6. Repeat this procedure to create all the overlays.

To enable OCVPN in the CLI:

1. Configure Branch1:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set multipath disable
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.2.100.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

2. Configure Branch2:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set multipath disable
    config overlays
         edit 1
             set name "QA"
             config subnets
                  edit 1
                        set type interface
                        set interface "lan1"
                  next
             end
         next
         edit 2
             set name "PM"
             config subnets
                  edit 1
                        set type interface
                        set interface "lan2"
                  next
             end
         next
    end
end
```

3. Configure Branch3:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set multipath disable
    config overlays
         edit 1
             set name "QA"
             config subnets
                 edit 1
                     set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                 next
             end
         next
         edit 1
             set name "PM"
             config subnets
                 edit 1
                     set subnet 172.16.102.0 255.255.255.0
                 next
             end
         next
    end
end
```

Hub-spoke OCVPN with ADVPN shortcut

This topic shows a sample configuration of a hub-spoke One-Click VPN (OCVPN) with an Auto Discovery VPN (ADVPN) shortcut. OCVPN automatically detects the network topology based on members' information. To form a hub-spoke OCVPN, at least one device must announce its role as the primary hub, another device can work as the secondary hub (for redundancy), while others function as spokes.

License

- Free license: Hub-spoke network topology not supported.
- Full license: Maximum of 2 hubs, 10 overlays, 64 subnets per overlay; 1024 spokes, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.

Prerequisites

- All FortiGates must be running FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.
- All FortiGates must have Internet access.
- All FortiGates must be registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

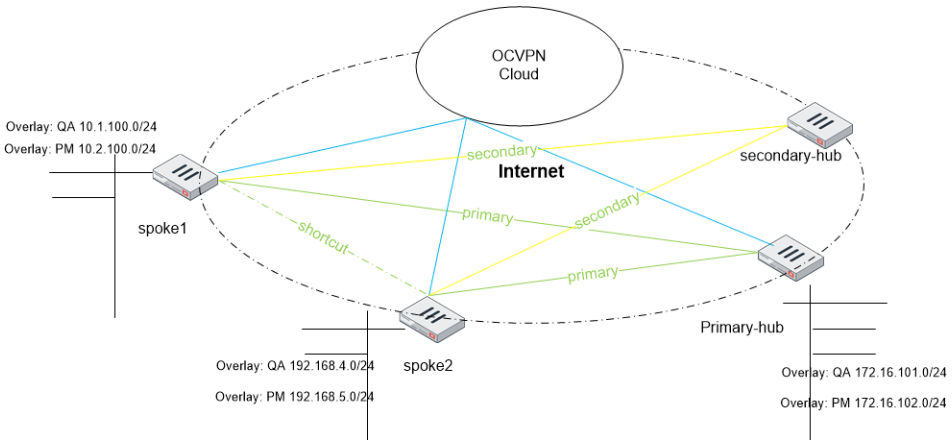
Restrictions

- Non-root VDOMs do not support OCVPN.
- FortiOS 6.2.x is not compatible with FortiOS 6.0.x.

OCVPN device roles

- Primary hub.
- Secondary hub.
- Spoke (OCVPN default role).

Sample topology



Sample configuration

The steps below use the following overlays and subnets for the sample configuration:

- Primary hub:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 172.16.101.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 172.16.102.0/24
- Secondary hub:
  - Overlays are synced from primary hub.
- Spoke1:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 10.1.100.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 10.2.100.0/24
- Spoke2:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local interfaces: lan1
  - Overlay name: PM. Local interfaces: lan2



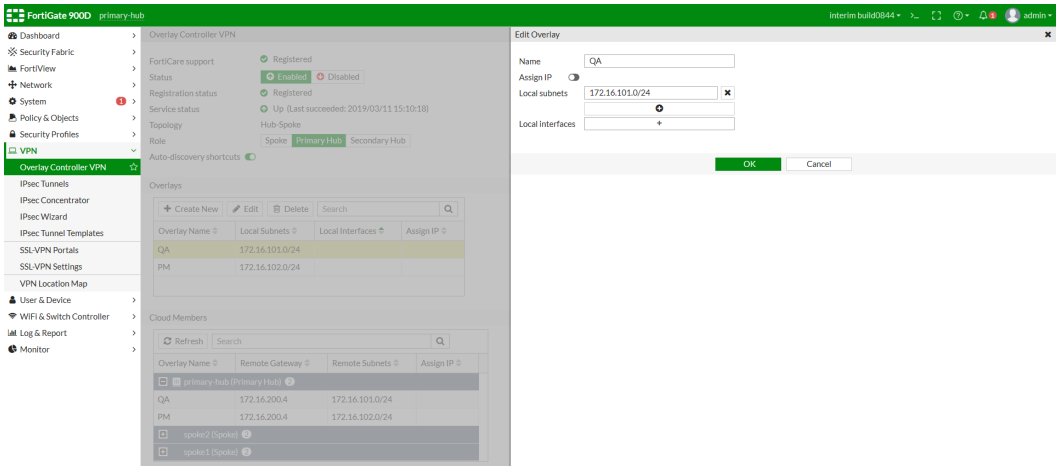
The overlay names on each device must be the same for local and remote selector pairs to be negotiated.

To register FortiGates on FortiCare:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* > *License Information* > *FortiCare Support*.
2. To register, click *Register* or *Launch Portal*.
3. Complete the options to register FortiGate on FortiCare.

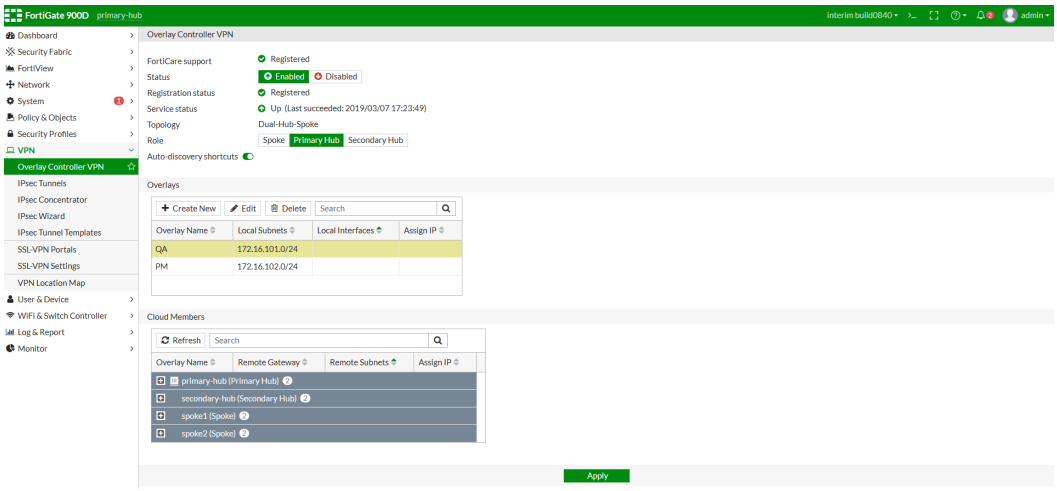
To enable hub-spoke OCVPN in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN*.
2. Configure the OCVPN primary hub by setting the following options:
   a. For *Status*, click *Enabled*.
   b. For *Role*, click *Primary Hub*.
   c. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New* to create a network overlay.



   d. Specify the *Name*, *Local subnets*, and/or *Local interfaces*. Then click *OK*.

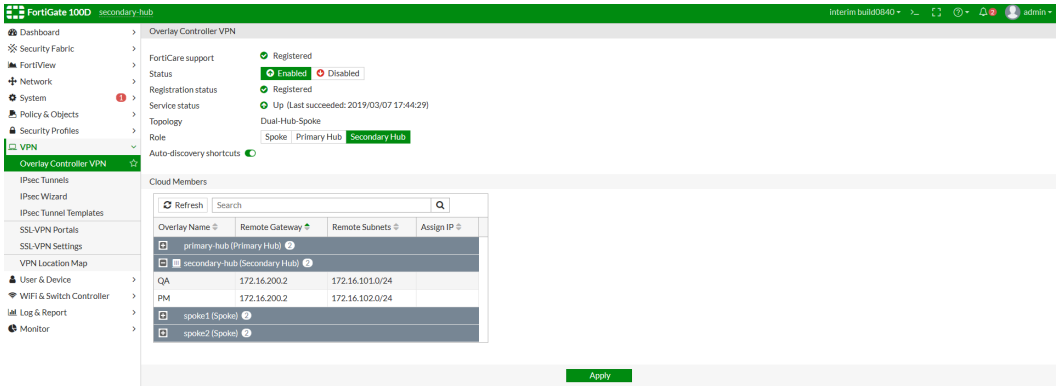
e. Click *Apply* to commit the configuration.



3. Configure the OCVPN secondary hub:
Overlays are synced from the primary hub and cannot be defined in the secondary hub.

a. In the *Overlay Controller VPN* pane, select *Secondary Hub* for the *Role*.

b. Select *Apply* to commit the configuration.



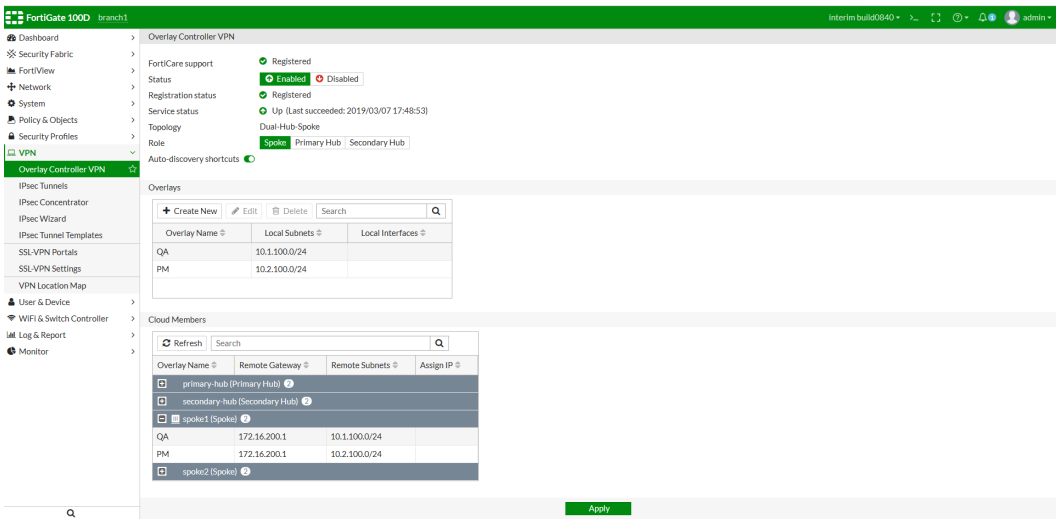
4. Configure the OCVPN spokes:

a. In the *Overlay Controller VPN* pane, select *Spoke* for the *Role*.

b. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New* to create a network overlay.

c. Specify the *Name*, *Local subnets*, and/or *Local interfaces*.
The local subnet must be routable and interfaces must have IP addresses.

d. Click *OK* and then click *Apply* to commit the configuration.



To enable hub-spoke OCVPN in the CLI:

1. Configure the OCVPN primary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role primary-hub
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.102.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the OCVPN secondary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role secondary-hub
end
```

3. Configure the OCVPN spoke1:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
```

```
        config overlays
            edit 1
                set name "QA"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
            edit 2
                set name "PM"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 10.2.100.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
```

4. Configure the OCVPN spoke2:

```
    config vpn ocvpn
        set status enable
        config overlays
            edit 1
                set name "QA"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
            edit 2
                set name "PM"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
```

Hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT

This topic shows a sample configuration of hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT. OCVPN isolates traffic between overlays by default. With NAT enabled on spokes and `assign-ip` enabled on hub, you can have inter-overlay communication.

Inter-overlay communication means devices from any source addresses and any source interfaces can communicate with any devices in overlays' subnets when the overlay option `assign-ip` is enabled.

You must first disable `auto-discovery` before you can enable NAT.

License

- Free license: Hub-spoke network topology not supported.
- Full License: Maximum of 2 hubs, 10 overlays, 64 subnets per overlay; 1024 spokes, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.

Prerequisites

- All FortiGates must be running FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.
- All FortiGates must have Internet access.
- All FortiGates must be registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

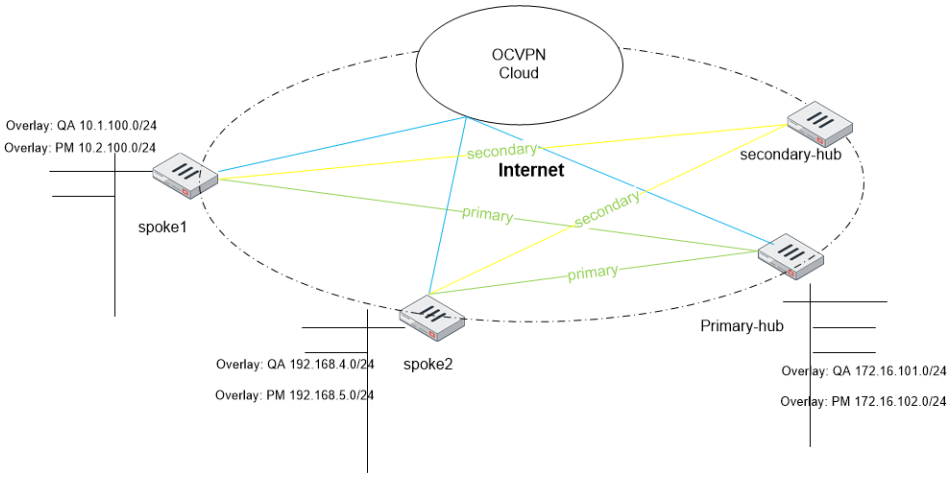
Restrictions

- Non-root VDOMs do not support OCVPN.
- FortiOS 6.2.x is not compatible with FortiOS 6.0.x.

OCVPN device roles

- Primary hub.
- Secondary hub.
- Spoke (OCVPN default role).

Sample topology



Sample configuration

You can only configure this feature using the CLI.



The overlay names on each device must be the same for local and remote selector pairs to be negotiated.

To enable inter-overlay source NAT in the CLI:

1. Configure the primary hub, enable overlay QA, and configure `assign-ip` and IP range:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role primary-hub
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            set assign-ip enable
            set ipv4-start-ip 172.16.101.100
            set ipv4-end-ip 172.16.101.200
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            set assign-ip enable
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.102.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the secondary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role secondary-hub
end
```

3. Configure spoke1 and enable NAT on the spoke:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set auto-discovery disable
    set nat enable
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.2.100.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

4. Configure spoke2 and enable NAT on the spoke:

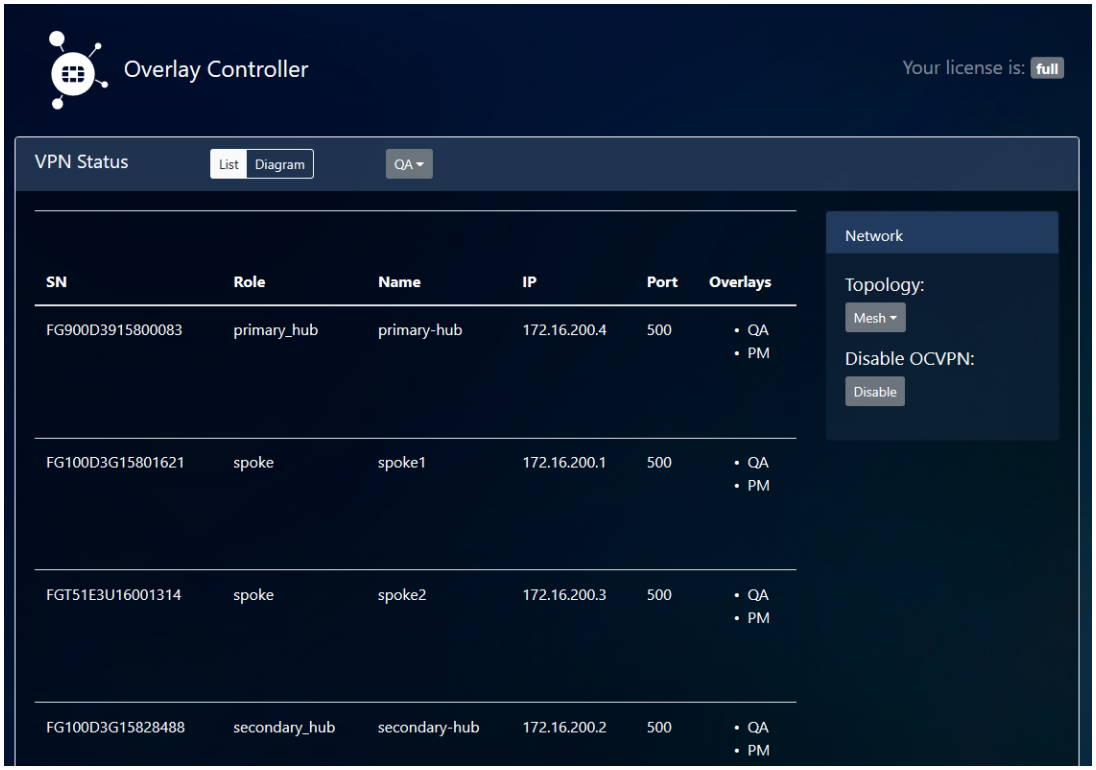
```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set auto-discovery disable
    set nat enable
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

A firewall policy with NAT is generated on the spoke:

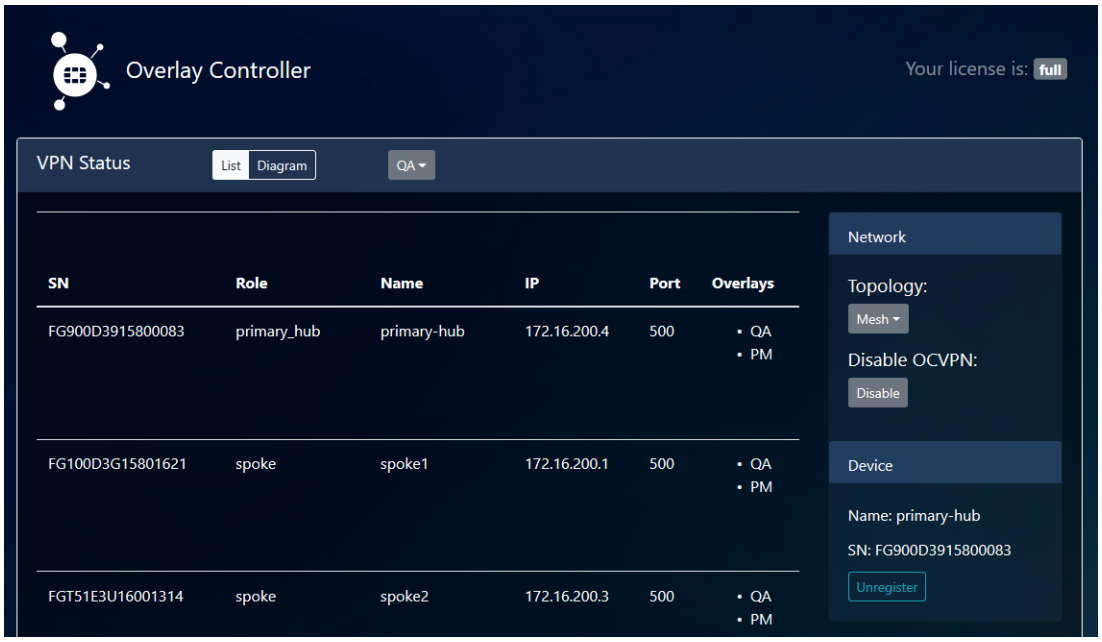
```
edit 9
   set name "_OCVPN2-1.1_nat"
   set uuid 3f7a84b8-3d36-51e9-ee97-8f418c91e666
   set srcintf "any"
   set dstintf "_OCVPN2-1.1"
   set srcaddr "all"
   set dstaddr "_OCVPN2-1.1_remote_networks"
   set action accept
   set schedule "always"
   set service "ALL"
   set comments "Generated by OCVPN Cloud Service."
   set nat enable
next
```

OCVPN portal

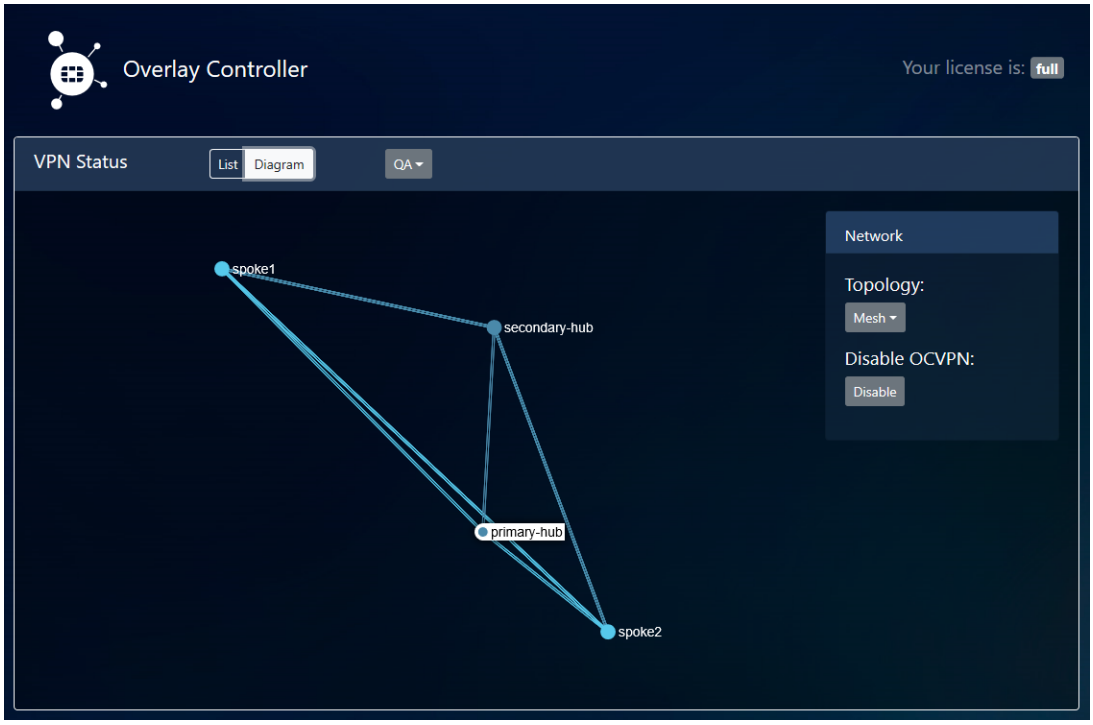
When you log into the OCVPN portal, the OCVPN license type and device information display. The device information includes the device serial number, OCVPN role, hostname, public IP address, port number, and overlays.



You can unregister an OCVPN device from the OCVPN portal under *Device* on the right pane.

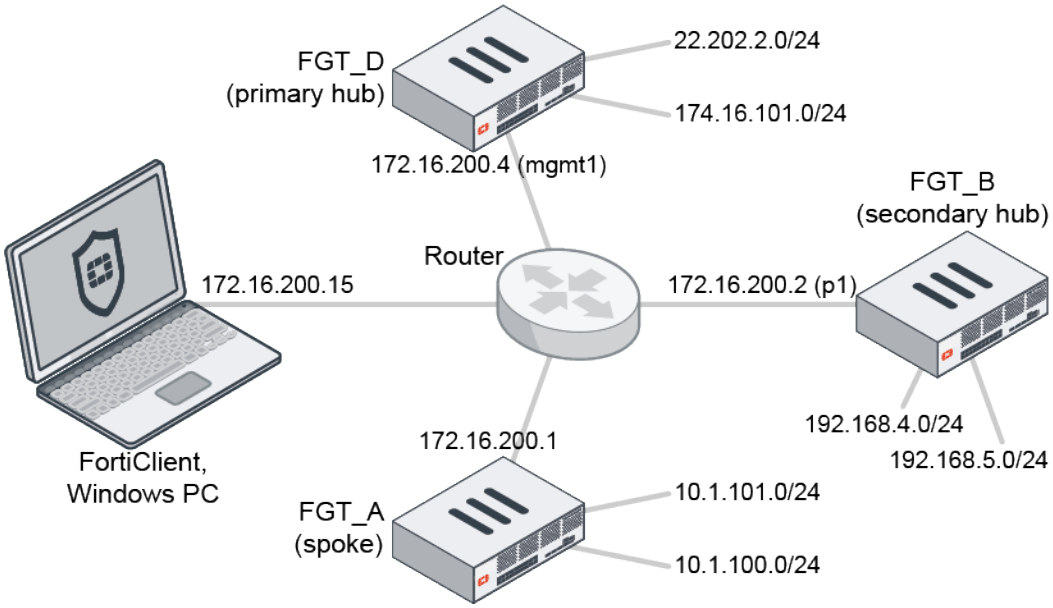


Use the OCVPN *Diagram* to show the OCVPN network topology.



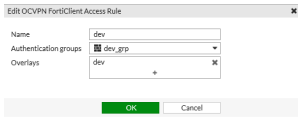
Allow FortiClient to join OCVPN

Administrators can configure remote access for FortiClient within an OCVPN hub. This provides simple configurations to allow a user group access to an overlay network.



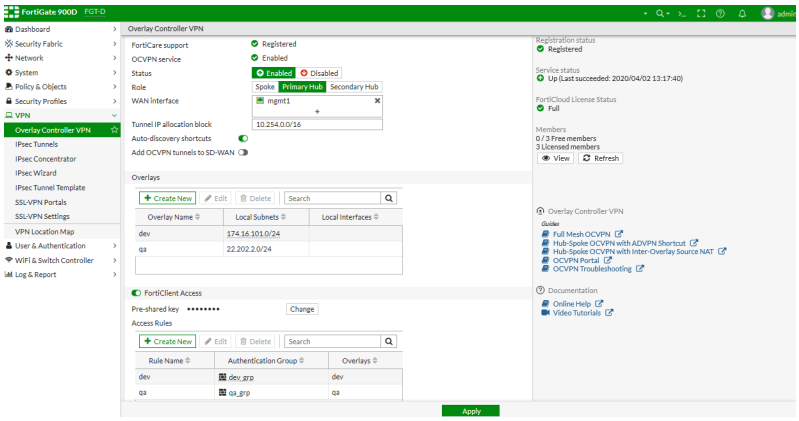
To configure remote FortiClient access to an OCVPN hub in the GUI:

1. On the primary hub, configure the users and user groups required for the FortiClient dialup user authentication and authorization. In this example, there are two user groups (*dev_grp* and *qa_grp*).
2. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN* and in the *Overlays* section, click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name and the local subnet (174.16.101.0/24 for *dev* and 22.202.2.0/24 for *qa*).
4. Enable *FortiClient Access*.
5. In the *Access Rules* section, click *Create New*.
6. Enter a name, and select the authentication groups and overlays.



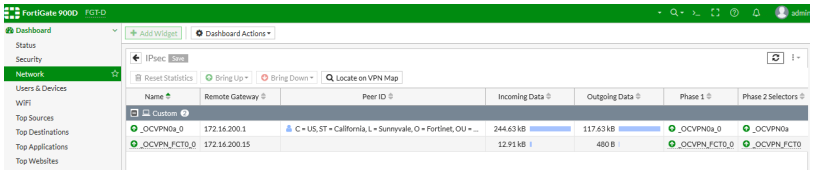
The authentication groups will be used by the IPsec phase 1 interface for authentication, and by firewall policies for authorization. The overlay allows access to the resource.

7. Click *OK*.
8. Create more rules if needed.
9. Click *Apply*.



To view the tunnel status and activity in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Click the *IPsec* widget to expand to full screen view.



To configure remote FortiClient access to an OCVPN hub in the CLI:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role primary-hub
    set wan-interface "mgmt1"
    set ip-allocation-block 10.254.0.0 255.255.0.0
    config overlays
        edit "dev"
```

```
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 174.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit "qa"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 22.202.2.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
    config forticlient-access
        set status enable
        set psksecret xxxxxxxxxxxx
        config auth-groups
            edit "dev"
                set auth-group "dev_grp"
                set overlays "dev"
            next
            edit "qa"
                set auth-group "qa_grp"
                set overlays "qa"
            next
        end
    end
end
```

To view the tunnel status and activity in the CLI:

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list

vd: root/0
name: _OCVPN_FCT0_0
version: 1
interface: mgmt1 4
addr: 172.16.200.4:4500 -> 172.16.200.15:64916
created: 110s ago
xauth-user: usera
groups:
  dev_grp 1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.254.128.1/255.255.255.255
nat: peer
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 20/20/20 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms

  id/spi: 72 1ccd2abf2d981123/fd8da107f9e4d312
  direction: responder
  status: established 110-110s ago = 20ms
  proposal: aes256-sha256
  key: 105a0291b0c05219-3decdf78938a7bea-78943651e1720536-625114d66e46f668
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/86019
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000af3
```

To view data on the PC running FortiClient:

```
C:\ route print
===========================================================================

IPv4 Route Table
===========================================================================
Active Routes:
Network Destination        Netmask          Gateway       Interface  Metric
          0.0.0.0          0.0.0.0       10.1.100.5      10.1.100.13    281
       10.1.100.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
      10.1.100.13  255.255.255.255         On-link      10.1.100.13    281
       10.1.101.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
        10.6.30.0    255.255.255.0         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
       10.6.30.13  255.255.255.255         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
      10.6.30.255  255.255.255.255         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
       10.254.0.0      255.255.0.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
     10.254.128.1  255.255.255.255         On-link     10.254.128.1    257
       22.202.2.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
        127.0.0.0        255.0.0.0         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
        127.0.0.1  255.255.255.255         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
  127.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
     172.16.200.4  255.255.255.255       10.1.100.5      10.1.100.13     25
     174.16.101.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link      10.254.128.1    257
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link       10.1.100.13    281
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link      10.254.128.1    257
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link       10.1.100.13    281
===========================================================================
Persistent Routes:
  Network Address          Netmask  Gateway Address  Metric
          0.0.0.0          0.0.0.0       10.1.100.5  Default
```

The PC can access the *dev* resource overlay, but not *qa*:

```
C:\Users\tester>ping 174.16.101.44

Pinging 174.16.101.44 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63

Ping statistics for 174.16.101.44:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
    Minimum = 1ms, Maximum = 1ms, Average = 1ms

C:\Users\tester>ping 22.202.2.2

Pinging 22.202.2.2 with 32 bytes of data:
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
```

```
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 22.202.2.2:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
```

Troubleshooting OCVPN

This document includes troubleshooting steps for the following OCVPN network topologies:

- Full mesh OCVPN.
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with ADVPN shortcut.
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT.

For OCVPN configurations in other network topologies, see the other OCVPN topics.

Troubleshooting full mesh network topology

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Full-Mesh
Role                 : Spoke
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Thu Feb 28 18:42:25 2019
Update time          : Thu Feb 28 15:57:18 2019
Poll time            : Fri Mar  1 15:02:28 2019
```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-meta`

```
Topology :: auto
License  :: full
Members  :: 3
Max-free :: 3
```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-overlays`

```
QA
PM
```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-members`

```
Member: { "SN": "FG100D3G15801621", "IPv4": "172.16.200.1", "port": "500", "slot": 1000,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "10.1.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"10.2.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "Name": "FortiGate-
100D", "topology_role": "spoke" }
Member: { "SN": "FG900D3915800083", "IPv4": "172.16.200.4", "port": "500", "slot": 1001,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "Name": "Branch3",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
Member: { "SN": "FGT51E3U16001314", "IPv4": "172.16.200.199", "port": "500", "slot":
1002, "overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "192.168.4.0\/255.255.255.0" ],
"ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"192.168.5.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "Name": "Branch2",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-3.1 ver=2 serial=4 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.199:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=7 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=7 rxb=0 txb=588
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=6
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=8 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0-10.1.100.255:0
  dst: 0:192.168.4.0-192.168.4.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42923/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb752 esp=aes key=16 3c5ceeff3cac1eaa2702b5ccb713ab9b
       ah=sha1 key=20 5903e358b3d8938ee64f0412887a0fe741ccb105
  enc: spi=b5bd4fe1 esp=aes key=16 8ae97a8abe24dae725d614d2a6efdcb0
       ah=sha1 key=20 9ec200d9c0cef9e1b7cf76e05dbf344c70f53214
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=7/1064
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-4.1 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=19 olast=19 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=7 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0-10.1.100.255:0
  dst: 0:172.16.101.0-172.16.101.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42911/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb750 esp=aes key=16 8c9844a8bcd3fda6c7bd8a4f2ec81ef1
       ah=sha1 key=20 680c7144346f5b52126cbad9f325821b048c7192
  enc: spi=f2d1f2d4 esp=aes key=16 f9625fc8590152829eb39eecab3a3999
       ah=sha1 key=20 5df8447416da541fa54dde9fa3e5c35fbfc4723f
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-3.2 ver=2 serial=3 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.199:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=6 olast=6 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
```

```
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=8 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0-10.2.100.255:0
  dst: 0:192.168.5.0-192.168.5.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42923/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb753 esp=aes key=16 58ddfad9a3699f1c49f3a9f369145c28
       ah=sha1 key=20 e749c7e6a7aaff119707c792eb73cd975127873b
  enc: spi=b5bd4fe2 esp=aes key=16 8f2366e653f5f9ad6587be1ce1905764
       ah=sha1 key=20 5347bf24e51219d483c0f7b058eceab202026204
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.2 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-4.2 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=17 olast=17 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=7 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0-10.2.100.255:0
  dst: 0:172.16.102.0-172.16.102.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42905/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42927/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb751 esp=aes key=16 41449ee5ea43d3e1f80df05fc632cd44
       ah=sha1 key=20 3ca2aea1c8764f35ccf987cdeca7cf6eb54331fb
  enc: spi=f2d1f2d5 esp=aes key=16 9010dd57e502c6296b27a4649a45a6ba
       ah=sha1 key=20 caf86a176ce04464221543f15fc3c63fc573b8ee
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.2 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

- Branch_1 # `get router info routing-table all`

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-3.2
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-4.1
```

```
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-4.2
S       192.168.4.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-3.1
```

Troubleshooting hub-spoke with ADVPN shortcut

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Primary-Hub
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 11:31:54 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 11:46:02 2019
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Spoke
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 11:41:22 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 11:46:44 2019
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-members`

```
Member: { "sn": "FG900D3915800083", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.4", "port": 500, "slot": 0,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Primary-
Hub", "topology_role": "primary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15828488", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.2", "port": 500, "slot": 1,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Secondary-
Hub", "topology_role": "secondary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15801621", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.1", "port": 500, "slot": 1000,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "10.1.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"10.2.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke1",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
Member: { "sn": "FGT51E3U16001314", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.3", "port": 500, "slot": 1001,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "192.168.4.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"192.168.5.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke2",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-meta`

```
Topology :: auto
License  :: full
Members  :: 4
Max-free :: 3
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-overlays`

```
QA
PM
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=34 rxb=152 txb=2856
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=46
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42895/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c7 esp=aes key=16 240e064c0f1c980ca31980b9e7605c9d
       ah=sha1 key=20 6ff022cbebcaff4c5de62eefb2e6180c40a3adb2
  enc: spi=dfcffa86 esp=aes key=16 862208de164a02af377756c2bcabd588
       ah=sha1 key=20 af6e54781fd42d7a2ba2119ec95d0f95629c8448
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=8 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=934 olast=934 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=12 olast=12 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=46
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42895/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c8 esp=aes key=16 701ec608767f4988b76c2f662464e654
       ah=sha1 key=20 93c65d106dc610d7ee3f04487f08601a9e00ffdd
  enc: spi=dfcffa87 esp=aes key=16 02b2d04dce3d81ebab69e128d45cb7ca
       ah=sha1 key=20 4a9283847f852c83a75691fad44d07d8409a2267
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=7 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
```

```
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=934 olast=934 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

- Spoke1 # `get router info routing-table all`

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
```

- Generate traffic from spoke1 to spoke2 to trigger the ADVPN shortcut and check the VPN tunnel and routing-table again on spoke1.

```
branch1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0_0 ver=2 serial=a 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.3:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/720 options
[02d0]=create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=_OCVPN2-0.0 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=7 txp=7 rxb=1064 txb=588
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate add-route adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0-10.1.100.255:0
  dst: 0:192.168.4.0-192.168.4.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=43180/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000008 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43187/43200
  dec: spi=048477c9 esp=aes key=16 27c35d53793013ef24cf887561e9f313
       ah=sha1 key=20 2c8cfd328c3b29104db0ca74a00c6063f46cafe4
  enc: spi=fb9e13fd esp=aes key=16 9d0d3bf6c84b7ddaf9d9196fe74002ed
       ah=sha1 key=20 d1f541db787dea384c6a4df16fc228abeb7ae334
```

```
  dec:pkts/bytes=7/588, enc:pkts/bytes=7/1064
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=12 ilast=7 olast=7 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=2 txp=35 rxb=304 txb=2940
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=65
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42500/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c7 esp=aes key=16 240e064c0f1c980ca31980b9e7605c9d
       ah=sha1 key=20 6ff022cbebcaff4c5de62eefb2e6180c40a3adb2
  enc: spi=dfcffa86 esp=aes key=16 862208de164a02af377756c2bcabd588
       ah=sha1 key=20 af6e54781fd42d7a2ba2119ec95d0f95629c8448
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/84, enc:pkts/bytes=1/152
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=8 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=1328 olast=1328 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=5 olast=5 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=66
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42500/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c8 esp=aes key=16 701ec608767f4988b76c2f662464e654
       ah=sha1 key=20 93c65d106dc610d7ee3f04487f08601a9e00ffdd
  enc: spi=dfcffa87 esp=aes key=16 02b2d04dce3d81ebab69e128d45cb7ca
       ah=sha1 key=20 4a9283847f852c83a75691fad44d07d8409a2267
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=7 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
```

```
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=1328 olast=1328 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0


Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [15/0] via 172.16.200.3, _OCVPN2-0.0_0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
```

- Simulate the primary hub being unavailable where all spokes' dialup VPN tunnels will switch to the secondary hub, to check VPN tunnel status and routing-table.

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=25 olast=25 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=82
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=8 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=14 olast=14 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=9
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
```

```
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42723/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=048477cd esp=aes key=16 9bb363a32378b5897cd42890c92df811
       ah=sha1 key=20 2ed40583b9544e37867349b4adc7c013024d7e17
  enc: spi=f345fb42 esp=aes key=16 3ea31dff3310b245700a131db4565851
       ah=sha1 key=20 522862dfb232514b845e436133b148da0e67b7c4
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=19 olast=19 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=83
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=7 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=12 olast=12 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=9
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42728/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42902/43200
  dec: spi=048477cf esp=aes key=16 b6f0ca7564abcd8559b5b0ebb3fd04c1
       ah=sha1 key=20 4130d040554b39daca72adac7583b9cc83cce3c8
  enc: spi=f345fb43 esp=aes key=16 727582f20fcedff884ba693ed2164bcd
       ah=sha1 key=20 b0a625803fde701ed9d28d256079e908954b7fc8
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0


Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
```

```
S       172.16.102.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.1
```

Troubleshooting hub-spoke with inter-overlay source NAT

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Primary-Hub
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 11:31:54 2019
Update time          : Sat Mar  2 13:57:05 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 14:03:31 2019
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Spoke
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 13:58:01 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 14:04:22 2019
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-members`

```
Member: { "sn": "FG900D3915800083", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.4", "port": 500, "slot": 0,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "172.16.101.100-172.16.101.200" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "172.16.102.100-172.16.102.200" } ],
"name": "Primary-Hub", "topology_role": "primary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_
discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15828488", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.2", "port": 500, "slot": 1,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Secondary-
Hub", "topology_role": "secondary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FGT51E3U16001314", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.3", "port": 500, "slot": 1001,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "192.168.4.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"192.168.5.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke2",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15801621", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.1", "port": 500, "slot": 1000,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "10.1.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"10.2.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke1",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-meta`

```
Topology :: auto
License  :: full
Members  :: 4
Max-free :: 3
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-overlays`

```
QA
PM
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=c 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=3 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=17 olast=17 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=29
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42299/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=0484795d esp=aes key=16 10eeb76fadd49f00c333350d83509095
       ah=sha1 key=20 971bde5dcfca7e52fd1573cb3489e9c855f6154e
  enc: spi=dfcffaaa esp=aes key=16 d07a4dd683ee093af2dca9485aa436eb
       ah=sha1 key=20 65369be35d5ecad8cae63557318419cd6005c230
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0_nat proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=3 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:172.16.101.101-172.16.101.101:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42303/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=04847961 esp=aes key=16 ea181036b02e8bc8711fb520b3e98a60
       ah=sha1 key=20 b3c449d96d5d3f090975087a62447f6918ce7930
  enc: spi=dfcffaac esp=aes key=16 f7ea5e42e9443698e6b8b32161ace40e
       ah=sha1 key=20 a7e36dd1ec0bdb6eff0aa66e442707427400c700
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=e 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=599 olast=599 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

```
---------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=b 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=3 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=17 olast=17 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=29
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42297/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42897/43200
  dec: spi=0484795e esp=aes key=16 106eaa95a2be64b566e7d1ca0aa88f6a
       ah=sha1 key=20 5dddfba7070b03d5a31931d41db06ff96e7bc542
  enc: spi=dfcffaab esp=aes key=16 29c774dbd7e54464ee298c381e71a94e
       ah=sha1 key=20 c3da7372789c0a53b3752e69baaba1a42d798820
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1_nat proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=3 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:172.16.102.101-172.16.102.101:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42307/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42902/43200
  dec: spi=04847962 esp=aes key=16 b7daa5807cfa86906592a012a9d2478f
       ah=sha1 key=20 39c8bb4c9e3f1e9e451f22c58a172ff01155055d
  enc: spi=dfcffaad esp=aes key=16 2ecc644def4cebe6b0c4b7729da43d8e
       ah=sha1 key=20 469c6f319e83bd73468f55d430566afcd6215138
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
---------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=d 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=599 olast=599 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

- Spoke1 # `get router info routing-table all`

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
```

```
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.101.101/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
C       172.16.102.101/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
```

- Spoke1 # `show firewall policy`

```
 ..............................

    edit 9
        set name "_OCVPN2-1.1_nat"
        set uuid 3f7a84b8-3d36-51e9-ee97-8f418c91e666
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "_OCVPN2-1.1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "_OCVPN2-1.1_remote_networks"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "Generated by OCVPN Cloud Service."
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 12
        set name "_OCVPN2-1.0_nat"
        set uuid 3fafec98-3d36-51e9-80c0-5d99325bad83
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "_OCVPN2-1.0"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "_OCVPN2-1.0_remote_networks"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "Generated by OCVPN Cloud Service."
        set nat enable
    next
   ..............................
```

ADVPN

Auto-Discovery VPN (ADVPN) allows the central hub to dynamically inform spokes about a better path for traffic between two spokes.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring ADVPN:

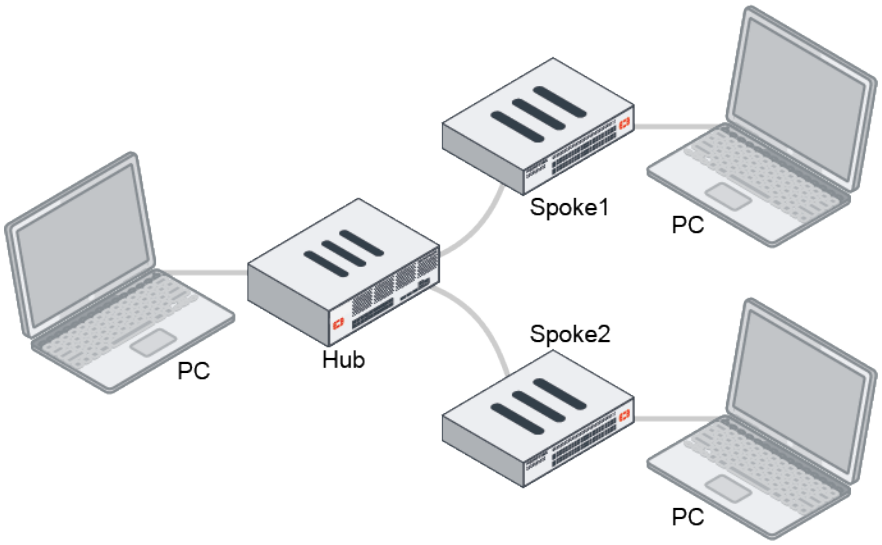
- IPsec VPN wizard hub-and-spoke ADVPN support on page 1689
- ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol on page 1693
- ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol on page 1702
- ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol on page 1711
- UDP hole punching for spokes behind NAT on page 1720

IPsec VPN wizard hub-and-spoke ADVPN support

When using the IPsec VPN wizard to create a hub and spoke VPN, multiple local interfaces can be selected. At the end of the wizard, changes can be reviewed, real-time updates can be made to the local address group and tunnel interface, and easy configuration keys can be copied for configuring the spokes.

When editing a VPN tunnel, the Hub & Spoke Topology section provides access to the easy configuration keys for the spokes, and allows you to add more spokes.

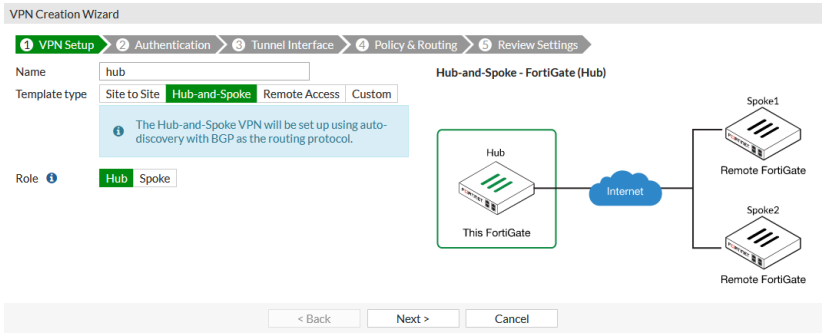
This example shows the configuration of a hub with two spokes.



To configure the hub:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Go through the steps of the wizard:
   a. *VPN Setup*:

Name	hub
Template Type	Hub-and-Spoke
Role	Hub



   b. *Authentication*:

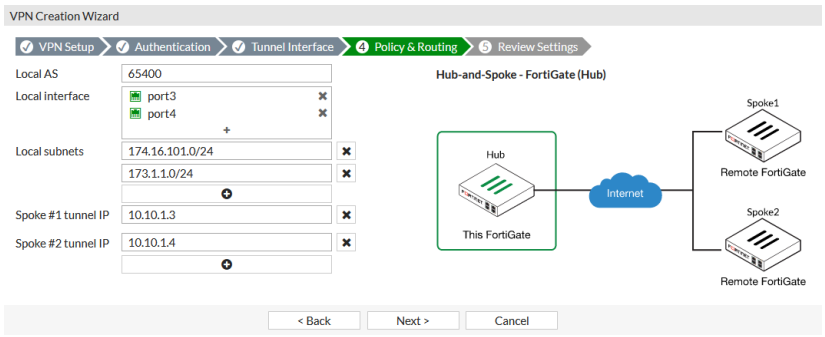
Incoming Interface	port1
Authentication method	Pre-shared Key
Pre-shared key	<key>

   c. *Tunnel Interface*:

Tunnel IP	10.10.1.1
Remote IP/netmask	10.10.1.2/24

   d. *Policy & Routing*:
   Multiple local interfaces and subnets can be configured.

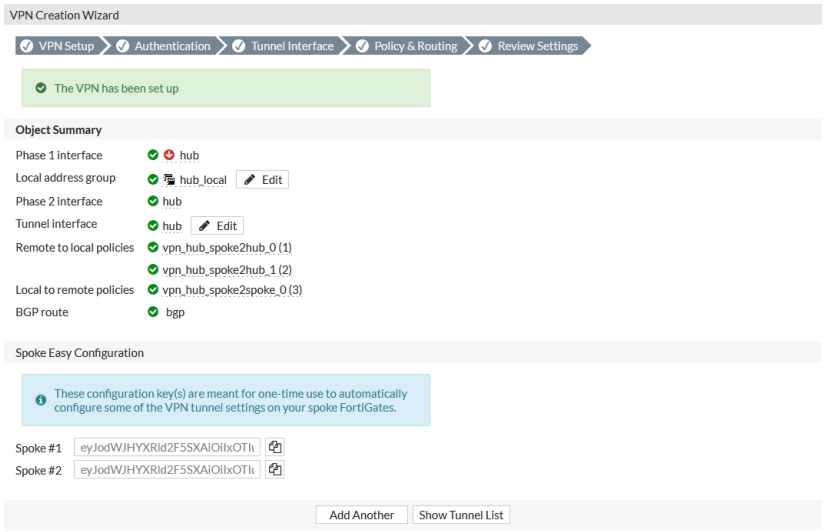
Local AS	65400
Local interface	port3 port4
Local subnets	174.16.101.0/24 173.1.1.0/24
Spoke #1 tunnel IP	10.10.1.3
Spoke #2 tunnel IP	10.10.1.4



e. *Review Settings*:
Confirm that the settings look correct, then click *Create*.

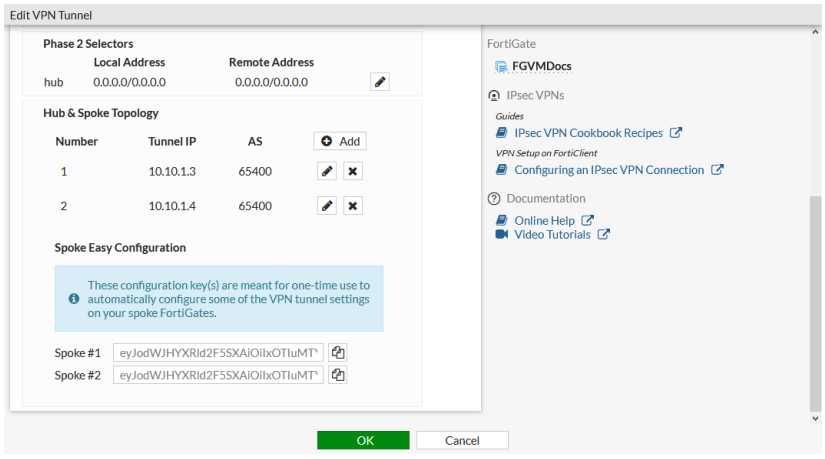
3. The summary shows details about the set up hub:

- The *Local address group* and *Tunnel interface* can be edited directly on this page.
- Spoke easy configuration keys can be used to quickly configure the spokes.



4. Click *Show Tunnel List* to go to *VPN > IPsec Tunnels*.

5. Edit the VPN tunnel to add more spokes and to copy the spokes' easy configuration keys.

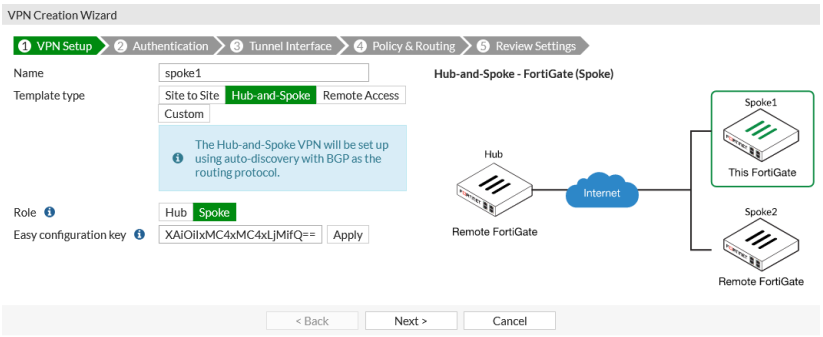


To configure the spokes:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. On the *VPN Setup* page of the wizard, enter the following:

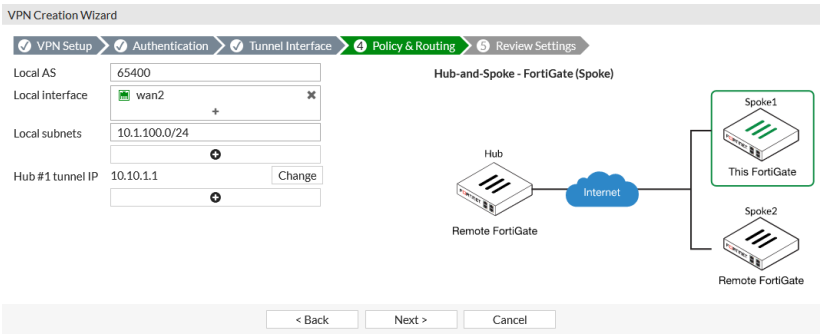
Name	spoke1
Template Type	Hub-and-Spoke
Role	Spoke

3. In the *Easy configuration key* field, paste the *Spoke #1* key from the hub FortiGate, click *Apply*, then click *Next*.



4. Adjust the *Authentication* settings as required, enter the *Pre-shared key*, then click *Next*.
5. Adjust the *Tunnel Interface* settings as required, then click *Next*.
6. Configure the *Policy & Routing* settings, then click *Next*:

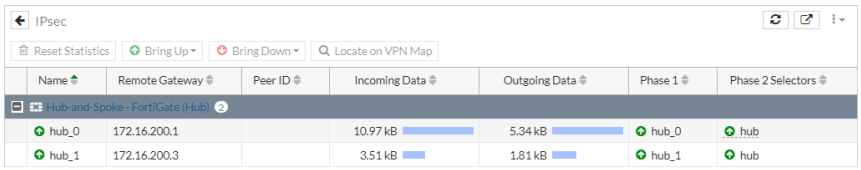
Local interface	wan2
Local subnets	10.1.100.0/24



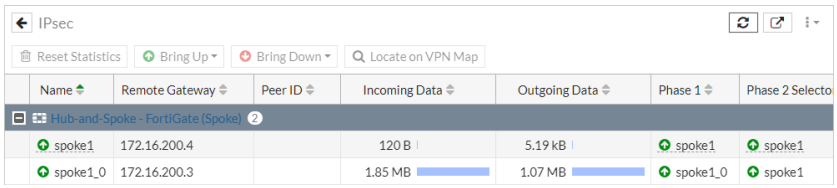
7. Review the settings, then click *Create*.
8. The summary shows details about the set up spoke. The *Local address group* and *Tunnel interface* can be edited directly on this page.
9. Follow the same steps to configure the second spoke.

To check that the tunnels are created and working:

1. On the hub FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the IPsec widget.
   The tunnels to the spokes are established.



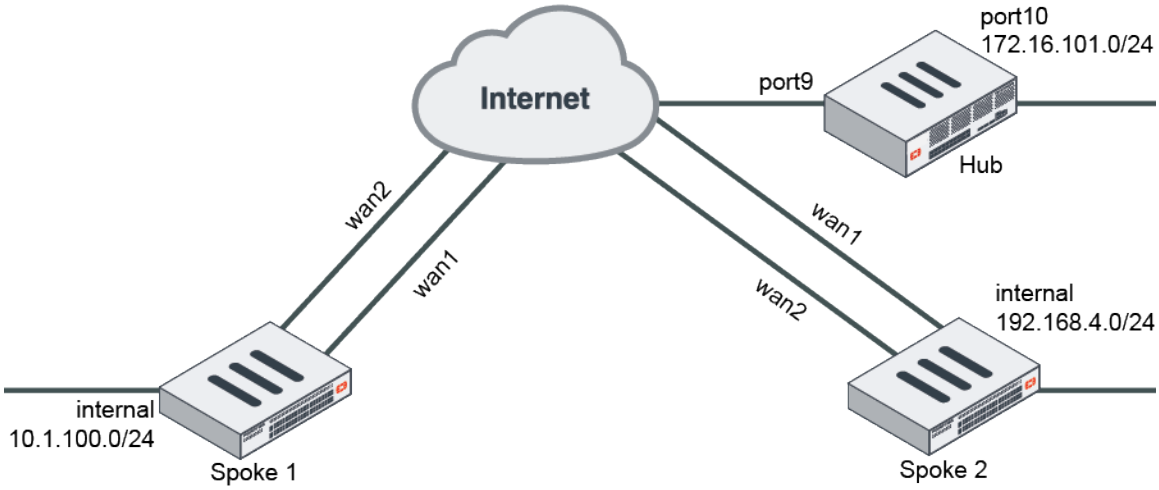
2. On a spoke, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the IPsec widget.
The tunnel to the hub and the spoke to spoke shortcut are established.



ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol

This is a sample configuration of ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol. The following options must be enabled for this configuration:

- On the hub FortiGate, IPsec phase1-interface `net-device disable` must be run.
- IBGP must be used between the hub and spoke FortiGates.
- `bgp neighbor-group/neighbor-range` must be reused.



Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

To configure ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol using the CLI:

1. Configure hub FortiGate's WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
```

```
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the hub FortiGate.
   a. Configure the hub FortiGate IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
3des-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set phase1name "advpn-hub"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
3des-sha256
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the hub FortiGate firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "advpn-hub"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
```

```
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

c. Configure the hub FortiGate's IPsec tunnel interface IP address.

```
config system interface
    edit "advpn-hub1"
        set ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

d. Configure the hub FortiGate's BGP.

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    config neighbor-group
        edit "advpn"
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65412
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "advpn"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the spoke FortiGates.

a. Configure the spoke FortiGates' WAN, internal interfaces, and static routes.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
```

```
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure the Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 17.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 17.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

b. Configure the spoke FortiGates' IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
```

```
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke1"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set phase1name "spoke1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke1_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke2"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set phase1name "spoke2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
```

```
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke2_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

c. Configure the spoke FortiGates' firewall policies.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
    next
end
```

d. Configure the spoke FortiGates' tunnel interface IP addresses.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set ip 10.10.10.3 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

e. Configure the spoke FortiGates' BGP.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.10.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65412
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.10.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65412
        next
```

```
        end
        config network
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    end
```

4. Run `diagnose` and `get` commands run on Spoke1 to check VPN and BGP states.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=1 olast=1 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=160 rxb=16428 txb=8969
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=628
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=6 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1225/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=a1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2369/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f5b esp=aes key=16 cbe88682ad896a69290027b6dd8f7162
       ah=sha1 key=20 7bb704b388f83783ac76c2ab0b6c9f7dcf78e93b
  enc: spi=6e3633fc esp=aes key=16 1a0da3f4deed3d16becc9dda57537355
       ah=sha1 key=20 368544044bd9b82592d72476ff93d5055056da8d
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16364, enc:pkts/bytes=160/19168
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

   b. Run the `get router info bgp summary` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
BGP router identifier 7.7.7.7, local AS number 65412
BGP table version is 2
1 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor             V         AS [[QualityAssurance62/MsgRcvd]]
[[QualityAssurance62/MsgSent]]   [[QualityAssurance62/TblVer]]  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
10.10.10.254       1.          65412     143     142         1.     1.     1.
```

```
00:24:45                    2

Total number of neighbors 1
```

c. Run the `get router info routing-table bgp` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
B       172.16.101.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:23:57
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:22:03
```

d. Generate traffic between the spokes and check the shortcut tunnel and routing table. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=268 rxb=16428 txb=31243
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=714
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=6 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=345/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=10d esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2369/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f5b esp=aes key=16 cbe88682ad896a69290027b6dd8f7162
       ah=sha1 key=20 7bb704b388f83783ac76c2ab0b6c9f7dcf78e93b
  enc: spi=6e3633fc esp=aes key=16 1a0da3f4deed3d16becc9dda57537355
       ah=sha1 key=20 368544044bd9b82592d72476ff93d5055056da8d
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16364, enc:pkts/bytes=268/48320
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----
name=spoke1_0 ver=1 serial=9 15.1.1.2:4500->13.1.1.2:4500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=spoke1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=4 olast=4 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=100 rxb=112 txb=4686
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=231
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=4500
```

```
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=447/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=65 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2368/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f5c esp=aes key=16 73fd9869547475db78851e6c057ad9b7
       ah=sha1 key=20 6ad3a5b1028f6b33c82ba494a370f13c7f462635
  enc: spi=79cb0f2b esp=aes key=16 52ab0acdc830d58c00e5956a6484654a
       ah=sha1 key=20 baa82aba4106dc60618f6fe95570728656799239
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/46, enc:pkts/bytes=100/11568
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=5 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

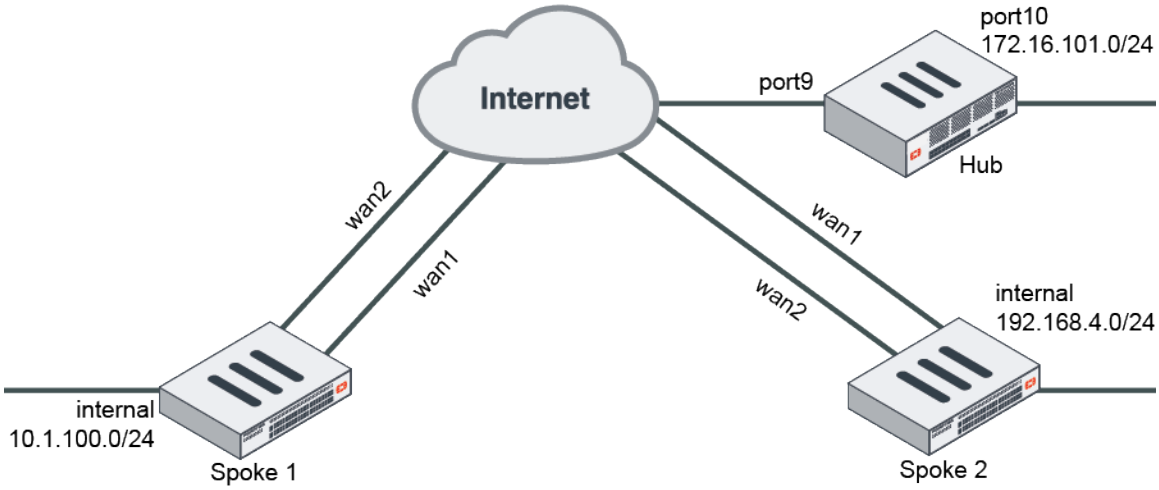
e. Run the `get router info routing-tale bgp` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
B       172.16.101.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:23:57
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.3, spoke1_0 , 00:22:03
```

ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol

This is a sample configuration of ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol. The following options must be enabled for this configuration:

- On the hub FortiGate, IPsec phase1-interface `net-device enable` must be run.
- OSPF must be used between the hub and spoke FortiGates.



Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

To configure ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol using the CLI:

1. Configure hub FortiGate's WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
```

```
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the hub FortiGate.
   a. Configure the hub FortiGate IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
3des-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set phase1name "advpn-hub"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
3des-sha256
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the hub FortiGate firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "advpn-hub"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

c. Configure the hub FortiGate's IPsec tunnel interface IP address.

```
config system interface
    edit "advpn-hub1"
        set ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

d. Configure the hub FortiGate's OSPF.

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the spoke FortiGates.

a. Configure the spoke FortiGates' WAN, internal interfaces, and static routes.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
```

```
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure the Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 17.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 17.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

b. Configure the spoke FortiGates' IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke1"
        set psksecret sample
```

```
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set phase1name "spoke1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke1_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke2"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set phase1name "spoke2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke2_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
```

```
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

c. Configure the spoke FortiGates' firewall policies.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

d. Configure the spoke FortiGates' tunnel interface IP addresses.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set ip 10.10.10.3 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

e. Configure the spoke FortiGates' OSPF.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 7.7.7.7
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 8.8.8.8
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
```

```
            set prefix 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

4. Run `diagnose` and `get` commands on Spoke1 to check VPN and OSPF states.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=5 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=263 rxb=16452 txb=32854
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2283
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1057/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=108 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000003 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2371/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f78 esp=aes key=16 7cc50c5c9df1751f6497a4ad764c5e9a
       ah=sha1 key=20 269292ddbf7309a6fc05871e63ed8a5297b5c9a1
  enc: spi=6e363612 esp=aes key=16 42bd49bced1e85cf74a24d97f10eb601
       ah=sha1 key=20 13964f166aad48790c2e551d6df165d7489f524b
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16394, enc:pkts/bytes=263/50096
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

   b. Run the `get router info ospf neighbor` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
OSPF process 0, VRF 0: Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Address Interface 8.8.8.8 1.
Full/ - 00:00:35 10.10.10.254 spoke1 1.1.1.1 1. Full/ - 00:00:35 10.10.10.254 spoke1
```

   c. Run the `get router info routing-table ospf` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
O       172.16.101.0/24 [110/110] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:23:23
O       192.168.4.0/24   [110/110] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:22:35
```

   d. Generate traffic between the spokes, then check the shortcut tunnel and routing table. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=313 rxb=16452 txb=35912
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2303
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=782/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=13a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000003 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2371/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f78 esp=aes key=16 7cc50c5c9df1751f6497a4ad764c5e9a
       ah=sha1 key=20 269292ddbf7309a6fc05871e63ed8a5297b5c9a1
  enc: spi=6e363612 esp=aes key=16 42bd49bced1e85cf74a24d97f10eb601
       ah=sha1 key=20 13964f166aad48790c2e551d6df165d7489f524b
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16394, enc:pkts/bytes=313/56432
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=13 olast=13 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----
name=spoke1_0 ver=1 serial=e 15.1.1.2:4500->13.1.1.2:4500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=spoke1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=19 ilast=4 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=641 txp=1254 rxb=278648 txb=161536
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=184
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=1 ref=10 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=922/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=452 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000280 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2370/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f79 esp=aes key=16 324f8cf840ba6722cc7abbba46b34e0e
       ah=sha1 key=20 a40e9aac596b95c4cd83a7f6372916a5ef5aa505
  enc: spi=ef3327b5 esp=aes key=16 5909d6066b303de4520d2b5ae2db1b61
       ah=sha1 key=20 1a42f5625b5a335d8d5282fe83b5d6c6ff26b2a4
```

```
dec:pkts/bytes=641/278568, enc:pkts/bytes=1254/178586
npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=a dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

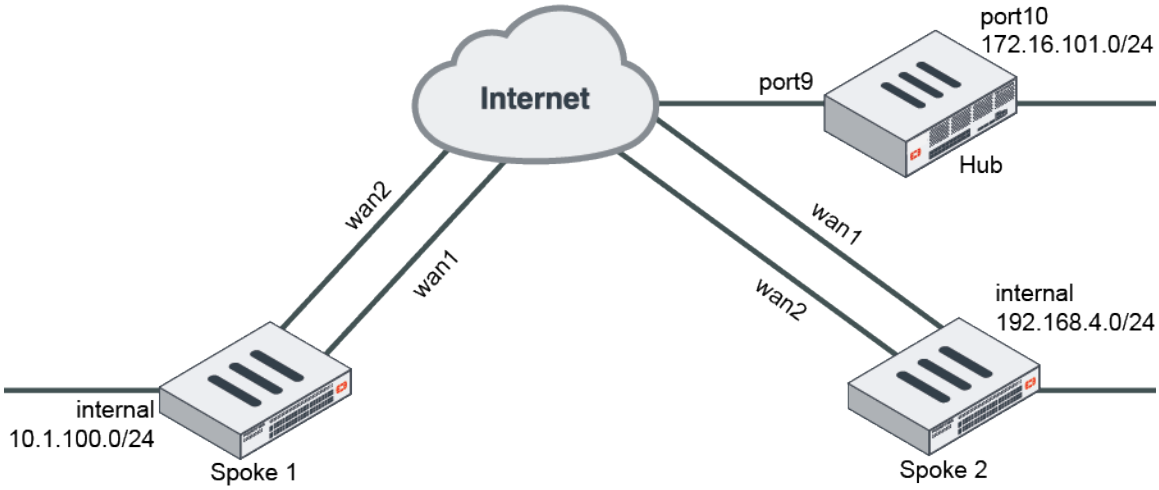
e. Run the `get router info routing-tale ospf` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
O       172.16.101.0/24 [110/110] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:27:14
O       192.168.4.0/24  [110/110] via  10.10.10.3, spoke1_0, 00:26:26
```

ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol

This is a sample configuration of ADVPN with RIP as routing protocol. The following options must be enabled for this configuration:

- On the hub FortiGate, IPsec phase1-interface `net-device disable` must be run.
- RIP must be used between the hub and spoke FortiGates.
- `split-horizon-status enable` must be run on the hub FortiGate.



Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

To configure ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol using the CLI:

1. In the CLI, configure hub FortiGate's WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Configure the hub FortiGate.
   a. Configure the hub FortiGate IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
3des-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set phase1name "advpn-hub"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
3des-sha256
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the hub FortiGate firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "advpn-hub"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

c. Configure the hub FortiGate's IPsec tunnel interface IP address.

```
config system interface
    edit "advpn-hub1"
        set ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

d. Configure the hub FortiGate's RIP.

```
config router rip
    set default-information-originate enable
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
    config interface
        edit "advpn-hub"
            set split-horizon-status disable
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the spoke FortiGates.

a. Configure the spoke FortiGates' WAN, internal interfaces, and static routes.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure the Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 17.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 17.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

b. Configure the spoke FortiGates' IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke1"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
```

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set phase1name "spoke1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke1_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke2"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set phase1name "spoke2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke2_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
```

```
    next
end
```

c. Configure the spoke FortiGates' firewall policies.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

d. Configure the spoke FortiGates' tunnel interface IP addresses.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set ip 10.10.10.3 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

e. Configure the spoke FortiGates' RIP.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

4. Run `diagnose` and `get` commands on Spoke1.

a. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
```

```
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=17 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=87 rxb=200 txb=6208
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1040
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=7 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1793/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=57 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2370/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f60 esp=aes key=16 6b54e32d54d039196a74d96e96d1cf14
       ah=sha1 key=20 e4903474614eafc96eda6400a3a5e88bbcb26a7f
  enc: spi=6e36349d esp=aes key=16 914a40a7993eda75c4dea2f42905f27d
       ah=sha1 key=20 8040eb08342edea2dae5eee058fd054a46688267
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/132, enc:pkts/bytes=86/11696
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

b. Run the `get router info rip database` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP

   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
Rc 10.1.100.0/24                           1.                 internal
Rc 10.10.10.2/32                             1.                 spoke1
R  172.16.101.0/24    10.10.10.254           1. 10.10.10.254      spoke1 02:28
R  192.168.4.0/24      10.10.10.254           1. 10.10.10.254       spoke1 02:44
```

c. Run the `get router info routing-table rip` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
R       172.16.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:08:38
R       192.168.4.0/24 [120/3] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:08:38
```

d. Generate traffic between the spokes, then check the shortcut tunnel and routing table. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
```

```
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=19 ilast=3 olast=3 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=78 rxb=200 txb=5546
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1039
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=7 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1807/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=4e esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2370/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f60 esp=aes key=16 6b54e32d54d039196a74d96e96d1cf14
       ah=sha1 key=20 e4903474614eafc96eda6400a3a5e88bbcb26a7f
  enc: spi=6e36349d esp=aes key=16 914a40a7993eda75c4dea2f42905f27d
       ah=sha1 key=20 8040eb08342edea2dae5eee058fd054a46688267
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/132, enc:pkts/bytes=77/10456
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=20 olast=20 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----
name=spoke1_0 ver=1 serial=a 15.1.1.2:4500->13.1.1.2:4500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=spoke1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=20 ilast=2 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=7 rxb=112 txb=480
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=8 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=2358/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2367/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f61 esp=aes key=16 c66aa7ae9657068108ed47c048ff56b6
       ah=sha1 key=20 60661c68e20bbc913c2564ade85e01ea3769e703
  enc: spi=79cb0f30 esp=aes key=16 bf6c898c2e1c64baaa679ed5d79c3b58
       ah=sha1 key=20 146ca78be6c34eedb9cd66cc328216e08682ecb1
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/46, enc:pkts/bytes=7/992
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

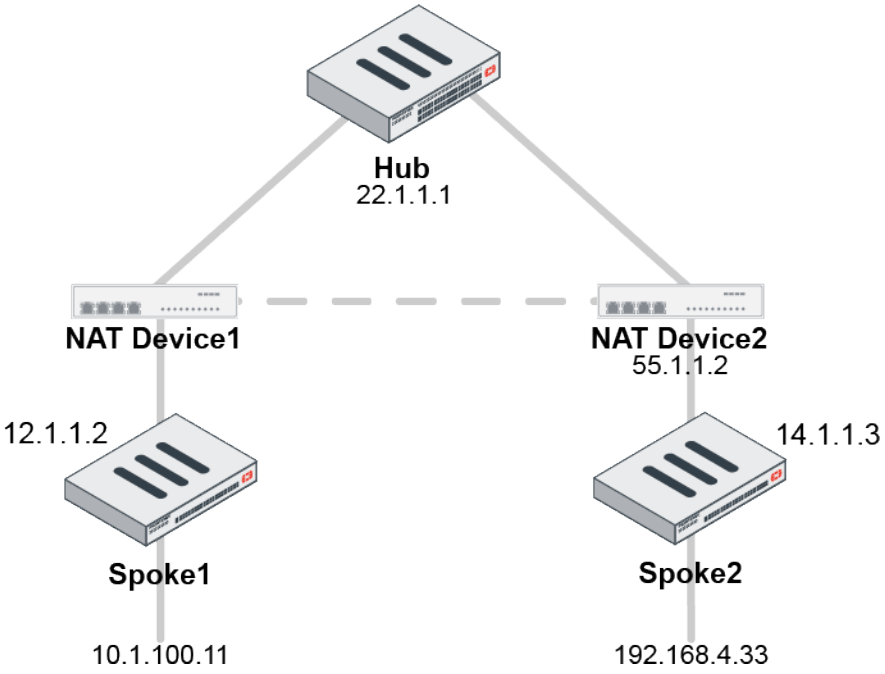
e. Run the `get router info routing-tale rip` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
R       172.16.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:09:04
R       192.168.4.0/24 [120/2] via 10.10.10.3, spoke1_0, 00:00:02
```

UDP hole punching for spokes behind NAT

UDP hole punching allows ADVPN shortcuts to be established through a UDP hole on a NAT device. The NAT device must support RFC 4787 Endpoint-Independent Mapping.

In the following example, device 10.1.100.11 behind Spoke1 needs to reach device 192.168.4.33 behind Spoke2. Spoke1 and Spoke2 are behind NAT devices and have established IPsec tunnels to the Hub. The hole punching creates a shortcut between Spoke1 and Spoke2 that bypasses the Hub.



To verify the ADVPN shortcut is established between both spokes behind NAT:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application ike -1
ike 0: comes 22.1.1.1:4500->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Informational id=3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63:58ac7c02 len=204
ike 0:toHub1:35: notify msg received: SHORTCUT-OFFER
ike 0:toHub1: shortcut-offer 10.1.100.11->192.168.4.33 psk 64 ppk 0 ver 1 mode 0
ike 0 looking up shortcut by addr 192.168.4.33, name toHub1
ike 0:toHub1: send shortcut-query 1438189781753480593 d3fdd1bfbc94caee/0000000000000000
12.1.1.2 10.1.100.11->192.168.4.33 psk 64 ttl 32 nat 1 ver 1 mode 0
ike 0:toHub1:35: sent IKE msg (SHORTCUT-QUERY): 12.1.1.2:4500->22.1.1.1:4500, len=236,
id=3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63:12e263f7
ike 0: comes 22.1.1.1:4500->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Informational id=3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63:4976e1ac len=236
ike 0:toHub1:35: notify msg received: SHORTCUT-REPLY
ike 0:toHub1: recv shortcut-reply 1438189781753480593 d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
14.1.1.3 to 10.1.100.11 psk 64 ppk 0 ver 1 mode 0 nat 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1: iif 22 192.168.4.33->10.1.100.11 route lookup oif 21
ike 0:toHub1: shortcut-reply received from 55.1.1.2:64916, local-nat=yes, peer-nat=yes
```

```
ike 0:toHub1: NAT hole punching to peer at 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1: created connection: 0x5e71f58 6 12.1.1.2->55.1.1.2:64916.
<==55.1.1.2:64916 this is UDP hole of NAT device
ike 0:toHub1: adding new dynamic tunnel for 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1_0: added new dynamic tunnel for 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode is sending 1st message...
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: cookie d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (ident_i1send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=632,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Identity Protection id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23 len=252
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode get 1st response...
…
…
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: negotiation result
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:   protocol id = ISAKMP:
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:      trans_id = KEY_IKE.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:      encapsulation = IKE/none
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=OAKLEY_ENCRYPT_ALG, val=AES_CBC, key-len=128
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=OAKLEY_HASH_ALG, val=SHA2_256.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=AUTH_METHOD, val=PRESHARED_KEY.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=OAKLEY_GROUP, val=MODP2048.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: ISAKMP SA lifetime=86400
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (ident_i2send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=380,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Identity Protection id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23 len=380
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode get 2nd response...
…
…
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: add INITIAL-CONTACT
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: add INTERFACE-ADDR4 10.10.1.100
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (ident_i3send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=140,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Identity Protection id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23 len=124
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode get 3rd response...
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: received p1 notify type INTERFACE-ADDR4
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: INTERFACE-ADDR4 10.10.1.102
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: peer identifier IPV4_ADDR 14.1.1.3
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: PSK authentication succeeded
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: authentication OK
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: established IKE SA d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: auto-discovery receiver
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: auto-discovery 2
ike 0:toHub1_0: add R/32 route 10.10.1.102 via 10.10.1.102, intf=toHub1(22)
ike 0:toHub1_0: add peer route 10.10.1.102
ike 0:toHub1: schedule auto-negotiate
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: no pending Quick-Mode negotiations
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: IPsec SA connect 6 12.1.1.2->55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: using existing connection
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: traffic triggered, serial=1 1:10.1.100.11:2048->1:192.168.4.33:0
ike 0:toHub1:toHub1: config found
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: IPsec SA connect 6 12.1.1.2->55.1.1.2:64916 negotiating
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: cookie d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23:8465e467
```

```
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: natt flags 0x1f, encmode 1->3
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: initiator selectors 0 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0-
>0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (quick_i1send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=620,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23:8465e467
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Quick id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23:8465e467 len=444
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: responder selectors 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0->0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: my proposal:
…
…
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: add IPsec SA: SPIs=79654cf1/5e9936a5
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: IPsec SA dec spi 79654cf1 key
16:5E21180992B8892DE5142E1F53ABD29E auth 20:49AA4AE14994A39A138392AC517B6E79D98CA673
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: IPsec SA enc spi 5e9936a5 key
16:BE16B8EF4E75F7B3CF97A1D58D996890 auth 20:2F46B57CAC6F3185BB182F9280312263325F6BAF
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: added IPsec SA: SPIs=79654cf1/5e9936a5
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: sending SNMP tunnel UP trapp
```

To verify the spoke-to-spoke IPsec phase 1 tunnel shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list
vd: root/0
name: toHub1
version: 1
interface: wan2 6
addr: 12.1.1.2:4500 -> 22.1.1.1:4500
created: 503s ago
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.1.100/255.255.255.0
nat: me
auto-discovery: 2 receiver
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/3  established 1/3  time 0/0/0 ms

  id/spi: 35 3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63
  direction: initiator
  status: established 503-503s ago = 0ms
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: 7fca86063ea2e72f-4efea6f1bec23948
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/85596
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000

vd: root/0
name: toHub1_0
version: 1
interface: wan2 6
addr: 12.1.1.2:4500 -> 55.1.1.2:64916
created: 208s ago
nat: me peer
auto-discovery: 2 receiver
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 20/20/20 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 10/10/10 ms

  id/spi: 48 d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
  direction: initiator
  status: established 208-208s ago = 20ms
```

```
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: 9bcac400d8e14e11-fffde33eaa3a8263
lifetime/rekey: 86400/85891
DPD sent/recv: 0000000a/00000000
```

Other VPN topics

The following topics provide instructions on configuring other VPN topics.

- VPN and ASIC offload on page 1723
- Encryption algorithms on page 1733
- Fragmenting IP packets before IPsec encapsulation on page 1740
- Configure DSCP for IPsec tunnels on page 1741
- VXLAN over IPsec tunnel with virtual wire pair on page 1743
- VXLAN over IPsec using a VXLAN tunnel endpoint on page 1746
- Defining gateway IP addresses in IPsec with mode-config and DHCP on page 1751
- FQDN support for remote gateways on page 1752
- Windows IKEv2 native VPN with user certificate on page 1754

VPN and ASIC offload

This topic provides a brief introduction to VPN traffic offloading.

IPsec traffic processed by NPU

1. Check the device ASIC information. For example, a FortiGate 900D has an NP6 and a CP8.

```
# get hardware status
Model name: [[QualityAssurance62/FortiGate]]-900D
ASIC version: CP8
ASIC SRAM: 64M
CPU: Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E3-1225 v3 @ 3.20GHz
Number of CPUs: 4
RAM: 16065 MB
Compact Flash: 1925 MB /dev/sda
Hard disk: 244198 MB /dev/sdb
USB Flash: not available
Network Card chipset: [[QualityAssurance62/FortiASIC]] NP6 Adapter (rev.)
```

2. Check port to NPU mapping.

```
# diagnose npu np6 port-list
Chip   XAUI Ports            Max   Cross-chip
                             Speed offloading
----
np6_0  0
        1.    port17           1G    Yes
        1.    port18           1G    Yes
        1.    port19           1G    Yes
        1.    port20           1G    Yes
        1.    port21           1G    Yes
        1.    port22           1G    Yes
```

```
        1.    port23           1G    Yes
        1.    port24           1G    Yes
        1.    port27           1G    Yes
        1.    port28           1G    Yes
        1.    port25           1G    Yes
        1.    port26           1G    Yes
        1.    port31           1G    Yes
        1.    port32           1G    Yes
        1.    port29           1G    Yes
        1.    port30           1G    Yes
        1.    portB            10G   Yes
        1.
----
np6_1  0
        1.    port1            1G    Yes
        1.    port2            1G    Yes
        1.    port3            1G    Yes
        1.    port4            1G    Yes
        1.    port5            1G    Yes
        1.    port6            1G    Yes
        1.    port7            1G    Yes
        1.    port8            1G    Yes
        1.    port11           1G    Yes
        1.    port12           1G    Yes
        1.    port9            1G    Yes
        1.    port10           1G    Yes
        1.    port15           1G    Yes
        1.    port16           1G    Yes
        1.    port13           1G    Yes
        1.    port14           1G    Yes
        1.    portA            10G   Yes
        1.
----
```

3. Configure the option in IPsec phase1 settings to control NPU encrypt/decrypt IPsec packets (enabled by default).

```
config vpn ipsec phase1/phase1-interface
    edit "vpn_name"
        set npu-offload enable/disable
    next
end
```

4. Check NPU offloading. The NPU encrypted/decrypted counter should tick. The `npu_flag 03` flag means that the traffic processed by the NPU is bi-directional.

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=test ver=2 serial=1 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=/0
stat: rxp=12231 txp=12617 rxb=1316052 txb=674314
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=test proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=7
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

```
  SA:  ref=6 options=10626 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42921/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=802 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200
  dec: spi=e313ac46 esp=aes key=16 0dcb52642eed18b852b5c65a7dc62958
       ah=md5 key=16 c61d9fe60242b9a30e60b1d01da77660
  enc: spi=706ffe03 esp=aes key=16 6ad98c204fa70545dbf3d2e33fb7b529
       ah=md5 key=16 dcc3b866da155ef73c0aba15ec530e2e
  dec:pkts/bytes=1665/16352, enc:pkts/bytes=2051/16826
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=2 enc_npuid=2

FGT_900D # diagnose vpn ipsec st
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1664             2047
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1664             2047
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 3                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
```

```
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 3                1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 1                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1                1.
        sha1             : 1                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 29882            29882
        aria             : 21688            21688
        seed             : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 29521            29521
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 59403            59403
        md5              : 0                 1.
        sha1             : 175462           175462
        sha256           : 0                 1.
        sha384           : 0                 1.
        sha512           : 0                 1.
```

5. If traffic cannot be offloaded by the NPU, the CP will try to encrypt/decrypt the IPsec packets.

IPsec traffic processed by CP

1. Check the NPU flag and CP counter.

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=test ver=2 serial=1 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
```

```
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=8418 txp=8418 rxb=1251248 txb=685896
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=test proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=7
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42037/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=20e3 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=000020e3 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42928/43200
  dec: spi=e313ac48 esp=aes key=16 393770842f926266530db6e43e21c4f8
       ah=md5 key=16 b2e4e025e8910e95c1745e7855479cca
  enc: spi=706ffe05 esp=aes key=16 7ef749610335f9f50e252023926de29e
       ah=md5 key=16 0b81e4d835919ab2b8ba8edbd01aec9d
  dec:pkts/bytes=8418/685896, enc:pkts/bytes=8418/1251248
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0

FGT-D # diagnose vpn ipsec status
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976           15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1664            2047
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1664            2047
        sha1             : 14976           15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
```

```
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 3                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 3                1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 1                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 8499             8499
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 8499             8499
        sha1             : 1                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 29882            29882
        aria             : 21688            21688
        seed             : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 29521            29521
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 59403            59403
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 175462           175462
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

2. Two options are used to control if the CP processes packets. If disabled, packets are processed by the CPU.

```
config system global
    set ipsec-asic-offload disable
```

```
        set ipsec-hmac-offload disable
    end
```

IPsec traffic processed by CPU

IPsec traffic might be processed by the CPU for the following reasons:

- Some low end models do not have NPUs.
- NPU offloading and CP IPsec traffic processing manually disabled.
- Some types of proposals - SEED, ARIA, chacha20poly1305 - are not supported by the NPU or CP.
- NPU flag set to 00 and software encrypt/decrypt counter ticked.

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=test ver=2 serial=1 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=12162 txp=12162 rxb=1691412 txb=1008216
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=test proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=8
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10602 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1453 expire=42903/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2d70 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00002d70 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=e313ac4d esp=chacha20poly1305 key=36
812d1178784c1130d1586606e44e1b9ab157e31a09edbed583be1e9cc82e8c9f2655a2cf
       ah=null key=0
  enc: spi=706ffe0a esp=chacha20poly1305 key=36
f2727e001e2243549b140f1614ae3df82243adb070e60c33911f461b389b05a7a642e11a
       ah=null key=0
  dec:pkts/bytes=11631/976356, enc:pkts/bytes=11631/1627692
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=7 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0

FGT_900D # diagnose vpn ipsec status
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

```
NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                 1.
        3des             : 0                 1.
        aes              : 1664             2047
        aes-gcm          : 0                 1.
        aria             : 0                 1.
        seed             : 0                 1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                 1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                 1.
        md5              : 1664             2047
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                 1.
        sha384           : 0                 1.
        sha512           : 0                 1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                 1.
        des              : 0                 1.
        3des             : 0                 1.
        aes              : 3                 1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                 1.
        aria             : 0                 1.
        seed             : 0                 1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                 1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                 1.
        md5              : 3                 1.
        sha1             : 3                 1.
        sha256           : 0                 1.
        sha384           : 0                 1.
        sha512           : 0                 1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 1                 1.
        des              : 0                 1.
        3des             : 0                 1.
        aes              : 8865             8865
        aes-gcm          : 0                 1.
        aria             : 0                 1.
        seed             : 0                 1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                 1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                 1.
        md5              : 8865             8865
        sha1             : 1                 1.
        sha256           : 0                 1.
        sha384           : 0                 1.
        sha512           : 0                 1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
```

```
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 531              531
        aes-gcm          : 29882            29882
        aria             : 21688            21688
        seed             : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 41156            41156
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 71038            71038
        md5              : 531              531
        sha1             : 175462           175462
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

Disable automatic ASIC offloading

When `auto-asic-offload` is set to `disable` in the firewall policy, traffic is not offloaded and the NPU hosting counter is ticked.

```
# diagnose vpn ipsec status
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 110080           2175
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 110080           2175
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
```

```
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 111090           1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 111090           1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 1                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 8865             8865
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 8865             8865
        sha1             : 1                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 539              539
        aes-gcm          : 29882            29882
        aria             : 21688            21688
        seed             : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 41259            41259
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 71141            71141
        md5              : 539              539
        sha1             : 175462           175462
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

Encryption algorithms

This topic provides a brief introduction to IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 encryption algorithms and includes the following sections:

- IKEv1 phase 1 encryption algorithm
- IKEv1 phase 2 encryption algorithm
- IKEv2 phase 1 encryption algorithm
- IKEv2 phase 2 encryption algorithm
- HMAC settings

IKEv1 phase 1 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
```

DES is a symmetric-key algorithm, which means the same key is used for encrypting and decrypting data. FortiOS supports:

- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

3DES applies the DES algorithm three times to each data. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

AES is a symmetric-key algorithm with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512

The ARIA algorithm is based on AES with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

SEED is a symmetric-key algorithm. FortiOS supports:

- seed128-md5
- seed128-sha1
- seed128-sha256
- seed128-sha384
- seed128-sha512

Suite-B is a set of AES encryption with ICV in GCM mode. FortiOS supports Suite-B on new kernel platforms only. IPsec traffic **cannot** offload to NPU. CP9 supports Suite-B offloading, otherwise packets are encrypted and decrypted by software. FortiOS supports:

- suite-b-gcm-128
- suite-b-gcm-256

IKEv1 phase 2 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
```

With null encryption, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- null-md5
- null-sha1
- null-sha256
- null-sha384
- null-sha512

With the DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- des-null
- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256

- des-sha384
- des-sha512

With the 3DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-null
- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

With the AES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aes128-null
- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes192-null
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-null
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512

With the AESGCM encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aes128gcm
- aes256gcm

With the chacha20poly1305 encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- chacha20poly1305

With the ARIA encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aria128-null
- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-null
- aria192-md5

- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-null
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

With the SEED encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- seed-null
- seed-md5
- seed-sha1
- seed-sha256
- seed-sha384
- seed-sha512

IKEv2 phase 1 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm-prfsha256 aes256gcm-prfsha384 chacha20poly1305-
     prfsha256
```

DES is a symmetric-key algorithm, which means the same key is used for encrypting and decrypting data. FortiOS supports:

- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

3DES applies the DES algorithm three times to each data. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

AES is a symmetric-key algorithm with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes128gcm-prfsha1

- aes128gcm-prfsha256
- aes128gcm-prfsha384
- aes128gcm-prfsha512
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512
- aes256gcm-prfsha1
- aes256gcm-prfsha256
- aes256gcm-prfsha384
- aes256gcm-prfsha512

The ARIA algorithm is based on AES with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

With the chacha20poly1305 encryption algorithm, FortiOS supports:

- chacha20poly1305-prfsha1
- chacha20poly1305-prfsha256
- chacha20poly1305-prfsha384
- chacha20poly1305-prfsha512

SEED is a symmetric-key algorithm. FortiOS supports:

- seed128-md5
- seed128-sha1
- seed128-sha256

- seed128-sha384
- seed128-sha512

Suite-B is a set of AES encryption with ICV in GCM mode. FortiOS supports Suite-B on new kernel platforms only. IPsec traffic **cannot** offload to NPU. CP9 supports Suite-B offloading, otherwise packets are encrypted and decrypted by software. FortiOS supports:

- suite-b-gcm-128
- suite-b-gcm-256

IKEv2 phase 2 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
```

With null encryption, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- null-md5
- null-sha1
- null-sha256
- null-sha384
- null-sha512

With the DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- des-null
- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

With the 3DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-null
- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

With the AES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aes128-null
- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes192-null
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256

- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-null
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512

With the AESGCM encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU. CP9 supports AESGCM offloading. FortiOS supports:

- aes128gcm
- aes256gcm

With the chacha20poly1305 encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- chacha20poly1305

With the ARIA encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aria128-null
- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-null
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-null
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

With the SEED encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- seed-null
- seed-md5
- seed-sha1
- seed-sha256
- seed-sha384
- seed-sha512

HMAC settings

The FortiGate uses the HMAC based on the authentication proposal that is chosen in phase 1 or phase 2 of the IPsec configuration. Each proposal consists of the encryption-hash pair (such as 3des-sha256). The FortiGate matches the most secure proposal to negotiate with the peer.

To view the chosen proposal and the HMAC hash used:

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list

vd: root/0
name: MPLS
version: 1
interface: port1 3
addr: 192.168.2.5:500 -> 10.10.10.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 172.31.0.2 -> 172.31.0.1
created: 1015820s ago
IKE SA: created 1/13 established 1/13 time 10/1626/21010 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/24 established 1/24 time 0/11/30 ms

  id/spi: 124 43b087dae99f7733/6a8473e58cd8990a
  direction: responder
  status: established 68693-68693s ago = 10ms
  proposal: 3des-sha256
  key: e0fa6ab8dc509b33-aa2cc549999b1823-c3cb9c337432646e
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/17436
  DPD sent/recv: 000001e1/00000000
```

Fragmenting IP packets before IPsec encapsulation

The `ip-fragmentation` command controls packet fragmentation before IPsec encapsulation, which can benefit packet loss in some environments.

The following options are available for the `ip-fragmentation` variable.

Option	Description
pre-encapsulation	Fragment before IPsec encapsulation.
post-encapsulation (default value)	Fragment after IPsec encapsulation (RFC compliant).

To configure packet fragmentation using the CLI:

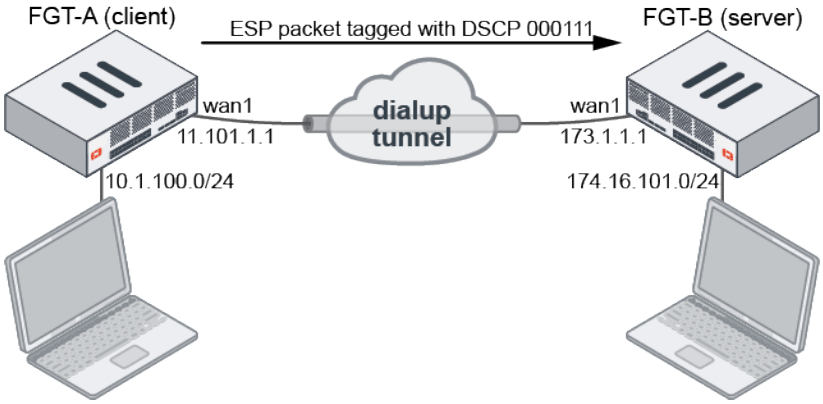
```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "demo"
      set interface "port1"
      set authmethod signature
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set ip-fragmentation pre-encapsulation
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.4
      set certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
   next
end
```

Configure DSCP for IPsec tunnels

Configuring the differentiated services (DiffServ) code in phase2 of an IPsec tunnel allows the tag to be applied to the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) packet.

- If `diffserv` is disabled in the IPsec phase2 configuration, then the ESP packets' DSCP value is copied from the inner IP packet DSCP.
- If `diffserv` is enabled in the IPsec phase2 configuration, then ESP packets' DSCP value is set to the configured value.

Offloading traffic to the NPU must be disabled for the tunnel.



In this example, NPU offloading is disabled, diffserv is enabled, and the diffserv code is set to 000111 on FGT-A. Only one side of the tunnel needs to have diffserv enabled.

To configure IPsec on FGT-A:

1. Configure the phase1-interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "s2s"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set npu-offload disable
        set dhgrp 14 5
        set wizard-type static-fortigate
        set remote-gw 173.1.1.1
        set psksecret ***********
    next
end
```

2. Configure the phase2-interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "s2s"
        set phase1name "s2s"
```

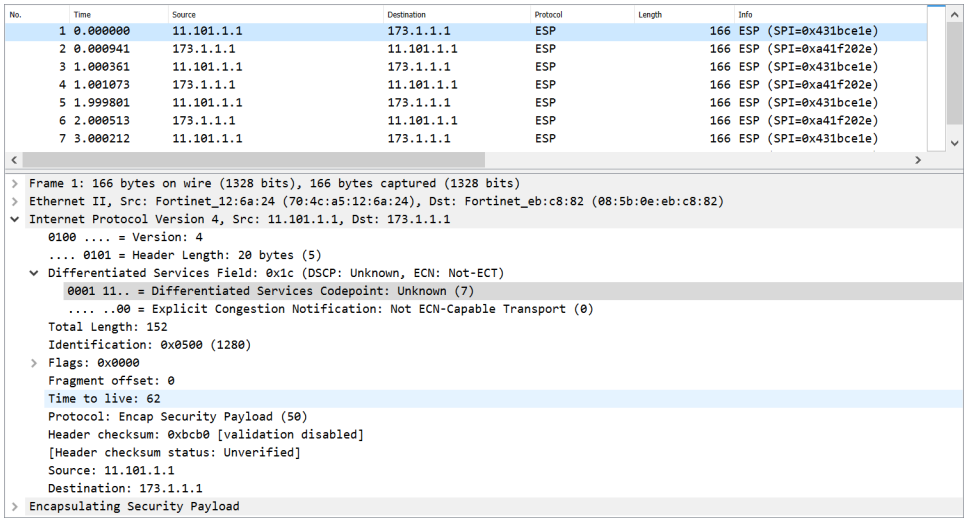
```
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set dhgrp 14 5
        set diffserv enable
        set diffservcode 000111
        set src-addr-type name
        set dst-addr-type name
        set src-name "s2s_local"
        set dst-name "s2s_remote"
    next
end
```

3. Check the state of the IPsec tunnel:

```
FGT-A # diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=s2s ver=1 serial=1 11.101.1.1:0->173.1.1.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=17 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-rfc
run_state=0 accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

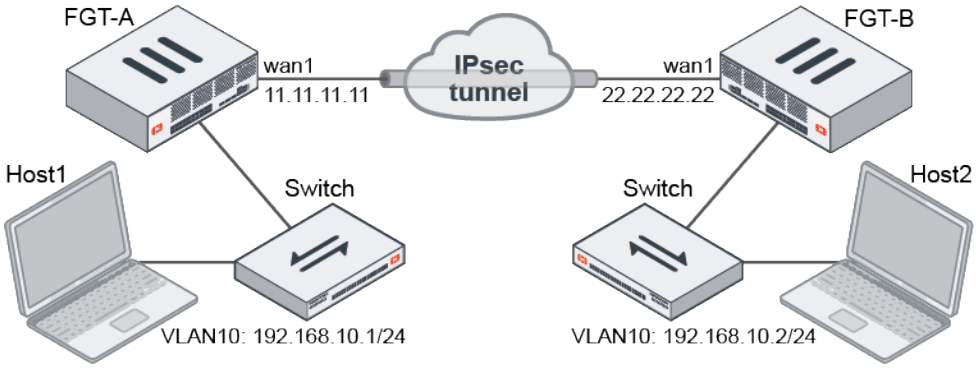
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=12 olast=2978 ad=/0
stat: rxp=4 txp=4 rxb=608 txb=336
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=s2s proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 dscp
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:174.16.101.0/255.255.255.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=110226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=39916/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000005 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=a41f202e esp=aes key=16 8a02875b80b884d961af227fe8b5cdee
       ah=sha1 key=20 fc9760b79e79dbbeef630ec0c5dca74777976208
  enc: spi=431bce1e esp=aes key=16 851117af24212da89e466d8bea9632bb
       ah=sha1 key=20 0807cc0af2dc4ea049a6b1a4af410ccc71e2156d
  dec:pkts/bytes=4/336, enc:pkts/bytes=4/608
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
run_tally=1
```

4. Use a packet analyzer, or sniffer, to check the ESP packets:



VXLAN over IPsec tunnel with virtual wire pair

In this example, a site-to-site VPN tunnel is formed between two FortiGates. Multiple VLANs are configured that match on each FortiGate. Host1 and Host2 are connected to VLAN10 on the switches.



To configure FGT-A in the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 11.11.11.11 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http fgfm
        set type physical
        set role wan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
```

2. Configure a static route to send all traffic out the WAN interface:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 11.11.11.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the IPsec tunnel:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ipsec"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 22.22.22.22
        set psksecret **********
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "ipsec"
        set phase1name "ipsec"
        set proposal aes256-sha1
```

```
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the VXLAN interface and bind it to the IPsec interface:

```
config system vxlan
    edit "vxlan"
        set interface "ipsec"
        set vni 10
        set remote-ip "22.22.22.22"
    next
end
```

The remote IP address is the peer side WAN IP address.

5. Configure a virtual wire pair with the LAN and VXLAN interfaces as members:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "vwp"
        set member "port1" "vxlan"
        set wildcard-vlan enable
    next
end
```

The interfaces added to the virtual wire pair cannot be part of a switch, such as the default internal interface.

By enabling wildcard VLANs on the virtual wire pair, all VLAN tagged traffic that is allowed by the virtual wire pair firewall policies passes through the pair.

6. Configure a firewall policy to allow traffic between the LAN and VXLAN interfaces:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 4
        set name "vwp-pol"
        set srcintf "port1" "vxlan"
        set dstintf "port1" "vxlan"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To configure FGT-B in the CLI:

1. Configure the WAN interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 22.22.22.22 255.255.255.0 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http fgfm
        set type physical
        set role wan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
```

2. Configure a static route to send all traffic out the WAN interface:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.22.22.2
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the IPsec tunnel:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ipsec"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 11.11.11.11
        set psksecret **********
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "ipsec"
        set phase1name "ipsec"
        set proposal aes256-sha1
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the VXLAN interface and bind it to the IPsec interface:

```
config system vxlan
    edit "vxlan"
        set interface "ipsec"
        set vni 10
        set remote-ip "11.11.11.11"
    next
end
```

   The remote IP address is the peer side WAN IP address.

5. Configure a virtual wire pair with the LAN and VXLAN interfaces as members:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "vwp"
        set member "port1" "vxlan"
        set wildcard-vlan enable
    next
end
```

6. Configure a firewall policy to allow traffic between the LAN and VXLAN interfaces:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 4
        set name "vwp-pol"
        set srcintf "port1" "vxlan"
        set dstintf "port1" "vxlan"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
        next
    end
```

Test the configuration

To test the configuration, ping Host2 (VLAN10: 192.168.10.2/24) from Host1 (VLAN10: 192.168.10.1/24):

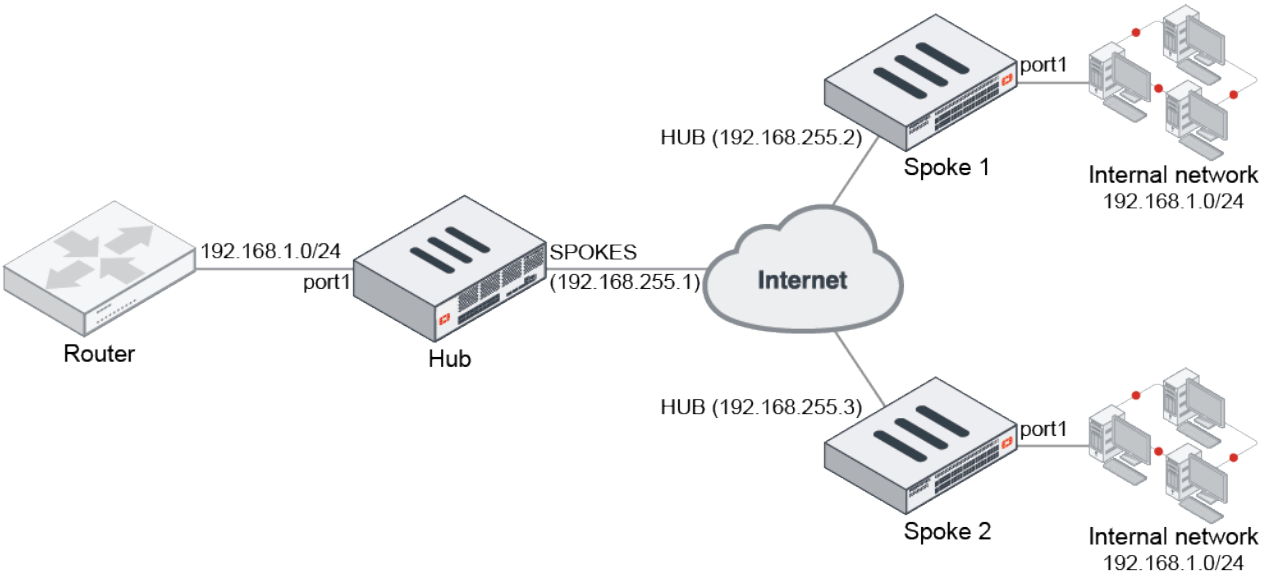
```
C:\>ping 192.168.10.2

Pinging 192.168.10.2 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 192.168.10.2: bytes=32 time=8ms TTL=56
Reply from 192.168.10.2: bytes=32 time=8ms TTL=56
Reply from 192.168.10.2: bytes=32 time=8ms TTL=56
Reply from 192.168.10.2: bytes=32 time=11ms TTL=56

Ping statistics for 192.168.10.2:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
    Minimum = 8ms, Maximum = 11ms, Average = 8ms
```

VXLAN over IPsec using a VXLAN tunnel endpoint

This example describes how to implement VXLAN over IPsec VPN using a VXLAN tunnel endpoint (VTEP).



This example uses a hub and spoke topology. Dialup VPN is used because it allows a single phase 1 dialup definition on the hub FortiGate. Additional spoke tunnels are added with minimal changes to the hub by adding a user account and VXLAN interface for each spoke. Spoke-to-spoke communication is established through the hub. This example assumes that the authentication users and user groups have already been created. While this topology demonstrates hub and spoke with dialup tunnels with XAuth authentication, the same logic can be applied to a static VPN with or without XAuth.

IPsec tunnel interfaces are used to support VXLAN tunnel termination. An IP address is set for each tunnel interface. Ping access is allowed for troubleshooting purposes.

VTEPs are created on the hub and each spoke to forward VXLAN traffic through the IPsec tunnels. VXLAN encapsulates OSI layer 2 Ethernet frames within layer 3 IP packets. You will need to either combine the internal port1 and VXLAN

interface into a soft switch, or create a virtual wire pair so that devices behind port1 have direct layer 2 access to remote peers over the VXLAN tunnel. This example uses a switch interface on the hub and a virtual wire pair on the spokes to demonstrate the two different methods.

In order to apply an IPsec VPN interface on the VXLAN interface setting, `net-device` must be disabled in the IPsec VPN phase 1 settings.

To configure the hub FortiGate:

1. Configure the IPsec phase 1 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "SPOKES"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype one
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "SPOKES"
        set peerid "SPOKES"
        set psksecret <secret>
    next
end
```

2. Configure the IPsec phase 2 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "SPOKES"
        set phase1name "SPOKES"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

3. Configure the IPsec VPN policy that allows VXLAN traffic between the spokes:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "VXLAN_SPOKE_to_SPOKE"
        set srcintf "SPOKES"
        set dstintf "SPOKES"
        set srcaddr "NET_192.168.255.0"
        set dstaddr "NET_192.168.255.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "UDP_4789"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec tunnel interfaces (the remote IP address is not used, but it is necessary for this configuration):

```
config system interface
    edit "SPOKES"
        set vdom "root"
```

```
        set ip 192.168.255.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 192.168.255.254 255.255.255.0
        set snmp-index 12
        set interface "port2"
    next
end
```

5. Configure the VXLAN interfaces. Each spoke requires a VXLAN interface with a different VNI. The remote IP is the tunnel interfaces IP of the spokes.
   a. Spoke 1:

```
config system VXLAN
    edit "SPOKES_VXLAN1"
        set interface "SPOKES"
        set vni 1
        set remote-ip "192.168.255.2"
    next
end
```

   b. Spoke 2:

```
config system VXLAN
    edit "SPOKES_VXLAN2"
        set interface "SPOKES"
        set vni 2
        set remote-ip "192.168.255.3"
    next
end
```

To configure the spoke FortiGates:

1. Configure the IPsec phase 1 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "HUB"
        set interface "port2"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set localid "SPOKES"
        set xauthtype client
        set authusr "SPOKE1"
        set authpasswd <secret>
        set remote-gw <hub public IP>
        set psksecret <secret>
    next
end
```

2. Configure the IPsec phase 2 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "HUB"
        set phase1name "HUB"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
```

```
        set auto-negotiate enable
        set src-subnet 192.168.255.2 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```



The hub FortiGate inserts a reverse route pointing to newly established tunnel interfaces for any of the subnets that the spoke FortiGate's source quick mode selectors provides. This is why you should set the tunnel IP address here.

3. Configure the IPsec VPN policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "VTEP_IPSEC_POLICY"
        set srcintf "HUB"
        set dstintf "HUB"
        set srcaddr "none"
        set dstaddr "none"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "PING"
        set logtraffic disable
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec tunnel interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "HUB"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.255.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 192.168.255.1 255.255.255.0
        set snmp-index 12
        set interface "port2"
    next
end
```

5. Configure the VXLAN interfaces (the remote IP is the tunnel interface IP of the hub):
   a. Spoke 1:

```
config system VXLAN
    edit "HUB_VXLAN"
        set interface "HUB"
        set vni 1
        set remote-ip "192.168.255.1"
    next
end
```

   b. Spoke 2:

```
config system VXLAN
    edit "HUB_VXLAN"
        set interface "HUB"
        set vni 2
```

```
            set remote-ip "192.168.255.1"
        next
    end
```

To bind the VXLAN interface to the internal interface:

1. Configure a switch interface on the hub:

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "SW"
        set vdom "root"
        set member "port1" "SPOKES_VXLAN1" "SPOKES_VXLAN2"
        set intra-switch-policy {implicit | explicit}
    next
end
```



Allowing intra-switch traffic is implicitly allowed by default. Use `set intra-switch-policy explicit` to require firewall policies to allow traffic between switch interfaces.

2. Configure a virtual wire pair on the spokes:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "VWP"
        set member "HUB_VXLAN" "port1"
    next
end
```



The virtual wire pair requires an explicit policy to allow traffic between interfaces.

To test the configuration:

1. Ping the hub FortiGate from the spoke FortiGate:

```
user@pc-spoke1:~$ ping 192.168.1.1 -c 3
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.24 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.672 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.855 ms
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2002 ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.672/0.923/1.243/0.239 ms
```

2. Sniff traffic on the hub FortiGate:

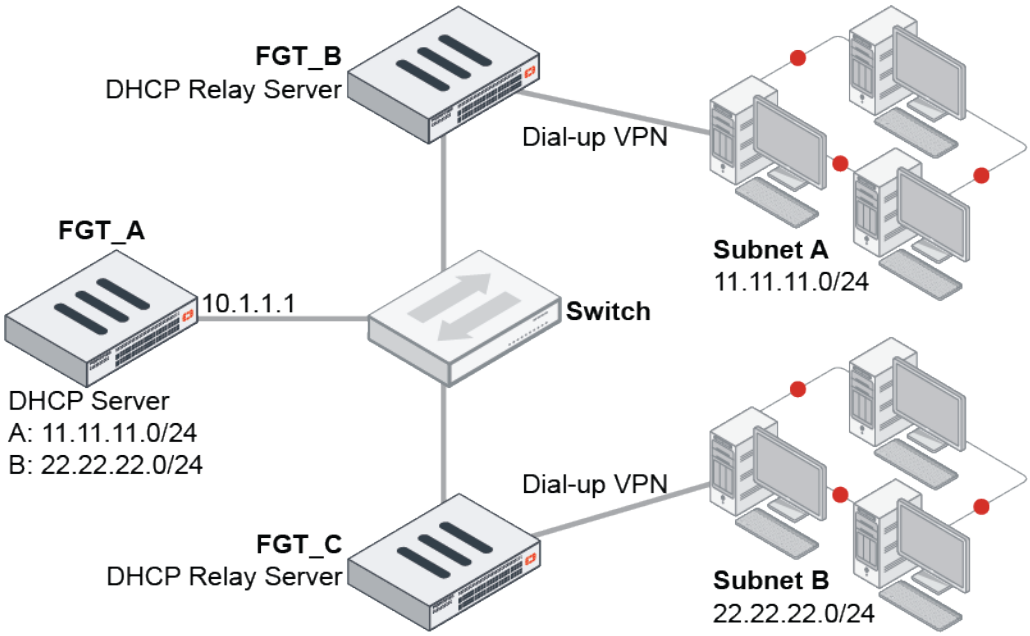
```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'icmp or (udp and port 4789)' 4 0
interfaces=[any] filters=[icmp or (udp and port 4789)]
15:00:01.438230 SPOKES in 192.168.255.2.4790 -&gt; 192.168.255.1.4789: udp 106
15:00:01.438256 SPOKES_VXLAN1 in 192.168.1.2 -&gt; 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
15:00:01.438260 port1 out 192.168.1.2 -&gt; 192.168.1.1: icmp: echo request
15:00:01.438532 port1 in 192.168.1.1 -&gt; 192.168.1.2: icmp: echo reply
15:00:01.438536 SPOKES_VXLAN1 out 192.168.1.1 -&gt; 192.168.1.2: icmp: echo reply
15:00:01.438546 SPOKES out 192.168.255.1.4851 -&gt; 192.168.255.2.4789: udp 106
```

Defining gateway IP addresses in IPsec with mode-config and DHCP

For an IPsec tunnel, the gateway IP address (giaddr) can be defined on a DHCP relay agent. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported. An IPsec tunnel with mode-config and DHCP relay cannot specify a DHCP subnet range to the DHCP server.

The DHCP server assigns an IP address based on the giaddr set on the IPSec phase1 interface and sends an offer to this subnet. The DHCP server must have a route to the specified subnet giaddr.

Example



To define the gateway IP address on the DHCP relay server:

1. Configure the VPN IPsec phase1 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ipv4"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal des-md5 des-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 5
        set assign-ip-from dhcp
        set dhcp-ra-giaddr 11.11.11.1
        set psksecret ***********
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

IPv6 could also be configured:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ipv6"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal des-md5 des-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 5
        set assign-ip-from dhcp
        set dhcp6-ra-linkaddr 2000:11:11:11::1
        set psksecret **********
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

2. Enable DHCP proxy and configure the DHCP server IP address:

```
config system settings
    set dhcp-proxy enable
    set dhcp-server-ip "10.1.1.1"
end
```

3. Repeat the above steps for FGT_C and subnet B.

FQDN support for remote gateways

FortiGate supports FQDN when defining an IPsec remote gateway with a dynamically assigned IPv6 address. When FortiGate attempts to connect to the IPv6 device, FQDN will resolve the IPv6 address even when the address changes.

Using FQDN to configure the remote gateway is useful when the remote end has a dynamic IPv6 address assigned by their ISP or DHCPv6 server.

To set the VPN to DDNS and configure FQDN:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ddns6"
        set type ddns
        set interface "agg1"
        set ip-version 6
        set ike-version 2
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm-prfsha256 aes256gcm-prfsha384
chacha20poly1305-prfsha256
        set dpd on-idle
        set remotegw-ddns "rgwa61.vpnlab.org"
        set psksecret **********
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "ddns6"
        set phase1name "ddns6"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
```

```
chacha20poly1305
        set src-addr-type subnet6
        set dst-addr-type subnet6
        set src-subnet6 2003:1:1:1::/64
    next
end
```

FQDN resolves the IPv6 address

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 7

vfid=0, name=rgwa61.vpnlab.org, ttl=3600:3547:1747
         2003:33:1:1::22 (ttl=3600)
```

FortiGate uses FQDN to connect to the IPv6 device

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list name ddns6
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=ddns6 ver=2 serial=2 2003:33:1:1::1:0->2003:33:1:1::22:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=32 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/520 options[0208]=npu frag-rfc
run_state=0 accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=9 olast=9 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=72340
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=ddns6 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:2003:1:1:1::/64:0
  dst: 0:::/0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=42680/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=ac7a5718 esp=aes key=16 9976b66280cc49f500d8edca093e03fb
       ah=sha1 key=20 4d94d76fc18df5a180c52e0a6cd5f430fde48fe8
  enc: spi=7ab888ec esp=aes key=16 841a95d3ee5ea5108a2ba269b74998d1
       ah=sha1 key=20 ed0b52d27776e30149ee36af4fd4626681c2a3a1
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=2003:33:1:1::22 npu_lgwy=2003:33:1:1::1 npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=0 enc_
npuid=0
run_tally=1
```

The tunnel can still connect to the FQDN address when the IPv6 address changes

```
# diagnose debug application ike -1
# diagnose debug enable
ike 0:ddns6: set oper down
ike 0:ddns6: carrier down
ike shrank heap by 159744 bytes
ike 0: cache rebuild start
ike 0:ddns6: sending DNS request for remote peer rgwa61.vpnlab.org
ike 0: send IPv6 DNS query : rgwa61.vpnlab.org
ike 0: cache rebuild done
ike 0:ddns6: remote IPv6 DDNS gateway is empty, retry to resolve it
ike 0: DNS response received for remote gateway rgwa61.vpnlab.org
ike 0: DNS rgwa61.vpnlab.org -> 2003:33:1:1::33
```

```
ike 2:test:46932: could not send IKE Packet(P1_RETRANSMIT):50.1.1.1:500->50.1.1.2:500,
len=716: error 101:Network is unreachable
ike 0:ddns6: remote IPv6 DDNS gateway is empty, retry to resolve it
ike 0:ddns6: 'rgwa61.vpnlab.org' resolved to 2003:33:1:1::33
ike 0: cache rebuild start
ike 0:ddns6: local:2003:33:1:1::1, remote:2003:33:1:1::33
ike 0:ddns6: cached as static-ddns.
ike 0: cache rebuild done
ike 0:ddns6: auto-negotiate connection
ike 0:ddns6: created connection: 0x155aa510 32 2003:33:1:1::1->2003:33:1:1::33:500.

.....................................................................................
.......................
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: add IPsec SA: SPIs=ac7a5719/7ab888ed
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: IPsec SA dec spi ac7a5719 key
16:0F27F1D1D02496F90D15A30E2C032678 auth 20:46564E0E86A054374B31E58F95E4458340121BCE
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: IPsec SA enc spi 7ab888ed key
16:926B12908EE670E1A5DDA6AD8E96607B auth 20:42BF438DC90867B837B0490EAB08E329AB62CBE3
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: added IPsec SA: SPIs=ac7a5719/7ab888ed
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: sending SNMP tunnel UP trap
ike 0:ddns6: carrier up
```

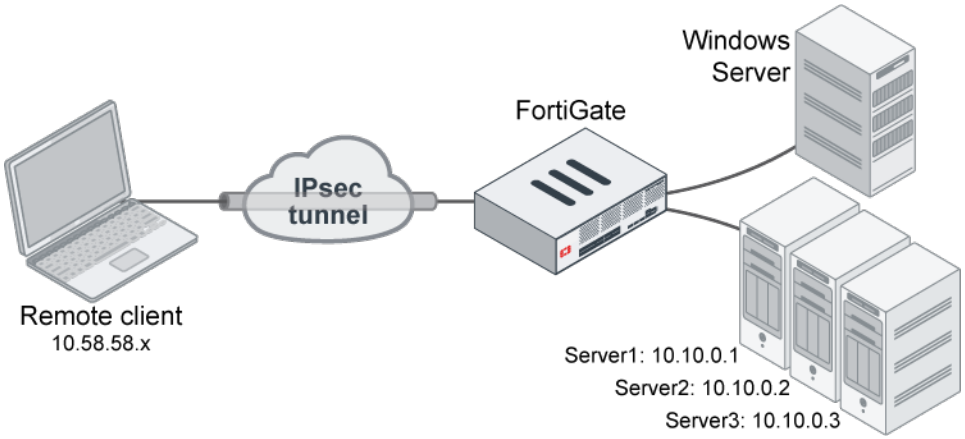
Windows IKEv2 native VPN with user certificate

In this example, IKEv2 with Extensible Authentication Protocol – Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) using mutual certificate authentication is configured. Mutual certificate authentication means that both the client and server use certificates to identify themselves. EAP uses RADIUS, which is handled by the Network Policy Server (NPS) on the Windows server. Certificates are generated and distributed through Active Directory Certificate Services (AD CS). An additional certificate is used to identify the IPsec gateway.

This example assumes that the following Windows server roles are installed and available:

- NPS (RADIUS)
- AD CS with a generated CA
- Group Policy Management
- DNS server

It is also assumed that a connection is established between the NPS and FortiGate, and a DNS entry exists for the NPS that the FortiGate can resolve.



Certificates

The following certificates are required:

- CA certificate for EAP-TLS to sign the client and server certificates.

  The CA certificate must be able to sign other certificates. It is created after AD CSs CA role installation. It is named lab-local-CA, as lab.local is the domain that is used in this example. The CA certificate is automatically installed on the server that is hosting the AD CS role. In this example, that server is also hosting the NPS and DNS server.

  The *Key Usage* specifies *Certificate Signing*.
- Client certificate for EAP-TLS used by the windows client.

  The client certificate is stored in the personal user certificate store and is used to authenticate the user. The certificate has *Client Authentication* and a SAN of the user's FQDN, and is signed by the CA. The CA is stored in *Current User > Trusted Root Certification Authorities*.
- Server certificate for EAP-TLS used by the server providing RADIUS authentication.

  The NPS certificate must be in the hosting server's certificate store so that the NPS can access it. It has *Server Authentication* and a SAN DNS name to match the server's IP address. The user must use the FQDN to connect to the VPN. If the IP address that the name resolves to is used, the certificate will not be considered valid.
- VPN certificate used to identify the FortiGate dialup gateway.

  The VPN certificate and private key are installed to the FortiGate using a CSR generated by the FortiGate

Configure the Windows server

The Windows server includes AD-CS, a RADIUS server, and a DNS server.

After the AD CS role has been installed and configured, the CA is ready to sign certificates.

Users and groups are defined first. The groups are configured to automatically receive certificates and relay membership to the FortiGate for granular access control through group matching in policies.

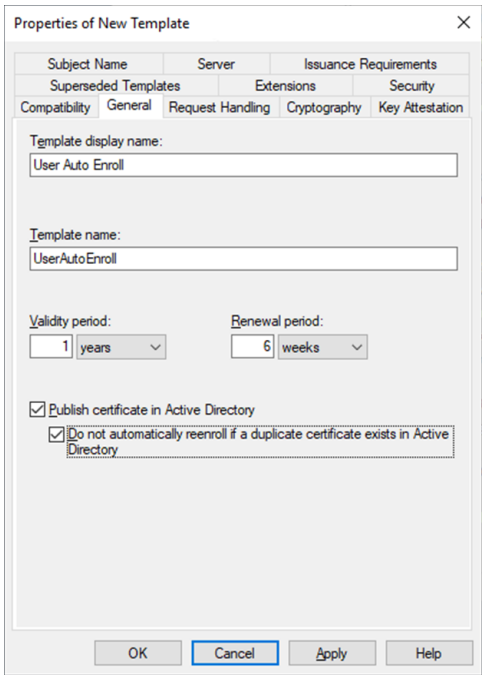
RADIUS is used to authorize connecting users. The RADIUS server returns users' groups with the access-accept response, to indicate to the FortiGate what groups the users belong to.

To create security groups and users:

1. Open *Active Directory Users and Computers*.
2. Create two groups, *Group1* and *Group2*.
3. Create two users, *User1* and *User2*.
4. Add *User1* to *Group1* and *User2* to *Group2*.

To create a certificate template to enable automatic enrollment for the user groups:

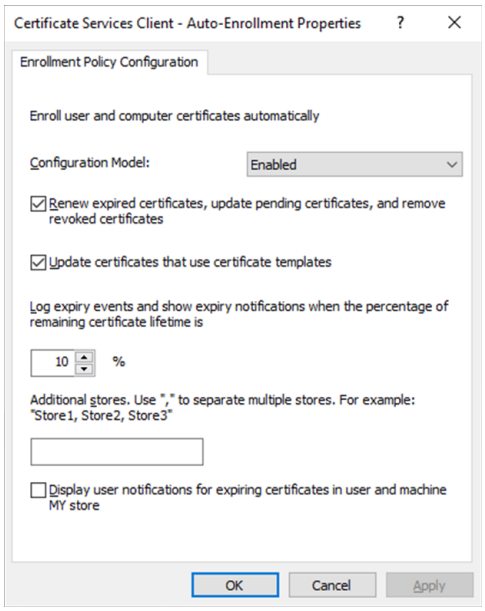
1. Open *Certificate Authority*.
2. In the navigation pane, expand the new CA, right-click *Certificate Template* and click *Manage*.
3. Configure a new certificate template:
   a. Right-click the *User* template and click *Duplicate Template*.
   b. On the *General* tab, enter a *Template display name*, such as *User Auto Enroll*.
   c. Enable *Publish certificate in Active Directory* and *Do not automatically reenroll...*.



   d. Configure the remaining settings as required, then go to the *Request Handling* tab.
   e. Disable *Allow private key to be exported* and select *Enroll subject without requiring any user input*.
   f. On the *Security* tab, in *Group or user name*, click *Add*.
   g. Add *Group1* and *Group2*.
   h. Select each group and, under *Permissions*, enable *Read*, *Enroll*, and *Autoenroll*.
   i. On the *Extensions* tab, click *Application Policies* then click *Edit*.
   j. Remove all of the policies expect for *Client Authentication*.
   k. Click *OK* then close the *Certificate Templates* console.
4. In the navigation pane, right-click *Certificate Template* and click *New* > *Certificate Template to Issue*.
5. Select the new certificate template, *User Auto Enroll*, then click *OK*.

To create a group policy to enable automatic enrollment:

1. Open the *Group Policy Management* console.
2. In the navigation pane, go to *Forest:lab.local* > *Domains* > *lab.local*, and then click *Group Policy Objects*.
3. Click *Action*, and then click *New*.
4. Set a *Name* for the new GPO then click *OK*.
5. Right-click the new GPO and click *Edit*.
6. In the *Group Policy Management Editor* navigation pane, go to *User configuration* > *Windows Settings* > *Security Settings* > *Public Key Policies*.
7. In the content pane, double-click *Certificate Services Client - Auto-Enrollment*.
8. Set *Configuration Model* to *Enabled*.
9. Enable *Renew expired certificates...* and *Update certificates...*.



10. Click *OK*.

To verify that users are receiving certificates:

1. Log into an endpoint with a domain user.
2. On the server, open Certification Authority.
3. Expand the CA and select *Issued Certificates*.
4. Verify that the user logged into the endpoint is listed under *Requested Name*. You can also check the local user certificate store on the endpoint.

To generate and sign a CSR and import the signed certificate to the FortiGate:

1. On the FortiGate and go to *System* > *Certificates* and click *Generate*.
2. Configure the CSR:

Certificate Name	vpn.lab.local
ID Type	Domain Name
Domain Name	vpn.lab.local
Subject Alternative Name	DNS:vpn.lab.local

3. Configure the remaining settings as required, then click *OK*.
4. Download the CSR to a location that is accessible to the CA server, in this example: C:\CSR\
5. Sign the CSR with the previously created CA:
   a. Open the command prompt as an administrator and enter the following:

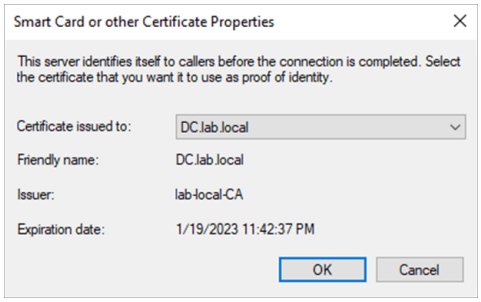
      ```
      certreq -submit -attrib "CertificateTemplate:WebServer" C:\CSR\vpn.lab.local.csr
      ```

      The *Certification Authority List* window opens.
   b. Select the CA and click *OK*.
   c. Save the signed certificate with a .cer file extension to a location that is accessible from the FortiGate.

6. Import the signed certificate to the FortiGate:
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Certificates* and click *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
   b. Click *Upload* and locate and select the signed certificate
   c. Click *OK*.

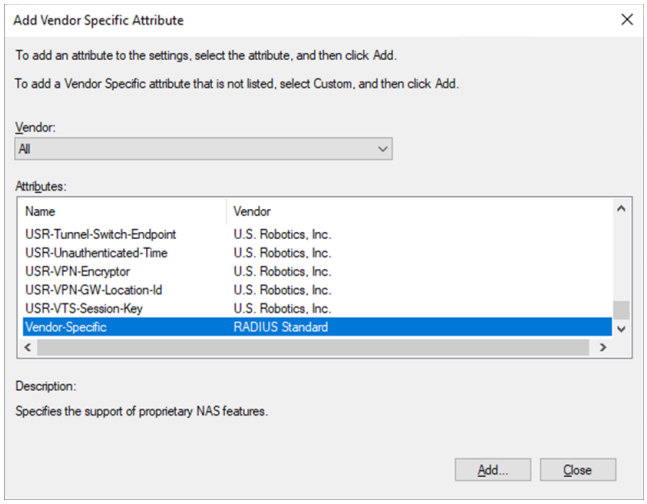
To configure network policies on the RADIUS server:

1. Open the *Network Policy Server* and, in the console tree, expand *Policies*.
2. Right-click on *Network Policies* and click *New*.
3. Enter a *Policy name*, such as *VPN-Group1*, then click *Next*.
4. Under *Condition description* click *Add*:
   a. Select *User Groups*, then click *Add*.
   b. Click *Add Groups*.
   c. Enter the group name, *Group1*, click *Check Names* to confirm the group.
   d. Click *OK* in both windows.
5. Click *Next*.
6. Make sure that *Access granted* is selected, then click *Next*.
7. On the *Configure Authentication Methods* page, click *Add* and add the EAP type *Microsoft: Smart Care or other certificate*.
8. Edit the EAP type, select the previously generated certificate, then click *OK*.



9. Deselect all of the *Less secure authentication methods* then click *Next*.
10. Configure constraints as needed, then click *Next*.
11. On the *Configure Settings* page, under *RADIUS Attributes*, select *Vendor Specific*, then click *Add*:

a. In the *Attributes* list, select *Vendor-Specific*, then click *Add*.

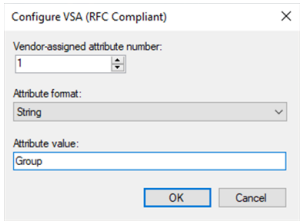


b. In the *Attribute Information* window, click *Add*.

c. In the *Vendor-Specific Attribute Information* window, enter the *Vendor Code*, *12356*, and select *Yes. It conforms*.

d. Click *Configure Attribute* and configure the following:

Vendor-assigned attribute number	1
Attribute format	String
Attribute value	Group



e. Click *OK* on all three windows and on the *Add Vendor Specific Attribute* window click *Close*.

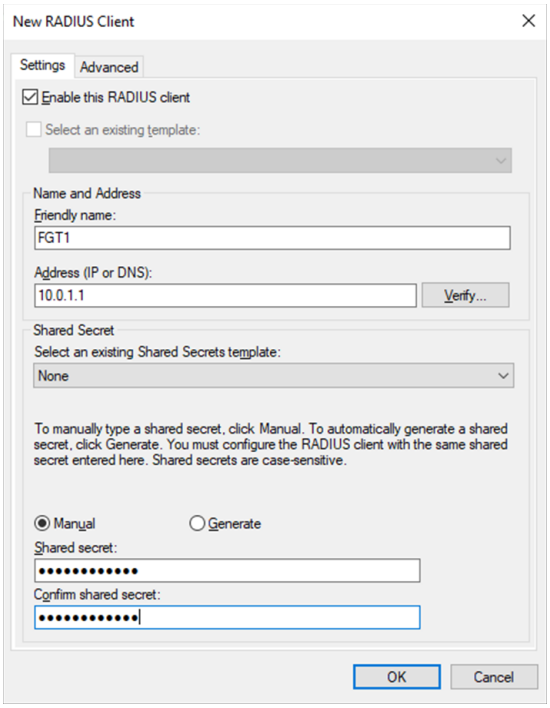
12. Click *Next*.
13. On the *Completing New Network Policy* page, review the configuration, then click *Finish*.
14. Duplicate the policy for *Group2*, and call the new policy *VPN-Group2*.
15. Reorder the policies so that *VPN-Group1* and *VPN-Group2* are one and two in the processing order.

To add the FortiGate as a RADIUS client:

1. Open the *Network Policy Server* and, in the console tree, expand *RADIUS Clients and Servers*.
2. Right-click on *RADIUS Clients* and click *New*.
3. Add the FortiGate as a RADIUS client:

Friendly name	FGT1

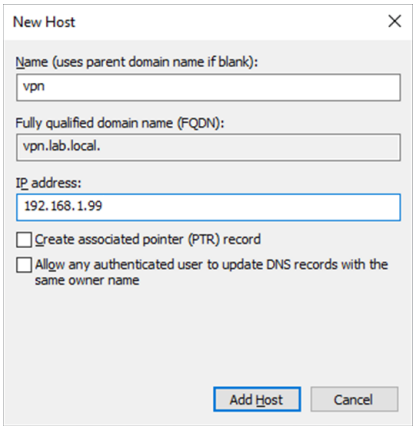
Address	10.0.1.1
Shared Secret	Manually enter the shared secret.



4. Click *OK*.

To create a DNS entry for the VPN connection:

1. Open the *DNS Manager*.
2. Go to *DC* > *Forward Lookup Zones* and select *lab.local*.
3. Right click in the content pane and select *New Host (A or AAAA)*.
4. Enter the VPN name. The FQDN should be auto-filled with *vpn.lab.local*.



5. Enter an IP address.
6. Click *Add Host*.

Configure the FortiGate

An IPsec VPN tunnel is configured to connect to the NPS (RADIUS) server for EAP authentication. For information about IPsec VPN, see IPsec VPNs on page 1488.

A RADIUS server is added to relay VPN authentication requests to the NPS server. For information about RADIUS servers, see RADIUS servers on page 1936.

Three groups are created that point to the RADIUS server for authentication: one group each for user group *Group1*, user group *Group2*, and the remote server. For information about groups, see User groups on page 1919.

Three firewall policies are created to test the functionality of the three user groups (see Policies on page 1090):

- Policy 1 allows VPN clients to communicate with each other.
- Policy 2 allows VPN clients in the *Group1* user group to communicate with *Server1* and *Server3*.
- Policy 3 allows VPN clients in the *Group2* user group to communicate with *Server1* and *Server2*.

To configure IPsec VPN in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Enter a name for the VPN, such as *vpn1*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*, then click *Next*.
4. In the *Network* section, configure the following:

Remote Gateway	Dialup User
Interface	port1
Mode Config	Enable
Assign IP From	Range
Client Address Range	10.58.58.1-10.58.58.10
DNS Server	192.168.1.100
Enable IPv4 Split Tunnel	Enable
Accessible Networks	Select the networks that VPN users will have access to.

5. In the *Authentication* section, configure the following:

Method	Signature
Certificate Name	vpn.lab.local
Version	2
Accept Types	Any peer ID

6. In the *Phase 1 Proposal* section, configure the following:

Encryption / Authentication	AES128 / SHA256
Encryption / Authentication	AES256 / SHA256
Encryption / Authentication	AES128 / SHA1

Diffie-Hellman Groups	14, 5, 2
Local ID	vpn.lab.local

7. In the *Phase 2 Selectors* section, configure the following:

Local Address	Named Address - all
Remote Address	Named Address - all
Encryption / Authentication	AES128 / SHA256
Encryption / Authentication	AES256 / SHA256
Encryption / Authentication	AES128 / SHA1
Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)	Disable
Autokey Keep Alive	Enable

8. Enable EAP settings in the CLI:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit vpn1
        set eap enable
        set eap-identity send-request
    next
end
```

To configure IPsec VPN in the CLI:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port1"
        set ike-version 2
        set authmethod signature
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set ipv4-dns-server1 192.168.1.100
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1
        set localid "vpn.lab.local"
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 14 5 2
        set eap enable
        set eap-identity send-request
        set certificate "vpn.lab.local"
        set ipv4-start-ip 10.58.58.1
        set ipv4-end-ip 10.58.58.10
        set ipv4-split-include "10/8_net"
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vpn1"
        set phase1name "vpn1"
```

```
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1
        set pfs disable
        set keepalive enable
        set src-addr-type name
        set dst-addr-type name
        set src-name "all"
        set dst-name "all"
    next
end
```

To add the RADIUS server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the server, such as *NPS*.
3. Enter the *Primary Server IP/Name* and *Secret*.
   The *Test User Credentials* option will not work, as it does not use certificates for the test.
4. Click *OK*.

To add the RADIUS server in the CLI:

```
config user radius
    edit "NPS"
        set server <ip>
        set secret **********
    next
end
```

To configure the user groups in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the group, such as *Group1*.
3. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*:
   a. Set *Remote Server* to the just created RADIUS server, *NPS*.
   b. Set *Groups* to *Specify* and enter *Group1*.
   c. Click *OK*.
4. Click *OK*.
5. Create a second group called *Group2* with the same *Remote Server* and *Group Name* set to *Group2*.
6. Create a third group called RADIUS with the same *Remote Server* but no *Group Name*.

To configure the user groups in the CLI:

```
config user group
    edit "Group1"
        set member "NPS"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "NPS"
                set group-name "Group1"
            next
        end
    next
```

```
    edit "Group2"
        set member "NPS"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "NPS"
                set group-name "Group2"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "RADIUS"
        set member "NPS"
    next
end
```

To configure the policies in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure policy 1:

Name	VPN-VPN
Incoming Interface	VPN1
Outgoing Interface	VPN1
Source	all, RADIUS
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
NAT	Disable

3. Click *OK*.
4. Click *Create New* again and configure policy 2:

Name	VPN Group1
Incoming Interface	VPN1
Outgoing Interface	Server1, Server3
Source	all, Group1
Destination	10.10.0.1, 10.10.0.3
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
NAT	Disable

5. Click *OK*.

6. Click *Create New* again and configure policy 3:

Name	VPN Group2
Incoming Interface	VPN1
Outgoing Interface	Server1, Server2
Source	all, Group2
Destination	10.10.0.1, 10.10.0.2
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
NAT	Disable

7. Click *OK*.

To configure the policies in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "VPN-VPN"
        set srcintf "VPN1"
        set dstintf "VPN1"
        set action accept
        set srcaddr "all" "RADIUS"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat disable
    next
    edit 2
        set name "VPN Group1"
        set srcintf "VPN1"
        set dstintf "Server1" "Server3"
        set action accept
        set srcaddr "all" "Group1"
        set dstaddr "10.10.0.1" "10.10.0.3"
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat disable
    next
    edit 3
        set name "VPN Group2"
        set srcintf "VPN1"
        set dstintf "Server1" "Server2"
        set action accept
        set srcaddr "all" "Group2"
        set dstaddr "10.10.0.1" "10.10.0.2"
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat disable
    next
end
```

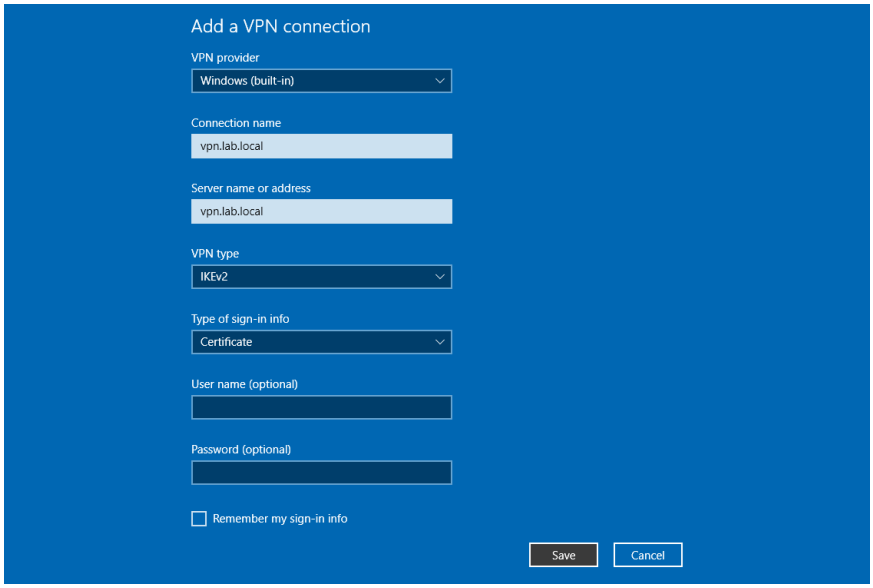
Configure the Windows client

The configuration is done on a Windows 10 Enterprise endpoint.

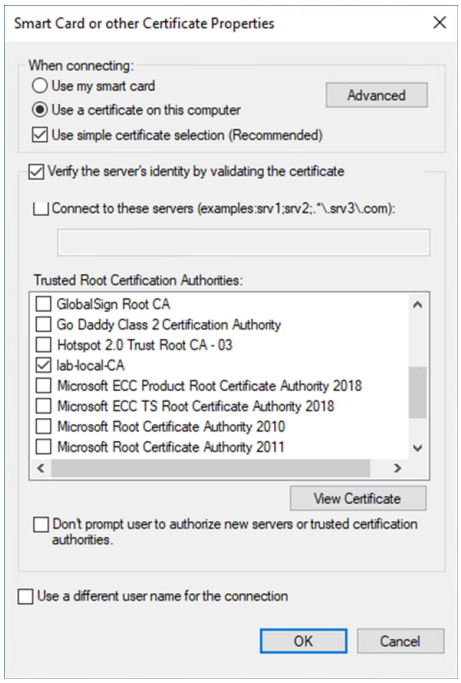
To add VPN connection and configure a VPN interface:

1. Open the *Settings* page and go to *Network & Internet* > *VPN*.
2. Click *Add a VPN connection*.
3. Configure the following:

VPN provider	Windows (built-in)
Connection name	vpn.lab.local
Server name or address	vpn.lab.local
VPN type	IKEv2
Type of sign-in info	Certificate



4. Click *Save*.
5. Go to *Network & Internet* > *Status* and, under *Advanced network settings*, click *Change adapter options*.
6. Select the VPN connection then click *Change settings of this connection*, or right-click on the connection and select *Properties*:
   a. Go to the *Settings* tab and, in the *Authentication* section, click *Properties*.
   b. Select *Use a certificate on this computer* and enable *Use simple certification selection*.
   c. Enable *Verify the server's identity by validating the certificate*.
   d. Optionally, enable *Connect to these servers* and enter your NPS server's FQDN, in this case *DC.lab.local*.
   e. In the *Trusted Root Certificate Authorities* list, select the CA *lab-local-CA*.



f. Click *OK*, then click *OK* again.

To test the connection:

1. Log in to the Windows endpoint as user1.
2. Open the network settings and connect to the *vpn.lab.local* VPN.
3. Ping each of the three servers to confirm that you can connect to server1 (10.10.0.1) and server3 (10.10.0.3), but not server2 (10.10.0.2).
4. Log out of the Windows endpoint, then log back in as user2.
5. Open the network settings and connect to the *vpn.lab.local* VPN.
6. Ping each of the three servers to confirm that you can connect to server1 (10.10.0.1) and server2 (10.10.0.2), but not server3 (10.10.0.3).

VPN IPsec troubleshooting

See the following IPsec troubleshooting examples:

- Understanding VPN related logs
- IPsec related diagnose commands on page 1769

Understanding VPN related logs

This section provides some IPsec log samples.

IPsec phase1 negotiating

```
logid="0101037127" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 1" msg="progress IPsec phase 1" action="negotiate"
```

```
remip=11.101.1.1

    locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
    cookies="e41eeecb2c92b337/0000000000000000" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
    xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="to_HQ" status="success" init="local"
    mode="aggressive" dir="outbound" stage=1 role="initiator" result="OK"
```

IPsec phase1 negotiated

```
logid="0101037127" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 1" msg="progress IPsec phase 1" action="negotiate"
remip=11.101.1.1

    locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
    cookies="e41eeecb2c92b337/1230131a28eb4e73" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
    xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="to_HQ" status="success" init="local"

mode="aggressive" dir="outbound" stage=2 role="initiator" result="DONE"
```

IPsec phase1 tunnel up

```
logid="0101037138" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="IPsec connection status changed" msg="IPsec connection status change"
action="tunnel-up" remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ" tunnelip=N/A tunnelid=1530910918
tunneltype="ipsec" duration=0 sentbyte=0 rcvdbyte=0 nextstat=0
```

IPsec phase2 negotiate

```
logid="0101037129" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 2" msg="progress IPsec phase 2" action="negotiate"
remip=11.101.1.1

locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ" status="success" init="local"

mode="quick" dir="outbound" stage=1 role="initiator" result="OK"
```

IPsec phase2 tunnel up

```
logid="0101037139" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="IPsec phase 2 status changed" msg="IPsec phase 2 status change" action="phase2-up"

    remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
    cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
    xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ"

phase2_name="to_HQ"
```

IPsec phase2 sa install

```
logid="0101037133" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="IPsec SA installed" msg="install IPsec SA" action="install_sa" remip=11.101.1.1
locip=173.1.1.1
```

```
    remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13" cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2"
    user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1
    vpntunnel="to_HQ" role="initiator" in_spi="ca646448" out_spi="747c10c6"
```

IPsec tunnel statistics

```
logid="0101037141" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544131118
logdesc="IPsec tunnel statistics" msg="IPsec tunnel statistics" action="tunnel-stats"
remip=10.1.100.15 locip=172.16.200.4 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="mgmt1"
cookies="3539884dbd8f3567/c32e4c1beca91b36"
```

```
    user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A
    vpntunnel="L2tpoIPsec_0" tunnelip=10.1.100.15 tunnelid=1530910802 tunneltype="ipsec"
    duration=6231 sentbyte=57343 rcvdbyte=142640 nextstat=60
```

IPsec phase2 tunnel down

```
logid="0101037138" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="IPsec connection status changed" msg="IPsec connection status change"
action="tunnel-down" remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500
outintf="port13" cookies="30820aa390687e39/886e72bf5461fb8d" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ" tunnelip=N/A
tunnelid=1530910786 tunneltype="ipsec" duration=6425 sentbyte=504 rcvdbyte=152 nextstat=0
```

IPsec phase1 sa deleted

```
logid="0101037134" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="IPsec phase 1 SA deleted" msg="delete IPsec phase 1 SA" action="delete_phase1_sa"
remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
cookies="30820aa390687e39/886e72bf5461fb8d" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ"
```

IPsec related diagnose commands

This section provides IPsec related diagnose commands.

- Daemon IKE summary information list: `diagnose vpn ike status`

```
connection: 2/50
IKE SA: created 2/51  established 2/9  times 0/13/40 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/13  established 1/7  times 0/8/30 ms
```

- IPsec phase1 interface status: `diagnose vpn ike gateway list`

```
vd: root/0
name: tofgtc
version: 1
interface: port13 42
addr: 173.1.1.1:500 -> 172.16.200.3:500
created: 4313s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 0/0

  id/spi: 92 5639f7f8a5dc54c0/809a6c9bbd266a4b
  direction: initiator
  status: established 4313-4313s ago = 10ms
```

```
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: 74aa3d63d88e10ea-8a1c73b296b06578
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/81786
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000

vd: root/0
name: to_HQ
version: 1
interface: port13 42
addr: 173.1.1.1:500 -> 11.101.1.1:500
created: 1013s ago
assigned IPv4 address: 11.11.11.1/255.255.255.252
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms

  id/spi: 95 255791bd30c749f4/c2505db65210258b
  direction: initiator
  status: established 1013-1013s ago = 0ms
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: bb101b9127ed5844-1582fd614d5a8a33
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/85086
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000010
```

- IPsec phase2 tunnel status: `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
nname=L2tpoIPsec ver=1 serial=6 172.16.200.4:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/24 options[0018]=npu
create_dev
proxyid_num=0 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=13544 olast=13544 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=0
----
name=to_HQ ver=1 serial=7 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=10 olast=1112 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=4 rxb=152 txb=336
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=5
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41773/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200
  dec: spi=ca64644a esp=aes key=16 6cc873fdef91337a6cf9b6948972c90f
       ah=sha1 key=20 e576dbe3ff92605931e5670ad57763c50c7dc73a
  enc: spi=747c10c8 esp=aes key=16 5060ad8d0da6824204e3596c0bd762f4
       ah=sha1 key=20 52965cbd5b6ad95212fc825929d26c0401948abe
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/84, enc:pkts/bytes=4/608
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=5 dec_npuid=2 enc_npuid=2
```

- Packets encrypted/decrypted counter: `diagnose vpn ipsec status`

```
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 337152           46069
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 337152           46069
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 38               1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 38               1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

```
CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                0.
        des              : 0                0.
        3des             : 1337             1582
        aes              : 71               11426
        aes-gcm          : 0                0.
        aria             : 0                0.
        seed             : 0                0.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                0.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                0.
        md5              : 48               28
        sha1             : 1360             12980
        sha256           : 0                0.
        sha384           : 0                0.
        sha512           : 0                0.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                0.
        des              : 0                0.
        3des             : 0                0.
        aes              : 0                0.
        aes-gcm          : 0                0.
        aria             : 0                0.
        seed             : 0                0.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                0.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                0.
        md5              : 0                0.
        sha1             : 0                0.
        sha256           : 0                0.
        sha384           : 0                0.
        sha512           : 0                0.
```

- diagnose debug application ike -1
  - diagnose vpn ike log-filter dst-addr4 11.101.1.1
  - diagnose vpn ike log-filter src-addr4 173.1.1.1

```
# ike 0:to_HQ:101: initiator: aggressive mode is sending 1st message...
ike 0:to_HQ:101: cookie dff03f1d4820222a/0000000000000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (agg_i1send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=912,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/0000000000000000
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Aggressive id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75 len=624
ike 0:to_HQ:101: initiator: aggressive mode get 1st response...
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID RFC 3947 4A131C81070358455C5728F20E95452F
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID DPD AFCAD71368A1F1C96B8696FC77570100
ike 0:to_HQ:101: DPD negotiated
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID draft-ietf-ipsra-isakmp-xauth-06.txt 09002689DFD6B712
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID CISCO-UNITY 12F5F28C457168A9702D9FE274CC0204
ike 0:to_HQ:101: peer supports UNITY
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID FORTIGATE 8299031757A36082C6A621DE00000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: peer is [[QualityAssurance62/FortiGate]]/FortiOS (v0 b0)
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID FRAGMENTATION 4048B7D56EBCE88525E7DE7F00D6C2D3
```

```
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID FRAGMENTATION 4048B7D56EBCE88525E7DE7F00D6C2D3C0000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: peer identifier IPV4_ADDR 11.101.1.1
ike 0:to_HQ:101: negotiation result
ike 0:to_HQ:101: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:   protocol id = ISAKMP:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:      trans_id = KEY_IKE.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:      encapsulation = IKE/none
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=OAKLEY_ENCRYPT_ALG, val=AES_CBC, key-len=128
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=OAKLEY_HASH_ALG, val=SHA2_256.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=AUTH_METHOD, val=PRESHARED_KEY_XAUTH_I.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=OAKLEY_GROUP, val=MODP2048.
ike 0:to_HQ:101: ISAKMP SA lifetime=86400
ike 0:to_HQ:101: received NAT-D payload type 20
ike 0:to_HQ:101: received NAT-D payload type 20
ike 0:to_HQ:101: selected NAT-T version: RFC 3947
ike 0:to_HQ:101: NAT not detected
ike 0:to_HQ:101: ISAKMP SA dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75 key
16:D81CAE6B2500435BFF195491E80148F3
ike 0:to_HQ:101: PSK authentication succeeded
ike 0:to_HQ:101: authentication OK
ike 0:to_HQ:101: add INITIAL-CONTACT
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (agg_i2send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=172,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75
ike 0:to_HQ:101: established IKE SA dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Mode config id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:97d88fb4 len=92
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 16521 request 0:
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 16522 request 0:
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (cfg_send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=108,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:97d88fb4
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Mode config id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3724f295 len=92
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (cfg_send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=92,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3724f295
ike 0:to_HQ:101: initiating mode-cfg pull from peer
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request APPLICATION_VERSION
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request INTERNAL_IP4_ADDRESS
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request INTERNAL_IP4_NETMASK
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request UNITY_SPLIT_INCLUDE
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request UNITY_PFS
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (cfg_send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=140,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3bca961f
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Mode config id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3bca961f len=172
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 1 response 4:0B0B0B01
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received INTERNAL_IP4_ADDRESS 11.11.11.1
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 2 response 4:FFFFFFFC
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received INTERNAL_IP4_NETMASK 255.255.255.252
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received UNITY_PFS 1
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 28676 response
28:0A016400FFFFFF000000000000000A016500FFFFFF00000000000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received UNITY_SPLIT_INCLUDE 0 10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
local port 0
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received UNITY_SPLIT_INCLUDE 0 10.1.101.0/255.255.255.0:0
local port 0
```

```
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received APPLICATION_VERSION 'FortiGate-100D
v6.0.3,build0200,181009 (GA)'
ike 0:to_HQ: mode-cfg add 11.11.11.1/255.255.255.252 to 'to_HQ'/58
ike 0:to_HQ: set oper up
ike 0:to_HQ: schedule auto-negotiate
ike 0:to_HQ:101: no pending Quick-Mode negotiations
ike shrank heap by 159744 bytes
ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: IPsec SA connect 42 173.1.1.1->11.101.1.1:0
ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: using existing connection

# ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: config found
ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: IPsec SA connect 42 173.1.1.1->11.101.1.1:500 negotiating
ike 0:to_HQ:101: cookie dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: initiator selectors 0 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0-
>0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (quick_i1send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=620,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Quick id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01 len=444
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: responder selectors 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0->0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: my proposal:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   protocol id = IPSEC_ESP:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   PFS DH group = 14
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA1
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA1
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA2_256
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA2_256
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_GCM_16 (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=NULL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_GCM_16 (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=NULL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_CHACHA20_POLY1305 (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=NULL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: incoming proposal:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   protocol id = IPSEC_ESP:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   PFS DH group = 14
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA1
ike 0:to_HQ: schedule auto-negotiate
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: replay protection enabled
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: SA life soft seconds=42902.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: SA life hard seconds=43200.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: IPsec SA selectors #src=1 #dst=1
```

```
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: src 0 4 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: dst 0 4 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: add IPsec SA: SPIs=ca64644b/747c10c9
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: IPsec SA dec spi ca64644b key
16:D5C60F1A3951B288CE4DEC7E04D2119D auth 20:F872A7A26964208A9AA368A31AEFA3DB3F3780BC
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: IPsec SA enc spi 747c10c9 key
16:97952E1594F718128D9D7B09400856EA auth 20:4D5E5BC45A9D5A9A4631E911932F5650A4639A37
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: added IPsec SA: SPIs=ca64644b/747c10c9
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: sending SNMP tunnel UP trap
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (quick_i2send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=76,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01
```

SSL VPN

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN in FortiOS 6.4.11.

- SSL VPN best practices on page 1775
- SSL VPN quick start on page 1778
- SSL VPN tunnel mode on page 1785
- SSL VPN web mode on page 1794
- SSL VPN authentication on page 1804
- SSL VPN to IPsec VPN on page 1887
- SSL VPN protocols on page 1898
- Configuring OS and host check on page 1899
- SSL VPN troubleshooting on page 1905
- Restricting VPN access to rogue/non-compliant devices with Security Fabric

SSL VPN best practices

Securing remote access to network resources is a critical part of security operations. SSL VPN allows administrators to configure, administer, and deploy a remote access strategy for their remote workers.

Choosing the correct mode of operation and applying the proper levels of security are integral to providing optimal performance and user experience, and keeping your user data safe.

The below guidelines outline selecting the correct SSL VPN mode for your deployment and employing best practices to ensure that your data are protected.

Information about SSL VPN throughput and maximum concurrent users is available on your device's datasheet; see Next-Generation Firewalls Models and Specifications.

Tunnel mode

In tunnel mode, the SSL VPN client encrypts all traffic from the remote client computer and sends it to the FortiGate through an SSL VPN tunnel over the HTTPS link between the user and the FortiGate.

The FortiGate establishes a tunnel with the client, and assigns a virtual IP (VIP) address to the client from a range reserved addresses. While the underlying protocols are different, the outcome is very similar to a IPsec VPN tunnel. All

client traffic is encrypted, allowing the users and networks to exchange a wide range of traffic, regardless of the application or protocols.

Use this mode if you require:

- A wide range of applications and protocols to be accessed by the remote client.
- No proxying is done by the FortiGate.
- Straightforward configuration and administration, as traffic is controlled by firewall policies.
- A transparent experience for the end user. For example, a user that needs to RDP to their server only requires a tunnel connection; they can then use the usual client application, like Windows Remote Desktop, to connect.

Full tunneling forces all traffic to pass through the FortiGate (see SSL VPN full tunnel for remote user on page 1785). Split tunneling only routes traffic to the designated network through the FortiGate (see SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user on page 1778).

Limitations

Tunnel mode requires that the FortiClient VPN client be installed on the remote end. The standalone FortiClient VPN client is free to use, and can accommodate SSL VPN and IPsec VPN tunnels. For supported operating systems, see the FortiClient Technical Specifications.

Web mode

Web-only mode provides clientless network access using a web browser with built-in SSL encryption. Users authenticate to FortiGate's SSL VPN Web Portal, which provides access to network services and resources, including HTTP/HTTPS, Telnet, FTP, SMB/CIFS, VNC, RDP, and SSH. When a user starts a connection to a server from the web portal, FortiOS proxies this communication with the server. All communication between the FortiGate and the user continues to be over HTTPS, regardless of the service that is being accesssed.

Use this mode if you require:

- A clientless solution in which all remote services are access through a web portal.
- Tight control over the contents of the web portal.
- Limited services provided to the remote users.

Limitations

- Multiple applications and protocols are not supported.
- VNC and RDP access might have limitations, such as certain shortcut keys not being supported.
- In some configurations RDP can consume a significant amount of memory and CPU time.
- Firewall performance might decrease as remote usage increases.
- Highly customized web pages might not render correctly.

Security best practices

Integrate with authentication servers

For networks with many users, integrate your user configuration with existing authentication servers through LDAP, RADIUS, or FortiAuthenticator.

By integrating with existing authentication servers, such as Windows AD, there is a lower change of making mistakes when configuring local users and user groups. Your administration effort is also reduces.

See SSL VPN with LDAP user authentication on page 1805 for more information.

Use a non-factory SSL certificate for the SSL VPN portal

Your certificate should identify your domain so that a remote user can recognize the identity of the server or portal that they are accessing through a trusted CA.

The default Fortinet factory self-signed certificates are provided to simplify initial installation and testing. If you use these certificates you are vulnerable to man-in-the-middle attacks, where an attacker spoofs your certificate, compromises your connection, and steals your personal information. It is highly recommended that you purchase a server certificate from a trusted CA to allow remote users to connect to SSL VPN with confidence. See Procure and import a signed SSL certificate on page 1059 for more information.

Enabling the *Do not Warn Invalid Server Certificate* option on the client disables the certificate warning message, potentially allowing users to accidentally connect to untrusted servers. Disabling invalid server certificate warnings is not recommended.

Use multi-factor authentication

Multi-factor authentication (MFA) ensures that the end-user is who they claim to be by requiring at least two factors - a piece of information that the user knows (password), and an asset that the user has (OTP). A third factor, something a user is (fingerprint or face), may be enabled as well. FortiToken Mobile is typically used for MFA.

FortiGate comes with two free FortiTokens, and more can be purchased from the FortiToken Mobile iOS app or through Fortinet partners.

See SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication on page 1833 for more information.

2FA, a subset of MFA, can also be set up with email tokens. See Email Two-Factor Authentication on FortiGate for information.

Deploy user certificates for remote SSL VPN users

This method of 2FA uses a user certificate as the second authentication factor. This is more secure, as it identifies the end user using a certificate. The configuration and administration of this solution is significantly more complicated, and requires administrators with advanced knowledge of the FortiGate and certificate deployment.

See SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1815 for more information.

Define your minimum supported TLS version and cipher suites

Minimum and maximum supported TLS version can be configured in the FortiGate CLI. The cipher algorithm can also be customized.

See How to control the SSL version and cipher suite for SSL VPN for more information.

Properly administer firewall policies and profiles against only the access level required for the remote user

Users do not all require the same access. Access should only be granted after careful considerations. Typically, users are placed in groups, and each group is allowed access to limited resources.

Using SSL VPN realms simplifies defining the control structure for mapping users and groups to the appropriate resources.

See SSL VPN multi-realm on page 1880 for more information.

SSL VPN quick start

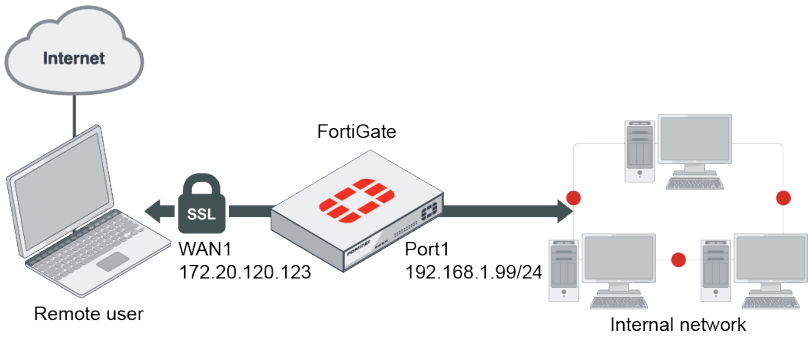
The following topics provide introductory instructions on configuring SSL VPN:

- SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user on page 1778
- Connecting from FortiClient VPN client on page 1781
- Set up FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1783
- Connecting from FortiClient with FortiToken on page 1784

SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network and internet through an SSL VPN by tunnel mode using FortiClient but accessing the Internet without going through the SSL VPN tunnel.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.



The split tunneling routing address cannot explicitly use an FQDN or an address group that includes an FQDN. To use an FQDN, leave the routing address blank and apply the FQDN as the destination address of the firewall policy.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.

   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internal subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a tunnel mode only portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.
   b. Enable *Split Tunneling*.
   c. Select *Routing Address* to define the destination network that will be routed through the tunnel. Leave undefined to use the destination in the respective firewall policies.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.
   e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *tunnel-access*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn split tunnel access*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. In this example, the *Destination* is *all*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set split-tunneling  enable
        set split-tunneling-routing-address "192.168.1.0"
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        next
    next
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn split tunnel access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “sslvpngroup”
        set action accept
```

```
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

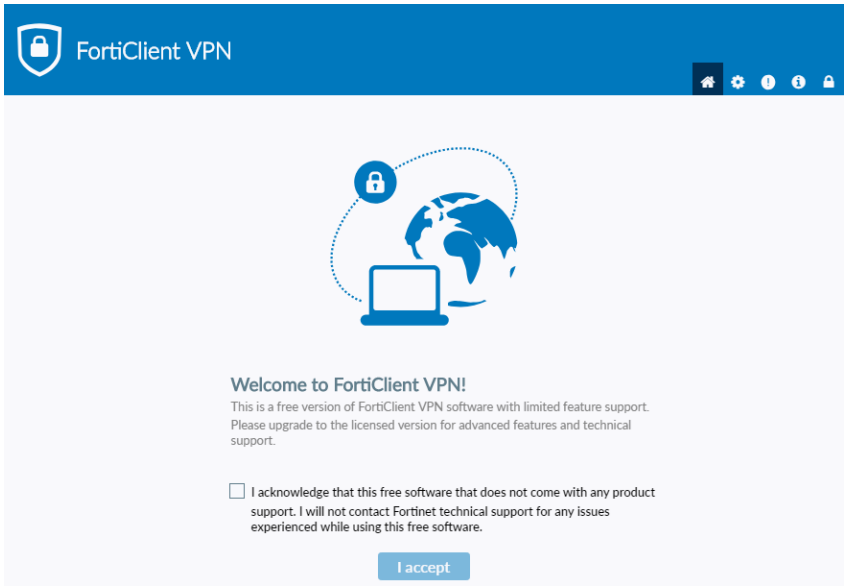
Connecting from FortiClient VPN client

For FortiGate administrators, a free version of FortiClient VPN is available which supports basic IPsec and SSL VPN and does not require registration with EMS. This version does not include central management, technical support, or some advanced features.

Downloading and installing the standalone FortiClient VPN client

You can download the free VPN client from FNDN or FortiClient.com.

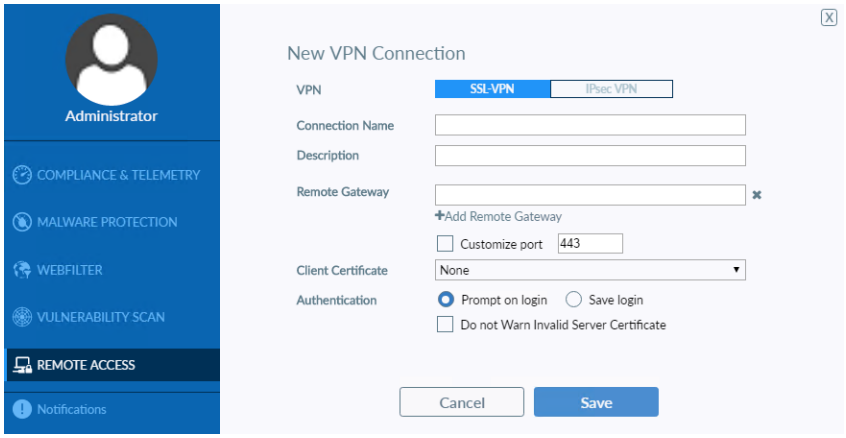
When the free VPN client is run for the first time, it displays a disclaimer. You cannot configure or create a VPN connection until you accept the disclaimer and click *I accept*:



Configuring an SSL VPN connection

To configure an SSL VPN connection:

1. On the *Remote Access* tab, click on the settings icon and then *Add a New Connection*.



2. Select *SSL-VPN*, then configure the following settings:

Connection Name	SSLVPNtoHQ
Description	(Optional)
Remote Gateway	172.20.120.123
Customize port	10443
Client Certificate	Select *Prompt on connect* or the certificate from the dropdown list.
Authentication	Select *Prompt on login* for a prompt on the connection screen

3. Click *Save* to save the VPN connection.

Connecting to SSL VPN

To connect to SSL VPN:

1. On the *Remote Access* tab, select the VPN connection from the dropdown list.
   Optionally, you can right-click the FortiTray icon in the system tray and select a VPN configuration to connect.
2. Enter your username and password.
3. Click the *Connect* button.
4. After connecting, you can now browse your remote network. Traffic to 192.168.1.0 goes through the tunnel, while other traffic goes through the local gateway. FortiClient displays the connection status, duration, and other relevant information.
5. Click the *Disconnect* button when you are ready to terminate the VPN session.

Checking the SSL VPN connection

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
2. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL entry.

To check the tunnel log in using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

Set up FortiToken multi-factor authentication

This configuration adds multi-factor authentication (MFA) to the split tunnel configuration (SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user on page 1778). It uses one of the two free mobile FortiTokens that is already installed on the FortiGate.

To configure MFA using the GUI:

1. Configure a user and user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and edit local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enable *Two-factor Authentication* and select one mobile *Token* from the list,
   c. Enter the user's *Email Address*.
   d. Enable *Send Activation Code* and select *Email*.
   e. Click *Next* and click *Submit*.
2. Activate the mobile token.
   When a FortiToken is added to user *sslvpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

To configure MFA using the CLI:

1. Configure a user and user group:

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken <select mobile token for the option list>
        set email-to <user's email address>
        set passwd <user's password>
    next
end
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
```

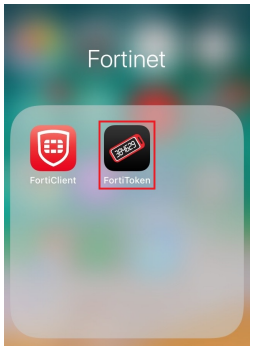
```
    next
end
```

2. Activate the mobile token.
   When a FortiToken is added to user *sslvpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

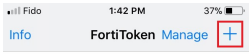
Connecting from FortiClient with FortiToken

To activate your FortiToken:

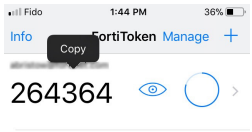
1. On your device, open FortiToken Mobile. If this is your first time opening the application, it may prompt you to create a PIN for secure access to the application and tokens.



2. You should have received your notification via email, select + and use the device camera to scan the token QR code in your email.



3. FortiToken Mobile provisions and activates your token and generates token codes immediately. To view the OTP's digits, select the eye icon. After you open the application, FortiToken Mobile generates a new six-digit OTP every 30 seconds.



To connect to SSL VPN:

1. On the *Remote Access* tab, select the VPN connection from the dropdown list.
   Optionally, you can right-click the FortiTray icon in the system tray and select a VPN configuration to connect.
2. Enter your username and password.
3. Click the *Connect* button.
4. A Token field will appear, prompting you for the FortiToken code. Enter the FortiToken code from your Mobile device.
5. After connecting, you can now browse your remote network. Traffic to 192.168.1.0 goes through the tunnel, while other traffic goes through the local gateway. FortiClient displays the connection status, duration, and other relevant information.
6. Click the *Disconnect* button when you are ready to terminate the VPN session.

SSL VPN tunnel mode

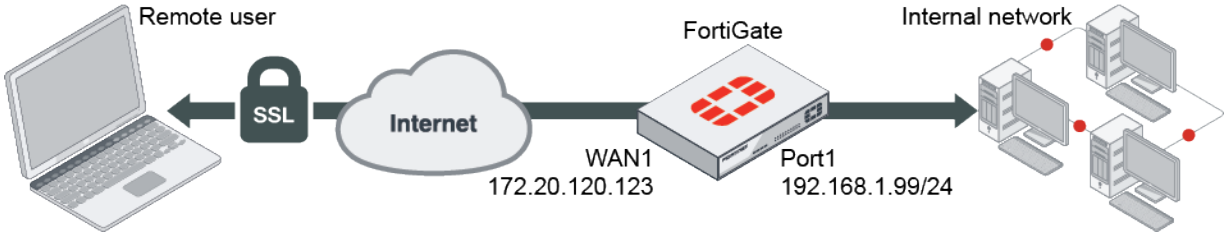
The following topics provide instructions on configuring SSL VPN tunnel mode:

- SSL VPN full tunnel for remote user
- SSL VPN tunnel mode host check
- SSL VPN split DNS on page 1791

SSL VPN full tunnel for remote user

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network and internet through an SSL VPN by tunnel mode using FortiClient.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
2. Configure user and user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a tunnel mode only portal *my-full-tunnel-portal*.
   b. Disable *Split Tunneling*.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.

e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *tunnel-access*.
f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-full-tunnel-portal*.

5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policies to allow remote user to access the internal network:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Name* to *sslvpn tunnel mode access*.
   c. Set *Incoming Interface* to *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* Address to *all* and User to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. Set *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   g. Click *OK*.
   h. Click *Create New*.
   i. Set *Name* to *sslvpn tunnel mode outgoing*.
   j. Configure the same settings as the previous policy, except set *Outgoing Interface* to *wan1*.
   k. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal and predefine RDP bookmark for windows server.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-full-tunnel-portal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
```

```
        set split-tunneling disable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-full-tunnel-portal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policies to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn tunnel mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "sslvpn tunnel mode outgoing"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To see the results:

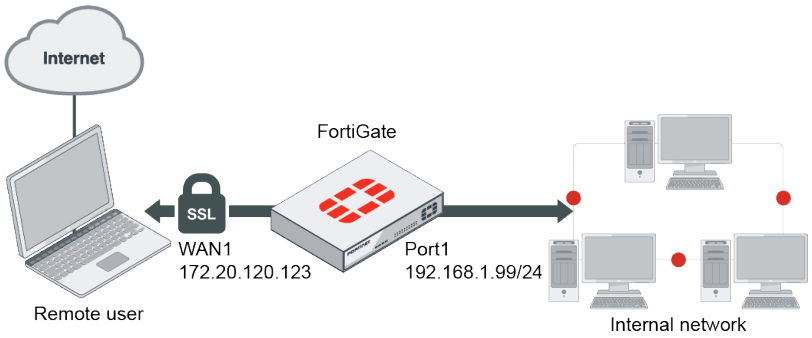
1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.

3. Add a new connection:
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
7. After connection, all traffic except the local subnet will go through the tunnel *FGT*.
8. Go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
9. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details for the SSL entry.

SSL VPN tunnel mode host check

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network through an SSL VPN by tunnel mode using FortiClient with AV host check.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

The split tunneling routing address cannot explicitly use an FQDN or an address group that includes an FQDN. To use an FQDN, leave the routing address blank and apply the FQDN as the destination address of the firewall policy.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.

2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a tunnel mode only portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.
   b. Enable *Tunnel Mode* and *Enable Split Tunneling*.
   c. Select *Routing Address*.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*.

   It is **HIGHLY** recommended that you acquire a signed certificate for your installation. Please review the SSL VPN best practices on page 1775 and learn how to Procure and import a signed SSL certificate on page 1059.

   e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *tunnel-access*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn tunnel access with av check*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. In this example, the *Destination* is *all*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Click *OK*.
6. Use CLI to configure SSL VPN web portal to enable the host to check for compliant antivirus software on the user's computer.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit my-split-tunnel-access
        set host-check av
    next
end
```

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set split-tunneling  enable
        set split-tunneling-routing-address "192.168.1.0"
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

7. Configure SSL VPN web portal to enable the host to check for compliant antivirus software on the user's computer:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit my-split-tunnel-access
        set host-check av
    next
end
```

To see the results:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection:
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
   If the user's computer has antivirus software, a connection is established; otherwise FortiClient shows a compliance warning.
7. After connection, traffic to *192.168.1.0* goes through the tunnel. Other traffic goes through local gateway.
8. On the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
9. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details for the SSL entry.

SSL VPN split DNS

SSL VPN clients in tunnel mode can enable the following settings to split DNS traffic:

- Resolve DNS requests for a specific domain, or suffix, using specific DNS servers.
- Resolve all other DNS requests using a DNS server configured in the SSL VPN settings. This DNS server can be the same as the client system DNS server, or another DNS server.

Administrators typically configure SSL VPN clients to use DNS servers that are behind the FortiGate on the internal network. This will require DNS traffic to traverse the SSL VPN tunnel.

Configuring SSL VPN DNS servers to use DNS suffixes

The `dns-suffix` setting under `config vpn ssl settings` is used to specify domains for SSL VPN DNS servers in the tunnel mode configuration. This setting can only be configured in the CLI.

The DNS servers and suffixes configured under `config vpn ssl settings` have a global scope, and apply only to SSL VPN portals that do not have their own DNS server configuration.

To configure DNS servers for all SSL VPN portals:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set dns-suffix domain1.com
    set dns-server1 10.10.10.10
    set dns-server2 10.10.10.11
end
```

SSL VPN portals configured with their own DNS servers and suffixes under `config vpn ssl web portal` override the settings configured under `config vpn ssl settings`.

To configure DNS servers for a specific SSL VPN portal in split tunnel mode:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set dns-suffix domain2.com
        set dns-server1 10.10.10.12
        set dns-server2 10.10.10.13
        set split-tunneling enable
    next
end
```



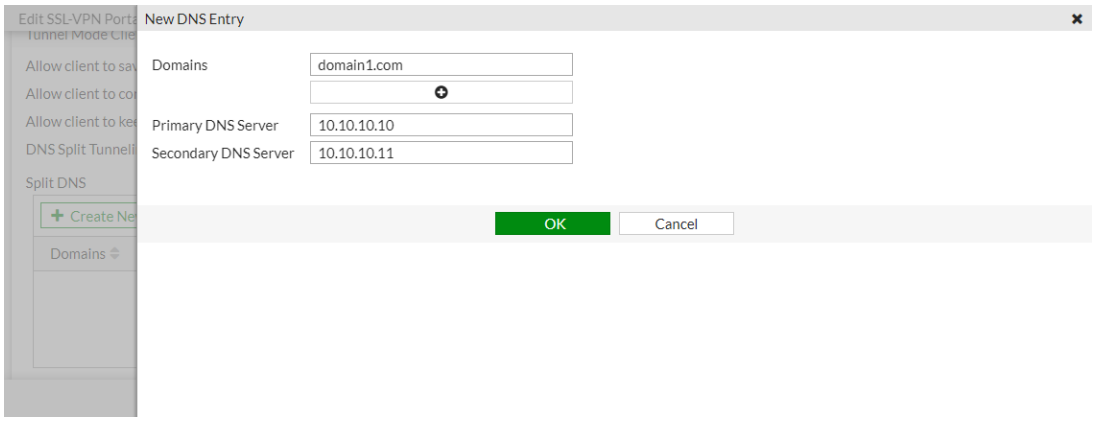
Only DNS requests that match DNS suffixes use the DNS servers configured in the VPN. Due to iOS limitations, the DNS suffixes are not used for searching as in Windows. Using short (non-FQDN) names may not be possible.

Configuring SSL VPN DNS servers for tunnel mode using DNS split tunneling

The DNS split tunneling setting can be used to configure domains that apply to a specific SSL VPN portal by specifying primary and secondary DNS servers to be used to resolve specific suffixes. This setting can be configured in the GUI and CLI. In the following example, DNS split tunneling is configured on the default tunnel-access portal with two DNS entries.

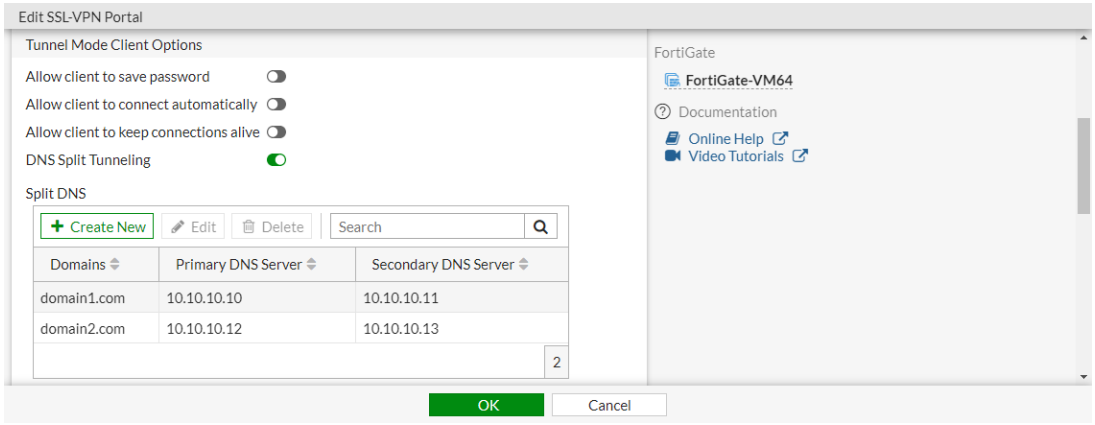
To configure DNS split tunneling in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* and double-click *tunnel-access* to edit the portal.
2. In the *Tunnel Mode Client Options* section, enable *DNS Split Tunneling*.
3. In the *Split DNS* table, click *Create New*. The *New DNS Entry* pane opens.
4. Configure the first DNS entry:
   a. For *Domains*, enter *domain1.com*.
   b. Set the *Primary DNS Server* to *10.10.10.10*.
   c. Set the *Secondary DNS Server* to *10.10.10.11*.



d. Click *OK*.

5. Configure the second DNS entry:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. For *Domains*, enter *domain2.com*.
   c. Set the *Primary DNS Server* to *10.10.10.12*.
   d. Set the *Secondary DNS Server* to *10.10.10.13*.
   e. Click *OK*.



6. Click *OK* to save the portal settings.

To configure DNS split tunneling in the CLI:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "tunnel-access"
        set dns-suffix "domain0.com"
        set dns-server1 10.10.10.8
        set dns-server2 10.10.10.9
        set split-tunneling enable
        config split-dns
            edit 1
                set domains "domain1.com"
                set dns-server1 10.10.10.10
                set dns-server2 10.10.10.11
            next
            edit 2
                set domains "domain2.com"
```

```
                set dns-server1 10.10.10.12
                set dns-server2 10.10.10.13
            next
        end
    next
end
```

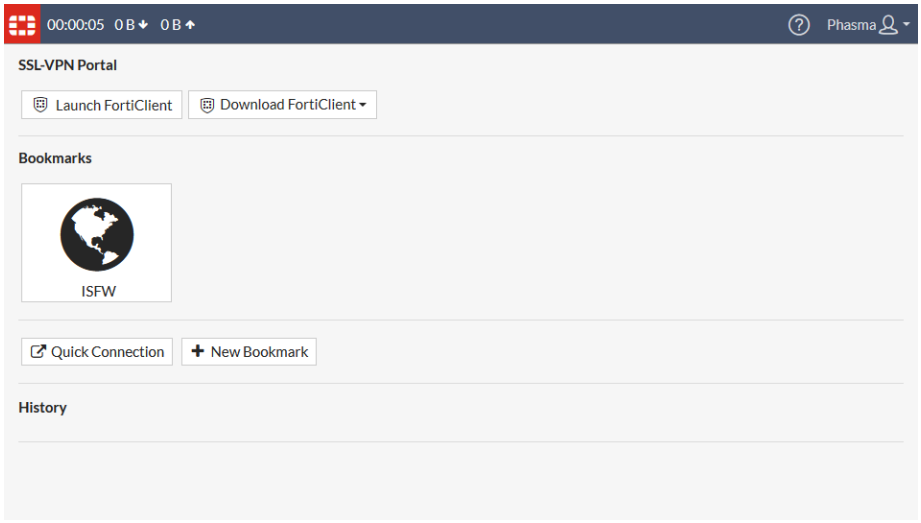
SSL VPN web mode

A user must have valid username and password credentials to log in to an SSL VPN web portal in addition to other multi-factor authentication components that may be configured, such as FortiTokens.

Web-only mode provides clientless network access using a web browser with built-in SSL encryption. Use this mode if you require:

- A clientless solution where all remote services are accessed through a web portal
- Tight control over the contents of the web portal
- Limited services provided to the remote users

After logging in, the web portal page appears:



A web portal includes the following features:

- The session information is displayed in the left corner of the top banner. This includes the elapsed time since logging in, and the volume of inbound and outbound HTTP and HTTPS traffic.
- The *Launch FortiClient* button appears if FortiClient is installed. Clicking the button opens the FortiClient *Remote Access* tab, but FortiClient does not automatically create a VPN connection based on the web mode connection information.
- The *Download FortiClient* button provides access to download the FortiClient application for various operating systems.
- The *Bookmarks* widget includes links to network resources (administrator-defined bookmarks), and users can create their own bookmarks.
- The *Quick Connection* button enables a connection to network resources without using or creating a bookmark.

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN web mode:

- Web portal configurations on page 1795
- Quick Connection tool on page 1797
- SSL VPN bookmarks on page 1798
- SSL VPN web mode for remote user on page 1801

Web portal configurations

An SSL VPN web portal enables users to access network resources through a secure channel using a web browser. System administrators can configure log in privileges for users and which network resources are available to these users. The portal configuration determines what the user sees when they log in to the portal. Both system administrators and the users have the ability to customize the SSL VPN portal.

There are three predefined default web portal configurations available:

- full-access: connecting clients can either access protected resources through the SSL VPN web portal, or use FortiClient to connect through tunnel mode.
- tunnel-access: connecting clients can only access protected resources with FortiClient connecting through tunnel mode.
- web-access: connecting clients can only access protected resources through the SSL VPN web portal.

Custom web portals can also be configured.

To configure a custom web portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings as needed:

GUI option		Description
Name		Enter the portal name.
Limit Users to One SSL-VPN Connection at a Time		This option is disabled by default. When enabled, once a user logs in to the portal, they cannot go to another system and log in with the same credentials again.
Tunnel Mode		When enabled, only traffic that matches the destination address in the respective policies will be routed through the tunnel. If a *Routing Address* is provided, it will take precedence over the policy destination addresses.
	Routing Address	Select the IPv4 SSL VPN tunnel mode firewall address that overrides the firewall policy destination addresses to control split tunneling access.
	Source IP Pools	Select an IP pool for users to acquire an IP address when connecting to the portal.

GUI option		Description
IPv6 Tunnel Mode		When enabled, only traffic that matches the destination address in the respective policies will be routed through the tunnel. If a *Routing Address* is provided, it will take precedence over the policy destination addresses.
	Routing Address	Select the IPv6 SSL VPN tunnel mode firewall address that overrides the firewall policy destination addresses to control split tunneling access.
	Source IPv6 Pools	Select an IP pool for users to acquire an IP address when connecting to the portal.
Tunnel Mode Client Options		The following options affect how FortiClient behaves when connected to the VPN tunnel.
	Allow client to save password	When enabled and if the user selects this option, their password is stored on the their computer and will automatically populate each time they connect to the VPN.
	Allow client to connect automatically	When enabled and if the user selects this option, when FortiClient launches (such as after a reboot or system start up), FortiClient will automatically attempt to connect to the VPN.
	Allow client to keep connections alive	When enabled and if the user selects this option, FortiClient will try to reconnect once it detects that the VPN connection is unexpectedly down (not manually disconnected by the user).
	DNS Split Tunneling	When enabled, the *Split DNS* table is visible, where new DNS entries can be created. See SSL VPN split DNS on page 1791 for more details.
Host Check		When enabled, the type of host checking performed on endpoints can be configured (see Configuring OS and host check on page 1899).
	Type	There are three options: • *Realtime AntiVirus*: check for antivirus software recognized by the Windows Security Center. • *Firewall*: check for firewall software recognized by the Windows Security Center. • *Enable both*: check for antivirus and firewall software recognized by the Windows Security Center.

GUI option		Description
Restrict to Specific OS Versions		When enabled, access to certain operating systems can be denied or forced to check for an update. By default, all operating systems in the table are allowed (see Configuring OS and host check on page 1899).
Enable Web Mode		Enable this option to configure the web portal settings.
	Portal Message	Enter a message that appears at the top of the web portal screen (default = *SSL-VPN Portal*).
	Theme	Select a color theme from the dropdown.
	Show Session Information	Enable to display session information in the top banner of the web portal (username, amount of time logged in, and traffic statistics).
	Show Connection Launcher	Enable to display the *Quick Connection* button.
	Show Login History	Enable to display the user's login history (*History*).
	User Bookmarks	Enable to allow users to add their own bookmarks (*New Bookmark*).
	Predefined Bookmarks	Use the table to create and edit predefined bookmarks. See To create a predefined administrator bookmark in FortiOS: on page 1800 for more details.
FortiClient Download		Enable this option to display the *Download FortiClient* button.
	Download Method	Select either *Direct* or *SSL-VPN Proxy* as the method to download FortiClient.
	Customize Download Location	Enable to configure a custom download location for *Windows* or *Mac*.

3. Click *OK*.

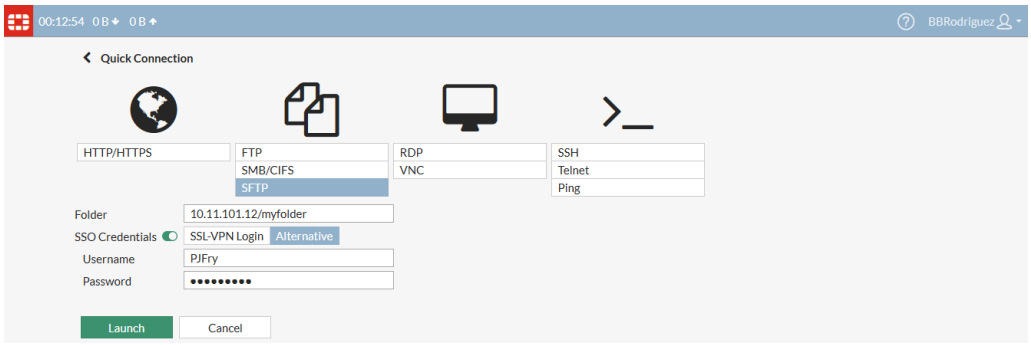
Quick Connection tool

The Quick Connection tool allows a user to connect to a resource when it is not a predefined bookmark. The tool allows the user to specify the type of server and the URL or IP address of the host.

To connect to a resource:

1. Select the connection type.
2. Enter the required information, such as the IP address or URL of the host.

3. Click *Launch*.



In a VNC session, to send Ctrl+Alt+Del, press *F8* then select *Send Ctrl-Alt-Delete*.

RDP sessions

Some Windows servers require that a specific security be set for RDP sessions, as opposed to the standard RDP encryption security. For example, Windows 10 requires that TLS be used.

You can specify a location option if the remote computer does not use the same keyboard layout as your computer by appending it to the *Host* field using the following format: `<IP address> -m <locale>`

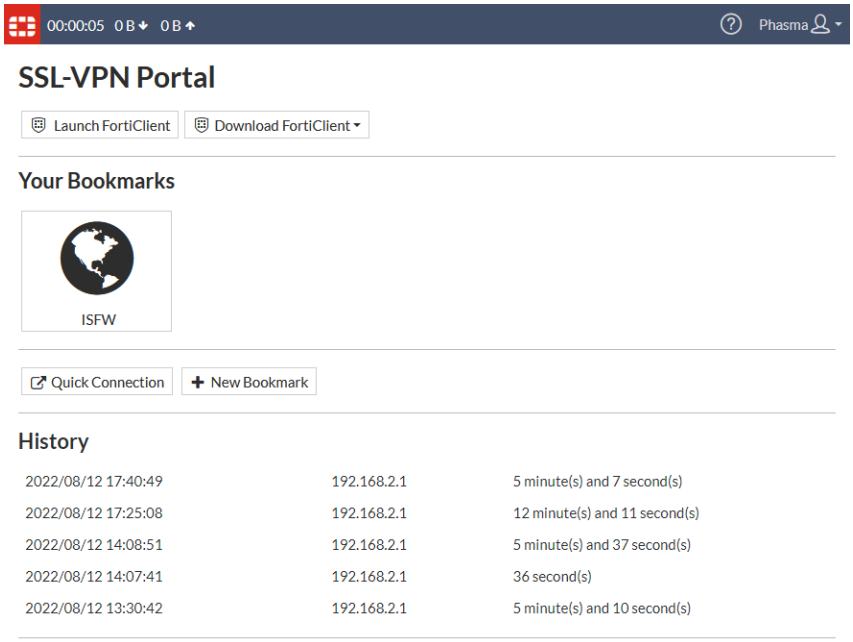
The available options are:

ar	Arabic	fr-be	Belgian French	no	Norwegian
da	Danish	fr-ca	Canadian French	pl	Polish
de	German	fr-ch	Swiss French	pt	Portuguese
de-ch	Swiss German	hr	Croatian	pt-br	Brazilian Portuguese
en-gb	British English	hu	Hungarian	ru	Russian
en-uk	UK English	it	Italian	sl	Slovenian
en-us	US English	ja	Japanese	sv	Sudanese
es	Spanish	lt	Lithuanian	tk	Turkmen
fi	Finnish	lv	Latvian	tr	Turkish
fr	French	mk	Macedonian		

SSL VPN bookmarks

The *Bookmarks* widget displays bookmarks configured by administrators and users. Administrator bookmarks cannot be edited, and they are configured in FortiOS. Users can add, edit, and delete their own bookmarks within the web portal.

The FortiGate forwards client requests to servers on the internet or internal network. To use the web portal applications, add the URL, IP address, or name of the server application to the *Bookmarks* list. Once a bookmark is created, click the bookmark icon to initiate a session.



To access a destination without adding a bookmark to the *Your Bookmarks* list, use the Quick Connection tool. See Quick Connection tool on page 1797 for more details.

Configuring bookmarks

The following table summarizes which options can be configured based on the bookmark type in the SSL VPN web portal:

Setting	HTTP/ HTTPS	FTP	SMB	SFTP	RDP	VNC	SSH	Telnet
URL	✓							
Folder		✓	✓	✓				
Host					✓	✓	✓	✓
Domain			✓					
Port					✓	✓		
Description	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Password						✓		
SSO Credentials	✓	✓	✓	✓				

Setting	HTTP/ HTTPS	FTP	SMB	SFTP	RDP	VNC	SSH	Telnet
SSL-VPN Login	✓	✓	✓	✓				
SSO Form Data	✓							
Form Key	✓							
Form Value	✓							
Alternative	✓	✓	✓	✓				
Username	✓	✓	✓	✓				
Password	✓	✓	✓	✓				
Use SSL-VPN Credentials					✓			
Username					✓			
Password					✓			
Keyboard Layout					✓			
Security					✓			
Preconnection ID					✓			
Load Balancing Information					✓			

To create a user bookmark in the web portal:

1. In the *Your Bookmarks* section, click *New Bookmark*.
2. Enter a *Name*.
3. Select a bookmark type and configure the type-based settings.
4. Click *Save*.

To create a predefined administrator bookmark in FortiOS:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* and double-click a portal to edit it.
2. In the *Predefined Bookmarks* table, click *Create New*. The *New Bookmark* pane appears.
3. Enter a *Name*.
4. Select a bookmark type and configure the type-based settings.
5. Click *OK* to save the bookmark settings.
6. Click *OK* to save the portal settings.

Configuring group-based SSL VPN bookmarks

Administrators can add bookmarks for users in the same user group. SSL VPN will only output the matched group name entry to the client. This setting can only be configured in the CLI.

To add bookmarks for users in the same user group:

1. Enable group bookmarks in the web portal settings:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit <name>
        set user-group-bookmark enable
    next
end
```

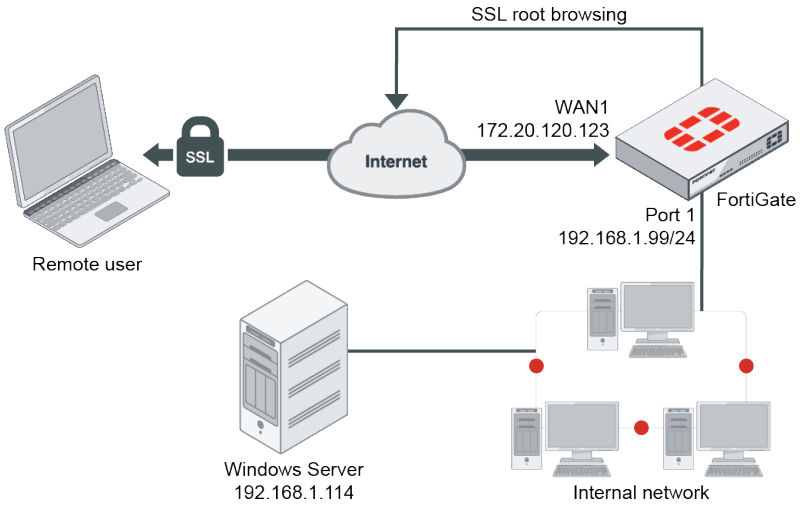
2. Configure the user group bookmark:

```
config vpn ssl web user-group-bookmark
    edit <name>
        config bookmarks
            edit <name>
                ...
            next
        end
    next
end
```

SSL VPN web mode for remote user

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network through an SSL VPN by web mode using a web browser.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a web mode only portal *my-web-portal*.
   b. Set *Predefined Bookmarks for Windows server* to type *RDP*.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*.

   It is **HIGHLY** recommended that you acquire a signed certificate for your installation. Please review the SSL VPN best practices on page 1775 and learn how to Procure and import a signed SSL certificate on page 1059.

   e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *web-access*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-Web-portal*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn web mode access*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. In this example, the *Destination* is the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal and predefine RDP bookmark for windows server.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-web-portal"
        set web-mode enable
        config bookmark-group
            edit "gui-bookmarks"
                config bookmarks
                    edit "Windows Server"
                        set apptype rdp
                        set host "192.168.1.114"
                        set port 3389
                        set logon-user "your-windows-server-user-name"
                        set logon-password your-windows-server-password
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
```

```
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-web-portal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To see the results:

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *https://172.20.120.123:10443* using the credentials you've set up.
2. In the portal with the predefined bookmark, select the bookmark to begin an RDP session. If there are no predefined bookmarks, the Quick Connection tool can be used; see Quick Connection tool on page 1797 for more information.
3. Go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details for the SSL entry.

SSL VPN authentication

The following topics provide instructions on configuring SSL VPN authentication:

- SSL VPN with LDAP user authentication on page 1805
- SSL VPN with LDAP user password renew on page 1809
- SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1815
- SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication on page 1820
- SSL VPN for remote users with MFA and user sensitivity on page 1825
- SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication on page 1833
- SSL VPN with RADIUS on FortiAuthenticator on page 1839
- SSL VPN with RADIUS and FortiToken mobile push on FortiAuthenticator on page 1843
- SSL VPN with RADIUS password renew on FortiAuthenticator on page 1848
- SSL VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS on page 1852
- SSL VPN with multiple RADIUS servers on page 1857
- SSL VPN with local user password policy on page 1866
- Dynamic address support for SSL VPN policies on page 1871

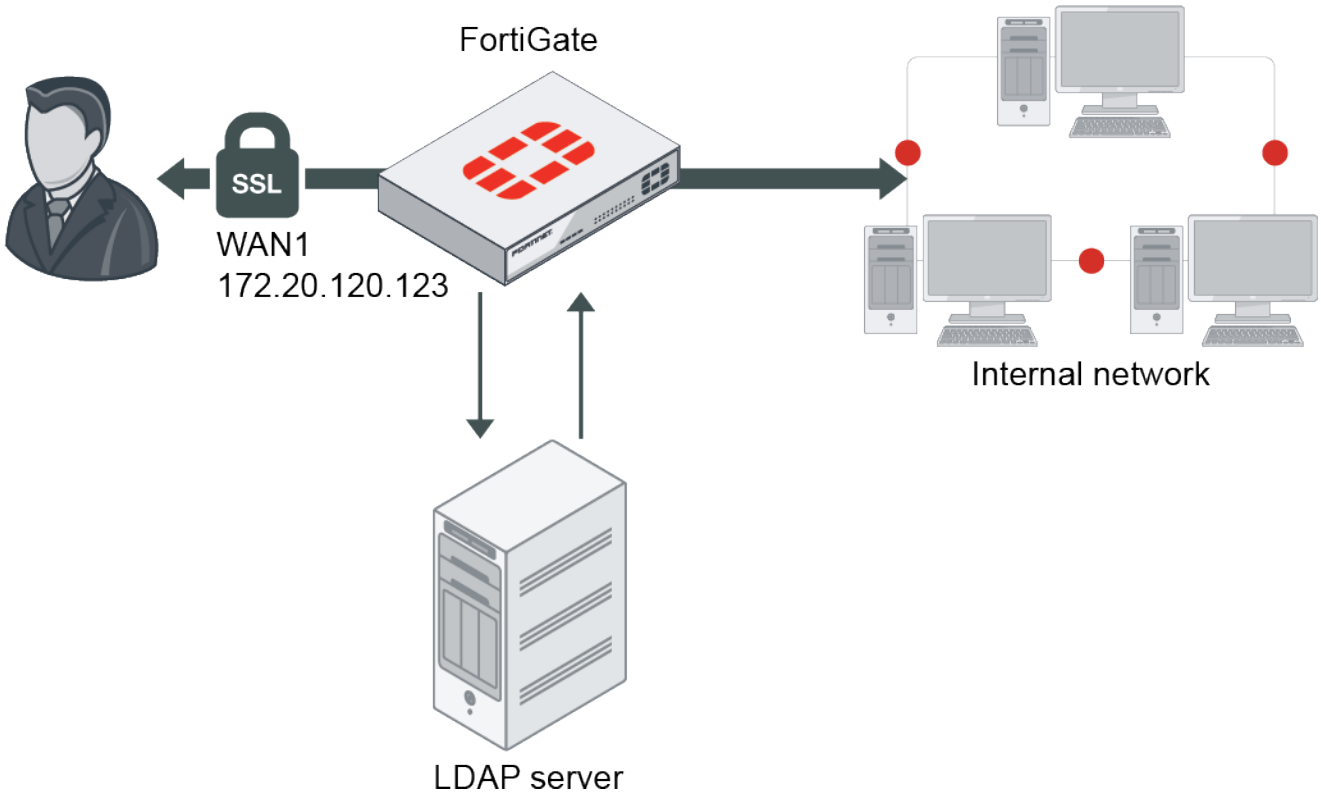
- SSL VPN multi-realm on page 1880
- NAS-IP support per SSL-VPN realm on page 1885

SSL VPN with LDAP user authentication

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for LDAP users. In this example, the LDAP server is a Windows 2012 AD server. A user *ldu1* is configured on Windows 2012 AD server.

You must have generated and exported a CA certificate from the AD server and then have imported it as an external CA certificate into the FortiGate.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.

   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Specify *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Specify *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Specify *Username* and *Password*.
   f. Enable *Secure Connection* and set *Protocol* to *LDAPS*.
   g. For *Certificate*, select *LDAP server CA LDAPS-CA* from the list.
4. Configure user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group.
   b. Enter a *Name*.
   c. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add *ldaps-server*.
5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
6. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *ldaps-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
7. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name, in this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *ldaps-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network, in this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.

i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In the example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

4. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "cn=Users,dc=qa,dc=fortinet,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=Administrator,cn=users,DC=qa,DC=fortinet,DC=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "LDAPS-CA"
        set port 636
    next
end
```

5. Configure user group:

```
config user group
    edit "ldaps-group"
        set member "ldaps-server"
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

7. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "ldaps-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

8. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “ldaps-group”
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Enter the *ldu1* user credentials, then click *Login*.
3. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user’s connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *ldu1* credentials.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         291        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

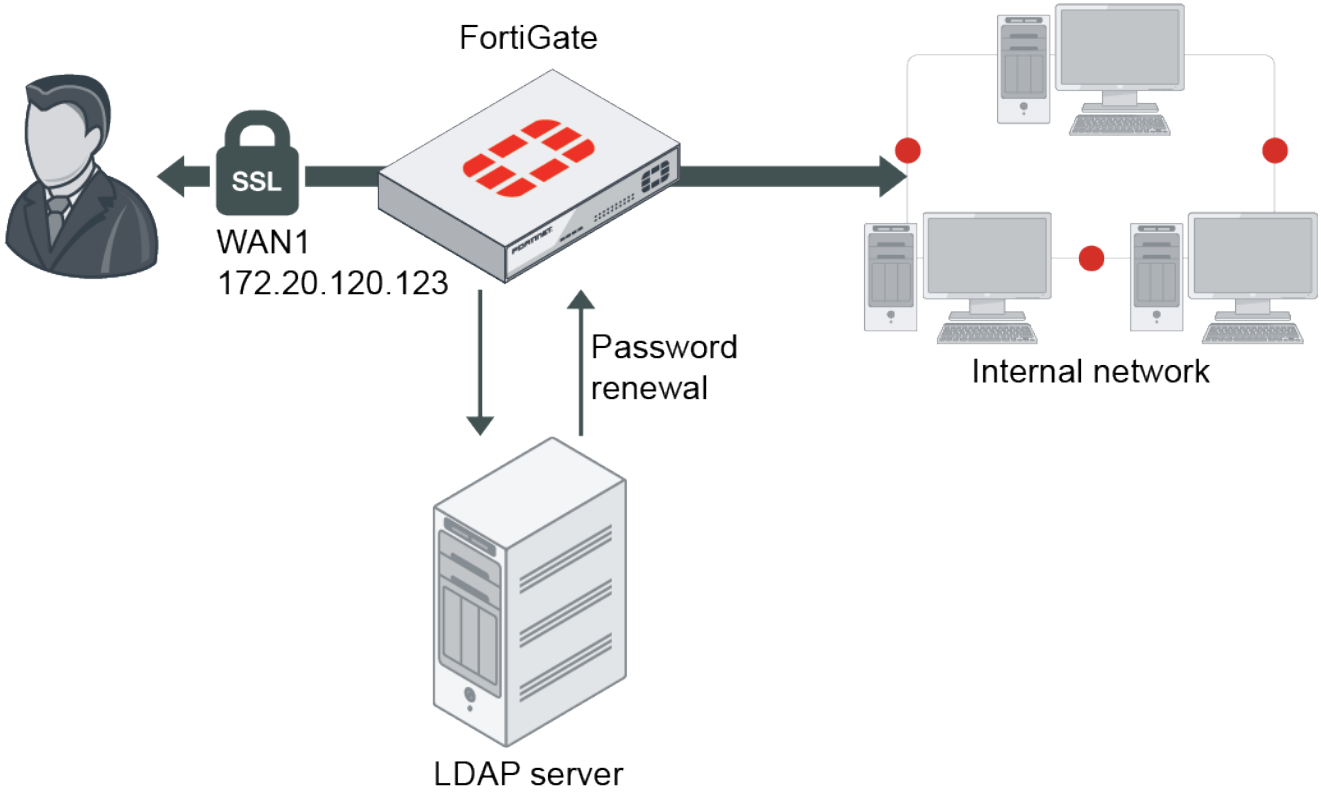
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration    I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       ldu1    10.1.100.254   9           22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with LDAP user password renew

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for LDAP users with *Force Password Change on next logon*. In this example, the LDAP server is a Windows 2012 AD server. A user *ldu1* is configured on Windows 2012 AD server with *Force password change on next logon*.

You must have generated and exported a CA certificate from the AD server and then have imported it as an external CA certificate into the FortiGate.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP user:



The LDAP user must either be an administrator, or have the proper permissions delegated to it, to be able to change passwords of other registered users on the LDAP server.

   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Specify *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Specify *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Specify *Username* and *Password*.
   f. Enable *Secure Connection* and set *Protocol* to *LDAPS*.
   g. For *Certificate*, select *LDAP server CA LDAPS-CA* from the list.
   h. To enable the `password-renew` option, use these CLI commands.

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set password-expiry-warning enable
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group.
   b. Enter a *Name*.
   c. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add *ldaps-server*.
5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
6. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *ldaps-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
7. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name, in this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *ldaps-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network, in this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.

i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In the example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

4. Configure the LDAP server:



The LDAP user must either be an administrator, or have the proper permissions delegated to it, to be able to change passwords of other registered users on the LDAP server.

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "cn=Users,dc=qa,dc=fortinet,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=Administrator,cn=users,DC=qa,DC=fortinet,DC=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set secure ldaps
```

```
        set ca-cert "LDAPS-CA"
        set port 636
        set password-expiry-warning enable
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure user group:

```
config user group
    edit "ldaps-group"
        set member "ldaps-server"
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

7. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "ldaps-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

8. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “ldaps-group”
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *ldu1* credentials.
   Use a user that is configured on FortiAuthenticator with *Force password change on next logon*.
3. Click *Login*. You are prompted to enter a new password. The prompt will timeout after 90 seconds.
4. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *ldu1* credentials.
   You are prompted to enter a new password. The prompt will timeout after 90 seconds.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         291        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration    I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       ldu1    10.1.100.254   9           22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with certificate authentication

This is an example configuration of SSL VPN that requires users to authenticate using a client certificate. The client certificate is issued by the company Certificate Authority (CA). Each user is issued a certificate with their username in the subject.

There are two ways to configure certificate authentication:

1. Using PKI users
2. Configuring the SSL VPN settings to require a client certificate

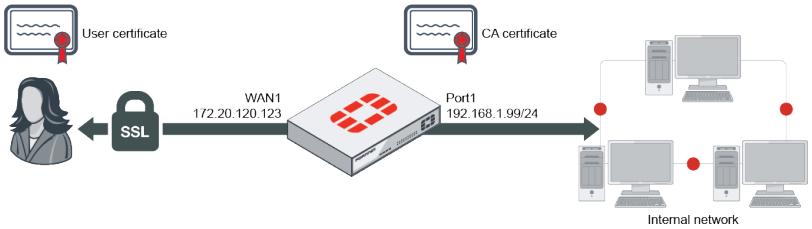
In this example, the server and client certificates are signed by the same Certificate Authority (CA).



Self-signed certificates are provided by default to simplify initial installation and testing. It is **HIGHLY** recommended that you acquire a signed certificate for your installation.

Continuing to use these certificates can result in your connection being compromised, allowing attackers to steal your information, such as credit card details.

For more information, please review the Use a non-factory SSL certificate for the SSL VPN portal on page 1777 and learn how to Procure and import a signed SSL certificate on page 1059.



Using PKI users

When using PKI users, the FortiGate authenticates the user based on there identity in the subject or the common name on the certificate. The certificate must be signed by a CA that is known by the FortiGate, either through the default CA certificates or through importing a CA certificate.

The user can either match a static subject or common name defined in the PKI user settings, or match an LDAP user in the LDAP server defined in the PKI user settings. Multi-factor authentication can also be enabled with the password as the second factor.

Configuring the SSL VPN settings to require a client certificate

Using this method, the user is authenticated based on their regular username and password, but SSL VPN will still require an additional certificate check. The client certificate only needs to be signed by a known CA in order to pass authentication.

This method can be configured by enabling *Require Client Certificate* (`reqclientcert`) in the SSL-VPN settings.

Configuration

In the following example, SSL VPN users are authenticated using the first method. A PKI user is configured with multi-factor authentication

Pre-requisites:

- The CA has already issued a client certificate to the user.
- The CA has issued a server certificate for the FortiGate's SSL VPN portal.
- The CA certificate is available to be imported on the FortiGate.

To configure SSL VPN in the GUI:

1. Install the server certificate. The server certificate allows the clients to authenticate the server and to encrypt the SSL VPN traffic.
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
      - Set *Type* to *Certificate*.
      - Choose the *Certificate file* and the *Key file* for your certificate, and enter the *Password*.
      - If required, you can change the *Certificate Name*.

   The server certificate now appears in the list of *Certificates*.
2. Install the CA certificate.

   The CA certificate is the certificate that signed both the server certificate and the user certificate. In this example, it is used to authenticate SSL VPN users.
   a. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   b. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.

   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
3. Configure PKI users and a user group.

   To use certificate authentication, use the CLI to create PKI users.

```
config user peer
    edit pki01
        set ca CA_Cert_1
        set subject "CN=User01"
    next
end
```

   Ensure that the subject matches the name of the user certificate. In this example, *User01*.
4. After you have create a PKI user, a new menu is added to the GUI:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *PKI* to see the new user.
   b. Edit the user account.
   c. Enable *Two-factor authentication* and set a password for the account.
   d. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and create a group called *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Add the PKI user *pki01* to the group.
5. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
      This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
6. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings* and enable SSL-VPN.
   b. Set the *Listen on Interface(s)* to *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the local certificate that was imported.

e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.

7. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as needed.
   j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN in the CLI:

1. Configure the protected subnet:

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Install the server certificate:

   The server certificate allows the clients to authenticate the server and to encrypt the SSL VPN traffic. While it is easier to install the server certificate in the GUI, the CLI can be used to import a p12 certificate from a TFTP server.

   To import a p12 certificate, put the certificate *server_certificate.p12* on your TFTP server, then run following command on the FortiGate:

```
execute vpn certificate local import tftp server_certificate.p12 <your tftp_server> p12
<your password for PKCS12 file>
```

   To check that the server certificate is installed:

```
show vpn certificate local server_certificate
```

3. Install the CA certificate:

   The CA certificate is the certificate that signed both the server certificate and the user certificate. In this example, it is used to authenticate SSL VPN users. While it is easier to install the CA certificate from GUI, the CLI can be used to import a CA certificates from a TFTP server.

   To import a CA certificate, put the CA certificate on your TFTP server, then run following command on the FortiGate:

```
execute vpn certificate ca import tftp <your CA certificate name> <your tftp server>
```

   To check that a new CA certificate is installed:

```
show vpn certificate ca
```

4. Configure PKI users and a user group:

```
config user peer
    edit pki01
        set ca CA_Cert_1
        set subject "CN=User01"
        set two-factor enable
        set passwd **********
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "pki01"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

7. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Installation

To use the user certificate, you must first install it on the user's PC. When the user tries to authenticate, the user certificate is checked against the CA certificate to verify that they match.

Every user should have a unique user certificate. This allows you to distinguish each user and revoke a specific user's certificate, such as if a user no longer has VPN access.

To install the user certificate on Windows 7, 8, and 10:

1. Double-click the certificate file to open the *Import Wizard*.
2. Use the *Import Wizard* to import the certificate into the *Personal store* of the current user.

To install the user certificate on Mac OS X:

1. Open the certificate file, to open *Keychain Access*.
2. Double-click the certificate.
3. Expand *Trust* and select *Always Trust*.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Enable *Client Certificate* and select the authentication certificate.
6. Save your settings.
7. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
   If the certificate is correct, you can connect.

To see the results of web portal:

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
   A message requests a certificate for authentication.
2. Select the user certificate.
3. Enter your user credentials.
   If the certificate is correct, you can connect to the SSL VPN web portal.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details for the SSL connection log.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
```

```
 Index   User     Auth Type       Timeout          From      HTTP in/out     HTTPS in/out
 0       pki01,cn=User01           1(1)             229       10.1.100.254    0/0      0/0
 1       pki01,cn=User01           1(1)             291       10.1.100.254    0/0      0/0

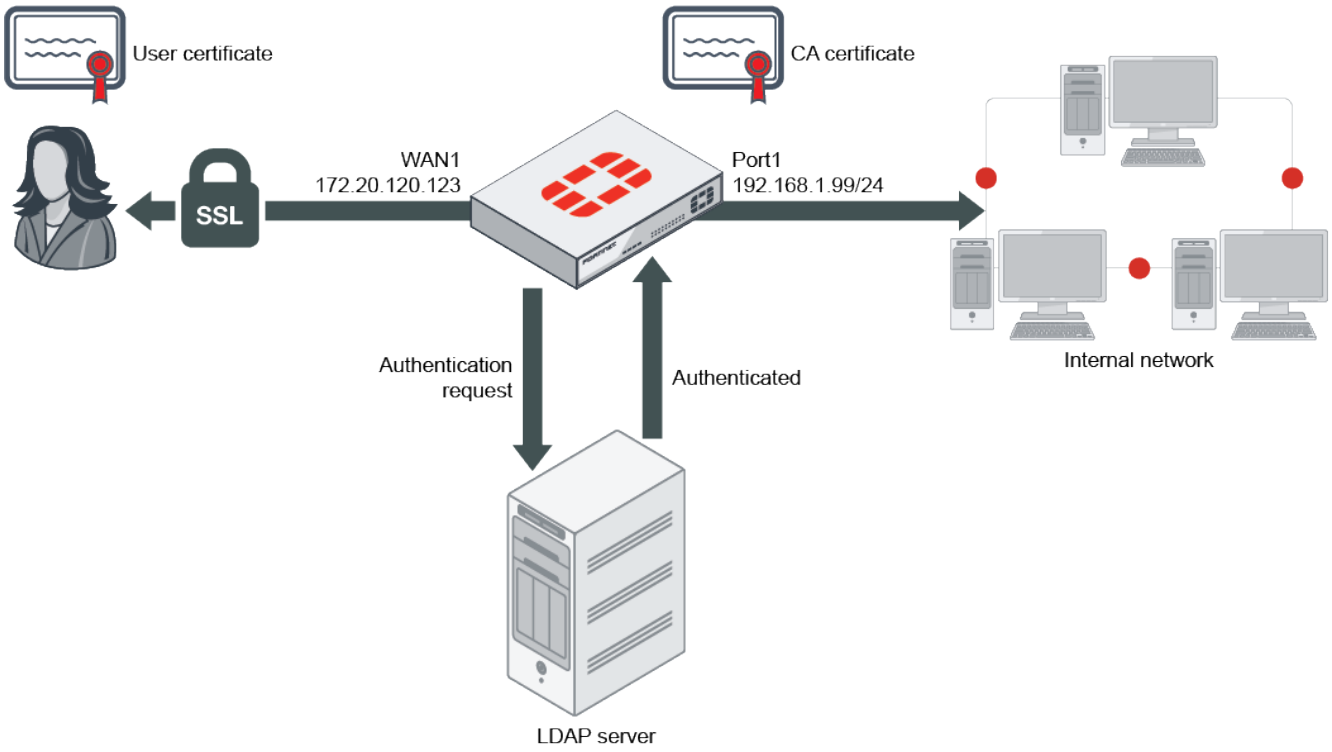
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User     Source IP       Duration         I/O Bytes        Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       pki01,cn=User01           10.1.100.254     9        22099/43228     10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that requires users to authenticate using a certificate with LDAP `UserPrincipalName` checking.

This sample uses Windows 2012R2 Active Directory acting as both the user certificate issuer, the certificate authority, and the LDAP server.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

In this sample, the *User Principal Name* is included in the subject name of the issued certificate. This is the user field we use to search LDAP in the connection attempt.

To use the user certificate, you must first install it on the user's PC. When the user tries to authenticate, the user certificate is checked against the CA certificate to verify that they match.

Every user should have a unique user certificate. This allows you to distinguish each user and revoke a specific user's certificate, such as if a user no longer has VPN access.

To install the server certificate:

The server certificate is used for authentication and for encrypting SSL VPN traffic.

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
2. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
3. Set *Type* to *Certificate*.
4. Choose the *Certificate file* and the *Key file* for your certificate, and enter the *Password*.
5. If required, change the *Certificate Name*.
   The server certificate now appears in the list of *Certificates*.

To install the CA certificate:

The CA certificate is the certificate that signed both the server certificate and the user certificate. In this example, it is used to authenticate SSL VPN users.

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
2. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure the LDAP server:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Specify *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Set *Distinguished Name* to *dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Set *Username* to *cn=admin,ou=testing,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com*.
   f. Set *Password*.
   g. Click *OK*.
3. Configure PKI users and a user group:
   To use certificate authentication, use the CLI to create PKI users.

```
config user peer
    edit user1
        set ca CA_Cert_1
        set ldap-server "ldap-AD"
        set ldap-mode principal-name
    next
end
```

When you have create a PKI user, a new menu is added to the GUI:

   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *PKI* to see the new user.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User* > *User Groups* and create a group *sslvpn-group*.
   c. Add the PKI peer object you created as a local member of the group.
   d. Add a remote group on the LDAP server and select the group of interest.
   You need these users to be members using the LDAP browser window.
4. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpn-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpn-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-AD"
        set server "172.18.60.206"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=admin,ou=testing,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password ldap-server-password
    next
end
```

4. Configure PKI users and a user group:

```
config user peer
    edit user1
        set ca CA_Cert_1
        set ldap-server "ldap-AD"
        set ldap-mode principal-name
    next
end
```

```
config user group
    edit "sslvpn-group"
        set member "ldap-AD" "user1"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "ldap-AD"
                set group-name "CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
```

```
        set default-portal "web-access"
        config authentication-rule
            edit 1
                set groups "sslvpn-group"
                set portal "full-access"
            next
        end
    end
```

7. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpn-group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
   d. Enable *Client Certificate* and select the authentication certificate.
4. Save your settings.
   Connecting to the VPN only requires the user's certificate. It does not require username or password.

To see the results of web portal:

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
   A message requests a certificate for authentication.
2. Select the user certificate.
   You can connect to the SSL VPN web portal.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *VPN Events* to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the CLI:

Below is a sample output of `diagnose debug application fnbamd -1` while the user connects. This is a shortened output sample of a few locations to show the important parts. This sample shows lookups to find the group memberships (three groups total) of the user and that the correct group being found results in a match.

```
[1148] fnbamd_ldap_recv-Response len: 16, svr: 172.18.60.206
[829] fnbamd_ldap_parse_response-Got one MESSAGE. ID:4, type:search-result
[864] fnbamd_ldap_parse_response-ret=0
[1386] __fnbamd_ldap_primary_grp_next-Auth accepted
[910] __ldap_rxtx-Change state to 'Done'
[843] __ldap_rxtx-state 23(Done)
[925] fnbamd_ldap_send-sending 7 bytes to 172.18.60.206
[937] fnbamd_ldap_send-Request is sent. ID 5
[753] __ldap_stop-svr 'ldap-AD'
[53] ldap_dn_list_del_all-Del CN=test3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
[399] ldap_copy_grp_list-copied CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
[399] ldap_copy_grp_list-copied CN=Domain Users,CN=Users,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
[2088] fnbamd_auth_cert_check-Matching group 'sslvpn-group'
[2007] __match_ldap_group-Matching server 'ldap-AD' - 'ldap-AD'
[2015] __match_ldap_group-Matching group 'CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM' -
'CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
[2091] fnbamd_auth_cert_check-Group 'sslvpn-group' matched
[2120] fnbamd_auth_cert_result-Result for ldap svr[0] 'ldap-AD' is SUCCESS
[2126] fnbamd_auth_cert_result-matched user 'test3', matched group 'sslvpn-group'
```

You can also use `diagnose firewall auth list` to validate that a firewall user entry exists for the SSL VPN user and is part of the right groups.

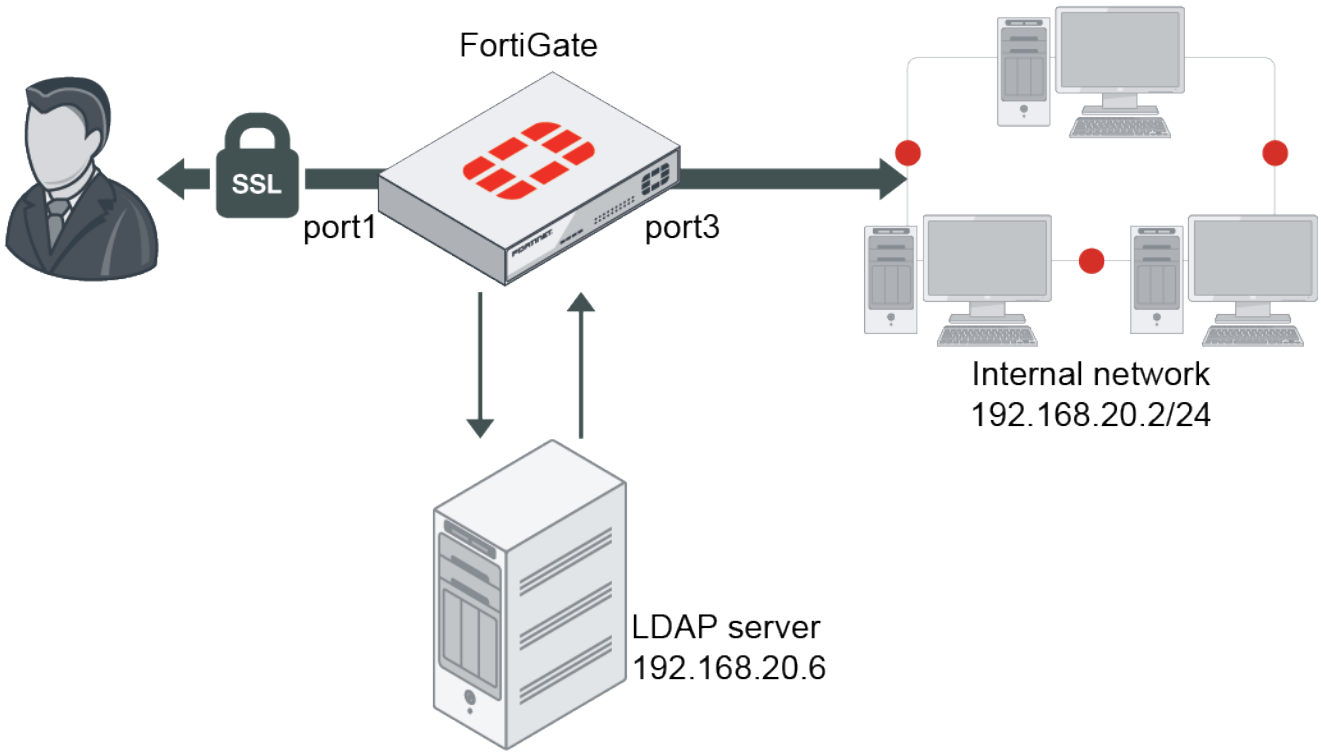
SSL VPN for remote users with MFA and user sensitivity

By default, remote LDAP and RADIUS user names are case sensitive. When a remote user object is applied to SSL VPN authentication, the user must type the exact case that is used in the user definition on the FortiGate.

Case sensitivity can be disabled by disabling the `username-sensitivity` CLI command, allowing the remote user object to match any case that the end user types in.

In this example, a remote user is configured with multi-factor authentication (MFA). The user group includes the LDAP user and server, and is applied to SSL VPN authentication and the policy.

Topology



Example configuration

To configure the LDAP server:

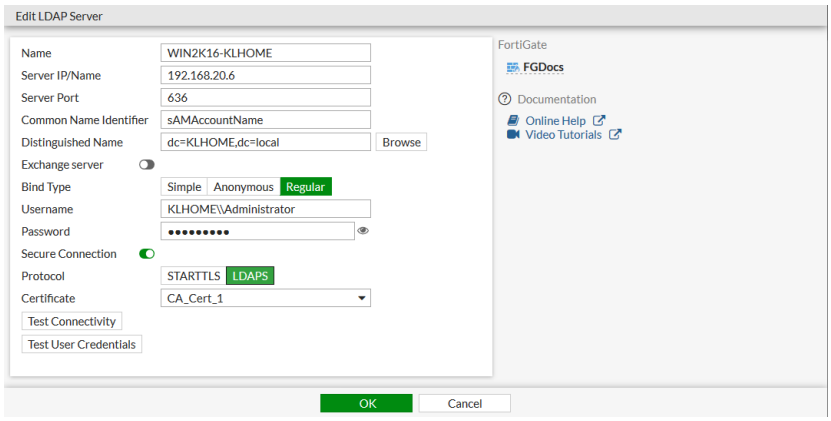
1. Generate and export a CA certificate from the AD server .
2. Import the CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following options for this example:

Name	WIN2K16-KLHOME
Server IP/Name	192.168.20.6
Server Port	636

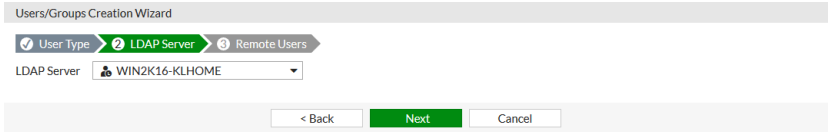
Common Name Identifier	sAMAccountName
Distinguished Name	dc=KLHOME,dc=local
Bind Type	Regular
Username	KLHOME\\Administrator
Password	*********
Secure Connection	Enable
Protocol	LDAPS
Certificate	CA_Cert_1 This is the CA certificate that you imported in step 2.



c. Click *OK*.

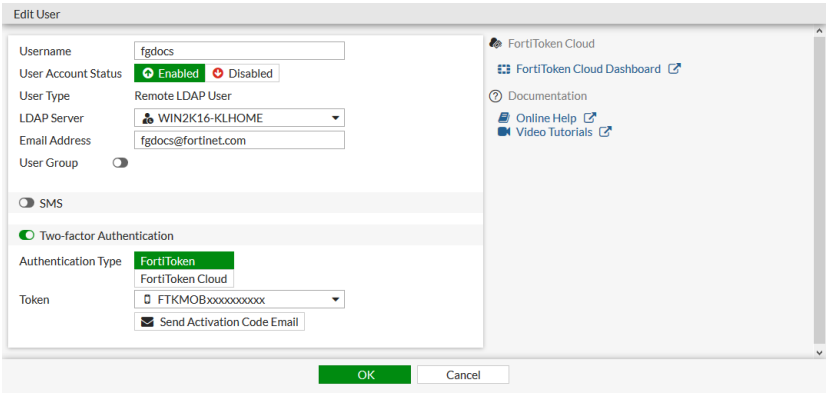
To configure an LDAP user with MFA:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and click *Create New*.
2. Select *Remote LDAP User*, then click *Next*.
3. Select the just created LDAP server, then click *Next*.



4. Right click to add the selected user, then click *Submit*.
5. Edit the user that you just created.
   The username will be pulled from the LDAP server with the same case as it has on the server.
6. Set the *Email Address* to the address that FortiGate will send the FortiToken to.
7. Enable *Two-factor Authentication*.
8. Set *Authentication Type* to *FortiToken*.

9. Set *Token* to a FortiToken device. See for more information.



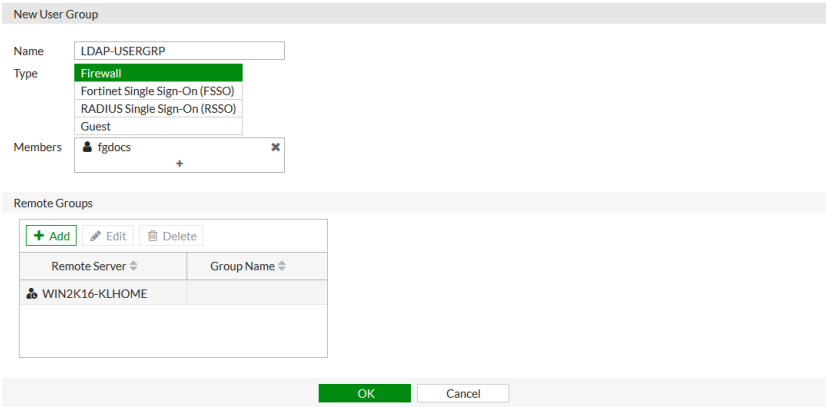
10. Click *OK*.

To disable case sensitivity on the remote user:

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set type ldap
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken "FTKMOBxxxxxxxxxx"
        set email-to "fgdocs@fortinet.com"
        set username-sensitivity disable
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
    next
end
```

To configure a user group with the remote user and the LDAP server:

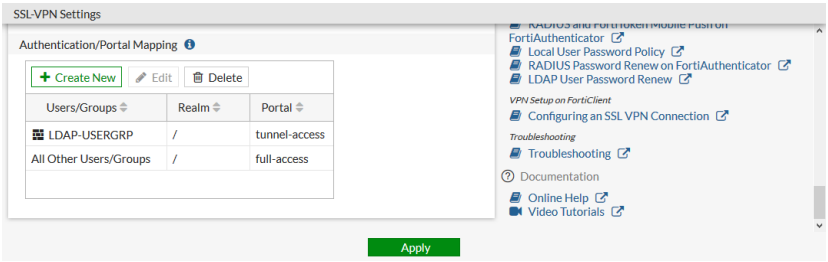
1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Set the *Name* to *LDAP-USERGRP*.
3. Set *Members* to the just created remote user.
4. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*:
   a. Set *Remote Server* to the LDAP server.
   b. Set the group or groups that apply, and right click to add them.
   c. Click *OK*.



5. Click *OK*.

To apply the user group to the SSL VPN portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. In the *Authentication/Portal Mapping* table, click *Create New*.
   a. Set *Users/Groups* to the just created user group.
   b. Configure the remaining settings as required.
   c. Click *OK*.

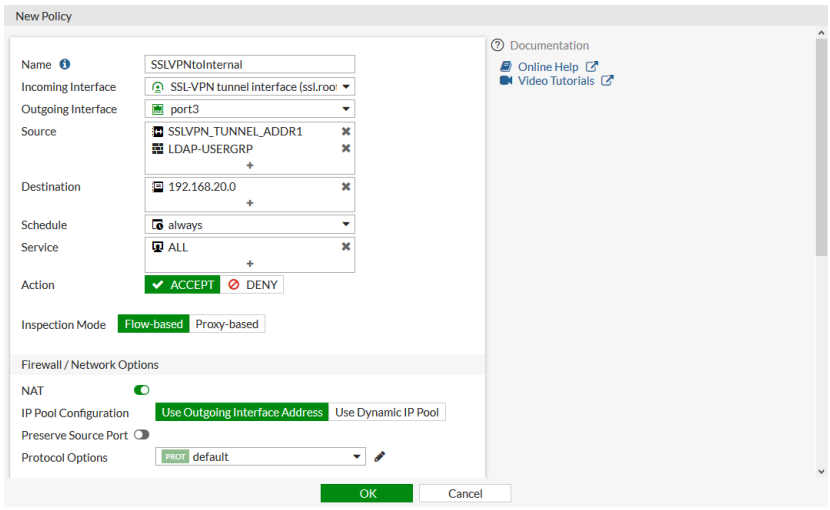


3. Click *Apply*.

To apply the user group to a firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Name	SSLVPNtoInteral
Incoming Interface	SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root)
Outgoing Interface	port3
Source	Address - SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1 User - LDAP-USERGRP
Destination	The address of the internal network. In this case: 192.168.20.0.
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	Enabled



3. Configuring the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure this example in the CLI:

1. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
        set server "192.168.20.6"
        set cnid "sAMAccountName"
        set dn "dc=KLHOME,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "KLHOME\\Administrator"
        set password *********
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "CA_Cert_1"
        set port 636
    next
end
```

2. Configure an LDAP user with MFA and disable case and accent sensitivity on the remote user:

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set type ldap
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken "FTKMOBxxxxxxxxxx"
        set email-to "fgdocs@fortinet.com"
        set username-sensitivity disable
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
    next
end
```

3. Configure a user group with the remote user and the LDAP server:

```
config user group
    edit "LDAP-USERGRP"
        set member "fgdocs" "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
```

```
    next
end
```

4. Apply the user group to the SSL VPN portal:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert <server certificate>
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "LDAP-USERGRP"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

5. Apply the user group to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "SSLVPNtoInternal"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set groups "LDAP-USERGRP"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Verification

To setup the VPN connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface.
   c. If required, set the *Customize Port*.
4. Save your settings.

To test the connection with case sensitivity disabled:

1. Connect to the VPN:
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using the same case that it is on the FortiGate.
   b. When prompted, enter your FortiToken code.
   You should now be connected.

2. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

3. Disconnect from the VPN connection.
4. Reconnect to the VPN:
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using a different case than on the FortiGate.
   b. When prompted, enter your FortiToken code.
   You should now be connected.
5. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       FGDOCS          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       FGDOCS          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

In both cases, the remote user is matched against the remote LDAP user object and prompted for multi-factor authentication.

To test the connection with case sensitivity enabled:

1. Enable case sensitivity for the user:

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set username-sensitivity enable
    next
end
```

2. Connect to the VPN
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using the same case that it is on the FortiGate.
   b. When prompted, enter your FortiToken code.
   You should now be connected.
3. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
```

```
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

1. Disconnect from the VPN connection.
2. Reconnect to the VPN:
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using a different case than on the FortiGate.
   You will not be prompted for your FortiToken code. You should now be connected.
3. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       FGdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

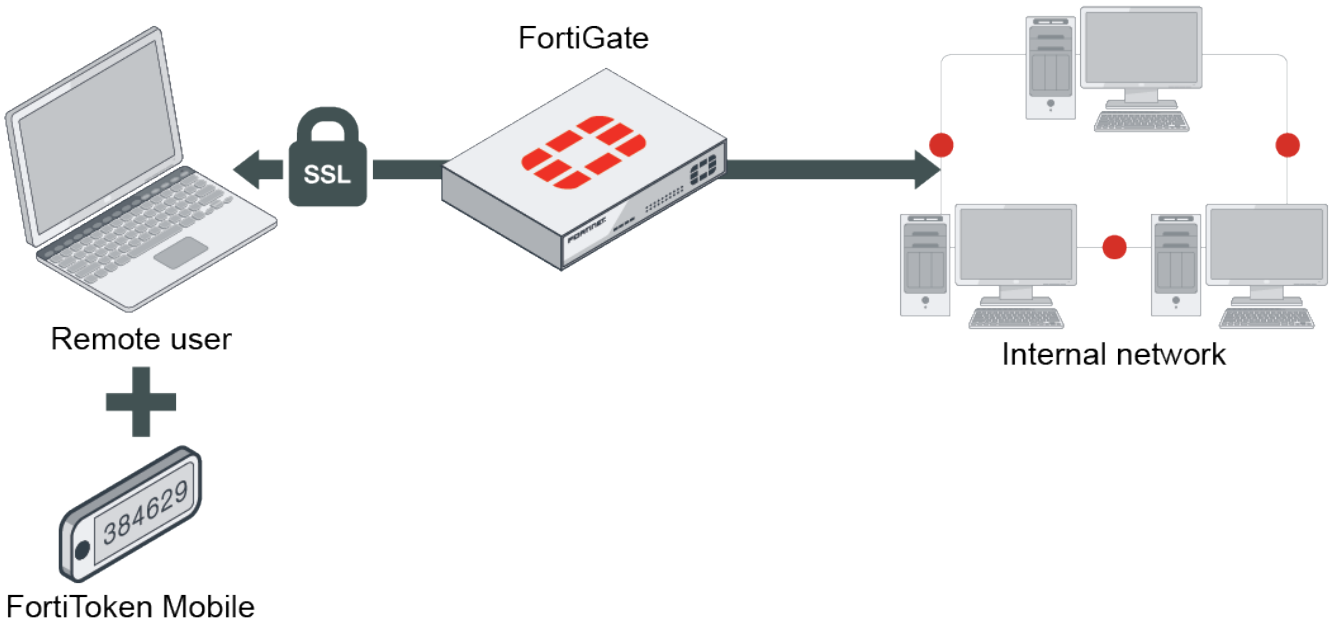
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       FGdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

In this case, the user is allowed to log in without a FortiToken code because the entered user name did not match the name defined on the remote LDAP user object. Authentication continues to be evaluated against the LDAP server though, which is not case sensitive.

SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that uses FortiToken mobile push two-factor authentication. If you enable push notifications, users can accept or deny the authentication request.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Register FortiGate for FortiCare Support:
   To add or download a mobile token on FortiGate, FortiGate must be registered for FortiCare Support. If your FortiGate is registered, skip this step.
   a. Go to *Dashboard* > *Licenses*.
   b. Hover the pointer on *FortiCare Support* to check if FortiCare registered. If not, click it and select *Register*.
3. Add FortiToken mobile to FortiGate:
   If your FortiGate has FortiToken installed, skip this step.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select *Mobile Token* and type in *Activation Code*.
   c. Every FortiGate has two free mobile tokens. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens* and click *Import Free Trial Tokens*.
4. Enable FortiToken mobile push:
   To use FTM-push authentication, use CLI to enable FTM-Push on the FortiGate.

   a. Ensure `server-ip` is reachable from the Internet and enter the following CLI commands:

```
config system ftm-push
    set server-ip 172.20.120.123
    set status enable
end
```

   b. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   c. Edit the *wan1* interface.
   d. Under *Administrative Access* > *IPv4*, select *FTM*.
   e. Click *OK*.
5. Configure user and user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enter the user's *Email Address*.
   c. Enable *Two-factor Authentication* and select one mobile *Token* from the list,
   d. Enable *Send Activation Code* and select *Email*.
   e. Click *Next* and click *Submit*.
   f. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
6. Activate the mobile token:
   a. When the user *sslvpnuser1* is created, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.
7. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
8. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
9. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Register FortiGate for FortiCare Support.
   To add or download a mobile token on FortiGate, FortiGate must be registered for FortiCare Support. If your FortiGate is registered, skip this step.

```
diagnose forticare direct-registration product-registration -a "your account@xxx.com" -p
"your password" -T "Your Country/Region" -R "Your Reseller" -e 1
```

4. Add FortiToken mobile to FortiGate:

```
execute fortitoken-mobile import <your FTM code>
```

   If your FortiGate has FortiToken installed, skip this step.

   Every FortiGate has two free mobile Tokens. You can download the free token.

```
execute fortitoken-mobile import 0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
```

5. Enable FortiToken mobile push:
   a. To use FTM-push authentication, ensure `server-ip` is reachable from the Internet and enable FTM-push in the FortiGate:

```
config system ftm-push
    set server-ip 172.20.120.123
    set status enable
end
```

   b. Enable FTM service on WAN interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        append allowaccess ftm
    next
end
```

6. Configure user and user group:

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken <select mobile token for the option list>
        set email-to <user's email address>
        set passwd <user's password>
    next
end
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

7. Activate the mobile token.
   When the user *sslvpnuser1* is created, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.
8. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

9. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

10. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “sslvpngroup”
        set action accept
```

```
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   The FortiGate pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken mobile application.
3. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN portal.
4. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials and click *FTM Push*.
   The FortiGate pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken mobile application.
6. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN tunnel.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User           Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1    1(1)         229       10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login using the CLI:

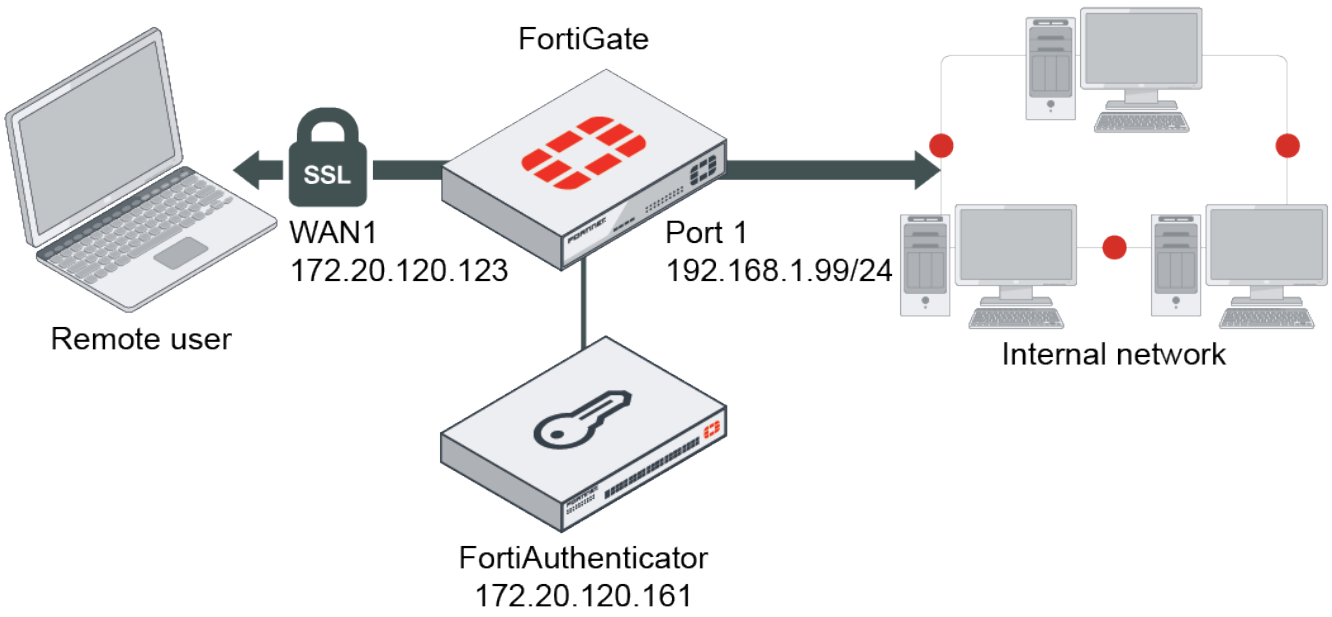
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with RADIUS on FortiAuthenticator

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that uses FortiAuthenticator as a RADIUS authentication server.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure FortiAuthenticator using the GUI:

1. Create a user on the FortiAuthenticator.
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *Local Users* to create a user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enable *Allow RADIUS authentication* and click *OK* to access additional settings.
   c. Go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup*.
   d. Add *sslvpnuser1* to the group by moving the user from *Available users* to *Selected users*.
2. Create the RADIUS client (FortiGate) on the FortiAuthenticator.
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *RADIUS Service* > *Clients* to add the FortiGate as a RADIUS client *OfficeServer*).
   b. Enter the FortiGate IP address and set a *Secret*.
   The secret is a pre-shared secure password that the FortiGate uses to authenticate to the FortiAuthenticator.
   c. Set *Realms* to *local* | *Local users*.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create an address for internal subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Create a RADIUS user and user group .
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* to create a user to connect to the RADIUS server (FortiAuthenticator).
   b. For *Name*, use *FAC-RADIUS*.
   c. Enter the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator, and enter the *Secret* created above.
   d. Click *Test Connectivity* to ensure you can connect to the RADIUS server.
   e. Select *Test User Credentials* and enter the credentials for *sslvpnuser1*.
   The FortiGate can now connect to the FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS client.
   f. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New* to map authenticated remote users to a user group on the FortiGate.
   g. For *Name*, use *SSLVPNGroup*.
   h. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add*.
   i. In the *Remote Server* dropdown list, select *FAC-RADIUS*.
   j. Leave the *Groups* field blank.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. *Incoming Interface* must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example: *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* > *Address* to *all* and *Source* > *User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. Set *Destination* > *Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure the remaining options as required.
   j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Create a RADIUS user and user group.

```
config user radius
    edit "FAC-RADIUS"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set secret <FAC client secret>
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "FAC-RADIUS"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
```

```
        config authentication-rule
            edit 1
                set groups "sslvpngroup"
                set portal "full-access"
            next
        end
    end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
    config firewall policy
        edit 1
            set name "sslvpn web mode access"
            set srcintf "ssl.root"
            set dstintf "port1"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set the connection name.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials and check that you are logged into the SSL VPN tunnel.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User     Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login using the CLI:

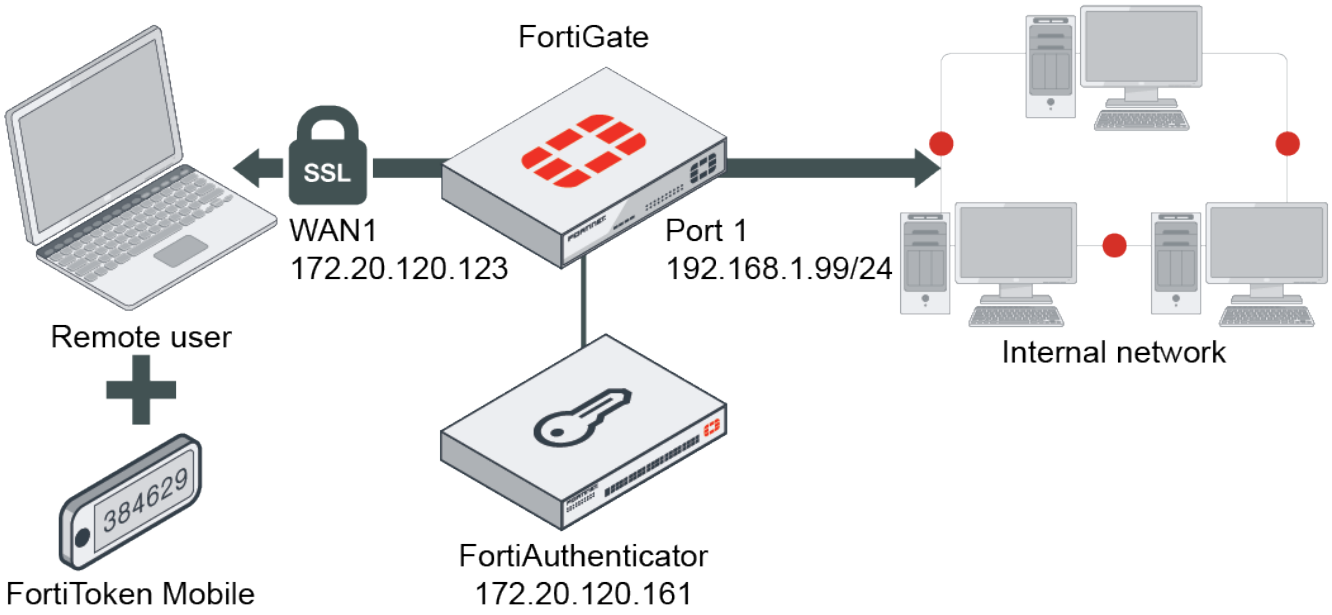
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type   Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)        291        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration     I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9            22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with RADIUS and FortiToken mobile push on FortiAuthenticator

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that uses FortiAuthenticator as a RADIUS authentication server and FortiToken mobile push two-factor authentication. If you enable push notifications, users can accept or deny the authentication request.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure FortiAuthenticator using the GUI:

1. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *System* > *Administration* > *System Access* and configure a *Public IP/FQDN for FortiToken Mobile*. If the FortiAuthenticator is behind a firewall, the public IP/FQDN will be an IP/port forwarding rule directed to one of the FortiAuthenticator interfaces. The interface that receives the approve/deny FTM push responses must have the *FortiToken Mobile API* service enabled.
2. Add a FortiToken mobile license on the FortiAuthenticator:
   a. Go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *FortiTokens*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set *Token type* to *FortiToken Mobile* and enter the *FortiToken Activation codes*.
3. Create the RADIUS client (FortiGate) on the FortiAuthenticator:
   a. Go to *Authentication* > *RADIUS Service* > *Clients* to add the FortiGate as a RADIUS client *OfficeServer*).
   b. Enter the FortiGate IP address and set a *Secret*.
      The secret is a pre-shared secure password that the FortiGate uses to authenticate to the FortiAuthenticator.
   c. Set *Authentication method* to *Enforce two-factor authentication*.
   d. Select *Enable FortiToken Mobile push notifications authentication*.
   e. Set *Realms* to *local* | *Local users*.
4. Create a user and assign FortiToken mobile to the user on the FortiAuthenticator:
   a. Go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *Local Users* to create a user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enable *Allow RADIUS authentication* and click *OK* to access additional settings.
   c. Enable *Token-based authentication* and select to deliver the token code by *FortiToken*.
   d. Select the FortiToken added from the FortiToken Mobile dropdown menu.
   e. Set *Delivery method* to *Email* and fill in the *User Information* section.
   f. Go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup*.
   g. Add *sslvpnuser1* to the group by moving the user from *Available users* to *Selected users*.
5. Install the FortiToken mobile application on your Android or iOS smartphone.
   The FortiAuthenticator sends the FortiToken mobile activation to the user's email address.
6. Activate the FortiToken mobile through the FortiToken mobile application by entering the activation code or scanning the QR code.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Create a RADIUS user and user group:
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* to create a user to connect to the RADIUS server (FortiAuthenticator).
   b. For *Name*, use *FAC-RADIUS*.
   c. Enter the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator, and enter the *Secret* created above.
   d. Click *Test Connectivity* to ensure you can connect to the RADIUS server.
   e. Select *Test User Credentials* and enter the credentials for *sslvpnuser1*.
      The FortiGate can now connect to the FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS client.

   f. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New* to map authenticated remote users to a user group on the FortiGate.
   g. For *Name*, use *SSLVPNGroup*.
   h. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add*.
   i. In the *Remote Server* dropdown list, select *FAC-RADIUS*.
   j. Leave the *Groups* field blank.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example: *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Create a RADIUS user and user group:

```
config user radius
    edit "FAC-RADIUS"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set secret <FAC client secret>
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "FAC-RADIUS"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “sslvpngroup”
        set action accept
```

```
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   The FortiAuthenticator pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken Mobile application.
3. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN portal.
4. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example: *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials and click *FTM Push*.
   The FortiAuthenticator pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken Mobile application.
6. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN tunnel.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type   Timeout   From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)        229       10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login on CLI:

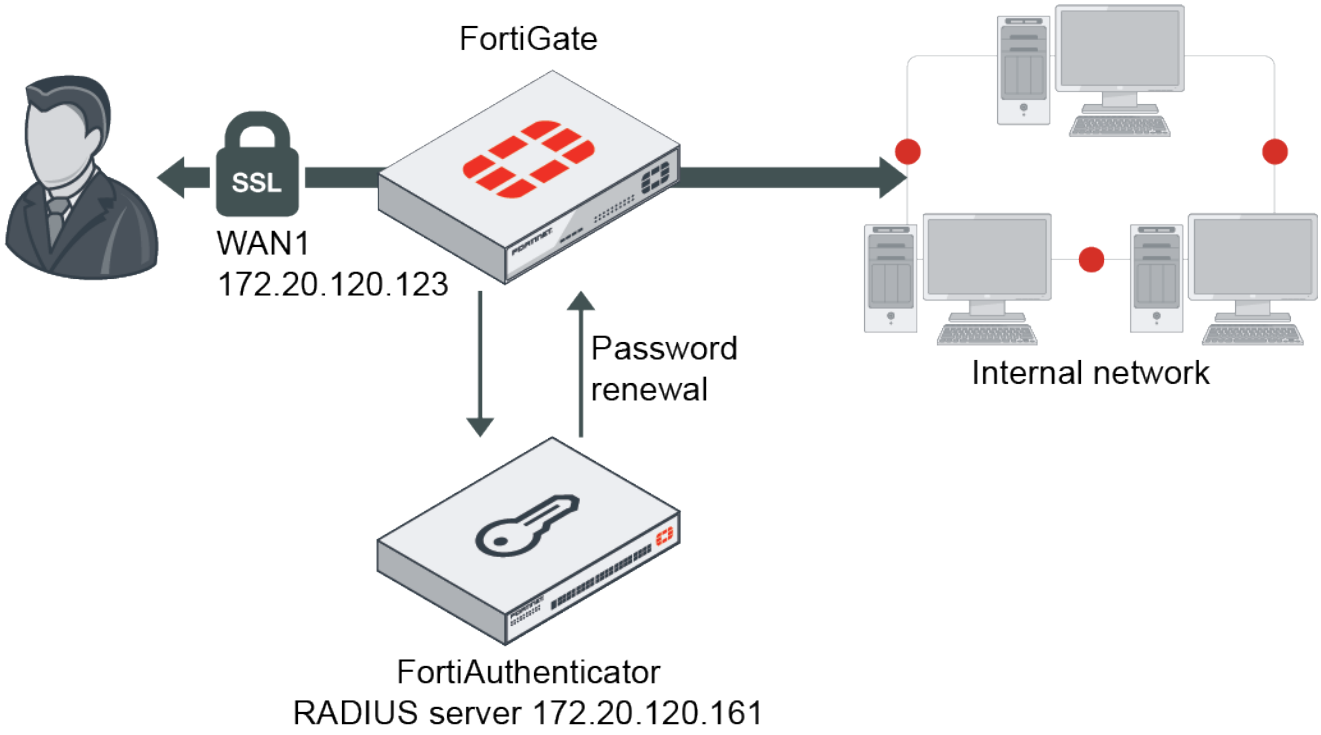
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration    I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9           22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with RADIUS password renew on FortiAuthenticator

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for RADIUS users with *Force Password Change on next logon*. In this example, the RADIUS server is a FortiAuthenticator. A user *test1* is configured on FortiAuthenticator with *Force password change on next logon*.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.

2. Create a RADIUS user.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* to create a user.
   b. Set *Authentication method* to *MS-CHAP-v2*.
   c. Enter the *IP/Name* and *Secret*.
   d. Click *Create*.
      Password renewal only works with the MS-CHAP-v2 authentication method.
   e. To enable the `password-renew` option, use these CLI commands.

```
config user radius
    edit "fac"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set secret <fac radius password>
        set auth-type ms_chap_v2
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group.
   b. For the *Name*, enter *fac-group*.
   c. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add *Remote Server* you just created.
4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
      This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *fac-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name, in this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *fac-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network, in this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the RADIUS server.

```
config user radius
    edit "fac"
        set server "172.18.58.107"
        set secret <fac radius password>
        set auth-type ms_chap_v2
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure user group.

```
config user group
    edit "fac-group"
        set member "fac"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
```

```
        set source-interface "wan1"
        set source-address "all"
        set default-portal "web-access"
        config authentication-rule
            edit 1
                set groups "fac-group"
                set portal "full-access"
            next
        end
    end
```

7. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "fac-group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *test1* credentials.
   Use a user which is configured on FortiAuthenticator with *Force password change on next logon*.
3. Click *Login*. You are prompted to enter a new password.
4. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set the connection name.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Log in using the *test1* credentials.
   You are prompted to enter a new password.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details of the SSL

VPN connection event log.

3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       test1   1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       test1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

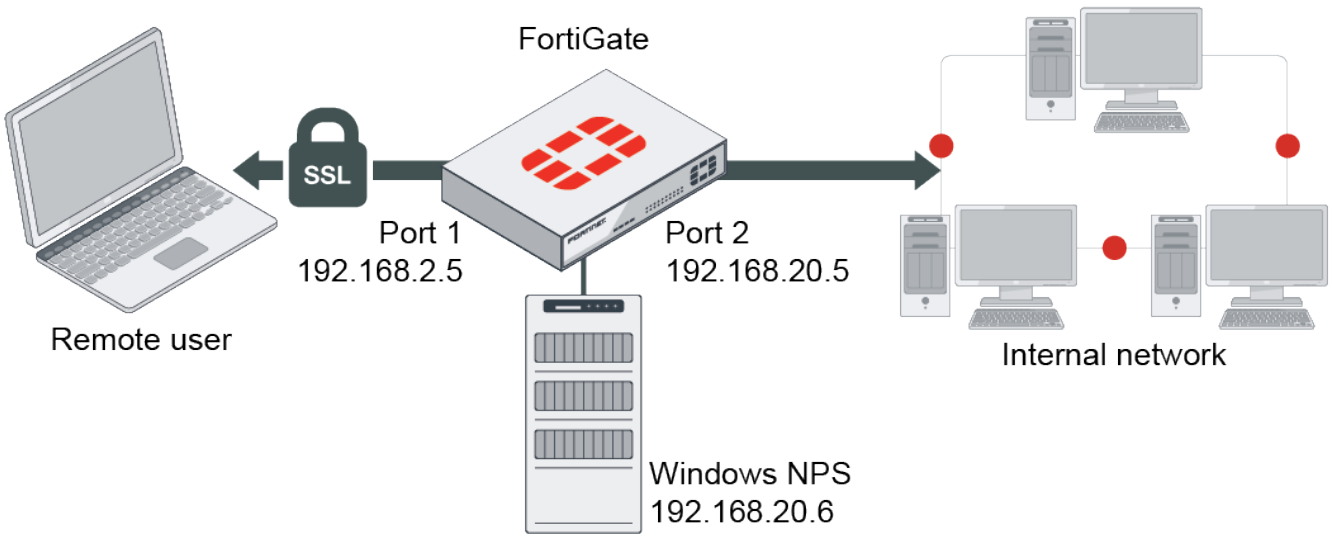
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       test1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS

This is an example configuration of SSL VPN that uses Windows Network Policy Server (NPS) as a RADIUS authentication server.

The NPS must already be configured to accept the FortiGate as a RADIUS client and the choice of authentication method, such as MS-CHAPv2. A shared key must also have been created.

Example



The user is connecting from their PC to the FortiGate's port1 interface. RADIUS authentication occurs between the FortiGate and the Windows NPS, and the SSL-VPN connection is established once the authentication is successful.

Configure SSL-VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS in the GUI

To configure the internal and external interfaces:

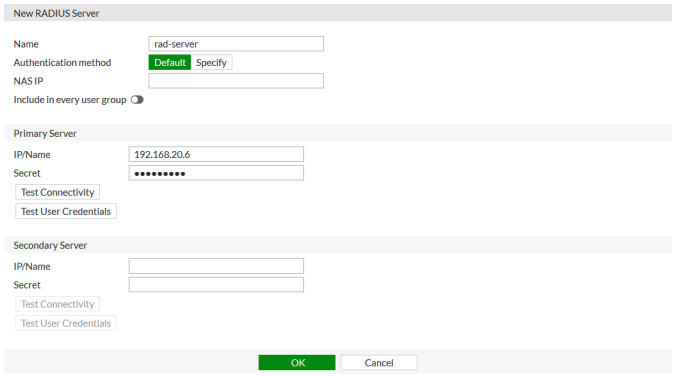
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*
2. Edit the *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.2.5/24*.
3. Edit the *port2* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.20.5/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

To create a firewall address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *192.168.20.0*.
3. Leave *Type* as *Subnet*
4. Set *IP/Netmask* to *192.168.20.0/24*.
5. Click *OK*.

To add the RADIUS server:

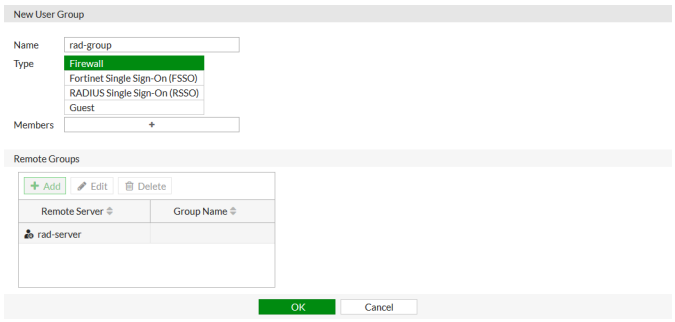
1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *rad-server*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.20.6* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. Optionally, click *Test User Credentials* to test user credentials. Testing from the GUI is limited to PAP.



7. Click *OK*.

To configure a user group:

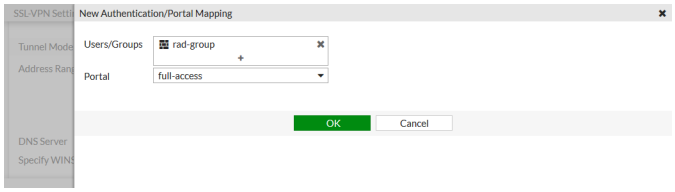
1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *rad-group*.
3. Under *Remote Groups*, click *Add* and add the *rad-server*.



4. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN settings:

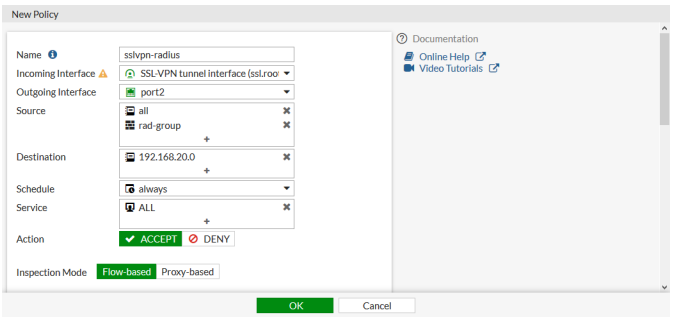
1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *port1*.
3. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
4. If you have a server certificate, set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
5. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*:
   a. Edit *All Other Users/Groups* and set *Portal* to *web-access*.
   b. Click *Create New* and create a mapping for the *rad-group* user group with *Portal* set to *full-access*.



   c. Click *OK*.
6. Click *Apply*.

To configure an SSL VPN firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Set the policy name, in this example, *sslvpn-radius*.
3. Set *Incoming Interface* to *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
4. Set *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port2*.
5. Set the *Source* > *Address* to *all* and *Source* > *User* to *rad-group*.
6. Set *Destination* > *Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.20.0*.
7. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
8. Enable *NAT*.



9. Configure the remaining options as required.
10. Click *OK*.

Configure SSL-VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS in the CLI

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the internal and external interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.2.5 255.255.255.0
        set alias internal
    next
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.20.5 255.255.255.0
        set alias external
    next
end
```

2. Configure the firewall address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.20.0"
        set subnet 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Add the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
    edit "rad-server"
        set server "192.168.20.6"
        set secret *********
    next
end
```

4. Create a user group and add the RADIUS server to it:.

```
config user group
    edit "rad-group"
        set member "rad-server"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "rad-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure an SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn-radius"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
        set groups "rad-group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Results

To connect with FortiClient in tunnel mode:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to *192.168.2.5*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the RADIUS user credentials.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type drop-down list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check the login using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User     Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out    HTTPS in/out
 0       radkeith         rad-group        2(1)            295     192.168.2.202  0/0     0/0

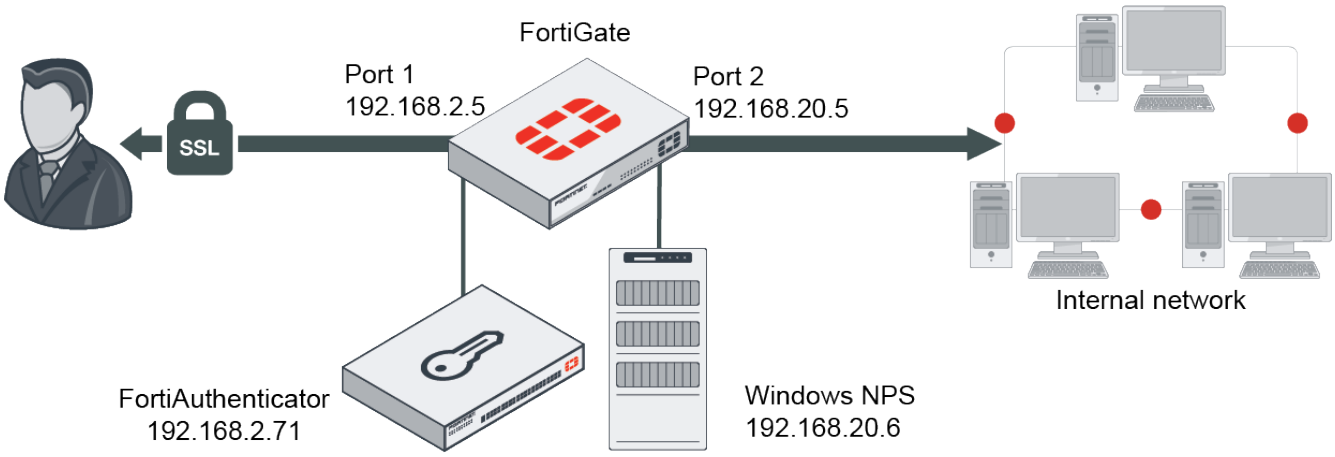
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User     Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       radkeith         rad-group        192.168.2.202   18      28502/4966
10.212.134.200
```

SSL VPN with multiple RADIUS servers

When configuring two or more RADIUS servers, you can configure a Primary and Secondary server within the same RADIUS server configurations for backup purposes. You can also configure multiple RADIUS servers within the same User Group to service the access request at the same time.

A tertiary server can be configured in the CLI.

Sample topology



Sample configurations

- Configure a Primary and Secondary server for backup on page 1857
- Authenticating to two RADIUS servers concurrently on page 1861

Configure a Primary and Secondary server for backup

When you define a Primary and Secondary RADIUS server, the access request will always be sent to the Primary server first. If the request is denied with an Access-Reject, then the user authentication fails. However, if there is no response from the Primary server after another attempt, the access request will be sent to the Secondary server.

In this example, you will use a Windows NPS server as the Primary server and a FortiAuthenticator as the Secondary server. It is assumed that users are synchronized between the two servers.

To configure the internal and external interfaces:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.2.5/24*.
3. Edit the *port2* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.20.5/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

To create a firewall address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *192.168.20.0*.
3. Leave *Type* as *Subnet*
4. Set IP/*Netmask* to *192.168.20.0/24*.
5. Click *OK*.

To add the RADIUS servers:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *PrimarySecondary*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.20.6* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. Under *Secondary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.2.71* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
7. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
8. *Click OK.*

To configure the user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Name* field, enter *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
3. In the *Remote Groups* area, click *Add*, and from the *Remote Server* dropdown, select *PrimarySecondary*.
4. Click *OK*, and then click *OK* again.

To configure the SSL VPN settings:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. From the *Listen on Interface(s)* dropdown select *port1*.
3. In the *Listen on Port* field enter *10443*.
4. Optionally, from the *Server Certificate* dropdown, select the authentication certificate if you have one for this SSL VPN portal.
5. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set the default portal web-access.
   a. Select *All Other Users/Groups* and click *Edit*.
   b. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *web-access*.

   c. Click *OK*.
6. Create a web portal for *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
   a. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, click *Create New*.
   b. Click *Users/Groups* and select *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
   c. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *full-access*.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* to create a new policy, or double-click an existing policy to edit it and configure the following settings:

Name	Enter a name for the policy.
Incoming Interface	*SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root)*
Outgoing interface	Set to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. For this example, select *port3*.
Source	In the *Address* tab, select *SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1* In the *User* tab, select *PrimarySecondaryGroup*
Destination	Select the internal protected subnet *192.168.20.0*.
Schedule	*always*
Service	*All*
Action	*Accept*
NAT	*Enable*

3. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as required.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the internal interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
   edit "port3"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 192.168.20.5 255.255.255.0
      set alias "internal"
   next
end
config firewall address
   edit "192.168.20.0"
      set uuid cc41eec2-9645-51ea-d481-5c5317f865d0
      set subnet 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```

2. Configure the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
```

```
    edit "PrimarySecondary"
      set server "192.168.20.6"
      set secret <secret>
      set secondary-server "192.168.2.71"
      set secondary-secret <secret>
    next
end
```

3. Add the RADIUS user to the user group:

```
config user group
    edit "PrimarySecondaryGroup"
      set member "PrimarySecondary "
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
      edit 1
        set groups "PrimarySecondaryGroup "
        set portal "full-access"
      next
    end
end
```

5. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote users to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
      set name "sslvpn-radius"
      set srcintf "ssl.root"
      set dstintf "port3"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
      set groups "PrimarySecondaryGroup"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set nat enable
    next
end
```

To verify the connection:

User *radkeith* is a member of both the NPS server and the FAC server.

When the Primary server is up, it will connect to the SSL VPN tunnel using FortiClient.

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 16:26:50.838453 port3 out 192.168.20.5.2374 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:26:50.883166 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.2374: udp 20
2020-05-15 16:26:50.883374 port3 out 192.168.20.5.2374 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 182
2020-05-15 16:26:50.884683 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.2374: udp 228
```

The access request is sent to the Primary NPS server 192.168.20.6, and the connection is successful.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User            Group                   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       radkeith       PrimarySecondaryGroup   2(1)            285     192.168.2.202
 0/0     0/0

SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User       Group                   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
Tunnel/Dest IP

0       radkeith   PrimarySecondaryGroup   192.168.2.202   62              132477/4966
10.212.134.200
```

When the Primary server is down, and the Secondary server is up, the connection is made to the SSLVPN tunnel again:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 16:31:23.016875 port3 out 192.168.20.5.7989 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:31:28.019470 port3 out 192.168.20.5.7989 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:31:30.011874 port1 out 192.168.2.5.23848 -> 192.168.2.71.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:31:30.087564 port1 in 192.168.2.71.1812 -> 192.168.2.5.23848: udp 20
```

Access request is sent to the Primary NPS server 192.168.20.6, but there was no response. RADIUS authentication falls through to the Secondary FortiAuthenticator 192.168.2.71, and the authentication was accepted. The VPN connection is established.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User            Group                  Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       radkeith        PrimarySecondaryGroup   2(1)            287     192.168.2.202
0/0       0/0

SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User            Group                    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
   Tunnel/Dest IP

0       radkeith        PrimarySecondaryGroup   192.168.2.202   48              53544/4966
  10.212.134.200
```

Authenticating to two RADIUS servers concurrently

There are times where users are located on separate RADIUS servers. This may be the case when migrating from an old server to a new one for example. In this scenario, a Windows NPS server and a FortiAuthenticator are configured in the same User Group. The access-request is sent to both servers concurrently. If FortiGate receives an access-accept from either server, authentication is successful.

To configure the internal and external interfaces:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.2.5/24*.

3. Edit the *port2* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.20.5/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

To create a firewall address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *192.168.20.0*.
3. Leave *Type* as *Subnet*
4. Set IP/*Netmask* to *192.168.20.0/24*.
5. Click *OK*.

To configure the first RADIUS server:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *win2k16*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.20.6* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. *Click OK.*

To configure the second RADIUS server:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *fac*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.2.71* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. *Click OK.*

To configure the user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Name* field, enter *dualPrimaryGroup.*.
3. In the *Remote Groups* area, click *Add*, and from the *Remote Server* dropdown, select *fac*.
4. Click *Add* again. From the *Remote Server* dropdown select *win2k16* and click *OK*.
5. Click *OK*, and then click *OK* again.

To configure the SSL VPN settings:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. From the *Listen on Interface(s)* dropdown select *port1*.
3. In the *Listen on Port* field enter *10443*.
4. Optionally, from the *Server Certificate* dropdown, select the authentication certificate if you have one for this SSL VPN portal.

5. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set the default portal web-access.
   a. Select *All Other Users/Groups* and click Edit.
   b. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *web-access*.
   c. Click *OK*.
6. Create a web portal for *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
   a. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, click *Create New*.
   b. Click *Users/Groups* and select *dualPrimaryGroup*.
   c. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *full-access*.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* to create a new policy, or double-click an existing policy to edit it.

Name	Enter a name for the policy.
Incoming Interface	*SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root)*
Outgoing interface	Set to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. For this example, select *port3*.
Source	In the *Address* tab, select *SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1* In the *User* tab, select *dualPrimaryGroup*
Destination	Select the internal protected subnet *192.168.20.0*.
Schedule	*always*
Service	*All*
Action	*Accept*
NAT	*Enable*

3. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as required.
4. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the internal interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
   edit "port3"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 192.168.20.5 255.255.255.0
      set alias "internal"
   next
end
config firewall address
   edit "192.168.20.0"
      set uuid cc41eec2-9645-51ea-d481-5c5317f865d0
      set subnet 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```

2. Configure the RADIUS server:
```
config user radius
   edit "win2k16"
      set server "192.168.20.6"
      set secret <secret>
   next
   edit "fac"
      set server "192.168.2.71"
      set secret <secret>
   next
end
```
3. Add the RADIUS user to the user group:
```
config user group
   edit "dualPrimaryGroup"
      set member "win2k16" "fac"
   next
end
```
4. Configure SSL VPN settings:
```
config vpn ssl settings
   set servercert "server_certificate"
   set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
   set source-interface "port1"
   set source-address "all"
   set default-portal "web-access"
   config authentication-rule
      edit 1
         set groups "dualPrimaryGroup"
         set portal "full-access"
      next
   end
end
```
5. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote users to access the internal network:
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "sslvpn-radius"
      set srcintf "ssl.root"
      set dstintf "port3"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
      set groups "dualPrimaryGroup"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

To verify the connection:

User *fackeith* is a member of the FortiAuthenticator server only.

User *radkeith* is a member of both the NPS server and the FortiAuthenticator server, but has different passwords on each server.

Case 1: Connect to the SSLVPN tunnel using FortiClient with user FacAdmin:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 17:21:31.217985 port3 out 192.168.20.5.11490 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:21:31.218091 port1 out 192.168.2.5.11490 -> 192.168.2.71.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:21:31.219314 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.11490: udp 20 <--
     access-reject
2020-05-15 17:21:31.219519 port3 out 192.168.20.5.11490 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 182
2020-05-15 17:21:31.220219 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.11490: udp 42
2020-05-15 17:21:31.220325 port3 out 192.168.20.5.11490 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 119
2020-05-15 17:21:31.220801 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.11490: udp 20
2020-05-15 17:21:31.236009 port1 in 192.168.2.71.1812 -> 192.168.2.5.11490: udp 20 <--
     access-accept
```

Access is denied by the NPS server because the user does not exist. However, access is accepted by FortiAuthenticator. The end result is the authentication is successful.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User       Group             Auth Type      Timeout          From       HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       fackeith  dualPrimaryGroup   2(1)            292        192.168.2.202      0/0
      0/0

SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User       Group                  Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
Tunnel/Dest IP

0       fackeith  dualPrimaryGroup        192.168.2.202   149              70236/4966
 10.212.134.200
```

Case 2: Connect to the SSLVPN tunnel using FortiClient with user radkeith:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 17:26:07.335791 port1 out 192.168.2.5.17988 -> 192.168.2.71.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:26:07.335911 port3 out 192.168.20.5.17988 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:26:07.337659 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.17988: udp 20 <--
     access-accept
2020-05-15 17:26:07.337914 port3 out 192.168.20.5.17988 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 182
2020-05-15 17:26:07.339451 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.17988: udp 228
2020-05-15 17:26:08.352597 port1 in 192.168.2.71.1812 -> 192.168.2.5.17988: udp 20 <--
     access-reject
```

There is a password mismatch for this user on the Secondary RADIUS server. However, even though the authentication was rejected by FortiAuthenticator, it was accepted by Windows NPS. Therefore, the end result is authentication successful.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User       Group            Auth Type      Timeout          From        HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       radkeith  dualPrimaryGroup   2(1)            290        192.168.2.202    0/0
      0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User      Group                Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
Tunnel/Dest IP

0       radkeith dualPrimaryGroup   192.168.2.202   142             64875/4966
10.212.134.200
```

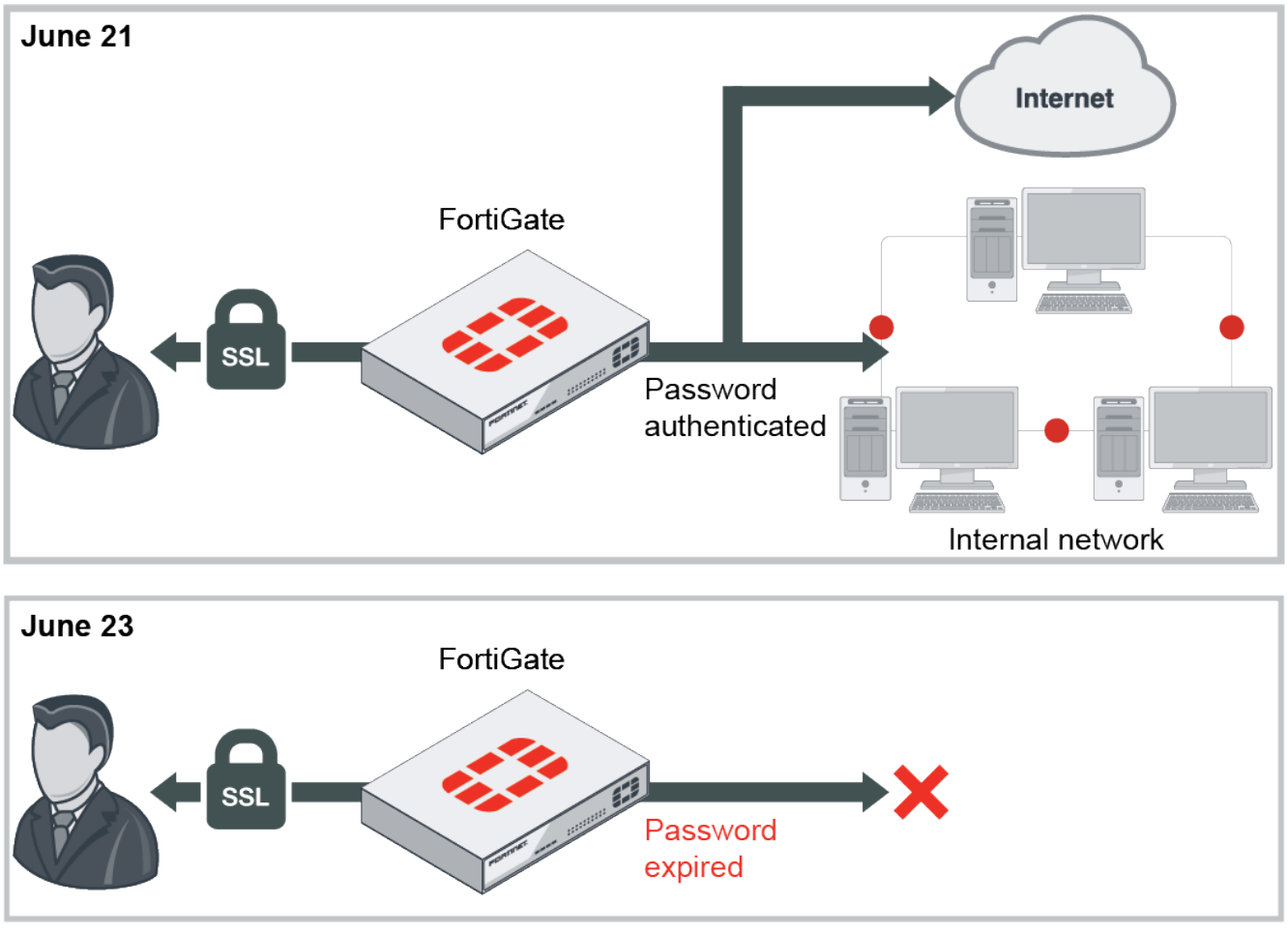
SSL VPN with local user password policy

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for users with passwords that expire after two days. Users are warned after one day about the password expiring. The password policy can be applied to any local user password. The password policy cannot be applied to a user group or a local remote user such as LDAP/RADIUS/TACACS+.

In FortiOS 6.2, users are warned after one day about the password expiring and have one day to renew it. If the password expires, the user cannot renew the password and must contact the administrator for assistance.

In FortiOS 6.0/5.6, users are warned after one day about the password expiring and have to renew it. If the password expires, the user can still renew the password.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group and add that local user to it.
3. Configure and assign the password policy using the CLI.
   a. Configure a password policy that includes an expiry date and warning time. The default start time for the password is the time the user was created.

```
config user password-policy
    edit "pwpolicy1"
        set expire-days 2
        set warn-days 1
    next
end
```

   b. Assign the password policy to the user you just created.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd-policy "pwpolicy1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.

d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
h. Enable *NAT*.
i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
j. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure and assign the password policy.
   a. Configure a password policy that includes an expiry date and warning time. The default start time for the password is the time the user was created.

```
config user password-policy
    edit "pwpolicy1"
        set expire-days 2
        set warn-days 1
```

```
        next
    end
```

b. Assign the password policy to the user you just created.

```
    config user local
        edit "sslvpnuser1"
            set type password
            set passwd-policy "pwpolicy1"
        next
    end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

7. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To see the results of web portal:

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   When the warning time is reached, the user is prompted to enter a new password.
   In FortiOS 6.2, when the password expires, the user cannot renew the password and must contact the administrator.
   In FortiOS 6.0/5.6, when the password expires, the user can still renew the password.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

To see the results of tunnel connection:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set the connection name.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   When the warning time is reached, the user is prompted to enter a new password.

To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

To check that login failed due to password expired on GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to see the SSL VPN alert labeled `ssl-login-fail`.
2. Click *Details* to see the log details about the *Reason* `sslvpn_login_password_expired`.

To check the web portal login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User         Auth Type   Timeout    From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1  1(1)        229        10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

To check the tunnel login using the CLI:

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type   Timeout    From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)        291        10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

To check the FortiOS 6.2 login password expired event log:

```
FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  filter category event

FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  filter field subtype vpn

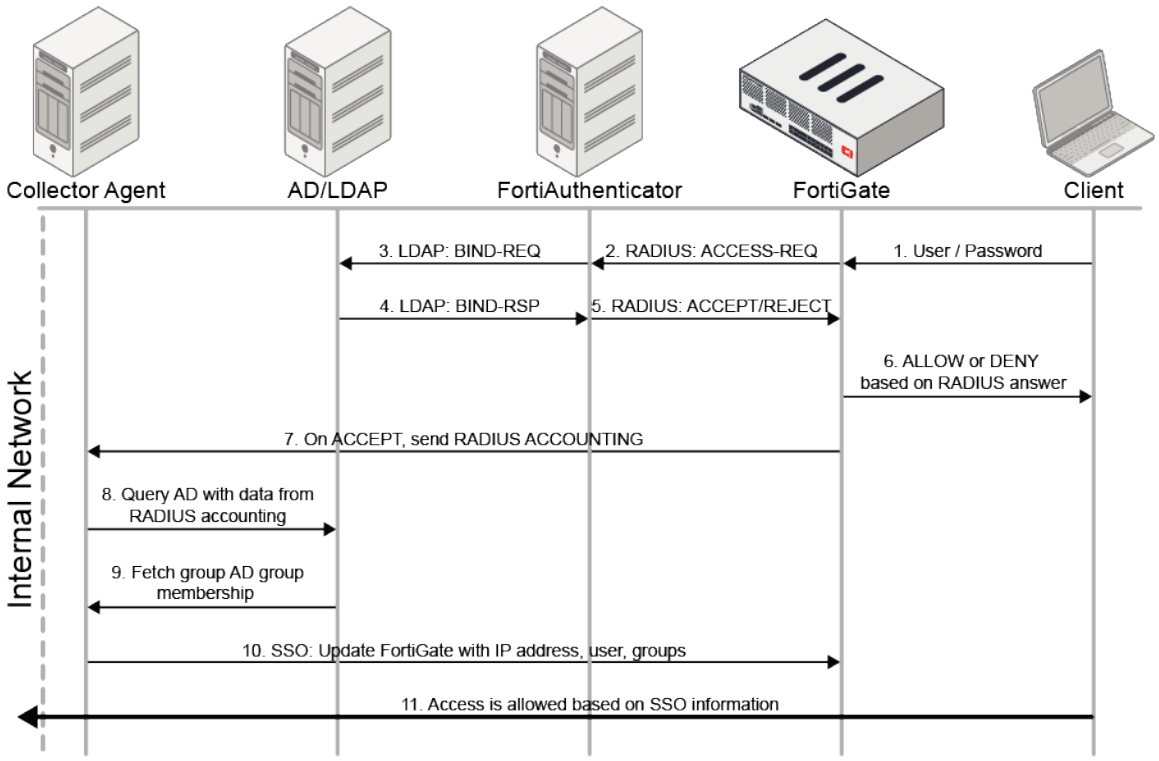
FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  filter field action ssl-login-fail

FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  display
1: date=2019-02-15 time=10:57:56 logid="0101039426" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="alert"
vd="root" eventtime=1550257076 logdesc="SSL VPN login fail" action="ssl-login-fail"
tunneltype="ssl-web" tunnelid=0 remip=10.1.100.254 user="u1" group="g1" dst_host="N/A"
reason="sslvpn_login_password_expired" msg="SSL user failed to logged in"
```

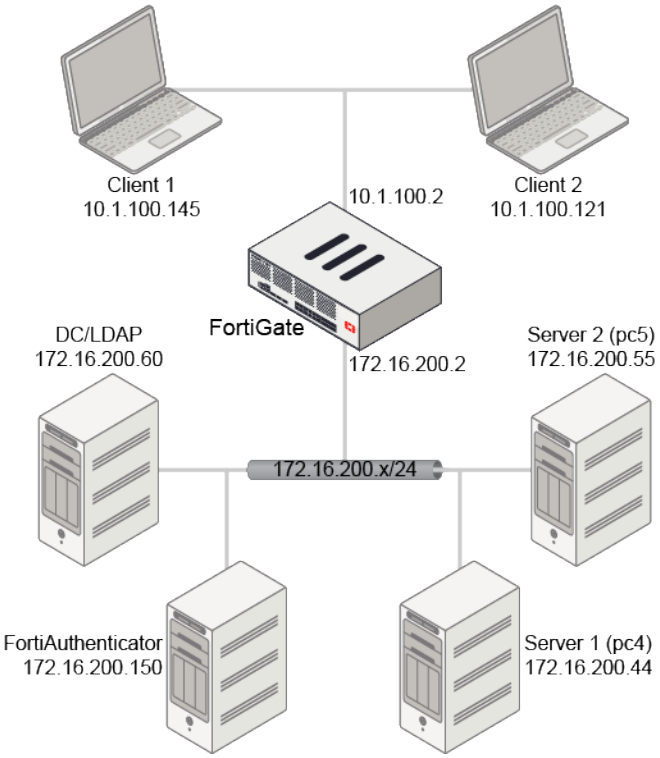
Dynamic address support for SSL VPN policies

Dynamic SSO user groups can be used in place of address objects when configuring SSL VPN policies. This allows dynamic IP addresses to be used in SSL VPN policies. A remote user group can be used for authentication while an FSSO group is separately used for authorization. Using a dummy policy for remote user authentication and a policy for FSSO group authorization, FSSO can be used with SSL VPN tunnels

This image shows the authentication and authorization flow:



In this example, FortiAuthenticator is used as a RADIUS server. It uses a remote AD/LDAP server for authentication, then returns the authentication results to the FortiGate. This allows the client to have a dynamic IP address after successful authentication.



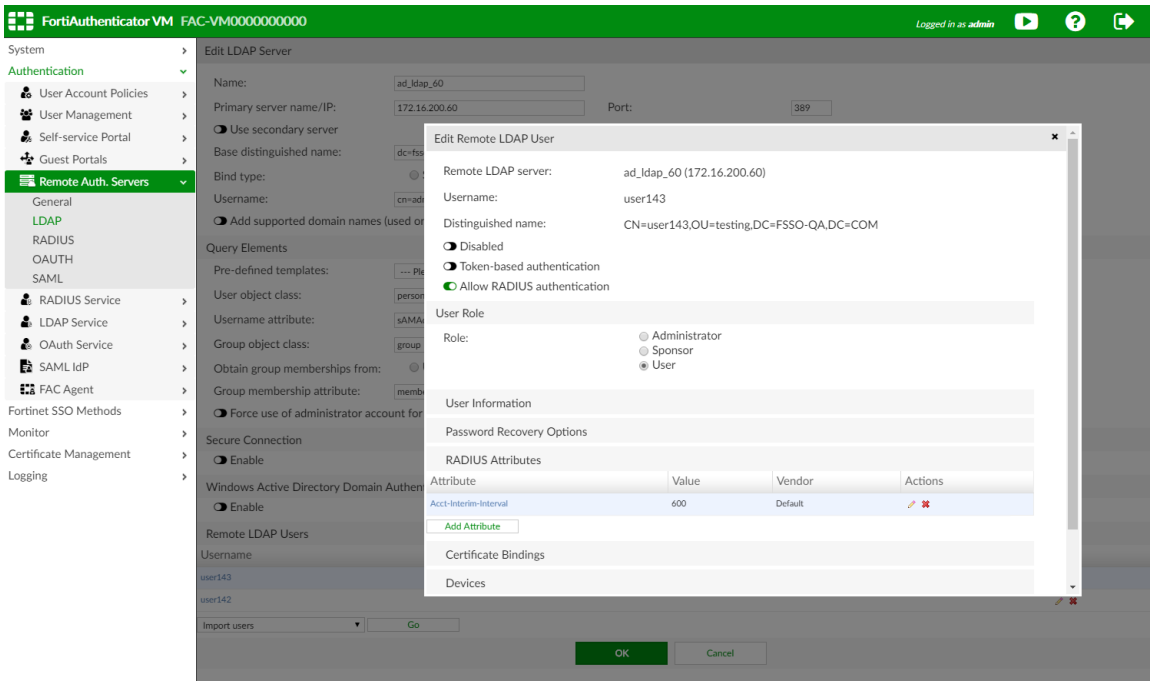
First, on the LDAP server, create two users each in their own group, *user142* in group *pc_group1*, and *user143* in group *pc_group2*.

Configure the FortiAuthenticator

To add a remote LDAP server and users on the FortiAuthenticator:

1. Go to *Authentication* > *Remote Auth. Servers* > *LDAP*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name*: *ad_ldap_60*
   - *Primary server name/IP*: *172.16.200.60*
   - *Base distinguished name*: *dc=fsso-qa,dc=com*
   - *Bind type*: Regular
   - *Username*: *cn=administrator,cn=User*
   - *Password*: <enter a password>
4. Click *OK*.
5. Edit the new LDAP server.
6. Import the remote LDAP users.
7. Edit each user to confirm that they have the RADIUS attribute *Acct-Interim-Interval*. This attribute is used by

FortiGate to send interim update account messages to the RADIUS server.



To create a RADIUS client for FortiGate as a remote authentication server:

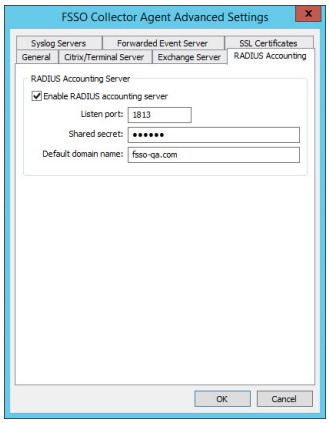
1. Go to *Authentication* > *RADIUS Service* > *Clients*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name*: *fsso_ldap*
   - *Client address*: *Range 172.16.200.1~172.16.200.10*
   - *Secret*: <enter a password>
4. In the *Realms* table, set the realm to the LDAP server that was just added: *ad_ldap_60*.
5. Click *OK*.
   FortiAuthenticator can now be used as a RADIUS server, and the authentication credentials all come from the DC/LDAP server.

Fortinet Single Sign-On Collector Agent

To configure the Fortinet Single Sign-On Collector Agent:

1. Select *Require authenticated connection from FortiGate* and enter a *Password*.
2. Click *Advanced Settings*.
3. Select the *RADIUS Accounting* tab.

4. Select *Enable RADIUS accounting server* and set the *Shared secret*.



5. Click *OK*, then click *Save&close*.
   The collector agent can now accept accounting requests from FortiGate, and retrieve the IP addresses and usernames of SSL VPN client from the FortiGate with accounting request messages.

Configure the FortiGate

To configure the FortiGate in the CLI:

1. Create a Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent fabric connector:

```
config user fsso
    edit "AD_CollectAgent"
        set server "172.16.200.60"
        set password 123456
    next
end
```

2. Add the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
    edit "rad150"
        set server "172.16.200.150"
        set secret 123456
        set acct-interim-interval 600
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server "172.16.200.60"
                set secret 123456
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Create a user group for the RADIUS server:

```
config user group
    edit "rad_group"
        set member "rad150"
    next
end
```

4. Create user groups for each of the FSSO groups:

```
config user group
    edit "fsso_group1"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM"
    next
    edit "fsso_group2"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "CN=PC_GROUP2,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM"
    next
end
```

5. Create an SSL VPN portal and assign the RADIUS user group to it:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "testportal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set ipv6-tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        ...
    next
end
config vpn ssl settings
    ...
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "rad_group"
            set portal "testportal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Create firewall addresses:

```
config firewall address
    edit "none"
        set subnet 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc4"
        set subnet 172.16.200.44 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc5"
        set subnet 172.16.200.55 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

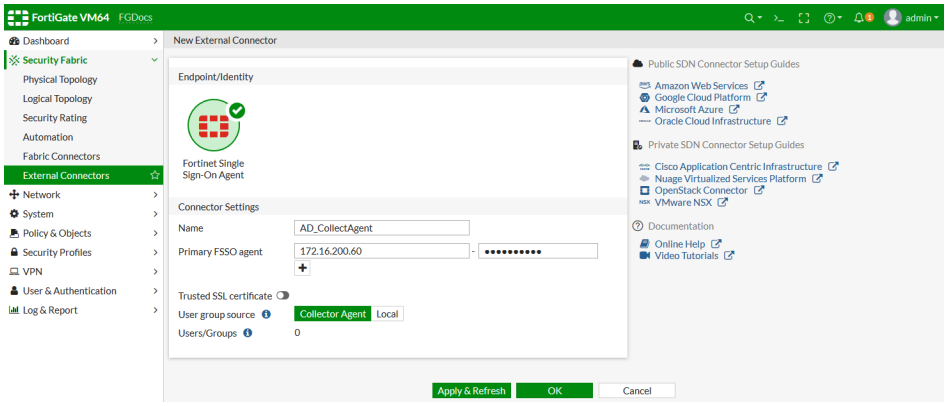
7. Create one dummy policy for authentication only, and two normal policies for authorization:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn_authentication"
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "none"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
```

```
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "rad_group"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 3
        set name "sslvpn_authorization1"
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc4"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "fsso_group1"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 4
        set name "sslvpn_authorization2"
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc5"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "fsso_group2"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

To create an FSSO agent fabric connector in the GUI:

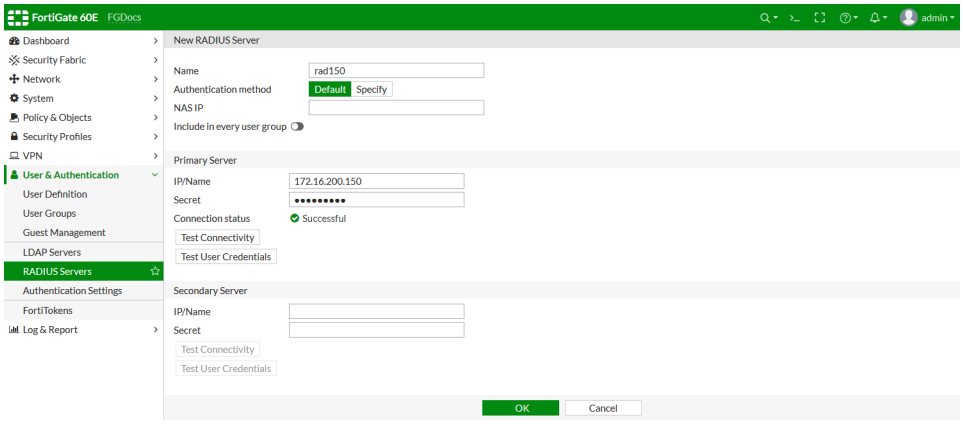
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.
4. Enter the name and *Primary FSSO agent* information.



5. Click *Apply & Refresh*.
   The FSSO groups are retrieved from the collector agent.

To add the RADIUS server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the server.
4. Enter the *IP/Name* and *Secret* for the primary server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to ensure that there is a successful connection.



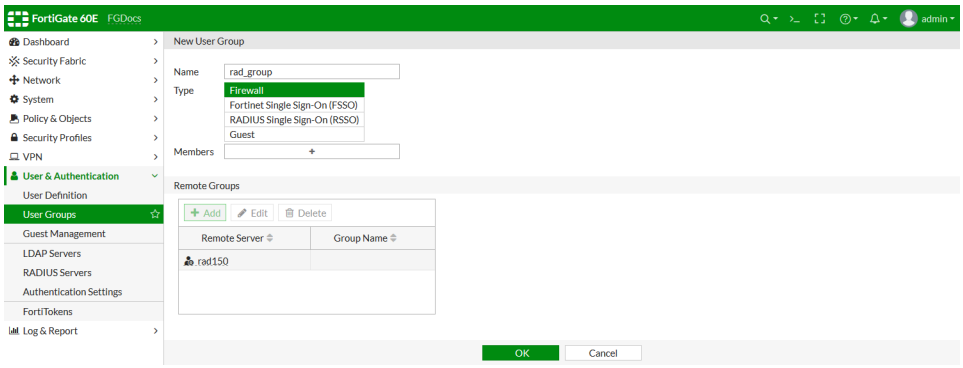
6. Click *OK*.
7. Configure an accounting server with the following CLI command:

```
config user radius
    edit rad150
        set acct-interim-interval 600
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server 172.16.200.60
                set secret *********
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To create a user group for the RADIUS server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group and set the *Type* to *Firewall*.

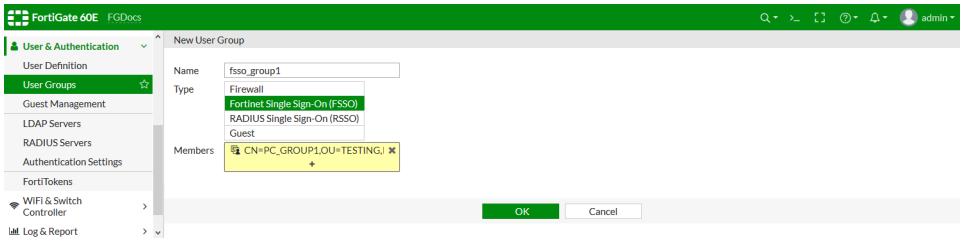
4. Add the RADIUS server as a remote group.



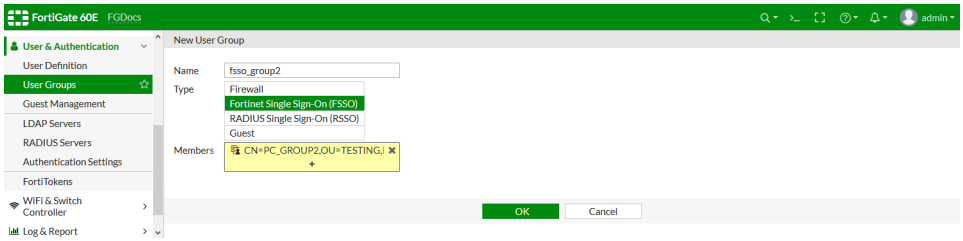
5. Click *OK*.

To create user groups for each of the FSSO groups in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group and set the *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*.
4. Add PC_GROUP1 as a member:
   `CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM`



5. Click *OK*.
6. Add a second user group with PC_GROUP2 as a member:
   `CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM`



7. Click *OK*.

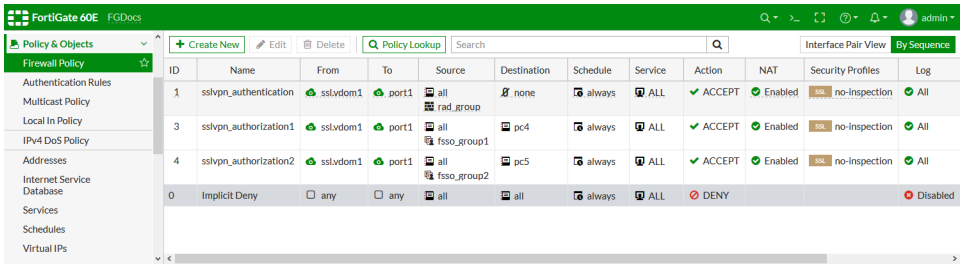
To create an SSL VPN portal and assign the RADIUS user group to it in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL VPN Portals*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the portal, then click *OK*.
4. Go to *VPN* > *SSL VPN Settings*.
5. Configure the required settings.

6. Create an *Authentication/Portal Mapping* table entry:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Set *User/Groups* to *rad_group*.
   c. Set *Portal* to *testportal*.
   d. Click *OK*.
7. Click *OK*.

To create policies for authentication and authorization in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Configure a dummy policy for authentication. Set the destination to *none* so that traffic is not allowed through the FortiGate, and add *rad_group* as a source.
3. Configure two authorization policies, with the FSSO groups as sources.



Confirmation

On *Client 1*, log in to FortiClient using *user142*. Traffic can go to *pc4* (172.16.200.44), but cannot go to *pc5* (172.16.200.55).

On *Client 2*, log in to FortiClient using *user143*. Traffic can go to *pc5* (172.16.200.55), but cannot go to *pc4* (172.16.200.44).

On the FortiGate, check the authenticated users list and the SSL VPN status:

```
# diagnose firewall auth list

10.212.134.200, USER142
        type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 173, idled: 173
        server: AD_CollectAgent
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        user_id: 16777229
        group_id: 3 33554434
        group_name: fsso_group1 CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM

10.212.134.200, user142
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 174, idled: 174
        expire: 259026, allow-idle: 259200
        flag(80): sslvpn
        server: rad150
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 4
        group_name: rad_group

10.212.134.201, USER143
        type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 78, idled: 78
```

```
        server: AD_CollectAgent
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 1 33554435
        group_name: fsso_group2 CN=PC_GROUP2,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM

10.212.134.201, user143
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 79, idled: 79
        expire: 259121, allow-idle: 259200
        flag(80): sslvpn
        server: rad150
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 4
        group_name: rad_group

----- 4 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

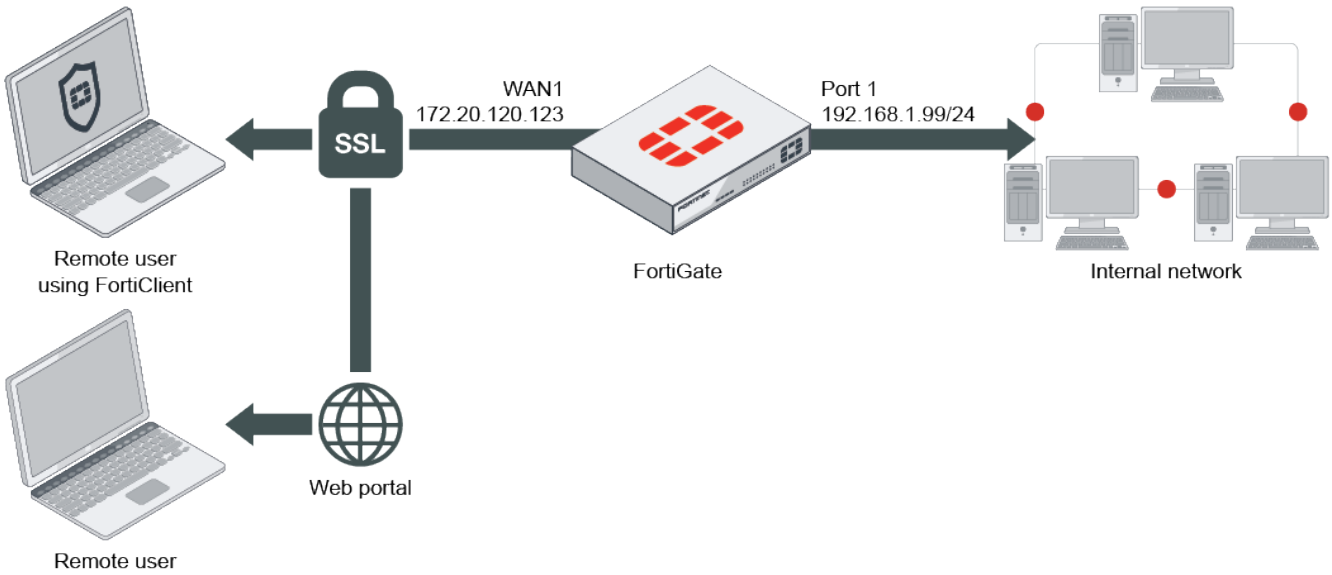
```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out    HTTPS in/out
 0       user142         2(1)            600     10.1.100.145   0/0     0/0
 1       user143         2(1)            592     10.1.100.254   0/0     0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       user142         10.1.100.145    104     32190/16480     10.212.134.200
 1       user143         10.1.100.254    11      4007/4966       10.212.134.201
```

SSL VPN multi-realm

This sample shows how to create a multi-realm SSL VPN that provides different portals for different user groups.

Sample topology



Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.



The split tunneling routing address cannot explicitly use an FQDN or an address group that includes an FQDN. To use an FQDN, leave the routing address blank and apply the FQDN as the destination address of the firewall policy.

To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet *QA_subnet* with subnet *192.168.1.0/24* and *HR_subnet* with subnet *10.1.100.0/24*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create local users *qa-user1* and *hr-user1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create separate user groups for web-only and full-access portals:
      - *QA_group* with member *qa-user1*.
      - *HR_group* with the member *hr-user1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create portal *qa-tunnel*.
   b. Enable *Tunnel Mode*.
   c. Create a portal *hr-web* with *Web Mode* enabled.
4. Configure SSL VPN realms.
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* to enable *SSL-VPN Realms*.
   b. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Realms* to create realms for *qa* and *hr*.
   c. (Optional) To access each realm with FQDN instead of the default URLs *https://172.20.120.123:10443/hr* and *https://172.20.120.123:10443/qa*, you can configure a virtual-host for the realm in the CLI.

```
config vpn ssl web realm
   edit hr
      set virtual-host hr.mydomain.com
   next
   edit qa
      set virtual-host qa.mydomain.com
   next
end
```

   Where `mydomain.com` is the name of your domain. Ensure FQDN resolves to the FortiGate wan1 interface and that your certificate is a wildcard certificate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.

e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *web-access*.
f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *QA_group* mapping portal *qa-tunnel*.
g. Specify the realm *qa*.
h. Add another entry for group *HR_group* mapping portal *hr-web*.
i. Specify the realm *hr*.

6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
b. Create a firewall policy for QA access.
c. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *QA sslvpn tunnel mode access*.
d. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
e. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
f. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *QA_group*.
g. In this example, the *Destination* is the internal protected subnet *QA_subnet*.
h. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
i. Click *OK*.
j. Create a firewall policy for HR access.
k. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *HR sslvpn web mode access*.
l. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
m. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
n. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *HR_group*.
o. In this example, the *Destination* is the internal protected subnet *HR_subnet*.
p. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
q. Click *OK*.

To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "QA_subnet"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "HR_subnet"
        set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "qa_user1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "QA_group"
        set member "qa_user1"
    next
end
```

```
config user local
    edit "hr_user1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "HR_group"
        set member "hr_user1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "qa-tunnel"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling enable
        set split-tunneling-routing-address "QA_subnet"
    next
end
```

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "hr-web"
        set web-mode enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN realms.

```
config vpn ssl web realm
   edit hr
      set virtual-host hr.mydomain.com
   next
   edit qa
        set virtual-host qa.mydomain.com
   next
end
```

The `set virtual-host` setting is optional. For example:

```
config vpn ssl web realm
   edit hr
   next
```

```
    edit qa
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "QA_group"
            set portal "qa-tunnel"
            set realm qa
        next
        edit 2
            set groups "HR_group"
            set portal "hr-web"
            set realm hr
        next
    end
end
```

7. Configure two SSL VPN firewall policies to allow remote QA user to access internal QA network and HR user to access HR network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "QA sslvnpn tunnel access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "QA_subnet"
        set groups "QA_group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "HR sslvpn web access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "HR_subnet"
        set groups "HR_group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

To see the results for QA user:

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to *https://172.20.120.123:10443/qa.*.
   - If a virtual-host is specified, use the FQDN defined for the realm (*qa.mydomain.com*).
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
   If the user's computer has antivirus software, a connection is established; otherwise FortiClient shows a compliance warning.
7. After connection, traffic to subnet *192.168.1.0* goes through the tunnel.
8. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the list of SSL users.
9. On the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
10. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of the traffic.

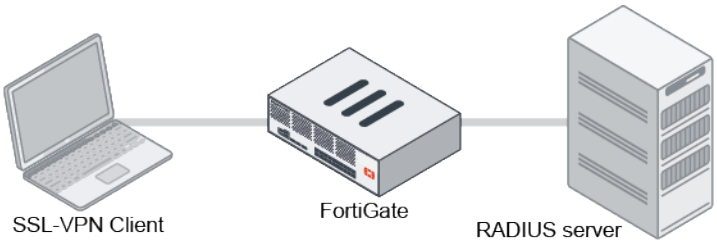
To see the results for HR user:

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *https://172.20.120.123:10443/hr* using the credentials you've set up.
2. Alternatively, if a virtual-host is specified, use the FQDN defined for the realm (*hr.mydomain.com*).
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the list of SSL users.
4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of the traffic.

NAS-IP support per SSL-VPN realm

For RADIUS authentication and authorization, the RADIUS client (the FortiGate) passes the username, password, and NAS-IP to the RADIUS server in its access request. The RADIUS server authenticates and authorizes based on this information. Each RADIUS server can be configured with multiple NAS-IPs for authenticating different groups and NAS clients.

On the FortiGate, configuring the NAS-IP in the realm settings overrides the RADIUS server setting, allowing multiple NAS-IPs to be mapped to the same RADIUS server.



In this example, the user wants to present one FortiGate VDOM with different NAS-IPs to a single RADIUS server based on specific rules.

To configure the SSL-VPN to use the NAS-IP in the realm settings:

1. Configure a RADIUS user and add it to a group:

```
config user radius
    edit "fac150"
        set server "172.16.200.150"
        set secret ********
        set nas-ip 172.16.200.2
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server "172.16.200.150"
                set secret ********
            next
        end
    next
end
config user group
    edit "radgrp"
        set member "fac150"
    next
end
```

2. Configure a realm for the user with a different NAS-IP:

```
config vpn ssl web realm
    edit "realm1"
        set login-page '.......'
        set radius-server "fac150"
        set nas-ip 10.1.100.2
    next
end
```

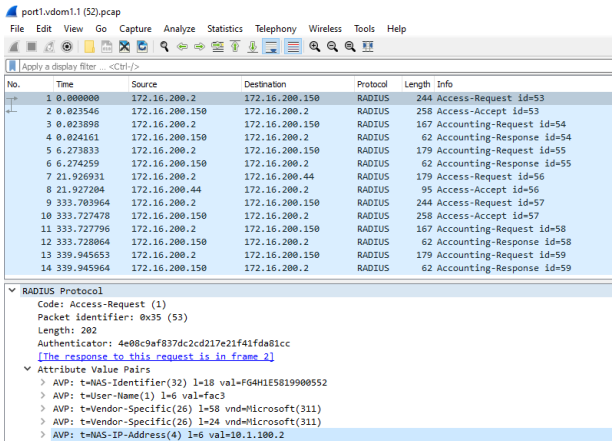
3. Configure SSL-VPN with an authentication rule that includes the user group and the realm:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    ...
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groupd "radgrp"
            set portal "testportal1"
            set realm "realm1"
        next
    end
end
```

4. Create a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn1"
        ...
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set groups "radgrp"
    next
end
```

Because the RADIUS server and NAS-IP are specified in realm1, its NAS-IP is used for authentication.



SSL VPN with Azure AD SSO integration

You can use SAML single sign on to authenticate against Azure Active Directory with SSL VPN SAML user via tunnel and web modes. See:

- Configuring SAML SSO login for SSL VPN with Azure AD acting as SAML IdP
- Tutorial: Azure AD SSO integration with FortiGate SSL VPN

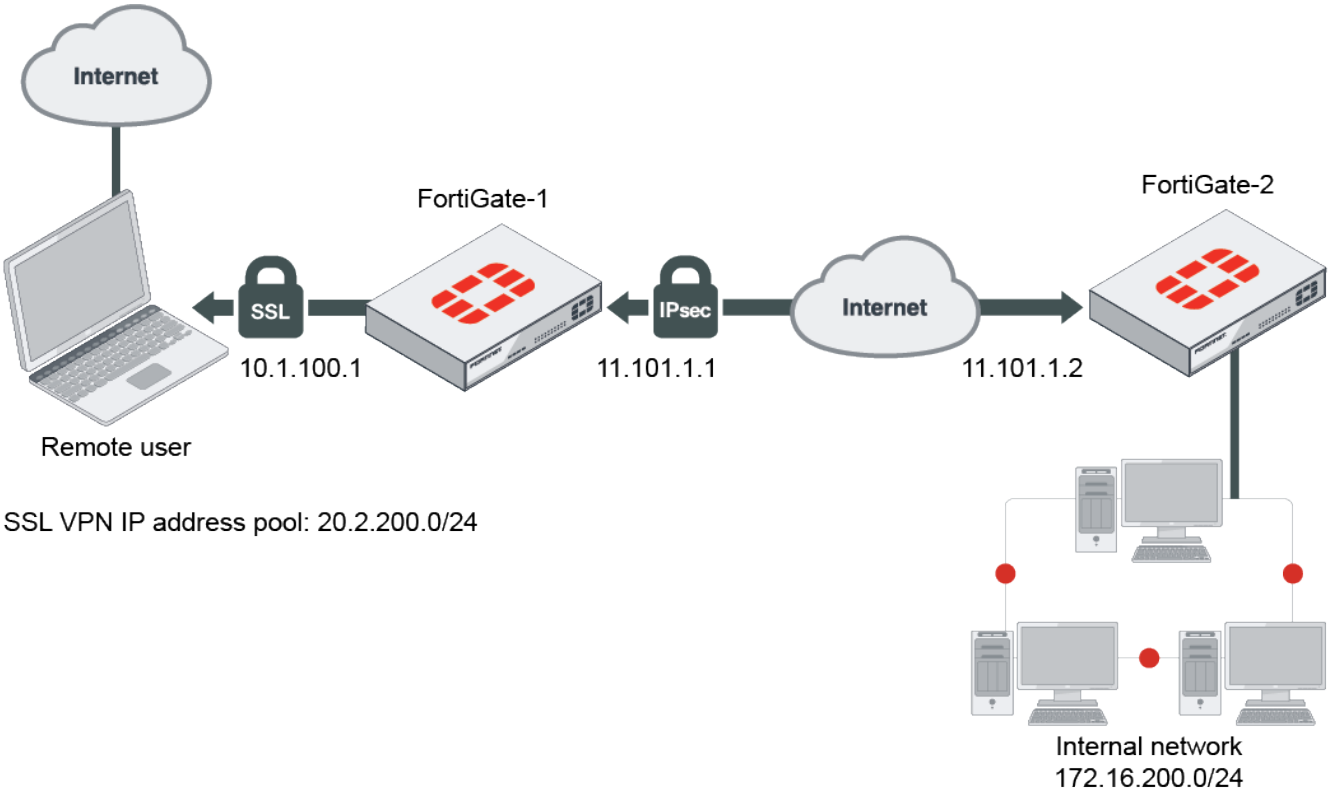
SSL VPN to IPsec VPN

This is a sample configuration of site-to-site IPsec VPN that allows access to the remote endpoint via SSL VPN.

This example uses a pre-existing user group, a tunnel mode SSL VPN with split tunneling, and a route-based IPsec VPN between two FortiGates. All sessions must start from the SSL VPN interface.

If you want sessions to start from the FGT_2 subnet, you need more policies. Also, if the remote subnet is beyond FGT_2 (if there are multiple hops), you need to include the SSL VPN subnet in those routers as well.

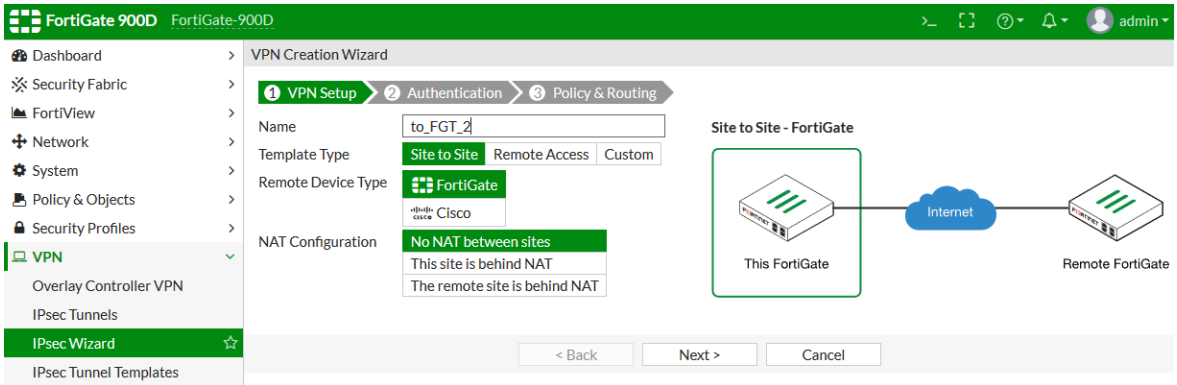
Sample topology



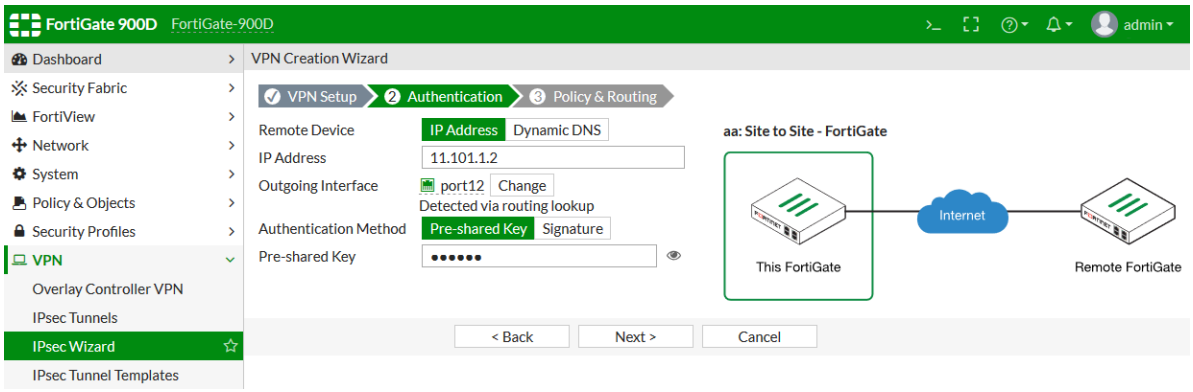
Sample configuration

To configure the site-to-site IPsec VPN on FGT_1:

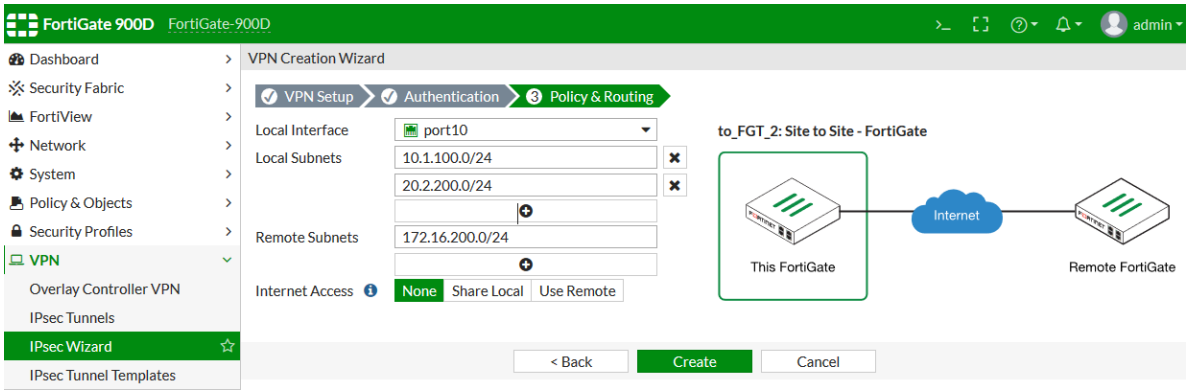
1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. In the *VPN Setup* pane:
   a. Specify the VPN connection *Name* as *to_FGT_2*.
   b. Select *Site to Site*.
   c. Click *Next*.



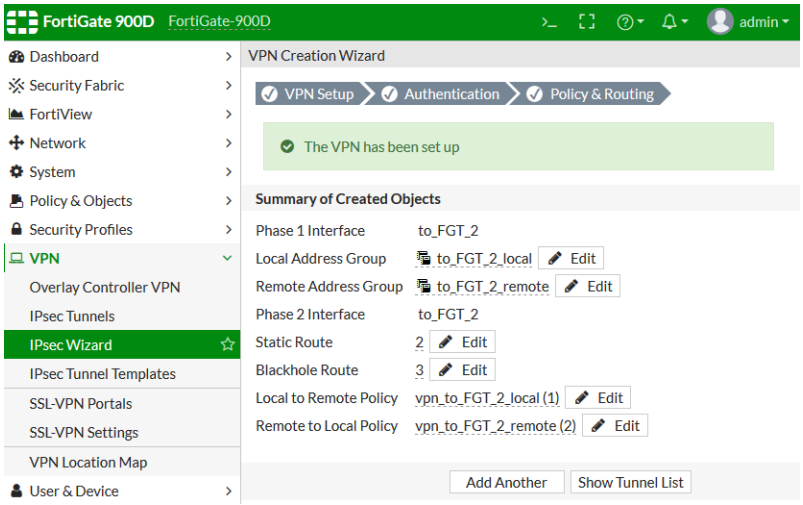
3. In the *Authentication* pane:
   a. Enter the *IP Address* to the Internet-facing interface.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, click *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. Click *Next*.



4. In the *Policy & Routing* pane:
   a. Set the *Local Interface* to the internal interface.
   b. Set the *Local Subnets* to include the internal and SSL VPN subnets for FGT_1.
   c. Set *Remote Subnets* to include the internal subnet for FGT_2.
   d. Click *Create*.

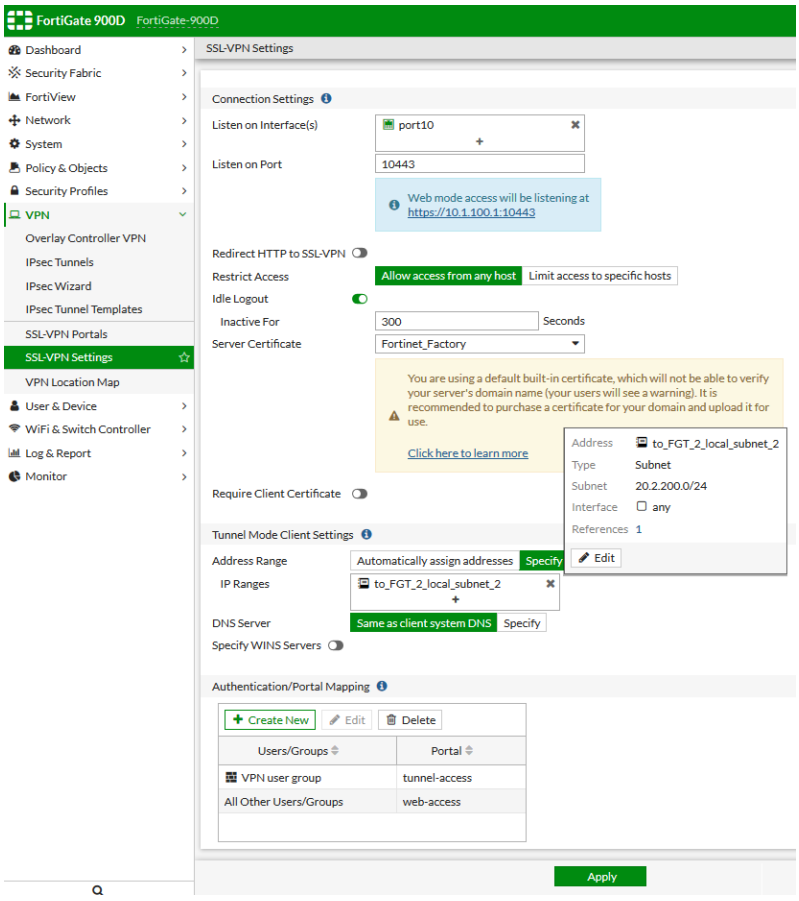


A confirmation screen shows a summary of the configuration including the firewall address groups for both the local and remote subnets, static routes, and security policies.



To configure SSL VPN settings:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Set *Listen on Interface(s)* to *wan1*.
3. To avoid port conflicts, set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
4. For *Restrict Access*, select *Allow access from any host*.
5. In the Tunnel Mode Client Settings section, select *Specify custom IP ranges* and include the SSL VPN subnet range created by the *IPsec Wizard*.
6. In the *Authentication/Portal Mapping* section, add the *VPN user group* to the *tunnel-access Portal*. Set *All Other Users/Groups* to the *web-access Portal*.





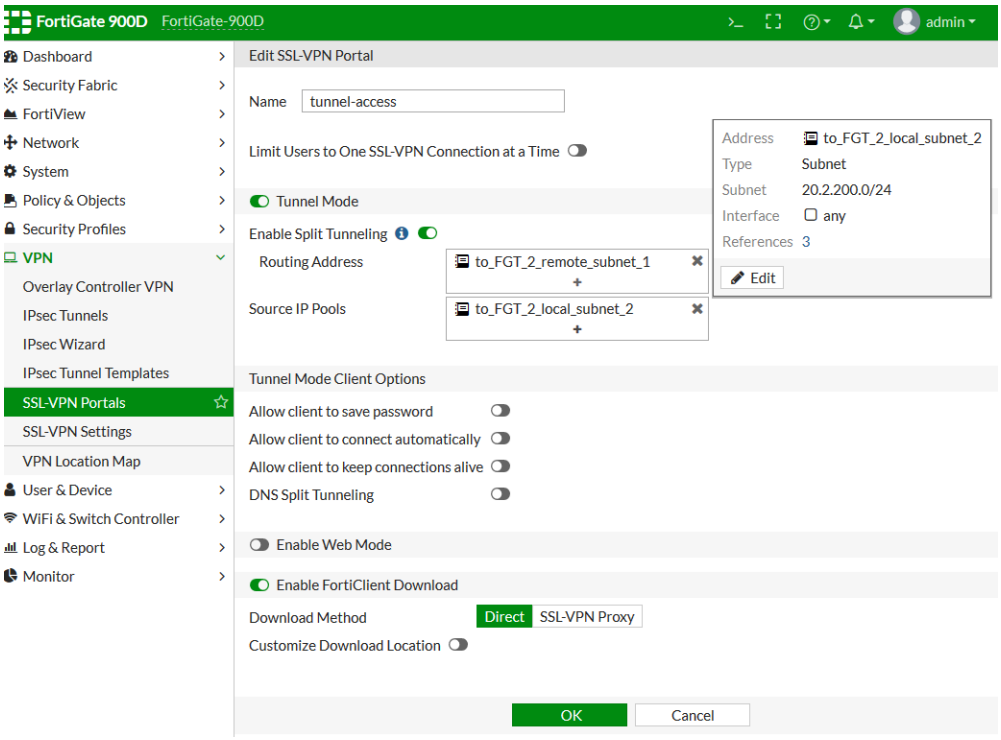
It is **HIGHLY** recommended that you acquire a signed certificate for your installation. Please review the SSL VPN best practices on page 1775 and learn how to Procure and import a signed SSL certificate on page 1059.

7. Click *Apply*.

To configure SSL VPN portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals*.
2. Select *tunnel-access* and click *Edit*.
3. Turn on *Enable Split Tunneling* so that only traffic intended for the local or remote networks flow through FGT_1 and follows corporate security profiles.
4. For *Routing Address*, add the local and remote IPsec VPN subnets created by the *IPsec Wizard*.

5. For *Source IP Pools*, add the SSL VPN subnet range created by the *IPsec Wizard*.

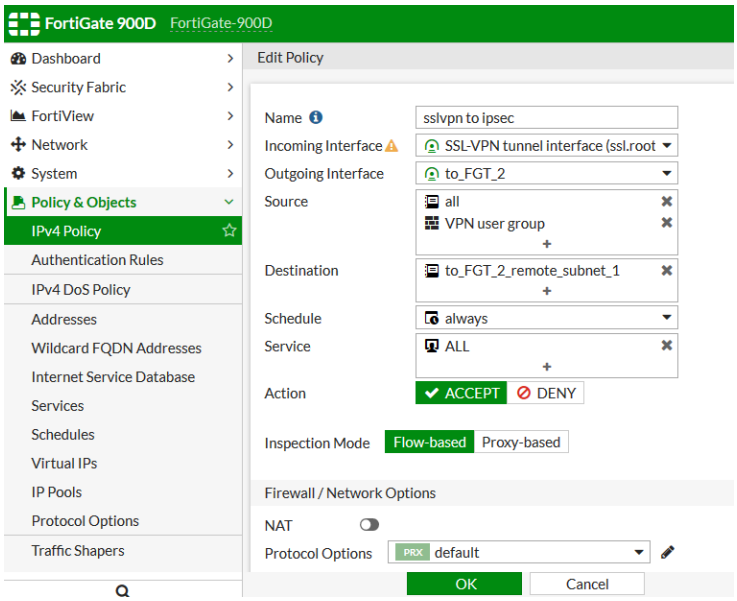


6. Click *OK*.

To add policies to FGT_1:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* to create a policy that allows SSL VPN users access to the IPsec VPN tunnel.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *ssl.root*.
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select the IPsec tunnel interface *to_FGT_2*.
5. Set the *Source* to *all* and the *VPN user group*.
6. Set *Destination* to the remote IPsec VPN subnet.
7. Specify the *Schedule*.
8. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.

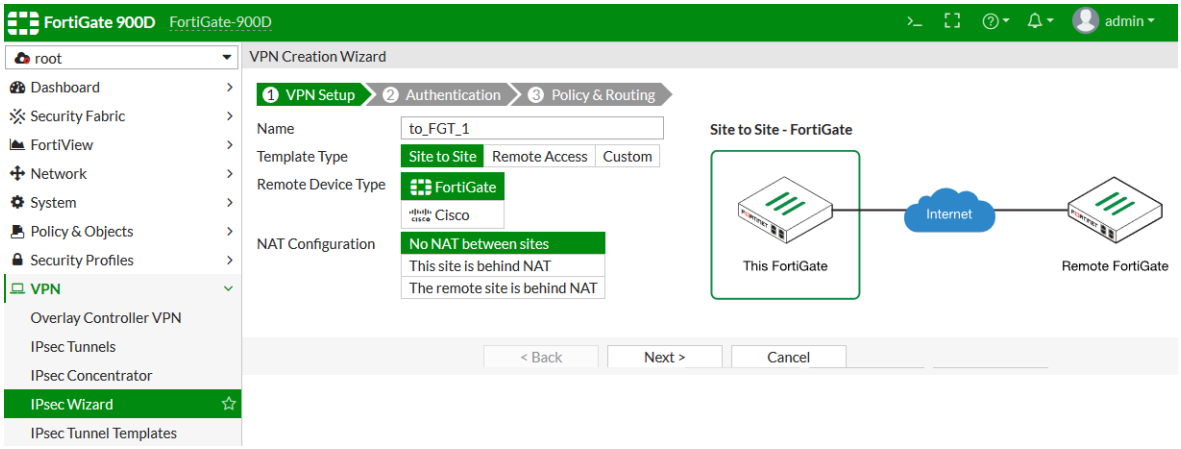
9. In the *Firewall/Network Options* section, disable *NAT*.



10. Click *OK*.

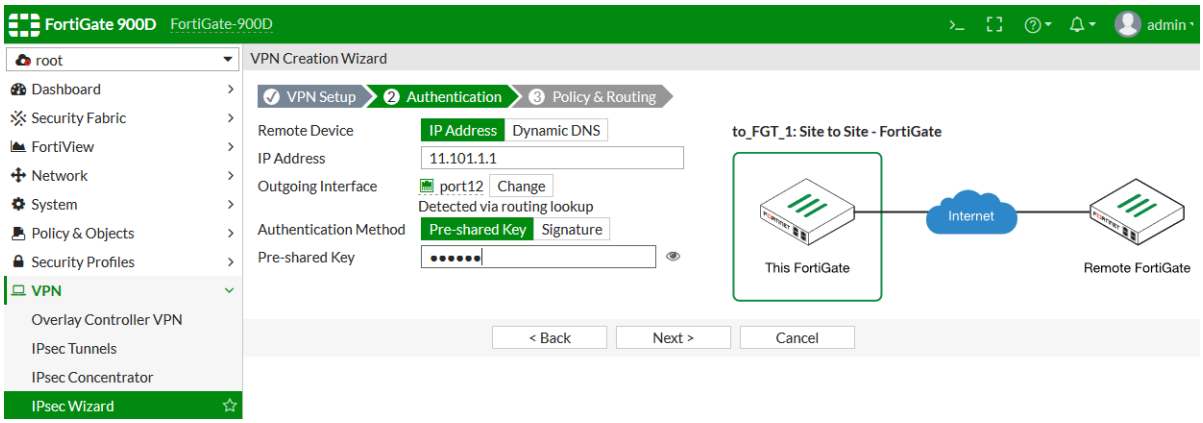
To configure the site-to-site IPsec VPN on FGT_2:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. In the *VPN Setup* pane:
   a. Specify the VPN connection *Name* as *to FGT_1*.
   b. Select *Site to Site*.
   c. Click *Next*.

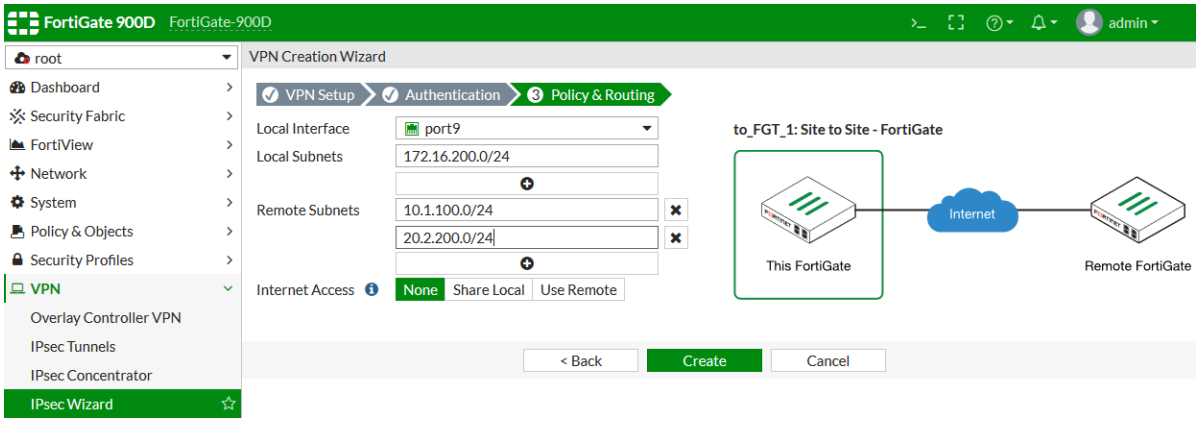


3. In the *Authentication* pane:
   a. Enter the *IP Address* to the Internet-facing interface.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, click *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key* of the FGT_1.

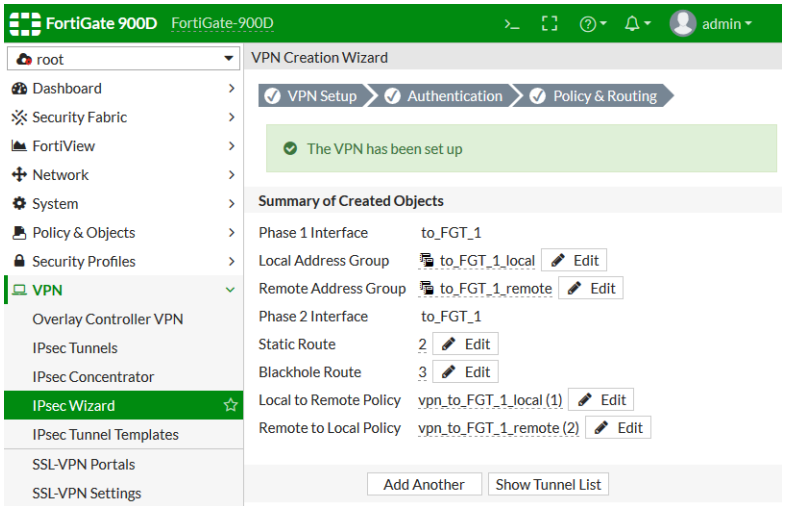
c. Click *Next*.



4. In the *Policy & Routing* pane:
   a. Set the *Local Interface* to the internal interface.
   b. Set the *Local Subnets* to include the internal and SSL VPN subnets for FGT_2.
   c. Set *Remote Subnets* to include the internal subnet for FGT_1.
   d. Click *Create*.

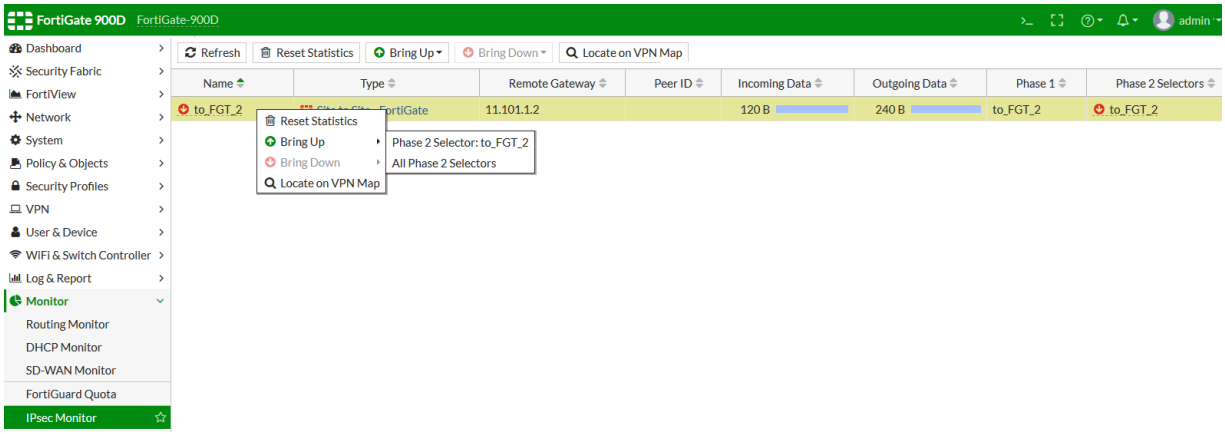


A confirmation screen shows a summary of the configuration including the firewall address groups for both the local and remote subnets, static routes, and security policies.

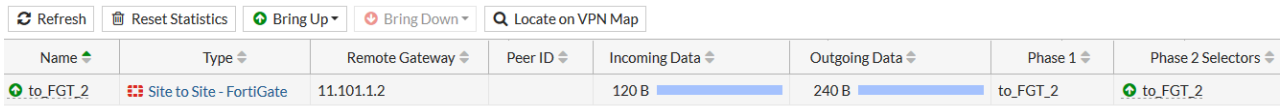


To check the results:

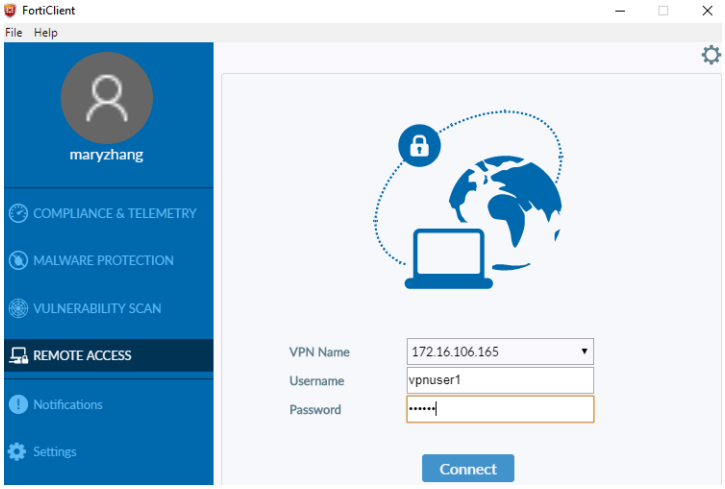
1. Go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor*.
2. Select the tunnel and click *Bring Up*.



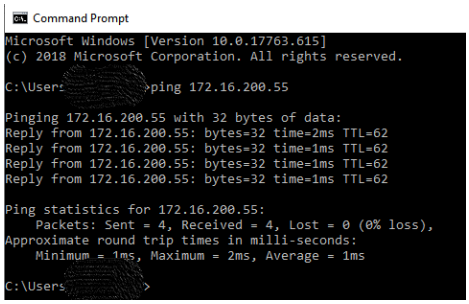
3. Verify that the *Status* changes to *Up*.



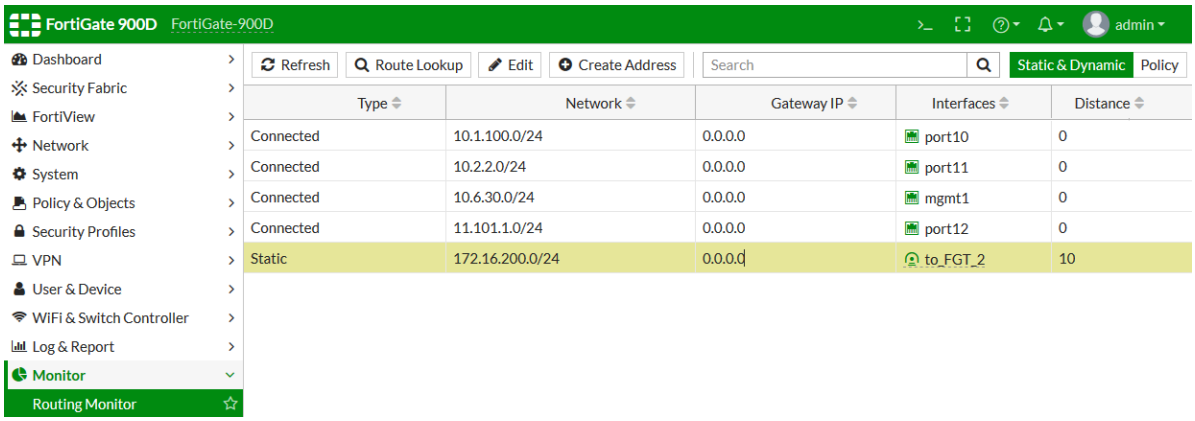
4. Configure the SSL VPN connection on the user's FortiClient and connect to the tunnel.



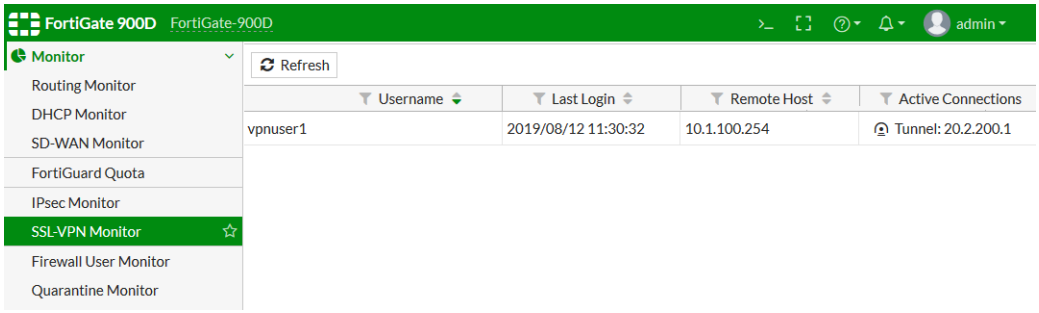
5. On the user's computer, use CLI to send a ping though the tunnel to the remote endpoint to confirm access.



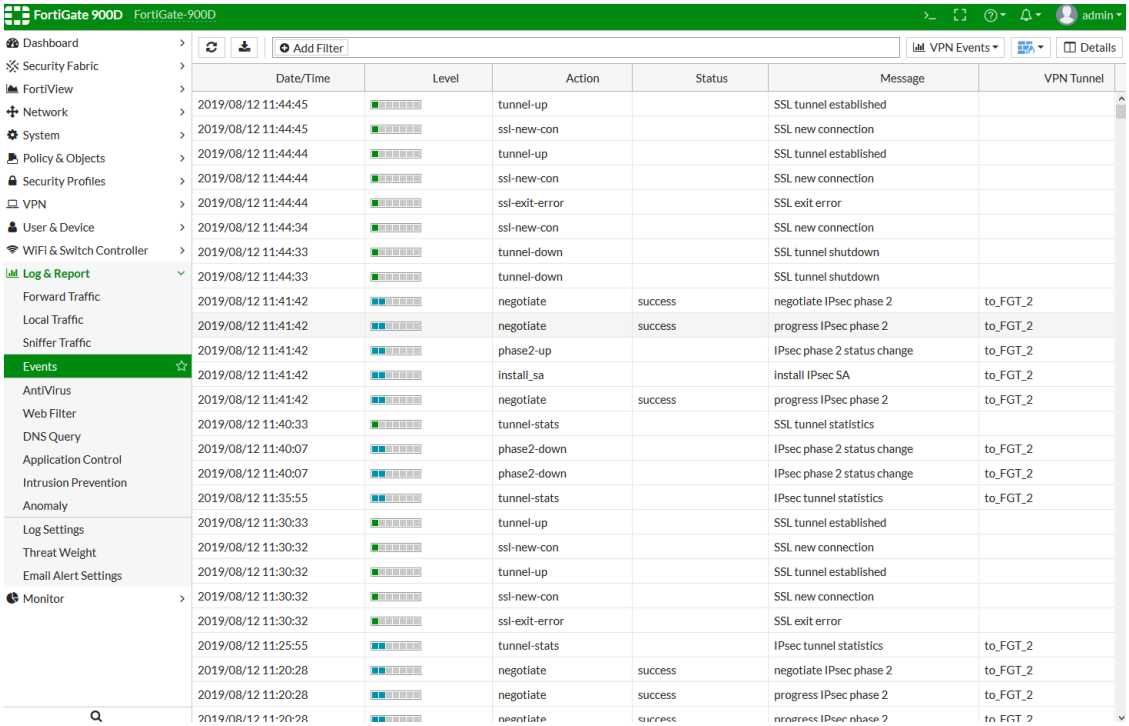
6. Go to *Monitor* > *Routing Monitor* and verify that the routes for the IPsec and SSL VPNs are added.



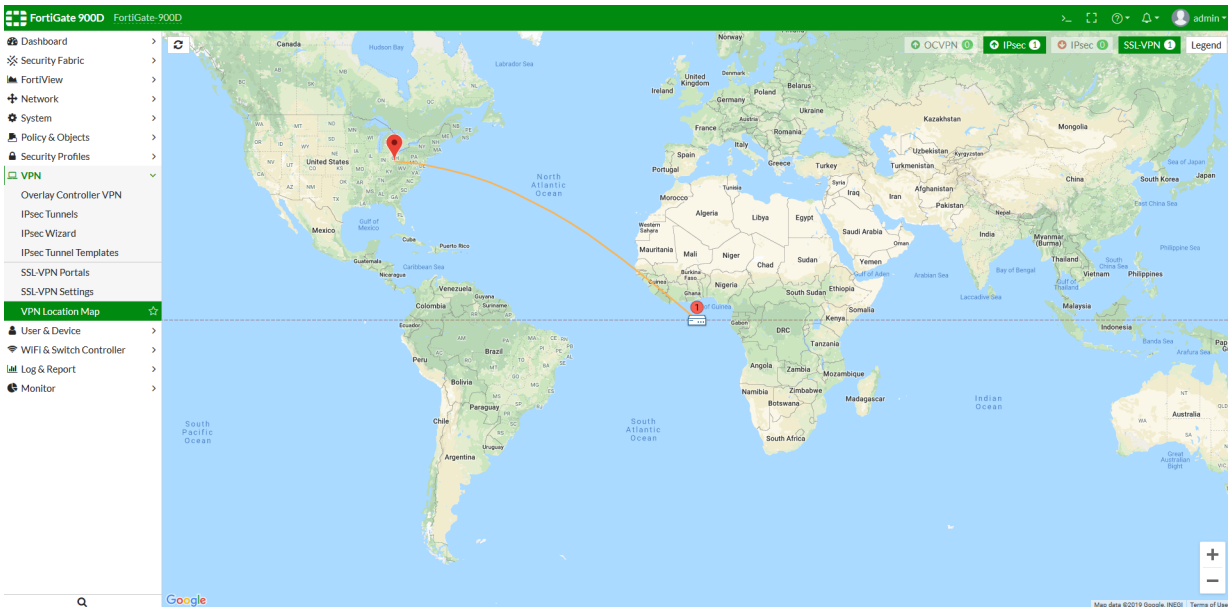
7. Go to *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* and verify user connectivity.



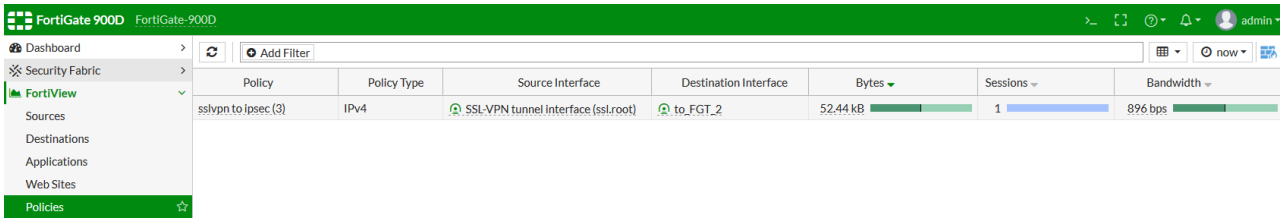
8. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events*, select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list, and view the IPsec and SSL tunnel statistics.



9. Go to *VPN* > *VPN Location Map* and view VPN connection activity.



10. Go to *FortiView* > *Policies* and view policy usage.



Troubleshooting

To troubleshoot on FGT_1, use the following CLI commands:

```
diagnose debug reset
diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
diagnose debug flow show iprope enable
diagnose debug flow filter addr 172.16.200.55
diagnose debug flow filter proto 1
diagnose debug flow trace start 2
diagnose debug enable
```

To troubleshoot using ping:

1. Send a ping through the SSL VPN tunnel to 172.16.200.55 and analyze the output of the debug.
2. Disable the debug output with this command: `diagnose debug disable`.

If traffic is entering the correct VPN tunnel on FGT_1, then run the same commands on FGT_2 to check whether the traffic is reaching the correct tunnel. If it is reaching the correct tunnel, confirm that the SSL VPN tunnel range is configured in the remote side quick mode selectors.

To troubleshoot using a sniffer command:

```
diagnose sniff packet any "host 172.16.200.44 and icmp" 4
```

To troubleshoot IPsec VPN issues, use the following commands on either FortiGate:

```
diagnose debug reset
diagnose vpn ike gateway clear
diagnose debug application ike -1
diagnose debug enable
```

SSL VPN protocols

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN protocols:

- TLS 1.3 support on page 1898
- SMBv2 support on page 1899

TLS 1.3 support

FortiOS supports TLS 1.3 for SSL VPN.



TLS 1.3 support requires IPS engine 4.205 or later and endpoints running FortiClient 6.2.0 or later.

To establish a client SSL VPN connection with TLS 1.3 to the FortiGate:

1. Enable TLS 1.3 support using the CLI:
   ```
   config vpn ssl setting
      set ssl-max-proto-ver tls1-3
      set ssl-min-proto-ver tls1-3
   end
   ```
2. Configure the SSL VPN and firewall policy:
   a. Configure the SSL VPN settings and firewall policy as needed.
3. For Linux clients, ensure OpenSSL 1.1.1a is installed:
   a. Run the following commands in the Linux client terminal:
      ```
      root@PC1:~/tools# openssl
      OpenSSL> version
      ```
      If OpenSSL 1.1.1a is installed, the system displays a response like the following:
      ```
      OpenSSL 1.1.1a 20 Nov 2018
      ```
4. For Linux clients, use OpenSSL with the TLS 1.3 option to connect to SSL VPN:
   a. Run the following command in the Linux client terminal:
      ```
      #openssl s_client -connect 10.1.100.10:10443 -tls1_3
      ```
5. Ensure the SSL VPN connection is established with TLS 1.3 using the CLI:
   ```
   # diagnose debug application sslvpn -1
   # diagnose debug enable
   ```
   The system displays a response like the following:
   ```
   [207:root:1d]SSL established: TLSv1.3 TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
   ```

Deep inspection (flow-based)

FortiOS supports TLS 1.3 for policies that have the following security profiles applied:

- Web filter profile with flow-based inspection mode enabled.
- Deep inspection SSL/SSH inspection profile.

For example, when a client attempts to access a website that supports TLS 1.3, FortiOS sends the traffic to the IPS engine. The IPS engine then decodes TLS 1.3 and the client is able to access the website.

SMBv2 support

On all FortiGate models, SMBv2 is enabled by default for SSL VPN. Client PCs can access the SMBv2 server using SSL VPN web-only mode.

To configure SMBv2:

1. Set the minimum and maximum SMB versions.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit portal-name
       set smb-min-version smbv2
       set smb-max-version smbv3
    next
end
```

2. Configure SSL VPN and firewall policies as usual.
3. Connect to the SSL VPN web portal and create an SMB bookmark for the SMBv2 server.
4. Click the bookmark to connect to the SMBv2 server.
5. On the FortiGate, use package capture to verify that SMBv2 works:

```
    8 -440785802.3… 172.16.200.10   172.16.200.44   SMB2   252 Negotiate Protocol Request
    9 -440785802.3… 172.16.200.44   172.16.200.10   SMB2   338 Negotiate Protocol Response
```

Configuring OS and host check

Beyond the basics of setting up the SSL VPN, you can configure a number of other options that can help to ensure your internal network is secure and can limit the possibility of attacks and viruses entering the network from an outside source. These include verifying OS and performing host checks on software running on the remote device.

Verifying remote user OS

To verify that remote users are using devices with up-to-date Operating Systems to connect to your network, you can configure a host check for Windows and Mac OS. You can configure an OS host check for specific OS versions, such as Windows 7, 8, 8.1, 10, and 2000.

To configure an OS host check for specific OS versions:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enable *Restrict to Specific OS Versions*.

4. Select an OS version and click *Edit* to change the action.
5. Select the action:
   - *Allow*: The selected OS version is allowed to connect. This is the default action.
   - *Block*: The selected OS version is not allowed to connect.
   - *Check up to date*: Specify a *Tolerance* and *Latest patch level* that is allowed for the selected OS version.
6. Click *OK*.
7. Configure other parameters as needed.
8. Click *OK*.

Host check

Host check verifies whether the client device has AntiVirus, firewall, both, or other custom security software enabled on their Windows device. Admins may also define their own custom host check software, which supports Windows and Mac OS. See Creating a custom host check list on page 1901.



Host Check is only available for SSL VPN tunnel mode.

To configure host checking:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portal*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enable *Host Check*.
4. Set the *Type*:
   - *Realtime AntiVirus*: Checks that AntiVirus software recognized by Windows Security Center is enabled.
   - *Firewall*: Checks that firewall software recognized by Windows Security Center is enabled.
   - *Enable both*: Checks that both *Realtime AntiVirus* and *Firewall* are enabled.
   - Custom: Not configurable from the GUI. See CLI settings below.
5. Configure other parameters as needed.
6. Click *OK*.

You can configure the full-access portal to perform a custom host check for FortiClient Host Security AV and firewall software.

To configure custom host checking:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit full-access
        set host-check custom
        set host-check-policy FortiClient-AV FortiClient-FW
    next
end
```



Many other security software can also be configured. Use `set host-check-policy ?` to see a list of software.

Replacing the host check error message

You can add your own host security check error message using either the GUI or the CLI. The default message reads:

```
Your PC does not meet the host checking requirements set by the firewall. Please try again
in a few minutes. If the issue persists check that your OS version meets the minimum
requirements, that your antivirus and firewall applications are installed and running
properly, and that you have the correct network interface.
```

To replace the host check error message in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. Select *Extended View* in the upper right corner.
3. Scroll down to *SSL-VPN* and select *Hostcheck Error Message*.
4. Click *Edit*. The *Hostcheck Error Message* pane opens.
5. Edit the text in the right-hand column.
6. Click *Save*.



If you are unhappy with the new message, you can restore the message to its default by selecting *Restore Defaults* instead of *Save*.

MAC address check

Aside from OS and Host check, FortiGate can also perform a MAC address check on the remote host.

To configure a MAC address check on the remote host in the CLI:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit <portal_name>
        set mac-addr-check enable
        config mac-addr-check-rule
            edit <rule_name>
                set mac-addr-list <address> [address]
                set mac-addr-mask <mask between 1-48>
            next
        end
        set set mac-addr-action {allow | deny}
    next
end
```

Creating a custom host check list

You can add your own software requirements to the host check list using the CLI. Host integrity checking is only possible with client computers running Microsoft Windows platforms.

To add software requirements to the host check list:

```
config vpn ssl web host-check-software
    edit <software_name>
        set os-type {windows | macos}
        set type {av | fw}
        set version <version_number>
        set guid <guid_value>
        config check-item-list
            edit <ID>
                set action {require | deny}
                set type {file | registry | process}
                set target <target string>
                set version <version string>
                set md5s <hext string>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

If known, enter the Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) for the host check application. Windows uses GUIDs to identify applications in the Windows Registry. The GUID can be found in the Windows registry in the `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT` section.

To obtain the exact versioning, in Windows, right-click on the .EXE file of the application and select *Properties*, then select the *Version* tab.

Example: Tunnel Mode Host Check - Registry Key Check

The following example configuration checks if a required registry key is present on a Windows device.

```
config vpn ssl web host-check-software
    edit <computer_name>
        config check-item-list
            edit 1
                set target "HKEY_LOCAL_
MACHINE\\SYSTEM\\CurrentControlSet\\Control\\ComputerName\\ActiveComputerName:ComputerName=W
INXP32SP3B62"
                set type registry
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Example: Tunnel Mode Host Check - Application Running Check

The following example configuration checks if a required application is installed and/or running:

```
config vpn ssl web host-check-software
    edit "calc"
        config check-item-list
            edit 1
                set target "calc.exe"
                set type process
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

Example: Mac OS host check and process check

The `os-type` option is available under `vpn ssl web host-check-software`; if `os-type` is `macos`, then `type`, `version` and `guid` are hidden. Furthermore, `type` in `check-item-list` can only be set to `file` or `process`.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit <portal_name>
        set os-check enable
        config os-check-list macos-bigsur-11
            set action {allow | deny | check-up-to-date}
            set tolerance <value>
            set latest-patch-level <value>
        end
    next
end
config vpn ssl web host-check-software
    edit <name>
        set os-type macos
        config check-item-list
            edit <name>
                set type process
                set target <target process>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Example: Configuring Windows OS Check with patch version

The Windows patch check enables you to define the minimum Windows version and patch level allowed when connecting to the SSL VPN portal. When the user attempts to connect to the web portal, FortiOS performs a query on the version of Windows the user has installed. If it does not match the minimum requirement, the connection is denied. The Windows patch check is configured in the CLI.

To specify the acceptable patch level, you set the `latest-patch-level` and the `tolerance`. The lowest acceptable patch level is `latest-patch-level` minus *tolerance*. In this case, *latest-patch-level* is three and *tolerance* is one, so two is the lowest acceptable patch level.

To configure OS check:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit <portal_name>
        set os-check enable
        config os-check-list <windows OS version>
            set action {allow | check-up-to-date | deny}
            set latest-patch-level {disable | 0 - 65535}
            set tolerance <tolerance_num>
        end
    next
end
```

Example: Host check for Windows firewall

The Windows built-in firewall does not have a GUID in root\securitycenter or root\securitycenter2, but you can use a registry value to detect the firewall status.

If Windows firewall is on, the following registry value will be set to one:

- **KeyName**: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\SharedAccess\Parameters\FirewallPolicy\StandardProfile
- **ValueName**: EnableFirewall

In FortiOS, use the `registry-value-check` feature to define the Windows firewall software.

To define the Windows firewall software:

```
config vpn ssl web host-check-software
    edit "Microsoft-Windows-Firewall"
        set type fw
        config check-item-list
            edit 1
                set target
"HKLM\\SYSTEM\\CurrentControlSet\\Services\\SharedAccess\\Parameters\\FirewallPolicy\\Standa
rdProfile:EnableFirewall==1"
                set type registry
            next
            edit 2
                set target
"HKLM\\SYSTEM\\CurrentControlSet\\Services\\SharedAccess\\Parameters\\FirewallPolicy\\Public
Profile:EnableFirewall==1"
                set type registry
            next
            edit 3
                set target
"HKLM\\SYSTEM\\CurrentControlSet\\Services\\SharedAccess\\Parameters\\FirewallPolicy\\Domain
Profile:EnableFirewall==1"
                set type registry
            next
        end
    next
end
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit <portal_name>
        set host-check custom
        set host-check-policy Microsoft-Windows-Firewall
    next
end
```

Troubleshooting

To troubleshoot OS and host check, enable the following real-time debugs from the CLI:

```
# diagnose debug app sslvpn -1
```

```
# diagnose debug enable
```

From the remote client, connect to SSL VPN. Look for debug output similar to the following:

```
[263:root:3cca1]host check result:4 0100,10.0.19042,74:78:27:4d:81:93|84:1b:77:3a:95:84
```

To interpret the above output:

Field	Description
`host check result: 4`	This is the hex number of portal's host check value: • `0`: None • `1`: Check antivirus • `2`: Check firewall • `3`: Check antivirus and firewall • `4`: Custom check
`0100`	The 4 bytes shows the result of host check checking in the FortiGate Settings. Position counts from left to right, zero to three: • Position zero means result of third party firewall. • Position one means result of third party antivirus. • Position two means result of FortiClient firewall. • Position three means result of FortiClient antivirus. `0` means not in use. `1` means in use.
`10.0.19042`	This is the OS version.
`74:78:27:4d:81:93|84:1b:77:3a:95:84`	The MAC address of the client machine's network interface, that is used for the mac address check. Multiple MAC address are separately by '`|`'.

SSL VPN troubleshooting

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN troubleshooting:

- Debug commands on page 1905
- Troubleshooting common issues on page 1906

Debug commands

SSL VPN debug command

Use the following diagnose commands to identify SSL VPN issues. These commands enable debugging of SSL VPN with a debug level of -1 for detailed results.

```
diagnose debug application sslvpn -1
diagnose debug enable
```

The CLI displays debug output similar to the following:

```
FGT60C3G10002814 # [282:root]SSL state:before/accept initialization (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 read client hello A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 write server hello A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 write change cipher spec A (172.20.120.12)
```

```
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 write finished B (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 flush data (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 read finished A:system lib(172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 read finished A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSL negotiation finished successfully (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL established: DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA SSLv3 Kx=DH Au=RSA Enc=AES(256) Mac=SHA1
```

To disable the debug:

```
diagnose debug disable
diagnose debug reset
```

Remote user authentication debug command

Use the following diagnose commands to identify remote user authentication issues.

```
diagnose debug application fnbamd -1
diagnose debug reset
```

Troubleshooting common issues

To troubleshoot getting no response from the SSL VPN URL:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   a. Check the SSL VPN port assignment.
   b. Check the *Restrict Access* setting to ensure the host you are connecting from is allowed.
2. Go to *Policy* > *Firewall Policy*.
   a. Check that the policy for SSL VPN traffic is configured correctly.
   b. Check the URL you are attempting to connect to. It should follow this pattern:

      ```
      https://<FortiGate IP>:<Port>
      ```

   c. Check that you are using the correct port number in the URL. Ensure FortiGate is reachable from the computer.

      ```
      ping <FortiGate IP>
      ```

   d. Check the browser has *TLS 1.1*, *TLS 1.2*, and *TLS 1.3* enabled.

To troubleshoot FortiGate connection issues:

1. Check the Release Notes to ensure that the FortiClient version is compatible with your version of FortiOS.
2. FortiClient uses IE security setting, In IE *Internet options* > *Advanced* > *Security*, check that *Use TLS 1.1* and *Use TLS 1.2* are enabled.
3. Check that SSL VPN *ip-pools* has free IPs to sign out. The default *ip-poolsSSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1* has 10 IP addresses.
4. Export and check FortiClient debug logs.
   a. Go to *File* > *Settings*.
   b. In the *Logging* section, enable *Export logs*.
   c. Set the *Log Level* to *Debug* and select *Clear logs*.
   d. Try to connect to the VPN.
   e. When you get a connection error, select *Export logs*.

To troubleshoot SSL VPN hanging or disconnecting at 98%:

1. A new SSL VPN driver was added to FortiClient 5.6.0 and later to resolve SSL VPN connection issues. If your FortiOS version is compatible, upgrade to use one of these versions.
2. Latency or poor network connectivity can cause the login timeout on the FortiGate. In FortiOS 5.6.0 and later, use the following commands to allow a user to increase the SSL VPN login timeout setting.

```
config vpn ssl settings
  set login-timeout 180 (default is 30)
  set dtls-hello-timeout 60 (default is 10)
end
```

To troubleshoot tunnel mode connections shutting down after a few seconds:

This might occur if there are multiple interfaces connected to the Internet, for example, SD-WAN. This can cause the session to become “dirty”. To allow multiple interfaces to connect, use the following CLI commands.

If you are using a FortiOS 6.0.1 or later:

```
config system interface
  edit <name>
    set preserve-session-route enable
  next
end
```

If you are using a FortiOS 6.0.0 or earlier:

```
config vpn ssl settings
   set route-source-interface enable
end
```

To troubleshoot users being assigned to the wrong IP range:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* and *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings* and ensure the same *IP Pool* is used in both places. Using the same *IP Pool* prevents conflicts. If there is a conflict, the portal settings are used.

To troubleshoot slow SSL VPN throughput:

Many factors can contribute to slow throughput.

This recommendation tries to improve throughput by using the FortiOS Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) tunnel option, available in FortiOS 5.4 and above.

DTLS allows SSL VPN to encrypt traffic using TLS and uses UDP as the transport layer instead of TCP. This avoids retransmission problems that can occur with TCP-in-TCP.

FortiClient 5.4.0 to 5.4.3 uses DTLS by default. FortiClient 5.4.4 and later uses normal TLS, regardless of the DTLS setting on the FortiGate.

To use DTLS with FortiClient:

1. Go to *File* > *Settings* and enable *Preferred DTLS Tunnel*.

To enable DTLS tunnel on FortiGate, use the following CLI commands:

```
config vpn ssl settings
  set dtls-tunnel enable
end
```

User & Authentication

In *User & Authentication*, you can control network access for different users and devices in your network. FortiGate authentication controls system access by user group. By assigning individual users to the appropriate user groups you can control each user's access to network resources. You can define local users and peer users on the FortiGate unit. You can also define user accounts on remote authentication servers and connect them to FortiOS.

You can control network access for different device types in your network by doing the following:

- Identifying and monitoring the types of devices connecting to your network
- Using MAC address based access control to allow or deny individual devices
- Using Telemetry data received from FortiClient endpoints to construct a policy to deny access to endpoints with known vulnerabilities or to quarantine compromised endpoints

The following sections provide information about users and devices:

- Endpoint control and compliance on page 1908
- User definition and groups on page 1916
- LDAP servers on page 1930
- RADIUS servers on page 1936
- TACACS+ servers on page 1964
- SAML on page 1966
- Authentication settings on page 1980
- FortiTokens on page 1982
- PKI on page 2000
- Configuring the maximum log in attempts and lockout period on page 2000
- Configuring firewall authentication on page 2004

Endpoint control and compliance

The section contains the following topics:

- Per-policy disclaimer messages on page 1908
- Compliance on page 1910
- FortiGuard distribution of updated Apple certificates on page 1915

Per-policy disclaimer messages

FortiOS supports a customizable captive portal to direct users to install or enable required software.

Per-policy custom disclaimers in each VDOM are supported. For example, you may want to configure three firewall policies, each of which matches traffic from endpoints with different FortiClient statuses:

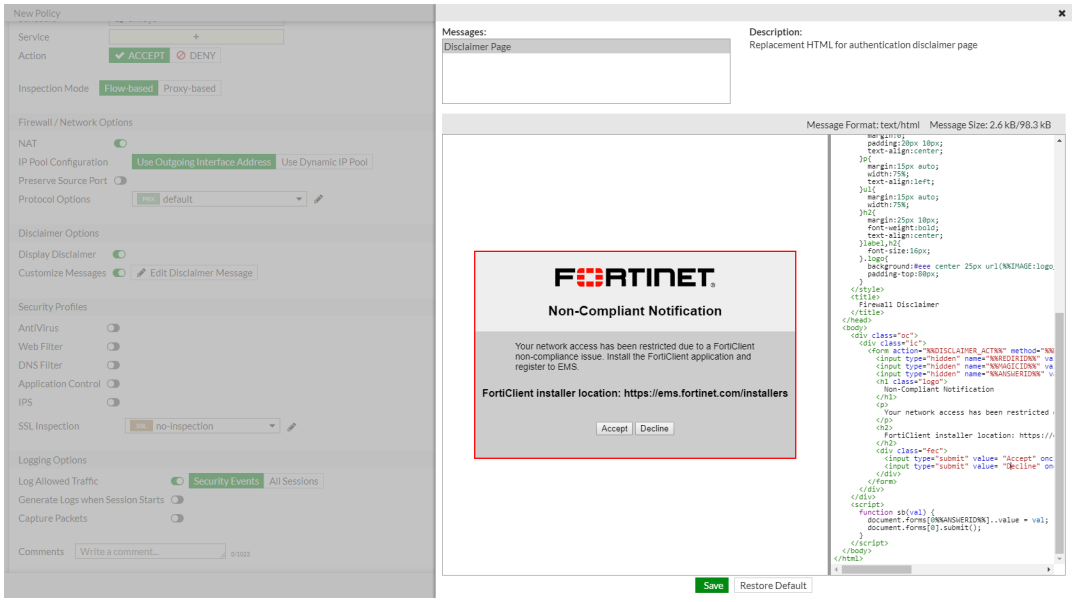
Endpoint status	FortiOS behavior
Endpoint does not have FortiClient installed.	Traffic matches a firewall policy that displays an in-browser warning to install FortiClient from the provided link.
Endpoint has FortiClient installed, registered to EMS, and connected to the FortiGate.	Traffic matches a dynamic firewall policy which allows the endpoint to reach its destination via this policy.
Endpoint is deregistered from EMS and disconnected from the FortiGate.	Traffic matches another dynamic firewall policy that displays warning to register FortiClient to EMS.

To enable per-policy disclaimer messages:

```
config user setting
    set auth-cert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set per-policy-disclaimer enable
end
```

To configure per-policy disclaimers in the GUI:

1. Ensure the per-policy disclaimer messages option is enabled.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
3. Edit the policy that applies when an endpoint does not have FortiClient installed.
4. Under *Disclaimer Options*, enable *Display Disclaimer*.
5. Enable *Customize Messages* then click *Edit Disclaimer Message*. The default disclaimer message is shown.
6. Edit the message to warn users to install FortiClient, and provide the FortiClient download link.



7. Click *Save*.
8. Repeat the above steps for each policy that requires a custom disclaimer message.

To configure per-policy disclaimers in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
```

```
            set name "111"
            set srcintf "port12"
            set dstintf "port11"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "pc155_address"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set wsso disable
            set groups "ems_03_group"
            set disclaimer enable
            set replacemsg-override-group "test"
            set nat enable
        next
        edit 4
            set name "44"
            set srcintf "port12"
            set dstintf "port11"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "pc5-address"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set wsso disable
            set groups "ems_03_group"
            set disclaimer enable
            set replacemsg-override-group "test2"
            set nat enable
        next
        edit 6
            set name "66"
            set srcintf "port12"
            set dstintf "port11"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set status disable
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set logtraffic all
            set fsso disable
            set block-notification enable
            set replacemsg-override-group "endpoint-override"
        next
    end
```

Compliance

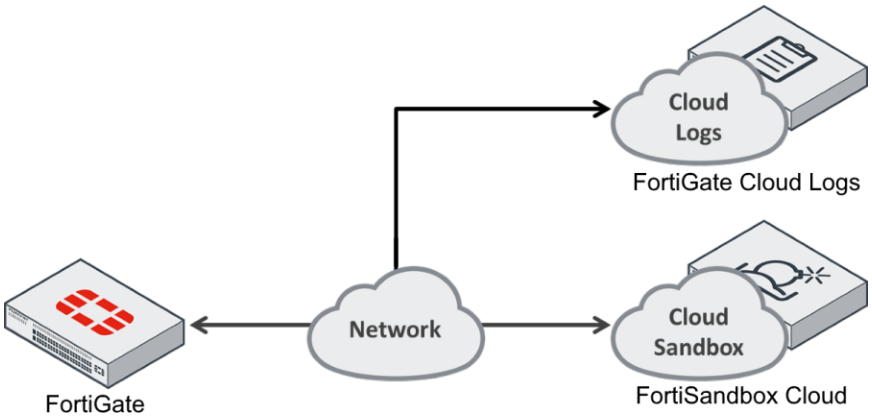
The following topics provide information about compliance in FortiOS.

- FortiSandbox Cloud region selection on page 1911
- FortiGate VM unique certificate on page 1913
- Running a file system check automatically on page 1914

FortiSandbox Cloud region selection

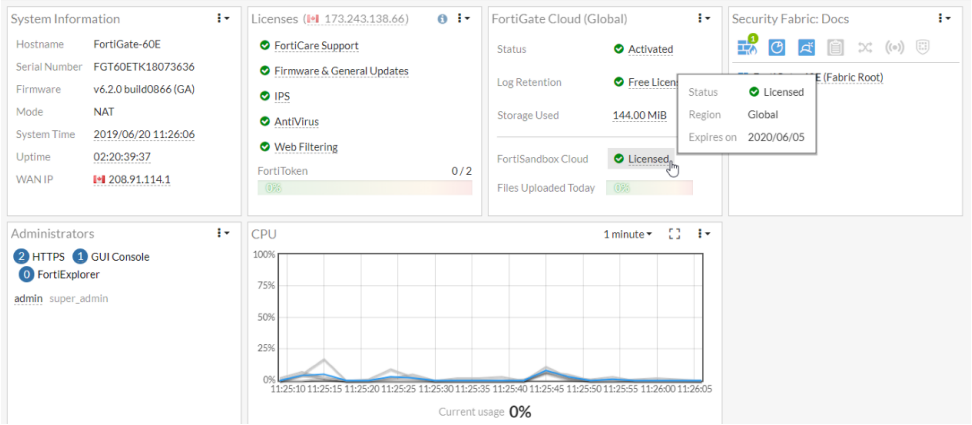
In FortiOS, FortiSandbox Cloud services are decoupled from the FortiGate Cloud license. This allows you to specify a FortiSandbox Cloud region and take advantage of FortiSandbox features without a FortiGate Cloud account.

The following topology demonstrates how FortiGate Cloud Logs and FortiSandbox Cloud are separated in FortiOS:



To view the FortiGate Cloud Log and FortiSandbox licenses:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. The *FortiGate Cloud* widget shows separate license statuses for *Log Retention* and *FortiSandbox Cloud*.
   In the following example, the FortiGate Cloud account is using a free license, and FortiSandbox Cloud is using a paid license:



To obtain a FortiSandbox Cloud license:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
2. *In the License Information* table, find *FortiSandbox Cloud* and click *Activate*.
3. Complete the prompts to obtain your license.

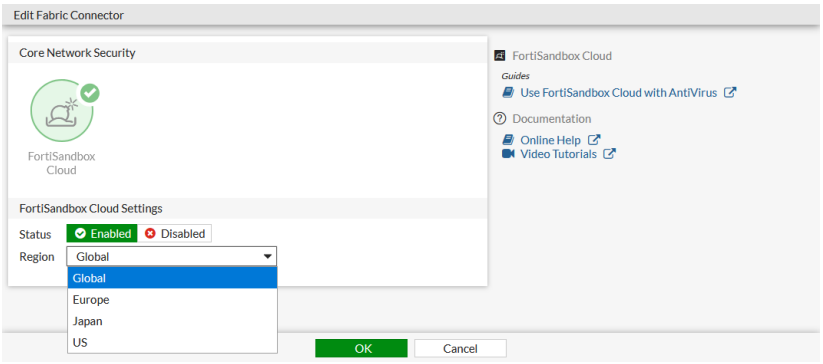


The FortiSandbox Cloud license is linked to your antivirus license, so they will expire at the same time.

If the FortiGate is not registered with a paid antivirus license, the FortiGate will use the free FortiGate Cloud license. This license limits the FortiGate to 100 FortiSandbox Cloud submissions per day.

To set the FortiSandbox Cloud region in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox Cloud* card.
2. Select a region from the *Region* dropdown.
   The following regions are available:
   - Europe
   - Global
   - Japan
   - US



3. Click *OK*.

To set the FortiSandbox Cloud region in the CLI:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # execute forticloud-sandbox region
0  Europe
1  Global
2  Japan
3  US
Please select cloud sandbox region[0-3]:3
Cloud sandbox region is selected: US
```

The separation of the FortiGate Cloud Log and FortiSandbox services are visible in the following example:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application forticldd 3
Debug zone info:
    Domain:FortiCloud ReleaseQA Global - 172.16.95.16
    Home log server: 172.16.95.93:514
    Alt log server: 172.16.95.27:514
    Active Server IP:      172.16.95.93
    Active Server status:  up
    Log quota:      102400MB
    Log used:       0MB
    Daily volume:   20480MB
    fams archive pause: 0
    APTContract : 1
    APT server: 172.16.102.52:514
    APT Altserver: 172.16.102.51:514
    Active APTServer IP:      172.16.102.52
    Active APTServer status:  up
```

FortiGate VM unique certificate

To safeguard against certificate compromise, FortiGate VM and FortiAnalyzer VM use the same deployment model as FortiManager VM where the license file contains a unique certificate tied to the serial number of the virtual device.

A hardware appliance usually comes with a BIOS certificate with a unique serial number that identifies the hardware appliance. This built-in BIOS certificate is different from a firmware certificate. A firmware certificate is distributed in all appliances with the same firmware version.

Using a BIOS certificate with a built-in serial number provides a high trust level for the other side in X.509 authentication.

Since a VM appliance has no BIOS certificate, a signed VM license can provide an equivalent of a BIOS certificate. The VM license assigns a serial number in the BIOS equivalent certificate. This gives the certificate an abstract access ability, which is similar to a BIOS certificate with the same high trust level.

This feature is only supported in new, registered VM licenses.

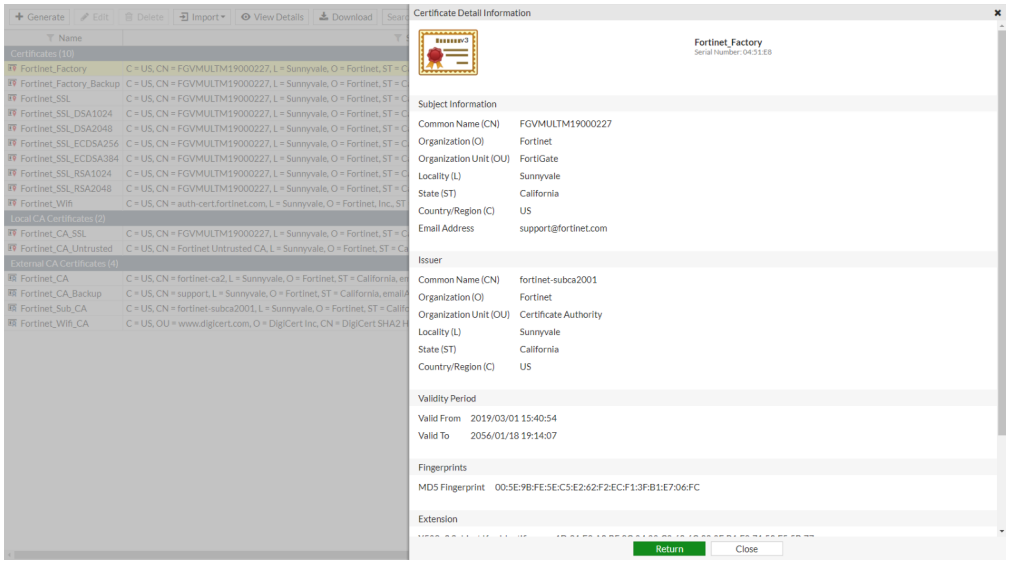
Sample configurations

Depending on the firmware version and VM license, the common name (CN) on the certificate will be configured differently.

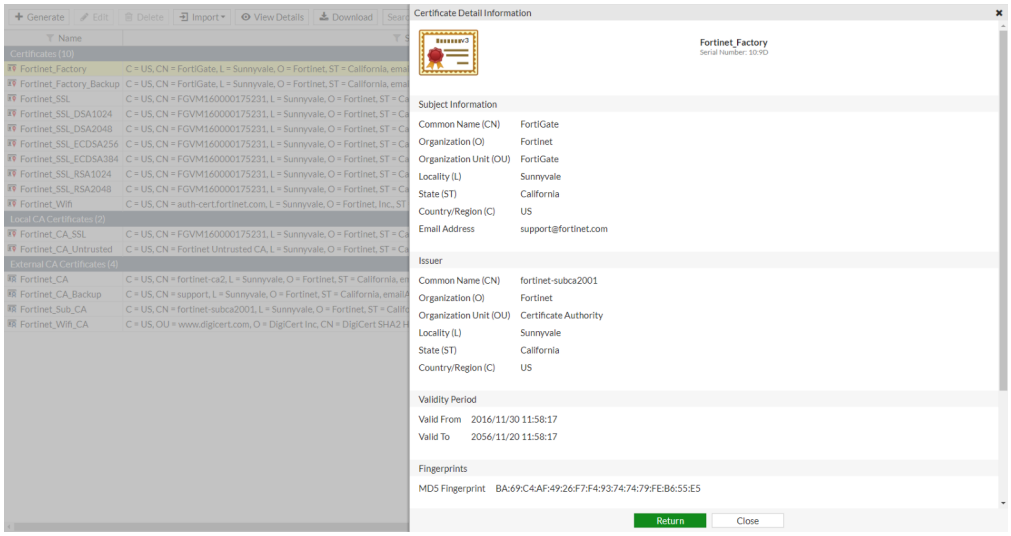
To view validated certificates:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
2. Double-click on a VM certificate. There are two VM certificates:
   - *Fortinet_Factory*
   - *Fortinet_Factory_Backup*

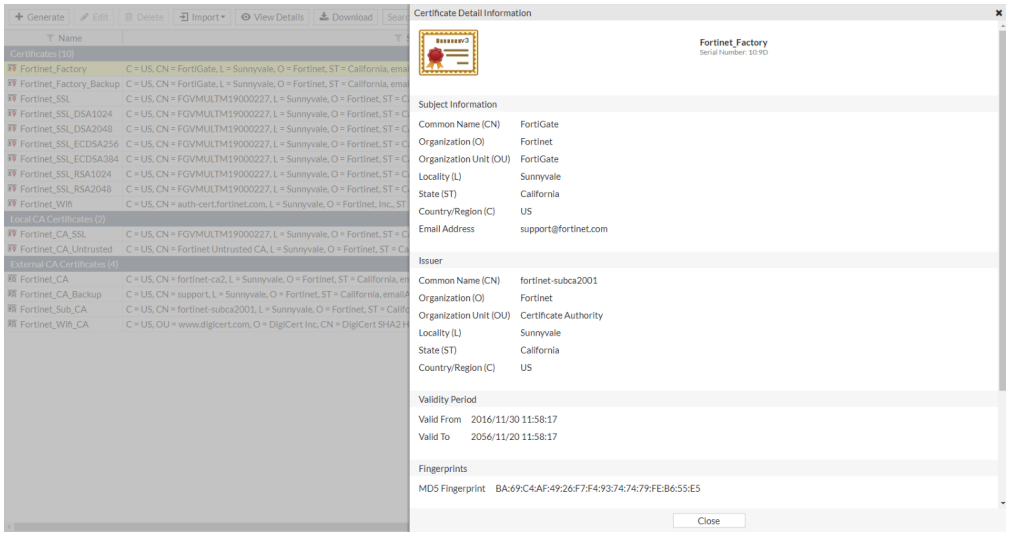
   The *Certificate Detail Information* window displays.
   - If you are using new firmware (6.2.0 and later) with a new VM license, the *CN* becomes the FortiGate VM serial number.



- If you are using new firmware (6.2.0) with an old VM license, the *CN* remains as *FortiGate*. It does not change to the VM serial number.



- If you are using old firmware (6.0.2) with a new VM license, the *CN* remains as *FortiGate*.

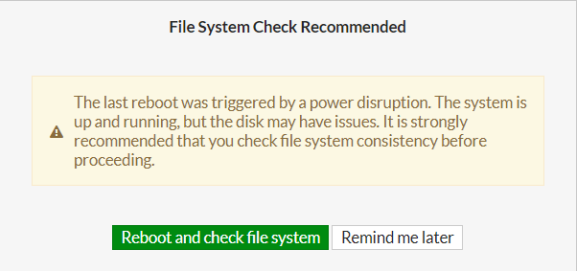


Running a file system check automatically

There is an option in FortiOS to enable automatic file system checks if the FortiGate shuts down ungracefully.

By default, the automatic file system check is disabled. When an administrator logs in after an ungraceful shutdown, a warning message appears advising them to manually run a file system check.

GUI warning:



CLI warning:

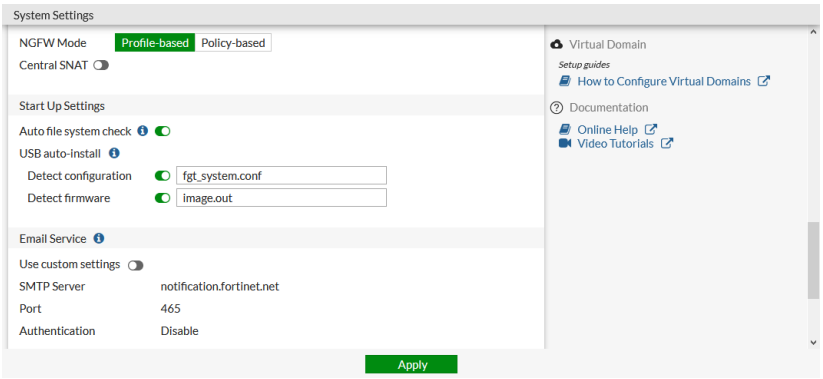
```
WARNING: File System Check Recommended! Unsafe reboot may have caused inconsistency in disk
drive.
It is strongly recommended that you check file system consistency before proceeding.
Please run 'execute disk scan 17'
Note: The device will reboot and scan during startup. This may take up to an hour
```

Enabling automatic file system checks

You can enable automatic file system checks in both the GUI and CLI.

To enable automatic file system checks in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Start Up Settings* section, enable *Auto file system check*.
3. Click *Apply*.



To enable automatic file system checks using the CLI:

```
config system global
   set autorun-log-fsck enable
end
```

FortiGuard distribution of updated Apple certificates

Push notifications for iPhone (for the purpose of two-factor authentication) require a TLS server certificate to authenticate to Apple. As this certificate is only valid for one year, a service extension allows FortiGuard to distribute updated TLS server certificates to FortiGate when needed.

FortiGuard update service updates local Apple push notification TLS server certificates when the local certificate is expired. FortiGuard update service also reinstalls certificates when the certificates are lost.

You can verify that the feature is working on the FortiGate by using the CLI shell.

To verify certificate updates:

1. Using FortiOS CLI shell, verify that all certificates are installed:

```
/data/etc/apns # ls -al
drwxr-xr-x    2 0        0       Tue Jan 15 08:42:39 2019          1024 .
drwxr-xr-x   12 0        0       Tue Jan 15 08:45:00 2019          2048 ..
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          2377 apn-dev-cert.pem
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          1859 apn-dev-key.pem
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          8964 apn-dis-cert.pem
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          4482 apn-dis-key.pem
```

2. Rename all current Apple certificates.
   Apple push notification no longer works after you rename the certificates.

```
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dis-cert.pem apn-dis-cert.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dev-key.pem apn-dev-key.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dev-cert.pem apn-dev-cert.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dis-key.pem apn-dis-key.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # ls -al
drwxr-xr-x   2 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:51:15 2019   1024 .
drwxr-xr-x  12 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:45:00 2019   2048 ..
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   2377 apn-dev-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   1859 apn-dev-key.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   8964 apn-dis-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   4482 apn-dis-key.pem.save
```

3. Run a FortiGuard update, and verify that all certificates are installed again:

```
/data/etc/apns # ls -al
drwxr-xr-x   2 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019   1024 .
drwxr-xr-x  12 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:15 2019   2048 ..
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   2377 apn-dev-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   1859 apn-dev-key.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019   2167 apn-dis-cert.pem  <-- downloaded
from FortiGuard
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   8964 apn-dis-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019   1704 apn-dis-key.pem   <-- downloaded
from FortiGuard
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   4482 apn-dis-key.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019     41 apn-version.dat   <-- downloaded
from FortiGuard
/data/etc/apns #
```

User definition and groups

FortiGate authentication controls system access by user groups. By assigning individual users to the appropriate user groups, this controls each user's access to network resources. The user groups members are user accounts, of which

there are several types. Local and peer users are defined in FortiOS. User accounts can also be defined on remote authentication servers.

This section contains information about configuring the following:

- Users on page 1917
- User groups on page 1919
- Retail environment guest access on page 1926
- User and user group timeouts on page 1929

For information about configuring authentication servers, see the LDAP servers on page 1930, RADIUS servers on page 1936, TACACS+ servers on page 1964, and SAML on page 1966 sections.

Users

A user is a user account consisting of a username, password, and sometimes other information, that is configured in FortiOS or on an external authentication server. There are several types of user accounts with slightly different methods of authentication.

User type	Authentication method
Local	The username and password must match a user account stored in FortiOS. Authentication is done by a firewall policy.
Remote	Remote users consist of usernames defined in FortiOS that are authenticated by a remote server. For example, RADIUS, TACACS+, LDAP, or FortiNAC. The server must be configured in FortiOS before creating a user.
FSSO	Users on a Microsoft Windows, Citrix, or Novell network can use their network authentication to access resources through the FortiGate. Access is controlled through FSSO user groups, which contain Windows, Citrix, or Novell user groups as members. The FSSO agent must be configured in FortiOS before creating a user (see FSSO on page 2010).
PKI or peer	A PKI or peer user is a digital certificate holder that authenticates using a client certificate. No password is required, unless two-factor authentication is enabled. In the GUI, the *User & Authentication* > *PKI* menu is only available after a PKI user is configured in the CLI (see Configuring a PKI user on page 2001).

Some user types have an option to enable multi-factor authentication using FortiToken or FortiToken Cloud. In some cases, the user must be defined first, and then can be edited to add multi-factor authentication. See FortiTokens on page 1982 for more information.

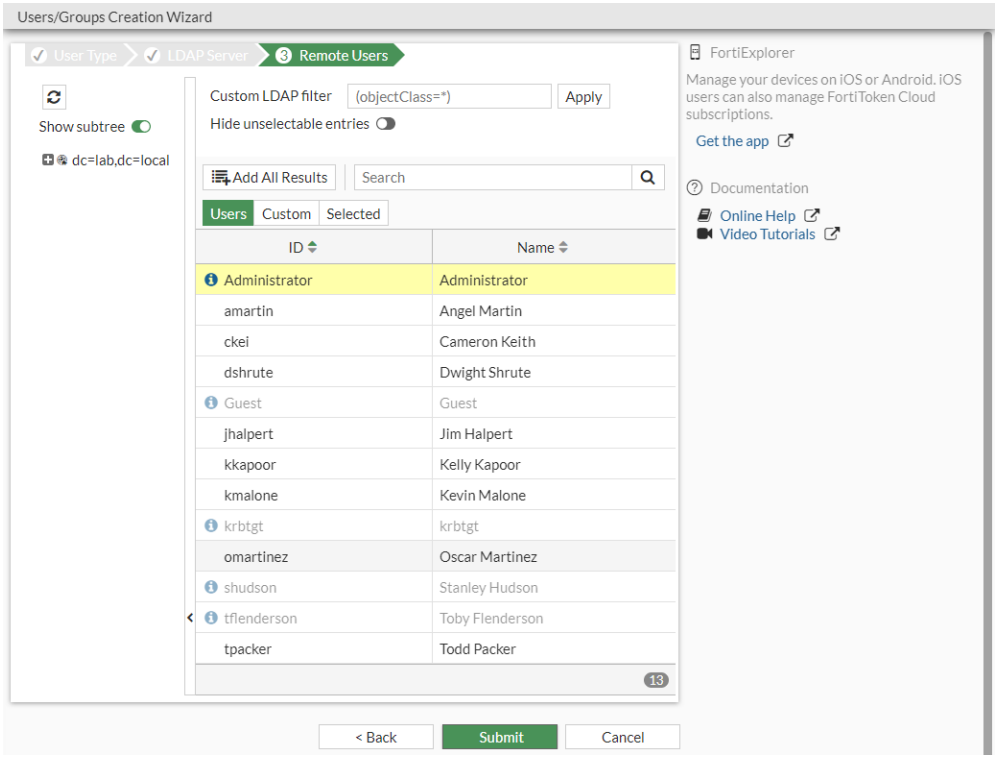
To create a user:

1. Go to User Authentication > User Definition and click Create New. The *Users/Groups Creation Wizard* appears.
2. Select a *User Type* and click *Next*.

3. The remaining wizard steps depend on the user type:
   - *Local User*:
     i. Enter a *Username* and *Password*, then click *Next*.
     ii. Optionally, enable *Two-factor Authentication* and configure the following:

Authentication Type	Select *FortiToken Cloud* or *FortiToken*.
Token	If using FortiToken to authenticate, select a token.
Email Address	Enter an email address.
SMS	Enable to send an SMS message to activate the token.
Country Dial Code	Select the country code.
Phone Number	Enter a phone number.

     iii. Click *Next*, then click *Submit*.
   - *Remote LDAP User*:
     i. Select an *LDAP Server*, then click *Next*.
     ii. Select the users to add from the LDAP server. If the user ID matches an existing configured username, it cannot be added.



     iii. Click *Submit*.
   - *Remote RADIUS User* and *Remote TACACS+ User*:
     i. Enter a *Username* and select the server.
     ii. Click *Next*.
     iii. Optionally, enable *Two-factor Authentication* and configure the settings as needed.
     iv. Click *Next*, then click *Submit*.

- *FSSO*:
  i. Select an *FSSO Agent*, click the + to add *AD Groups*, then click *Next*.
  ii. Select an FSSO group to add the *AD Groups* to. If an FSSO group already exists (see Configuring FSSO user groups on page 1923), click *Choose Existing* and select the group. Otherwise, click *Create New*, enter a name, and click *OK*.
  iii. Click *Submit*.

User groups

A user group is a list of user identities. A user identity can be a:

- Local user account (username/password) stored on the FortiGate
- Remote user account (password stored on a RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ server)
- PKI user account with a digital client authentication certificate stored on the FortiGate
- RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ server, optionally specifying particular user groups on that server
- User group defined on an FSSO server

User groups provide the ability to combine users that require the same permissions so they can be referenced at once, which enables consistency in configurations. User groups allow for remote servers to be referenced by leveraging the pre-existing user accounts, instead of redefining them on the FortiGate.

For example, when a new employee joins a department, they can be added to their respective group, whether in the remote authentication server or local group, and be subject to the same access as their colleagues in the same department. In FortiOS, user groups can be used when configuring firewall policies, traffic shaping policies, proxy policies, SSL VPN portals, IPsec VPN XAUTH, ZTNA, wireless networks (SSIDs), web filtering profiles, identity-based routing, and system administrators with remote authentication.

In most cases, the FortiGate authenticates users by requesting their username and password. The FortiGate checks local user accounts first. If a match is not found, the FortiGate checks the RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+ servers that belong to the user group. Authentication succeeds when a matching username and password are found. If the user belongs to multiple groups on a server, those groups will also be matched.

Four types of user groups can be configured:

- Firewall
- FSSO
- RSSO
- Guest

Configuring firewall user groups

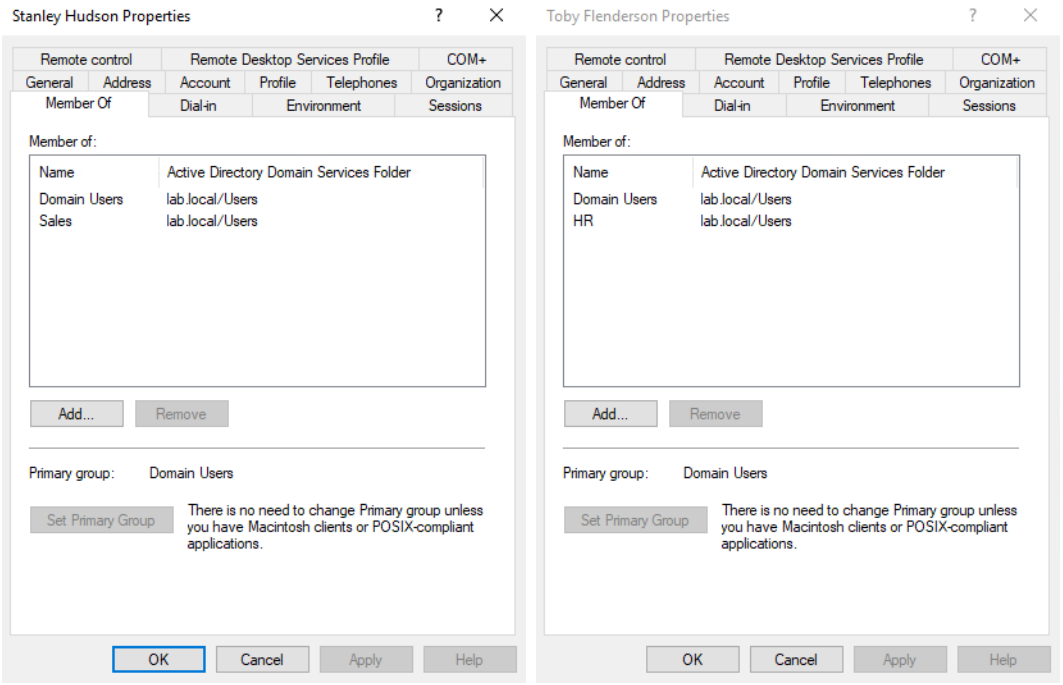
Firewall user groups are used locally as part of authentication. For example, when a firewall policy allows access only to specified user groups, users must authenticate before matching the policy. If the user authenticates successfully and is a member of one of the permitted groups, the policy is applied to the user. A firewall user group may contain local users (defined locally or authenticated remotely), PKI users, or authentication servers.

There are two options to add users in a firewall group configuration: members or remote groups. Members are the individual users who have been defined in FortiOS. Remote groups are remote server that users may authenticate to. One or more user groups can be specified within that server to limit which users can authenticate to the firewall user group. Both options may be used at the same time. The FortiGate attempts to authenticate users in the members list first, and then the remote groups if the initial authentication does not succeed.

When adding remote groups to user groups, FortiTokens cannot be applied to the users. To use remote authentication servers and FortiToken for multi-factor authentication, a remote user type must be created and then added as a user group member.

The following user group configuration examples have local members and a remote authentication server user group. There are two LDAP users, but the principle applies to other remote authentication server types.

Both LDAP users (shudson and tflenderson) belong to the primary group, Domain Users. The user, shudson belongs to the Sales group; tflenderson belongs to the HR group.



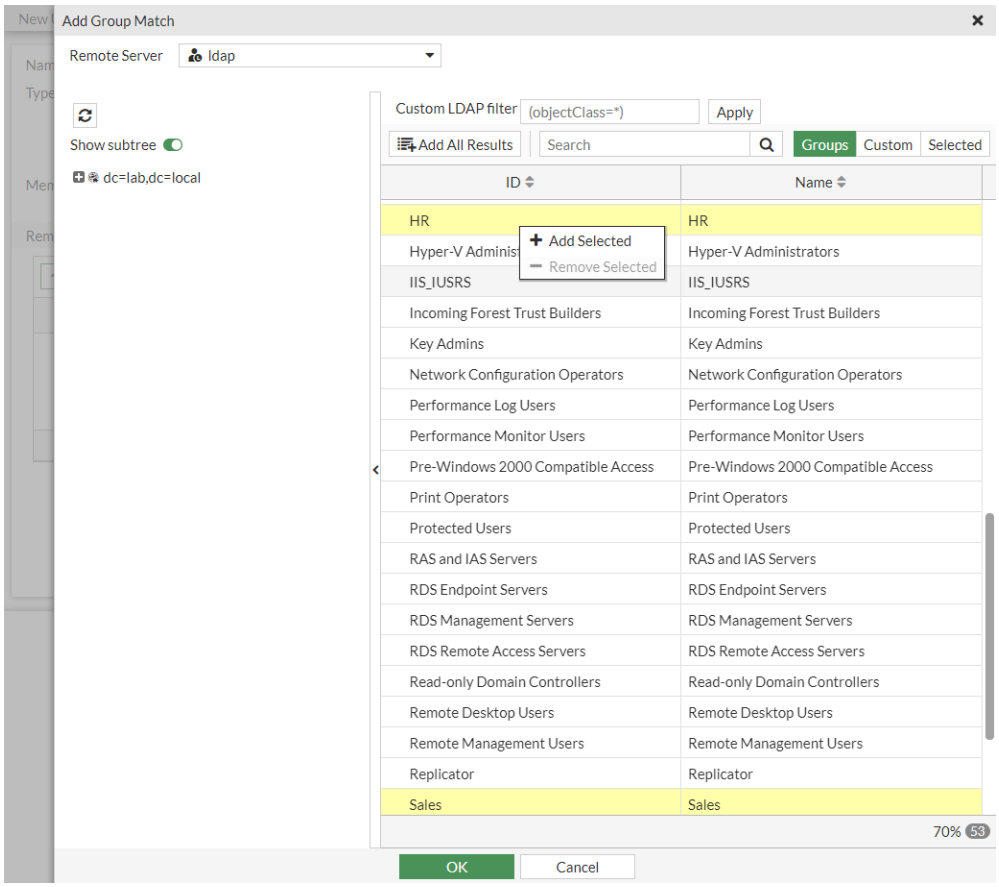
Example 1: Adding multiple remote groups to a user group

In this example, two remote groups (HR and Sales) are added to a firewall group called SSL_VPN_ACCESS.

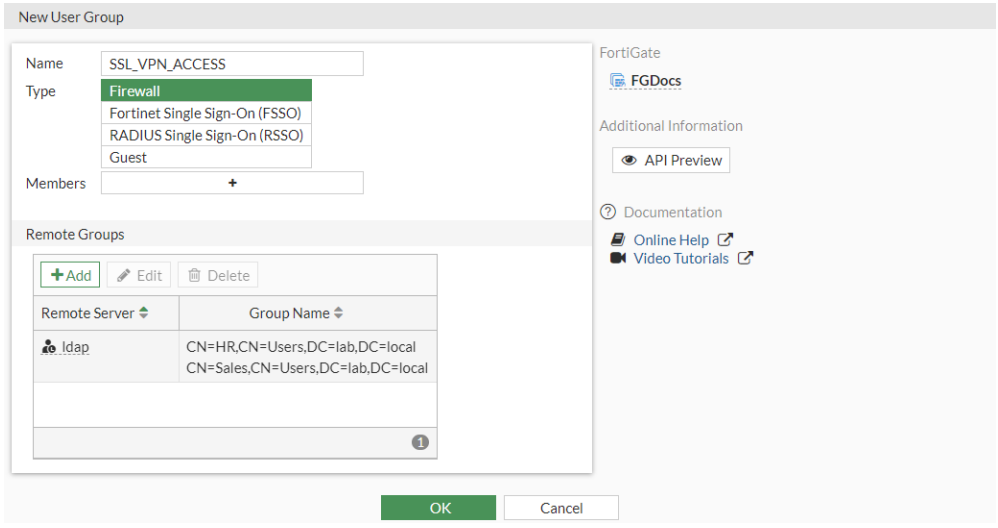
To add multiple remote groups to a user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*. *Firewall* is selected as the default *Type*.
2. Enter the group name, *SSL_VPN_ACCESS*.
3. In the *Remote Groups Section*, click *Add*.
4. Set *Remote Server* to the LDAP server (*ldap*).
5. In the *Groups* table, select *Sales*, then right-click and select *Add Selected*.

6. Select *HR*, then right-click and select *Add Selected*.



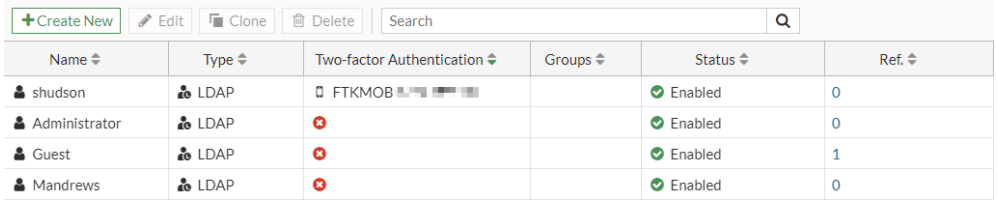
7. Click *OK*.
   Both user group paths are specified under the *Group Name*.



8. Click *OK*.
   In this configuration, shudson and tflenderson would be able to authenticate to this group.

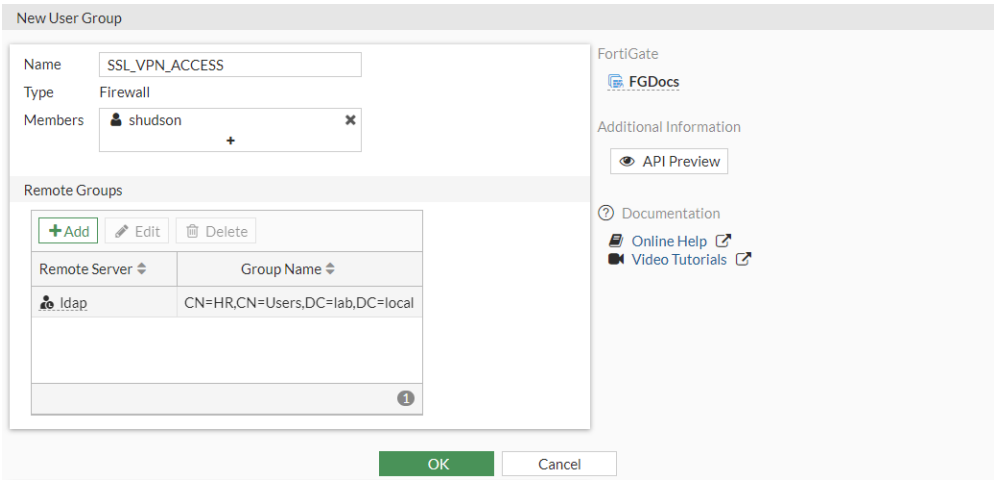
Example 2: combining remote groups and local users in a user group

In this example, the firewall group (SSL_VPN_ACCESS) is configured to contain the HR remote group and a local LDAP user (shudson) with multi-factor authentication.



To combine remote groups and local users in a user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*. *Firewall* is selected as the default *Type*.
2. Enter the group name, *SSL_VPN_ACCESS*.
3. In the *Remote Groups Section*, click *Add*.
4. Set *Remote Server* to the LDAP server (*ldap*).
5. In the *Groups* table, select *HR*, then right-click and select *Add Selected*.
6. Click *OK*.
7. In the *Members* field, click the + and add *shudson*.



8. Click *OK*.

   In this configuration, shudson, tflenderson, and any members of the HR LDAP group would be able to authenticate to the user group. Other users in the Sales group are not allowed.

Example 3: adding a user as a member and their group as a remote groups

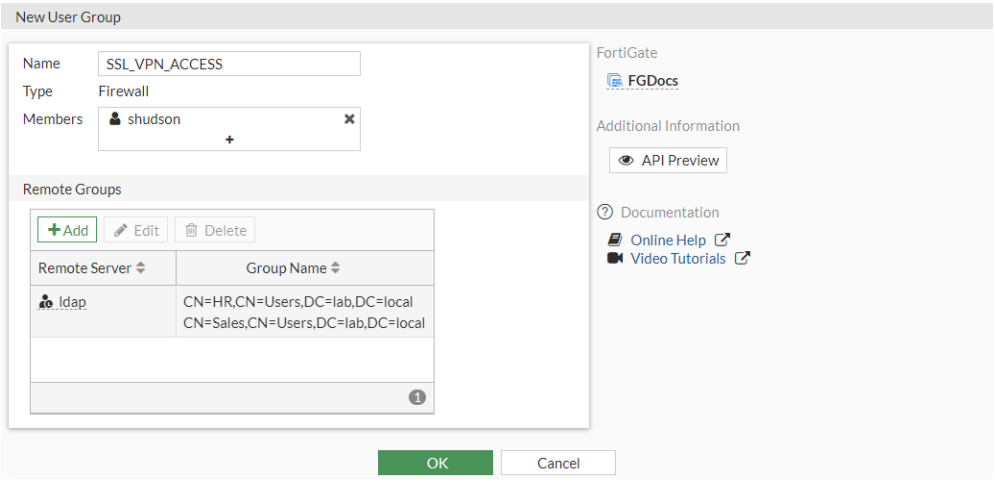
This example uses a combination of the previous examples. The HR and Sales groups are added as remote groups similar to example 1. The local LDAP user, shudson (using a FortiToken), from example 2 is added as a group member.



This example is for demonstration only. It may cause unwanted results, so this configuration is not advised.

To add a user as a member and their group as a remote groups:

1. Refer to example 1 to configure the two remote groups.
2. In the *Members* field, click the + and add *shudson*.



3. Click *OK*.

One unwanted scenario from this configuration is that a user might be able to bypass multi-factor authentication on LDAP by changing the username case (see the related PSIRT advisory). By default, the username of the remote LDAP user is case sensitive. This means the username has to match what is configured (shudson). If a user types `sHudson`, for example, this will not match the user shudson, so it falls through to remote group authentication. It will match the Sales group in this example. To prevent this, disable username case sensitivity (see SSL VPN for remote users with MFA and user sensitivity on page 1825 for more details).

To disable case sensitivity on the remote user:

```
config user local
    edit <name>
        set type ldap
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken "FTKMOBxxxxxxxxxx"
        set email-to <email_address>
        set username-sensitivity disable
        set ldap-server <server_name>
    next
end
```

There is another unwanted scenario from this configuration than can occur to bypass multi-factor authentication. The LDAP server, ldap, has a user named shudson. Another LDAP server, ldap2, also has a user named shudson, but with a different password. If the ldap and ldap2 servers are asdded to the user group in addition to the remote shudson user, if a user tries to log in using `shudson` and the password on the ldap2 server, they would be able to bypass multi-factor authentication.

Configuring FSSO user groups

FSSO user groups contain only Windows, Citrix, and Novell network users. Information about these user groups and their member logon activities are provided by the corresponding FSSO connector. See the FSSO on page 2010 section for more information.

Configuring RSSO user groups

RADIUS single sign-on user groups leverage a RADIUS server to authenticate connecting users. This requires users to log in to their computer using their RADIUS account. The FortiGate does not interact with the remote RADIUS server. It only monitors RADIUS accounting records that the server forwards (originating from the RADIUS client). These records include the user IP address and user group. See RADIUS single sign-on agent on page 365 for more information.

Configuring guest user groups

In some scenarios, an administrator might need to create temporary user accounts with a defined expiry time to access network resources. For example, if there is a large conference and may attendees require temporary network access for a few days. *Guest Management* can be used to combine many guest users into a group. Many guest accounts can be created at once using randomly-generated user IDs and passwords.

A guest group must be configured first. The guest user account user ID can be an email address, a randomly generated string, or an ID that the assigned by the administrator. The password can be assigned by the administrator or randomly generated. The guest group configuration determines the fields that are provided when creating guest user accounts in *Guest Management*.

To create a guest user group:

1. Go to *User & User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name, and set the *Type* to *Guest*.

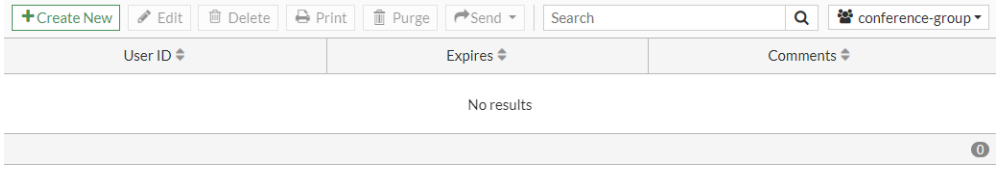
3. Configure the following:

Batch Guest Account Creation	Create multiple accounts automatically. When enabled: • The user ID and password are automatically generated. • The accounts only have user ID, password, and expiration fields. The expiration field is editable in the GUI in the *Start Countdown* and *Time* settings. • An administrator can print the account information. • Users do not receive an email or SMS notification.
User ID	Select one of the following: • *Email*: use the user's email address • *Auto Generate*: FortiOS creates a random user ID • *Specify*: the administrator assigns a user ID
Maximum Accounts	Enable to set a maximum number of guest accounts that can be created for this group (disabled = unlimited).
Guest Details	
Enable Name	If enabled, the user form has a field to enter a name.
Enable Email	If enabled, the user is notified by email.
Enable SMS	If enabled, the user is notified by SMS.
Password	Select one of the following: • *Auto Generate*: FortiOS creates a random password • *Specify*: the administrator assigns a password If the setting is disabled, no password is used.
Sponsor	If enabled, the user form has a field to enter a sponsor (*Optional*). Select *Required* if the sponsor field is mandatory.
Company	If enabled, the user form has a field to enter a company (*Optional*). Select *Required* if the company field is mandatory.
Expiration	
Start Countdown	Select one of the following: • *On Account Creation*: the countdown starts from the time the account is created • *After First Login*: the countdown starts from the time the first time the user logs in
Time	Set the expiry time. There are fields to enter values for *Days*, *Hours*, *Minutes*, and *Seconds*.

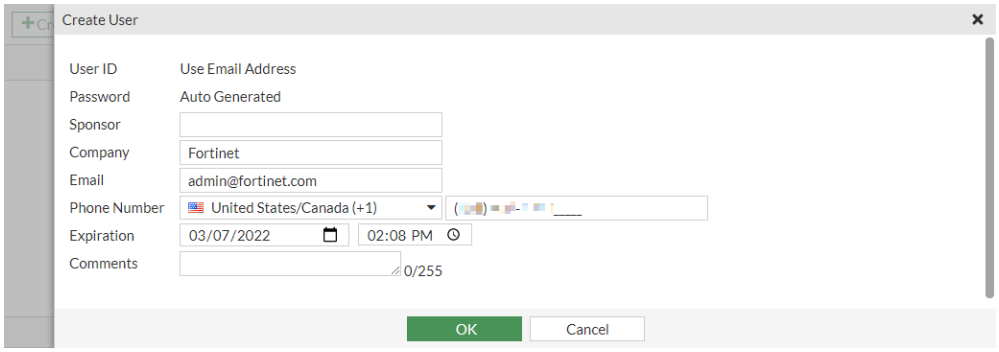
4. Click *OK*.

To manually create a guest user account:

1. Go to *User & User & Authentication* > *Guest Management*.
2. If more than one guest user group is configured, select the group from the dropdown beside the search box.



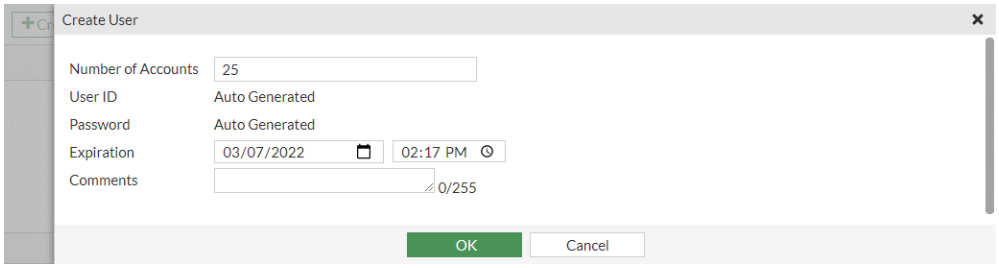
3. Click *Create New* and enter the information in the *Create User* pane. The fields are based on the guest group configuration. Optional fields can be left blank, such as *Sponsor* in this example.



4. Click *OK*.

To automatically create multiple guest user accounts:

1. Go to *User & User & Authentication* > *Guest Management*.
2. If more than one guest user group is configured, select the group from the dropdown beside the search box. The group must have *Batch Guest Account Creation* enabled.
3. Click *Create New* > *Multiple Users* and enter the *Number of Accounts*.
4. Optionally, edit the *Expiration* date and time.



5. Click *OK*.

Retail environment guest access

Businesses such as coffee shops provide free Internet access for customers. In this scenario, you do not need to configure guest management, as customers can access the WiFi access point without logon credentials.

However, consider that the business wants to contact customers with promotional offers to encourage future patronage. You can configure an email collection portal to collect customer email addresses for this purpose. You can configure a firewall policy to grant network access only to users who provide a valid email address. The first time a customer's device

attempts WiFi connection, FortiOS requests an email address, which it validates. The customers' subsequent connections go directly to the Internet without interruption.

This configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Creating an email collection portal on page 1927
2. Creating a firewall policy on page 1927
3. Checking for collected emails on page 1928

Creating an email collection portal

The customer's first contact with your network is a captive portal that presents a webpage requesting an email address. When FortiOS has validated the email address, the customer's device MAC address is added to the collected emails device group.

This example modifies the freewifi WiFi interface to present an email collection captive portal.

To configure the freewifi SSID to use an email collection portal in the GUI:

1. Enable email collection:
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
   b. In the *Additional Features* section, enable *Email Collection*.
   c. Click *Apply*.
2. Edit the freewifi SSID:
   a. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *SSIDs* and edit the *freewifi* SSID.
   b. In the *Security Mode Settings* section, set the *Security mode* to *Captive Portal*.
   c. Set the *Portal type* to *Email Collection*.
   d. Click *OK*.

To configure the freewifi SSID to use an email collection portal in the CLI:

```
config wireless-controller vap
    edit freewifi
        set security captive-portal
        set portal-type email-collect
    next
end
```

Creating a firewall policy

You must configure a firewall policy that allows traffic to flow from the WiFi SSID to the internet interface only for members of the collected emails device group. This policy must be listed first. Unknown devices are not members of the collected emails device group, so they do not match the policy.

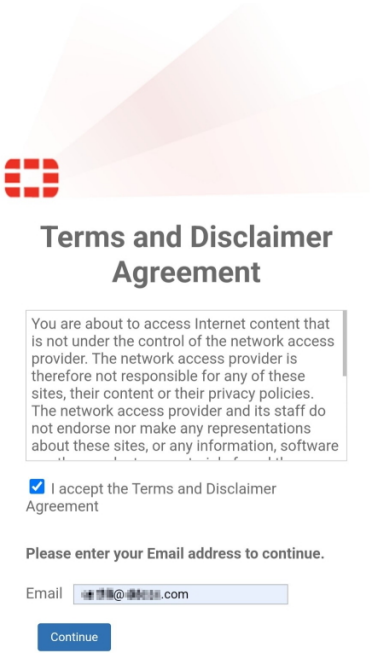
To create a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 3
        set srcintf "freewifi"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
        set email-collect enable
    next
end
```

Checking for collected emails

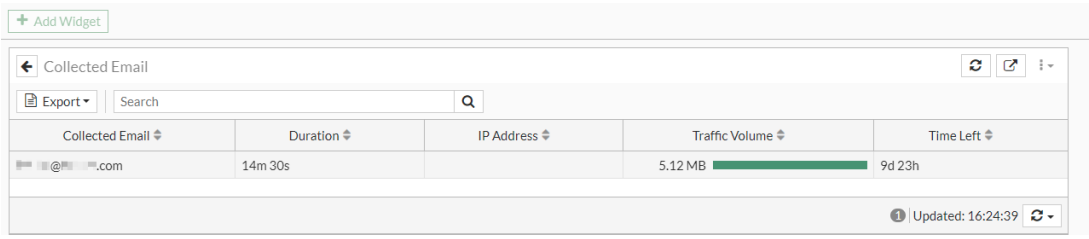
When a WiFi user connects to the freewifi SSID, they are presented with a captive portal to enter their email address.



Once the user enters their email and clicks *Continue*, they will have access to the Internet. The collected emails can be verified in FortiOS.

To check for collected emails in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* and click *Add Widget*.
2. In the *User & Authentication* section, select *Collected Email* and click *Add Widget*.
3. Click *Close*.
4. Click the *Collected Email* to expand to full view. The list of emails is displayed.



5. Optionally, click *Export* to export the data as a CSV or JSON file.

To check for collected emails in the CLI:

```
# diagnose firewall auth mac list

72:4d:e1:**:**:**, admin@fortinet.com
        type: email, id: 0, duration: 937, idled: 19
        expire: 863980, allow-idle: 864000
        flag(1000): src_idle
        packets: in 4753 out 4592, bytes: in 2662403 out 2458644

----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

User and user group timeouts

Authenticated user groups can have timeout values per group in addition to FortiGate-wide timeouts. Three types of group timeouts can be configured: idle, hard, and session. These are in addition to any external timeouts, such as those on RADIUS servers.

To configure the timeout type for authenticated users:

```
config user setting
    set auth-timeout-type {idle-timeout | hard-timeout | new-session}
    set auth-timeout <integer>
end
```

Timeouts are measured in minutes (1 - 1440, default = 5). If VDOMs are enabled, the global level `auth-timeout` user setting is the default all VDOMs inherit.

Timeout type	Description
Idle	This is the default setting. The idle timer starts when a user initiates a session. As long as data is transferred in this session, the timer continually resets. If the data flow stops, the timer is allowed to advance until it reaches its limit. When the user has been idle for too long, the user must re-authenticate before traffic is allowed to continue in that session.
Hard	The hard timer starts when a user initiates a session. When the timeout is reached, all the sessions for that user must be re-authenticated. This timeout is not affected by any events.
Session	The session timer starts when a user initiates a session. When the timeout is reached, existing sessions may continue. New sessions are not allowed until the user re-authenticates. This timeout is not affected by any events.

To configure the authentication timeout for a user group:

```
config user group
    edit <name>
        set authtimeout <integer>
    next
end
```

Timeouts are measured in minutes (0 - 43200). A value of zero (the default) means the global timeout is used.



If a user belongs to multiple RADIUS groups, the group `authtimeout` values are ignored. The global `auth-timeout` value is used instead (under `config user setting`).

LDAP servers

The following topics provide information about LDAP servers:

- Configuring an LDAP server on page 1930
- Enabling Active Directory recursive search on page 1931
- Configuring LDAP dial-in using a member attribute on page 1933
- Configuring wildcard admin accounts on page 1934
- Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory on page 1935

Configuring an LDAP server

FortiOS can be configured to use an LDAP server for authentication.

To configure an LDAP server on the FortiGate:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the following:

Name	This connection name is for reference within the FortiGate only.
Server IP/Name	LDAP server IP address or FQDN resolvable by the FortiGate.
Server Port	By default, LDAP uses port 389 and LDAPS uses 636. Use this field to specify a custom port if necessary.
Common Name Identifier	Attribute field of the object in LDAP that the FortiGate uses to identify the connecting user. The identifier is case sensitive. Common attributes are: • *cn* (Common Name) • *sAMAccountName* (SAMAccountName) • *uid* (User ID)
Distinguished Name	Used to look up user account entries on the LDAP server. It reflects the hierarchy of LDAP database object classes above the CN identifier in which you are doing the lookup. Enter *dc=COMPANY,dc=com* to specify the root of the domain to include all objects. Enter *ou=VPN-Users,dc=COMPANY,dc=com* to look up users under a specific organization unit.

Exchange server	Enable to specify the exchange server connector to collect information about authenticated users from a corporate exchange server. See Exchange Server connector on page 368 for more details.
Bind Type	Select one of the following options: • *Simple*: bind using simple password authentication using the client name. The LDAP server only looks up against the distinguished name (DN), but does not search on the subtree. • *Anonymous*: bind using an anonymous user, and search starting from the DN and recurse over the subtrees. Many LDAP servers do not allow this. • *Regular*: bind using the username and password provided, and search starting from the DN and recurse over the subtrees.
Username	If using regular bind, enter a username with sufficient privileges to access the LDAP server. The following formats are supported: • *username\administrator* • *administrator@domain* • *cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=domain,dc=com*
Password	If using regular bind, enter the password associated with the username.
Secure Connection	Enable to apply security to the LDAP connection through STARTTLS or LDAPS.
Protocol	If *Secure Connection* is enabled, select *STARTTLS* or *LDAPS*. Selecting *STARTTLS* changes the port to 389 and selecting *LDAPS* changes the port to 636.
Certificate	Enable and select the certificate so the FortiGate will only accept a certificate from the LDAP server that is signed by this CA.
Server identity check	Enable to verify the server domain or IP address against the server certificate. This option is enabled by default and it is recommended to leave it enabled for a secure configuration.



When specifying a secure connection, there are some considerations for the certificate used by LDAP to secure the connection. The FortiGate checks the certificate presented by the LDAP server for the IP address or FQDN as specified in the *Server IP/Name* field with the following logic:

- If there is a Subject Alternative Name (SAN), it will ignore any Common Name (CN) value and look for a match in any of the SAN fields.
- If there is no SAN, it will check the CN for a match.

4. Optionally, click *Test User Credentials* to ensure that the account has sufficient access rights.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate checks the connection and updates the *Connection Status*.

Enabling Active Directory recursive search

By default, nested groups (groups that are members or other groups) are not searched in Windows Active Directory (AD) LDAP servers because this can slow down the group membership search. There is an option in FortiOS to enable the

searching of nested groups for user group memberships on AD LDAP servers.



This option is not available for other LDAP servers, such as OpenLDAP-based servers.

The default behavior does not include nested groups:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-ad"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
    next
end
```

The default search results only show groups that have the user as member, and no groups that have groups as members:

```
diagnose test authserver ldap ldap-ad nuser nuser
    authenticate 'nuser' against 'ldap-ad' succeeded!
    Group membership(s) - CN=nested3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=Domain Users,CN=Users,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
```

To enable recursive search to include nested groups in the results:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-ad"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
        set search-type recursive
    next
end
```

The search results now include groups that have other groups as members:

```
diagnose test authserver ldap ldap-ad nuser nuser
    authenticate 'nuser' against 'ldap-ad' succeeded!
    Group membership(s) - CN=nested3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=Domain Users,CN=Users,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=nested2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=nested1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
```

The group nested3 is a member of the group nested2, which is a member of the group nested1.

Configuring LDAP dial-in using a member attribute

In this configuration, users defined in Microsoft AD can set up a VPN connection based on an attribute that is set to `TRUE`, instead of their user group. You can activate the *Allow Dialin* property in AD user properties, which sets the `msNPAllowDialin` attribute to *TRUE*. You can use this procedure for other member attributes as your system requires.

This configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Ensure that the AD server has the `msNPAllowDialin` attribute set to *TRUE* for the desired users.
2. Configure user LDAP member attribute settings.
3. Configure LDAP group settings.
4. Ensure that you configured the settings correctly.

To configure user LDAP member attribute settings:

```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap_server"
      set server "192.168.201.3"
      set cnid "sAMAccountName"
      set dn "DC=fortilabanz,DC=com,DC=au"
      set type regular
      set username "fortigate@sample.com"
      set password ******
      set member-attr "msNPAllowDialin"
   next
end
```

To configure LDAP group settings:

```
config user group
   edit "ldap_grp"
      set member "ldap_server"
      config match
         edit 1
            set server-name "ldap_server"
            set group-name "TRUE"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To ensure that you configured the settings correctly:

Users that are members of the `ldap_grp` user group should be able to authenticate. The following shows sample `diagnose debug` output when the `Allow Dial-in` attribute is set to `TRUE`:

```
get_member_of_groups-Get the memberOf groups.
get_member_of_groups- attr='msNPAllowDialin', found 1 values
get_member_of_groups-val[0]='TRUE'
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Auth accepted
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Going to DONE state res=0
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Result for ldap svr 192.168.201.3 is SUCCESS
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Passed group matching
```

If the attribute is not set to `TRUE` but is expected, you may see the following output:

```
get_member_of_groups-Get the memberOf groups.
get_member_of_groups- attr='msNPAllowDialin', found 1 values
get_member_of_groups-val[0]='FALSE'
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Auth accepted
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Going to DONE state res=0
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Result for ldap svr 192.168.201.3 is SUCCESS
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Failed group matching
```

The difference between the two outputs is the last line, which shows passed or failed depending on whether the member attribute is set to the expected value.

Configuring wildcard admin accounts

To avoid setting up individual admin accounts in FortiOS, you can configure an admin account with the wildcard option enabled, allowing multiple remote admin accounts to match one local admin account. This way, multiple LDAP admin accounts can use one FortiOS admin account.

Benefits include:

- Fast configuration of the FortiOS admin account to work with your LDAP network, saving effort and avoiding potential errors incurred when setting up multiple admin accounts
- Reduced ongoing maintenance. As long as LDAP users belong to the same group and you do not modify the wildcard admin account in FortiOS, you do not need to configure changes on the LDAP accounts. If you add or remove a user from the LDAP group, you do not need to perform changes in FortiOS.

Potential issues include:

- Multiple users may be logged in to the same account simultaneously. This may cause issues if both users make changes simultaneously.
- Security is reduced since multiple users have login access to the same account, as opposed to an account for each user.

Wildcard admin configuration also applies to RADIUS. If configuring for RADIUS, configure the RADIUS server and RADIUS user group instead of LDAP. When using the GUI, wildcard admin is the only remote admin account that does not require you to enter a password on account creation. That password is normally used when the remote authentication server is unavailable during authentication.

This example uses default values where possible. If a specific value is not mentioned, the example sets it to its default value.



You can configure an admin account in Active Directory for LDAP authentication to allow an admin to perform lookups and reset passwords without being a member of the Account Operators or Domain Administrators built-in groups. See Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory on page 1935.

To configure the LDAP server:

The important parts of this configuration are the username and group lines. The username is the domain administrator account. The group binding allows only the GRP group access.

This example uses an example domain name. Configure as appropriate for your own network.

```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap_server"
      set server "192.168.201.3"
```

```
      set cnid "sAMAccountName"
      set dn "DC=example,DC=com,DC=au"
      set type regular
      set username "CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=example,DC=COM”
      set password *
      set group-member-check group-object
      set group-object-filter (&
           (objectcategory=group)member="CN=GRP,OU=training,DC=example,DC=COM"))
   next
end
```

To configure the user group and add the LDAP server:

```
config user group
   edit "ldap_grp"
      set member "ldap_server"
         config match
                edit 1
                   set server-name "ldap_server"
                   set group-name "CN=GRP,OU=training,DC=example,DC=COM"
                next
             end
           next
         end
      end
   end
end
```

To configure the wildcard admin account:

```
config system admin
   edit "test"
      set remote-auth enable
      set accprofile "super_admin"
      set wildcard enable
      set remote-group "ldap_grp"
   next
end
```

Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory

An administrator should only have sufficient privileges for their role. In the case of LDAP admin bind, you can configure an admin account in Active Directory for LDAP authentication to allow an admin to perform lookups and reset passwords without being a member of the Account Operators or Domain Administrators built-in groups.

For information about Active Directory, see the product documentation.

To configure account privileges for LDAP authentication in Active Directory:

1. In the *Active Directory Users and Computers* administrative console, right-click the Organizational Unit (OU) or the top-level domain you want to configure and select *Delegate Control*.
2. In the *Delegation of Control Wizard* dialog, click *Next*.

3. In the *Users or Groups* dialog, click *Add...* and search Active Directory for the users or groups.
4. Click *OK* and then click *Next*.
5. In the *Tasks to Delegate* dialog, select *Create a custom task to delegate* and click *Next*.
6. Select *Only the following objects in the folder* and scroll to the bottom of the list. Select *User objects* and click *Next*.
7. In the *Permissions* dialog, select *General*.
8. From the *Permissions* list, select the following:
   - *Change password*
   - *Reset password*
9. Clear the *General* checkbox and select *Property-specific*.
10. From the *Permissions* list, select the following:
    - *Write lockoutTime*
    - *Read lockoutTime*
    - *Write pwdLastSet*
    - *Read pwdLastSet*
    - *Write UserAccountControl*
    - *Read UserAccountControl*
11. Click *Next* and click *Finish*.

RADIUS servers

Remote Authentication and Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a broadly supported client-server protocol that provides centralized authentication, authorization, and accounting functions. RADIUS clients are built into gateways that allow access to networks such a VPN server, network access server (NAS), and a network switch or firewall that uses authentication.

RADIUS servers use UDP packets to communicate with the RADIUS clients on the network to authenticate users before allowing them access to the network, authorize access to resources by appropriate users, and account or bill for those resources that are used. RADIUS servers are currently defined by RFC 2865 (RADIUS) and RFC 2866 (RADIUS Accounting), and listen on either UDP ports 1812 (authentication) and 1813 (accounting), or ports 1645 (authentication) and 1646 (accounting) requests. RADIUS servers exist for all major operating systems.

The RADIUS server must be configured to accept the FortiGate as a client so is can use the authentication and accounting functions of the RADIUS server.

RADIUS authentication with a FortiGate requires the following:

- Configuring one or more RADIUS server profiles on the FortiGate.
- Assigning the RADIUS server profile to a user or user group.
- Applying the user or user group to a firewall policy.

RADIUS authentication can be applied to many FortiGate functions, such as firewall authentication, SSL and IPsec VPNs, administrator profiles, explicit proxy, wireless, 802.1X, and more.

The RADIUS server uses a shared secret key with MD5 hashing to encrypt information passed between RADIUS servers and clients. Typically, only user credentials are encrypted. Additional security can be configured through IPsec tunnels by placing the RADIUS server behind another VPN gateway.

The following topics provide more information about RADIUS servers:

- Configuring a RADIUS server on page 1937
- Using multiple RADIUS servers on page 1938
- RADIUS AVPs and VSAs on page 1941
- Restricting RADIUS user groups to match selective users on the RADIUS server on page 1943
- Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication on page 1944
- RSA ACE (SecurID) servers on page 1950
- Support for Okta RADIUS attributes filter-Id and class on page 1955
- Sending multiple RADIUS attribute values in a single RADIUS Access-Request on page 1957
- Traffic shaping based on dynamic RADIUS VSAs on page 1957

Configuring a RADIUS server

A RADIUS server can be configured in the GUI by going to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*, or in the CLI under `config user radius`.

Basic configuration

The following table summarizes the common RADIUS settings that can be configured in the GUI and CLI.

GUI field	CLI setting	Description
Name	`edit <name>`	Define the RADIUS server object within FortiOS.
Authentication method	`set auth-type {auto | ms_chap_v2 | ms_chap | chap | pap}`	Specify the authentication method, or select *Default*/`auto` to negotiate PAP, MSCHAP_v2, and CHAP in that order.
NAS IP	`set nas-ip <IPv4_address>`	Optional setting, also known as Calling-Station-Id. Specify the IP address the FortiGate uses to communicate with the RADIUS server. If left unconfigured, the FortiGate will use the IP address of the interface that communicates with the RADIUS server.
Include in every user group	`set all-usergroup {enable | disable}`	Optional setting to add the RADIUS server to each user group. This allows each user group to try and authenticate users against the RADIUS server if local authentication fails.
Primary Server		
IP/Name	`set server <string>`	Enter the IP address or resolvable FQDN of the RADIUS server.
Secret	`set secret <password>`	Enter the password used to connect to the RADIUS server.

There is an option in the GUI to configure a second server, and a third server can be configured in the CLI (see Using multiple RADIUS servers on page 1938).

Advanced settings

Advanced settings for RADIUS servers can be configured in the CLI. The following are some commonly used settings.

To edit the port used to connect with the RADIUS server:

```
config system global
    set radius-port <integer>
end
```

To edit the default setting for password encoding and username case sensitivity:

```
config user radius
    edit <name>
        set password-encoding {auto | ISO-8859-1}
        set username-case-sensitive {enable | disable}
    next
end
```

`password-encoding {auto | ISO-8859-1}`	Set the password encoding to use the original encoding or ISO-8859-1 (default = auto). The `auth-type` must be `auto` or `pap` to change this setting.
`username-case-sensitive {enable | disable}`	Enable/disable case sensitive usernames (default = disable).

Using multiple RADIUS servers

There are several ways to implement multiple RADIUS servers, and each has a different effect on user authentication. The three main options available are:

- Add a second (or third) RADIUS server in the same profile.
- Add a second RADIUS server profile, and add both to the same user group.
- Use two RADIUS server profiles for two user groups (one for each).

Adding a second server in a RADIUS profile

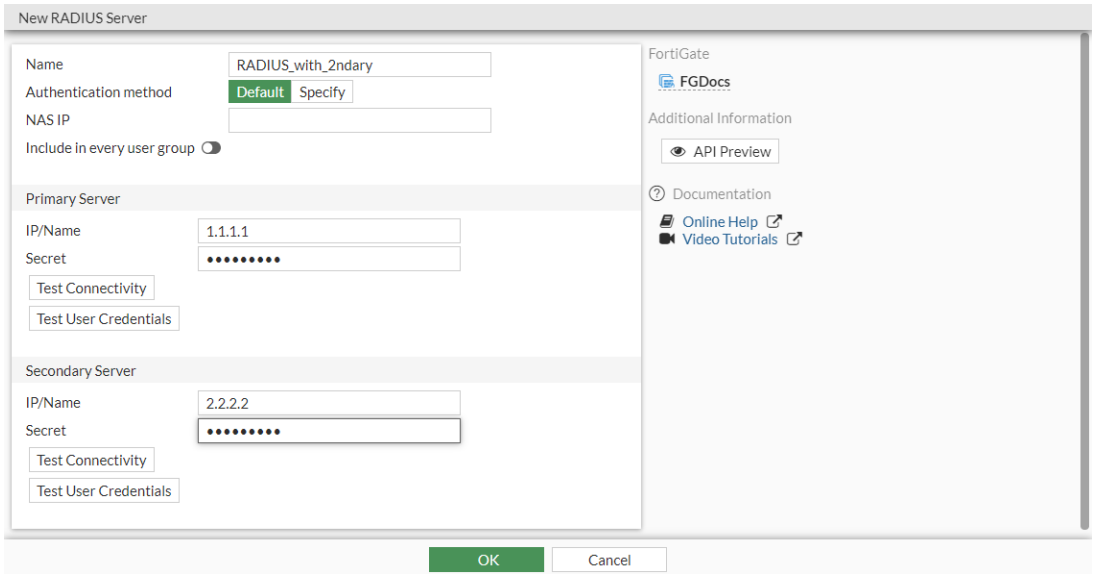
A second RADIUS server can be configured in the same RADIUS profile so in the event the first RADIUS server does not respond, the second server can be checked. If the first RADIUS server responds with an Access-Reject, no further servers are queried.

To add a second server in a RADIUS profile:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter the following:

Name	*RADIUS_with_2ndary*
Authentication method	*Default*
Primary Server	

IP/Name	*1.1.1.1*
Secret	Enter the password used to connect to the RADIUS server.
Secondary Server	
IP/Name	*2.2.2.2*
Secret	Enter the password used to connect to the RADIUS server.



3. Click *OK*.

Adding two RADIUS server profiles in the same user group

When two separate RADIUS profiles are added to a user group, the FortiGate sends an Access-Request simultaneously to both RADIUS servers, and authentication succeeds if either server sends back an Access-Accept. This example includes the settings from the previous example where one or more of the RADIUS server profiles has a secondary server configured. In this case, the secondary server profile, *RADIUS_with_2ndary*, is only checked if the primary server of this profile times out and the *fac_radius_server* profile does not return an Access-Accept.

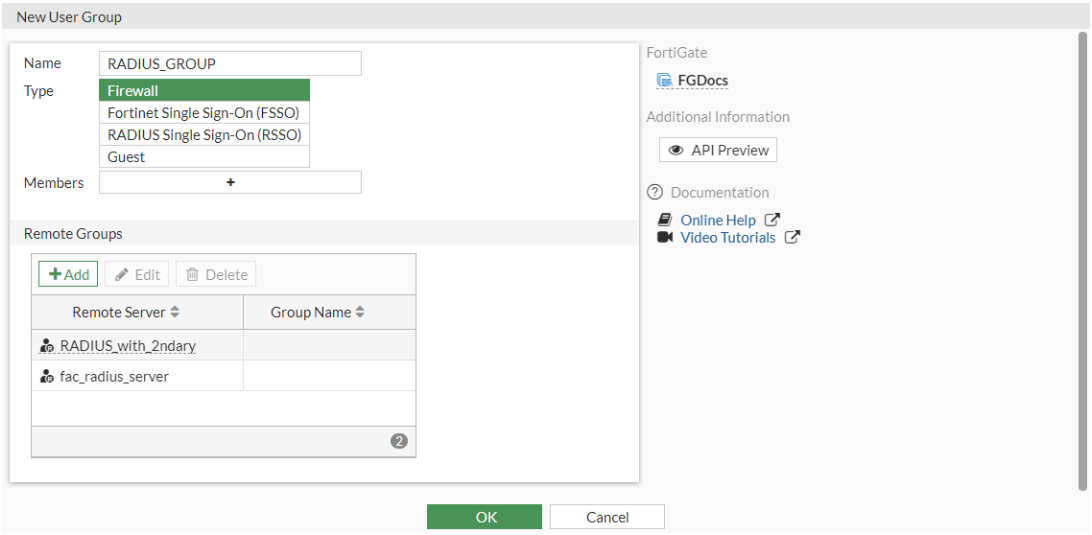
To add two RADIUS server profiles in the same user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*, click *Create New*, and configure the RADIUS servers as needed (refer to the previous example).
2. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
3. Enter the following:

Name	*RADIUS_GROUP*
Type	*Firewall*

4. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*.
5. Select *RADIUS_with_2ndary* and click *OK*.

6. Click *Add*, select *fac_radius_server*, then click *OK*.



7. Click *OK*.

Using separate RADIUS server profiles for separate user groups

In this example, the FortiGate first evaluates if the user belongs to the first listed group (*radius_group*) in the policy. If the user fails to authenticate to this group, then the FortiGate checks if the user can successfully authenticate to the second user group (*radius_group_2*). Refer to the first and second examples for detailed instructions.

To use separate RADIUS server profiles for separate user groups:

1. Configure the RADIUS server profiles:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure two RADIUS servers, *fac_radius_server* and *RADIUS_with_2ndary*, as needed (refer to the previous example).
2. Configure the firewall groups:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure two firewall groups, one named *radius_group* with remote server member *fac_radius_server*, and one named *radius_group_2* with remote server member *RADIUS_with_2ndary* (refer to the previous example).

Group Name	Group Type	Members	Ref.
radius_group	Firewall	fac_radius_server	1
radius_group_2	Firewall	RADIUS_with_2ndary	1

3. Configure the firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. For *Source*, click *User* then select *radius_group* and *radius_group_2*. Click *Address* and select *LAN address*.
   c. Configure the other settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.

Name	From	To	Source	Destination	Schedule	Service	Action	NAT
LAN to WAN	LAN (LAN)	WAN	radius_group radius_group_2 LAN address	all	always	ALL	ACCEPT	Enabled

RADIUS AVPs and VSAs

This topic describes RADIUS Attribute Value Pairs (AVPs) and Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs).

AVPs

RADIUS packets include a set of AVPs to identify information about the user, their location, and other information. The IETF defined a set of 255 standard attributes, which are well known and come in the form of Type, Length, Value (for more details, refer to RFC 2865). Of the standard 255, the FortiGate sends the following RADIUS attributes:

RADIUS attribute number	Name	Description
1	User-Name	Name of the user being authenticated by the RADIUS server.
4	NAS-IP-Address	IP address of the network access server (NAS) that is requesting authentication. The NAS is the FortiGate.
8	Framed-IP-Address	IP address to be configured for the user, by sending the IP address of a user to the RADIUS server in the Access-Request packet.
25	Class	Used in accounting packets and requests for firewall, WiFi, and proxy authentication. The attribute is returned in the Access-Accept message and is added to all accounting packets.
26	Fortinet-VSA	See VSAs.
32	NAS-Identifier	Identifier or IP address of the NAS that is requesting authentication. The NAS is the FortiGate.
42	Acct-Input-Octets	Number of octets received from the port over the course of this service being provided. Used to charge the user for the amount of traffic they used.
43	Acct-Output-Octets	Number of octets sent to the port while delivering this service. Used to charge the user for the amount of traffic they used.
44	Acct-Session-Id	Unique number assigned to each start and stop record to make it easy to match them, and to eliminate duplicate records.
55	Event-Timestamp	Records the time that the event occurred on the NAS. The timestamp is measured in seconds since January 1, 1970 00:00 UTC. Before the Event-Timestamp attribute can be sent in a packet, make sure that the correct time is set on the FortiGate.

VSAs

Some vendors want or need to send attributes that do not match any of the defined IETF attributes. This can be accomplished by using RADIUS attribute type 26, which allows a vendor to encapsulate their own specific attributes in this standard AVP.

In order to support VSAs, the RADIUS server requires a dictionary to define the VSAs. This dictionary is typically supplied by the client or server vendor.

The Fortinet RADIUS vendor ID is 12356 and contains the following attributes:

Attribute name	Attribute number	Attribute value format
Fortinet-Group-Name	1	String
Fortinet-Client-IP-Address	2	IP address
Fortinet-Vdom-Name*	3	String
Fortinet-Client-IPv6-Address	4	Octets
Fortinet-Interface-Name	5	String
Fortinet-Access-Profile	6	String
Fortinet-SSID	7	String
Fortinet-AP-Name	8	String
Fortinet-FAC-Auth-Status	11	String
Fortinet-FAC-Token-ID	12	String
Fortinet-FAC-Challenge-Code	15	String
Fortinet-Webfilter-Category-Allow	16	String
Fortinet-Webfilter-Category-Block	17	Octets
Fortinet-Webfilter-Category-Monitor	18	Octets
Fortinet-AppCtrl-Category-Allow	19	Octets
Fortinet-AppCtrl-Category-Block	20	Octets
Fortinet-AppCtrl-Risk-Allow	21	Octets
Fortinet-AppCtrl-Risk-Block	22	Octets
Fortinet-WirelessController-Device-MAC	23	Ether
Fortinet-WirelessController-WTP-ID	24	String
Fortinet-WirelessController-Assoc-Time	25	Date
Fortinet-FortiWAN-AVPair	26	String
Fortinet-FDD-Access-Profile	30	String
Fortinet-FDD-Trusted-Hosts	31	String
Fortinet-FDD-SPP-Name	32	String
Fortinet-FDD-Is-System-Admin	33	String
Fortinet-FDD-Is-SPP-Admin	34	String
Fortinet-FDD-SPP-Policy-Group	35	String
Fortinet-FDD-Allow-API-Access	36	String
Fortinet-Fpc-User-Role	40	String

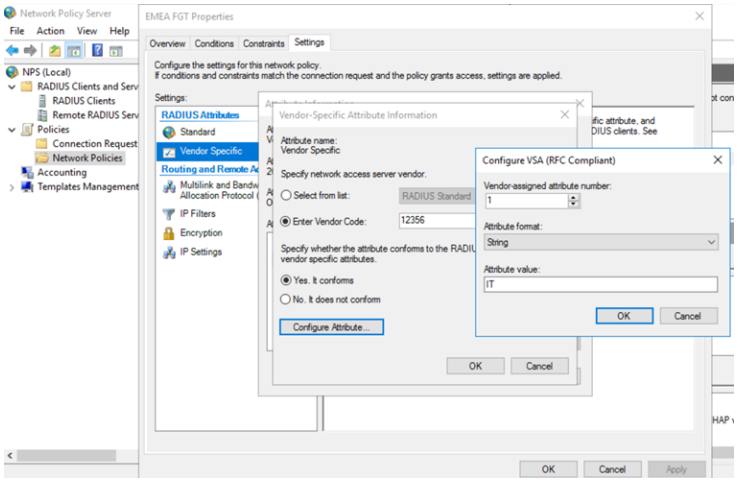
Attribute name	Attribute number	Attribute value format
Fortinet-Tenant-Identification	41	String
Fortinet-Host-Port-AVPair	42	String

* For Fortinet-Vdom-Name, users can be tied to a specific VDOM on the FortiGate. Refer to the documentation provided by your RADIUS server for configuration details.

Restricting RADIUS user groups to match selective users on the RADIUS server

When a user group is configured in FortiOS to authenticate against a RADIUS server, it will allow any valid user account on the RADIUS server to match that user group. Sometimes you might want to specify which users on the RADIUS server should match a particular user group on the FortiGate. This can be accomplished using the RADIUS attribute value pair (AVP) 26, known as a Vendor-Specific Attribute (VSA). This attribute allows the Fortinet-Group-Name VSA to be included in the RADIUS response. In FortiOS, the user group must be configured to specifically match this group.

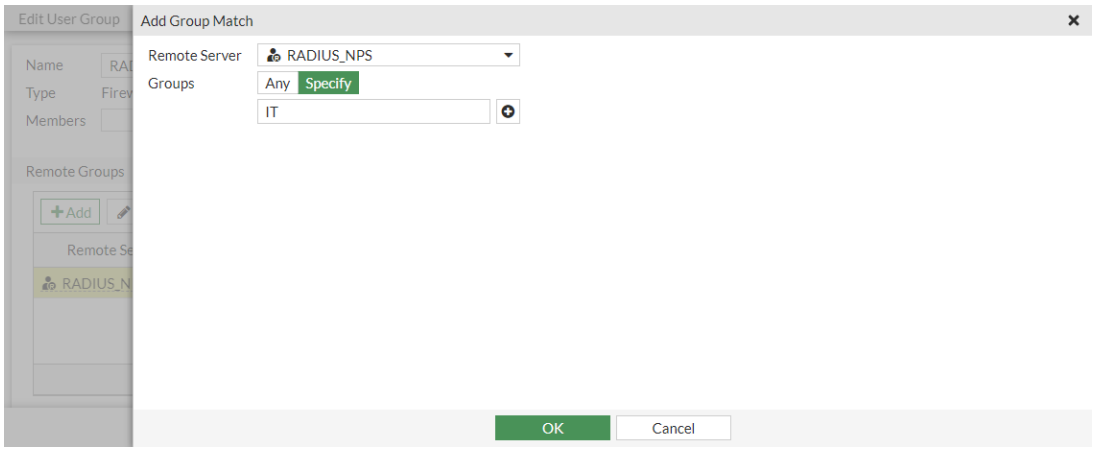
In the following example, a RADIUS Network Policy Server (NPS) has been configured to have the Fortinet-Group-Name be *IT*, and assumes that the user group, *RADIUS_IT* has been created, which authenticates to the *RADIUS_NPS* server.



To configure specific group matching in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and edit the *RADIUS_IT* group.
2. In the *Remote Groups* table, select the *RADIUS_NPS* server and click *Edit*. The *Add Group Match* pane opens.
3. For *Groups*, select *Specify* and enter the group name configured on the RADIUS server (*IT*).

4. Click *OK*.



5. Click *OK*.

To configure specific group matching in the CLI:

```
config user group
    edit "RADIUS_IT"
        set member "RADIUS_NPS"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "RADIUS_NPS"
                set group-name "IT"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

To change the matching back to any group, under `config match`, enter `delete 1`. Changing the `group-name` to `"Any"` will cause the FortiGate to match the Fortinet-Group-Name with the literal string, `Any`.

Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication

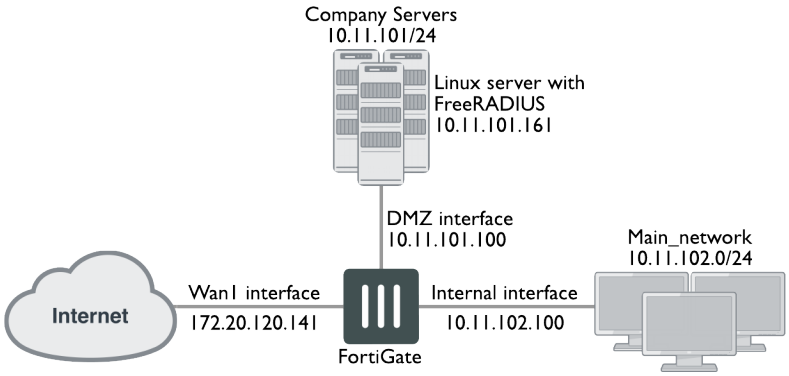
A common RADIUS SSO (RSSO) topology involves a medium-sized company network of users connecting to the Internet through the FortiGate and authenticating with a RADIUS server. The following describes how to configure FortiOS for this scenario. The example makes the following assumptions:

- VDOMs are not enabled.
- The super_admin account is used for all FortiGate configuration.
- A RADIUS server is installed on a server or FortiAuthenticator and uses default attributes.
- BGP is used for any dynamic routing.
- You have configured authentication event logging under *Log & Report*.

Example.com has an office with 20 users on the internal network who need access to the Internet. The office network is protected by a FortiGate-60C with access to the Internet through the wan1 interface, the user network on the internal

interface, and all servers are on the DMZ interface. This includes an Ubuntu sever running FreeRADIUS. This example configures two users:

User	Account
Pat Lee	plee@example.com
Kelly Green	kgreen@example.com



Configuring this example consists of the following steps:

1. Configure RADIUS.
2. Configure FortiGate interfaces.
3. Configure a RSSO agent.
4. Create a RSSO user group.
5. Configure security policies.
6. Test the configuration.

To configure RADIUS:

Configuring RADIUS includes configuring a RADIUS server such as FreeRADIUS on user's computers and configuring users in the system. In this example, Pat and Kelly belong to the exampledotcom_employees group. After completing the configuration, you must start the RADIUS daemon. The users have a RADIUS client installed on their PCs that allow them to authenticate through the RADIUS server.

For any problems installing FreeRADIUS, see the FreeRADIUS documentation.

To configure FortiGate interfaces:

You must define a DHCP server for the internal network, as this network type typically uses DHCP. The wan1 and dmz interfaces are assigned static IP addresses and do not need a DHCP server. The following table shows the FortiGate interfaces used in this example:

Interface	Subnet	Act as DHCP server	Devices
wan1	172.20.120.141	No	Internet service provider
dmz	10.11.101.100	No	Servers including RADIUS server
internal	10.11.102.100	Yes: x.x.x.110-250	Internal user network

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit wan1:

Alias	Internet
Addressing Mode	Manual
IP/Network Mask	172.20.120.141/255.255.255.0
Administrative Access	HTTPS, SSH
Enable DHCP Server	Not selected
Comments	Internet
Administrative Status	Up

3. Click *OK*.
4. Edit dmz:

Alias	Servers
Addressing Mode	Manual
IP/Network Mask	10.11.101.100/255.255.255.0
Administrative Access	HTTPS, SSH, PING, SNMP
Enable DHCP Server	Not selected
Listen for RADIUS Accounting Messages	Select
Comments	Servers
Administrative Status	Up

5. Click *OK*.
6. Edit internal:

Alias	Internal network
Addressing Mode	Manual
IP/Network Mask	10.11.102.100/255.255.255.0
Administrative Access	HTTPS, SSH, PING
Enable DHCP Server	Select
Address Range	10.11.102.110 - 10.11.102.250
Netmask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	Same as Interface IP
Comments	Internal network
Administrative Status	Up

To create a RADIUS SSO agent:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Under *Endpoint/Identity*, select *RADIUS Single Sign-On Agent*.
4. Enable *Use RADIUS Shared Secret*. Enter the RADIUS server's shared secret.
5. Enable *Send RADIUS Responses*. Click *OK*.

To create a RADIUS SSO user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *RADIUS Single Sign-On (RSSO)*.
4. In *RADIUS Attribute Value*, enter the name of the RADIUS user group that this local user group represents.
5. Click *OK*.

Configuring security policies

The following security policies are required for RADIUS SSO:

Sequence Number	From	To	Type	Schedule	Description
1	internal	wan1	RADIUS SSO	Business hours	Authenticate outgoing user traffic
2	internal	wan1	Regular	Always	Allow essential network services and VoIP
3	dmz	wan1	Regular	Always	Allow servers to access the Internet
4	internal	dmz	Regular	Always	Allow users to access servers
5	any	any	Deny	Always	Implicit policy denying all traffic that has not been matched

You must place the RADIUS SSO policy at the top of the policy list so that it is matched first. The only exception to this is if you have a policy to deny access to a list of banned users. In this case, you must put that policy at the top so that the RADIUS SSO does not mistakenly match a banned user or IP address.

You must configure lists before creating security policies.

Schedule

You must configure a business_hours schedule. You can configure a standard Monday to Friday 8 AM to 5 PM schedule, or whatever days and hours covers standard work hours at the company.

Address groups

You must configure the following address groups:

Name	Interface	Address range included
internal_network	internal	10.11.102.110 to 10.11.102.250
company_servers	dmz	10.11.101.110 to 10.11.101.250

Service groups

You must configure the service groups. The services listed are suggestions and you may include more or less as required:

Name	Interface	Description of services to be included
essential_network_services	internal	Any network protocols required for normal network operation such as DNS, NTP, BGP
essential_server_services	dmz	All the protocols required by the company servers such as BGP, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, IMAP, POP3, SMTP, IKE, SQL, MYSQL, NTP, TRACEROUTE, SOCKs, and SNMP
user_services	internal	Any protocols required by users such as HTTP, HTTPS, FTP

The following security policy configurations are basic and only include logging and default AV and IPS. These policies allow or deny access to non-RADIUS SSO traffic. These are essential as network services including DNS, NTP, and FortiGuard require access to the Internet.

To configure security policies:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the policy as follows, then click *OK*:

Incoming Interface	Internal
Source Address	internal_network
Outgoing Interface	wan1
Destination Address	all
Schedule	always
Service	essential_network_services
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	ON
Security Profiles	ON: AntiVirus, IPS
Log Allowed Traffic	ON

Comments	Essential network services

4. Click *Create New*, and configure the new policy as follows, then click *OK*:

Incoming Interface	dmz
Source Address	company_servers
Outgoing Interface	wan1
Destination Address	all
Schedule	always
Service	essential_server_services
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	ON
Security Profiles	ON: AntiVirus, IPS
Log Allowed Traffic	enable
Comments	Company servers accessing the Internet

5. Click *Create New*, and configure the new policy as follows, then click *OK*:

Incoming Interface	Internal
Source Address	internal_network
Outgoing Interface	dmz
Destination Address	company_servers
Schedule	always
Service	all
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	ON
Security Profiles	ON: AntiVirus, IPS
Log Allowed Traffic	enable
Comments	Access company servers

6. Click *Create New*, and configure the RADIUS SSO policy as follows, then click *OK*. This policy allows access for members of specific RADIUS groups.

Incoming Interface	Internal
Source Address	internal_network
Source User(s)	Select the user groups that you created for RSSO.
Outgoing Interface	wan1

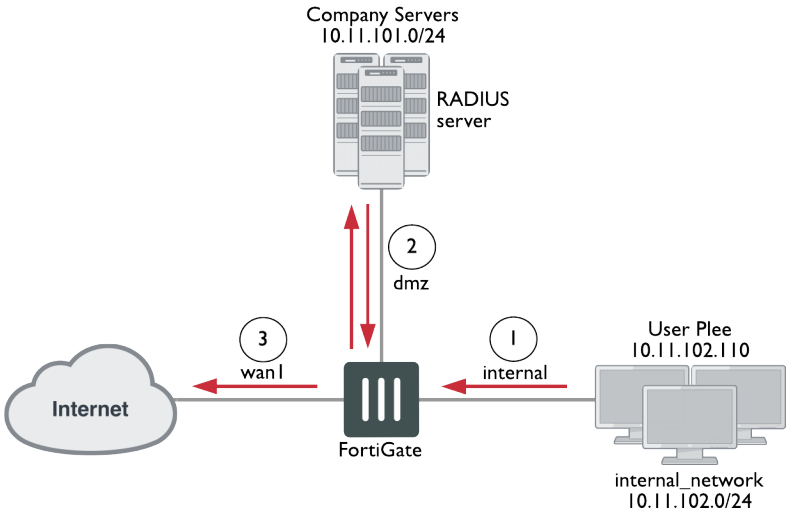
Destination Address	all
Schedule	business_hours
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	ON
Security Profiles	ON: AntiVirus, Web Filter, IPS, and Email Filter. In each case, select the default profile.

7. Place the RSSO policy higher in the security policy list than more general policies for the same interfaces. Click *OK*.

To test the configuration:

Once configured, a user only needs to log in to their PC using their RADIUS account. After that, when they attempt to access the Internet, the FortiGate uses their session information to get their RADIUS information. Once the user is verified, they can access the website.

1. The user logs on to their PC and tries to access the Internet.
2. The FortiGate contacts the RADIUS server for the user's information. Once confirmed, the user can access the Internet. Each step generates logs that enable you to verify that each step succeeded.
3. If a step does not succeed, confirm that your configuration is correct.



RSA ACE (SecurID) servers

SecurID is a two-factor system produced by the company RSA that uses one-time password (OTP) authentication. This system consists of the following:

- Portable tokens that users carry
- RSA ACE/Server
- Agent host (the FortiGate)

When using SecurID, users carry a small device or "token" that generates and displays a pseudo-random password. According to RSA, each SecurID authenticator token has a unique 64-bit symmetric key that is combined with a powerful algorithm to generate a new code every 60 seconds. The token is time-synchronized with the SecurID RSA ACE/Server.

The RSA ACE/Server is the SecurID system's management component. It stores and validates the information about the SecurID tokens allowed on your network. Alternately, the server can be an RSA SecurID 130 appliance.

The agent host is the server on your network. In this case, this is the FortiGate, which intercepts user logon attempts. The agent host gathers the user ID and password entered from the SecurID token and sends the information to the RSA ACE/Server for validation. If valid, the RSA ACE/Server returns a reply indicating that it is a valid logon and FortiOS allows the user access to the network resources specified in the associated security policy.

Configuring SecurID with FortiOS consists of the following:

1. Configure the RSA and RADIUS servers to work with each other. See RSA server documentation.
2. Do one of the following:
   a. Configure the RSA SecurID 130 appliance.
   b. Configure the FortiGate as an agent host on the RSA ACE/Server.
3. Configure the RADIUS server in FortiOS.
4. Create a SecurID user group.
5. Create a SecurID user.
6. Configure authentication with SecurID.

The following instructions are based on RSA ACE/Server 5.1 and RSA SecurID 130 appliance. They assume that you have successfully completed all external RSA and RADIUS server configuration.

In this example, the RSA server is on the internal network and has an IP address of 192.128.100.000. The FortiOS internal interface address is 192.168.100.3. The RADIUS shared secret is fortinet123, and the RADIUS server is at IP address 192.168.100.202.

To configure the RSA SecurID 130 appliance:

1. Log on to the SecurID IMS console.
2. Go to *RADIUS* > *RADIUS clients*, then select *Add New*.

Setting	Description
RADIUS Client Basics	
Client Name	FortiGate
Associated RSA Agent	FortiGate
RADIUS Client Settings	
IP Address	Enter the FortiOS internal interface. In this example, it is 192.168.100.3.
Make / Model	Select *Standard Radius*.
Shared Secret	Enter the RADIUS shared secret. In this example, it is fortinet123.
Accounting	Leave unselected.
Client Status	Leave unselected.

3. Configure your FortiGate as a SecurID client:
4. Click *Save*.

To configure the FortiGate as an agent host on the RSA ACE/Server:

1. On the RSA ACE/Server, go to *Start* > *Programs* > *RSA ACE/Server*, then *Database Administration - Host Mode*.
2. From the *Agent Host* menu, select *Add Agent Host*.
3. Configure the following:

Setting	Description
Name	FortiGate
Network Address	Enter the FortiOS internal interface. In this example, it is 192.168.100.3.
Secondary Nodes	You can optionally enter other IP addresses that resolve to the FortiGate.

For more information, see the RSA ACE/Server documentation.

To configure the RADIUS server in FortiOS:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*, then click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Setting	Description
Name	RSA
Authentication method	Select *Default*.
Primary Server	
IP/Name	192.168.100.102. You can click *Test* to ensure the IP address is correct and that FortiOS can contact the RADIUS server.
Secret	fortinet123

3. Click *OK*.

To create a SecurID user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Setting	Description
Name	RSA_group
Type	Firewall

3. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add*, then select the RSA server.
4. Click *OK*.

To create a SecurID user:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

Setting	Description
User Type	Remote RADIUS User
Type	wloman
RADIUS Server	RSA
Contact Info	(Optional) Enter email or SMS information.
User Group	RSA_group

3. Click *Create*.

You can test the configuration by entering the `diagnose test authserver radius RSA auto wloman 111111111` command. The series of 1s is the OTP that your RSA SecurID token generates that you enter for access.

Configuring authentication with SecurID

You can use the SecurID user group in several FortiOS features that authenticate by user group:

- Security policy on page 1953
- IPsec VPN XAuth on page 1954
- PPTP VPN on page 1954
- SSL VPN

Unless stated otherwise, the following examples use default values.

Security policy

The example creates a security policy that allows HTTP, FTP, and POP3 traffic from the internal interface to WAN1. If these interfaces are not available in FortiOS, substitute other similar interfaces.

To configure a security policy with SecurID authentication:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. Configure the following:

Setting	Description
Incoming Interface	internal
Source Address	all
Source User(s)	RSA_group
Outgoing Interface	wan1
Destination Address	all
Schedule	always
Service	HTTP, FTP, POP3
Action	ACCEPT
NAT	On
Shared Shaper	If you want to limit traffic or guarantee minimum bandwidth for traffic that uses the SecurID security policy, enable and use the default shaper, guarantee-100kbps.
Log Allowed Traffic	Enable if you want to generate usage reports on traffic that this policy has authenticated.

4. Click *OK*.

IPsec VPN XAuth

In *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*, select the SecurID user group on the *Authentication* page. The SecurID user group members must enter their SecurID code to authenticate.

PPTP VPN

When configuring PPTP in the CLI, set `usrgrp` to the SecurID user group.

SSL VPN

You must map the SecurID user group to the portal that will serve SecurID users and include the SecurID user group in the security policy's *Source User(s)* field.

To map the SecurID group to an SSL VPN portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, click *Create New*.

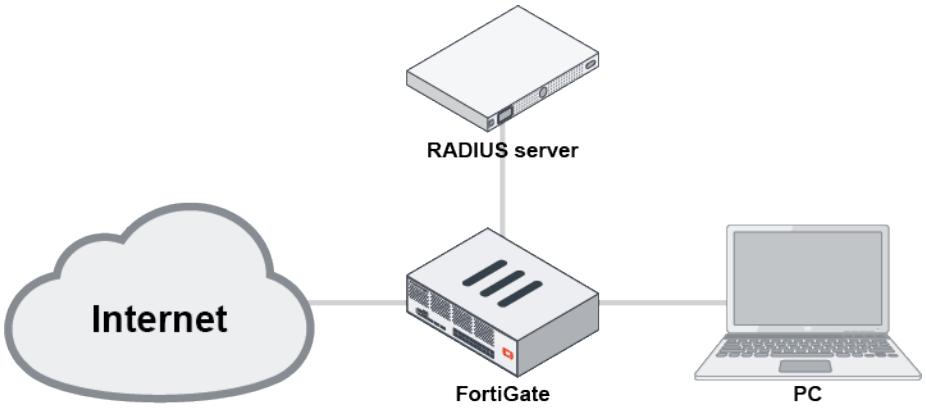
3. Configure the following:

Setting	Description
Users/Groups	RSA_group
Portal	Select the desired portal.

4. Click *OK*.

Support for Okta RADIUS attributes filter-Id and class

RADIUS user group membership information can be returned in the filter-Id (11) and class (25) attributes in RADIUS Access-Accept messages. The group membership information can be used for group matching in FortiGate user groups in firewall policies and for FortiGate wildcard administrators with remote RADIUS authentication.



In this example, a FortiAuthenticator is used as the RADIUS server. A local RADIUS user on the FortiAuthenticator is configure with two groups in the filter-Id attribute: *okta-group1* and *okta-group2*.

To create the RADIUS user and set the attribute type to override group information:

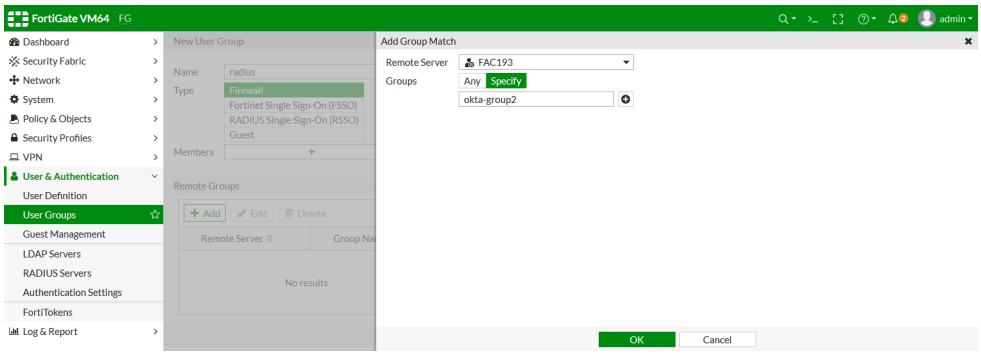
```
config user radius
    edit "FAC193"
        set server "10.1.100.189"
        set secret **********
        set group-override-attr-type filter-Id
    next
end
```

FortiOS will only use the configured filter-Id attribute, even if the RADIUS server sends group names in both class and filter-id attributes. To return group membership information from the class attribute instead, set `group-override-attr-type` to `class`.

To configure group match in the user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group, and set *Type* to *Firewall*.
4. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*.

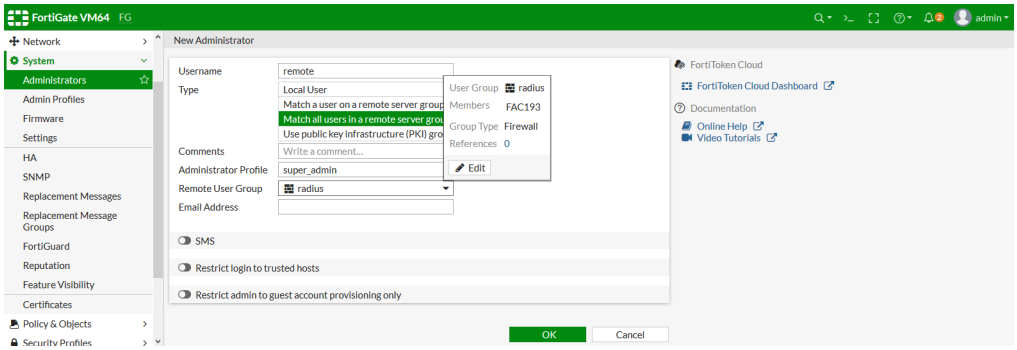
5. Set *Remote Server* to the just created RADIUS server, *FAC193*.
6. Set *Groups* to *Specify*, and enter the group name, `okta-group2`. The string must match the group name configured on the RADIUS server for the filter-Id attribute.



7. Click *OK*.
   The remote server is added to the *Remote Groups* table.
8. Click *OK*.
9. Add the new user group to a firewall policy and generate traffic on the client PC that requires firewall authentication, such as connecting to an external web server.
10. After authentication, on the FortiGate, verify that traffic is authorized in the traffic log:
    a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
    b. Verify that the traffic was authorized.

To use the remote user group with group match in a system wildcard administrator configuration:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Edit an existing administrator, or create a new one.
3. Set *Type* to *Match all users in a remote server group*.
4. Set *Remote User Group* to the remote server.



5. Configure the remaining settings as required.
6. Click *OK*.
7. Log in to the FortiGate using the remote user credentials on the RADIUS server.
   If the correct group name is returned in the filter-Id attribute, administrative access is allowed.

Sending multiple RADIUS attribute values in a single RADIUS Access-Request

A managed FortiSwitch can be configured to send multiple RADIUS attribute values in a single RADIUS Access-Request. This option is configured per RADIUS user, and is set to `none` by default.

The available service type options are:

login	User should be connected to a host.
framed	User use Framed Protocol.
callback-login	User disconnected and called back.
callback-framed	User disconnected and called back, then a Framed Protocol.
outbound	User granted access to outgoing devices.
administrative	User granted access to the administrative unsigned interface.
nas-prompt	User provided a command prompt on the NAS.
authenticate-only	Authentication requested, and no authentication information needs to be returned.
callback-nas-prompt	User disconnected and called back, then provided a command prompt.
call-check	Used by the NAS in an Access-Request packet, Access-Accept to answer the call.
callback-administrative	User disconnected and called back, granted access to the admin unsigned interface.

To configure a managed FortiSwitch to the RADIUS attributes login, framed, and authenticate-only all at the same time:

```
config user radius
    edit "Radius_Server"
        set switch-controller-service-type login framed authenticate-only
        ....
    next
end
```

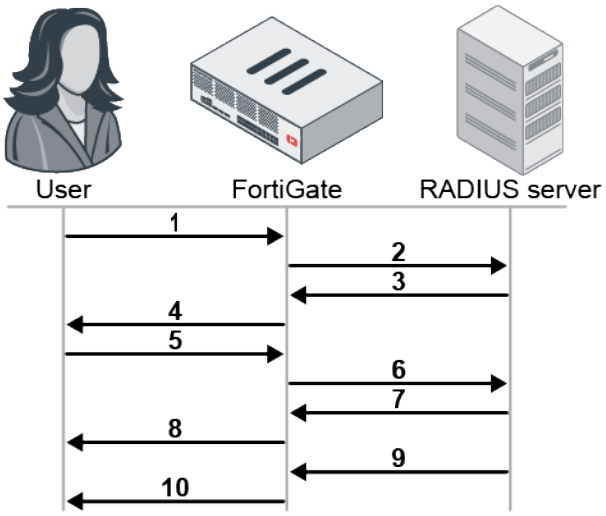
Traffic shaping based on dynamic RADIUS VSAs

A FortiGate can use the WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down and WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up dynamic RADIUS VSAs (vendor-specific attributes) to control the traffic rates permitted for a certain device. The FortiGate can apply different traffic shaping to different users who authenticate with RADIUS based on the returned RADIUS VSA values. When the same user logs in from an additional device, the RADIUS server will send a CoA (change of authorization) message to update the bandwidth values to 1/*N* of the total values, where *N* is the number of logged in devices from the same user.



This feature is not supported on NP hardware. NP offloading is automatically disabled on the policy if this feature is enabled.

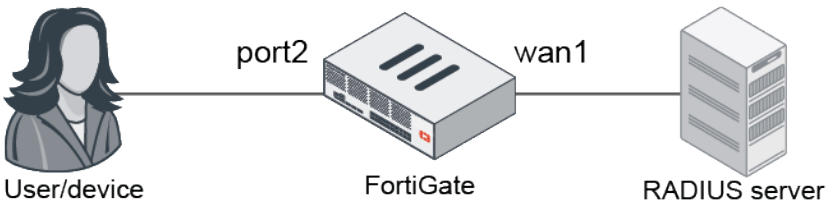
When a user logs in to two devices through RADIUS authentication. The authentication and authorization flow is as follows:



1. The user logs in to a device and the authentication is sent to the FortiGate.
2. The FortiGate sends the Access-Request message to the RADIUS server.
3. The RADIUS server sends the Access-Accept message to the FortiGate. The server also returns the WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up and WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down VSAs.
4. Based on the VSA values, the FortiGate applies traffic shaping for the upload and download speeds based on its IP.
5. The user logs in to a second device and the authentication is sent to the FortiGate.
6. The FortiGate sends the Access-Request message to the RADIUS server.
7. The RADIUS server sends the Access-Accept message to the FortiGate. The server also returns the WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up and WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down VSAs at half the value from the first device.
8. Based on the VSA values, the FortiGate applies traffic shaping for the upload and download speeds on the second device based on its IP.
9. The RADIUS server sends a CoA message and returns WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up and WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down VSAs for the first device at half the value.
10. Based on the VSA values, the FortiGate updates traffic shaping for the upload and download speeds on the first device based on its IP.

Example

In this example, the FortiGate is configured to dynamically shape user traffic based on the WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up and WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down VSAs returned by the RADIUS server when the user logs in through firewall authentication.



To configure traffic shaping based on dynamic RADIUS VSAs:

1. Configure the RADIUS server users file to identify WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up and WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down:



The WISPr-Bandwidth is measured in bps, and the FortiOS dynamic shaper is measured in Bps.

```
WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Up = 1004857,
WISPr-Bandwidth-Max-Down = 504857,
```

2. In FortiOS, configure the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
    edit "rad1"
        set server "172.16.200.44"
        set secret ************
        set radius-coa enable
        set acct-all-servers enable
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server "172.16.200.44"
                set secret ************
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure the RADIUS user group:

```
config user group
    edit "group_radius"
        set member "rad1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure the firewall policy with dynamic shaping and the RADIUS group:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set srcaddr6 "all6"
        set dstaddr6 "all6"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set dynamic-shaping enable
        set groups "group_radius"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Verification

After a client PC is authenticated by the RADIUS server, dynamic shaping is applied to the client based on the IP address.

Use the following commands to monitor the dynamic shaper:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper dynamic-shaper stats
```

```
# diagnose firewall shaper dynamic-shaper list {ip | ipv6 | user} <address or username>
```

Use case 1

User1 is paying for rate plan A that limits their maximum bandwidth to 10 Mbps download and 5 Mbps upload. User2 is paying for rate plan B that limits their maximum bandwidth to 5 Mbps download and 5 Mbps upload. The speeds in both plans are provided by best effort, so there is no guaranteed minimum bandwidth.

User1 logs in to pc1 with RADIUS authentication and IP-based dynamic shaping is applied. User2 logs in to pc2 with RADIUS authentication and IP-based dynamic shaping is applied.

To verify the dynamic shaping:

1. On pc1, verify the bandwidth and transfer speed:

```
root@pc1:~# iperf -c 172.16.200.44 -u -t 25 -b 20M
------------------------------------------------------------
Client connecting to 172.16.200.44, UDP port 5001
Sending 1470 byte datagrams
UDP buffer size:  208 KByte (default)
------------------------------------------------------------
[  3] local 10.1.100.11 port 50510 connected with 172.16.200.44 port 5001
[ ID] Interval       Transfer     Bandwidth
[  3]  0.0-25.0 sec  59.6 MBytes  20.0 Mbits/sec
[  3] Sent 42518 datagrams
[  3] Server Report:
[  3]  0.0-25.3 sec  30.1 MBytes  9.99 Mbits/sec  15.651 ms 21058/42518 (50%)
```

2. On pc2, verify the bandwidth and transfer speed:

```
root@pc2:~# iperf -c 172.16.200.44 -u -t 25 -b 20M
------------------------------------------------------------
Client connecting to 172.16.200.44, UDP port 5001
Sending 1470 byte datagrams
UDP buffer size:  208 KByte (default)
------------------------------------------------------------
[  3] local 10.1.100.22 port 52814 connected with 172.16.200.44 port 5001
[ ID] Interval       Transfer     Bandwidth
[  3]  0.0-25.0 sec  59.6 MBytes  20.0 Mbits/sec
[  3] Sent 42518 datagrams
[  3] Server Report:
[  3]  0.0-25.3 sec  15.1 MBytes  5.03 Mbits/sec  15.652 ms 31710/42514 (75%)
```

3. In FortiOS, check the authentication list:

```
# diagnose firewall auth  list
10.1.100.11, test-shaper1
        src_mac: **:**:**:**:**:**
```

```
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 38, idled: 16
        expire: 562
        flag(814): hard radius no_idle
        server: rad1
        packets: in 8207 out 3999, bytes: in 12306164 out 226963
        group_id: 3
        group_name: group_radius
10.1.100.22, test-shaper2
        src_mac: **:**:**:**:**:**
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 24, idled: 24
        expire: 156, max-life: 35976
        flag(814): hard radius no_idle
        server: rad1
        packets: in 0 out 5, bytes: in 0 out 300
        group_id: 3
        group_name: group_radius
----- 2 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

4. Check the dynamic shaper list:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper dynamic-shaper list
addr: 10.1.100.11
bandwidth(original/reply): 1250000 Bps/625000 Bps
current bandwidth(original/reply): 1237072 Bps/0 Bps
allow packets(original/reply): 38524/14
allow bytes(original/reply): 55270378/11285
drop packets(original/reply): 10136/0
drop bytes(original/reply): 13516198/0
life: 441
idle: 0/40
idle time limit: 600 s

addr: 10.1.100.22
bandwidth(original/reply): 625000 Bps/625000 Bps
current bandwidth(original/reply): 622909 Bps/0 Bps
allow packets(original/reply): 3232/3
allow bytes(original/reply): 4841536/243
drop packets(original/reply): 2753/0
drop bytes(original/reply): 4123994/0
life: 10
idle: 0/10
idle time limit: 36000 s
```

5. Check the session list:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=05 duration=3 expire=116 timeout=3600 flags=00000004
socktype=4 sockport=10001 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/0
state=redir log local may_dirty auth dst-vis f00 dynamic_shaping
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=0/0/0 reply=638/4/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 185/1
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=20->17/17->20 gwy=172.16.200.44/0.0.0.0
hook=pre dir=org act=noop 10.1.100.22:35561->172.16.200.44:80(0.0.0.0:0)
```

```
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 172.16.200.44:80->10.1.100.22:35561(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=**:**:**:**:**:**  dst_mac=**:**:**:**:**:**
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=1
serial=0005994d tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x000001 no_offload
no_ofld_reason:  redir-to-av auth disabled-by-policy

session info: proto=6 proto_state=05 duration=122 expire=38 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
user=test-shaper1 auth_server=rad1 state=log may_dirty authed f00 dynamic_shaping acct-
ext
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=383611/6604/1 reply=26382470/17592/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=20->17/17->20 gwy=172.16.200.44/10.2.2.1
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:54140->172.16.200.44:80(172.16.200.2:54140)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.44:80->172.16.200.2:54140(10.1.100.11:54140)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=**:**:**:**:**:**  dst_mac=**:**:**:**:**:**
misc=0 policy_id=2 auth_info=3 chk_client_info=0 vd=1
serial=000598c5 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
sdwan_mbr_seq=0 sdwan_service_id=0
rpdb_link_id=00000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x000001 no_offload
no_ofld_reason:  disabled-by-policy
total session 2
```

6. Check the policy traffic:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100004
policy index=2 uuid_idx=60 action=accept
flag (8052128): redir auth nat nids_raw master use_src pol_stats
flag2 (4030): fw wsso resolve_sso
flag3 (200000b0): !sp link-local best-route dynamic-shaping
schedule(always)
cos_fwd=255  cos_rev=255
group=00100004 av=00004e20 au=00000003 split=00000000
host=1 chk_client_info=0x1 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0
zone(1): 20 -> zone(1): 17
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=32,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=32,
user group(1): 3
service(1):
        [0:0x0:0/(0,65535)->(0,65535)] helper:auto
```

Use case 2

A user logs in to a device (pc1, 10.1.100.11) and has a maximum bandwidth of 10 Mbps download and 5 Mbps upload. The same user logs in to a second device (pc2, 10.1.100.22) and the RADIUS server sends a CoA request with the

WISPr-Bandwidth-Max to pc1. The maximum bandwidth on pc1 changes to 5 Mbps download and 2.5Mbps upload. On pc2, the maximum bandwidth is also 5 Mbps download and 2.5Mbps upload.

When the user logs out from pc1, the RADIUS server sends CoA request with the new WISPr-Bandwidth-Max for pc2. The FortiGate updates the authentication user list and dynamic shaper for pc2. The maximum bandwidth on pc2 changes to 10 Mbps download and 5 Mbps upload.

To verify the dynamic shaping:

1. Check the dynamic shaper list after the user logs in to pc1:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper dynamic-shaper list
addr: 10.1.100.11
bandwidth(original/reply): 1250000 Bps/625000 Bps
current bandwidth(original/reply): 0 Bps/0 Bps
allow packets(original/reply): 0/3
allow bytes(original/reply): 0/243
drop packets(original/reply): 0/0
drop bytes(original/reply): 0/0
life: 491
idle: 4/4
idle time limit: 86400 s
```

2. Check the dynamic shaper list after the user logs in to pc2:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper dynamic-shaper list
addr: 10.1.100.11
bandwidth(original/reply): 625000 Bps/312500 Bps
current bandwidth(original/reply): 0 Bps/0 Bps
allow packets(original/reply): 0/0
allow bytes(original/reply): 0/0
drop packets(original/reply): 0/0
drop bytes(original/reply): 0/0
life: 652
idle: 5/5
idle time limit: 600 s

addr: 10.1.100.22
bandwidth(original/reply): 625000 Bps/312500 Bps
current bandwidth(original/reply): 0 Bps/0 Bps
allow packets(original/reply): 0/3
allow bytes(original/reply): 0/243
drop packets(original/reply): 0/0
drop bytes(original/reply): 0/0
life: 3
idle: 3/3
idle time limit: 86400 s
```

3. Check the authentication list:

```
# diagnose firewall auth list
10.1.100.11, test
        src_mac: **:**:**:**:**:**
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 171, idled: 11
        expire: 589, max-life: 589
        flag(814): hard radius no_idle
        server: rad1
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
```

```
        group_id: 15
        group_name: group_radius
10.1.100.22, test
        src_mac: **:**:**:**:**:**
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 9, idled: 9
        expire: 86391
        flag(814): hard radius no_idle
        server: rad1
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 15
        group_name: group_radius
----- 2 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

4. Check the dynamic shaper list after the user logs out from pc1:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper dynamic-shaper list
addr: 10.1.100.22
bandwidth(original/reply): 1250000 Bps/625000 Bps
current bandwidth(original/reply): 0 Bps/0 Bps
allow packets(original/reply): 0/0
allow bytes(original/reply): 0/0
drop packets(original/reply): 0/0
drop bytes(original/reply): 0/0
life: 414
idle: 9/9
idle time limit: 600 s
```

5. Check the authentication list again:

```
# diagnose firewall auth  list
10.1.100.22, test
        src_mac: **:**:**:**:**:**
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 453, idled: 49
        expire: 551, max-life: 551
        flag(814): hard radius no_idle
        server: rad1
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 15
        group_name: group_radius
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

TACACS+ servers

TACACS+ is a remote authentication protocol that provides access control for routers, network access servers, and other network devices through one or more centralized servers.

FortiOS sends the following proprietary TACACS+ attributes to the TACACS+ server during authorization requests:

Attribute	Description
service=<name>	User must be authorized to access the specified service.
memberof	Group that the user belongs to.
admin_prof	Administrator profile (admin access only).



Only `memberof` and `admin_prof` attributes are parsed in authentication replies.

You can configure up to ten remote TACACS+ servers in FortiOS. You must configure at least one server before you can configure remote users.



A TACACS+ server must first be added in the CLI to make the option visible in the GUI.

To configure TACACS+ authentication in the CLI:

1. Configure the TACACS+ server entry:

```
config user tacacs+
    edit "TACACS-SERVER"
        set server <IP address>
        set key <string>
        set authen-type ascii
        set source-ip <IP address>
    next
end
```

2. Configure the remote user group:

```
config user group
    edit "TACACS-GROUP"
        set group-type firewall
        set member "TACACS-SERVER"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the remote user:

```
config system admin
    edit TACACS-USER
        set remote-auth enable
        set accprofile "super_admin"
        set vdom "root"
        set wildcard enable
        set remote-group "TACACS-GROUP"
    next
end
```

To configure a TACACS+ server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *TACACS+ Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. Configure the following settings:

Name	Enter the TACACS+ server name.
Authentication Type	Select the authentication type used for the TACACS+ server. Selecting *Auto* tries PAP, MSCHAP, and CHAP, in that order.
Server IP/Name	Enter the domain name or IP address for the primary server.
Server Secret	Enter the key to access the primary server.

4. Click *OK*.

SAML

The following topics provide information about SAML:

- Outbound firewall authentication for a SAML user on page 1966
- SAML SP for VPN authentication on page 1968
- Outbound firewall authentication with Azure AD as a SAML IdP on page 1970

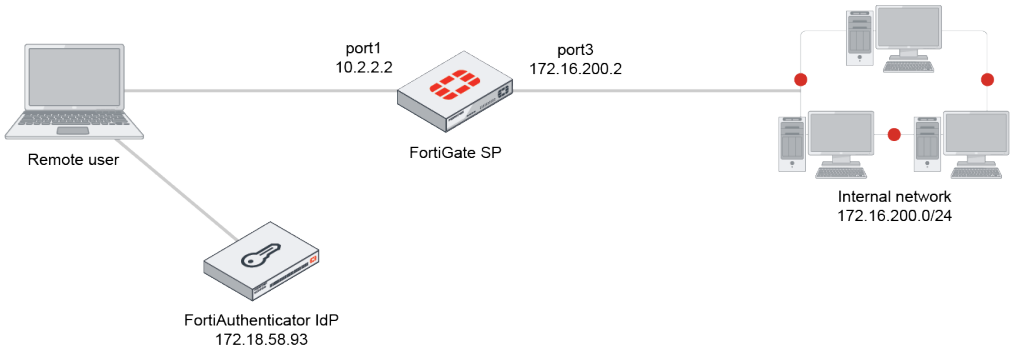
Outbound firewall authentication for a SAML user

When you configure a FortiGate as a service provider (SP), you can create an authentication profile that uses SAML for firewall authentication.



You must use the identity provider's (IdP) remote certificate on the SPs.

The following example uses a FortiGate as an SP and FortiAuthenticator as the IdP server:



To configure firewall authentication:

1. Configure the FortiGate SP to be a SAML user:

```
config user saml
    edit "fac-firewall"
        set entity-id "http://10.2.2.2:1000/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.2.2.2:1003/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.2.2.2:1003/saml/logout/"
        set idp-entity-id "http://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/bbbbbb/metadata/"
        set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/bbbbbb/login/"
        set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/bbbbbb/logout/"
        set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_3"
        set user-name "username"
        set group-name "group"
    next
end
```

2. Add the SAML user to the user group (optionally, you can configure group matching):

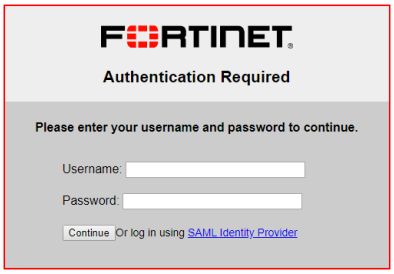
```
config user group
    edit "saml_firewall"
        set member "fac-firewall"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "fac-firewall"
                set group-name "user_group1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Add the SAML user group to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc4"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set groups "saml_firewall" "group_local"
        set users "first"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the FortiAuthenticator IdP as needed.

5. Run HTTP/HTTPS authentication for a remote user. The SAML login page appears:



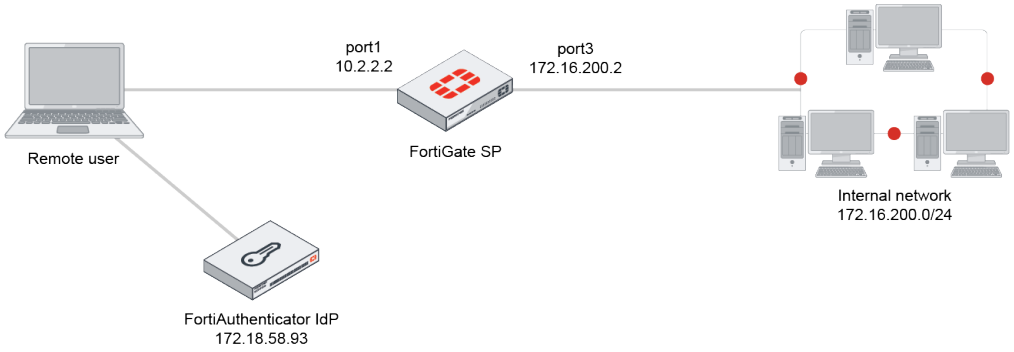
SAML SP for VPN authentication

When you configure a FortiGate as a service provider (SP), you can create an authentication profile that uses SAML for SSL VPN web portal authentication.

You can use SAML with FortiClient for SSL VPN tunnel authentication. The following licensed versions are required for this functionality:

- FortiClient (Windows) 6.4.0
- FortiClient (macOS) 6.4.1
- FortiClient (Linux) 6.4.1

The following example uses a FortiGate as an SP and FortiAuthenticator as the IdP server:



To configure SSL VPN web portal authentication:

1. Configure the FortiGate SP to be a SAML user:

```
config user saml
    edit "fac-sslvpn"
        set entity-id "https://10.2.2.2:10443/remote/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.2.2.2:10443/remote/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.2.2.2:10443/remote/saml/logout/"
        set idp-entity-id "http://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/ssssss/metadata/"
        set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/ssssss/login/"
        set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/ssssss/logout/"
        set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_3"
        set user-name "username"
    next
end
```

2. Add the SAML user to the user group (group matching may also be configured):

```
config user group
    edit "saml_sslvpn"
        set member "fac-sslvpn"
    next
end
```

3. Configure SSL VPN:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port3"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "saml_sslvpn"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

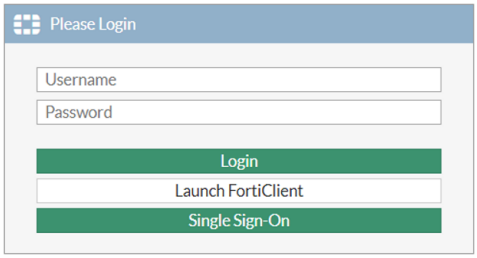
4. Add the SAML user group to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 8
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set groups "local" "saml_sslvpn"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure the FortiAuthenticator IdP as needed.

To connect from the SSL VPN web portal:

1. In a web browser, enter the portal address. The SAML login page appears:

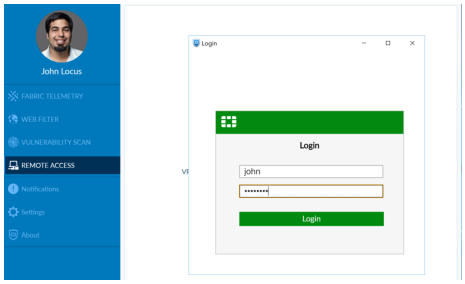


2. Enter the user name and password.

3. Click *Login*, or if SSO has been configured, click *Single-Sign-On*.
   Once authenticated, the web portal opens.

To connect from SSL VPN tunnel mode with FortiClient:

1. In FortiClient, click the *Remote Access* tab, and from the *VPN Name* dropdown, select the desired VPN tunnel.
2. Click *SAML Login*.
3. FortiClient displays an IdP authorization page in an embedded browser window. Enter the user name and password.
4. Click *Login*.

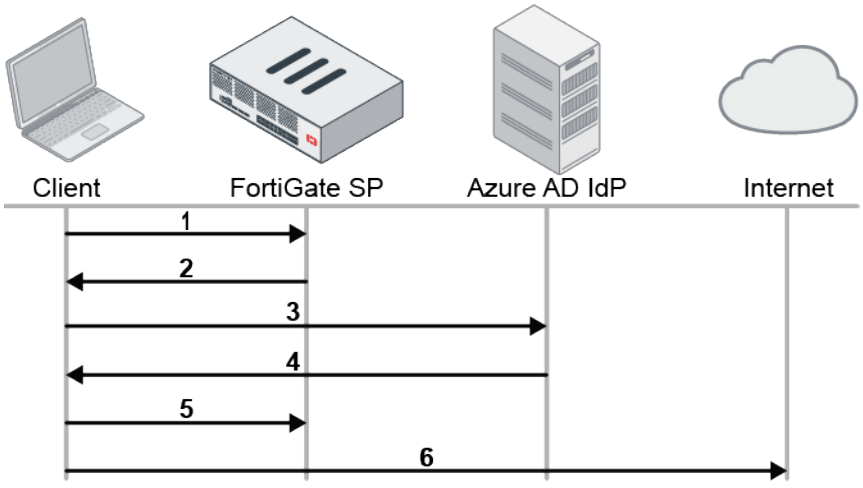


Once authenticated, FortiClient establishes the SSL VPN tunnel.

Outbound firewall authentication with Azure AD as a SAML IdP

In this example, users are managed through Microsoft Azure Active Directory (AD). The FortiGate is configured for SSO firewall authentication for outbound traffic, with authentication performed by the Azure AD as a SAML identity provider (IdP).

The SAML interaction occurs as follows:

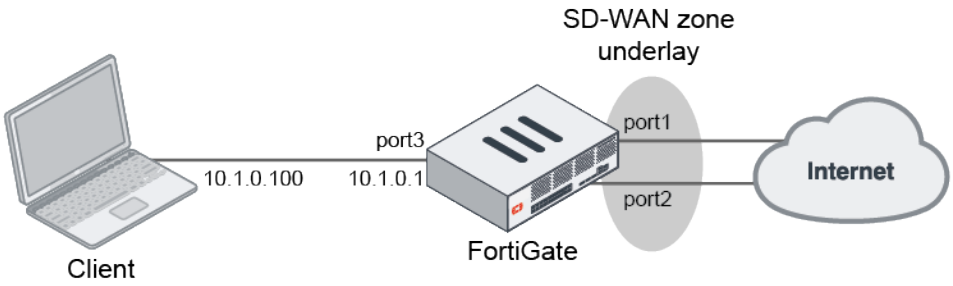


1. The user initiates web traffic to the internet.
2. The FortiGate redirects to the local captive portal port (default is 1003), then redirects the user to the SAML IdP.
3. The user connects to the Microsoft log in page for the SAML authentication request.
4. The SAML IdP sends the SAML assertion containing the user and group.
5. The browser forwards the SAML assertion to the SAML SP.
6. If the user and group are allowed by the FortiGate, the user is allowed to access the internet.

In this example environment, a user is added in the Azure AD belonging to the security group called Firewall.

- Username: John Locus
- User login: jlocus@azure.kldocs.com
- Group: Firewall (ID 62b699ce-4f80-48c0-846e-c1dfde2dc667)

The goal is to allow users in the Firewall group to access the internet after passing firewall authentication.



Configuring the Azure AD

The following Azure AD configuration demonstrates how to add the FortiGate as an enterprise non-gallery application. This application provides SAML SSO connectivity to the Azure AD IdP. Some steps are performed concurrently on the FortiGate.

This example is configured with an Azure AD free-tier directory. There may be limitations to managing users in Azure in this tier that are not limited in other tiers. Consult the Microsoft Azure AD documentation for more information.

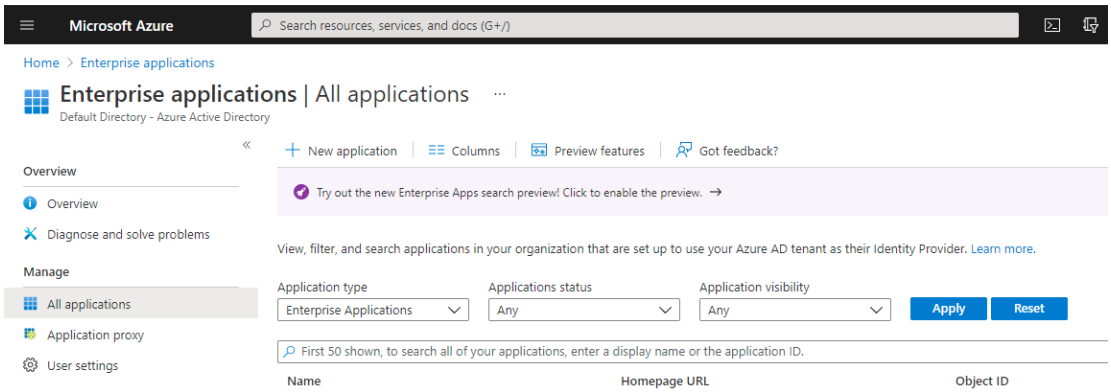
There are three steps to configure the Azure AD:

1. Create a new enterprise application.
2. Configure the SAML SSO settings on the application and FortiGate.
3. Assign Azure AD users and groups to the application.

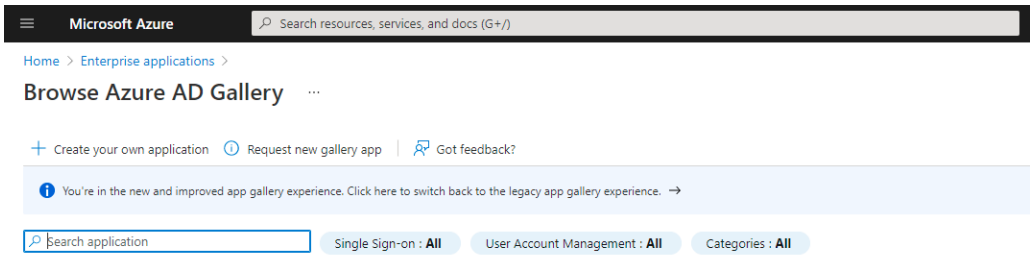
To create a new enterprise application:

1. Log in to the Azure portal.
2. In the Azure portal menu, click *Azure Active Directory*.
3. In the left-side menu go *Manage* > *Enterprise applications*.

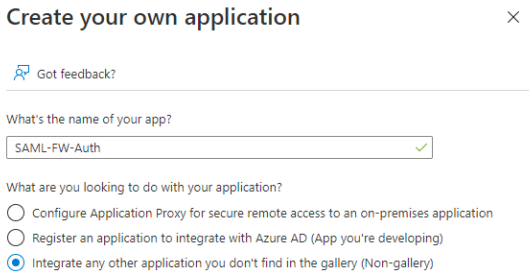
4. Click *New application*.



5. Click *Create your own application*.



6. Enter a name for the application (*SAML-FW-Auth*) and select *Integrate any other application you don't find in the gallery (Non-gallery)*.



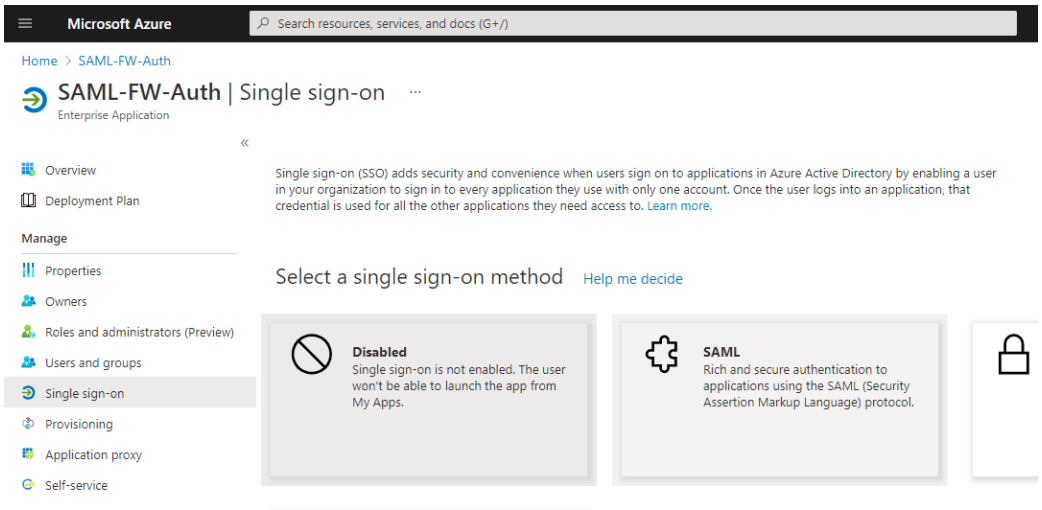
7. Click *Create*.

To configure the SAML SSO settings on the application and FortiGate:



This procedure requires going back and forth between Azure and the FortiGate CLI. Leave the FortiGate CLI open for the entire procedure.

1. On the *Enterprise Application Overview* page, go to *Manage* > *Single sign-on* and select *SAML* as the single sign-on method.



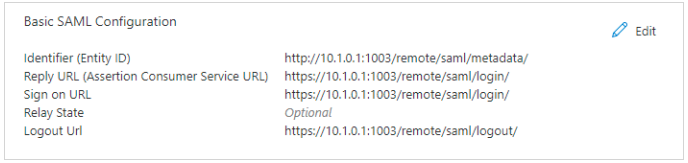
2. The *Basic SAML Configuration* section in Azure describes the SAML SP entity and links that Azure will reference. Configure these settings on the FortiGate by creating a new SAML server object and defining the three SP URLs manually. The SP (IP or FQDN) addresses should be accessible by the user who is authenticating against the firewall. The port used should match the port used by the FortiGate firewall authentication captive portal. By default, this is port 1003 for HTTPS. A captive portal does not need to be configured separately. The URLs in this example use a standard convention:

```
config user saml
    edit "Azure-AD-SAML"
        set entity-id "http://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/logout/"
    next
end
```

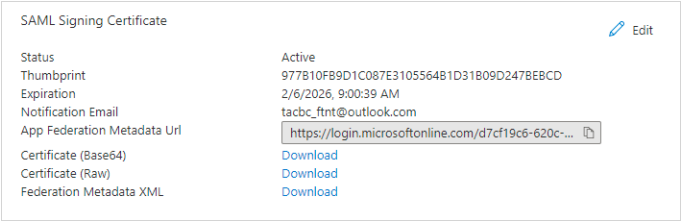
3. In Azure on the *Set up Single Sign-On with SAML* page, copy the following URLs from the FortiGate to the *Basic SAML Configuration* section:

From FortiGate	To Azure field
SP entity ID (`http://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/metadata/`)	*Identifier (Entity ID)*, set to *Default*
SP single sign-on URL (`https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/login/`)	*Reply URL* and *Sign on URL*
SP single logout URL (`https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/logout/`)	*Logout URL*

4. Click *Save*.



5. Under the *SAML Signing Certificate* section, download the Base64 certificate.

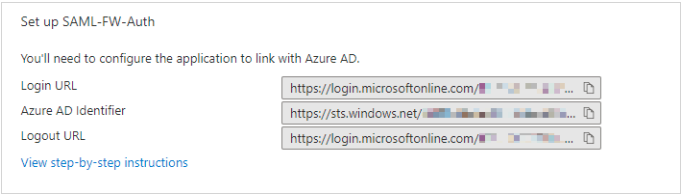


6. Import the certificate from Azure on the FortiGate as the IdP certificate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and click *Import* > *Remote Certificate*.
   b. Upload the certificate from Azure and click *OK*. The new certificate appears under the *Remote Certificate* section with the name *REMOTE_Cert_(N)*.
   c. Optionally, rename the certificate in the CLI to give it a more recognizable name:

```
config vpn certificate remote
    rename REMOTE_Cert_3 to AZURE-IdP-Cert
end
```

7. In the *Set up <application name>* section, copy the URLs from Azure to the FortiGate by editing the SAML server object and adding the imported IdP certificate:

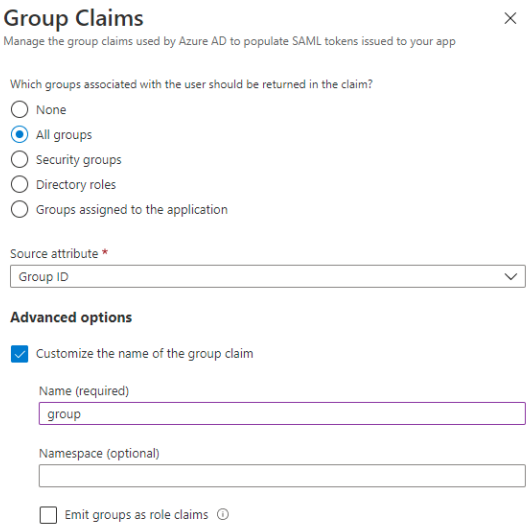
From Azure	To FortiGate setting
Azure AD Identifier	`idp-entity-id`
Login URL/*Logout URL*	`idp-single-sign-on-url`




```
config user saml
    edit "Azure-AD-SAML"
        set entity-id "http://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/logout/"
        set idp-entity-id "https://sts.windows.net/********-****-****-****-
************/"
        set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://login.microsoftonline.com/********-****-
****-****-************/saml2"
        set idp-cert "AZURE-IdP-Cert"
    next
end
```

8. In Azure, edit the *User Attributes & Claims* section. The attributes are returned in the SAML assertion, which the FortiGate uses to verify the user and group. Configuring group matching is optional.
   a. Click *Add new claim*, name it *username*, and set the *Source attribute* to *user.displayname*. The source attribute can be any of the related username fields. The value of the username returned to the FortiGate will be used in logs and monitors to identify the user.
   b. Click *Save*.
   c. Click *Add a group claim* and in the *Group Claims* pane, select *All groups*.

d. In *Advanced Options*, select *Customize the name of the group claim*. Set the name to *group*.



e. Click *Save*. The *User Attributes & Claims* section displays the update settings.



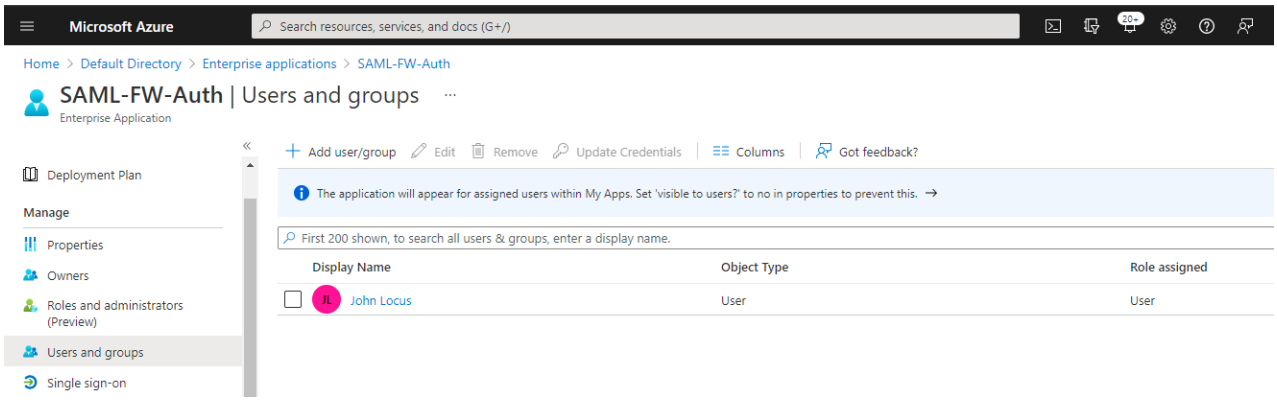
9. On the FortiGate, update the SAML server object with the username and group created in Azure:

```
config user saml
    edit "Azure-AD-SAML"
        set entity-id "http://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.1.0.1:1003/remote/saml/logout/"
        set idp-entity-id "https://sts.windows.net/********-****-****-****-
************/"
        set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://login.microsoftonline.com/********-****-
****-****-************/saml2"
        set idp-cert "AZURE-IdP-Cert"
        set user-name "username"
        set group-name "group"
        set digest-method sha1
    next
end
```

To assign Azure AD users and groups to the application:

1. In Azure, go to *Manage* > *Users and groups* and click *Add user/group*.
2. Click *Users* to select the users or groups (*John Locus* is selected in this example).

3. Click *Assign* to add the assignment.



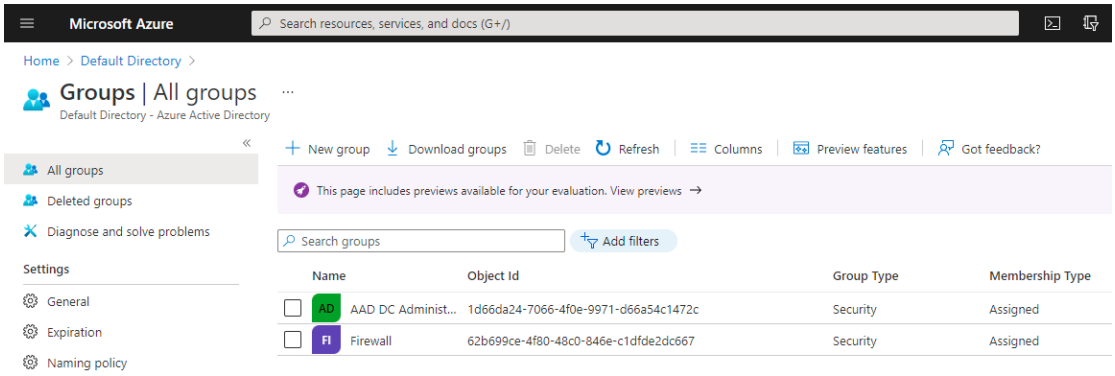
Configuring the FortiGate

The user group, user authentication settings, and firewall policies must be configured on the FortiGate.

Configuring the user group

A user group named *Azure-FW-Auth* is created with the member *Azure-AD-SAML*.

Configuring group matching is optional, and the *Object ID* from Azure is needed for the `config match` settings. In the Azure default directory, go to *Manage* > *Groups* and locate the *Object ID* for the *Firewall* group.



To configure the user group:

```
config user group
    edit "Azure-FW-Auth"
        set member "Azure-AD-SAML"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "Azure-AD-SAML"
                set group-name "62b699ce-4f80-48c0-846e-c1dfde2dc667"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Configuring the user authentication setting

When a user initiates traffic, the FortiGate will redirect the user to the firewall authentication captive portal before redirecting them to the SAML IdP portal. After the SAML IdP responds with the SAML assertion, the user is again redirected to the firewall authentication captive portal. If the firewall portal's certificate is not trusted by the user, they will receive a certificate warning. Use a custom certificate that the user trusts to avoid the certificate warning.

To configure a custom certificate:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *Authentication Settings*.
2. For *Certificate*, select the custom certificate. The custom certificate's SAN field should have the FQDN or IP from the SP URL.

Alternatively, assigning a CA certificate allows the FortiGate to automatically generate and sign a certificate for the portal page. This will override any assigned server certificate. In this example, the built-in Fortinet_CA_SSL is used.

To assign a CA certificate:

1. Edit the user setting:

```
config user setting
    set auth-ca-cert "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
end
```

2. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and download the certificate.
3. Install the certificate into the client's certificate store.

Configuring the firewall policies

Firewall policies must be configured to apply user authentication and still allow users behind the FortiGate to access the Microsoft log in portal without authentication.

To configure the firewall policies:

1. Configure a policy to allow traffic to the Microsoft Azure internet service:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Enter the following:

Name	*LAN-to-AuthPortal*
Incoming Interface	*port3*
Outgoing Interface	*Underlay*
Source	*all*
Destination	*Microsoft-Azure* (under *Internet Service*)
Schedule	*always*
Service	*ALL*
Action	*ACCEPT*
NAT	Enable and select *NAT*.
Log Allowed Traffic	Enable and select *All Sessions*.

c. Configure the other settings as needed.
d. Click *OK*.

2. Configure a policy to apply user authentication:
   a. Click *Create New* and enter the following:

Name	*LAN-auth-policy*
Incoming Interface	*port3*
Outgoing Interface	*Underlay*
Source	*all*, *Azure-FW-Auth*
Destination	*all*
Schedule	*always*
Service	*ALL*
Action	*ACCEPT*
NAT	Enable and select *NAT*.
Log Allowed Traffic	Enable and select *All Sessions*.

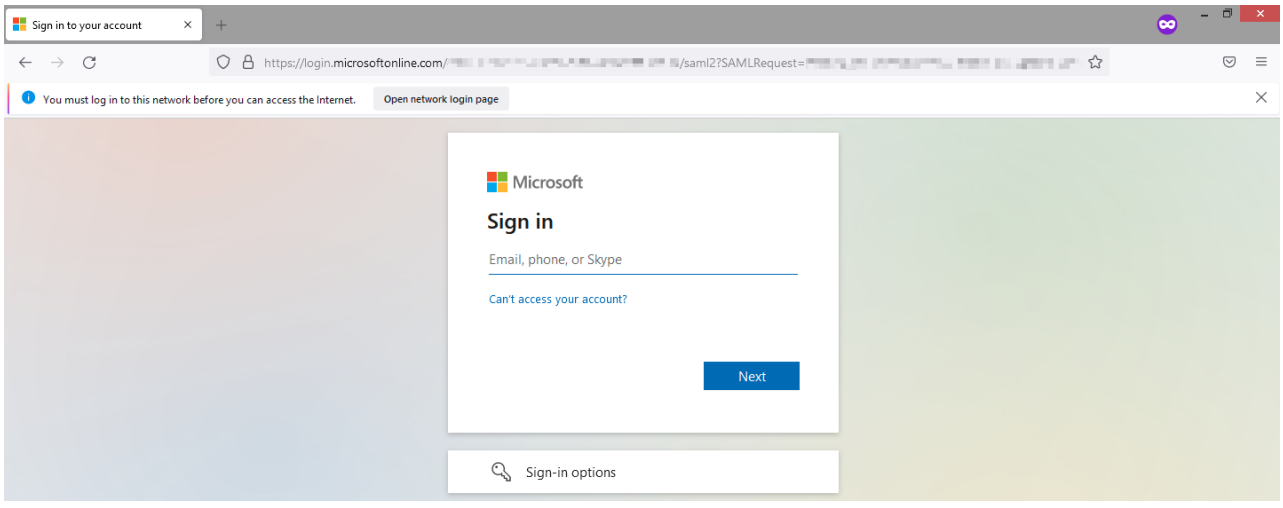
   b. Configure the other settings as needed.
   c. Click *OK*.

Connecting from the client

When the client connects to the internet from a browser, they will be redirected to the Microsoft log in page to authenticate against the Azure AD. The FortiGate's authentication portal certificate should be installed on the client.

To connect from the client:

1. On the client, open a browser (such as Firefox) and go to a website. The user is redirected to the Microsoft log in page.
2. Enter the user credentials.



3. If the log in attempt is successful, the user is allowed to access the internet

Viewing logs and diagnostics

To verify user logins, go to the *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* > *Firewall Users* widget, or enter the following in the CLI:

```
# diagnose firewall auth list
10.1.0.100, John Locus
        src_mac: 02:09:0f:00:03:03
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 152, idled: 7
        expire: 292, allow-idle: 300
        server: Azure-AD-SAML
        packets: in 2097 out 932, bytes: in 2208241 out 143741
        group_id: 2
        group_name: Azure-FW-Auth
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

To verify user login logs, go to *Log & Report* > *Events* > *User Events*, or enter the following in the CLI:

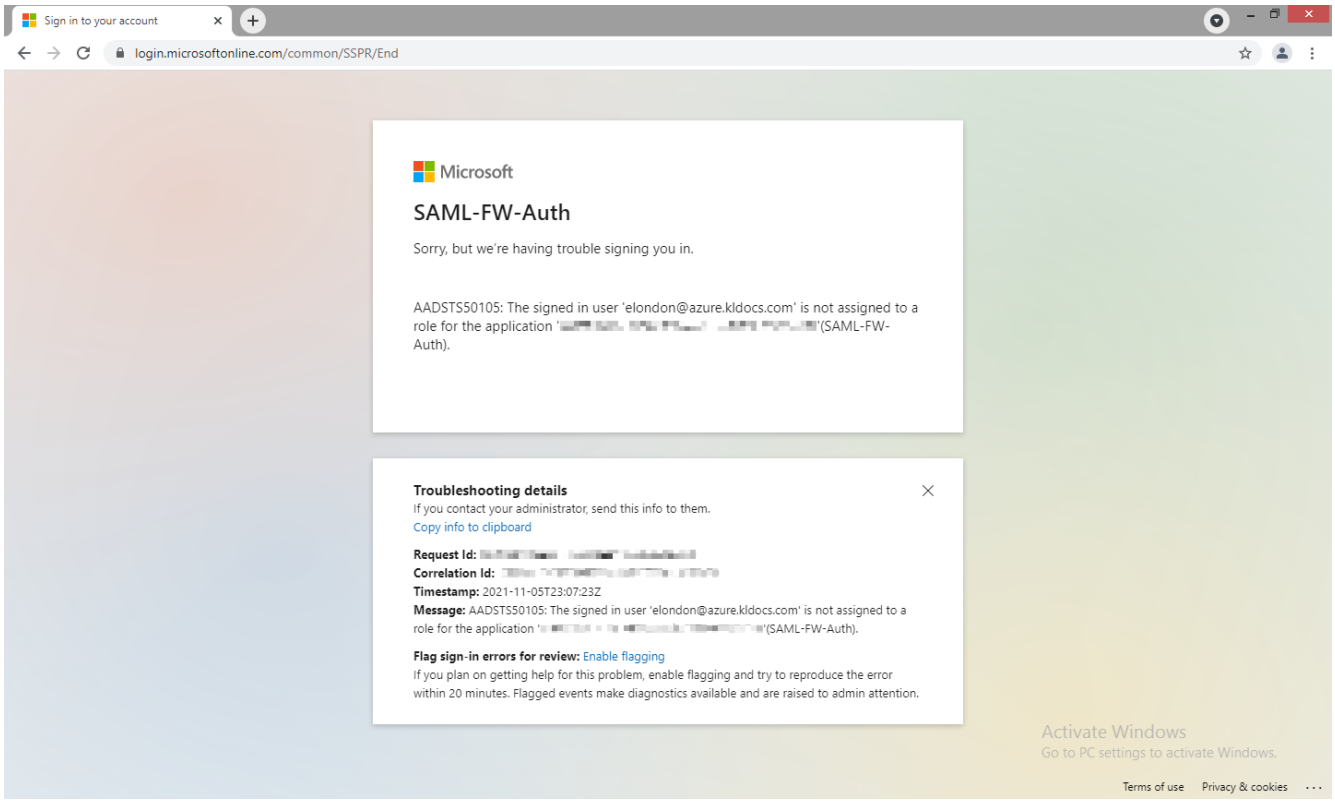
```
# execute log filter category event
# execute log filter field subtype user
# execute log display
17 logs found.
10 logs returned.
7: date=2021-09-30 time=09:49:25 eventtime=1633020565577584390 tz="-0700" logid="0102043039"
type="event" subtype="user" level="notice" vd="root" logdesc="Authentication logon"
srcip=10.1.0.100 user="John Locus" authserver="Azure-AD-SAML" action="auth-logon"
status="logon" msg="User John Locus added to auth logon"

8: date=2021-09-30 time=09:49:25 eventtime=1633020565577075629 tz="-0700" logid="0102043008"
type="event" subtype="user" level="notice" vd="root" logdesc="Authentication success"
srcip=10.1.0.100 dstip=10.1.0.1 policyid=11 interface="port3" user="John Locus"
group="Azure-FW-Auth" authproto="HTTPS(10.1.0.100)" action="authentication" status="success"
reason="N/A" msg="User John Locus succeeded in authentication"
```

If user authentication is successful in Azure AD, but their group does not match the one defined in the FortiGate user group, the user will receive a *Firewall Authentication Failed* message in the browser. A log is also recorded:

```
# execute log filter category event
# execute log filter field subtype user
# execute log display
1: date=2021-09-30 time=10:39:35 eventtime=1633023575381139214 tz="-0700" logid="0102043009"
type="event" subtype="user" level="notice" vd="root" logdesc="Authentication failed"
srcip=10.1.0.100 dstip=10.1.0.1 policyid=11 interface="port3" user="Adam Thompson"
group="N/A" authproto="HTTPS(10.1.0.100)" action="authentication" status="failure"
reason="No matched SAML user or group name in auth resp" msg="User Adam Thompson failed in
authentication"
```

If a user receives the following error message, this means the user is not assigned to the enterprise application *SAML-FW-Auth* in Azure.



To troubleshoot SAML issues:

```
# diagnose debug application samld -1
# diagnose debug enable
```

Authentication settings

You can configure general authentication settings, including timeout, protocol support, and certificates.

You cannot customize FTP and Telnet authentication replacement messages.

To configure authentication settings using the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *Authentication Settings*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Setting	Description
Authentication Timeout	Enter the desired timeout in minutes. You can enter a number between 1 and 1440 (24 hours). The authentication timeout controls how long an authenticated connection can be idle before the user must reauthenticate. The default value is 5.
Protocol Support	Select the protocols to challenge during firewall user authentication. When you enable user authentication within a security policy, the authentication challenge is normally issued for any of four protocols, depending on the connection protocol: • HTTP (you can set this to redirect to HTTPS) • HTTPS • FTP • Telnet The protocols selected here control which protocols support the authentication challenge. Users must connect with a supported protocol first so they can subsequently connect with other protocols. If HTTPS is selected as a protocol support method, it allows the user to authenticate with a customized local certificate. When you enable user authentication within a security policy, FortiOS challenges the security policy user to authenticate. For user ID and password authentication, the user must provide their username and password. For certificate authentication (HTTPS or HTTP redirected to HTTPS only), you can install customized certificates on the unit and the user can also install customized certificates on their browser. Otherwise, users see a warning message and must accept a default Fortinet certificate. The network user's web browser may deem the default certificate invalid.
Certificate	If using HTTPS protocol support, select the local certificate to use for authentication. This is available only if *HTTPS* and/or *Redirect HTTP Challenge to a Secure Channel (HTTPS)* are selected.

To configure authentication settings using the CLI:

```
config user setting
   set auth-timeout 5
   set auth-type ftp http https telnet
   set auth-cert Fortinet_Factory
end
```

FortiTokens

FortiTokens are security tokens used as part of a multi-factor authentication (MFA) system on FortiGate and FortiAuthenticator. A security token is a 6-digit or 8-digit (configurable) one-time password (OTP) that is used to authenticate one's identity electronically as a prerequisite for accessing network resources. FortiToken is available as either a mobile or a physical (hard) token. Mobile tokens can be purchased as a license, or consumed with points as part of the FortiToken Cloud service.

FortiToken Mobile and physical FortiTokens store their encryption seeds on the cloud. FortiToken Mobile seeds are generated dynamically when the token is provisioned. They are always encrypted whether in motion or at rest.

You can only register FortiTokens to a single FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator for security purposes. This prevents malicious third parties from making fraudulent requests to hijack your FortiTokens by registering them on another FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator. If re-registering a FortiToken Mobile or Hard Token on another FortiGate is required, you must contact Fortinet Customer Support.

Common usage for FortiTokens includes:

- Applying MFA to a VPN dialup user connecting to the corporate network
- Applying MFA to FortiGate administrators
- Applying MFA to firewall authentication and captive portal authentication



The MFA process commonly involves:

- **Something you know**: User password
- **Something you have**: The FortiToken OTP

A third factor of authentication is added to the authentication process:

- **Something you are**: Your fingerprint or face

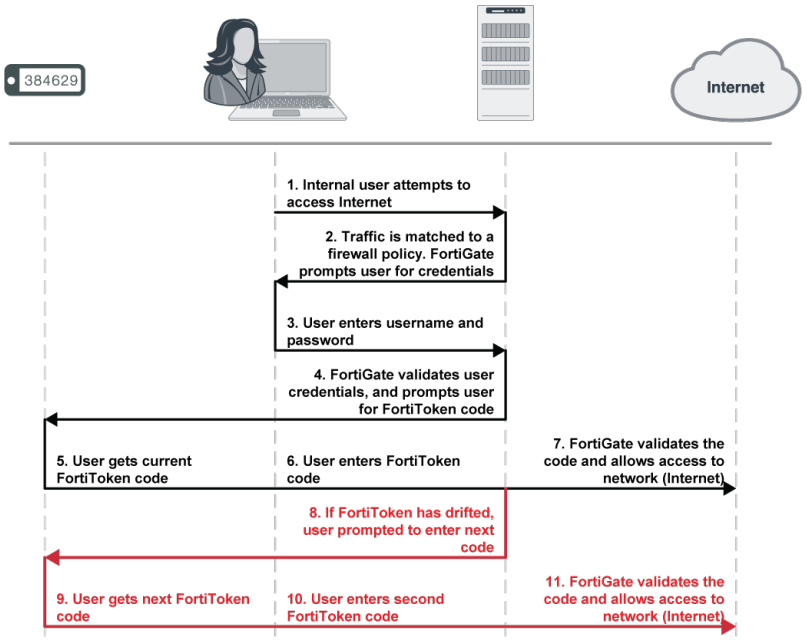
To enable the third factor, refer to the Activating FortiToken Mobile on a mobile phone on page 1986 section.

The following illustrates the FortiToken MFA process:

1. The user attempts to access a network resource.
2. FortiOS matches the traffic to an authentication security policy and prompts the user for their username and password.
3. The user enters their username and password.
4. FortiOS verifies their credentials. If valid, it prompts the user for the FortiToken code.
5. The user views the current code on their FortiToken. They enter the code at the prompt.
6. FortiOS verifies the FortiToken code. If valid, it allows the user access to network resources.

If the FortiToken has drifted, the following must take place for the FortiToken to resynchronize with FortiOS:

1. FortiOS prompts the user to enter a second code to confirm.
2. The user gets the next code from the FortiToken. They enter the code at the prompt.
3. FortiOS uses both codes to update its clock to match the FortiToken.



This section includes the following topics to quickly get started with FortiTokens:

- FortiToken Mobile quick start on page 1983
- FortiToken Cloud on page 1991
- Registering hard tokens on page 1991
- Managing FortiTokens on page 1993
- FortiToken Mobile Push on page 1995
- Troubleshooting and diagnosis on page 1997

FortiToken Mobile quick start

FortiToken Mobile is an OATH compliant, event- and time-based one-time password (OTP) generator for mobile devices. It provides an easy and flexible way to deploy and provision FortiTokens to your end users through mobile devices. FortiToken Mobile produces its OTP codes in an application that you can download onto your Android or iOS mobile device without the need for a physical token.

You can download the free FortiToken Mobile application for Android from the Google Play Store, and for iOS from the Apple App Store.

This section focuses on quickly getting started and setting up FortiToken Mobile for use on a FortiGate:

- Registering FortiToken Mobile on page 1983
- Provisioning FortiToken Mobile on page 1984
- Activating FortiToken Mobile on a mobile phone on page 1986
- Applying multi-factor authentication on page 1990

Registering FortiToken Mobile

To deploy FortiToken Mobile for your end users, you must first register the tokens on your FortiGate. After registering the tokens, you can assign them to your end users.

Each FortiGate comes with two free FortiToken Mobile tokens. These tokens should appear under *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*. If no tokens appear, you may import them. Ensure that your FortiGate is registered and has internet access to connect to the FortiToken servers to import the tokens.

To import FortiTokens from the FortiGate GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Click the *Import Free Trial Tokens* icon at the top. The two free tokens are imported.

To import FortiTokens from the FortiGate CLI:

```
# execute fortitoken-mobile import 0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
# show user fortitoken
```



If only one free token appears, you can first delete that token and then follow the procedure to import the two free tokens from either the GUI or the CLI.

If you have the FortiToken Mobile redemption certificate, you can register FortiToken Mobile on a FortiGate.

To register FortiToken Mobile from the FortiGate GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens* and click *Create New*. The *New FortiToken* dialog appears.
2. For the *Type* field, select *Mobile Token*.
3. Locate the 20-digit code on the redemption certificate and type it in the *Activation Code* field.
4. Click *OK*. The token is successfully registered.



If you attempt to add invalid FortiToken serial numbers, there is no error message. FortiOS does not add invalid serial numbers to the list.

To register FortiToken Mobile from the FortiGate CLI:

```
# execute fortitoken-mobile import <20-digit activation code>
# show user fortitoken
```



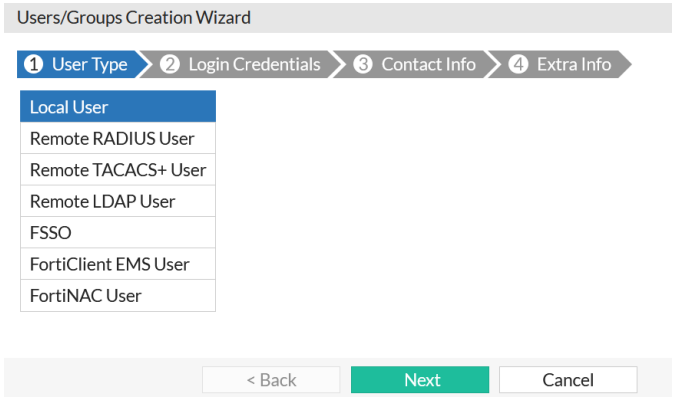
FortiToken Mobile stores its encryption seeds on the cloud. You can only register it to a single FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator.

Provisioning FortiToken Mobile

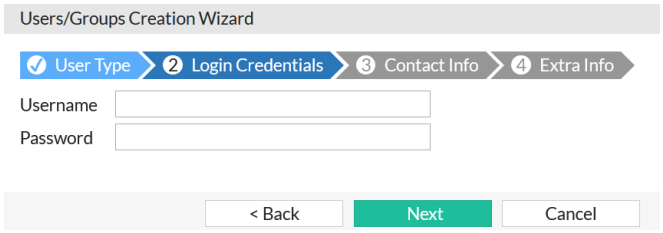
Once registered, FortiTokens need to be provisioned for users before they can be activated. In this example, you will provision a Mobile token for a local user. Similar steps can be taken to assign FortiTokens to other types of users.

To create a local user and assign a FortiToken in the FortiGate GUI:

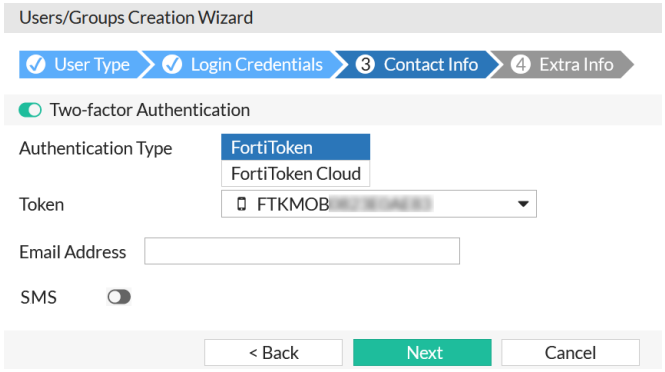
1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*, and click *Create New*. The *Users/Groups Creation Wizard* appears.
2. In the *User Type* tab, select *Local User*, and click *Next*.



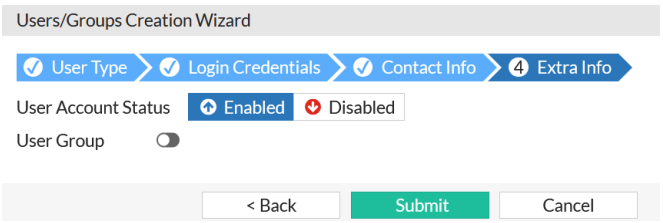
3. In the *Login Credentials* tab, enter a *Username* and *Password* for the user, and click *Next*.



4. In the *Contact Info* tab:
   a. Enable the *Two-factor Authentication* toggle.
   b. Select *FortiToken* for *Authentication Type*.
   c. Select a *Token* to assign to the user from the drop-down list.
   d. Enter the user's email address in the *Email Address* field. This is the email where the user will receive the QR code for activation of the FortiToken.
   e. Click *Next*.



5. In the *Extra Info* tab, make sure the *User Account Status* field is set to Enabled. You can also optionally assign the user to a user group by enabling the *User Group* toggle.



6. Click *Submit*. An activation code should be sent to the created user by email or SMS, depending upon the delivery method configured above.

FortiGate has the *Email Service* setting configured using the server *notifications.fortinet.net* by default. To see configuration, go to *System* > *Settings* > *Email Service*.

The activation code expires if not activated within the 3-day time period by default. However, the expiry time period is configurable.

To configure the time period (in hours) for FortiToken Mobile, using the CLI:

```
config system global
   set two-factor-ftm-expiry <1-168>
end
```

To resend the email or SMS with the activation code, refer to the Managing FortiTokens on page 1993 section.

Activating FortiToken Mobile on a mobile phone

After your system administrator provisions your token, you receive a notification with an activation code and expiry date via SMS or email. If you do not activate your token by the expiry date, you must contact your system administrator so that they can reassign your token for activation.

Platforms that support FortiToken Mobile:

Platform	Device and firmware support
iOS	iPhone, iPad, and iPod Touch with iOS 6.0 and later.
Android	Phones and tablets with Android Jellybean 4.1 and later.
Windows	Windows 10 (desktop and mobile), Windows Phone 8.1, and Windows Phone 8. FortiToken is a Windows Universal Platform (UWP) application. To download FortiToken for Windows 10 desktop and mobile platforms, see FortiToken for Windows on the Microsoft Store.

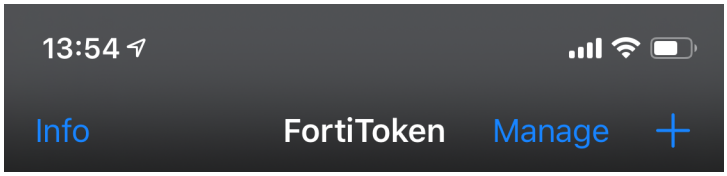
The following instructions describe procedures when using FortiToken Mobile for iOS on an iPhone. Procedures may vary depending on your device and firmware.

To activate FortiToken Mobile on iOS:

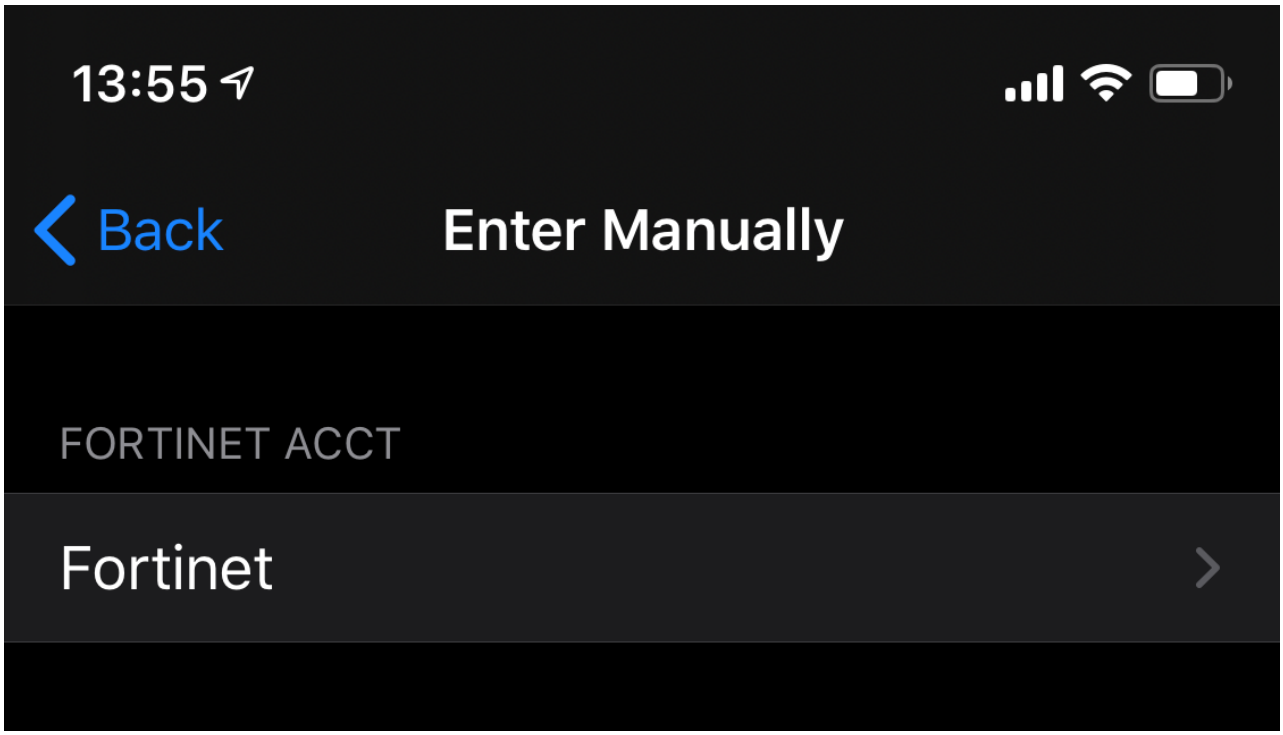
1. On your iOS device, tap on the FortiToken application icon to open the application. If this is your first time opening the application, it may prompt you to create a PIN for secure access to the application and tokens.



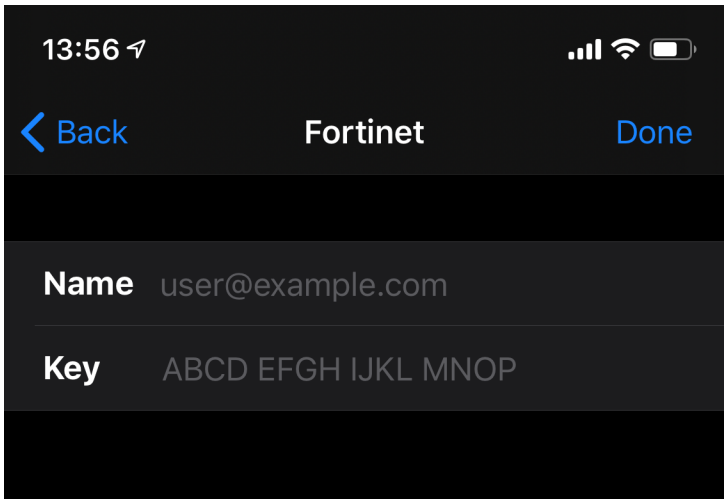
2. Tap on the + icon. The *Scan Barcode* screen appears.



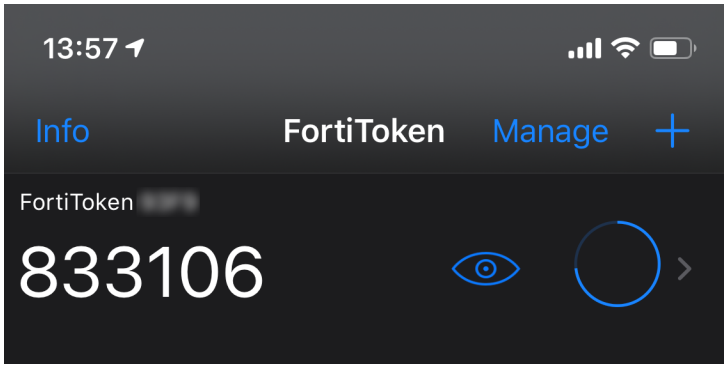
3. If you received the QR code via email, locate and scan the QR code in your email.
OR
If you received the activation key via SMS, tap on *Enter Manually* at the bottom of the screen, and tap on *Fortinet*.



Enter your email address in the *Name* field, the activation key in the *Key* field, and tap *Done*.



4. FortiToken Mobile activates your token, and starts generating OTP digits immediately. To view or hide the OTP digits, tap the eye icon.

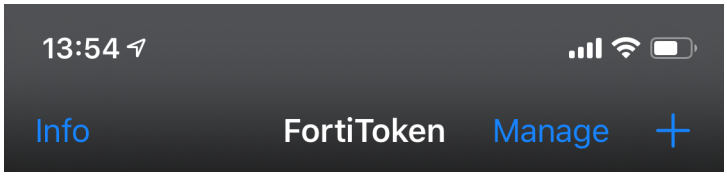


After you open the application, FortiToken Mobile generates a new 6-digit OTP every 30 seconds. All configured tokens display on the application homescreen.

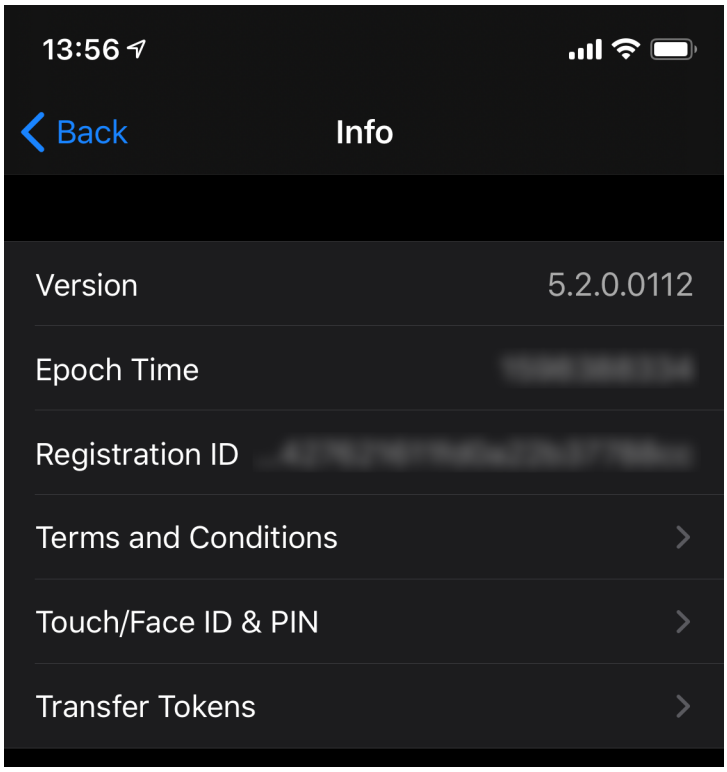
The FortiToken Mobile activation process described above caters to the MFA process that involves two factors (password and OTP) of the authentication process. A third factor (fingerprint or face) can be enabled as well.

To enable *Touch/Face ID* on iOS for FortiToken Mobile:

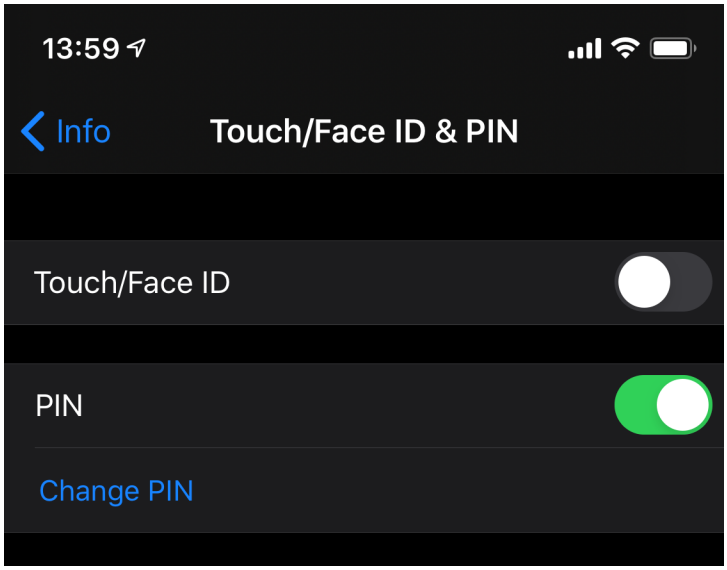
1. Open the FortiToken application and tap on *Info*.



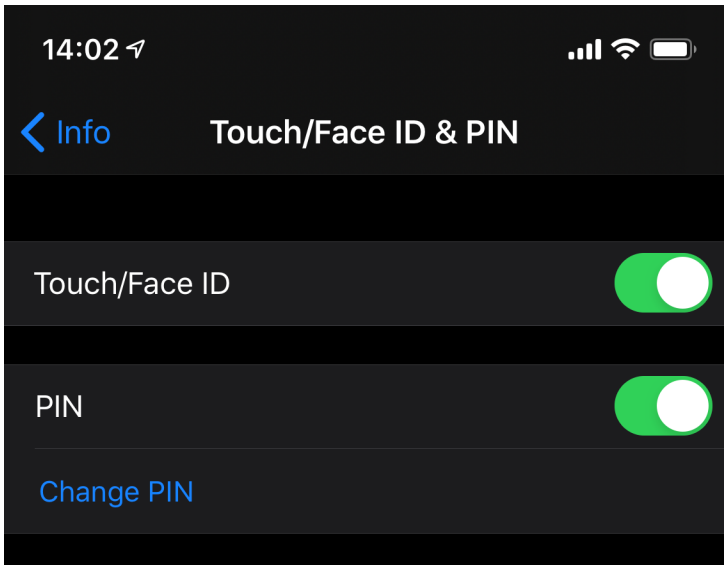
2. Tap on *Touch/Face ID & PIN*.



3. Enable and set up a 4-digit *PIN* for the application. The *PIN* is required to be enabled before you can enable *Touch/Face ID*.

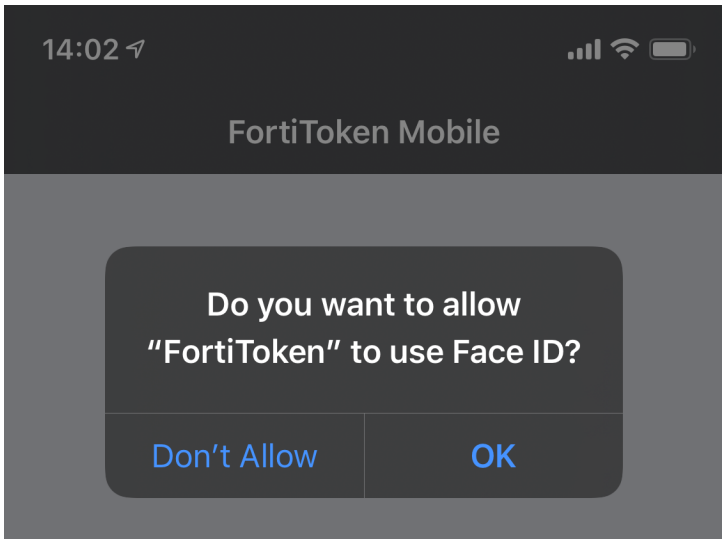


4. Enable *Touch/Face ID*.



You cannot enable *Touch/Face ID* for FortiToken if *Touch/Face ID* is not set up and enabled for device unlock (*iPhone Unlock* in this case) on iOS. You must first set up and enable *Touch/Face ID* from *Settings* on your iOS device.

5. When prompted by iOS, allow the FortiToken application to use *Touch/Face ID* by tapping on *OK* in the prompt.



Applying multi-factor authentication

Multi-factor authentication (MFA) may also be set up for SSL VPN users, administrators, firewall policy, wireless users, and so on. The following topics explain more about how you may use the newly created user in such scenarios:

- MFA for SSL VPN: Set up FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1783
- MFA for IPsec VPN: Add FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1584
- MFA for Administrators: Associating a FortiToken to an administrator account on page 875
- MFA with Captive Portal

- MFA for wireless users via Captive Portal
- Configuring firewall authentication on page 2004

FortiToken Cloud

FortiToken Cloud is an Identity and Access Management as a Service (IDaaS) cloud service offering by Fortinet. It enables FortiGate and FortiAuthenticator customers to add MFA for their respective users, through the use of Mobile tokens or Hard tokens. It protects local and remote administrators as well as firewall and VPN users.

For information, see Getting started—FGT-FTC users in the FortiToken Cloud Administration Guide.

Registering hard tokens

Registering FortiTokens consists of the following steps:

1. Adding FortiTokens to FortiOS.
2. Activating FortiTokens.
3. Associating FortiTokens with user accounts.

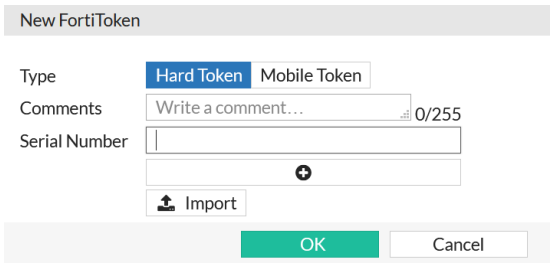
Adding FortiTokens to FortiOS

You can add FortiTokens to FortiOS in the following ways:

- Add FortiToken serial numbers using the GUI
- Add FortiToken serial numbers using the CLI
- Import FortiTokens using a serial number or seed file using the GUI

To manually add single hard token to FortiOS using the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *Hard Token*.
4. In the *Serial Number* field, enter one or more FortiToken serial numbers.
5. Click *OK*.



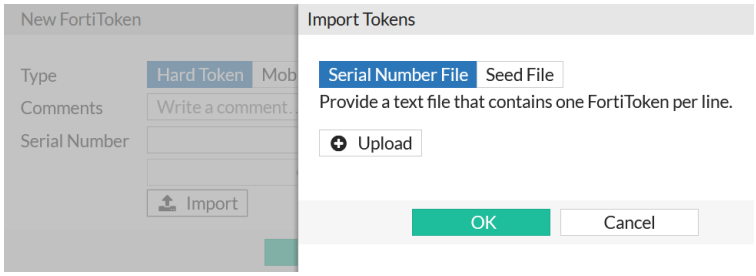
To add multiple FortiTokens to FortiOS using the CLI:

```
config user fortitoken
   edit <serial_number>
   next
   edit <serial_number2>
   next
```

```
end
```

To import multiple FortiTokens to FortiOS using the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *Hard Token*.
4. Click *Import*. The *Import Tokens* section slides in on the screen.



5. Select *Serial Number File*.

Seed files are only used with FortiToken-200CD. These are special hardware tokens that come with FortiToken seeds on a CD. See the FortiToken Comprehensive Guide for details.

6. Click *Upload*.
7. Browse to the file's location on your local machine, select the file, then click *OK*.
8. Click *OK*.

Activating FortiTokens

You must activate the FortiTokens before starting to use them. FortiOS requires connection to FortiGuard servers for FortiToken activation. During activation, FortiOS queries FortiGuard servers about each token's validity. Each token can only be used on a single FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator. If tokens are already registered, they are deemed invalid for re-activation on another device. FortiOS encrypts the serial number and information before sending for added security.

To activate a FortiToken using the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Select the desired FortiTokens that have an *Available* status.
3. Click *Activate* from the menu above.
4. Click *Refresh*. The selected FortiTokens are activated.

To activate a FortiToken using the CLI:

```
config user fortitoken
   edit <token_serial_num>
      set status activate
   next
end
```

Associating FortiTokens with user accounts

You can associate FortiTokens with local user or administrator accounts.

To associate a FortiToken to a local user account using the GUI:

1. Ensure that you have successfully added your FortiToken serial number to FortiOS and that its status is *Available*.
2. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*. Edit the desired user account.
3. Enable *Two-factor Authentication*.
4. From the *Token* dropdown list, select the desired FortiToken serial number.
5. In the *Email Address* field, enter the user's email address.
6. Click *OK*.

To associate a FortiToken to a local user account using the CLI:

```
config user local
   edit <username>
      set type password
      set passwd "myPassword"
      set two-factor fortitoken
      set fortitoken <serial_number>
      set email-to "username@example.com"
      set status enable
   next
end
```



Before you can use a new FortiToken, you may need to synchronize it due to clock drift.

To associate a FortiToken to an administrator account, refer to the Associating a FortiToken to an administrator account on page 875 section.

Managing FortiTokens

This section focuses on the following:

- Resending an activation email on page 1993
- Locking/unlocking FortiTokens on page 1994
- Managing FortiTokens drift on page 1994
- Deactivating FortiTokens on page 1994
- Moving FortiTokens to another device on page 1995

Resending an activation email

To resend an activation email/SMS for a mobile token on a FortiGate:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and edit the user.
2. Click *Send Activation Code Email* from the *Two-factor Authentication* section.

Locking/unlocking FortiTokens

To change FortiToken status to active or to lock:

```
config user fortitoken
   edit <token_serial_num>
      set status <active | lock>
   next
end
```

A user attempting to log in using a locked FortiToken cannot successfully authenticate.

Managing FortiTokens drift

If the FortiToken has drifted, the following must take place for the FortiToken to resynchronize with FortiOS:

1. FortiOS prompts the user to enter a second code to confirm.
2. The user gets the next code from the FortiToken. They enter the code at the prompt.
3. FortiOS uses both codes to update its clock to match the FortiToken.

If you still experience clock drift, it may be the result of incorrect time settings on your mobile device. If so, make sure that the mobile device clock is accurate by confirming the network time and the correct timezone.

If the device clock is set correctly, the issue could be the result of the FortiGate and FortiTokens being initialized prior to setting an NTP server. This will result in a time difference that is too large to correct with the synchronize function. To avoid this, selected Tokens can be manually drift adjusted.

To show current drift and status for each FortiToken:

```
diagnose fortitoken info
FORTITOKEN DRIFT STATUS
FTK200XXXXXXXXXC 0 token already activated, and seed won't be returned
FTK200XXXXXXXXXE 0 token already activated, and seed won't be returned
FTKMOBXXXXXXXXXA 0 provisioned
FTKMOBXXXXXXXXX4 0 new
Total activated token: 0
Total global activated token: 0
Token server status: reachable
```

This command lists the serial number and drift for each configured FortiToken. You can check if it is necessary to synchronize the FortiGate and any particular FortiTokens.

To adjust Mobile FortiToken for drift:

```
# execute fortitoken sync <FortiToken_ID> <token_code1> <next_token_code2>
```

Deactivating FortiTokens

To deactivate FortiToken on a FortiGate:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*.
2. Select and edit the user for which you want to deactivate the token.
3. Disable the *Two-factor Authentication* toggle.

4. Click *OK*. The token will be removed from the user's *Two-factor Authentication* column. The user will also be removed from the token's *User* column under *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.

Moving FortiTokens to another device

FortiTokens can only be activated on a single FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator. To move FortiTokens to another device, you would first have to reset the registered FortiTokens on a device and then reactivate them on another device.

To reset Hard tokens registered to a FortiGate appliance (non-VM model), you can reset all hardware FTK200 tokens from the Support Portal, or during RMA transfer. See the Migrating users and FortiTokens to another FortiGate KB article, for more information.



The above process will reset all Hard tokens and you cannot select individual tokens to reset.

To reset FortiToken Mobile, a single Hard token, a Hard token registered to a VM, and so on, an administrator must contact Customer Support and/or open a ticket on the Support Portal.

Once reset, the FortiTokens can be activated on another FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator.

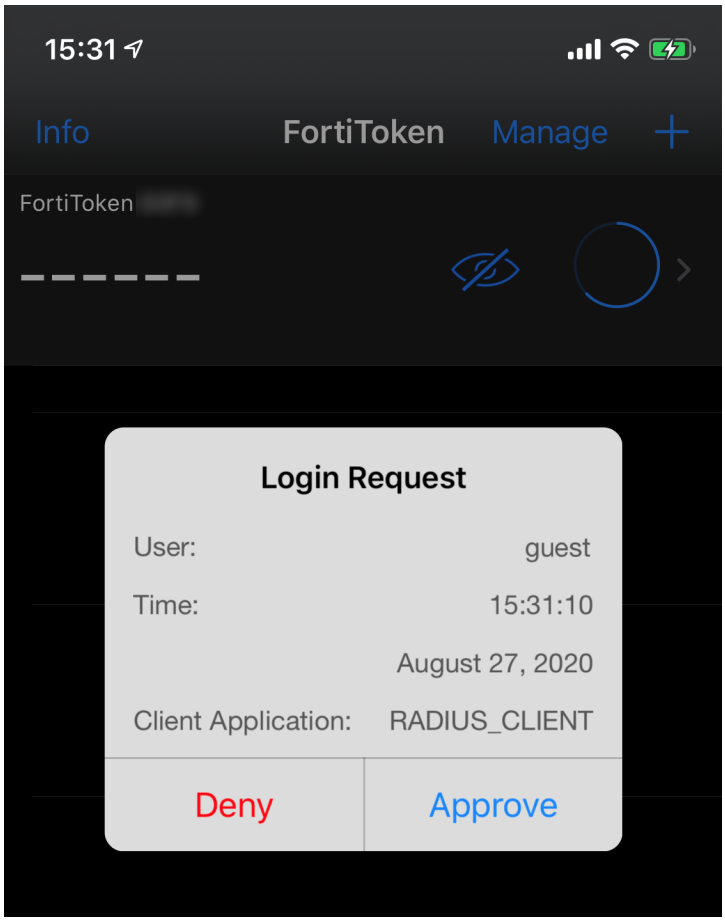
FortiToken Mobile Push

FortiToken Mobile Push allows authentication requests to be sent as push notifications to the end user's FortiToken Mobile application.

The FortiToken Mobile push service operates as follows:

1. FortiGate sends a DNS query to the FortiToken Mobile Push proxy server (*push.fortinet.com*).
2. FortiGate connects to the proxy server via an encrypted connection over TCP/443.
3. The proxy server handles the notification request by making a TLS connection with either Apple (for iOS) or Google (for Android) notification servers. Notification data may include the recipient, session, FortiGate callback IP and port, and so on.
4. The notification service from either Apple or Google notifies the user's mobile device of the push request.
5. The FortiToken Mobile application on the user's mobile displays a prompt for the user to either *Approve* or *Deny* the

request.



To configure FortiToken Mobile push services using the CLI:

```
config system ftm-push
   set status enable
   set server-ip <ip-address>
   set server-port [1-65535]
end
```

The default server port is `4433`.

The server IP address is the public IP address of the FortiOS interface that FortiToken Mobile calls back to. FortiOS uses this IP address for incoming FortiToken Mobile calls.

If an SSL VPN user authenticates with their token, then logs out and attempts to reauthenticate within a minute, a *Please wait `x` seconds to login again* message displays. This replaces a previous error/permission denied message. The `x` value depends on the calculation of how much time is left in the current time step.

```
config system interface
   edit "guest"
      set allowaccess ftm
   next
end
```

FortiOS supports FortiAuthenticator-initiated FortiToken Mobile Push notifications for users attempting to authenticate through an SSL VPN and/or RADIUS server (with FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS server).

Troubleshooting and diagnosis

This section contains some common scenarios for FortiTokens troubleshooting and diagnosis:

- FortiToken Statuses on page 1997
- Recovering trial FortiTokens on page 1998
- Recovering lost Administrator FortiTokens on page 1998
- SSL VPN with multi-factor authentication expiry timers on page 1999

FortiToken Statuses

When troubleshooting FortiToken issues, it is important to understand different FortiToken statuses. FortiToken status may be retrieved either from the CLI or the GUI, with a slightly different naming convention.

Before you begin, verify that the FortiGate has Internet connectivity and is also connected to both the FortiGuard and registration servers:

```
# execute ping fds1.fortinet.com
# execute ping directregistration.fortinet.com
# execute ping globalftm.fortinet.net
```

The `globalftm.fortinet.net` server is the Fortinet Anycast server added in FortiOS 6.4.2.

If there are connectivity issues, retrieving FortiToken statuses or performing FortiToken activation could fail. Therefore, troubleshoot connectivity issues before continuing.

To retrieve FortiToken statuses:

- In the CLI:
  `# diagnose fortitoken info`
- In the GUI:
  Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.

Various FortiToken statuses in either the CLI or the GUI may be described as follows:

CLI	GUI	Description
`new`	*Available*	Newly added, not pending, not activated, not yet assigned.
`active`	*Assigned*	Assigned to a user, hardware token.
`provisioning`	*Pending*	Assigned to a user and waiting for activation on the FortiToken Mobile app.
`provisioned`	*Assigned*	Assigned to user and activated on the FortiToken Mobile app.

CLI	GUI	Description
`provision timeout`		Token provided to user but not activated on the FortiToken Mobile app. To fix, the token needs to be re-provisioned and activated in time.
`token already activated, and seed won't be returned`	*Error*	Token is locked by FortiGuard FDS. The hardware token was already activated on another device and locked by FDS.
`locked`		Either manually locked by an Administrator (`set status lock`), or locked automatically, for example, when the token is unassigned and the FortiCare FTM provisioning server was unreachable to process that change.

Recovering trial FortiTokens

You can recover trial FortiTokens if deleted from a FortiGate, or if stuck in a state where it is not possible to provision to a user.

When a token is stuck in an unusual state or with errors, delete the FortiTokens from the unit and proceed to recover trial FortiTokens.

To recover trial tokens via the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Click the *Import Free Trial Tokens* button at the top. The two free trial tokens are recovered.

To recover trial tokens via the CLI:

```
# execute fortitoken-mobile import 0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
```



- Before attempting to recover the trial tokens, both the tokens should be deleted from the unit first.
- If VDOMs are enabled, trial tokens are in the management VDOM (`root` by default).

Following error codes might come up in the CLI:

- If the device is not registered:
  ```
  # execute fortitoken-mobile import 0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
  import fortitoken license error: -7571
  ```
- If the serial number format is incorrect:
  ```
  # execute fortitoken-mobile import 0000-0000-0000-0000-00
  import fortitoken license error: -7566
  ```

Recovering lost Administrator FortiTokens

If an Administrator loses their FortiToken or the FortiToken is not working, they will not be able to log into the admin console through the GUI or the CLI. If there is another Administrator that can log into the device, they may be able to reset the two-factor settings configured for the first Administrator, or create a new Admin user for them. Note that a *super_admin* user will be able to edit other admin user settings, but a *prof_admin* user will not be able to edit *super_admin* settings.

In the case where there are no other administrators configured, the only option is to flash format the device and reload a backup config file. You must have console access to the device in order to format and flash the device. It is recommended to be physically on site to perform this operation.



The process of resetting an Admin user password using the maintainer account cannot be used to reset or disable two-factor authentication.

Before formatting the device, verify that you have a backup config file. You may or may not have the latest config file backed up, though you should consider using a backed up config file, and reconfigure the rest of the recent changes manually. Otherwise, you may need to configure your device starting from the default factory settings.

To recover lost Administrator FortiTokens:

1. If you have a backed up config file:
   a. Open the config file and search for the specific admin user. For representational purposes we will use `Test` in our example.
   ```
   # edit "Test"
      set accprofile "super_admin"
      set vdom "root"
      set two-factor fortitoken
      set fortitoken "FTKXXXXXXXXXX"
      set email-to "admin@email.com"
      set password *********
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Once you find the settings for the `Test` user, delete the `fortitoken`-related settings:
   ```
   # edit "Test"
      set accprofile "super_admin"
      set vdom "root"
      set password *********
      next
   end
   ```
2. Format the boot device during a maintenance window and reload the firmware image using instructions in the Formatting and loading FortiGate firmware image using TFTP KB article.
3. Once the reload is complete, log into the admin console from the GUI using the default admin user credentials, and go to *Configuration* > *Restore* from the top right corner to reload your config file created in Step 1 above.
4. Once the FortiGate reboots and your configuration is restored, you can log in with your admin user credentials.

SSL VPN with multi-factor authentication expiry timers

When SSL VPN is configured with multi-factor authentication (MFA), sometimes you may require a longer token expiry time than the default 60 seconds.

To configure token expiry timers using the CLI:

```
config system global
    set two-factor-ftk-expiry <number of seconds>
    set two-factor-ftm-expiry <number of seconds>
    set two-factor-sms-expiry <number of seconds>
    set two-factor-fac-expiry <number of seconds>
```

```
    set two-factor-email-expiry <number of seconds>
end
```

These timers apply to the tokens themselves and remain valid for as long as configured above. However, SSL VPN does not necessarily accept tokens for the entire duration they are valid. To ensure SSLVPN accepts the token for longer durations, you need to configure the remote authentication timeout setting accordingly.

To configure the remote authentication timeout:

```
config system global
    set remoteauthtimeout <1-300 seconds>
end
```

SSL VPN waits for a maximum of five minutes for a valid token code to be provided before closing down the connection, even if the token code is valid for longer.



The `remoteauthtimout` setting shows how long SSL VPN waits not only for a valid token to be provided before closing down the connection, but also for other remote authentication like LDAP, RADIUS, and so on.

Configuring the maximum log in attempts and lockout period

Failed log in attempts can indicate malicious attempts to gain access to your network. To prevent this security risk, you can limit the number of failed log in attempts. After the configured maximum number of failed log in attempts is reached, access to the account is blocked for the configured lockout period.

To configure number of maximum log in attempts:

This example sets the maximum number of log in attempts to five.

```
config user setting
   set auth-lockout-threshold 5
end
```

To configure the lockout period in seconds:

This example sets the lockout period to five minutes (300 seconds).

```
config user setting
   set auth-lockout-duration 300
end
```

PKI

The following topics include information about public key infrastructure (PKI):

- Configuring a PKI user on page 2001
- SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1815

- SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication on page 1820

Configuring a PKI user

PKI users are users who are identified by a digital certificate they hold. Defining a PKI user in FortiOS specifies:

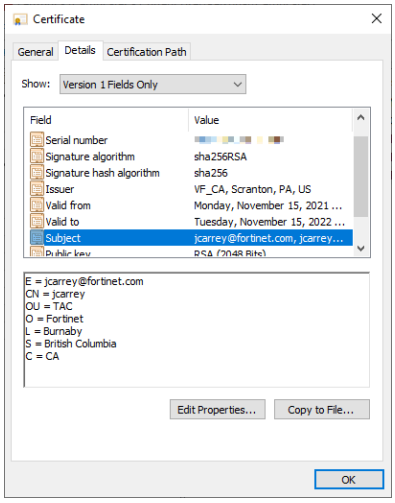
- Which CA certificate to use to validate the user's certificate
- The field and value of the user's certificate that FortiOS will check to verify a user

These peer users can then be used in a FortiGate user group, or as a peer certificate group used for IPsec VPN configurations that accept RSA certificate authentication.

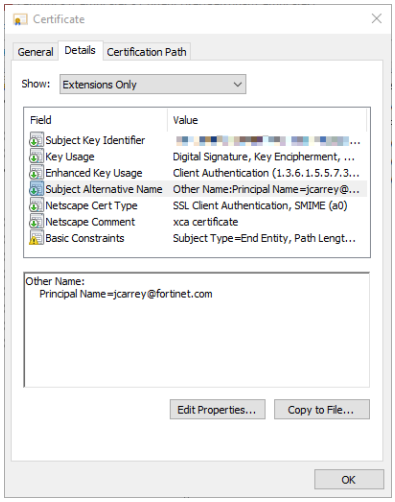
Example X.509 certificate

The following certificate demonstrates which FortiGate settings can be used to match on different fields.

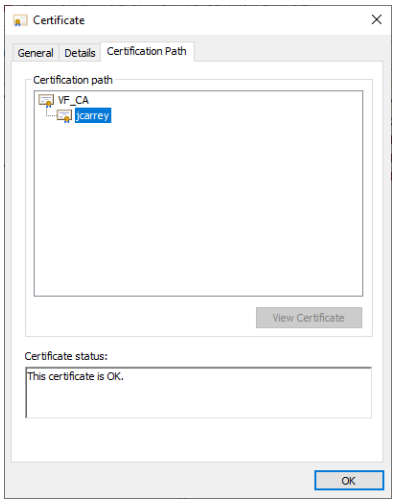
Subject:



Subject Alternative Name:



Certification path:



To configure a PKI user:

```
config user peer
    edit <name>
        set ca <string>
        set mandatory-ca-verify {enable | disable}
        set subject <string>
        set cn <string>
        set cn-type {string | email | FQDN | ipv4 | ipv6}
        set ldap-server <string>
        set ldap-username <string>
        set ldap-password <string>
        set ldap-mode {password | principal-name}
    next
end
```

`ca <string>`	Specify which certificate on the FortiGate is used to validate the client's certificate. This can be any CA in the client's certificate chain. You may need to upload a CA certificate to the FortiGate specifically to identify PKI peer users (see Uploading a certificate using the GUI on page 1050).
`mandatory-ca-verify {enable | disable}`	Control the action if the CA certificate used to sign the client's certificate is not installed on the FortiGate (default = enable). Disabling this setting makes the FortiGate consider any certificate presented by the peer as valid. In the example certificate, the certification path shows that VF_CA signed jcarrey's certificate.
`subject <string>`	Enter the peer certificate name constraints.
`cn <string>`	Enter the peer certificate common name.
`cn-type {string | email | FQDN | ipv4 | ipv6}`	Set the peer certificate common name type: string, email, FQDN, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address. See CN on page 2003 for more details.
`ldap-server <string>`	Enter the name of an LDAP server defined under `config user ldap` for performing client access rights checks. See LDAP servers on page 1930 for more details.

`ldap-mode {password | principal-name}`	Set the mode for LDAP peer authentication, either by password or principal name (default = password). See LDAP on page 2004 for more details.
`ldap-username <string>`	Enter the username for the LDAP server bind when the LDAP mode is password.
`ldap-password <string>`	Enter the password for the LDAP server bind when the LDAP mode is password.

Identifying users based on their client certificate

When the client's certificate is valid, or `mandatory-ca-verify` is disabled, the FortiGate can then inspect the certificate to check specific fields for matching values. There are three ways of specifying which certificate field to verify: by subject, CN, or LDAP. All string comparisons are case sensitive.

Subject

This basic method verifies that the subject string defined in the PKI user setting matches a value or substring in the subject field of the user certificate. Further matching is controlled in the following VPN certificate settings.

```
config vpn certificate setting
    set subject-match {substring | value}
    set cn-match {substring | value}
end
```

`subject-match {substring | value}`	Control how to do relative distinguished name (RDN) value matching with the certificate subject name: • substring: find a match if any string in the certificate subject name matches the name being searched for (such as `set subject jcarrey`). • value: find a match if any attribute value string in a certificate subject name is an exact match with the name being searched for (such as `set subject "OU=TAC"` or `set subject "C=CA, CN=jcarrey, OU=TAC"`).
`cn-match {substring | value}`	Control how to do CN value matching with the certificate subject name: • substring: find a match if any string in the certificate subject name matches the name being searched for. • value: find a match if any attribute value string in a certificate subject name is an exact match with the name being searched for.

CN

Common name (CN) certificate verification compares the CN in the subject field with the configured string (such as `set cn "jcarrey"`. The following logic is used when configuring different CN types:

Type	Action
`string`	Based on the `cn-match` setting, perform a substring or exact match in the certificate subject.
`email`	Look for a match in the certificate subject.
`FQDN`	Look for a match in the certificate subject, then compare the mapped IP and client IP. The FQDN is only retrieved from the CN.

Type	Action
ipv4	Look for a match in the certificate subject, then compare the IP.
ipv6	Look for a match in the certificate subject, then compare the IP.

The CN type also controls the format checking of the CN string. In this example, if the CN type is set to email, the CN must be in email format (`set cn "jcarrey@fortinet.com"`).

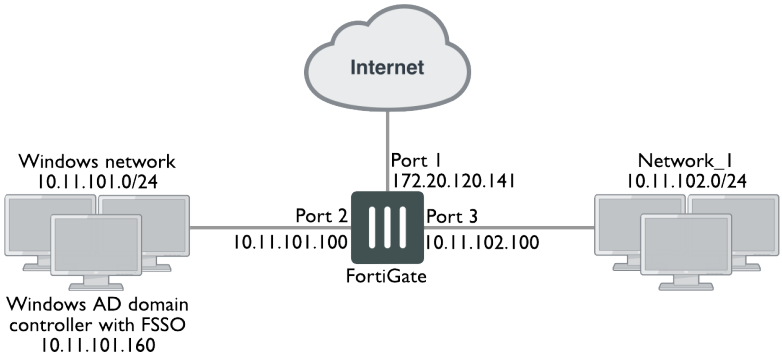
LDAP

LDAP-integrated user authentication allows the FortiGate to check the connecting user against an LDAP server in two ways: through a username and password, or the certificate's principal name. The `password` method requires the username and password of each authenticating user to be entered, so it is not recommended when configuring PKI users. The `principal-name` method is recommended.

The UPN in the user certificate's Subject Alternative Name field is used to look up the user in the LDAP directory. If a match is found, then authentication succeeds. This type of configuration scales well since only one PKI user needs to be created on the FortiGate. Connecting clients use their unique user certificate to match within the configured LDAP server.

Configuring firewall authentication

In this example, a Windows network is connected to the FortiGate on port 2, and another LAN, Network_1, is connected on port 3.



All Windows network users authenticate when they log on to their network. Engineering and Sales groups members can access the Internet without reentering their authentication credentials. The example assumes that you have already installed and configured FSSO on the domain controller.

LAN users who belong to the Internet_users group can access the Internet after entering their username and password. The example shows two users: User1, authenticated by a password stored in FortiOS; and User 2, authenticated on an external authentication server. Both users are local users since you create the user accounts in FortiOS.

1. Create a locally authenticated user account.
2. Create a RADIUS-authenticated user account.
3. Create an FSSO user group.
4. Create a firewall user group.

5. Define policy addresses.
6. Create security policies.

Creating a locally authenticated user account

User1 is authenticated by a password stored in FortiOS.

To create a locally authenticated user account in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

User Type	Local User
User Name	User1
Password	hardtoguess1@@1
User Account Status	Enabled

3. Click *Submit*.

To create a locally authenticated user account in the CLI:

```
config user local
   edit user1
      set type password
      set passwd hardtoguess1@@1
   next
end
```

Creating a RADIUS-authenticated user account

You must first configure FortiOS to access the external authentication server, then create the user account.

To create a RADIUS-authenticated user account in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Name	OurRADIUSsrv
Authentication method	Default
Primary Server	
IP/Name	10.11.101.15
Secret	OurSecret

3. Click *OK*.
4. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and click *Create New*.

5. Configure the following settings:

User Type	Remote RADIUS User
User Name	User2
RADIUS Server	OurRADIUSsrv
User Account Status	Enabled

6. Click *Submit*.

To create a RADIUS-authenticated user account in the CLI:

```
   config user radius
   edit OurRADIUSsrv
      set server 10.11.102.15
      set secret OurSecret
      set auth-type auto
   next
end
config user local
   edit User2
      set name User2
      set type radius
      set radius-server OurRADIUSsrv
   next
end
```

Creating an FSSO user group

This example assumes that you have already set up FSSO on the Windows network and that it used advanced mode, meaning that it uses LDAP to access user group information. You must do the following:

- Configure LDAP access to the Windows AD global catalog
- Specify the collector agent that sends user log in information to FortiOS
- Select Windows user groups to monitor
- Select and add the Engineering and Sales groups to an FSSO user group

To create an FSSO user group in the GUI:

1. Configure LDAP for FSSO:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Name	ADserver
Server Name / IP	10.11.101.160
Distinguished Name	dc=office,dc=example,dc=com
Bind Type	Regular
Username	cn=FSSO_Admin,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com

Password	Enter a secure password.

c. Leave other fields as-is. Click *OK*.

2. Specify the collector agent for FSSO;
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. Under *Endpoint/Identity*, select *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.
   c. Configure the following settings:

Name	Enter the Windows AD server name. This name appears in the Windows AD server list when you create user groups. In this example, the name is WinGroups.
Server IP/Name	Enter the IP address or name of the server where the agent is installed. The maximum name length is 63 characters. In this example, the IP address is 10.11.101.160.
Password	Enter the password of the server where the agent is installed. You only need to enter a password for the collector agent if you configured the agent to require authenticated access. If the TCP port used for FSSO is not the default, 8000, you can run the `config user fsso` command to change the setting in the CLI.
Collector Agent AD access mode	Advanced
LDAP Server	Select the previously configured LDAP server. In this example, it is ADserver.
User/Groups/Organization Units	Select the users, groups, and OUs to monitor.

   d. Click *OK*.

3. Create the FSSO_Internet_users user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Name	FSSO_Internet_users
Type	Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)
Members	Engineering, Sales

   c. Click *OK*.

To create an FSSO user group in the CLI:

```
config user ldap
   edit "ADserver"
      set server "10.11.101.160"
      set dn "cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com"
      set type regular
      set username "cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com"
      set password set_a_secure_password
   next
end
```

```
config user fsso
   edit "WinGroups"
      set ldap-server "ADserver"
      set password ********
      set server "10.11.101.160"
   next
end
config user group
   edit FSSO_Internet_users
      set group-type fsso-service
      set member CN=Engineering,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com
           CN=Sales,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com
   next
end
```

Creating a firewall user group

This example shows a firewall user group with only two users. You can add additional members.

To create a firewall user group in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

Name	Internet_users
Type	Firewall
Members	User1, User2

3. Click *OK*.

To create a firewall user group in the CLI:

```
config user group
   edit Internet_users
        set group-type firewall
        set member User1 User2
   next
end
```

Defining policy addresses

To define policy addresses:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Configure the following settings:

Name	Internal_net

Type	Subnet
IP/Netmask	10.11.102.0/24
Interface	Port 3

4. Click *OK*.
5. Create another new address by repeating steps 2-4 using the following settings:

Name	Windows_net
Type	Subnet
IP/Netmask	10.11.101.0/24
Interface	Port 2

Creating security policies

You must create two security policies: one for the firewall group connecting through port 3, and one for the FSSO group connecting through port 2.

To create security policies using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the following settings:

Incoming Interface	Port2
Source Address	Windows_net
Source User(s)	FSSO_Internet_users
Outgoing Interface	Port1
Destination Address	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
NAT	Enabled.
Security Profiles	You can enable security profiles as desired.

4. Click *OK*.

5. Create another new policy by repeating steps 2-4 using the following settings:

Incoming Interface	Port3
Source Address	Internal_net
Source User(s)	Internet_users
Outgoing Interface	Port1
Destination Address	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
NAT	Enabled.
Security Profiles	You can enable security profiles as desired.

6. Click *OK*.

To create security policies using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
     edit 0
     set srcintf port2
     set dstintf port1
     set srcaddr Windows_net
     set dstaddr all
     set action accept
     set groups FSSO_Internet_users
     set schedule always
     set service ANY
     set nat enable
   next
end
config firewall policy
   edit 0
      set srcintf port3
      set dstintf port1
      set srcaddr internal_net
      set dstaddr all
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set groups Internet_users
      set service ANY
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

FSSO

FortiOS can provide single sign-on capabilities to Windows AD, Citrix, VMware Horizon, Novell eDirectory, and Microsoft Exchange users with the help of agent software installed on these networks. The agent software sends information

about user logons to the FortiGate unit. With user information such as IP address and user group memberships from the network, FortiGate security policies can allow authenticated network access to users who belong to the appropriate user groups without requesting their credentials again.

Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO), through agents installed on the network, monitors user logons and passes that information to the FortiGate unit. When a user logs on at a workstation in a monitored domain, FSSO:

- Detects the logon event and records the workstation name, domain, and user,
- Resolves the workstation name to an IP address,
- Determines which user groups the user belongs to,
- Sends the user logon information, including IP address and groups list, to the FortiGate unit, and
- Creates one or more log entries on the FortiGate unit for this logon event as appropriate.

When the user tries to access network resources, the FortiGate unit selects the appropriate security policy for the destination. If the user belongs to one of the permitted user groups associated with that policy then the connection is allowed, otherwise the connection is denied.

Agent-based FSSO

Several different FSSO agents can be used in an FSSO implementation:

- Domain Controller (DC) agent
- eDirectory agent
- Citrix/Terminal Server (TS) agent
- Collector Agent

Consult the latest FortiOS Release Notes for operating system compatibility information.

Domain Controller agent

The Domain Controller (DC) agent must be installed on every domain controller when you use DC Agent mode. The DC agents monitor user logon events and pass the information to the Collector agent, which stores the information and sends it to the FortiGate unit.

eDirectory agent

The eDirectory agent is installed on a Novell network to monitor user logons and send the required information to the FortiGate unit. It functions much like the Collector agent on a Windows AD domain controller. The agent can obtain information from the Novell eDirectory using either the Novell API or LDAP.

Terminal Server agent

The Terminal Server (TS) agent can be installed on Citrix, VMware Horizon 7.4, or Windows Terminal Server to monitor user logons in real time. It functions much like the DC Agent on a Windows AD domain controller.

Collector agent

The Collector Agent (CA) is installed as a service on a server in the Windows AD network to monitor user logons and send the required information to the FortiGate unit. The Collector agent can collect information from a DC agent (Windows AD) and TS agent (Citrix or VMware Horizon Terminal Server).

In a Windows AD network, the Collector agent can optionally obtain logon information by polling the AD domain controllers. In this case, DC agents are not needed.

The CA is responsible for DNS lookups, group verification, workstation checks, and updating FortiGates on logon records. The FSSO CA sends Domain Local Security Group and Global Security Group information to FortiGate units. The CA communicates with the FortiGate over TCP port 8000 and it listens on UDP port 8002 for updates from the DC agents.

The FortiGate device can have up to five CAs configured for redundancy. If the first CA on the list is unreachable, the next is attempted, and so on down the list until one is contacted.

All DC agents must point to the correct CA port number and IP address on domains with multiple DCs.



A FortiAuthenticator device can act much like a CA, collecting Windows AD user logon information and sending it to the FortiGate device. It is particularly useful in large installations with several FortiGate units. For more information, see the FortiAuthenticator Administration Guide.

Agentless FSSO

For Windows AD networks, FortiGate devices can also provide SSO capability by directly polling Windows Security Event log entries on Windows DC for user log in information. This configuration does not require a CA or DC agent.

FortiGate configuration

To configure FSSO on a FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric > External Connectors*.

When creating a new connector, several options for connectors are available under Endpoint/Identity:

- Fortinet single sign-on agent on page 358

  For most FSSO Agent-based deployments, this connector option will be used. Specify either Collector Agent or Local as User Group Source to collect user groups from the Collector Agent, or to match users to user groups from a LDAP server.
- Poll Active Directory server on page 359

  This connection option directly polls Windows Security Event log entries on Windows DC for user log in information.
- RADIUS single sign-on agent on page 365

  FortiGate can authenticate users who have authenticated on a remote RADIUS server by monitoring the RADIUS accounting records forwarded by the RADIUS server to the FortiGate.
- Exchange Server connector on page 368

  FortiGate collects information about authenticated users from corporate Microsoft Exchange Servers.
- Symantec endpoint connector on page 359

  This connector uses client IP information from Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager (SEPM) to assign dynamic IP addresses on FortiOS.

  Since FSSO is commonly associated with Agent-based FSSO and Agentless FSSO, this chapter will primarily focus on the first two Security Fabric External Connector options.

FSSO polling connector agent installation

This topic gives an example of configuring a local FSSO agent on the FortiGate. The agent actively pools Windows Security Event log entries on Windows Domain Controller (DC) for user log in information. The FSSO user groups can then be used in a firewall policy.

This method does not require any additional software components, and all the configuration can be done on the FortiGate.

To configure a local FSSO agent on the FortiGate:

1. Configure an LDAP server on the FortiGate on page 2013
2. Configure a local FSSO polling connector on page 2013
3. Add the FSSO groups to a policy on page 2015

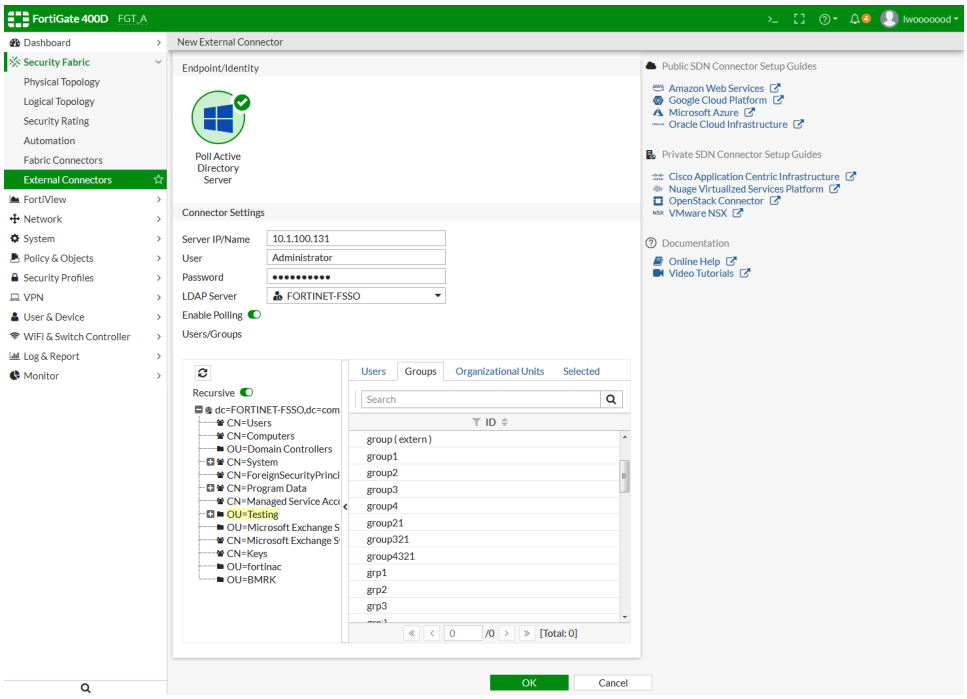
Configure an LDAP server on the FortiGate

Refer to Configuring an LDAP server on page 1930. The connection must be successful before configuring the FSSO polling connector.

Configure a local FSSO polling connector

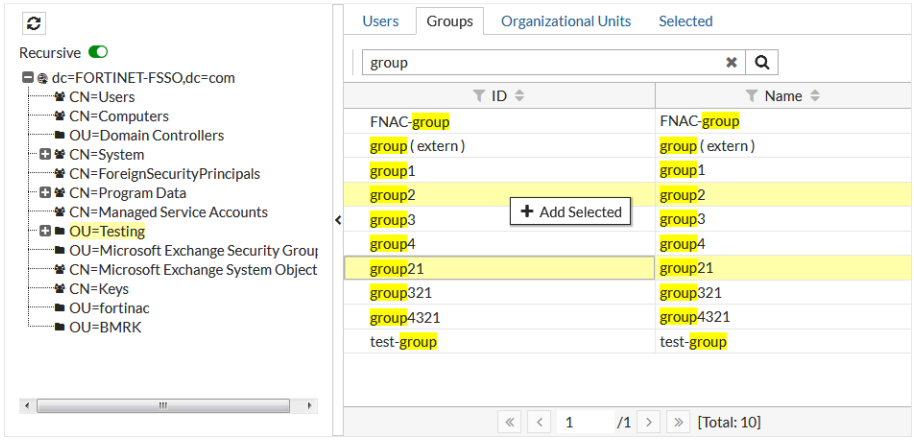
To configure a local FSSO polling connector:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, select *Poll Active Directory Server*.
4. Fill in the required information.



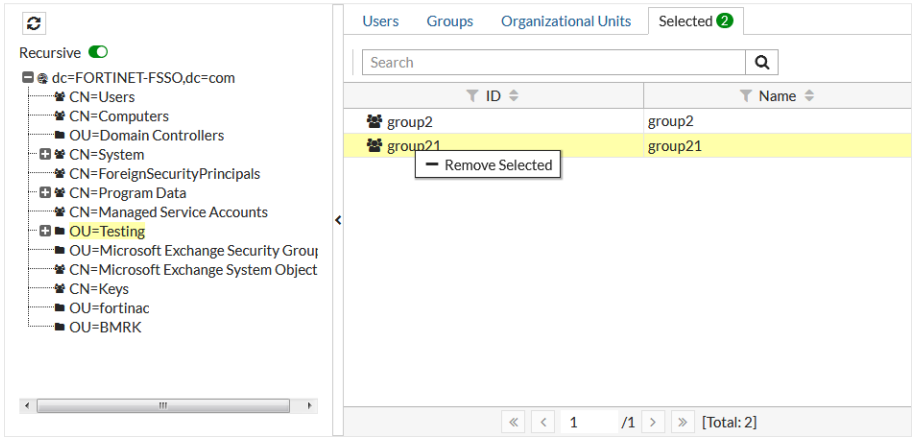
5. Select the just created LDAP server from the *LDAP Server* dropdown list.
   The structure of the LDAP tree will be shown in the *Users/Groups* section.
6. Go to the *Groups* tab.
7. Select the required groups, right click on them, and select *Add Selected*. Multiple groups can be selected at one time by holding the CTRL or SHIFT keys. The groups list can be filtered or searched to limit the number of groups that are displayed.

Users/Groups

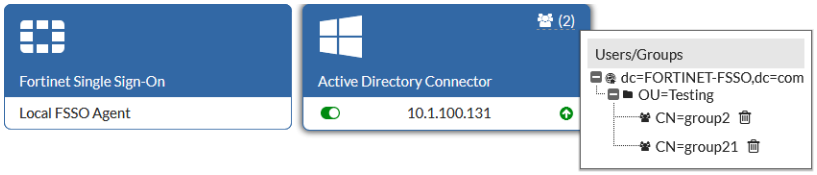


8. Go to the *Selected* tab and verify that all the required groups are listed. Unneeded groups can be removed by right clicking and selecting *Remove Selected*.

Users/Groups



9. Click *OK*.
10. Go back to *Security Fabric > External Connectors*.
11. There should be two new connectors:



- The *Local FSSO Agent* is the backend process that is automatically created when the first FSSO polling connector is created.
- The *Active Directory Connector* is the front end connector that can be configured by FortiGate administrators.

To verify the configuration, hover the cursor over the top right corner of the connector; a popup window will show the currently selected groups. A successful connection is also shown by a green up arrow in the lower right corner of the connector.

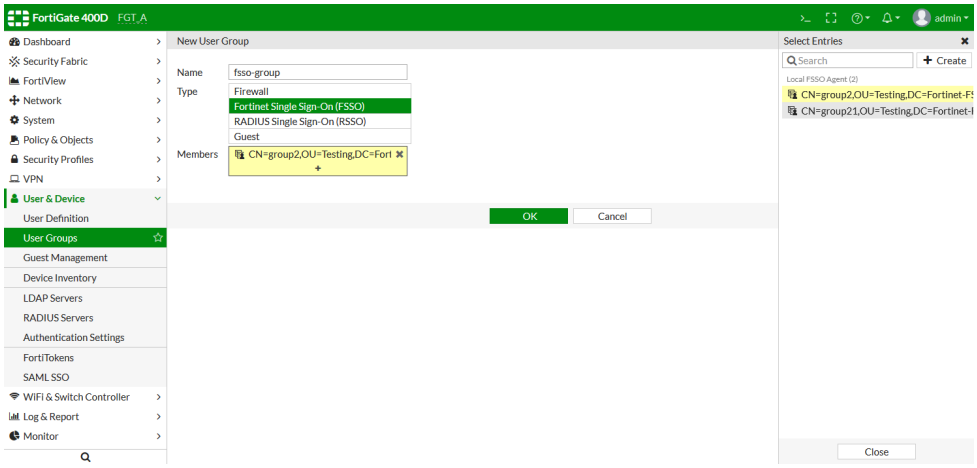
If you need to get log in information from multiple DCs, then you must configure other Active Directory connectors for each additional DC to be monitored.

Add the FSSO groups to a policy

FSSO groups can be used in a policy by either adding them to the policy directly, or by adding them to a local user group and then adding the group to a policy.

To add the FSSO groups to a local user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group in the *Name* field.
4. Set the *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*.
5. Add the FSSO groups as members.

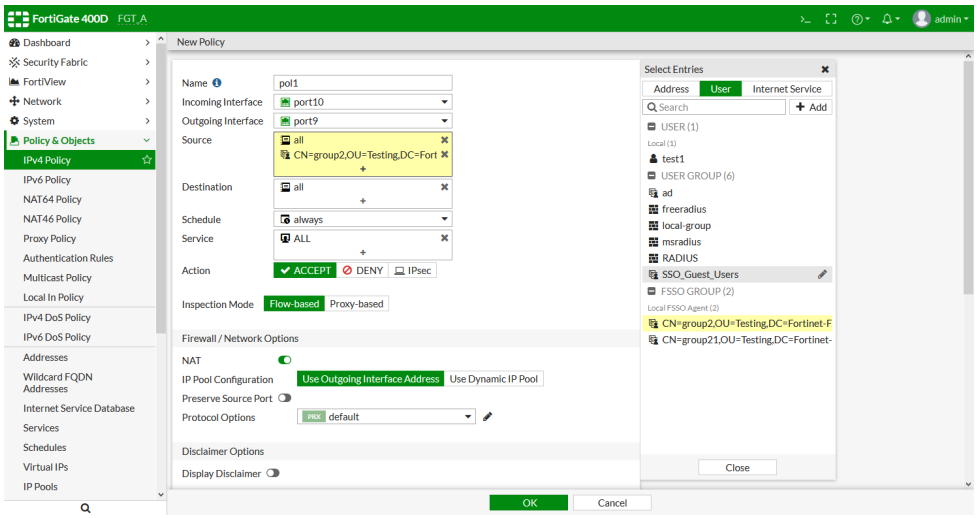


6. Click *OK*.
7. Add the local FSSO group to a policy.

To add the FSSO groups directly to a firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click in the *Source* field.
4. In the *Select Entries* pane, select the *User* tab.

5. Select the FSSO groups.



6. Configure the remaining settings as required.
7. Click *OK*.

Troubleshooting

If an authenticated AD user cannot access the internet or pass the firewall policy, verify the local FSSO user list:

```
# diagnose debug authd fsso list
----FSSO logons----
IP: 10.1.100.188 User: test2 Groups: CN=group2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
Workstation: MemberOf: CN=group2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
Total number of logons listed: 1, filtered: 0
----end of FSSO logons----
```

1. Check that the group in *MemberOf* is allowed by the policy.
2. If the expected AD user is not in list, but other users are, it means that either:
   - The FortiGate missed the log in event, which can happen if many users log in at the same time, or
   - The user's workstation is unable to connect to the DC, and is currently logged in with cached credentials, so there is no entry in the DC security event log.
3. If there are no users in the local FSSO user list:
   a. Ensure that the local FSSO agent is working correctly:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug authd fsso server-status

Server Name                          Connection Status    Version             Address
-----------                          -----------------    -------             -------
FGT_A (vdom1) # Local FSSO Agent     connected            FSAE server 1.1     127.0.0.1
```

   The connection status must be `connected`.

   b. Verify the Active Directory connection status:

```
# diagnose debug fsso-polling detail 1
AD Server Status (connected):
ID=1, name(10.1.100.131),ip=10.1.100.131,source(security),users(0)
```

```
port=auto username=Administrator
read log eof=1, latest logon timestamp: Fri Jul 26 10:36:20 2019

polling frequency: every 10 second(s) success(274), fail(0)
LDAP query: success(0), fail(0)
LDAP max group query period(seconds): 0
LDAP status: connected

Group Filter: CN=group2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-
FSSO,DC=com+CN=group21,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
```

If the polling frequency shows successes and failures, that indicates sporadic network problems or a very busy DC. If it indicates no successes or failures, then incorrect credentials could be the issue.

If the LDAP status is connected, then the FortiGate can access the configured LDAP server. This is required for AD group membership lookup of authenticated users because the Windows Security Event log does not include group membership information. The FortiGate sends an LDAP search for group membership of authenticated users to the configure LDAP server.

FortiGate adds authenticated users to the local FSSO user list only if the group membership is one of the groups in `Group Filter`.

4. If necessary, capture the output of the local FortiGate daemon that polls Windows Security Event logs:

```
# diagnose debug application fssod -1
```

This output contains a lot of detailed information which can be captured to a text file.

Limitations

- NTLM based authentication is not supported.
- If there are a large number of user log ins at the same time, the FSSO daemon may miss some. Consider using FSSO agent mode if this will be an issue. See Public and private SDN connectors on page 298 for information.
- The FSSO daemon does not support all of the security log events that are supported by other FSSO scenarios. For example, only Kerberos log in events 4768 and 4769 are supported.

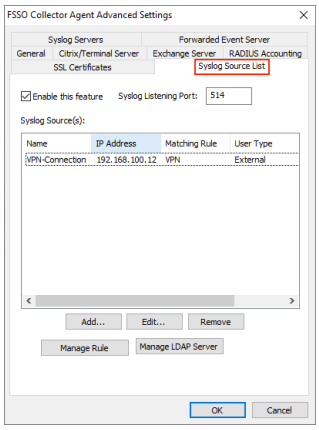
FSSO using Syslog as source

This example describes how to configure Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) agent on Windows using syslog as the source and a custom syslog matching rule.

The FSSO collector agent must be build 0291 or later, and in advanced mode (see How to switch FSSO operation mode from Standard Mode to Advanced Mode).

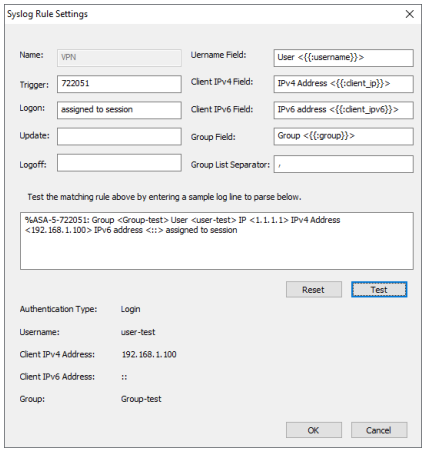
To configure the FSSO agent on Windows:

1. Open the FSSO agent on Windows.
2. Click *Advanced Settings*.
3. Go to the *Syslog Source List* tab.
4. Select *Enable this feature*.
5. Set *Syslog Listening Port*, or use the default port.



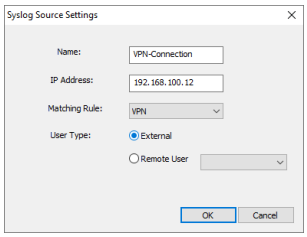
6. Click *Manage Rule*.
7. Create a new syslog rule:
   a. Click *Add*.
   b. Configure the rule:

Trigger	*722051*
Logon	*assigned to session*
Username Field	*User <{{:username}}>*
Client IPv4 Field	*IPv4 Address <{{:client_ip}}>*
Client IPv6 Field	*IPv6 Address <{{:client_ipv6}}>*
Group Field	*Group <{{:group}}>*
Groups List Separator	*,*



   c. To test the rule, enter a sample log line, then click *Test*.
   d. Click *OK*.
8. Create a new syslog source:
   a. On the *Advanced Settings* window, click *Add*.
   b. Configure the source:

Name	*VPN-Connection*
IP Address	*192.168.100.12*
Matching Rule	*VPN*
User Type	*External*: Users are not defined on the CA and user groups come from the source. *Remote User*: Users are defined on a remote LDAP server and user groups are retrieved from the specified LDAP server. Any group from the syslog messages are ignored. See Connect to a remote LDAP server on page 2019.



c. Click *OK*.

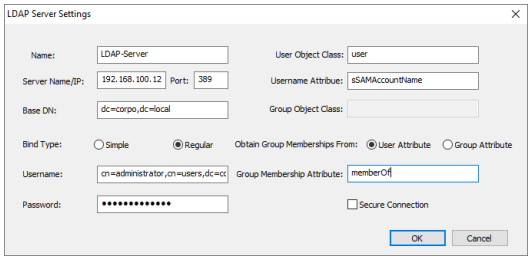
9. Click *OK*.

Connect to a remote LDAP server

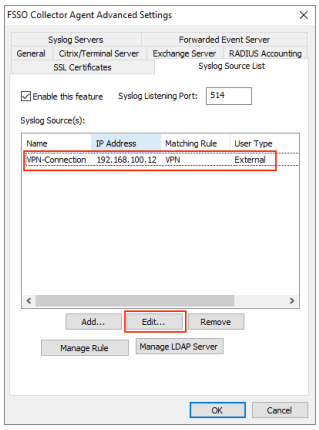
This section describes how to connect to a remote LDAP server to match the user identity from the syslog server with an LDAP server.

To connect to a remote LDAP server:

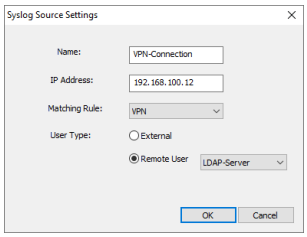
1. Open the FSSO agent on Windows.
2. Click *Advanced Settings*.
3. Go to the *Syslog Source List* tab.
4. Click *Manage LDAP Server*.
5. Click *Add* and configure the LDAP server settings:



6. Click *OK*.
7. Select the syslog source and click *Edit*.



8. Set *User Type* to *Remote User*, and select the LDAP server from the drop-down list.



9. Click *OK*.

Wireless configuration

See the FortiWiFi and FortiAP Cookbook.

Switch Controller

Use the Switch Controller function, also known as FortiLink, to remotely manage FortiSwitch units. In the commonly-used layer 2 scenario, the FortiGate that is acting as a switch controller is connected to distribution FortiSwitch units. The distribution FortiSwitch units are in the top tier of stacks of FortiSwitch units and connected downwards with Convergent or Access layer FortiSwitch units. To leverage CAPWAP and the Fortinet proprietary FortiLink protocol, set up data and control planes between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch units.

FortiLink allows administrators to create and manage different VLANs, and apply the full-fledged security functions of FortiOS to them, such as 802.1X authentication and firewall policies. Most of the security control capabilities on the FortiGate are extended to the edge of the entire network, combining FortiGate, FortiSwitch, and FortiAP devices, and providing secure, seamless, and unified access control to users.

See FortiSwitch devices managed by FortiOS.

Log and Report

Logging and reporting are useful components to help you understand what is happening on your network, and to inform you about certain network activities, such as the detection of a virus, a visit to an invalid website, an intrusion, a failed log in attempt, and myriad others.

Logging records the traffic that passes through, starts from, or ends on the FortiGate, and records the actions the FortiGate took during the traffic scanning process. After this information is recorded in a log message, it is stored in a log file that is stored on a log device (a central storage location for log messages). FortiGate supports sending all log types to several log devices, including FortiAnalyzer, FortiAnalyzer Cloud, FortiGate Cloud, and syslog servers. Approximately 5% of memory is used for buffering logs sent to FortiAnalyzer. The FortiGate system memory and local disk can also be configured to store logs, so it is also considered a log device.

Reports show the recorded activity in a more readable format. A report gathers all the log information that it needs, then presents it in a graphical format with a customizable design and automatically generated charts showing what is happening on the network. Reports can be generated on FortiGate devices with disk logging and on FortiAnalyzer devices.



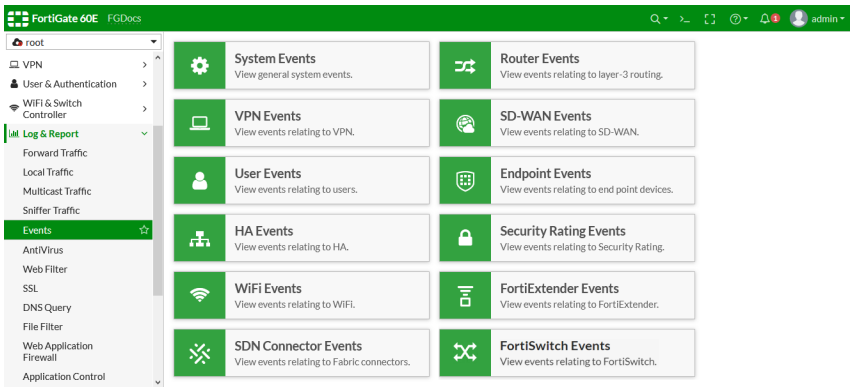
Performance statistics are not logged to disk. Performance statistics can be received by a syslog server or by FortiAnalyzer.

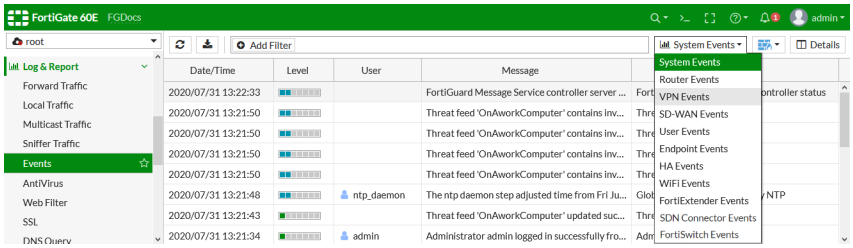
The following topics provide information about logging and reporting:

- Viewing event logs on page 2023
- Sample logs by log type on page 2025
- Log buffer on FortiGates with an SSD disk on page 2044
- Checking the email filter log on page 2047
- Supported log types to FortiAnalyzer, FortiAnalyzer Cloud, FortiGate Cloud, and syslog on page 2048
- Sending traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud on page 2048
- Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate on page 2050
- Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers (or syslog servers) per VDOM on page 2053
- Source and destination UUID logging on page 2055
- Logging the signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength per client on page 2056
- RSSO information for authenticated destination users in logs on page 2059
- Threat weight on page 2062
- Configuring and debugging the free-style filter on page 2063
- Troubleshooting on page 2065

Viewing event logs

All event log subtypes are available from the introductory screen and the event log subtype dropdown list on the *Log & Report* > *Events* page. Not all of the event log subtypes are available by default.





SD-WAN Events	Always available.
System Events	Always available.
Router Events	Always available.
VPN Events	Available when *VPN* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
User Events	Always available.
Endpoint Events	Available when *Endpoint Control* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
HA Events	Always available.
Security Rating Events	Always available, but logs are only generated when a Security Rating License is registered.
WAN Opt. & Cache Events	Available on devices with two hard disks by default. On devices with one hard disk, the disk usage must be set to `wanopt` and then *WAN Opt. & Cache* must be enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
WiFi Events	Available on hardware devices when *WiFi Controller* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
FortiExtender Events	Available when *FortiExtender* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
SDN Connector Events	Always available.
FortiSwitch Events	Available when *Switch Controller* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*.

Sample logs by log type

This topic provides a sample raw log for each subtype and the configuration requirements.

Traffic Logs > Forward Traffic

Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic all
        set application-list "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=11:37:47 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557513467369913239 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=58012
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=23.59.154.35 dstport=80 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="ae28f494-5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" dstuuid="ae28f494-
5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" poluuid="ccb269e0-5735-51e9-a218-a397dd08b7eb" sessionid=105048
proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" dstcountry="Canada"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=58012 appid=34050
app="HTTP.BROWSER_Firefox" appcat="Web.Client" apprisk="elevated" applist="g-default"
duration=116 sentbyte=1188 rcvdbyte=1224 sentpkt=17 rcvdpkt=16 utmaction="allow" countapp=1
osname="Ubuntu" mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcserver=0
utmref=65500-742
```

Traffic Logs > Local Traffic

Log configuration requirements

```
config log setting
    set local-in-allow enable
    set local-in-deny-unicast enable
    set local-in-deny-broadcast enable
    set local-out enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=11:50:48 logid="0001000014" type="traffic" subtype="local"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557514248379911176 srcip=172.16.200.254 srcport=62024
srcintf="port11" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.2 dstport=443 dstintf="vdom1"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=107478 proto=6 action="server-rst" policyid=0
policytype="local-in-policy" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved"
trandisp="noop" app="Web Management(HTTPS)" duration=5 sentbyte=1247 rcvdbyte=1719 sentpkt=5
rcvdpkt=6 appcat="unscanned"
```

Traffic Logs > Multicast Traffic

Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
        set dstaddr 230-1-0-0
        set dstintf port3
        set srcaddr 172-16-200-0
        set srcintf port25
        set action accept
        set log enable
    next
end

config system setting
    set multicast-forward enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-03-31 time=06:42:54 logid="0002000012" type="traffic" subtype="multicast"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554039772 srcip=172.16.200.55 srcport=60660
srcintf="port25" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=230.1.1.2 dstport=7878 dstintf="port3"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=1162 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=1
policytype="multicast-policy" service="udp/7878" dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved"
trandisp="noop" duration=22 sentbyte=5940 rcvdbyte=0 sentpkt=11 rcvdpkt=0 appcat="unscanned"
```

Traffic Logs > Sniffer Traffic

Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall sniffer
    edit 3
        set logtraffic all
        set interface "port1"
        set ips-sensor-status enable
        set ips-sensor "sniffer-profile"
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=14:18:54 logid="0004000017" type="traffic" subtype="sniffer"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557523134021045897 srcip=208.91.114.4 srcport=50463
srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=104.80.88.154 dstport=443 dstintf="port1"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=2193276 proto=6 action="accept" policyid=3
policytype="sniffer" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United States" srccountry="Canada"
trandisp="snat" transip=0.0.0.0 transport=0 duration=10 sentbyte=0 rcvdbyte=0 sentpkt=0
rcvdpkt=0 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="allow" countips=1 crscore=5 craction=32768
sentdelta=0 rcvddelta=0 utmref=65162-7772
```

Event Logs > SD-WAN Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set sdwan enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2020-03-29 time=16:41:30 logid="0113022923" type="event" subtype="sdwan" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1585525290513555981 tz="-0700" logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
eventtype="Health Check" healthcheck="ping1" slatargetid=1 oldvalue="1" newvalue="2"
msg="Number of pass member changed."
```

```
date=2020-03-29 time=16:51:27 logid="0113022925" type="event" subtype="sdwan" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1585525888177637570 tz="-0700" logdesc="Virtual WAN Link SLA
information" eventtype="SLA" healthcheck="ping1" slatargetid=1 interface="R150" status="up"
latency="0.013" jitter="0.001" packetloss="100.000%" inbandwidth="0kbps"
outbandwidth="0kbps" bibandwidth="0kbps" slamap="0x0" metric="packetloss" msg="Health Check
SLA status. SLA failed due to being over the performance metric threshold."
```

Event Logs > System Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set system enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=11:20:54 logid="0100032001" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557771654587081441 logdesc="Admin login
successful" sn="1557771654" user="admin" ui="ssh(172.16.200.254)" method="ssh"
srcip=172.16.200.254 dstip=172.16.200.2 action="login" status="success" reason="none"
profile="super_admin" msg="Administrator admin logged in successfully from ssh
(172.16.200.254)"
```

Event Logs > Router Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set router enable
end
```

```
config router bgp
    set log-neighbour-changes enable
end
```

```
config router ospf
    set log-neighbour-changes enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=14:12:26 logid="0103020301" type="event" subtype="router"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557781946677737955 logdesc="Routing log" msg="OSPF:
RECV[Hello]: From 31.1.1.1 via port9:172.16.200.1: Invalid Area ID 0.0.0.0"
```

Event Logs > VPN Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set vpn enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=14:21:42 logid="0101037127" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1557782502722231889 logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 1" msg="progress IPsec
phase 1" action="negotiate" remip=50.1.1.101 locip=50.1.1.100 remport=500 locport=500
outintf="port14" cookies="9091f4d4837ea71c/0000000000000000" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="test" status="success" init="local"
mode="main" dir="outbound" stage=1 role="initiator" result="OK"
```

Event Logs > User Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set user enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=15:55:56 logid="0102043008" type="event" subtype="user" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1557788156913809277 logdesc="Authentication success" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.55 policyid=1 interface="port10" user="bob" group="local-group1"
authproto="TELNET(10.1.100.11)" action="authentication" status="success" reason="N/A"
msg="User bob succeeded in authentication"
```

Event Logs > Endpoint Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set endpoint enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-14 time=08:32:13 logid="0107045057" type="event" subtype="endpoint"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557847933900764210 logdesc="FortiClient connection
added" action="add" status="success" license_limit="unlimited" used_for_type=4 connection_
type="sslvpn" count=1 user="skubas" ip=172.18.64.250 name="VAN-200957-PC"
fctuid="52C66FE08F724FE0B116DAD5062C96CD" msg="Add a FortiClient Connection."

date=2019-05-14 time=08:19:38 logid="0107045058" type="event" subtype="endpoint"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557847179037488154 logdesc="FortiClient connection
closed" action="close" status="success" license_limit="unlimited" used_for_type=5
connection_type="sslvpn" count=1 user="skubas" ip=172.18.64.250 name="VAN-200957-PC"
fctuid="52C66FE08F724FE0B116DAD5062C96CD" msg="Close a FortiClient Connection."
```

Event Logs > HA Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set ha enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=09:53:18 logid="0108037894" type="event" subtype="ha" level="critical"
vd="root" eventtime=1557507199208575235 logdesc="Virtual cluster member joined" msg="Virtual
cluster detected member join" vcluster=1 ha_group=0 sn="FG2K5E3916900286"
```

Event Logs > Security Rating Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
```

```
    set security-rating enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=14:40:59 logid="0110052000" type="event" subtype="security-rating"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557783659536252389 logdesc="Security Rating summary"
auditid=1557783648 audittime=1557783659 auditscore="5.0" criticalcount=1 highcount=6
mediumcount=8 lowcount=0 passedcount=38
```

Event Logs > WAN Opt & Cache Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set wan-opt enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-14 time=09:37:46 logid="0105048039" type="event" subtype="wad" level="error"
vd="root" eventtime=1557851867382676560 logdesc="SSL fatal alert sent" session_id=0
policyid=0 srcip=0.0.0.0 srcport=0 dstip=208.91.113.83 dstport=636 action="send" alert="2"
desc="certificate unknown" msg="SSL Alert sent"
```

```
date=2019-05-10 time=15:48:31 logid="0105048038" type="event" subtype="wad" level="error"
vd="root" eventtime=1557528511221374615 logdesc="SSL Fatal Alert received" session_
id=5f88ddd1 policyid=0 srcip=172.18.70.15 srcport=59880 dstip=91.189.89.223 dstport=443
action="receive" alert="2" desc="unknown ca" msg="SSL Alert received"
```

Event Logs > Wireless

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set wireless-activity enable
end
```

```
config wireless-controller log
    set status enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=11:30:08 logid="0104043568" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557772208134721423 logdesc="Fake AP on air"
ssid="fortinet" bssid="90:6c:ac:89:e1:fa" aptype=0 rate=130 radioband="802.11n" channel=6
action="fake-ap-on-air" manuf="Fortinet, Inc." security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES"
signal=-93 noise=-95 live=353938 age=505 onwire="no" detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A"
apscan="N/A" sndetected="N/A" radioiddetected=0 stacount=0 snclosest="FP320C3X17001909"
radioidclosest=0 apstatus=0 msg="Fake AP On-air fortinet 90:6c:ac:89:e1:fa chan 6 live
353938 age 505"
```

Event Logs > SDN Connector

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set connector enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=16:09:43 logid="0112053200" type="event" subtype="connector"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557788982 logdesc="IP address added" cfgobj="aws1"
action="object-add" addr="54.210.36.196" cldobjid="i-0fe5a1ef16bb94796" netid="vpc-97e81cee"
msg="connector object discovered in addr-obj aws1, 54.210.36.196"
```

```
date=2019-05-13 time=16:09:43 logid="0112053201" type="event" subtype="connector"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557788982 logdesc="IP address removed"
cfgobj="aws1" action="object-remove" addr="172.31.31.101" cldobjid="i-0fe5a1ef16bb94796"
netid="vpc-97e81cee" msg="connector object removed in addr-obj aws1, 172.31.31.101"
```

Event Logs > FortiExtender Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set fortiextender enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-02-20 time=09:57:22 logid="0111046400" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1550685442 logdesc="FortiExtender system activity"
action="FortiExtender Authorized"    msg="ext SN:FX04DN4N16002352 authorized"
```

```
date=2019-02-20 time=09:51:42 logid="0111046401" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1550685102 logdesc="FortiExtender controller activity"
sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="ext session-deauthed" msg="ext
SN:FX04DN4N16002352 deauthorized"
```

```
date=2019-02-20 time=10:02:26 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550685746 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Connected"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" apn="N/A" service="LTE"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 STATE: sim with imsi:302720502331361 in slot:2 on carrier:Rogers
connected"
```

```
date=2019-02-20 time=10:33:57 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550687636 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Disconnected"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="N/A" iccid="N/A" phonenumber="N/A" carrier="N/A" plan="N/A"
apn="N/A" service="LTE" msg="FX04DN4N16002352 STATE: sim with imsi: in slot:2 on carrier:N/A
disconnected"
```

```
date=2019-02-20 time=10:02:24 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550685744 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Connecting"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" apn="N/A" service="N/A"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 STATE: sim with imsi:302720502331361 in slot:2 on carrier:Rogers
connecting

date=2019-02-20 time=10:47:19 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550688438 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="SIM Change" imei="N/A" slot=2
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 SIM: SIM2 is inserted"

date=2019-02-20 time=10:57:50 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550689069 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="SIM Change" imei="359376060442770"
slot=1 msg="FX04DN4N16002352 SIM: SIM2 is plucked out"

date=2019-02-20 time=12:02:24 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550692942 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="SIM Switch" imei="359376060442770"
reason="sim-switch can't take effect due to unavailability of 2 sim cards"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 SIM: sim-switch can't take effect due to unavailability of 2 sim
cards"

date=2019-02-19 time=18:08:46 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550628524 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Signal Statistics"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" service="LTE" sinr="7.0 dB"
rsrp="-89 dBm" rsrq="-16 dB" signalstrength="92 dBm" rssi="-54" temperature="40 C" apn="N/A"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 INFO:  LTE RSSI=-54dBm,RSRP=-89dBm,RSRQ=-
16dB,SINR=7.0dB,BAND=B2,CELLID=061C700F,BW=15MHz,RXCH=1025,TXCH=19025,TAC=8AAC,TEMPERATURE=4
0 C"

date=2019-02-19 time=18:09:46 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550628585 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Data Statistics"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" service="LTE" rcvdbyte=7760
sentbyte=3315 msg="FX04DN4N16002352 INFO: SIM2 LTE, rx=7760, tx=3315, rx_diff=2538, tx_
diff=567"
```

Event Logs > FortiSwitch Events

Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set switch-controller enable
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2020-09-28 time=15:37:02 eventtime=1601332622257714795 tz="-0700" logid="0114032695"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="notice" vd="vdom1" logdesc="FortiSwitch
```

```
link" user="Fortilink" sn="S248EPTF18001384" name="S248EPTF18001384" msg="port51 Module re-
initialized to recover from ERROR state."

date=2020-09-28 time=15:37:02 eventtime=1601332622255619520 tz="-0700" logid="0114032697"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="warning" vd="vdom1" logdesc="FortiSwitch
switch" user="Fortilink" sn="S248EPTF18001384" name="S248EPTF18001384" msg="FortiLink:
internal echo reply timed out"

date=2020-09-28 time=15:37:01 eventtime=1601332621664809633 tz="-0700" logid="0114032605"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="information" vd="vdom1" logdesc="Switch-
Controller Tunnel Up" user="Switch-Controller" ui="cu_acd" sn="S248EPTF18001384"
name="S248EPTF18001384" msg="CAPWAP Tunnel Up (169.254.1.3)"

date=2020-09-28 time=15:36:59 eventtime=1601332619501461995 tz="-0700" logid="0114022904"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="notice" vd="vdom1" logdesc="CAPUTP session
status notification" user="Switch-Controller" ui="cu_acd" sn="S248EPTF18001384"
name="S248EPTF18001384" msg="S248EPTF18001384 Connected via session join" action="session-
join" srcip=169.254.1.3

date=2020-09-28 time=15:36:26 eventtime=1601332560434649361 tz="-0700" logid="0114032601"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="information" vd="vdom1" logdesc="Switch-
Controller discovered" user="daemon_admin" ui="cmdbsvr" sn="S524DN4K16000116"
name="S524DN4K16000116" msg="S524DN4K16000116 Discovered"

date=2020-09-28 time=15:36:26 eventtime=1601332560405228924 tz="-0700" logid="0114032601"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="information" vd="vdom1" logdesc="Switch-
Controller discovered" user="daemon_admin" ui="cmdbsvr" sn="S248EPTF18001827"
name="S248EPTF18001827" msg="S248EPTF18001827 Discovered"

date=2020-09-28 time=15:36:26 eventtime=1601332560336851635 tz="-0700" logid="0114032601"
type="event" subtype="switch-controller" level="information" vd="vdom1" logdesc="Switch-
Controller discovered" user="daemon_admin" ui="cmdbsvr" sn="S248EPTF18001384"
name="S248EPTF18001384" msg="S248EPTF18001384 Discovered"
```

Security Logs > Antivirus

Log configuration requirements

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "test-av"
        config http
            set options scan
        end
        set av-virus-log enable
        set av-block-log enable
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
```

```
        set av-profile "test-av"
        set logtraffic utm
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=11:45:03 logid="0211008192" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="infected" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557773103767393505 msg="File is
infected." action="blocked" service="HTTP" sessionid=359260 srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.55 srcport=60446 dstport=80 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" policyid=4 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="eicar.com" quarskip="File-was-not-quarantined." virus="EICAR_TEST_FILE"
dtype="Virus" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ve?vn=EICAR_TEST_FILE" virusid=2172
url="http://172.16.200.55/virus/eicar.com" profile="g-default" agent="curl/7.47.0"
analyticscksum="275a021bbfb6489e54d471899f7db9d1663fc695ec2fe2a2c4538aabf651fd0f"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=50 craction=2 crlevel="critical"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #
date=2019-05-13 time=11:45:04 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557773104815101919 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=60446
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.55 dstport=80 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="48420c8a-5c88-51e9-0424-a37f9e74621e" dstuuid="187d6f46-
5c86-51e9-70a0-fadcfc349c3e" poluuid="3888b41a-5c88-51e9-cb32-1c32c66b4edf" sessionid=359260
proto=6 action="close" policyid=4 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=60446 appid=15893
app="HTTP.BROWSER" appcat="Web.Client" apprisk="medium" applist="g-default" duration=1
sentbyte=412 rcvdbyte=2286 sentpkt=6 rcvdpkt=6 wanin=313 wanout=92 lanin=92 lanout=92
utmaction="block" countav=1 countapp=1 crscore=50 craction=2 osname="Ubuntu"
mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcserver=0 utmref=65497-770
```

Security Logs > Web Filter

Log configuration requirements

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "test-webfilter"
        set web-content-log enable
        set web-filter-activex-log enable
        set web-filter-command-block-log enable
        set web-filter-cookie-log enable
        set web-filter-applet-log enable
        set web-filter-jscript-log enable
        set web-filter-js-log enable
        set web-filter-vbs-log enable
        set web-filter-unknown-log enable
        set web-filter-referer-log enable
        set web-filter-cookie-removal-log enable
        set web-url-log enable
        set web-invalid-domain-log enable
        set web-ftgd-err-log enable
        set web-ftgd-quota-usage enable
    next
end
```

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "v4-out"
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic utm
        set utm-status enable
        set webfilter-profile "test-webfilter"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=16:29:45 logid="0316013056" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_blk" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557790184975119738 policyid=1
sessionid=381780 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=44258 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=185.244.31.158 dstport=80 dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTP" hostname="morrishittu.ddns.net" profile="test-webfilter" action="blocked"
reqtype="direct" url="/" sentbyte=84 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs to a
denied category in policy" method="domain" cat=26 catdesc="Malicious Websites" crscore=30
craction=4194304 crlevel="high"
```

```
# Corresponding traffic log #
date=2019-05-13 time=16:29:50 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557790190452146185 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=44258
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=185.244.31.158 dstport=80 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="ae28f494-5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" dstuuid="ae28f494-
5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" poluuid="ccb269e0-5735-51e9-a218-a397dd08b7eb" sessionid=381780
proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" dstcountry="Germany"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=44258 duration=5
sentbyte=736 rcvdbyte=3138 sentpkt=14 rcvdpkt=5 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="block"
countweb=1 crscore=30 craction=4194304 osname="Ubuntu" mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01"
srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcserver=0 utmref=65497-796
```

Security Logs > DNS Query

Log configuration requirements

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "dnsfilter_fgd"
        config ftgd-dns
            set options error-allow
        end
        set log-all-domain enable
        set block-botnet enable
    next
end
```

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
```

```
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set dnsfilter-profile "dnsfilter_fgd"
        set logtraffic utm
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=15:05:49 logid="1501054802" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557957949740931155 policyid=1 sessionid=6887
srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50002 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.100.100 dstport=53 dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="dnsfilter_fgd" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" xid=57945 qname="changelogs.ubuntu.com"
qtype="AAAA" qtypeval=28 qclass="IN" ipaddr="2001:67c:1560:8008::11" msg="Domain is
monitored" action="pass" cat=52 catdesc="Information Technology"

date=2019-05-15 time=15:05:49 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557957949653103543 policyid=1
sessionid=6887 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50002 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.100.100 dstport=53 dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="dnsfilter_fgd" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" xid=57945 qname="changelogs.ubuntu.com"
qtype="AAAA" qtypeval=28 qclass="IN"

# Corresponding traffic log #
date=2019-05-15 time=15:08:49 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557958129950003945 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50002
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.100.100 dstport=53 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="ae28f494-5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" dstuuid="ae28f494-
5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" poluuid="ccb269e0-5735-51e9-a218-a397dd08b7eb" sessionid=6887
proto=17 action="accept" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="DNS" dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=50002 duration=180
sentbyte=67 rcvdbyte=207 sentpkt=1 rcvdpkt=1 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="allow" countdns=1
osname="Linux" mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" srcserver=0
utmref=65495-306
```

Security Logs > Application Control

Log configuration requirements

```
# log enabled by default in application profile entry

config application list
    edit "block-social.media"
        set other-application-log enable
        config entries
            edit 1
                set category 2 5 6 23
                set log enable
```

```
            next
        end
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "to_Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic utm
        set application-list "block-social.media"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:36 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="app-ctrl-all" level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557968615 appid=40568
srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=195.8.215.136 srcport=50798 dstport=443 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
direction="outgoing" policyid=1 sessionid=4414 applist="block-social.media"
appcat="Web.Client" app="HTTPS.BROWSER" action="pass" hostname="www.dailymotion.com"
incidentserialno=1962906680 url="/" msg="Web.Client: HTTPS.BROWSER," apprisk="medium"
scertcname="*.dailymotion.com" scertissuer="DigiCert SHA2 High Assurance Server CA"

date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:35 logid="1059028705" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="app-ctrl-all" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557968615 appid=16072
srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=195.8.215.136 srcport=50798 dstport=443 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=4414 applist="block-social.media"
appcat="Video/Audio" app="Dailymotion" action="block" hostname="www.dailymotion.com"
incidentserialno=1962906682 url="/" msg="Video/Audio: Dailymotion," apprisk="elevated"

date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:35 logid="1059028705" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="app-ctrl-all" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557968615 appid=16072
srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=195.8.215.136 srcport=50798 dstport=443 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=4414 applist="block-social.media"
appcat="Video/Audio" app="Dailymotion" action="block" hostname="www.dailymotion.com"
incidentserialno=1962906681 url="/" msg="Video/Audio: Dailymotion," apprisk="elevated"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #  date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:41 logid="0000000013"
type="traffic" subtype="forward" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557968619
srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50798 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=195.8.215.136
dstport=443 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="d8ce7a90-7763-51e9-e2be-741294c96f31"
sessionid=4414 proto=6 action="client-rst" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTPS"
dstcountry="France" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.10
transport=50798 appid=16072 app="Dailymotion" appcat="Video/Audio" apprisk="elevated"
applist="block-social.media" appact="drop-session" duration=5 sentbyte=1150 rcvdbyte=7039
```

```
sentpkt=13 utmaction="block" countapp=3 devtype="Unknown" devcategory="None"
mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcserver=0 utmref=0-330
```

Security Logs > Intrusion Prevention

Log configuration requirements

```
# log enabled by default in ips sensor

config ips sensor
    edit "block-critical-ips"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set severity critical
                set status enable
                set action block
                set log enable
            next
        end
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "to_Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic utm
        set ips-sensor "block-critical-ips"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=17:56:41 logid="0419016384" type="utm" subtype="ips"
eventtype="signature" level="alert" vd="root" eventtime=1557968201 severity="critical"
srcip=10.1.100.22 srccountry="Reserved" dstip=172.16.200.55 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" sessionid=4017 action="dropped" proto=6
service="HTTP" policyid=1 attack="Adobe.Flash.newfunction.Handling.Code.Execution"
srcport=46810 dstport=80 hostname="172.16.200.55" url="/ips/sig1.pdf" direction="incoming"
attackid=23305 profile="block-critical-ips" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID23305"
incidentserialno=582633933 msg="applications3:
Adobe.Flash.newfunction.Handling.Code.Execution," crscore=50 craction=4096
crlevel="critical"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #  date=2019-05-15 time=17:58:10 logid="0000000013"
type="traffic" subtype="forward" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557968289
srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=46810 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=172.16.200.55
dstport=80 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="d8ce7a90-7763-51e9-e2be-741294c96f31"
```

```
sessionid=4017 proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP"
dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.10
transport=46810 duration=89 sentbyte=565 rcvdbyte=9112 sentpkt=9 rcvdpkt=8
appcat="unscanned" utmaction="block" countips=1 crscore=50 craction=4096 devtype="Unknown"
devcategory="None" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcserver=0
utmref=0-302
```

Security Logs > Anomaly

Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall DoS-policy
    edit 1
        set interface "port12"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        config anomaly
            edit "icmp_flood"
                set status enable
                set log enable
                set action block
                set threshold 50
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=17:05:59 logid="0720018433" type="utm" subtype="anomaly"
eventtype="anomaly" level="alert" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557792359461869329
severity="critical" srcip=10.1.100.11 srccountry="Reserved" dstip=172.16.200.55
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" sessionid=0 action="clear_session" proto=1
service="PING" count=1 attack="icmp_flood" icmpid="0x1474" icmptype="0x08" icmpcode="0x00"
attackid=16777316 policyid=1 policytype="DoS-policy"
ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID16777316" msg="anomaly: icmp_flood, 51 > threshold 50"
crscore=50 craction=4096 crlevel="critical"
```

Security Logs > Data Leak Prevention

Log configuration requirements

```
config dlp sensor
    edit "dlp-file-type-test"
        set comment ''
        set replacemsg-group ''
        config filter
            edit 1
                set name ''
                set severity medium
                set type file
                set proto http-get http-post ftp
                set filter-by file-type
```

```
                set file-type 1
                set archive enable
                set action block
            next
        end
        set dlp-log enable
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "to_Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic utm
        set dlp-sensor "dlp-file-type-test"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=17:45:30 logid="0954024576" type="utm" subtype="dlp" eventtype="dlp"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557967528 filteridx=1 dlpextra="dlp-file-size11"
filtertype="file-type" filtercat="file" severity="medium" policyid=1 sessionid=3423
epoch=1740880646 eventid=0 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50354 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstip=52.216.177.83 dstport=443 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6
service="HTTPS" filetype="pdf" direction="incoming" action="block"
hostname="fortinetweb.s3.amazonaws.com" url="/docs.fortinet.com/v2/attachments/be3d0e3d-
4b62-11e9-94bf-00505692583a/FortiOS_6.2.0_Log_Reference.pdf" agent="Wget/1.17.1"
filename="FortiOS_6.2.0_Log_Reference.pdf" filesize=16360 profile="dlp-file-type-test"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #
date=2019-05-15 time=17:45:34 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557967534 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50354
srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=52.216.177.83 dstport=443 dstintf="port9"
dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="d8ce7a90-7763-51e9-e2be-741294c96f31" sessionid=3423 proto=6
action="server-rst" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United
States" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.10 transport=50354
duration=5 sentbyte=2314 rcvdbyte=5266 sentpkt=33 rcvdpkt=12 appcat="unscanned" wanin=43936
wanout=710 lanin=753 lanout=753 utmaction="block" countdlp=1 crscore=5 craction=262144
crlevel="low" devtype="Unknown" devcategory="None" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e"
srcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcserver=0 utmref=0-152
```

Security Logs > SSH and Security Logs > SSL

Log configuration requirements

```
config ssh-filter profile
    edit "ssh-deepscan"
        set block shell
        set log shell
        set default-command-log disable
    next
end
```

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port21"
        set dstintf "port23"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssh-filter-profile "ssh-deepscan"
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "ssl"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

For SSL-Traffic-log, enable `logtraffic all`

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic all
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

For SSL-UTM-log

```
#EVENTTYPE="SSL-ANOMALIES"
```

By default, `ssl-anomalies-log` is enabled.

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "deep-inspection"
        set comment "Read-only deep inspection profile."
        set server-cert-mode re-sign
        set caname "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
        set untrusted-caname "Fortinet_CA_Untrusted"
        set ssl-anomalies-log enable
        set ssl-exemptions-log disable
        set ssl-negotiation-log disable
        set rpc-over-https disable
        set mapi-over-https disable
        set use-ssl-server disable
    next
end
```

```
# EVENTTYPE="SSL-EXEMPT"
```

Enable `ssl-exemptions-log` to generate ssl-utm-exempt log.

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "deep-inspection"
        set comment "Read-only deep inspection profile."
        set server-cert-mode re-sign
        set caname "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
        set untrusted-caname "Fortinet_CA_Untrusted"
        set ssl-anomalies-log enable
        set ssl-exemptions-log enable
        set ssl-negotiation-log disable
        set rpc-over-https disable
        set mapi-over-https disable
        set use-ssl-server disable
    next
end
```

```
# EVENTTYPE="SSL-negotiation"
```

Enable `ssl-negotiation-log` to log SSL negotiation..

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "deep-inspection"
        set comment "Read-only deep inspection profile."
        set server-cert-mode re-sign
        set caname "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
        set untrusted-caname "Fortinet_CA_Untrusted"
        set ssl-anomalies-log enable
        set ssl-exemptions-log enable
        set ssl-negotiation-log enable
        set rpc-over-https disable
        set mapi-over-https disable
        set use-ssl-server disable
    next
end
```

Sample log for SSH

```
date=2019-05-15 time=16:18:17 logid="1601061010" type="utm" subtype="ssh" eventtype="ssh-
channel" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557962296 policyid=1 sessionid=344
profile="ssh-deepscan" srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=43580 dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=22
```

```
srcintf="port21" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port23" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" direction="outgoing" login="root" channeltype="shell"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #
date=2019-05-15 time=16:18:18 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557962298 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=43580
srcintf="port21" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=22 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="49871fae-7371-51e9-17b4-43c7ff119195" sessionid=344 proto=6
action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="SSH" dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.171 transport=43580 duration=8
sentbyte=3093 rcvdbyte=2973 sentpkt=18 rcvdpkt=16 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="block"
countssh=1 utmref=65535-0
```

Sample log for SSL

For SSL-Traffic-log

```
date=2019-05-16 time=10:08:26 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1558026506763925658 srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=38572
srcintf="dmz" srcintfrole="dmz" dstip=104.154.89.105 dstport=443 dstintf="wan1"
dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="a17c0a38-75c6-51e9-4c0d-d547347b63e5" sessionid=100 proto=6
action="server-rst" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United
States" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.11 transport=38572
duration=5 sentbyte=930 rcvdbyte=6832 sentpkt=11 rcvdpkt=19 appcat="unscanned" wanin=1779
wanout=350 lanin=754 lanout=754 utmaction="block"  countssl=1 crscore=5 craction=262144
crlevel="low" utmref=65467-0
```

For SSL-UTM-log

```
#EVENTTYPE="SSL-ANOMALIES"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:44:53 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795092 policyid=1 sessionid=10796
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=43602 dstip=104.154.89.105 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-invalid"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:51:17 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795476 policyid=1 sessionid=11110
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49076 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-untrusted"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:55:43 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795742 policyid=1 sessionid=11334
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49082 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-req"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:57:42 logid="1700062053" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795861 policyid=1 sessionid=11424
service="SMTPS" profile="block-unsupported-ssl" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=41296
dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=8080 srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf=unknown-0
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 action="blocked" msg="Connection is blocked due to
unsupported SSL traffic" reason="malformed input"

date=2019-03-28 time=11:00:17 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553796016 policyid=1 sessionid=11554
```

```
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49088 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-sni-mismatch"

# EVENTTYPE="SSL-EXEMPT"

date=2019-03-28 time=11:09:14 logid="1701062003" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
exempt" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553796553 policyid=1 sessionid=12079
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49102 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="exempt" msg="SSL connection exempted" reason="exempt-addr"

date=2019-03-28 time=11:10:55 logid="1701062003" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
exempt" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553796654 policyid=1 sessionid=12171
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=47390 dstip=50.18.221.132 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="exempt" msg="SSL connection exempted" reason="exempt-ftgd-cat"

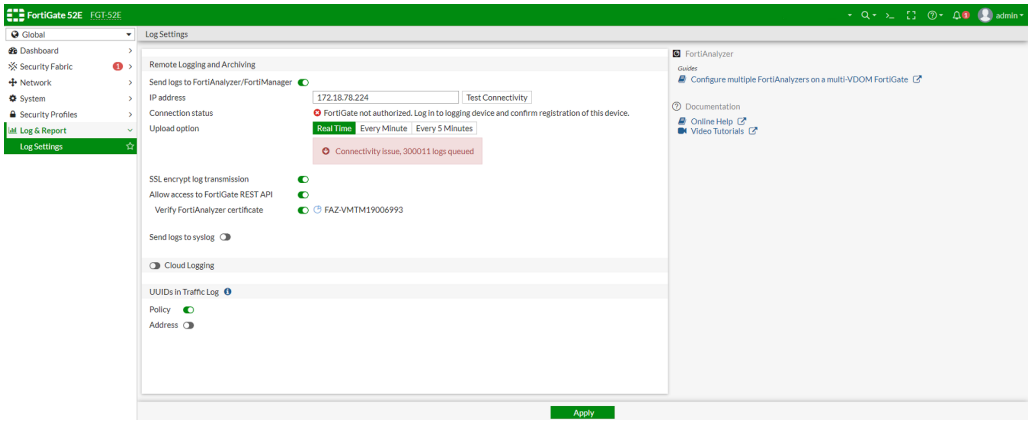
# EVENTYPE="SSL-NEGOTIATION"

date=2020-02-07 time=11:10:58 logid="1702062101" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
negotiation" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1581102658589415731 tz="-0800"
action="blocked" policyid=1 sessionid=141224 service="HTTPS" profile="deep-inspection-clone"
srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=33666 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=8080 srcintf="port2"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
eventsubtype="unexpected-protocol" msg="SSL connection is blocked."
```

Log buffer on FortiGates with an SSD disk

FortiGates with an SSD disk have a configurable log buffer. When the connection to FortiAnalyzer is unreachable, the FortiGate is able to buffer logs on disk if the memory log buffer is full. The logs queued on the disk buffer can be sent successfully once the connection to FortiAnalyzer is restored.

The number of logs queued on the disk buffer is visible in the *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* page:



The queued logs are buffered to the memory first and then disk. `Main miglogd` handles the disk buffering job, while `miglogd-children` handles the memory buffering. Disk buffer statistics only appear under `Main miglogd`, and memory buffer statistics only appears under `miglogd-children`. If the total buffer is full, new logs will overwrite the old logs.

To configure the log buffer:

1. Allocate disk space (MB) to temporarily store logs to FortiAnalyzer:

```
config system global
    set faz-disk-buffer-size 200
end
```

2. Check the `Main miglogd` and `miglogd-children` statistics. The 200 MB disk buffer has been set, and there are currently no logs buffered in memory or on disk when FortiAnalyzer is reachable:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 41 0
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

    memory queue:
        num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

    disk max queue size:200MB total:0MB
        totol items:0
        disk queue agents:
            devid:-1-10-0-1
            buffer path:/var/log/qbuf/10.0/1
            saved size:0MB cached size:0
            save roll:0 restore roll:0
            restore id:0 space:0MB

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 1
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

    memory queue:
        num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

    disk queue client:
        devid:-1-10-0-1 status:buffering
        Total in cache:0 size:0(0MB) max:4MB logs:0
```

3. Disable the connection between the FortiGate and FortiAnalyzer. For example, delete the FortiGate from the FortiAnalyzer authorized device list.
   Assuming a massive number of logs (~ 300000) are recorded during this downtime, the logs will be queued in the memory buffer first. If the memory buffer is full, then the remaining logs will be queued on the disk buffer.
4. Check the `Main miglogd` and `miglogd-children` statistics again. All 97 MB of the memory buffer is occupied, and 76 of the 200 MB has been taken from the disk buffer:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 41 0
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

        disk max queue size:200MB total:76MB
                totol items:128917
```

```
                disk queue agents:
                        devid:-1-10-0-1
                        buffer path:/var/log/qbuf/10.0/1
                        saved size:76MB cached size:3324984
                        save roll:19 restore roll:0
                        restore id:0 space:0MB

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 1
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 165721 used: 101908358(97MB) allocated:
106449280(101MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:165718 size:101906500(97MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:165718

        disk queue client:
                devid:-1-10-0-1 status:restoring
                restore id:1267 space:0MB
                Total in cache:3 size:1858(0MB) max:4MB logs:3
```

The overall `miglogd` statistics shows the total cached logs is the sum of the logs buffered in memory and on disk:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 6
mem=0, disk=11, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=0, faz=300053, faz-cloud=0, webt=0, fds=0
interface-missed=44
Queues in all miglogds: cur:165718  total-so-far:165718
global log dev statistics:
faz 0: sent=0, failed=0, cached=300053, dropped=0 , relayed=0
Num of REST URLs: 0
```

5. Enable the connection between FortiAnalyzer and the FortiGate.
6. After a while, check the `miglogd` statistics to confirm that all buffered logs are being sent to FortiAnalyzer successfully:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 6
mem=0, disk=11, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=0, faz=300058, faz-cloud=0, webt=0, fds=0
interface-missed=44
Queues in all miglogds: cur:4294832957  total-so-far:165726
global log dev statistics:
faz 0: sent=300058, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
Num of REST URLs: 15

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 0
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

        disk max queue size:200MB total:0MB
                totol items:0
                disk queue agents:
                        devid:-1-10-0-1
                        buffer path:/var/log/qbuf/10.0/1
                        saved size:0MB cached size:0
```

```
                        save roll:20 restore roll:20
                        restore id:1267 space:0MB

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 1
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

        disk queue client:
                devid:-1-10-0-1 status:buffering
                Total in cache:0 size:0(0MB) max:4MB logs:0
```

Checking the email filter log

To check the email filter log in the CLI:

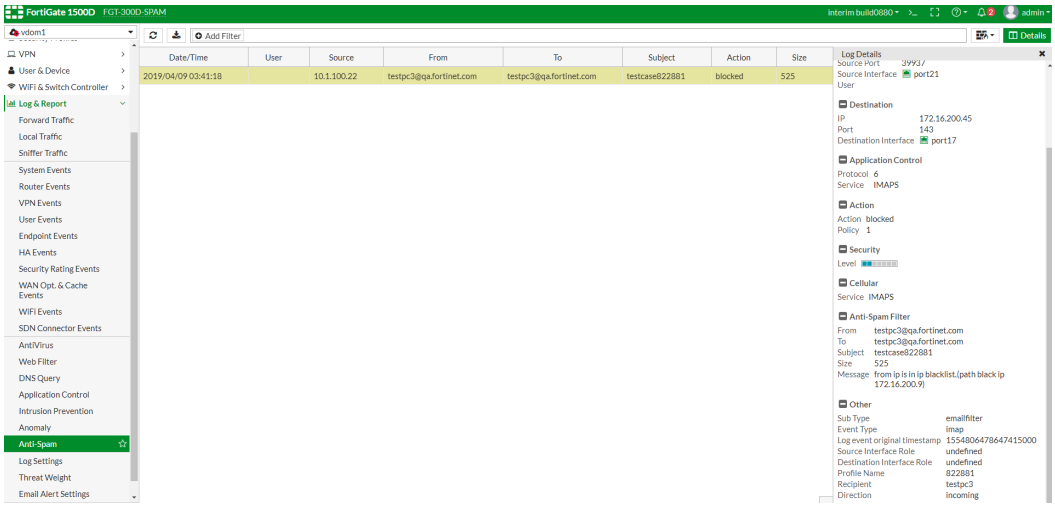
```
execute log filter category 5

execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-09 time=03:41:18 logid="0510020491" type="utm" subtype="emailfilter"
eventtype="imap" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554806478647415130 policyid=1
sessionid=439 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=39937 srcintf="port21" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.200.45 dstport=143 dstintf="port17" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="IMAPS" profile="822881" action="blocked" from="testpc3@qa.fortinet.com"
to="testpc3@qa.fortinet.com" recipient="testpc3" direction="incoming" msg="from ip is in ip
blacklist.(path black ip 172.16.200.9)" subject="testcase822881" size="525" attachment="no"
```

To check the email filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Anti-Spam*.



Supported log types to FortiAnalyzer, FortiAnalyzer Cloud, FortiGate Cloud, and syslog

FortiGate supports sending logs of all log types to FortiAnalyzer, FortiGate Cloud, and Syslog. For FortiGates with a standard FortiAnalyzer Cloud subscription (FAZC contract), traffic logs are not sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud; for FortiGates with a Premium subscription (AFAC contract), all logs are sent.

Sending traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud

FortiGates with a FortiCloud Premium subscription (AFAC) for Cloud-based Central Logging & Analytics, can send traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud in addition to UTM logs and event logs. After the Premium subscription is registered through FortiCare, FortiGuard will verify the purchase and authorize the AFAC contract. Once the contract is verified, FortiGuard will deliver the contract to FortiGate.

FortiGates with a Standard FortiAnalyzer Cloud subscription (FAZC) can only send UTM and event logs. FortiGates with a Premium subscription will send the UTM and event logs even if the Standard subscription has expired.



FortiAnalyzer Cloud does not support DLP/IPS archives at this time.

Example

In the following example, you will configure a FortiGate with a valid Premium subscription (AFAC) and expired Standard subscription (FAZC) to send traffic logs to FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

1. Configure the log delivery.

```
config log fortianalyzer-cloud setting
   set status enable
   set ips-archive disable
   set access-config enable
   set enc-algorithm high
   set ssl-min-proto-version default
   set conn-timeout 10
   set monitor-keepalive-period 5
   set monitor-failure-retry-period 5
   set certificate ''
   set source-ip ''
   set interface-select-method auto
   set upload-option realtime
   set priority default
   set max-log-rate 0
end
```

2. Verify the status of the FortiCloud Premium subscription (AFAC) and standard FortiAnalyzer Cloud subscription (FAZC).

The FAZC and AFAC fields display the subscription expiration date. The Support contract field displays the FortiCare account information. The User ID field displays the ID for FortiAnalyzer-Cloud instance.

```
# diagnose test update info
...
FAZC,Tue Sep 24 16:00:00 2030
AFAC,Mon Nov 29 16:00:00 2021
...
Support contract: pending_registration=255 got_contract_info=1
account_id=[****@fortinet.com] company=[Fortinet] industry=[Technology]
User ID: 979090
```

The FAZC and AFAC subscriptions are valid (date of verification is November 29, 2020).

3. Check the status of FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

```
# execute log fortianalyzer-cloud test-connectivity
FortiAnalyzer Host Name: FAZVM64-VIO-CLOUD
FortiAnalyzer Adom Name: root
FortiGate Device ID: FG101FTK19000000
Registration: registered
Connection: allow
Adom Disk Space (Used/Allocated): 50351453B/53687091200B
Analytics Usage (Used/Allocated): 41368925B/37580963840B
Analytics Usage (Data Policy Days Actual/Configured): 60/60 Days
Archive Usage (Used/Allocated): 8982528B/16106127360B
Archive Usage (Data Policy Days Actual/Configured): 235/365 Days
Log: Tx & Rx (log not received)
IPS Packet Log: Tx & Rx
Content Archive: Tx & Rx
Quarantine: Tx & Rx
Certificate of Fortianalyzer valid and serial number is:FAZVCLTM20000000
```

4. When the FortiCloud Premium (AFAC) and standard FortiAnalyzer Cloud (FAZC) subscriptions are valid, the FortiGate sends the traffic, event, and UTM logs to the remote FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

Traffic:

```
# execute log filter device fortianalyzer-cloud
# execute log filter category traffic
# execute log filter dump
category: traffic
device: fortianalyzer-cloud
start-line: 1
view-lines: 10
max-checklines: 0
HA member:
Oftp search string:
# execute log display
6512 logs found.
10 logs returned.
1: date=2020-11-29 time=13:57:33 id=6900668351836585985 itime="2020-11-29 13:57:34"
     euid=3 epid=1027 dsteuid=3 dstepid=101 logflag=1 logver=604041797 type="traffic"
     subtype="forward" level="notice" action="accept" policyid=1 sessionid=46536
     srcip=10.1.100.72 dstip=172.16.100.55 transip=172.16.200.7 srcport=40797 dstport=53
     transport=40797 trandisp="snat" duration=190 proto=17 sentbyte=268 rcvdbyte=0
     sentpkt=4 rcvdpkt=0 logid=0000000013 service="DNS" app="DNS" appcat="unscanned"
     srcintfrole="undefined" dstintfrole="undefined" srcserver=0 dstserver=0
     policytype="policy" eventtime=1606687054554969021 poluuid="c041939c-2930-51eb-1448-
     34c44a663331" srcmac="00:0c:29:eb:86:d6" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:eb:86:d6"
     dstmac="e8:1c:ba:c2:86:63" masterdstmac="e8:1c:ba:c2:86:63" srchwvendor="VMware"
     osname="Linux" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="Reserved" srcintf="dmz"
```

```
      dstintf="wan1" policyname="to_WAN" tz="-0800" devid="FG101FTK19000000" vd="root"
      dtime="2020-11-29 13:57:33" itime_t=1606687054 devname="FortiGate-101F_F"
```

Event:

```
# execute log filter device fortianalyzer-cloud
# execute log filter category event
# execute log filter dump
category: event
device: fortianalyzer-cloud
start-line: 1
view-lines: 10
max-checklines: 0
HA member:
Oftp search string:
# execute log display
1067 logs found.
10 logs returned.
1: date=2020-11-29 time=14:12:16 id=6900672144292708352 itime="2020-11-29 14:12:17"
      euid=3 epid=3 dsteuid=3 dstepid=3 logver=604041797 logid=0100038404 type="event"
      subtype="system" level="error" msg="unable to resolve FortiGuard hostname"
      logdesc="FortiGuard hostname unresolvable" hostname="service.fortiguard.net"
      eventtime=1606687936888734117 tz="-0800" devid="FG101FTK19000000" vd="root"
      dtime="2020-11-29 14:12:16" itime_t=1606687937 devname="FortiGate-101F_F"
```

UTM:

```
# execute log filter device fortianalyzer-cloud
# execute log filter category utm-virus
# execute log filter dump
category: virus
device: fortianalyzer-cloud
start-line: 1
view-lines: 10
max-checklines: 0
HA member:
Oftp search string:
# execute log display
4 logs found.
4 logs returned.
1: date=2020-11-27 time=15:53:41 id=6899956121704857638 itime="2020-11-27 15:53:45"
      euid=1027 epid=101 dsteuid=3 dstepid=101 logver=604041797 type="utm"
      subtype="virus" level="warning" action="passthrough" sessionid=1957747803
      policyid=1 srcip=168.10.199.186 dstip=172.252.3.20 srcport=22765 dstport=80 proto=6
      vrf=32 logid=0212008448 service="NNTP" user="user3" group="group1"
      eventtime=1606521221884991620 crscore=5 craction=2 crlevel="low"
      srcintfrole="undefined" dstintfrole="undefined" direction="incoming"
      filefilter="file-pattern" filetype="ignored" filename="file_test" checksum="12345"
      eventtype="filename" srcintf="ssl.root" dstintf="x1" msg="File is blocked." tz="-
      0800" devid="FG101FTK19000000" vd="root" dtime="2020-11-27 15:53:41" itime_
      t=1606521225 devname="FortiGate-101F_F"
```

5. When the FortiGate has a valid Premium FortiCloud subscription (AFAC) and an expired Standard FortiCloud subscription (FAZC), the FortiGate still sends the logs to the remote FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate

This topic shows a sample configuration of multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate.

In this example:

- The FortiGate has three VDOMs:
  - Root (management VDOM)
  - VDOM1
  - VDOM2
- There are four FortiAnalyzers.
  These IP addresses are used as examples in the instructions below.
  - FAZ1: `172.16.200.55`
  - FAZ2: `172.18.60.25`
  - FAZ3: `192.168.1.253`
  - FAZ4: `192.168.1.254`
- Set up FAZ1 and FAZ2 under global.
  - These two collect logs from the root VDOM and VDOM2.
  - FAZ1 and FAZ2 must be accessible from management VDOM root.
- Set up FAZ3 and FAZ4 under VDOM1.
  - These two collect logs from VDOM1.
  - FAZ3 and FAZ4 must be accessible from VDOM1.

To set up FAZ1 as global FortiAnalyzer 1 from the GUI:

Prerequisite: FAZ1 must be reachable from the management root VDOM.

1. Go to *Global* > *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.
2. Enable *Send logs to FortiAnalyzer/FortiManager*.
3. Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP.
   In this example: `172.16.200.55`.
4. For *Upload option*, select *Real Time*.
5. Click *Apply*.

To set up FAZ2 as global FortiAnalyzer 2 from the CLI:

Prerequisite: FAZ2 must be reachable from the management root VDOM.

```
config log fortianalyzer2 setting
    set status enable
    set server "172.18.60.25"
    set upload-option realtime
end
```

To set up FAZ3 and FAZ4 as VDOM1 FortiAnalyzer 1 and FortiAnalyzer 2:

Prerequisite: FAZ3 and FAZ4 must be reachable from VDOM1.

```
config log setting
   set faz-override enable
end

config log fortianalyzer override-setting
   set status enable
   set server "192.168.1.253"
```

```
    set upload-option realtime
end

config log fortianalyzer2 override-setting
    set status enable
    set server "192.168.1.254"
    set upload-option realtime
end
```

Checking FortiAnalyzer connectivity

To use the diagnose command to check FortiAnalyzer connectivity:

1. Check the global FortiAnalyzer status:

```
FGTA(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 1
faz: global , enabled
        server=172.16.200.55, realtime=3, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_172.16.200.55, reliable=1
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:

                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: global, id=0, fd=90, ready=1, ipv6=0, 172.16.200.55/514
        oftp-state=5
faz2: global , enabled
        server=172.18.60.25, realtime=1, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_172.18.60.25, reliable=0
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:

                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: global, id=1, fd=95, ready=1, ipv6=0, 172.18.60.25/514
        oftp-state=5
```

2. Check the VDOM1 override FortiAnalyzer status:

```
FGTA(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 3101
faz: vdom, enabled, override
        server=192.168.1.253, realtime=1, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
```

```
Log_root_192.168.1.253, reliable=1
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:
                        (FAZ-VM0000000001,age=17s)
                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: vdom, id=0, fd=72, ready=1, ipv6=0, 192.168.1.253/514
        oftp-state=5
faz2: vdom, enabled, override
        server=192.168.1.254, realtime=1, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_192.168.1.254, reliable=0
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:
                        (FL-1KET318000008,age=17s)
                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: vdom, id=1, fd=97, ready=1, ipv6=0, 192.168.1.254/514
        oftp-state=5
faz3: vdom, disabled, override
```

Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers (or syslog servers) per VDOM

In a VDOM, multiple FortiAnalyzer and syslog servers can be configured as follows:

- Up to three override FortiAnalyzer servers
- Up to four override syslog servers

If the VDOM `faz-override` and/or `syslog-override` setting is enabled or disabled (default) before upgrading, the setting remains the same after upgrading.

If the override setting is disabled, the GUI displays the global FortiAnalyzer1 or syslog1 setting. If the override setting is enabled, the GUI displays the VDOM override FortiAnalyzer1 or syslog1 setting.

You can only use CLI to enable the override to support multiple log servers.

To enable FortiAnalyzer and syslog server override under VDOM:

```
config log setting
    set faz-override enable
```

```
    set syslog-override enable
end
```

When `faz-override` and/or `syslog-override` is enabled, the following CLI commands are available for configuring VDOM override:

To configure VDOM override for FortiAnalyzer:

1. Configure the FortiAnalyzer override settings:

```
config log fortianalyzer/fortianalyzer2/fortianalyzer3 override-setting
    set status enable
    set server "123.12.123.123"
    set reliable enable
end
```

2. Configure the override filters:

```
config log fortianalyzer/fortianalyzer2/fortianalyzer3 override-filter
    set severity information
    set forward-traffic enable
    set local-traffic enable
    set multicast-traffic enable
    set sniffer-traffic enable
    set anomaly enable
    set voip enable
    set dlp-archive enable
    set dns enable
    set ssh enable
    set ssl enable
end
```

To configure VDOM override for a syslog server:

1. Configure the syslog override settings:

```
config log syslogd/syslogd2/syslogd3/syslogd4 override-setting
    set status enable
    set server "123.12.123.12"
    set facility local1
end
```

2. Configure the override filters:

```
config log syslogd/syslogd2/syslogd3/syslogd4 override-filter
    set severity information
    set forward-traffic enable
    set local-traffic enable
    set multicast-traffic enable
    set sniffer-traffic enable
    set anomaly enable
    set voip enable
    set dns enable
    set ssh enable
    set ssl enable
end
```

Source and destination UUID logging

The `log-uuid` setting in `system global` is split into two settings: `log-uuid-address` and `log-uuid policy`.

The traffic log includes two `internet-service` name fields: *Source Internet Service* (`srcinetsvc`) and *Destination Internet Service* (`dstinetsvc`).

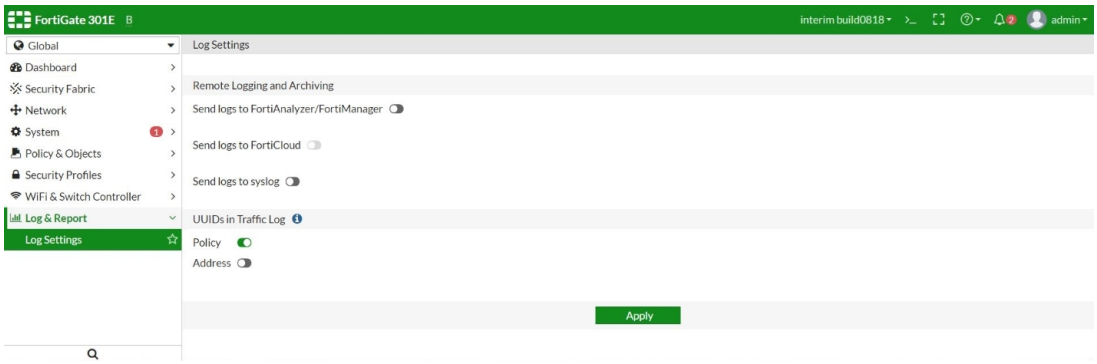
Log UUIDs

UUIDs can be matched for each source and destination that match a policy that is added to the traffic log. This allows the address objects to be referenced in log analysis and reporting.

As this may consume a significant amount of storage space, this feature is optional. By default, policy UUID insertion is enabled and address UUID insertion is disabled.

To enable address and policy UUID insertion in traffic logs using the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.
2. Under *UUIDs in Traffic Log*, enable *Policy* and/or *Address*.
3. Click *Apply*.



To enable address and policy UUID insertion in traffic logs using the CLI:

```
config system global
   set log-uuid-address enable
   set log-uuid-policy enable
end
```

Sample forward traffic log:

```
# date=2019-01-25 time=11:32:55 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
     level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1528223575 srcip=192.168.1.183 srcname="PC24"
     srcport=33709 srcintf="lan" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=192.168.70.184 dstport=80
     dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" srcuuid="27dd503e-883c-51e7-ade1-7e015d46494f"
     dstuuid="27dd503e-883c-51e7-ade1-7e015d46494f"
     poluuid="9e0fe24c-1808-51e8-1257-68ce4245572c" sessionid=5181 proto=6
     action="client-rst" policyid=4 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" trandisp="snat"
     transip=192.168.70.228 transport=33709 appid=38783 app="Wget"
     appcat="General.Interest" apprisk="low" applist="default" duration=5 sentbyte=450
     rcvdbyte=2305 sentpkt=6 wanin=368 wanout=130 lanin=130 lanout=130 utmaction="block"
     countav=2 countapp=1 crscore=50 craction=2 devtype="Linux PC" devcategory="None"
```

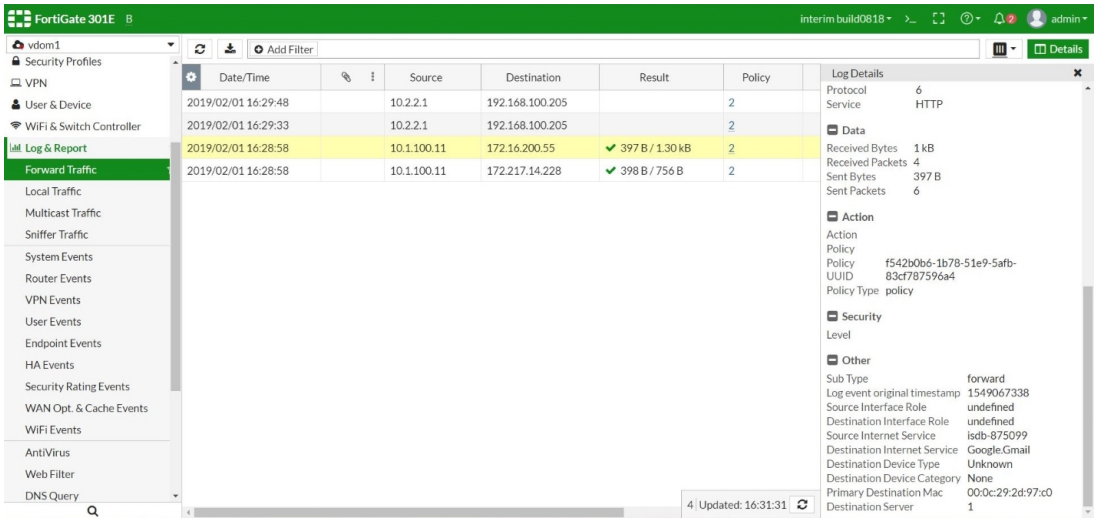
```
osname="Linux" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:36:5c:c3" srcmac="00:0c:29:36:5c:c3"
srcserver=0 utmref=65523-1018
```

Internet service name fields

Traffic logs for `internet-service` include two fields: *Source Internet Service* and *Destination Internet Service*.

To view the `internet-service` fields using the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
2. Double-click on an entry to view the *Log Details*. The *Source Internet Service* and *Destination Internet Service* fields are visible in the *Log Details* pane.



Sample `internet-service` name fields in a forward traffic log:

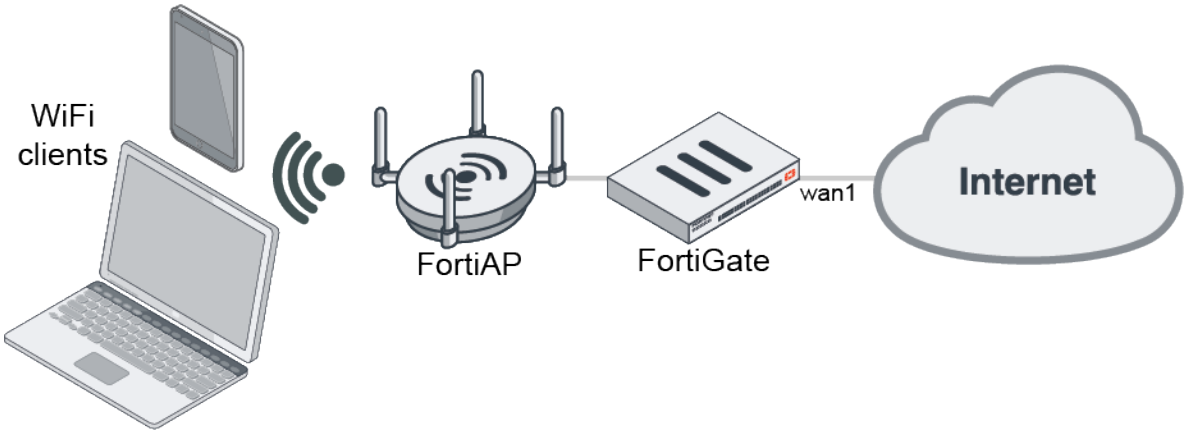
```
# date=2019-01-25 time=14:17:04 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
    level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548454622 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=51112
    srcintf="port3" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.14.228 dstport=80
    dstintf="port1" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="af519380-2094-51e9-391c-
    b78e8edbddfc" srcinetsvc="isdb-875099" dstinetsvc="Google.Gmail" sessionid=6930
    proto=6 action="close" policyid=2 policytype="policy" service="HTTP"
    dstcountry="United States" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat"
    transip=172.16.200.2 transport=51112 duration=11 sentbyte=398 rcvdbyte=756 sentpkt=6
    rcvdpkt=4 appcat="unscanned" devtype="Router/NAT Device" devcategory="Fortinet
    Device" mastersrcmac="90:6c:ac:41:7a:24" srcmac="90:6c:ac:41:7a:24" srcserver=0
    dstdevtype="Unknown" dstdevcategory="Fortinet Device"
    masterdstmac="08:5b:0e:1f:ed:ed" dstmac="08:5b:0e:1f:ed:ed" dstserver=0
```

Logging the signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength per client

The signal-to-noise ratio (`snr`) and signal strength (`signal`) are logged per client in the WiFi event and traffic logs.

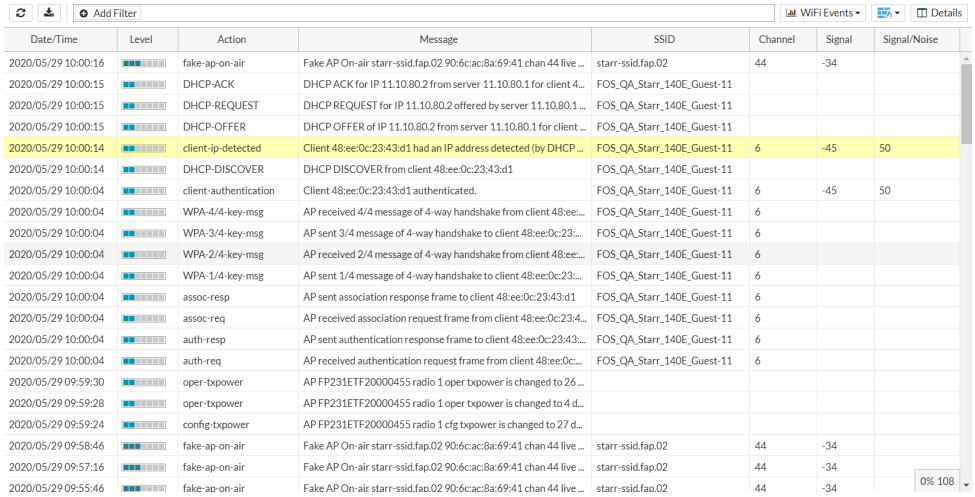
When a WiFi client connects to a tunnel or local-bridge mode SSID on an FortiAP that is managed by a FortiGate, signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength details are included in WiFi event logs for local-bridge traffic statistics and

authentication, and in forward traffic logs for tunnel traffic. This allows you to store and view clients' historical signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio information.



To verify when a client is connecting to an SSID:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *WiFi Events* from the events drop-down list.
   The *Signal* and *Signal/Noise* columns show the signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio for each applicable client.



Date/Time	Level	Action	Message	SSID	Channel	Signal	Signal/Noise
2020/05/29 10:00:16		fake-ap-on-air	Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ...	starr-ssid.fap.02	44	-34	
2020/05/29 10:00:15		DHCP-ACK	DHCP ACK for IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client 4...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11			
2020/05/29 10:00:15		DHCP-REQUEST	DHCP REQUEST for IP 11.10.80.2 offered by server 11.10.80.1 ...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11			
2020/05/29 10:00:15		DHCP-OFFER	DHCP OFFER of IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client ...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11			
2020/05/29 10:00:14		client-ip-detected	Client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 had an IP address detected (by DHCP ...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6	-45	50
2020/05/29 10:00:14		DHCP-DISCOVER	DHCP DISCOVER from client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11			
2020/05/29 10:00:04		client-authentication	Client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 authenticated.	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6	-45	50
2020/05/29 10:00:04		WPA-4/4-key-msg	AP received 4/4 message of 4-way handshake from client 48:ee:...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		WPA-3/4-key-msg	AP sent 3/4 message of 4-way handshake to client 48:ee:0c:23:...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		WPA-2/4-key-msg	AP received 2/4 message of 4-way handshake from client 48:ee:...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		WPA-1/4-key-msg	AP sent 1/4 message of 4-way handshake to client 48:ee:0c:23:...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		assoc-resp	AP sent association response frame to client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		assoc-req	AP received association request frame from client 48:ee:0c:23:4...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		auth-resp	AP sent authentication response frame to client 48:ee:0c:23:43:...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 10:00:04		auth-req	AP received authentication request frame from client 48:ee:0c:...	FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11	6		
2020/05/29 09:59:30		oper-txpower	AP FP231ETF20000455 radio 1 oper txpower is changed to 26 ...				
2020/05/29 09:59:28		oper-txpower	AP FP231ETF20000455 radio 1 oper txpower is changed to 4 d...				
2020/05/29 09:59:24		config-txpower	AP FP231ETF20000455 radio 1 cfg txpower is changed to 27 d...				
2020/05/29 09:58:46		fake-ap-on-air	Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ...	starr-ssid.fap.02	44	-34	
2020/05/29 09:57:16		fake-ap-on-air	Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ...	starr-ssid.fap.02	44	-34	
2020/05/29 09:55:46		fake-ap-on-air	Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ...	starr-ssid.fap.02	44	-34	

2. WiFi event log messages include the `signal` and `snr` values:

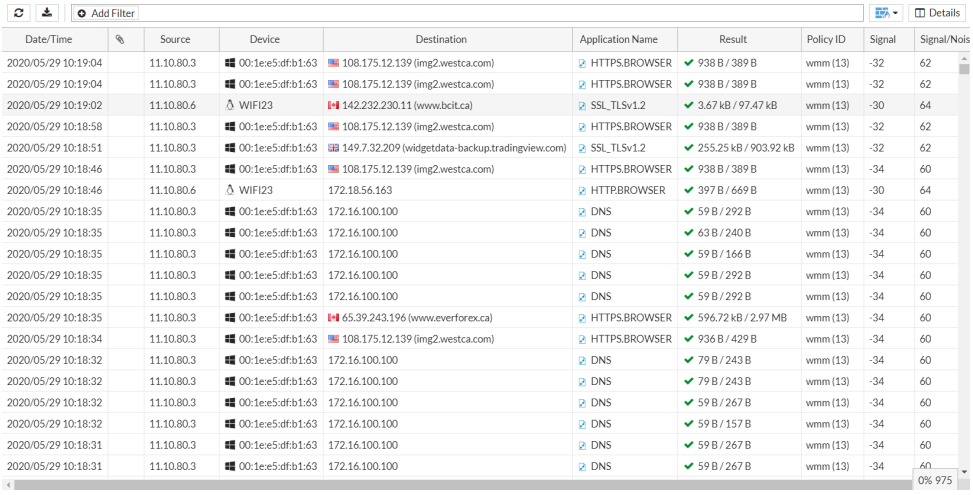
```
date=2020-05-27 time=11:26:28 logid="0104043579" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590603988877156921 tz="-0700" logdesc="Wireless
client IP assigned" sn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455" vap="stability3"
ssid="FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11" radioid=1 user="N/A" group="N/A"
stamac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcip=11.10.80.2 channel=6 radioband="802.11n,g-only"
signal=-45 snr=50 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="client-ip-detected"
reason="Reserved 0" mpsk="N/A" msg="Client 1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49 had an IP address detected
(by DHCP packets)."

date=2020-05-27 time=11:26:11 logid="0104043573" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590603970962702892 tz="-0700" logdesc="Wireless
client authenticated" sn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455" vap="stability3"
ssid="FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11" radioid=1 user="N/A" group="N/A"
stamac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcip=0.0.0.0 channel=6 radioband="802.11n,g-only" signal=-45
```

```
snr=50 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="client-authentication"
reason="Reserved 0" mpsk="N/A" msg="Client 1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49 authenticated."
```

To verify tunnel traffic when a client is connecting to a tunnel mode SSID:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
   The *Signal* and *Signal/Noise* columns show the signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio for each applicable client.



Date/Time	Source	Device	Destination	Application Name	Result	Policy ID	Signal	Signal/Nois
2020/05/29 10:19:04	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com)	HTTPS.BROWSER	938 B / 389 B	wmm (13)	-32	62
2020/05/29 10:19:04	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com)	HTTPS.BROWSER	938 B / 389 B	wmm (13)	-32	62
2020/05/29 10:19:02	11.10.80.6	WIFI23	142.232.230.11 (www.bcit.ca)	SSL_TLSv1.2	3.67 kB / 97.47 kB	wmm (13)	-30	64
2020/05/29 10:18:58	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com)	HTTPS.BROWSER	938 B / 389 B	wmm (13)	-32	62
2020/05/29 10:18:51	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	149.7.32.209 (widgetdata-backup.tradingview.com)	SSL_TLSv1.2	255.25 kB / 903.92 kB	wmm (13)	-32	62
2020/05/29 10:18:46	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com)	HTTPS.BROWSER	938 B / 389 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:46	11.10.80.6	WIFI23	172.18.56.163	HTTP.BROWSER	397 B / 669 B	wmm (13)	-30	64
2020/05/29 10:18:35	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 292 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:35	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	63 B / 240 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:35	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 166 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:35	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 292 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:35	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 292 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:35	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	65.39.243.196 (www.everforex.ca)	HTTPS.BROWSER	596.72 kB / 2.97 MB	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:34	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com)	HTTPS.BROWSER	936 B / 429 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:32	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	79 B / 243 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:32	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	79 B / 243 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:32	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 267 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:32	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 157 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:31	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 267 B	wmm (13)	-34	60
2020/05/29 10:18:31	11.10.80.3	00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	172.16.100.100	DNS	59 B / 267 B	wmm (13)	-34	60

2. Forward traffic log messages include the `signal` and `snr` values:

```
date=2020-05-27 time=11:30:26 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590604226533016978 tz="-0700" srcip=11.10.80.2
srcname="WIFI23" srcport=53926 srcintf="stability3" srcintfrole="lan" srcssid="FOS_QA_
Starr_140E_Guest-11" apsn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455" channel=6
radioband="802.11n,g-only" signal=-31 snr=64 dstip=91.189.91.157 dstport=123
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" srccountry="United States" dstcountry="United States"
sessionid=322069 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=13 policytype="policy"
poluuid="7c14770c-1456-51e9-4c57-806e9c499782" policyname="wmm" service="NTP"
trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.111 transport=53926 appid=16270 app="NTP"
appcat="Network.Service" apprisk="elevated" applist="g-default" duration=180 sentbyte=76
rcvdbyte=76 sentpkt=1 rcvdpkt=1 utmaction="allow" countapp=1 osname="Linux"
mastersrcmac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcmac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcserver=0 utmref=65534-66
```

To verify local-bridge traffic statistics when a client is connecting to a local-bridge mode SSID:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *WiFi Events* from the events drop-down list.
   The *Signal* and *Signal/Noise* columns show the signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio for each applicable client.



Date/Time	Level	Action	Message	SSID	Channel	Signal	Signal/Noise
2020/05/29 10:44:44		sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats	Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB		-53	51
2020/05/29 10:39:44		sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats	Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB		-54	50
2020/05/29 10:34:44		sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats	Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB		-54	51
2020/05/29 10:29:44		sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats	Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63	FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB		-52	52

2. WiFi event log messages include the `signal` and `snr` values:

```
date=2020-05-26 time=17:48:57 logid="0104043687" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590540537841497433 tz="-0700" logdesc="Traffic
stats for station with bridge wlan" sn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455"
vap="wifi.fap.01" ssid="FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB-cap-2" srcip=10.128.100.4 user="N/A"
stamac="00:1e:e5:df:b1:63" signal=-53 snr=52 sentbyte=8970016 rcvdbyte=985910
```

```
nextstat=300 action="sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats" msg="Traffic stats for bridge ssid
client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63"
```

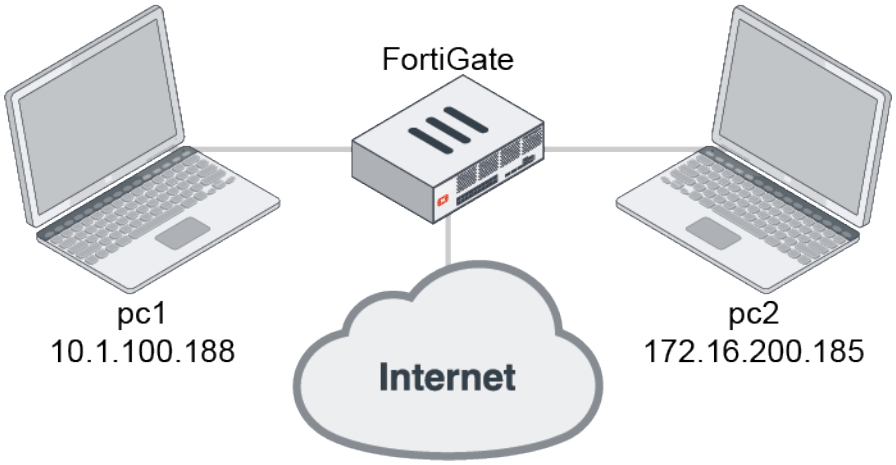
RSSO information for authenticated destination users in logs

FortiGate can use RSSO accounting information from authenticated RSSO users to populate destination users and groups, along with source users and groups.

RSSO user login information can be forwarded by the RADIUS server to the FortiGate that is listening for incoming RADIUS accounting start messages on the RADIUS accounting port. Accounting start messages usually contain the IP address, user name, and user group information. FortiGate uses this information in traffic logs, which include *dstuser* and *dstgroup* fields for user and group destination information .

For instructions on configuring RSSO, see RADIUS single sign-on agent on page 365.

The three following scenarios show traffic between pc1 and the internet, and pc1 and pc2.



Scenario 1

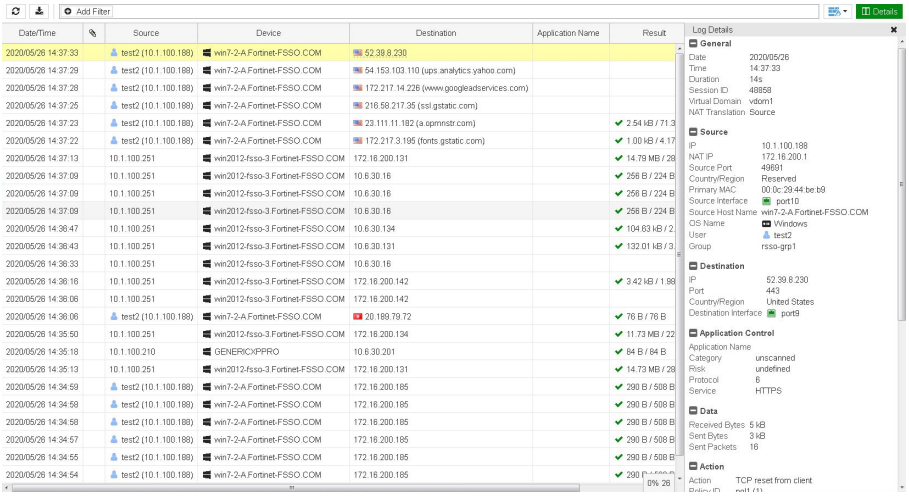
In this scenario, RSSO user *test2* in group *rsso-grp1* is authenticated on pc1. Traffic flows from pc1 to the internet.

Expected result:

In the logs, user *test2* is shown as the source user in the *rsso-grp1* group.

To verify the results:

1. In the GUI, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of an entry with test2 as the source.
2. In the *Source* section, *User* is *test2* and *Group* is the *rsso-grp1*.



3. The log message shows the user and group:

```
10: date=2020-05-25 time=15:34:43 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590446083718007055 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.188
srcname="win7-2-A.Fortinet-FSSO.COM" srcport=56982 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.3.195 dstport=443 dstintf="port9"
dstintfrole="undefined" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="United States"
sessionid=120651 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=1 policytype="policy"
poluuid="d130f886-9ec6-51ea-206e-8c561c5244c6" policyname="pol1" user="test2"
group="rsso-grp1" authserver="vdom1" service="udp/443" trandisp="snat"
transip=172.16.200.1 transport=56982 duration=181 sentbyte=2001 rcvdbyte=1820 sentpkt=6
rcvdpkt=4 appcat="unscanned" sentdelta=0 rcvddelta=0 srchwvendor="VMware"
osname="Windows" srcswversion="7" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9"
srcmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9" srcserver=0
```

Scenario 2

In this scenario, RSSO user *test2* is authenticated on pc1. Traffic is initialized on pc2 (172.16.200.185) going to pc1 (10.1.100.188).

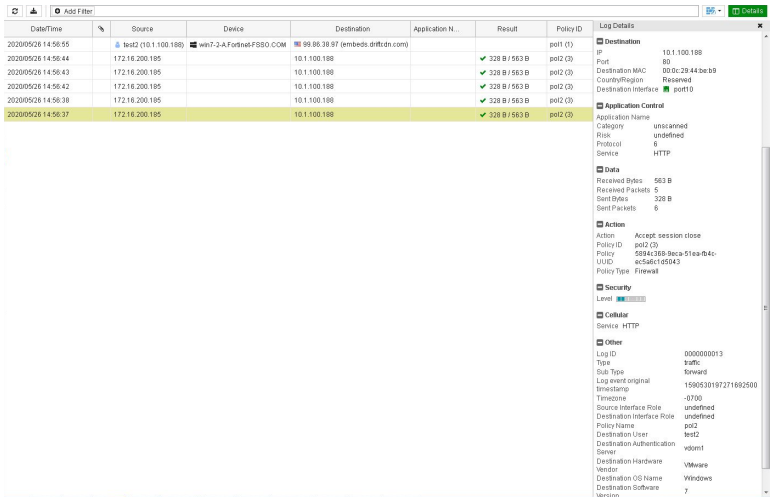
Expected result:

In the logs, user *test2* is shown as the destination user (`dstuser`). No destination group (`dstgroup`) is logged because no RSSO user is logged in on pc2, so the traffic from pc2 is unauthenticated.

To verify the results:

1. In the GUI, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of an entry with 172.16.200.185 (pc2) as the source.

2. In the *Other* section, *Destination User* is *test2* and no destination group is shown.



3. The log message shows the destination user:

```
1: date=2020-05-22 time=07:38:06 logid="0000000020" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1590158286585506922 tz="-0700" srcip=172.16.200.185
identifier=1 srcintf="port9" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=10.1.100.188 dstintf="port10"
dstintfrole="undefined" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="Reserved" sessionid=4395
proto=1 action="accept" policyid=3 policytype="policy" poluuid="d4f18e1e-9c36-51ea-6ec0-
3a354d5910ee" policyname="pol2" dstuser="test2" dstauthserver="root" service="PING"
trandisp="snat" transip=10.1.100.1 transport=0 duration=128 sentbyte=7620 rcvdbyte=5220
sentpkt=127 rcvdpkt=87 appcat="unscanned" sentdelta=7620 rcvddelta=5220
```

Scenario 3

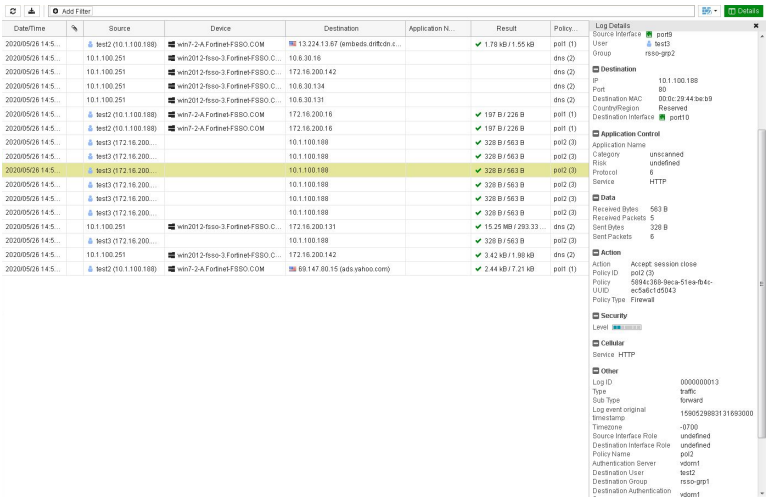
In this scenario, RSSO user *test2* in group *rsso-grp1* is authenticated on pc1, and user *test3* in group *rsso-grp2* is authenticated on pc2. Traffic flows from pc2 to pc1.

Expected result:

In the logs, user *test3* is shown as the source user in the *rsso-grp1* group. User *test2* is shown as destination user (`dstuser`) in the *rsso-grp1* destination group (`dstgroup`). The destination group is logged because an RSSO user is logged in to pc2.

To verify the results:

1. In the GUI, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of an entry with 172.16.200.185 (pc2) as the source.
2. In the *Source* section, *User* is *test3* and *Group* is the *rsso-grp2*. In the *Other* section, *Destination User* is *test2* and *Destination Group* is *rsso-grp1*.



3. The log message shows both the source and the destination users and groups:

```
8: date=2020-05-25 time=14:23:07 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590441786958007914 tz="-0700" srcip=172.16.200.185
srcport=64096 srcintf="port9" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=10.1.100.188 dstport=80
dstintf="port10" dstintfrole="undefined" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="Reserved"
sessionid=112445 proto=6 action="close" policyid=3 policytype="policy"
poluuid="5894c368-9eca-51ea-fb4c-ec5a6c1d5043" policyname="pol2" user="test3"
group="rsso-grp2" authserver="vdom1" dstuser="test2" dstgroup="rsso-grp1"
dstauthserver="vdom1" service="HTTP" trandisp="snat" transip=10.1.100.1 transport=64096
duration=1 sentbyte=328 rcvdbyte=563 sentpkt=6 rcvdpkt=5 appcat="unscanned"
dsthwvendor="VMware" dstosname="Windows" dstswversion="7"
masterdstmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9" dstmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9" dstserver=0
```

Threat weight

Threat weight helps aggregate and score threats based on user-defined severity levels. It adds several fields such as threat level (`crlevel`), threat score (`crscore`), and threat type (`craction`) to traffic logs. Threat weight logging is enabled by default and the settings can be customized. Threats can be viewed from the *Top Threats* FortiView dashboard.

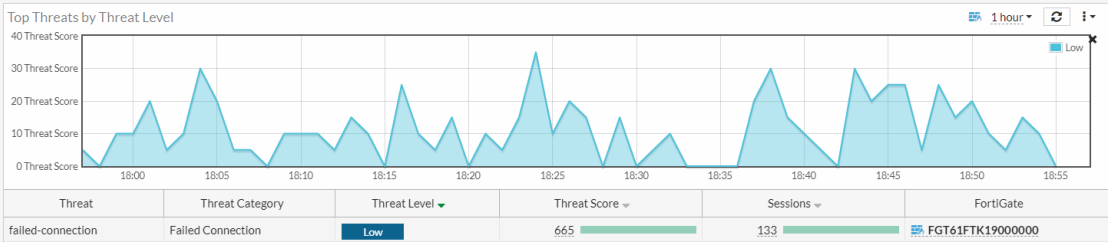
To configure threat weight settings:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Threat Weight*.
2. Adjust the settings as needed, such as individual weights per threat type and risk level values.
3. Click *Apply*.

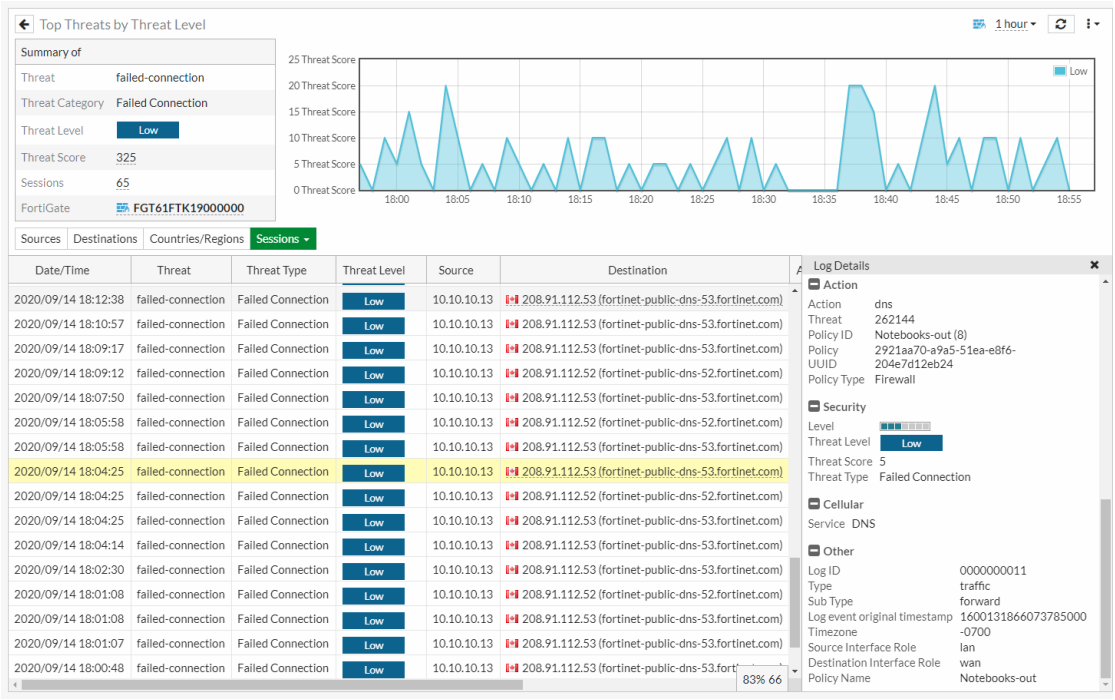
To add the Top Threats monitor to the dashboard:

1. In the tree menu, click *Dashboard* and in the *FortiView* section, click the + sign. The *Add Monitor* pane opens.
2. In the *Security* section, enable *Show More* and click *Top Threats*.
3. Configure the settings as needed.
4. Click *Add Monitor*.

5. Go to *Dashboard* > *Top Threats*. The *Top Threats* monitor displays threats based on the scores in the traffic logs.



6. Double-click a threat to view the summary.
7. Click *Sources*, *Destinations*, *Countries/Regions*, or *Sessions* to view more information. Double-click an entry to view the log details.



Configuring and debugging the free-style filter

Free-style filters allow users to define a filter for logs that are captured to each individual logging device type. Filters can include log categories and specific log fields. The filters can be created as an inclusive list or exclusive list.

Free-style filters can also be used to filter logs that have been captured on logging devices already to narrow down the list of logs to view.

```
config log syslogd filter
    set filter <string>
    set filter-type {include | exclude}
end
```

`filter <string>`	Enter the syslog filter criterion. The following options are available: `logid(...)`, `traffic-level(...)`, `event-level(...)`, `virus-level(...)`, `webfilter-level(...)`, `ips-level(...)`, `emailfilter-level(...)`, `anomaly-level(...)`, `voip-level(...)`, `dlp-level(...)`, `app-ctrl-level(...)`, `waf-level(...)`, `gtp-level(...)`, `dns-level(...)`, `ssh-level(...)`, `ssl-level(...)`, `cifs-level(...)`, `file-filter-level(...)`, and `icap-level(...)`.
	Multiple values can be added for `logid`.
	For example:
	`set filter "logid(<id>,<id>)"`
	`set filter "event-level({emergency | alert | critical | error | warning | notice | information | debug})"`

`filter-type {include | exclude}`	Include/exclude logs that match the filter.

Use the following commands to view the results when multiple fields are used:

```
# execute log filter free-style "logid <id> <id>"
# execute log filter free-style "srcip <IP_address> <IP_address>"
# execute log filter free-style "(logid <id>) or (srcip <IP_address> <IP_address>)"
# execute log filter free-style "(srcip <IP_address>) and (dstip <IP_address>)"
```

To configure the syslogd filter with multiple values:

In this example, the free-style filter is set to filter log IDs 0102043039 or 0102043040.

```
config log syslogd filter
    set filter "logid(0102043039,0102043040)"
end
```

To configure the syslogd filter with multiple options:

In this example, the free-style filter is set to filter log ID 0102043039 or logs at and above the notice severity level.

```
config log syslogd filter
    set filter "event-level(notice) logid(0102043039)"
end
```



The `filter <string>` setting applies a logical OR to the multiple values or options specified.

To view the syslogd free-style filter results:

In this example, the free-style filter is set to filter log IDs 0102043039 and 0102043040. The source IPs, 192.168.2.5 and 192.168.2.205, are also checked.

```
# execute log filter free-style "logid 0102043039 0102043040"
# execute log filter dump
```

```
category: event
device: disk
start-line: 1
view-lines: 10
max-checklines: 0
HA member:
log search mode: on-demand
pre-fetch-pages: 2
Filter: logid 0102043039 0102043040
Oftp search string: (and (or logid=="0102043039" not-exact logid=="0102043040" not-exact))

# execute log filter free-style "(logid 0102043039) or (srcip 192.168.2.5 192.168.2.205)"
# execute log filter dump
category: event
device: disk
start-line: 1
view-lines: 10
max-checklines: 0
HA member:
log search mode: on-demand
pre-fetch-pages: 2
Filter: (logid 0102043039) or (srcip 192.168.2.5 192.168.2.205)
Oftp search string: (or (or (or srcip==192.168.2.5) (or srcip==192.168.2.205)) (or
logid=="0102043039" not-exact))
```

Troubleshooting

The following topics provide information about troubleshooting logging and reporting:

- Log-related diagnose commands on page 2065
- Backing up log files or dumping log messages on page 2071
- SNMP OID for logs that failed to send on page 2073

Log-related diagnose commands

This topic shows commonly used examples of log-related diagnose commands.

Use the following diagnose commands to identify log issues:

- The following commands enable debugging log daemon (`miglogd`) at the proper debug level:

  ```
  diagnose debug application miglogd x
  diagnose debug enable
  ```

- The following commands display different status/statistics of `miglogd` at the proper level:

  ```
  diagnose test application miglogd x
  diagnose debug enable
  ```

To get the list of available levels, press `Enter` after `diagnose test/debug application miglogd`. The following are some examples of commonly use levels.

If the debug log display does not return correct entries when log filter is set:

```
diagnose debug application miglogd 0x1000
```

For example, use the following command to display all login system event logs:

```
execute log filter device disk
execute log filter category event
execute log filter field action login

execute log display

Files to be searched:
file_no=65523, start line=0, end_line=237
file_no=65524, start line=0, end_line=429
file_no=65525, start line=0, end_line=411
file_no=65526, start line=0, end_line=381
file_no=65527, start line=0, end_line=395
file_no=65528, start line=0, end_line=458
file_no=65529, start line=0, end_line=604
file_no=65530, start line=0, end_line=389
file_no=65531, start line=0, end_line=384
session ID=1, total logs=3697
back ground search. process ID=26240, session_id=1
 start line=1  view line=10
( action "login" )
ID=1, total=3697, checked=238, found=5
ID=1, total=3697, checked=668, found=13
ID=1, total=3697, checked=1080, found=23
ID=1, total=3697, checked=1462, found=23
ID=1, total=3697, checked=1858, found=23
ID=1, total=3697, checked=2317, found=54
ID=1, total=3697, checked=2922, found=106
ID=1, total=3697, checked=3312, found=111
ID=1, total=3697, checked=3697, found=114
```

You can check and/or debug the FortiGate to FortiAnalyzer connection status.

To show connect status with detailed information:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 1

faz: global , enabled
        server=172.18.64.234, realtime=3, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_Log_
vdom1_172.18.64.234, reliable=0, sni_prefix_type=none, required_entitlement=none
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_verified=Y
                SNs: last sn update:107 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:
                        (FL-8HFT718900132,age=107s)
                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl cifs
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: global, id=0, fd=132, ready=1, ipv6=0, 172.18.64.234/514
        oftp-state=5
```

To collect debug information when FortiAnalyzer is enabled:

```
diagnose debug application miglogd 0x100

FGT-B-LOG (global) # <16208> miglog_start_rmt_conn()-1552: setting epoll_hd:0x7fc364e125e0
to _rmt_connect
<16209> miglog_start_rmt_conn()-1552: setting epoll_hd:0x7f72647715e0 to _rmt_connect
<16206> miglog_start_rmt_conn()-1552: setting epoll_hd:0x141f69e0 to _rmt_connect
<16209> _rmt_connect()-1433: oftp is ready.
<16209> _rmt_connect()-1435: xfer_status changed from 2 to 2 for global-faz
<16209> _rmt_connect()-1439: setting epoll_hd:0x7f72647715e0 to _rmt_recv
<16209> _check_oftp_certificate()-248: checking sn:FL-8HFT718900132 vs cert sn:FL-
8HFT718900132
<16209> _check_oftp_certificate()-252: Verified the certificate of peer (172.18.64.234) to
match sn=FL-8HFT718900132
<16209> _faz_post_connection()-292: Certificate verification:enabled, Faz verified:1
<16209> _send_queue_item()-518: xfer_status changed from 2 to 1 for global-faz
<16209> _send_queue_item()-523: type=0, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=17 pkt_len=34

<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=253, opt_len=10
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=81, opt_len=12
<16208> _rmt_connect()-1433: oftp is ready.
<16208> _rmt_connect()-1435: xfer_status changed from 2 to 2 for global-faz
<16208> _rmt_connect()-1439: setting epoll_hd:0x7fc364e125e0 to _rmt_recv
<16208> _check_oftp_certificate()-248: checking sn:FL-8HFT718900132 vs cert sn:FL-
8HFT718900132
<16208> _check_oftp_certificate()-252: Verified the certificate of peer (172.18.64.234) to
match sn=FL-8HFT718900132
<16208> _faz_post_connection()-292: Certificate verification:enabled, Faz verified:1
<16208> _send_queue_item()-518: xfer_status changed from 2 to 1 for global-faz
<16208> _send_queue_item()-523: type=0, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16208> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=17 pkt_len=34

<16208> _oftp_send()-487: opt=253, opt_len=10
<16209> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16208> _oftp_send()-487: opt=81, opt_len=12
<16209> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=252
<16209> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-488: ha nmember:1 nvcluster:0 mode:1
<16209> __is_sn_known()-356: MATCHED: idx:0 sn:FL-8HFT718900132
<16209> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-494: Received SN:FL-8HFT718900132 should update:0

<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16208> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=252
<16208> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-488: ha nmember:1 nvcluster:0 mode:1
<16208> __is_sn_known()-356: MATCHED: idx:0 sn:FL-8HFT718900132
<16208> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-494: Received SN:FL-8HFT718900132 should update:0

<16206> _rmt_connect()-1433: oftp is ready.
<16206> _rmt_connect()-1435: xfer_status changed from 2 to 2 for global-faz
<16206> _rmt_connect()-1439: setting epoll_hd:0x141f69e0 to _rmt_recv
<16206> _check_oftp_certificate()-248: checking sn:FL-8HFT718900132 vs cert sn:FL-
8HFT718900132
<16206> _check_oftp_certificate()-252: Verified the certificate of peer (172.18.64.234) to
```

```
match sn=FL-8HFT718900132
<16206> _faz_post_connection()-292: Certificate verification:enabled, Faz verified:1
<16206> _send_queue_item()-518: xfer_status changed from 2 to 1 for global-faz
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=0, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=17 pkt_len=34

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=253, opt_len=10
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=81, opt_len=12
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16206> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=252
<16206> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-488: ha nmember:1 nvcluster:0 mode:1
<16206> __is_sn_known()-356: MATCHED: idx:0 sn:FL-8HFT718900132
<16206> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-494: Received SN:FL-8HFT718900132 should update:0

<16209> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=985

<16209> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=12, opt_len=16
......
<16209> _build_ack()-784: xfer_status changed from 1 to 2 for global-faz
<16209> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=81
......
<16209> _send_queue_item()-523: type=1, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16209> _send_queue_item()-523: type=7, cat=0, logcount=0, len=988
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=58

<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=12, opt_len=16
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=51, opt_len=9
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=49, opt_len=12
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=52, opt_len=9
<16208> _build_ack()-784: xfer_status changed from 1 to 2 for global-faz
<16208> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=52
<16208> _send_queue_item()-523: type=1, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16208> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16208> _oftp_send()-487: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=985

......
<16208> _send_queue_item()-523: type=3, cat=1, logcount=1, len=301
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=78, opt_len=55
......
<16206> _build_ack()-784: xfer_status changed from 1 to 2 for global-faz
<16206> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=81
......
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=1, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=1, opt_len=12
```

```
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=7, cat=0, logcount=0, len=988
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16206> _add_change_notice_queue_item()-269: Change notice packect added to queue. len=145
......
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=2, cat=0, logcount=0, len=300
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=37 pkt_len=300

......

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=152, opt_len=40
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=74, opt_len=40
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=82, opt_len=93
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16206> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=1
```

To check the FortiGate to FortiGate Cloud log server connection status:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 20

FGT-B-LOG # diagnose test application miglogd 20
Home log server:
    Address: 172.16.95.92:514
Alternative log server:
    Address: 172.16.95.26:514
    oftp status: established
Debug zone info:
    Server IP:      172.16.95.92
    Server port:    514
    Server status:  up
    Log quota:      102400MB
    Log used:       673MB
    Daily volume:   20480MB
    FDS arch pause: 0
    fams archive pause: 0
```

To check real-time log statistics by log type since the miglogd daemon start:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 4

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 4
info for vdom: root
disk
event: logs=1238 len=262534, Sun=246 Mon=247 Tue=197 Wed=0 Thu=55 Fri=246 Sat=247
compressed=163038
dns: logs=4 len=1734, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=4 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=453

report
event: logs=1244 len=225453, Sun=246 Mon=247 Tue=197 Wed=0 Thu=61 Fri=246 Sat=247

faz
event: logs=6 len=1548, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=6 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=5446

info for vdom: vdom1
```

```
memory
traffic: logs=462 len=389648, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
event: logs=3724 len=1170237, Sun=670 Mon=700 Tue=531 Wed=0 Thu=392 Fri=747 Sat=684
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=9613, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2
dns: logs=71 len=29833, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=71 Fri=0 Sat=0

disk
traffic: logs=462 len=389648, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
compressed=134638
event: logs=2262 len=550957, Sun=382 Mon=412 Tue=307 Wed=0 Thu=306 Fri=459 Sat=396
compressed=244606
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=9613, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2 compressed=3966
dns: logs=71 len=29833, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=71 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=1499

report
traffic: logs=462 len=375326, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
event: logs=3733 len=1057123, Sun=670 Mon=700 Tue=531 Wed=0 Thu=401 Fri=747 Sat=684
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=9117, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2

faz
traffic: logs=462 len=411362, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
compressed=307610
event: logs=3733 len=1348297, Sun=670 Mon=700 Tue=531 Wed=0 Thu=401 Fri=747 Sat=684
compressed=816636
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=10365, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2 compressed=8193
dns: logs=71 len=33170, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=71 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=0
```

To check log statistics to the local/remote log device since the miglogd daemon start:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 6 1     <<<  1 means the first child daemon

diagnose test application miglogd 6 2     <<<  2 means the second child daemon

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 6 1
mem=4288, disk=4070, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=5513, faz=4307, webt=0, fds=0
interface-missed=208
Queues in all miglogds: cur:0  total-so-far:36974
global log dev statistics:
syslog 0: sent=6585, failed=152, relayed=0
faz 0: sent=13, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
```

To check the miglogd daemon number and increase/decrease miglogd daemon:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 15     <<<  Show miglog ID

diagnose test application miglogd 13     <<<  Increase one miglogd child

diagnose test application miglogd 14     <<<  Decrease one miglogd child

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 15
Main miglogd: ID=0, children=2, active-children=2
        ID=1, duration=70465.
        ID=2, duration=70465.

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 13

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 15
Main miglogd: ID=0, children=3, active-children=3
        ID=1, duration=70486.
```

```
        ID=2, duration=70486.
        ID=3, duration=1.

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 14

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 15
Main miglogd: ID=0, children=2, active-children=2
        ID=1, duration=70604.
        ID=2, duration=70604.
```

To check the remote queue and see the maximum buffered memory size:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 41

cache maximum: 105405644(100MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)

VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

       memory queue:
              num:0 size:0(0MB) max:105405644(100MB) logs:0

Queue for: fds

        memory queue:
               num:0 size:0(0MB) max:97852620(93MB) logs:0
```

Backing up log files or dumping log messages

When a log issue is caused by a particular log message, it is very help to get logs from that FortiGate. This topic provides steps for using `execute log backup` or dumping log messages to a USB drive.

Backing up full logs using execute log backup

This command backs up all disk log files and is only available on FortiGates with an SSD disk.

Before running `execute log backup`, we recommend temporarily stopping `miglogd` and `reportd`.

To stop and kill miglogd and reportd:

```
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart disable miglogd
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart disable reportd
```

Or

1. Determine the process, or thread, ID (PID) of `miglogd` and `reportd`:

   ```
   # diagnose sys top 10 99
   ```

2. Kill each process:

   ```
   # diagnose sys kill 9 <PID>
   ```

To store the log file on a USB drive:

1. Plug in a USB drive into the FortiGate.
2. Run this command:

```
execute log backup /usb/log.tar
```

To restart miglogd and reportd:

```
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart enable miglogd
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart enable reportd
```

Dumping log messages

To dump log messages:

1. Enable log dumping for `miglogd` daemon:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 1
miglogd(1) log dumping is enabled
```

2. Display all `miglogd` dumping status:

```
global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0 255
miglogd(0) log dumping is disabled
miglogd(1) log dumping is enabled
miglogd(2) log dumping is disabled
```

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 2
miglogd(2) log dumping is enabled

(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0
miglogd(0) log dumping is enabled

(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0 255
miglogd(0) log dumping is enabled
miglogd(1) log dumping is enabled
miglogd(2) log dumping is enabled
```

3. Let the FortiGate run and collect log messages.
4. List the log dump files:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 33
2019-04-17 15:50:02          20828      log-1-0.dat
2019-04-17 15:48:31           4892      log-2-0.dat
```

5. Back up log dump files to the USB drive:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 34

Dumping file miglog1_index0.dat copied to USB disk OK.

Dumping file miglog2_index0.dat copied to USB disk OK.
```

6. Disable log dumping for `miglogd` daemon:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0
miglogd(0) log dumping is disabled
```

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 1
miglogd(1) log dumping is disabled

(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 2
miglogd(2) log dumping is disabled

(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0 255
miglogd(0) log dumping is disabled
miglogd(1) log dumping is disabled
miglogd(2) log dumping is disabled
```

SNMP OID for logs that failed to send

When a syslog server encounters low-performance conditions and slows down to respond, the buffered syslog messages in the kernel might overflow after a certain number of retransmissions, causing the overflowed messages to be lost. OIDs track the lost messages or failed logs.

SNMP query OIDs include log statistics for global log devices:

- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDeviceNumber 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.1.1
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceEntryIndex 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.1
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceEnabled 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.2
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceName 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.3
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceSentCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.4
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceRelayedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.5
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceCachedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.6
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceFailedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.7
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceDroppedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.8

Where:

- fgLogDeviceNumber is the number of devices in the table.
- fgLogDeviceEnabled is either 1 or 0, indicating whether the device is enabled.
- fgLogDeviceName is the name of the device.

A FortiGate connected to a syslog server or FortiAnalyzer generates statistics that can be seen using the `diagnose test application miglogd` command:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 6
    mem=404, disk=657, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=920, faz=555, webt=0, fds=0
    interface-missed=460
    Queues in all miglogds: cur:0 total-so-far:526
    global log dev statistics:
    syslog 0: sent=254, failed=139, relayed=0
    syslog 1: sent=220, failed=139, relayed=0
    syslog 2: sent=95, failed=73, relayed=0
    faz 0: sent=282, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
    Num of REST URLs: 3
    /api/v2/monitor/system/csf/ : 0 : 300
    /api/v2/cmdb/system/interface/ : 394.0.673.15877729363538323653.1547149763 : 1200
    /api/v2/monitor/system/ha-checksums/ : 0 : 1200
    faz 1: sent=272, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
    Num of REST URLs: 2
    /api/v2/monitor/system/csf/ : 0 : 300
    /api/v2/cmdb/system/interface/ : 394.0.673.15877729363538323653.1547149763 : 1200
```

The same statistics are also available in `snmpwalk/snmpget` on the OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.

```
snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.1.1.0 = INTEGER: 9
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.2 = INTEGER: 2
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.3 = INTEGER: 3
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.4 = INTEGER: 4
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.5 = INTEGER: 5
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.6 = INTEGER: 6
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.7 = INTEGER: 7
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.8 = INTEGER: 8
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.0 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.2 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.3 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.4 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.5 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.6 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.7 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.8 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.0 = STRING: "syslog"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.1 = STRING: "syslog2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.2 = STRING: "syslog3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.3 = STRING: "syslog4"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.4 = STRING: "faz"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.5 = STRING: "faz2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.6 = STRING: "faz3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.7 = STRING: "webtrends"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.8 = STRING: "fds"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.0 = Counter32: 254
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.1 = Counter32: 220
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.2 = Counter32: 95
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.4 = Counter32: 282
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.5 = Counter32: 272
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.7 = Counter32: 0
```

```
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.8 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.0 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.1 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.2 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.8 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.0 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.1 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.2 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.3 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.4 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.5 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.6 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.7 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.8 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.0 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.1 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.2 = Counter32: 73
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.8 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.0 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.1 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.2 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.8 = Counter32: 0
```

To get the type of logging device that is attached to the FortiGate:

```
root@PC05:/home/tester/autolib/trunk# snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.3
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.0 = STRING: "syslog"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.1 = STRING: "syslog2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.2 = STRING: "syslog3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.3 = STRING: "syslog4"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.4 = STRING: "faz"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.5 = STRING: "faz2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.6 = STRING: "faz3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.7 = STRING: "webtrends"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.8 = STRING: "fds"
```

To get the present state of the logging device that is attached to the FortiGate:

```
root@PC05:/home/tester/autolib/trunk# snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.2
```

```
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.0 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.2 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.3 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.4 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.5 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.6 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.7 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.8 = INTEGER: 0
```

To get the failed log count value:

```
root@PC05:/home/tester/autolib/trunk# snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.7
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.0 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.1 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.2 = Counter32: 73
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.8 = Counter32: 0
```

WAN optimization

Many multi-location enterprise environments reduce costs and consolidate resources by centralizing applications or providing applications in the cloud. Applications that work fine on a local LAN, such as Windows File Sharing (CIFS), email exchange (MAPI), and many others, suffer from bandwidth limitations and latency issues when accessed over a WAN. This results in a loss of productivity and a perceived need for expensive network upgrades. WAN optimization reduces your network overhead and removes unnecessary traffic for a better overall performance experience and eliminates the need for costly WAN link upgrades between data centers and other expensive solutions for your network traffic growth.

FortiOS WAN optimization provides an inexpensive and comprehensive solution that maximizes your WAN performance and provides intelligent bandwidth management and unmatched consolidated security performance.

FortiOS includes license-free WAN optimization on most current FortiGate devices with internal storage that also support SSL offloading.

Features

The following features are available through WAN optimization:

Protocol optimization

Protocol optimization is effective for applications designed for the LAN that do not function well on low bandwidth, high latency networks. See Protocol optimization on page 2085 for more information.

Byte caching

Byte caching improves caching by accelerating the transfer of similar, but not identical content. See Byte caching on page 2085 for more information.

SSL offloading

SSL is used by many organizations to keep WAN communications private. WAN optimization utilizes the SSL offloading capabilities of the FortiGate FortiASIC hardware to accelerate SSL traffic across the WAN. The FortiGate unit handles SSL encryption and decryption for corporate servers providing SSL encrypted connections over the WAN. See SSL Offloading on page 2081 for more information.

WAN optimization and HA

You can configure WAN optimization on a FortiGate HA cluster. See HA on page 2089 for more information.

Secure tunneling

FortiOS WAN optimization supports secure SSL-encrypted tunnels between FortiGate units on the WAN. See Secure tunneling on page 2083 for more information.

Prerequisites

FortiGate WAN optimization is proprietary to Fortinet. It will not work with other vendors' WAN optimization or offloading features.

Before you begin to configure WAN optimization, please go through the following steps:

1. To use WAN optimization, your FortiGate unit must support it and not all FortiGate units do. In general, your FortiGate unit must include a hard disk to support these features. See Feature Platform Matrix.
2. If the physical FortiGate has only one hard disk, make sure it is selected for WAN optimization. See Disk usage on page 2078 for more information.
3. For FortiGate-VM, ensure you create two virtual disks besides the boot disk for WAN optimization to work.
4. To be able to configure WAN optimization from the GUI you should begin by going to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and turning on *WAN Opt. & Cache*.
5. If you enable virtual domains (VDOMs) on the FortiGate unit, WAN optimization is available separately for each VDOM.

At this stage, the following installation and configuration conditions are assumed:

- For WAN optimization you have already successfully installed two or more FortiGate units at various locations across your WAN.
- You have administrative access to the GUI or CLI.
- The FortiGate units are integrated into your WAN or other networks.
- The system time, DNS settings, administrator password, and network interfaces have been configured.
- Firmware, FortiGuard Antivirus, and FortiGuard Antispam updates are completed.
- Your Fortinet products have been registered. Register your Fortinet products at the Fortinet Technical Support website, https://support.fortinet.com.

Disk usage

Both logging and WAN optimization use hard disk space to save data. In FortiOS, you cannot use the same hard disk for both WAN optimization and logging.

- If the FortiGate has one hard disk, then it can be used for either disk logging or WAN optimization, but not both. By default, the hard disk is used for disk logging.



Only physical FortiGate devices can switch between disk logging and WAN optimization in the case of a single hard disk. FortiGate-VM must have two virtual disks apart from the boot disk for WAN optimization to work.

- If the FortiGate has two hard disks, then one disk is always used for disk logging and the other disk is always used for WAN optimization.

You can change disk usage from the CLI using the following command:

```
config system storage
    edit <name>
        set usage  {log | wanopt}
        set wanopt-mode {mix | wanopt | webcache}
    next
end
```

Option	Description
`wanopt-mode`	WAN optimization mode: • `mix`: This is the default mode. • `wanopt`: Recommended if only the WANopt feature is enabled. • `webcache`: Recommended if only the webcache feature is enabled. If only one of the two features is being used, using the applicable recommended mode will give a higher cache capacity and improve performance.

Enabling WAN optimization affects more than just disk logging. The following table shows other features affected by the FortiGate disk configuration.

Feature	1 hard disk	2 hard disks
Logging	Not supported	Supported
Report/Historical FortiView	Not supported	Supported
Firewall Packet Capture (Policy Capture and Interface Capture)	Not supported	Supported
AV Quarantine	Not supported	Supported
IPS Packet Capture	Not supported	Supported
DLP Archive	Not supported	Supported
Sandbox DB & Results	FortiSandbox database and results are also stored on disk, but will not be affected by this feature.	
Remote Logging	Remote logging (including logging to FortiAnalyzer and Syslog servers) is not affected by this features.	



Changing the disk setting formats the disk, erases current data stored on the disk, and disables either disk logging or WAN optimization.

The following sections provide information about WAN optimization:

- Overview on page 2080
- Example topologies on page 2091
- Configuration examples on page 2093

Overview

The following topics provide an overview on WAN optimization:

- Peers and authentication groups on page 2081
- Tunnels on page 2082
- Transparent mode on page 2084
- Protocol optimization on page 2085
- Cache service and video caching on page 2086
- Manual and active-passive on page 2087
- Monitoring performance on page 2088
- System and feature operation with WAN optimization on page 2088
- Best practices on page 2091

Client/server architecture

Traffic across a WAN typically consists of clients on a client network communicating across a WAN with a remote server network. The clients do this by starting communication sessions from the client network across a WAN to the server network. When you have FortiGates on each end, you can optimize these sessions by adding a WAN optimization profile.

To use WAN optimization, the FortiGate units can operate in either NAT or transparent mode. The client-side and server-side FortiGate units do not have to be operating in the same mode. The client-side FortiGate unit is located between the client network and the WAN. The server-side FortiGate unit is located between the server network and the WAN.



WAN optimization profiles are only added to the client-side. The server-side FortiGate unit employs the WAN optimization settings set in the WAN optimization profile on the client-side FortiGate unit.

Profiles

Use WAN optimization profiles to apply WAN optimization techniques to traffic to be optimized. In a WAN optimization profile you can select the protocols to be optimized and for HTTP protocol. You can also enable SSL offloading (if supported), secure tunneling, byte caching, transparent mode, and optionally select an authentication group. You can edit the default WAN optimization profile or create new ones. See Configuration examples on page 2093 for sample configuration.

Transparent mode	Servers receiving packets after WAN optimization see different source addresses depending on whether or not you select *Transparent Mode*. See Transparent mode on page 2084 for more information.
Authentication group	Select this option and select an authentication group so that the client and server-side FortiGate units must authenticate with each other before starting the WAN optimization tunnel. See Peers and authentication groups on page 2081for more information.

Protocol	Select CIFS, FTP, HTTP, MAPI or TCP to apply protocol optimization for the selected protocols. See Protocol optimization on page 2085 for more information.
SSL Offloading	If you enable this option, you must also enable an SSL profile with *ssl deep-inspection* in a WAN optimization firewall policy on the client-side and use the CLI command `config firewall ssl-server` to add an SSL server on the server-side for each HTTP server that you want to offload SSL encryption/decryption for.
SSL Secure Tunneling	The WAN optimization tunnel is encrypted using SSL encryption. You must also add an authentication group to the profile. See Secure tunneling on page 2083 for more information.
Byte Caching	Select to apply WAN optimization byte caching to the sessions accepted by this rule. See Byte caching on page 2085 for more information.

Peers and authentication groups

The client-side and server-side FortiGate units are called WAN optimization peers. The client and server roles relate to how a session is started. Any FortiGate unit configured for WAN optimization can be a client-side and a server-side FortiGate unit at the same time, depending on the direction of the traffic. Client-side FortiGate units initiate WAN optimization sessions and server-side FortiGate units respond to the session requests.

During this process, the WAN optimization peers identify and optionally authenticate each other. The authentication group is optional unless the tunnel is a secure tunnel. You need to add authentication groups to support secure tunneling between WAN optimization peers.

Peer requirements

WAN optimization requires the following configuration on each peer:

- The peer must have a unique host ID.
- Unless authentication groups are used, peers authenticate each other using host ID values. Do not leave the local host ID at its default value.
- The peer must know the host IDs and IP addresses of all of the other peers that it can start WAN optimization tunnels with. This does not apply if you use authentication groups that accept all peers.
- If a FortiGate unit or VDOM is operating in transparent mode, WAN optimization uses the management IP address as the peer IP address of the FortiGate unit instead of the address of an interface.
- All peers must have the same local certificate installed on their FortiGate units if the units authenticate by local certificate. Furthermore, system time must be enabled to ensure that SSL/TLS certificate expiry can be validated. Similarly, if the units authenticate by pre-shared key (password), administrators must know the password. The type of authentication is selected in the authentication group. This applies only if you use authentication groups.

Tunnel requests for peer authentication

When a client-side FortiGate unit attempts to start a WAN optimization tunnel with a peer server-side FortiGate unit, the tunnel request includes the following information:

- The client-side host ID.
- The name of an authentication group, if included in the rule that initiates the tunnel.
- The authentication method it specifies (pre-shared key or certificate), if an authentication group is used.
- The type of tunnel (secure or not).

If the tunnel request does not include an authentication group, authentication will be based on the client-side host ID in the tunnel request.

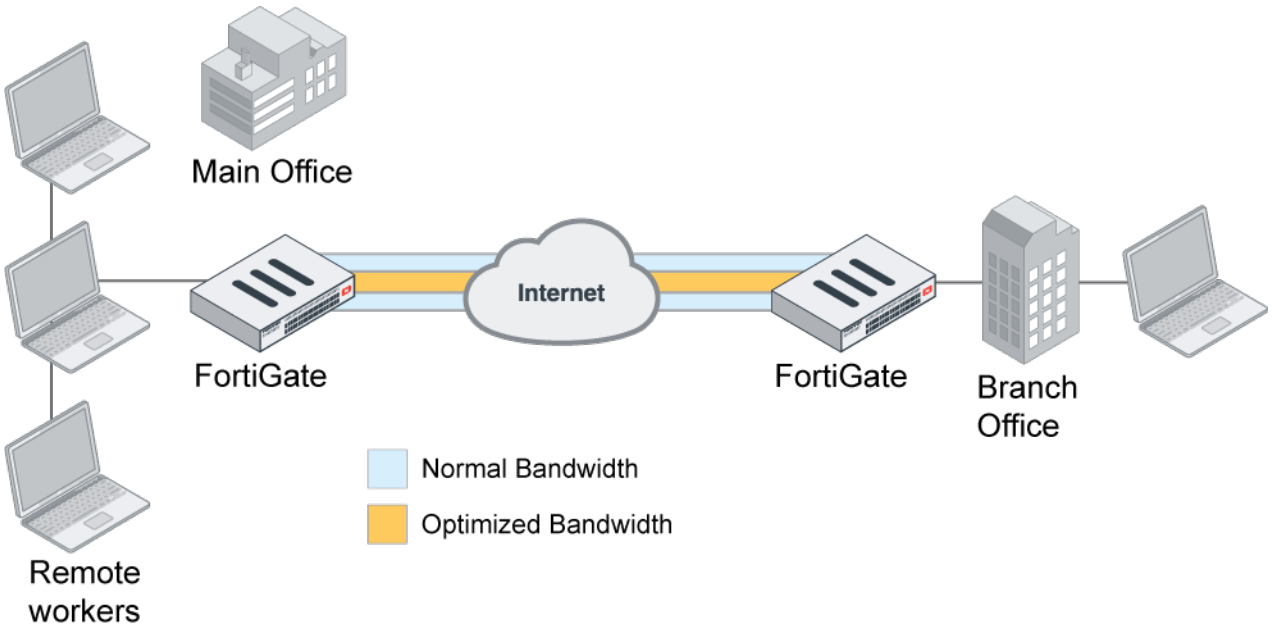
If the tunnel request includes an authentication group, the authentication will be based on the settings of this group as follows:

- The server-side FortiGate unit searches its own configuration for the name of the authentication group in the tunnel request. If no match is found, the authentication fails.
- If a match is found, the server-side FortiGate unit compares the authentication method in the client and server authentication groups. If the methods do not match, the authentication fails.
- If the authentication methods match, the server-side FortiGate unit tests the peer acceptance settings in its copy of the authentication group.
  - If the *Accept peer(s)* setting is *Any*, the authentication is successful.
  - If the *Accept peer(s)* setting is *One*, the server-side FortiGate unit compares the client-side host ID in the tunnel request with the peer name in the server-side authentication group. If the names match, authentication is successful. If a match is not found, authentication fails.
  - If the *Accept peer(s)* setting is *Defined Peers Only*, the server-side FortiGate unit compares the client-side host ID in the tunnel request with the server-side peer list. If a match is found, authentication is successful. If a match is not found, authentication fails.

After a tunnel is established, multiple WAN optimization sessions can start and stop between peers without restarting the tunnel.

Tunnels

All optimized traffic passes between the FortiGate units over a WAN optimization tunnel. Traffic in the tunnel can be sent in plain text or encrypted. Both plain text and the encrypted tunnels use TCP destination port 7810.



Secure tunneling

You can configure a WAN optimization profile to use SSL secure tunneling to encrypt the traffic in the WAN optimization tunnel using AES-128bit-CBC SSL. WAN optimization uses FortiASIC acceleration to accelerate SSL decryption and encryption of the secure tunnel. Secure tunneling can be enabled in both manual and active-passive WAN optimization configuration. See Manual and active-passive on page 2087 for more information.

To use secure tunneling, you must add an authentication group and enable *SSL Secure Tunneling* in a WAN optimization profile. The *Accept peers(s)* setting of the authentication group does not affect secure tunneling. See Secure tunneling configuration example on page 2103 for sample configuration.

Tunnel sharing

Tunnel sharing means multiple WAN optimization sessions share the same tunnel. It can improve performance by reducing the number of WAN optimization tunnels between FortiGate units. Having fewer tunnels means less data to manage. Also, tunnel setup requires more than one exchange of information between the ends of the tunnel. Once the tunnel is set up, each new session that shares the tunnel avoids tunnel setup delays.

Tunnel sharing also uses bandwidth more efficiently by reducing the chances that small packets will be sent down the tunnel. For example, suppose a FortiGate unit is processing five WAN optimization sessions and each session has 100 bytes to send. If these sessions use a shared tunnel, WAN optimization combines the packets from all five sessions into one 500-byte packet. If each session uses its own private tunnel, five 100-byte packets will be sent instead. Each packet also requires a TCP ACK reply. The combined packet in the shared tunnel requires one TCP ACK packet. The separate packets in the private tunnels require five.

Tunnel sharing is not always recommended and may not always be the best practice. For instance, aggressive and non-aggressive protocols should not share the same tunnel. An aggressive protocol can be defined as a protocol that is able to get more bandwidth than a non-aggressive protocol, for example, HTTP and FTP. If aggressive and non-aggressive protocols share the same tunnel, the aggressive protocols may take all of the available bandwidth. As a result, the performance of less aggressive protocols could be reduced.

To avoid this problem, rules for HTTP and FTP traffic should have their own tunnel. To do this, set `tunnel-sharing` to `private` for WAN optimization rules that accept HTTP or FTP traffic.

It is also useful to set `tunnel-sharing` to `express-shared` for applications, such as Telnet, that are very interactive but not aggressive.

Set `tunnel-sharing` to `shared` for applications that are not aggressive and are not sensitive to latency or delays.

Example configuration

To configure tunnel sharing for HTTP traffic in a WAN optimization profile:

```
config wanopt profile
    edit default
        config http
            set tunnel-sharing {express-shared | private | shared}
        end
    next
end
```

Transparent mode

WAN optimization is transparent to users. This means that with WAN optimization in place, clients connect to servers in the same way as they would without WAN optimization. However, servers receiving packets after WAN optimization see different source addresses depending on whether or not transparent mode is selected for WAN optimization. If transparent mode is selected, WAN optimization keeps the original source address of the packets, so servers appear to receive traffic directly from clients. Routing on the server network should be configured to route the traffic back to the client network.



Some protocols, for example CIFS, may not function as expected if transparent mode is not selected. In most cases, for CIFS WAN optimization you should select transparent mode and confirm the server network can route traffic as described to support transparent mode.

If transparent mode is not selected, the source address of the packets received by servers is changed to the address of the server-side FortiGate unit interface that sends the packets to the servers. So servers appear to receive packets from the server-side FortiGate unit. Routing on the server network is simpler in this case because client addresses are not involved. All traffic appears to come from the server-side FortiGate unit and not from individual clients.



Do not confuse WAN optimization transparent mode with FortiGate transparent mode. WAN optimization transparent mode is similar to source NAT. FortiGate's transparent mode is a system setting that controls how the FortiGate unit (or a VDOM) processes traffic.

Configuring transparent mode

You can configure transparent mode by selecting *Transparent* in a WAN optimization profile. The profile is added to an active WAN optimization policy.

When you configure a passive WAN optimization policy you can accept or override the active policy transparent setting. From the GUI you can do this by setting the *Passive* option as follows:

- *Default*: Use the transparent setting in the WAN optimization profile added to the active policy (client-side configuration).
- *Transparent*: Override the active policy transparent mode setting and impose transparent mode. Packets exiting the FortiGate keep their original source addresses.
- *Non-transparent*: Override the active policy transparent mode setting and impose non-transparent mode. Packets exiting the FortiGate have their source address changed to the address of the server-side FortiGate unit interface that sends the packets to the servers.

To configure a passive wan optimization policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policy ID>
        set srcintf <Incoming interface>
        set wanopt-passive-opt {default | transparent | non-transparent}
    next
end
```

Protocol optimization

Protocol optimization techniques optimize bandwidth use across the WAN. These techniques can improve the efficiency of communication across the WAN optimization tunnel by reducing the amount of traffic required by communication protocols. You can apply protocol optimization to CIFS, FTP, HTTP, MAPI, and general TCP sessions. You can apply general TCP optimization to MAPI sessions.

For example, CIFS provides file access, record locking, read/write privileges, change notification, server name resolution, request batching, and server authentication. CIFS requires many background transactions to successfully transfer a single file. This is usually not a problem across a LAN. However, across a WAN, latency and bandwidth reduction can slow down CIFS performance.

When you select the CIFS protocol in a WAN optimization profile, the FortiGate units at both ends of the WAN optimization tunnel use a number of techniques to reduce the number of background transactions that occur over the WAN for CIFS traffic.

If a policy accepts a range of different types of traffic, you can set *Protocol* to *TCP* to apply general optimization techniques to TCP traffic. However, applying this TCP optimization is not as effective as applying more protocol-specific optimization to specific types of traffic. TCP protocol optimization uses techniques such as TCP SACK support, TCP window scaling and window size adjustment, and TCP connection pooling to remove TCP bottlenecks.

Byte caching

Byte caching breaks large units of application data (for example, a file being downloaded from a web page) into small chunks of data, labeling each chunk of data with a hash of the chunk and storing those chunks and their hashes in a database. The database is stored on a WAN optimization storage device. Then, instead of sending the actual data over the WAN tunnel, the FortiGate unit sends the hashes. The FortiGate unit at the other end of the tunnel receives the hashes and compares them with the hashes in its local byte caching database. If any hashes match, that data does not have to be transmitted over the WAN optimization tunnel. The data for any hashes that does not match is transferred over the tunnel and added to that byte caching database. Then the unit of application data (the file being downloaded) is reassembled and sent to its destination.

The stored byte caches are not application specific. Byte caches from a file in an email can be used to optimize downloading that same file or a similar file from a web page.

The result is less data transmitted over the WAN. Initially, byte caching may reduce performance until a large enough byte caching database is built up.

To enable byte caching, select *Byte Caching* in a WAN optimization profile.

Byte caching cannot determine whether or not a file is compressed (for example a zip file), and caches compressed and non-compressed versions of the same file separately.

Dynamic data chunking for byte caching

Dynamic data chunking can improve byte caching by improving detection of data chunks that are already cached in changed files or in data embedded in traffic using an unknown protocol. Dynamic data chunking can only be enabled from the CLI and is available for HTTP, CIFS and FTP.



Dynamic data chunking is disabled by default and `prefer-chunking` is set to `fix`.

To enable dynamic data chunking for HTTP in the default WAN optimization profile:

```
config wanopt profile
    edit default
        config http
            set prefer-chunking dynamic
        end
    next
end
```

Cache service and video caching

Two features that can only be configured in the CLI include cache service and video caching.

Cache service

The `config wanopt cache-service` command is used to configure cache-service clusters between multiple FortiGates. The result is that the cache-service daemons of the different FortiGates can collaborate for serving web cache entries.

See config wanopt cache-service in the CLI Reference guide for more configuration information.

Video caching

The `config wanopt content-delivery-network-rule` command configures web-caching, including the video-cache matching rules.

See config wanopt content-delivery-network-rule in the CLI Reference guide for more configuration information.

Manual and active-passive

You can create manual (peer-to-peer) and active-passive WAN optimization configurations.

There are a few key differences between manual and active-passive mode:

- For manual mode, the tunnels are always up which makes it more resource extensive as compared to active-passive.
- The performance of active-passive mode is lower than manual mode for the new connection.
- The active-passive mode can be used to deploy tunnel dynamically using *Authentication groups* set to accept *Any* peers which eliminates the need of defining peers manually. This is not possible with manual mode.



This setting is only recommended when you do not know the peer host IDs or IP addresses of the peers that will use this authentication group. This setting is most often used with FortiGate units that do not have static IP addresses, for example units that use DHCP.

- For manual mode, traffic shaping cannot be applied to traffic on the server-side. See Traffic shaping on page 2090 for more information.

Manual (peer to peer) configurations

Manual configurations allow for WAN optimization between one client-side FortiGate unit and one server-side FortiGate unit. Manual WAN optimization requires a manual WAN optimization firewall policy on the client-side FortiGate unit and a WAN optimization proxy policy on the server-side FortiGate unit.

In a manual mode configuration, the client-side peer can only connect to the named server side peer. When the client-side peer initiates a tunnel with the server-side peer, the packets that initiate the tunnel include extra information so that the server-side peer can determine that it is a peer-to-peer tunnel request. This extra information is required because the server-side peer does not require a WAN optimization firewall policy; however, you need to add the client peer host ID and IP address to the server-side FortiGate unit peer list. See Manual (peer-to-peer) WAN optimization configuration example on page 2094 for a sample configuration.

Active-passive configurations

Active-passive WAN optimization requires an active WAN optimization firewall policy on the client-side FortiGate unit and a passive WAN optimization firewall policy on the server-side FortiGate unit. The server-side FortiGate unit also requires a WAN optimization proxy policy.

You can use the passive policy to control WAN optimization address translation by specifying transparent mode or non-transparent mode. You can also use the passive policy to apply security profiles, web caching, and other FortiGate features at the server-side FortiGate unit. For example, if a server-side FortiGate unit is protecting a web server, the passive policy could enable web caching.

A single passive policy can accept tunnel requests from multiple FortiGate units as long as the server-side FortiGate unit includes their peer IDs and all of the client-side FortiGate units include the server-side peer ID. See Active-passive WAN optimization configuration example on page 2098 for a sample configuration.



The WAN optimization proxy policy can only be added from the CLI and policies with `proxy` set to `wanopt` do not appear on the GUI.

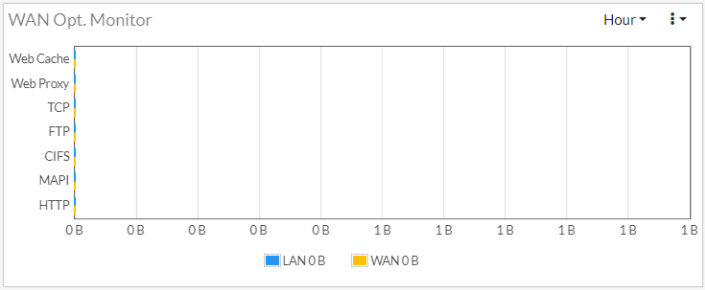
Monitoring performance

Using *WAN Opt. & Cache* widgets, you can confirm that a FortiGate unit is optimizing traffic and view estimates of the amount of bandwidth saved. These include peers manually added to the configuration as well as discovered peers.

To add *WAN Opt. & Cache* widgets go to *Dashboard* > *Status* > *Add Widget* > *WAN Opt. & Cache* and add *WAN Opt. Monitor* and *Peer Monitor*.

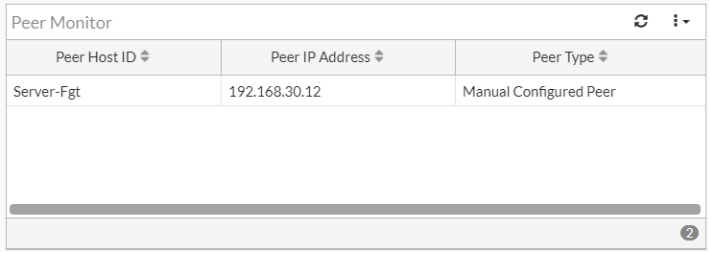
Wan Opt. Monitor

The *Wan Opt. Monitor* shows how WAN optimization is reducing the amount of traffic on the WAN for each WAN optimization protocol by showing the amount of WAN and LAN traffic. If WAN optimization is being effective, the amount of WAN traffic should be lower than the amount of LAN traffic.



Peer Monitor

The *Peer Monitor* lists all of the WAN optimization peers that a FortiGate unit can perform WAN optimization with.



System and feature operation with WAN optimization

This section contains the following information:

- HA on page 2089
- Memory usage on page 2089
- Distributing WAN optimization processing on page 2089
- Distributing WAN optimization to multiple CPU cores on page 2090
- Identity policies and load balancing on page 2090
- Traffic shaping on page 2090

HA

You can configure WAN optimization on a FortiGate HA cluster. The recommended best practice HA configuration for WAN optimization is active-passive mode. When the cluster is operating, all WAN optimization sessions are processed by the primary unit only. Even if the cluster is operating in active-active mode, HA does not load-balance WAN optimization sessions.

You can also form a WAN optimization tunnel between a cluster and a standalone FortiGate unit or between two clusters.

In a cluster, only the primary unit stores the byte cache database. This database is not synchronized to the subordinate units. So, after a failover, the new primary unit must rebuild its byte cache. Rebuilding the byte cache can happen relatively quickly because the new primary unit gets byte cache data from the other FortiGate unit that it is participating with in WAN optimization tunnels.

Memory usage

To accelerate and optimize disk access and to provide better throughput and less latency, FortiOS WAN optimization uses provisioned memory to reduce disk I/O and increase disk I/O efficiency. In addition, WAN optimization requires a small amount of additional memory per session for comprehensive flow control logic and efficient traffic forwarding.

When WAN optimization is enabled you will see a reduction in available memory. The reduction increases when more WAN optimization sessions are being processed. If you are thinking of enabling WAN optimization on an operating FortiGate unit, make sure its memory usage is not maxed out during high traffic periods.

In addition to using the system dashboard to see the current memory usage you can use the `get test wad 2` command to see how much memory is currently being used by WAN optimization.

Distributing WAN optimization processing

The `wad-worker` balancing algorithm supports a more balanced dispersal of traffic to the wad processes even if the bulk of the traffic is coming from a small set of sources or single source.

By default, dispatching traffic to WAD workers is based on source affinity. This may negatively affect performance when users have another explicit proxy in front of the FortiGate. Source affinity causes the FortiGate to process the traffic as if it originated from the single (or small set of) IP address of the outside proxy. This results in the use of one, or a small number, of WAD processes.

By disabling `wad-source-affinity` the traffic is balanced over all of the WAD processes. The WAD dispatcher will not assign the traffic based on the source IP address, but will assign the traffic to available workers in a round-robin fashion.

To configure WAD source affinity:

```
config system global
    set wad-source-affinity {enable | disable}
end
```



Handling the traffic by different WAD workers results in losing cached related benefits of using source affinity, as there is the memory cache on the current wad worker and if a new connection is handled by another worker, the cache will not be hit.

This is explained by the warning message that appears when it is disabled:

```
WARNING: Disabling this option results in some features to be
unsupported. IP-based user authentication, disclaimer messages, security
profile override, authentication cookies, MAPI scanning, and some video
caches such as YouTube are not supported.

Do you want to continue? (y/n)
```

Distributing WAN optimization to multiple CPU cores

By default WAN optimization is handled by half of the CPU cores in a FortiGate unit. For example, if your FortiGate unit has 4 CPU cores, by default two will be used for WAN optimization. You can use the following command to change the number of CPU cores that are used.

```
config system global
    set wad-worker-count <number>
end
```

The `wad-worker-count` can be between `1` and the total number of CPU cores in your FortiGate unit. Adding more cores may enhance WAN optimization but reduce the performance of other FortiGate systems.

Identity policies and load balancing

WAN optimization and firewall policies compatibility varies depending on the type of policy:

- WAN optimization is not compatible with firewall load balancing.
- WAN optimization is compatible with source and destination NAT options in firewall policies (including firewall virtual IPs). If a virtual IP is added to a policy, the traffic that exits the WAN optimization tunnel has its destination address changed to the virtual IP mapped to IP address and port.
- WAN optimization is compatible with user identity-based and device identity security policies. If a session is allowed after authentication or device identification the session can be optimized.

Traffic shaping

Traffic shaping works for WAN optimization traffic that is not in a WAN optimization tunnel. So traffic accepted by a WAN optimization policy on a client-side FortiGate unit can be shaped on ingress. However, when the traffic enters the WAN optimization tunnel, traffic shaping is not applied.

In manual mode:

- Traffic shaping works as expected on the client-side FortiGate unit.
- Traffic shaping cannot be applied to traffic on the server-side FortiGate unit.

In active-passive mode:

- Traffic shaping works as expected on the client-side FortiGate unit.
- If transparent mode is enabled in the WAN optimization profile, traffic shaping also works as expected on the server-side FortiGate unit.
- If transparent mode is not enabled, traffic shaping works partially on the server-side FortiGate unit.

Best practices

WAN optimization and explicit proxy best practices include:

- WAN optimization tunnel sharing is recommended for similar types of WAN optimization traffic. However, tunnel sharing for different types of traffic is not recommended. For example, aggressive and non-aggressive protocols should not share the same tunnel.
- Active-passive HA is the recommended HA configuration for WAN optimization.
- Configure WAN optimization authentication with specific peers. Accepting any peer is not recommended as this can be less secure.

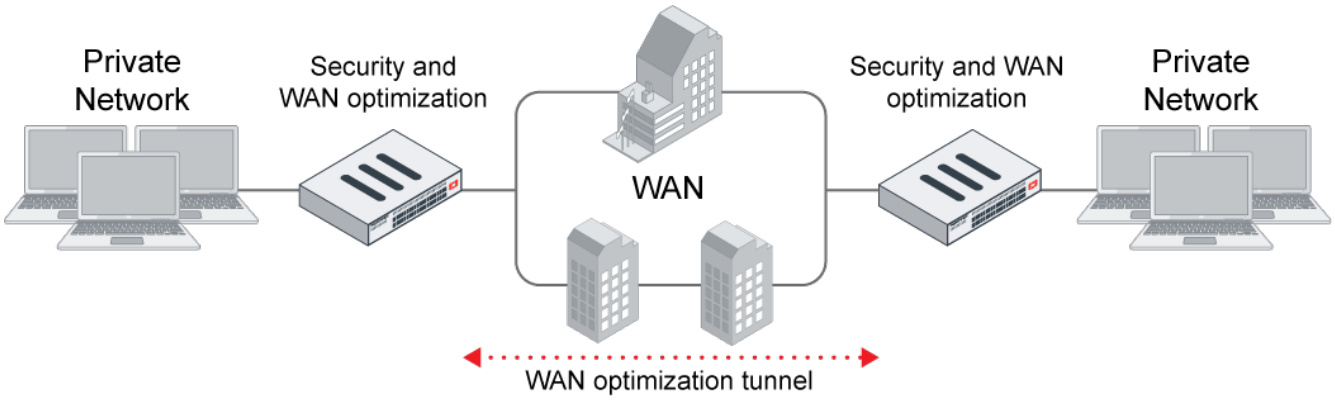
Example topologies

All FortiGate WAN optimization topologies consist of two FortiGate units operating as WAN optimization peers intercepting and optimizing traffic crossing the WAN between the private networks.

The following topics cover a few of the example topologies:

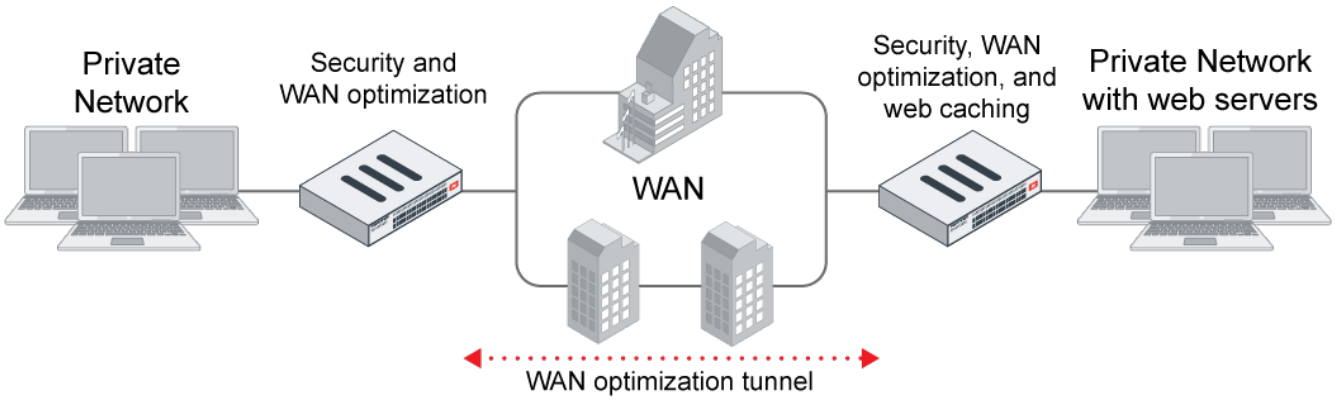
- In-path WAN optimization topology on page 2091
- Out-of-path WAN optimization topology on page 2092
- Topology for multiple networks on page 2092

In-path WAN optimization topology

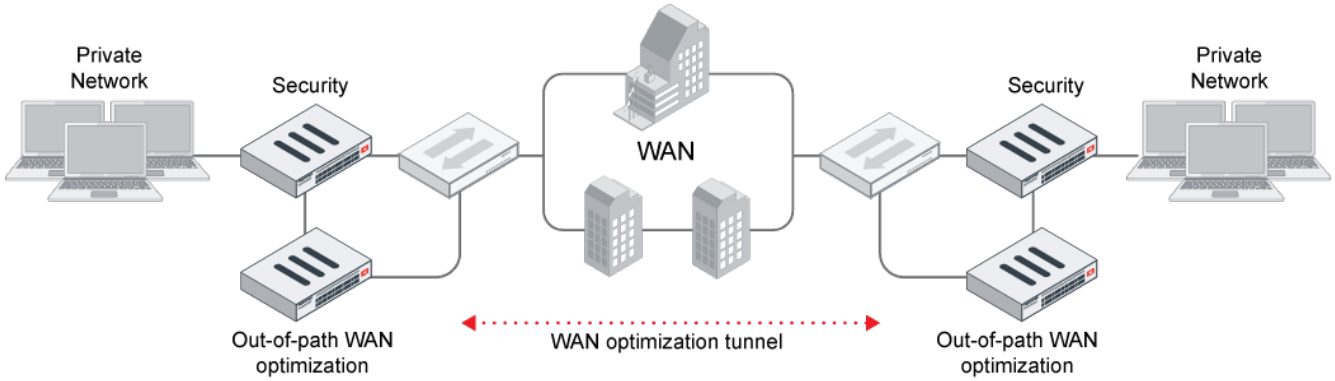


FortiGate units can be deployed as typical security devices that protect private networks connected to the WAN and also perform WAN optimization. The WAN optimization configuration intercepts traffic to be optimized as it passes through the FortiGate unit and uses a WAN optimization tunnel with another FortiGate unit to optimize the traffic that crosses the WAN.

You can add web caching to any WAN optimization topology when users on a private network communicate with web servers located across the WAN on another private network.



Out-of-path WAN optimization topology

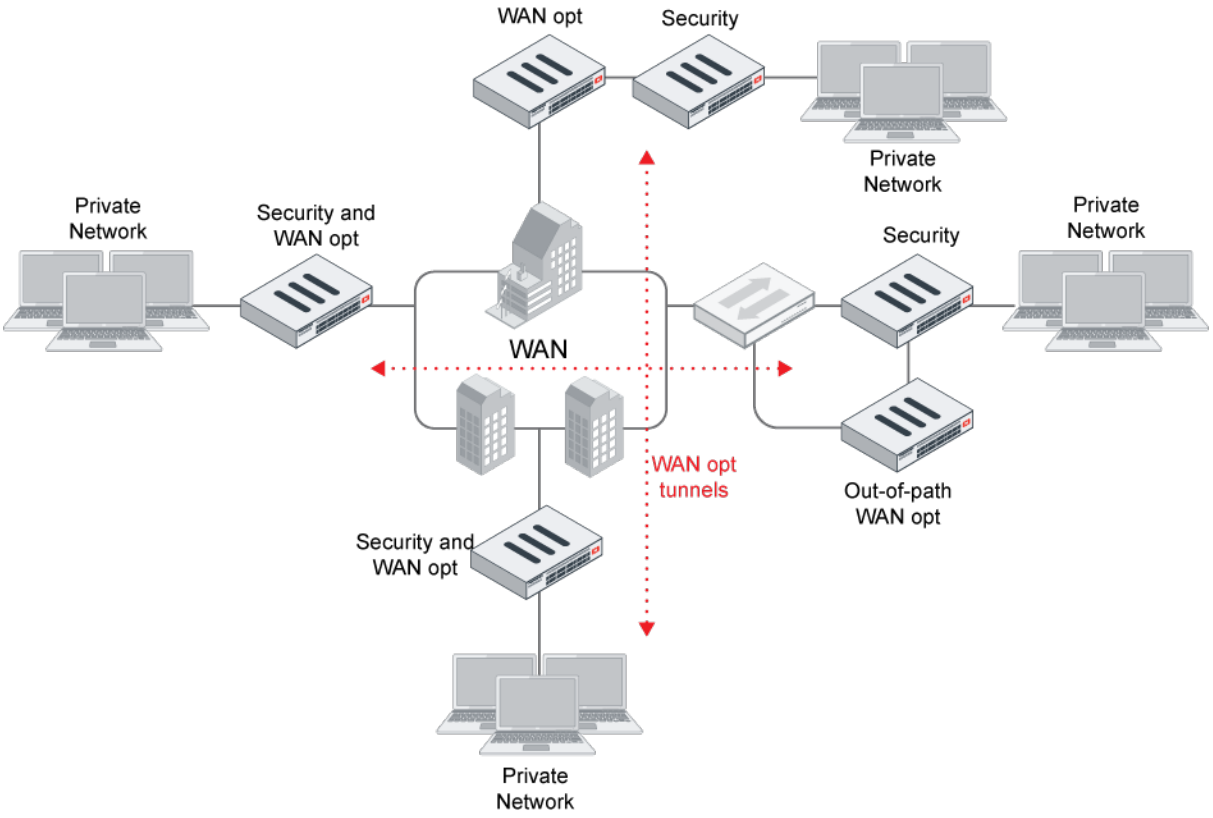


In an out-of-path topology, one or both of the FortiGate units configured for WAN optimization are not directly in the main data path. Instead, the out-of-path FortiGate unit is connected to FortiGate units in the data path, and the device is configured to redirect sessions to be optimized to the out-of-path FortiGate unit. The FortiGate units in the data path use a method such as policy routing to redirect traffic to be optimized to the out-of-path FortiGate units. The out-of-path FortiGate units establish a WAN optimization tunnel between each other and optimize the redirected traffic.

One of the benefits of out-of-path WAN optimization is that out-of-path FortiGate units only perform WAN optimization and do not have to process other traffic. An in-path FortiGate unit configured for WAN optimization also has to process other non-optimized traffic on the data path.

Topology for multiple networks

As shown below, you can create multiple WAN optimization configurations between many private networks. Whenever WAN optimization occurs, it is always between two FortiGate units, but you can configure any FortiGate unit to perform WAN optimization with any of the other FortiGate units that are part of your WAN.

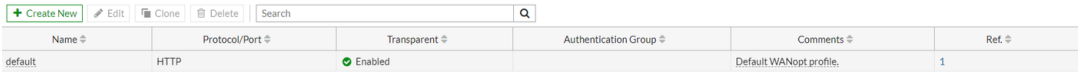


You can also configure WAN optimization between FortiGate units with different roles on the WAN. FortiGate units configured as security devices and for WAN optimization can perform WAN optimization as if they are single-purpose FortiGate units just configured for WAN optimization. The WAN optimization configuration is the same for FortiGate units deployed as security devices and for single-purpose WAN optimization FortiGate units. The only differences would result from the different network topologies.

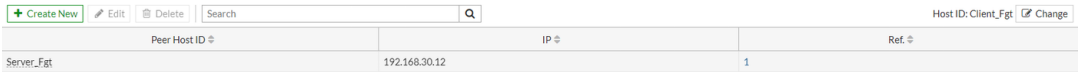
Configuration examples

The following pages are used in the WAN optimization configuration examples demonstrated in the subsequent sections:

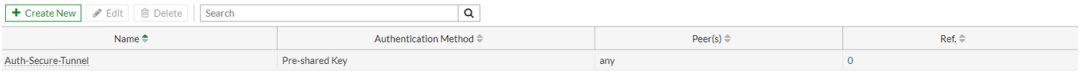
- *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Profiles*: Configure the default WAN optimization profile to optimize HTTP traffic on client side.



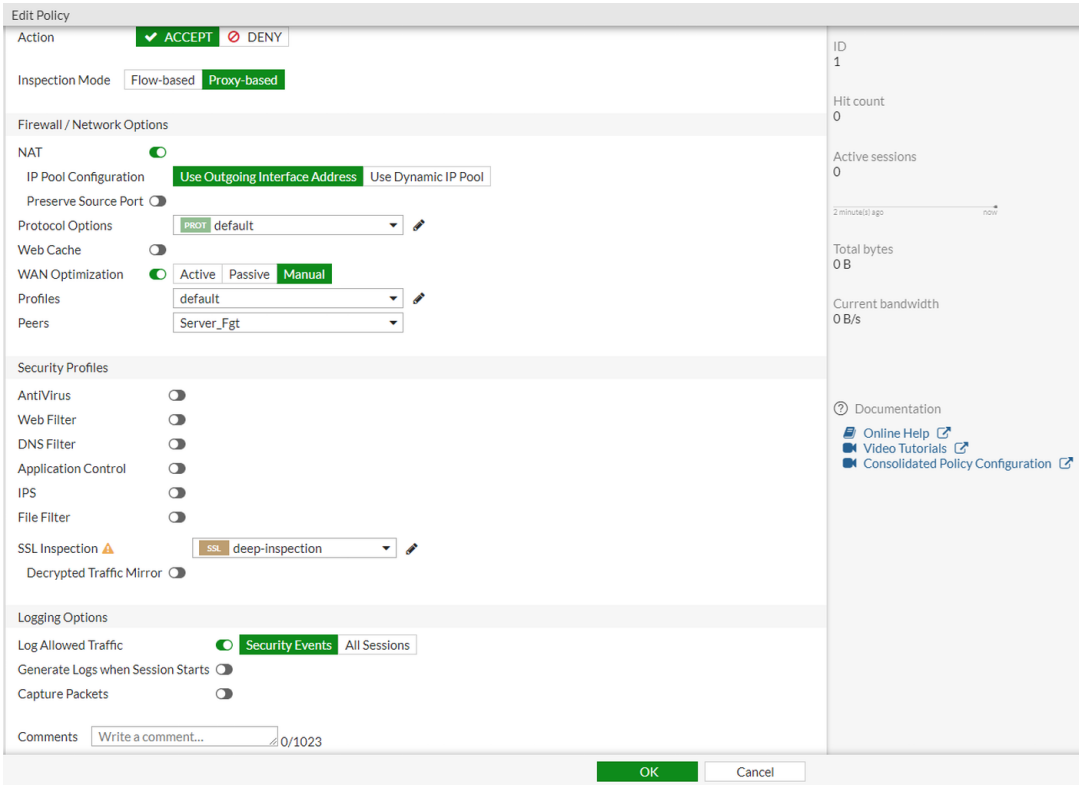
- *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers*: Change the *Host ID* and add *Peer Host ID* and *IP address* on both client and server side.



- *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Authentication Groups*: Add an authentication group for the authentication purpose on both client and server side. (Optional)



- *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*: Add a WAN optimization firewall policy on the client side or on both client and server side depending on the WAN optimization configuration. See the examples for more information.



A WAN optimization firewall policy is a firewall policy running in *Proxy-based* inspection mode with *WAN Optimization* enabled. A WAN optimization firewall policy cannot be configured with inspection mode set to *Flow-based*.

The following topics provide instructions on different WAN optimization configuration examples:

- Manual (peer-to-peer) WAN optimization configuration example on page 2094
- Active-passive WAN optimization configuration example on page 2098
- Secure tunneling configuration example on page 2103
- Testing and troubleshooting the configuration on page 2109

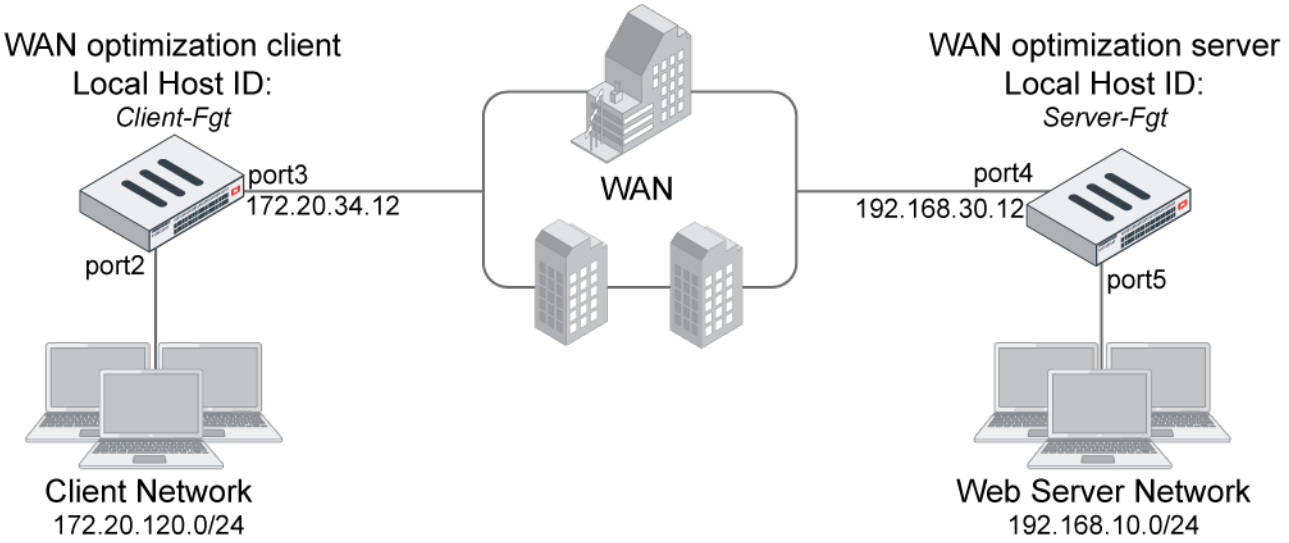
Manual (peer-to-peer) WAN optimization configuration example

Please ensure that the Prerequisites on page 2078 are met before proceeding with the configuration example.

See Manual (peer to peer) configurations on page 2087 for conceptual information.

This example configuration includes a client-side FortiGate unit called Client-Fgt with a WAN IP address of 172.20.34.12. This unit is in front of a network with IP address 172.20.120.0. The server-side FortiGate unit is called Server-Fgt with a WAN IP address of 192.168.30.12. This unit is in front of a web server network with IP address 192.168.10.0.

This example customizes the default WAN optimization profile on the client-side FortiGate unit and adds it to the WAN optimization firewall policy. You can also create a new WAN optimization profile.



General configuration steps

This section breaks down the configuration for this example into smaller procedures:

1. Configure the client-side FortiGate unit:
   - Add peers.
   - Configure the default WAN optimization profile to optimize HTTP traffic.
   - Add a manual WAN optimization firewall policy.
2. Configure the server-side FortiGate unit:
   - Add peers.
   - Add a WAN optimization proxy policy.

Configuring manual WAN optimization from the GUI

Use the following steps to configure the example configuration from the GUI:

To configure the client-side FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers* and change the *Host ID* of the client-side FortiGate unit:
   a. Click *Change*. The *Host ID* pane opens.
   b. Enter a new *Host ID*:

Host ID	Client-Fgt

c. Click *OK*.

2. Create the server-side FortiGate unit peer:
   a. Select *Create New*. The *New WAN Optimization Peer* opens.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Peer Host ID	Server-Fgt
IP address	192.168.30.12

   c. Click *OK*.
3. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Profiles* and edit the default profile:
   a. Select the default profile and click *Edit*.
   b. Under *Protocol Options*, edit *HTTP*.
   c. Set *Status* to *Enable* and click *Apply*.
   d. Click *OK*.
4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to add a manual WAN optimization firewall policy to the client-side FortiGate unit that accepts traffic to be optimized:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* and configure the following settings:

Incoming Interface	port2
Outgoing Interface	port3
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT

   c. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.
   d. Enable *WAN Optimization* and configure the following settings:

WAN Optimization	Manual
Profiles	default
Peers	Server-Fgt

   e. Click *OK* to save the policy.

To configure the server-side FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers* and change the *Host ID* of the server-side FortiGate unit:
   a. Click *Change*. The *Host ID* pane opens.
   b. Enter a new *Host ID*:

Host ID	Server-Fgt

   c. Click *OK*.

2. Create the client-side FortiGate unit peer:
   a. Select *Create New*. The *New WAN Optimization Peer* opens.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Peer Host ID	Client-Fgt
IP address	172.20.34.12

   c. Click *OK*.
3. Enter the following CLI command to add a WAN optimization proxy policy to accept WAN optimization tunnel connections:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 0
        set proxy wanopt
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

Configuring basic WAN optimization from the CLI

Use the following steps to configure the example configuration from the CLI.

To configure the client-side FortiGate unit:

1. Change the Host ID of the client-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id Client-Fgt
end
```

2. Add the Host ID of the server-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt peer
    edit Server-Fgt
        set ip 192.168.30.12
    next
end
```

3. Edit the *default* WAN optimization profile and enable HTTP WAN optimization:

```
config wanopt profile
    edit default
        config http
            set status enable
        end
    next
end
```

4. Add a WAN optimization firewall policy to accept the traffic to be optimized:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf port2
        set dstintf port3
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set service ALL
        set schedule always
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set wanopt enable
        set wanopt-profile default
        set wanopt-detection off
        set wanopt-peer Server-Fgt
    next
end
```

When you set the detection mode to off, the policy becomes a manual mode WAN optimization firewall, which is reflected on the GUI.

To configure the server-side FortiGate unit:

1. Change the Host ID of the server-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id Server-Fgt
end
```

2. Add the Host ID of the client-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt peer
    edit Client-Fgt
        set ip 172.20.34.12
    next
end
```

3. Add a WAN optimization proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 0
        set proxy wanopt
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

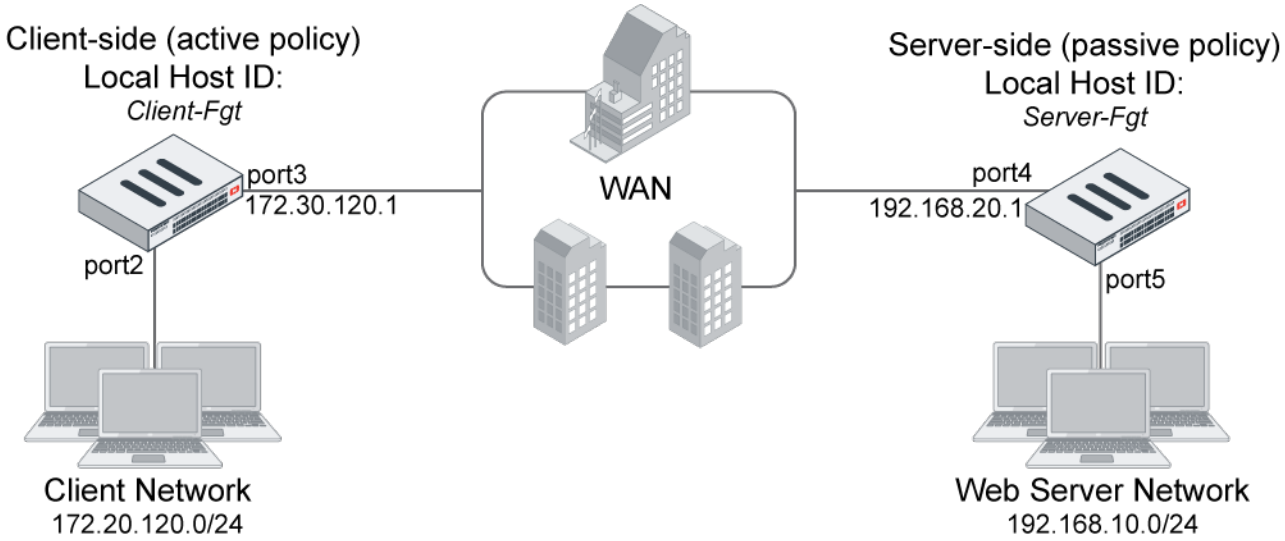
Active-passive WAN optimization configuration example



Please ensure that the Prerequisites on page 2078 are met before proceeding with the configuration example.

See Active-passive configurations on page 2087 for conceptual information.

This example configuration includes a client-side FortiGate unit called Client-Fgt with a WAN IP address of 172.30.120.1. This unit is in front of a network with IP address 172.20.120.0. The server-side FortiGate unit is called Server-Fgt and has a WAN IP address of 192.168.20.1. This unit is in front of a web server network with IP address 192.168.10.0.



General configuration steps

This section breaks down the configuration for this example into smaller procedures:

1. Configure the client-side FortiGate unit:
   - Add peers.
   - Add a WAN optimization profile to optimize CIFS, FTP, and HTTP traffic.
   - Add an active WAN optimization firewall policy.
2. Configure the server-side FortiGate unit:
   - Add peers.
   - Add a passive WAN optimization firewall policy.
   - Add a WAN optimization proxy policy.

Configuring active-passive WAN optimization from the GUI

Use the following steps to configure the example configuration from the GUI.

To configure the client-side FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers* and change the *Host ID* of the client-side FortiGate unit:
   a. Click *Change*. The *Host ID* pane opens.
   b. Enter a new *Host ID*:

Host ID	Client-Fgt

c. Click *OK*.

2. Create the server-side FortiGate unit peer:
   a. Select *Create New*. The *New WAN Optimization Peer* opens.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Peer Host ID	Server-Fgt
IP address	192.168.20.1

   c. Click *OK*.
3. Go to *WAN Opt & Cache* > *Profiles* to add a WAN optimization profile to optimize CIFS, HTTP, and FTP traffic:
   a. Select *Create New*.
   b. Enter the profile name:

Name	Custom-wan-opt-pro

   c. In the *Protocol Options* section:
      i. Edit *CIFS*.
      ii. Set *Status* to *Enable*.
      iii. Click *Apply*.
      iv. Repeat these steps to edit and enable *FTP* and *HTTP*.
   d. Click *OK*.
4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to add an active WAN optimization firewall policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* and configure the following settings:

Incoming Interface	port2
Outgoing Interface	port3
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	HTTP FTP SMB
Action	ACCEPT

   c. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.
   d. Enable WAN optimization and configure the following settings:

WAN Optimization	Active
Profile	Custom-wan-opt-pro

   e. Click *OK*.

To configure the server-side FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers* and change the *Host ID* of the server-side FortiGate unit:
   a. Click *Change*. The *Host ID* pane opens.
   b. Enter a new *Host ID*:

Host ID	Server-Fgt

   c. Click *OK*.
2. Create the client-side FortiGate unit peer:
   a. Select *Create New*. The *New WAN Optimization Peer* opens.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Peer Host ID	Client-Fgt
IP address	172.30.120.1

   c. Click *OK*.
3. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to add a passive WAN optimization firewall policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* and configure the following settings:

Incoming Interface	port4
Outgoing Interface	port5
Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT

   c. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.
   d. Enable *WAN Optimization* and configure the following settings:

WAN Optimization	Passive
Passive Option	Default

   e. Click *OK*.
4. Add a WAN optimization proxy policy from the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 0
        set proxy wanopt
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
```

```
    next
end
```

Configuring basic active-passive WAN optimization from the CLI

Use the following steps to configure the example configuration from the CLI.

To configure the client-side FortiGate unit:

1. Change the Host ID of the client-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id Client-Fgt
end
```

2. Add the Host ID of the server-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt peer
    edit Server-Fgt
        set ip 192.168.20.1
    next
end
```

3. Add a WAN optimization profile to optimize CIFS, HTTP, and FTP traffic:

```
config wanopt profile
    edit Custom-wan-opt-pro
        config cifs
            set status enable
        end
        config http
            set status enable
        end
        config ftp
            set status enable
        end
    next
end
```

4. Add an active WAN optimization firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf port2
        set dstintf port3
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set service HTTP FTP SMB
        set schedule always
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set wanopt enable
        set wanopt-detection active
        set wanopt-profile Custom-wan-opt-pro
    next
end
```

To configure the server-side FortiGate unit:

1. Change the Host ID of the server-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id Server-Fgt
end
```

2. Add the Host ID of the client-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt peer
    edit Client-Fgt
        set ip 172.30.120.1
    next
end
```

3. Add a passive WAN optimization firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf port4
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set service ALL
        set schedule always
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set wanopt enable
        set wanopt-detection passive
        set wanopt-passive-opt default
    next
end
```

4. Add a WAN optimization proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 0
        set proxy wanopt
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

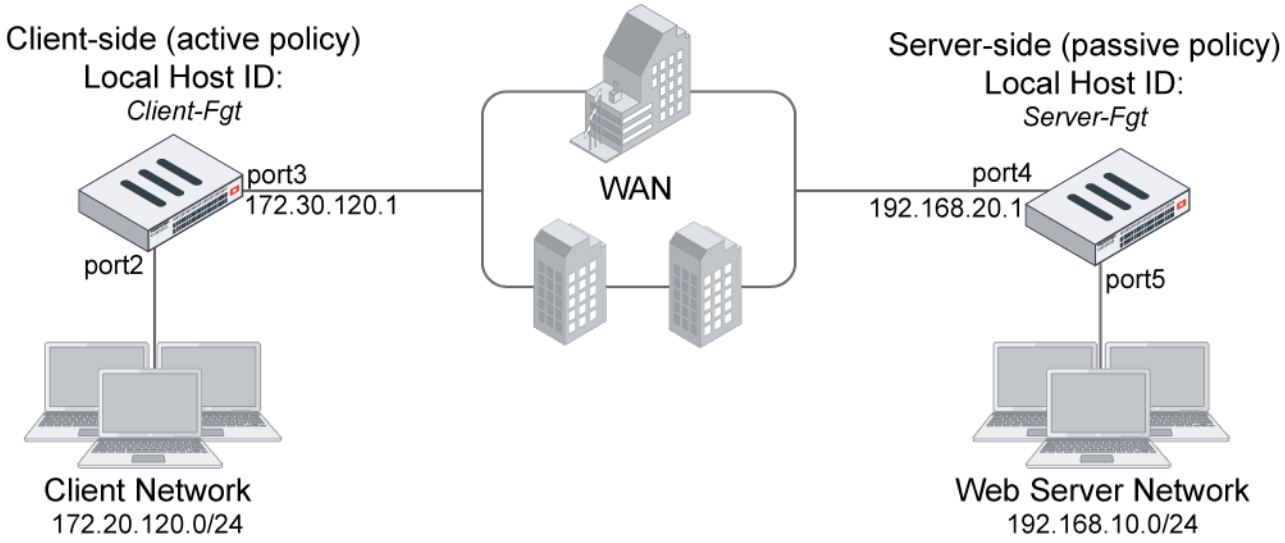
Secure tunneling configuration example



Please ensure that the Prerequisites on page 2078 are met before proceeding with the configuration example.

See Secure tunneling on page 2083 for conceptual information.

This example configuration includes a client-side FortiGate unit called Client-Fgt with a WAN IP address of 172.30.120.1. This unit is in front of a network with IP address 172.20.120.0. The server-side FortiGate unit is called Server-Fgt and has a WAN IP address of 192.168.20.1. This unit is in front of a web server network with IP address 192.168.10.0.



General configuration steps

This section breaks down the configuration for this example into smaller procedures:

1. Configure the client-side FortiGate unit:
   - Add peers.
   - Add an authentication group.
   - Add an active WAN optimization firewall policy.
2. Configure the server-side FortiGate unit:
   - Add peers.
   - Add the same authentication group.
   - Add a passive WAN optimization firewall policy.
   - Add a WAN optimization proxy policy.

Configuring WAN optimization with secure tunneling from the GUI

Use the following steps to configure the example configuration from the GUI.

To configure the client-side FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers* and change the *Host ID* of the client-side FortiGate unit:
   a. Click *Change*. The *Host ID* pane opens.
   b. Enter a new *Host ID*:

Host ID	Client-Fgt

c. Click *OK*.

2. Create the server-side FortiGate unit peer:
   a. Select *Create New*. The *New WAN Optimization Peer* opens.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Peer Host ID	Server-Fgt
IP address	192.168.20.1

   c. Click *OK*.
3. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Authentication Groups* to add the authentication group to be used for secure tunneling:
   a. Click *Create New* and configure the following settings:

Name	Auth-Secure-Tunnel
Authentication Method	Pre-shared key
Pre-shared key	********
Accept peer(s)	Defined Peers Only

   b. Click *OK*.
4. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Profiles* to add a WAN optimization profile that enables secure tunneling and includes the authentication group:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name*:

Name	Secure-wan-opt-pro

   c. Enable *Authentication group*:

Authentication group	Auth-Secure-Tunnel

   d. In the *Protocol Options* section, edit *HTTP*:
      i. Set *Status* to *Enable*.
      ii. Click *Apply*.
      iii. Set *SSL Secure Tunneling* to *Enable*.
      iv. Click *Apply*.
   e. Click *OK*.
5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to add an active WAN optimization firewall policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* and configure the following settings:

Incoming Interface	port2
Outgoing Interface	port3
Source	all
Destination	all

Schedule	always
Service	HTTP
Action	ACCEPT

c. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.

d. Enable *WAN Optimization* and configure the following settings:

WAN Optimization	Active
Profile	Secure-wan-opt-pro

e. Click *OK*.

To configure the server-side FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Peers* and change the *Host ID* of the server-side FortiGate unit:
   a. Click *Change*. The *Host ID* pane opens.
   b. Enter a new *Host ID*:

Host ID	Server-Fgt

   c. Click *OK*.
2. Create the client-side FortiGate unit peer:
   a. Select *Create New*. The *New WAN Optimization Peer* opens.
   b. Configure the following settings:

Peer Host ID	Client-Fgt
IP address	172.30.120.1

   c. Click *OK*.
3. Go to *WAN Opt. & Cache* > *Authentication Groups* to add the authentication group to be used for secure tunneling:
   a. Click *Create New* and configure the following settings:

Name	Auth-Secure-Tunnel
Authentication Method	Pre-shared key
Pre-shared key	********
Accept peer(s)	Defined Peers Only

   b. Click *OK*.
4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to add an passive WAN optimization firewall policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* and configure the following settings:

Incoming Interface	port4
Outgoing Interface	port5

Source	all
Destination	all
Schedule	always
Service	ALL
Action	ACCEPT

c. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.

d. Enable *WAN Optimization* and configure the following settings:

WAN Optimization	Passive
Passive Option	Default

e. Click *OK*.

5. Add a WAN optimization proxy policy from the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 0
        set proxy wanopt
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

Configuring WAN optimization with secure tunneling from the CLI

Use the following steps to configure the example configuration from the CLI.

To configure the client-side FortiGate unit:

1. Change the Host ID of the client-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id Client-Fgt
end
```

2. Add the Host ID of the server-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt peer
    edit Server-Fgt
        set ip 192.168.20.1
    next
end
```

3. Add a new authentication group to be used for secure tunneling:

```
config wanopt auth-group
    edit Auth-Secure-Tunnel
        set auth-method psk
```

```
        set peer-accept defined
        set psk ********
    next
end
```

4. Add a WAN optimization profile that enabled secure tunneling and includes the authentication group, enables HTTP protocol optimization, and enables secure tunneling for HTTP traffic:

```
config wanopt profile
    edit Secure-wan-opt-pro
        set auth-group Auth-Secure-Tunnel
        config http
            set status enable
            set secure-tunnel enable
        end
    next
end
```

5. Add an active WAN optimization firewall policy that enables secure tunneling:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf port2
        set dstintf port3
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set service HTTP
        set schedule always
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set wanopt enable
        set wanopt-detection active
        set wanopt-profile Secure-wan-opt-pro
    next
end
```

To configure the server-side FortiGate unit:

1. Change the Host ID of the server-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt settings
    set host-id Server-Fgt
end
```

2. Add the Host ID of the client-side FortiGate:

```
config wanopt peer
    edit Client-Fgt
        set ip 172.30.120.1
    next
end
```

3. Add an authentication group to be used for secure tunneling:

```
config wanopt auth-group
    edit Auth-Secure-Tunnel
        set auth-method psk
        set peer-accept defined
        set psk ********
```

```
    next
end
```

4. Add a passive WAN optimization firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf port4
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set service ALL
        set schedule always
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set wanopt enable
        set wanopt-detection passive
        set wanopt-passive-opt default
    next
end
```

5. Add a WAN optimization proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 0
        set proxy wanopt
        set dstintf port5
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

Testing and troubleshooting the configuration

To test the configuration attempt, start a web browsing session between the client network and the web server network. For example, from a PC on the client network browse to the IP address of a web server on the web server network, for example http://192.168.10.13. Even though this address is not on the client network, you should be able to connect to this web server over the WAN optimization tunnel.

If you can connect, the *WAN Opt. Monitor* widget should show the protocol that has been optimized (in this case HTTP) and the *Peer Monitor* widget displays the *Peer* information. To add the *WAN Opt. Monitor* and the *Peer Monitor*, go to *Dashboard* > *Status* > *Add Widget* > *WAN Opt. & Cache* and add *WAN Opt. Monitor* and *Peer Monitor*. See Monitoring performance on page 2088 for more information.

If you cannot connect, try the following to diagnose the problem:

- Review your configuration and make sure all details such as address ranges, peer names, and IP addresses are correct.
- Check routing on the FortiGate units and on the client and web server networks to make sure packets can be forwarded as required. The FortiGate units must be able to communicate with each other, routing on the client network must allow packets destined for the web server network to be received by the client-side FortiGate unit, and

packets from the server-side FortiGate unit must be able to reach the web servers. See Routing concepts on page 534 for more information.

You can use `get` and `diagnose` commands to display information about how WAN optimization is operating.

Example output

The command output for the client-side FortiGate unit shows 10 tunnels all created by the manual WAN optimization configuration:

```
# diagnose wad tunnel list

Tunnel: id=100 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=100 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=348 bytes_out=384

Tunnel: id=99 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=99 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=348 bytes_out=384

Tunnel: id=98 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=98 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=348 bytes_out=384

Tunnel: id=39 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=39 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1068 bytes_out=1104

Tunnel: id=7 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=7 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1228 bytes_out=1264

Tunnel: id=8 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=8 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1228 bytes_out=1264

Tunnel: id=5 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=5 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1228 bytes_out=1264

Tunnel: id=4 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
```

```
peer name=Server-Fgt id=4 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1228 bytes_out=1264

Tunnel: id=1 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=1 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1228 bytes_out=1264

Tunnel: id=2 type=manual
vd=0 shared=no uses=0 state=2
peer name=Server-Fgt id=2 ip=192.168.30.12
SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
bytes_in=1228 bytes_out=1264

Tunnels total=10 manual=10 auto=0
```

The command output shows three tunnels all created by the active-passive WAN optimization configuration:

```
# diagnose wad tunnel list

Tunnel: id=22 type=auto
    vd=0 shared=no uses=1 state=2
    peer name=Server-Fgt id=42 ip=192.168.20.1 (best guess)
    SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
    bytes_in=56693 bytes_out=10831

Tunnel: id=24 type=auto
    vd=0 shared=no uses=1 state=2
    peer name=Server-Fgt id=44 ip=192.168.20.1 (best guess)
    SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
    bytes_in=14833 bytes_out=3896

Tunnel: id=26 type=auto
    vd=0 shared=no uses=1 state=2
    peer name=Server-Fgt id=46 ip=192.168.20.1 (best guess)
    SSL-secured-tunnel=no auth-grp=
    bytes_in=481 bytes_out=176

Tunnels total=3 manual=0 auto=3
```

The command output shows a tunnel created by active passive WAN optimization configuration with secure tunneling:

```
# diagnose wad tunnel list

Tunnel: id=3 type=auto
    vd=0 shared=no uses=1 state=2
    peer name=Server-Fgt id=49 ip=192.168.20.1 (best guess)
    SSL-secured-tunnel=yes auth-grp=Auth-Secure-Tunnel
    bytes_in=95810 bytes_out=39597

Tunnels total=1 manual=0 auto=1
```



Unlike manual mode, for active-passive configurations, each session will negotiate an active-passive tunnel so an open session is required the display the corresponding output above.

For example, continuous data transfer such as uploading or downloading will display tunnel output in the active-passive configuration, which is in contrast to manual mode where tunnels are always open and ready to use.

VM

Amazon Web Services

See the FortiOS 6.4.11 AWS Administration Guide.

Microsoft Azure

See the FortiOS 6.4.11 Azure Administration Guide.

Google Cloud Platform

See the 6.4.11 FortiOS GCP Administration Guide.

Oracle OCI

See the 6.4.11 FortiOS OCI Administration Guide.

AliCloud

See the 6.4.11 FortiOS AliCloud Administration Guide.

Private cloud

See the Private Cloud section in the Virtualization document library.

VM license

You can access the *FortiGate VM License* from the *Dashboard* > *Status* page in the *Virtual Machine* widget. Click the device license and select *FortiGate VM License*.

The *FortiGate VM License* page displays the following information:

Field	Description
License status	Displays one of the following statuses: • Valid: VM can connect and validate the license against a FortiManager or FortiGuard server. All features are available. • Warning: VM cannot connect and validate against a FortiManager or FortiGuard server. A check is made against how many days the warning status is continuous. If the number is less than 30 days, the status does not change. • Invalid: VM cannot connect and validate against a FortiManager or FortiGuard server. A check is made against how many days the warning status is continuous. If the number is 30 days or more, the status changes to invalid. GUI access is restricted until a valid license is uploaded. Firewall policies do not work. FortiGuard downloads are not available. • Pending: a temporary state where the VM is attempting to validate its license. Reasons for having a warning or invalid status include: • The network environment does not allow FortiGate-VM to connect to the FortiGuard server. • The license might be expired. Check the expiration date for evaluation or term-based licenses. • Another VM has been already validated with FortiGuard using the same license. See VM license activation for details about duplicated VM instances.
Allocated vCPUs	Number of allocated and total allowable vCPUs
Allocated RAM	Amount of allocated RAM. There are no RAM restrictions.
Expires on	Expiry date (value depends on the type of license)

This information is visible in the CLI by running `get system status` (see CLI troubleshooting).

Uploading a license file

After you submit an order for a FortiGate-VM, Fortinet sends a license registration code to the email address that you entered in the order form. Use this code on the FortiCloud portal to register the FortiGate-VM.

Once the VM is registered, you can download the license file in .LIC format. On the *FortiGate VM License* page, click *Upload*. The system will prompt you to reboot and validate the license with the FortiGuard server. Once validated, your FortiGate-VM is fully functional.

The VM license window may also appear immediately after logging in if you are running a VM with an evaluation license that has expired.

In cases where the GUI is not accessible, you can upload the license using secure copy (SCP).



For information about injecting FortiFlex license tokens, see *Injecting tokens into FortiGate-VM* in the *Flex VM Deployment Guide*.

To upload the license using SCP:

1. Enable SCP:

```
config system global
    set admin-scp enable
end
```

2. Enable SSH in the administrative access for the interface where the transfer will take place:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        append allowaccess ssh
    next
end
```

3. On your computer, upload the VM license. This example is for Linux:

```
scp <filename> <admin-user>@<FortiGate_IP>:vmlicense
```

Types of VM licenses

FortiGate-VM offers perpetual licensing (normal series and V-series) and annual subscription licensing (S-series). SKUs are based on the number of vCPUs (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, or unlimited).

The FortiFlex program allows qualified enterprise and MSSP customers to create as many VM entitlements as required. Resource consumption is based upon predefined points that are calculated on a daily basis. For information, see the *FortiFlex Program Guide* in the Fortinet document library.

Feature	Normal series V-series	S-series	FortiFlex
Licensing and support	The VM base is perpetual. You must separately contract support services on an annual basis. See the price list for details.	Single annually contracted SKU that contains a VM base and a FortiCare service bundle. Four support service bundle types are available: • Only FortiCare • UTM • Enterprise • 360 Protection	An annually contracted program to create multiple sets of a single entitlement per VM. Entitlements contain a VM base and FortiCare bundle. Four support service bundle types are available: • Only FortiCare • UTM • Enterprise • 360 Protection

Feature	Normal series	V-series	S-series	FortiFlex
vCPU number upgrade during contracted term	Not supported.		Supported. You can also upgrade the support service bundle. Contact a Fortinet sales representative to upgrade.	Supported. You can apply different VM entitlement configurations in the FortiFlex portal. API is not supported at this time.
vCPU number downgrade during contracted term	Not supported.			
VDOM support	By default, each CPU level supports up to a certain number of VDOMs. Refer to the FortiGate-VM data sheet for default limits.	By default, all CPU levels do not support adding VDOMs.	By default, all CPU levels do not support adding VDOMs. S-series VM instances support the subscription VDOM license.	

Consuming a new vCPU

In a scenario where you have not allocated all the vCPUs allotted by your VM entitlement, you can add additional vCPUs to your FortiGate VM. The vCPU allocation can be verified in the GUI and CLI.

To confirm the vCPU allocation in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*, and locate the *Virtual Machine* widget.
2. Verify the *Allocate vCPUs* field, which displays the number and percentage of allocated vCPUs.

To confirm the vCPU allocation in the CLI:

```
# get system status | grep "VM Resources"
VM Resources: 1 CPU/4 allowed, 2006 MB RAM
```

You can increase the number of vCPUs on running FortiGate VM models that support hot-adding. Once the hot-adding is complete, perform one of the following for FortiOS to recognize the new CPUs:

- Enter `execute cpu add <number_of_new_vCPUs>`.
- Reboot the FortiGate.

CLI troubleshooting

In some cases, more information can be viewed from the CLI to diagnose issues with VM licensing. This is also useful when the GUI is inaccessible due to an invalid contract.

Before you begin, ensure your FortiGate has the proper routes to connect to the internet.

To view the license status, expiration date, and VM resources:

```
# get system status
Version: FortiGate-VM64-KVM v6.4.2,build1723,200730 (GA)
...
Serial-Number: FGVM08**********
....
License Status: Valid
License Expiration Date: 2020-12-10
VM Resources: 1 CPU/8 allowed, 2010 MB RAM
...
```

To display license details:

```
# diagnose debug vm-print-license
SerialNumber: FGVM08**********
CreateDate: Tue Dec 10 00:57:32 2019
License expires: Thu Dec 10 00:00:00 2020
Expiry: 366
Key: yes
Cert: yes
Key2: yes
Cert2: yes
Model: 08 (11)
CPU: 8
MEM: 2147483647
```

To display license information from FortiGuard:

```
# diagnose hardware sysinfo vm full
UUID:     abbe**************************
valid:    1
status:   1
code:     200
warn:     0
copy:     0
received: 4604955037
warning:  4600905081
recv:     202009152207
dup:
```

Field	Value and description
Valid	0 – Invalid 1 – Valid
Status	0 – Startup 1 – Success 2 – Warning 3 – Error 4 – Invalid Copy 5 – Eval Expired

Field	Value and description
	6 - Grace Period. For FortiFlex, there is a two-hour grace period to begin passing traffic upon retrieving the license from FortiCare.
Code	2xx, 3xx – Success 200 – Valid 202 – Accepted (treated as correct response code) 4xx - Error 400 – Expired 401 – Duplicate 5xx – Warning 500 - Warning 502 – Invalid. Cannot connect to FDS 6xx – Evaluation license expired Other codes - Error

This combination indicates the license is valid and functioning normally:

```
valid: 1
status: 1
code: 200
```

This combination indicates the license is valid but may be running a duplicate instance:

```
valid: 1
status: 4
code: 401
```

This combination indicates the system cannot connect to FortiGuard:

```
valid:    0
status:   2
code:     502
```

This combination indicates the license is invalid:

```
valid: 0
status: 3
code: 400
```

For FortiFlex licenses, the following command allows you to enter the license token and proxy information:

```
# execute vm-license <token> https://<username>:<password>@<proxy IP address>:<proxy port>
```

FortiOS can receive the following error codes from the FortiCare server:

```
1 - Runtime error (server unhandled error on FortiCare sever)
57 - License Token is invalid
58 - License Token is already used and cannot be used again to retrieve license key
```

The FortiGate can generate the following error code:

```
60 - Failed to request forticare license. Failed to download VM license.
```

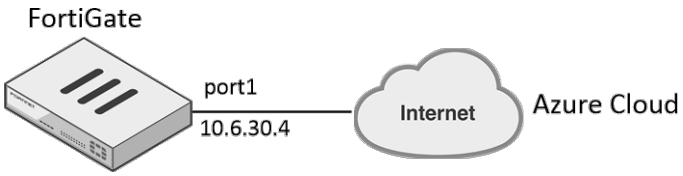
Contact Fortinet Support for assistance if your licensing issue persists.

FortiGate multiple connector support

This guide shows how to configure Fabric connectors and resolve dynamic firewall addresses through the configured Fabric connector in FortiOS.

FortiOS supports multiple Fabric connectors including public connectors (AWS, Azure, GCP, OCI, AliCloud) and private connectors (Kubernetes, VMware ESXi, VMware NSX, OpenStack, Cisco ACI, Nuage). FortiOS also supports multiple instances for each type of Fabric connector.

This guide uses an Azure Fabric connector as an example. The configuration procedure for all supported Fabric connectors is the same. In the following topology, the FortiGate accesses the Azure public cloud through the Internet:



This process consists of the following:

1. Configure the interface.
2. Configure a static route to connect to the Internet.
3. Configure two Azure Fabric connectors with different client IDs.
4. Check the configured Fabric connectors.
5. Create two firewall addresses.
6. Check the resolved firewall addresses after the update interval.
7. Run diagnose commands.

To configure the interface:

1. In FortiOS, go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit port1:
   a. From the *Role* dropdown list, select *WAN*.
   b. In the *IP/Network Mask* field, enter 10.6.30.4/255.255.255.0 for the interface connected to the Internet.

To configure a static route to connect to the Internet:

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*. Click *Create New*.
2. In the *Destination* field, enter 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0.
3. From the *Interface* dropdown list, select *port1*.
4. In the *Gateway Address* field, enter 10.60.30.254.

To configure two Azure Fabric connectors with different client IDs:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*. Configure the first Fabric connector:
   a. Select *Microsoft Azure*.
   b. In the *Name* field, enter azure1.
   c. In the *Status* field, select *Enabled*.
   d. From the *Server* region dropdown list, select *Global*.

e. In the *Tenant ID* field, enter the tenant ID. In this example, it is 942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba.
f. In the *Client ID* field, enter the client ID. In this example, it is 14dbd5c5-307e-4ea4-8133-68738141feb1.
g. In the *Client secret* field, enter the client secret.
h. Leave the *Resource path* disabled.
i. Click *OK*.

3. Click *Create New*. Configure the second Fabric connector:
a. Select *Microsoft Azure*.
b. In the *Name* field, enter azure2.
c. In the *Status* field, select *Enabled*.
d. From the *Server* region dropdown list, select *Global*.
e. In the *Tenant ID* field, enter the tenant ID. In this example, it is 942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba.
f. In the *Client ID* field, enter the client ID. In this example, it is 3baf0a6c-44ff-4f94-b292-07f7a2c36be6.
g. In the *Client secret* field, enter the client secret.
h. Leave the *Resource path* disabled.
i. Click *OK*.

To check the configured Fabric connectors:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click the *Refresh* icon in the upper right corner of each configured Fabric connector. A green up arrow appears in the lower right corner, meaning that both Fabric connectors are connected to the Azure cloud using different client IDs.

To create two firewall addresses:

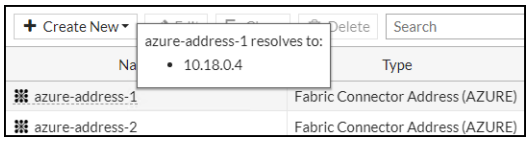
This process creates two Fabric connector firewall addresses to associate with the configured Fabric connectors.

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*. Configure the first Fabric connector firewall address:
a. In the *Name* field, enter azure-address-1.
b. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector address*.
c. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select *azure1*.
d. For *SDN address type*, select *Private*.
e. From the *Filter* dropdown list, select the desired filter.
f. For *Interface*, select *any*.
g. Click *OK*.
3. Click *Create New* > *Address*. Configure the second Fabric connector firewall address:
a. In the *Name* field, enter azure-address-1.
b. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector address*.
c. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select *azure2*.
d. For *SDN address type*, select *Private*.
e. From the *Filter* dropdown list, select the desired filter.
f. For *Interface*, select *any*.
g. Click *OK*.

To check the resolved firewall addresses after the update interval:

By default, the update interval is 60 seconds.

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Hover over the created addresses. The firewall address that the configured Fabric connectors resolved display.



To run diagnose commands:

Run the `show sdn connector status` command. Both Fabric connectors should appear with a status of connected.

Run the `diagnose debug application azd -1` command. The output should look like the following:

```
Level2-downstream-D # diagnose debug application azd -1
...
azd sdn connector azure1 start updating IP addresses
azd checking firewall address object azure-address-1, vd 0
IP address change, new list:
10.18.0.4
...
```

To restart the Azure Fabric connector daemon, run the `diagnose test application azd 99` command.

Adding VDOMs with FortiGate v-series

Each FortiGate-VM base license type allows a default number of VDOMs. This topic provides sample procedures to add VDOMs beyond the default number using separately purchased VDOM licenses.

This topic consists of the following steps:

1. Activate the FortiGate-VM with the base license.
2. Add more VDOMs to the FortiGate-VM.

To activate the FortiGate-VM with the base license:

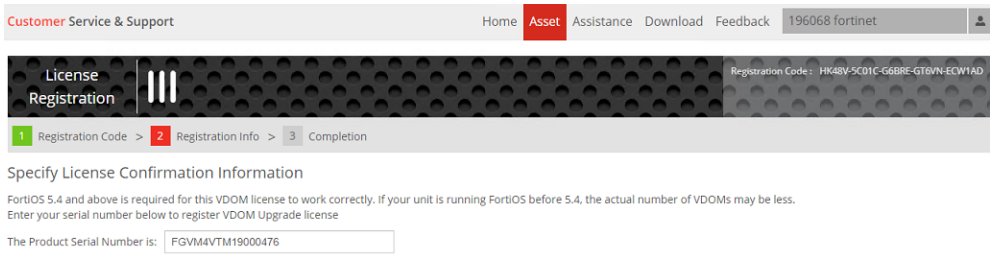
1. Purchase and register the FortiGate-VM base license in FortiCare:
   a. Purchase the FortiGate-VM base license from Fortinet or a Fortinet reseller.
   b. You receive a license certification with a registration code. Open the certification.
   c. Log in to Fortinet Customer Service & Support.
   d. Go to *Asset* > *Register/Activate* and enter the provided registration code.
   e. Follow the registration process. The serial number generates and displays on the *Registration Completion* page.
   f. Go to *Asset* > *Manage/View Products*. Click the serial number to download the license file.
2. Upload the FortiGate-VM base license file to FortiOS:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM GUI.
   b. In *Dashboard* > *Status*, in the *Virtual Machine* widget, click *FortiGate VM License*.
   c. Click the *Upload* button.
   d. Select the FortiGate-VM base license file, then click *OK*. The FortiGate-VM reboots after applying the base license.

3. Verify the FortiGate-VM base license status and VDOM information:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM GUI.
   b. In *Dashboard* > *Status*, in the *Virtual Machine* widget, ensure that there is a checkmark in front of the FortiGate-VM base license name. The checkmark indicates that the base license is valid.
   c. You can check VDOM information using the CLI. The following output shows that the maximum number of VDOMs is currently one. This is correct since the FortiGate-VM base license only supports the default root VDOM that the system uses.

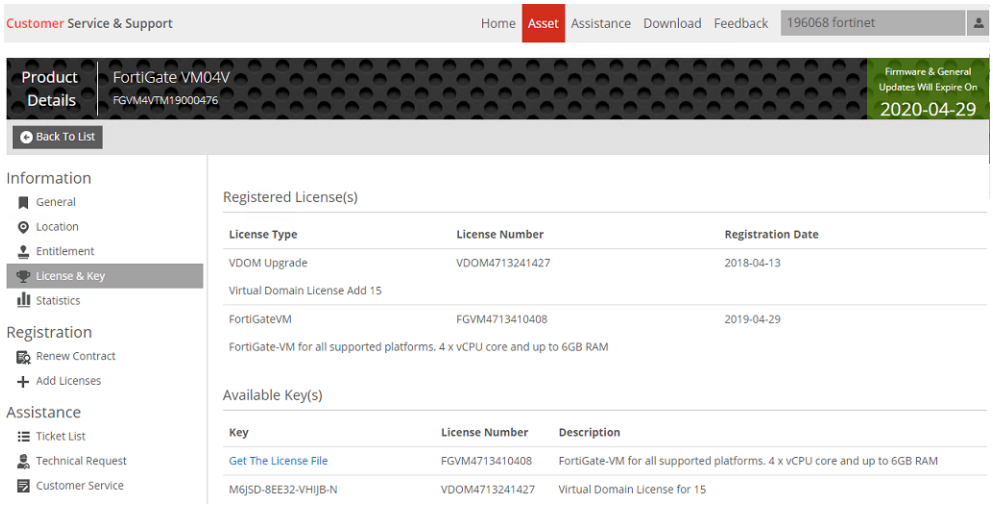
To add more VDOMs to the FortiGate-VM:

You can repeat this procedure multiple times to stack multiple VDOM licenses on the same FortiGate-VM.

1. Purchase and register the FortiGate-VM upgrade license in FortiCare. This example adds 15 VDOMs:
   a. Purchase the FortiGate-VM upgrade license from Fortinet or a Fortinet reseller.
   b. You receive a license certification with a registration code. Open the certification.
   c. Log in to Fortinet Customer Service & Support.
   d. Go to *Asset* > *Register/Activate* and enter the provided registration code.
   e. On the *Specify License Confirmation Information* screen, enter the FortiGate-VM serial number to apply the VDOM upgrade license to the FortiGate-VM. In this example, the FortiGate-VM serial number is *FGVM4VTM19000476*.



   f. Follow the registration process.
   g. Go to *Asset* > *Manage/View Products* > . Select the desired product, then click *License & Key*. The VDOM upgrade license displays under *Registered License(s)*, and a key for adding 15 VDOMs (in this example *M6JSD-8EE32-VHIJB-N*) displays under *Available Key(s)*.



2. Apply the FortiGate-VM upgrade license key to FortiOS:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM CLI in the local console or using SSH.
   b. Apply the VDOM upgrade license key:
   ```
   FGVM4VTM19000476 # execute upd-vd-license M6JSD-8EE32-VHIJB-N
   update vdom license succeeded
   ```
3. Verify the FortiGate-VM VDOM information:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM CLI in the local console or using SSH.
   b. Check VDOM information using the CLI. The following output shows that the maximum number of VDOMs is currently 15. When you add VDOMs for the first time on a FortiGate-VM v-series instance, FortiOS does not count the default VDOM, as the default VDOM is the so-called root VDOM that the system uses and FortiOS does not treat it as a countable VDOM in terms of VDOM addition. Therefore, as in this example, if your FortiGate-VM had the default VDOM configuration, then you add 15 VDOMs, FortiOS displays the maximum VDOM number as 15, not 16.

   ```
   # get system status
   Version: FortiGate-VM64-KVM v6.4.4,build1803,201209 (GA)
   Virus-DB: 82.00644(2020-12-18 12:20)
   Extended DB: 82.00644(2020-12-18 12:20)
   Extreme DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
   IPS-DB: 16.00982(2020-12-17 01:04)
   IPS-ETDB: 0.00000(2001-01-01 00:00)
   APP-DB: 16.00982(2020-12-17 01:04)
   INDUSTRIAL-DB: 6.00741(2015-12-01 02:30)
   Serial-Number: FGVM02TM20000000
   IPS Malicious URL Database: 2.00862(2020-12-18 06:12)
   License Status: Invalid Copy
   License Expiration Date: 2021-10-02
   VM Resources: 2 CPU/2 allowed, 2010 MB RAM
   Log hard disk: Available
   Hostname: FGDocs
   Private Encryption: Disable
   Operation Mode: NAT
   Current virtual domain: root
   Max number of virtual domains: 1
   Virtual domains status: 1 in NAT mode, 0 in TP mode
   Virtual domain configuration: disable
   FIPS-CC mode: disable
   Current HA mode: standalone
   Branch point: 1803
   Release Version Information: GA
   FortiOS x86-64: Yes
   System time: Fri Dec 25 13:24:20 2020
   ```

Terraform: FortiOS as a provider

Fortinet's Terraform support provides customers with more ways to efficiently deploy, manage, and automate security across physical FortiGate appliances and virtual environments. You can use Terraform to automate various IT infrastructure needs, thereby diminishing mistakes from repetitive manual configurations.

For example, if Fortinet is releasing a new FortiOS version, your organization may require you to test a new functionality to determine how it may impact the environment before globally deploying the new version. In this case, the ability to

rapidly stand up environments and test these functions prior to production environment integration provides a resource-efficient and fault-tolerant approach.

The following example demonstrates how to use the Terraform FortiOS provider to perform simple configuration changes on a FortiGate unit. It requires the following:

- FortiOS 6.0 or later
- FortiOS Provider: This example uses terraform-provider-fortios 1.0.0.
- Terraform: This example uses Terraform 0.11.14.
- REST API administrator created on the FortiGate with the API key

For more information, see the Terraform FortiOS Provider at https://www.terraform.io/docs/providers/fortios/index.html.

To create a REST API administrator:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
2. Enter the *Username* and, optionally, enter *Comments*.
3. Select an *Administrator Profile*.
4. We recommend that you create a new profile with minimal privileges for this terraform script:
   a. In the *Administrator Profile* drop down click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name for the profile.
   c. Configure the *Access Permissions*:
      - *None*: The REST API is not permitted access to the resource.
      - *Read*: The REST API can send read requests (`HTTP GET`) to the resource.
      - *Read/Write*: The REST API can send read and write requests (`HTTP GET`/`POST`/`PUT`/`DELETE`) to the resource.
   d. Click *OK*.
5. Enter *Trusted Hosts* to specify the devices that are allowed to access this FortiGate.
6. Click *OK*.
   An API key is displayed. This key is only shown once, so you must copy and store it securely.

To configure FortiGate with Terraform Provider module support:

1. Download the terraform-provider-fortios file to a directory on the management computer.
2. Create a new file with the .tf extension for configuring your FortiGate:
```
root@mail:/home/terraform# ls
terraform-provider-fortios_v1.0.0_x4 test.tf
```
3. Edit the test.tf Terraform configuration file:
   In this example, the FortiGate's IP address is 10.6.30.5, and the API user token is 17b**********63ck. Your provider information must also be changed.
```
# Configure the FortiOS Provider
provider "fortios" {
hostname = "10.6.30.5"
token = "17b**********63ck"
}
```
4. Create the resources for configuring your DNS object and adding a static route:
```
resource "fortios_system_setting_dns" "test1" {
primary = "172.16.95.16"
secondary = "8.8.8.8"
```

```
}
resource "fortios_networking_route_static" "test1" {
dst = "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway = "2.2.2.2"
blackhole = "disable"
distance = "22"
weight = "3"
priority = "3"
device = "port2"
comment = "Terraform test"
}
```

5. Save your Terraform configuration file.
6. In the terminal, enter `terraform init` to initialize the working directory.
   It reads the provider if the name follows the convention `terraform-provider-[name]`:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform init
Initializing the backend...
Terraform has been successfully initialized!
You may now begin working with Terraform. Try running "terraform plan" to see
any changes that are required for your infrastructure. All Terraform commands
should now work.
If you ever set or change modules or backend configuration for Terraform,
rerun this command to reinitialize your working directory. If you forget, other
commands will detect it and remind you to do so if necessary.
```

7. Run `terraform -v` to verify the version of loaded provider module:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform -v
Terraform v0. 11.14
+ provider.fortios v1.0.0
```

8. Enter `terraform plan` to parse the configuration file and read from the FortiGate configuration to see what Terraform changes:
   This example create a static route and updates the DNS address. You can see that Terraform reads the DNS addresses from the FortiGate and then lists them.

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform plan
Refreshing Terraform state in-memory prior to plan...
The refreshed state will be used to calculate this plan, but will not be
persisted to local or remote state storage.
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 2)
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 208.91.112.53)
------------------------------------------------------------------------
An execution plan has been generated and is shown below.
Resource actions are indicated with the following symbols:
+ create
~ update in-place
Terraform will perform the following actions:
+ fortios_networking_route_static.test1
id: <computed>
blackhole: "disable"
comment: "Terraform test"
device: "port2"
distance: "22"
dst: "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway: "2.2.2.2"
```

```
priority: "3"
weight: "3"
~ fortios_system_setting_dns.test1
primary: "208.91.112.53" => "172.16.95.16"
secondary: "208.91.112.22" => "8.8.8.8"
Plan: 1 to add, 1 to change, 0 to destroy.
------------------------------------------------------------------------
Note: You didn't specify an "-out" parameter to save this plan, so Terraform
can't guarantee that exactly these actions will be performed if
"terraform apply" is subsequently run.
```



If you are running terraform-provider-fortios 1.1.0, you may see the following error:

```
Error: Error getting CA Bundle, CA Bundle should be set when
     insecure is false.
```

In this case, add the following line to the FortiOS provider configuration in the test.tf file:

```
insecure = "true"
```

9. Enter `terraform apply` to continue the configuration:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform apply
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 208.91.112.53)
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 2)
An execution plan has been generated and is shown below.
Resource actions are indicated with the following symbols:
+ create
~ update in-place
Terraform will perform the following actions:
+ fortios_networking_route_static.test1
id: <computed>
blackhole: "disable"
comment: "Terraform test"
device: "port2"
distance: "22"
dst: "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway: "2.2.2.2"
priority: "3"
weight: "3"
~ fortios_system_setting_dns.test1
primary: "208.91.112.53" => "172.16.95.16"
secondary: "208.91.112.22" => "8.8.8.8"
Plan: 1 to add, 1 to change, 0 to destroy.
Do you want to perform these actions?
Terraform will perform the actions described above.
Only 'yes' will be accepted to approve.
Enter a value: yes
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Creating...
blackhole: "" => "disable"
comment: "" => "Terraform test"
device: "" => "port2"
distance: "" => "22"
dst: "" => "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway: "" => "2.2.2.2"
priority: "" => "3"
weight: "" => "3"
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifying... (ID: 208.91.112.53)
```

```
primary: "208.91.112.53" => "172.16.95.16"
secondary: "208.91.112.22" => "8.8.8.8"
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Creation complete after 0s (ID: 2)
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifications complete after 0s (ID: 172.16.95.16)
Apply complete! Resources: 1 added, 1 changed, 0 destroyed.
```

The FortiGate is now configured according to the configuration file.

10. To change or delete something in the future, edit the configuration file and then apply it again. In supported cases, it deletes, adds, or updates new entries as configured. For instance, in this example you can remove the static route and revert the DNS address to its original configuration by changing the .tf file:
    a. Edit the configuration file:

```
# Configure the FortiOS Provider
provider "fortios" {
hostname = "10.6.30.5"
token = "17b********************63ck"
}
resource "fortios_system_setting_dns" "test1" {
primary = "208.91.112.53"
secondary = "208.91.112.22"
}
#resource "fortios_networking_route_static" "test1" {
# dst = "110.2.2.122/32"
# gateway = "2.2.2.2"
# blackhole = "disable"
# distance = "22"
# weight = "3"
# priority = "3"
# device = "port2"
# comment = "Terraform test"
#}
```

    b. Entering `terraform apply` deletes the static route that is commented out of the configuration file, and reverts the DNS address to the old address:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform apply
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 172.16.95.16)
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 2)
An execution plan has been generated and is shown below.
Resource actions are indicated with the following symbols:
~ update in-place
- destroy
Terraform will perform the following actions:
- fortios_networking_route_static.test1
~ fortios_system_setting_dns.test1
primary: "172.16.95.16" => "208.91.112.53"
secondary: "8.8.8.8" => "208.91.112.22"
Plan: 0 to add, 1 to change, 1 to destroy.
Do you want to perform these actions?
Terraform will perform the actions described above.
Only 'yes' will be accepted to approve.
Enter a value: yes
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Destroying... (ID: 2)
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifying... (ID: 172.16.95.16)
primary: "172.16.95.16" => "208.91.112.53"
secondary: "8.8.8.8" => "208.91.112.22"
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Destruction complete after 0s
```

```
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifications complete after 0s (ID: 208.91.112.53)
Apply complete! Resources: 0 added, 1 changed, 1 destroyed.
```

Troubleshooting

Use the HTTPS daemon debug to begin troubleshooting why a configuration was not accepted:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application httpsd -1
```



The REST API 403 error means that your administrator profile does not have sufficient permissions.

The REST API 401 error means that you do not have the correct token or trusted host.

PF and VF SR-IOV driver and virtual SPU support

FortiGate guest VM supports Physical function (PF) and virtual function (VF) PCI passthrough and SR-IOV drivers.

PF provides the ability for PCI passthrough, but requires an entire Network Interface Card (NIC) for a VM. It can usually achieve greater performance than a VF-based SR-IOV. PF is also expensive. While VF allows multiple guests VMs to share one NIC, PF is allocated to one port on a VM.

The supported driver versions are:

Driver	Version	Hypervisor	PCI-Passthrough/SR-IOV	vSPU (In-guest DPDK)	Notes
ixgbe	5.6.5	ESXi, KVM	Yes	Yes	
Ixgbevf	4.6.3	ESXi, KVM	Yes		
i40e	2.10.19.82	ESXi, KVM	Yes	Yes	
i40evf	3.6.15	ESXi, KVM	Yes	Yes	Available in FortiOS 6.4.0 and earlier versions.
Iavf	3.7.61.20	ESXi, KVM	Yes	Yes	Replaces i40evf in FortiOS 6.4.1 and later versions. Supports Intel E810-C 100G adapters.
Mlx5	4.6-1.0.1	ESXi, KVM	Yes	Yes	Supports Nvidia ConnectX-5 and ConnectX-6 100G adapters.

Driver	Version	Hypervisor	PCI-Passthrough/SR-IOV	vSPU (In-guest DPDK)	Notes
Bcxt_en	1.10.1-216.0.416.1	ESXi, KVM	Yes	Yes	Available in FortiOS 6.4.3 and later versions. Supports Broadcom P2100G 100G adapters.
Vmxnet3	1.4.a.0-k-NAPI	ESXi		Yes	The combination of VMware ESXi and NSX-T does not support virtual SPU (vSPU).



Other hypervisors, such as Xen or Microsoft Hyper-V, may work with vSPU, although they are unverified.



All tools and software utilities for UEFI 1.X have been removed from 6.2.0 and later releases. Update to UEFI 2.x to use the UEFI tools or software utilities.

You perform the configuration to use PF or VF on the hypervisor, and do not configure it on the FortiGate.

To check what driver is being used on the FortiGate:

```
# diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic port2
Name:        port2
Driver:      i40e
Version:     2.4.10
Bus:         0000:03:00.0
Hwaddr:      3c:fd:fe:1e:98:02
Permanent Hwaddr:3c:fd:fe:1e:98:02
State:       up
Link:        up
Mtu:         1500
Supported:   auto 1000full 10000full
Advertised:  auto 1000full 10000full
Auto:        disabled
Rx packets:      0
Rx bytes:        0
Rx compressed:       0
...
```

Using OCI IMDSv2

OCI IMDSv2 offers increased security for accessing instance metadata compared to IMDSv1. IMDSv2 is used in OCI SDN connectors and on instance deployments with bootstrap metadata. When upgrading from previous FortiOS builds with legacy IMDSv1 endpoints, the endpoints will be updated to IMDSv2, and the same calls can be made.

The following use cases illustrate IMDSv2 support on the FortiGate-VM.

To configure the Oracle OCI instance to use IMDSv2:

1. In OCI, deploy an instance using IMDSv2 with bootstrap metadata. There are two methods to enable IMDSv2 :
   - Use the OCI command line to deploy an instance using `user-data`. This example uses a MIME file that contains the license and configuration, as well as a JSON file that specifies to disable V1 metadata.

     ```
     oci compute instance launch
     --availability-domain wwwl:US-ASHBURN-AD-1
     --compartment-id
     ocid1.tenancy.oc1..aaaaaaaaaaa3aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa7xxxxxxx54aaaaaa4xxxxxxxx55xxxa
     --display-name fos-byol-v6.4.6-b2290-emulated
     --image-id
     ocid1.image.oc1.iad.aaaaaaaa6xxx43xxxxxxxxx7aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa3xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
     --subnet-id
     ocid1.subnet.oc1.iad.aaaaaaaaxxxxxxxxx2xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx5aaa4xxxxxxxxxxx42aaa
     --shape VM.Standard1.4
     --assign-public-ip true
     --user-data-file /home/oci/userdata/mime.txt
     --ssh-authorized-keys-file /home/oci/userdata/myfirstkeypair.pub
     --instance-options file://home/oci/scripts/metadatav2.json

     root@mail:/home/oci/scripts# cat metadatav2.json
     {
       "areLegacyImdsEndpointsDisabled": true
     }
     ```

   - While the instance is running, edit the instance metadata service version in the GUI ,and change the allowed IMDS version to *VERSION 2 ONLY* (see Getting Instance Metadata in the OCI documentation).

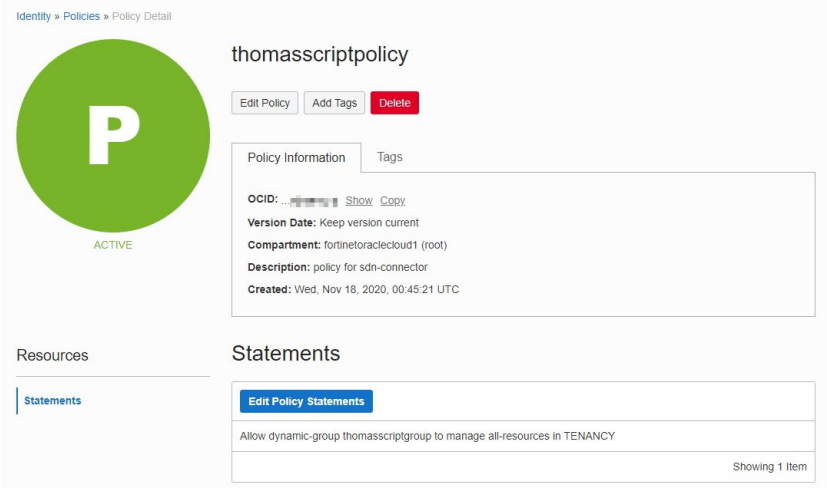
     

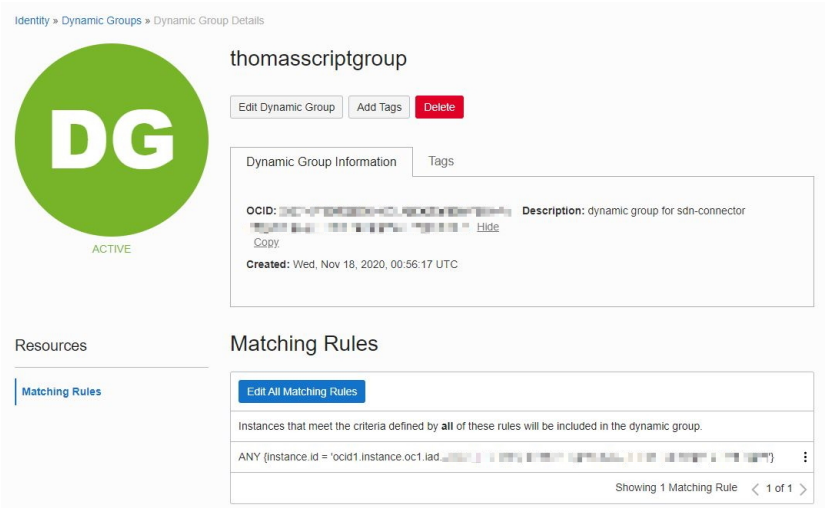
2. The FortiGate will use the metadata v2 endpoints to get the metadata bootstrap information. In FortiOS, verify this by running the following after bootup:

   ```
   # diagnose debug cloudinit show
   ```

To configure an SDN connector with meta-IAM enabled and firewall addresses to obtain dynamic addresses:

1. Configure an IAM policy and dynamic group (see How Policies Work and Managing Dynamic Groups in the OCI documentation).





2. In FortiOS, configure the OCI Fabric connector (see OCI SDN connector using certificates on page 340 for detailed instructions):
   a. Create the SDN connector.
   b. Verify that the OCI connector comes up (*Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* page indicates the status is up).
   c. Configure a dynamic firewall address with a filter.
   d. Verify the dynamic firewall address is resolved by the SDN connector.

To manually update the external IP:

```
# execute update-eip
instance: fos-byol-v6.4.6-b2290-emulated
    vnic0: fos-byol-v6.4.6-b2290-emulated
           10.0.0.58 (129.213.138.192)
port1: 10.0.0.58, eip: 129.213.138.192
EIP is updated successfully
```

To verify the OCI daemon debugs related to metadata:

```
# diagnose test application ocid 4
instance: fos-byol-v6.4.6-b2290-emulated
    vnic0: fos-byol-v6.4.6-b2290-emulated
           10.0.0.58

# diagnose test application ocid 5
Compartment
Id:ocid1.tenancy.oc1..aaaaaaaaaaa3aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa7xxxxxxx54aaaaaa4xxxxxxxx55xxxa
Instance Id:ocid1.instance.oc1.iad.axxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx4aaaaa5aaaaaaaaa4xxxxxxx2aaaaaaaa
Instance Name:fos-byol-v6.4.6-b2290-emulated
OCI Regarxiehlion:us-ashburn-1

# diagnose test application ocid 6
Instance Principal Token has been refreshed
```

FIPS cipher mode for AWS, Azure, OCI, and GCP FortiGate-VMs

AWS, Azure, OCI, and GCP FortiGate-VMs support FIPS cipher mode. You must remove all VPN configurations before you can enable FIPS CC mode.

FIPS cipher mode only allows a restricted set of ciphers for features that require encryption, such as SSH, IPsec and SSL VPN, and HTTPS. You cannot use insecure protocols such as Telnet, TFTP, and HTTP to access the FortiGate-VM.

You must perform a factory reset to disable `fips-ciphers` mode.

To enable fips-cipher mode:

```
config system fips-cc
    set status fips-ciphers
end
Warning: entering fips-ciphers mode. To exit this mode, factory reset is required.
Do you want to continue? (y/n) y
```

The following behavior occurs when you enable FIPS cipher mode:

- You can restore a license, image, configuration, and so on from an FTP server.
- The following options are available:

SSH algorithms	• aes128-gcm@openssh.com • aes256-gcm@openssh.com • hmac-sha2-256 • hmac-sha2-512
IKE/IPsec phase1 proposals	• aes128-sha256 • aes128-sha256 • aes128-sha384 • aes128-sha384 • aes128-sha512

	• aes128-sha512 • aes128gcm-prfsha256 • aes128gcm-prfsha256 • aes128gcm-prfsha384 • aes128gcm-prfsha384 • aes128gcm-prfsha512 • aes128gcm-prfsha512 • aes256-sha256 • aes256-sha256 • aes256-sha384 • aes256-sha384 • aes256-sha512 • aes256-sha512 • aes256gcm-prfsha256 • aes256gcm-prfsha256 • aes256gcm-prfsha384 • aes256gcm-prfsha384 • aes256gcm-prfsha512 • aes256gcm-prfsha512
IKE/IPsec phase2 proposals	• aes128-sha256 • aes128-sha256 • aes128-sha384 • aes128-sha384 • aes128-sha512 • aes128-sha512 • aes128gcm • aes128gcm • aes256-sha256 • aes256-sha256 • aes256-sha384 • aes256-sha384 • aes256-sha512 • aes256-sha512 • aes256gcm • aes256gcm
IKE/IPsec DH groups	• Default = 19, or any three from 14 - 21, 27 - 32
HTTPS for admin and SSL VPN (with RSA server certificate) TLS suites	PFS: • TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384 • ECDHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 • DHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 • TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256 • ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 • DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 Elliptic curves:

	• prime256v1 • secp384r1 • secp521r1 DH group: • RFC3526/Oakley group 14 (2048 bits)
HTTPS for admin and SSL VPN (with ECC server certificate) TLS suites	PFS: • TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384 • ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 • TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256 • ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 Elliptic curves: • prime256v1 • secp384r1 • secp521r1

- The FortiCare license is validated.
- FortiGuard databases and engines are updated.
- The DH-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 and DH-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 ciphers are not supported.

Troubleshooting

This section is intended for administrators with super_admin permissions who require assistance with basic and advanced troubleshooting. Admins with other types of permissions may not be able to perform all of the tasks in this section.

This section contains the following troubleshooting topics:

- Troubleshooting methodologies on page 2136
- Troubleshooting scenarios on page 2139
  - Checking the system date and time on page 2140
  - Checking the hardware connections on page 2141
  - Checking FortiOS network settings on page 2142
  - Troubleshooting CPU and network resources on page 2145
  - FortiGuard server settings on page 2179
  - Troubleshooting high CPU usage on page 2146
  - Checking the modem status on page 2150
  - Running ping and traceroute on page 2151
  - Checking the logs on page 2154
  - Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode on page 2155
  - Verifying the correct route is being used on page 2156
  - Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used on page 2156
  - Checking the bridging information in transparent mode on page 2157
  - Checking wireless information on page 2158
  - Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture) on page 2159
  - Debugging the packet flow on page 2162
  - Testing a proxy operation on page 2165
  - Displaying detail Hardware NIC information on page 2165
  - Performing a traffic trace on page 2167
  - Using a session table on page 2168
  - Finding object dependencies on page 2172
  - Diagnosing NPU-based interfaces on page 2173
  - Identifying the XAUI link used for a specific traffic stream on page 2173
  - Running the TAC report on page 2175
  - Other commands on page 2175
  - FortiGuard troubleshooting on page 2178
  - View open and in use ports on page 2181
- Additional resources on page 2182

Troubleshooting methodologies

The sections in this topic provide an overview of how to prepare to troubleshoot problems in FortiGate. They include verifiying your user permissions, establishing a baseline, defining the problem, and creating a plan.

Verify user permissions

Before you begin troubleshooting, verify the following:

- You have administrator privileges for the FortiGate.
- The FortiGate is integrated into your network.
- The operation mode is configured.
- The system time, DNS settings, administrator password, and network interfaces are configured.
- Firmware, FortiGuard AntiVirus, FortiGuard Application Control, and FortiGuard IPS are up to date.



If you are using a FortiGate that has virtual domains (VDOMs) enabled, you can often troubleshoot within your own VDOM. However, you should inform the super_admin for the FortiGate that you willl be performing troubleshooting tasks.

You may also need access to other networking equipment, such as switches, routers, and servers to carry out tests. If you do not have access to this equipment, contact your network administrator for assistance.

Establish a baseline

FortiGate operates at all layers of the OSI model. For this reason, troubleshooting can be complex. Establishing baseline parameters for your system before a problem occurs helps to reduce the complexity when you need to troubleshoot.

A best practice is to establish and record the normal operating status. Regular operation data shows trends, and allows you to see where changes occur when problems arise. You can gather this data by using logs and SNMP tools to monitor the system performance or by regularly running information gathering commands and saving the output.



You should back up your FortiOS configuration on a regular basis even when you are not troubleshooting. You can restore the backed up configuration as needed to save time recreating it from the factory default settings.

Use the following CLI commands to obtain normal operating data for a FortiGate:

`get system status`	Displays firmware versions and FortiGuard engine versions, and other system information.
`get system performance status`	Displays CPU and memory states, average network usage, average sessions and session setup rate, viruses caught, IPS attacks blocked, and uptime.
`get hardware memory`	Displays information about memory.

`get system session status`	Displays total number of sessions.
`get router info routing-table all`	Displays all the routes in the routing table, including their type, source, and other useful data.
`get ips session`	Displays memory used and maximum amount available to IPS as well as counts
`get webfilter ftgd-statistics`	Displays a list of FortiGuard related counts of status, errors, and other data.
`diagnose sys session list`	Displays the list of current detailed sessions.
`show sys dns`	Displays the configured DNS servers.
`diagnose sys ntp status`	Displays information about NTP servers.

You can run any commands that apply to your system for information gathering. For example, if you have active VPN connections, use the `get vpn` series of commands to get more information about them.

Use `execute tac report` to get an extensive snapshot of your system. This command runs many diagnostic commands for specific configurations. It also records the current state of each feature regardless of the features deployed on your FortiGate. If you need to troubleshoot later, you can run the same command again and compare the differences to identify any suspicious output.

Define the problem

The following questions are intended to compare the current behavior of the FortiGate with normal operations to help you define the problem. Be specific with your answers. After you define the problem, search for a solution in the troubleshooting scenarios section, and then create a plan to resolve it.

What is the problem?	The problem being observed may not be the actual problem. You should determine where the problem lies before starting to troubleshoot the FortiGate.
Was the device working before?	If the device never worked, it might be defective. For more information, see Troubleshooting your installation on page 67.
Can the problem be reproduced?	If the problem is intermittent, it may be dependent on system load. Intermittent problems are challenging to troubleshoot because they are difficult to reproduce.
What has changed?	Use the FortiGate event log to identify possible configuration changes. There may be changes in the operating environment. For example, there might be a gradual increase in load as more sites are forwarded through the firewall. If something has changed, roll back the change and assess the impact.
What is the scope of the problem?	After you isolate the problem, determine what applications, users, devices, and operating systems the problem affects. The following questions are intended to narrow the scope of the problem and identify what to check during troubleshooting. The more factors you can eliminate, the less you need to check. For this reason, be as specific and accurate as possible when gathering information. • What is not working?

	• Is more than one thing not working? • Is it partly working? If so, what parts are working? • Is it a connectivity issue for the entire device, or is there an application that isn't reaching the Internet? • Where did the problem occur? • When did the problem occur and to which users or groups of users? • What components are involved? • What applications are affected? • Can you use a packet sniffer to trace the problem? • Can you use system debugging or look in the session table to trace the problem? • Do any of the log files indicate a failure has occurred?

Create a troubleshooting plan

After you define the problem and its scope, develop a troubleshooting plan.

Create checklist	Make a list all the possible causes of the problem and how you can test for each cause. Create a checklist to keep track of what has been tried and what is left to test. Checklists are useful when more than one person is performing troubleshooting tasks.
Obtain the required equipment	Testing your solution may require additional networking equipment, computers, or other devices. Network administrators usually have additional networking equipment available to loan you, or a lab where you can bring the FortiGate unit to test. If you do not have access to equipment, check for shareware applications that can perform the same tasks. Often, there are software solutions you can use when hardware is too expensive.
Consult Fortinet troubleshooting resources	After the checklist is created, refer to the troubleshooting scenarios sections to assist with implementing your plan. See Troubleshooting scenarios on page 2139.
Gather information for technical support	If you still require technical assistance after the plan is implemented, be prepared to provide Fortinet technical support with following information: • Firmware build version (use the `get system status` command) • Network topology diagram • Recent configuration file • Recent debug log (optional) • Summary of troubleshooting steps you have taken and the results.  Do not provide the output from the `execute tac` report unless the support team requests it. The output from this command is very large and is not required in many cases.

Contact technical support	Before contacting technical support, ensure you have login access (preferably with full read/write privileges) to all networking devices that could be relevant to troubleshooting. If you are using VMs, be prepared to have someone who can log in to the virtual hosting platform in case it is necessary to check and possibly modify resource allocation. For information about contacting technical support, go to FortiCare Support Service page.

Troubleshooting scenarios

The following table is intended to help you diagnose common problems and provides links to the corresponding troubleshooting topics:

Problem	Probable cause	Recommended action
Hardware connections	• Are all of the cables and interfaces connected properly? • Is the LED for the interface green?	Checking the hardware connections on page 2141
FortiOS network settings	• If you are having problems connecting to the management interface, is your protocol enabled on the interface for administrative access? • Does the interface have an IP address?	Checking FortiOS network settings on page 2142
CPU and memory resources	• Is the CPU running at almost 100 percent usage? • Is your FortiGate running low on memory?	Troubleshooting CPU and network resources on page 2145
Modem status	• Is the modem connected? • Are there PPP issues?	Checking the modem status on page 2150
Ping and traceroute	Is the FortiGate experiencing complete packet loss?	Running ping and traceroute on page 2151
Logs	Do you need to identify a problem?	Checking the logs on page 2154
Contents of the routing table (in NAT mode)	• Are there routes in the routing table for default and static routes? • Do all connected subnets have a route in the routing table? • Does a route have a higher priority than it should?	Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode on page 2155
Traffic routes	Is the traffic routed correctly?	Verifying the correct route is being used on page 2156
Firewall policies	Is the correct firewall policy applied to the	Verifying the correct firewall policy is being

Problem	Probable cause	Recommended action
	expected traffic?	used on page 2156
Bridging information in transparent mode	Are you having problems in transparent mode?	Checking the bridging information in transparent mode on page 2157
Firewall session list	• Are there active firewall sessions?	Using a session table on page 2168
Wireless Network	Is the wireless network working properly?	Checking wireless information on page 2158
FortiGuard connectivity	Is the FortiGate communicating properly with FortiGuard?	Verifying connectivity to FortiGuard on page 2178
Sniffer trace	• Is traffic entering the FortiGate? Does the traffic arrive on the expected interface? • Is the ARP resolution correct for the next-hop destination? • Is the traffic exiting the FortiGate to the destination as expected? • Is the FortiGate sending traffic back to the originator?	Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture) on page 2159
Packet flow	Is traffic entering or leaving the FortiGate as expected?	Debugging the packet flow on page 2162

Checking the system date and time

The system date and time are important for FortiGuard services, logging events, and sending alerts. The wrong time makes the log entries confusing and difficult to use.

When possible, use Network Time Protocol (NTP) to set the date and time. This is an automatic method that does not require manual intervention. However, you must ensure that the port is allowed through the firewalls on your network. FortiToken synchronization requires NTP in many situations.

For information about setting the system date and time, see Setting the system time on page 888.

To view and configure the date and time in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*. The date and time are displayed in the *System Information* widget, next to *System Time*.
2. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
3. In the *System Time* section, select *NTP*, and then configure the *Time Zone*, and *Set Time* settings as required.

To view the date and time in the CLI:

```
execute date
execute time
```

To configure the date and time in the CLI:

Use the `set timezone ?` command to display a list of timezones and the integers that represent them.

```
config system global
   set timezone <integer>
end
config system ntp
   set type custom
      config ntpserver
         edit 1
            set server "ntp1.fortinet.net"
         next
         edit 2
            set server "ntp2.fortinet.net"
         next
      end
   set ntpsync enable
   set syncinterval 60
end
```

Checking the hardware connections

If traffic is not flowing from the FortiGate, there may be a problem with the hardware connection.

To check hardware connections:

1. Ensure the network cables are plugged into the interfaces.
2. Verify the LED connection lights for the network cables indicate there is a connection. The lights are typically green when there is a connection.
3. Change the cable when:
   - The cable or its connector are damaged.
   - You are unsure of the type or quality of the cable, such as straight through or crossover.
   - You see exposed wires at the connector.
4. Connect the FortiGate to different hardware.
5. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* to ensure the link status for the interface is set to *Up*.
   The link status is based on the physical connection and cannot be set in FortiOS.

To enable an interface in the GUI:

You should still perform basic software connectivity tests to ensure complete connectivity even if there was a problem with the hardware connection. The interface might also be disabled, or its *Status* might be set to *Down*. See Interfaces on page 402.

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select an interface, such as *Port1*, and click *Edit*.
3. In the *Miscellaneous* area, next to *Status*, click *Enabled*.
4. Click *OK*.

To enable an interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
```

```
    edit port1
      set status up
    next
end
```

Checking FortiOS network settings

Check the FortiOS network settings if you have problems connecting to the management interface. FortiOS network settings include, interface settings, DNS Settings, and DHCP settings.

Interface settings

If you can access the FortiGate with the management cable only, you can view the interface settings in the GUI.

To view the interface settings in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select an interface and click *Edit*.
3. Check the following interfaces to ensure they are not blocking traffic.

Setting	Description
Link Status	The status is *Up* when a valid cable is plugged in. The status is *Down* when an invalid cable is plugged in. The Link Status is shown physically by the connection LED for the interface. If the LED is green, the connection is good. If Link Status is *Down*, the interface does not work. Link status also appears in the *Network* > *Interfaces* page by default.
Addressing mode	Do not use *DHCP* if you do not have a DHCP server. You will not be able to log into an interface in DHCP mode as it will not have an IP address.
IP/Network Mask	An interface requires an IP address to connect to other devices. Ensure there is a valid IP address in this field. The one exception is when *DHCP* is enabled for this interface to get its IP address from an external DHCP server.
IPv6 address	The same protocol must be used by both ends to complete the connection. Ensure this interface and the remote connection are both using IPv4 or both are using IPv6 addresses.
Administrative access	If no protocols are selected, you will have to use the local management cable to connect to the unit. If you are using IPv6, configure the IPv6 administrative access protocols.
Status	Ensure the status is set to *Up* or the interface will not work.

To display the internal interface settings in the CLI:

```
FGT# show system interface <interface_name>
```

To view the list of possible interface settings:

```
config system interface
   edit <interface_name>
      get
end
```

DNS settings

To view DNS settings in the GUI:

Go to *Network* > *DNS*.

You can trace many networking problems back to DNS issues. Check the following items:

1. Are there values for both the *Primary DNS server* and *Secondary DNS server* fields.
2. Is the *Local Domain Name* correct?
3. Are you using IPv6 addressing? If so, are the IPv6 DNS settings correct?
4. Are you using Dynamic DNS (DDNS)? If so, is it using the correct server, credentials, and interface?
5. Can you contact both DNS servers to verify the servers are operational?
6. If an interface addressing mode is set to DHCP and is set to override the internal DNS, is that interface receiving a valid DNS entry from the DHCP server? Is it a reasonable address and can it be contacted to verify it is operational?
7. Are there any DENY security policies that need to allow DNS?
8. Can any internal device perform a successful traceroute to a location using the FQDN?

DHCP server settings

DHCP servers are common on internal and wireless networks. The DHCP server will cause problems if it is not configured correctly.

To view DHCP server settings in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select an interface, and click *Edit*.

Check the following items:

1. Is the DHCP server enabled?
2. Is the DHCP server entry set to *Relay*? If so, verify there is another DHCP server to which requests can be relayed. Otherwise, set it to *Server*.
3. Does the DHCP server use a valid IP address range? Are other devices using the addresses? If one or more devices are using IP addresses in this range, you can use the IP reservation feature to ensure the DHCP server does not use these addresses. See DHCP servers and relays on page 524
4. Is there a gateway entry? If not, add a gateway entry to ensure that the server's clients have a default route.
5. Is the system DNS setting being used? A best practice is to avoid confusion by using the system DNS whenever possible. However, you can specify up to three custom DNS servers, and you should use all three entries for redundancy.

There are some situations, such as a new wireless interface, or during the initial FortiGate configuration, where interfaces override the system DNS entries. When this happens, it often shows up as intermittent Internet connectivity.

To fix the problem, go to *Network* > *DNS*, and enable *Use FortiGuard Servers*.

Checking CPU and memory resources

Check the CPU and memory resources when the FortiGate is not working, the network is slow, or there is a reduced firewall session setup rate. All processes share the system resources in FortiOS, including CPU and memory.

To view system resources in the GUI:

Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.

The resource information is located in the *CPU* and *Memory* widgets. For information, see Dashboards and widgets on page 74.

To view system resources in the CLI:

```
get system performance status
```

Sample output:

```
FGT# get system performance status
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU0 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU1 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU2 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU3 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
Memory: 4050332k total, 527148k used (13%), 3381312k free (83%), 141872k freeable (3%)
Average network usage: 41 / 28 kbps in 1 minute, 54 / 44 kbps in 10 minutes, 42 / 34 kbps
     in 30 minutes
Average sessions: 33 sessions in 1 minute, 48 sessions in 10 minutes, 38 sessions in 30
     minutes
Average session setup rate: 0 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 0 sessions per second
     in last 10 minutes, 0 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
Virus caught: 0 total in 1 minute
IPS attacks blocked: 0 total in 1 minute
Uptime: 0 days, 22 hours, 59 minutes
```

The first line of the output shows the CPU usage by category:

```
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
```

The second line of the output shows the memory usage:

```
Memory: 4050332k total, 527148k used (13%), 3381312k free (83%), 141872k freeable (3%)
```

Memory usage should not exceed 90%. Using too much memory prevents some processes from functioning properly. For example, if the system is running low on memory, antivirus scanning enters into *failopen* mode where it drops connections or bypasses the antivirus system.

Other lines of output, such as `average network usage`, `average session setup rate`, `viruses caught`, and `IPS attacks blocked`, help determine why system resource usage is high.

For example:

- A high `average network usage` may indicate high traffic processing on the FortiGate,
- A very low or zero, `average session setup rate` may indicate the proxy is overloaded and unable to do its job.

Troubleshooting CPU and network resources

FortiGate has stopped working

If the FortiGate has stopped working, the first line of the output will look similar to this:

```
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle
```

Network is slow

If your network is running slow, the first line of the output will look similar to this:

```
CPU states: 1% user 98% system 0% nice 1% idle
```

This example shows that all of the CPU is being used by system processes, and the FortiGate is overloaded. When overloading occurs, it is possible a process such as `scanunitid` is using all the resources to scan traffic. In this case you need to reduce the amount of traffic being scanned by blocking unwanted protocols, configuring more security policies to limit scanning to certain protocols, or similar actions.

It is also possible a hacker has accessed your network and is overloading it with malicious activity, such as running a spam server or using zombie PCs to attack other networks on the Internet.

You can use the following command to investigate the problem with the CPU:

```
get system performance top
```

This command shows all of the top processes that are running on the FortiGate and their CPU usage. The process names are on the left. If a process is using most of the CPU cycles, investigate it to determine whether the activity is normal.

Reduced firewall session setup rate

A reduced firewall session setup rate can be caused by a lack of system resources on the FortiGate, or reaching the session count limit for a VDOM.



As a best practice, administrators should record the session setup rate during normal operation to establish a baseline to help define a problem when your are troubleshooting.

The session setup rate appears in the `average sessions` section of the output.

A reduced firewall session setup rate will look similar to this:

```
Average sessions: 80 sessions in 1 minute, 30 sessions in 10 minutes, 42 sessions in 30
     minutes
Average session setup rate: 3 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 0 sessions per second in
     last 10 minutes, 0 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
```

In the example above, there were 80 sessions in 1 minute, or an average of 3 sessions per second.

The values for `10 minutes` and `30 minutes` allow you to take a longer average for a more reliable value if your FortiGate is working at maximum capacity. The smallest FortiGate can have 1,000 sessions established per second across the unit.



The session setup rate is a global command. If you have multiple VDOMs configured with many sessions in each VDOM, the session setup rate per VDOM will be slower than if there are no VDOMs configured.

High memory usage

As with any system, a FortiGate has limited hardware resources, such as memory, and all processes running on the FortiGate share the memory. Each process uses more or less memory, depending on its workload. For example, a process usually uses more memory in high traffic situations. If some processes use all of the available memory, other processes will not be able to run.

When high memory usage occurs, the services may freeze up, connections may be lost, or new connections may be refused.

If you see high memory usage in the *Memory* widget, the FotiGate may be handling high traffic volumes. Alternatively, the FortiGate may have problems with connection pool limits that are affecting a single proxy. If the FortiGate receives large volumes of traffic on a specific proxy, the unit may exceed the connection pool limit. If the number of free connections within a proxy connection pool reaches zero, issues may occur.

To view current memory usage information in the CLI:

```
diagnose hardware sysinfo memory
```

Sample output:

```
total: used: free: shared: buffers: cached: shm:
Mem: 2074185728 756936704 1317249024 0 20701184 194555904 161046528
Swap:       0       0       0
MemTotal:   2025572 kB
MemFree:    1286376 kB
MemShared:        0 kB
Buffers:      20216 kB
Cached:      189996 kB
SwapCached:       0 kB
Active:       56644 kB
Inactive:    153648 kB
HighTotal:        0 kB
HighFree:         0 kB
LowTotal:   2025572 kB
LowFree:    1286376 kB
SwapTotal:        0 kB
SwapFree:         0 kB
```

Troubleshooting high CPU usage

Connection-related problems may occur when FortiGate's CPU resources are over extended. This occurs when you deploy too many FortiOS features at the same time.

Examples of CPU intensive features:

- VPN high-level encryption
- Intensive scanning of all traffic
- Logging all traffic and packets
- Dashboard widgets that frequently perform data updates

For information on customizing the CPU use threshold, see Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 293.

Determining the current level of CPU usage

You can view CPU usage levels in the GUI or CLI. For precise usage values for both overall usage and specific processes, use the CLI.

To view CPU usage in the GUI:

Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*. Real-time CPU usage information is located in the *CPU* widget.

To view CPU usage in the CLI:

- Show top processes information:
  ```
  diagnose sys top
  ```
- Show top threads information:
  ```
  diagnose sys top-all
  ```

Sample output:

```
Run Time: 86 days, 0 hours and 10 minutes
0U, 0N, 0S, 100I, 0WA, 0HI, 0SI, 0ST; 3040T, 2437F
     bcm.user 93 S < 3.1 0.4
     httpsd 18922 S 1.5 0.5
     httpsd 19150 S 0.3 0.5
     newcli 20195 R 0.1 0.1
     cmdbsvr 115 S 0.0 0.8
     pyfcgid 20107 S 0.0 0.6
     forticron 146 S 0.0 0.5
     httpsd 139 S 0.0 0.5
     cw_acd 166 S 0.0 0.5
     miglogd 136 S 0.0 0.5
     pyfcgid 20110 S 0.0 0.4
     pyfcgid 20111 S 0.0 0.4
     pyfcgid 20109 S 0.0 0.4
     httpsd 20192 S 0.0 0.4
     miglogd 174 S 0.0 0.4
     miglogd 175 S 0.0 0.4
     fgfmd 165 S 0.0 0.3
     newcli 20191 S 0.0 0.3
     initXXXXXXXXXXX 1 S 0.0 0.3
     httpsd 184 s 0.0 0.3
```

The following table explains the codes in the second line of the output:

Code	Description
U	Percentage of user space applications that are currently using the CPU
N	Percentage of time that the CPU spent on low priority processes since the last shutdown
S	Percentage of system processes (or kernel processes) that are using the CPU
I	Percentage of idle CPU resources
WA	Percentage of time that the CPU spent waiting on IO peripherals since the last shutdown
HI	Percentage of time that the CPU spent handling hardware interrupt routines since the last shutdown
SI	Percentage of time that the CPU spent handling software interrupt routines since the last shutdown
ST	Steal time: Percentage of time a virtual CPU waits for the physical CPU when the hypervisor is servicing another virtual processor
T	Total FortiOS system memory in MB
F	Free memory in MB

Each additional line of the command output displays information specific to processes or threads that are running on the FortiGate unit. For example, the sixth line of the output is: `newcli 20195 R 0.1 0.1`

The following table describes the data in the sixth line of the output:

Item	Description
newcli	The process (or thread) name. Duplicate process or thread names indicate that separate instances of that process or thread are running.
20195	The process or thread ID, which can be any number.
R	Current state of the process or thread. The process or thread state can be: • R - running • S - sleep • Z - zombie • D- disk sleep
0.1	The percentage of CPU capacity that the process or thread is using. CPU usage can range from 0.0 for a process or thread that is sleeping to higher values for a process or thread that's taking a lot of CPU time.
0.1	The amount of memory that the process or thread is using. Memory usage can range from 0.1 to 5.5 and higher.

You can use the following single-key commands when running `diagnose sys top` or `diagnose sys top-all`:

- `q` to quit and return to the normal CLI prompt.
- `p` to sort the processes by the amount of CPU that the processes are using.
- `m` to sort the processes by the amount of memory that the processes are using.

The output only displays the top processes or threads that are running. For example, if 20 are listed, they are the top 20 currently running, sorted by either CPU or memory usage. You can configure the number of processes or threads displayed, using the following CLI commands:

```
diagnose sys top <integer_seconds> <integer_maximum_lines>
diagnose sys top-all <integer_seconds> <integer_maximum_lines>
```

Where:

- `<integer_seconds>` is the delay in seconds (default is 5)
- `<integer_maximum_lines>` is the maximum number of lines (or processes) to list (default is 20)

Determining which features are using the most CPU resources

You can use the CLI to view the top few processes that are currently running and using the most CPU resources.

To view processes using the most CPU resources:

```
get system performance top
```

The entries at the top are using the most CPU resources. The second column from the right shows CPU usage by percentage. Note which processes are using the most resources and try to reduce their CPU load.

Processes you will see include:

- `ipsengine`: the IPS engine that scans traffic for intrusions
- `scanunitd`: antivirus scanner
- `httpsd`: secure HTTP
- `iked`: internet key exchange (IKE) in use with IPsec VPN tunnels
- `newcli`: active whenever you're accessing the CLI
- `sshd`: there are active secure socket connections
- `cmdbsrv`: the command database server application

Go to the features that are at the top of the list and look for evidence of CPU overuse. Generally, the monitor for a feature is a good place to start.

Checking for unnecessary CPU “wasters”

These are some best practices that will reduce your CPU usage, even if the FortiGate is not experiencing high CPU usage. Note that if the following information instructs you to turn off a feature that you require, disregard that part of the instructions.

- Use hardware acceleration wherever possible to offload tasks from the CPU. Offloading tasks, such as encryption, frees up the CPU for other tasks.
- Schedule antivirus, IPS, and firmware updates during off-peak hours. These updates do not usually consume CPU resources but they can disrupt normal operation.
- Check the log levels and which events are being logged. This is the severity of the messages that are recorded. Consider going up one level to reduce the amount of logging. Also, if there are events you do not need to monitor, remove them from the list.
- Log to FortiCloud instead of logging to memory or disk. Logging to memory quickly uses up resources and logging to local disk impacts overall performance and reduces the lifetime of the unit.
  Fortinet recommends logging to FortiCloud to avoid using too much CPU.

- If the disk is almost full, transfer the logs or data off the disk to free up space. When a disk is almost full it consumes a lot of resources to find free space and organize the files.
- If packet logging is enabled on the FortiGate, consider disabling it. When packet logging is enabled, it records every packet that comes through that policy.
- Halt all sniffers and traces.
- Ensure the FortiGate isn't scanning traffic twice. Traffic does not need to be rescanned if it enters the FortiGate on one interface, goes out another, and then comes back in again. Doing so is a waste of resources. However, ensure that traffic truly is being scanned once.
- Reduce the session timers to close unused sessions faster. Enter the following CLI commands, which reduce the default values. Note that, by default, the system adds 10 seconds to `tcp-timewait`.

```
config system global
   set tcp-halfclose-timer 30
   set tcp-halfopen-timer 30
   set tcp-timewait-timer 0
   set udp-idle-timer 60
end
```

- Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*, and enable only features that you need.

SNMP monitoring

When CPU usage is under control, use SNMP to monitor CPU usage. Alternatively, use logging to record CPU and memory usage every 5 minutes.

Once the system is back to normal, you should set up a warning system that sends alerts when CPU resources are used excessively. A common method to do this is using SNMP. SNMP monitors many values in FortiOS and allows you to set high water marks that generate events. You can run an application on your computer to watch for and record these events.

To enable SNMP:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Configure an SNMP community.

See SNMP on page 1015.



You can use the *System Resources* widget to record CPU usage if SNMP is too complicated. However, the widget only records problems as they happen and will not send you alerts for problems.

Checking the modem status

You can use the CLI to troubleshoot a modem that is not working properly, or troubleshoot a FortiGate that does not detect the modem.

To diagnose modem issues in the CLI:

```
diagnose sys modem {cmd | com | detect | history | external-modem | query| reset}
```

You should always run the following command after you connect a USB modem to FortiGate:

```
diagnose sys modem detect
```

Use the following command to view the modem's configuration, vendor and custom product identification number:

```
get system modem
```

Use the following commands to resolve connectivity issues:

- `diagnose debug enable`: Activates the debug on the console
- `diagnose debug application modemd`: Dumps communication between the modem and the unit.
- `diagnose debug application ppp`: Dumps the PPP negotiating messages.
- `execute modem dial`: Displays modem debug output.

The modem diagnose output should not contain errors when initializing. You should also verify the number used to dial into your ISP.

Running ping and traceroute

Ping and traceroute are useful tools in network troubleshooting. Alone, either tool can determine network connectivity between two points. However, ping can be used to generate simple network traffic that you can view using `diagnose` commands in FortiGate. This combination can be very powerful when you are trying to locate network problems.

Ping and traceroute can also tell you if your computer or network device has access to a domain name server (DNS). Both tools can use IP addresses or device domain names to determine why particular services, such as email or web browsing, may not work properly.



If ping does not work, it may be disabled on at least one of the interface settings and security policies for that interface.

Both ping and traceroute require particular ports to be open on firewalls to function. Since you typically use these tools to troubleshoot, you can allow them in the security policies and on interfaces only when you need them. Otherwise, keep the ports disabled for added security.

Ping

The ping command sends a very small packet to a destination, and waits for a response. The response has a timer that expires when the destination is unreachable.

Ping is part of layer 3 on the OSI Networking Model. Ping sends Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) “echo request” packets to the destination, and listens for “echo response” packets in reply. However, many public networks block ICMP packets because ping can be used in a denial of service (DoS) attack (such as Ping of Death or a smurf attack), or by an attacker to find active locations on the network. By default, FortiGate units have ping enabled while broadcast-forward is disabled on the external interface.

What ping can tell you

Beyond the basic connectivity information, ping can tell you the amount of packet loss (if any), how long it takes the packet to make the round trip, and the variation in that time from packet to packet.

If packet loss is detected, you should investigate the following:

- Possible ECMP, split horizon, or network loops.
- Cabling, to ensure there are no loose connections.

- Verify which security policy was used. To do this:
  Go *to Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and view the packet count column.

If there is total packet loss, you should investigate the following:

1. Ensure cabling is correct, and all equipment between the two locations is accounted for.
2. Ensure all IP addresses and routing information along the route is configured as expected.
3. Ensure all firewalls, including FortiGate security policies allow PING to pass through.

How to use ping

Ping syntax is the same for nearly every type of system on a network.

To ping from a FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *Dashboad*, and connect to the CLI through either telnet or the CLI widget.
2. Enter `execute ping 10.11.101.101` to send 5 ping packets to the destination IP address. There are no options for this command.

```
Head_Office_620b # execute ping 10.11.101.101
PING 10.11.101.101 (10.11.101.101): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.3 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms

--- 10.11.101.101 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.2/0.2/0.3 ms
```

To ping from a Microsoft Windows PC:

1. Open a command window.
2. Enter `ping 10.11.101.100` to ping the default internal interface of the FortiGate with four packets.
   Other options include:
   - `-t` to send packets until you press `Ctrl+C`
   - `-a` to resolve addresses to domain names where possible
   - `-n X` to send X ping packets and stop

```
C:\>ping 10.11.101.101

Pinging 10.11.101.101 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=255
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255

Ping statistics for 10.11.101.101:
Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 10ms, Average = 3ms
```

To ping from a Linux PC:

1. Go to a shell prompt.
2. Enter "`ping 10.11.101.101`".

Traceroute

Where ping will only tell you if it reached its destination and returned successfully, traceroute shows each step of the journey to its destination and how long each step takes. If ping finds an outage between two points, you can use traceroute to locate exactly where the problem is.

Traceroute works by sending ICMP packets to test each hop along the route. It sends three packets, and then increases the time to live (TTL) setting by one each time. This effectively allows the packets to go one hop farther along the route. This is why most traceroute commands display their maximum hop count before they start tracing the route, which is the maximum number of steps it takes before it declares the destination unreachable. Also, the TTL setting may result in steps along the route timing out due to slow responses. There are many possible reasons for this to occur.

By default, traceroute uses UDP datagrams with destination ports numbered from 33434 to 33534. The traceroute utility may also offer the option to select use of ICMP echo request (type 8) instead, which the Windows tracert utility uses. If you must, allow both protocols inbound through the FortiGate security policies (UDP with ports from 33434 to 33534 and ICMP type 8).

To track traceroute packets in the GUI:

Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and view the packet count column.

This allows you to verify the connection and confirm which security policy the traceroute packets are using.

What traceroute can tell you

Both ping and traceroute verify connectivity between two points. However, only traceroute shows you each step in the connection path. Also, ping and traceroute use different protocols and ports, so one may succeed where the other fails.

You can verify your DNS connection using traceroute. If you enter an FQDN instead of an IP address for the traceroute, DNS tries to resolve that domain name. If the name isn't resolved, you have DNS issues.

Using traceroute

The traceroute command varies slightly between operating systems. In Microsoft Windows, the command name is shortened to "`tracert`". Also, your output lists different domain names and IP addresses along your route.

To use traceroute on a Microsoft Windows PC:

1. Open a command window.
2. Enter `tracert fortinet.com` to trace the route from the PC to the Fortinet web site.

```
C:\>tracert fortinet.com
Tracing route to fortinet.com [208.70.202.225]
over a maximum of 30 hops:
1 <1 ms <1 ms <1 ms 172.20.120.2
2 66 ms 24 ms 31 ms 209-87-254-xxx.storm.ca [209.87.254.221]
3 52 ms 22 ms 18 ms core-2-g0-0-1104.storm.ca [209.87.239.129]
4 43 ms 36 ms 27 ms core-3-g0-0-1185.storm.ca [209.87.239.222]
5 46 ms 21 ms 16 ms te3-x.1156.mpd01.cogentco.com [38.104.158.69]
```

```
6 25 ms 45 ms 53 ms te8-7.mpd01.cogentco.com [154.54.27.249]
7 89 ms 70 ms 36 ms te3-x.mpd01.cogentco.com [154.54.6.206]
8 55 ms 77 ms 58 ms sl-st30-chi-.sprintlink.net [144.232.9.69]
9 53 ms 58 ms 46 ms sl-0-3-3-x.sprintlink.net [144.232.19.181]
10 82 ms 90 ms 75 ms sl-x-12-0-1.sprintlink.net [144.232.20.61]
11 122 ms 123 ms 132 ms sl-0-x-0-3.sprintlink.net [144.232.18.150]
12 129 ms 119 ms 139 ms 144.232.20.7
13 172 ms 164 ms 243 ms sl-321313-0.sprintlink.net [144.223.243.58]
14 99 ms 94 ms 93 ms 203.78.181.18
15 108 ms 102 ms 89 ms 203.78.176.2
16 98 ms 95 ms 97 ms 208.70.202.225
```

The first column on the left is the hop count, which can't exceed 30 hops. When that number is reached, the traceroute ends.

The second, third, and fourth columns display how much time each of the three packets takes to reach this stage of the route. These values are in milliseconds and normally vary quite a bit. Typically a value of `<1ms` indicates a local connection.

The fifth column (farthest to the right) shows the domain name of the device and its IP address, or possibly only the IP address.

To perform a traceroute on a Linux PC:

1. Go to a command line prompt.
2. Enter "`traceroute fortinet.com`".
   The Linux traceroute output is very similar to the Windows `tracert` output.

To trace a route from a FortiGate to a destination IP address in the CLI:

```
# execute traceroute www.fortinet.com

traceroute to www.fortinet.com (66.171.121.34), 32 hops max, 84 byte packets
1 172.20.120.2 0.637 ms 0.653 ms 0.279 ms
2 209.87.254.221 <static-209-87-254-221.storm.ca> 2.448 ms 2.519 ms 2.458 ms
3 209.87.239.129 <core-2-g0-2.storm.ca> 2.917 ms 2.828 ms 9.324 ms
4 209.87.239.199 <core-3-bdi1739.storm.ca> 13.248 ms 12.401 ms 13.009 ms
5 216.66.41.113 <v502.core1.tor1.he.net> 17.181 ms 12.422 ms 12.268 ms
6 184.105.80.9 <100ge1-2.core1.nyc4.he.net> 21.355 ms 21.518 ms 21.597 ms
7 198.32.118.41 <ny-paix-gni.twgate.net> 83.297 ms 84.416 ms 83.782 ms
8 203.160.228.217 <217-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.579 ms 82.187 ms 82.066 ms
9 203.160.228.229 <229-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.055 ms 82.455 ms 81.808 ms
10 203.78.181.2 82.262 ms 81.572 ms 82.015 ms
11 203.78.186.70 83.283 ms 83.243 ms 83.293 ms
12 66.171.127.177 84.030 ms 84.229 ms 83.550 ms
13 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 84.023 ms 83.903 ms 84.032 ms
14 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 83.874 ms 84.084 ms 83.810 ms
```

Checking the logs

A log message records the traffic passing through FortiGate to your network and the action FortiGate takes when it scans the traffic. You should log as much information as possible when you first configure FortiOS. If FortiGate logs are too large, you can turn off or scale back the logging for features that are not in use.

It is difficult to troubleshoot logs without a baseline. Before you can determine if the logs indicate a problem, you need to know what logs result from normal operation.

When troubleshooting with log files

- Compare current logs to a recorded baseline of normal operation.
- If you need to, increase the level of logging (such as from Warning to Information) to obtain more information. When increasing logging levels, ensure that you configure email alerts and select both disk usage and log quota. This ensures that you will be notified if the increase in logging causes problems.

To configure the log settings in the GUI:

Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.

Determine the activities that generate the most log entries:

- Check all logs to ensure important information is not overlooked.
- Filter or order log entries based on different fields, such as level, service, or IP address, to look for patterns that may indicate a specific problem, such as frequent blocked connections on a specific port for all IP addresses.

Logs can help identify and locate any problems, but they do not solve them. The purpose of logs is to speed up your problem solving and save you time and effort.

For more information about logging and log reports, see Log and Report on page 2023.

Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode

Verify the contents of the routing table when a FortiGate has limited or no connectivity.

The routing table stores the routes currently in use for both static and dynamic protocols. Storing a route in the routing table saves time and resources performing a lookup. To ensure the most recently used routes remain in the table, old routes are bumped to make room for new ones. You cannot perform this task when FortiGate is in transparent mode.

If FortiGate is running in NAT mode, verify that all desired routes are in the routing table, including local subnets, default routes, specific static routes, and dynamic routing protocols.

To view the routing table in the CLI:

```
get router info routing-table all
```

Sample output:

```
FGT# get router info routing-table all
Codes:
   K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
   O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
   N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
   E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
   i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
   * - candidate default
S* 0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.20.120.2, wan1
C 10.31.101.0/24 is directly connected, internal
C 172.20.120.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
```

Verifying the correct route is being used

Run a trace route from a machine in the local area network (LAN) to ensure traffic is flowing as expected through the correct route when there is more than one default route.

In the following example output:

- The first hop contains the IP address `10.10.1.99`, which is the internal interface of the FortiGate.
- The second hop contains the IP address `172.20.120.2`, to which the wan1 interface of the FortiGate is connected.

This means the route through the wan1 interface is being used for this traffic.

```
C:\>tracert www.fortinet.com
Tracing route to www.fortinet.com [66.171.121.34]
over a maximum of 30 hops:
1 <1 ms <1 ms <1 ms 10.10.1.99
2 1 ms <1 ms <1 ms 172.20.120.2
3 3 ms 3 ms 3 ms static-209-87-254-221.storm.ca [209.87.254.221]
4 3 ms 3 ms 3 ms core-2-g0-2.storm.ca [209.87.239.129]
5 13 ms 13 ms 13 ms core-3-bdi1739.storm.ca [209.87.239.199]
6 12 ms 19 ms 11 ms v502.core1.tor1.he.net [216.66.41.113]
7 22 ms 22 ms 21 ms 100ge1-2.core1.nyc4.he.net [184.105.80.9]
8 84 ms 84 ms 84 ms ny-paix-gni.twgate.net [198.32.118.41]
9 82 ms 84 ms 82 ms 217-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net [203.160.22
8.217]
10 82 ms 81 ms 82 ms 229-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net [203.160.22
8.229]
11 82 ms 82 ms 82 ms 203.78.181.2
12 84 ms 83 ms 83 ms 203.78.186.70
13 84 ms * 85 ms 66.171.127.177
14 84 ms 84 ms 84 ms fortinet.com [66.171.121.34]
15 84 ms 84 ms 83 ms fortinet.com [66.171.121.34]
```

You can also see the route taken for each session by debugging the packet flow in the CLI. For more information, see Debugging the packet flow on page 2162.

Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used

If you have more than one firewall policy, you can check which policy is being used in the *Policy & Objects* module in the GUI.

To verify the firewall policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Look in the *Count* column to see which policy is being used. The count must show traffic increasing.

Debugging the packet flow in the CLI shows the policy ID that's allowing the traffic. For information, see Debugging the packet flow on page 2162.

Checking the bridging information in transparent mode

Checking the bridging information is useful when you are experiencing connectivity problems. When FortiGate is set to transparent mode, it acts like a bridge and sends all incoming traffic out on the other interfaces. Each bridge is a link between interfaces.

When traffic is flowing between the interfaces, you can see the bridges listed in the CLI. If no bridges are listed, this is the likely cause of the connectivity issue. When investigating bridging information, check for the MAC address of the interface or device in question.

How to check the bridging information

To view the list of bridge instances in the CLI:

```
diagnose netlink brctl list
```

Sample output:

```
#diagnose netlink brctl list
list bridge information
1. root.b fdb: size=256 used=6 num=7 depth=2 simple=no
Total 1 bridges
```

How to display forwarding domain information

You can use forwarding domains, or collision domains, in routing to limit where packets are forwarded on the network. Layer 2 broadcasts are limited to the same group. By default, all interfaces are in group 0. For example, if the FortiGate has 12 interfaces, only two may be in the same forwarding domain, which limits packets that are broadcast to those two interfaces. This reduces traffic on the rest of the network.

Collision domains prevent the forwarding of ARP packets to all VLANs on an interface. Without collision domains, duplicate MAC addresses on VLANs may cause ARP packets to be duplicated. Duplicate ARP packets can cause some switches to reset. It's important to know what interfaces are part of which forwarding domains because this determines which interfaces can communicate with each other.

To manually configure forwarding domains in transparent mode in the CLI:

```
config system interface
   edit <interface_name>
      set forward-domain <integer>
   end
```

To display the forward domains information in the CLI:

```
diagnose netlink brctl domain <name> <id>
```

Where `<name>` is the name of the forwarding domain to display and `<id>` is the domain ID.

Sample output:

```
diagnose netlink brctl domain ione 101
show bridge root.b ione forward domain.
```

```
id=101 dev=trunk_1 6
```

To list the existing bridge MAC table in the CLI:

```
diagnose netlink brctl name host <name>
```

Sample output:

```
show bridge control interface root.b host.
fdb: size=256, used=6, num=7, depth=2, simple=no
Bridge root.b host table
```

port no	device	devname	mac addr	ttl	attributes
2	7	wan2	02:09:0f:78:69:00	0	Local Static
5	6	vlan_1	02:09:0f:78:69:01	0	Local Static
3	8	dmz	02:09:0f:78:69:01	0	Local Static
4	9	internal	02:09:0f:78:69:02	0	Local Static
3	8	dmz	00:80:c8:39:87:5a	194	
4	9	internal	02:09:0f:78:67:68	8	
1	3	wan1	00:09:0f:78:69:fe	0	Local Static

To list the existing bridge port list in the CLI:

```
diagnose netlink brctl name port <name>
```

Sample output:

```
show bridge root.b data port.
trunk_1 peer_dev=0
internal peer_dev=0
dmz peer_dev=0
wan2 peer_dev=0
wan1 peer_dev=0
```

Checking wireless information

Check wireless connections, stations, and interfaces when the problem is not caused by a physical interface.

Troubleshooting station connection issues

To check if a station entry is created on access control in the CLI:

```
FG600B3909600253 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta
* vf=0 wtp=70 rId=2 wlan=open ip=0.0.0.0 mac=00:09:0f:db:c4:03 rssi=0 idle=148 bw=0 use=2
vf=0 wtp=70 rId=2 wlan=open ip=172.30.32.122 mac=00:25:9c:e0:47:88 rssi=-40 idle=0 bw=9
     use=2
```

Enabling diagnostics for a specific station

This example uses the station MAC address to find where it is failing:

```
FG600B3909600253 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac sta_filter 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 1
Set filter sta 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 level 1
FG600B3909600253 # 71419.245 <ih> IEEE 802.11 mgmt::disassoc <== 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 vap open
     rId 1 wId 0 00:09:0f:db:c4:03
71419.246 <dc> STA del 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 vap open rId 1 wId 0
71419.246 <cc> STA_CFG_REQ(34) sta 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 del ==> ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 1
     wId 0
71419.246 <cc> STA del 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 vap open ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 1 wId 0
     00:09:0f:db:c4:03 sec open reason I2C_STA_DEL
71419.247 <cc> STA_CFG_RESP(34) 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rc 0
     (Success).
```

Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture)

When you troubleshoot networks and routing in particular, it helps to look inside the headers of packets to determine if they are traveling the route that you expect them to take. Packet sniffing is also known as network tap, packet capture, or logic analyzing.



For FortiGates with NP2, NP4, or NP6 interfaces that are offloading traffic, disable offloading on these interfaces before you perform a trace or it will change the sniffer trace.

Sniffing packets

To perform a sniffer trace in the CLI:

Before you start sniffing packets, you should prepare to capture the output to a file. A large amount of data may scroll by and you will not be able to see it without saving it first. One method is to use a terminal program like puTTY to connect to the FortiGate CLI. Once the packet sniffing count is reached, you can end the session and analyze the output in the file.

The general form of the internal FortiOS packet sniffer command is:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet <interface_name> <'filter'> <verbose> <count> <tsformat>
```

To stop the sniffer, type `CTRL+C`.

<interface_name>	The name of the interface to sniff, such as `port1` or `internal`. This can also be `any` to sniff all interfaces.
<'filter'>	What to look for in the information the sniffer reads. `none` indicates no filtering, and all packets are displayed as the other arguments indicate. The filter must be inside single quotes (‘).
<verbose>	The level of verbosity as one of: • **1 -** print header of packets • **2 -** print header and data from IP of packets • **3 -** print header and data from Ethernet of packets • **4 -** print header of packets with interface name
<count>	The number of packets the sniffer reads before stopping. If you don't put a number here, the sniffer will run until you stop it with <`CTRL+C`>.

<tsformat>	The timestamp format. • `a`: absolute UTC time, yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.ms • `l`: absolute LOCAL time, yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.ms • `otherwise`: relative to the start of sniffing, ss.ms

Simple sniffing example:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet port1 none 1 3.
```

This displays the next three packets on the port1 interface using no filtering, and verbose level 1. At this verbosity level, you can see the source IP and port, the destination IP and port, action (such as ack), and sequence numbers.

In the output below, port 443 indicates these are HTTPS packets and that 172.20.120.17 is both sending and receiving traffic.

```
Head_Office_620b # diagnose sniffer packet port1 none 1 3
interfaces=[port1]
filters=[none]
0.545306 172.20.120.17.52989 -> 172.20.120.141.443: psh 3177924955 ack 1854307757
0.545963 172.20.120.141.443 -> 172.20.120.17.52989: psh 1854307757 ack 3177925808
0.562409 172.20.120.17.52988 -> 172.20.120.141.443: psh 4225311614 ack 3314279933
```

Advanced sniffing example:

The following commands will report packets on any interface that are traveling between a computer with the host name of “PC1” and a computer with the host name of “PC2”. With verbosity 4 and above, the sniffer trace displays the interface names where traffic enters or leaves the FortiGate unit. To stop the sniffer, type `CTRL+C`.

```
FGT# diagnose sniffer packet any "host <PC1> or host <PC2>" 4
or
FGT# diagnose sniffer packet any "(host <PC1> or host <PC2>) and icmp" 4
```

The following CLI command for a sniffer includes the ARP protocol in the filter which may be useful to troubleshoot a failure in the ARP resolution. For example, PC2 may be down and not responding to the FortiGate ARP requests.

```
FGT# diagnose sniffer packet any "host <PC1> or host <PC2> or arp" 4
```

Using packet capture

To use packet capture, the FortiGate must have a disk. You can enable the `capture-packet` in the firewall policy.

To enable packet capture in the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
   edit <id>
      set capture-packet enable
   next
end
```

To configure packet capture filters in the GUI:

Go to *Network* > *Packet Capture*.

When you add a packet capture filter, enter the following information and click *OK*.

Interface	Select the interface to sniff from the drop-down menu. You must select one interface. You cannot change the interface without deleting the filter and creating a new one, unlike the other fields.
Max Packets to Save	Enter the number of packets to capture before the filter stops. This number cannot be zero. You can halt the capturing before this number is reached.
Enable Filters	Select this option to specify filter fields.
Host(s)	Enter the IP address of one or more hosts. Separate multiple hosts with commas. To enter a range, use a dash without spaces. For example, `172.16.1.5-172.16.1.15`, or enter a subnet.
Port(s)	Enter one or more ports to capture on the selected interface. Separate multiple ports with commas. To enter a range, use a dash without spaces, for example `88-90`.
VLAN(s)	Enter one or more VLANs (if any). Separate multiple VLANs with commas.
Protocol	Enter one or more protocols. Separate multiple protocols with commas. To enter a range, use a dash without spaces. For example, `1-6`, `17`, `21-25`.
Include IPv6 Packets	Select this option if you are troubleshooting IPv6 networking, or if your network uses IPv6. Otherwise, leave it disabled.
Include Non-IP Packets	The protocols in the list are all IP based except for ICMP (ping). Use this feature to capture non-IP based packets. Examples of non-IP packets include IPsec, IGMP, ARP, and ICMP.

Managing filters

If you select a filter, you have the option to start and stop packet capture in the edit window, or download the captured packets. You can also see the filter status and the number of packets captured.

You can select the filter and start capturing packets. When the filter is running, the number of captured packets increases until it reaches the *Max Packet Count* or you stop it. You cannot download the output file while the filter is running.

Packet capture controls

To start, stop, or resume packet capture, use the symbols on the screen. These symbols are the same as those used for audio or video playback. Hover over the symbol to reveal explanatory text. Similarly, to download the *.pcap file, use the download symbol on the screen.

Downloading the file

You can download the *.pcap file when the packet capture is complete. You must use a third party application, such as Wireshark, to read *,pcap files. This tool provides you with extensive analytics and the full contents of the packets that were captured.

Debugging the packet flow

Debug the packet flow when network traffic is not entering and leaving the FortiGate as expected. Debugging the packet flow can only be done in the CLI. Each command configures a part of the debug action. The final commands starts the debug.

To trace the packet flow in the CLI:

```
# diagnose debug flow trace start
```

To follow packet flow by setting a flow filter:

```
# diagnose debug flow {filter | filter6} <option>
```

- Enter `filter` if your network uses IPv4.
- Enter `filter6` if your network uses IPv6.

Replace `<option>` with one of the following variables:

Variable	Description
`addr`	IPv4 or IPv6 address
`clear`	clear filter
`daddr`	destination IPv4 or IPv6 address
`dport`	destination port
`negate`	inverse IPv4 or IPv6 filter
`port`	port
`proto`	protocol number
`saddr`	source address
`sport`	source port
`vd`	index of virtual domain; `-1` matches all



If FortiGate is connected to FortiAnalyzer or FortiCloud, the diagnose debug flow output will be recorded as event log messages and then sent to the devices. Do not run this command longer than necessary, as it generates a significant amount of data.



FortiASIC NP4 or NP6 interface pairs that offload traffic will change the packet flow. Before debugging any NP4 or NP6 interfaces, disable offloading on those interfaces.

To do this, enter `diagnose npu <interface pair> fastpath disable`, where `interface pair` is `np4`, `np6`, `np4lite`, or `np6lite`.

To start flow monitoring with a specific number of packets:

```
# diagnose debug flow trace start <N>
```

To stop flow tracing at any time:

```
# diagnose debug flow trace stop
```

The following example shows the flow trace for a device with an IP address of `203.160.224.97`:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug flow filter addr 203.160.224.97
# diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
# diagnose debug flow trace start 100
```

Sample output: HTTP

To observe the debug flow trace, connect to the website at the following address:

```
https://www.fortinet.com
```

Comment: SYN packet received:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2700 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
192.168.3.221:1487->203.160.224.97:80) from port5."
```

SYN sent and a new session is allocated:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=resolve_ip_tuple line=2799
msg="allocate a new session-00000e90"
```

Lookup for next-hop gateway address:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=vf_ip4_route_input line=1543
msg="find a route: gw-192.168.11.254 via port6"
```

Source NAT, lookup next available port:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=get_new_addr line=1219
msg="find SNAT: IP-192.168.11.59, port-31925"
direction"
```

Matched security policy. Check to see which policy this session matches:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=fw_forward_handler line=317
msg="Allowed by Policy-3: SNAT"
```

Apply source NAT:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1502 msg="SNAT 192.168.3.221->192.168.11.59:31925"
```

SYN ACK received:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2700
msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6, 203.160.224.97:80-
>192.168.11.59:31925) from port6."
```

Found existing session ID. Identified as the reply direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2727
msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90, reply direction"
```

Apply destination NAT to inverse source NAT action:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1516 msg="DNAT 192.168.11.59:31925-
>192.168.3.221:1487"
```

Lookup for next-hop gateway address for reply traffic:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=vf_ip4_route_input line=1543
msg="find a route: gw-192.168.3.221 via port5"
```

ACK received:

```
id=20085 trace_id=211 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2700
msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
192.168.3.221:1487->203.160.224.97:80) from port5."
```

Match existing session in the original direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=211 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2727
msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90, original
direction"
```

Apply source NAT:

```
id=20085 trace_id=211 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1502 msg="SNAT 192.168.3.221->192.168.11.59:31925"
```

Receive data from client:

```
id=20085 trace_id=212 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2700 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
192.168.3.221:1487->203.160.224.97:80) from port5."
```

Match existing session in the original direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=212 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2727 msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90,
original direction"
```

Apply source NAT:

```
id=20085 trace_id=212 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1502 msg="SNAT 192.168.3.221->192.168.11.59:31925"
```

Receive data from server:

```
id=20085 trace_id=213 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2700 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
203.160.224.97:80->192.168.11.59:31925) from port6."
```

Match existing session in reply direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=213 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2727 msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90,
reply direction"
```

Apply destination NAT to inverse source NAT action:

```
id=20085 trace_id=213 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1516 msg="DNAT 192.168.11.59:31925-
>192.168.3.221:1487"
```

Sample output: IPsec (policy-based)

```
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=1, 10.72.55.240:1->10.71.55.10:8)
     from internal."
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="allocate a new session-00001cd3"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="find a route: gw-66.236.56.230 via wan1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="Allowed by Policy-2: encrypt"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="enter IPsec tunnel-RemotePhase1"
```

```
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="encrypted, and send to 15.215.225.22 with source 66.236.56.226"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="send to 66.236.56.230 via intf-wan1"
id=20085 trace_id=2 msg="vd-root received a packet (proto=1, 10.72.55.240:1-1071.55.10:8)
     from internal."
id=20085 trace_id=2 msg="Find an existing session, id-00001cd3, original direction"
id=20085 trace_id=2 msg="enter IPsec ="encrypted, and send to 15.215.225.22 with source
     66.236.56.226" tunnel-RemotePhase1"
id=20085 trace_id=2 msgid=20085 trace_id=2 msg="send to 66.236.56.230 via intf-wan1"
```

Testing a proxy operation

To monitor proxy operations in the CLI:

```
diagnose test application <application> <option>
```

To display a list of available application values:

```
diagnose test application ?
```

To display a list of available option values:

```
diagnose test application <application> ?
```

The `<option>` value will depend on the application value used in the command.

For example, if the application is `http`, the CLI command that displays the `<option>` values is:

```
diagnose test application http ?
```

Displaying detail Hardware NIC information

Monitoring the hardware NIC is important because interface errors indicate data link or physical layer issues which may impact the performance of the FortiGate.

To monitor hardware network operations in the CLI:

```
diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic <interface>
```

Sample output:

The following is sample output when the `<interface>` is set to `lan`:

```
System_Device_Name lan
Current_HWaddr 00:09:0f:68:35:60
Permanent_HWaddr 00:09:0f:68:35:60
State up
Link up
Speed 100
Duplex full
[……]
Rx_Packets=5685708
Tx_Packets=4107073
Rx_Bytes=617908014
```

```
Tx_Bytes=1269751248
Rx_Errors=0
Tx_Errors=0
Rx_Dropped=0
Tx_Dropped=0
[……]
```

Error descriptions

The `diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic` command displays a list of error names and values that are related to hardware.

The following table describes possible hardware errors:

Field	Description
Rx_Errors = rx error count	Bad frame was marked as error by PHY
Rx_CRC_Errors + Rx_Length_Errors - Rx_Align_Errors	This error is only valid in 10/100M mode
Rx_Dropped or Rx_No_Buffer_ Count	Running out of buffer space
Rx_Missed_Errors	Equals Rx_FIFO_Errors + CEXTERR (Carrier Extension Error Count); only valid in 1000M mode, which is marked by PHY
Tx_Errors = Tx_ Aborted_Errors	ECOL (Excessive Collisions Count); only valid in half-duplex mode
Tx_Window_Errors	Late Collisions (LATECOL) Count Late collisions are collisions that occur after 64-byte time into the transmission of the packet while working in 10 to 100 Mb/s data rate and 512-byte time into the transmission of the packet while working in the 1,000 Mb/s data rate. This register only increments if transmits are enabled and the device is in half-duplex mode.
Rx_Dropped	See Rx_Errors
Tx_Dropped	Not defined
Collisions	Total number of collisions experienced by the transmitter; valid in half-duplex mode
Rx_Length_Errors	Transmission length error
Rx_Over_Errors	Not defined
Rx_CRC_Errors	Frame CRC error
Rx_Frame_Errors	Same as Rx_Align_Errors This error is only valid in 10/100M mode.
Rx_FIFO_Errors	Same as Rx_Missed_Errors - a missed packet count

Field	Description
Tx_Aborted_Errors	See Tx_Errors
Tx_Carrier_Errors	The PHY should assert the internal carrier sense signal during every transmission. Failure to do so may indicate that the link has failed or the PHY has an incorrect link configuration. This register only increments if transmits are enabled. This register isn't valid in internal SerDes 1 mode (TBI mode for the 82544GC/EI) and is valid only when the Ethernet controller is operating at full duplex.
Tx_FIFO_Errors	Not defined
Tx_Heartbeat_Errors	Not defined
Tx_Window_Errors	See LATECOL
Tx_Single_Collision_ Frames	Counts the number of times that a successfully transmitted packet encountered a single collision The value increments only if transmits are enabled and the Ethernet controller is in half-duplex mode.
Tx_Multiple_ Collision_Frames	A Multiple Collision Count which indicates the number of times that a transmit encountered more than one collision, but less than 16. The value increments only if transmits are enabled and the Ethernet controller is in half-duplex mode.
Tx_Deferred	Counts defer events. A deferred event occurs when the transmitter cannot immediately send a packet due to: • The medium being busy because another device is transmitting • The IPG timer hasn't expired • Half-duplex deferral events are occurring • XOFF frames are being received • he link is not up. This register only increments if transmits are enabled. This counter does not increment for streaming transmits that are deferred due to TX IPG.
Rx_Frame_Too_ Longs	The Rx frame is oversized
Rx_Frame_Too_ Shorts	The Rx frame is too short
Rx_Align_Errors	This error is only valid in 10/100M mode
Symbol Error Count	Counts the number of symbol errors between reads - SYMERRS. The count increases for every bad symbol that's received, whether or not a packet is currently being received and whether or not the link is up. This register increments only in internal SerDes mode.

Performing a traffic trace

Traffic tracing allows you to follow a specific packet stream. This is useful when you want to confirm that packets are using the route you expect them to take on your network.

To view traffic sessions:

Use this command to view the characteristics of a traffic session though specific security policies.

```
diagnose sys session
```

To trace per-packet operations for flow tracing:

```
diagnose debug flow
```

To trace per-Ethernet frame:

```
diagnose sniffer packet
```

To trace a route from a FortiGate to a destination IP address:

```
# execute traceroute www.fortinet.com
traceroute to www.fortinet.com (66.171.121.34), 32 hops max, 84 byte packets
1 172.20.120.2 0.637 ms 0.653 ms 0.279 ms
2 209.87.254.221 <static-209-87-254-221.storm.ca> 2.448 ms 2.519 ms 2.458 ms
3 209.87.239.129 <core-2-g0-2.storm.ca> 2.917 ms 2.828 ms 9.324 ms
4 209.87.239.199 <core-3-bdi1739.storm.ca> 13.248 ms 12.401 ms 13.009 ms
5 216.66.41.113 <v502.core1.tor1.he.net> 17.181 ms 12.422 ms 12.268 ms
6 184.105.80.9 <100ge1-2.core1.nyc4.he.net> 21.355 ms 21.518 ms 21.597 ms
7 198.32.118.41 <ny-paix-gni.twgate.net> 83.297 ms 84.416 ms 83.782 ms
8 203.160.228.217 <217-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.579 ms 82.187 ms 82.066 ms
9 203.160.228.229 <229-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.055 ms 82.455 ms 81.808 ms
10 203.78.181.2 82.262 ms 81.572 ms 82.015 ms
11 203.78.186.70 83.283 ms 83.243 ms 83.293 ms
12 66.171.127.177 84.030 ms 84.229 ms 83.550 ms
13 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 84.023 ms 83.903 ms 84.032 ms
14 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 83.874 ms 84.084 ms 83.810 ms
```

Using a session table

A session is a communication channel between two devices or applications across the network. Sessions allow FortiOS to inspect and act on a sequential group of packets in a session all at once instead of inspecting each packet individually. Each session has an entry in the session table that includes important information about the session.

You can view FortiGate session tables from the FortiGate GUI or CLI. The most useful troubleshooting data comes from the CLI. The session table in the GUI also provides useful summary information, particularly the current policy number that the session is using.

When to use a session table

Session tables are useful when verifying open connections. For example, if you have a web browser open to browse the Fortinet website, you would expect a session entry from your computer on port 80 to the IP address for the Fortinet website.

You can also use a session table to investigate why there are too many sessions for FortiOS to process.

GUI

To view session information in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
2. From the *Metrics* dropdown, select *Sessions*.

Finding the security policy for a specific connection

Every program and device on your network must have an open communication channel or session to pass information. FortiGate manages these sessions with features such as traffic shaping, antivirus scanning, and blocking known bad websites. Each session will have an entry in the session table.

If a secure web browser session is not working properly, you can check the session table to ensure the session is still active and going to the proper address. The session table can also tell you the security policy number it matches, so you can check what is happening in that policy.

1. Get the connection information.

You need to be able to identify the session you want. To do this, you will need:

- The source IP address (usually your computer)
- The destination IP address (if you have it)
- The port number which is determined by the program you are using. Common ports are:
  - Port 80 (HTTP for web browsing)
  - Port 443 (HTTPS for SSL encrypted web browsing)
  - Port 22 (SSH for Secure Shell)
  - Port 25 (SMTP for Mail Transfer)

2. Find the session and policy ID

Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*. From the *Metrics* dropdown, select *Sessions*.

To find your session, search for your source IP address, destination IP address (if you have it), and port number. The policy ID is listed after the destination information.

3. Use filters to find a session

If there are multiple pages of sessions, you can use a filter to hide the sessions you do not need. To filter the sessions in the table, click *Add Filter*, and select an option from the list. You can filter the table by *Destination IP*, *Source IP*, or *Source Port*.

CLI

The session table output in the CLI is very large. The CLI command supports filters to show only the data you need.

To view session data in the CLI:

```
diagnose sys session list
```

An entry is placed in the session table for each traffic session passing through a security policy

To filter session data:

```
diagnose sys session filter <option>
```

The values for `<option>` include the following:

Value	Definition
`clear`	Clear session filter
`dintf`	Destination interface
`dport`	Destination port
`dst`	Destination IP address
`duration`	Duration of the session
`expire`	Expire
`negate`	Inverse filter
`nport`	NAT'd source port
`nsrc`	NAT'd source ip address
`policy`	Policy ID
`proto`	Protocol number
`proto-state`	Protocol state
`session-state1`	Session state1
`session-state2`	Session state2
`sintf`	Source interface
`sport`	Source port
`src`	Source IP address
`vd`	Index of virtual domain, `-1` matches all

Even though UDP is a sessionless protocol, FortiGate keeps track of the following states:

- When UDP reply does not have a value of 0
- When UDP reply has a value of 1

The following table displays firewall session states from the session table:

State	Description
log	Session is being logged
local	Session is originated from or destined for local stack
ext	Session is created by a firewall session helper
may_dirty	Session is created by a policy

State	Description
	For example, the session for `ftp control channel` will have this state but `ftp data channel` won't. This is also seen when NAT is enabled.
ndr	Session will be checked by IPS signature
nds	Session will be checked by IPS anomaly
br	Session is being bridged (TP) mode

Examining the firewall session list

The firewall session list displays all open sessions in FortiGate. Examine the list for strange patterns, such as no sessions apart from the internal network, or all sessions are only to one IP address.

When you examine the firewall session list in the CLI, you can use filters to reduce the output.

To examine the firewall session list in the CLI:

You can use a filter to limit the sessions displayed by source, destination address, port, or NAT'd address. To use more than one filter, enter a separate line for each value.

The following example filters the session list based on a source address of 10.11.101.112:

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter src 10.11.101.112
FGT# diagnose sys session list
```

The following example filters the session list based on a destination address of 172.20.120.222.

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter dst 172.20.120.222
FGT# diagnose sys session list
```

To clear all sessions corresponding to a filter:

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter dst 172.20.120.222
FGT# diagnose sys session clear
```

Checking source NAT information

Checking source NAT is important when you are troubleshooting from the remote end of the connection outside the firewall.

To check the source NAT information in the CLI:

When you display the session list in the CLI, you can match the NAT'd source address (`nsrc`) and port (`nport`). This is useful when multiple internal IP addresses are NAT'd to a common external-facing source IP address.

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter nsrc 172.20.120.122
FGT# diagnose sys session filter nport 8888
FGT# diagnose sys session list
```

Finding object dependencies

You may be prevented from deleting a configuration object when other configuration objects depend on it. You can use the GUI or CLI to identify objects which depend on, or make reference to the configuration you are trying to delete. Additionally, if you have a virtual interface with dependent objects, you will need to find and remove those dependencies before deleting the interface.

To remove interface object dependencies in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. The *Ref.* column displays the number of objects that reference this interface.
2. Select the number in the *Ref* . column for the interface. A window listing the dependencies appears.
3. Use these detailed entries to locate and remove object references to this interface. The trash can icon is enabled after all the object dependencies are removed.
4. Remove the interface by selecting the check box for the interface, and select *Delete*.

To find object dependencies in the CLI:

When running multiple VDOMs, use the following command in the global configuration only.

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show <path.object.mkey>
```

The command searches for the named object in both the most recently used global and VDOM configurations.

Examples

To verify which objects a security policy with an ID of 1 refers to:

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show firewall.policy.policyid 1
```

To check what is referred to by interface `port1`:

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show system.interface.name port1
```

To show all dependencies for an interface:

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show system.interface.name <interface name>
```

Sample output:

In this example , the interface has dependent objects, including four address objects, one VIP, and three security policies.

```
entry used by table firewall.address:name '10.98.23.23_host'
entry used by table firewall.address:name 'NAS'
entry used by table firewall.address:name 'all'
entry used by table firewall.address:name 'fortinet.com'
entry used by table firewall.vip:name 'TORRENT_10.0.0.70:6883'
entry used by table firewall.policy:policyid '21'
entry used by table firewall.policy:policyid '14'
entry used by table firewall.policy:policyid '19'
```

Diagnosing NPU-based interfaces

Some Fortinet products contain network processors, such as NP4, NP6Lite, or NP6. Offloading requirements will vary depending on the model.

To view the initial session setup for NPU-based interfaces:

```
diagnose debug flow
```

- If the session is programmed into the ASIC (fastpath) correctly, the command will not detect the packets that arrive at the CPU.
- If the NPU functionality is disabled, the CPU detects all the packets. However, you should only disable the NPU functionality for troubleshooting purposes.

To diagnose NPU-based interfaces:

1. Get the NPx or NPU ID and port numbers.
   ```
   diagnose npu <processor> list
   ```
   The output will look like this:
   ```
   ID Model Slot Interface
   0 On-board port1 fabric1 fabric3 fabric5
   1 On-board fabric2 port2 base2 fabric4
   ```
2. Disable the NPU functionality.
   ```
   diagnose npu <processor> fastpath disable <dev_id>
   ```
   The `dev_id` is the NPx ID number.
3. Analyze the packets.
   ```
   diagnose npu <processor> fastpath-sniffer enable port1
   ```



These commands only apply to NP4 and NP6 interfaces.

The output will look similar to:

```
NP4 Fast Path Sniffer on port1 enabled
```

This causes traffic on `port1` of the network processor to be sent to the CPU. This means you can perform a standard sniffer trace and use other diagnostic commands, if it is a standard CPU-driven port.

Identifying the XAUI link used for a specific traffic stream

The `diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash` command takes a 6-tuple input of the traffic stream to identify the NP6 XAUI link that the traffic passes through.

This command is only available on the 38xxD, 39xxD, 34xxE, 36xxE, and 5001E series devices.

Syntax

```
diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash <interface> <proto> <src_ip> <dst_ip> <src_port> <dst_port>
```

Variable	Description
<interface>	The network interface that the packets are coming from.
<proto>	The proto number, 6 for TCP or 17 for UDP.
<src_ip>	The source IP address.
<dst_ip>	The destination IP address.
<src_port>	The source port.
<dst_port>	The destination port.

Examples

```
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 80
 NP6_ID: 0, XAUI_LINK: 2
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 200
NP6_ID: 6, XAUI_LINK: 2
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 20
NP6_ID: 1, XAUI_LINK: 2
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 23
NP6_ID: 1, XAUI_LINK: 1
```

The `NP6_ID` is the NP index of the model that is being used. It can be found with the `diagnose npu np6 port-list` command.

Date and time settings

Fortinet support may ask you to check the date and time settings for log message timestamp synchronization and for certificates that have a time requirement to check for validity.

To check time settings:

```
execute time
```

To check date settings:

```
execute date
```

If all devices have the same time, it helps to correlate log entries from different devices.

```
execute time
current time is: 12:40:48
last ntp sync:Thu Mar 16 12:00:21 2006
execute date
current date is: 2006-03-16
```

To force synchronization with an NTP server:

```
config system ntp
   set ntpsync {enable | disable}
end
```

If all devices have the same time, it helps to correlate log entries from different devices.

Running the TAC report

The Technical Assistance Center (TAC) report runs an exhaustive series of diagnostic commands. Some of the commands are only needed if you are using features, such as HA, VPN tunnels, or a modem. Fortinet support my ask you to use the report output to provide information about the current state of your FortiGate.

Due the amount of output generated, the report may take a few minutes to run. If you are logging CLI output to a file, you can run this command to familiarize yourself with the diagnostic commands.

To run the TAC report in the CLI:

```
execute tac report
```

Other commands

You may be asked to provide the following information when you contact Fortinet support.

- ARP table on page 2175
- IP address on page 2177

ARP table

The ARP table is used to determine the destination MAC addresses of the network nodes, as well as the VLANs and ports from where the nodes are reached.

To view the ARP table:

```
# get system arp

Address           Age(min)    Hardware Addr      Interface
10.10.1.3         1           50:b7:c3:75:ea:dd internal7
192.168.0.190     0           28:f1:0e:03:2a:97 wan1
192.168.0.97      0           f4:f2:6d:37:b0:99 wan1
```

To view the ARP cache in the system:

```
# diagnose ip arp list

index=14 ifname=internal7 10.10.1.3 50:b7:c3:75:ea:dd state=00000004 use=2494 confirm=1995
update=374 ref=3
index=5 ifname=wan1 192.168.0.190 28:f1:0e:03:2a:97 state=00000002 use=88 confirm=86
update=977639 ref=2
index=22 ifname=internal 192.168.1.111 00:0c:29:c6:79:3d state=00000004 use=3724
confirm=9724 update=3724 ref=0
index=5 ifname=wan1 224.0.1.140 01:00:5e:00:01:8c state=00000040 use=924202 confirm=930202
update=924202 ref=1
index=5 ifname=wan1 192.168.0.97 f4:f2:6d:37:b0:99 state=00000002 use=78 confirm=486
```

```
update=614 ref=26
index=14 ifname=internal7 10.10.1.11 state=00000020 use=172 confirm=1037790 update=78 ref=2
```

ARP request and cache

The FortiGate must make an ARP request when it tries to reach a new destination. The base ARP reachable value determines how often an ARP request it sent; the default is 30 seconds. The actual ARP reachable time is a random number between half and three halves of the base reachable time, or 15 to 45 seconds. The random number is updated every five minutes.

ARP entries in the ARP cache are updated based on the state of the ARP entry and the objects that are using it, as highlighted in the following output sample:

```
index=5 ifname=wan1 224.0.1.140 01:00:5e:00:01:8c state=00000040 use=924202
confirm=930202 update=924202 ref=1
```

There are multiple possible states for an ARP entry, and the state-transition mechanism can be complex. Common states include the following:

State	Meaning	Description
000000002 or 0x02	REACHABLE	An ARP response was received
000000004 or 0x04	STALE	No ARP response within the expected time
000000008 or 0x08	DELAY	A transition state between STALE and REACHABLE before Probes are sent out
000000020 or 0x20	FAILED	Did not manage to resolve within the maximum configured number of probes
000000040 or 0x40	NOARP	Device does not support ARP, e.g. IPsec interface
000000080 or 0x80	PERMANENT	A statically defined ARP entry

An entry that is in the STALE (0x04) or FAILED (0x20) states with no references to it (ref=0) can be deleted. Many factors affect the state-transmit mechanism and if an entry is used by other subsystems. For example, ARP creation, ARP request/reply, neighbor lookup, routing, and others can cause an ARP entry to be in use or referenced.

The garbage collection mechanism runs every 30 seconds, and checks and removes stale and unreferenced entries if they have been stale for longer than 60 seconds. Garbage collection will also be triggered when the number of ARP entries exceeds the configured threshold. If the threshold is exceeded, no entries can be added to the ARP table.

To set the maximum number of ARP entries threshold:

```
config system global
    set arp-max-entry <integer>
end
```

arp-max-entry <integer>	The maximum number of dynamically learned MAC addresses that can be added to the ARP table (131072 to 2147483647, default = 131072).

To clear all of the entries in the ARP table:

```
execute clear system arp table
```

To delete a single ARP entry from the ARP table:

```
diagnose ip arp delete <interface name> <IP address>
```

To add static ARP entries:

```
config system arp-table
    edit 1
        set interface "internal"
        set ip 192.168.50.8
        set mac bc:14:01:e9:77:02
    next
end
```

To view a summary of the ARP table:

```
# diagnose sys device list root

list virtual firewall root info:
ip4 route_cache: table_size=65536 max_depth=2 used=31 total=34
arp: table_size=16 max_depth=2 used=5 total=6
proxy_arp: table_size=256 max_depth=0 used=0 total=0
arp6: table_size=32 max_depth=1 used=3 total=3
proxy_arp6: table_size=256 max_depth=0 used=0 total=0
local table version=00000000 main table version=0000002b
vf=root dev=root vrf=0
vf=root dev=ssl.root vrf=0
...
vf=root dev=internal5 vrf=0
ses=0/0 ses6=0/0 rt=0/0 rt6=0/0
```

IP address

You may want to verify the IP addresses assigned to the FortiGate interfaces are what you expect them to be.

To verify IP addresses:

```
diagnose ip address list
```

The output lists the:

- IP address and mask (if available)
- `index` of the interface (a type of ID number)
- `devname` (the interface name)

While physical interface names are set, virtual interface names can vary. A good way to use this command is to list all of the virtual interface names. For `vsys_ha` and `vsys_fgfm`, the IP addresses are the local host, which are virtual interfaces that are used internally.

Sample output:

```
# diagnose ip address list
IP=10.31.101.100->10.31.101.100/255.255.255.0 index=3 devname=internal
IP=172.20.120.122->172.20.120.122/255.255.255.0 index=5 devname=wan1
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=8 devname=root
```

```
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=11 devname=vsys_ha
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=13 devname=vsys_fgfm
```

FortiGuard troubleshooting

The FortiGuard service provides updates to AntiVirus (AV), Antispam (AS), Intrusion Protection Services (IPS), Webfiltering (WF), and more. The FortiGuard Distribution System (FDS) consists of a number of servers across the world that provide updates to your FortiGate unit. Problems can occur with the connection to FDS and its configuration on your local FortiGate unit.

Some of the more common troubleshooting methods are listed here, including:

- Verifying connectivity to FortiGuard on page 2178
- Troubleshooting process for FortiGuard updates on page 2179
- FortiGuard server settings on page 2179

Verifying connectivity to FortiGuard

You can verify FortiGuard connectivity in the GUI and CLI.

To verify FortiGuard connectivity in the GUI:

1. Got to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. Check the *Licenses* widget. When FortiGate is connected to FortiGuard, a green check mark appears next to the available FortiGuard services.

To verify FortiGuard connectivity in the CLI:

```
execute ping service.fortiguard.net
```

```
execute ping update.fortiguard.net
```

Sample output:

```
FG100D# execute ping service.fortiguard.net
PING guard.fortinet.net (208.91.112.196): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=0 ttl=51 time=61.0 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=1 ttl=51 time=60.0 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=2 ttl=51 time=59.6 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=3 ttl=51 time=58.9 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=4 ttl=51 time=59.2 ms

--- guard.fortinet.net ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 58.9/59.7/61.0 ms

FG100D# execute ping update.fortiguard.net
PING fds1.fortinet.com (208.91.112.68): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=0 ttl=53 time=62.0 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=1 ttl=53 time=61.8 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=2 ttl=53 time=61.3 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=3 ttl=53 time=61.9 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=4 ttl=53 time=61.8 ms
```

Troubleshooting process for FortiGuard updates

The following process shows the logical steps you should take when troubleshooting problems with FortiGuard updates:

1. **Does the device have a valid license that includes these services?**
   Each device requires a valid FortiGuard license to access updates for some or all of these services. You can verify the status of the support contract for your devices at the Fortinet Support website.
2. **If the device is part of a high availability (HA) cluster, do all members of the cluster have the same level of support?**
   You can verify the status of the support contract for all of the devices in your HA cluster at the Fortinet Support website.
3. **Are services enabled on the device?**
   To see the FortiGuard information and status for a device in the GUI, go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
   Use this page to verify the status of each component, and enable each service.
4. **Can the device communicate with FortiGuard servers?**
   Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* in the GUI, and try to update AntiVirus and IPS, or test the availability of Web Filtering and AS default and alternate ports.
5. **Is there proper routing to reach the FortiGuard servers?**
   Ensure there is a static or dynamic route that allows your FortiGate to reach the FortiGuard servers. Usually a generic default route to the internet is enough, but you may need to verify this if your network is complex.
6. **Are there issues with DNS?**
   An easy way to test this is to attempt a traceroute from behind the FortiGate to an external network using the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for a location. If the traceroute FQDN name doesn't resolve, you have general DNS problems.
7. **Is there anything upstream that might be blocking FortiGuard traffic, either on the network or ISP side?**
   Many firewalls block all ports, by default, and ISPs often block ports that are low. There may be a firewall between the FortiGate and the FortiGuard servers that's blocking the traffic. By default, FortiGuard uses port 53. If that port is blocked you need to either open a hole for it or change the port it is using.
8. **Is there an issue with source ports?**
   It is possible that ports that FortiGate uses to contact FortiGuard are being changed before they reach FortiGuard or on the return trip before they reach FortiGate. A possible solution for this is to use a fixed-port at NAT'd firewalls to ensure the port remains the same. You can use packet sniffing to find more information about what's happening with ports.
9. **Are there security policies that include antivirus?**
   If none of the security policies include antivirus, the antivirus database will not be updated. If antivirus is included, only the database type that's used will be updated.

FortiGuard server settings

Your local FortiGate connects to remote FortiGuard servers to get updates to FortiGuard information, such as new viruses that may have been found or other new threats.

The default setting to reach FortiGuard is anycast. However, FortiGate can be configured to use unicast server. See FortiGuard on page 1029 for more information.

This section provides methods to display FortiGuard server information on your FortiGate, and how to use that information and update it to fix potential problems.

Displaying the server list

To get a list of FDS servers FortiGate uses to send web filtering requests:

```
get webfilter status
```

or

```
diagnose debug rating
```

Rating requests are only sent to the server at the top of the list in normal operation. Each server is probed for Round Trip Time (RTT) every two minutes. Rating may not be enabled on your FortiGate.

Optionally, you can add a refresh rate to the end of the command to determine how often the server list is refreshed.

Sample output:

```
Locale       : English

Service      : Web-filter
Status       : Enable
License      : Contract

Service      : Antispam
Status       : Disable

Service      : Virus Outbreak Prevention
Status       : Disable

Num. of servers : 2
Protocol        : https
Port            : 443
Anycast         : Disable
Default servers : Included

--=- Server List (Wed Nov 16 14:42:08 2022) --=-
IP                                            Weight    RTT Flags   TZ  FortiGuard-requests
 Curr Lost Total Lost             Updated Time
140.174.22.68                                    30    866         -5
13          0          0 Wed Nov 16 14:41:35 2022
12.34.97.18                                      30    878 DI      -5
12          0          0 Wed Nov 16 14:41:35 2022
```

Output details

The server list includes the IP addresses of alternate servers if the first entry cannot be reached. The following flags in `get webfilter status` indicate the server status:

Flag	Description
D	The server was found through the DNS lookup of the hostname. If the hostname returns more than one IP address, all of them are flagged with D and are used first for INIT requests before falling back to the other servers.
I	The server to which the last INIT request was sent.

Flag	Description
F	The server hasn't responded to requests and is considered to have failed.
T	The server is currently being timed.
S	Rating requests can be sent to the server. The flag is set for a server only in two cases: • The server exists in the servers list received from the FortiManager or any other INIT server. • The server list received from the FortiManager is empty so the FortiManager is the only server that the FortiGate knows and it should be used as the rating server.

Please note that the example output displays `Anycast` as `Disable` because the CLI commands above work with the FortiGuard unicast server case and not with the FortiGuard anycast servers case.

Also, in the example output above, the server 12.34.97.18 was found through a DNS lookup (`D` flag) and was sent the last INIT request (`I` flag).

Sorting the server list

The server list is sorted first by weight. The server with the smallest RTT appears at the top of the list, regardless of weight. When a packet is lost (there has been no response in 2 seconds), it is re-sent to the next server in the list. Therefore, the top position in the list is selected based on RTT, while the other positions are based on weight.

Calculating weight

The weight for each server increases with failed packets and decreases with successful packets. To lower the possibility of using a remote server, the weight isn't allowed to dip below a base weight. The base weight is calculated as the difference in hours between the FortiGate and the server multiplied by 10. The farther away the server is, the higher its base weight is and the lower it appears in the list.

View open and in use ports

Traffic destined for the FortiGate itself, and not being passed through or dropped, is called local-in traffic. It can be from a variety of services, such as HTTPS for administrative access, or BGP for inter-router communication.

Local-in traffic is controlled by local-in policies. To enable viewing local-in policies in the GUI, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *Local In Policy*.

The *Policy & Objects* > *Local In Policy* page shows a read-only list of the local policies, populated with default values, and values that are automatically enabled when the related service is enabled, for example, enabling BGP opens TCP port 179. For more information, see Local-in policies on page 1140.

To view ports that are being listened on, and active connections and the services or processes using them:

```
# diagnose sys tcpsock | grep 0.0.0.0
0.0.0.0:10400->0.0.0.0:0->state=listen err=0 socktype=4 rma=0 wma=0 fma=0 tma=0 inode=10621
process=142/authd
...
0.0.0.0:53->0.0.0.0:0->state=listen err=0 socktype=1 rma=0 wma=0 fma=0 tma=0 inode=8067
process=177/dnsproxy
```

```
0.0.0.0:22->0.0.0.0:0->state=listen err=0 socktype=1 rma=0 wma=0 fma=0 tma=0 inode=13390
process=225/sshd
0.0.0.0:541->0.0.0.0:0->state=listen err=0 socktype=1 rma=0 wma=0 fma=0 tma=0 inode=13155
process=215/fgfmd
...
0.0.0.0:9980->0.0.0.0:0->state=listen err=0 socktype=1 rma=0 wma=0 fma=0 tma=0 inode=5063
process=129/httpsd
0.0.0.0:179->0.0.0.0:0->state=listen err=0 socktype=1 rma=0 wma=0 fma=0 tma=0 inode=10583
process=148/bgpd
...
```

For more information on incoming and outgoing ports, see the FortiOS Ports guide.

Additional resources

To learn more about FortiGate and FortiOS, and for information about technical issues, refer to the following resources.

Fortinet Document Library

Installation Guides, Administration Guides, Quick Start Guides, and other technical documents are available online at the Fortinet Document Library.

Release notes

Issues that arise after the technical documentation has been published are often listed in the release notes. The release notes are available in the Fortinet Document Library.

Fortinet Video Library

The Fortinet Video Library hosts a collection of videos that provide valuable information about Fortinet products.

Fortinet Community

The Fortinet Community provides a place to collaborate, share insights and experiences, and get answers to questions. It incorporates the Fortinet Knowledge Base and technical discussion forums. You can access the Fortinet Community at https://community.fortinet.com.

Knowledge Base

The Fortinet Knowledge Base provides access to a variety of articles, white papers, and other documentation that provides technical insight into a range of Fortinet products. You can access the Knowledge Base at https://community.fortinet.com/t5/Knowledge-Base/ct-p/knowledgebase.

Fortinet technical discussion forums

The online technical forum allows administrators to contribute to discussions about issues related to their Fortinet products. Searching the forum can help an administrator identify if an issue has been experienced by another user. You can access the support forum at https://community.fortinet.com/t5/Fortinet-Forum/bd-p/fortinet-discussion.

Fortinet Training Institute

The Fortinet Training Institute hosts a collection of tutorials and training materials that you can use to increase your knowledge of Fortinet products. You can access these training resources at https://www.fortinet.com/training.html.

Fortinet Support

You defined your problem, researched a solution, put together a plan to find the solution, and executed that plan. At this point, if the problem has not been solved, contact Fortinet Support for assistance.





Copyright© 2023 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.